# Seattle Residential Code

2009 International RESIDENTIAL Code® as Amended by the City of Seattle

City of Seattle

2009

# 2009 Seattle Residential Code

2009 International Residential Code® as Amended by the City of Seattle

City of Seattle

2009 Seattle Residential Code

First Printing: October 2010

ISBN-978-1-60983-022-9



PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.

# PREFACE

## Introduction

Internationally, code officials recognize the need for a modern, up-to-date residential code addressing the design and construction of one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. The *International Residential Code*®, in this 2009 edition, is designed to meet these needs through model code regulations that safeguard the public health and safety in all communities, large and small.

This comprehensive, stand-alone residential code establishes minimum regulations for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses using prescriptive provisions. It is founded on broad-based principles that make possible the use of new materials and new building designs. This 2009 edition is fully compatible with all the *International Codes*® (I-Codes®) published by the International Code Council® (ICC)®, including the *International Building Code*®, *International Energy Conservation Code*®, *International Existing Building Code*®, *International Fire Code*®, *International Fuel Gas Code*®, *International Mechanical Code*®, ICC *Performance Code*®, *International Plumbing Code*®, *International Private Sewage Disposal Code*®, *International Property Maintenance Code*®, *International Wildland-Urban Interface Code*™ and *International Zoning Code*®.

The *International Residential Code* provisions provide many benefits, among which is the model code development process that offers an international forum for residential construction professionals to discuss prescriptive code requirements. This forum provides an excellent arena to debate proposed revisions. This model code also encourages international consistency in the application of provisions.

## Development

The first edition of the *International Residential Code* (2000) was the culmination of an effort initiated in 1996 by ICC and consisting of representatives from the three statutory members of the International Code Council at the time, including: Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA), International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO) and Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI), and representatives from the National Association of Home Builders (NAHB). The intent was to draft a stand-alone residential code consistent with and inclusive of the scope of the existing model codes. Technical content of the 1998 *International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code* and the latest model codes promulgated by BOCA, ICBO, SBCCI and ICC was used as the basis for the development, followed by public hearings in 1998 and 1999 to consider proposed changes. This 2009 edition represents the code as originally issued, with changes reflected in the 2006 edition, and further changes developed through the ICC Code Development Process through 2008. Residential electrical provisions are based on the 2008 *National Electrical Code*® (NFPA 70). A new edition such as this is promulgated every three years.

Fuel gas provisions have been included through an agreement with the American Gas Association (AGA). Electrical provisions have been included through an agreement with the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).

This code is founded on principles intended to establish provisions consistent with the scope of a residential code that adequately protects public health, safety and welfare; provisions that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; provisions that do not restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and provisions that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

## Adoption

The *International Residential Code* is available for adoption and use by jurisdictions internationally. Its use within a governmental jurisdiction is intended to be accomplished through adoption by reference in accordance with proceedings establishing the jurisdiction's laws. At the time of adoption, jurisdictions should insert the appropriate information in provisions requiring specific local information, such as the name of the adopting jurisdiction. These locations are shown in bracketed words in small capital letters in the code and in the sample ordinance. The sample adoption ordinance on page xiii addresses several key elements of a code adoption ordinance, including the information required for insertion into the code text.

## Maintenance

The *International Residential Code* is kept up-to-date through the review of proposed changes submitted by code enforcing officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are carefully considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

The contents of this work are subject to change both through the Code Development Cycles and the governmental body that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Code and Standard Development Department of the International Code Council.

The maintenance process for the fuel gas provisions is based upon the process used to maintain the *International Fuel Gas Code*, in conjunction with the American Gas Association. The maintenance process for the electrical provisions is undertaken by the National Fire Protection Association.

While the development procedure of the *International Residential Code* assures the highest degree of care, ICC, the founding members of ICC, its members and those participating in the development of this code do not accept any liability resulting from compliance or noncompliance with the provisions because ICC and its founding members do not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this code. Only the governmental body that enacts the code into law has such authority.

## Marginal Markings

Solid vertical lines in the margins within the body of the code indicate a technical change from the requirements of the 2006 edition of the IRC. Dashed vertical lines in the margins indicate a technical change in the Seattle amendments. Deletion indicators in the form of an arrow (➡) are provided in the margin where an entire section, paragraph, exception or table has been deleted or an item in a list of items or a table has been deleted from the IRC. Deletion indicators in the form of a hollow arrow (⇨) are provided in the margin where a Seattle amendment has been deleted.

## Italicized Terms

Selected terms set forth in Chapter 2, Definitions, are italicized where they appear in code text. Such terms are not italicized where the definition set forth in Chapter 2 does not impart the intended meaning in the use of the term. The terms selected have definitions which the user should read carefully to facilitate better understanding of the code.

## Acknowledgement

DPD thanks the members of the Construction Codes Advisory Board and its committees for the dedication, knowledge and experience they generously devoted to reviewing the 2009 Seattle codes. These volunteers donated an extraordinary number of hours to this important task. DPD and the City's elected officials rely on this commitment of time by its citizens for advice on technical matters. The City is deeply grateful for the practical perspective they provide. The City is fortunate to have the contributions of these generous people.

## Electronic Mailing List

If you would like to receive occasional email messages notifying you of future amendments and errata to the Seattle Residential Code and other codes, sign up for the technical codes mailing list at http://www.seattle.gov/DPD/Codes/Technical Codes/Subscribe to Our Mailing List/DPD 001990.asp.

# Effective Use of the International Residential Code

The *International Residential Code*® (IRC®) was created to serve as a complete, comprehensive code regulating the construction of single-family houses, two-family houses (duplexes) and buildings consisting of three or more townhouse units. All buildings within the scope of the IRC are limited to three stories above grade plane. For example, a four-story single-family house would fall within the scope of the *International Building Code*® (IBC®), not the IRC. The benefits of devoting a separate code to residential construction include the fact that the user need not navigate through a multitude of code provisions that do not apply to residential construction in order to locate that which is applicable. A separate code also allows for residential and nonresidential code provisions to be distinct and tailored to the structures that fall within the appropriate code's scopes.

The IRC contains coverage for all components of a house or townhouse, including structural components, fireplaces and chimneys, thermal insulation, mechanical systems, fuel gas systems, plumbing systems and electrical systems.

The IRC is a prescriptive-oriented (specification) code with some examples of performance code language. It has been said that the IRC is the complete cookbook for residential construction. Section R301.1, for example, is written in performance language, but states that the prescriptive requirements of the code will achieve such performance.

It is important to understand that the IRC contains coverage for what is conventional and common in residential construction practice. While the IRC will provide all of the needed coverage for most residential construction, it might not address construction practices and systems that are atypical or rarely encountered in the industry. Sections such as R301.1.3, R301.2.2, R320.1, R322.1, N1101.2, M1301.1, G2401.1, P2601.1 and E3401.2 refer to other codes either as an alternative to the provisions of the IRC or where the IRC lacks coverage for a particular type of structure, design, system, appliance or method of construction. In other words, the IRC is meant to be all inclusive for typical residential construction and it relies on other codes only where alternatives are desired or where the code lacks coverage for the uncommon aspect of residential construction. Of course, the IRC constantly evolves to address new technologies and construction practices that were once uncommon, but now common.

The IRC is unique in that much of it, including Chapters 3 through 9 and Chapters 34 through 43, is presented in an ordered format that is consistent with the normal progression of construction, starting with the design phase and continuing through the final trim-out phase. This is consistent with the "cookbook" philosophy of the IRC.

The IRC is divided into eight main parts, specifically, Part I—Administration, Part II—Definitions, Part III—Building Planning and Construction, Part IV—Energy Conservation, Part V—Mechanical, Part VI—Fuel Gas, Part VII—Plumbing and Part VIII—Electrical.

The following provides a brief description of the content of each chapter and appendix of the IRC:

**Chapter 1 Scope and Administration.** This chapter contains provisions for the application, enforcement and administration of subsequent requirements of the code. In addition to establishing the scope of the code, Chapter 1 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview. Chapter 1 is largely concerned with maintaining "due process of law" in enforcing the building criteria contained in the body of the code. Only through careful observation of the administrative provisions can the building official reasonably expect to demonstrate that "equal protection under the law" has been provided.

**Chapter 2 Definitions.** Terms defined in the code are listed alphabetically in Chapter 2. It is important to note that two chapters have their own definitions sections: Chapter 24 for the defined terms that are unique to fuel gas and Chapter 35 containing terms that are applicable to electrical Chapters 34 through 43. In the case where Chapter 2 and another chapter both define the same term differently, the definition found in Chapter 24 and/or 35 is intended to prevail where the term is used in Chapter 24 and/or 35 and the definition contained in Chapter 2 is intended to prevail where the term is used in all other locations in the code. Except where Chapter 24 or 35 has a definition that will prevail therein, the definitions in Chapter 2 are applicable throughout the code.

Additional definitions regarding skylights that are not listed in Chapter 2 are found in Section R308.6.1.

Where understanding a term's definition is key to or necessary for understanding a particular code provision, the term is shown in italics where it appears in the code. This is true only for those terms that have a meaning that is unique to the code. In other words, the generally understood meaning of a term or phrase might not be sufficient or consistent with the meaning prescribed by the code; therefore, it is essential that the code-defined meaning be known.

Guidance regarding not only tense, gender and plurality of defined terms, but also terms not defined in this code, is provided.

**Chapter 3 Building Planning.** Chapter 3 provides guidelines for a minimum level of structural integrity, life safety, fire safety and livability for inhabitants of dwelling units regulated by this code. Chapter 3 is a compilation of the code requirements specific to the building planning sector of the design and construction process. This chapter sets forth code requirements dealing with light, ventilation, sanitation, minimum room size, ceiling height and environmental comfort. Chapter 3 establishes life-safety provisions including limitations on glazing used in hazardous areas, specifications on stairways, use of guards at elevated surfaces and rules for means of egress. Snow, wind and seismic design and flood-resistant construction, as well as live and dead loads, are addressed in this chapter.

**Chapter 4 Foundations.** Chapter 4 provides the requirements for the design and construction of foundation systems for buildings regulated by this code. Provisions for seismic load, flood load and frost protection are contained in this chapter. A foundation system consists of two interdependent components: the foundation structure itself and the supporting soil.

The prescriptive provisions of this chapter provide requirements for constructing footings and walls for foundations of wood, masonry, concrete and precast concrete. In addition to a foundation's ability to support the required design loads, this chapter addresses several other factors that can affect foundation performance. These include controlling surface water and subsurface drainage, requiring soil tests where conditions warrant and evaluating proximity to slopes and minimum depth requirements. The chapter also provides requirements to minimize adverse effects of moisture, decay and pests in basements and crawl spaces.

**Chapter 5 Floors.** Chapter 5 provides the requirements for the design and construction of floor systems that will be capable of supporting minimum required design loads. This chapter covers four different types: wood floor framing, wood floors on the ground, cold-formed steel floor framing and concrete slabs on the ground. Allowable span tables are provided that greatly simplify the determination of joist, girder and sheathing sizes for raised floor systems of wood framing and cold-formed steel framing. This chapter also contains prescriptive requirements for attaching a deck to the main building.

**Chapter 6 Wall Construction.** Chapter 6 contains provisions that regulate the design and construction of walls. The wall construction covered in Chapter 6 consists of five different types: wood framed, cold-formed steel framed, masonry, concrete and structural insulated panel (SIP). The primary concern of this chapter is the structural integrity of wall construction and transfer of all imposed loads to the supporting structure. This chapter provides the requirements for the design and construction of wall systems that are capable of supporting the minimum design vertical loads (dead, live and snow loads) and lateral loads (wind or seismic loads). This chapter contains the prescriptive requirements for wall bracing and/or shear walls to resist the imposed lateral loads due to wind and seismic. Chapter 6 also contains requirements for the use of vapor retarders for moisture control in walls.

Chapter 6 also regulates exterior windows and doors installed in walls. The chapter contains criteria for the performance of exterior windows and doors and includes provisions for window sill height, testing and labeling, vehicular access doors, wind-borne debris protection and anchorage details.

**Chapter 7 Wall Covering.** Chapter 7 contains provisions for the design and construction of interior and exterior wall coverings. This chapter establishes the various types of materials, materials standards and methods of application permitted for use as interior coverings, including interior plaster, gypsum board, ceramic tile, wood veneer paneling, hardboard paneling, wood shakes and wood shingles.

Exterior wall coverings provide the weather-resistant exterior envelope that protects the building's interior from the elements. Chapter 7 provides the requirements for wind resistance and water-resistive barrier for exterior wall coverings. This chapter prescribes the exterior wall coverings as well as the water-resistive barrier required beneath the exterior materials. Exterior wall coverings regulated by this section include aluminum, stone and masonry veneer, wood, hardboard, particleboard, wood structural panel siding, wood shakes and shingles, exterior plaster, steel, vinyl, fiber cement and exterior insulation finish systems.

**Chapter 8 Roof-ceiling Construction.** Chapter 8 regulates the design and construction of roof-ceiling systems. This chapter contains two roof-ceiling framing systems: wood framing and cold-formed steel framing. Allowable span tables are provided to simplify the selection of rafter and ceiling joist size for wood roof framing and cold-formed steel framing. Chapter 8 also provides requirements for the application of ceiling finishes, the proper ventilation of concealed spaces in roofs (e.g., enclosed attics and rafter spaces), unvented attic assemblies and attic access.

**Chapter 9 Roof Assemblies.** Chapter 9 regulates the design and construction of roof assemblies. A roof assembly includes the roof deck, vapor retarder, substrate or thermal barrier, insulation, vapor retarder and roof covering. This chapter provides the requirement for wind resistance of roof coverings.

The types of roof covering materials and installation regulated by Chapter 9 are: asphalt shingles, clay and concrete tile, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, slate and slate-type shingles, wood shakes and shingles, built-up roofs, metal roof panels, modified bitumen roofing, thermoset and thermoplastic single-ply roofing, sprayed polyurethane foam roofing and liquid applied coatings. Chapter 9 also provides requirements for roof drainage, flashing, above deck thermal insulation and recovering or replacing an existing roof covering.

**Chapter 10 Chimneys and Fireplaces.** Chapter 10 contains requirements for the safe construction of masonry chimneys and fireplaces and establishes the standards for the use and installation of factory-built chimneys, fireplaces and masonry heaters. Chimneys and fireplaces constructed of masonry rely on prescriptive requirements for the details of their construction; the factory-built type relies on the listing and labeling method of approval. Chapter 10 provides the requirements for seismic reinforcing and anchorage of masonry fireplaces and chimneys.

**Chapter 11 Energy Efficiency.** Chapter 11 contains the energy-efficiency-related requirements for the design and construction of buildings regulated under this code. The applicable portions of the building must comply with the provisions within this chapter for energy efficiency. This chapter defines requirements for the portions of the building and building systems that impact energy use in new construction and promotes the effective use of energy. The provisions within the chapter promote energy efficiency in the building envelope, the heating and cooling system, the service water heating system and the lighting system of the building. This chapter also provides energy efficiency requirements for snow melt systems and pool heaters.

**Chapter 12 Mechanical Administration.** Chapter 12 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. A mechanical code, like any other code, is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 12 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the jurisdiction having authority and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner. It also relates this chapter to the administrative provisions in Chapter 1.

**Chapter 13 General Mechanical System Requirements.** Chapter 13 contains broadly applicable requirements related to appliance listing and labeling, appliance location and installation, appliance and systems access, protection of structural elements and clearances to combustibles, among others.

**Chapter 14 Heating and Cooling Equipment.** Chapter 14 is a collection of requirements for various heating and cooling appliances, dedicated to single topics by section. The common theme is that all of these types of appliances use energy in one form or another, and the improper installation of such appliances would present a hazard to the occupants of the dwellings, due to either the potential for fire or the accidental release of refrigerants. Both situations are undesirable in dwellings that are covered by this code.

**Chapter 15 Exhaust Systems.** Chapter 15 is a compilation of code requirements related to residential exhaust systems, including kitchens and bathrooms, clothes dryers and range hoods. The code regulates the materials used for constructing and installing such duct systems. Air brought into the building for ventilation, combustion or makeup purposes is protected from contamination by the provisions found in this chapter.

**Chapter 16 Duct Systems.** Chapter 16 provides requirements for the installation of ducts for supply, return and exhaust air systems. This chapter contains no information on the design of these systems from the standpoint of air movement, but is concerned with the structural integrity of the systems and the overall impact of the systems on the fire-safety performance of the building. This chapter regulates the materials and methods of construction which affect the performance of the entire air distribution system.

**Chapter 17 Combustion Air.** Complete combustion of solid and liquid fuel is essential for the proper operation of appliances, control of harmful emissions and achieving maximum fuel efficiency. If insufficient quantities of oxygen are supplied, the combustion process will be incomplete, creating dangerous byproducts and wasting energy in the form of unburned fuel (hydrocarbons). The byproducts of incomplete combustion are poisonous, corrosive and combustible, and can cause serious appliance or equipment malfunctions that pose fire or explosion hazards.

The combustion air provisions in this code from previous editions have been deleted from Chapter 17 in favor of a single section that directs the user to NFPA 31 for oil-fired appliance combustion air requirements and the manufacturer's installation instructions for solid fuel-burning appliances. If fuel gas appliances are used, the provisions of Chapter 24 must be followed.

**Chapter 18 Chimneys and Vents.** Chapter 18 regulates the design, construction, installation, maintenance, repair and approval of chimneys, vents and their connections to fuel-burning appliances. A properly designed chimney or vent system is needed to conduct the flue gases produced by a fuel-burning appliance to the outdoors. The provisions of this chapter are intended to minimize the hazards associated with high temperatures and potentially toxic and corrosive combustion gases. This chapter addresses factory-built and masonry chimneys, vents and venting systems used to vent oil-fired and solid fuel-burning appliances.

**Chapter 19 Special Fuel-burning Equipment.** Chapter 19 regulates the installation of fuel-burning appliances that are not covered in other chapters, such as ranges and ovens, sauna heaters, fuel cell power plants and hydrogen systems. Because the subjects in this chapter do not contain the volume of text necessary to warrant individual chapters, they have been combined into a single chapter. The only commonality is that the subjects use energy to perform some task or function. The intent is to provide a reasonable level of protection for the occupants of the dwelling.

**Chapter 20 Boilers and Water Heaters.** Chapter 20 regulates the installation of boilers and water heaters. Its purpose is to protect the occupants of the dwelling from the potential hazards associated with such appliances. A water heater is any appliance that heats potable water and supplies it to the plumbing hot water distribution system. A boiler either heats water or generates steam for space heating and is generally a closed system.

**Chapter 21 Hydronic Piping.** Hydronic piping includes piping, fittings and valves used in building space conditioning systems. Applications include hot water, chilled water, steam, steam condensate, brines and water/antifreeze mixtures. Chapter 21 regulates installation, alteration and repair of all hydronic piping systems to insure the reliability, serviceability, energy efficiency and safety of such systems.

**Chapter 22 Special Piping and Storage Systems.** Chapter 22 regulates the design and installation of fuel oil storage and piping systems. The regulations include reference to construction standards for above-ground and underground storage tanks, material standards for piping systems (both above-ground and underground) and extensive requirements for the proper assembly of system piping and components. The purpose of this chapter is to prevent fires, leaks and spills involving fuel oil storage and piping systems, whether inside or outside structures and above or underground.

**Chapter 23 Solar Systems.** Chapter 23 contains requirements for the construction, alteration and repair of all systems and components of solar energy systems used for space heating or cooling, and domestic hot water heating or processing. The provisions of this chapter are limited to those necessary to achieve installations that are relatively hazard free.

A solar energy system can be designed to handle 100 percent of the energy load of a building, although this is rarely accomplished. Because solar energy is a low-intensity energy source and dependent on the weather, it is usually necessary to supplement a solar energy system with traditional energy sources.

As our world strives to find alternate means of producing power for the future, the requirements of this chapter will become more and more important over time.

**Chapter 24 Fuel Gas.** Chapter 24 regulates the design and installation of fuel gas distribution piping and systems, appliances, appliance venting systems and combustion air provisions. The definition of "Fuel gas" includes natural, liquefied petroleum and manufactured gases and mixtures of these gases.

The purpose of this chapter is to establish the minimum acceptable level of safety and to protect life and property from the potential dangers associated with the storage, distribution and use of fuel gases and the byproducts of combustion of such fuels. This code also protects the personnel who install, maintain, service and replace the systems and appliances addressed herein.

Chapter 24 is composed entirely of text extracted from the IFGC; therefore, whether using the IFGC or the IRC, the fuel gas provisions will be identical. Note that to avoid the potential for confusion and conflicting definitions, Chapter 24 has its own definition section.

**Chapter 25 Plumbing Administration.** The requirements of Chapter 25 do not supersede the administrative provisions of Chapter 1. Rather, the administrative guidelines of Chapter 25 pertain to plumbing installations that are best referenced and located within the plumbing chapters. This chapter addresses how to apply the plumbing provisions of this code to specific types or phases of construction. This chapter also outlines the responsibilities of the applicant, installer and inspector with regard to testing plumbing installations.

**Chapter 26 General Plumbing Requirements.** The content of Chapter 26 is often referred to as "miscellaneous," rather than general plumbing requirements. This is the only chapter of the plumbing chapters of the code whose requirements do not interrelate. If a requirement cannot be located in another plumbing chapter, it should be located in this chapter. Chapter 26 contains safety requirements for the installation of plumbing systems and includes requirements for the identification of pipe, pipe fittings, traps, fixtures, materials and devices used in plumbing systems. If specific provisions do not demand that a requirement be located in another chapter, the requirement is located in this chapter.

**Chapter 27 Plumbing Fixtures.** Chapter 27 requires fixtures to be of the proper type, approved for the purpose intended and installed properly to promote usability and safe, sanitary conditions. This chapter regulates the quality of fixtures and faucets by requiring those items to comply with nationally recognized standards. Because fixtures must be properly installed so that they are usable by the occupants of the building, this chapter contains the requirements for the installation of fixtures.

**Chapter 28 Water Heaters.** Chapter 28 regulates the design, approval and installation of water heaters and related safety devices. The intent is to minimize the hazards associated with the installation and operation of water heaters. Although this chapter does not regulate the size of a water heater, it does regulate all other aspects of the water heater installation such as temperature and pressure relief valves, safety drip pans and connections. Where a water heater also supplies water for space heating, this chapter regulates the maximum water temperature supplied to the water distribution system.

**Chapter 29 Water Supply and Distribution.** This chapter regulates the supply of potable water from both public and individual sources to every fixture and outlet so that it remains potable and uncontaminated by cross connections. Chapter 29 also regulates the design of the water distribution system, which will allow fixtures to function properly. Because it is critical that the potable water supply system remain free of actual or potential sanitary hazards, this chapter has the requirements for providing backflow protection devices.

**Chapter 30 Sanitary Drainage.** The purpose of Chapter 30 is to regulate the materials, design and installation of sanitary drainage piping systems as well as the connections made to the system. The intent is to design and install sanitary drainage systems that will function reliably, are neither undersized nor oversized and are constructed from materials, fittings and connections whose quality is regulated by this section. This chapter addresses the proper use of fittings for directing the flow into and within the sanitary drain piping system. Materials and provisions necessary for servicing the drainage system are also included in this chapter.

**Chapter 31 Vents.** Venting protects the trap seal of each trap. The vents are designed to limit differential pressures at each trap to 1 inch of water column (249 Pa). Because waste flow in the drainage system creates pressure fluctuations that can negatively affect traps, the sanitary drainage system must have a properly designed venting system. Chapter 31 covers the requirements for vents and venting. All of the provisions set forth in this chapter are intended to limit the pressure differentials in the drainage system to a maximum of 1 inch of water column (249 Pa) above or below atmospheric pressure (i.e., positive or negative pressures).

**Chapter 32 Traps.** Traps prevent sewer gas from escaping from the drainage piping into the building. Water seal traps are the simplest and most reliable means of preventing sewer gas from entering the interior environment. This chapter lists prohibited trap types as well as specifies the minimum trap size for each type of fixture.

**Chapter 33 Storm Drainage.** Rainwater infiltration into the ground adjacent to a building can cause the interior of foundation walls to become wet. The installation of a subsoil drainage system prevents the build-up of rainwater on the exterior of the foundation walls. This chapter provides the specifications for subsoil drain piping. Where the discharge of the subsoil drain system is to a sump, this chapter also provides coverage for for sump construction, pumps and discharge piping.

**Chapter 34 General Requirements.** This chapter contains broadly applicable, general and miscellaneous requirements including scope, listing and labeling, equipment locations and clearances for conductor materials and connections and conductor identification.

**Chapter 35 Electrical Definitions.** Chapter 35 is the repository of the definitions of terms used in the body of Part VIII of the code. To avoid the potential for confusion and conflicting definitions, Part VIII, Electrical, has its own definition chapter.

Codes are technical documents and every word, term and punctuation mark can impact the meaning of the code text and the intended results. The code often uses terms that have a unique meaning in the code, which can differ substantially from the ordinarily understood meaning of the term as used outside of the code.

The terms defined in Chapter 35 are deemed to be of prime importance in establishing the meaning and intent of the electrical code text that uses the terms. The user of the code should be familiar with and consult this chapter because the definitions are essential to the correct interpretation of the code and because the user may not be aware that a term is defined.

**Chapter 36 Services.** This chapter covers the design, sizing and installation of the building's electrical service equipment and grounding electrode system. It includes an easy-to-use load calculation method and service conductor sizing table. The electrical service is generally the first part of the electrical system to be designed and installed.

**Chapter 37 Branch Circuit and Feeder Requirements.** Chapter 37 addresses the requirements for designing the power distribution system which consists of feeders and branch circuits emanating from the service equipment. This chapter dictates the ratings of circuits and the allowable loads, the number and types of branch circuits required, the wire sizing for such branch circuits and feeders and the requirements for protection from overcurrent for conductors. A load calculation method specific to feeders is also included. This chapter is used to design the electrical system on the load side of the service.

**Chapter 38 Wiring Methods.** Chapter 38 specifies the allowable wiring methods, such as cable, conduit and raceway systems, and provides the installation requirements for the wiring methods. This chapter is primarily applicable to the "rough-in" phase of construction.

**Chapter 39 Power and Lighting Distribution.** This chapter mostly contains installation requirements for the wiring that serves the lighting outlets, receptacle outlets, appliances and switches located throughout the building. The required distribution and spacing of receptacle outlets and lighting outlets is prescribed in this chapter, as well as the requirements for ground-fault and arc-fault circuit interrupter protection.

**Chapter 40 Devices and Luminaires.** This chapter focuses on the devices, including switches and receptacles, and lighting fixtures that are typically installed during the final phase of construction.

**Chapter 41 Appliance Installation.** Chapter 41 addresses the installation of appliances including HVAC appliances, water heaters, fixed space-heating equipment, dishwashers, garbage disposals, range hoods and suspended paddle fans.

**Chapter 42 Swimming Pools**. This chapter covers the electrical installation requirements for swimming pools, storable swimming pools, wading pools, decorative pools, fountains, hot tubs, spas and hydromassage bathtubs. The allowable wiring methods are specified along with the required clearances between electrical system components and pools, spas and tubs. This chapter includes the special grounding requirements related to pools, spas and tubs, and also prescribes the equipotential bonding requirements that are unique to pools, spas and tubs.

**Chapter 43 Class 2 Remote-control, Signaling and Power-limited Circuits.** This chapter covers the power supplies, wiring methods and installation requirements for the Class 2 circuits found in dwellings. Such circuits include thermostat wiring, alarm systems, security systems, automated control systems and doorbell systems.

**Chapter 44 Referenced Standards.** The code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. Chapter 44 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard. Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the code official, contractor, designer and owner.

Chapter 44 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency's standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based upon the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

**Appendix A Sizing and Capacities of Gas Piping.** This appendix is informative and not part of the code. It provides design guidance, useful facts and data and multiple examples of how to apply the sizing tables and sizing methodologies of Chapter 24.

**Appendix B Sizing of Venting Systems Serving Appliances Equipped with Draft Hoods, Category I Appliances and Appliances Listed for Use with Type B Vents.** This appendix is informative and not part of the code. It contains multiple examples of how to apply the vent and chimney tables and methodologies of Chapter 24.

**Appendix C Exit Terminals of Mechanical Draft and Direct-venting Systems.** This appendix is informative and not part of the code. It consists of a figure and notes that visually depict code requirements from Chapter 24 for vent terminals with respect to the openings found in building exterior walls.

**Appendix D Recommended Procedure for Safety Inspection of an Existing Appliance Installation.** This appendix is informative and not part of the code. It provides recommended procedures for testing and inspecting an appliance installation to determine if the installation is operating safely and if the appliance is in a safe condition.

**Appendix E Manufactured Housing Used as Dwellings.** The criteria for the construction of manufactured homes are governed by the National Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Act. While this act may seem to cover the bulk of the construction of manufactured housing, it does not cover those areas related to the placement of the housing on the property. The provisions of Appendix E are not applicable to the design and construction of manufactured homes. Appendix E provides a complete set of regulations in conjunction with federal law for the installation of manufactured housing. This appendix also contains provisions for existing manufactured home installations.

**Appendix F Radon Control Methods.** Radon comes from the natural (radioactive) decay of the element radium in soil, rock and water and finds its way into the air. Appendix F contains requirements to mitigate the transfer of radon gases from the soil into the dwelling. The provisions of this appendix regulate the design and construction of radon-resistant measures intended to reduce the entry of radon gases into the living space of residential buildings.

**Appendix G Swimming Pool, Spas and Hot Tubs.** Appendix G provides the regulations for swimming pools, hot tubs and spas installed in or on the lot of a one- or two-family dwelling. This appendix contains provisions for an effective barrier surrounding the water area and entrapment protection for suction outlets to reduce the potential for drowning of young children.

**Appendix H Patio Covers.** Appendix H sets forth the regulations and limitations for patio covers. The provisions address those uses permitted in patio cover structures, the minimum design loads to be assigned for structural purposes, and the effect of the patio cover on egress and emergency escape or rescue from sleeping rooms. This appendix also contains the special provisions for aluminum screen enclosures in hurricane-prone regions.

**Appendix I Private Sewage Disposal.**

**Appendix J Existing Buildings and Structures.** Appendix J contains the provisions for the repair, renovation, alteration and reconstruction of existing buildings and structures that are within the scope of this code. To accomplish this objective and to make the rehabilitation process more available, this appendix allows for a controlled departure from full code compliance without compromising minimum life safety, fire safety, structural and environmental features of the rehabilitated existing building or structure.

**Appendix K Sound Transmission.** Appendix K regulates the sound transmission of wall and floor-ceiling assemblies separating dwelling units and townhouse units. Air-borne sound insulation is required for walls. Air-borne sound insulation and impact sound insulation are required for floor-ceiling assemblies. The provisions in Appendix K set forth a minimum Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating for common walls and floor-ceiling assemblies between dwelling units. In addition, a minimum Impact Insulation Class (IIC) rating is also established to limit structure-borne sound through common floor-ceiling assemblies separating dwelling units.

**Appendix L Permit Fees.** Appendix L provides guidance to jurisdictions for setting appropriate permit fees. This appendix will aid many jurisdictions to assess permit fees that will assist to fairly and properly administer the code. This appendix can be used for informational purposes only or may be adopted when specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

**Appendix M Home Day Care—R3 Occupancy.** Appendix M provides means of egress and smoke detection requirements for a Group R-3 Occupancy that is to be used as a home day care for more than five children who receive custodial care for less than 24 hours. This appendix is strictly for guidance and/or adoption by those jurisdictions that have Licensed Home Care Provider laws and statutes that allow more than five children to be cared for in a person's home. When a jurisdiction adopts this appendix, the provisions for day care and child care facilities in the IBC should be considered also.

**Appendix N Venting Methods.** Because venting of sanitary drainage systems is perhaps the most difficult concept to understand, and Chapter 31 uses only words to describe venting requirements, illustrations can offer greater insight into what the words mean. Appendix N has a number of illustrations for commonly installed sanitary drainage systems in order for the reader to gain a better understanding of this code's venting requirements.

**Appendix O Gray Water Recycling Systems.** Appendix O offers a method for utilizing gray water that is collected from certain fixtures such as lavatories, bathtubs, showers and clothes washing machines. Because many geographical areas of the world are in short supply of water resources, water that has already passed through these fixtures is an important resource that can lessen the demand for potable water. Where gray water is used for underground irrigation, no treatment other than basic filtering is required. In this application, gray water reuse offers savings in both potable water use and less wastewater to be treated. Gray water can also be reused for flushing water for water closets and urinals. In this application, the gray water requires disinfection and coloring in order to be safe for use in those fixtures. This appendix provides the user with basic information to choose the necessary components, size and construct a gray water system that suits the particular application.

**Appendix P Sizing of Water Piping System.** Appendix P provides two recognized methods for sizing the water service and water distribution piping for a building. The method under Section AP103 provides friction loss diagrams that require the user to "plot" points and read values from the diagrams in order to perform the required calculations and necessary checks. This method is the most accurate of the two presented in this appendix. The method under Section AP201 is known to be conservative; however, very few calculations are necessary in order to determine a pipe size that satisfies the flow requirements of any application.

**Appendix Q ICC *International Residential Code Electrical Provisions/National Electrical Code* Cross Reference.** This cross reference allows the code user to trace the code sections in Chapters 34 through 43 back to their source: the *National Electrical Code*. See the introduction to Chapter 34 for more information on the relationship between Part VIII of this code and the NEC, NFPA 70.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

# CHAPTER 1

# ADMINISTRATION

Note: Chapter 1 is entirely Seattle amendments to the *International Residential Code* and is not underlined.

## SECTION R101
## TITLE, SCOPE AND PURPOSE

**R101.1 Title.** This subtitle shall be known as the "*Seattle Residential Code*" and may be so cited, and is referred to herein as "this code."

**R101.2 Scope.** The provisions of this code apply to the construction, *alteration*, moving, demolition, repair and occupancy of detached one- and two-family *dwellings* and *townhouses* not more than three stories above *grade plane* in height with a separate means of egress, and their *accessory structures*, including *adult family homes*, foster family care homes and *family day care homes* licensed by the Washington State Department of Social and Health Services.

> **Exception:** Live/work units complying with the requirements of Section 419 of the *International Building Code* shall be permitted to be built as one- and two-family *dwellings* or *townhouses*. Fire suppression shall conform to Section 419 of the *International Building Code*.

**Note:** The seismic design for wood-frame buildings with more than two stories above *grade* shall comply with the *International Building Code* or other standards referenced in Section R301.1. See Sections R301.2.2.3 and Table R602.10.1.2(2).

**Interpretation R101.2a:** Buildings with mixed occupancies, other than residences with home occupations, are not within the scope of the *Seattle Residential Code* and shall comply with the *Seattle Building Code*.

**Interpretation R101.2b:** Three or more *dwellings* located above a common garage or other common space are required to comply with the *Seattle Building Code*. Units in detached one- and two-family *dwellings* may share common space.

**R101.3 Applicability of *Seattle Residential Code*.** A building permit application shall be considered under the Seattle Residential and Energy codes in effect on the date a valid and *fully complete building permit application* is submitted or on a date as otherwise required by law.

**R101.3.1 Fully complete building permit applications**. A building permit application is complete if the *building official* determines it meets the requirements of Sections R105.5.1 through R105.5.2.5, and the application includes the *construction documents* for the architectural and structural components of the building. In order for the application to be deemed complete in cases when the *building official* allows an application for only a portion of a building, the application shall include the structural frame for the entire building.

**R101.4 Purpose.** The purpose of this code is to provide minimum standards to safeguard life or limb, health, property and public welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, quality of materials, occupancy, location and maintenance of buildings and structures within the City and certain equipment specifically regulated herein. The purpose of this code is to provide for and promote the health, safety and welfare of the general public, and not to create or otherwise establish or designate any particular class or group of persons who will or should be especially protected or benefitted by the terms of this code.

**R101.5 Internal consistency.** Where in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive governs. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement is applicable.

**R101.6 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code are considered part of this code to the extent prescribed by each such reference. Where differences occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code apply, except that nothing in this Code limits the effect of any provision of the Grading Code, Stormwater and Drainage Control Code, or Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas.

> **Exception:** Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the *listing* of the equipment or appliance, the conditions of the *listing* and manufacturer's instructions apply.

**R101.7 Appendices.** Provisions in the *International Residential Code* appendices do not apply unless specifically adopted.

**R101.8 Metric units.** Wherever in this code there is a conflict between metric units of measurement and U.S. customary units, the U.S. customary units govern.

## SECTION R102
## UNSAFE BUILDINGS, STRUCTURES OR PREMISES

**R102.1 Emergency orders.** Whenever the *building official* finds that any building, structure or premises, or portion thereof, is in such a dangerous and *unsafe* condition as to constitute an imminent hazard to life or limb, the *building official* may issue an emergency order directing that the building, structure or premises, or portion thereof be restored to a safe condition by a date certain. The order may also require that the building, structure or premises, or portion thereof, be vacated within a reasonable time to be specified in the order. In the case of extreme danger, the order may specify immediate vacation of the building, structure or premises, or may authorize immediate disconnection of the utilities or energy source.

**R102.1.1 Service of emergency order.** The order shall be posted on the premises or personally served on the owner of the building or premises or any person responsible for the condition. The order shall specify the time for compliance.

**R102.1.2 Effect of emergency order.** No person may occupy a building, structure or premises, or portion thereof, after the date on which the building is required to be vacated until the building, structure or premises, or portion thereof, is restored to a safe condition as required by the order and this code. It is a violation for any person to fail to comply with an emergency order issued by the *building official.*

**R102.2 Hazard correction order.** Whenever the *building official* finds that an *unsafe* building, structure or premises exists, the *building official* may issue a hazard correction order specifying the conditions causing the building, structure or premises to be *unsafe* and directing the owner or other person responsible for the *unsafe* building, structure or premises to correct the condition by a date certain. In lieu of correction, the owner may submit a report or analysis to the *building official* analyzing said conditions and establishing that the building, structure or premises is, in fact, safe. The *building official* may require that the report or analysis be prepared by a licensed engineer and may require compliance with *International Building Code* Chapter 34.

**R102.2.1 Service of hazard correction order.** The order shall be posted on the premises or personally served on the owner of the building or premises or any person responsible for the condition and shall specify the time for compliance.

**R102.2.2 Effect of hazard correction order.** It is a violation for any person to fail to comply with a hazard correction order as specified in this subsection.

## SECTION R103
## ENFORCEMENT, VIOLATIONS AND PENALTIES

**R103.1 Violations.** It is a violation of this code for any person to:

1. Erect, construct, enlarge, repair, move, improve, remove, convert, demolish, equip, occupy, inspect or maintain any building or structure in the City, contrary to or in violation of any of the provisions of this code;
2. Knowingly aid, abet, counsel, encourage, hire, induce or otherwise procure another to violate or fail to comply with this code;
3. Use any material or to install any device, appliance or equipment that does not comply with applicable standards of this code or that has not been approved by the *building official;*
4. Violate or fail to comply with any notice or order issued by the *building official* pursuant to the provisions of this code or with any requirements of this code;
5. Remove, mutilate, destroy or conceal any notice or order issued or posted by the *building official* pursuant to the provisions of this code, or any notice or order issued or posted by the *building official* in response to a natural disaster or other emergency;
6. Conduct work under a permit without requesting an inspection as required by Section R106.

**R103.2 Notice of violation.** If, after investigation, the *building official* determines that standards or requirements of this code have been violated or that orders or requirements have not been complied with, the *building official* may serve a notice of violation upon the owner, agent or other person responsible for the action or condition. The notice of violation shall state the standards or requirements violated, shall state what corrective action, if any, is necessary to comply with the standards or requirements, and shall set a reasonable time for compliance.

**R103.2.1 Service of notice of violation.** The notice shall be served upon the owner, agent or other responsible person by personal service or regular first class mail addressed to the last known address of such person, or if no address is available after reasonable inquiry, the notice may be posted in a conspicuous place on the premises. The notice may also be posted if served by personal service or first class mail. Nothing in this section limits or precludes any action or proceeding to enforce this code, and nothing obligates or requires the *building official* to issue a notice of violation prior to the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

**R103.2.2 Review of notice of violation by the building official.**

**R103.2.2.1 Request for review.** Any person affected by a notice of violation issued pursuant to Section R103.2 may obtain a review of the notice by making a request in writing within ten days after service of the notice. When the last day of the period computed is a Saturday, Sunday, or City holiday, the period runs until 5 p.m. of the next business day.

**R103.2.2.2 Review procedure.** The review shall occur not less than ten nor more than 20 days after the request is received by the *building official* unless otherwise agreed to by the person requesting the review. Any person affected by the notice of violation may submit additional information to the *building official.* The review shall be made by a representative of the *building official* who will review any additional information that is submitted and the basis for issuance of the notice of violation. The reviewer may request clarification of the information received and may conduct a site visit.

**R103.2.2.3 Decision.** After the review, the *building official* shall:

1. Sustain the notice;
2. Withdraw the notice;
3. Continue the review to a date certain; or
4. Amend the notice.

**R103.2.2.4 Order.** The *building official* shall issue an order containing the decision within 15 days of the date that the review is completed and shall cause the order to be mailed by regular first class mail to the persons requesting the review and the persons named on the notice of violation, addressed to their last known address.

**R103.3 Stop work orders.** The *building official* may issue a stop work order whenever any work is being done contrary to the provisions of this code, or in the event of dangerous or *unsafe* conditions related to construction or demolition. The stop work order shall identify the violation and may prohibit work or other activity on the site.

**R103.3.1 Service of stop work order.** The *building official* may serve the stop work order by posting it in a conspicuous place at the site, if posting is physically possible. If posting is not physically possible, then the stop work order may be served in the manner set forth in the Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 4.28.080 for service of a summons or by sending it by first class mail to the last known address of: the property owner, the person doing or causing the work to be done, or the holder of a permit if work is being stopped on a permit. For purposes of this section, service is complete at the time of posting or of personal service, or if mailed, three days after the date of mailing. When the last day of the period so computed is a Saturday, Sunday or city holiday, the period runs until 5 p.m. on the next business day.

**R103.3.2 Effective date of stop work order.** Stop work orders are effective when posted, or if posting is not physically possible, when one of the persons identified in Section R103.3.1 is served or, if notice is mailed, three days after the date of mailing.

**R103.3.3 Review of stop work orders by the building official.**

**R103.3.3.1 Request for review.** Any person aggrieved by a stop work order may obtain a review of the order by delivering to the *building official* a request in writing within two business days of the date of service of the stop work order.

**R103.3.3.2 Review procedure.** The review shall occur within two business days after receipt by the *building official* of the request for review unless the requestor agrees to a longer time. Any person affected by the stop work order may submit additional information to the *building official* for consideration as part of the review at any time prior to the review. The review will be made by a representative of the *building official* who will review all additional information received and may conduct a site visit.

**R103.3.3.3 Decision.** After the review, the *building official* may:

1. Sustain the stop work order;
2. Withdraw the stop work order;
3. Amend the stop work order; or
4. Continue the review to a date certain.

**R103.3.3.4 Order.** The *building official* shall issue an order of the *building official* containing the decision within two business days after the review and shall cause the order to be sent by first class mail to the person or persons requesting the review, any person on whom the stop work order was served, and any other person who requested a copy before issuance of the order.

**R103.4 Occupancy violations.** Whenever any building or structure is being occupied contrary to the provisions of this code, the *building official* may order such occupancy discontinued and the building or structure, or portion thereof, vacated by notice.

**R103.4.1 Service of notice of occupancy violation.** The notice shall be served by personal service or regular first class mail addressed to the last known address of the occupant of the premises or any person causing such occupancy. If no address is available after reasonable inquiry, the notice may be served by posting it in a conspicuous place on the premises.

**R103.4.2 Compliance with notice of occupancy violation.** Any person occupying the building or structure shall discontinue the occupancy by the date specified in the notice of the *building official,* or shall make the building or structure, or portion thereof, comply with the requirements of this code; provided, however, that in the event of an *unsafe* building, Section 102 may apply.

**R103.5 Civil penalties.** Any person violating or failing to comply with the provisions of this code shall be subject to a cumulative civil penalty in an amount not to exceed $500 per day for each violation from the date the violation occurs or begins until compliance is achieved. In cases where the *building official* has issued a notice of violation, the violation will be deemed to begin, for purposes of determining the number of days of violation, on the date compliance is required by the notice of violation.

**R103.6 Enforcement in Municipal Court.** Civil actions to enforce this chapter shall be brought exclusively in Seattle Municipal Court, except as otherwise required by law or court rule. In any civil action for a penalty, the City has the burden of proving by a preponderance of the evidence that a violation exists or existed; the issuance of the notice of violation or of an order following a review by the *building official* is not itself evidence that a violation exists.

**R103.7 Judicial review.** Because civil actions to enforce Seattle Municipal Code (SMC) Title 22 must be brought exclusively in Seattle Municipal Court pursuant to Section R103.6, orders of the *building official* including notices of violation issued under this chapter are not subject to judicial review pursuant to Chapter 36.70C RCW.

**R103.8 Alternative criminal penalty.** Anyone who violates or fails to comply with any notice of violation or order issued by the *building official* pursuant to this code or who removes, mutilates, destroys or conceals a notice issued or posted by the *building official* shall, upon conviction thereof, be punished by a fine of not more than $5000 or by imprisonment for not more than 365 days, or by both such fine and imprisonment for each separate violation. Each day's violation shall constitute a separate offense.

**R103.9 Additional relief.** The *building official* may seek legal or equitable relief to enjoin any acts or practices and abate any condition when necessary to achieve compliance.

**R103.10 Administrative review.**

**R103.10.1 Administrative review by the building official.** Applicants may request administrative review by the *building official* of decisions or actions pertaining to the administration and enforcement of this code. Requests shall be addressed to the *building official*.

**R103.10.2 Administrative review by the Construction Codes Advisory Board.** Applicants may request review of decisions or actions pertaining to the application and interpretation of this code by the Construction Codes Advisory Board (CCAB), except for stop work orders, notices of violations and revocations of permits. The review will be performed by a panel of three or more members of the Construction Codes Advisory Board, chosen by the Board Chair. The Chair shall consider the subject of the review and members' expertise when selecting members to conduct a review. The decision of the review panel is advisory only; the final decision is made by the *building official*.

**R103.11 Recording of notices.** The *building official* may record a copy of any order or notice with the Department of Records and Elections of King County.

**R103.12 Appeal to Superior Court.** Final decisions of the Seattle Municipal Court on enforcement actions authorized by Title 22 may be appealed pursuant to the Rules for Appeal of Decisions of Courts of Limited Jurisdiction.

## SECTION R104
## ORGANIZATION AND DUTIES

**R104.1 Jurisdiction of Department of Planning and Development.** The Department of Planning and Development is authorized to administer and enforce this code. The Department of Planning and Development is under the administrative and operational control of the Director, who is the *building official*.

**R104.2 Designees.** The *building official* may appoint such officers, inspectors, assistants and employees as shall be authorized from time to time. The *building official* may authorize such employees and other agents as may be necessary to carry out the functions of the *building official*.

**R104.3 Right of entry.** With the consent of the owner or occupier of a building or premises, or pursuant to a lawfully issued warrant, the *building official* may enter a building or premises at any reasonable time to perform the duties imposed by this code.

**R104.4 Modifications.** The *building official* may modify the requirements of this code for individual cases provided the *building official* finds (1) there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code; (2) the modification is in conformity with the intent and purpose of this code; and (3) the modification will provide a reasonable level of strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, safety and sanitation when considered together with other safety features of the building or other relevant circumstances. The *building official* may, but is not required to, record the approval of modifications and any relevant information in the files of the *building official* or on the *approved construction documents*.

**R104.5 Alternate materials, methods of construction and design.** This code does not prevent the use of any material, design or method of construction not specifically allowed or prohibited by this code, provided the alternate has been approved and its use authorized by the *building official*. The *building official* may approve an alternate, provided the *building official* finds that the proposed alternate complies with the provisions of this code and that the alternate, when considered together with other safety features of the building or other relevant circumstances, will provide at least an equivalent level of strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, safety and sanitation. Certain code alternates have been pre-approved by the *building official* and are identified in this code as code alternates. The *building official* may require that sufficient evidence or proof be submitted to reasonably substantiate any claims regarding the use or suitability of the alternate. The *building official* may, but is not required to, record the approval of alternates and any relevant information in the files of the *building official* or on the *approved construction documents*.

**R104.6 Tests.** Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with any of the provisions of this code or evidence that any material or construction does not conform to the requirements of this code, the *building official* may require tests as proof of compliance to be made at no expense to the City. Test methods shall be specified by this code or by other recognized test standards. If there are no recognized and accepted test methods for the proposed alternate, the *building official* shall determine the test procedures. All tests shall be made by an *approved agency*. Reports of such tests shall be retained by the *building official* for the period required for retention of public records.

**R104.7 Rules of the building official.**

**R104.7.1 Authority.** The *building official* has authority to issue interpretations of this code and to adopt and enforce rules and regulations supplemental to this code as may be deemed necessary in order to clarify the application of the provisions of this code. Such interpretations, rules and regulations shall be in conformity with the intent and purpose of this code.

**R104.7.2 Procedure.** The *building official* shall promulgate, adopt and issue rules according to the procedures specified in the Administrative Code, Chapter 3.02 of the Seattle Municipal Code.

**R104.8 Liability.**

**R104.8.1** Nothing in this code is intended to be nor shall be construed to create or form the basis for any liability on the part of the City, or its officers, employees or agents, for any injury or damage resulting from the failure of a building to conform to the provisions of this code, or by reason or as a consequence of any inspection, notice, order, certificate, permission or approval authorized or issued or done in connection with the implementation or enforcement of this code, or by reason of any action or inaction on the part of the City related in any manner to the enforcement of this code by its officers, employees or agents.

**R104.8.2** This code shall not be construed to relieve or lessen the responsibility of any person owning, operating or controlling any building or structure for any damages to persons or property caused by defects, nor shall the Department of Planning and Development or the City of Seattle be held to have assumed any such liability by reason of the inspections authorized by this code or any permits or certificates issued under this code.

**R104.9 Responsibilities of parties.**

**R104.9.1 Responsibility for compliance.** Compliance with the requirements of this code is the obligation of the owner of the building, structure, or premises; the duly authorized agent of the owner; and other persons responsible for the condition or work, and not of the City or any of its officers, employees or agents.

**R104.9.2 Responsibility of design professional, contractor, plans examiner and inspector.** The responsibilities of the design professional in responsible charge, contractor, plans examiner, and field inspector are as provided in the *International Building Code* Section R101.3.1.

## SECTION R105
## BUILDING PERMITS

**R105.1 Permits required.** Except as otherwise specifically provided in this code, a building permit shall be obtained from the *building official* for each building or structure prior to erecting, constructing, enlarging, altering, repairing, moving, improving, removing, changing the occupancy of, or demolishing such building or structure, or allowing the same to be done. All work shall comply with this code, even where no permit is required.

**R105.2 Work exempt from permit.** A building permit is not required for the work listed below. Exemption from the permit requirements of this code does not authorize any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this code or any other laws or ordinances of the City.

1. Minor repairs or *alterations* that, as determined by the *building official*, cost the owner $4,000 or less in any six-month period. Such repairs and *alterations* shall not include the removal, reduction, alteration or relocation of any loadbearing support. Egress, light, ventilation and fire resistance shall not be reduced without a permit.
2. Minor work including the following, provided no changes are made to the building envelope: patio and concrete slabs on grade; painting or cleaning a building; repointing a chimney; installing kitchen cabinets, paneling or other surface finishes over existing wall and ceiling systems; insulating existing buildings; abatement of hazardous materials; and in-kind or similar replacement of or repair of deteriorated members of a structure.
3. One-*story* detached accessory buildings used for greenhouse, tool or storage shed, playhouse, or similar uses, if:
   3.1. The projected roof area does not exceed 120 square feet; and
   3.2. The building is not placed on a concrete foundation other than a slab on grade.
4. Fences not over 8 feet high that do not have masonry or concrete elements above 6 feet.
5. Arbors and other open-framed landscape structures not exceeding 120 square feet in projected area.
6. Retaining walls and rockeries which are not over 4 feet in height measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, if:
   6.1. There is no surcharge or impoundment of Class I, II or III-A liquids;
   6.2. The wall or rockery is not located in an Environmentally Critical Area (ECA) or ECA buffer pursuant to Chapter 25.09 of the Seattle Municipal Code;
   6.3. Construction does not support soils in a steep slope area, potential landslide area or known slide area as identified in the Seattle Environmentally Critical Areas Ordinance, Section 25.09.020 of the Seattle Municipal Code.
   6.4. Possible failure would likely cause no damage to adjoining property or structures.
7. Platforms, walks and driveways not more than 18 inches above *grade* and not over any *basement* or *story* below.
8. Window awnings supported by an exterior wall when projecting not more than 54 inches.
9. Prefabricated swimming pools, spas and similar equipment accessory to a building subject to this code in which the pool walls are entirely above the adjacent *grade* and if the capacity does not exceed 5,000 gallons.
10. Replacement of roofing materials and siding. This shall not include structural changes, replacement of sheathing or *alterations* to doors and windows. See *Energy Code* Sections 101.3.2.5 and 1132.1 for insulation requirements for existing buildings.

    **Exception:** In detached one- and two-family *dwellings*, the existing roof sheathing may be replaced and roof structure may be repaired without permit provided no changes are made to the building envelope other than adding or replacing insulation, and the work is equivalent to or better than the existing structure.
11. Private playground equipment including tree houses.
12. Removal and/or replacement of underground storage tanks that are subject to regulation by a state or federal agency.

**Note:** A Fire Department permit is required for removal, replacement and decommissioning of underground storage tanks.

13. Installation of dish and panel antennas 6.56 feet (2 m) or less in diameter or diagonal measurement.
14. Portable heating appliances, portable ventilating equipment and portable cooling units, provided that the total capacity of these portable appliances does not

exceed 40 percent of the cumulative heating, cooling or ventilating requirements of a building or *dwelling unit* and does not exceed 3 kW or 10,000 Btu input.

15. Any closed system of steam, hot or chilled water piping within heating or cooling equipment regulated by this code.
16. Minor work or the replacement of any component part of a mechanical system that does not alter its original approval and complies with other applicable requirements of this code.

**R105.3 Other permits required.** Unless otherwise exempted by this or other pertinent codes, master use, plumbing, electrical, mechanical and other permits may be required for the above exempted items.

**R105.4 Flood hazard areas.** In addition to the permit required by this section, all work to be performed in areas of special flood hazard, as defined in Chapter 25.06 of the Seattle Municipal Code are subject to additional standards and requirements, including floodplain development approval or a Floodplain Development License, as set forth in Chapter 25.06, the Seattle Floodplain Development Ordinance.

**R105.5 Application for permit.**

**R105.5.1 Application.** To obtain a permit, the applicant shall first file an application in writing on a form furnished by the *building official* or in another format determined by the *building official*. Every such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the work to be covered by the permit for which application is made.
2. Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, property address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work.
3. Provide the contractor's business name, address, phone number and current contractor registration number (required if contractor has been selected).
4. Be accompanied by *construction documents,* including plans and other data required in Section R105.5.2.
5. State the valuation of any new building or structure or any *addition*, remodeling or *alteration* to an existing building, including cost breakdown between *additions* and *alterations*.
6. Be signed by the owner of the property or building, or the owner's authorized agent, who may be required to submit evidence to indicate such authority.
7. Give such other data and information as may be required by the *building official*, including, but not limited to, master use and shoreline permits and building identification plans.
8. Indicate the name of the owner and contractor and the name, address and phone number of a contact person.
9. Substantially conform with the Land Use Code, critical areas regulations and *Seattle Residential Code* regulations in effect on the date that the application is submitted.
10. Applications that include a grading component shall include all information prescribed by the Grading Code and rules adopted thereunder, and all additional information required by the *building official* pursuant to the Grading Code and rules adopted thereunder.

**R105.5.2 Construction documents.**

**R105.5.2.1 General.** *Construction documents* shall be submitted in two or more sets with each application for a permit, or shall be submitted in electronic format determined by the *building official*. Computations, stress diagrams, shop and fabrication drawings and other data sufficient to show the adequacy of the plans shall be submitted when required by the *building official*.

**Exception:** The *building official* may waive the submission of *construction documents* if the *building official* finds that the nature of the work applied for is such that reviewing of *construction documents* is not necessary to obtain compliance with this code.

**R105.5.2.2 Preparation by registered design professionals.** *Construction documents* for all work shall be prepared and designed by or under the direct supervision of an architect or structural engineer licensed to practice under the laws of the State of Washington. Each sheet of *construction documents* shall bear the seal and the signature of the *registered design professional* before the permit is issued.

**Exceptions:**

1. When authorized by the *building official*, *construction documents* need not be prepared by an engineer or architect licensed by the State of Washington for the following:
   1.1. Detached one- and two-family *dwellings*.
   1.2. New buildings or structures, and *additions, alterations* or repairs made to them of wood light-frame construction, having a total valuation of less than $30,000.
   1.3. Nonstructural *alterations* and repairs having a total valuation of less than $30,000, excluding the value of electrical and mechanical systems, fixtures, equipment, interior finish and millwork.
   1.4. Other work as specified in rules promulgated by the *building official*.
2. When authorized by the *building official*, *construction documents* for assembly line products or designed specialty structural products may

be designed by a registered professional engineer.

**Interpretation R105.5.2.2:** Steel moment frames or extensive or more complex concrete structures such as concrete frame, mild reinforced or post-tensioned floor slabs, shall be designed by a licensed structural engineer.

**R105.5.2.3 Information required on construction documents.** *Construction documents* shall include the following, as applicable:

1. A plot plan showing the width of streets, alleys, yards and courts.
2. The location (and/or location within a building), floor area, *story*, height and use defined by the Land Use Code of the proposed building and of every existing building on the property.
3. Where there are more than two buildings located on a property, a building identification plan identifying the location of each building on the property and identifying each building by a numbering system unrelated to address. Such plan is not required where a plan for the site is already on file and no new buildings are being added to the site.
4. Types of heating and air conditioning systems.
5. Architectural plans, including floor plans, elevations and door and finish schedules showing location of all doors, windows, mechanical equipment, shafts, pipes, vents and ducts.
6. Structural plans, including foundation plan and framing plans.
7. Cross-sections and construction details for both architectural and structural plans, including wall sections, foundation, floor and roof details, connections of structural members and types of construction material.
8. Topographic plans, including original and final contours, location of all buildings and structures on the site and, when required by the *building official*, adjacent to the site, and cubic yards of cut and fill.
9. If the *building official* has reason to believe that there may be an intrusion into required open areas or over the property line, a survey of the property prepared by a land surveyor licensed by the State of Washington is required for all new construction, and for *additions* or accessory buildings.
10. If any building or structure is to be erected or constructed on property abutting an unimproved or partially improved street or alley, the plans shall also include a profile showing the established or proposed grade of the street or alley, based upon information obtained from the Director of Transportation relating to the proposed finished elevations of the property and improvements thereon.

**R105.5.2.4 Information on first sheet.** The first or general note sheet of each set of plans shall specify the following, as applicable:

1. The building and street address of the work.
2. The name and address of the owner and person who prepared the plans.
3. Legal description of the property.
4. Type of occupancy of all parts of the building as defined in this code, including notation of fixed fire protection devices or systems.
5. Zoning classification of the property and existing and proposed uses of the structure(s) as defined in the Land Use Code.
6. Number of stories above *grade* and the number of *basements* as defined in this code.
7. Variances, conditional uses, special exceptions, including project numbers, approval and approval extension dates.

**R105.5.2.5 Structural notes.** Plans shall include applicable information including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Design loads: Snow load, live loads and lateral loads. If required by the *building official*, the structural notes for plans engineered to Chapter 9 of ASCE 7 shall include the factors of the base shear formula used in the design;
2. Foundations: Foundation investigations, allowable bearing pressure for spread footings, allowable load capacity of piles, lateral earth pressure;
3. Masonry: Type and strength of units, strength or proportions of mortar and grout, type and strength of reinforcement, method of testing, design strength;
4. Wood: Species or species groups, and grades of sawn lumber, glued-laminated lumber, plywood and assemblies, type of fasteners;
5. Concrete: Design strengths, mix designs, type and strength of reinforcing steel, welding of reinforcing steel, restrictions, if any;
6. Steel and aluminum: Specification types, grades and strengths, welding electrode types and strengths; and
7. Statement of special inspections as required by *Seattle Building Code* Chapter 17.

In lieu of detailed structural notes, the *building official* may approve minor references on the plans to a specific section or part of this code or other ordinances or laws.

**R105.5.3 Deferred submittals**. Deferral of any submittal items shall have the prior approval of the *building official*. The *registered design professional in responsible charge* shall list *deferred submittals* on the plans for review by the *building official*.

Documents for *deferred submittal* items shall be submitted to the *registered design professional in responsible charge* who shall review them and forward them to the *building official* with a notation indicating that the *deferred submittal* documents have been reviewed and been found to be in general conformance to the design of the building. The *deferred submittal* items shall not be installed until the *deferred submittal* documents have been approved by the *building official*.

**R105.5.4 Clarity of plans.** Plans shall be drawn to a clearly indicated and commonly accepted scale upon substantial paper such as blueprint quality or standard drafting paper. Tissue paper, posterboard or cardboard will not be accepted. The plans shall be of microfilm quality and limited to a minimum size of 18 inches by 18 inches (457 mm by 457 mm) and a maximum size of 41 inches by 54 inches (1041 mm by 1372 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. The plans for metal-plate-connected wood trusses may be not less than $8^1/_2$ inches by 11 inches for detached single family structures and no less than 11 inches by 17 inches for all other structures.
2. Plans may be submitted in electronic format as determined by the *building official.*

**R105.6 Application review and permit issuance.**

**R105.6.1 General.** The *construction documents* shall be reviewed by the *building official*. Such *construction documents* may be reviewed by other departments of the City to check compliance with the laws and ordinances under their jurisdiction.

**R105.6.2 Determination of completeness.** Within 28 days after an application is filed, the *building official* shall notify the applicant in writing either that the application is complete or that it is not complete, and if not complete, what additional information is required to make it complete. Within 14 days after receiving the additional information, the *building official* shall notify the applicant in writing whether the application is now complete or what additional information is necessary. An application shall be deemed to be complete if the *building official* does not notify the applicant in writing by the deadlines in this section that the application is incomplete.

**R105.6.3 Decision and issuance of permit.**

**R105.6.3.1 Decision on application.** Except as provided in Section R105.6.7, the *building official* shall approve, condition or deny the application within 120 days after the *building official* notifies the applicant that the application is complete.

To determine the number of days that have elapsed after the notification that the application is complete, the following periods shall be excluded:

1. All periods of time during which the applicant has been requested by the Director to correct plans, perform required studies, or provide additional required information, until the determination that the request has been satisfied. The period shall be calculated from the date the *building official* notifies the applicant of the need for additional information until the earlier of the date the *building official* determines whether the additional information satisfies the request for information or 14 days after the date the information has been provided to the *building official*.
2. If the *building official* determines that the information submitted by the applicant under item 1of this subsection is insufficient, the *building official* shall notify the applicant of the deficiencies, and the procedures under item 1 of this subsection shall apply as if a new request for information had been made;
3. All extensions of time mutually agreed upon by the applicant and the *building official*.

If a project permit application is substantially revised by the applicant the time period shall start from the date at which the revised project application is determined to be complete under Section R101.3.1

**R105.6.3.2 Issuance of permit.** The *building official* shall issue a permit to the applicant if the *building official* finds that the work as described in the *construction documents* satisfies the following:

1. It conforms to the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws, ordinances and regulations and with all conditions imposed under any of them,
2. The fees specified in the Fee Subtitle have been paid, and
3. The applicant has complied with all requirements to be performed prior to issuance of a permit for the work under other pertinent laws, ordinances or regulations or included in a master use permit, or otherwise imposed by the *building official.*

When the permit is issued, the applicant or the applicant's authorized agent becomes the permit holder.

**R105.6.4 Permit conditions and denial.** The *building official* may impose on a permit any conditions authorized by this code or other pertinent ordinances or regulations, including without limitation the Grading Code, the Stormwater and Drainage Control Code, Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas, and rules adopted under any of them. In addition, the *building official* may condition a permit in order to reduce the risks associated with development, construction, ownership and occupancy including, but not limited to risks in potential slide areas. The *building official* may deny a permit if the *building official* determines that the risks cannot be reduced to an acceptable level; or if the proposed project or *construction documents* do not conform to the requirements of this code or those of other pertinent laws, ordinances or regulations, or do not conform to requirements included in the master use permit or otherwise imposed by the *building official* or other City department; or if the applicant fails to comply with any requirement or condition under any of the foregoing.

**R105.6.5 Compliance with approved construction documents.** When the *building official* issues a permit, the *building official* shall endorse the permit in writing or in electronic format and stamp the plans APPROVED. Such approved plans and permit shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *building official*, and all work shall be done in accordance with the approved *construction documents* and permit except as the *building official* may require during field inspection to correct errors or omissions.

**Exception:** Approval of the *building official* is not required for modifications to *approved construction documents* when the scope of work proposed in the modifications would not require a permit.

**R105.6.6 Amendments to the permit.** When changes to the *approved* work are made during construction, approval of the *building official* shall be obtained prior to execution. The building inspector may approve minor changes to the *construction documents* for work not reducing the structural strength or fire and life safety of the structure. The building inspector shall determine if it is necessary to revise the *approved construction documents*. Changes shall be shown on two sets of plans that shall be submitted to and approved by the *building official*, accompanied by fees specified in the Fee Subtitle prior to occupancy. All changes shall conform to the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws and ordinances.

**R105.6.7 Cancellation of permit applications.** Applications may be cancelled if no permit is issued by the earlier of the following: (1) 12 months following the date of application; or (2) 60 days from the date of written notice that the permit is ready to issue. After cancellation, *construction documents* submitted for review may be returned to the applicant or destroyed by the *building official*.

The *building official* will notify the applicant in writing at least 30 days before the application is cancelled. The notice shall specify a date by which a request for extension must be submitted in order to avoid cancellation. The date shall be at least two weeks prior to the date on which the application will be cancelled.

**R105.6.8 Extensions prior to permit issuance.**

**R105.6.8.1** At the discretion of the *building official*, applications for projects that require more than 12 months to review and approve may be extended for a period that provides reasonable time to complete the review and approval, but in no case longer than 24 months from the date of the original application. No application may be extended more than once. After cancellation, the applicant shall submit a new application and pay a new fee to restart the permit process.

**R105.6.8.2** Notwithstanding other provisions of this code, an application may be extended where issuance of the permit is delayed by litigation, preparation of environmental impact statements, appeals, strikes or other causes related to the application that are beyond the applicant's control, or while the applicant is making progress toward issuance of a master use permit.

**R105.7 Retention of plans.** One set of *approved* plans, which may be on microfilm or in electronic format, shall be retained by the *building official*. One set of *approved* plans shall be returned to the applicant and shall be kept at the site of the building or work for use by the inspection personnel at all times during which the work authorized is in progress.

**R105.8 Validity of permit.** The issuance or granting of a permit or approval of *construction documents* shall:

1. Not be construed to be a permit for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of this code or other pertinent laws and ordinances;
2. Not prevent the *building official* from requiring the correction of errors in the *construction documents* or from preventing building operations being carried on thereunder when in violation of this code or of other pertinent laws and ordinances of the City;
3. Not prevent the *building official* from requiring correction of conditions found to be in violation of this code or other pertinent laws and ordinances of the City; or
4. Not be construed to extend the period of time for which any such permit is issued or otherwise affect any period of time for compliance specified in any notice or order issued by the *building official* or other administrative authority requiring the correction of any such conditions.

**R105.9 Expiration of permits.** Authority to do the work authorized by a permit or a renewed permit expires 18 months from the date of issuance.

**Exceptions:**

1. Initial permits for major construction projects that require more than 18 months to complete, according to a construction schedule submitted by the applicant, may be issued for a period that provides reasonable time to complete the work but in no case longer than three years.
2. The *building official* may issue permits which expire in less than 18 months if the *building official* determines a shorter period is appropriate to complete the work.

**R105.10 Renewal of permits.** Permits may be renewed and renewed permits may be further renewed by the *building official* if the following conditions are met:

1. Application for renewal is made within the 30-day period immediately preceding the date of expiration of the permit; and
2. If the project has had an associated discretionary Land Use review, and the land use approval has not expired per Seattle Municipal Code 23.76. 032; and
3. If an application for renewal is made either more than eighteen months after the date of mandatory compliance with a new or revised edition of the *Seattle Residential Code* or after the effective date of an amendment to applicable provisions of the Land Use Code or the Environmentally Critical Areas Ordinance (Chapter 25.09 of

the Seattle Municipal Code), the permit shall not be renewed unless:

3.1. The *building official* determines that the permit complies, or is modified to comply, with the code or codes in effect on the date of application renewal; or

3.2. The work authorized by the permit is substantially underway and progressing at a rate approved by the *building official*. "Substantially underway" means that work such as excavation, inspections and installation of framing, electrical, mechanical and finish work is being completed on a continuing basis; and

4. Commencement or completion of the work authorized by the permit is delayed by litigation, appeals, strikes or other causes related to the work authorized by the permit that are beyond the permit holder's control if application for renewal is made within the 30-day period immediately preceding the date of expiration of the permit.

**R105.11 Reestablishment.** A new permit is required to complete work if a permit has expired and was not renewed.

**Exception:** A permit that expired less than one year prior to the date of a request for reestablishment may be reestablished upon approval of the *building official*, if it complies with Section R105.10, Items 2 and 3 or Item 4 above.

**R105.12 Revocation of building permits.**

**R105.12.1 Notice of revocation.** Whenever the *building official* determines there are grounds for revoking a permit, the *building official* may issue a notice of revocation. The notice of revocation shall identify the reason for the proposed revocation, including but not limited to, the violations, the conditions violated and any alleged false or misleading information provided.

**R105.12.2 Standards for revocation.** The *building official* may revoke a permit if:

1. The code or the building permit has been or is being violated and issuance of a notice of violation or stop work order has been or would be ineffective to secure compliance because of circumstances related to the violation; or
2. The permit was obtained with false or misleading information.

**R105.12.3 Service of notice of revocation.** The notice of revocation shall be served on the owner of the property on which the work is occurring, the holder of a permit if different than the owner, or the person doing or causing the work to be done. The notice of revocation shall be served in the manner set forth in RCW 4.28.080 for service of a summons or sent by first class mail to the last known address of the responsible party. For purposes of this section, service is complete at the time of personal service, or if mailed, three days after the date of mailing. When the last day of the period so computed is a Saturday, Sunday or City holiday, the period runs until 5 p.m. on the next business day.

**R105.12.4 Effective date of revocation.** The *building official* shall identify in the notice of revocation a date certain on which the revocation will take effect. This date may be stayed pending complete review before the *building official* pursuant to Section R105.12.5.

**R105.12.5 Review by the building official for notice of revocation.**

**R105.12.5.1 Request for review.** Any person aggrieved by a notice of revocation may obtain a review by making a request in writing to the *building official* within three business days of the date of service of the notice of revocation. The review shall occur within five business days after receipt by the *building official* of the request for review. Any person affected by the notice of revocation may submit additional information to the *building official* for consideration as part of the review at any time prior to the review.

**R105.12.5.2 Conduct of review.** The review will be made by a representative of the *building official* who will review all additional information received and may also request a site visit. After the review, the *building official* may:

1. Sustain the notice of revocation;
2. Withdraw the notice of revocation;
3. Modify the notice of revocation; or
4. Continue the review to a date certain.

**R105.12.5.3 Order of revocation of permit.** The building official shall issue an order of the *building official* containing the decision within ten days after the review and shall cause the same to be sent by first class mail to the person or persons requesting the review, any other person on whom the notice of revocation was served and any other person who requested a copy before issuance of the order.

## SECTION R106 INSPECTIONS

**R106.1 General.** All construction or work for which a permit is required is subject to inspection by the *building official*, and certain types of construction shall have special inspections by registered special inspectors as specified in the *Seattle Building Code* Chapter 17.

**R106.2 Surveys.** A survey of the lot may be required by the *building official* to verify compliance of the structure with *approved construction documents*.

**R106.3 Inspection requests.** The owner of the property or the owner's authorized agent, or the person designated by the owner/agent to do the work authorized by a permit shall notify the *building official* that work requiring inspection as specified in this section is ready for inspection.

**R106.4 Access for inspection.** The permit holder and the person requesting any inspections required by this code shall provide access to and means for proper inspection of such work, including safety equipment required by the Washington Industrial Safety and Health Agency. The work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until approved by the *building official*. Neither the *building official* nor the City is liable for expense entailed in the required removal or replacement of any material to allow inspection.

**R106.5 Inspection record.** Work requiring a permit shall not be commenced until the permit holder or the permit holder's agent has posted an inspection record in a conspicuous place on the premises and in a position that allows the *building official* to conveniently make the required entries regarding inspection of the work. This record shall be maintained in such a position by the permit holder or the permit holder's agent until final approval has been granted by the *building official*.

**R106.6 Approvals required.** No work shall be done on any part of the building or structure beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the written approval of the *building official*. Written approval shall be given only after an inspection has been made of each successive step in the construction as indicated by each of the inspections required in Section R106.8. There shall be a final inspection and approval of all buildings when they are completed and ready for occupancy.

**R106.6.1 Effect of approval.** Approval as a result of an inspection is not approval of any violation of the provisions of this code or of other pertinent laws and ordinances of the City. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other pertinent laws and ordinances of the City are not valid.

**R106.7 Concealment of work.** No required reinforcing steel or structural framework of any part of a building or structure shall be covered or concealed in any manner whatsoever without first obtaining the approval of the *building official*.

**Exception:** Modular homes and commercial coaches identified by State of Washington stickers specified in Section 106.13.3 of the *International Building Code* and placed upon a permanent foundation approved and inspected by the *building official*.

**R106.8 Required inspections.** The *building official*, upon notification by the permit holder or the permit holder's agent, of the property address and permit number, shall make the following inspections and shall either approve that portion of the construction as completed or shall notify the permit holder or the permit holder's agent if the construction fails to comply with the law.

**R106.8.1 First ground disturbance inspection.** To be made prior to beginning *land-disturbing activity*, and following installation of erosion control measures and any required fencing that may restrict land disturbance in steep slope or other buffers as defined in Chapter 25.09 of the Seattle Municipal Code.

> **Note:** The purpose of this inspection is to verify the erosion control method, location and proper installation. Approved drainage plan requirements and site plan conditions will also be verified, including buffer delineations.

**R106.8.2 Foundation inspection.** To be made after trenches are excavated and forms erected and when all materials for the foundation are delivered on the job. Where concrete from a central mixing plant (commonly termed "ready mix") is to be used, materials need not be on the job.

**R106.8.3 Concrete slab or under-floor inspection.** To be made after all in-slab or under-floor building service equipment, conduit, piping accessories and other ancillary equipment items are in place but before any concrete is poured or floor sheathing installed, including the subfloor.

**R106.8.4 Frame inspection.** To be made after the roof, all framing, fireblocking and bracing are in place and all pipes, chimneys and vents are complete and the rough electrical, plumbing and heating wires, pipes and ducts are approved.

**R106.8.5 Insulation inspection.** To be made after all insulation and vapor barriers are in place but before any gypsum board or plaster is applied.

**R106.8.6 Lath and/or gypsum board inspection.** For shear walls, to be made after lathing and/or gypsum board, interior and exterior, is in place, but before any plastering is applied or before gypsum board joints and fasteners are taped and finished.

**R106.8.7 Final site inspection.** To be made after all grading is complete, and all permanent erosion controls, stormwater facilities and stormwater best management practices have been installed.

**Exception:** A final site inspection is not required for projects with less than 750 square feet of *land-disturbing activity.*

**R106.8.8 Final inspection.** To be made after finish grading and the building is completed and before occupancy.

**R106.9 Other inspections.** In addition to the inspections specified above, the *building official* may make or require any other inspections of any construction work or site work to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this code and other pertinent laws and ordinances that are enforced by the *building official*.

**R106.10 Special investigation.** If work that requires a permit or approval is commenced or performed prior to making formal application and receiving the *building official*'s permission to proceed, the *building official* may make a special investigation inspection before a permit is issued for such work. Where a special investigation is made, a special investigation fee may be assessed in accordance with the Fee Subtitle.

**R106.11 Reinspections.** The *building official* may require a reinspection if work for which an inspection is called is not complete, required corrections are not made, the inspection record is not properly posted on the work site, the *approved* plans are not readily available to the inspector, access is not provided on the date for which inspection is requested, or if deviations from *construction documents* that require the approval of the *building official* have been made without proper approval, or as otherwise required by the *building official*.

**R106.11.1 Compliance with Section R107.3.** For the purpose of determining compliance with Section R107.3, Maintenance, the *building official* or the fire chief may cause a structure to be reinspected.

**R106.11.2 Reinspection fee.** The *building official* may assess a reinspection fee as set forth in the Fee Subtitle for any action listed above in Section R106.11 for which reinspection is required. In instances where reinspection fees have been assessed, no additional inspection of the work will be performed until the required fees have been paid.

**R106.12 Approval for occupancy.** Except for *alterations* and *additions*, no building or structure subject to this code shall be occupied until approved for occupancy after final inspection.

**R106.12.1 Effect of final inspection.** Final inspection is not an approval of any violation of the provisions of this code or other pertinent laws and ordinances of the City. Certificates presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other pertinent laws and ordinances of the City are not valid.

## SECTION R107
## EXISTING STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT

**R107.1 General.** Buildings in existence at the time of the passage of this code that were legally constructed and occupied in accordance with the provisions of a prior code may continue their existing use, if such use is not *unsafe*. Mechanical systems lawful at the time of the adoption of this code may continue and may be maintained or repaired, converted to another type of fuel or have components replaced if it is done in accordance with the basic original design and location and no hazard to life, health or property is created by such mechanical system.

**R107.2 Establishing existing uses for the record.** In order to establish an existing use for the record, the building shall comply with the fire and life safety requirements of this code or the code effective at the time the building was constructed. If the existing use is other than that for which the building was constructed, the building shall comply with this code or the code effective at the time the existing use was legally established.

**R107.3 Maintenance.** All buildings and structures, and all parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. All mechanical systems, materials, equipment and appurtenances and all parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and hazard-free condition. All devices or safeguards which are or were required by a code in effect when the building or structure was erected, altered or repaired shall be maintained in conformance with the code edition under which installed.

**Exception:** The *building official* is authorized to modify the requirements of this subsection where all or a portion of a building is unoccupied, closed off and reasonably secure from unlawful entry.

**R107.3.1 Reinspection for maintenance.** To determine compliance with this subsection, the *building official* may cause a mechanical system or equipment to be reinspected.

**R107.3.2 Responsibility for maintenance.** The owner or the owner's designated agent is responsible for maintenance of buildings, structures, mechanical systems, materials, equipment, devices, safeguards and appurtenances. It is a violation to fail to maintain such buildings, structures, mechanical systems, materials, equipment, devices, safeguards and appurtenances or to fail to immediately comply with any lawful notice or order of the *building official*

**Exception:** Occupants of *dwellings* are responsible for the maintenance of smoke alarms required by Section R314 and carbon monoxide alarms required by Section R315.

**R107.4 Unsafe building appendages.** Parapet walls, cornices, chimneys and other appendages or structural members that are supported by, attached to, or a part of a building and that are in a deteriorated condition or are otherwise unable to sustain the design loads specified in this code, are hereby designated as *unsafe* building appendages. All such unsafe building appendages are public nuisances and shall be abated in accordance with Section R102 of this code.

**R107.5 Additions, alterations or repairs.**

**R107.5.1 General.** Buildings and structures to which *additions, alterations* or repairs are made shall comply with all the requirements of this code for new facilities except as specifically provided in this section. See also applicable provisions of the *Washington State Energy Code with Seattle Amendments*. Any building or *addition* that is not covered by or within the scope of this code as provided in Section R101.2 shall be designed to the provisions of the *International Building Code*.

**Exception:** An *addition* may be made to an existing nonconforming building if the following conditions are met:

1. A fire wall, constructed in compliance with *International Building Code* Section 706, separates the *addition* and the existing structure;
2. The existing building is not made more nonconforming; and
3. The *addition* conforms to this code.

**R107.5.2 When allowed.** *Additions, alterations* or repairs may be made to any existing building or structure without requiring the existing building or structure to comply with all the requirements of this code, if the *addition, alteration* or repair conforms to the standards required for a new building or structure and complies with Section R107.5.1. *Additions, alterations*, renovations or repairs may be made to any mechanical system without requiring the existing mechanical system to comply with all the requirements of this code, if the *addition, alteration*, renovation or repair conforms to the standards required for a new mechanical system. *Additions, alterations,* renovations or repairs shall not cause an existing system to become *unsafe*, unhealthy or overloaded.

Minor *additions, alterations,* renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems may be installed in accordance with the law in effect at the time the original installation was made, if approved by the *building official*.

**Note:** See Section R314 for smoke alarm requirements for alterations, repairs and additions.

**R107.5.3 Impracticality.** In cases where compliance with the requirements of this code is impractical, the applicant may arrange a presubmittal conference with the design team and the *building official*. The applicant shall identify alternate design solutions and modifications and demonstrate conformance to Section R104.4 or R104.5. The *building official* is authorized to waive specific requirements in this code that the *building official* determines to be impractical.

**R107.5.4 Compliance with retroactive ordinances.** Alterations and repairs to existing buildings that are being made in response to a notice or order requiring compliance with the *Housing and Building Maintenance Code*, Subtitle II, Title 22 of the Seattle Municipal Code, the *Fire Code*, Subtitle VI, Title 22 of the Seattle Municipal Code, or other ordinances applicable to existing buildings, shall be permitted to be made in accordance with the standards contained in those ordinances rather than the standards for new buildings contained in this code. If standards are not specified in those ordinances, such *alterations* or repairs shall conform to the requirements of this chapter.

**R107.5.5 Nonstructural alterations or repairs.** *Alterations* or repairs that are nonstructural and that do not affect any member or part of the building or structure required to be fire resistant may be made with the same materials of which the building or structure is constructed, provided that no change is permitted that increases its hazard.

**R107.5.6 Maintenance of structural stability.** If approved by the *building official*, minor structural *alterations* or repairs necessary to maintain the structural stability of the building may be made with the same material of which the building or structure is constructed.

**R107.6 Historic buildings and structures.** The *building official* may modify the specific requirements of this code as it applies to landmarks, and require in lieu thereof alternate requirements that, in the opinion of the *building official*, will result in a reasonable degree of safety to the public and the occupants of those buildings.

For purposes of this section, a landmark is a building or structure that is subject to a requirement to obtain a certificate of approval from the City Landmarks Preservation Board before altering or making significant changes to specific features or characteristics, that has been nominated for designation or has been designated for preservation by the City Landmarks Preservation Board, that has been designated for preservation by the State of Washington, has been listed or determined eligible to be listed in the National Register of Historic Places or is located in a landmark or special review district subject to a requirement to obtain a certificate of approval before making a change to the external appearance of the structure.

**R107.7 Unreinforced masonry chimneys.** If an unreinforced masonry chimney is altered or if the building in which such a chimney is located undergoes substantial alteration as defined in Section R107.8.2, the chimney shall be altered to conform to rules promulgated by the *building official*.

**R107.8 Substantial alterations or repairs.**

**R107.8.1 General.** Any building or structure to which substantial alterations or repairs are made shall conform to the requirements of this section and Sections R310 (emergency escape and rescue openings), R311 (means of egress), R314 (smoke alarms), and R302.2 through R302.4 (dwelling unit separation).

**R107.8.2 Definition.** For the purpose of this section, substantial alterations or repairs may mean any one of the following, as determined by the *building official*:

1. Repair of buildings with damage ratios of 60 percent or more.
2. Remodeling or *additions* that substantially extend the useful physical and/or economic life of the building or a significant portion of the building.
3. Change to a use within the scope of this code from a use not within the scope of this code.
4. Change from an *accessory structure* to any other use within the scope of this code.
5. Change from a detached one- or two-family *dwelling* to a *townhouse*.
6. Change to *adult family home* or *family child day care home* from any other use.

**R107.8.3 Seismic regulations.** Buildings or structures to which substantial alterations or repairs are made shall comply with Sections R301.1.3 or Sections R403.1.6, R602.10 and R602.11. In addition, the *building official* may require testing of existing materials, at applicant or property owner's expense, if there is insufficient evidence of structural strength or integrity of the building or structure.

**Exception:** In lieu of compliance with the seismic provisions of Sections R403.1.6, R602.10 and R602.11, if approved by the *building official*, the applicant may evaluate and strengthen portions of the building lateral support structure, such as foundations and cripple walls.

**R107.8.4 Other structural work.** All other structural work shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 3, 4, 5, 6, 8 and 10 of this code.

**R107.9 Change of use.**

**R107.9.1** If the use of a building or portion thereof is changed, any elements of the *dwelling unit* envelope that are altered shall comply with the sound transmission control requirements of Section R330.

**R107.9.2** If the use of a building or portion thereof is changed to *adult family home* or to *family child day care home*, the building shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section R324 or R325.

**R107.10 Moved buildings.** Residential buildings or structures moved into or within the City are not required to comply with the requirements of this code if the original use classification of the building or structure is not changed. Compliance with the requirements of this chapter is required if the moved residential buildings or structures undergo substantial alteration as defined in Section R107.8.2. Work performed on new and existing foundations shall comply with all of the requirements of this code for new construction.

## SECTION R108
## FEES

**R108.1 Fees.** A fee for each permit and for other activities related to the enforcement of this code shall be paid as set forth in the Fee Subtitle.

# Part II—Definitions

## CHAPTER 2
# DEFINITIONS

### SECTION R201
### GENERAL

**R201.1 Scope.** Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

**R201.2 Interchangeability.** Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

**R201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Where terms are not defined in this code such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in other ((~~code publications of the~~)) International Codes ((~~Council~~)).

**R201.4 Terms not defined.** Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

**R201.5 References to other codes.** Whenever an International, National or Uniform Code is referenced in this code, it means the Seattle edition of that code, including local amendments. References to the "Building Code," "Fire Code," "Mechanical Code" and "Plumbing Code" mean the Seattle editions of those codes.

### SECTION R202
### DEFINITIONS

**ACCESSIBLE.** Signifies access that requires the removal of an access panel or similar removable obstruction.

**ACCESSIBLE, READILY.** Signifies access without the necessity for removing a panel or similar obstruction.

**ACCESSORY STRUCTURE.** A structure not greater than 3,000 square feet (279 m$^2$) in floor area, and not over two stories in height, the use of which is customarily accessory to and incidental to that of the dwelling(s) and which is located on the same *lot*.

**ADDITION.** An extension or increase in floor area or height of a building or structure.

**ADHERED STONE OR MASONRY VENEER.** Stone or masonry veneer secured and supported through the adhesion of an *approved* bonding material applied to an *approved* backing.

**[W] ADULT FAMILY HOME.** A *dwelling* in which a person or persons provide personal care, special care, room and board to more than one but not more than six adults who are not related by blood or marriage to the person or persons providing the services.

**AIR ADMITTANCE VALVE.** A one-way valve designed to allow air into the plumbing drainage system when a negative pressure develops in the piping. This device shall close by gravity and seal the terminal under conditions of zero differential pressure (no flow conditions) and under positive internal pressure.

**AIR BARRIER.** Material(s) assembled and joined together to provide a barrier to air leakage through the building envelope. An air barrier may be a single material, or a combination of materials.

**AIR BREAK (DRAINAGE SYSTEM).** An arrangement in which a discharge pipe from a fixture, *appliance* or device drains indirectly into a receptor below the flood-level rim of the receptor, and above the trap seal.

**AIR CIRCULATION, FORCED.** A means of providing space conditioning utilizing movement of air through ducts or plenums by mechanical means.

**AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM.** A system that consists of heat exchangers, blowers, filters, supply, exhaust and return-air systems, and shall include any apparatus installed in connection therewith.

**AIR GAP, DRAINAGE SYSTEM.** The unobstructed vertical distance through free atmosphere between the outlet of a waste pipe and the flood-level rim of the fixture or receptor into which it is discharging.

**AIR GAP, WATER-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.** The unobstructed vertical distance through free atmosphere between the lowest opening from a water supply discharge to the flood-level rim of a plumbing fixture.

**AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION.** An insulation having an air permanence equal to or less than 0.02 L/s-m$^2$ at 75 Pa pressure differential tested according to ASTM E 2178 or E 283.

**ALTERATION.** Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition that requires a *permit*. Also, a change in a mechanical system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation that requires a *permit*.

**ANCHORED STONE OR MASONRY VENEER.** Stone or masonry veneer secured with *approved* mechanical fasteners to an approved backing.

**ANCHORS.** See "Supports."

**ANTISIPHON.** A term applied to valves or mechanical devices that eliminate siphonage.

**APPLIANCE.** A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.

**APPROVED.** Acceptable to the *building official*.

**APPROVED AGENCY.** An established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when such agency has been *approved* by the *building official*.

**ASPECT RATIO.** The ratio of longest to shortest perpendicular dimensions, or for wall sections, the ratio of height to length.

**ATTIC.** The unfinished space between the ceiling assembly of the top *story* and the roof assembly.

**[W] ATTIC, HABITABLE.** A ((~~finished or unfinished~~)) conditioned area, not considered a *story*, complying with all of the following requirements:

1. The occupiable floor area is at least 70 square feet ((~~(17 m²)~~)) (6.5 m²), in accordance with Section R304,
2. The occupiable floor area has a ceiling height in accordance with Section R305, and
3. The occupiable space is enclosed by the roof assembly above, knee walls (if applicable) on the sides and the floor-ceiling assembly below.

**BACKFLOW, DRAINAGE.** A reversal of flow in the drainage system.

**BACKFLOW PREVENTER.** A device or means to prevent backflow.

**BACKFLOW PREVENTER, REDUCED–PRESSURE-ZONE TYPE.** A backflow-prevention device consisting of two independently acting check valves, internally force loaded to a normally closed position and separated by an intermediate chamber (or zone) in which there is an automatic relief means of venting to atmosphere internally loaded to a normally open position between two tightly closing shutoff valves and with means for testing for tightness of the checks and opening of relief means.

**BACKFLOW, WATER DISTRIBUTION.** The flow of water or other liquids into the potable water-supply piping from any sources other than its intended source. Backsiphonage is one type of backflow.

**BACKPRESSURE.** Pressure created by any means in the water distribution system, which by being in excess of the pressure in the water supply mains causes a potential backflow condition.

**BACKPRESSURE, LOW HEAD.** A pressure less than or equal to 4.33 psi (29.88 kPa) or the pressure exerted by a 10-foot (3048 mm) column of water.

**BACKSIPHONAGE.** The flowing back of used or contaminated water from piping into a potable water-supply pipe due to a negative pressure in such pipe.

**BACKWATER VALVE.** A device installed in a drain or pipe to prevent backflow of sewage.

**BASEMENT.** That portion of a building that is partly or completely below *grade* (see "*Story above grade*").

**BASEMENT WALL.** The opaque portion of a wall that encloses one side of a *basement* and has an average below *grade* wall area that is 50 percent or more of the total opaque and non-opaque area of that enclosing side.

**BASIC WIND SPEED.** Three-second gust speed at 33 feet (10 058 mm) above the ground in Exposure C (see Section R301.2.1) as given in Figure R301.2(4).

**BATHROOM GROUP.** A group of fixtures, including or excluding a bidet, consisting of a water closet, lavatory, and bathtub or shower. Such fixtures are located together on the same floor level.

**BEND.** A drainage fitting, designed to provide a change in direction of a drain pipe of less than the angle specified by the amount necessary to establish the desired slope of the line (see "Elbow" and "Sweep").

**BOILER.** A self-contained *appliance* from which hot water is circulated for heating purposes and then returned to the boiler, and which operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 pounds per square inch gage (psig) (1102 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C).

**BOND BEAM.** A horizontal grouted element within masonry in which reinforcement is embedded.

**BRACED WALL LINE.** A straight line through the building plan that represents the location of the lateral resistance provided by the wall bracing.

**BRACED WALL LINE, CONTINUOUSLY SHEATHED.** A *braced wall line* with structural sheathing applied to all sheathable surfaces including the areas above and below openings.

**BRACED WALL PANEL.** A full-height section of wall constructed to resist in-plane shear loads through interaction of framing members, sheathing material and anchors. The panel's length meets the requirements of its particular bracing method, and contributes toward the total amount of bracing required along its *braced wall line* in accordance with Section R602.10.1.

**BRANCH.** Any part of the piping system other than a riser, main or stack.

**BRANCH, FIXTURE.** See "Fixture branch, drainage."

**BRANCH, HORIZONTAL.** See "Horizontal branch, drainage."

**BRANCH INTERVAL.** A vertical measurement of distance, 8 feet (2438 mm) or more in *developed length*, between the connections of horizontal branches to a drainage stack. Measurements are taken down the stack from the highest horizontal branch connection.

**BRANCH, MAIN.** A water-distribution pipe that extends horizontally off a main or riser to convey water to branches or fixture groups.

**BRANCH, VENT.** A vent connecting two or more individual vents with a vent stack or stack vent.

**BTU/H.** The *listed* maximum capacity of an *appliance*, absorption unit or burner expressed in British thermal units input per hour.

**BUILDING.** Building shall mean any one- and two-family dwelling or portion thereof, including *townhouses*, that is used, or designed or intended to be used for human habitation, for living, sleeping, cooking or eating purposes, or any combination thereof, and shall include accessory structures thereto.

**BUILDING DRAIN.** The lowest piping that collects the discharge from all other drainage piping inside the house and extends 30 inches (762 mm) in *developed length* of pipe, beyond the *exterior walls* and conveys the drainage to the *building sewer.*

**BUILDING, EXISTING.** Existing building is a building erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one ((~~for which a legal building *permit* has been issued~~)) that has passed a final inspection.

**BUILDING LINE.** The line established by law, beyond which a building shall not extend, except as specifically provided by law.

**BUILDING OFFICIAL.** The ((~~officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code~~)) Director of the Department of Planning and Development.

**BUILDING PERMIT APPLICATION, FULLY COMPLETE.** See Section R101.3.1.

**BUILDING SEWER.** That part of the drainage system that extends from the end of the *building drain* and conveys its discharge to a public sewer, private sewer, individual sewage-disposal system or other point of disposal.

**BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE.** The *basement walls*, *exterior walls*, floor, roof and any other building element that enclose *conditioned spaces*.

**BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING.** Two or more layers of felt cemented together and surfaced with a cap sheet, mineral aggregate, smooth coating or similar surfacing material.

**CAP PLATE.** The top plate of the double top plates used in structural insulated panel (SIP) construction. The cap plate is cut to match the panel thickness such that it overlaps the wood structural panel facing on both sides.

**CEILING HEIGHT.** The clear vertical distance from the finished floor to the finished ceiling.

**CEMENT PLASTER.** A mixture of portland or blended cement, portland cement or blended cement and hydrated lime, masonry cement or plastic cement and aggregate and other *approved* materials as specified in this code.

**[W] CHILD DAY CARE.** For the purposes of this code, the care of children during any period of a 24-hour day.

**[W] CHILD DAY CARE HOME, FAMILY.** A *child day care* facility, licensed by the state, located in the *dwelling* of the person or persons under whose direct care and supervision the child is placed, for the care of 12 or fewer children, including children who reside at the home.

**CHIMNEY.** A primary vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of combustion and air from a fuel-burning *appliance* to the outside atmosphere.

**CHIMNEY CONNECTOR.** A pipe that connects a fuel-burning *appliance* to a chimney.

**CHIMNEY TYPES.**

**Residential-type appliance.** An *approved* chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, residential-type *appliances* producing combustion gases not in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) under normal operating conditions, but capable of producing combustion gases of 1,400°F (760°C) during intermittent forces firing for periods up to 1 hour. All temperatures shall be measured at the *appliance* flue outlet. Residential-type *appliance* chimneys include masonry and factory-built types.

**CIRCUIT VENT.** A vent that connects to a horizontal drainage branch and vents two traps to a maximum of eight traps or trapped fixtures connected into a battery.

**CLADDING.** The exterior materials that cover the surface of the building envelope that is directly loaded by the wind.

**CLEANOUT.** An accessible opening in the drainage system used for the removal of possible obstruction.

**CLOSET.** A small room or chamber used for storage.

**COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM.** A specially designed system of waste piping embodying the horizontal wet venting of one or more sinks or floor drains by means of a common waste and vent pipe adequately sized to provide free movement of air above the flow line of the drain.

**COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL.** Any material not defined as noncombustible.

**COMBUSTION AIR.** The air provided to fuel-burning *equipment* including air for fuel combustion, draft hood dilution and ventilation of the *equipment* enclosure.

**COMMON VENT.** A single pipe venting two trap arms within the same *branch interval*, either back-to-back or one above the other.

**CONDENSATE.** The liquid that separates from a gas due to a reduction in temperature, e.g., water that condenses from flue gases and water that condenses from air circulating through the cooling coil in air conditioning *equipment*.

**CONDENSING APPLIANCE.** An *appliance* that condenses water generated by the burning of fuels.

**CONDITIONED AIR.** Air treated to control its temperature, relative humidity or quality.

**CONDITIONED AREA.** That area within a building provided with heating and/or cooling systems or *appliances* capable of maintaining, through design or heat loss/gain, 68°F (20°C) during the heating season and/or 80°F (27°C) during the cooling season, or has a fixed opening directly adjacent to a conditioned area.

**CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA.** The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

**CONDITIONED SPACE.** For energy purposes, space within a building that is provided with heating and/or cooling *equipment* or systems capable of maintaining, through design or heat loss/gain, 50°F (10°C) during the heating season and 85°F (29°C) during the cooling season, or communicates directly with a *conditioned space*. For mechanical purposes, an area, room or space being heated or cooled by any *equipment* or *appliance*.

**CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS.** Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building *permit*. Construction drawings shall be drawn to an appropriate scale.

**CONTAMINATION.** An impairment of the quality of the potable water that creates an actual hazard to the public health through poisoning or through the spread of disease by sewage, industrial fluids or waste.

**CONTINUOUS WASTE.** A drain from two or more similar adjacent fixtures connected to a single trap.

**CONTROL, LIMIT.** An automatic control responsive to changes in liquid flow or level, pressure, or temperature for limiting the operation of an *appliance*.

**CONTROL, PRIMARY SAFETY.** A safety control responsive directly to flame properties that senses the presence or absence of flame and, in event of ignition failure or unintentional flame extinguishment, automatically causes shutdown of mechanical equipment.

**CONVECTOR.** A system-incorporating heating element in an enclosure in which air enters an opening below the heating element, is heated and leaves the enclosure through an opening located above the heating element.

**CORE.** The light-weight middle section of the structural insulated panel composed of foam plastic insulation, which provides the link between the two facing shells.

**CORROSION RESISTANCE.** The ability of a material to withstand deterioration of its surface or its properties when exposed to its environment.

**COURT.** A space, open and unobstructed to the sky, located at or above *grade* level on a *lot* and bounded on three or more sides by walls or a building.

**CRIPPLE WALL.** A framed wall extending from the top of the foundation to the underside of the floor framing of the first *story above grade plane*.

**CROSS CONNECTION.** Any connection between two otherwise separate piping systems whereby there may be a flow from one system to the other.

**DALLE GLASS.** A decorative composite glazing material made of individual pieces of glass that are embedded in a cast matrix of concrete or epoxy.

**DAMAGE RATIO.** The ratio between the cost of work and the estimated replacement cost of the building, expressed as a percentage. The work includes repair of damage to structural and fire/life safety systems.

**DAMPER, VOLUME.** A device that will restrict, retard or direct the flow of air in any duct, or the products of combustion of heat-producing *equipment*, vent connector, vent or chimney.

**DEAD END.** A branch leading from a DWV system terminating at a *developed length* of 2 feet (610 mm) or more. Dead ends shall be prohibited except as an *approved* part of a rough-in for future connection.

**DEAD LOADS.** The weight of all materials of construction incorporated into the building, including but not limited to walls, floors, roofs, ceilings, stairways, built-in partitions, finishes, cladding, and other similarly incorporated architectural and structural items, and fixed service *equipment*.

**DECORATIVE GLASS.** A carved, leaded or Dalle glass or glazing material whose purpose is decorative or artistic, not functional; whose coloring, texture or other design qualities or components cannot be removed without destroying the glazing material; and whose surface, or assembly into which it is incorporated, is divided into segments.

**DESIGN PROFESSIONAL**. See "*Registered design professional*."

**DEVELOPED LENGTH.** The length of a pipeline measured along the center line of the pipe and fittings.

**DIAMETER.** Unless specifically stated, the term "diameter" is the nominal diameter as designated by the *approved* material standard.

**DIAPHRAGM.** A horizontal or nearly horizontal system acting to transmit lateral forces to the vertical resisting elements. When the term "*diaphragm*" is used, it includes horizontal bracing systems.

**DILUTION AIR.** Air that enters a draft hood or draft regulator and mixes with flue gases.

**DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCE.** A fuel-burning *appliance* with a sealed combustion system that draws all air for combustion from the outside atmosphere and discharges all flue gases to the outside atmosphere.

**DRAFT.** The pressure difference existing between the *appliance* or any component part and the atmosphere, that causes a continuous flow of air and products of combustion through the gas passages of the *appliance* to the atmosphere.

**Induced draft.** The pressure difference created by the action of a fan, blower or ejector, that is located between the *appliance* and the chimney or vent termination.

**Natural draft.** The pressure difference created by a vent or chimney because of its height, and the temperature difference between the flue gases and the atmosphere.

**DRAFT HOOD.** A device built into an *appliance*, or a part of the vent connector from an *appliance*, which is designed to provide for the ready escape of the flue gases from the *appliance* in the event of no draft, backdraft or stoppage beyond the draft hood; prevent a backdraft from entering the *appliance*; and neutralize the effect of stack action of the chimney or gas vent on the operation of the *appliance*.

**DRAFT REGULATOR.** A device that functions to maintain a desired draft in the *appliance* by automatically reducing the draft to the desired value.

**DRAFT STOP.** A material, device or construction installed to restrict the movement of air within open spaces of concealed areas of building components such as crawl spaces, floor-ceiling assemblies, roof-ceiling assemblies and *attics*.

**DRAIN.** Any pipe that carries soil and water-borne wastes in a building drainage system.

**DRAINAGE FITTING.** A pipe fitting designed to provide connections in the drainage system that have provisions for establishing the desired slope in the system. These fittings are made from a variety of both metals and plastics. The methods of coupling provide for required slope in the system (see "Durham fitting").

**DUCT SYSTEM.** A continuous passageway for the transmission of air which, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling *equipment* and *appliances*.

**DURHAM FITTING.** A special type of drainage fitting for use in the durham systems installations in which the joints are made with recessed and tapered threaded fittings, as opposed to bell and spigot lead/oakum or solvent/cemented or soldered joints. The tapping is at an angle (not 90 degrees) to provide for proper slope in otherwise rigid connections.

**DURHAM SYSTEM.** A term used to describe soil or waste systems where all piping is of threaded pipe, tube or other such rigid construction using recessed drainage fittings to correspond to the types of piping.

**DWELLING.** Any building that contains one or two *dwelling units* used, intended, or designed to be built, used, rented, leased, let or hired out to be occupied, or that are occupied for living purposes.

**[W] DWELLING UNIT.** A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. *Dwelling units* may also include the following uses:

1. *Adult family homes*, foster family care homes and *family child day care homes* licensed by the Washington State Department of Social and Health Services.
2. Offices, mercantile, food preparation for off-site consumption, personal care salons or similar uses that are conducted primarily by the occupants of the *dwelling unit* and are secondary to the use of the unit for dwelling purposes, and that do not exceed 500 square feet (46.4 $m^2$).
3. Owner-occupied *dwellings* with five or fewer guest rooms.

**DWV.** Abbreviated term for drain, waste and vent piping as used in common plumbing practice.

**EFFECTIVE OPENING.** The minimum cross-sectional area at the point of water-supply discharge, measured or expressed in terms of diameter of a circle and if the opening is not circular, the diameter of a circle of equivalent cross-sectional area. (This is applicable to air gap.)

**ELBOW.** A pressure pipe fitting designed to provide an exact change in direction of a pipe run. An elbow provides a sharp turn in the flow path (see "Bend" and "Sweep").

**EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING.** An operable exterior window, door or similar device that provides for a means of escape and access for rescue in the event of an emergency.

**EQUIPMENT.** All piping, ducts, vents, control devices and other components of systems other than *appliances* that are permanently installed and integrated to provide control of environmental conditions for buildings. This definition shall also include other systems specifically regulated in this code.

**EQUIVALENT LENGTH.** For determining friction losses in a piping system, the effect of a particular fitting equal to the friction loss through a straight piping length of the same nominal diameter.

**ESCARPMENT.** With respect to topographic wind effects, a cliff or steep slope generally separating two levels or gently sloping areas.

**ESSENTIALLY NONTOXIC TRANSFER FLUIDS.** Fluids having a Gosselin rating of 1, including propylene glycol; mineral oil; polydimenthyoil oxane; hydrochlorofluorocarbon, chlorofluorocarbon and hydrofluorocarbon refrigerants; and FDA-*approved* boiler water additives for steam boilers.

**ESSENTIALLY TOXIC TRANSFER FLUIDS.** Soil, water or gray water and fluids having a Gosselin rating of 2 or more including ethylene glycol, hydrocarbon oils, ammonia refrigerants and hydrazine.

**EVAPORATIVE COOLER.** A device used for reducing air temperature by the process of evaporating water into an airstream.

**EXCESS AIR.** Air that passes through the combustion chamber and the *appliance* flue in excess of that which is theoretically required for complete combustion.

**EXHAUST HOOD, FULL OPENING.** An exhaust hood with an opening at least equal to the diameter of the connecting vent.

**EXISTING INSTALLATIONS.** Any plumbing system regulated by this code that was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a *permit* to install has been issued.

**EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS).** EIFS are nonstructural, nonload-bearing *exterior wall* cladding systems that consist of an insulation board attached either adhesively or mechanically, or both, to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.

**EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE.** An EIFS that incorporates a means of drainage applied over a water-resistive barrier.

**EXTERIOR WALL.** An above-*grade* wall that defines the exterior boundaries of a building. Includes between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof and *basement* knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and *basement walls* with an average below-*grade* wall area that is less than 50 percent of the total opaque and nonopaque area of that enclosing side.

**FACING.** The wood structural panel facings that form the two outmost rigid layers of the structural insulated panel.

**FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEY.** A *listed* and *labeled* chimney composed of factory-made components assembled in the field in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

**FEE SUBTITLE.** Seattle Municipal Code Title 22, Subtitle IX.

**FENESTRATION.** Skylights, roof windows, vertical windows (whether fixed or moveable); opaque doors; glazed doors; glass block; and combination opaque/glazed doors.

**FIBER-CEMENT SIDING.** A manufactured, fiber-reinforcing product made with an inorganic hydraulic or calcium silicate binder formed by chemical reaction and reinforced with discrete organic or inorganic nonasbestos fibers, or both. Additives which enhance manufacturing or product performance are permitted. Fiber-cement siding products have either smooth or textured faces and are intended for *exterior wall* and related applications.

**FIREBLOCKING.** Building materials or materials *approved* for use as fireblocking, installed to resist the free passage of flame to other areas of the building through concealed spaces.

**FIREPLACE.** An assembly consisting of a hearth and fire chamber of noncombustible material and provided with a chimney, for use with solid fuels.

**Factory-built fireplace.** A *listed* and *labeled* fireplace and chimney system composed of factory-made components, and assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

**Masonry chimney.** A field-constructed chimney composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

**Masonry fireplace.** A field-constructed fireplace composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

**FIREPLACE STOVE.** A free-standing, chimney-connected solid-fuel-burning heater designed to be operated with the fire chamber doors in either the open or closed position.

**FIREPLACE THROAT.** The opening between the top of the firebox and the smoke chamber.

**FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD.** Pressure-treated lumber and plywood that exhibit reduced surface burning characteristics and resist propagation of fire.

**Other means during manufacture.** A process where the wood raw material is treated with a fire-retardant formulation while undergoing creation as a finished product.

**Pressure process.** A process for treating wood using an initial vacuum followed by the introduction of pressure above atmospheric.

[W] **FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE.** The distance measured from the ((~~building face~~)) foundation wall or face of the wall framing, whichever is closer, to one of the following:

1. To the closest interior *lot line*; or
2. To the ((~~centerline~~)) opposite side of a street, an alley or public way; or
3. To an imaginary line between two buildings on the *lot*.

The distance shall be measured at a right angle from the face of the wall.

**FIXTURE.** See "Plumbing fixture."

**FIXTURE BRANCH, DRAINAGE.** A drain serving two or more fixtures that discharges into another portion of the drainage system.

**FIXTURE BRANCH, WATER-SUPPLY.** A water-supply pipe between the fixture supply and a main water-distribution pipe or fixture group main.

**FIXTURE DRAIN.** The drain from the trap of a fixture to the junction of that drain with any other drain pipe.

**FIXTURE FITTING.**

**Supply fitting.** A fitting that controls the volume and/or directional flow of water and is either attached to or accessible from a fixture or is used with an open or atmospheric discharge.

**Waste fitting.** A combination of components that conveys the sanitary waste from the outlet of a fixture to the connection of the sanitary drainage system.

**FIXTURE GROUP, MAIN.** The main water-distribution pipe (or secondary branch) serving a plumbing fixture grouping such as a bath, kitchen or laundry area to which two or more individual fixture branch pipes are connected.

**FIXTURE SUPPLY.** The water-supply pipe connecting a fixture or fixture fitting to a fixture branch.

**FIXTURE UNIT, DRAINAGE (d.f.u.).** A measure of probable discharge into the drainage system by various types of plumbing fixtures, used to size DWV piping systems. The drainage fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of drainage discharge, on the time duration of a single drainage operation and on the average time between successive operations.

**FIXTURE UNIT, WATER-SUPPLY (w.s.f.u.).** A measure of the probable hydraulic demand on the water supply by various types of plumbing fixtures used to size water-piping systems. The water-supply fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of supply, on the time duration of a single supply operation and on the average time between successive operations.

**FLAME SPREAD.** The propagation of flame over a surface.

**FLAME SPREAD INDEX.** A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from visual measurements of the spread of flame versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.

**FLIGHT.** A continuous run of rectangular treads or winders or combination thereof from one landing to another.

**FLOATING HOME.** A building constructed on a float, used in whole or in part for human habitation as a single-family *dwelling*, which is moored, anchored or otherwise secured in waters.

**FLOATING HOME MOORAGE.** A waterfront facility for the moorage of one or more *floating homes* and the land and water premises on which it is located.

**FLOATING HOME SITE.** A part of a *floating home moorage*, located over water, and designed to accommodate one floating home.

**FLOOD-LEVEL RIM.** The edge of the receptor or fixture from which water overflows.

**FLOOR DRAIN.** A plumbing fixture for recess in the floor having a floor-level strainer intended for the purpose of the collection and disposal of waste water used in cleaning the floor and for the collection and disposal of accidental spillage to the floor.

**FLOOR FURNACE.** A self-contained furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for combustion from outside such space, and with means for lighting the *appliance* from such space.

**FLOW PRESSURE.** The static pressure reading in the water-supply pipe near the faucet or water outlet while the faucet or water outlet is open and flowing at capacity.

**FLUE.** See "Vent."

**FLUE, APPLIANCE.** The passages within an *appliance* through which combustion products pass from the combustion chamber to the flue collar.

**FLUE COLLAR.** The portion of a fuel-burning *appliance* designed for the attachment of a draft hood, vent connector or venting system.

**FLUE GASES.** Products of combustion plus excess air in *appliance* flues or heat exchangers.

**FLUSH VALVE.** A device located at the bottom of a flush tank that is operated to flush water closets.

**FLUSHOMETER TANK.** A device integrated within an air accumulator vessel that is designed to discharge a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes.

**FLUSHOMETER VALVE.** A flushometer valve is a device that discharges a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes and is actuated by direct water pressure.

**FOAM BACKER BOARD.** Foam plastic used in siding applications where the foam plastic is a component of the siding.

**FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION.** A plastic that is intentionally expanded by the use of a foaming agent to produce a reduced-density plastic containing voids consisting of open or closed cells distributed throughout the plastic for thermal insulating or acoustic purposes and that has a density less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (320 kg/m$^3$) unless it is used as interior trim.

**FOAM PLASTIC INTERIOR TRIM.** Exposed foam plastic used as picture molds, chair rails, crown moldings, baseboards, handrails, ceiling beams, door trim and window trim and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

**FUEL-PIPING SYSTEM.** All piping, tubing, valves and fittings used to connect fuel utilization *equipment* to the point of fuel delivery.

**FULLWAY VALVE.** A valve that in the full open position has an opening cross-sectional area equal to a minimum of 85 percent of the cross-sectional area of the connecting pipe.

**FURNACE.** A vented heating *appliance* designed or arranged to discharge heated air into a *conditioned space* or through a duct or ducts.

**GARBAGE.** All discarded putrescible waste matter, including small dead animals weighing not over 15 pounds (6.8 kg), but not including sewage or human or animal excrement.

**GLAZING AREA.** The interior surface area of all glazed fenestration, including the area of sash, curbing or other framing elements, that enclose *conditioned space*. Includes the area of glazed fenestration assemblies in walls bounding conditioned *basements*.

**GRADE.** The finished ground level adjoining the building at all *exterior walls*.

**GRADE FLOOR OPENING.** A window or other opening located such that the sill height of the opening is not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above or below the finished ground level adjacent to the opening.

**GRADE, PIPING.** See "Slope."

**GRADE PLANE.** A reference plane representing the average of the finished ground level adjoining the building at all *exterior walls*. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the *exterior walls*, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the building and the *lot line* or, where the *lot line* is more than 6 ft (1829 mm) from the building between the structure and a point 6 ft (1829 mm) from the building.

**GRIDDED WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.** A water distribution system where every water distribution pipe is interconnected so as to provide two or more paths to each fixture supply pipe.

**GROSS AREA OF EXTERIOR WALLS.** The normal projection of all *exterior walls*, including the area of all windows and doors installed therein.

**GROUND-SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEM.** Piping buried in horizontal or vertical excavations or placed in a body of water for the purpose of transporting heat transfer liquid to and from a heat pump. Included in this definition are closed loop systems in which the liquid is recirculated and open loop systems in which the liquid is drawn from a well or other source.

**GUARD.** A building component or a system of building components located near the open sides of elevated walking surfaces that minimizes the possibility of a fall from the walking surface to the lower level.

**HABITABLE SPACE.** A space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces and similar areas are not considered *habitable spaces*.

**HANDRAIL.** A horizontal or sloping rail intended for grasping by the hand for guidance or support.

**HANGERS.** See "Supports."

**HAZARDOUS LOCATION.** Any location considered to be a fire hazard for flammable vapors, dust, combustible fibers or other highly combustible substances.

**HEAT PUMP.** An *appliance* having heating or heating/cooling capability and that uses refrigerants to extract heat from air, liquid or other sources.

**HEATING DEGREE DAYS (HDD).** The sum, on an annual basis, of the difference between 65°F (18°C) and the mean temperature for each day as determined from "NOAA Annual Degree Days to Selected Bases Derived from the 1960-1990 Normals" or other weather data sources acceptable to the code official.

**HEIGHT, BUILDING.** The vertical distance from *grade plane* to the average height of the highest roof surface.

**HEIGHT, STORY.** The vertical distance from top to top of two successive tiers of beams or finished floor surfaces; and, for the topmost *story*, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the ceiling joists or, where there is not a ceiling, to the top of the roof rafters.

**HIGH-EFFICACY LAMPS.** Compact fluorescent lamps, T-8 or smaller diameter linear fluorescent lamps or lamps with a minimum efficacy of:

1. 60 lumens per watt for lamps over 40 watts.
2. 50 lumens per watt for lamps over 15 watts to 40 watts.
3. 40 lumens per watt for lamps 15 watts or less.

**HIGH-TEMPERATURE (H.T.) CHIMNEY.** A high temperature chimney complying with the requirements of UL 103. A Type H.T. chimney is identifiable by the markings "Type H.T." on each chimney pipe section.

**HILL.** With respect to topographic wind effects, a land surface characterized by strong relief in any horizontal direction.

**HORIZONTAL BRANCH, DRAINAGE.** A drain pipe extending laterally from a soil or waste stack or *building drain*, that receives the discharge from one or more *fixture drains*.

**HORIZONTAL PIPE.** Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) with the horizontal.

**HOT WATER.** Water at a temperature greater than or equal to 110°F (43°C).

**HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS.** Areas vulnerable to hurricanes, defined as the U.S. Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico coasts where the basic wind speed is greater than 90 miles per hour (40 m/s), and Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, Virgin Islands, and America Samoa.

**HYDROGEN GENERATING APPLIANCE.** A self-contained package or factory-matched packages of integrated systems for generating gaseous hydrogen. Hydrogen generating *appliances* utilize electrolysis, reformation, chemical, or other processes to generate hydrogen.

**IGNITION SOURCE.** A flame, spark or hot surface capable of igniting flammable vapors or fumes. Such sources include *appliance* burners, burner ignitions and electrical switching devices.

**INDIRECT WASTE PIPE.** A waste pipe that discharges into the drainage system through an air gap into a trap, fixture or receptor.

**INDIVIDUAL SEWAGE DISPOSAL SYSTEM.** A system for disposal of sewage by means of a septic tank or mechanical treatment, designed for use apart from a public sewer to serve a single establishment or building.

**INDIVIDUAL VENT.** A pipe installed to vent a single-*fixture drain* that connects with the vent system above or terminates independently outside the building.

**INDIVIDUAL WATER SUPPLY.** A supply other than an *approved* public water supply that serves one or more families.

**INSULATING CONCRETE FORM (ICF).** A concrete forming system using stay-in-place forms of rigid foam plastic insulation, a hybrid of cement and foam insulation, a hybrid of cement and wood chips, or other insulating material for constructing cast-in-place concrete walls.

**INSULATING SHEATHING.** An insulating board having a minimum thermal resistance of R-2 of the core material.

**JURISDICTION.** The ((~~governmental unit that has adopted this code under due legislative authority~~)) City of Seattle.

**KITCHEN.** Kitchen shall mean an area used, or designated to be used, for the preparation of food.

**LABEL.** An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer which contains the name of the manufacturer, the function and performance characteristics of the product or material, and the name and identification of an *approved agency* and that indicates that the representative sample of the product or material has been tested and evaluated by an *approved agency*. (See also "Manufacturer's designation" and "Mark.")

**LABELED.** *Equipment*, materials or products to which have been affixed a *label*, seal, symbol or other identifying *mark* of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, inspection agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the above-*labeled* items and whose labeling indicates either that the *equipment*, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LAND-DISTURBING ACTIVITY.** Any activity that results in a movement of earth, or a change in the existing soil cover, both vegetative and nonvegetative, or the existing topography. Land-disturbing activities include, but are not limited to, clearing, grading, filling, excavation and addition of new or the replacement of impervious surface. Compaction, excluding hot asphalt mix, that is associated with stabilization of structures and road construction shall also be considered a *land-disturbing activity*. Vegetation maintenance practices are not considered *land-disturbing activities*.

**LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION.** A type of construction whose vertical and horizontal structural elements are primarily formed by a system of repetitive wood or cold-formed steel framing members.

**LISTED.** *Equipment*, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed equipment* or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the *equipment*, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LIVE LOADS.** Those loads produced by the use and occupancy of the building or other structure and do not include construction or environmental loads such as wind load, snow load, rain load, earthquake load, flood load or dead load.

**LIVING SPACE.** Space within a *dwelling unit* utilized for living, sleeping, eating, cooking, bathing, washing and sanitation purposes.

**LOT.** A portion or parcel of land considered as a unit.

**LOT LINE.** A line dividing one *lot* from another, or from a street or any public place.

**MACERATING TOILET SYSTEMS.** A system comprised of a sump with macerating pump and with connections for a water closet and other plumbing fixtures, that is designed to accept, grind and pump wastes to an *approved* point of discharge.

**MAIN.** The principal pipe artery to which branches may be connected.

**MAIN SEWER.** See "Public sewer."

**MANIFOLD WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS.** A fabricated piping arrangement in which a large supply main is fitted with multiple branches in close proximity in which water is distributed separately to fixtures from each branch.

**MANUFACTURED HOME.** *Manufactured home* means a structure, transportable in one or more sections, which in the traveling mode is 8 body feet (2438 body mm) or more in width or 40 body feet (12 192 body mm) or more in length, or, when erected on site, is 320 square feet (30 $m^2$) or more, and which is built on a permanent chassis and designed to be used as a *dwelling* with or without a permanent foundation when connected to the required utilities, and includes the plumbing, heating, air-conditioning and electrical systems contained therein; except that such term shall include any structure that meets all the requirements of this paragraph except the size requirements and with respect to which the manufacturer voluntarily files a certification required by the secretary (HUD) and complies with the standards established under this title. For mobile homes built prior to June 15, 1976, a *label* certifying compliance to the Standard for Mobile Homes, NFPA 501, in effect at the time of manufacture is required. For the purpose of these provisions, a mobile home shall be considered a *manufactured home*.

**MANUFACTURER'S DESIGNATION.** An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating that a product or material complies with a specified standard or set of rules. (See also "*Mark*" and "*Label*.")

**MANUFACTURER'S INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS.** Printed instructions included with *equipment* as part of the conditions of listing and labeling.

**MARK.** An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating the name of the manufacturer and the function of a product or material. (See also "Manufacturer's designation" and "*Label*.")

**MASONRY CHIMNEY.** A field-constructed chimney composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

**MASONRY HEATER.** A masonry heater is a solid fuel burning heating *appliance* constructed predominantly of concrete or solid masonry having a mass of at least 1,100 pounds (500 kg), excluding the chimney and foundation. It is designed to absorb and store a substantial portion of heat from a fire built in the firebox by routing exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox includes at least one 180-degree (3.14-rad) change in flow direction before entering the chimney and which deliver heat by radiation through the masonry surface of the heater.

**MASONRY, SOLID.** Masonry consisting of solid masonry units laid contiguously with the joints between the units filled with mortar.

**MASONRY UNIT.** Brick, tile, stone, glass block or concrete block conforming to the requirements specified in Section 2103 of the *International Building Code*.

**Clay.** A building unit larger in size than a brick, composed of burned clay, shale, fire clay or mixtures thereof.

**Concrete.** A building unit or block larger in size than 12 inches by 4 inches by 4 inches (305 mm by 102 mm by 102 mm) made of cement and suitable aggregates.

**Glass.** Nonload-bearing masonry composed of glass units bonded by mortar.

**Hollow.** A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional area in any plane parallel to the loadbearing surface is less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

**Solid.** A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional area in every plane parallel to the loadbearing surface is 75 percent or more of its cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

**MASS WALL.** Masonry or concrete walls having a mass greater than or equal to 30 pounds per square foot (146 $kg/m^2$), solid wood walls having a mass greater than or equal to 20 pounds per square foot (98 $kg/m^2$), and any other walls having a heat capacity greater than or equal to 6 $Btu/ft^2 \cdot °F$ [266 $J/(m^2 \cdot K)$].

**MEAN ROOF HEIGHT.** The average of the roof eave height and the height to the highest point on the roof surface, except that eave height shall be used for roof angle of less than or equal to 10 degrees (0.18 rad).

**MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEM.** A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, that consists of an induced draft portion under nonpositive static pressure or a forced draft portion under positive static pressure.

**Forced-draft venting system.** A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static pressure.

**Induced draft venting system.** A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure.

**Power venting system.** A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

**MECHANICAL EXHAUST SYSTEM.** A system for removing air from a room or space by mechanical means.

**MECHANICAL SYSTEM.** A system specifically addressed and regulated in this code and composed of components, devices, *appliances* and *equipment*.

**METAL ROOF PANEL.** An interlocking metal sheet having a minimum installed weather exposure of at least 3 square feet (0.28 $m^2$) per sheet.

**METAL ROOF SHINGLE.** An interlocking metal sheet having an installed weather exposure less than 3 square feet (0.28 $m^2$) per sheet.

**MEZZANINE, LOFT.** An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any *story* with an aggregate floor area of not more than ((~~one-third~~)) one-half of the area of the room or space in which the level or levels are located.

**MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING.** One or more layers of polymer modified asphalt sheets. The sheet materials shall be fully adhered or mechanically attached to the substrate or held in place with an *approved* ballast layer.

**MULTIPLE STATION SMOKE ALARM.** Two or more single station alarm devices that are capable of interconnection such that actuation of one causes all integral or separate audible alarms to operate.

**NATURAL DRAFT SYSTEM.** A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure entirely by natural draft.

**NATURALLY DURABLE WOOD.** The heartwood of the following species with the exception that an occasional piece with corner sapwood is permitted if 90 percent or more of the width of each side on which it occurs is heartwood.

**Decay resistant.** Redwood, cedar, black locust and black walnut.

**Termite resistant.** Alaska yellow cedar, redwood, Eastern red cedar and Western red cedar including all sapwood of Western red cedar.

**NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL.** Materials that pass the test procedure for defining noncombustibility of elementary materials set forth in ASTM E 136.

**NONCONDITIONED SPACE.** A space that is not a *conditioned space* by insulated walls, floors or ceilings.

**NOSING.** The leading edge of treads of stairs and of landings at the top of stairway flights.

**OCCUPIED SPACE.** The total area of all buildings or structures on any *lot* or parcel of ground projected on a horizontal plane, excluding permitted projections as allowed by this code.

**OFFSET.** A combination of fittings that makes two changes in direction bringing one section of the pipe out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

**OWNER.** Any person, agent, firm or corporation having a legal or equitable interest in the property.

**PANEL THICKNESS.** Thickness of core plus two layers of structural wood panel facings.

**PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE.** A closed combustion, vented *appliance* equipped with a fuel feed mechanism for burning processed pellets of solid fuel of a specified size and composition.

**PELLET VENT.** A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with a *listed* pellet fuel-burning *appliance.*

**PERMIT.** An official document or certificate issued by the authority having *jurisdiction* that authorizes performance of a specified activity.

**PERSON.** ((~~An~~)) Any individual, receiver, ((~~heirs, executors, administrators or assigns, and also includes a~~)) administrator, executor, assignee, trustee in bankruptcy, trust, estate, firm, partnership, joint venture, club, company, joint stock company, business trust, municipal corporation, political subdivision of the State of Washington, the State of Washington and any instrumentality thereof, ((~~or~~)) corporation, limited liability company, association, society or any group of individuals acting as a unit, whether mutual, cooperative, fraternal, nonprofit or otherwise, and the United States or any instrumentality thereof ((~~its or their successors or assigns, or the agent of any of the aforesaid~~)).

**PITCH.** See "Slope."

**PLATFORM CONSTRUCTION.** A method of construction by which floor framing bears on load bearing walls that are not continuous through the *story* levels or floor framing.

**PLENUM.** A chamber that forms part of an air-circulation system other than the *occupied space* being conditioned.

**PLUMBING.** For the purpose of this code, plumbing refers to those installations, repairs, maintenance and *alterations* regulated by Chapters 25 through 33.

**PLUMBING APPLIANCE.** An energized household *appliance* with plumbing connections, such as a dishwasher, food-waste grinder, clothes washer or water heater.

**PLUMBING APPURTENANCE.** A device or assembly that is an adjunct to the basic plumbing system and demands no additional water supply nor adds any discharge load to the system. It is presumed that it performs some useful function in the operation, maintenance, servicing, economy or safety of the plumbing system. Examples include filters, relief valves and aerators.

**PLUMBING FIXTURE.** A receptor or device that requires both a water-supply connection and a discharge to the drainage system, such as water closets, lavatories, bathtubs and sinks. Plumbing *appliances* as a special class of fixture are further defined.

**PLUMBING SYSTEM.** Includes the water supply and distribution pipes, plumbing fixtures, supports and appurtenances; soil, waste and vent pipes; sanitary drains and *building sewers* to an *approved* point of disposal.

**POLLUTION.** An impairment of the quality of the potable water to a degree that does not create a hazard to the public health but that does adversely and unreasonably affect the aesthetic qualities of such potable water for domestic use.

**PORTABLE-FUEL-CELL APPLIANCE.** A fuel cell generator of electricity, which is not fixed in place. A portable-fuel-cell *appliance* utilizes a cord and plug connection to a grid-isolated load and has an integral fuel supply.

**POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE.** The drainage condition in which consideration has been made for all loading deflections of the roof deck, and additional slope has been provided to ensure drainage of the roof within 48 hours of precipitation.

**POTABLE WATER.** Water free from impurities present in amounts sufficient to cause disease or harmful physiological effects and conforming in bacteriological and chemical quality to the requirements of the public health authority having *jurisdiction*.

**PRECAST CONCRETE.** A structural concrete element cast elsewhere than its final position in the structure.

**PRECAST CONCRETE FOUNDATION WALLS.** Preengineered, precast concrete wall panels that are designed to withstand specified stresses and used to build below-*grade* foundations.

**PRESSURE-RELIEF VALVE.** A pressure-actuated valve held closed by a spring or other means and designed to automatically relieve pressure at the pressure at which it is set.

**PUBLIC SEWER.** A common sewer directly controlled by public authority.

**PUBLIC WATER MAIN.** A water-supply pipe for public use controlled by public authority.

**PUBLIC WAY.** Any street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a public street, which has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and that has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

**PURGE.** To clear of air, gas or other foreign substances.

**QUICK-CLOSING VALVE.** A valve or faucet that closes automatically when released manually or controlled by mechanical means for fast-action closing.

***R*-VALUE, THERMAL RESISTANCE.** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a *building thermal envelope* element from one of its bounding surfaces to the other for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area ($h \cdot ft^2 \cdot °F/Btu$).

**RAMP.** A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).

**RECEPTOR.** A fixture or device that receives the discharge from indirect waste pipes.

**REFRIGERANT.** A substance used to produce refrigeration by its expansion or evaporation.

**REFRIGERANT COMPRESSOR.** A specific machine, with or without accessories, for compressing a given refrigerant vapor.

**REFRIGERATING SYSTEM.** A combination of interconnected parts forming a closed circuit in which refrigerant is circulated for the purpose of extracting, then rejecting, heat. A direct refrigerating system is one in which the evaporator or condenser of the refrigerating system is in direct contact with the air or other substances to be cooled or heated. An indirect refrigerating system is one in which a secondary coolant cooled or heated by the refrigerating system is circulated to the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

**REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL.** An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or *jurisdiction* in which the project is to be constructed.

**RELIEF VALVE, VACUUM.** A device to prevent excessive buildup of vacuum in a pressure vessel.

**REPAIR.** The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance.

**REROOFING.** The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "Roof recover."

**RETURN AIR.** Air removed from an *approved conditioned space* or location and recirculated or exhausted.

**RIDGE.** With respect to topographic wind effects, an elongated crest of a hill characterized by strong relief in two directions.

**RISER.** A water pipe that extends vertically one full *story* or more to convey water to branches or to a group of fixtures.

**ROOF ASSEMBLY.** A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof deck, vapor retarder, substrate or thermal barrier, insulation, vapor retarder, and roof covering.

**ROOF COVERING.** The covering applied to the roof deck for weather resistance, fire classification or appearance.

**ROOF COVERING SYSTEM.** See "Roof assembly."

**ROOF DECK.** The flat or sloped surface not including its supporting members or vertical supports.

**ROOF RECOVER.** The process of installing an additional roof covering over a prepared existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

**ROOF REPAIR.** Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

**ROOFTOP STRUCTURE.** An enclosed structure on or above the roof of any part of a building.

**ROOM HEATER.** A freestanding heating *appliance* installed in the space being heated and not connected to ducts.

**ROUGH-IN.** The installation of all parts of the plumbing system that must be completed prior to the installation of fixtures. This includes DWV, water supply and built-in fixture supports.

**RUNNING BOND.** The placement of masonry units such that head joints in successive courses are horizontally offset at least one-quarter the unit length.

**SANITARY SEWER.** A sewer that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and groundwater.

**SCUPPER.** An opening in a wall or parapet that allows water to drain from a roof.

**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY (SDC).** A classification assigned to a structure based on its occupancy category and the severity of the design earthquake ground motion at the site.

**SEPTIC TANK.** A water-tight receptor that receives the discharge of a building sanitary drainage system and is constructed so as to separate solids from the liquid, digest organic matter through a period of detention, and allow the liquids to discharge into the soil outside of the tank through a system of open joint or perforated piping or a seepage pit.

**SEWAGE.** ((~~Any liquid waste containing animal matter, vegetable matter or other impurity in suspension or solution.~~)) All water-carried waste discharged from the sanitary facilities of buildings occupied or used by people.

**SEWAGE PUMP.** A permanently installed mechanical device for removing sewage or liquid waste from a sump.

**SHALL.** The term, when used in the code, is construed as mandatory.

**SHEAR WALL.** A general term for walls that are designed and constructed to resist racking from seismic and wind by use of masonry, concrete, cold-formed steel or wood framing in accordance with Chapter 6 of this code and the associated limitations in Section R301.2 of this code.

**SIDE VENT.** A vent connecting to the drain pipe through a fitting at an angle less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal.

**SINGLE PLY MEMBRANE.** A roofing membrane that is field applied using one layer of membrane material (either homogeneous or composite) rather than multiple layers.

**SINGLE STATION SMOKE ALARM.** An assembly incorporating the detector, control *equipment* and alarm sounding device in one unit that is operated from a power supply either in the unit or obtained at the point of installation.

**SKYLIGHT AND SLOPED GLAZING.** See Section R308.6.1.

**SKYLIGHT, UNIT.** See Section R308.6.1.

**SLIP JOINT.** A mechanical-type joint used primarily on fixture traps. The joint tightness is obtained by compressing a friction-type washer such as rubber, nylon, neoprene, lead or special packing material against the pipe by the tightening of a (slip) nut.

**SLOPE.** The fall (pitch) of a line of pipe in reference to a horizontal plane. In drainage, the slope is expressed as the fall in units vertical per units horizontal (percent) for a length of pipe.

**[W] SMALL BUSINESS.** Any business entity (including a sole proprietorship, corporation, partnership or other legal entity) that is owned and operated independently from all other businesses, has the purpose of making a profit, and has 50 or fewer employees, or that has a million dollars or less per year in gross sales of window products.

**SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX.** A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from measurements of smoke obscuration versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.

**SOIL STACK OR PIPE.** A pipe that conveys sewage containing fecal material.

**SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC).** The solar heat gain through a fenestration or glazing assembly relative to the incident solar radiation (Btu/h · ft$^2$ · °F).

**SOLID MASONRY.** Load-bearing or nonload-bearing construction using masonry units where the net cross-sectional area of each unit in any plane parallel to the bearing surface is not less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional area. Solid masonry units shall conform to ASTM C 55, C 62, C 73, C 145 or C 216.

**[W] SOURCE SPECIFIC VENTILATION SYSTEM.** A mechanical ventilation system, including all fans, controls, and ducting, which is dedicated to exhausting contaminant-laden air to the exterior of the building from the room or space in which the contaminant is generated.

**SPLINE.** A strip of wood structural panel cut from the same material used for the panel facings, used to connect two structural insulated panels. The strip (spline) fits into a groove cut into the vertical edges of the two structural insulated panels to be joined. Splines are used behind each facing of the structural insulated panels being connected as shown in Figure R613.8.

**STACK.** Any main vertical DWV line, including offsets, that extends one or more stories as directly as possible to its vent terminal.

**STACK BOND.** The placement of masonry units in a bond pattern is such that head joints in successive courses are vertically aligned. For the purpose of this code, requirements for stack bond shall apply to all masonry laid in other than running bond.

**STACK VENT.** The extension of soil or waste stack above the highest horizontal drain connected.

**STACK VENTING.** A method of venting a fixture or fixtures through the soil or waste stack without individual fixture vents.

**STAIR.** A change in elevation, consisting of one or more risers.

**STAIRWAY.** One or more flights of stairs, either interior or exterior, with the necessary landings and platforms connecting them to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another within or attached to a building, porch or deck.

**STANDARD TRUSS.** Any construction that does not permit the roof/ceiling insulation to achieve the required R-value over the *exterior walls*.

**STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANT.** A self-contained package or factory-matched packages which constitute an automatically-operated assembly of integrated systems for generating useful electrical energy and recoverable thermal energy that is permanently connected and fixed in place.

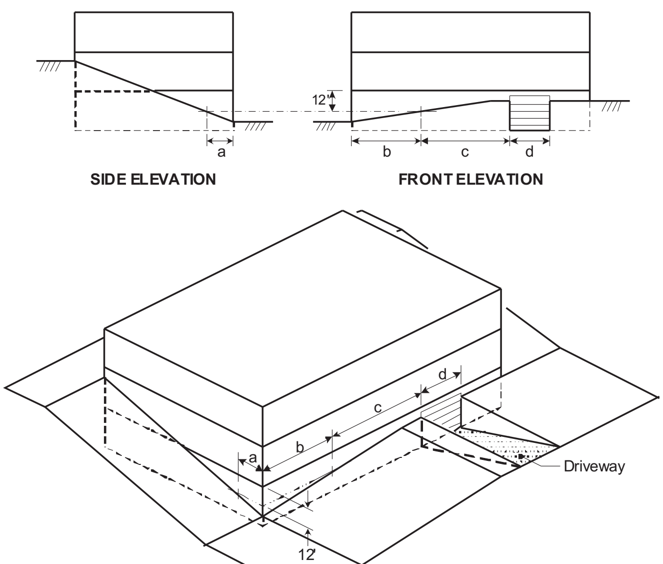
**STORM SEWER, DRAIN.** A pipe used for conveying rainwater, surface water, subsurface water and similar liquid waste.

**STORY.** That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor or roof next above.

**STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE.** Any *story* having its finished floor surface entirely above *grade plane*, except that a *basement* shall be considered as a *story above grade plane* where the finished surface of the floor above the *basement* meets any one of the following:

1. Is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) *above grade plane*((~~.~~));

2. Is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the finished ground level for more than 50 percent of the total building perimeter((~~.~~)); or
3. Is more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the finished ground level ((~~at any point~~)) for more than 25 feet (7620 mm) of the perimeter. Required driveways up to 22 feet (6706 mm) shall not be considered in calculating the 25 foot distance if there is at least 10 feet (3048 mm) between the driveway and all portions of the 25-foot (7620 mm) area (see Figure R202).




a + b ≤ 25'
c ≥ 10'
d ≤ 22'
Lowest level may be a basement below grade if all these are met

For SI: 1 foot = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R202**
**STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE**

**STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANEL (SIP).** A structural sandwich panel that consists of a light-weight foam plastic core securely laminated between two thin, rigid wood structural panel facings.

**STRUCTURE.** That which is built or constructed.

**SUBSOIL DRAIN.** A drain that collects subsurface water or seepage water and conveys such water to a place of disposal.

**SUMP.** A tank or pit that receives sewage or waste, located below the normal *grade* of the gravity system and that must be emptied by mechanical means.

**SUMP PUMP.** A pump installed to empty a sump. These pumps are used for removing storm water only. The pump is selected for the specific head and volume of the load and is usually operated by level controllers.

**SUNROOM.** A one-story structure attached to a *dwelling* with a *glazing area* in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure's *exterior walls* and roof.

**SUPPLY AIR.** Air delivered to a *conditioned space* through ducts or plenums from the heat exchanger of a heating, cooling or ventilating system.

**SUPPORTS.** Devices for supporting, hanging and securing pipes, fixtures and *equipment*.

**SWEEP.** A drainage fitting designed to provide a change in direction of a drain pipe of less than the angle specified by the amount necessary to establish the desired slope of the line. Sweeps provide a longer turning radius than bends and a less turbulent flow pattern (see "Bend" and "Elbow").

**TEMPERATURE- AND PRESSURE-RELIEF (T AND P) VALVE.** A combination relief valve designed to function as both a temperature-relief and pressure-relief valve.

**TEMPERATURE-RELIEF VALVE.** A temperature-actuated valve designed to discharge automatically at the temperature at which it is set.

**TERMITE-RESISTANT MATERIAL.** Pressure-preservative treated wood in accordance with the AWPA standards in Section R318.1, naturally durable termite-resistant wood, steel, concrete, masonry or other *approved* material.

**THERMAL ISOLATION.** Physical and space conditioning separation from *conditioned space(s)* consisting of existing or new walls, doors and/or windows. The *conditioned space(s)* shall be controlled as separate zones for heating and cooling or conditioned by separate *equipment*.

**THERMAL RESISTANCE, *R*-VALUE.** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area ($h \cdot ft^2 \cdot °F/Btu$).

**THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE, *U*-FACTOR.** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building envelope component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films ($Btu/h \cdot ft^2 \cdot °F$).

**TOWNHOUSE.** A single-family *dwelling unit* constructed in a group of three or more attached units in which each unit extends from foundation to roof and with a *yard* or public way on at least two sides.

**Interpretation R202T:** The required open space shall be a yard, driveway, parking lot or public way.

**TRAP.** A fitting, either separate or built into a fixture, that provides a liquid seal to prevent the emission of sewer gases without materially affecting the flow of sewage or waste water through it.

**TRAP ARM.** That portion of a *fixture drain* between a trap weir and the vent fitting.

**TRAP PRIMER.** A device or system of piping to maintain a water seal in a trap, typically installed where infrequent use of the trap would result in evaporation of the trap seal, such as floor drains.

**TRAP SEAL.** The trap seal is the maximum vertical depth of liquid that a trap will retain, measured between the crown weir and the top of the dip of the trap.

**TRIM.** Picture molds, chair rails, baseboards, handrails, door and window frames, and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

**TRUSS DESIGN DRAWING.** The graphic depiction of an individual truss, which describes the design and physical characteristics of the truss.

**TYPE L VENT.** A *listed* and *labeled* vent conforming to UL 641 for venting oil-burning *appliances listed* for use with Type L vents or with gas *appliances listed* for use with Type B vents.

***U*-FACTOR, THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE.** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building envelope component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/h · ft$^2$ · °F).

**UNDERLAYMENT.** One or more layers of felt, sheathing paper, nonbituminous saturated felt, or other *approved* material over which a roof covering, with a slope of 2 to 12 (17-percent slope) or greater, is applied.

**UNSAFE.** Structurally unsound, provided with inadequate egress, constituting a fire hazard, or otherwise dangerous to human life, or constituting a hazard to safety, health or public welfare because of inadequate maintenance, deterioration, instability, dilapidation, obsolescence, or damage.

**VACUUM BREAKERS.** A device which prevents backsiphonage of water by admitting atmospheric pressure through ports to the discharge side of the device.

**VAPOR PERMEABLE MEMBRANE.** A material or covering having a permeance rating of 5 perms (2.9 · 10$^{-10}$ kg/Pa · s · m$^2$) or greater, when tested in accordance with the desiccant method using Procedure A of ASTM E 96. A vapor permeable material permits the passage of moisture vapor.

**VAPOR RETARDER CLASS.** A measure of the ability of a material or assembly to limit the amount of moisture that passes through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class shall be defined using the desiccant method with Procedure A of ASTM E 96 as follows:

Class I: 0.1 perm or less

Class II: 0.1 < perm ≤ 1.0 perm

Class III: 1.0 < perm ≤ 10 perm

**VEHICULAR ACCESS DOOR.** A door that is used primarily for vehicular traffic at entrances of buildings such as garages and parking lots, and that is not generally used for pedestrian traffic.

**VENT.** A passageway for conveying flue gases from fuel-fired *appliances*, or their vent connectors, to the outside atmosphere.

**VENT COLLAR.** See "Flue collar."

**VENT CONNECTOR.** That portion of a venting system which connects the flue collar or draft hood of an *appliance* to a vent.

**VENT DAMPER DEVICE, AUTOMATIC.** A device intended for installation in the venting system, in the outlet of an individual, automatically operated fuel burning *appliance* and that is designed to open the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in operation and to close off the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in a standby or shutdown condition.

**VENT GASES.** Products of combustion from fuel-burning *appliances*, plus excess air and dilution air, in the venting system above the draft hood or draft regulator.

**VENT STACK.** A vertical vent pipe installed to provide circulation of air to and from the drainage system and which extends through one or more stories.

**VENT SYSTEM.** Piping installed to equalize pneumatic pressure in a drainage system to prevent trap seal loss or blow-back due to siphonage or back pressure.

**VENTILATION.** The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

**VENTING.** Removal of combustion products to the outdoors.

**VENTING SYSTEM.** A continuous open passageway from the flue collar of an *appliance* to the outside atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a chimney and vent connector, if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

**VERTICAL PIPE.** Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or more with the horizontal.

**VINYL SIDING.** A shaped material, made principally from rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), that is used to cover exterior walls of buildings.

**WALL, RETAINING.** A wall not laterally supported at the top, that resists lateral soil load and other imposed loads.

**WALLS.** Walls shall be defined as follows:

**Load-bearing wall** is a wall supporting any vertical load in addition to its own weight.

**Nonbearing wall** is a wall which does not support vertical loads other than its own weight.

**WASTE.** Liquid-borne waste that is free of fecal matter.

**WASTE PIPE OR STACK.** Piping that conveys only liquid sewage not containing fecal material.

**WATER-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.** Piping which conveys water from the service to the plumbing fixtures, *appliances*, appurtenances, *equipment*, devices or other systems served, including fittings and control valves.

**WATER HEATER.** Any heating *appliance* or *equipment* that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

**Interpretation R202W:** "Water heater" includes only those appliances that do not exceed pressure of 160 pounds per square inch (1103 kPa), volume of 120 gallons (454 L) and a heat input of 200,000 Btu/hr (58.6 kW).

**WATER MAIN.** A water-supply pipe for public use.

**WATER OUTLET.** A valved discharge opening, including a hose bibb, through which water is removed from the potable water system supplying water to a plumbing fixture or plumbing *appliance* that requires either an air gap or backflow prevention device for protection of the supply system.

**WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER.** A material behind an *exterior wall* covering that is intended to resist liquid water that has penetrated behind the exterior covering from further intruding into the *exterior wall* assembly.

**WATER-SERVICE PIPE.** The outside pipe from the water main or other source of potable water supply to the water-distribution system inside the building, terminating at the service valve.

**WATER-SUPPLY SYSTEM.** The water-service pipe, the water-distributing pipes and the necessary connecting pipes, fittings, control valves and all appurtenances in or adjacent to the building or premises.

**WET VENT.** A vent that also receives the discharge of wastes from other fixtures.

**[W] WHOLE HOUSE VENTILATION SYSTEM.** A mechanical ventilation system, including fans, controls, and ducts, which replaces, by direct or indirect means, air from the *habitable* rooms with outdoor air.

**WIND-BORNE DEBRIS REGION.** Areas within *hurricane-prone regions* within one mile of the coastal mean high water line where the basic wind speed is 110 miles per hour (49 m/s) or greater; or where the basic wind speed is equal to or greater than 120 miles per hour (54 m/s); or Hawaii.

**WINDER.** A tread with nonparallel edges.

**WOOD/PLASTIC COMPOSITE.** A composite material made primarily from wood or cellulose-based materials and plastic.

**WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL.** A panel manufactured from veneers; or wood strands or wafers; bonded together with waterproof synthetic resins or other suitable bonding systems. Examples of wood structural panels are plywood, OSB or composite panels.

**YARD.** An open space, other than a court, unobstructed from the ground to the sky, except where specifically provided by this code, on the *lot* on which a building is situated.

# *Part III—Building Planning and Construction*

## CHAPTER 3

# BUILDING PLANNING

### SECTION R301
### DESIGN CRITERIA

**R301.1 Application.** Buildings and structures, and all parts thereof, shall be constructed to safely support all loads, including dead loads, live loads, roof loads, flood loads, snow loads, wind loads and seismic loads as prescribed by this code. The construction of buildings and structures in accordance with the provisions of this code shall result in a system that provides a complete load path that meets all requirements for the transfer of all loads from their point of origin through the load-resisting elements to the foundation. Buildings and structures constructed as prescribed by this code are deemed to comply with the requirements of this section.

**R301.1.1 Alternative provisions.** As an alternative to the requirements in Section R301.1 the following standards are permitted subject to the limitations of this code and the limitations therein. Where engineered design is used in conjunction with these standards, the design shall comply with the *International Building Code*.

1. American Forest and Paper Association (AF&PA) *Wood Frame Construction Manual* (WFCM).
2. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) *Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing—Prescriptive Method for One- and Two-Family Dwellings* (AISI S230).
3. ICC-400 *Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures*.

**R301.1.2 Construction systems.** The requirements of this code are based on platform and balloon-frame construction for light-frame buildings. The requirements for concrete and masonry buildings are based on a balloon framing system. Other framing systems must have equivalent detailing to ensure force transfer, continuity and compatible deformations.

**R301.1.3 Engineered design.** When a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements exceeding the limits of Section R301 or otherwise not conforming to this code, these elements shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of nonconventional elements with other applicable provisions and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventional framed system. Engineered design in accordance with the *International Building Code* is permitted for all buildings and structures, and parts thereof, included in the scope of this code.

**R301.2 Climatic and geographic design criteria.** Buildings shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this code as limited by the provisions of this section. Additional criteria shall be established by the local *jurisdiction* and set forth in Table R301.2(1).

**R301.2.1 Wind limitations.** Buildings and portions thereof shall be limited by wind speed, as defined in Table R301.2(1) and construction methods in accordance with this code. Basic wind speeds shall be determined from Figure R301.2(4). Where different construction methods and structural materials are used for various portions of a building, the applicable requirements of this section for each portion shall apply. Where loads for wall coverings, curtain walls, roof coverings, exterior windows, skylights, garage doors and exterior doors are not otherwise specified, the loads listed in Table R301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure using Table R301.2(3) shall be used to determine design load performance requirements for wall coverings, curtain walls, roof coverings, exterior windows, skylights, garage doors and exterior doors. Asphalt shingles shall be designed for wind speeds in accordance with Section R905.2.6.

**R301.2.1.1 Design criteria.** In regions where the basic wind speeds from Figure R301.2(4) equal or exceed 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) in *hurricane-prone regions*, or 110 miles per hour (49 m/s) elsewhere, the design of buildings shall be in accordance with one of the following methods. The elements of design not addressed by those documents in Items 1 through 4 shall be in accordance with this code.

1. American Forest and Paper Association (AF&PA) *Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings* (WFCM); or
2. International Code Council (ICC) *Standard for Residential Construction in High Wind Regions* (ICC-600); or
3. *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures* (ASCE-7); or
4. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI), *Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing—Prescriptive Method For One- and Two-Family Dwellings* (AISI S230).
5. Concrete construction shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of this code.
6. Structural insulated panel (SIP) walls shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of this code.

**TABLE R301.2(1)**
**CLIMATIC AND GEOGRAPHIC DESIGN CRITERIA**

| ((~~GROUND~~)) ROOF SNOW LOAD | WIND DESIGN | | SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY[f] | SUBJECT TO DAMAGE FROM | | | WINTER DESIGN TEMP[e] | ICE BARRIER UNDERLAYMENT REQUIRED[h] | FLOOD HAZARDS[g] | AIR FREEZING INDEX[i] | MEAN ANNUAL TEMP[j] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Speed[d] (mph) | Topographic effects[k] | | Weathering[a] | Frost line depth[b] | Termite[c] | | | | | |
| 25 psf | 85 | No | $D_2$ | Moderate | 12" | None to slight | 24°F | No | (a) 1989<br>(b) May 16, 1995 | 250 | 52.8°F |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Weathering may require a higher strength concrete or grade of masonry than necessary to satisfy the structural requirements of this code. The weathering column shall be filled in with the weathering index (i.e., "negligible," "moderate" or "severe") for concrete as determined from the Weathering Probability Map [Figure R301.2(3)]. The grade of masonry units shall be determined from ASTM C 34, C 55, C 62, C 73, C 90, C 129, C 145, C 216 or C 652.

b. The frost line depth may require deeper footings than indicated in Figure R403.1(1). The jurisdiction shall fill in the frost line depth column with the minimum depth of footing below finish grade.

c. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table to indicate the need for protection depending on whether there has been a history of local subterranean termite damage.

d. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with the wind speed from the basic wind speed map [Figure R301.2(4)]. Wind exposure category shall be determined on a site-specific basis in accordance with Section R301.2.1.4.

e. ((~~The outdoor design dry-bulb temperature shall be selected from the columns of 97$^1/_2$-percent values for winter from Appendix D of the *International Plumbing Code*. Deviations from the Appendix D temperatures shall be permitted to reflect local climates or local weather experience as determined by the building official.~~)) The winter design temperature is taken from the *Washington State Energy Code with Seattle Amendments.*

f. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with the seismic design category determined from Section R301.2.2.1.

g. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with (a) the date of the jurisdiction's entry into the National Flood Insurance Program (date of adoption of the first code or ordinance for management of flood hazard areas), (b) the date(s) of the Flood Insurance Study and (c) the panel numbers and dates of all currently effective FIRMs and FBFMs or other flood hazard map adopted by the authority having jurisdiction, as amended.

h. In accordance with Sections R905.2.7.1, R905.4.3.1, R905.5.3.1, R905.6.3.1, R905.7.3.1 and R905.8.3.1, where there has been a history of local damage from the effects of ice damming, the jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with "YES." Otherwise, the jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with "NO."

i. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with the 100-year return period air freezing index (BF-days) from Figure R403.3(2) or from the 100-year (99%) value on the National Climatic Data Center data table "Air Freezing Index- USA Method (Base 32°)" at www.ncdc.noaa.gov/fpsf.html.

j. The jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with the mean annual temperature from the National Climatic Data Center data table "Air Freezing Index-USA Method (Base 32°F)" at www.ncdc.noaa.gov/fpsf.html.

k. In accordance with Section R301.2.1.5, where there is local historical data documenting structural damage to buildings due to topographic wind speed-up effects, the jurisdiction shall fill in this part of the table with "YES." Otherwise, the jurisdiction shall indicate "NO" in this part of the table.

Note to footnote k: Topographical effects shall be included for buildings designed according to the *International Building Code*.

### TABLE R301.2(2) COMPONENT AND CLADDING LOADS FOR A BUILDING WITH A MEAN ROOF HEIGHT OF 30 FEET LOCATED IN EXPOSURE B (psf)[a, b, c, d, e]

| | ZONE | EFFECTIVE WIND AREA (feet²) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph—3-second gust) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 85 | | 90 | | 100 | | 105 | | 110 | | 120 | | 125 | | 130 | | 140 | | 145 | | 150 | | 170 | |
| Roof > 0 to 10 degrees | 1 | 10 | 10.0 | -13.0 | 10.0 | -14.6 | 10.0 | -18.0 | 10.0 | -19.8 | 10.0 | -21.8 | 10.5 | -25.9 | 11.4 | -28.1 | 12.4 | -30.4 | 14.3 | -35.3 | 15.4 | -37.8 | 16.5 | -40.5 | 21.1 | -52.0 |
| | 1 | 20 | 10.0 | -12.7 | 10.0 | -14.2 | 10.0 | -17.5 | 10.0 | -19.3 | 10.0 | -21.2 | 10.0 | -25.2 | 10.7 | -27.4 | 11.6 | -29.6 | 13.4 | -34.4 | 14.4 | -36.9 | 15.4 | -39.4 | 19.8 | -50.7 |
| | 1 | 50 | 10.0 | -12.2 | 10.0 | -13.7 | 10.0 | -16.9 | 10.0 | -18.7 | 10.0 | -20.5 | 10.0 | -24.4 | 10.0 | -26.4 | 10.6 | -28.6 | 12.3 | -33.2 | 13.1 | -35.6 | 14.1 | -38.1 | 18.1 | -48.9 |
| | 1 | 100 | 10.0 | -11.9 | 10.0 | -13.3 | 10.0 | -18.5 | 10.0 | -18.2 | 10.0 | -19.9 | 10.0 | -23.7 | 10.0 | -25.7 | 10.0 | -27.8 | 11.4 | -32.3 | 12.2 | -34.6 | 13.0 | -37.0 | 16.7 | -47.6 |
| | 2 | 10 | 10.0 | -21.8 | 10.0 | -24.4 | 10.0 | -30.2 | 10.0 | -33.3 | 10.0 | -36.5 | 10.5 | -43.5 | 11.4 | -47.2 | 12.4 | -51.0 | 14.3 | -59.2 | 15.4 | -63.5 | 16.5 | -67.9 | 21.1 | -87.2 |
| | 2 | 20 | 10.0 | -19.5 | 10.0 | -21.8 | 10.0 | -27.0 | 10.0 | -29.7 | 10.0 | -32.6 | 10.0 | -38.8 | 10.7 | -42.1 | 11.6 | -45.6 | 13.4 | -52.9 | 14.4 | -56.7 | 15.4 | -60.7 | 19.8 | -78.0 |
| | 2 | 50 | 10.0 | -16.4 | 10.0 | -18.4 | 10.0 | -22.7 | 10.0 | -25.1 | 10.0 | -27.5 | 10.0 | -32.7 | 10.0 | -35.5 | 10.6 | -38.4 | 12.3 | -44.5 | 13.1 | -47.8 | 14.1 | -51.1 | 18.1 | -65.7 |
| | 2 | 100 | 10.0 | -14.1 | 10.0 | -15.8 | 10.0 | -19.5 | 10.0 | -21.5 | 10.0 | -23.6 | 10.0 | -28.1 | 10.0 | -30.5 | 10.0 | -33.0 | 11.4 | -38.2 | 12.2 | -41.0 | 13.0 | -43.9 | 16.7 | -56.4 |
| | 3 | 10 | 10.0 | -32.8 | 10.0 | -36.8 | 10.0 | -45.4 | 10.0 | -50.1 | 10.0 | -55.0 | 10.5 | -65.4 | 11.4 | -71.0 | 12.4 | -76.8 | 14.3 | -89.0 | 15.4 | -95.5 | 16.5 | -102.2 | 21.1 | -131.3 |
| | 3 | 20 | 10.0 | -27.2 | 10.0 | -30.5 | 10.0 | -37.6 | 10.0 | -41.5 | 10.0 | -45.5 | 10.0 | -54.2 | 10.7 | -58.8 | 11.6 | -63.6 | 13.4 | -73.8 | 14.4 | -79.1 | 15.4 | -84.7 | 19.8 | -108.7 |
| | 3 | 50 | 10.0 | -19.7 | 10.0 | -22.1 | 10.0 | -27.3 | 10.0 | -30.1 | 10.0 | -33.1 | 10.0 | -39.3 | 10.0 | -42.7 | 10.6 | -46.2 | 12.3 | -53.5 | 13.1 | -57.4 | 14.1 | -61.5 | 18.1 | -78.9 |
| | 3 | 100 | 10.0 | -14.1 | 10.0 | -15.8 | 10.0 | -19.5 | 10.0 | -21.5 | 10.0 | -23.6 | 10.0 | -28.1 | 10.0 | -30.5 | 10.0 | -33.0 | 11.4 | -38.2 | 12.2 | -41.0 | 13.0 | -43.9 | 16.7 | -56.4 |
| Roof > 10 to 30 degrees | 1 | 10 | 10.0 | -11.9 | 10.0 | -13.3 | 10.4 | -16.5 | 11.4 | -18.2 | 12.5 | -19.9 | 14.9 | -23.7 | 16.2 | -25.7 | 17.5 | -27.8 | 20.3 | -32.3 | 21.8 | -34.6 | 23.3 | -37.0 | 30.0 | -47.6 |
| | 1 | 20 | 10.0 | -11.6 | 10.0 | -13.0 | 10.0 | -16.0 | 10.4 | -17.6 | 11.4 | -19.4 | 13.6 | -23.0 | 14.8 | -25.0 | 16.0 | -27.0 | 18.5 | -31.4 | 19.9 | -33.7 | 21.3 | -36.0 | 27.3 | -46.3 |
| | 1 | 50 | 10.0 | -11.1 | 10.0 | -12.5 | 10.0 | -15.4 | 10.0 | -17.0 | 10.0 | -18.6 | 11.9 | -22.2 | 12.9 | -24.1 | 13.9 | -26.0 | 16.1 | -30.2 | 17.3 | -32.4 | 18.5 | -34.6 | 23.8 | -44.5 |
| | 1 | 100 | 10.0 | -10.8 | 10.0 | -12.1 | 10.0 | -14.9 | 10.0 | -16.5 | 10.0 | -18.1 | 10.5 | -21.5 | 11.4 | -23.3 | 12.4 | -25.2 | 14.3 | -29.3 | 15.4 | -31.4 | 16.5 | -33.6 | 21.1 | -43.2 |
| | 2 | 10 | 10.0 | -25.1 | 10.0 | -28.2 | 10.4 | -34.8 | 11.4 | -38.3 | 12.5 | -42.1 | 14.9 | -50.1 | 16.2 | -54.3 | 17.5 | -58.7 | 20.3 | -68.1 | 21.8 | -73.1 | 23.3 | -78.2 | 30.0 | -100.5 |
| | 2 | 20 | 10.0 | -22.8 | 10.0 | -25.6 | 10.0 | -31.5 | 10.4 | -34.8 | 11.4 | -38.2 | 13.6 | -45.4 | 14.8 | -49.3 | 16.0 | -53.3 | 18.5 | -61.8 | 19.9 | -66.3 | 21.3 | -71.0 | 27.3 | -91.2 |
| | 2 | 50 | 10.0 | -19.7 | 10.0 | -22.1 | 10.0 | -27.3 | 10.0 | -30.1 | 10.0 | -33.0 | 11.9 | -39.3 | 12.9 | -42.7 | 13.9 | -46.1 | 16.1 | -53.5 | 17.3 | -57.4 | 18.5 | -61.4 | 23.8 | -78.9 |
| | 2 | 100 | 10.0 | -17.4 | 10.0 | -19.5 | 10.0 | -24.1 | 10.0 | -26.6 | 10.0 | -29.1 | 10.5 | -34.7 | 11.4 | -37.6 | 12.4 | -40.7 | 14.3 | -47.2 | 15.4 | -50.6 | 16.5 | -54.2 | 21.1 | -69.6 |
| | 3 | 10 | 10.0 | -25.1 | 10.0 | -28.2 | 10.4 | -34.8 | 11.4 | -38.3 | 12.5 | -42.1 | 14.9 | -50.1 | 16.2 | -54.3 | 17.5 | -58.7 | 20.3 | -68.1 | 21.8 | -73.1 | 23.3 | -78.2 | 30.0 | -100.5 |
| | 3 | 20 | 10.0 | -22.8 | 10.0 | -25.6 | 10.0 | -31.5 | 10.4 | -34.8 | 11.4 | -38.2 | 13.6 | -45.4 | 14.8 | -49.3 | 16.0 | -53.3 | 18.5 | -61.8 | 19.9 | -66.3 | 21.3 | -71.0 | 27.3 | -91.2 |
| | 3 | 50 | 10.0 | -19.7 | 10.0 | -22.1 | 10.0 | -27.3 | 10.0 | -30.1 | 10.0 | -33.0 | 11.9 | -39.3 | 12.9 | -42.7 | 13.9 | -46.1 | 16.1 | -53.5 | 17.3 | -57.4 | 18.5 | -61.4 | 23.8 | -78.9 |
| | 3 | 100 | 10.0 | -17.4 | 10.0 | -19.5 | 10.0 | -24.1 | 10.0 | -26.6 | 10.0 | -29.1 | 10.5 | -34.7 | 11.4 | -37.6 | 12.4 | -40.7 | 14.3 | -47.2 | 15.4 | -50.6 | 16.5 | -54.2 | 21.1 | -69.6 |
| Roof > 30 to 45 degrees | 1 | 10 | 11.9 | -13.0 | 13.3 | -14.6 | 16.5 | -18.0 | 18.2 | -19.8 | 19.9 | -21.8 | 23.7 | -25.9 | 25.7 | -28.1 | 27.8 | -30.4 | 32.3 | -35.3 | 34.6 | -37.8 | 37.0 | -40.5 | 47.6 | -52.0 |
| | 1 | 20 | 11.6 | -12.3 | 13.0 | -13.8 | 16.0 | -17.1 | 17.6 | -18.8 | 19.4 | -20.7 | 23.0 | -24.6 | 25.0 | -26.7 | 27.0 | -28.9 | 31.4 | -33.5 | 33.7 | -35.9 | 36.0 | -38.4 | 46.3 | -49.3 |
| | 1 | 50 | 11.1 | -11.5 | 12.5 | -12.8 | 15.4 | -15.9 | 17.0 | -17.5 | 18.6 | -19.2 | 22.2 | -22.8 | 24.1 | -24.8 | 26.0 | -25.8 | 30.2 | -31.1 | 32.4 | -33.3 | 34.6 | -35.7 | 44.5 | -45.8 |
| | 1 | 100 | 10.8 | -10.8 | 12.1 | -12.1 | 14.9 | -14.9 | 16.5 | -16.5 | 18.1 | -18.1 | 21.5 | -21.5 | 23.3 | -23.3 | 25.2 | -25.2 | 29.3 | -29.3 | 31.4 | -31.4 | 33.6 | -33.6 | 43.2 | -43.2 |
| | 2 | 10 | 11.9 | -15.2 | 13.3 | -17.0 | 16.5 | -21.0 | 18.2 | -23.2 | 19.9 | -25.5 | 23.7 | -30.3 | 25.7 | -32.9 | 27.8 | -35.6 | 32.3 | -41.2 | 34.6 | -44.2 | 37.0 | -47.3 | 47.6 | -60.8 |
| | 2 | 20 | 11.6 | -14.5 | 13.0 | -16.3 | 16.0 | -20.1 | 17.6 | -22.2 | 19.4 | -24.3 | 23.0 | -29.0 | 25.0 | -31.4 | 27.0 | -34.0 | 31.4 | -39.4 | 33.7 | -42.3 | 36.0 | -45.3 | 46.3 | -58.1 |
| | 2 | 50 | 11.1 | -13.7 | 12.5 | -15.3 | 15.4 | -18.9 | 17.0 | -20.8 | 18.6 | -22.9 | 22.2 | -27.2 | 24.1 | -29.5 | 26.0 | -32.0 | 30.2 | -37.1 | 32.4 | -39.8 | 34.6 | -42.5 | 44.5 | -54.6 |
| | 2 | 100 | 10.8 | -13.0 | 12.1 | -14.6 | 14.9 | -18.0 | 16.5 | -19.8 | 18.1 | -21.8 | 21.5 | -25.9 | 23.3 | -28.1 | 25.2 | -30.4 | 29.3 | -35.3 | 31.4 | -37.8 | 33.6 | -40.5 | 43.2 | -52.0 |
| | 3 | 10 | 11.9 | -15.2 | 13.3 | -17.0 | 16.5 | -21.0 | 18.2 | -23.2 | 19.9 | -25.5 | 23.7 | -30.3 | 25.7 | -32.9 | 27.8 | -35.6 | 32.3 | -41.2 | 34.6 | -44.2 | 37.0 | -47.3 | 47.6 | -60.8 |
| | 3 | 20 | 11.6 | -14.5 | 13.0 | -16.3 | 16.0 | -20.1 | 17.6 | -22.2 | 19.4 | -24.3 | 23.0 | -29.0 | 25.0 | -31.4 | 27.0 | -34.0 | 31.4 | -39.4 | 33.7 | -42.3 | 36.0 | -45.3 | 46.3 | -58.1 |
| | 3 | 50 | 11.1 | -13.7 | 12.5 | -15.3 | 15.4 | -18.9 | 17.0 | -20.8 | 18.6 | -22.9 | 22.2 | -27.2 | 24.1 | -29.5 | 26.0 | -32.0 | 30.2 | -37.1 | 32.4 | -39.8 | 34.6 | -42.5 | 44.5 | -54.5 |
| | 3 | 100 | 10.8 | -13.0 | 12.1 | -14.6 | 14.9 | -18.0 | 16.5 | -19.8 | 18.1 | -21.8 | 21.5 | -25.9 | 23.3 | -28.1 | 25.2 | -30.4 | 29.3 | -35.3 | 31.4 | -37.8 | 33.6 | -40.5 | 43.2 | -52.0 |
| Wall | 4 | 10 | 13.0 | -14.1 | 14.6 | -15.8 | 18.0 | -19.5 | 19.8 | -21.5 | 21.8 | -23.6 | 25.9 | -28.1 | 28.1 | -30.5 | 30.4 | -33.0 | 35.3 | -38.2 | 37.8 | -41.0 | 40.5 | -43.9 | 52.0 | -56.4 |
| | 4 | 20 | 12.4 | -13.5 | 13.9 | -15.1 | 17.2 | -18.7 | 18.9 | -20.6 | 20.8 | -22.6 | 24.7 | -26.9 | 26.8 | -29.2 | 29.0 | -31.6 | 33.7 | -36.7 | 36.1 | -39.3 | 38.7 | -42.1 | 49.6 | -54.1 |
| | 4 | 50 | 11.6 | -12.7 | 13.0 | -14.3 | 16.1 | -17.6 | 17.8 | -19.4 | 19.5 | -21.3 | 23.2 | -25.4 | 25.2 | -27.5 | 27.2 | -29.8 | 31.6 | -34.6 | 33.9 | -37.1 | 36.2 | -39.7 | 46.6 | -51.0 |
| | 4 | 100 | 11.1 | -12.2 | 12.4 | -13.6 | 15.3 | -16.8 | 16.9 | -18.5 | 18.5 | -20.4 | 22.0 | -24.2 | 23.9 | -26.3 | 25.9 | -28.4 | 30.0 | -33.0 | 32.2 | -35.4 | 34.4 | -37.8 | 44.2 | -48.6 |
| | 5 | 10 | 13.0 | -17.4 | 14.6 | -19.5 | 18.0 | -24.1 | 19.8 | -26.6 | 21.8 | -29.1 | 25.9 | -34.7 | 28.1 | -37.6 | 30.4 | -40.7 | 35.3 | -47.2 | 37.8 | -50.6 | 40.5 | -54.2 | 52.0 | -69.6 |
| | 5 | 20 | 12.4 | -16.2 | 13.9 | -18.2 | 17.2 | -22.5 | 18.9 | -24.8 | 20.8 | -27.2 | 24.7 | -32.4 | 26.8 | -35.1 | 29.0 | -38.0 | 33.7 | -44.0 | 36.1 | -47.2 | 38.7 | -50.5 | 49.6 | -64.9 |
| | 5 | 50 | 11.6 | -14.7 | 13.0 | -16.5 | 16.1 | -20.3 | 17.8 | -22.4 | 19.5 | -24.6 | 23.2 | -29.3 | 25.2 | -31.8 | 27.2 | -34.3 | 31.6 | -39.8 | 33.9 | -42.7 | 36.2 | -45.7 | 46.6 | -58.7 |
| | 5 | 100 | 11.1 | -13.5 | 12.4 | -15.1 | 15.3 | -18.7 | 16.9 | -20.6 | 18.5 | -22.6 | 22.0 | -26.9 | 23.9 | -29.2 | 25.9 | -31.6 | 30.0 | -36.7 | 32.2 | -39.3 | 34.4 | -42.1 | 44.2 | -54.1 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**Notes:**

a. The effective wind area shall be equal to the span length multiplied by an effective width. This width shall be permitted to be not be less than one-third the span length. For cladding fasteners, the effective wind area shall not be greater than the area that is tributary to an individual fastener.

b. For effective areas between those given above, the load may be interpolated; otherwise, use the load associated with the lower effective area.

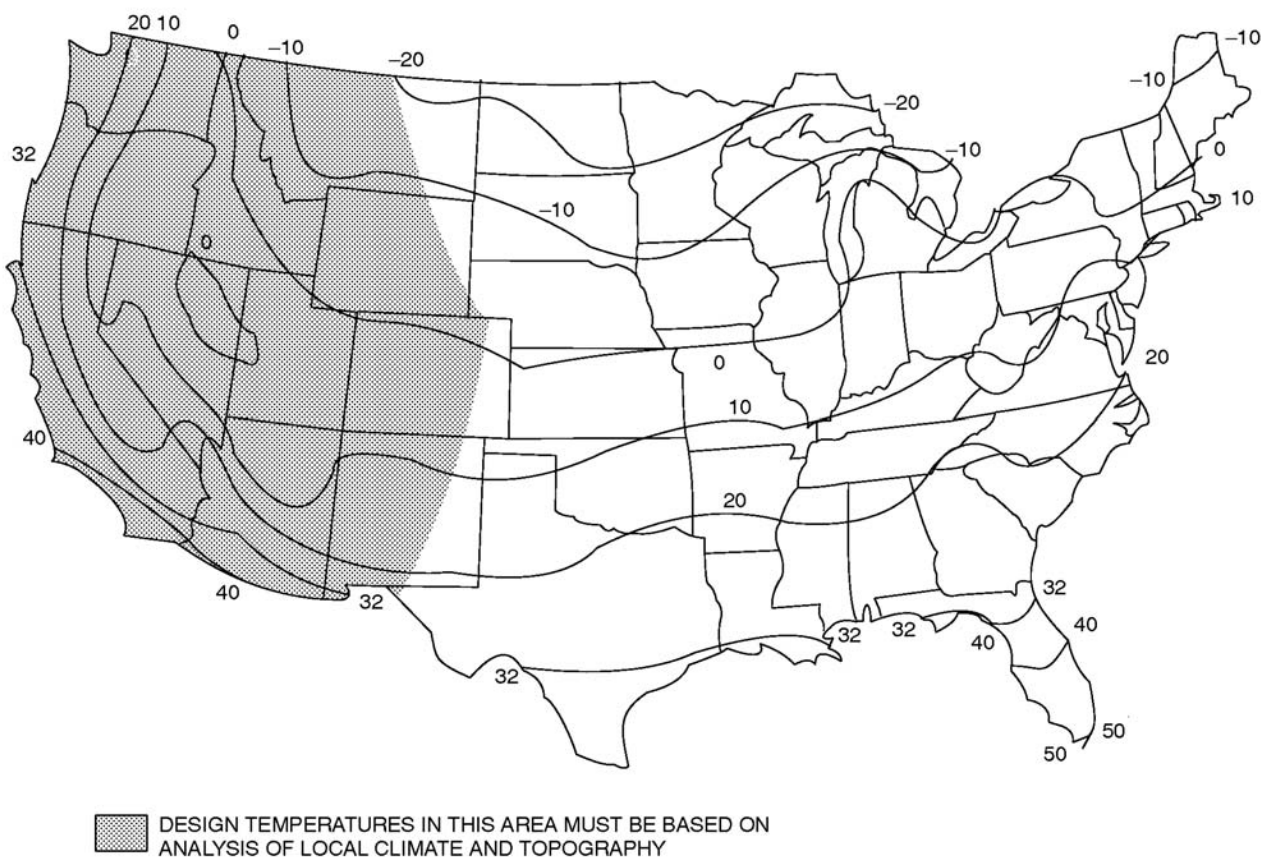
c. Table values shall be adjusted for height and exposure by multiplying by the adjustment coefficient in Table R301.2(3).

d. See Figure R301.2(7) for location of zones.

e. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the building surfaces.

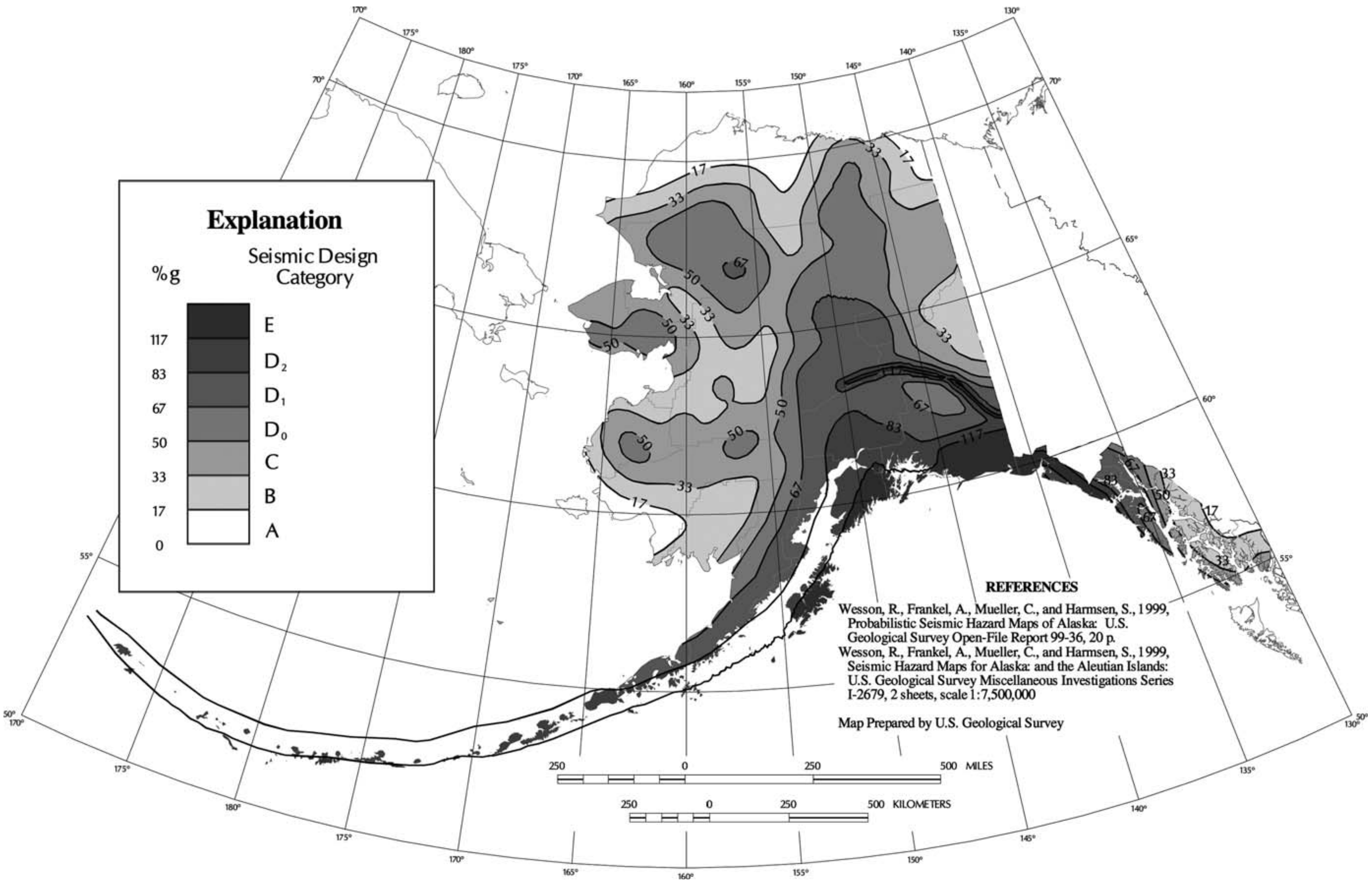
**TABLE R301.2(3)**
**HEIGHT AND EXPOSURE ADJUSTMENT COEFFICIENTS FOR TABLE R301.2(2)**

| MEAN ROOF HEIGHT | EXPOSURE | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | B | C | D |
| 15 | 1.00 | 1.21 | 1.47 |
| 20 | 1.00 | 1.29 | 1.55 |
| 25 | 1.00 | 1.35 | 1.61 |
| 30 | 1.00 | 1.40 | 1.66 |
| 35 | 1.05 | 1.45 | 1.70 |
| 40 | 1.09 | 1.49 | 1.74 |
| 45 | 1.12 | 1.53 | 1.78 |
| 50 | 1.16 | 1.56 | 1.81 |
| 55 | 1.19 | 1.59 | 1.84 |
| 60 | 1.22 | 1.62 | 1.87 |




For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

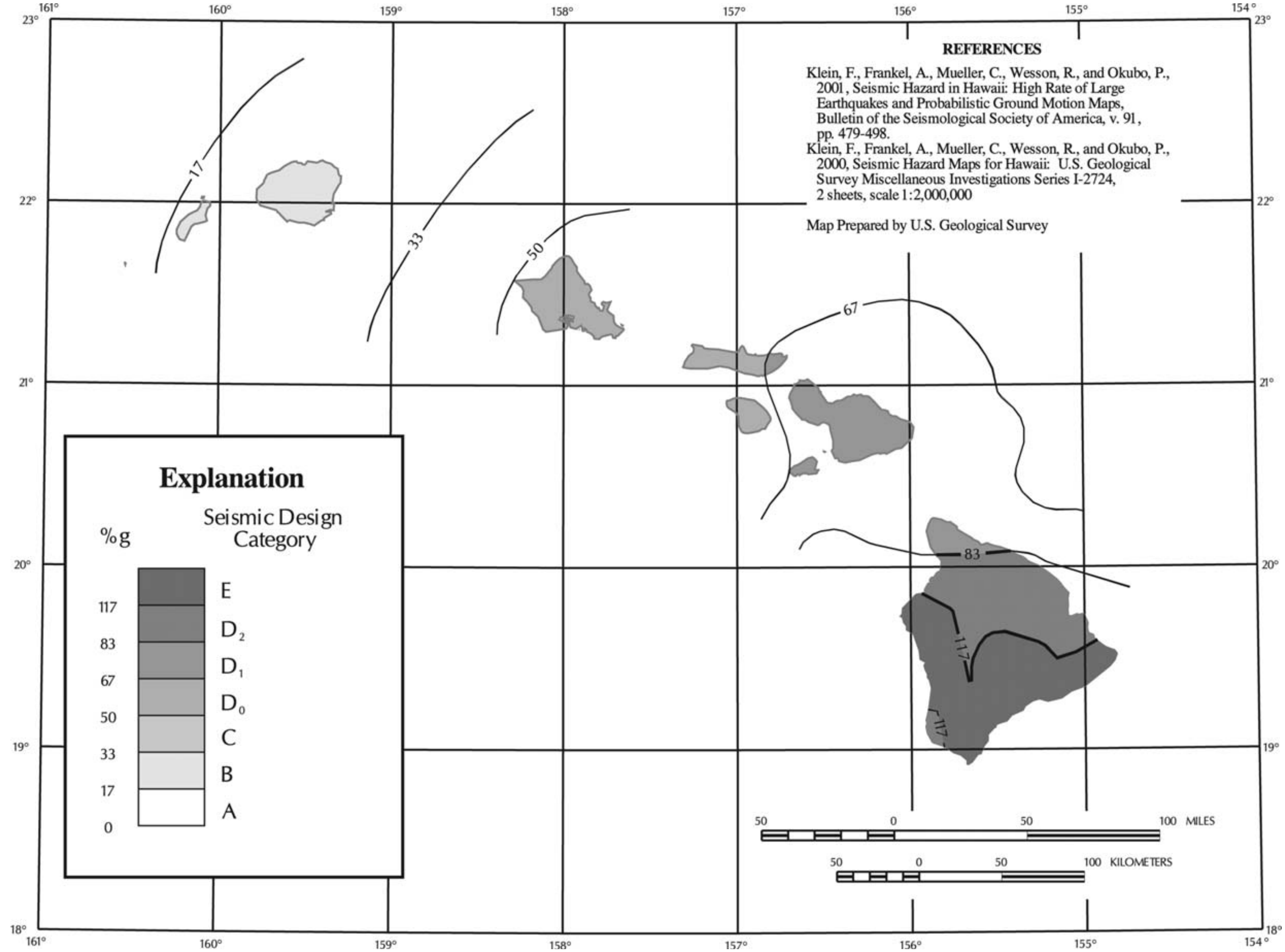
**FIGURE R301.2(1)**
**ISOLINES OF THE 97 1/2 PERCENT WINTER (DECEMBER, JANUARY AND FEBRUARY) DESIGN TEMPERATURES (°F)**




For SI: 1 mile = 1.61 km.

**FIGURE R301.2(2)**
**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES—SITE CLASS D**

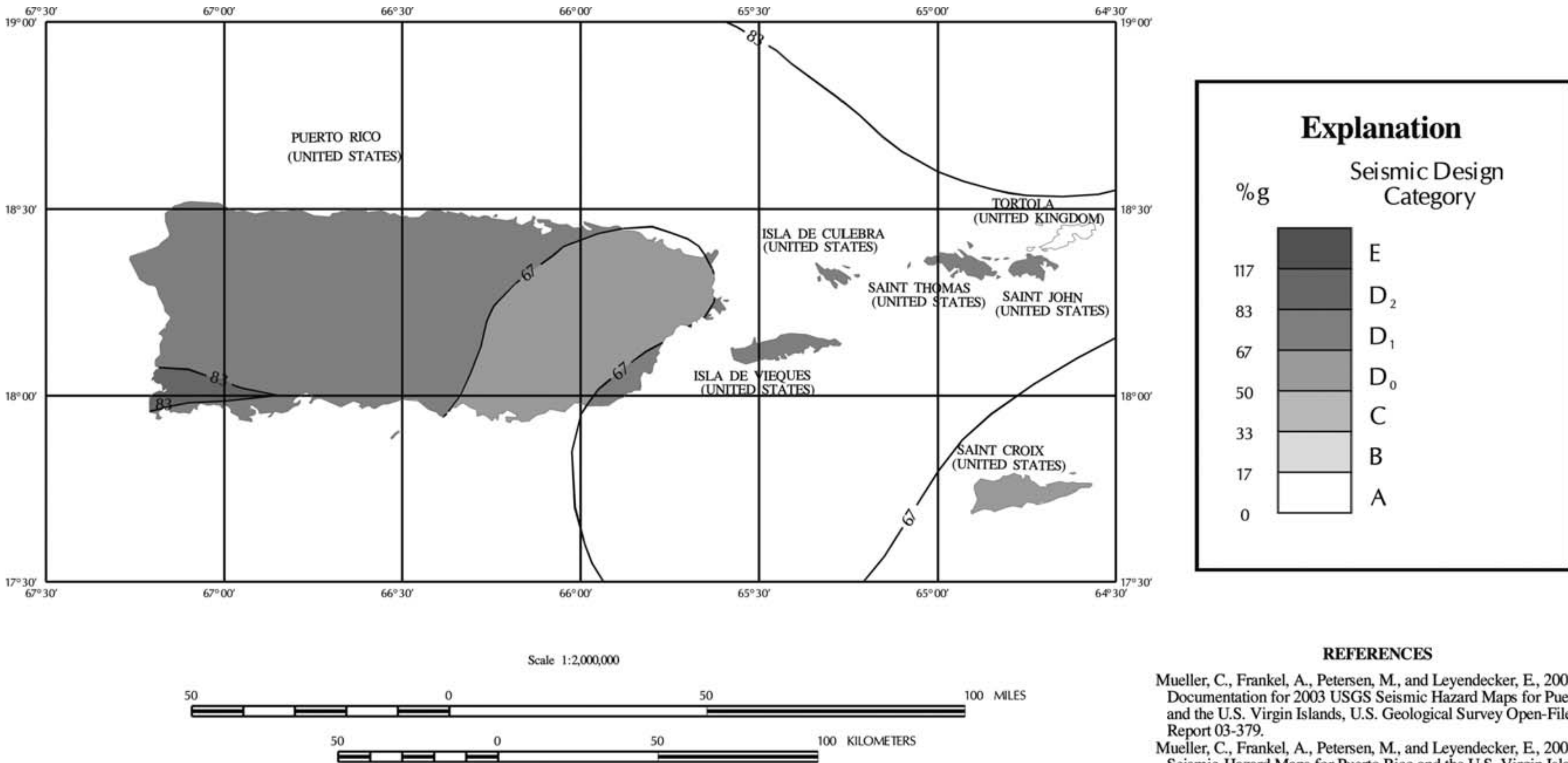
*(continued)*




For SI: 1 mile = 1.61 km.

**FIGURE R301.2(2)—continued**
**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES—SITE CLASS D**

*(continued)*




**REFERENCES**

Mueller, C., Frankel, A., Petersen, M., and Leyendecker, E., 2003, Documentation for 2003 USGS Seismic Hazard Maps for Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands, U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 03-379.

Mueller, C., Frankel, A., Petersen, M., and Leyendecker, E., 2004, Seismic-Hazard Maps for Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Island, Sheet 2 - 2% Probability of Exceedance in 50 Years for Peak Horizontal Acceleration and Horizontal Spectral Response Acceleration for 0.2, 0.3, and 1.0 Second Periods U.S. Geological Survey Geologic Investigation Series (in progress).

Map Prepared by U.S. Geological Survey

For SI: 1 mile = 1.61 km.

**FIGURE R301.2(2)—continued**
**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES—SITE CLASS D**

*(continued)*

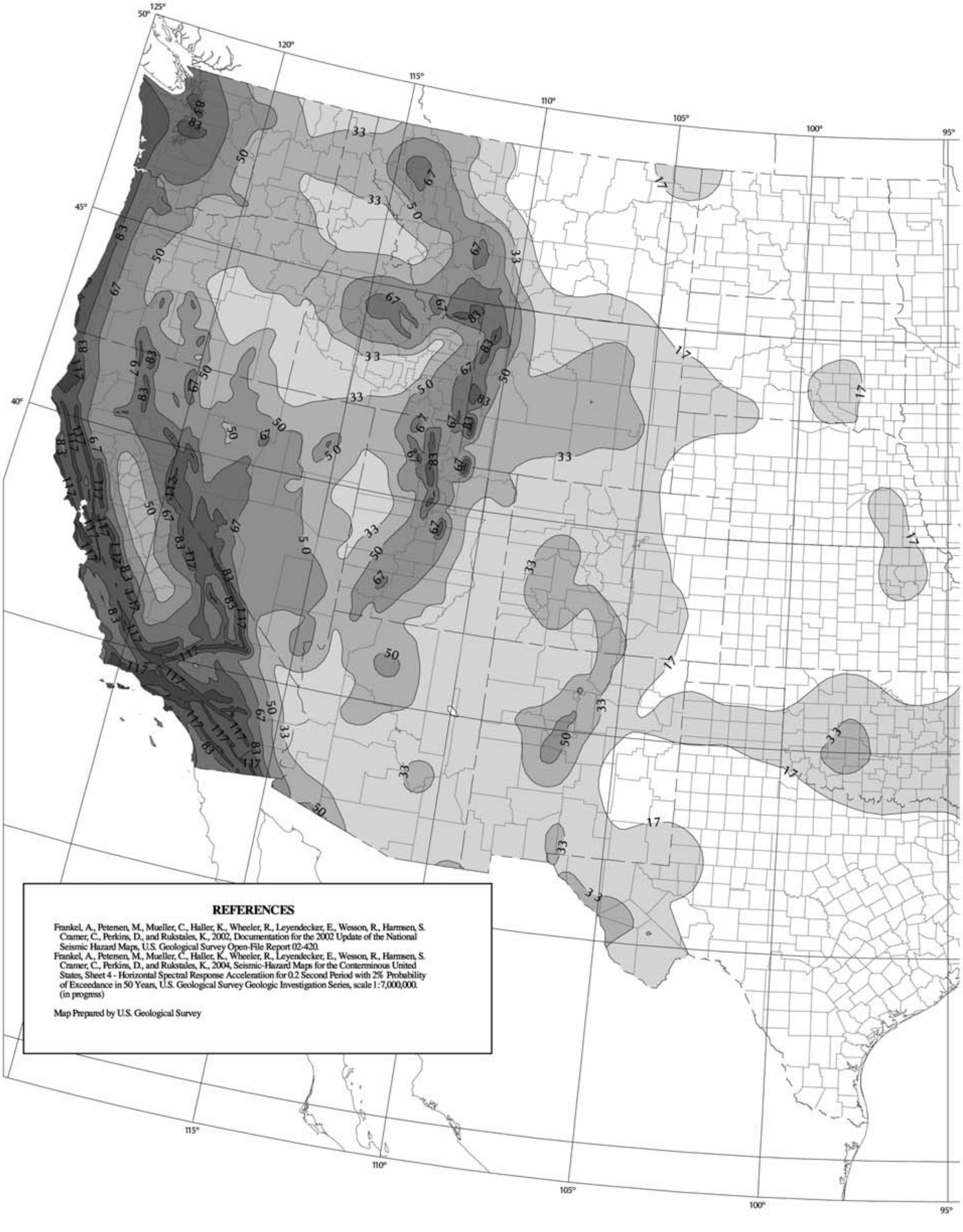



**FIGURE R301.2(2)—continued**
**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES—SITE CLASS D**

*(continued)*

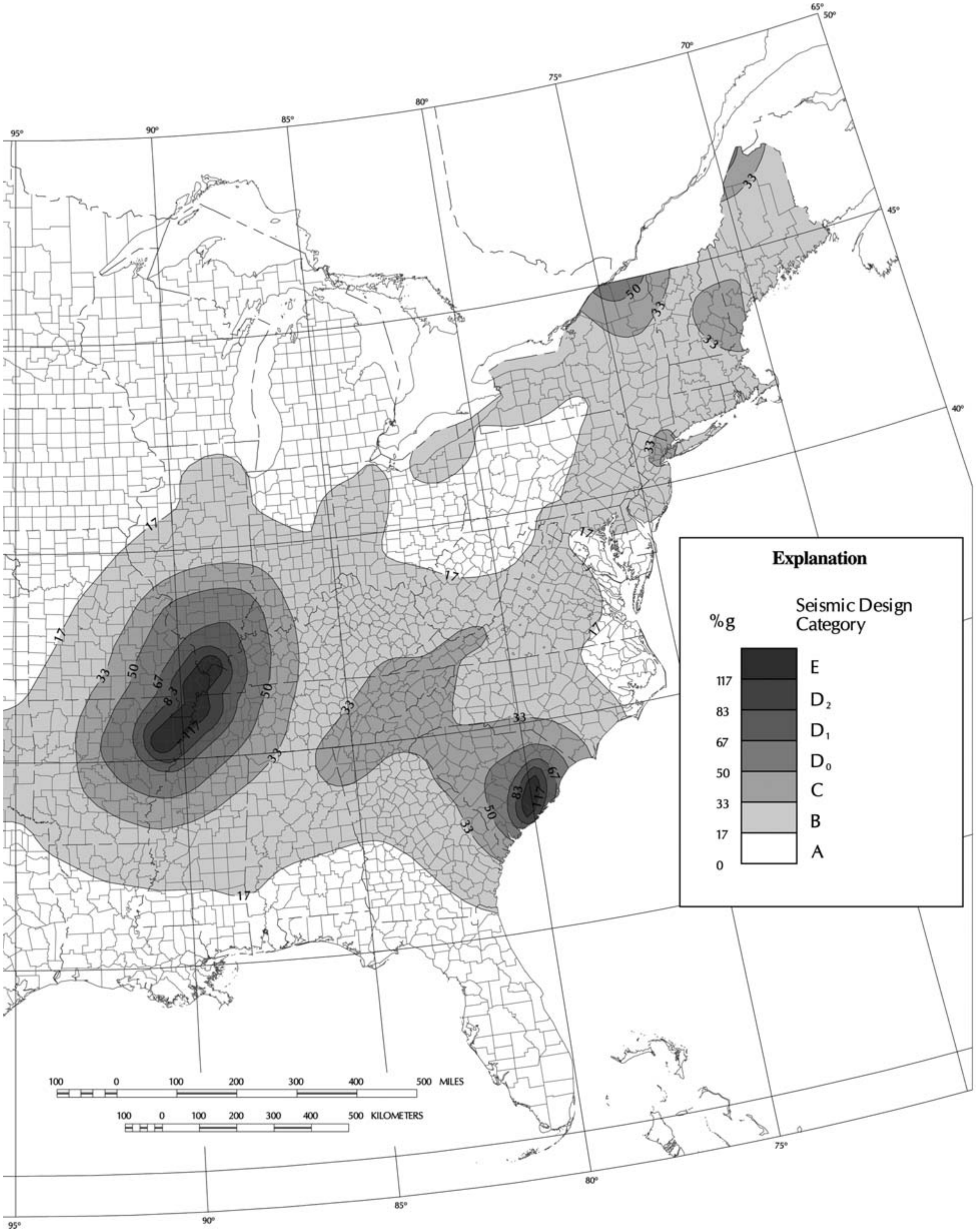
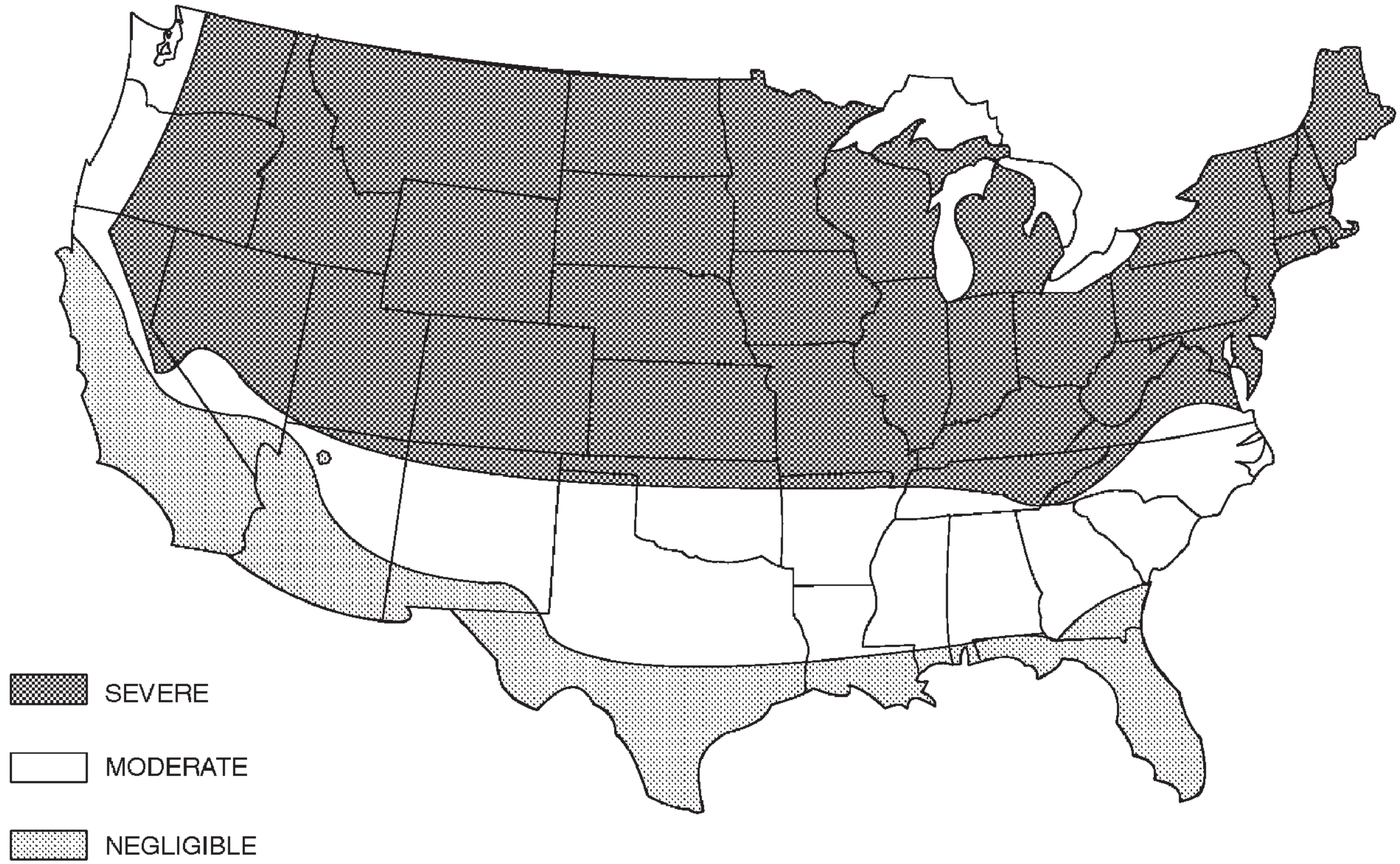



**FIGURE R301.2(2)—continued**
**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES—SITE CLASS D**




a. Alaska and Hawaii are classified as severe and negligible, respectively.

b. Lines defining areas are approximate only. Local conditions may be more or less severe than indicated by region classification. A severe classification is where weather conditions result in significant snowfall combined with extended periods during which there is little or no natural thawing causing deicing salts to be used extensively.

**FIGURE R301.2(3)**
**WEATHERING PROBABILITY MAP FOR CONCRETE**

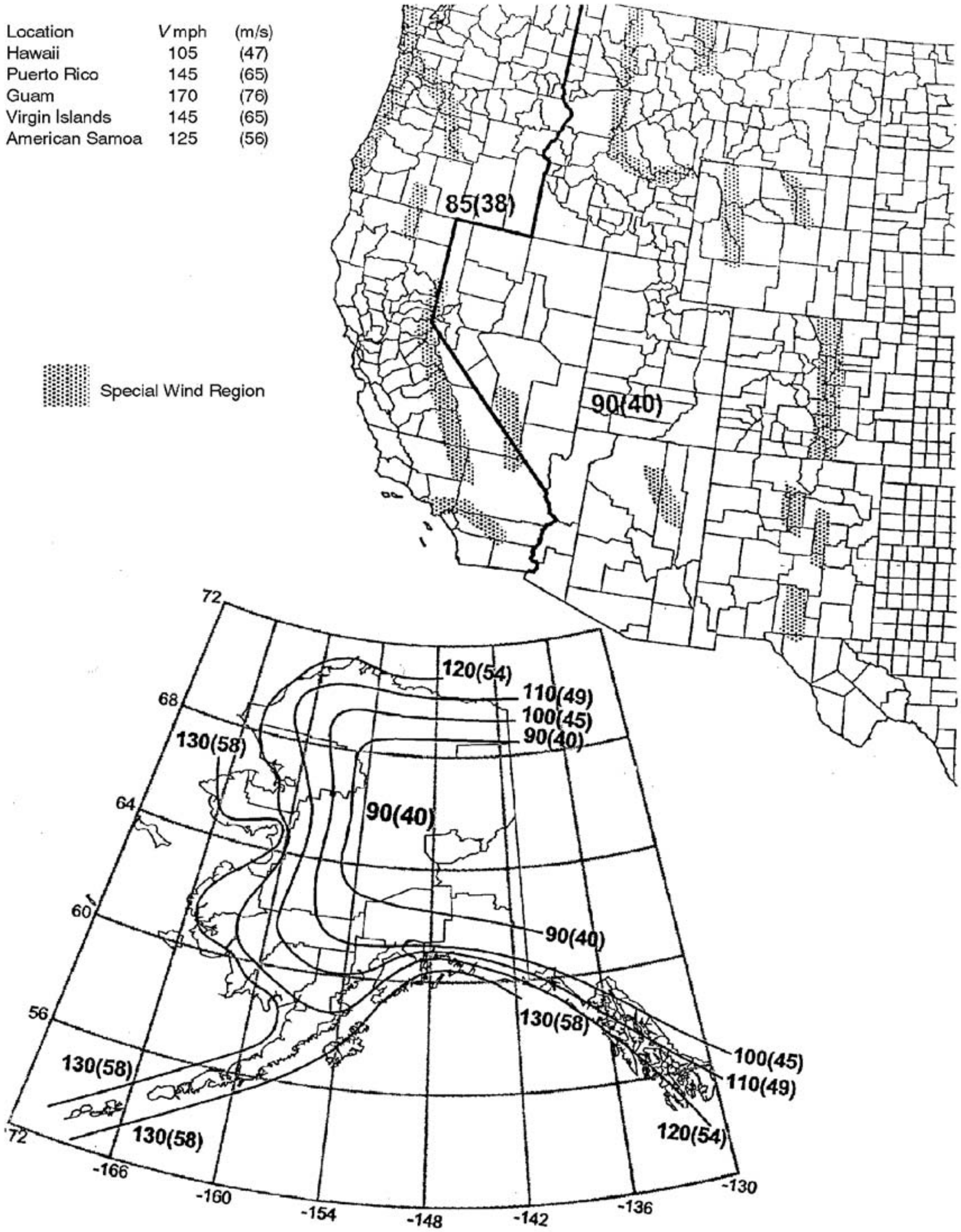
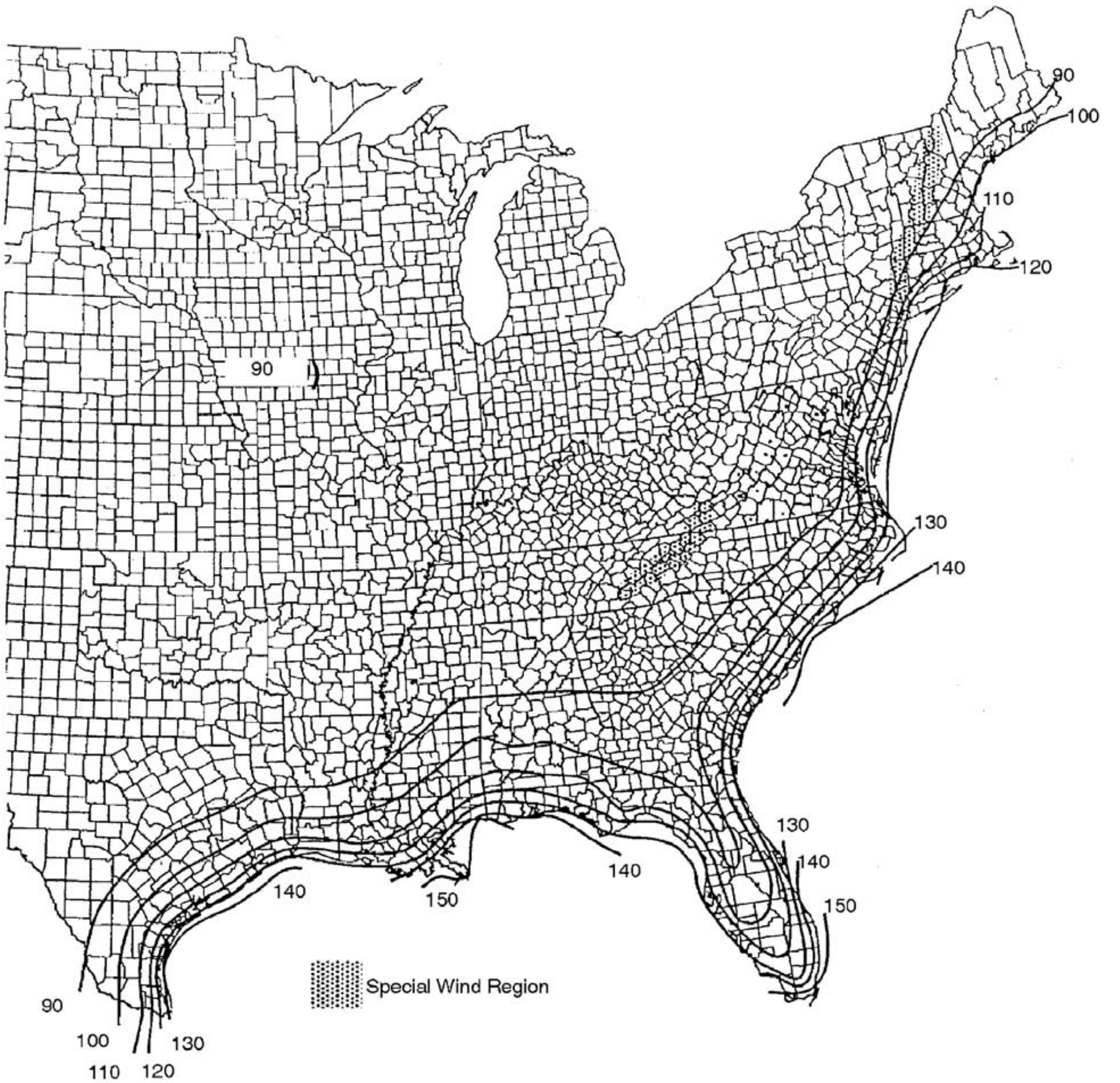



**FIGURE R301.2(4)**
**BASIC WIND SPEEDS FOR 50-YEAR MEAN RECURRENCE INTERVAL**

*(continued)*

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour at 33 feet above ground for Exposure C category.
b. Linear interpolation between wind contours is permitted.
c. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
d. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
e. Enlarged view of Eastern and Southern seaboards are on the following pages.




| Location | V mph |
|---|---|
| Hawaii | 105 |
| Puerto Rico | 145 |
| Guam | 170 |
| Virgin Islands | 145 |
| American Samoa | 125 |

**FIGURE R301.2(4)—continued**
**BASIC WIND SPEEDS FOR 50-YEAR MEAN RECURRENCE INTERVAL**

*(continued)*

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour at 33 feet above ground for Exposure C category.
b. Linear interpolation between wind contours is permitted.
c. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
d. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
e. Enlarged view of Eastern and Southern seaboards are on the following pages.

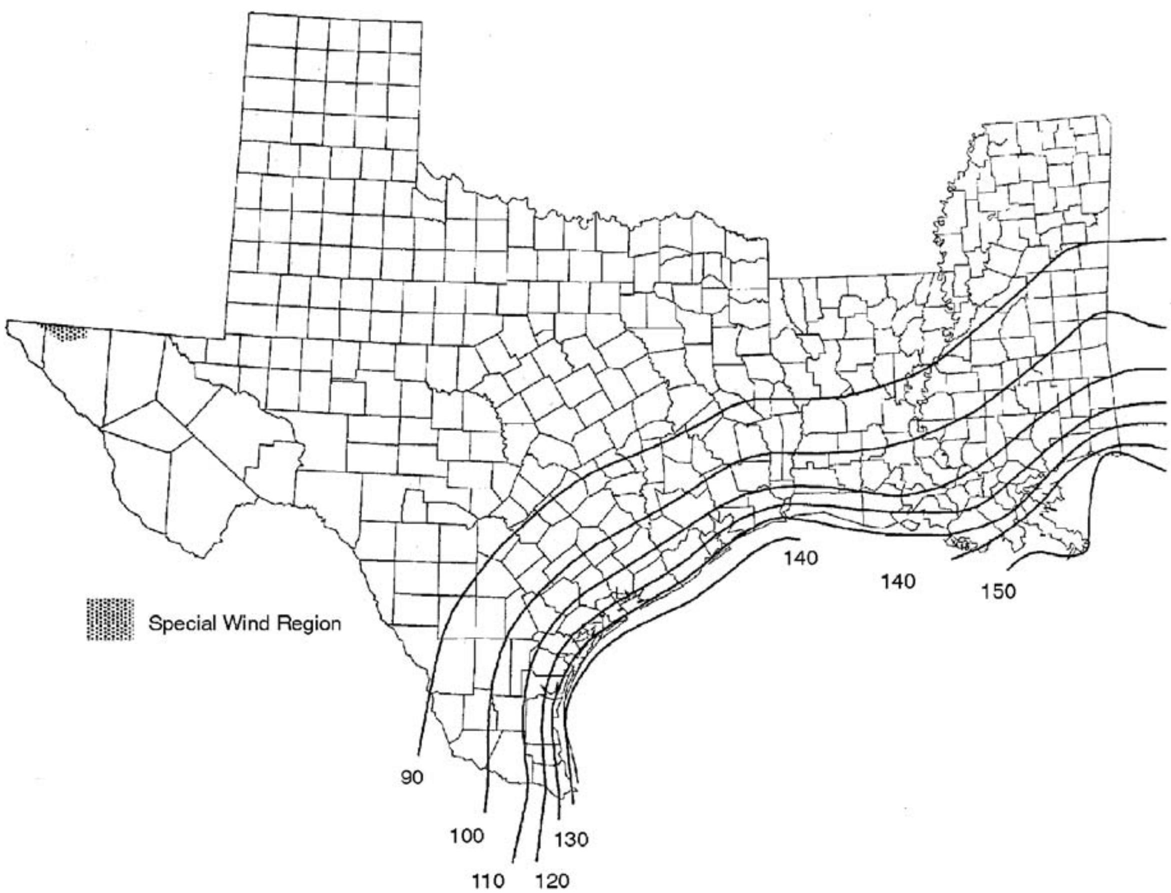



**FIGURE R301.2(4)—continued**
**BASIC WIND SPEEDS FOR 50-YEAR MEAN RECURRENCE INTERVAL**

*(continued)*

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour at 33 feet above ground for Exposure C category.
b. Linear interpolation between wind contours is permitted.
c. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
d. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.

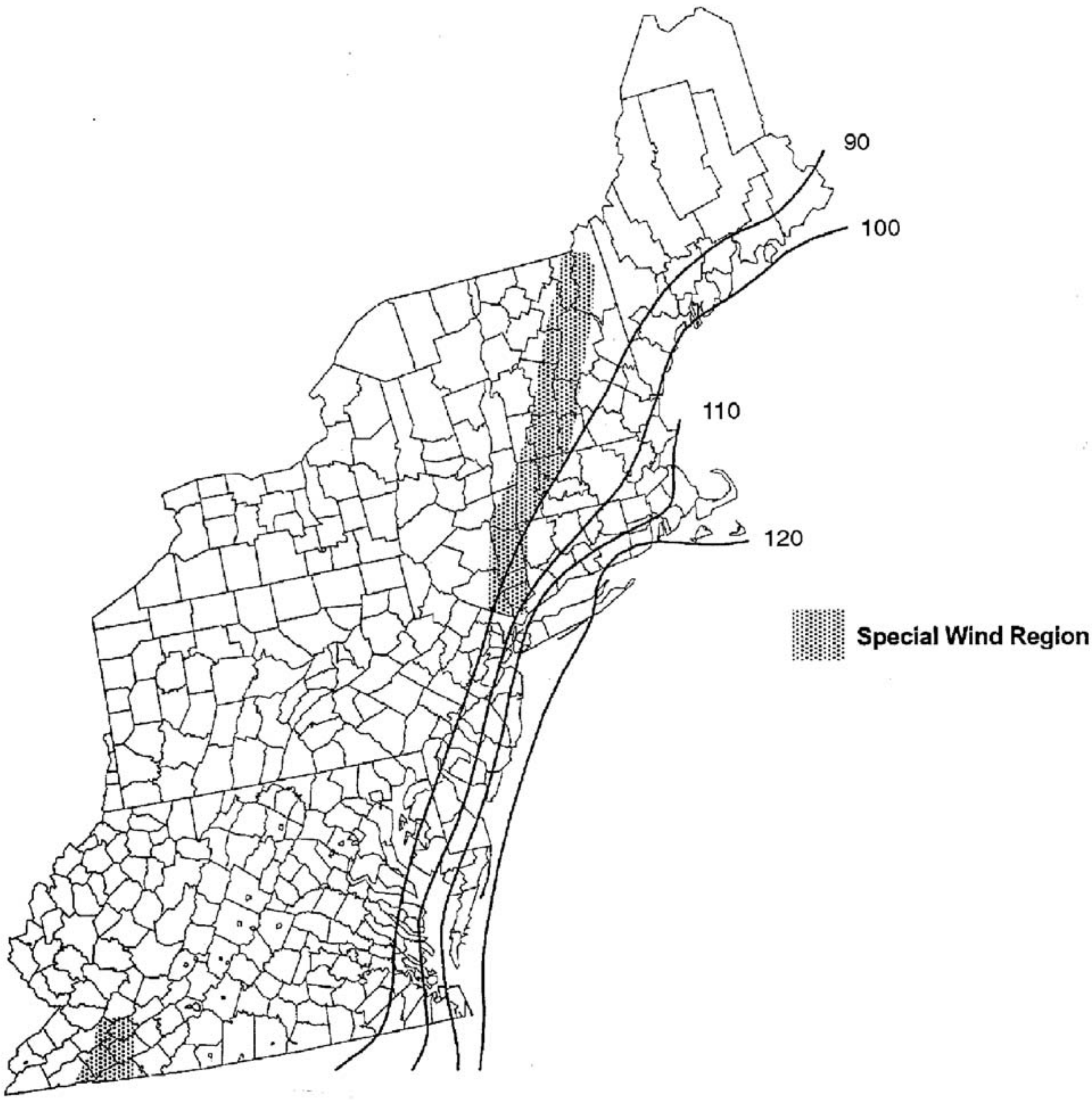



**FIGURE R301.2(4)—continued**
**BASIC WIND SPEEDS FOR 50-YEAR MEAN RECURRENCE INTERVAL**

*(continued)*

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour at 33 feet above ground for Exposure C category.

b. Linear interpolation between wind contours is permitted.

c. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.

d. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.

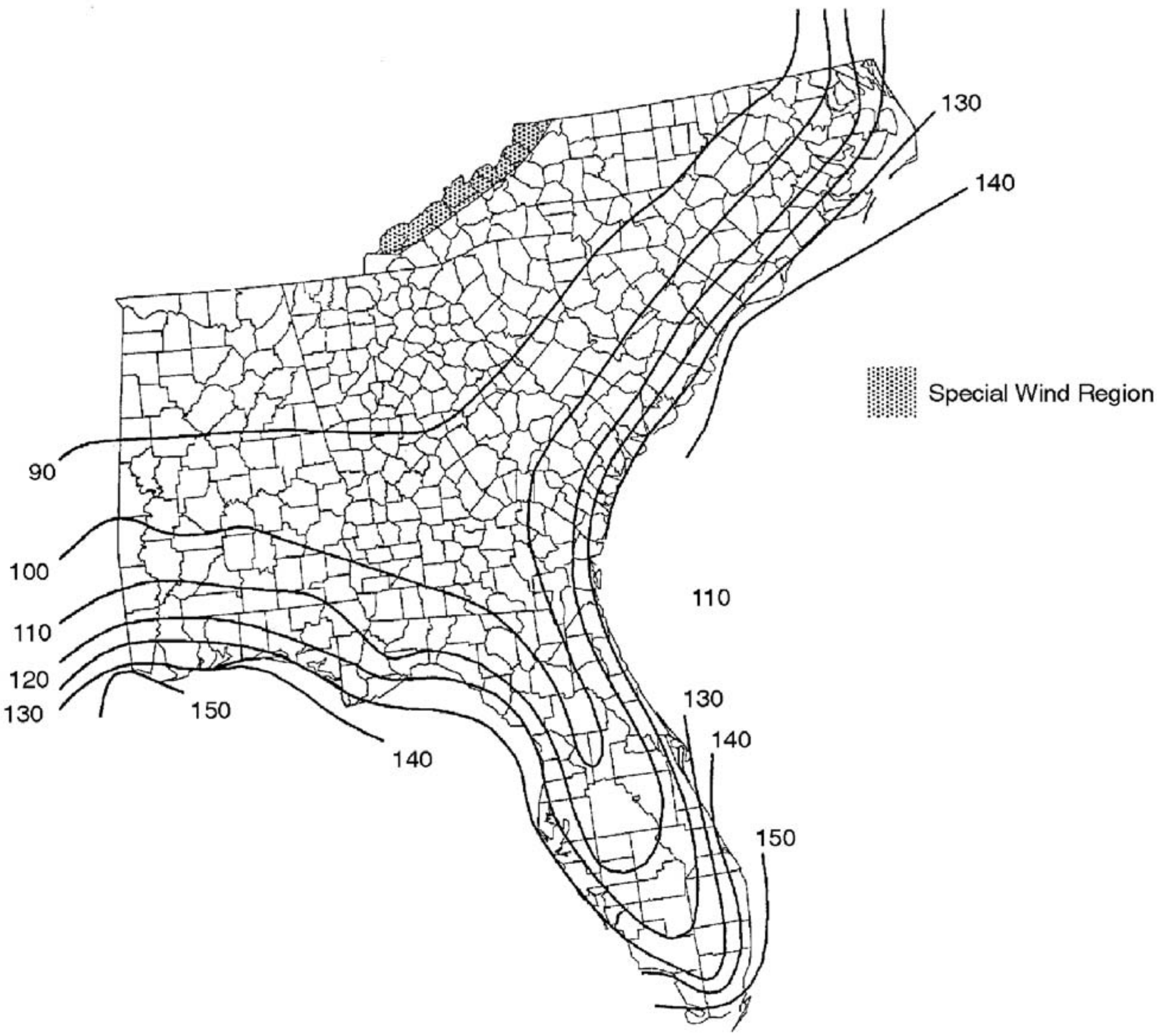
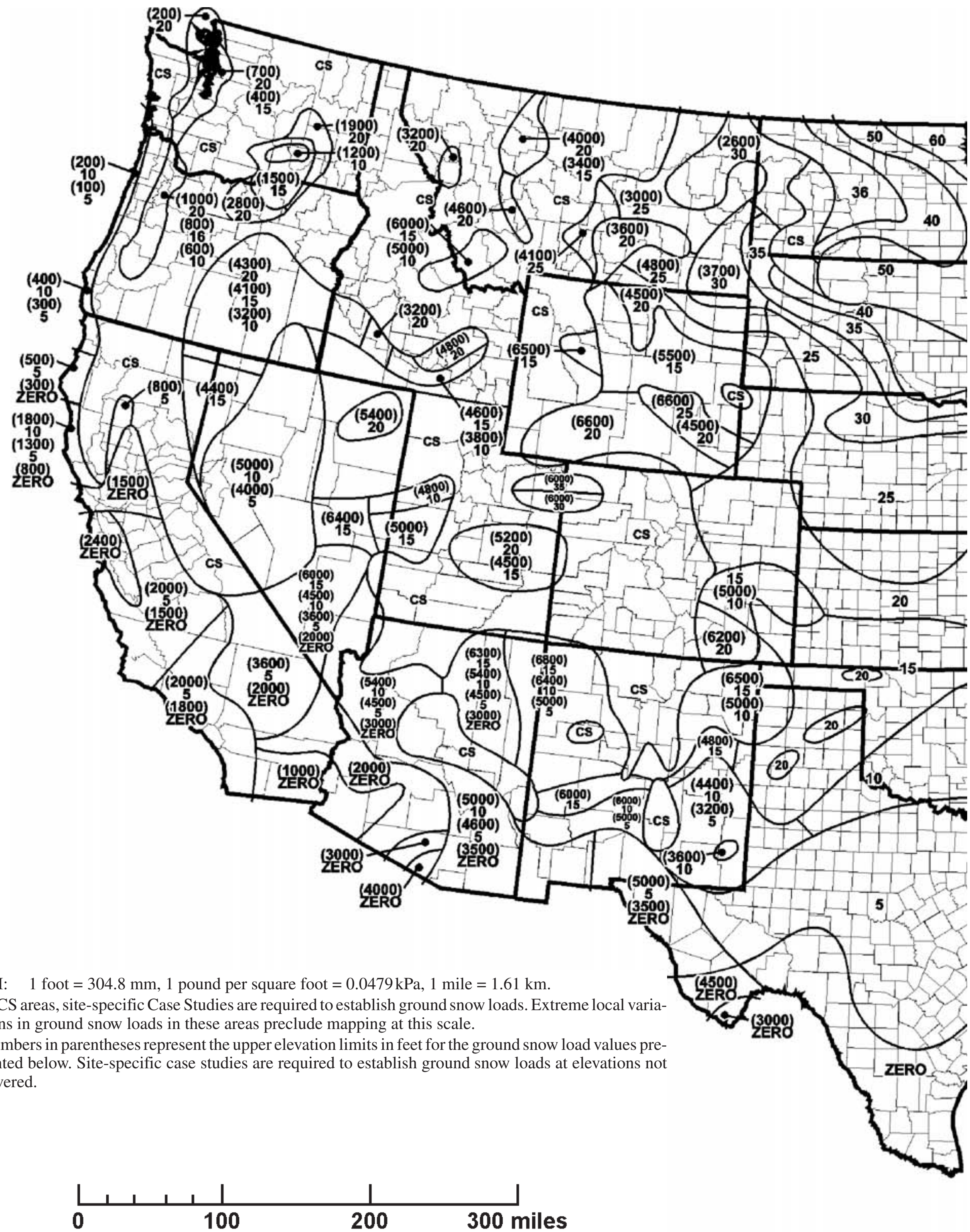



**FIGURE R301.2(4)—continued**
**BASIC WIND SPEEDS FOR 50-YEAR MEAN RECURRENCE INTERVAL**

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.
a. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour at 33 feet above ground for Exposure C category.
b. Linear interpolation between wind contours is permitted.
c. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
d. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile = 1.61 km.

a. In CS areas, site-specific Case Studies are required to establish ground snow loads. Extreme local variations in ground snow loads in these areas preclude mapping at this scale.

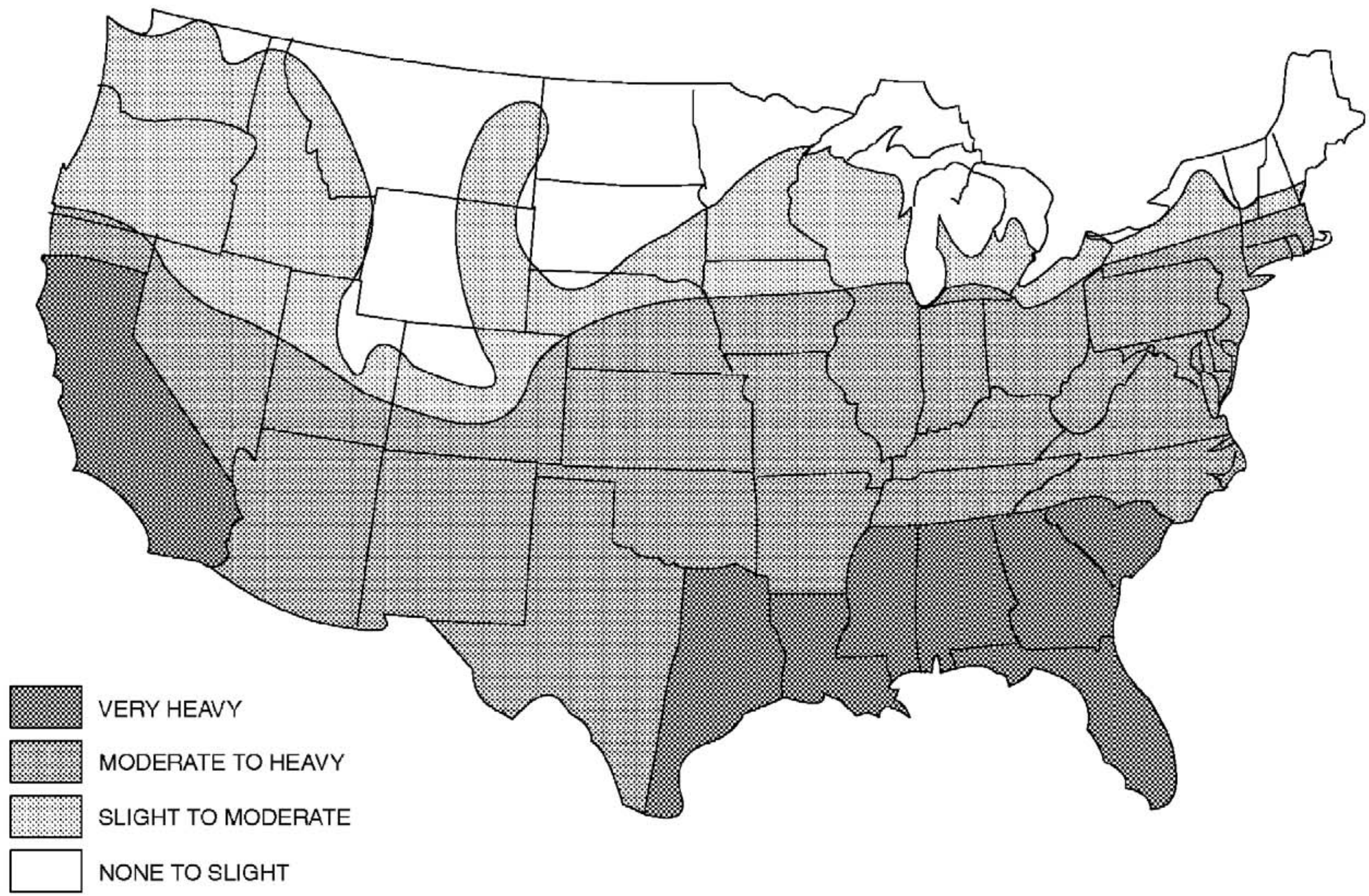
b. Numbers in parentheses represent the upper elevation limits in feet for the ground snow load values presented below. Site-specific case studies are required to establish ground snow loads at elevations not covered.

**FIGURE R301.2(5)**
**GROUND SNOW LOADS, $P_g$, FOR THE UNITED STATES (lb/ft$^2$)**

*(continued)*

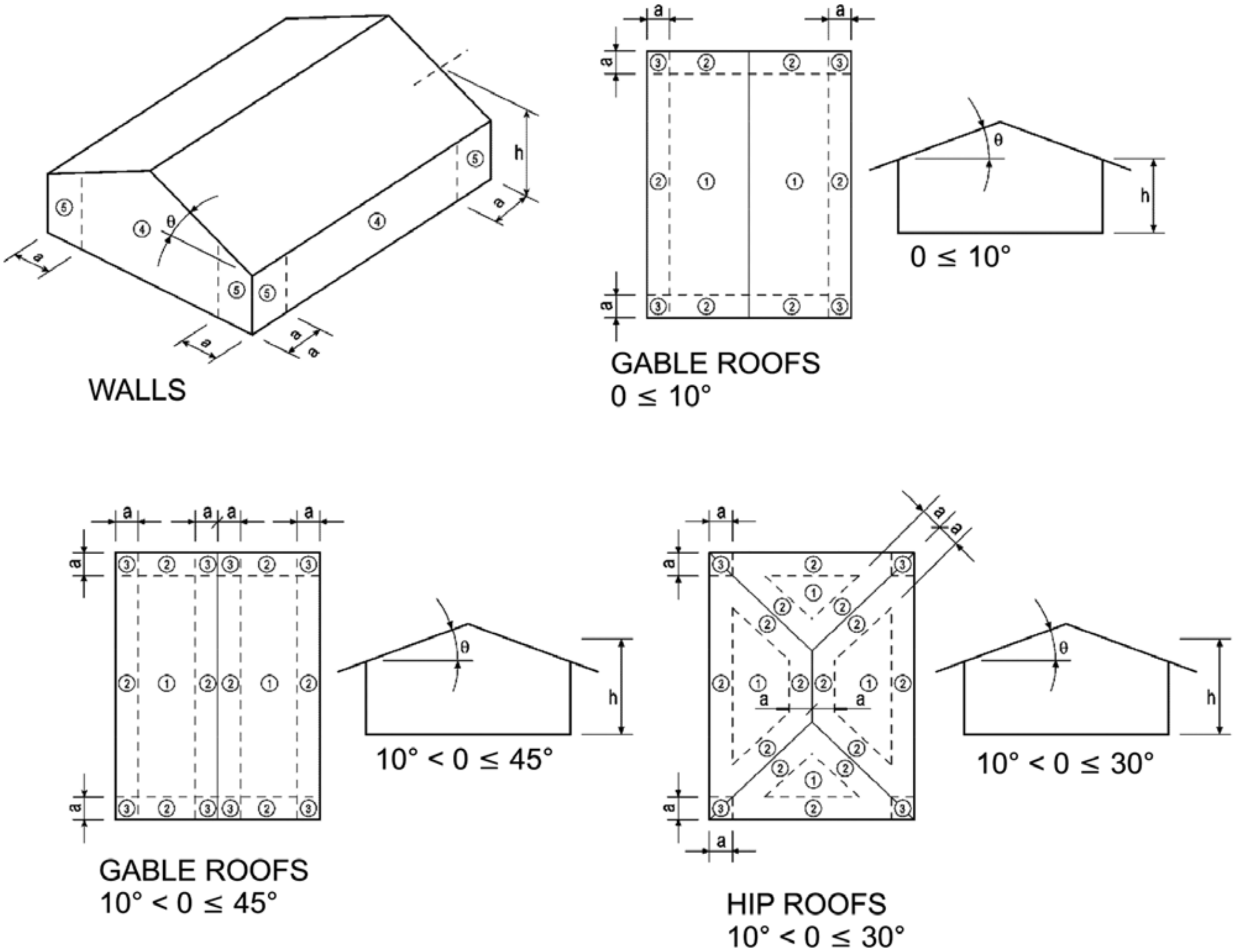

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**FIGURE R301.2(5)—continued**
**GROUND SNOW LOADS, $P_g$, FOR THE UNITED STATES ($lb/ft^2$)**




NOTE: Lines defining areas are approximate only. Local conditions may be more or less severe than indicated by the region classification.

**FIGURE R301.2(6)**
**TERMITE INFESTATION PROBABILITY MAP**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**Note:** a = 4 feet in all cases.

**FIGURE R301.2(7)**
**COMPONENT AND CLADDING PRESSURE ZONES**

**R301.2.1.2 Protection of openings.** Windows in buildings located in windborne debris regions shall have glazed openings protected from windborne debris. Glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of the Large Missile Test of ASTM E 1996 and ASTM E 1886 referenced therein. Garage door glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of an *approved* impact resisting standard or ANSI/DASMA 115.

**Exception:** Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11 mm) and a maximum span of 8 feet (2438 mm) shall be permitted for opening protection in one- and two-story buildings. Panels shall be precut and attached to the framing surrounding the opening containing the product with the glazed opening. Panels shall be predrilled as required for the anchorage method and shall be secured with the attachment hardware provided. Attachments shall be designed to resist the component and cladding loads determined in accordance with either Table R301.2(2) or ASCE 7, with the permanent corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building. Attachment in accordance with Table R301.2.1.2 is permitted for buildings with a mean roof height of 33 feet (10 058 mm) or less where windspeeds do not exceed 130 miles per hour (58 m/s).

**TABLE R301.2.1.2**
**WINDBORNE DEBRIS PROTECTION FASTENING SCHEDULE FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS[a, b, c, d]**

| FASTENER TYPE | FASTENER SPACING (inches)[a, b] Panel span ≤ 4 feet | 4 feet < panel span ≤ 6 feet | 6 feet < panel span ≤ 8 feet |
|---|---|---|---|
| No. 8 wood screw based anchor with 2-inch embedment length | 16 | 10 | 8 |
| No. 10 wood screw based anchor with 2-inch embedment length | 16 | 12 | 9 |
| $^1/_4$-inch lag screw based anchor with 2-inch embedment length | 16 | 16 | 16 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is based on 130 mph wind speeds and a 33-foot mean roof height.

b. Fasteners shall be installed at opposing ends of the wood structural panel. Fasteners shall be located a minimum of 1 inch from the edge of the panel.

c. Anchors shall penetrate through the exterior wall covering with an embedment length of 2 inches minimum into the building frame. Fasteners shall be located a minimum of $2^1/_2$ inches from the edge of concrete block or concrete.

d. Where panels are attached to masonry or masonry/stucco, they shall be attached using vibration-resistant anchors having a minimum ultimate withdrawal capacity of 1500 pounds.

**R301.2.1.3 Wind speed conversion.** When referenced documents are based on fastest mile wind speeds, the three-second gust basic wind speeds, $V_{3s}$, of Figure R301.2(4) shall be converted to fastest mile wind speeds, $V_{fm}$, using Table R301.2.1.3.

**R301.2.1.4 Exposure category.** For each wind direction considered, an exposure category that adequately reflects the characteristics of ground surface irregularities shall be determined for the site at which the building or structure is to be constructed. For a site located in the transition zone between categories, the category resulting in the largest wind forces shall apply. Account shall be taken of variations in ground surface roughness that arise from natural topography and vegetation as well as from constructed features. For a site where multiple detached one- and two-family dwellings, *townhouses* or other structures are to be constructed as part of a subdivision, master-planned community, or otherwise designated as a developed area by the authority having jurisdiction, the exposure category for an individual structure shall be based upon the site conditions that will exist at the time when all adjacent structures on the site have been constructed, provided their construction is expected to begin within one year of the start of construction for the structure for which the exposure category is determined. For any given wind direction, the exposure in which a specific building or other structure is sited shall be assessed as being one of the following categories:

1. Exposure A. Large city centers with at least 50 percent of the buildings having a height in excess of 70 feet (21 336 mm). Use of this exposure category shall be limited to those areas for which terrain representative of Exposure A prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of at least 0.5 mile (0.8 km) or 10 times the height of the building or other structure, whichever is greater. Possible channeling effects or increased velocity pressures due to the building or structure being located in the wake of adjacent buildings shall be taken into account.

2. Exposure B. Urban and suburban areas, wooded areas, or other terrain with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family dwellings or larger. Exposure B shall be assumed unless the site meets the definition of another type exposure.

3. Exposure C. Open terrain with scattered obstructions, including surface undulations or other irregularities, having heights generally less than 30 feet (9144 mm) extending more than 1,500 feet (457 m) from the building site in any quadrant. This exposure shall also apply to any building located within Exposure B type terrain where the building is directly adjacent to open areas of Exposure C type terrain in any quadrant for a distance of more than 600 feet (183 m). This category includes flat open country, grasslands and shorelines in hurricane prone regions.

4. Exposure D. Flat, unobstructed areas exposed to wind flowing over open water (excluding shorelines in hurricane prone regions) for a distance of at least 1 mile (1.61 km). Shorelines in Exposure D include inland waterways, the Great Lakes, and coastal areas of California, Oregon, Washington and Alaska. This exposure shall apply only to those buildings and other structures exposed to the wind coming from over the water. Exposure D extends inland from the shoreline a distance of 1500 feet (457 m) or 10 times the height of the building or structure, whichever is greater.

**TABLE R301.2.1.3**
**EQUIVALENT BASIC WIND SPEEDS[a]**

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3-second gust, $V_{3s}$ | 85 | 90 | 100 | 105 | 110 | 120 | 125 | 130 | 140 | 145 | 150 | 160 | 170 |
| Fastest mile, $V_{fm}$ | 71 | 76 | 85 | 90 | 95 | 104 | 109 | 114 | 123 | 128 | 133 | 142 | 152 |

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Linear interpolation is permitted.

**R301.2.1.5 Topographic wind effects.** In areas designated in Table R301.2(1) as having local historical data documenting structural damage to buildings caused by wind speed-up at isolated hills, ridges and escarpments that are abrupt changes from the general topography of the area, topographic wind effects shall be considered in the design of the building in accordance with Section R301.2.1.5.1 or in accordance with the provisions of ASCE 7. See Figure R301.2.1.5.1(1) for topographic features for wind speed-up effect.

In these designated areas, topographic wind effects shall apply only to buildings sited on the top half of an isolated hill, ridge or escarpment where all of the following conditions exist:

1. The average slope of the top half of the hill, ridge or escarpment is 10 percent or greater.
2. The hill, ridge or escarpment is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater in height for Exposure B, 30 feet (9144 mm) or greater in height for Exposure C, and 15 feet (4572 mm) or greater in height for Exposure D.
3. The hill, ridge or escarpment is isolated or unobstructed by other topographic features of similar height in the upwind direction for a distance measured from its high point of 100 times its height or 2 miles, whichever is less. See Figure R301.2.1.5.1(3) for upwind obstruction.
4. The hill, ridge or escarpment protrudes by a factor of two or more above the height of other upwind topographic features located in any quadrant within a radius of 2 miles measured from its high point.

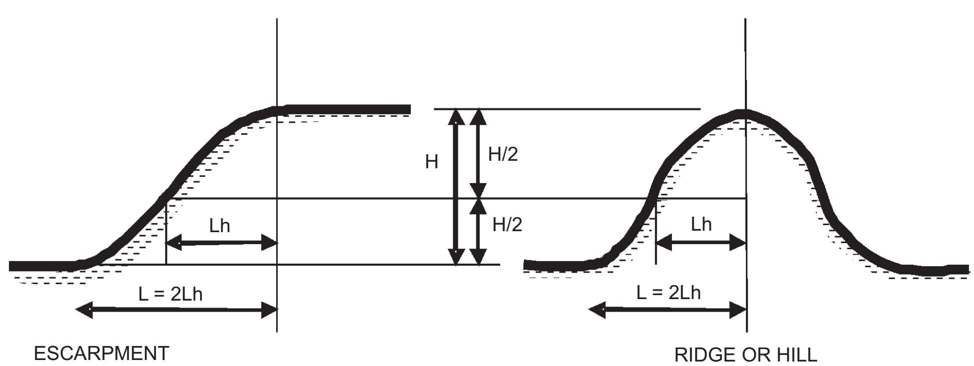
**R301.2.1.5.1 Simplified topographic wind speed-up method.** As an alternative to the ASCE 7 topographic wind provisions, the provisions of Section R301.2.1.5.1 shall be permitted to be used to design for wind speed-up effects, where required by Section R301.2.1.5.

Structures located on the top half of isolated hills, ridges or escarpments meeting the conditions of Section R301.2.1.5 shall be designed for an increased basic wind speed as determined by Table R301.2.1.5.1. On the high side of an escarpment, the increased basic wind speed shall extend horizontally downwind from the edge of the escarpment 1.5 times the horizontal length of the upwind slope (1.5L) or 6 times the height of the escarpment (6H), whichever is greater. See Figure R301.2.1.5.1(2) for where wind speed increase is applied.

**TABLE R301.2.1.5.1**
**BASIC WIND MODIFICATION FOR TOPOGRAPHIC WIND EFFECT**

| BASIC WIND SPEED FROM FIGURE R301.2(4) (mph) | AVERAGE SLOPE OF THE TOP HALF OF HILL, RIDGE OR ESCARPMENT (percent) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0.10 | 0.125 | 0.15 | 0.175 | 0.20 | 0.23 | 0.25 or greater |
| | Required basic wind speed-up, modified for topographic wind speed up (mph) | | | | | | |
| 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 110 | 110 | 110 | 120 |
| 90 | 100 | 100 | 110 | 110 | 120 | 120 | 120 |
| 100 | 110 | 120 | 120 | 130 | 130 | 130 | 140 |
| 110 | 120 | 130 | 130 | 140 | 140 | 150 | 150 |
| 120 | 140 | 140 | 150 | 150 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 130 | 150 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.




Note: H/2 determines the measurement point for Lh. L is twice Lh.

**FIGURE R301.2.1.5.1(1)**
**TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES FOR WIND SPEED-UP EFFECT**

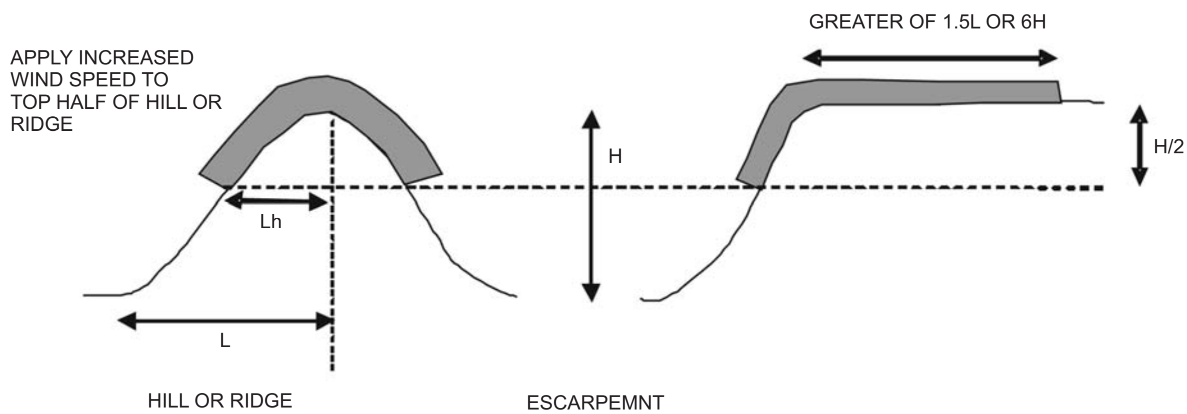



**FIGURE R301.2.1.5.1(2)**
**ILLUSTRATION OF WHERE ON A TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURE, WIND SPEED INCREASE IS APPLIED**

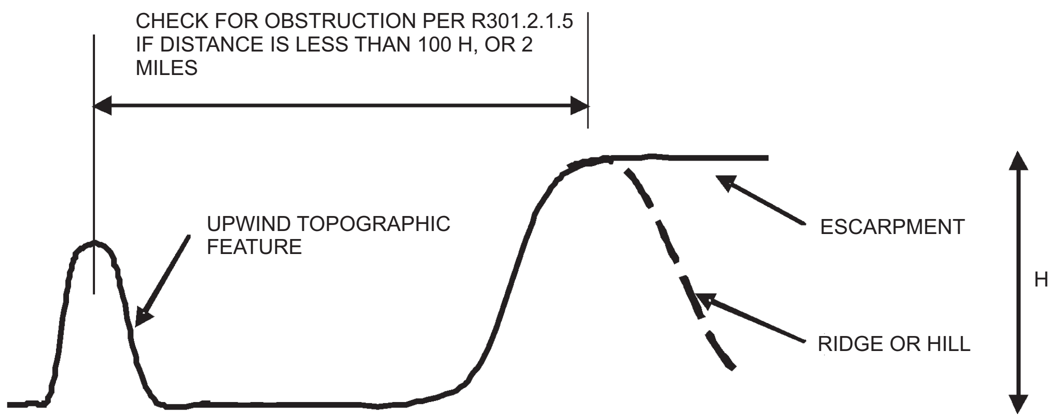



**FIGURE R301.2.1.5.1(3)**
**ILLUSTRATION OF UPWIND OBSTRUCTION**

**R301.2.2 Seismic provisions.** The seismic provisions of this code shall apply to buildings constructed in Seismic Design Categories C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, as determined in accordance with this section.

**Exception:** Detached one- and two-family *dwellings* located in Seismic Design Category C are exempt from the seismic requirements of this code.

**R301.2.2.1 Determination of seismic design category.** Buildings shall be assigned a seismic design category in accordance with Figure R301.2(2).

**R301.2.2.1.1 Alternate determination of seismic design category.** The Seismic Design Categories and corresponding Short Period Design Spectral Response Accelerations, $S_{DS}$ shown in Figure R301.2(2) are based on soil Site Class D, as defined in Section 1613.5.2 of the *International Building Code*. If soil conditions are other than Site Class D, the Short Period Design Spectral Response Accelerations, $S_{DS}$, for a site can be determined according to Section 1613.5 of the *International Building Code*. The value of $S_{DS}$ determined according to Section 1613.5 of the *International Building Code* is permitted to be used to set the seismic design category according to Table R301.2.2.1.1, and to interpolate between values in Tables R602.10.1.2(2), R603.9.2(1) and other seismic design requirements of this code.

**TABLE R301.2.2.1.1**
**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY DETERMINATION**

| CALCULATED $S_{DS}$ | SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY |
|---|---|
| $S_{DS} \le 0.17g$ | A |
| $0.17g < S_{DS} \le 0.33g$ | B |
| $0.33g < S_{DS} \le 0.50g$ | C |
| $0.50g < S_{DS} \le 0.67g$ | $D_0$ |
| $0.67g < S_{DS} \le 0.83g$ | $D_1$ |
| $0.83g < S_{DS} \le 1.17g$ | $D_2$ |
| $1.17g < S_{Ds}$ | E |

**R301.2.2.1.2 Alternative determination of Seismic Design Category E.** Buildings located in Seismic Design Category E in accordance with Figure R301.2(2) are permitted to be reclassified as being in Seismic Design Category $D_2$ provided one of the following is done:

1. A more detailed evaluation of the seismic design category is made in accordance with the provisions and maps of the *International Building Code*. Buildings located in Seismic Design Category E per Table R301.2.2.1.1, but located in Seismic Design Category D per the *International Building Code*, may be designed using the Seismic Design Category $D_2$ requirements of this code.
2. Buildings located in Seismic Design Category E that conform to the following additional restrictions are permitted to be constructed in accordance with the provisions for Seismic Design Category $D_2$ of this code:
   2.1. All exterior shear wall lines or *braced wall panels* are in one plane vertically from the foundation to the uppermost story.
   2.2. Floors shall not cantilever past the exterior walls.
   2.3. The building is within all of the requirements of Section R301.2.2.2.5 for being considered as regular.

**R301.2.2.2 Seismic Design Category C.** Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C shall conform to the requirements of this section.

**R301.2.2.2.1 Weights of materials.** Average dead loads shall not exceed 15 pounds per square foot (720 Pa) for the combined roof and ceiling assemblies (on a horizontal projection) or 10 pounds per square foot (480 Pa) for floor assemblies, except as further limited by Section R301.2.2. Dead loads for walls above *grade* shall not exceed:

1. Fifteen pounds per square foot (720 Pa) for exterior light-frame wood walls.
2. Fourteen pounds per square foot (670 Pa) for exterior light-frame cold-formed steel walls.
3. Ten pounds per square foot (480 Pa) for interior light-frame wood walls.
4. Five pounds per square foot (240 Pa) for interior light-frame cold-formed steel walls.
5. Eighty pounds per square foot (3830 Pa) for 8-inch-thick (203 mm) masonry walls.
6. Eighty-five pounds per square foot (4070 Pa) for 6-inch-thick (152 mm) concrete walls.
7. Ten pounds per square foot (480 Pa) for SIP walls.

**Exceptions:**

1. Roof and ceiling dead loads not exceeding 25 pounds per square foot (1190 Pa) shall be permitted provided the wall bracing amounts in Chapter 6 are increased in accordance with Table R301.2.2.2.1.
2. Light-frame walls with stone or masonry veneer shall be permitted in accordance with the provisions of Sections R702.1 and R703.
3. Fireplaces and chimneys shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 10.

**TABLE R301.2.2.2.1**
**WALL BRACING ADJUSTMENT FACTORS BY ROOF COVERING DEAD LOAD[a]**

| WALL SUPPORTING | ROOF/CEILING DEAD LOAD | |
|---|---|---|
| | 15 psf or less | 25 psf |
| Roof only | 1.0 | 1.2 |
| Roof plus one or two stories | 1.0 | 1.1 |

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

**R301.2.2.2.2 Stone and masonry veneer.** Anchored stone and masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Sections R702.1 and R703.

**R301.2.2.2.3 Masonry construction.** Masonry construction shall comply with the requirements of Section R606.11.2.

**R301.2.2.2.4 Concrete construction.** Detached one- and two-family *dwellings* with exterior above-*grade* concrete walls shall comply with the requirements of Section R611, PCA 100 or shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318. *Townhouses* with above-*grade* exterior concrete walls shall comply with the requirements of PCA 100 or shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

**R301.2.2.2.5 Irregular buildings.** Prescriptive construction as regulated by this code shall not be used for irregular structures located in Seismic Design Categories C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$. Irregular portions of structures shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice to the extent the irregular features affect the performance of the remaining structural system. When the forces associated with the irregularity are resisted by a structural system designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice, design of the remainder of the building shall be permitted using the provisions of this code. A building or portion of a building shall be considered to be irregular when one or more of the following conditions occur:

1. When exterior shear wall lines or *braced wall panels* are not in one plane vertically from the foundation to the uppermost *story* in which they are required.

   **Exception:** For wood light-frame construction, floors with cantilevers or setbacks not exceeding four times the nominal depth of the wood floor joists are permitted to support *braced wall panels* that are out of plane with *braced wall panels* below provided that:

1. Floor joists are nominal 2 inches by 10 inches (51 mm by 254 mm) or larger and spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center.
2. The ratio of the back span to the cantilever is at least 2 to 1.
3. Floor joists at ends of *braced wall panels*are doubled.
4. For wood-frame construction, a continuous rim joist is connected to ends of all cantilever joists. When spliced, the rim joists shall be spliced using a galvanized metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.5 mm) (16 gage) and $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) wide fastened with six 16d nails on each side of the splice or a block of the same size as the rim joist of sufficient length to fit securely between the joist space at which the splice occurs fastened with eight 16d nails on each side of the splice; and
5. Gravity loads carried at the end of cantilevered joists are limited to uniform wall and roof loads and the reactions from headers having a span of 8 feet (2438 mm) or less.

2. When a section of floor or roof is not laterally supported by shear walls or *braced wall lines* on all edges.

   **Exception:** Portions of floors that do not support shear walls or *braced wall panels* above, or roofs, shall be permitted to extend no more than 6 feet (1829 mm) beyond a shear wall or *braced wall line*.

3. When the end of a *braced wall panel* occurs over an opening in the wall below and ends at a horizontal distance greater than 1 foot (305 mm) from the edge of the opening. This provision is applicable to shear walls and *braced wall panels* offset in plane and to *braced wall panels* offset out of plane as permitted by the exception to Item 1 above.

   **Exception:** For wood light-frame wall construction, one end of a *braced wall panel* shall be permitted to extend more than 1 foot (305 mm) over an opening not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) wide in the wall below provided that the opening includes a header in accordance with the following:

   1. The building width, loading condition and framing member species limitations of Table R502.5(1) shall apply; and
   2. Not less than one 2 × 12 or two 2 × 10 for an opening not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) wide; or
   3. Not less than two 2 × 12 or three 2 × 10 for an opening not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) wide; or
   4. Not less than three 2 × 12 or four 2 × 10 for an opening not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) wide; and
   5. The entire length of the *braced wall panel* does not occur over an opening in the wall below.

4. When an opening in a floor or roof exceeds the lesser of 12 feet (3658 mm) or 50 percent of the least floor or roof dimension.

5. When portions of a floor level are vertically offset.

   **Exceptions:**

   1. Framing supported directly by continuous foundations at the perimeter of the building.
   2. For wood light-frame construction, floors shall be permitted to be vertically offset when the floor framing is lapped or tied together as required by Section R502.6.1.

6. When shear walls and *braced wall lines* do not occur in two perpendicular directions.

7. When stories above-*grade* partially or completely braced by wood wall framing in accordance with Section R602 or steel wall framing in accordance with Section R603 include masonry or concrete construction.

   **Exception:** Fireplaces, chimneys and masonry veneer as permitted by this code. When this irregularity applies, the entire *story* shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**R301.2.2.3 Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** Structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ shall conform to the requirements for Seismic Design Category C and the additional requirements of this section.

**R301.2.2.3.1 Height limitations.** Wood framed buildings shall be limited to three stories above *grade* or the limits given in Table R602.10.1.2(2). Cold-formed steel framed buildings shall be limited to less than or equal to three stories above *grade* in accordance with AISI S230. Mezzanines as defined in Section R202 shall not be considered as stories. Structural insulated panel buildings shall be limited to two stories above *grade*.

**R301.2.2.3.2 Stone and masonry veneer.** Anchored stone and masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Sections R702.1 and R703.

**R301.2.2.3.3 Masonry construction.** Masonry construction in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$ and $D_1$ shall comply with the requirements of Section R606.11.3. Masonry construction in Seismic Design Category $D_2$ shall comply with the requirements of Section R606.11.4.

**R301.2.2.3.4 Concrete construction.** Buildings with exterior above-*grade* concrete walls shall comply with PCA 100 or shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

**R301.2.2.3.5 Cold-formed steel framing in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ in addition to the requirements of this code, cold-formed steel framing shall comply with the requirements of AISI S230.

**R301.2.2.3.6 Masonry chimneys.** Masonry chimneys shall be reinforced and anchored to the building in accordance with Sections R1003.3 and R1003.4.

**R301.2.2.3.7 Anchorage of water heaters.** Water heaters shall be anchored against movement and overturning in accordance with Section M1307.2.

**R301.2.2.4 Seismic Design Category E.** Buildings in Seismic Design Category E shall be designed in accordance with the *International Building Code*, except when the seismic design category is reclassified to a lower seismic design category in accordance with Section R301.2.2.1.

**R301.2.3 Snow loads.** Wood framed construction, cold-formed steel framed construction and masonry and concrete construction, and structural insulated panel construction in regions with ground snow loads 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa) or less, shall be in accordance with Chapters 5, 6 and 8. Buildings in regions with ground snow loads greater than 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa) shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**R301.2.4 Floodplain construction.** Buildings and structures constructed in whole or in part in flood hazard areas (including A or V Zones) as established in Table R301.2(1) shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section R322.

**Exception:** Buildings and structures located in whole or in part in identified floodways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**R301.2.4.1 Alternative provisions.** As an alternative to the requirements in Section R322.3 for buildings and structures located in whole or in part in coastal high hazard areas (V Zones), ASCE 24 is permitted subject to the limitations of this code and the limitations therein.

**R301.3 Story height.** Buildings constructed in accordance with these provisions shall be limited to *story heights* of not more than the following:

1. For wood wall framing, the laterally unsupported bearing wall stud height permitted by Table R602.3(5) plus a height of floor framing not to exceed 16 inches (406 mm).

   **Exception:** For wood framed wall buildings with bracing in accordance with Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2), the wall stud clear height used to determine the maximum permitted *story height* may be increased to 12 feet (3658 mm) without requiring an engineered design for the building wind and seismic force resisting systems provided that the length of bracing required by Table R602.10.1.2(1) is increased by multiplying by a factor of 1.10 and the length of bracing required by Table R602.10.1.2(2) is increased by multiplying by a factor of 1.20. Wall studs are still subject to the requirements of this section.

2. For steel wall framing, a stud height of 10 feet (3048 mm), plus a height of floor framing not to exceed 16 inches (406 mm).
3. For masonry walls, a maximum bearing wall clear height of 12 feet (3658 mm) plus a height of floor framing not to exceed 16 inches (406 mm).

   **Exception:** An additional 8 feet (2438 mm) is permitted for gable end walls.

4. For insulating concrete form walls, the maximum bearing wall height per *story* as permitted by Section R611 tables plus a height of floor framing not to exceed 16 inches (406 mm).
5. For structural insulated panel (SIP) walls, the maximum bearing wall height per *story* as permitted by Section 614 tables shall not exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) plus a height of floor framing not to exceed 16 inches (406 mm).

Individual walls or walls studs shall be permitted to exceed these limits as permitted by Chapter 6 provisions, provided *story heights* are not exceeded. Floor framing height shall be permitted to exceed these limits provided the *story height* does not exceed 11 feet 7 inches (3531 mm). An engineered design shall be provided for the wall or wall framing members when they exceed the limits of Chapter 6. Where the *story height* limits are exceeded, an engineered design shall be provided in accordance with the *International Building Code* for the overall wind and seismic force resisting systems.

**R301.4 Dead load.** The actual weights of materials and construction shall be used for determining dead load with consideration for the dead load of fixed service *equipment*.

**R301.5 Live load.** The minimum uniformly distributed live load shall be as provided in Table R301.5.

**TABLE R301.5**
**MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS**
**(in pounds per square foot)**

| USE | LIVE LOAD |
|---|---|
| Attics without storage[b] | 10 |
| Attics with limited storage[b, g] | 20 |
| Habitable attics and attics served with fixed stairs | 30 |
| Balconies (exterior) and decks[e] | 40 |
| Fire escapes | 40 |
| Guardrails and handrails[d] | 200[h] |
| Guardrail in-fill components[f] | 50[h] |
| Passenger vehicle garages[a] | 50[a] |
| Rooms other than sleeping room | 40 |
| Sleeping rooms | 30 |
| Stairs | 40[c] |

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 square inch = 645 $mm^2$, 1 pound = 4.45 N.

a. Elevated garage floors shall be capable of supporting a 2,000-pound load applied over a 20-square-inch area.

b. Attics without storage are those where the maximum clear height between joist and rafter is less than 42 inches, or where there are not two or more adjacent trusses with the same web configuration capable of containing a rectangle 42 inches high by 2 feet wide, or greater, located within the plane of the truss. For attics without storage, this live load need not be assumed to act concurrently with any other live load requirements.

c. Individual stair treads shall be designed for the uniformly distributed live load or a 300-pound concentrated load acting over an area of 4 square inches, whichever produces the greater stresses.

d. A single concentrated load applied in any direction at any point along the top.

e. See Section R502.2.2 for decks attached to exterior walls.

f. Guard in-fill components (all those except the handrail), balusters and panel fillers shall be designed to withstand a horizontally applied normal load of 50 pounds on an area equal to 1 square foot. This load need not be assumed to act concurrently with any other live load requirement.

g. For attics with limited storage and constructed with trusses, this live load need be applied only to those portions of the bottom chord where there are two or more adjacent trusses with the same web configuration capable of containing a rectangle 42 inches high or greater by 2 feet wide or greater, located within the plane of the truss. The rectangle shall fit between the top of the bottom chord and the bottom of any other truss member, provided that each of the following criteria is met.

   1. The attic area is accessible by a pull-down stairway or framed opening in accordance with Section R807.1.
   2. The truss has a bottom chord pitch less than 2:12.
   3. Required insulation depth is less than the bottom chord member depth.

   The bottom chords of trusses meeting the above criteria for limited storage shall be designed for the greater of the actual imposed dead load or 10 psf, uniformly distributed over the entire span.

h. Glazing used in handrail assemblies and guards shall be designed with a safety factor of 4. The safety factor shall be applied to each of the concentrated loads applied to the top of the rail, and to the load on the in-fill components. These loads shall be determined independent of one another, and loads are assumed not to occur with any other live load.

**R301.6 Roof load.** The roof shall be designed for the live load indicated in Table R301.6 or the snow load indicated in Table R301.2(1), whichever is greater.

**TABLE R301.6**
**MINIMUM ROOF LIVE LOADS IN POUNDS-FORCE PER SQUARE FOOT OF HORIZONTAL PROJECTION**

| ROOF SLOPE | TRIBUTARY LOADED AREA IN SQUARE FEET FOR ANY STRUCTURAL MEMBER | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 to 200 | 201 to 600 | Over 600 |
| Flat or rise less than 4 inches per foot (1:3) | 20 | 16 | 12 |
| Rise 4 inches per foot (1:3) to less than 12 inches per foot (1:1) | 16 | 14 | 12 |
| Rise 12 inches per foot (1:1) and greater | 12 | 12 | 12 |

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 $m^2$, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 inch per foot = 83.3 mm/m.

**R301.7 Deflection.** The allowable deflection of any structural member under the live load listed in Sections R301.5 and R301.6 shall not exceed the values in Table R301.7.

**TABLE R301.7**
**ALLOWABLE DEFLECTION OF STRUCTURAL MEMBERS[a, b, c, d, e]**

| STRUCTURAL MEMBER | ALLOWABLE DEFLECTION |
|---|---|
| Rafters having slopes greater than 3:12 with no finished ceiling attached to rafters | L/180 |
| Interior walls and partitions | H/180 |
| Floors and plastered ceilings | L/360 |
| All other structural members | L/240 |
| Exterior walls with plaster or stucco finish | H/360 |
| Exterior walls—wind loads[a] with brittle finishes | H/240 |
| Exterior walls—wind loads[a] with flexible finishes | L/120[d] |
| Lintels supporting masonry veneer walls[e] | L/600 |

**Note:** L = span length, H = span height.

a. The wind load shall be permitted to be taken as 0.7 times the Component and Cladding loads for the purpose of the determining deflection limits herein.

b. For cantilever members, *L* shall be taken as twice the length of the cantilever.

c. For aluminum structural members or panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, not supporting edge of glass or sandwich panels, the total load deflection shall not exceed L/60. For continuous aluminum structural members supporting edge of glass, the total load deflection shall not exceed L/175 for each glass lite or L/60 for the entire length of the member, whichever is more stringent. For sandwich panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, the total load deflection shall not exceed L/120.

d. Deflection for exterior walls with interior gypsum board finish shall be limited to an allowable deflection of H/180.

e. Refer to Section R703.7.2.

**R301.8 Nominal sizes.** For the purposes of this code, where dimensions of lumber are specified, they shall be deemed to be nominal dimensions unless specifically designated as actual dimensions.

## SECTION R302
## FIRE-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

**R302.1 Exterior walls.** Construction, projections, openings and penetrations of *exterior walls* of *dwellings* and accessory buildings shall comply with Table R302.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Walls, projections, openings or penetrations in walls perpendicular to the line used to determine the *fire separation distance*.
2. Walls of *dwellings* and *accessory structures* located on the same *lot*.
3. Detached tool sheds and storage sheds, playhouses and similar structures exempted from permits by Section R105.2 are not required to provide wall protection based on location on the *lot*. Projections beyond the *exterior wall* shall not extend over the *lot line*.
4. Detached garages accessory to a *dwelling* located within 2 feet (610 mm) of a *lot line* are permitted to have roof eave projections not exceeding 4 inches (102 mm).
5. Foundation vents installed in compliance with this code are permitted.

**Interpretation I302.1:** For purposes of Section R302.1, gutters 6 inches (152 mm) or less in width that are not an integral part of the structure are not considered projections.

**[W] R302.2 Townhouses.** Each *townhouse* shall be considered a separate building and shall be separated by fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies meeting the requirements of Section R302.1 for exterior walls.

**Exceptions:**

1. A common 1-hour fire-resistance-rated wall assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263 is permitted for *townhouses* where an automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with NFPA 13 D, if such walls do not contain plumbing or mechanical equipment, ducts or vents in the cavity of the common wall. The wall shall be rated for fire exposure from both sides and shall extend to and be tight against exterior walls and the underside of the roof sheathing. Electrical installations shall be installed in accordance with ((~~Chapters 34 through 43.~~)) the *Seattle Electrical Code.* Penetrations of electrical outlet boxes shall be in accordance with Section R302.4.
2. A common 2-hour fire-resistance-rated wall assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263 is permitted for *townhouses* if such walls do not contain plumbing or mechanical equipment, ducts or vents in the cavity of the common wall. The wall shall be rated for fire exposure from both sides and shall extend to and be tight against exterior walls and the underside of the roof sheathing. Electrical installations shall be installed in accordance with the *Seattle Electrical Code*. Penetrations of electrical outlet boxes shall be in accordance with Section R302.4.

**[W] R302.2.1 Continuity.** The fire-resistance-rated wall or assembly separating *townhouses* shall be continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab. The fire-resistance rating shall extend the full length of the wall or assembly, including wall extensions through and separating attached enclosed *accessory structures*.

Where a *story* extends beyond the exterior wall of a *story* below:

1. The fire-resistance-rated wall or assembly shall extend to the outside edge of the upper *story*; or
2. The underside of the exposed floor-ceiling assembly shall be protected as required for projections in Section R302.

**[W] TABLE R302.1**
**EXTERIOR WALLS**

| EXTERIOR WALL ELEMENT | | MINIMUM FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING | MINIMUM FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE |
|---|---|---|---|
| Walls | (Fire-resistance rated) | 1 hour-tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263 with exposure from both sides | < 5 feet |
| | (Not fire-resistance rated) | 0 hours | ≥ 5 feet |
| Projections | (Fire-resistance rated) | 1 hour on the underside[a,b] | ≥ 2 feet to 5 feet |
| | (Not fire-resistance rated) | 0 hours | 5 feet |
| Openings in walls | Not allowed | N/A | < 3 feet |
| | 25% maximum of wall area | 0 hours | 3 feet |
| | Unlimited | 0 hours | 5 feet |
| Penetrations | All | Comply with Section R302.4 | < 5 feet |
| | | None required | 5 feet |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

N/A = Not Applicable.

a. Roof eave fire-resistance rating shall be permitted to be reduced to 0 hours on the underside of the eave if fireblocking is provided from the wall top plate to the underside of the roof sheathing.

b. Roof eave fire-resistance rating shall be permitted to be reduced to 0 hours on the underside of the eave provided no gable vent openings are allowed.

**R302.2.2 Parapets.** Parapets constructed in accordance with Section R302.2.3 shall be constructed for *townhouses* as an extension of exterior walls or common walls in accordance with the following:

1. Where roof surfaces adjacent to the wall or walls are at the same elevation, the parapet shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the roof surfaces.
2. Where roof surfaces adjacent to the wall or walls are at different elevations and the higher roof is not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof, the parapet shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof surface.

   **Exception:** A parapet is not required in the two cases above when the roof is covered with a minimum class C roof covering, and the roof decking or sheathing is of noncombustible materials or *approved* fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1219 mm) on each side of the wall or walls, or one layer of $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board is installed directly beneath the roof decking or sheathing, supported by a minimum of nominal 2-inch (51 mm) ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members, for a minimum distance of 4 feet (1219 mm) on each side of the wall or walls.
3. A parapet is not required where roof surfaces adjacent to the wall or walls are at different elevations and the higher roof is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof. The common wall construction from the lower roof to the underside of the higher roof deck shall have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating. The wall shall be rated for exposure from both sides.

**R302.2.3 Parapet construction.** Parapets shall have the same fire-resistance rating as that required for the supporting wall or walls. On any side adjacent to a roof surface, the parapet shall have noncombustible faces for the uppermost 18 inches (457 mm), to include counterflashing and coping materials. Where the roof slopes toward a parapet at slopes greater than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (16.7-percent slope), the parapet shall extend to the same height as any portion of the roof within a distance of 3 feet (914 mm), but in no case shall the height be less than 30 inches (762 mm).

<u>[W]</u> **R302.2.4 Structural independence.** Each individual *townhouse* shall be structurally independent.

**Exceptions:**

1. Foundations supporting *exterior walls* or common walls.
2. Structural roof and wall sheathing from each unit may ((~~fasten~~)) <u>be fastened</u> to the common wall framing.
3. Nonstructural wall and roof coverings.
4. Flashing at termination of roof covering over common wall.
5. *Townhouses* separated by a common ((~~1~~))<u>2</u>-hour fire-resistance-rated wall as provided in Section R302.2.
6. <u>Floor sheathing may fasten to the floor framing of both units.</u>

**R302.3 Two-family dwellings.** *Dwelling units* in two-family dwellings shall be separated from each other by wall and/or floor assemblies having not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263. Fire-resistance-rated floor-ceiling and wall assemblies shall extend to and be tight against the *exterior wall*, and wall assemblies shall extend from the foundation to the underside of the roof sheathing.

**Exceptions:**

1. A fire-resistance rating of $^1/_2$ hour shall be permitted in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with NFPA 13.
2. Wall assemblies need not extend through *attic* spaces when the ceiling is protected by not less than $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board and an *attic* draft stop constructed as specified in Section R302.12.1 is provided above and along the wall assembly separating the *dwellings*. The structural framing supporting the ceiling shall also be protected by not less than $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board or equivalent.

**R302.3.1 Supporting construction.** When floor assemblies are required to be fire-resistance rated by Section R302.3, the supporting construction of such assemblies shall have an equal or greater fire-resistance rating.

**R302.4 Dwelling unit rated penetrations.** Penetrations of wall or floor/ceiling assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section R302.2 or R302.3 shall be protected in accordance with this section.

**R302.4.1 Through penetrations.** Through penetrations of fire-resistance-rated wall or floor assemblies shall comply with Section R302.4.1.1 or R302.4.1.2.

**Exception:** Where the penetrating items are steel, ferrous or copper pipes, tubes or conduits, the annular space shall be protected as follows:

1. In concrete or masonry wall or floor assemblies, concrete, grout or mortar shall be permitted where installed to the full thickness of the wall or floor assembly or the thickness required to maintain the fire-resistance rating, provided:
   1.1. The nominal diameter of the penetrating item is a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm); and
   1.2. The area of the opening through the wall does not exceed 144 square inches (92 900 $mm^2$).
2. The material used to fill the annular space shall prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E 119 or UL 263 time temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch of water (3 Pa) at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

**R302.4.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated assembly.** Penetrations shall be installed as tested in the *approved* fire-resistance-rated assembly.

**R302.4.1.2 Penetration firestop system.** Penetrations shall be protected by an *approved* penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch of water (3 Pa) and shall have an F rating of not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the wall or floor/ceiling assembly penetrated.

**R302.4.2 Membrane penetrations.** Membrane penetrations shall comply with Section R302.4.1. Where walls are required to have a fire-resistance rating, recessed fixtures shall be installed so that the required fire-resistance rating will not be reduced.

**Exceptions:**

1. Membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions by steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (0.0103 $m^2$) in area provided the aggregate area of the openings through the membrane does not exceed 100 square inches (0.0645 $m^2$) in any 100 square feet $(9.29 \text{ m})^2$ of wall area. The annular space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed $^1/_8$ inch (3.1 mm). Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall shall be separated by one of the following:
   - 1.1. By a horizontal distance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm) where the wall or partition is constructed with individual noncommunicating stud cavities;
   - 1.2. By a horizontal distance of not less than the depth of the wall cavity when the wall cavity is filled with cellulose loose-fill, rockwool or slag mineral wool insulation;
   - 1.3. By solid fire blocking in accordance with Section R302.11;
   - 1.4. By protecting both boxes with listed putty pads; or
   - 1.5. By other listed materials and methods.
2. Membrane penetrations by listed electrical boxes of any materials provided the boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The annular space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed $^1/_8$ inch (3.1 mm) unless listed otherwise. Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall shall be separated by one of the following:
   - 2.1. By the horizontal distance specified in the listing of the electrical boxes;
   - 2.2. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section R302.11;
   - 2.3. By protecting both boxes with listed putty pads; or
   - 2.4. By other listed materials and methods.
3. The annular space created by the penetration of a fire sprinkler provided it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.

**R302.5 Dwelling/garage opening/penetration protection.** Openings and penetrations through the walls or ceilings separating the *dwelling* from the garage shall be in accordance with Sections R302.5.1 through R302.5.3.

**R302.5.1 Opening protection.** Openings from a private garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted. Other openings between the garage and residence shall be equipped with solid wood doors not less than $1^3/_8$ inches (35 mm) in thickness, solid or honeycomb core steel doors not less than $1^3/_8$ inches (35 mm) thick, or 20-minute fire-rated doors.

**R302.5.2 Duct penetration.** Ducts in the garage and ducts penetrating the walls or ceilings separating the *dwelling* from the garage shall be constructed of a minimum No. 26 gage (0.48 mm) sheet steel or other *approved* material and shall have no openings into the garage.

**R302.5.3 Other penetrations.** Penetrations through the separation required in Section R302.6 shall be protected as required by Section R302.11, Item 4.

**R302.6 Dwelling/garage fire separation.** The garage shall be separated as required by Table R302.6. Openings in garage walls shall comply with Section R302.5. This provision does not apply to garage walls that are perpendicular to the adjacent *dwelling unit* wall.

**R302.7 Under-stair protection.** Enclosed accessible space under stairs shall have walls, under-stair surface and any soffits

**TABLE R302.6**
**DWELLING/GARAGE SEPARATION**

| SEPARATION | MATERIAL |
|---|---|
| From the residence and attics | Not less than $^1/_2$-inch gypsum board or equivalent applied to the garage side |
| From all habitable rooms above the garage | Not less than $^5/_8$-inch Type X gypsum board or equivalent |
| Structure(s) supporting floor/ceiling assemblies used for separation required by this section | Not less than $^1/_2$-inch gypsum board or equivalent |
| Garages located less than 3 feet from a dwelling unit on the same lot | Not less than $^1/_2$-inch gypsum board or equivalent applied to the interior side of exterior walls that are within this area |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

protected on the enclosed side with $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.

**R302.8 Foam plastics.** For requirements for foam plastics see Section R316.

**R302.9 Flame spread index and smoke-developed index for wall and ceiling finishes.** Flame spread and smoke index for wall and ceiling finishes shall be in accordance with Sections R302.9.1 through R302.9.4.

**R302.9.1 Flame spread index.** Wall and ceiling finishes shall have a flame spread index of not greater than 200.

**Exception:** Flame spread index requirements for finishes shall not apply to trim defined as picture molds, chair rails, baseboards and handrails; to doors and windows or their frames; or to materials that are less than $^1/_{28}$ inch (0.91 mm) in thickness cemented to the surface of walls or ceilings if these materials exhibit flame spread index values no greater than those of paper of this thickness cemented to a noncombustible backing.

**R302.9.2 Smoke-developed index.** Wall and ceiling finishes shall have a smoke-developed index of not greater than 450.

**R302.9.3 Testing.** Tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM E 84 or UL 723.

**R302.9.4 Alternate test method.** As an alternate to having a flame-spread index of not greater than 200 and a smoke developed index of not greater than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84 or UL 723, wall and ceiling finishes, other than textiles, shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with NFPA 286. Materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 shall meet the following criteria:

During the 40 kW exposure, the interior finish shall comply with Item 1. During the 160 kW exposure, the interior finish shall comply with Item 2. During the entire test, the interior finish shall comply with Item 3.

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. During the 160 kW exposure, the interior finish shall comply with the following:
   2.1. Flame shall not spread to the outer extremity of the sample on any wall or ceiling.
   2.2. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 286, shall not occur.
3. The total smoke released throughout the NFPA 286 test shall not exceed 1,000 $m^2$.

**R302.10 Flame spread index and smoke developed index for insulation.** Flame spread and smoke developed index for insulation shall be in accordance with Sections R302.10.1 through R302.10.5.

**R302.10.1 Insulation.** Insulation materials, including facings, such as vapor retarders and vapor-permeable membranes installed within floor-ceiling assemblies, roof-ceiling assemblies, wall assemblies, crawl spaces and *attics* shall have a flame spread index not to exceed 25 with an accompanying smoke-developed index not to exceed 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84 or UL 723.

**Exceptions:**

1. When such materials are installed in concealed spaces, the flame spread index and smoke-developed index limitations do not apply to the facings, provided that the facing is installed in substantial contact with the unexposed surface of the ceiling, floor or wall finish.
2. Cellulose loose-fill insulation, which is not spray applied, complying with the requirements of Section R302.10.3, shall only be required to meet the smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

**R302.10.2 Loose-fill insulation.** Loose-fill insulation materials that cannot be mounted in the ASTM E 84 or UL 723 apparatus without a screen or artificial supports shall comply with the flame spread and smoke-developed limits of Section R302.10.1 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

**Exception:** Cellulose loose-fill insulation shall not be required to be tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2, provided such insulation complies with the requirements of Section R302.10.1 and Section R302.10.3.

**R302.10.3 Cellulose loose-fill insulation.** Cellulose loose-fill insulation shall comply with CPSC 16 CFR, Parts 1209 and 1404. Each package of such insulating material shall be clearly *labeled* in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR, Parts 1209 and 1404.

**R302.10.4 Exposed attic insulation.** All exposed insulation materials installed on *attic* floors shall have a critical radiant flux not less than 0.12 watt per square centimeter.

**R302.10.5 Testing.** Tests for critical radiant flux shall be made in accordance with ASTM E 970.

**R302.11 Fireblocking.** In combustible construction, fireblocking shall be provided to cut off all concealed draft openings (both vertical and horizontal) and to form an effective fire barrier between stories, and between a top *story* and the roof space.

Fireblocking shall be provided in wood-frame construction in the following locations:

1. In concealed spaces of stud walls and partitions, including furred spaces and parallel rows of studs or staggered studs, as follows:
   1.1. Vertically at the ceiling and floor levels.
   1.2. Horizontally at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. At all interconnections between concealed vertical and horizontal spaces such as occur at soffits, drop ceilings and cove ceilings.
3. In concealed spaces between stair stringers at the top and bottom of the run. Enclosed spaces under stairs shall comply with Section R302.7.
4. At openings around vents, pipes, ducts, cables and wires at ceiling and floor level, with an *approved* material to

resist the free passage of flame and products of combustion. The material filling this annular space shall not be required to meet the ASTM E 136 requirements.

5. For the fireblocking of chimneys and fireplaces, see Section R1003.19.
6. Fireblocking of cornices of a two-family *dwelling* is required at the line of *dwelling unit* separation.

**R302.11.1 Fireblocking materials.** Except as provided in Section R302.11, Item 4, fireblocking shall consist of the following materials.

1. Two-inch (51 mm) nominal lumber.
2. Two thicknesses of 1-inch (25.4 mm) nominal lumber with broken lap joints.
3. One thickness of $^{23}/_{32}$-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels with joints backed by $^{23}/_{32}$-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels.
4. One thickness of $^{3}/_{4}$-inch (19.1 mm) particleboard with joints backed by $^{3}/_{4}$-inch (19.1 mm) particleboard.
5. One-half-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.
6. One-quarter-inch (6.4 mm) cement-based millboard.
7. Batts or blankets of mineral wool or glass fiber or other *approved* materials installed in such a manner as to be securely retained in place.

**R302.11.1.1 Batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber.** Batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber or other *approved* nonrigid materials shall be permitted for compliance with the 10-foot (3048 mm) horizontal fireblocking in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

**R302.11.1.2 Unfaced fiberglass.** Unfaced fiberglass batt insulation used as fireblocking shall fill the entire cross section of the wall cavity to a minimum height of 16 inches (406 mm) measured vertically. When piping, conduit or similar obstructions are encountered, the insulation shall be packed tightly around the obstruction.

**R302.11.1.3 Loose-fill insulation material.** Loose-fill insulation material shall not be used as a fireblock unless specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and to retard the spread of fire and hot gases.

**R302.11.2 Fireblocking integrity.** The integrity of all fireblocks shall be maintained.

**R302.12 Draftstopping.** In combustible construction where there is usable space both above and below the concealed space of a floor/ceiling assembly, draftstops shall be installed so that the area of the concealed space does not exceed 1,000 square feet (92.9 m$^2$). Draftstopping shall divide the concealed space into approximately equal areas. Where the assembly is enclosed by a floor membrane above and a ceiling membrane below, draftstopping shall be provided in floor/ceiling assemblies under the following circumstances:

1. Ceiling is suspended under the floor framing.
2. Floor framing is constructed of truss-type open-web or perforated members.

**R302.12.1 Materials.** Draftstopping materials shall not be less than $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board, $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panels or other *approved* materials adequately supported. Draftstopping shall be installed parallel to the floor framing members unless otherwise *approved* by the *building official*. The integrity of the draftstops shall be maintained.

**R302.13 Combustible insulation clearance.** Combustible insulation shall be separated a minimum of 3 inches (76 mm) from recessed luminaires, fan motors and other heat-producing devices.

**Exception:** Where heat-producing devices are listed for lesser clearances, combustible insulation complying with the listing requirements shall be separated in accordance with the conditions stipulated in the listing.

Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall ((~~meet the requirements of Section N1102.4.5~~)) comply with the *Washington State Energy Code with Seattle Amendments*.

## [W] SECTION R303 LIGHT, VENTILATION AND HEATING

**R303.1 ((~~Habitable rooms~~)) Natural light.** All *habitable* rooms shall have an aggregate glazing area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of such rooms. ((~~Natural *ventilation* shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other *approved* openings to the outdoor air. Such openings shall be provided with ready access or shall otherwise be readily controllable by the building occupants. The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.~~))

**Exception((s)):**

((~~1. The glazed areas need not be openable where the opening is not required by Section R310 and an approved mechanical ventilation system capable of producing 0.35 air change per hour in the room is installed or a whole-house mechanical ventilation system is installed capable of supplying outdoor ventilation air of 15 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (78 L/s) per occupant computed on the basis of two occupants for the first bedroom and one occupant for each additional bedroom.~~))

((~~2.~~)) The glazed areas need not be installed in rooms where ((~~Exception 1 above is satisfied and~~)) artificial light is provided capable of producing an average illumination of 6 footcandles (65 lux) over the area of the room at a height of 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor level.

((~~3. Use of sunroom *additions* and patio covers, as defined in Section R202, shall be permitted for natural *ventilation* if in excess of 40 percent of the exterior sunroom walls are open, or are enclosed only by insect screening.~~))

((~~R303.2~~)) R303.1.1 **Adjoining rooms.** For the purpose of determining light ((~~and *ventilation*~~)) requirements, any room shall be considered as a portion of an adjoining room when at least one-half of the area of the common wall is open and unobstructed and provides an opening of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 $m^2$).

**Exception:** Openings required for light ((~~and/or *ventilation*~~)) shall be permitted to open into a thermally isolated sunroom *addition* or patio cover, provided that there is an openable area between the adjoining room and the sunroom *addition* or patio cover of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room but not less than 20 square feet (2 $m^2$). ((~~The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be based upon the total floor area being ventilated.~~))

**R303.2 Minimum ventilation performance.** Every space intended for human occupancy shall be equipped with *source specific* and *whole house ventilation* systems designed and installed as specified in Sections R1507 and R1508.

((~~**R303.3 Bathrooms.** Bathrooms, water closet compartments and other similar rooms shall be provided with aggregate glazing area in windows of not less than 3 square feet (0.3 m²), one-half of which must be openable.~~))

((~~**Exception:** The glazed areas shall not be required where artificial light and a mechanical *ventilation* system are provided. The minimum *ventilation* rates shall be 50 cubic feet per minute (24 L/s) for intermittent *ventilation* or 20 cubic feet per minute (10 L/s) for continuous *ventilation*. *Ventilation* air from the space shall be exhausted directly to the outside.~~))

**R303.4 Opening location.** Outdoor intake and exhaust openings shall be located in accordance with Sections R303.4.1 and R303.4.2.

**R303.4.1 Intake openings.** Mechanical and gravity outdoor air intake openings shall be located a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from any hazardous or noxious contaminant, such as vents, chimneys, plumbing vents, streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks, except as otherwise specified in this code. Where a source of contaminant is located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of an intake opening, such opening shall be located a minimum of ((~~2 feet (610 mm)~~)) 3 feet (914 mm) below the contaminant source.

For the purpose of this section, the exhaust from *dwelling* unit toilet rooms, bathrooms and kitchens shall not be considered as hazardous or noxious.

**R303.4.2 Exhaust openings.** Exhaust air shall not be directed onto walkways.

**R303.5 Outside opening protection.** Air exhaust and intake openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles having a minimum opening size of $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) and a maximum opening size of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm), in any dimension. Openings shall be protected against local weather conditions. Outdoor air exhaust and intake openings shall meet the provisions for *exterior wall* opening protectives in accordance with this code.

[W] **R303.6 Stairway illumination.** All interior and exterior stairways shall be provided with a means to illuminate the stairs, including the landings and treads. Stairway illumination shall receive primary power from the building wiring. Interior stairways shall be provided with an artificial light source located in the immediate vicinity of each landing of the stairway. For interior stairs the artificial light sources shall be capable of illuminating treads and landings to levels not less than 1 foot-candle (11 lux) measured at the center of treads and landings. Exterior stairways shall be provided with an artificial light source located in the immediate vicinity of the top landing of the stairway. Exterior stairways providing access to a *basement* from the outside *grade* level shall be provided with an artificial light source located in the immediate vicinity of the bottom landing of the stairway.

**Exception:** An artificial light source is not required at the top and bottom landing, provided an artificial light source is located directly over each stairway section.

**R303.6.1 Light activation.** Where lighting outlets are installed in interior stairways, there shall be a wall switch at each floor level to control the lighting outlet where the stairway has six or more risers. The illumination of exterior stairways shall be controlled from inside the *dwelling* unit.

**Exception:** Lights that are continuously illuminated or automatically controlled.

**R303.7 Required glazed openings.** Required glazed openings shall open directly onto a street or public alley, or a *yard* or court located on the same *lot* as the building.

**Exceptions:**

1. Required glazed openings may face into a roofed porch where the porch abuts a street, *yard* or court and the longer side of the porch is at least 65 percent unobstructed and the ceiling height is not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).
2. Eave projections shall not be considered as obstructing the clear open space of a *yard* or court.
3. Required glazed openings may face into the area under a deck, balcony, bay or floor cantilever provided a clear vertical space at least 36 inches (914 mm) in height is provided.

**R303.7.1 Sunroom additions.** Required glazed openings shall be permitted to open into sunroom *additions* or patio covers that abut a street, *yard* or court if in excess of 40 percent of the exterior sunroom walls are open, or are enclosed only by insect screening, and the ceiling height of the sunroom is not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**R303.8 Required heating.** ((~~When the winter design temperature in Table R301.2(1) is below 60°F (16°C), every~~)) Every *dwelling unit* shall be provided with heating facilities capable of maintaining a minimum room temperature of 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor and 2 feet (610 mm) from exterior walls in all *habitable* rooms, baths and toilet rooms at the design temperature specified in Table R301.2(1). The installation of one or more portable space heaters shall not be used to achieve compliance with this section.

**[W] R303.8.1 Definitions.** For the purposes of Sections R303.8.1 through R303.8.3 only, the following definitions apply.

**DESIGNATED AREAS** are those areas designated by a county to be an urban growth area in Chapter 36.70A RCW or those areas designated by the United States Environmental Protection Agency as being in nonattainment for particulate matter.

**SUBSTANTIALLY REMODELED** means any alteration or restoration of a building exceeding 60 percent of the appraised value of such building within a 12-month period. For the purpose of this section, the appraised value is the estimated cost to replace the building and structure in kind, based on current replacement costs.

**R303.8.2 Primary heating source.** Primary heating sources in all new and substantially remodeled buildings in designated areas shall not be dependent upon wood stoves.

**R303.8.3 Solid-fuel-burning devices.** No used solid-fuel-burning device shall be installed in new or existing buildings unless such device is United States Environmental Protection Agency certified or a pellet stove either certified or exempt from certification by the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

**Exception:** Antique wood cook stoves and heaters manufactured prior to 1940.

## SECTION R304 MINIMUM ROOM AREAS

**R304.1 Minimum area.** Every *dwelling* unit shall have at least one habitable room that shall have not less than 120 square feet (11 $m^2$) of gross floor area.

**R304.2 Other rooms.** Other habitable rooms shall have a floor area of not less than 70 square feet (6.5 $m^2$).

**Exception:** Kitchens.

**R304.3 Minimum dimensions.** Habitable rooms shall not be less than 7 feet (2134 mm) in any horizontal dimension.

**Exception:** Kitchens.

**R304.4 Height effect on room area.** Portions of a room with a sloping ceiling measuring less than 5 feet (1524 mm) or a furred ceiling measuring less than 7 feet (2134 mm) from the finished floor to the finished ceiling shall not be considered as contributing to the minimum required habitable area for that room.

## SECTION R305 CEILING HEIGHT

**R305.1 Minimum height.** *Habitable space*, hallways, bathrooms, toilet rooms, laundry rooms and portions of *basements* containing these spaces shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. For rooms with sloped ceilings, at least 50 percent of the required floor area of the room must have a ceiling height of at least 7 feet (2134 mm) and no portion of the required floor area may have a ceiling height of less than 5 feet (1524 mm).
2. Bathrooms shall have a minimum ceiling height of 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) at the center of the front clearance area for fixtures as shown in Figure R307.1. The ceiling height above fixtures shall be such that the fixture is capable of being used for its intended purpose. A shower or tub equipped with a showerhead shall have a minimum ceiling height of 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) above a minimum area 30 inches (762 mm) by 30 inches (762 mm) at the showerhead.

**R305.1.1 Basements.** Portions of *basements* that do not contain *habitable space*, hallways, bathrooms, toilet rooms and laundry rooms shall have a ceiling height of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm).

**Exception:** Beams, girders, ducts or other obstructions may project to within 6 feet 4 inches (1931 mm) of the finished floor.

## SECTION R306 SANITATION

**R306.1 Toilet facilities.** Every *dwelling* unit shall be provided with a water closet, lavatory, and a bathtub or shower.

**R306.2 Kitchen.** Each *dwelling* unit shall be provided with a kitchen area and every kitchen area shall be provided with a sink.

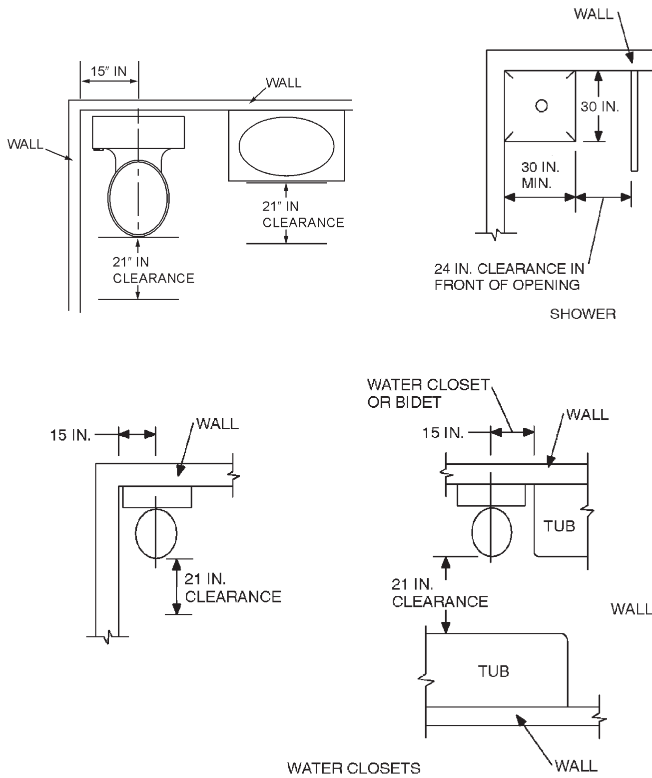
**R306.3 Sewage disposal.** All plumbing fixtures shall be connected to a sanitary sewer or to an *approved* private sewage disposal system.

**R306.4 Water supply to fixtures.** All plumbing fixtures shall be connected to an *approved* water supply. Kitchen sinks, lavatories, bathtubs, showers, bidets, laundry tubs and washing machine outlets shall be provided with hot and cold water.

## SECTION R307 TOILET, BATH AND SHOWER SPACES

**R307.1 Space required.** Fixtures shall be spaced in accordance with Figure R307.1, and in accordance with the requirements of Section P2705.1.

**R307.2 Bathtub and shower spaces.** Bathtub and shower floors and walls above bathtubs with installed shower heads and in shower compartments shall be finished with a nonabsorbent surface. Such wall surfaces shall extend to a height of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R307.1**
**MINIMUM FIXTURE CLEARANCES**

## SECTION R308
## GLAZING

**R308.1 Identification.** Except as indicated in Section R308.1.1 each pane of glazing installed in hazardous locations as defined in Section R308.4 shall be provided with a manufacturer's designation specifying who applied the designation, designating the type of glass and the safety glazing standard with which it complies, which is visible in the final installation. The designation shall be acid etched, sandblasted, ceramic-fired, laser etched, embossed, or be of a type which once applied cannot be removed without being destroyed. A *label* shall be permitted in lieu of the manufacturer's designation.

**Exceptions:**

1. For other than tempered glass, manufacturer's designations are not required provided the *building official* approves the use of a certificate, affidavit or other evidence confirming compliance with this code.
2. Tempered spandrel glass is permitted to be identified by the manufacturer with a removable paper designation.

**R308.1.1 Identification of multiple assemblies.** Multipane assemblies having individual panes not exceeding 1 square foot (0.09 m$^2$) in exposed area shall have at least one pane in the assembly identified in accordance with Section R308.1. All other panes in the assembly shall be *labeled* "CPSC 16 CFR 1201" or "ANSI Z97.1" as appropriate.

**R308.2 Louvered windows or jalousies.** Regular, float, wired or patterned glass in jalousies and louvered windows shall be no thinner than nominal $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) and no longer than 48 inches (1219 mm). Exposed glass edges shall be smooth.

**R308.2.1 Wired glass prohibited.** Wired glass with wire exposed on longitudinal edges shall not be used in jalousies or louvered windows.

**R308.3 Human impact loads.** Individual glazed areas, including glass mirrors in hazardous locations such as those indicated as defined in Section R308.4, shall pass the test requirements of Section R308.3.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Louvered windows and jalousies shall comply with Section R308.2.
2. Mirrors and other glass panels mounted or hung on a surface that provides a continuous backing support.
3. Glass unit masonry complying with Section R610.

**R308.3.1 Impact test.** Where required by other sections of the code, glazing shall be tested in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR 1201. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Category I or II as indicated in Table R308.3.1(1).

**Exception:** Glazing not in doors or enclosures for hot tubs, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs and showers shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with ANSI Z97.1. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Class A or B as indicated in Table R308.3.1 (2).

**TABLE R308.3.1(1)**
**MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING CPSC 16 CFR 1201**

| EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE | GLAZING IN STORM OR COMBINATION DOORS (Category Class) | GLAZING IN DOORS (Category Class) | GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY ITEM 7 OF SECTION R308.4 (Category Class) | GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY ITEM 6 OF SECTION R308.4 (Category Class) | GLAZING IN DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY ITEM 5 OF SECTION R308.4 (Category Class) | SLIDING GLASS DOORS PATIO TYPE (Category Class) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 9 square feet or less | I | I | NR | I | II | II |
| More than 9 square feet | II | II | II | II | II | II |

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 $m^2$.
NR means "No Requirement."

**TABLE R308.3.1(2)**
**MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING ANSI Z97.1**

| EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE | GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY ITEM 7 OF SECTION R308.4 (Category Class) | GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY ITEM 6 OF SECTION R308.4 (Category Class) | DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY ITEM 5 OF SECTION R308.4[a] (Category Class) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9 square feet or less | No requirement | B | A |
| More than 9 square feet | A | A | A |

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 $m^2$.
a. Use is permitted only by the exception to Section R308.3.1.

**R308.4 Hazardous locations.** The following shall be considered specific hazardous locations for the purposes of glazing:

1. Glazing in all fixed and operable panels of swinging, sliding and bifold doors.

   **Exceptions:**

   1. Glazed openings of a size through which a 3-inch diameter (76 mm) sphere is unable to pass.
   2. Decorative glazing.

2. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel adjacent to a door where the nearest vertical edge is within a 24-inch (610 mm) arc of the door in a closed position and whose bottom edge is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the floor or walking surface.

   **Exceptions:**

   1. Decorative glazing.
   2. When there is an intervening wall or other permanent barrier between the door and the glazing.
   3. Glazing in walls on the latch side of and perpendicular to the plane of the door in a closed position.
   4. Glazing adjacent to a door where access through the door is to a closet or storage area 3 feet (914 mm) or less in depth.
   5. Glazing that is adjacent to the fixed panel of patio doors.

3. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel that meets all of the following conditions:

   3.1. The exposed area of an individual pane is larger than 9 square feet (0.836 $m^2$); and

   3.2. The bottom edge of the glazing is less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor; and

   3.3. The top edge of the glazing is more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor; and

   3.4. One or more walking surfaces are within 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the glazing.

   **Exceptions:**

   1. Decorative glazing.
   2. When a horizontal rail is installed on the accessible side(s) of the glazing 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965) above the walking surface. The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal load of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and be a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in cross sectional height.
   3. Outboard panes in insulating glass units and other multiple glazed panels when the bottom edge of the glass is 25 feet (7620 mm) or more above *grade*, a roof, walking surfaces or other horizontal [within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of horizontal] surface adjacent to the glass exterior.

4. All glazing in railings regardless of area or height above a walking surface. Included are structural baluster panels and nonstructural infill panels.

5. Glazing in enclosures for or walls facing hot tubs, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs and showers where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) measured vertically above any standing or walking surface.

   **Exception:** Glazing that is more than 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, from the waters edge of a hot tub, whirlpool or bathtub.

6. Glazing in walls and fences adjacent to indoor and outdoor swimming pools, hot tubs and spas where the bottom edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above a walking surface and within 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the water's edge. This shall apply to single glazing and all panes in multiple glazing.
7. Glazing adjacent to stairways, landings and ramps within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally of a walking surface when the exposed surface of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the plane of the adjacent walking surface.

   **Exceptions:**

   1. When a rail is installed on the accessible side(s) of the glazing 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the walking surface. The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal load of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and be a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in cross sectional height.
   2. The side of the stairway has a guardrail or handrail, including balusters or in-fill panels, complying with Sections R311.7.7 and R312 and the plane of the glazing is more than 18 inches (457 mm) from the railing; or
   3. When a solid wall or panel extends from the plane of the adjacent walking surface to 34 inches (863 mm) to 36 inches (914 mm) above the walking surface and the construction at the top of that wall or panel is capable of withstanding the same horizontal load as a *guard*.
8. Glazing adjacent to stairways within 60 inches (1524 mm) horizontally of the bottom tread of a stairway in any direction when the exposed surface of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the nose of the tread.

   **Exceptions:**

   1. The side of the stairway has a guardrail or handrail, including balusters or in-fill panels, complying with Sections R311.7.7 and R312 and the plane of the glass is more than 18 inches (457 mm) from the railing; or
   2. When a solid wall or panel extends from the plane of the adjacent walking surface to 34 inches (864 mm) to 36 inches (914 mm) above the walking surface and the construction at the top of that wall or panel is capable of withstanding the same horizontal load as a *guard*.

**R308.5 Site built windows.** Site built windows shall comply with Section 2404 of the *International Building Code.*

**R308.6 Skylights and sloped glazing.** Skylights and sloped glazing shall comply with the following sections.

**R308.6.1 Definitions.**

**SKYLIGHTS AND SLOPED GLAZING.** Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or more from vertical. Glazing materials in skylights, including unit skylights, solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls are included in this definition.

**UNIT SKYLIGHT.** A factory assembled, glazed fenestration unit, containing one panel of glazing material, that allows for natural daylighting through an opening in the roof assembly while preserving the weather-resistant barrier of the roof.

**R308.6.2 Permitted materials.** The following types of glazing may be used:

1. Laminated glass with a minimum 0.015-inch (0.38 mm) polyvinyl butyral interlayer for glass panes 16 square feet (1.5 $m^2$) or less in area located such that the highest point of the glass is not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above a walking surface or other accessible area; for higher or larger sizes, the minimum interlayer thickness shall be 0.030 inch (0.76 mm).
2. Fully tempered glass.
3. Heat-strengthened glass.
4. Wired glass.
5. *Approved* rigid plastics.

**R308.6.3 Screens, general.** For fully tempered or heat-strengthened glass, a retaining screen meeting the requirements of Section R308.6.7 shall be installed below the glass, except for fully tempered glass that meets either condition listed in Section R308.6.5.

**R308.6.4 Screens with multiple glazing.** When the inboard pane is fully tempered, heat-strengthened or wired glass, a retaining screen meeting the requirements of Section R308.6.7 shall be installed below the glass, except for either condition listed in Section R308.6.5. All other panes in the multiple glazing may be of any type listed in Section R308.6.2.

**R308.6.5 Screens not required.** Screens shall not be required when fully tempered glass is used as single glazing or the inboard pane in multiple glazing and either of the following conditions are met:

1. Glass area 16 square feet (1.49 $m^2$) or less. Highest point of glass not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above a walking surface or other accessible area, nominal glass thickness not more than $^3/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm), and (for multiple glazing only) the other pane or panes fully tempered, laminated or wired glass.
2. Glass area greater than 16 square feet (1.49 $m^2$). Glass sloped 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from vertical, and highest point of glass not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) above a walking surface or other accessible area.

**R308.6.6 Glass in greenhouses.** Any glazing material is permitted to be installed without screening in the sloped areas of greenhouses, provided the greenhouse height at the ridge does not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) above *grade*.

**R308.6.7 Screen characteristics.** The screen and its fastenings shall be capable of supporting twice the weight of the glazing, be firmly and substantially fastened to the framing members, and have a mesh opening of no more than 1 inch by 1 inch (25 mm by 25 mm).

**R308.6.8 Curbs for skylights.** All unit skylights installed in a roof with a pitch flatter than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) shall be mounted on a curb extending at least 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof unless otherwise specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R308.6.9 Testing and labeling.** Unit skylights shall be tested by an *approved* independent laboratory, and bear a *label* identifying manufacturer, performance *grade* rating and *approved* inspection agency to indicate compliance with the requirements of AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

## SECTION R309 GARAGES AND CARPORTS

**R309.1 Floor surface.** Garage floor surfaces shall be of *approved* noncombustible material.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

**R309.2 Carports.** Carports shall be open on at least two sides. Carport floor surfaces shall be of *approved* noncombustible material. Carports not open on at least two sides shall be considered a garage and shall comply with the provisions of this section for garages.

**Exception:** Asphalt surfaces shall be permitted at ground level in carports.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

**R309.3 Flood hazard areas.** For buildings located in flood hazard areas as established by Table R301.2(1), garage floors shall be:

1. Elevated to or above the design flood elevation as determined in Section R322; or
2. Located below the design flood elevation provided they are at or above *grade* on at least one side, are used solely for parking, building access or storage, meet the requirements of Section R322 and are otherwise constructed in accordance with this code.

**R309.4 Automatic garage door openers.** Automatic garage door openers, if provided, shall be listed in accordance with UL 325.

## SECTION R310 EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENINGS

**R310.1 Emergency escape and rescue required.** *Basements,* habitable attics and every sleeping room shall have at least one operable emergency escape and rescue opening. Where *basements* contain one or more sleeping rooms, emergency egress and rescue openings shall be required in each sleeping room. Where emergency escape and rescue openings are provided they shall have a sill height of not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. Where a door opening having a threshold below the adjacent ground elevation serves as an emergency escape and rescue opening and is provided with a bulkhead enclosure, the bulkhead enclosure shall comply with Section R310.3. The net clear opening dimensions required by this section shall be obtained by the normal operation of the emergency escape and rescue opening from the inside. Emergency escape and rescue openings with a finished sill height below the adjacent ground elevation shall be provided with a window well in accordance with Section R310.2. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall open directly into a public way, or to a *yard* or court that opens to a public way.

**Exception:** *Basements* used only to house mechanical *equipment* and not exceeding total floor area of 200 square feet (18.58 $m^2$).

**R310.1.1 Minimum opening area.** All emergency escape and rescue openings shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5.7 square feet (0.530 $m^2$).

**Exception:** *Grade* floor openings shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5 square feet (0.465 $m^2$).

**R310.1.2 Minimum opening height.** The minimum net clear opening height shall be 24 inches (610 mm).

**R310.1.3 Minimum opening width.** The minimum net clear opening width shall be 20 inches (508 mm).

**R310.1.4 Operational constraints.** Emergency escape and rescue openings shall be operational from the inside of the room without the use of keys, tools or special knowledge.

**R310.2 Window wells.** The minimum horizontal area of the window well shall be 9 square feet (0.9 $m^2$), with a minimum horizontal projection and width of 36 inches (914 mm). The area of the window well shall allow the emergency escape and rescue opening to be fully opened.

**Exception:** The ladder or steps required by Section R310.2.1 shall be permitted to encroach a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm) into the required dimensions of the window well.

**R310.2.1 Ladder and steps.** Window wells with a vertical depth greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be equipped with a permanently affixed ladder or steps usable with the window in the fully open position. Ladders or steps required by this section shall not be required to comply with Sections R311.7 and R311.8. Ladders or rungs shall have an inside width of at least 12 inches (305 mm), shall project at least 3 inches (76 mm) from the wall and shall be spaced not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center vertically for the full height of the window well.

**R310.3 Bulkhead enclosures.** Bulkhead enclosures shall provide direct access to the *basement*. The bulkhead enclosure with the door panels in the fully open position shall provide the minimum net clear opening required by Section R310.1.1. Bulkhead enclosures shall also comply with Section R311.7.8.2.

**R310.4 Bars, grilles, covers and screens.** Bars, grilles, covers, screens or similar devices are permitted to be placed over emergency escape and rescue openings, bulkhead enclosures, or window wells that serve such openings, provided the minimum net clear opening size complies with Sections R310.1.1 to R310.1.3, and such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool, special knowledge or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the escape and rescue opening.

**R310.5 Emergency escape windows under decks and porches.** Emergency escape windows are allowed to be installed under decks and porches provided the location of the deck allows the emergency escape window to be fully opened and provides a path not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height to a *yard* or court.

## SECTION R311
## MEANS OF EGRESS

**R311.1 Means of egress.** All *dwellings* shall be provided with a means of egress as provided in this section. The means of egress shall provide a continuous and unobstructed path of vertical and horizontal egress travel from all portions of the *dwelling* to the exterior of the *dwelling* at the required egress door without requiring travel through a garage.

**R311.2 Egress door.** At least one egress door shall be provided for each *dwelling* unit. The egress door shall be side-hinged, and shall provide a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) when measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). The minimum clear height of the door opening shall not be less than 78 inches (1981 mm) in height measured from the top of the threshold to the bottom of the stop. Other doors shall not be required to comply with these minimum dimensions. Egress doors shall be readily openable from inside the *dwelling* without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

**R311.3 Floors and landings at exterior doors.** There shall be a landing or floor on each side of each exterior door. The width of each landing shall not be less than the door served. Every landing shall have a minimum dimension of 36 inches (914 mm) measured in the direction of travel. Exterior landings shall be permitted to have a slope not to exceed $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent).

**Exception:** Exterior balconies less than 60 square feet (5.6 $m^2$) and only accessible from a door are permitted to have a landing less than 36 inches (914 mm) measured in the direction of travel.

**R311.3.1 Floor elevations at the required egress doors.** Landings or floors at the required egress door shall not be more than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) lower than the top of the threshold.

**Exception:** The exterior landing or floor shall not be more than $7^3/_4$ inches (196 mm) below the top of the threshold provided the door does not swing over the landing or floor.

When exterior landings or floors serving the required egress door are not at *grade*, they shall be provided with access to *grade* by means of a ramp in accordance with Section R311.8 or a stairway in accordance with Section R311.7.

**R311.3.2 Floor elevations for other exterior doors.** Doors other than the required egress door shall be provided with landings or floors not more than $7^3/_4$ inches (196 mm) below the top of the threshold.

**Exception:** A landing is not required where a stairway of two or fewer risers is located on the exterior side of the door, provided the door does not swing over the stairway.

**R311.3.3 Storm and screen doors.** Storm and screen doors shall be permitted to swing over all exterior stairs and landings.

**R311.4 Vertical egress.** Egress from *habitable* levels including *habitable attics* and *basements* not provided with an egress door in accordance with Section R311.2 shall be by a ramp in accordance with Section R311.8 or a stairway in accordance with Section R311.7.

<u>**[W] Exception:** Stairs or ladders within an individual *dwelling unit* used for access to areas of 200 square feet (18.6 $m^2$) or less, and not containing the primary bathroom or kitchen.</u>

**R311.5 Construction.**

**R311.5.1 Attachment.** Exterior landings, decks, balconies, stairs and similar facilities shall be positively anchored to the primary structure to resist both vertical and lateral forces or shall be designed to be self-supporting. Attachment shall not be accomplished by use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal.

**R311.6 Hallways.** The minimum width of a hallway shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm).

**R311.7 Stairways.**

**R311.7.1 Width.** Stairways shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width at all points above the permitted handrail height and below the required headroom height. Handrails shall not project more than 4.5 inches (114 mm) on either side of the stairway and the minimum clear width of the stairway at and below the handrail height, including treads and landings, shall not be less than $31^1/_2$ inches (787 mm) where a handrail is installed on one side and 27 inches (698 mm) where handrails are provided on both sides.

**Exception:** The width of spiral stairways shall be in accordance with Section R311.7.9.1.

**R311.7.2 Headroom.** The minimum headroom in all parts of the stairway shall not be less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) measured vertically from the sloped line adjoining the tread nosing or from the floor surface of the landing or platform on that portion of the stairway.

**Exception:** Where the nosings of treads at the side of a flight extend under the edge of a floor opening through which the stair passes, the floor opening shall be allowed to project horizontally into the required headroom a maximum of $4^3/_4$ inches (121 mm).

**R311.7.3 Walkline.** The walkline across winder treads shall be concentric to the curved direction of travel through the turn and located 12 inches (305 mm) from the side where the winders are narrower. The 12-inch (305 mm) dimension shall be measured from the widest point of the clear stair width at the walking surface of the winder. If winders are adjacent within the flight, the point of the widest clear stair width of the adjacent winders shall be used.

**R311.7.4 Stair treads and risers.** Stair treads and risers shall meet the requirements of this section. For the purposes of this section all dimensions and dimensioned surfaces shall be exclusive of carpets, rugs or runners.

**R311.7.4.1 Riser height.** The maximum riser height shall be $7^3/_4$ inches (196 mm). The riser shall be measured vertically between leading edges of the adjacent treads. The greatest riser height within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm).

**R311.7.4.2 Tread depth.** The minimum tread depth shall be 10 inches (254 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to the tread's leading edge. The greatest tread depth within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm). Consistently shaped winders at the walkline shall be allowed within the same flight of stairs as rectangular treads and do not have to be within $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) of the rectangular tread depth.

Winder treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 10 inches (254 mm) measured between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads at the intersections with the walkline. Winder treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 6 inches (152 mm) at any point within the clear width of the stair. Within any flight of stairs, the largest winder tread depth at the walkline shall not exceed the smallest winder tread by more than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm).

**R311.7.4.3 Profile.** The radius of curvature at the nosing shall be no greater than $^9/_{16}$ inch (14 mm). A nosing not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) but not more than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) shall be provided on stairways with solid risers. The greatest nosing projection shall not exceed the smallest nosing projection by more than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) between two stories, including the nosing at the level of floors and landings. Beveling of nosings shall not exceed $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). Risers shall be vertical or sloped under the tread above from the underside of the nosing above at an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.51 rad) from the vertical. Open risers are permitted, provided that the opening between treads does not permit the passage of a 4-inch diameter (102 mm) sphere.

**Exceptions:**

1. A nosing is not required where the tread depth is a minimum of 11 inches (279 mm).
2. The opening between adjacent treads is not limited on stairs with a total rise of 30 inches (762 mm) or less.

**R311.7.4.4 Exterior wood/plastic composite stair treads.** Wood/plastic composite stair treads shall comply with the provisions of Section R317.4.

**R311.7.5 Landings for stairways.** There shall be a floor or landing at the top and bottom of each stairway. A flight of stairs shall not have a vertical rise larger than 12 feet (3658 mm) between floor levels or landings. The width of each landing shall not be less than the width of the stairway served. Every landing shall have a minimum dimension of 36 inches (914 mm) measured in the direction of travel.

**Exception:** A floor or landing is not required at the top of an interior flight of stairs, including stairs in an enclosed garage, provided a door does not swing over the stairs.

**R311.7.6 Stairway walking surface.** The walking surface of treads and landings of stairways shall be sloped no steeper than one unit vertical in 48 inches horizontal (2-percent slope).

**R311.7.7 Handrails.** Handrails shall be provided on at least one side of each continuous run of treads or flight with four or more risers.

**R311.7.7.1 Height.** Handrail height, measured vertically from the sloped plane adjoining the tread nosing, or finish surface of ramp slope, shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. The use of a volute, turnout or starting easing shall be allowed over the lowest tread.
2. When handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, the transition from handrail to guardrail, or used at the start of a flight, the handrail height at the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.

**R311.7.7.2 Continuity.** Handrails for stairways shall be continuous for the full length of the flight, from a point directly above the top riser of the flight to a point directly above the lowest riser of the flight. Handrail ends shall be returned or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals. Handrails adjacent to a wall shall have a space of not less than $1^1/_2$ inch (38 mm) between the wall and the handrails.

**Exceptions:**

1. Handrails shall be permitted to be interrupted by a newel post at the turn.
2. The use of a volute, turnout, starting easing or starting newel shall be allowed over the lowest tread.

**R311.7.7.3 Grip-size.** All required handrails shall be of one of the following types or provide equivalent graspability.

1. Type I. Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of at least $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm). If the handrail is not circular, it shall have a perimeter dimension of at least 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than $6^1/_4$ inches (160 mm) with a maximum cross section of dimension of $2\ ^1/_4$ inches (57 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).
2. Type II. Handrails with a perimeter greater than $6^1/_4$ inches (160 mm) shall have a graspable finger recess area on both sides of the profile. The finger recess shall begin within a distance of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) measured vertically from the tallest portion of the profile and achieve a depth of at least $^5/_{16}$

inch (8 mm) within $^{7}/_{8}$ inch (22 mm) below the widest portion of the profile. This required depth shall continue for at least $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (10 mm) to a level that is not less than $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (45 mm) below the tallest portion of the profile. The minimum width of the handrail above the recess shall be $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches (32 mm) to a maximum of $2^{3}/_{4}$ inches (70 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

**R311.7.7.4 Exterior wood/plastic composite handrails.** Wood/plastic composite handrails shall comply with the provisions of Section R317.4.

**R311.7.8 Illumination.** All stairs shall be provided with illumination in accordance with Section R303.6.

**R311.7.9 Special stairways.** Spiral stairways and bulkhead enclosure stairways shall comply with all requirements of Section R311.7 except as specified below.

**R311.7.9.1 Spiral stairways.** Spiral stairways are permitted, provided the minimum clear width at and below the handrail shall be 26 inches (660 mm) with each tread having a $7^{1}/_{2}$-inch (190 mm) minimum tread depth at 12 inches (914 mm) from the narrower edge. All treads shall be identical, and the rise shall be no more than $9^{1}/_{2}$ inches (241 mm). A minimum headroom of 6 feet 6 inches (1982 mm) shall be provided.

**R311.7.9.2 Bulkhead enclosure stairways.** Stairways serving bulkhead enclosures, not part of the required building egress, providing access from the outside *grade* level to the *basement* shall be exempt from the requirements of Sections R311.3 and R311.7 where the maximum height from the *basement* finished floor level to *grade* adjacent to the stairway does not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) and the *grade* level opening to the stairway is covered by a bulkhead enclosure with hinged doors or other *approved* means.

**R311.8 Ramps.**

**R311.8.1 Maximum slope.** Ramps shall have a maximum slope of 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3 percent slope).

**Exception:** Where it is technically infeasible to comply because of site constraints, ramps may have a maximum slope of one unit vertical in eight horizontal (12.5 percent slope).

**R311.8.2 Landings required.** A minimum 3-foot-by-3-foot (914 mm by 914 mm) landing shall be provided:

1. At the top and bottom of ramps.
2. Where doors open onto ramps.
3. Where ramps change direction.

**R311.8.3 Handrails required.** Handrails shall be provided on at least one side of all ramps exceeding a slope of one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33-percent slope).

**R311.8.3.1 Height.** Handrail height, measured above the finished surface of the ramp slope, shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm).

**R311.8.3.2 Grip size.** Handrails on ramps shall comply with Section R311.7.7.3.

**R311.8.3.3 Continuity.** Handrails where required on ramps shall be continuous for the full length of the ramp. Handrail ends shall be returned or shall terminate in newel posts or safety terminals. Handrails adjacent to a wall shall have a space of not less than $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) between the wall and the handrails.

## SECTION R312
## GUARDS

**R312.1 Where required.** *Guards* shall be located along open-sided walking surfaces, including stairs, ramps and landings, that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) measured vertically to the floor or *grade* below at any point within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side. Insect screening shall not be considered as a *guard*.

**R312.2 Height.** Required *guards* at open-sided walking surfaces, including stairs, porches, balconies or landings, shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) high measured vertically above the adjacent walking surface, adjacent fixed seating or the line connecting the leading edges of the treads.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Guards* on the open sides of stairs shall have a height not less than 34 inches (864 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.
2. Where the top of the *guard* also serves as a handrail on the open sides of stairs, the top of the *guard* shall not be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.

**R312.3 Opening limitations.** Required *guards* shall not have openings from the walking surface to the required *guard* height which allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter.

**Exceptions:**

1. The triangular openings at the open side of a stair, formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail of a *guard*, shall not allow passage of a sphere 6 inches (153 mm) in diameter.
2. *Guards* on the open sides of stairs shall not have openings which allow passage of a sphere $4^{3}/_{8}$ inches (111 mm) in diameter.

**Code Alternate R312.3:** Intermediate rails need not be provided at the glazed sides of stairs, ramps and landings, provided the glazing complies with Section R308.3.

**R312.4 Exterior woodplastic composite guards.** Woodplastic composite *guards* shall comply with the provisions of Section R317.4.

## ((~~SECTION R313~~ ~~AUTOMATIC FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS~~))

((~~**R313.1 Townhouse automatic fire sprinkler systems.** An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall be installed in *townhouses*.~~))

((~~**Exception:** An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall not be required when *additions* or *alterations* are made to existing *townhouses* that do not have an automatic residential fire sprinkler system installed.~~))

((~~**R313.1.1 Design and installation.** Automatic residential fire sprinkler systems for *townhouses* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section P2904.~~))

((~~**R313.2 One- and two-family dwellings automatic fire systems.** Effective January 1, 2011, an automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall be installed in one- and two- family *dwellings*.~~))

((~~**Exception:** An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall not be required for *additions* or *alterations* to existing buildings that are not already provided with an automatic residential sprinkler system.~~))

((~~**R313.2.1 Design and installation.** Automatic residential fire sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section P2904 or NFPA 13D.~~))

## SECTION R314 SMOKE ALARMS

**[W] R314.1 Smoke detection and notification.** All smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 217 and installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and the household fire warning *equipment* provisions of NFPA 72.

**R314.2 Smoke detection systems.** Household fire alarm systems installed in accordance with NFPA 72 that include smoke alarms, or a combination of smoke detector and audible notification device installed as required by this section for smoke alarms, shall be permitted. The household fire alarm system shall provide the same level of smoke detection and alarm as required by this section for smoke alarms. Where a household fire warning system is installed using a combination of smoke detector and audible notification device(s), it shall become a permanent fixture of the occupancy and owned by the homeowner. The system shall be monitored by an *approved* supervising station and be maintained in accordance with NFPA 72.

**Exception:** Where smoke alarms are provided meeting the requirements of Section R314.4.

**R314.3 Location.** Smoke alarms shall be installed in the following locations:

1. In each sleeping room.
2. Outside each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms.
3. On each additional *story* of the *dwelling*, inclusding *basements* ((~~and habitable attics~~)) but not including crawl spaces and uninhabitable *attics*. In *dwellings* or *dwelling units* with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full *story* below the upper level.
4. In napping areas in *family child day care homes*.

When more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual *dwelling* unit the alarm devices shall be interconnected in such a manner that the actuation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit.

**R314.3.1 Alterations, repairs and additions.** When *alterations*, repairs or *additions* requiring a *permit* occur, or when one or more sleeping rooms are added or created in existing *dwellings*, the individual *dwelling unit* shall be equipped with smoke alarms located as required for new *dwellings*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Work involving the exterior surfaces of *dwellings*, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the *addition* or replacement of windows or doors, or the *addition* of a porch or deck, are exempt from the requirements of this section.
2. Installation, *alteration* or repairs of plumbing~~,~~ electrical or mechanical systems are exempt from the requirements of this section.

**R314.4 Power source.** Smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring when such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than those required for overcurrent protection. Smoke alarms shall be interconnected.

**Exceptions:**

1. Smoke alarms shall be permitted to be battery operated when installed in buildings without commercial power.
2. Interconnection and hard-wiring of smoke alarms in existing areas shall not be required where the *alterations* or repairs do not result in the removal of interior wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure, unless there is an *attic*, crawl space or *basement* available which could provide access for hard wiring and interconnection without the removal of interior finishes.

## SECTION R315 CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

**[W] R315.1 Carbon monoxide alarms.** For new construction, an *approved* carbon monoxide alarm shall be installed by January 1, 2011, outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms in *dwelling units*. ((~~within which fuel-fired *appliances* are installed and in dwelling units that have attached garages.~~)) In a building where a tenancy exists, the tenant shall maintain the alarm as specified by the manufacturer, including replacement of the batteries.

**[W] R315.2** ((~~**Where required in existing dwellings.** Where work requiring a *permit* occurs in existing *dwellings* that have~~

~~attached garages or in existing dwellings within which fuel-fired appliances exist, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section R315.1.~~)) **Existing dwellings.** Existing *dwellings* shall be equipped with carbon monoxide alarms by July 1, 2011.

> **Exception:** Owner-occupied detached one-family *dwellings* legally occupied prior to July 1, 2010.

**R315.3 Alarm requirements.** Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION R316
## FOAM PLASTIC

**R316.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, design, application, construction and installation of foam plastic materials.

**R316.2 Labeling and identification.** Packages and containers of foam plastic insulation and foam plastic insulation components delivered to the job site shall bear the *label* of an *approved agency* showing the manufacturer's name, the product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the requirements.

**R316.3 Surface burning characteristics.** Unless otherwise allowed in Section R316.5 or R316.6, all foam plastic or foam plastic cores used as a component in manufactured assemblies used in building construction shall have a flame spread index of not more than 75 and shall have a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E 84 or UL 723. Loose-fill type foam plastic insulation shall be tested as board stock for the flame spread index and smoke-developed index.

> **Exception:** Foam plastic insulation more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick shall have a maximum flame spread index of 75 and a smoke-developed index of 450 where tested at a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm), provided the end use is *approved* in accordance with Section R316.6 using the thickness and density intended for use.

**R316.4 Thermal barrier.** Unless otherwise allowed in Section R316.5 or Section R316.6, foam plastic shall be separated from the interior of a building by an *approved* thermal barrier of minimum $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or an *approved* finish material equivalent to a thermal barrier material that will limit the average temperature rise of the unexposed surface to no more than 250°F (139°C) after 15 minutes of fire exposure complying with the ASTM E 119 or UL 263 standard time temperature curve. The thermal barrier shall be installed in such a manner that it will remain in place for 15 minutes based on NFPA 286 with the acceptance criteria of Section R302.9.4, FM 4880, UL 1040 or UL 1715.

**R316.5 Specific requirements.** The following requirements shall apply to these uses of foam plastic unless specifically *approved* in accordance with Section R316.6 or by other sections of the code or the requirements of Sections R316.2 through R316.4 have been met.

**R316.5.1 Masonry or concrete construction.** The thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 is not required in a masonry or concrete wall, floor or roof when the foam plastic insulation is separated from the interior of the building by a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

**R316.5.2 Roofing.** The thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 is not required when the foam plastic in a roof assembly or under a roof covering is installed in accordance with the code and the manufacturer's installation instructions and is separated from the interior of the building by tongue-and-groove wood planks or wood structural panel sheathing in accordance with Section R803, not less than $^{15}/_{32}$ inch (11.9 mm) thick bonded with exterior glue and identified as Exposure 1, with edges supported by blocking or tongue-and-groove joints or an equivalent material. The smoke-developed index for roof applications shall not be limited.

**R316.5.3 Attics.** The thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 is not required where all of the following apply:

1. *Attic* access is required by Section R807.1.
2. The space is entered only for purposes of repairs or maintenance.
3. The foam plastic insulation is protected against ignition using one of the following ignition barrier materials:
   - 3.1. $1^1/_2$-inch-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber insulation;
   - 3.2. $^1/_4$-inch-thick (6.4 mm) wood structural panels;
   - 3.3. $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) particleboard;
   - 3.4. $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) hardboard;
   - 3.5. $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) gypsum board; or
   - 3.6. Corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.406 mm).

The above ignition barrier is not required where the foam plastic insulation has been tested in accordance with Section R316.6.

**R316.5.4 Crawl spaces.** The thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 is not required where all of the following apply:

1. Crawlspace access is required by Section R408.4
2. Entry is made only for purposes of repairs or maintenance.
3. The foam plastic insulation is protected against ignition using one of the following ignition barrier materials:
   - 3.1. $1^1/_2$-inch-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber insulation;
   - 3.2. $^1/_4$-inch-thick (6.4 mm) wood structural panels;
   - 3.3. $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) particleboard;
   - 3.4. $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) hardboard;

3.5. $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) gypsum board; or

3.6. Corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.406 mm).

The above ignition barrier is not required where the foam plastic insulation has been tested in accordance with Section R316.6.

**R316.5.5 Foam-filled exterior doors.** Foam-filled exterior doors are exempt from the requirements of Sections R316.3 and R316.4.

**R316.5.6 Foam-filled garage doors.** Foam-filled garage doors in attached or detached garages are exempt from the requirements of Sections R316.3 and R316.4.

**R316.5.7 Foam backer board.** The thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 is not required where siding backer board foam plastic insulation has a maximum thickness of 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) and a potential heat of not more than 2000 Btu per square foot (22 720 kJ/m$^2$) when tested in accordance with NFPA 259 provided that:

1. The foam plastic insulation is separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of mineral fiber insulation or
2. The foam plastic insulation is installed over existing *exterior wall* finish in conjunction with re-siding or
3. The foam plastic insulation has been tested in accordance with Section R316.6.

**R316.5.8 Re-siding.** The thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 is not required where the foam plastic insulation is installed over existing *exterior wall* finish in conjunction with re-siding provided the foam plastic has a maximum thickness of 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) and a potential heat of not more than 2000 Btu per square foot (22 720 kJ/m$^2$) when tested in accordance with NFPA 259.

**R316.5.9 Interior trim.** The thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 is not required for exposed foam plastic interior trim, provided all of the following are met:

1. The minimum density is 20 pounds per cubic foot (320 kg/m$^3$).
2. The maximum thickness of the trim is 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) and the maximum width is 8 inches (204 mm).
3. The interior trim shall not constitute more than 10 percent of the aggregate wall and ceiling area of any room or space.
4. The flame spread index does not exceed 75 when tested per ASTM E 84. The smoke-developed index is not limited.

**R316.5.10 Interior finish.** Foam plastics shall be permitted as interior finish where *approved* in accordance with Section R316.6 Foam plastics that are used as interior finish shall also meet the flame spread index and smoke-developed index requirements of Sections R302.9.1 and R302.9.2.

**R316.5.11 Sill plates and headers.** Foam plastic shall be permitted to be spray applied to a sill plate and header without the thermal barrier specified in Section R316.4 subject to all of the following:

1. The maximum thickness of the foam plastic shall be $3^1/_4$ inches (83 mm).
2. The density of the foam plastic shall be in the range of 0.5 to 2.0 pounds per cubic foot (8 to 32 kg/m$^3$).
3. The foam plastic shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and an accompanying smoke developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.

**R316.5.12 Sheathing.** Foam plastic insulation used as sheathing shall comply with Section R316.3 and Section R316.4. Where the foam plastic sheathing is exposed to the *attic* space at a gable or kneewall, the provisions of Section R316.5.3 shall apply.

**R316.6 Specific approval.** Foam plastic not meeting the requirements of Sections R316.3 through R316.5 shall be specifically *approved* on the basis of one of the following *approved* tests: NFPA 286 with the acceptance criteria of Section R302.9.4, FM4880, UL 723, UL 1040 or UL 1715, or fire tests related to actual end-use configurations. The specific approval shall be based on the actual end use configuration and shall be performed on the finished foam plastic assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use. Assemblies tested shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation of the assembly and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

**R316.7 Termite damage.** The use of foam plastics in areas of "very heavy" termite infestation probability shall be in accordance with Section R318.4.

## SECTION R317
## PROTECTION OF WOOD AND WOOD BASED PRODUCTS AGAINST DECAY

**R317.1 Location required.** Protection of wood and wood based products from decay shall be provided in the following locations by the use of naturally durable wood or wood that is preservative-treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for the species, product, preservative and end use. Preservatives shall be listed in Section 4 of AWPA U1.

1. Wood joists or the bottom of a wood structural floor when closer than 18 inches (457 mm) or wood girders when closer than 12 inches (305 mm) to the exposed ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated area located within the periphery of the building foundation.
2. All wood framing members that rest on concrete or masonry exterior foundation walls and are less than 8 inches (203 mm) from the exposed ground.
3. Sills and sleepers on a concrete or masonry slab that is in direct contact with the ground unless separated from such slab by an impervious moisture barrier.
4. The ends of wood girders entering exterior masonry or concrete walls having clearances of less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) on tops, sides and ends.
5. Wood siding, sheathing and wall framing on the exterior of a building having a clearance of less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the ground or less than 2 inches (51 mm) mea-

sured vertically from concrete steps, porch slabs, patio slabs, and similar horizontal surfaces exposed to the weather.

6. Wood structural members supporting moisture-permeable floors or roofs that are exposed to the weather, such as concrete or masonry slabs, unless separated from such floors or roofs by an impervious moisture barrier.
7. Wood furring strips or other wood framing members attached directly to the interior of exterior masonry walls or concrete walls below *grade* except where an *approved* vapor retarder is applied between the wall and the furring strips or framing members.

**R317.1.1 Field treatment.** Field-cut ends, notches and drilled holes of preservative-treated wood shall be treated in the field in accordance with AWPA M4.

**R317.1.2 Ground contact.** All wood in contact with the ground, embedded in concrete in direct contact with the ground or embedded in concrete exposed to the weather that supports permanent structures intended for human occupancy shall be *approved* pressure-preservative-treated wood suitable for ground contact use, except untreated wood may be used where entirely below groundwater level or continuously submerged in fresh water.

**R317.1.3 Geographical areas.** In geographical areas where experience has demonstrated a specific need, *approved* naturally durable or pressure-preservative-treated wood shall be used for those portions of wood members that form the structural supports of buildings, balconies, porches or similar permanent building appurtenances when those members are exposed to the weather without adequate protection from a roof, eave, overhang or other covering that would prevent moisture or water accumulation on the surface or at joints between members. Depending on local experience, such members may include:

1. Horizontal members such as girders, joists and decking.
2. Vertical members such as posts, poles and columns.
3. Both horizontal and vertical members.

**R317.1.4 Wood columns.** Wood columns shall be *approved* wood of natural decay resistance or *approved* pressure-preservative-treated wood.

**Exceptions:**

1. Columns exposed to the weather or in *basements* when supported by concrete piers or metal pedestals projecting 1 inch (25.4 mm) above a concrete floor or 6 inches (152 mm) above exposed earth and the earth is covered by an *approved* impervious moisture barrier.
2. Columns in enclosed crawl spaces or unexcavated areas located within the periphery of the building when supported by a concrete pier or metal pedestal at a height more than 8 inches (203mm) from exposed earth and the earth is covered by an impervious moisture barrier.

**R317.1.5 Exposed glued-laminated timbers.** The portions of glued-laminated timbers that form the structural supports of a building or other structure and are exposed to weather and not properly protected by a roof, eave or similar covering shall be pressure treated with preservative, or be manufactured from naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

**R317.2 Quality mark.** Lumber and plywood required to be pressure-preservative-treated in accordance with Section R318.1 shall bear the quality *mark* of an *approved* inspection agency that maintains continuing supervision, testing and inspection over the quality of the product and that has been *approved* by an accreditation body that complies with the requirements of the American Lumber Standard Committee treated wood program.

**R317.2.1 Required information.** The required quality *mark* on each piece of pressure-preservative-treated lumber or plywood shall contain the following information:

1. Identification of the treating plant.
2. Type of preservative.
3. The minimum preservative retention.
4. End use for which the product was treated.
5. Standard to which the product was treated.
6. Identity of the *approved* inspection agency.
7. The designation "Dry," if applicable.

**Exception:** Quality *mark*s on lumber less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) nominal thickness, or lumber less than nominal 1 inch by 5 inches (25.4 mm by 127 mm) or 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) or lumber 36 inches (914 mm) or less in length shall be applied by stamping the faces of exterior pieces or by end labeling not less than 25 percent of the pieces of a bundled unit.

**R317.3 Fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative-treated and fire-retardant-treated wood.** Fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative-treated wood and fire-retardant-treated wood shall be in accordance with this section. The coating weights for zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A 153.

**R317.3.1 Fasteners for preservative-treated wood.** Fasteners for preservative-treated wood shall be of hot dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Coating types and weights for connectors in contact with preservative-treated wood shall be in accordance with the connector manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, a minimum of ASTM A 653 type G185 zinc-coated galvanized steel, or equivalent, shall be used.

**Exceptions:**

1. One-half-inch (12.7 mm) diameter or greater steel bolts.
2. Fasteners other than nails and timber rivets shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B 695, Class 55 minimum.

**R317.3.2 Fastenings for wood foundations.** Fastenings for wood foundations shall be as required in AF&PA PWF.

**R317.3.3 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations.** Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Fasteners other than nails and timber rivets shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B 695, Class 55 minimum.

**R317.3.4 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior applications.** Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior locations shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of the manufacturer's recommendations, Section R317.3.3 shall apply.

**R317.4 Wood/plastic composites.** Wood/plastic composites used in exterior deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guardrail systems shall bear a *label* indicating the required performance levels and demonstrating compliance with the provisions of ASTM D 7032.

**R317.4.1** Wood/plastic composites shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

## SECTION R318 PROTECTION AGAINST SUBTERRANEAN TERMITES

**R318.1 Subterranean termite control methods.** In areas subject to damage from termites as indicated by Table R301.2(1), methods of protection shall be one of the following methods or a combination of these methods:

1. Chemical termiticide treatment, as provided in Section R318.2.
2. Termite baiting system installed and maintained according to the *label*.
3. Pressure-preservative-treated wood in accordance with the provisions of Section R317.1.
4. Naturally durable termite-resistant wood.
5. Physical barriers as provided in Section R318.3 and used in locations as specified in Section R318.1.
6. Cold-formed steel framing in accordance with Sections R505.2.1 and R603.2.1.

**R318.1.1 Quality mark.** Lumber and plywood required to be pressure-preservative-treated in accordance with Section R318.1 shall bear the quality *mark* of an *approved* inspection agency which maintains continuing supervision, testing and inspection over the quality of the product and which has been *approved* by an accreditation body which complies with the requirements of the American Lumber Standard Committee treated wood program.

**R318.1.2 Field treatment.** Field-cut ends, notches, and drilled holes of pressure-preservative-treated wood shall be retreated in the field in accordance with AWPA M4.

**R318.2 Chemical termiticide treatment.** Chemical termiticide treatment shall include soil treatment and/or field applied wood treatment. The concentration, rate of application and method of treatment of the chemical termiticide shall be in strict accordance with the termiticide *label*.

**R318.3 Barriers.** *Approved* physical barriers, such as metal or plastic sheeting or collars specifically designed for termite prevention, shall be installed in a manner to prevent termites from entering the structure. Shields placed on top of an exterior foundation wall are permitted to be used only if in combination with another method of protection.

**R318.4 Foam plastic protection.** In areas where the probability of termite infestation is "very heavy" as indicated in Figure R301.2(6), extruded and expanded polystyrene, polyisocyanurate and other foam plastics shall not be installed on the exterior face or under interior or exterior foundation walls or slab foundations located below *grade*. The clearance between foam plastics installed above *grade* and exposed earth shall be at least 6 inches (152 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings where the structural members of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs are entirely of noncombustible materials or pressure-preservative-treated wood.
2. When in *addition* to the requirements of Section R318.1, an *approved* method of protecting the foam plastic and structure from subterranean termite damage is used.
3. On the interior side of *basement walls*.

## SECTION R319 SITE ADDRESS

**R319.1 Address numbers.** Buildings shall have *approved* address numbers, building numbers or *approved* building identification placed in a position that is plainly legible and visible from the street or road fronting the property. These numbers shall contrast with their background. Address numbers shall be Arabic numbers or alphabetical letters. Numbers shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) high with a minimum stroke width of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). Where access is by means of a private road and the building address cannot be viewed from the public way, a monument, pole or other sign or means shall be used to identify the structure. <u>Premises identification shall be provided in compliance with *Seattle Building Code* Section 501.2.</u>

## SECTION R320 ACCESSIBILITY

**R320.1 Scope.** Where there are four or more *dwelling* units or sleeping units in a single structure, the provisions of Chapter 11 of the *International Building Code* for Group R-3 shall apply.

## SECTION R321
## ELEVATORS AND PLATFORM LIFTS

**R321.1 Elevators.** Where provided, passenger elevators, limited-use/limited-application elevators or private residence elevators shall comply with ASME A17.1.

**R321.2 Platform lifts.** Where provided, platform lifts shall comply with ASME A18.1.

**R321.3 Accessibility.** Elevators or platform lifts that are part of an accessible route required by Chapter 11 of the *International Building Code*, shall comply with ICC A117.1.

## SECTION R322
## FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

**R322.1 General.** Buildings and structures constructed in whole or in part in flood hazard areas (including A or V Zones) as established in Table R301.2(1) shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions contained in this section <u>and Seattle Municipal Code Chapter 25.06, the Seattle Floodplain Development Ordinance</u>.

**Exception:** Buildings and structures located in whole or in part in identified floodways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**R322.1.1 Alternative provisions.** As an alternative to the requirements in Section R322.3 for buildings and structures located in whole or in part in coastal high-hazard areas (V Zones), ASCE 24 is permitted subject to the limitations of this code and the limitations therein.

**R322.1.2 Structural systems.** All structural systems of all buildings and structures shall be designed, connected and anchored to resist flotation, collapse or permanent lateral movement due to structural loads and stresses from flooding equal to the design flood elevation.

**R322.1.3 Flood-resistant construction.** All buildings and structures erected in areas prone to flooding shall be constructed by methods and practices that minimize flood damage.

**R322.1.4 Establishing the design flood elevation.** The design flood elevation shall be used to define areas prone to flooding. At a minimum, the design flood elevation is the higher of:

1. The base flood elevation at the depth of peak elevation of flooding (including wave height) which has a 1 percent (100-year flood) or greater chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year, or
2. The elevation of the design flood associated with the area designated on a flood hazard map adopted by the community, or otherwise legally designated.

**R322.1.4.1 Determination of design flood elevations.** If design flood elevations are not specified, the *building official* is authorized to require the applicant to:

1. Obtain and reasonably use data available from a federal, state or other source; or
2. Determine the design flood elevation in accordance with accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering practices used to define special flood hazard areas. Determinations shall be undertaken by a *registered design professional* who shall document that the technical methods used reflect currently accepted engineering practice. Studies, analyses and computations shall be submitted in sufficient detail to allow thorough review and approval.

**R322.1.4.2 Determination of impacts.** In riverine flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the applicant shall demonstrate that the effect of the proposed buildings and structures on design flood elevations, including fill, when combined with all other existing and anticipated flood hazard area encroachments, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the jurisdiction.

**R322.1.5 Lowest floor.** The lowest floor shall be the floor of the lowest enclosed area, including *basement*, but excluding any unfinished flood-resistant enclosure that is useable solely for vehicle parking, building access or limited storage provided that such enclosure is not built so as to render the building or structure in violation of this section.

**R322.1.6 Protection of mechanical and electrical systems.** Electrical systems, *equipment* and components; heating, ventilating, air conditioning; plumbing *appliances* and plumbing fixtures; *duct systems*; and other service *equipment* shall be located at or above the elevation required in Section R322.2 (flood hazard areas including A Zones) or R322.3 (coastal high-hazard areas including V Zones). If replaced as part of a substantial improvement, electrical systems, *equipment* and components; heating, ventilating, air conditioning and plumbing *appliances* and plumbing fixtures; *duct systems*; and other service *equipment* shall meet the requirements of this section. Systems, fixtures, and *equipment* and components shall not be mounted on or penetrate through walls intended to break away under flood loads.

**Exception:** Locating electrical systems, *equipment* and components; heating, ventilating, air conditioning; plumbing *appliances* and plumbing fixtures; *duct systems*; and other service *equipment* is permitted below the elevation required in Section R322.2 (flood hazard areas including A Zones) or R322.3 (coastal high-hazard areas including V Zones) provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the design flood elevation in accordance with ASCE 24. Electrical wiring systems are permitted to be located below the required elevation provided they conform to the provisions of the ((~~electrical part of this code~~)) <u>*Seattle Electrical Code*</u> for wet locations.

**R322.1.7 Protection of water supply and sanitary sewage systems.** New and replacement water supply systems shall be designed to minimize or eliminate infiltration of flood waters into the systems in accordance with the plumbing provisions of this code. New and replacement sanitary sewage systems shall be designed to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into systems and discharges from systems into floodwaters in accordance with the ((~~plumbing provisions of this code and Chapter 3 of the *International Private Sewage Disposal Code*~~)) Uniform Plumbing Code.

**R322.1.8 Flood-resistant materials.** Building materials used below the elevation required in Section R322.2 (flood hazard areas including A Zones) or R322.3 (coastal high-hazard areas including V Zones) shall comply with the following:

1. All wood, including floor sheathing, shall be pressure-preservative-treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for the species, product, preservative and end use or be the decay-resistant heartwood of redwood, black locust or cedars. Preservatives shall be listed in Section 4 of AWPA U1.
2. Materials and installation methods used for flooring and interior and *exterior walls* and wall coverings shall conform to the provisions of FEMA/FIA-TB-2.

**R322.1.9 Manufactured homes.** New or replacement *manufactured homes* shall be elevated in accordance with Section R322.2 or Section R322.3 in coastal high-hazard areas (V Zones). The anchor and tie-down requirements of Sections AE604 and AE605 of Appendix E shall apply. The foundation and anchorage of *manufactured homes* to be located in identified floodways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**R322.1.10 As-built elevation documentation.** A *registered design professional* shall prepare and seal documentation of the elevations specified in Section R322.2 or R322.3.

**R322.2 Flood hazard areas (including A Zones).** All areas that have been determined to be prone to flooding but not subject to high velocity wave action shall be designated as flood hazard areas. Flood hazard areas that have been delineated as subject to wave heights between $1^1/_2$ feet (457 mm) and 3 feet (914 mm) shall be designated as Coastal A Zones. All building and structures constructed in whole or in part in flood hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections R322.2.1 through R322.2.3.

**R322.2.1 Elevation requirements.**

1. Buildings and structures in flood hazard areas not designated as Coastal A Zones shall have the lowest floors elevated to or above the design flood elevation~~.~~, or a greater elevation as designated by Seattle Municipal Code.
2. Buildings and structures in flood hazard areas designated as Coastal A Zones shall have the lowest floors elevated to or above the base flood elevation plus 1 foot (305 mm), or to the design flood elevation, whichever is higher.
3. In areas of shallow flooding (AO Zones), buildings and structures shall have the lowest floor (including *basement*) elevated at least as high above the highest adjacent *grade* as the depth number specified in feet on the FIRM, or at least 2 feet (610 mm) if a depth number is not specified.
4. Basement floors that are below *grade* on all sides shall be elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

**Exception:** Enclosed areas below the design flood elevation, including *basements* whose floors are not below *grade* on all sides, shall meet the requirements of Section R322.2.2.

**R322.2.2 Enclosed area below design flood elevation.** Enclosed areas, including crawl spaces, that are below the design flood elevation shall:

1. Be used solely for parking of vehicles, building access or storage.
2. Be provided with flood openings that meet the following criteria:
   - 2.1. There shall be a minimum of two openings on different sides of each enclosed area; if a building has more than one enclosed area below the design flood elevation, each area shall have openings on exterior walls.
   - 2.2. The total net area of all openings shall be at least 1 square inch (645 $mm^2$) for each square foot (0.093 $m^2$) of enclosed area, or the openings shall be designed and the *construction documents* shall include a statement by a registered *design professional* that the design of the openings will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces on exterior walls by allowing for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters as specified in Section 2.6.2.2 of ASCE 24.
   - 2.3. The bottom of each opening shall be 1 foot (305 mm) or less above the adjacent ground level.
   - 2.4. Openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in any direction in the plane of the wall.
   - 2.5. Any louvers, screens or other opening covers shall allow the automatic flow of floodwaters into and out of the enclosed area.
   - 2.6. Openings installed in doors and windows, that meet requirements 2.1 through 2.5, are acceptable; however, doors and windows without installed openings do not meet the requirements of this section.

**R322.2.3 Foundation design and construction.** Foundation walls for all buildings and structures erected in flood hazard areas shall meet the requirements of Chapter 4.

**Exception:** Unless designed in accordance with Section R404:

1. The unsupported height of 6-inch (152 mm) plain masonry walls shall be no more than 3 feet (914 mm).
2. The unsupported height of 8-inch (203 mm) plain masonry walls shall be no more than 4 feet (1219 mm).

3. The unsupported height of 8-inch (203 mm) reinforced masonry walls shall be no more than 8 feet (2438 mm).

For the purpose of this exception, unsupported height is the distance from the finished *grade* of the under-floor space and the top of the wall.

**R322.3 Coastal high-hazard areas (including V Zones).** Areas that have been determined to be subject to wave heights in excess of 3 feet (914 mm) or subject to high-velocity wave action or wave-induced erosion shall be designated as coastal high-hazard areas. Buildings and structures constructed in whole or in part in coastal high-hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections R322.3.1 through R322.3.6.

**R322.3.1 Location and site preparation.**

1. New buildings and buildings that are determined to be substantially improved pursuant to Section R105.3.1.1, shall be located landward of the reach of mean high tide.
2. For any alteration of sand dunes and mangrove stands the *building official* shall require submission of an engineering analysis which demonstrates that the proposed *alteration* will not increase the potential for flood damage.

**R322.3.2 Elevation requirements.**

1. All buildings and structures erected within coastal high hazard areas shall be elevated so that the lowest portion of all structural members supporting the lowest floor, with the exception of mat or raft foundations, piling, pile caps, columns, grade beams and bracing, is:
   1.1. Located at or above the design flood elevation, if the lowest horizontal structural member is oriented parallel to the direction of wave approach, where parallel shall mean less than or equal to 20 degrees (0.35 rad) from the direction of approach, or
   1.2. Located at the base flood elevation plus 1 foot (305 mm), or the design flood elevation, whichever is higher, if the lowest horizontal structural member is oriented perpendicular to the direction of wave approach, where perpendicular shall mean greater than 20 degrees (0.35 rad) from the direction of approach.
2. Basement floors that are below *grade* on all sides are prohibited.
3. The use of fill for structural support is prohibited.
4. Minor grading, and the placement of minor quantities of fill, shall be permitted for landscaping and for drainage purposes under and around buildings and for support of parking slabs, pool decks, patios and walkways.

   **Exception:** Walls and partitions enclosing areas below the design flood elevation shall meet the requirements of Sections R322.3.4 and R322.3.5.

**R322.3.3 Foundations.** Buildings and structures erected in coastal high-hazard areas shall be supported on pilings or columns and shall be adequately anchored to those pilings or columns. Pilings shall have adequate soil penetrations to resist the combined wave and wind loads (lateral and uplift). Water loading values used shall be those associated with the design flood. Wind loading values shall be those required by this code. Pile embedment shall include consideration of decreased resistance capacity caused by scour of soil strata surrounding the piling. Pile systems design and installation shall be certified in accordance with Section R322.3.6. Mat, raft or other foundations that support columns shall not be permitted where soil investigations that are required in accordance with Section R401.4 indicate that soil material under the mat, raft or other foundation is subject to scour or erosion from wave-velocity flow conditions. Slabs, pools, pool decks and walkways shall be located and constructed to be structurally independent of buildings and structures and their foundations to prevent transfer of flood loads to the buildings and structures during conditions of flooding, scour or erosion from wave-velocity flow conditions, unless the buildings and structures and their foundation are designed to resist the additional flood load.

**R322.3.4 Walls below design flood elevation.** Walls and partitions are permitted below the elevated floor, provided that such walls and partitions are not part of the structural support of the building or structure and:

1. Electrical, mechanical, and plumbing system components are not to be mounted on or penetrate through walls that are designed to break away under flood loads; and
2. Are constructed with insect screening or open lattice; or
3. Are designed to break away or collapse without causing collapse, displacement or other structural damage to the elevated portion of the building or supporting foundation system. Such walls, framing and connections shall have a design safe loading resistance of not less than 10 (479 Pa) and no more than 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa); or
4. Where wind loading values of this code exceed 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa), the *construction documents* shall include documentation prepared and sealed by a registered *design professional* that:
   4.1. The walls and partitions below the design flood elevation have been designed to collapse from a water load less than that which would occur during the design flood.
   4.2. The elevated portion of the building and supporting foundation system have been designed to withstand the effects of wind and flood loads acting simultaneously on all building components (structural and nonstructural). Water loading values used shall be those associated with the design flood. Wind loading values shall be those required by this code.

**R322.3.5 Enclosed areas below design flood elevation.** Enclosed areas below the design flood elevation shall be used solely for parking of vehicles, building access or storage.

**R322.3.6 Construction documents.** The *construction documents* shall include documentation that is prepared and sealed by a registered *design professional* that the design and methods of construction to be used meet the applicable criteria of this section.

## SECTION R323
## STORM SHELTERS

**R323.1 General.** This section applies to the construction of storm shelters when constructed as separate detached buildings or when constructed as safe rooms within buildings for the purpose of providing safe refuge from storms that produce high winds, such as tornados and hurricanes. In addition to other applicable requirements in this code, storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with ICC/NSSA-500.

## [W] SECTION R324
## ADULT FAMILY HOMES

**R324.1 General.** This section applies to all newly constructed *adult family homes* and all existing single family homes being converted to *adult family homes*. This section does not apply to those *adult family homes* licensed by the State of Washington Department of Social and Health Services prior to July 1, 2001.

**R324.2 Submittal standards.** In addition to those requirements in Section R105, the submittal shall identify the project as a Group R-3 Adult Family Home occupancy. A floor plan shall be submitted identifying the means of egress and the components in the means of egress, such as stairs, ramps, platform lifts and elevators. The plans shall indicate the rooms used for clients and the sleeping room classification of each room.

**R324.3 Sleeping room classification.** Each sleeping room in an *adult family home* shall be classified as:

1. Type S–where the means of egress contains stairs, elevators or platform lifts.
2. Type NS1–where one means of egress is at grade level or a ramp constructed in accordance with Section R311.8 is provided.
3. Type NS2–where two means of egress are at grade level or ramps constructed in accordance with Section R311.8 are provided.

**R324.4 Types of locking devices.** All bedroom and bathroom doors shall be openable from the outside when locked. Every closet shall be readily openable from the inside.

Operable parts of door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other devices installed in *adult family homes* shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum. Exit doors shall have no additional locking devices.

**R324.5 Smoke alarm requirements.** All *adult family homes* shall be equipped with smoke alarms installed as required in Section R314. Alarms shall be installed in such a manner so that the fire warning may be audible in all parts of the *dwelling* upon activation of a single device.

**R324.6 Escape windows and doors.** Every sleeping room shall be provided with emergency escape and rescue windows as required by Section R310. No alternatives to the sill height such as steps, raised platforms or other devices placed by the openings will be approved as meeting this requirement.

**R324.7 Fire apparatus access roads and water supply for fire protection.** *Adult family homes* shall be served by fire apparatus access roads and water supplies meeting the requirements of the *International Fire Code*.

**R324.8 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall be installed for all water closets and bathtubs and showers. The grab bars shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1 Sections 604.5, 607.4 and 608.3.

**Exception:** Grab bars are not required for water closets and bathtubs and showers used exclusively by staff of the *adult family home*.

**R324.9 Ramps.** All interior and exterior ramps, when provided, shall be constructed in accordance with Section R311.8 with a maximum slope of 1 vertical to 12 horizontal (8.33-percent slope). The exception to Section R311.8.1 is not allowed for *adult family homes*. Handrails shall be installed in accordance with Section R324.9.1.

**R324.9.1 Handrails for ramps.** Handrails shall be installed on both sides of ramps between the slope of 1 vertical to 12 horizontal and 1 vertical (8.33-percent slope) and 20 horizontal (5-percent slope) in accordance with Sections R311.8.3.1 through R311.8.3.3.

**R324.10 Stair treads and risers.** Stair treads and risers shall be constructed in accordance with Section R311.7.4. Handrails shall be installed in accordance with Section R324.10.1.

**R324.10.1 Handrails for treads and risers.** Handrails shall be installed on both sides of treads and risers numbering from one riser to multiple risers. Handrails shall be installed in accordance with Sections R311.7.7.1 through R311.7.7.4.

## [W] SECTION R325
## FAMILY CHILD DAY CARE HOMES

**R325.1** For *family child day care homes* with more than six children, each floor level used for family *child day care* purposes shall be served by two remote means of egress. Exterior exit doors shall be operable from the inside without the use of keys or any special knowledge or effort.

**R325.2** Basements located more than 4 feet (1219 mm) below grade level shall not be used for *family child day care homes* unless one of following conditions exists:

1. Stairways from the basement open directly to the exterior of the building without entering the first floor; or
2. One of the two required means of egress discharges directly to the exterior from the basement level, and a self-closing door is installed at the top or bottom of the interior stair leading to the floor above; or

3. One of the two required means of egress is an operable window or door, *approved* for emergency escape or rescue, that opens directly to a public street, public alley, yard or exit court; or

4. A residential sprinkler system is provided throughout the entire building in accordance with National Fire Protection Association Standard 13D.

**R325.3** Floors located more than 4 feet (1219 mm) above grade level shall not be occupied by children in family day care homes.

**Exceptions:**

1. Use of toilet facilities while under supervision of an adult staff person.

2. *Family child day care homes* may be allowed on the second *story* if one of the following conditions exists:

   2.1. Stairways from the second *story* open directly to the exterior of the building without entering the first floor; or

   2.2. One of the two required means of egress discharges directly to the exterior from the second *story* level, and a self-closing door is installed at the top or bottom of the interior stair leading to the floor below; or

   2.3. A residential sprinkler system is provided throughout the entire building in accordance with National Fire Protection Association Standard 13D.

**R325.4** Every sleeping or napping room in a *family child day care home* shall have at least one operable window for emergency rescue.

**Exception:** Sleeping or napping rooms having doors leading to two separate means of egress, or a door leading directly to the exterior of the building.

**R325.5** Rooms or spaces containing a commercial-type cooking kitchen, boiler, maintenance shop, janitor closet, laundry, woodworking shop, flammable or combustible storage or painting operation shall be separated from the family child day care area by at least 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

**Exception:** A fire-resistance-rated separation shall not be required where the food preparation kitchen contains only a domestic cooking range, and the preparation of food does not result in the production of smoke or grease laden vapors.

## [W] SECTION R326 PROTECTION AGAINST RADON

**R326.1 Protection against radon.** The radon control provisions of Appendix F of this code apply to all buildings constructed using the provisions of Section R408.3, unvented crawl space compliance method.

## [W] SECTION R327 SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND HOT TUBS

**R327.1 Design and construction of pools, spas and hot tubs.** The provisions of Appendix G control the design and construction of swimming pools, spas and hot tubs installed in or on the lot of a one- or two-family *dwelling*.

## [W] SECTION R328 METHANE REDUCTION MEASURES

**R328.1 Applicability.** This section applies to all construction activities on or within 1000 feet (305 m) of an active, closed or abandoned landfill (landfill zone) that has been identified by the *building official* to be generating levels of methane gas on-site either at or above the lower explosive limit. The distance shall be calculated from the location of the proposed structure to the nearest property line of the active or former landfill site. The *building official* may waive these requirements if technical studies demonstrate that dangerous amounts of methane are not present on the site.

**R328.2 Protection of structures.** All enclosed structures to be built within the 1000-foot (305 m) landfill zone shall be protected from potential methane migration. The method for protecting a structure from methane shall be identified in a report prepared by a licensed civil engineer and submitted by the applicant to the *building official* for approval. The report shall contain a description of the investigation and recommendations for preventing the accumulation of explosive concentrations of methane gas within or under enclosed portions of the building or structure. At the time of final inspection, the civil engineer shall furnish a signed statement attesting that, to the best of the engineer's knowledge, the building or structure has been constructed in accordance with the recommendations for addressing methane gas migration.

## SECTION R329 SECURITY FROM CRIMINAL ACTIVITY

**R329.1 Building entrance locks.** Building entrance doors, including garage doors, shall be capable of locking. They shall be equipped with a dead-locking latch bolt with at least a $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) throw that penetrates the striker not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.35 mm). Building entrance doors shall be openable from the inside without use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

**Exception:** Garage-to-exterior doors are permitted to be equipped with an electronically-operated remote control device for opening and closing in lieu of a dead-locking latch bolt. When garage-to-exterior doors are equipped with remote control devices, garage-to-building doors need not be capable of locking.

**R329.2 Observation ports.** Every building entrance door, other than garage doors, shall have a visitor observation port or glass side light. Observation ports shall be installed at a height of not less than 54 inches (1372 mm) and not more than 66 inches (1676 mm) from the floor.

**R329.3 Windows and sliding doors.** Dead bolts or other *approved* locking devices shall be provided on all sliding doors and openable windows. The lock shall be installed so that the mounting screws for the lock case are inaccessible from the outside.

**Exception:** Windows with sills located 10 feet (3048 mm) or more above *grade*, or 10 feet (3048 mm) or more above a deck, balcony or porch that is not readily accessible from grade except through a housing unit need not have operable inside latching devices.

**R329.4 Alternate security devices.** Subject to the approval of the *building official*, alternate security devices are permitted to be substituted for those required by this section. Alternate devices must have equal capability to resist illegal entry. The installation of the device shall not conflict with other requirements of this code and other ordinances regulating the safety of exiting.

## SECTION R330 SOUND TRANSMISSION CONTROL

**R330.1 General.** Wall and floor-ceiling assemblies separating *dwelling units* shall provide sound insulation in accordance with this Section R330.

**R330.1.1 Perimeter joints.** Joints in the perimeter of such separating wall or floor-ceiling assembly shall be acoustically sealed with a permanent resilient material *approved* for the purpose. The separating wall or floor-ceiling assembly shall extend completely to and be sealed to another separating assembly or an exterior wall, roof or floor assembly.

**R330.1.2 Penetrations.** Conduits, ducts, pipes and vents within the wall or floor-ceiling assembly causing vibration shall be reasonably isolated from the building construction at points of support by means of resilient sleeves, mounts or underlayments. All other openings through which such conduits, ducts, pipes or vents pass shall have the excess opening fully sealed with insulative and permanently resilient materials *approved* for the purpose.

**R330.1.3 Fire-resistance ratings.** Design and materials for sound transmission control shall not impair the fire-resistance rating of separating walls or floor-ceiling assemblies required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.

**R330.2 Airborne sound.** Airborne sound insulation for wall and floor-ceiling assemblies shall meet a Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating of 45 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 90.

**R330.2.1 Outlet boxes.** Electrical outlet boxes shall not be placed back-to-back and shall be offset by not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from outlets in the opposite wall surface. The back and sides of boxes shall be sealed with $^1/_8$ inch (3.18 mm) resilient sealant and backed by a minimum of 2-inch (50.8 mm) thick mineral fiber insulation or *approved* equivalent.

**R330.3 Structural-borne sound.** Floor-ceiling assemblies between *dwelling units* or between a *dwelling unit* and a public or service area within a structure shall have an Impact Insulation Class (IIC) rating of not less than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 492. Floor covering may be included in the assembly to obtain the required ratings.

**Exception:** Floor assemblies in bathrooms are not required to meet the IIC rating of 50 where structural concrete floor systems are used.

**R330.4 Tested assemblies.** Field- or laboratory-tested wall or floor-ceiling designs having an STC or IIC of 50 or more may be used without additional field testing when, in the opinion of the *building official*, the tested design has not been compromised by flanking paths. Tests may be required by the *building official* when evidence of compromised separations is noted. Wall or floor-ceiling designs field tested by ASTM E 336 having a minimum FSTC or FIIC rating of 45 may be used.

**R330.5 Field testing and certification.** Field testing, when permitted to determine airborne sound transmission or impact sound insulation class, shall be done in accordance with ASTM E 492 under the supervision of an acoustical professional who is experienced in the field of acoustical testing and engineering and who shall forward certified test results to the *building official* that minimum sound insulation requirements stated above have been met.

**R330.6 Sound transmission control systems.** Generic systems listed in GA 600-00 may be accepted where a laboratory test indicates that the requirements of Section R331 are met by the system.

## SECTION R331 FLOATING HOMES

**R331.1 Definitions.** Certain words and terms used in this section, unless clearly inconsistent with their context, are defined as follows:

**R331.2 Moorage location.** Every *floating home moorage* shall be located on privately-owned or privately controlled premises in accordance with the Land Use Code, Title 23 of the Seattle Municipal Code.

**R331.3 Land access.** Every *floating home moorage* shall have not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) of land frontage abutting a public street sufficiently improved for automobile travel.

**R331.4 Moorage walkways.** Every *floating home moorage* shall have firm and substantial walkways with a net width of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) and extending from land to every floating home site in the moorage.

**R331.5 Moorage lighting.** Every *floating home moorage* and the walkways to every *floating home site* shall be illuminated to provide safe access. All luminaires shall be listed for the use.

**R331.6 Fire protection.** *Floating home moorages* shall be provided with fire extinguishing equipment as follows:

1. Portable fire-protection equipment. One fire extinguisher, 2A, 20-B:C rating minimum, shall be provided in each required hose station. The fire chief shall designate the type and number of all other fire appliances to be installed and maintained in each *floating home moorage*.

2. Standpipes. All portions of floats exceeding 250 feet (76 500 mm) in distance from fire apparatus access and marine service stations shall be provided with an *approved* Class I standpipe system installed according to *International Building Code* Section 905 and the *International Fire Code*.

**R331.7 Water service connections.** Every *floating home moorage* shall have a water service connection and shall provide water service piping securely fastened and stabilized above water from the water service connection to an outlet connection at each *floating home site* on a *floating home moorage*. The water piping in every *floating home* in a *floating home moorage* shall be connected to the water service outlet serving the *floating home* and the connection shall be securely fastened and stabilized above high water line. Water service connections and water service piping shall be constructed, installed and maintained in accordance with applicable standards established by or pursuant to ordinance.

**R331.8 Public sewer connection.** Every *floating home moorage* any part of which is within 300 feet (91 440 mm) of a public sewer and every *floating home moorage* on Shilshole Bay, Salmon Bay, Lake Washington Ship Canal, Lake Union, Portage Bay, Union Bay and that portion of Lake Washington lying within the city limits of Seattle shall have a lawfully-installed connection to a public sewer.

**R331.9 Local side sewer system.** Every *floating home moorage* within the limits specified in Section R332.8 shall provide a local side sewer system for the collection of sewage from every *floating home* in the moorage. The local side sewer system shall be connected to the public sewer, shall have an inlet connection at each *floating home site*, and shall be constructed, installed and maintained in accordance with this and all other applicable ordinances regulating the construction, alteration, repair and connection of side sewers.

**R331.10 Connection to local side sewer system.** Every *floating home* in a *floating home moorage* that is required under Section R331.8 to be connected to a public sewer shall be connected to the local side sewer system. Owners and operators of *floating home moorages* shall not permit any *floating home* to be moored at any moorage under their control unless the floating home is connected to the local side sewer system. It is a violation for any person to use, occupy or let any *floating home* for human habitation within the limits specified in Section R331.8 unless it is connected to the sewer system.

A reconnection permit is required for any *floating home* that is relocated from its original site of connection to a local side sewer system. Such reconnection is subject to the approval of the Director of Seattle Public Utilities.

**R331.11 Sewer installation fees.** The fee for the installation of any side sewer serving a *floating home moorage* is the fee provided by law for the connection to the public sewer of side sewers serving mobile home parks.

**R331.12 Plumbing systems.** All plumbing and plumbing systems in every *floating home* shall meet the requirements of the *Uniform Plumbing Code* except as otherwise approved by the Director of Public Health.

**R331.13 Garbage disposal.** Every *floating home moorage* shall be provided with adequate garbage storage and collection facilities, which shall be located in an accessible place on the moorage site. No garbage or refuse shall be thrown or dumped into the waters.

**R331.14 Electrical service and wiring.** Electrical service approved by City Light shall be provided to *floating homes* and *floating home moorages*. Electrical wiring and equipment in every *floating home* shall conform to requirements of the *Seattle Electrical Code*. No *floating home* shall be permitted to connect or reconnect to the electric utility's distribution system unless approved for such connection by the *building official* in accordance with the *Seattle Electrical Code*.

**R331.15 New construction and alterations.** All new construction of *floating homes* or major *alterations* thereto and all *floating homes* moved into city waters shall conform to the requirements for *dwellings* set forth in this code and all other applicable codes and ordinances regulating the design, construction, use and occupancy of such buildings and the required installations therein.

**R331.16 Housing standards for existing floating homes.** Every *floating home* shall comply with the minimum housing standards of the *Seattle Housing and Building Maintenance Code* except as otherwise approved by the *building official* in accordance with the *Housing and Building Maintenance Code*.

**R331.17 Property lines.** The boundaries of *floating home moorage* sites shall be considered the *lot line* for determining compliance with Section R302.

> **Interpretation R331.17:** For the purposes of determining the required wall and opening protection and roof-covering requirements, distance shall be measured to the exterior wall of the home, and not to the float.

**R331.18 Approval of moorage site plan required.** Every *floating home moorage* shall continuously conform to a moorage site plan that has been approved by the *building official*. Such approval shall be obtained as follows: Three copies of the site plan, drawn to scale and completely dimensioned, and setting forth the address and legal description of the property on which the moorage is located and the name and address of the owner or operator of the moorage, shall be filed with the *building official*.

The moorage site plan shall show:

1. The dimensions of the *floating home moorage* site;
2. The location of abutting public waterways;
3. The location and dimensions of private waterways and land access to the moorage;
4. The location and identification of individual *floating home sites*;
5. The location and dimensions of off-street parking spaces;
6. The location and dimensions of walkways and any accessory structures or facilities;
7. The water service system;

8. The local side sewer system; and
9. The electrical service and lighting system.

The site plan shall be reviewed by the *building official*, the Fire Chief, the Director of Public Health, the Director of Seattle Public Utilities and the Director of Transportation for conformance with the requirements of this code and other applicable ordinances. Upon approval by the *building official*, one copy of the approved site plan shall be retained in the office of the *building official*, one copy in the office of the Director of Public Health and one copy, which shall be maintained on the premises of the *floating home moorage*, shall be returned to the owner or operator.

**R331.19 Moorage register of ownership.** Every owner or operator of a *floating home moorage* shall maintain a current register of every *floating home* moored on the premises, such register to record the name and address of the legal owner of each *floating home* and the registration number assigned to it by the King County Assessor. A copy of the register shall be made available upon request to any City department referred to in this chapter.

# CHAPTER 4
# FOUNDATIONS

## SECTION R401
## GENERAL

**R401.1 Application.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the foundation and foundation spaces for all buildings. In addition to the provisions of this chapter, the design and construction of foundations in areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1) shall meet the provisions of Section R322. Wood foundations shall be designed and installed in accordance with AF&PA PWF.

**Exception:** The provisions of this chapter shall be permitted to be used for wood foundations only in the following situations:

1. In buildings that have no more than two floors and a roof.
2. When interior *basement* and foundation walls are constructed at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm).

Wood foundations in Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$ shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**R401.2 Requirements.** Foundation construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads according to Section R301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting soil. Fill soils that support footings and foundations shall be designed, installed and tested in accordance with accepted engineering practice. Gravel fill used as footings for wood and precast concrete foundations shall comply with Section R403.

**R401.3 Drainage.** Surface drainage shall be diverted to a storm sewer conveyance or other *approved* point of collection that does not create a hazard. *Lots* shall be graded to drain surface water away from foundation walls. The *grade* shall fall a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm)within the first 10 feet (3048 mm).

**Exception:** Where *lot lines*, walls, slopes or other physical barriers prohibit 6 inches (152 mm) of fall within 10 feet (3048 mm), drains or swales shall be constructed to ensure drainage away from the structure. Impervious surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation shall be sloped a minimum of 2 percent away from the building.

**R401.4 Soil tests.** Where quantifiable data created by accepted soil science methodologies indicate expansive, compressible, shifting or other questionable soil characteristics are likely to be present, the *building official* shall determine whether to require a soil test to determine the soil's characteristics at a particular location. This test shall be done by an *approved agency* using an *approved* method.

**R401.4.1 Geotechnical evaluation.** In lieu of a complete geotechnical evaluation, the load-bearing values in Table R401.4.1 shall be assumed.

**R401.4.2 Compressible or shifting soil.** Instead of a complete geotechnical evaluation, when top or subsoils are compressible or shifting, they shall be removed to a depth and width sufficient to assure stable moisture content in each active zone and shall not be used as fill or stabilized within each active zone by chemical, dewatering or presaturation.

**TABLE R401.4.1**
**PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES OF FOUNDATION MATERIALS[a]**

| CLASS OF MATERIAL | LOAD-BEARING PRESSURE (pounds per square foot) |
|---|---|
| Crystalline bedrock | 12,000 |
| Sedimentary and foliated rock | 4,000 |
| Sandy gravel and/or gravel (GW and GP) | 3,000 |
| Sand, silty sand, clayey sand, silty gravel and clayey gravel (SW, SP, SM, SC, GM and GC) | 2,000 |
| Clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt (CL, ML, MH and CH) | 1,500[b] |

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. When soil tests are required by Section R401.4, the allowable bearing capacities of the soil shall be part of the recommendations.

b. Where the building official determines that in-place soils with an allowable bearing capacity of less than 1,500 psf are likely to be present at the site, the allowable bearing capacity shall be determined by a soils investigation.

## SECTION R402
## MATERIALS

**R402.1 Wood foundations.** Wood foundation systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of this code.

**R402.1.1 Fasteners.** Fasteners used below *grade* to attach plywood to the exterior side of exterior *basement* or crawlspace wall studs, or fasteners used in knee wall construction, shall be of Type 304 or 316 stainless steel. Fasteners used above *grade* to attach plywood and all lumber-to-lumber fasteners except those used in knee wall construction shall be of Type 304 or 316 stainless steel, silicon bronze, copper, hot-dipped galvanized (zinc coated) steel nails, or hot-tumbled galvanized (zinc coated) steel nails. Electrogalvanized steel nails and galvanized (zinc coated) steel staples shall not be permitted.

**R402.1.2 Wood treatment.** All lumber and plywood shall be pressure-preservative treated and dried after treatment in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B and Section 5.2), and shall bear the *label* of an accredited agency. Where lumber and/or plywood is cut or drilled after treatment, the treated surface shall be field treated with copper naphthenate, the concentration of which shall contain a minimum of 2 percent copper metal, by repeated brushing, dipping or soaking until the wood absorbs no more preservative.

**R402.2 Concrete.** Concrete shall have a minimum specified compressive strength of $f'_c$, as shown in Table R402.2. Concrete subject to moderate or severe weathering as indicated in Table R301.2(1) shall be air entrained as specified in Table R402.2. The maximum weight of fly ash, other pozzolans, silica fume, slag or blended cements that is included in concrete mixtures for garage floor slabs and for exterior porches, carport slabs and steps that will be exposed to deicing chemicals shall not exceed the percentages of the total weight of cementitious materials specified in Section 4.2.3 of ACI 318. Materials used to produce concrete and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Chapter 3 of ACI 318 or ACI 332.

**Code Alternate R402.2:** Five-sack 2000 psi (13 790 kPa) and 5 1/2-sack 2500 psi (17 237 kPa) concrete mixes in accordance with *Seattle Building Code* Section 1905.2.3 and Table 1905.2 are equivalent to 3000 psi (20 684 kPa) concrete for weathering potential. In addition, air-entrainment is not required to address weathering.

**R402.3 Precast concrete.** Precast concrete foundations shall be designed in accordance with Section R404.5 and shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R402.3.1 Precast concrete foundation materials.** Materials used to produce precast concrete foundations shall meet the following requirements.

1. All concrete used in the manufacture of precast concrete foundations shall have a minimum compressive strength of 5,000 psi (34 470 kPa) at 28 days. Concrete exposed to a freezing and thawing environment shall be air entrained with a minimum total air content of 5 percent.
2. Structural reinforcing steel shall meet the requirements of ASTM A 615, A 706 or A 996. The minimum yield strength of reinforcing steel shall be 40,000 psi (Grade 40) (276 MPa). Steel reinforcement for precast concrete foundation walls shall have a minimum concrete cover of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm).
3. Panel-to-panel connections shall be made with Grade II steel fasteners.
4. The use of nonstructural fibers shall conform to ASTM C 1116.
5. Grout used for bedding precast foundations placed upon concrete footings shall meet ASTM C 1107.

## SECTION R403
## FOOTINGS

**[W] R403.1 General.** All exterior walls shall be supported on continuous solid or fully grouted masonry or concrete footings, ((~~crushed stone footings,~~)) wood foundations, or other *approved* structural systems which shall be of sufficient design to accommodate all loads ((~~according to~~)) specified in Section R301 and to transmit the resulting loads to the supporting soil within the limitations ((~~as~~)) determined from the ((~~character~~)) characteristics of the soil. Footings shall be supported on undisturbed natural soils or engineered fill. ((~~Concrete footing shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Section R403 or in accordance with ACI 332.~~)) Foundation walls complying with Section R404 or stem walls complying with Section R403.1.3 shall be permitted to support exterior walls, exterior *braced wall lines* and exterior *braced wall panels*, provided they are supported by continuous footings.

**R403.1.1 Minimum size.** Minimum sizes for concrete and masonry footings shall be as set forth in Table R403.1 and Figure R403.1(1). The footing width, W, shall be based on the load-bearing value of the soil in accordance with Table R401.4.1. Spread footings shall be at least 6 inches (152 mm) in thickness, T. Footing projections, P, shall be at least 2 inches (51 mm) and shall not exceed the thickness of the footing. The size of footings supporting piers and columns shall be based on the tributary load and allowable soil pressure in accordance with Table R401.4.1. Footings for wood foundations shall be in accordance with the details set forth in Section R403.2, and Figures R403.1(2) and R403.1(3).

**TABLE R402.2**
**MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF CONCRETE**

| TYPE OR LOCATION OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION | MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH[a] ($f'_c$) Weathering Potential[b] | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Negligible | Moderate | Severe |
| Basement walls, foundations and other concrete not exposed to the weather | 2,500 | 2,500 | 2,500[c] |
| Basement slabs and interior slabs on grade, except garage floor slabs | 2,500 | 2,500 | 2,500[c] |
| Basement walls, foundation walls, exterior walls and other vertical concrete work exposed to the weather | 2,500 | 3,000[d] | 3,000[d] |
| Porches, carport slabs and steps exposed to the weather, and garage floor slabs | 2,500 | 3,000[d, e, f] | 3,500[d, e, f] |

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
a. Strength at 28 days psi.
b. See Table R301.2(1) for weathering potential.
c. Concrete in these locations that may be subject to freezing and thawing during construction shall be air-entrained concrete in accordance with Footnote d.
d. Concrete shall be air-entrained. Total air content (percent by volume of concrete) shall be not less than 5 percent or more than 7 percent.
e. See Section R402.2 for maximum cementitious materials content.
f. For garage floors with a steel troweled finish, reduction of the total air content (percent by volume of concrete) to not less than 3 percent is permitted if the specified compressive strength of the concrete is increased to not less than 4,000 psi.

**TABLE R403.1**
**MINIMUM WIDTH OF CONCRETE,**
**PRECAST OR MASONRY FOOTINGS (inches)[a]**

| | LOAD-BEARING VALUE OF SOIL (psf) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1,500 | 2,000 | 3,000 | ≥ 4,000 |
| **Conventional light-frame construction** | | | | |
| 1-story | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| 2-story | 15 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| 3-story | 23 | 17 | 12 | 12 |
| **4-inch brick veneer over light frame or 8-inch hollow concrete masonry** | | | | |
| 1-story | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| 2-story | 21 | 16 | 12 | 12 |
| 3-story | 32 | 24 | 16 | 12 |
| **8-inch solid or fully grouted masonry** | | | | |
| 1-story | 16 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| 2-story | 29 | 21 | 14 | 12 |
| 3-story | 42 | 32 | 21 | 16 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Where minimum footing width is 12 inches, use of a single wythe of solid or fully grouted 12-inch nominal concrete masonry units is permitted.

**[W] R403.1.2 Continuous footing in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** The *braced wall panels* at exterior and interior walls of buildings located in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ shall be supported by continuous footings. All required interior *braced wall panels* ((~~in buildings with plan dimensions greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm)~~)) shall ((~~also~~)) be supported ((~~by continuous~~)) on footings at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**R403.1.3 Seismic reinforcing.** Concrete footings located in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, as established in Table R301.2(1), shall have minimum reinforcement. Bottom reinforcement shall be located a minimum of 3 inches (76 mm) clear from the bottom of the footing.

In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ where a construction joint is created between a concrete footing and a stem wall, a minimum of one No. 4 bar shall be installed at not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. The vertical bar shall extend to 3 inches (76 mm) clear of the bottom of the footing, have a standard hook and extend a minimum of 14 inches (357 mm) into the stem wall.

In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ where a grouted masonry stem wall is supported on a concrete footing and stem wall, a minimum of one No. 4 bar shall be installed at not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. The vertical bar shall extend to 3 inches (76 mm) clear of the bottom of the footing and have a standard hook.

In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ masonry stem walls without solid grout and vertical reinforcing are not permitted.

**Exception:** In detached one- and two-family *dwellings* which are three stories or less in height and constructed with stud bearing walls, plain concrete footings without longitudinal reinforcement supporting walls and isolated plain concrete footings supporting columns or pedestals are permitted.

**R403.1.3.1 Foundations with stemwalls.** Foundations with stem walls shall have installed a minimum of one No. 4 bar within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the wall and one No. 4 bar located 3 inches (76 mm) to 4 inches (102 mm) from the bottom of the footing.

**R403.1.3.2 Slabs-on-ground with turned-down footings.** Slabs on ground with turned down footings shall have a minimum of one No. 4 bar at the top and the bottom of the footing.

**Exception:** For slabs-on-ground cast monolithically with the footing, locating one No. 5 bar or two No. 4 bars in the middle third of the footing depth shall be permitted as an alternative to placement at the footing top and bottom.

Where the slab is not cast monolithically with the footing, No. 3 or larger vertical dowels with standard hooks on each end shall be provided in accordance with Figure R403.1.3.2. Standard hooks shall comply with Section R611.5.4.5.

**R403.1.4 Minimum depth.** All exterior footings shall be placed at least 12 inches (305 mm) below the undisturbed ground surface. Where applicable, the depth of footings shall also conform to Sections R403.1.4.1 through R403.1.4.2.

**R403.1.4.1 Frost protection.** Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundation walls, piers and other permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of the following methods:

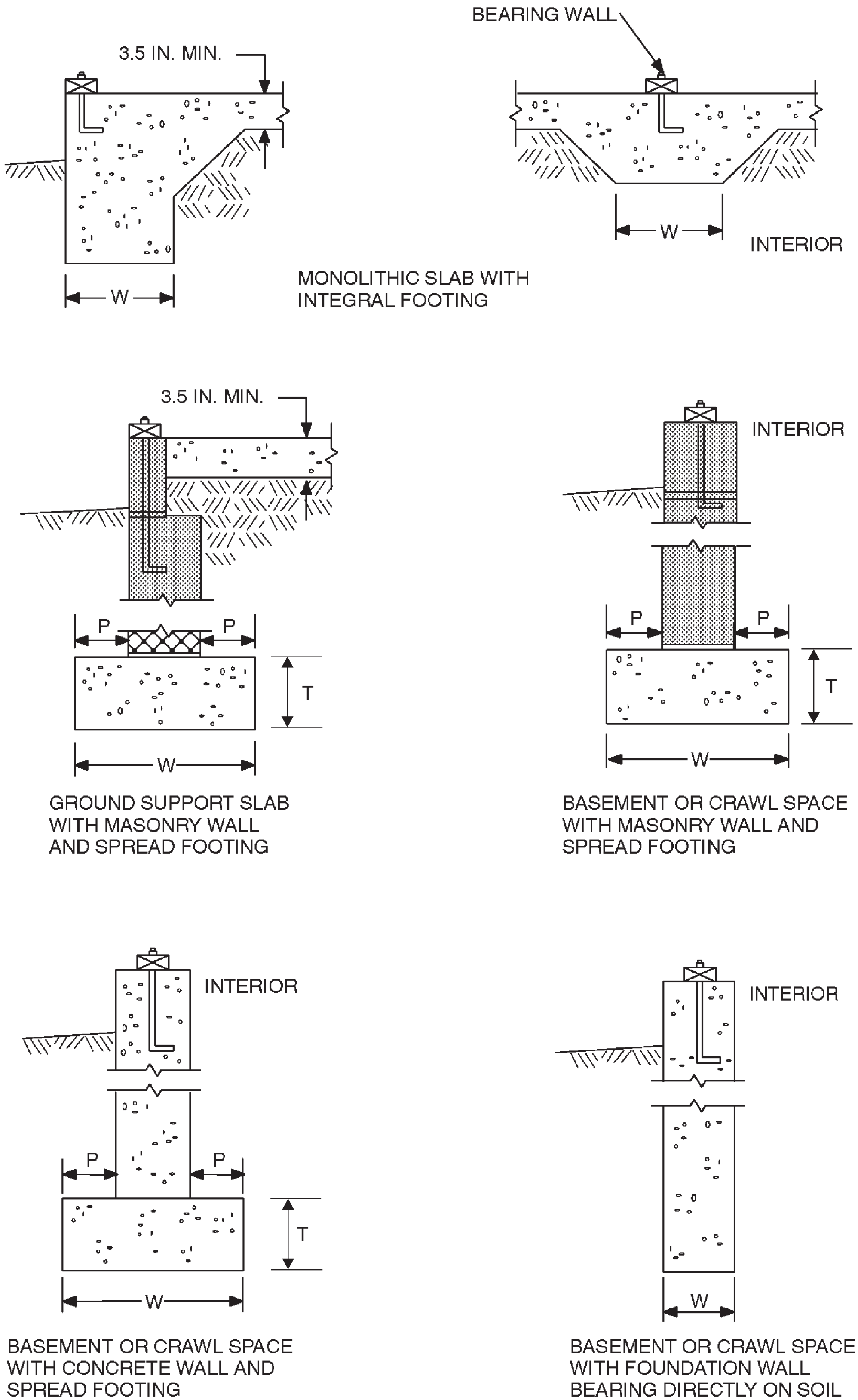
1. Extended below the frost line specified in Table R301.2.(1);
2. Constructing in accordance with Section R403.3;
3. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32; or
4. Erected on solid rock.

**Exceptions:**

1. Protection of freestanding *accessory structures* with an area of 600 square feet (56 m$^2$) or less, of light-frame construction, with an eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less shall not be required.
2. Protection of freestanding *accessory structures* with an area of 400 square feet (37 m$^2$) or less, of other than light-frame construction, with an eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less shall not be required.
3. Decks not supported by a dwelling need not be provided with footings that extend below the frost line.

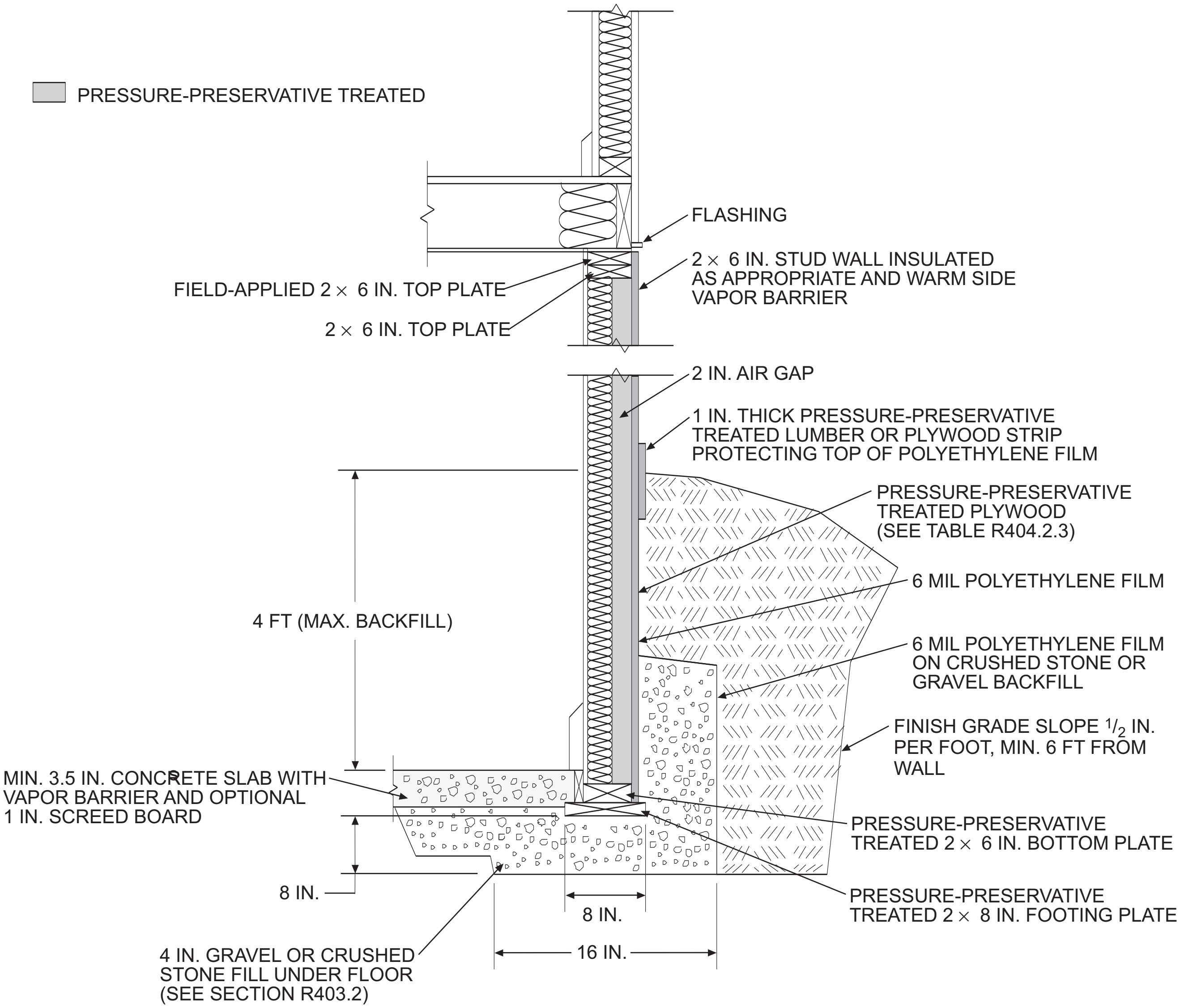
Footings shall not bear on frozen soil unless the frozen condition is permanent.

**R403.1.4.2 Seismic conditions.** In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, interior footings supporting bearing or bracing walls and cast monolithically with a slab on *grade* shall extend to a depth of not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below the top of the slab.



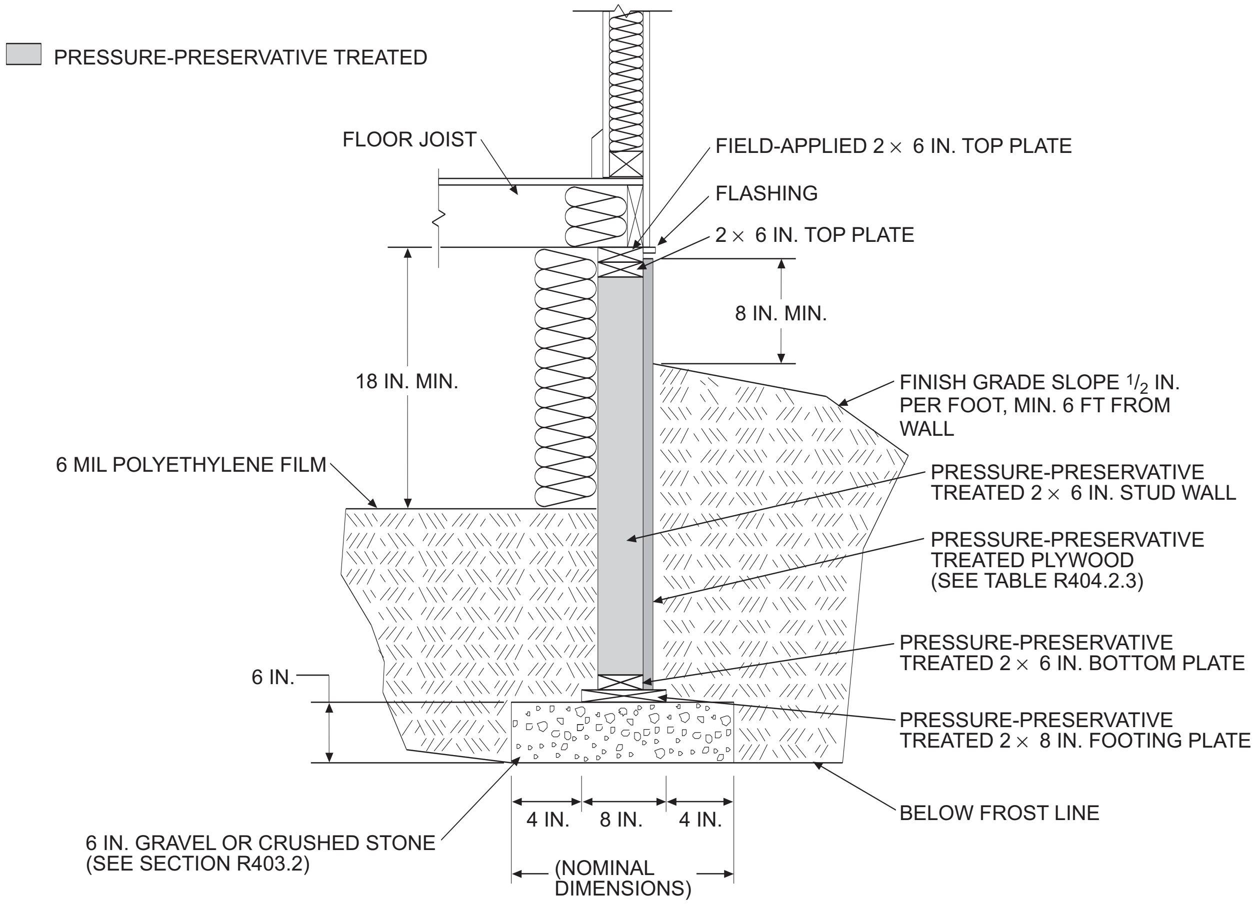

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R403.1(1)**
**CONCRETE AND MASONRY FOUNDATION DETAILS**



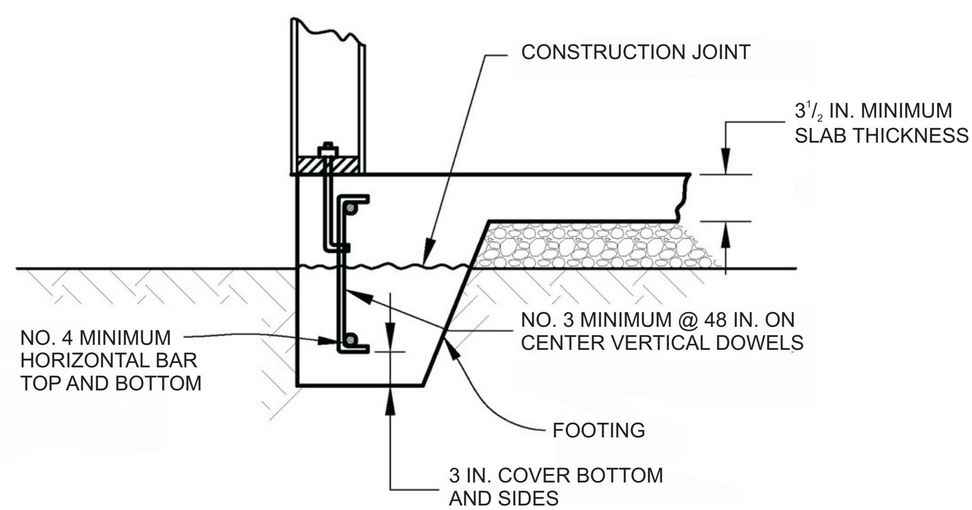

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R403.1(2)**
**PERMANENT WOOD FOUNDATION BASEMENT WALL SECTION**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R403.1(3)**
**PERMANENT WOOD FOUNDATION CRAWL SPACE SECTION**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R403.1.3.2**
**DOWELS FOR SLABS-ON-GROUND WITH TURNED-DOWN FOOTINGS**

**R403.1.5 Slope.** The top surface of footings shall be level. The bottom surface of footings shall not have a slope exceeding one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Footings shall be stepped where it is necessary to change the elevation of the top surface of the footings or where the slope of the bottom surface of the footings will exceed one unit vertical in ten units horizontal (10-percent slope).

**R403.1.6 Foundation anchorage.** Sill plates and walls supported directly on continuous foundations shall be anchored to the foundation in accordance with this section.

Wood sole plates at all exterior walls on monolithic slabs, wood sole plates of *braced wall panels* at building interiors on monolithic slabs and all wood sill plates shall be anchored to the foundation with anchor bolts spaced a maximum of 6 feet (1829 mm) on center. Bolts shall be at least $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in diameter and shall extend a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete or grouted cells of concrete masonry units. A nut and washer shall be tightened on each anchor bolt. There shall be a minimum of two bolts per plate section with one bolt located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) or less than seven bolt diameters from each end of the plate section. Interior bearing wall sole plates on monolithic slab foundation that are not part of a *braced wall panel* shall be positively anchored with *approved* fasteners. Sill plates and sole plates shall be protected against decay and termites where required by Sections R317 and R318. Cold-formed steel framing systems shall be fastened to wood sill plates or anchored directly to the foundation as required in Section R505.3.1 or R603.3.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Foundation anchorage, spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to $^1/_2$-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) anchor bolts.
2. Walls 24 inches (610 mm) total length or shorter connecting offset *braced wall panels* shall be anchored to the foundation with a minimum of one anchor bolt located in the center third of the plate section and shall be attached to adjacent *braced wall panels* at corners as shown in Figure R602.10.4.4(1).
3. Connection of walls 12 inches (305 mm) total length or shorter connecting offset *braced wall panels* to the foundation without anchor bolts shall be permitted. The wall shall be attached to adjacent *braced wall panels* at corners as shown in Figure R602.10.4.4(1).

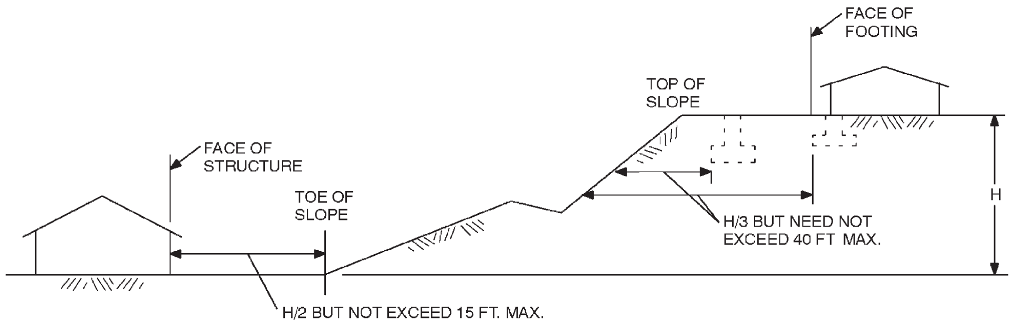
**R403.1.6.1 Foundation anchorage in Seismic Design Categories C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** In addition to the requirements of Section R403.1.6, the following requirements shall apply to wood light-frame structures in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ and wood light-frame townhouses in Seismic Design Category C.

1. Plate washers conforming to Section R602.11.1 shall be provided for all anchor bolts over the full length of required *braced wall lines* except where *approved* anchor straps are used. Properly sized cut washers shall be permitted for anchor bolts in wall lines not containing *braced wall panels*.
2. Interior braced wall plates shall have anchor bolts spaced at not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center and located within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ends of each plate section when supported on a continuous foundation.
3. Interior bearing wall sole plates shall have anchor bolts spaced at not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center and located within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ends of each plate section when supported on a continuous foundation.
4. The maximum anchor bolt spacing shall be 4 feet (1219 mm)for buildings over two stories in height.
5. Stepped cripple walls shall conform to Section R602.11.2.
6. Where continuous wood foundations in accordance with Section R404.2 are used, the force transfer shall have a capacity equal to or greater than the connections required by Section R602.11.1 or the *braced wall panel* shall be connected to the wood foundations in accordance with the *braced wall panel*-to-floor fastening requirements of Table R602.3(1).

**R403.1.7 Footings on or adjacent to slopes.** The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall conform to Sections R403.1.7.1 through R403.1.7.4.

**R403.1.7.1 Building clearances from ascending slopes.** In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage, erosion and shallow failures. Except as provided in Section R403.1.7.4 and Figure R403.1.7.1, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.

**R403.1.7.2 Footing setback from descending slope surfaces.** Footings on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in material with an embedment and setback from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the footing without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section R403.1.7.4 and Figure R403.1.7.1, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R403.1.7.1**
**FOUNDATION CLEARANCE FROM SLOPES**

**R403.1.7.3 Foundation elevation.** On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an *approved* drainage device a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the *building official*, provided it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

**R403.1.7.4 Alternate setback and clearances.** Alternate setbacks and clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the *building official*. The *building official* is permitted to require an investigation and recommendation of a qualified engineer to demonstrate that the intent of this section has been satisfied. Such an investigation shall include consideration of material, height of slope, slope gradient, load intensity and erosion characteristics of slope material.

**R403.1.8 Foundations on expansive soils.** Foundation and floor slabs for buildings located on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with Section 1805.8 of the *International Building Code*.

**Exception:** Slab-on-ground and other foundation systems which have performed adequately in soil conditions similar to those encountered at the building site are permitted subject to the approval of the *building official*.

**R403.1.8.1 Expansive soils classifications.** Soils meeting all four of the following provisions shall be considered expansive, except that tests to show compliance with Items 1, 2 and 3 shall not be required if the test prescribed in Item 4 is conducted:

1. Plasticity Index (PI) of 15 or greater, determined in accordance with ASTM D 4318.
2. More than 10 percent of the soil particles pass a No. 200 sieve (75 μm), determined in accordance with ASTM D 422.
3. More than 10 percent of the soil particles are less than 5 micrometers in size, determined in accordance with ASTM D 422.
4. Expansion Index greater than 20, determined in accordance with ASTM D 4829.

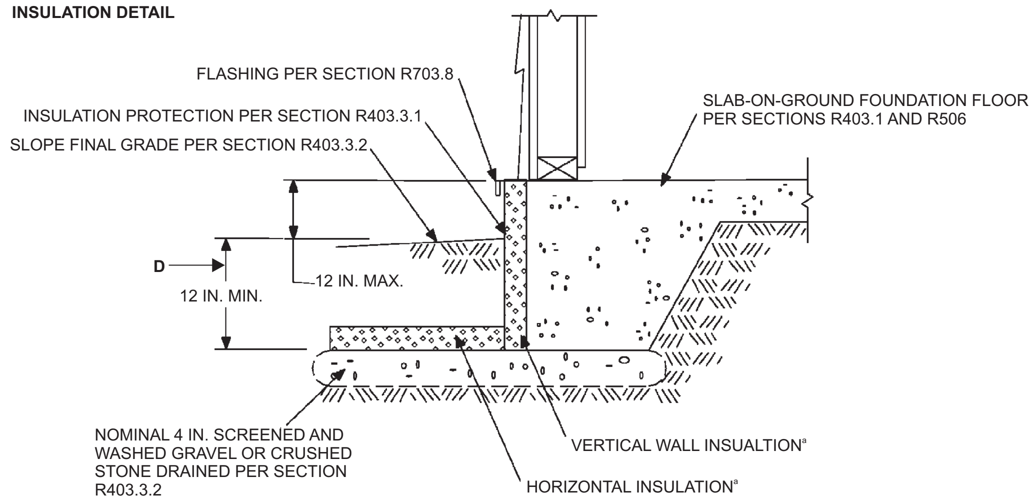
**R403.2 Footings for wood foundations.** Footings for wood foundations shall be in accordance with Figures R403.1(2) and R403.1(3). Gravel shall be washed and well graded. The maximum size stone shall not exceed $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). Gravel shall be free from organic, clayey or silty soils. Sand shall be coarse, not smaller than $^1/_{16}$-inch (1.6 mm) grains and shall be free from organic, clayey or silty soils. Crushed stone shall have a maximum size of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

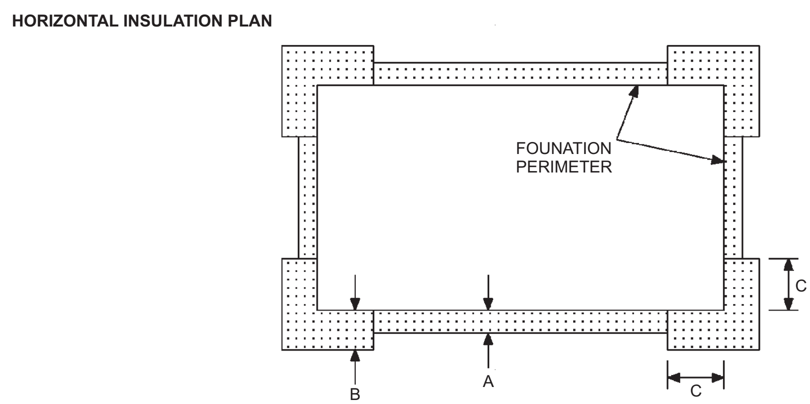
**R403.3 Frost protected shallow foundations.** For buildings where the monthly mean temperature of the building is maintained at a minimum of 64°F (18°C), footings are not required to extend below the frost line when protected from frost by insulation in accordance with Figure R403.3(1) and Table R403.3(1). Foundations protected from frost in accordance with Figure R403.3(1) and Table R403.3(1) shall not be used for unheated spaces such as porches, utility rooms, garages and carports, and shall not be attached to basements or crawl spaces that are not maintained at a minimum monthly mean temperature of 64°F (18°C).

Materials used below *grade* for the purpose of insulating footings against frost shall be *labeled* as complying with ASTM C 578.

**R403.3.1 Foundations adjoining frost protected shallow foundations.** Foundations that adjoin frost protected shallow foundations shall be protected from frost in accordance with Section R403.1.4.

**R403.3.1.1 Attachment to unheated slab-on-ground structure.** Vertical wall insulation and horizontal insulation of frost protected shallow foundations that adjoin a slab-on-ground foundation that does not have a monthly mean temperature maintained at a minimum of 64°F (18°C) shall be in accordance with Figure R403.3(3) and Table R403.3(1). Vertical wall insulation shall extend between the frost protected shallow foundation and the adjoining slab foundation. Required horizontal insulation shall be continuous under the adjoining slab foundation and through any foundation walls adjoining the frost protected shallow foundation. Where insulation passes through a foundation wall, it shall either be of a type complying with this section and having bearing capacity equal to or greater than the structural loads imposed by the building, or the building shall be designed and constructed using beams, lintels, cantilevers or other means of transferring building loads such that the structural loads of the building do not bear on the insulation.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

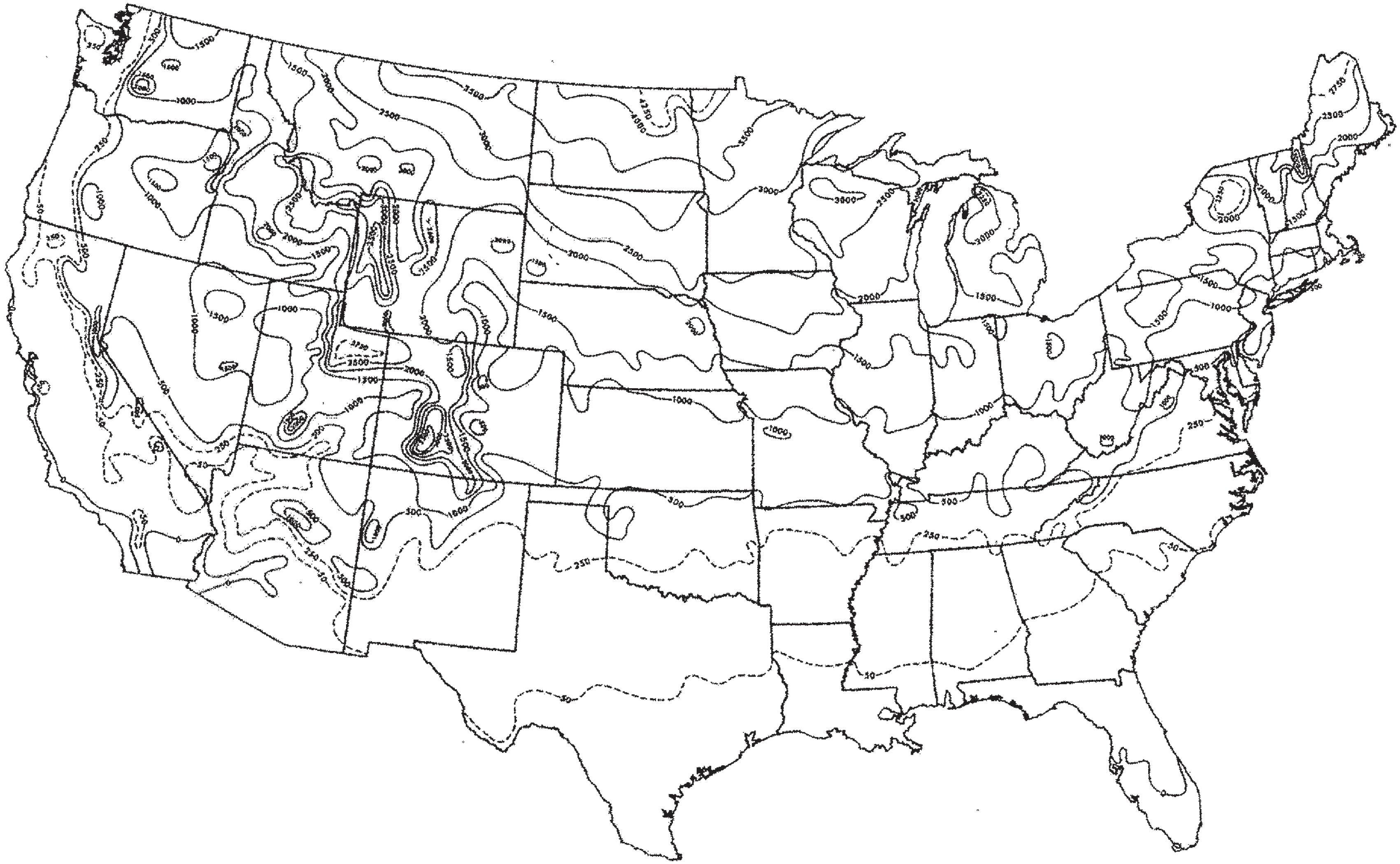
a. See Table R403.3(1) for required dimensions and *R*-values for vertical and horizontal insulation and minimum footing depth.

**FIGURE R403.3(1)**
**INSULATION PLACEMENT FOR FROST PROTECTED FOOTINGS IN HEATED BUILDINGS**

**TABLE R403.3(1)**
**MINIMUM FOOTING DEPTH AND INSULATION REQUIREMENTS FOR FROST-PROTECTED FOOTINGS IN HEATED BUILDINGS[a]**

| AIR FREEZING INDEX (°F-days)[b] | MINIMUM FOOTING DEPTH, *D* (inches) | VERTICAL INSULATION *R*-VALUE[c, d] | HORIZONTAL INSULATION *R*-VALUE[c, e] | | HORIZONTAL INSULATION DIMENSIONS PER FIGURE R403.3(1) (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Along walls | At corners | A | B | C |
| 1,500 or less | 12 | 4.5 | Not required | Not required | Not required | Not required | Not required |
| 2,000 | 14 | 5.6 | Not required | Not required | Not required | Not required | Not required |
| 2,500 | 16 | 6.7 | 1.7 | 4.9 | 12 | 24 | 40 |
| 3,000 | 16 | 7.8 | 6.5 | 8.6 | 12 | 24 | 40 |
| 3,500 | 16 | 9.0 | 8.0 | 11.2 | 24 | 30 | 60 |
| 4,000 | 16 | 10.1 | 10.5 | 13.1 | 24 | 36 | 60 |

a. Insulation requirements are for protection against frost damage in heated buildings. Greater values may be required to meet energy conservation standards.
b. See Figure R403.3(2) or Table R403.3(2) for Air Freezing Index values.
c. Insulation materials shall provide the stated minimum *R*-values under long-term exposure to moist, below-ground conditions in freezing climates. The following *R*-values shall be used to determine insulation thicknesses required for this application: Type II expanded polystyrene—2.4*R* per inch; Type IV extruded polystyrene— 4.5*R* per inch; Type VI extruded polystyrene—4.5*R* per inch; Type IX expanded polystyrene—3.2*R* per inch; Type X extruded polystyrene—4.5*R* per inch.
d. Vertical insulation shall be expanded polystyrene insulation or extruded polystyrene insulation.
e. Horizontal insulation shall be extruded polystyrene insulation.



For SI: C = [(F) -32]/1.8.

**Note:** The air-freezing index is defined as cumulative degree days below 32F. It is used as a measure of the combined magnitude and duration of air temperature below freezing. The index was computed over a 12-month period (July-June) for each of the 3,044 stations used in the above analysis. Date from the 1951-80 period were fitted to a Weibull probability distribution to produce an estimate of the 100-year return period.

**FIGURE R403.3(2)**
**AIR-FREEZING INDEX**
**AN ESTIMATE OF THE 100-YEAR RETURN PERIOD**

**TABLE R403.3(2)**
**AIR-FREEZING INDEX FOR U.S. LOCATIONS BY COUNTY**

| STATE | AIR-FREEZING INDEX | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1500 or less | 2000 | 2500 | 3000 | 3500 | 4000 |
| Alabama | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Alaska | Ketchikan Gateway, Prince of Wales-Outer Ketchikan (CA), Sitka, Wrangell-Petersburg (CA) | — | Aleutians West (CA), Haines, Juneau, Skagway-Hoonah-Angoon (CA), Yakutat | — | — | All counties not listed |
| Arizona | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Arkansas | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| California | All counties not listed | Nevada, Sierra | — | — | — | — |
| Colorado | All counties not listed | Archuleta, Custer, Fremont, Huerfano, Las Animas, Ouray, Pitkin, San Miguel | Clear Creek, Conejos, Costilla, Dolores, Eagle, La Plata, Park, Routt, San Juan, Summit | Alamosa, Grand, Jackson, Larimer, Moffat, Rio Blanco, Rio Grande | Chaffee, Gunnison, Lake, Saguache | Hinsdale, Mineral |
| Connecticut | All counties not listed | Hartford, Litchfield | — | — | — | — |
| Delaware | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| District of Columbia | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Florida | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Georgia | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Hawaii | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Idaho | All counties not listed | Adams, Bannock, Blaine, Clearwater, Idaho, Lincoln, Oneida, Power, Valley, Washington | Bingham, Bonneville, Camas, Caribou, Elmore, Franklin, Jefferson, Madison, Teton | Bear Lake, Butte, Custer, Fremont, Lemhi | Clark | — |
| Illinois | All counties not listed | Boone, Bureau, Cook, Dekalb, DuPage, Fulton, Grundy, Henderson, Henry, Iroquois, Jo Daviess, Kane, Kankakee, Kendall, Knox, La Salle, Lake, Lee, Livingston, Marshall, Mason, McHenry, McLean, Mercer, Peoria, Putnam, Rock Island, Stark Tazewell, Warren, Whiteside, Will, Woodford | Carroll, Ogle, Stephenson, Winnebago | — | — | — |
| Indiana | All counties not listed | Allen, Benton, Cass, Fountain, Fulton, Howard, Jasper, Kosciusko, La Porte, Lake, Marshall, Miami, Newton, Porter, Pulaski, Starke, Steuben, Tippecanoe, Tipton, Wabash, Warren, White | — | — | — | — |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R403.3(2)—continued**
**AIR-FREEZING INDEX FOR U.S. LOCATIONS BY COUNTY**

| STATE | AIR-FREEZING INDEX 1500 or less | 2000 | 2500 | 3000 | 3500 | 4000 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Iowa | Appanoose, Davis, Fremont, Lee, Van Buren | All counties not listed | Allamakee, Black Hawk, Boone, Bremer, Buchanan, Buena Vista, Butler, Calhoun, Cerro Gordo, Cherokee, Chickasaw, Clay, Clayton, Delaware, Dubuque, Fayette, Floyd, Franklin, Grundy, Hamilton, Hancock, Hardin, Humboldt, Ida, Jackson, Jasper, Jones, Linn, Marshall, Palo Alto, Plymouth, Pocahontas, Poweshiek, Sac, Sioux, Story, Tama, Webster, Winnebago, Woodbury, Worth, Wright | Dickinson, Emmet, Howard, Kossuth, Lyon, Mitchell, O'Brien, Osceola, Winneshiek | — | — |
| Kansas | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Kentucky | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Louisiana | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Maine | York | Knox, Lincoln, Sagadahoc | Androscoggin, Cumberland, Hancock, Kennebec, Waldo, Washington | Aroostook, Franklin, Oxford, Penobscot, Piscataquis, Somerset | — | — |
| Maryland | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Massachusetts | All counties not listed | Berkshire, Franklin, Hampden, Worcester | — | — | — | — |
| Michigan | Berrien, Branch, Cass, Kalamazoo, Macomb, Ottawa, St. Clair, St. Joseph | All counties not listed | Alger, Charlevoix, Cheboygan, Chippewa, Crawford, Delta, Emmet, Iosco, Kalkaska, Lake, Luce, Mackinac, Menominee, Missaukee, Montmorency, Ogemaw, Osceola, Otsego, Roscommon, Schoolcraft, Wexford | Baraga, Dickinson, Iron, Keweenaw, Marquette | Gogebic, Houghton, Ontonagon | — |
| Minnesota | — | — | Houston, Winona | All counties not listed | Aitkin, Big Stone, Carlton, Crow Wing, Douglas, Itasca, Kanabec, Lake, Morrison, Pine, Pope, Stearns, Stevens, Swift, Todd, Wadena | Becker, Beltrami, Cass, Clay, Clearwater, Grant, Hubbard, Kittson, Koochiching, Lake of the Woods, Mahnomen, Marshall, Norman, Otter Tail, Pennington, Polk, Red Lake, Roseau, St Louis, Traverse, Wilkin |
| Mississippi | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Missouri | All counties not listed | Atchison, Mercer, Nodaway, Putnam | — | — | — | — |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R403.3(2)—continued**
**AIR-FREEZING INDEX FOR U.S. LOCATIONS BY COUNTY**

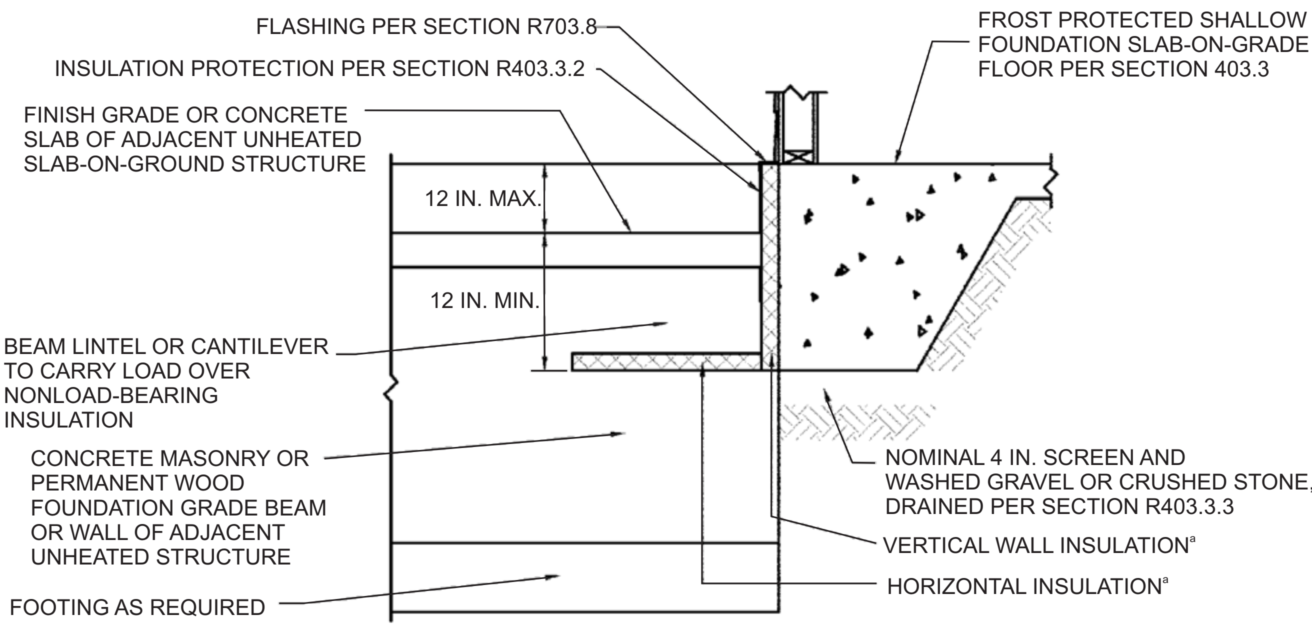
| STATE | AIR-FREEZING INDEX | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1500 or less | 2000 | 2500 | 3000 | 3500 | 4000 |
| Montana | Mineral | Broadwater, Golden Valley, Granite, Lake, Lincoln, Missoula, Ravalli, Sanders, Sweet Grass | Big Horn, Carbon, Jefferson, Judith Basin, Lewis and Clark, Meagher, Musselshell, Powder River, Powell, Silver Bow, Stillwater, Westland | Carter, Cascade, Deer Lodge, Falcon, Fergus, Flathead, Gallanting, Glacier, Madison, Park, Petroleum, Ponder, Rosebud, Teton, Treasure, Yellowstone | Beaverhead, Blaine, Chouteau, Custer, Dawson, Garfield, Liberty, McCone, Prairie, Toole, Wibaux | Daniels, Hill, Phillips, Richland, Roosevelt, Sheridan, Valley |
| Nebraska | Adams, Banner, Chase, Cheyenne, Clay, Deuel, Dundy, Fillmore, Franklin, Frontier, Furnas, Gage, Garden, Gosper, Harlan, Hayes, Hitchcock, Jefferson, Kimball, Morrill, Nemaha, Nuckolls, Pawnee, Perkins, Phelps, Red Willow, Richardson, Saline, Scotts Bluff, Seward, Thayer, Webster | All counties not listed | Boyd, Burt, Cedar, Cuming, Dakota, Dixon, Dodge, Knox, Thurston | — | — | — |
| Nevada | All counties not listed | Elko, Eureka, Nye, Washoe, White Pine | — | — | — | — |
| New Hampshire | — | All counties not listed | — | — | — | Carroll, Coos, Grafton |
| New Jersey | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| New Mexico | All counties not listed | Rio Arriba | Colfax, Mora, Taos | — | — | — |
| New York | Albany, Bronx, Cayuga, Columbia, Cortland, Dutchess, Genessee, Kings, Livingston, Monroe, Nassau, New York, Niagara, Onondaga, Ontario, Orange, Orleans, Putnam, Queens, Richmond, Rockland, Seneca, Suffolk, Wayne, Westchester, Yates | All counties not listed | Clinton, Essex, Franklin, Hamilton, Herkimer, Jefferson, Lewis, St. Lawrence, Warren | — | — | — |
| North Carolina | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| North Dakota | — | — | — | Billings, Bowman | Adams, Dickey, Golden Valley, Hettinger, LaMoure, Oliver, Ransom, Sargent, Sioux, Slope, Stark | All counties not listed |
| Ohio | All counties not listed | Ashland, Crawford, Defiance, Holmes, Huron, Knox, Licking, Morrow, Paulding, Putnam, Richland, Seneca, Williams | — | — | — | — |

(continued)

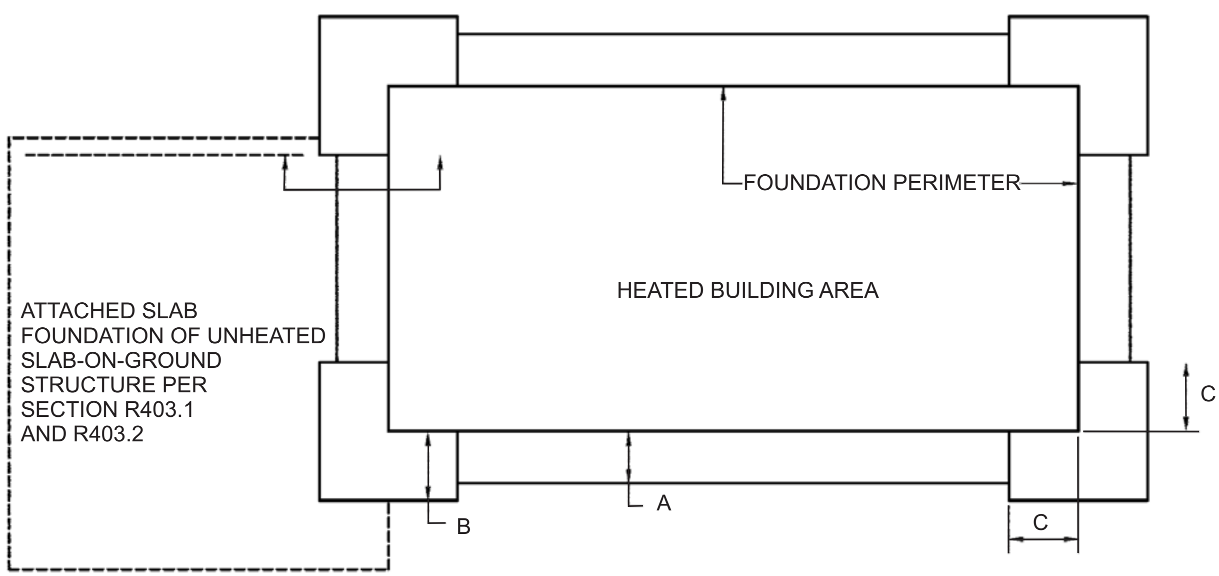
**TABLE R403.3(2)—continued**
**AIR-FREEZING INDEX FOR U.S. LOCATIONS BY COUNTY**

| STATE | AIR-FREEZING INDEX | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1500 or less | 2000 | 2500 | 3000 | 3500 | 4000 |
| Oklahoma | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Oregon | All counties not listed | Baker, Crook, Grant, Harney | — | — | — | — |
| Pennsylvania | All counties not listed | Berks, Blair, Bradford, Cambria, Cameron, Centre, Clarion, Clearfield, Clinton, Crawford, Elk, Forest, Huntingdon, Indiana, Jefferson, Lackawanna, Lycoming, McKean, Pike, Potter, Susquehanna, Tioga, Venango, Warren, Wayne, Wyoming | — | — | — | — |
| Rhode Island | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| South Carolina | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| South Dakota | — | Bennett, Custer, Fall River, Lawrence, Mellette, Shannon, Todd, Tripp | Bon Homme, Charles Mix, Davison, Douglas, Gregory, Jackson, Jones, Lyman | All counties not listed | Beadle, Brookings, Brown, Campbell, Codington, Corson, Day, Deuel, Edmunds, Faulk, Grant, Hamlin, Kingsbury, Marshall, McPherson, Perkins, Roberts, Spink, Walworth | — |
| Tennessee | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Texas | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Utah | All counties not listed | Box Elder, Morgan, Weber | Garfield, Salt Lake, Summit | Carbon, Daggett, Duchesne, Rich, Sanpete, Uintah, Wasatch | — | — |
| Vermont | — | Bennington, Grand Isle, Rutland, Windham | Addison, Chittenden, Franklin, Orange, Washington, Windsor | Caledonia, Essex, Lamoille, Orleans | — | — |
| Virginia | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Washington | All counties not listed | Chelan, Douglas, Ferry, Okanogan | — | — | — | — |
| West Virginia | All counties | — | — | — | — | — |
| Wisconsin | — | Kenosha, Kewaunee, Racine, Sheboygan, Walworth | All counties not listed | Ashland, Barron, Burnett, Chippewa, Clark, Dunn, Eau Claire, Florence, Forest, Iron, Jackson, La Crosse, Langlade, Marathon, Monroe, Pepin, Polk, Portage, Price, Rust, St. Croix, Taylor, Trempealeau, Vilas, Wood | Bayfield, Douglas, Lincoln, Oneida, Sawyer, Washburn | — |
| Wyoming | Goshen, Platte | Converse, Crook, Laramie, Niobrara | Campbell, Carbon, Hot Springs, Johnson, Natrona, Sheridan, Uinta, Weston | Albany, Big Horn, Park, Washakie | Fremont, Teton | Lincoln, Sublette, Sweetwater |

## INSULATION DETAIL




## HORIZONTAL INSULATION PLAN




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. See Table R403.3(1) for required dimensions and *R*-values for vertical and horizontal insulation.

**FIGURE R403.3(3)**
**INSULATION PLACEMENT FOR FROST-PROTECTED FOOTINGS ADJACENT TO UNHEATED SLAB-ON-GROUND STRUCTURE**

**R403.3.1.2 Attachment to heated structure.** Where a frost protected shallow foundation abuts a structure that has a monthly mean temperature maintained at a minimum of 64°F (18°C), horizontal insulation and vertical wall insulation shall not be required between the frost protected shallow foundation and the adjoining structure. Where the frost protected shallow foundation abuts the heated structure, the horizontal insulation and vertical wall insulation shall extend along the adjoining foundation in accordance with Figure R403.3(4) a distance of not less than Dimension A in Table R403.3(1).

**Exception:** Where the frost protected shallow foundation abuts the heated structure to form an inside corner, vertical insulation extending along the adjoining foundation is not required.

**R403.3.2 Protection of horizontal insulation below ground.** Horizontal insulation placed less than 12 inches (305 mm) below the ground surface or that portion of horizontal insulation extending outward more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the foundation edge shall be protected against damage by use of a concrete slab or asphalt paving on the ground surface directly above the insulation or by cementitious board, plywood rated for below-ground use, or other *approved* materials placed below ground, directly above the top surface of the insulation.

**R403.3.3 Drainage.** Final *grade* shall be sloped in accordance with Section R401.3. In other than Group I Soils, as detailed in Table R405.1, gravel or crushed stone beneath horizontal insulation below ground shall drain to daylight or into an *approved* sewer system.

**R403.3.4 Termite damage.** The use of foam plastic in areas of "very heavy" termite infestation probability shall be in accordance with Section R318.4.

**R403.4 Footings for precast concrete foundations.** Footings for precast concrete foundations shall comply with Section R403.4.

**R403.4.1 Crushed stone footings.** Clean crushed stone shall be free from organic, clayey or silty soils. Crushed stone shall be angular in nature and meet ASTM C 33, with the maximum size stone not to exceed $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) and the minimum stone size not to be smaller than $^1/_{16}$-inch (1.6 mm). Crushed stone footings for precast foundations shall be installed in accordance with Figure R403.4(1) and Table R403.4. Crushed stone footings shall be consolidated using a vibratory plate in a maximum of 8-inch lifts. Crushed stone footings shall be limited to Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.

**R403.4.2 Concrete footings.** Concrete footings shall be installed in accordance with Section R403.1 and Figure R403.4(2).

## SECTION R404
## FOUNDATION AND RETAINING WALLS

**R404.1 Concrete and masonry foundation walls.** Concrete foundation walls shall be selected and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Section R404.1.2. Masonry foundation walls shall be selected and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Section R404.1.1.

**R404.1.1 Design of masonry foundation walls.** Masonry foundation walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section or in accordance with the provisions of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 or NCMA TR68-A. When TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, NCMA TR68-A or the provisions of this section are used to design masonry foundation walls, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the *jurisdiction* having authority.

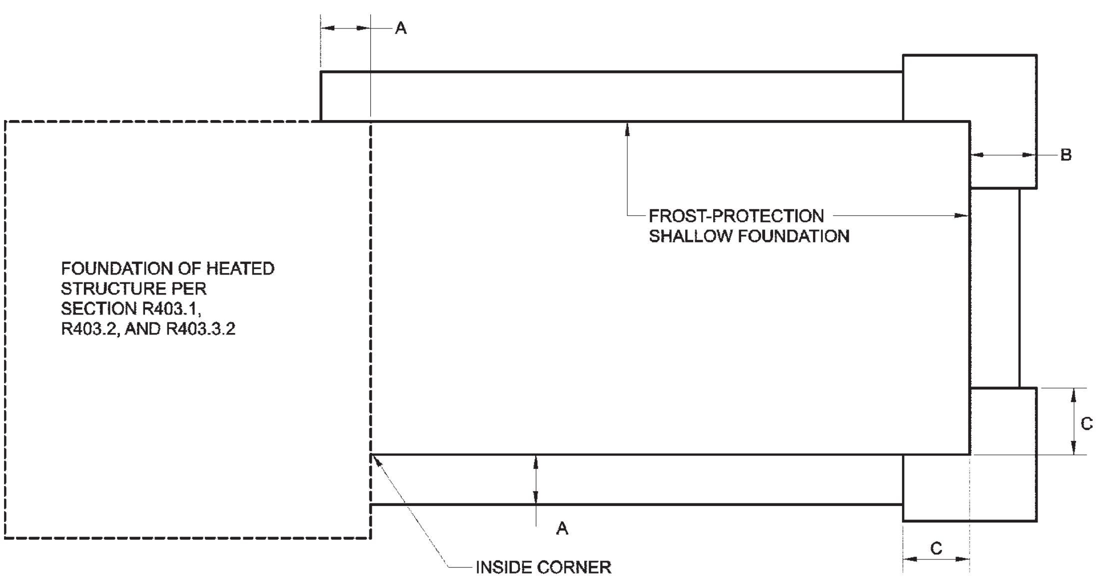



**FIGURE R403.3(4)**
**INSULATION PLACEMENT FOR FROST-PROTECTED FOOTINGS ADJACENT TO HEATED STRUCTURE**

**TABLE R403.4**
**MINIMUM DEPTH OF CRUSHED STONE FOOTINGS (*D*), (inches)**

| | | LOAD BEARING VALUE OF SOIL (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1500 | | | | 2000 | | | | 3000 | | | | 4000 | | | |
| | | MH, CH, CL, ML | | | | SC, GC, SM, GM, SP, SW | | | | GP, GW | | | | | | | |
| | | Wall width (inches) | | | | Wall width (inches) | | | | Wall width (inches) | | | | Wall width (inches) | | | |
| | | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 |
| Conventional light-frame construction | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1-story | 1100 plf | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 2-story | 1800 plf | 8 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 3-story | 2000 plf | 16 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 10 | 8 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 4-inch brick veneer over light-frame or 8-inch hollow concrete masonry | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1-story | 1500 plf | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 2-story | 2700 plf | 14 | 12 | 10 | 8 | 10 | 8 | 6 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 3-story | 4000 plf | 22 | 22 | 20 | 18 | 16 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 10 | 8 | 6 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 8-inch solid or fully grouted masonry | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1-story | 2000 plf | 10 | 8 | 6 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 2-story | 3600 plf | 20 | 18 | 16 | 16 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 8 | 8 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| 3-story | 5300 plf | 32 | 30 | 28 | 26 | 22 | 22 | 20 | 18 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 8 | 10 | 8 | 6 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.89 kPa.

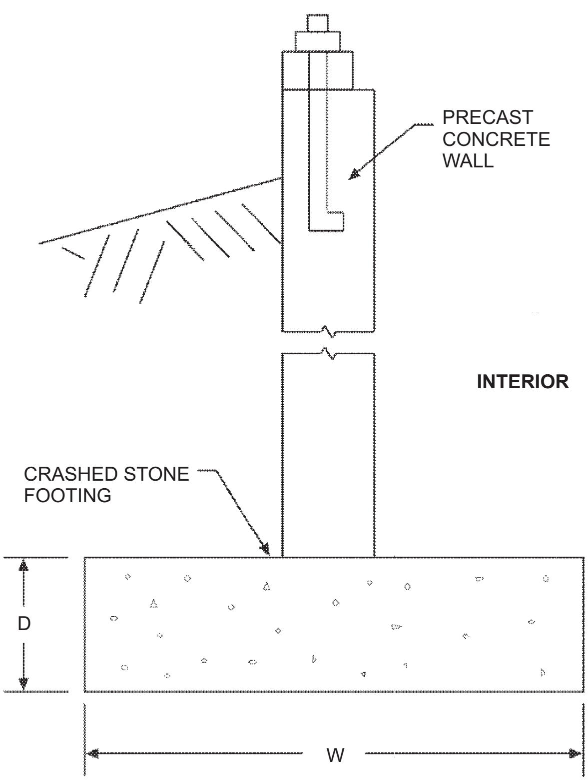



**FIGURE R403.4(1)**
**BASEMENT OR CRAWL SPACE WITH PRECAST FOUNDATION WALL BEARING ON CRUSHED STONE**

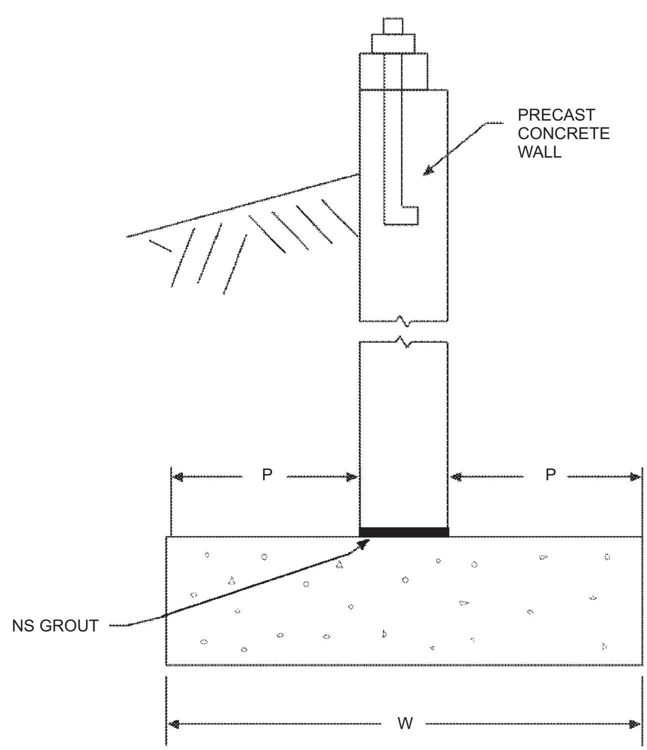



**FIGURE R403.4(2)**
**BASEMENT OR CRAWL SPACE WITH PRECAST FOUNDATION WALL ON SPREAD FOOTING**

**TABLE R404.1.1(1)**
**PLAIN MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS**

| MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[c] (feet) | PLAIN MASONRY[a] MINIMUM NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[b] | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW and SP | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML | SC, MH, ML-CL and inorganic CL |
| 5 | 4 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 6 solid[d] or 8 |
| | 5 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 8 | 10 |
| 6 | 4 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 6 solid[d] or 8 |
| | 5 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 8 | 10 |
| | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 |
| 7 | 4 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 8 | 8 |
| | 5 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 10 | 10 |
| | 6 | 10 | 12 | 10 solid[d] |
| | 7 | 12 | 10 solid[d] | 12 solid[d] |
| 8 | 4 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 8 |
| | 5 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 10 | 12 |
| | 6 | 10 | 12 | 12 solid[d] |
| | 7 | 12 | 12 solid[d] | Footnote e |
| | 8 | 10 solid[d] | 12 solid[d] | Footnote e |
| 9 | 4 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 6 solid[d] or 8 | 8 |
| | 5 | 8 | 10 | 12 |
| | 6 | 10 | 12 | 12 solid[d] |
| | 7 | 12 | 12 solid[d] | Footnote e |
| | 8 | 12 solid[d] | Footnote e | Footnote e |
| | 9 | Footnote e | Footnote e | Footnote e |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 Pa.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond. Ungrouted hollow masonry units are permitted except where otherwise indicated.

b. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.

c. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

d. Solid grouted hollow units or solid masonry units.

e. Wall construction shall be in accordance with either Table R404.1.1(2), Table R404.1.1(3), Table R404.1.1(4), or a design shall be provided.

**TABLE R404.1.1(2)**
**8-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCING WHERE d > 5 INCHES[a, c]**

| WALL HEIGHT | HEIGHT OF UNBALANCED BACKFILL[e] | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT AND SPACING (INCHES)[b, c] Soil classes and lateral soil load[d] (psf per foot below grade) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | GW, GP, SW and SP soils 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML soils 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL soils 60 |
| 6 feet 8 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 6 feet 8 inches | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 |
| 7 feet 4 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 | #5 at 48 |
| | 7 feet 4 inches | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 40 |
| 8 feet | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 | #5 at 48 |
| | 7 feet | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 40 |
| | 8 feet | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 32 |
| 8 feet 8 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 |
| | 7 feet | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 40 |
| | 8 feet 8 inches | #6 at 48 | #6 at 32 | #6 at 24 |
| 9 feet 4 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 |
| | 7 feet | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 40 |
| | 8 feet | #6 at 48 | #6 at 40 | #6 at 24 |
| | 9 feet 4 inches | #6 at 40 | #6 at 24 | #6 at 16 |
| 10 feet | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 48 | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 48 | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 |
| | 7 feet | #5 at 48 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 32 |
| | 8 feet | #6 at 48 | #6 at 32 | #6 at 24 |
| | 9 feet | #6 at 40 | #6 at 24 | #6 at 16 |
| | 10 feet | #6 at 32 | #6 at 16 | #6 at 16 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/mm.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond.

b. Alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per lineal foot of wall shall be permitted provided the spacing of the reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches.

c. Vertical reinforcement shall be Grade 60 minimum. The distance, *d*, from the face of the soil side of the wall to the center of vertical reinforcement shall be at least 5 inches.

d. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System and design lateral soil loads are for moist conditions without hydrostatic pressure. Refer to Table R405.1.

e. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

**TABLE R404.1.1(3)**
**10-INCH FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCING**
**WHERE d > 6.75 INCHES[a, c]**

| WALL HEIGHT | HEIGHT OF UNBALANCED BACKFILL[e] | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT AND SPACING (INCHES)[b, c] Soil classes and later soil load[d] (psf per foot below grade) GW, GP, SW and SP soils 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML soils 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL soils 60 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6 feet 8 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 6 feet 8 inches | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 | #5 at 56 |
| 7 feet 4 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 |
| | 7 feet 4 inches | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 | #6 at 56 |
| 8 feet | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 |
| | 7 feet | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 | #6 at 56 |
| | 8 feet | #5 at 56 | #6 at 56 | #6 at 48 |
| 8 feet 8 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 |
| | 7 feet | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 | #6 at 56 |
| | 8 feet 8 inches | #5 at 56 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 32 |
| 9 feet 4 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 | #5 at 56 |
| | 7 feet | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 | #6 at 56 |
| | 8 feet | #5 at 56 | #6 at 56 | #6 at 40 |
| | 9 feet 4 inches | #6 at 56 | #6 at 40 | #6 at 24 |
| 10 feet | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 | #4 at 56 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 56 | #5 at 56 | #5 at 56 |
| | 7 feet | #5 at 56 | #6 at 56 | #6 at 48 |
| | 8 feet | #5 at 56 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 40 |
| | 9 feet | #6 at 56 | #6 at 40 | #6 at 24 |
| | 10 feet | #6 at 48 | #6 at 32 | #6 at 24 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/mm.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond.

b. Alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per lineal foot of wall shall be permitted provided the spacing of the reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches.

c. Vertical reinforcement shall be Grade 60 minimum. The distance, *d*, from the face of the soil side of the wall to the center of vertical reinforcement shall be at least 6.75 inches.

d. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System and design lateral soil loads are for moist conditions without hydrostatic pressure. Refer to Table R405.1.

e. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

**TABLE R404.1.1(4)**
**12-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCING**
**WHERE d > 8.75 INCHES[a, c]**

| WALL HEIGHT | HEIGHT OF UNBALANCED BACKFILL[e] | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT AND SPACING (INCHES)[b, c] | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes and lateral soil load[d] (psf per foot below *grade*) | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW and SP soils 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML soils 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL soils 60 |
| 6 feet 8 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 6 feet 8 inches | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 |
| 7 feet 4 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 |
| | 7 feet 4 inches | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 | #6 at 72 |
| 8 feet | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 |
| | 7 feet | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 | #6 at 72 |
| | 8 feet | #5 at 72 | #6 at 72 | #6 at 64 |
| 8 feet 8 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 |
| | 7 feet | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 | #6 at 72 |
| | 8 feet 8 inches | #5 at 72 | #7 at 72 | #6 at 48 |
| 9 feet 4 inches | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 | #5 at 72 |
| | 7 feet | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 | #6 at 72 |
| | 8 feet | #5 at 72 | #6 at 72 | #6 at 56 |
| | 9 feet 4 inches | #6 at 72 | #6 at 48 | #6 at 40 |
| 10 feet | 4 feet (or less) | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 5 feet | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 | #4 at 72 |
| | 6 feet | #4 at 72 | #5 at 72 | #5 at 72 |
| | 7 feet | #4 at 72 | #6 at 72 | #6 at 72 |
| | 8 feet | #5 at 72 | #6 at 72 | #6 at 48 |
| | 9 feet | #6 at 72 | #6 at 56 | #6 at 40 |
| | 10 feet | #6 at 64 | #6 at 40 | #6 at 32 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/mm.

a. Mortar shall be Type M or S and masonry shall be laid in running bond.

b. Alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per lineal foot of wall shall be permitted provided the spacing of the reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches.

c. Vertical reinforcement shall be Grade 60 minimum. The distance, *d*, from the face of the soil side of the wall to the center of vertical reinforcement shall be at least 8.75 inches.

d. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System and design lateral soil loads are for moist conditions without hydrostatic pressure. Refer to Table R405.1.

e. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground levels. Where an interior concrete slab-on-grade is provided and in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, measurement of the unbalanced backfill height is permitted to be measured from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab is permitted.

**R404.1.1.1 Masonry foundation walls.** Concrete masonry and clay masonry foundation walls shall be constructed as set forth in Table R404.1.1(1), R404.1.1(2), R404.1.1(3) or R404.1.1(4) and shall also comply with applicable provisions of Sections R606, R607 and R608. In buildings assigned to Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, concrete masonry and clay masonry foundation walls shall also comply with Section R404.1.4.1. Rubble stone masonry foundation walls shall be constructed in accordance with Sections R404.1.8 and R607.2.2. Rubble stone masonry walls shall not be used in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.

**R404.1.2 Concrete foundation walls.** Concrete foundation walls that support light-frame walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section, ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100. Concrete foundation walls that support above-grade concrete walls that are within the applicability limits of Section R611.2 shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section, ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100. Concrete foundation walls that support above-grade concrete walls that are not within the applicability limits of Section R611.2 shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100. When ACI 318, ACI 332, PCA 100 or the provisions of this section are used to design concrete foundation walls, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the *jurisdiction* having authority.

**R404.1.2.1 Concrete cross-section.** Concrete walls constructed in accordance with this code shall comply with the shapes and minimum concrete cross-sectional dimensions required by Table R611.3. Other types of forming systems resulting in concrete walls not in compliance with this section and Table R611.3 shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

**R404.1.2.2 Reinforcement for foundation walls.** Concrete foundation walls shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom. Horizontal reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Table R404.1.2(1). Vertical reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Table R404.1.2(2), R404.1.2(3), R404.1.2(4), R404.1.2(5), R404.1.2(6), R404.1.2(7) or R404.1.2(8). Vertical reinforcement for flat *basement* walls retaining 4 feet (1219 mm) or more of unbalanced backfill is permitted to be determined in accordance with Table R404.1.2(9). For *basement* walls supporting above-grade concrete walls, vertical reinforcement shall be the greater of that required by Tables R404.1.2(2) through R404.1.2(8) or by Section R611.6 for the above-grade wall. In buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$, concrete foundation walls shall also comply with Section R404.1.4.2.

**R404.1.2.2.1 Concrete foundation stem walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.** Foundation stem walls that support above-grade concrete walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section.

1. Stem walls not laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are not monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are not otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground shall comply with this section. Where unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is less than or equal to 18 inches (457 mm), the stem wall and above-grade wall it supports shall be provided with vertical reinforcement in accordance with Section R611.6 and Table R611.6(1), R611.6(2) or R611.6(3) for above-grade walls. Where unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 18 inches (457 mm), the stem wall and above-grade wall it supports shall be provided with vertical reinforcement in accordance with Section R611.6 and Table R611.6(4).
2. Stem walls laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground shall be vertically reinforced in accordance with Section R611.6 and Table R611.6(1), R611.6(2) or R611.6(3) for above-grade walls. Where the unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 18 inches (457 mm), the connection between the stem wall and the slab-on-ground, and the portion of the slab-on-ground providing lateral support for the wall shall be designed in accordance with PCA 100 or in accordance with accepted engineering practice. Where the unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 18 inches (457 mm), the minimum nominal thickness of the wall shall be 6 inches (152 mm).

**R404.1.2.2.2 Concrete foundation stem walls supporting light-frame above-grade walls.** Concrete foundation stem walls that support light-frame above-grade walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section.

1. Stem walls not laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are not monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are not otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground and retain 48 inches (1219 mm) or less of unbalanced fill, measured from the top of the wall, shall be constructed in accordance with Section R404.1.2. Foundation stem walls that retain more than 48 inches (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill, measured from the top of the wall, shall be designed in accordance with Sections R404.1.3 and R404.4.
2. Stem walls laterally supported at top. Concrete stem walls that are monolithic with slabs-on-ground or are otherwise laterally supported by slabs-on-ground shall be constructed in accordance with Section R404.1.2. Where the unbalanced backfill retained by the stem wall is greater than 48 inches (1219 mm), the connection between the stem wall and the slab-on- ground, and the portion of the slab-on-ground providing lateral support for the wall shall be designed in accordance with PCA 100 or in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**TABLE R404.1.2(1)**
**MINIMUM HORIZONTAL REINFORCEMENT FOR CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS[a, b]**

| MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED HEIGHT OF BASEMENT WALL (feet) | LOCATION OF HORIZONTAL REINFORCEMENT |
|---|---|
| ≤ 8 | One No. 4 bar within 12 inches of the top of the wall story and one No. 4 bar near mid-height of the wall story |
| > 8 | One No. 4 bar within 12 inches of the top of the wall story and one No. 4 bar near third points in the wall story |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Horizontal reinforcement requirements are for reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi and concrete with a minimum concrete compressive strength 2,500 psi.

b. See Section R404.1.2.2 for minimum reinforcement required for foundation walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

**TABLE R404.1.2(2)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH NOMINAL FLAT CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS[b, c, d, e, g, h, i, j]**

| MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[f] (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth) | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW, SP 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60 |
| 8 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | 6 @ 39 | 6 @ 48 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 39 | 6 @ 48 | 6 @ 35 |
| | 7 | 6 @ 48 | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 25 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 39 | 6 @ 25 | 6 @ 18 |
| 9 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | 5 @ 37 | 6 @ 48 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 36 | 6 @ 44 | 6 @ 32 |
| | 7 | 6 @ 47 | 6 @ 30 | 6 @ 22 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 22 | 6 @ 16 |
| | 9 | 6 @ 27 | 6 @ 17 | DR |
| 10 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | 5 @ 35 | 6 @ 48 |
| | 6 | 6 @ 48 | 6 @ 41 | 6 @ 30 |
| | 7 | 6 @ 43 | 6 @ 28 | 6 @ 20 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 31 | 6 @ 20 | DR |
| | 9 | 6 @ 24 | 6 @ 15 | DR |
| | 10 | 6 @ 19 | DR | DR |

For SI:1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 $kPa^2/m$, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section R404.1.2.3.7.2.

c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R404.1.2.3.7.6 and Table R404.1.2(9).

d. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the basement wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

g. NR indicates no vertical wall reinforcement is required, except for 6-inch nominal walls formed with stay-in-place forming systems in which case vertical reinforcement shall be No. 4@48 inches on center.

h. See Section R404.1.2.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

i. See Table R611.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

j. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or where there is no code, in accordance with ACI 318.

**TABLE R404.1.2(3)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 8-INCH (203 mm) NOMINAL FLAT CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS[b, c, d, e, f, h, i]**

| MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[g] (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth) | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW, SP 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60 |
| 8 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | 6 @ 37 |
| | 7 | NR | 6 @ 36 | 6 @ 35 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 41 | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 26 |
| 9 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | 6 @ 35 |
| | 7 | NR | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 32 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 36 | 6 @ 32 | 6 @ 23 |
| | 9 | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 25 | 6 @ 18 |
| 10 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | 6 @ 35 |
| | 7 | NR | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 29 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 29 | 6 @ 21 |
| | 9 | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 22 | 6 @ 16 |
| | 10 | 6 @ 27 | 6 @ 17 | 6 @ 13 |

For SI:1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa$^2$/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.
b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi (420 MPa), concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section R404.1.2.3.7.2.
c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R404.1.2.3.7.6 and Table R404.1.2(9).
d. NR indicates no vertical reinforcement is required.
e. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the basement wall in inches.
f. Interpolation is not permitted.
g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.
h. See Section R404.1.2.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.
i. See Table R611.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

**TABLE R404.1.2(4)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 10-INCH NOMINAL FLAT CONCRETE BASEMENT WALLS[b, c, d, e, f, h, i]**

| MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[g] (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth) | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW, SP 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60 |
| 8 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 7 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 8 | 6 @ 48 | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 28 |
| 9 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 7 | NR | NR | 6 @ 31 |
| | 8 | NR | 6 @ 31 | 6 @ 28 |
| | 9 | 6 @ 37 | 6 @ 28 | 6 @ 24 |
| 10 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 7 | NR | NR | 6 @ 28 |
| | 8 | NR | 6 @ 28 | 6 @ 28 |
| | 9 | 6 @ 33 | 6 @ 28 | 6 @ 21 |
| | 10 | 6 @ 28 | 6 @ 23 | 6 @ 17 |

For SI:1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa$^2$/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section R404.1.2.3.7.2.

c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R404.1.2.3.7.6 and Table R404.1.2(9).

d. NR indicates no vertical reinforcement is required.

e. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the basement wall in inches.

f. Interpolation is not permitted.

g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

h. See Section R404.1.2.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

i. See Table R611.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

**TABLE R404.1.2(5)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL WALL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH WAFFLE-GRID BASEMENT WALLS[b, c, d, e, g, h, i]**

| MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[f] (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth) | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW, SP 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60 |
| 8 | 4 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 46 | 6 @ 39 |
| | 5 | 4 @ 45 | 5 @ 46 | 6 @ 47 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 45 | 6 @ 40 | DR |
| | 7 | 6 @ 44 | DR | DR |
| | 8 | 6 @ 32 | DR | DR |
| 9 | 4 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 46 | 4 @ 37 |
| | 5 | 4 @ 42 | 5 @ 43 | 6 @ 44 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 41 | 6 @ 37 | DR |
| | 7 | 6 @ 39 | DR | DR |
| | > 8 | DR[i] | DR | DR |
| 10 | 4 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 46 | 4 @ 35 |
| | 5 | 4 @ 40 | 5 @ 40 | 6 @ 41 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 38 | 6 @ 34 | DR |
| | 7 | 6 @ 36 | DR | DR |
| | > 8 | DR | DR | DR |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa$^2$/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section R404.1.2.3.7.2.

c. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (i.e., 12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R404.1.2.3.7.6 and Table R404.1.2(9).

d. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the basement wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

g. See Section R404.1.2.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

h. See Table R611.3 for thicknesses and dimensions of waffle-grid walls.

i. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or where there is no code, in accordance with ACI 318.

**TABLE R404.1.2(6)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 8-INCH WAFFLE-GRID BASEMENT WALLS[b, c, d, e, f, h, i, j]**

| MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[g] (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth) | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW, SP 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60 |
| 8 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | 5 @ 48 | 5 @ 46 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 48 | 5 @ 43 | 6 @ 45 |
| | 7 | 5 @ 46 | 6 @ 43 | 6 @ 31 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 48 | 6 @ 32 | 6 @ 23 |
| 9 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | 5 @ 47 | 5 @ 46 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 46 | 5 @ 39 | 6 @ 41 |
| | 7 | 5 @ 42 | 6 @ 38 | 6 @ 28 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 44 | 6 @ 28 | 6 @ 20 |
| | 9 | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 21 | DR |
| 10 | 4 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | 5 @ 46 | 5 @ 44 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 46 | 5 @ 37 | 6 @ 38 |
| | 7 | 5 @ 38 | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 25 |
| | 8 | 6 @ 39 | 6 @ 25 | DR |
| | 9 | 6 @ 30 | DR | DR |
| | 10 | 6 @ 24 | DR | DR |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 $kPa^2/m$, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section R404.1.2.3.7.2.

c. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 (420 MPa) and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (i.e., 12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R404.1.2.3.7.6 and Table R404.1.2(9).

d. NR indicates no vertical reinforcement is required.

e. Deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the height of the basement wall in inches.

f. Interpolation shall not be permitted.

g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

h. See Section R404.1.2.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

i. See Table R611.3 for thicknesses and dimensions of waffle-grid walls.

j. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or where there is no code, in accordance with ACI 318.

**TABLE R404.1.2(7)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH (152 mm) SCREEN-GRID BASEMENT WALLS[b, c, d, e, g, h, i,]**

| MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[f] (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth) | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW, SP 30 | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45 | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60 |
| 8 | 4 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 48 | 5 @ 43 |
| | 5 | 4 @ 48 | 5 @ 48 | 5 @ 37 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 48 | 6 @ 45 | 6 @ 32 |
| | 7 | 6 @ 48 | DR | DR |
| | 8 | 6 @ 36 | DR | DR |
| 9 | 4 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 41 |
| | 5 | 4 @ 48 | 5 @ 48 | 6 @ 48 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 45 | 6 @ 41 | DR |
| | 7 | 6 @ 43 | DR | DR |
| | > 8 | DR | DR | DR |
| 10 | 4 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 48 | 4 @ 39 |
| | 5 | 4 @ 44 | 5 @ 44 | 6 @ 46 |
| | 6 | 5 @ 42 | 6 @ 38 | DR |
| | 7 | 6 @ 40 | DR | DR |
| | > 8 | DR | DR | DR |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 kPa$^2$/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi (420 MPa), concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi and vertical reinforcement being located at the centerline of the wall. See Section R404.1.2.3.7.2.

c. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (i.e., 12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R404.1.2.3.7.6 and Table R404.1.2(9).

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the height of the basement wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

g. See Sections R404.1.2.2 for minimum reinforcement required for basement walls supporting above-grade concrete walls.

h. See Table R611.3 for thicknesses and dimensions of screen-grid walls.

i. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or where there is no code, in accordance with ACI 318.

**TABLE R404.1.2(8)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-, 8-, 10-INCH AND 12-INCH NOMINAL FLAT BASEMENT WALLS[b, c, d, e, f, h, i, k, n]**

| MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT[g] (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Soil classes[a] and design lateral soil (psf per foot of depth) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | GW, GP, SW, SP 30 | | | | GM, GC, SM, SM-SC and ML 45 | | | | SC, ML-CL and inorganic CL 60 | | | |
| | | Minimum nominal wall thickness (inches) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 |
| 5 | 4 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR |
| 6 | 4 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR[l] | NR | NR | 4 @ 35 | NR[l] | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | NR | NR | 5 @ 48 | NR | NR | NR | 5 @ 36 | NR | NR | NR |
| 7 | 4 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | 5 @ 47 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | NR | NR | NR | NR | 5 @ 42 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 43 | 5 @ 48 | NR[l] | NR |
| | 7 | 5 @ 46 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 42 | 5 @ 46 | NR[l] | NR | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 48 | NR | NR |
| 8 | 4 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR | NR | 4 @ 38 | NR[l] | NR | NR | 5 @ 43 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | 4 @ 37 | NR[l] | NR | NR | 5 @ 37 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 37 | 5 @ 43 | NR[l] | NR |
| | 7 | 5 @ 40 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 37 | 5 @ 41 | NR[l] | NR | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 43 | NR | NR |
| | 8 | 6 @ 43 | 5 @ 47 | NR[l] | NR | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 43 | NR | NR | 6 @ 27 | 6 @ 32 | 6 @ 44 | NR |
| 9 | 4 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR | NR | 4 @ 35 | NR[l] | NR | NR | 5 @ 40 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | 4 @ 34 | NR[l] | NR | NR | 6 @ 48 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 36 | 6 @ 39 | NR[l] | NR |
| | 7 | 5 @ 36 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 34 | 5 @ 37 | NR | NR | 6 @ 33 | 6 @ 38 | 5 @ 37 | NR[l] |
| | 8 | 6 @ 38 | 5 @ 41 | NR[l] | NR | 6 @ 33 | 6 @ 38 | 5 @ 37 | NR[l] | 6 @ 24 | 6 @ 29 | 6 @ 39 | 4 @ 48[m] |
| | 9 | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 46 | NR | NR | 6 @ 26 | 6 @ 30 | 6 @ 41 | NR | 6 @ 19 | 6 @ 23 | 6 @ 30 | 6 @ 39 |
| 10 | 4 | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR |
| | 5 | NR | NR | NR | NR | 4 @ 33 | NR[l] | NR | NR | 5 @ 38 | NR | NR | NR |
| | 6 | 5 @ 48 | NR[l] | NR | NR | 6 @ 45 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 34 | 5 @ 37 | NR | NR |
| | 7 | 6 @ 47 | NR | NR | NR | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 48 | NR | NR | 6 @ 30 | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 48 | NR[l] |
| | 8 | 6 @ 34 | 5 @ 38 | NR | NR | 6 @ 30 | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 47 | NR[l] | 6 @ 22 | 6 @ 26 | 6 @ 35 | 6 @ 45[m] |
| | 9 | 6 @ 34 | 6 @ 41 | 4 @ 48 | NR[l] | 6 @ 23 | 6 @ 27 | 6 @ 35 | 4 @ 48[m] | DR | 6 @ 22 | 6 @ 27 | 6 @ 34 |
| | 10 | 6 @ 28 | 6 @ 33 | 6 @ 45 | NR | DR[j] | 6 @ 23 | 6 @ 29 | 6 @ 38 | DR | 6 @ 22 | 6 @ 22 | 6 @ 28 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571 $kPa^2/m$, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Soil classes are in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System. Refer to Table R405.1.

b. Table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi.

c. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R404.1.2.3.7.6 and Table R404.1.2(9).

d. NR indicates no vertical wall reinforcement is required, except for 6-inch nominal walls formed with stay-in-place forming systems in which case vertical reinforcement shall be #4@48 inches on center.

e. Allowable deflection criterion is *L*/240, where *L* is the unsupported height of the basement wall in inches.

f. Interpolation is not permitted.

g. Where walls will retain 4 feet or more of unbalanced backfill, they shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling.

h. Vertical reinforcement shall be located to provide a cover of 1.25 inches measured from the inside face of the wall. The center of the steel shall not vary from the specified location by more than the greater of 10 percent of the wall thickness or $^3/_8$-inch.

i. Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the inside face of the wall shall not be less than $^3/_4$-inch. Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the outside face of the wall shall not be less than $1^1/_2$ inches for No. 5 bars and smaller, and not less than 2 inches for larger bars.

j. DR means design is required in accordance with the applicable building code, or where there is no code in accordance with ACI 318.

k. Concrete shall have a specified compressive strength, $f'_c$, of not less than 2,500 psi at 28 days, unless a higher strength is required by footnote l or m.

l. The minimum thickness is permitted to be reduced 2 inches, provided the minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, $f'_c$, is 4,000 psi.

m. A plain concrete wall with a minimum nominal thickness of 12 inches is permitted, provided minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, $f'_c$, is 3,500 psi.

n. See Table R611.3 for tolerance from nominal thickness permitted for flat walls.

**TABLE R404.1.2(9)**
**MINIMUM SPACING FOR ALTERNATE BAR SIZE AND/OR ALTERNATE GRADE OF STEEL[a, b, c]**

| BAR SPACING FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION R404.1.2.2 (inches) | BAR SIZE FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION R404.1.2.2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | #4 | | | | | #5 | | | | | #6 | | | | |
| | Alternate bar size and/or alternate grade of steel desired | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | |
| | #5 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #4 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #4 | #5 | #6 |
| | Maximum spacing for alternate bar size and/or alternate grade of steel (inches) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 12 | 18 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 5 | 11 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 2 | 4 | 5 |
| 9 | 14 | 20 | 6 | 9 | 13 | 6 | 13 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 6 |
| 10 | 16 | 22 | 7 | 10 | 15 | 6 | 14 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| 11 | 17 | 24 | 7 | 11 | 16 | 7 | 16 | 5 | 7 | 10 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| 12 | 19 | 26 | 8 | 12 | 18 | 8 | 17 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 5 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 8 |
| 13 | 20 | 29 | 9 | 13 | 19 | 8 | 18 | 6 | 9 | 12 | 6 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| 14 | 22 | 31 | 9 | 14 | 21 | 9 | 20 | 6 | 9 | 13 | 6 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 9 |
| 15 | 23 | 33 | 10 | 16 | 22 | 10 | 21 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 7 | 11 | 5 | 7 | 10 |
| 16 | 25 | 35 | 11 | 17 | 23 | 10 | 23 | 7 | 11 | 15 | 7 | 11 | 5 | 8 | 11 |
| 17 | 26 | 37 | 11 | 18 | 25 | 11 | 24 | 7 | 11 | 16 | 8 | 12 | 5 | 8 | 11 |
| 18 | 28 | 40 | 12 | 19 | 26 | 12 | 26 | 8 | 12 | 17 | 8 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 12 |
| 19 | 29 | 42 | 13 | 20 | 28 | 12 | 27 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 9 | 13 | 6 | 9 | 13 |
| 20 | 31 | 44 | 13 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 28 | 9 | 13 | 19 | 9 | 14 | 6 | 9 | 13 |
| 21 | 33 | 46 | 14 | 22 | 31 | 14 | 30 | 9 | 14 | 20 | 10 | 15 | 6 | 10 | 14 |
| 22 | 34 | 48 | 15 | 23 | 32 | 14 | 31 | 9 | 15 | 21 | 10 | 16 | 7 | 10 | 15 |
| 23 | 36 | 48 | 15 | 24 | 34 | 15 | 33 | 10 | 15 | 22 | 10 | 16 | 7 | 11 | 15 |
| 24 | 37 | 48 | 16 | 25 | 35 | 15 | 34 | 10 | 16 | 23 | 11 | 17 | 7 | 11 | 16 |
| 25 | 39 | 48 | 17 | 26 | 37 | 16 | 35 | 11 | 17 | 24 | 11 | 18 | 8 | 12 | 17 |
| 26 | 40 | 48 | 17 | 27 | 38 | 17 | 37 | 11 | 17 | 25 | 12 | 18 | 8 | 12 | 17 |
| 27 | 42 | 48 | 18 | 28 | 40 | 17 | 38 | 12 | 18 | 26 | 12 | 19 | 8 | 13 | 18 |
| 28 | 43 | 48 | 19 | 29 | 41 | 18 | 40 | 12 | 19 | 26 | 13 | 20 | 8 | 13 | 19 |
| 29 | 45 | 48 | 19 | 30 | 43 | 19 | 41 | 12 | 19 | 27 | 13 | 20 | 9 | 14 | 19 |
| 30 | 47 | 48 | 20 | 31 | 44 | 19 | 43 | 13 | 20 | 28 | 14 | 21 | 9 | 14 | 20 |
| 31 | 48 | 48 | 21 | 32 | 45 | 20 | 44 | 13 | 21 | 29 | 14 | 22 | 9 | 15 | 21 |
| 32 | 48 | 48 | 21 | 33 | 47 | 21 | 45 | 14 | 21 | 30 | 15 | 23 | 10 | 15 | 21 |
| 33 | 48 | 48 | 22 | 34 | 48 | 21 | 47 | 14 | 22 | 31 | 15 | 23 | 10 | 16 | 22 |
| 34 | 48 | 48 | 23 | 35 | 48 | 22 | 48 | 15 | 23 | 32 | 15 | 24 | 10 | 16 | 23 |
| 35 | 48 | 48 | 23 | 36 | 48 | 23 | 48 | 15 | 23 | 33 | 16 | 25 | 11 | 16 | 23 |
| 36 | 48 | 48 | 24 | 37 | 48 | 23 | 48 | 15 | 24 | 34 | 16 | 25 | 11 | 17 | 24 |
| 37 | 48 | 48 | 25 | 38 | 48 | 24 | 48 | 16 | 25 | 35 | 17 | 26 | 11 | 17 | 25 |
| 38 | 48 | 48 | 25 | 39 | 48 | 25 | 48 | 16 | 25 | 36 | 17 | 27 | 12 | 18 | 25 |
| 39 | 48 | 48 | 26 | 40 | 48 | 25 | 48 | 17 | 26 | 37 | 18 | 27 | 12 | 18 | 26 |
| 40 | 48 | 48 | 27 | 41 | 48 | 26 | 48 | 17 | 27 | 38 | 18 | 28 | 12 | 19 | 27 |
| 41 | 48 | 48 | 27 | 42 | 48 | 26 | 48 | 18 | 27 | 39 | 19 | 29 | 12 | 19 | 27 |
| 42 | 48 | 48 | 28 | 43 | 48 | 27 | 48 | 18 | 28 | 40 | 19 | 30 | 13 | 20 | 28 |
| 43 | 48 | 48 | 29 | 44 | 48 | 28 | 48 | 18 | 29 | 41 | 20 | 30 | 13 | 20 | 29 |
| 44 | 48 | 48 | 29 | 45 | 48 | 28 | 48 | 19 | 29 | 42 | 20 | 31 | 13 | 21 | 29 |
| 45 | 48 | 48 | 30 | 47 | 48 | 29 | 48 | 19 | 30 | 43 | 20 | 32 | 14 | 21 | 30 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R404.1.2(9)—continued**
**MINIMUM SPACING FOR ALTERNATE BAR SIZE AND/OR ALTERNATE GRADE OF STEEL[a, b, c]**

| BAR SPACING FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION R404.1.2.2 (inches) | BAR SIZE FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION R404.1.2.2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | #4 | | | | | #5 | | | | | #6 | | | | |
| | Alternate bar size and/or alternate grade of steel desired to be used | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | |
| | #5 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #4 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #4 | #5 | #6 |
| | Maximum spacing for alternate bar size and/or alternate grade of steel (inches) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 46 | 48 | 48 | 31 | 48 | 48 | 30 | 48 | 20 | 31 | 44 | 21 | 32 | 14 | 22 | 31 |
| 47 | 48 | 48 | 31 | 48 | 48 | 30 | 48 | 20 | 31 | 44 | 21 | 33 | 14 | 22 | 31 |
| 48 | 48 | 48 | 32 | 48 | 48 | 31 | 48 | 21 | 32 | 45 | 22 | 34 | 15 | 23 | 32 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. This table is for use with tables in Section R404.1.2.2 that specify the minimum bar size and maximum spacing of vertical wall reinforcement for foundation walls and above-grade walls. Reinforcement specified in tables in Sections R404.1.2.2 is based on Grade 60 steel reinforcement.

b. Bar spacing shall not exceed 48 inches on center and shall not be less than one-half the nominal wall thickness.

c. For Grade 50 steel bars (ASTM A 996, Type R), use spacing for Grade 40 bars or interpolate between Grades 40 and 60.

**R404.1.2.3 Concrete, materials for concrete, and forms.** Materials used in concrete, the concrete itself and forms shall conform to requirements of this section or ACI 318.

**R404.1.2.3.1 Compressive strength.** The minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, $f'_c$, shall comply with Section R402.2 and shall be not less than 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) at 28 days in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C and 3000 psi (20.5 MPa) in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$.

**R404.1.2.3.2 Concrete mixing and delivery.** Mixing and delivery of concrete shall comply with ASTM C 94 or ASTM C 685.

**R404.1.2.3.3 Maximum aggregate size.** The nominal maximum size of coarse aggregate shall not exceed one-fifth the narrowest distance between sides of forms, or three-fourths the clear spacing between reinforcing bars or between a bar and the side of the form.

**Exception:** When *approved*, these limitations shall not apply where removable forms are used and workability and methods of consolidation permit concrete to be placed without honeycombs or voids.

**R404.1.2.3.4 Proportioning and slump of concrete.** Proportions of materials for concrete shall be established to provide workability and consistency to permit concrete to be worked readily into forms and around reinforcement under conditions of placement to be employed, without segregation or excessive bleeding. Slump of concrete placed in removable forms shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm).

**Exception:** When *approved*, the slump is permitted to exceed 6 inches (152 mm) for concrete mixtures that are resistant to segregation, and are in accordance with the form manufacturer's recommendations.

Slump of concrete placed in stay-in-place forms shall exceed 6 inches (152 mm). Slump of concrete shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 143.

**R404.1.2.3.5 Consolidation of concrete.** Concrete shall be consolidated by suitable means during placement and shall be worked around embedded items and reinforcement and into corners of forms. Where stay-in-place forms are used, concrete shall be consolidated by internal vibration.

**Exception:** When *approved* for concrete to be placed in stay-in-place forms, self-consolidating concrete mixtures with slumps equal to or greater than 8 inches (203 mm) that are specifically designed for placement without internal vibration need not be internally vibrated.

**R404.1.2.3.6 Form materials and form ties.** Forms shall be made of wood, steel, aluminum, plastic, a composite of cement and foam insulation, a composite of cement and wood chips, or other *approved* material suitable for supporting and containing concrete. Forms shall provide sufficient strength to contain concrete during the concrete placement operation.

Form ties shall be steel, solid plastic, foam plastic, a composite of cement and wood chips, a composite of cement and foam plastic, or other suitable material capable of resisting the forces created by fluid pressure of fresh concrete.

**R404.1.2.3.6.1 Stay-in-place forms.** Stay-in-place concrete forms shall comply with this section.

1. Surface burning characteristics. The flame-spread index and smoke-developed index of forming material, other than foam plastic, left exposed on the interior shall comply with Section R302. The surface burning characteristics of foam plastic used in insulating concrete forms shall comply with Section R316.3.
2. Interior covering. Stay-in-place forms constructed of rigid foam plastic shall be pro-

tected on the interior of the building as required by Section R316. Where gypsum board is used to protect the foam plastic, it shall be installed with a mechanical fastening system. Use of adhesives in addition to mechanical fasteners is permitted.

3. Exterior wall covering. Stay-in-place forms constructed of rigid foam plastics shall be protected from sunlight and physical damage by the application of an *approved* exterior wall covering complying with this code. Exterior surfaces of other stay-in-place forming systems shall be protected in accordance with this code.
4. Termite hazards. In areas where hazard of termite damage is very heavy in accordance with Figure R301.2(6), foam plastic insulation shall be permitted below *grade* on foundation walls in accordance with one of the following conditions:
   - 4.1. Where in addition to the requirements in Section R318.1, an *approved* method of protecting the foam plastic and structure from subterranean termite damage is provided.
   - 4.2. The structural members of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs are entirely of noncombustible materials or pressure-preservative-treated wood.
   - 4.3. On the interior side of *basement* walls.

**R404.1.2.3.7 Reinforcement.**

**R404.1.2.3.7.1 Steel reinforcement.** Steel reinforcement shall comply with the requirements of ASTM A 615, A 706, or A 996. ASTM A 996 bars produced from rail steel shall be Type R. In buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C, the minimum yield strength of reinforcing steel shall be 40,000 psi (Grade 40) (276 MPa). In buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$, reinforcing steel shall comply with the requirements of ASTM A 706 for low-alloy steel with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi (Grade 60) (414 MPa).

**R404.1.2.3.7.2 Location of reinforcement in wall.** The center of vertical reinforcement in *basement* walls determined from Tables R404.1.2(2) through R404.1.2(7) shall be located at the centerline of the wall. Vertical reinforcement in *basement* walls determined from Table R404.1.2(8) shall be located to provide a maximum cover of 1.25 inches (32 mm) measured from the inside face of the wall. Regardless of the table used to determine vertical wall reinforcement, the center of the steel shall not vary from the specified location by more than the greater of 10 percent of the wall thickness and $^3/_8$-inch (10 mm). Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be located in foundation walls to provide the minimum cover required by Section R404.1.2.3.7.4.

**R404.1.2.3.7.3 Wall openings.** Vertical wall reinforcement required by Section R404.1.2.2 that is interrupted by wall openings shall have additional vertical reinforcement of the same size placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of each side of the opening.

**R404.1.2.3.7.4 Support and cover.** Reinforcement shall be secured in the proper location in the forms with tie wire or other bar support system to prevent displacement during the concrete placement operation. Steel reinforcement in concrete cast against the earth shall have a minimum cover of 3 inches (75 mm). Minimum cover for reinforcement in concrete cast in removable forms that will be exposed to the earth or weather shall be $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and 2 inches (50 mm) for No. 6 bars and larger. For concrete cast in removable forms that will not be exposed to the earth or weather, and for concrete cast in stay-in-place forms, minimum cover shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm). The minus tolerance for cover shall not exceed the smaller of one-third the required cover or $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).

**R404.1.2.3.7.5 Lap splices.** Vertical and horizontal wall reinforcement shall be the longest lengths practical. Where splices are necessary in reinforcement, the length of lap splice shall be in accordance with Table R611.5.4.(1) and Figure R611.5.4(1). The maximum gap between noncontact parallel bars at a lap splice shall not exceed the smaller of one-fifth the required lap length and 6 inches (152 mm). See Figure R611.5.4(1).

**R404.1.2.3.7.6 Alternate grade of reinforcement and spacing.** Where tables in Section R404.1.2.2 specify vertical wall reinforcement based on minimum bar size and maximum spacing, which are based on Grade 60 (414 MPa) steel reinforcement, different size bars and/or bars made from a different grade of steel are permitted provided an equivalent area of steel per linear foot of wall is provided. Use of Table R404.1.2(9) is permitted to determine the maximum bar spacing for different bar sizes than specified in the tables and/or bars made from a different grade of steel. Bars shall not be spaced less than one-half the wall thickness, or more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center.

**R404.1.2.3.7.7 Standard hooks.** Where reinforcement is required by this code to terminate with a standard hook, the hook shall comply with Section R611.5.4.5 and Figure R611.5.4(3).

**R404.1.2.3.7.8 Construction joint reinforcement.** Construction joints in foundation walls shall be made and located to not impair the strength of the wall. Construction joints in plain concrete walls, including walls required to have not less than No. 4 bars at 48 inches (1219 mm) on center by Sections R404.1.2.2 and R404.1.4.2, shall be located at points of lateral support, and a minimum of one No. 4 bar shall extend across the construction joint at a spacing not to exceed 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Construction joint reinforcement shall have a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) embedment on both sides of the joint. Construction joints in reinforced concrete walls shall be located in the middle third of the span between lateral supports, or located and constructed as required for joints in plain concrete walls.

**Exception:** Use of vertical wall reinforcement required by this code is permitted in lieu of construction joint reinforcement provided the spacing does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), or the combination of wall reinforcement and No.4 bars described above does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm).

**R404.1.2.3.8 Exterior wall coverings.** Requirements for installation of masonry veneer, stucco and other wall coverings on the exterior of concrete walls and other construction details not covered in this section shall comply with the requirements of this code.

**R404.1.2.4 Requirements for Seismic Design Category C.** Concrete foundation walls supporting above-grade concrete walls in townhouses assigned to Seismic Design Category C shall comply with ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100 (see Section R404.1.2).

**R404.1.3 Design required.** Concrete or masonry foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice when either of the following conditions exists:

1. Walls are subject to hydrostatic pressure from groundwater.
2. Walls supporting more than 48 inches (1219 mm) of unbalanced backfill that do not have permanent lateral support at the top or bottom.

**R404.1.4 Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$.**

**R404.1.4.1 Masonry foundation walls.** In addition to the requirements of Table R404.1.1(1) plain masonry foundation walls in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$, as established in Table R301.2(1), shall comply with the following.

1. Wall height shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm).
2. Unbalanced backfill height shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).
3. Minimum nominal thickness for plain masonry foundation walls shall be 8 inches (203 mm).
4. Masonry stem walls shall have a minimum vertical reinforcement of one No. 3 (No. 10) bar located a maximum of 4 feet (1219 mm) on center in grouted cells. Vertical reinforcement shall be tied to the horizontal reinforcement in the footings.

Foundation walls in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$, as established in Table R301.2(1), supporting more than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced backfill or exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm) in height shall be constructed in accordance with Table R404.1.1(2), R404.1.1(3) or R404.1.1(4). Masonry foundation walls shall have two No. 4 (No. 13) horizontal bars located in the upper 12 inches (305 mm) of the wall.

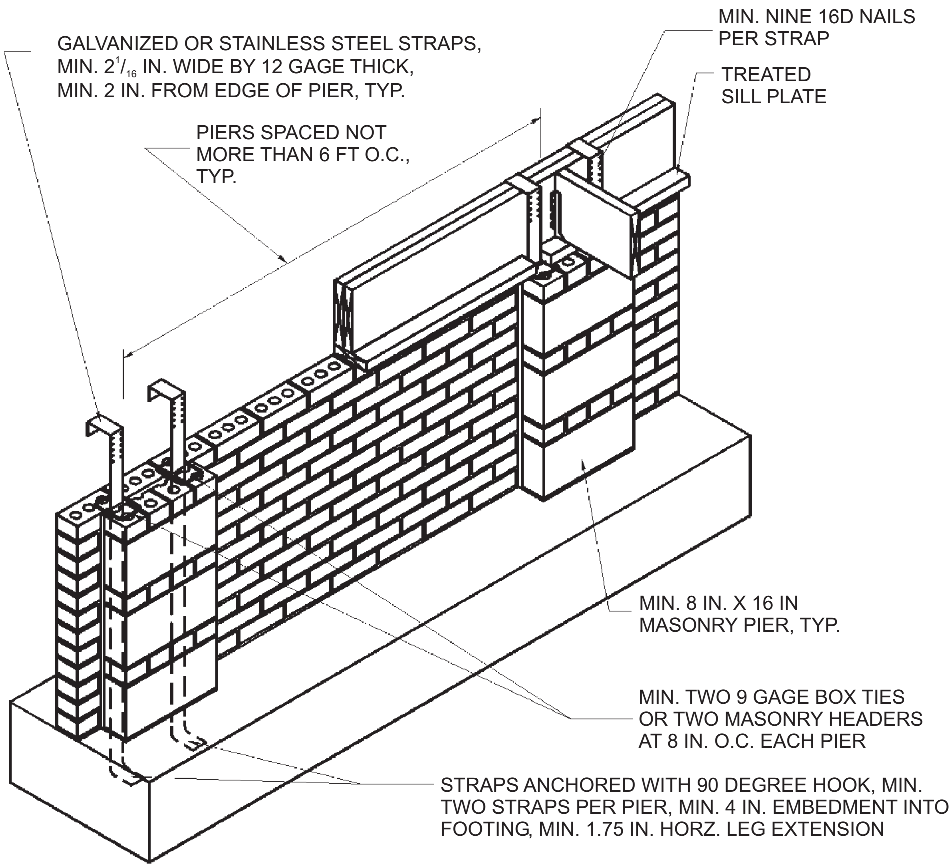
**R404.1.4.2 Concrete foundation walls.** In buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$, as established in Table R301.2(1), concrete foundation walls that support light-frame walls shall comply with this section, and concrete foundation walls that support above-grade concrete walls shall comply with ACI 318, ACI 332 or PCA 100 (see Section R404.1.2). In addition to the horizontal reinforcement required by Table R404.1.2(1), plain concrete walls supporting light-frame walls shall comply with the following.

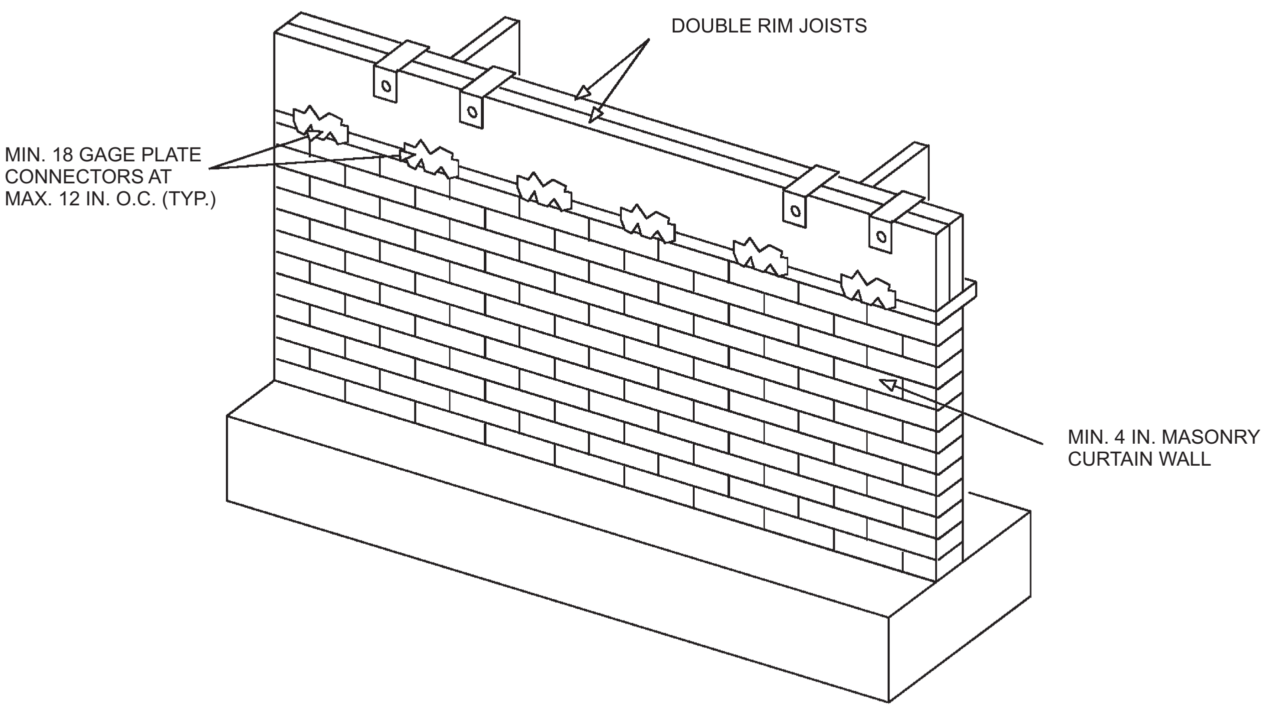
1. Wall height shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm).
2. Unbalanced backfill height shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).
3. Minimum thickness for plain concrete foundation walls shall be 7.5 inches (191 mm) except that 6 inches (152 mm) is permitted where the maximum wall height is 4 feet, 6 inches (1372 mm).

Foundation walls less than 7.5 inches (191 mm) in thickness, supporting more than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced backfill or exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm) in height shall be provided with horizontal reinforcement in accordance with Table R404.1.2(1), and vertical reinforcement in accordance with Table R404.1.2(2), R404.1.2(3), R404.1.2(4), R404.1.2(5), R404.1.2(6), R404.1.2(7) or R404.1.2(8). Where Tables R404.1.2(2) through R404.1.2(8) permit plain concrete walls, not less than No. 4 (No. 13) vertical bars at a spacing not exceeding 48 inches (1219 mm) shall be provided.

**R404.1.5 Foundation wall thickness based on walls supported.** The thickness of masonry or concrete foundation walls shall not be less than that required by Section R404.1.5.1 or R404.1.5.2, respectively.

**R404.1.5.1 Masonry wall thickness.** Masonry foundation walls shall not be less than the thickness of the wall supported, except that masonry foundation walls of at least 8-inch (203 mm) nominal thickness shall be permitted under brick veneered frame walls and under 10-inch-wide (254 mm) cavity walls where the total height of the wall supported, including gables, is not more than 20 feet (6096 mm), provided the requirements of Section R404.1.1 are met.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**FIGURE R404.1.5(1)**
**FOUNDATION WALL CLAY MASONRY CURTAIN WALL WITH CONCRETE MASONRY PIERS**

**TABLE R404.2.3**
**PLYWOOD GRADE AND THICKNESS FOR WOOD FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION**
**(30 pcf equivalent-fluid weight soil pressure)**

| HEIGHT OF FILL (inches) | STUD SPACING (inches) | FACE GRAIN ACROSS STUDS | | | FACE GRAIN PARALLEL TO STUDS | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Grade[a] | Minimum thickness (inches) | Span rating | Grade[a] | Minimum thickness (inches)[b, c] | Span rating |
| 24 | 12 | B | $^{15}/_{32}$ | 32/16 | A | $^{15}/_{32}$ | 32/16 |
| | | | | | B | $^{15}/_{32}$[c] | 32/16 |
| | 16 | B | $^{15}/_{32}$ | 32/16 | A | $^{15}/_{32}$[c] | 32/16 |
| | | | | | B | $^{19}/_{32}$[c] (4, 5 ply) | 40/20 |
| 36 | 12 | B | $^{15}/_{32}$ | 32/16 | A | $^{15}/_{32}$ | 32/16 |
| | | | | | B | $^{15}/_{32}$[c] (4, 5 ply) | 32/16 |
| | | | | | B | $^{19}/_{32}$ (4, 5 ply) | 40/20 |
| | 16 | B | $^{15}/_{32}$[c] | 32/16 | A | $^{19}/_{32}$ | 40/20 |
| | | | | | B | $^{23}/_{32}$ | 48/24 |
| 48 | 12 | B | $^{15}/_{32}$ | 32/16 | A | $^{15}/_{32}$[c] | 32/16 |
| | | | | | B | $^{19}/_{32}$[c] (4, 5 ply) | 40/20 |
| | 16 | B | $^{19}/_{32}$ | 40/20 | A | $^{19}/_{32}$[c] | 40/20 |
| | | | | | A | $^{23}/_{32}$ | 48/24 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 0.1572 kN/m$^3$.

a. Plywood shall be of the following minimum grades in accordance with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2:

1. DOC PS 1 Plywood grades marked:
   - 1.1. Structural I C-D (Exposure 1)
   - 1.2. C-D (Exposure 1)
2. DOC PS 2 Plywood grades marked:
   - 2.1. Structural I Sheathing (Exposure 1)
   - 2.2. Sheathing (Exposure 1)
3. Where a major portion of the wall is exposed above ground and a better appearance is desired, the following plywood grades marked exterior are suitable:
   - 3.1. Structural I A-C, Structural I B-C or Structural I C-C (Plugged) in accordance with DOC PS 1
   - 3.2. A-C Group 1, B-C Group 1, C-C (Plugged) Group 1 or MDO Group 1 in accordance with DOC PS 1
   - 3.3. Single Floor in accordance with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2

b. Minimum thickness $^{15}/_{32}$ inch, except crawl space sheathing may be $^{3}/_{8}$ inch for face grain across studs 16 inches on center and maximum 2-foot depth of unequal fill.

c. For this fill height, thickness and grade combination, panels that are continuous over less than three spans (across less than three stud spacings) require blocking 16 inches above the bottom plate. Offset adjacent blocks and fasten through studs with two 16d corrosion-resistant nails at each end.

**R404.1.5.2 Concrete wall thickness.** The thickness of concrete foundation walls shall be equal to or greater than the thickness of the wall in the *story* above. Concrete foundation walls with corbels, brackets or other projections built into the wall for support of masonry veneer or other purposes are not within the scope of the tables in this section.

Where a concrete foundation wall is reduced in thickness to provide a shelf for the support of masonry veneer, the reduced thickness shall be equal to or greater than the thickness of the wall in the *story* above. Vertical reinforcement for the foundation wall shall be based on Table R404.1.2(8) and located in the wall as required by Section R404.1.2.3.7.2 where that table is used. Vertical reinforcement shall be based on the thickness of the thinner portion of the wall.

**Exception:** Where the height of the reduced thickness portion measured to the underside of the floor assembly or sill plate above is less than or equal to 24 inches (610 mm) and the reduction in thickness does not exceed 4 inches (102 mm), the vertical reinforcement is permitted to be based on the thicker portion of the wall.

**R404.1.5.3 Pier and curtain wall foundations.** Use of pier and curtain wall foundations shall be permitted to support light-frame construction not more than two stories in height, provided the following requirements are met:

1. All load-bearing walls shall be placed on continuous concrete footings placed integrally with the exterior wall footings.
2. The minimum actual thickness of a load-bearing masonry wall shall be not less than 4 inches (102

mm) nominal or $3^3/_8$ inches (92 mm) actual thickness, and shall be bonded integrally with piers spaced in accordance with Section R606.9.

3. Piers shall be constructed in accordance with Section R606.6 and Section R606.6.1, and shall be bonded into the load-bearing masonry wall in accordance with Section R608.1.1 or Section R608.1.1.2.
4. The maximum height of a 4-inch (102 mm) load-bearing masonry foundation wall supporting wood-frame walls and floors shall not be more than 4 feet (1219 mm).
5. Anchorage shall be in accordance with Section R403.1.6, Figure R404.1.5(1), or as specified by engineered design accepted by the *building official*.
6. The unbalanced fill for 4-inch (102 mm) foundation walls shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for solid masonry or 12 inches (305 mm) for hollow masonry.
7. In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, prescriptive reinforcement shall be provided in the horizontal and vertical direction. Provide minimum horizontal joint reinforcement of two No.9 gage wires spaced not less than 6 inches (152 mm) or one $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) diameter wire at 10 inches (254 mm) on center vertically. Provide minimum vertical reinforcement of one No. 4 bar at 48 inches (1220 mm) on center horizontally grouted in place.

**R404.1.6 Height above finished grade.** Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall extend above the finished *grade* adjacent to the foundation at all points a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) where masonry veneer is used and a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) elsewhere.

**R404.1.7 Backfill placement.** Backfill shall not be placed against the wall until the wall has sufficient strength and has been anchored to the floor above, or has been sufficiently braced to prevent damage by the backfill.

**Exception:** Bracing is not required for walls supporting less than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced backfill.

**R404.1.8 Rubble stone masonry.** Rubble stone masonry foundation walls shall have a minimum thickness of 16 inches (406 mm), shall not support an unbalanced backfill exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm) in height, shall not support a soil pressure greater than 30 pounds per square foot per foot (4.71 kPa/m), and shall not be constructed in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$, $D_2$ or townhouses in Seismic Design Category C, as established in Figure R301.2(2).

**R404.2 Wood foundation walls.** Wood foundation walls shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of Sections R404.2.1 through R404.2.6 and with the details shown in Figures R403.1(2) and R403.1(3).

**R404.2.1 Identification.** All load-bearing lumber shall be identified by the grade *mark* of a lumber grading or inspection agency which has been *approved* by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade *mark*, a certificate of inspection issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted. Wood structural panels shall conform to DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2 and shall be identified by a grade *mark* or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved agency*.

**R404.2.2 Stud size.** The studs used in foundation walls shall be 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) members. When spaced 16 inches (406 mm) on center, a wood species with an $F_b$ value of not less than 1,250 pounds per square inch (8619 kPa) as listed in AF&PA/NDS shall be used. When spaced 12 inches (305 mm) on center, an $F_b$ of not less than 875 psi (6033 kPa) shall be required.

**R404.2.3 Height of backfill.** For wood foundations that are not designed and installed in accordance with AF&PA PWF, the height of backfill against a foundation wall shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm). When the height of fill is more than 12 inches (305 mm) above the interior *grade* of a crawl space or floor of a *basement*, the thickness of the plywood sheathing shall meet the requirements of Table R404.2.3.

**R404.2.4 Backfilling.** Wood foundation walls shall not be backfilled until the *basement* floor and first floor have been constructed or the walls have been braced. For crawl space construction, backfill or bracing shall be installed on the interior of the walls prior to placing backfill on the exterior.

**R404.2.5 Drainage and dampproofing.** Wood foundation basements shall be drained and dampproofed in accordance with Sections R405 and R406, respectively.

**R404.2.6 Fastening.** Wood structural panel foundation wall sheathing shall be attached to framing in accordance with Table R602.3(1) and Section R402.1.1.

**R404.3 Wood sill plates.** Wood sill plates shall be a minimum of 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) nominal lumber. Sill plate anchorage shall be in accordance with Sections R403.1.6 and R602.11.

**R404.4 Retaining walls.** Retaining walls that are not laterally supported at the top and that retain in excess of 24 inches (610 mm) of unbalanced fill shall be designed to ensure stability against overturning, sliding, excessive foundation pressure and water uplift. Retaining walls shall be designed for a safety factor of 1.5 against lateral sliding and overturning.

**404.5 Precast concrete foundation walls.**

**R404.5.1 Design.** Precast concrete foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The design and manufacture of precast concrete foundation wall panels shall comply with the materials requirements of Section R402.3 or ACI 318. The panel design drawings shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the *jurisdiction* in which the project is to be constructed in accordance with Section R106.1.

**R404.5.2 Precast concrete foundation design drawings.** Precast concrete foundation wall design drawings shall be submitted to the *building official* and *approved* prior to installation. Drawings shall include, at a minimum, the information specified below:

1. Design loading as applicable;
2. Footing design and material;
3. Concentrated loads and their points of application;
4. Soil bearing capacity;
5. Maximum allowable total uniform load;
6. Seismic design category; and
7. Basic wind speed.

**R404.5.3 Identification.** Precast concrete foundation wall panels shall be identified by a certificate of inspection *label* issued by an *approved* third party inspection agency.

## SECTION R405
## FOUNDATION DRAINAGE

**R405.1 Concrete or masonry foundations.** Drains shall be provided around all concrete or masonry foundations that retain earth and enclose habitable or usable spaces located below *grade*. Drainage tiles, gravel or crushed stone drains, perforated pipe or other *approved* systems or materials shall be installed at or below the area to be protected and shall discharge by gravity or mechanical means into an *approved* drainage system. Gravel or crushed stone drains shall extend at least 1 foot (305 mm) beyond the outside edge of the footing and 6 inches (152 mm) above the top of the footing and be covered with an *approved* filter membrane material. The top of open joints of drain tiles shall be protected with strips of building paper, and the drainage tiles or perforated pipe shall be placed on a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) of washed gravel or crushed rock at least one sieve size larger than the tile joint opening or perforation and covered with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) of the same material.

**Exception:** A drainage system is not required when the foundation is installed on well-drained ground or sand-gravel mixture soils according to the Unified Soil Classification System, Group I Soils, as detailed in Table R405.1.

**TABLE R405.1**
**PROPERTIES OF SOILS CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO THE UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM**

| SOIL GROUP | UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM SYMBOL | SOIL DESCRIPTION | DRAINAGE CHARACTERISTICS[a] | FROST HEAVE POTENTIAL | VOLUME CHANGE POTENTIAL EXPANSION[b] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Group I | GW | Well-graded gravels, gravel sand mixtures, little or no fines | Good | Low | Low |
| | GP | Poorly graded gravels or gravel sand mixtures, little or no fines | Good | Low | Low |
| | SW | Well-graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines | Good | Low | Low |
| | SP | Poorly graded sands or gravelly sands, little or no fines | Good | Low | Low |
| | GM | Silty gravels, gravel-sand-silt mixtures | Good | Medium | Low |
| | SM | Silty sand, sand-silt mixtures | Good | Medium | Low |
| Group II | GC | Clayey gravels, gravel-sand-clay mixtures | Medium | Medium | Low |
| | SC | Clayey sands, sand-clay mixture | Medium | Medium | Low |
| | ML | Inorganic silts and very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands or clayey silts with slight plasticity | Medium | High | Low |
| | CL | Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, silty clays, lean clays | Medium | Medium | Medium to Low |
| Group III | CH | Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays | Poor | Medium | High |
| | MH | Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils, elastic silts | Poor | High | High |
| Group IV | OL | Organic silts and organic silty clays of low plasticity | Poor | Medium | Medium |
| | OH | Organic clays of medium to high plasticity, organic silts | Unsatisfactory | Medium | High |
| | Pt | Peat and other highly organic soils | Unsatisfactory | Medium | High |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The percolation rate for good drainage is over 4 inches per hour, medium drainage is 2 inches to 4 inches per hour, and poor is less than 2 inches per hour.

b. Soils with a low potential expansion typically have a plasticity index (PI) of 0 to 15, soils with a medium potential expansion have a PI of 10 to 35 and soils with a high potential expansion have a PI greater than 20.

**R405.1.1 Precast concrete foundation.** Precast concrete walls that retain earth and enclose habitable or useable space located below-grade that rest on crushed stone footings shall have a perforated drainage pipe installed below the base of the wall on either the interior or exterior side of the wall, at least one foot (305 mm) beyond the edge of the wall. If the exterior drainage pipe is used, an *approved* filter membrane material shall cover the pipe. The drainage system shall discharge into an *approved* sewer system or to daylight.

**R405.2 Wood foundations.** Wood foundations enclosing habitable or usable spaces located below *grade* shall be adequately drained in accordance with Sections R405.2.1 through R405.2.3.

**R405.2.1 Base.** A porous layer of gravel, crushed stone or coarse sand shall be placed to a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) under the *basement* floor. Provision shall be made for automatic draining of this layer and the gravel or crushed stone wall footings.

**R405.2.2 Vapor retarder.** A 6-mil-thick (0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder shall be applied over the porous layer with the *basement* floor constructed over the polyethylene.

**R405.2.3 Drainage system.** In other than Group I soils, a sump shall be provided to drain the porous layer and footings. The sump shall be at least 24 inches (610 mm) in diameter or 20 inches square (0.0129 $m^2$), shall extend at least 24 inches (610 mm) below the bottom of the *basement* floor and shall be capable of positive gravity or mechanical drainage to remove any accumulated water. The drainage system shall discharge into an *approved* sewer system or to daylight.

## SECTION R406 FOUNDATION WATERPROOFING AND DAMPPROOFING

**R406.1 Concrete and masonry foundation dampproofing.** Except where required by Section R406.2 to be waterproofed, foundation walls that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below *grade* shall be dampproofed from the top of the footing to the finished *grade*. Masonry walls shall have not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) portland cement parging applied to the exterior of the wall. The parging shall be dampproofed in accordance with one of the following:

1. Bituminous coating.
2. Three pounds per square yard (1.63 kg/$m^2$) of acrylic modified cement.
3. One-eighth inch (3.2 mm) coat of surface-bonding cement complying with ASTM C 887.
4. Any material permitted for waterproofing in Section R406.2.
5. Other *approved* methods or materials.

**Exception:** Parging of unit masonry walls is not required where a material is *approved* for direct application to the masonry.

Concrete walls shall be dampproofed by applying any one of the above listed dampproofing materials or any one of the waterproofing materials listed in Section R406.2 to the exterior of the wall.

**R406.2 Concrete and masonry foundation waterproofing.** In areas where a high water table or other severe soil-water conditions are known to exist, exterior foundation walls that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below *grade* shall be waterproofed from the top of the footing to the finished *grade*. Walls shall be waterproofed in accordance with one of the following:

1. Two-ply hot-mopped felts.
2. Fifty five pound (25 kg) roll roofing.
3. Six-mil (0.15 mm) polyvinyl chloride.
4. Six-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene.
5. Forty-mil (1 mm) polymer-modified asphalt.
6. Sixty-mil (1.5 mm) flexible polymer cement.
7. One-eighth inch (3 mm) cement-based, fiber-reinforced, waterproof coating.
8. Sixty-mil (0.22 mm) solvent-free liquid-applied synthetic rubber.

**Exception:** Organic-solvent-based products such as hydrocarbons, chlorinated hydrocarbons, ketones and esters shall not be used for ICF walls with expanded polystyrene form material. Use of plastic roofing cements, acrylic coatings, latex coatings, mortars and pargings to seal ICF walls is permitted. Cold-setting asphalt or hot asphalt shall conform to type C of ASTM D 449. Hot asphalt shall be applied at a temperature of less than 200°F (93°C).

All joints in membrane waterproofing shall be lapped and sealed with an adhesive compatible with the membrane.

**R406.3 Dampproofing for wood foundations.** Wood foundations enclosing habitable or usable spaces located below *grade* shall be dampproofed in accordance with Sections R406.3.1 through R406.3.4.

**R406.3.1 Panel joint sealed.** Plywood panel joints in the foundation walls shall be sealed full length with a caulking compound capable of producing a moisture-proof seal under the conditions of temperature and moisture content at which it will be applied and used.

**R406.3.2 Below-grade moisture barrier.** A 6-mil-thick (0.15 mm) polyethylene film shall be applied over the below-grade portion of exterior foundation walls prior to backfilling. Joints in the polyethylene film shall be lapped 6 inches (152 mm) and sealed with adhesive. The top edge of the polyethylene film shall be bonded to the sheathing to form a seal. Film areas at *grade* level shall be protected from mechanical damage and exposure by a pressure preservatively treated lumber or plywood strip attached to the wall several inches above finish *grade* level and extending approximately 9 inches (229 mm) below *grade*. The joint between the strip and the wall shall be caulked full length prior to fastening the strip to the wall. Other coverings appropriate to the architectural treatment may also be used. The polyethylene film shall extend down to the bottom of the wood footing plate but shall not overlap or extend into the gravel or crushed stone footing.

**R406.3.3 Porous fill.** The space between the excavation and the foundation wall shall be backfilled with the same material used for footings, up to a height of 1 foot (305 mm) above the footing for well-drained sites, or one-half the total back-fill height for poorly drained sites. The porous fill shall be covered with strips of 30-pound (13.6 kg) asphalt paper or 6-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene to permit water seepage while avoiding infiltration of fine soils.

**R406.3.4 Backfill.** The remainder of the excavated area shall be backfilled with the same type of soil as was removed during the excavation.

**R406.4 Precast concrete foundation system dampproofing.** Except where required by Section R406.2 to be waterproofed, precast concrete foundation walls enclosing habitable or useable spaces located below *grade* shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section R406.1.

**R406.4.1 Panel joints sealed.** Precast concrete foundation panel joints shall be sealed full height with a sealant meeting ASTM C 920, Type S or M, *Grade* NS, Class 25, Use NT, M or A. Joint sealant shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION R407
## COLUMNS

**R407.1 Wood column protection.** Wood columns shall be protected against decay as set forth in Section R317.

**R407.2 Steel column protection.** All surfaces (inside and outside) of steel columns shall be given a shop coat of rust-inhibitive paint, except for corrosion-resistant steel and steel treated with coatings to provide corrosion resistance.

**R407.3 Structural requirements.** The columns shall be restrained to prevent lateral displacement at the bottom end. Wood columns shall not be less in nominal size than 4 inches by 4 inches (102 mm by 102 mm). Steel columns shall not be less than 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) Schedule 40 pipe manufactured in accordance with ASTM A 53 Grade B or *approved* equivalent.

**Exception:** In Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, columns no more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in height on a pier or footing are exempt from the bottom end lateral displacement requirement within under-floor areas enclosed by a continuous foundation.

## SECTION R408
## UNDER-FLOOR SPACE

**[W] R408.1 Ventilation.** The under-floor space between the bottom of the floor joists and the earth under any building (except space occupied by a *basement*) shall have ventilation openings through foundation walls or exterior walls. ((~~The minimum net area of ventilation openings shall not be less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m²) for each 150 square feet (14 m²) of under-floor space area, unless the ground surface is covered by a Class 1 vapor retarder material. When a Class 1 vapor retarder material is used, the minimum net area of ventilation openings shall not be less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m²) for each 1,500 square feet (140 m²) of under-floor space area. One such ventilating opening shall be within 3 feet (914 mm) of each corner of the building.~~))

**[W] R408.2 Openings for under-floor ventilation.** The minimum net area of ventilation openings shall not be less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m²) for each ((~~150~~)) 300 square feet (((~~14~~)) 28 m²) of under-floor area. One ventilation opening shall be within 3 feet (915 mm) of each corner of the building, except one side of the building shall be permitted to have no ventilation openings. Ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with any of the following materials provided that the least dimension of the covering shall not exceed $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm):

1. Perforated sheet metal plates not less than 0.070 inch (1.8 mm) thick.
2. Expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) thick.
3. Cast-iron grill or grating.
4. Extruded load-bearing brick vents.
5. Hardware cloth of 0.035 inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier.
6. Corrosion-resistant wire mesh, with the least dimension being $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) thick.

**Exception:** The total area of ventilation openings shall be permitted to be reduced to $^1/_{1,500}$ of the under-floor area where the ground surface is covered with an *approved* Class I vapor retarder material and the required openings are placed to provide cross ventilation of the space. The installation of operable louvers shall not be prohibited. If the installed ventilation is less than $^1/_{300}$, or if operable louvers are installed, a radon vent shall be installed to originate from a point between the ground cover and soil. The radon vent shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Appendix F.

**[W] R408.3 Unvented crawl space.** Ventilation openings in under-floor spaces specified in Sections R408.1 and R408.2 shall not be required where:

1. Exposed earth is covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder. Joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (152 mm) and shall be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) up the stem wall and shall be attached and sealed to the stem wall; and a radon system shall be installed that meets the requirements of Appendix F.

((~~2. One of the following is provided for the under-floor space:~~))

((~~2.1Continuously operated mechanical exhaust ventilation at a rate equal to 1 cubic foot per minute (0.47 L/s) for each 50 square feet (4.7m²) of crawlspace floor area, including an air pathway to the common area (such as a duct or transfer grille), and perimeter walls insulated in accordance with Section N1102.2.9;~~))

((~~2.2. *Conditioned air* supply sized to deliver at a rate equal to 1 cubic foot per minute (0.47 L/s) for each 50 square feet (4.7 m²) of under-floor area, including a return air pathway to the common area (such as a duct or transfer grille), and perimeter walls insulated in accordance with Section N1102.2.9;~~))

((~~2.3. Plenum in existing structures complying with Section M1601.5, if under-floor space is used as a plenum.~~))

2. Continuously operated mechanical exhaust ventilation is provided at a rate equal to 1 cubic foot per minute (0.47 L/s) for each 50 square feet (4.7 $m^2$) of crawl space floor area. Exhaust ventilation shall terminate to the exterior.

**Exception:** *Plenum* in existing structures complying with Section M1601.5 if under-floor space is used as a *plenum*.

**R408.4 Access.** Access shall be provided to all under-floor spaces. Access openings through the floor shall be a minimum of 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm). Openings through a perimeter wall shall be not less than 16 inches by 24 inches (407 mm by 610 mm). When any portion of the through-wall access is below *grade*, an areaway not less than 16 inches by 24 inches (407 mm by 610 mm) shall be provided. The bottom of the areaway shall be below the threshold of the access opening. Through wall access openings shall not be located under a door to the residence. See Section M1305.1.4 for access requirements where mechanical *equipment* is located under floors.

**R408.5 Removal of debris.** The under-floor *grade* shall be cleaned of all vegetation and organic material. All wood forms used for placing concrete shall be removed before a building is occupied or used for any purpose. All construction materials shall be removed before a building is occupied or used for any purpose.

**R408.6 Finished grade.** The finished *grade* of under-floor surface may be located at the bottom of the footings; however, where there is evidence that the groundwater table can rise to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the finished floor at the building perimeter or where there is evidence that the surface water does not readily drain from the building site, the *grade* in the under-floor space shall be as high as the outside finished *grade*, unless an *approved* drainage system is provided.

**R408.7 Flood resistance.** For buildings located in areas prone to flooding as established in Table R301.2(1):

1. Walls enclosing the under-floor space shall be provided with flood openings in accordance with Section R322.2.2.
2. The finished ground level of the under-floor space shall be equal to or higher than the outside finished ground level on at least one side.

**Exception:** Under-floor spaces that meet the requirements of FEMA/FIA TB 11-1.

# CHAPTER 5

# FLOORS

## SECTION R501 GENERAL

**R501.1 Application.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the floors for all buildings including the floors of *attic* spaces used to house mechanical or plumbing fixtures and *equipment*.

**R501.2 Requirements.** Floor construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads according to Section R301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting structural elements.

## SECTION R502 WOOD FLOOR FRAMING

**R502.1 Identification.** Load-bearing dimension lumber for joists, beams and girders shall be identified by a grade *mark* of a lumber grading or inspection agency that has been *approved* by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade *mark*, a certificate of inspection issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted.

**R502.1.1 Preservative-treated lumber.** Preservative treated dimension lumber shall also be identified as required by Section R319.1.

**R502.1.2 Blocking and subflooring.** Blocking shall be a minimum of utility grade lumber. Subflooring may be a minimum of utility grade lumber or No. 4 common grade boards.

**R502.1.3 End-jointed lumber.** *Approved* end-jointed lumber identified by a grade *mark* conforming to Section R502.1 may be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade.

**R502.1.4 Prefabricated wood I-joists.** Structural capacities and design provisions for prefabricated wood I-joists shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D 5055.

**R502.1.5 Structural glued laminated timbers.** Glued laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI/AITC A190.1 and ASTM D 3737.

**R502.1.6 Structural log members.** Stress grading of structural log members of nonrectangular shape, as typically used in log buildings, shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3957. Such structural log members shall be identified by the grade *mark* of an *approved* lumber grading or inspection agency. In lieu of a grade *mark* on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade issued by a lumber-grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be permitted to be accepted.

**R502.1.7 Exterior wood/plastic composite deck boards.** Wood/plastic composites used in exterior deck boards shall comply with the provisions of Section R317.4.

**R502.2 Design and construction.** Floors shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter, Figure R502.2 and Sections R317 and R318 or in accordance with AF&PA/NDS.

**R502.2.1 Framing at braced wall lines.** A load path for lateral forces shall be provided between floor framing and *braced wall panels* located above or below a floor, as specified in Section R602.10.6.

**R502.2.2 Decks.** Where supported by attachment to an exterior wall, decks shall be positively anchored to the primary structure and designed for both vertical and lateral loads as applicable. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by the use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal. Where positive connection to the primary building structure cannot be verified during inspection, decks shall be self-supporting. For decks with cantilevered framing members, connections to exterior walls or other framing members, shall be designed and constructed to resist uplift resulting from the full live load specified in Table R301.5 acting on the cantilevered portion of the deck.

**R502.2.2.1 Deck ledger connection to band joist.** For decks supporting a total design load of 50 pounds per square foot (2394 Pa) [40 pounds per square foot (1915 Pa) live load plus 10 pounds per square foot (479 Pa) dead load], the connection between a deck ledger of pressure- preservative-treated Southern Pine, incised pressure-preservative-treated Hem-Fir or *approved* decay-resistant species, and a 2-inch (51 mm) nominal lumber band joist bearing on a sill plate or wall plate shall be constructed with $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 m) lag screws or bolts with washers in accordance with Table R502.2.2.1. Lag screws, bolts and washers shall be hot-dipped galvanized or stainless steel.

**R502.2.2.1.1 Placement of lag screws or bolts in deck ledgers.** The lag screws or bolts shall be placed 2 inches (51 mm) in from the bottom or top of the deck ledgers and between 2 and 5 inches (51 and 127 mm) in from the ends. The lag screws or bolts shall be staggered from the top to the bottom along the horizontal run of the deck ledger.

**[W] R502.2.2.2 Alternate deck ledger connections.** Deck ledger connections not conforming to Table R502.2.2.1 shall be attached with *approved* fasteners having equivalent withdrawal capacity or be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. Girders supporting deck joists shall not be supported on deck ledgers or band joists. Deck ledgers shall not be supported on stone or masonry veneer.

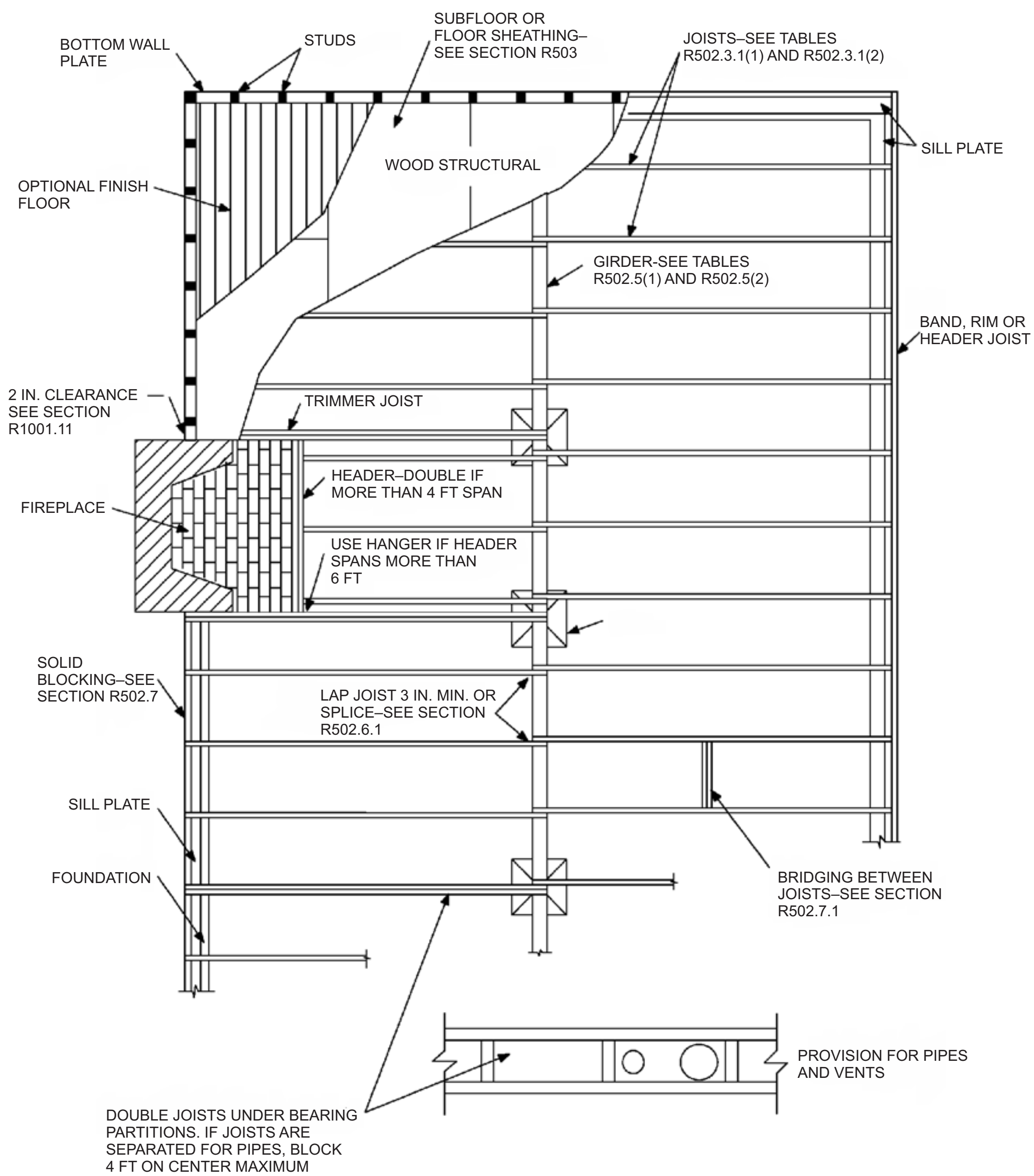
**[W] R502.2.2.3 Deck lateral load connection.** The lateral load connection required by Section R502.2.2 shall be permitted to be in accordance with Figure R502.2.2.3. Hold-down tension devices shall be installed in not less than two locations per deck, and each device shall have an allowable stress design capacity of not less than 1500 pounds (6672 N).

**Exception:** Decks not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above *grade* at any point may be unattached.

**R502.2.2.4 Exterior wood/plastic composite deck boards.** Wood/plastic composite deck boards shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**R502.3 Allowable joist spans.** Spans for floor joists shall be in accordance with Tables R502.3.1(1) and R502.3.1(2). For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AF&PA Span Tables for Joists and Rafters.

**R502.3.1 Sleeping areas and attic joists.** Table R502.3.1(1) shall be used to determine the maximum allowable span of floor joists that support sleeping areas and *attics* that are accessed by means of a fixed stairway in accordance with Section R311.7 provided that the design live load does not exceed 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kPa) and the design dead load does not exceed 20 pounds per square foot (0.96 kPa). The allowable span of ceiling joists that support *attics* used for limited storage or no storage shall be determined in accordance with Section R802.4.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

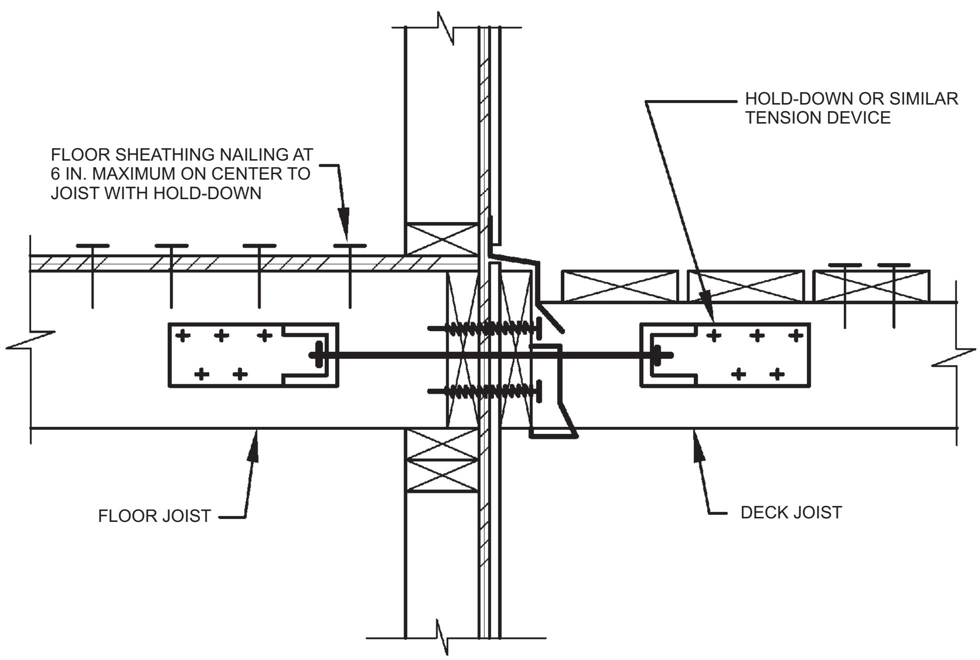
**FIGURE R502.2**
**FLOOR CONSTRUCTION**

**TABLE R502.2.2.1**
**FASTENER SPACING FOR A SOUTHERN PINE OR HEM-FIR DECK LEDGER AND A 2-INCH NOMINAL SOLID-SAWN SPRUCE-PINE-FIR BAND JOIST[c, f, g]**
**(Deck live load = 40 psf, deck dead load = 10 psf)**

| JOIST SPAN | 6′ and less | 6′1″ to 8′ | 8′1″ to 10′ | 10′1″ to 12′ | 12′1″ to 14′ | 14′1″ to 16′ | 16′1″ to 18′ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Connection details | On-center spacing of fasteners[d, e] | | | | | | |
| $^1/_2$ inch diameter lag screw with $^{15}/_{32}$ inch maximum sheathing[a] | 30 | 23 | 18 | 15 | 13 | 11 | 10 |
| $^1/_2$ inch diameter bolt with $^{15}/_{32}$ inch maximum sheathing | 36 | 36 | 34 | 29 | 24 | 21 | 19 |
| $^1/_2$ inch diameter bolt with $^{15}/_{32}$ inch maximum sheathing and $^1/_2$ inch stacked washers[b, h] | 36 | 36 | 29 | 24 | 21 | 18 | 16 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm. 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. The tip of the lag screw shall fully extend beyond the inside face of the band joist.
b. The maximum gap between the face of the ledger board and face of the wall sheathing shall be $^1/_2$″.
c. Ledgers shall be flashed to prevent water from contacting the house band joist.
d. Lag screws and bolts shall be staggered in accordance with Section R502.2.2.1.1.
e. Deck ledger shall be minimum 2 × 8 pressure-preservative-treated No.2 grade lumber, or other approved materials as established by standard engineering practice.
f. When solid-sawn pressure-preservative-treated deck ledgers are attached to a minimum 1 inch thick engineered wood product (structural composite lumber, laminated veneer lumber or wood structural panel band joist), the ledger attachment shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.
g. A minimum 1 × 9$^1/_2$ Douglas Fir laminated veneer lumber rimboard shall be permitted in lieu of the 2-inch nominal band joist.
h. Wood structural panel sheathing, gypsum board sheathing or foam sheathing not exceeding 1 inch in thickness shall be permitted. The maximum distance between the face of the ledger board and the face of the band joist shall be 1 inch.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R502.2.2.3**
**DECK ATTACHMENT FOR LATERAL LOADS**

**R502.3.2 Other floor joists.** Table R502.3.1(2) shall be used to determine the maximum allowable span of floor joists that support all other areas of the building, other than sleeping rooms and *attics*, provided that the design live load does not exceed 40 pounds per square foot (1.92 kPa) and the design dead load does not exceed 20 pounds per square foot (0.96 kPa).

**R502.3.3 Floor cantilevers.** Floor cantilever spans shall not exceed the nominal depth of the wood floor joist. Floor cantilevers constructed in accordance with Table R502.3.3(1) shall be permitted when supporting a light-frame bearing wall and roof only. Floor cantilevers supporting an exterior balcony are permitted to be constructed in accordance with Table R502.3.3(2).

**R502.4 Joists under bearing partitions.** Joists under parallel bearing partitions shall be of adequate size to support the load. Double joists, sized to adequately support the load, that are separated to permit the installation of piping or vents shall be full depth solid blocked with lumber not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. Bearing partitions perpendicular to joists shall not be offset from supporting girders, walls or partitions more than the joist depth unless such joists are of sufficient size to carry the additional load.

**R502.5 Allowable girder spans.** The allowable spans of girders fabricated of dimension lumber shall not exceed the values set forth in Tables R502.5(1) and R502.5(2).

**R502.6 Bearing.** The ends of each joist, beam or girder shall have not less than 1.5 inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry or concrete except where supported on a 1-inch-by-4-inch (25.4 mm by 102 mm) ribbon strip and nailed to the adjacent stud or by the use of *approved* joist hangers.

**R502.6.1 Floor systems.** Joists framing from opposite sides over a bearing support shall lap a minimum of 3 inches (76 mm) and shall be nailed together with a minimum three 10d face nails. A wood or metal splice with strength equal to or greater than that provided by the nailed lap is permitted.

**R502.6.2 Joist framing.** Joists framing into the side of a wood girder shall be supported by *approved* framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than nominal 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

**R502.7 Lateral restraint at supports.** Joists shall be supported laterally at the ends by full-depth solid blocking not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness; or by attachment to a full-depth header, band or rim joist, or to an adjoining stud or shall be otherwise provided with lateral support to prevent rotation.

**Exceptions:**

1. Trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists shall be supported laterally as required by the manufacturer's recommendations.
2. In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, lateral restraint shall also be provided at each intermediate support.

**R502.7.1 Bridging.** Joists exceeding a nominal 2 inches by 12 inches (51 mm by 305 mm) shall be supported laterally by solid blocking, diagonal bridging (wood or metal), or a continuous 1-inch-by-3-inch (25.4 mm by 76 mm) strip nailed across the bottom of joists perpendicular to joists at intervals not exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm).

**Exception:** Trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists shall be supported laterally as required by the manufacturer's recommendations.

**R502.8 Drilling and notching.** Structural floor members shall not be cut, bored or notched in excess of the limitations specified in this section. See Figure R502.8.

**R502.8.1 Sawn lumber.** Notches in solid lumber joists, rafters and beams shall not exceed one-sixth of the depth of the member, shall not be longer than one-third of the depth of the member and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span. Notches at the ends of the member shall not exceed one-fourth the depth of the member. The tension side of members 4 inches (102 mm) or greater in nominal thickness shall not be notched except at the ends of the members. The diameter of holes bored or cut into members shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member. Holes shall not be closer than 2 inches (51 mm) to the top or bottom of the member, or to any other hole located in the member. Where the member is also notched, the hole shall not be closer than 2 inches (51 mm) to the notch.

**R502.8.2 Engineered wood products.** Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glue-laminated members or I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a *registered design professional*.

**R502.9 Fastening.** Floor framing shall be nailed in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Where posts and beam or girder construction is used to support floor framing, positive connections shall be provided to ensure against uplift and lateral displacement.

**R502.10 Framing of openings.** Openings in floor framing shall be framed with a header and trimmer joists. When the header joist span does not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm), the header joist may be a single member the same size as the floor joist. Single trimmer joists may be used to carry a single header joist that is located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the trimmer joist bearing. When the header joist span exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm), the trimmer joists and the header joist shall be doubled and of sufficient cross section to support the floor joists framing into the header. *Approved* hangers shall be used for the header joist to trimmer joist connections when the header joist span exceeds 6 feet (1829 mm). Tail joists over 12 feet (3658 mm) long shall be supported at the header by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

**TABLE R502.3.1(1)**
**FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Residential sleeping areas, live load = 30 psf, L/Δ = 360)[a]**

| JOIST SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND *GRADE* | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2×6 | 2×8 | 2×10 | 2×12 | 2×6 | 2×8 | 2×10 | 2×12 |
| | | | Maximum floor joist spans | | | | | | | |
| | | | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 12-6 | 16-6 | 21-0 | 25-7 | 12-6 | 16-6 | 21-0 | 25-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 20-3 | 24-8 | 12-0 | 15-7 | 19-0 | 22-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-10 | 23-0 | 11-6 | 14-7 | 17-9 | 20-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 | 17-5 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-10 | 24-2 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-10 | 24-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 11-7 | 15-3 | 19-5 | 23-7 | 11-7 | 15-2 | 18-6 | 21-6 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 11-0 | 14-6 | 18-6 | 22-6 | 11-0 | 14-4 | 17-6 | 20-4 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 | 17-5 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-8 | 25-1 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-8 | 25-1 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 20-3 | 24-8 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 20-3 | 24-8 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-10 | 24-2 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 18-7 | 21-9 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 10-5 | 13-3 | 15-8 | 18-8 | 9-4 | 11-11 | 14-0 | 16-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 11-7 | 15-3 | 19-5 | 23-7 | 11-7 | 15-3 | 19-5 | 23-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 11-3 | 14-11 | 19-0 | 23-0 | 11-3 | 14-7 | 17-9 | 20-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 11-3 | 14-11 | 19-0 | 23-0 | 11-3 | 14-7 | 17-9 | 20-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 | 17-5 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 11-4 | 15-0 | 19-1 | 23-3 | 11-4 | 15-0 | 19-1 | 23-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-11 | 14-5 | 18-5 | 21-4 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 16-5 | 19-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 10-9 | 14-1 | 17-2 | 19-11 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-5 | 17-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-0 | 15-1 | 7-6 | 9-6 | 11-8 | 13-6 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-0 | 21-11 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-0 | 21-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 20-9 | 10-4 | 13-1 | 16-0 | 18-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 10-0 | 13-2 | 16-10 | 19-8 | 9-10 | 12-5 | 15-2 | 17-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-0 | 15-1 | 7-6 | 9-6 | 11-8 | 13-6 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-11 | 14-5 | 18-5 | 22-5 | 10-11 | 14-5 | 17-11 | 21-4 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-0 | 21-1 | 10-5 | 13-6 | 16-1 | 18-10 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 9-0 | 11-6 | 13-7 | 16-2 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-2 | 14-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 21-6 | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 21-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 10-3 | 13-6 | 17-2 | 19-11 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-5 | 17-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 10-3 | 13-6 | 17-2 | 19-11 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-5 | 17-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-0 | 15-1 | 7-6 | 9-6 | 11-8 | 13-6 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 10-8 | 14-1 | 18-0 | 21-10 | 10-8 | 14-1 | 18-0 | 21-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-4 | 13-7 | 16-9 | 19-6 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 | 17-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 10-1 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-3 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 10-1 | 13-4 | 17-0 | 20-8 | 10-1 | 13-4 | 17-0 | 20-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-10 | 13-0 | 16-4 | 19-0 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 9-5 | 12-5 | 15-6 | 17-1 | 8-11 | 11-4 | 13-10 | 16-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 21-6 | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 21-6 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-4 | 13-7 | 17-4 | 21-1 | 10-4 | 13-7 | 16-4 | 19-6 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 10-1 | 13-4 | 16-5 | 19-3 | 9-6 | 12-4 | 14-8 | 17-2 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-5 | 14-9 | 7-4 | 9-5 | 11-1 | 13-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-10 | 13-0 | 16-7 | 20-2 | 9-10 | 13-0 | 16-7 | 19-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 9-8 | 12-9 | 15-8 | 18-3 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 9-8 | 12-9 | 15-8 | 18-3 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-11 | 13-1 | 16-8 | 20-3 | 9-11 | 13-1 | 16-2 | 18-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 9-7 | 12-4 | 15-0 | 17-5 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 | 6-2 | 7-9 | 9-6 | 11-0 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-4 | 12-4 | 15-9 | 19-2 | 9-4 | 12-4 | 15-9 | 18-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-2 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-0 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-1 | 15-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-9 | 11-4 | 13-10 | 16-1 | 8-0 | 10-2 | 12-5 | 14-4 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 | 6-2 | 7-9 | 9-6 | 11-0 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 9-9 | 12-10 | 16-5 | 19-11 | 9-9 | 12-10 | 16-5 | 19-11 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 9-7 | 12-7 | 16-1 | 19-6 | 9-7 | 12-4 | 14-7 | 17-5 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-4 | 12-4 | 14-8 | 17-2 | 8-6 | 11-0 | 13-1 | 15-5 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-4 | 9-5 | 11-1 | 13-2 | 6-7 | 8-5 | 9-11 | 11-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-2 | 12-1 | 15-5 | 18-9 | 9-2 | 12-1 | 15-0 | 17-5 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-11 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-11 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 | 6-2 | 7-9 | 9-6 | 11-0 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**Note:** Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

a. Dead load limits for townhouses in Seismic Design Category C and all structures in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ shall be determined in accordance with Section R301.2.2.2.1.

## TABLE R502.3.1(2)
## FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
## (Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/Δ = 360)[b]

| JOIST SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND *GRADE* | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2×6 | 2×8 | 2×10 | 2×12 | 2×6 | 2×8 | 2×10 | 2×12 |
| | | | Maximum floor joist spans | | | | | | | |
| | | | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) | (ft - in.) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 11-4 | 15-0 | 19-1 | 23-3 | 11-4 | 15-0 | 19-1 | 23-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-11 | 14-5 | 18-5 | 22-0 | 10-11 | 14-2 | 17-4 | 20-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 17-9 | 20-7 | 10-6 | 13-3 | 16-3 | 18-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 | 7-11 | 10-0 | 12-3 | 14-3 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-0 | 21-11 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-0 | 21-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 21-6 | 10-6 | 13-10 | 16-11 | 19-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 10-0 | 13-2 | 16-10 | 20-4 | 10-0 | 13-1 | 16-0 | 18-6 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 | 7-11 | 10-0 | 12-3 | 14-3 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-11 | 14-5 | 18-5 | 22-5 | 10-11 | 14-5 | 18-5 | 22-5 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-0 | 21-9 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 16-11 | 19-10 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 9-4 | 11-11 | 14-0 | 16-8 | 8-6 | 10-10 | 12-10 | 15-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 21-6 | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 21-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 10-3 | 13-6 | 17-3 | 20-7 | 10-3 | 13-3 | 16-3 | 18-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 10-3 | 13-6 | 17-3 | 20-7 | 10-3 | 13-3 | 16-3 | 18-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 | 7-11 | 10-0 | 12-3 | 14-3 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 10-4 | 13-7 | 17-4 | 21-1 | 10-4 | 13-7 | 17-4 | 21-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 9-11 | 13-1 | 16-5 | 19-1 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 | 17-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-9 | 12-7 | 15-5 | 17-10 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-6 | 9-6 | 11-8 | 13-6 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-9 | 12-10 | 16-5 | 19-11 | 9-9 | 12-10 | 16-5 | 19-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-6 | 12-7 | 16-0 | 18-7 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 9-1 | 12-0 | 15-2 | 17-7 | 8-11 | 11-4 | 13-10 | 16-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-6 | 9-6 | 11-8 | 13-6 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 10-2 | 13-4 | 17-0 | 20-9 | 10-2 | 13-4 | 17-0 | 20-9 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 9-11 | 13-1 | 16-9 | 20-4 | 9-11 | 13-1 | 16-4 | 19-6 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-9 | 12-10 | 16-1 | 18-10 | 9-6 | 12-4 | 14-8 | 17-2 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-2 | 14-6 | 7-4 | 9-5 | 11-1 | 13-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-6 | 12-7 | 16-0 | 19-6 | 9-6 | 12-7 | 16-0 | 19-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 9-4 | 12-3 | 15-5 | 17-10 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 9-4 | 12-3 | 15-5 | 17-10 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-6 | 9-6 | 11-8 | 13-6 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-8 | 12-10 | 16-4 | 19-10 | 9-8 | 12-10 | 16-4 | 19-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 9-4 | 12-4 | 15-0 | 17-5 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 | 15-11 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-8 | 11-3 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-2 | 12-1 | 15-5 | 18-9 | 9-2 | 12-1 | 15-5 | 18-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-0 | 11-10 | 14-8 | 17-0 | 8-8 | 10-11 | 13-4 | 15-6 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-7 | 11-3 | 13-10 | 16-1 | 8-2 | 10-4 | 12-8 | 14-8 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-8 | 11-3 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 9-6 | 12-7 | 16-0 | 19-6 | 9-6 | 12-7 | 16-0 | 19-6 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 9-4 | 12-4 | 15-9 | 19-2 | 9-4 | 12-4 | 14-11 | 17-9 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-2 | 12-1 | 14-8 | 17-2 | 8-8 | 11-3 | 13-5 | 15-8 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-4 | 9-5 | 11-1 | 13-2 | 6-9 | 8-7 | 10-1 | 12-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-0 | 11-10 | 15-1 | 18-4 | 9-0 | 11-10 | 15-1 | 17-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | # | 8-9 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-9 | 11-6 | 14-1 | 16-3 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-7 | 12-4 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-8 | 11-3 |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-0 | 11-11 | 15-2 | 18-5 | 9-0 | 11-11 | 14-9 | 17-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 | 7-11 | 10-0 | 12-3 | 14-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 | 7-5 | 9-5 | 11-6 | 13-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-2 | 7-9 | 9-6 | 11-0 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-8 | 10-1 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-6 | 11-3 | 14-4 | 17-5 | 8-6 | 11-3 | 14-4 | 16-10[a] |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-4 | 10-9 | 13-1 | 15-2 | 7-9 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 13-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-11 | 10-2 | 12-5 | 14-4 | 7-4 | 9-3 | 11-4 | 13-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-2 | 7-9 | 9-6 | 11-0 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-8 | 10-1 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-10 | 11-8 | 14-11 | 18-1 | 8-10 | 11-8 | 14-11 | 18-1 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-8 | 11-5 | 14-7 | 17-5 | 8-8 | 11-3 | 13-4 | 15-11 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-6 | 11-0 | 13-1 | 15-5 | 7-9 | 10-0 | 12-0 | 14-0 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-7 | 8-5 | 9-11 | 11-10 | 6-0 | 7-8 | 9-1 | 10-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-4 | 11-0 | 14-0 | 17-0 | 8-4 | 11-0 | 13-8 | 15-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 | 7-5 | 9-5 | 11-6 | 13-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 | 7-5 | 9-5 | 11-6 | 13-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-2 | 7-9 | 9-6 | 11-0 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-8 | 10-1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**Note:** Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

a. End bearing length shall be increased to 2 inches.

b. Dead load limits for townhouses in Seismic Design Category C and all structures in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$, and $D_2$ shall be determined in accordance with Section R301.2.2.2.1.

**TABLE R502.3.3(1)**
**CANTILEVER SPANS FOR FLOOR JOISTS SUPPORTING LIGHT-FRAME EXTERIOR BEARING WALL AND ROOF ONLY[a, b, c, f, g, h]**
**(Floor Live Load ≤ 40 psf, Roof Live Load ≤ 20 psf)**

| Member & Spacing | Maximum Cantilever Span (Uplift Force at Backspan Support in Lbs.)[d, e] | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Ground Snow Load | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | ≤ 20 psf | | | 30 psf | | | 50 psf | | | 70 psf | | |
| | Roof Width | | | Roof Width | | | Roof Width | | | Roof Width | | |
| | 24 ft | 32 ft | 40 ft | 24 ft | 32 ft | 40 ft | 24 ft | 32 ft | 40 ft | 24 ft | 32 ft | 40 ft |
| 2 × 8 @ 12″ | 20″ (177) | 15″ (227) | — | 18″ (209) | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2 × 10 @ 16″ | 29″ (228) | 21″ (297) | 16″ (364) | 26″ (271) | 18″ (354) | — | 20″ (375) | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2 × 10 @ 12″ | 36″ (166) | 26″ (219) | 20″ (270) | 34″ (198) | 22″ (263) | 16″ (324) | 26″ (277) | — | — | 19″ (356) | — | — |
| 2 × 12 @ 16″ | — | 32″ (287) | 25″ (356) | 36″ (263) | 29″ (345) | 21″ (428) | 29″ (367) | 20″ (484) | — | 23″ (471) | — | — |
| 2 × 12 @ 12″ | — | 42″ (209) | 31″ (263) | — | 37″ (253) | 27″ (317) | 36″ (271) | 27″ (358) | 17″ (447) | 31″ (348) | 19″ (462) | — |
| 2 × 12 @ 8″ | — | 48″ (136) | 45″ (169) | — | 48″ (164) | 38″ (206) | — | 40″ (233) | 26″ (294) | 36″ (230) | 29″ (304) | 18″ (379) |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Tabulated values are for clear-span roof supported solely by exterior bearing walls.
b. Spans are based on No. 2 Grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, southern pine, and spruce-pine-fir for repetitive (3 or more) members.
c. Ratio of backspan to cantilever span shall be at least 3:1.
d. Connections capable of resisting the indicated uplift force shall be provided at the backspan support.
e. Uplift force is for a backspan to cantilever span ratio of 3:1. Tabulated uplift values are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by a factor equal to 3 divided by the actual backspan ratio provided (3/backspan ratio).
f. See Section R301.2.2.2.5, Item 1, for additional limitations on cantilevered floor joists for detached one- and two-family dwellings in Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$, or $D_2$ and townhouses in Seismic Design Category C, $D_0$, $D_1$, or $D_2$.
g. A full-depth rim joist shall be provided at the unsupported end of the cantilever joists. Solid blocking shall be provided at the supported end.
h. Linear interpolation shall be permitted for building widths and ground snow loads other than shown.

**TABLE R502.3.3(2)**
**CANTILEVER SPANS FOR FLOOR JOISTS SUPPORTING EXTERIOR BALCONY[a, b, e, f]**

| Member Size | Spacing | Maximum Cantilever Span (Uplift Force at Backspan Support in lb)[c, d] | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Ground Snow Load | | |
| | | ≤ 30 psf | 50 psf | 70 psf |
| 2 × 8 | 12″ | 42″ (139) | 39″ (156) | 34″ (165) |
| 2 × 8 | 16″ | 36″ (151) | 34″ (171) | 29″ (180) |
| 2 × 10 | 12″ | 61″ (164) | 57″ (189) | 49″ (201) |
| 2 × 10 | 16″ | 53″ (180) | 49″ (208) | 42″ (220) |
| 2 × 10 | 24″ | 43″ (212) | 40″ (241) | 34″ (255) |
| 2 × 12 | 16″ | 72″ (228) | 67″ (260) | 57″ (268) |
| 2 × 12 | 24″ | 58″ (279) | 54″ (319) | 47″ (330) |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Spans are based on No. 2 Grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, southern pine, and spruce-pine-fir for repetitive (3 or more) members.
b. Ratio of backspan to cantilever span shall be at least 2:1.
c. Connections capable of resisting the indicated uplift force shall be provided at the backspan support.
d. Uplift force is for a backspan to cantilever span ratio of 2:1. Tabulated uplift values are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by a factor equal to 2 divided by the actual backspan ratio provided (2/backspan ratio).
e. A full-depth rim joist shall be provided at the unsupported end of the cantilever joists. Solid blocking shall be provided at the supported end.
f. Linear interpolation shall be permitted for ground snow loads other than shown.

**TABLE R502.5(1)**
**GIRDER SPANS[a] AND HEADER SPANS[a] FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS**
**(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, southern pine and spruce-pine-fir[b] and required number of jack studs)**

| GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING | SIZE | GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)[e] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 30 | | | | | | 50 | | | | | | 70 | | | | | |
| | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 20 | | 28 | | 36 | | 20 | | 28 | | 36 | | 20 | | 28 | | 36 | |
| | | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] |
| Roof and ceiling | 2-2×4 | 3-6 | 1 | 3-2 | 1 | 2-10 | 1 | 3-2 | 1 | 2-9 | 1 | 2-6 | 1 | 2-10 | 1 | 2-6 | 1 | 2-3 | 1 |
| | 2-2×6 | 5-5 | 1 | 4-8 | 1 | 4-2 | 1 | 4-8 | 1 | 4-1 | 1 | 3-8 | 2 | 4-2 | 1 | 3-8 | 2 | 3-3 | 2 |
| | 2-2×8 | 6-10 | 1 | 5-11 | 2 | 5-4 | 2 | 5-11 | 2 | 5-2 | 2 | 4-7 | 2 | 5-4 | 2 | 4-7 | 2 | 4-1 | 2 |
| | 2-2×10 | 8-5 | 2 | 7-3 | 2 | 6-6 | 2 | 7-3 | 2 | 6-3 | 2 | 5-7 | 2 | 6-6 | 2 | 5-7 | 2 | 5-0 | 2 |
| | 2-2×12 | 9-9 | 2 | 8-5 | 2 | 7-6 | 2 | 8-5 | 2 | 7-3 | 2 | 6-6 | 2 | 7-6 | 2 | 6-6 | 2 | 5-10 | 3 |
| | 3-2×8 | 8-4 | 1 | 7-5 | 1 | 6-8 | 1 | 7-5 | 1 | 6-5 | 2 | 5-9 | 2 | 6-8 | 1 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-2 | 2 |
| | 3-2×10 | 10-6 | 1 | 9-1 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 9-1 | 2 | 7-10 | 2 | 7-0 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 7-0 | 2 | 6-4 | 2 |
| | 3-2×12 | 12-2 | 2 | 10-7 | 2 | 9-5 | 2 | 10-7 | 2 | 9-2 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 9-5 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 7-4 | 2 |
| | 4-2×8 | 9-2 | 1 | 8-4 | 1 | 7-8 | 1 | 8-4 | 1 | 7-5 | 1 | 6-8 | 1 | 7-8 | 1 | 6-8 | 1 | 5-11 | 2 |
| | 4-2×10 | 11-8 | 1 | 10-6 | 1 | 9-5 | 2 | 10-6 | 1 | 9-1 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 9-5 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 7-3 | 2 |
| | 4-2×12 | 14-1 | 1 | 12-2 | 2 | 10-11 | 2 | 12-2 | 2 | 10-7 | 2 | 9-5 | 2 | 10-11 | 2 | 9-5 | 2 | 8-5 | 2 |
| Roof, ceiling and one center-bearing floor | 2-2×4 | 3-1 | 1 | 2-9 | 1 | 2-5 | 1 | 2-9 | 1 | 2-5 | 1 | 2-2 | 1 | 2-7 | 1 | 2-3 | 1 | 2-0 | 1 |
| | 2-2×6 | 4-6 | 1 | 4-0 | 1 | 3-7 | 2 | 4-1 | 1 | 3-7 | 2 | 3-3 | 2 | 3-9 | 2 | 3-3 | 2 | 2-11 | 2 |
| | 2-2×8 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-0 | 2 | 4-6 | 2 | 5-2 | 2 | 4-6 | 2 | 4-1 | 2 | 4-9 | 2 | 4-2 | 2 | 3-9 | 2 |
| | 2-2×10 | 7-0 | 2 | 6-2 | 2 | 5-6 | 2 | 6-4 | 2 | 5-6 | 2 | 5-0 | 2 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 | 4-7 | 3 |
| | 2-2×12 | 8-1 | 2 | 7-1 | 2 | 6-5 | 2 | 7-4 | 2 | 6-5 | 2 | 5-9 | 3 | 6-8 | 2 | 5-10 | 3 | 5-3 | 3 |
| | 3-2×8 | 7-2 | 1 | 6-3 | 2 | 5-8 | 2 | 6-5 | 2 | 5-8 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 | 5-11 | 2 | 5-2 | 2 | 4-8 | 2 |
| | 3-2×10 | 8-9 | 2 | 7-8 | 2 | 6-11 | 2 | 7-11 | 2 | 6-11 | 2 | 6-3 | 2 | 7-3 | 2 | 6-4 | 2 | 5-8 | 2 |
| | 3-2×12 | 10-2 | 2 | 8-11 | 2 | 8-0 | 2 | 9-2 | 2 | 8-0 | 2 | 7-3 | 2 | 8-5 | 2 | 7-4 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 |
| | 4-2×8 | 8-1 | 1 | 7-3 | 1 | 6-7 | 1 | 7-5 | 1 | 6-6 | 1 | 5-11 | 2 | 6-10 | 1 | 6-0 | 2 | 5-5 | 2 |
| | 4-2×10 | 10-1 | 1 | 8-10 | 2 | 8-0 | 2 | 9-1 | 2 | 8-0 | 2 | 7-2 | 2 | 8-4 | 2 | 7-4 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 |
| | 4-2×12 | 11-9 | 2 | 10-3 | 2 | 9-3 | 2 | 10-7 | 2 | 9-3 | 2 | 8-4 | 2 | 9-8 | 2 | 8-6 | 2 | 7-7 | 2 |
| Roof, ceiling and one clear span floor | 2-2×4 | 2-8 | 1 | 2-4 | 1 | 2-1 | 1 | 2-7 | 1 | 2-3 | 1 | 2-0 | 1 | 2-5 | 1 | 2-1 | 1 | 1-10 | 1 |
| | 2-2×6 | 3-11 | 1 | 3-5 | 2 | 3-0 | 2 | 3-10 | 2 | 3-4 | 2 | 3-0 | 2 | 3-6 | 2 | 3-1 | 2 | 2-9 | 2 |
| | 2-2×8 | 5-0 | 2 | 4-4 | 2 | 3-10 | 2 | 4-10 | 2 | 4-2 | 2 | 3-9 | 2 | 4-6 | 2 | 3-11 | 2 | 3-6 | 2 |
| | 2-2×10 | 6-1 | 2 | 5-3 | 2 | 4-8 | 2 | 5-11 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 | 4-7 | 3 | 5-6 | 2 | 4-9 | 2 | 4-3 | 3 |
| | 2-2×12 | 7-1 | 2 | 6-1 | 3 | 5-5 | 3 | 6-10 | 2 | 5-11 | 3 | 5-4 | 3 | 6-4 | 2 | 5-6 | 3 | 5-0 | 3 |
| | 3-2×8 | 6-3 | 2 | 5-5 | 2 | 4-10 | 2 | 6-1 | 2 | 5-3 | 2 | 4-8 | 2 | 5-7 | 2 | 4-11 | 2 | 4-5 | 2 |
| | 3-2×10 | 7-7 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 | 5-11 | 2 | 7-5 | 2 | 6-5 | 2 | 5-9 | 2 | 6-10 | 2 | 6-0 | 2 | 5-4 | 2 |
| | 3-2×12 | 8-10 | 2 | 7-8 | 2 | 6-10 | 2 | 8-7 | 2 | 7-5 | 2 | 6-8 | 2 | 7-11 | 2 | 6-11 | 2 | 6-3 | 2 |
| | 4-2×8 | 7-2 | 1 | 6-3 | 2 | 5-7 | 2 | 7-0 | 1 | 6-1 | 2 | 5-5 | 2 | 6-6 | 1 | 5-8 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 |
| | 4-2×10 | 8-9 | 2 | 7-7 | 2 | 6-10 | 2 | 8-7 | 2 | 7-5 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 | 7-11 | 2 | 6-11 | 2 | 6-2 | 2 |
| | 4-2×12 | 10-2 | 2 | 8-10 | 2 | 7-11 | 2 | 9-11 | 2 | 8-7 | 2 | 7-8 | 2 | 9-2 | 2 | 8-0 | 2 | 7-2 | 2 |
| Roof, ceiling and two center-bearing floors | 2-2×4 | 2-7 | 1 | 2-3 | 1 | 2-0 | 1 | 2-6 | 1 | 2-2 | 1 | 1-11 | 1 | 2-4 | 1 | 2-0 | 1 | 1-9 | 1 |
| | 2-2×6 | 3-9 | 2 | 3-3 | 2 | 2-11 | 2 | 3-8 | 2 | 3-2 | 2 | 2-10 | 2 | 3-5 | 2 | 3-0 | 2 | 2-8 | 2 |
| | 2-2×8 | 4-9 | 2 | 4-2 | 2 | 3-9 | 2 | 4-7 | 2 | 4-0 | 2 | 3-8 | 2 | 4-4 | 2 | 3-9 | 2 | 3-5 | 2 |
| | 2-2×10 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 | 4-7 | 3 | 5-8 | 2 | 4-11 | 2 | 4-5 | 3 | 5-3 | 2 | 4-7 | 3 | 4-2 | 3 |
| | 2-2×12 | 6-8 | 2 | 5-10 | 3 | 5-3 | 3 | 6-6 | 2 | 5-9 | 3 | 5-2 | 3 | 6-1 | 3 | 5-4 | 3 | 4-10 | 3 |
| | 3-2×8 | 5-11 | 2 | 5-2 | 2 | 4-8 | 2 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 | 4-7 | 2 | 5-5 | 2 | 4-9 | 2 | 4-3 | 2 |
| | 3-2×10 | 7-3 | 2 | 6-4 | 2 | 5-8 | 2 | 7-1 | 2 | 6-2 | 2 | 5-7 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-3 | 2 |
| | 3-2×12 | 8-5 | 2 | 7-4 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 7-2 | 2 | 6-5 | 3 | 7-8 | 2 | 6-9 | 2 | 6-1 | 3 |
| | 4-2×8 | 6-10 | 1 | 6-0 | 2 | 5-5 | 2 | 6-8 | 1 | 5-10 | 2 | 5-3 | 2 | 6-3 | 2 | 5-6 | 2 | 4-11 | 2 |
| | 4-2×10 | 8-4 | 2 | 7-4 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 | 8-2 | 2 | 7-2 | 2 | 6-5 | 2 | 7-7 | 2 | 6-8 | 2 | 6-0 | 2 |
| | 4-2×12 | 9-8 | 2 | 8-6 | 2 | 7-8 | 2 | 9-5 | 2 | 8-3 | 2 | 7-5 | 2 | 8-10 | 2 | 7-9 | 2 | 7-0 | 2 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R502.5(1)—continued**
**GIRDER SPANS[a] AND HEADER SPANS[a] FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS**
**(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, southern pine and spruce-pine-fir[b] and required number of jack studs)**

| GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING | SIZE | GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)[e] 30, Building width[c] (feet) 20 Span | 30, 20 NJ[d] | 30, 28 Span | 30, 28 NJ[d] | 30, 36 Span | 30, 36 NJ[d] | 50, 20 Span | 50, 20 NJ[d] | 50, 28 Span | 50, 28 NJ[d] | 50, 36 Span | 50, 36 NJ[d] | 70, 20 Span | 70, 20 NJ[d] | 70, 28 Span | 70, 28 NJ[d] | 70, 36 Span | 70, 36 NJ[d] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Roof, ceiling, and two clear span floors | 2-2×4 | 2-1 | 1 | 1-8 | 1 | 1-6 | 2 | 2-0 | 1 | 1-8 | 1 | 1-5 | 2 | 2-0 | 1 | 1-8 | 1 | 1-5 | 2 |
| | 2-2×6 | 3-1 | 2 | 2-8 | 2 | 2-4 | 2 | 3-0 | 2 | 2-7 | 2 | 2-3 | 2 | 2-11 | 2 | 2-7 | 2 | 2-3 | 2 |
| | 2-2×8 | 3-10 | 2 | 3-4 | 2 | 3-0 | 3 | 3-10 | 2 | 3-4 | 2 | 2-11 | 3 | 3-9 | 2 | 3-3 | 2 | 2-11 | 3 |
| | 2-2×10 | 4-9 | 2 | 4-1 | 3 | 3-8 | 3 | 4-8 | 2 | 4-0 | 3 | 3-7 | 3 | 4-7 | 3 | 4-0 | 3 | 3-6 | 3 |
| | 2-2×12 | 5-6 | 3 | 4-9 | 3 | 4-3 | 3 | 5-5 | 3 | 4-8 | 3 | 4-2 | 3 | 5-4 | 3 | 4-7 | 3 | 4-1 | 4 |
| | 3-2×8 | 4-10 | 2 | 4-2 | 2 | 3-9 | 2 | 4-9 | 2 | 4-1 | 2 | 3-8 | 2 | 4-8 | 2 | 4-1 | 2 | 3-8 | 2 |
| | 3-2×10 | 5-11 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 | 4-7 | 3 | 5-10 | 2 | 5-0 | 2 | 4-6 | 3 | 5-9 | 2 | 4-11 | 2 | 4-5 | 3 |
| | 3-2×12 | 6-10 | 2 | 5-11 | 3 | 5-4 | 3 | 6-9 | 2 | 5-10 | 3 | 5-3 | 3 | 6-8 | 2 | 5-9 | 3 | 5-2 | 3 |
| | 4-2×8 | 5-7 | 2 | 4-10 | 2 | 4-4 | 2 | 5-6 | 2 | 4-9 | 2 | 4-3 | 2 | 5-5 | 2 | 4-8 | 2 | 4-2 | 2 |
| | 4-2×10 | 6-10 | 2 | 5-11 | 2 | 5-3 | 2 | 6-9 | 2 | 5-10 | 2 | 5-2 | 2 | 6-7 | 2 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-1 | 2 |
| | 4-2×12 | 7-11 | 2 | 6-10 | 2 | 6-2 | 3 | 7-9 | 2 | 6-9 | 2 | 6-0 | 3 | 7-8 | 2 | 6-8 | 2 | 5-11 | 3 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.

b. Tabulated values assume #2 grade lumber.

c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.

d. NJ - Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.

e. Use 30 psf ground snow load for cases in which ground snow load is less than 30 psf and the roof live load is equal to or less than 20 psf.

**TABLE R502.5(2)**
**GIRDER SPANS[a] AND HEADER SPANS[a] FOR INTERIOR BEARING WALLS**
**(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, southern pine and spruce-pine-fir[b] and required number of jack studs)**

| HEADERS AND GIRDERS SUPPORTING | SIZE | BUILDING WIDTH[c] (feet) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 20 | | 28 | | 36 | |
| | | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] | Span | NJ[d] |
| One floor only | 2-2×4 | 3-1 | 1 | 2-8 | 1 | 2-5 | 1 |
| | 2-2×6 | 4-6 | 1 | 3-11 | 1 | 3-6 | 1 |
| | 2-2×8 | 5-9 | 1 | 5-0 | 2 | 4-5 | 2 |
| | 2-2×10 | 7-0 | 2 | 6-1 | 2 | 5-5 | 2 |
| | 2-2×12 | 8-1 | 2 | 7-0 | 2 | 6-3 | 2 |
| | 3-2×8 | 7-2 | 1 | 6-3 | 1 | 5-7 | 2 |
| | 3-2×10 | 8-9 | 1 | 7-7 | 2 | 6-9 | 2 |
| | 3-2×12 | 10-2 | 2 | 8-10 | 2 | 7-10 | 2 |
| | 4-2×8 | 9-0 | 1 | 7-8 | 1 | 6-9 | 1 |
| | 4-2×10 | 10-1 | 1 | 8-9 | 1 | 7-10 | 2 |
| | 4-2×12 | 11-9 | 1 | 10-2 | 2 | 9-1 | 2 |
| Two floors | 2-2×4 | 2-2 | 1 | 1-10 | 1 | 1-7 | 1 |
| | 2-2×6 | 3-2 | 2 | 2-9 | 2 | 2-5 | 2 |
| | 2-2×8 | 4-1 | 2 | 3-6 | 2 | 3-2 | 2 |
| | 2-2×10 | 4-11 | 2 | 4-3 | 2 | 3-10 | 3 |
| | 2-2×12 | 5-9 | 2 | 5-0 | 3 | 4-5 | 3 |
| | 3-2×8 | 5-1 | 2 | 4-5 | 2 | 3-11 | 2 |
| | 3-2×10 | 6-2 | 2 | 5-4 | 2 | 4-10 | 2 |
| | 3-2×12 | 7-2 | 2 | 6-3 | 2 | 5-7 | 3 |
| | 4-2×8 | 6-1 | 1 | 5-3 | 2 | 4-8 | 2 |
| | 4-2×10 | 7-2 | 2 | 6-2 | 2 | 5-6 | 2 |
| | 4-2×12 | 8-4 | 2 | 7-2 | 2 | 6-5 | 2 |

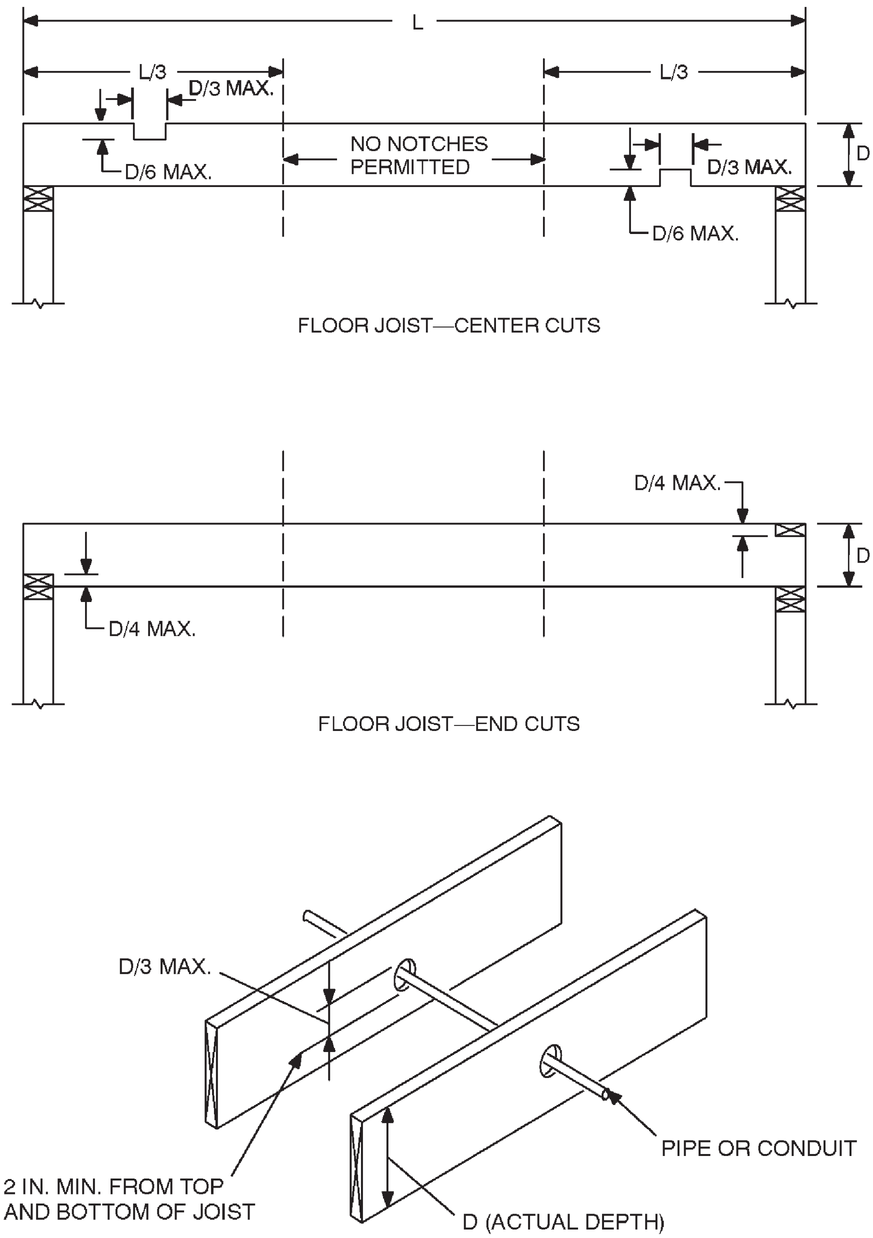
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.

b. Tabulated values assume #2 grade lumber.

c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.

d. NJ - Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R502.8**
**CUTTING, NOTCHING AND DRILLING**

**R502.11 Wood trusses.**

**R502.11.1 Design.** Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with *approved* engineering practice. The design and manufacture of metal plate connected wood trusses shall comply with ANSI/TPI 1. The truss design drawings shall be prepared by a registered professional where required by the statutes of the *jurisdiction* in which the project is to be constructed in accordance with Section R106.1.

**R502.11.2 Bracing.** Trusses shall be braced to prevent rotation and provide lateral stability in accordance with the requirements specified in the *construction documents* for the building and on the individual truss design drawings. In the absence of specific bracing requirements, trusses shall be braced in accordance with the Building Component Safety Information (BCSI 1-03) Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses.

**R502.11.3 Alterations to trusses.** Truss members and components shall not be cut, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the approval of a registered *design professional*. *Alterations* resulting in the addition of load (e.g., HVAC *equipment*, water heater, etc.), that exceed the design load for the truss, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting the additional loading.

**R502.11.4 Truss design drawings.** Truss design drawings, prepared in compliance with Section R502.11.1, shall be submitted to the *building official* and *approved* prior to installation. Truss design drawings shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss design drawings shall include, at a minimum, the information specified below:

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing.
2. Location of all joints.
3. Required bearing widths.
4. Design loads as applicable:
   4.1. Top chord live load;
   4.2. Top chord dead load;
   4.3. Bottom chord live load;
   4.4. Bottom chord dead load;
   4.5. Concentrated loads and their points of application; and
   4.6. Controlling wind and earthquake loads.
5. Adjustments to lumber and joint connector design values for conditions of use.
6. Each reaction force and direction.
7. Joint connector type and description, e.g., size, thickness or gauge, and the dimensioned location of each joint connector except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface.
8. Lumber size, species and grade for each member.
9. Connection requirements for:
   9.1. Truss-to-girder-truss;
   9.2. Truss ply-to-ply; and
   9.3. Field splices.
10. Calculated deflection ratio and/or maximum description for live and total load.
11. Maximum axial compression forces in the truss members to enable the building designer to design the size, connections and anchorage of the permanent continuous lateral bracing. Forces shall be shown on the truss drawing or on supplemental documents.
12. Required permanent truss member bracing location.

**R502.12 Draftstopping required.** Draftstopping shall be provided in accordance with Section R302.12.

**R502.13 Fireblocking required.** Fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with Section R302.11.

## SECTION R503 FLOOR SHEATHING

**R503.1 Lumber sheathing.** Maximum allowable spans for lumber used as floor sheathing shall conform to Tables R503.1, R503.2.1.1(1) and R503.2.1.1(2).

**R503.1.1 End joints.** End joints in lumber used as subflooring shall occur over supports unless end-matched lumber is used, in which case each piece shall bear on at least two joists. Subflooring may be omitted when joist spacing does not exceed 16 inches (406 mm) and a 1-inch (25.4 mm) nominal tongue-and-groove wood strip flooring is applied perpendicular to the joists.

**TABLE R503.1**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS OF LUMBER FLOOR SHEATHING**

| JOIST OR BEAM SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM NET THICKNESS | |
|---|---|---|
| | Perpendicular to joist | Diagonal to joist |
| 24 | $^{11}/_{16}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ |
| 16 | $^{5}/_{8}$ | $^{5}/_{8}$ |
| 48[a] | $1^{1}/_{2}$ T & G | N/A |
| 54[b] | | |
| 60[c] | | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. For this support spacing, lumber sheathing shall have a minimum $F_b$ of 675 and minimum E of 1,100,000 (see AF&PA/NDS).

b. For this support spacing, lumber sheathing shall have a minimum $F_b$ of 765 and minimum E of 1,400,000 (see AF&PA/NDS).

c. For this support spacing, lumber sheathing shall have a minimum $F_b$ of 855 and minimum E of 1,700,000 (see AF&PA/NDS).

**R503.2 Wood structural panel sheathing.**

**R503.2.1 Identification and grade.** Wood structural panel sheathing used for structural purposes shall conform to DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or, when manufactured in Canada, CSA O437 or CSA O325. All panels shall be identified by a grade *mark* of certificate or inspection issued by an *approved agency.*

**R503.2.1.1 Subfloor and combined subfloor underlayment.** Where used as subflooring or combination subfloor underlayment, wood structural panels shall be of one of the grades specified in Table R503.2.1.1(1). When sanded plywood is used as combination subfloor underlayment, the grade shall be as specified in Table R503.2.1.1(2).

**TABLE R503.2.1.1(1)**
**ALLOWABLE SPANS AND LOADS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS FOR ROOF AND SUBFLOOR SHEATHING AND COMBINATION SUBFLOOR UNDERLAYMENT[a, b, c]**

| SPAN RATING | MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch) | ALLOWABLE LIVE LOAD (psf)[h, l] | | MAXIMUM SPAN (inches) | | LOAD (pounds per square foot, at maximum span) | | MAXIMUM SPAN (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | SPAN @ 16″ o.c. | SPAN @ 24″ o.c. | With edge support[d] | Without edge support | Total load | Live load | |
| Sheathing[e] | | | | Roof[f] | | | | Subfloor[j] |
| 16/0 | 3/8 | 30 | — | 16 | 16 | 40 | 30 | 0 |
| 20/0 | 3/8 | 50 | — | 20 | 20 | 40 | 30 | 0 |
| 24/0 | 3/8 | 100 | 30 | 24 | 20[g] | 40 | 30 | 0 |
| 24/16 | 7/16 | 100 | 40 | 24 | 24 | 50 | 40 | 16 |
| 32/16 | 15/32, 1/2 | 180 | 70 | 32 | 28 | 40 | 30 | 16[h] |
| 40/20 | 19/32, 5/8 | 305 | 130 | 40 | 32 | 40 | 30 | 20[h, i] |
| 48/24 | 23/32, 3/4 | — | 175 | 48 | 36 | 45 | 35 | 24 |
| 60/32 | 7/8 | — | 305 | 60 | 48 | 45 | 35 | 32 |
| Underlayment, C-C plugged, single floor[e] | | | | Roof[f] | | | | Combination subfloor underlayment[k] |
| 16 o.c. | 19/32, 5/8 | 100 | 40 | 24 | 24 | 50 | 40 | 16[i] |
| 20 o.c. | 19/32, 5/8 | 150 | 60 | 32 | 32 | 40 | 30 | 20[i, j] |
| 24 o.c. | 23/32, 3/4 | 240 | 100 | 48 | 36 | 35 | 25 | 24 |
| 32 o.c. | 7/8 | — | 185 | 48 | 40 | 50 | 40 | 32 |
| 48 o.c. | 1 3/32, 1 1/8 | — | 290 | 60 | 48 | 50 | 40 | 48 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The allowable total loads were determined using a dead load of 10 psf. If the dead load exceeds 10 psf, then the live load shall be reduced accordingly.

b. Panels continuous over two or more spans with long dimension (strength axis) perpendicular to supports. Spans shall be limited to values shown because of possible effect of concentrated loads.

c. Applies to panels 24 inches or wider.

d. Lumber blocking, panel edge clips (one midway between each support, except two equally spaced between supports when span is 48 inches), tongue-and-groove panel edges, or other approved type of edge support.

e. Includes Structural 1 panels in these grades.

f. Uniform load deflection limitation: $^{1}/_{180}$ of span under live load plus dead load, $^{1}/_{240}$ of span under live load only.

g. Maximum span 24 inches for $^{15}/_{32}$-and $^{1}/_{2}$-inch panels.

h. Maximum span 24 inches where $^{3}/_{4}$-inch wood finish flooring is installed at right angles to joists.

i. Maximum span 24 inches where 1.5 inches of lightweight concrete or approved cellular concrete is placed over the subfloor.

j. Unsupported edges shall have tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking unless minimum nominal $^{1}/_{4}$-inch thick underlayment with end and edge joints offset at least 2 inches or 1.5 inches of lightweight concrete or approved cellular concrete is placed over the subfloor, or $^{3}/_{4}$-inch wood finish flooring is installed at right angles to the supports. Allowable uniform live load at maximum span, based on deflection of $^{1}/_{360}$ of span, is 100 psf.

k. Unsupported edges shall have tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported by blocking unless nominal $^{1}/_{4}$-inch-thick underlayment with end and edge joints offset at least 2 inches or $^{3}/_{4}$-inch wood finish flooring is installed at right angles to the supports. Allowable uniform live load at maximum span, based on deflection of $^{1}/_{360}$ of span, is 100 psf, except panels with a span rating of 48 on center are limited to 65 psf total uniform load at maximum span.

l. Allowable live load values at spans of 16" o.c. and 24" o.c taken from reference standard APA E30, APA Engineered Wood Construction Guide. Refer to reference standard for allowable spans not listed in the table.

**TABLE R503.2.1.1(2)**
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR SANDED PLYWOOD COMBINATION SUBFLOOR UNDERLAYMENT[a]**

| IDENTIFICATION | SPACING OF JOISTS (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 16 | 20 | 24 |
| Species group[b] | — | — | — |
| 1 | $^1/_2$ | $^5/_8$ | $^3/_4$ |
| 2, 3 | $^5/_8$ | $^3/_4$ | $^7/_8$ |
| 4 | $^3/_4$ | $^7/_8$ | 1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Plywood continuous over two or more spans and face grain perpendicular to supports. Unsupported edges shall be tongue-and-groove or blocked except where nominal $^1/_4$-inch-thick underlayment or $^3/_4$-inch wood finish floor is used. Allowable uniform live load at maximum span based on deflection of $^1/_{360}$ of span is 100 psf.

b. Applicable to all grades of sanded exterior-type plywood.

**R503.2.2 Allowable spans.** The maximum allowable span for wood structural panels used as subfloor or combination subfloor underlayment shall be as set forth in Table R503.2.1.1(1), or APA E30. The maximum span for sanded plywood combination subfloor underlayment shall be as set forth in Table R503.2.1.1(2).

**R503.2.3 Installation.** Wood structural panels used as subfloor or combination subfloor underlayment shall be attached to wood framing in accordance with Table R602.3(1) and shall be attached to cold-formed steel framing in accordance with Table R505.3.1(2).

**R503.3 Particleboard.**

**R503.3.1 Identification and grade.** Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1 and shall be so identified by a grade *mark* or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved agency*.

**R503.3.2 Floor underlayment.** Particleboard floor underlayment shall conform to Type PBU and shall not be less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) in thickness.

**R503.3.3 Installation.** Particleboard underlayment shall be installed in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and attached to framing in accordance with Table R602.3(1).

## SECTION R504
## PRESSURE PRESERVATIVELY TREATED-WOOD FLOORS (ON GROUND)

**R504.1 General.** Pressure preservatively treated-wood *basement* floors and floors on ground shall be designed to withstand axial forces and bending moments resulting from lateral soil pressures at the base of the exterior walls and floor live and dead loads. Floor framing shall be designed to meet joist deflection requirements in accordance with Section R301.

**R504.1.1 Unbalanced soil loads.** Unless special provision is made to resist sliding caused by unbalanced lateral soil loads, wood *basement* floors shall be limited to applications where the differential depth of fill on opposite exterior foundation walls is 2 feet (610 mm) or less.

**R504.1.2 Construction.** Joists in wood *basement* floors shall bear tightly against the narrow face of studs in the foundation wall or directly against a band joist that bears on the studs. Plywood subfloor shall be continuous over lapped joists or over butt joints between in-line joists. Sufficient blocking shall be provided between joists to transfer lateral forces at the base of the end walls into the floor system.

**R504.1.3 Uplift and buckling.** Where required, resistance to uplift or restraint against buckling shall be provided by interior bearing walls or properly designed stub walls anchored in the supporting soil below.

**R504.2 Site preparation.** The area within the foundation walls shall have all vegetation, topsoil and foreign material removed, and any fill material that is added shall be free of vegetation and foreign material. The fill shall be compacted to assure uniform support of the pressure preservatively treated-wood floor sleepers.

**R504.2.1 Base.** A minimum 4-inch-thick (102 mm) granular base of gravel having a maximum size of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) or crushed stone having a maximum size of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) shall be placed over the compacted earth.

**R504.2.2 Moisture barrier.** Polyethylene sheeting of minimum 6-mil (0.15 mm) thickness shall be placed over the granular base. Joints shall be lapped 6 inches (152 mm) and left unsealed. The polyethylene membrane shall be placed over the pressure preservatively treated-wood sleepers and shall not extend beneath the footing plates of the exterior walls.

**R504.3 Materials.** All framing materials, including sleepers, joists, blocking and plywood subflooring, shall be pressure-preservative treated and dried after treatment in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B and section 5.2), and shall bear the *label* of an accredited agency.

## SECTION R505
## STEEL FLOOR FRAMING

**R505.1 Cold-formed steel floor framing.** Elements shall be straight and free of any defects that would significantly affect structural performance. Cold-formed steel floor framing members shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**R505.1.1 Applicability limits.** The provisions of this section shall control the construction of cold-formed steel floor framing for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length perpendicular to the joist span, not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width parallel to the joist span, and less than or equal to three stories above *grade* plane. Cold-formed steel floor framing constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 110 miles per hour (49 m/s), Exposure B or C, and a maximum ground snow load of 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa).

**R505.1.2 In-line framing.** When supported by cold-formed steel framed walls in accordance with Section R603, cold-formed steel floor framing shall be constructed with floor joists located in-line with load-bearing studs located below the joists in accordance with Figure R505.1.2 and the tolerances specified as follows:

1. The maximum tolerance shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) between the centerline of the horizontal framing member and the centerline of the vertical framing member.
2. Where the centerline of the horizontal framing member and bearing stiffener are located to one side of the centerline of the vertical framing member, the maximum tolerance shall be $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) between the web of the horizontal framing member and the edge of the vertical framing member.

**R505.1.3 Floor trusses.** Cold-formed steel trusses shall be designed, braced and installed in accordance with AISI S100, Section D4. Truss members shall not be notched, cut or altered in any manner without an *approved* design.

**R505.2 Structural framing.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel floor framing members shall comply with Figure R505.2(1) and with the dimensional and minimum thickness requirements specified in Tables R505.2(1) and R505.2(2). Tracks shall comply with Figure R505.2(2) and shall have a minimum flange width of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm). The maximum inside bend radius for members shall be the greater of $^3/_{32}$ inch (2.4 mm) minus half the base steel thickness or 1.5 times the base steel thickness.

**R505.2.1 Material.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be cold-formed to shape from structural quality sheet steel complying with the requirements of one of the following:

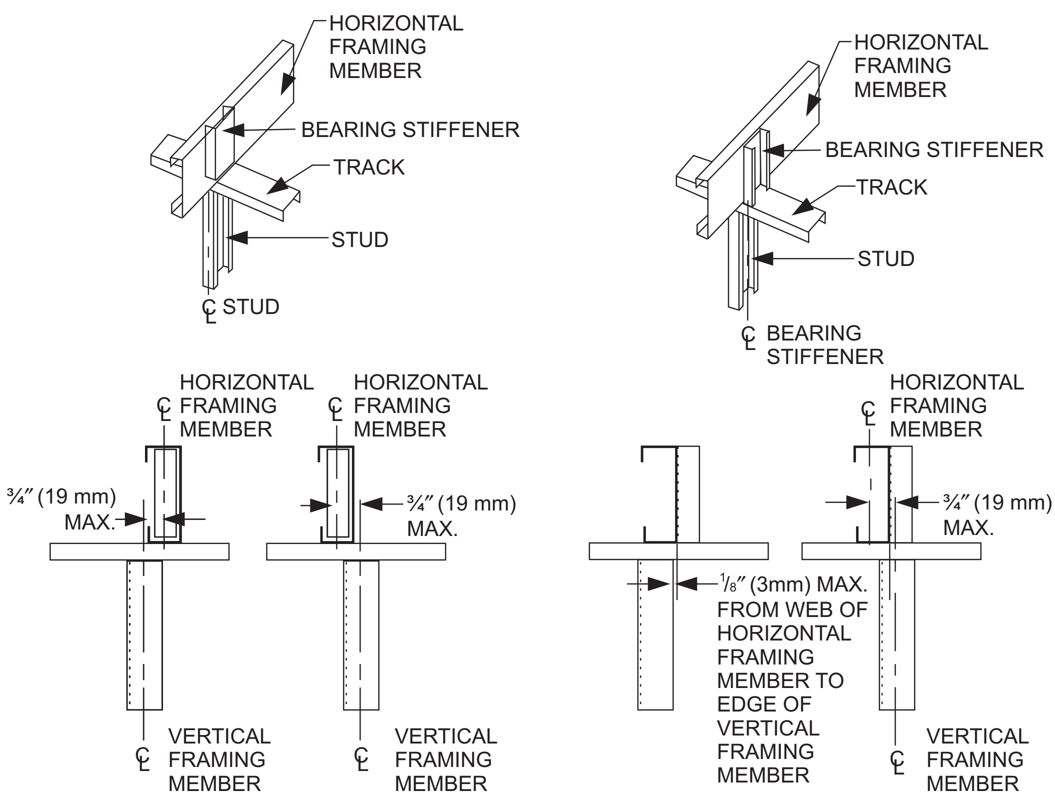
1. ASTM A 653: Grades 33 and 50 (Class 1 and 3).
2. ASTM A 792: Grades 33 and 50A.
3. ASTM A 1003: Structural Grades 33 Type H and 50 Type H.

**R505.2.2 Identification.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall have a legible *label*, stencil, stamp or embossment with the following information as a minimum:

1. Manufacturer's identification.
2. Minimum base steel thickness in inches (mm).
3. Minimum coating designation.
4. Minimum yield strength, in kips per square inch (ksi) (MPa).

**R505.2.3 Corrosion protection.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing shall have a metallic coating complying with ASTM A 1003 and one of the following:

1. A minimum of G 60 in accordance with ASTM A 653.
2. A minimum of AZ 50 in accordance with ASTM A 792.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.1.2**
**IN-LINE FRAMING**

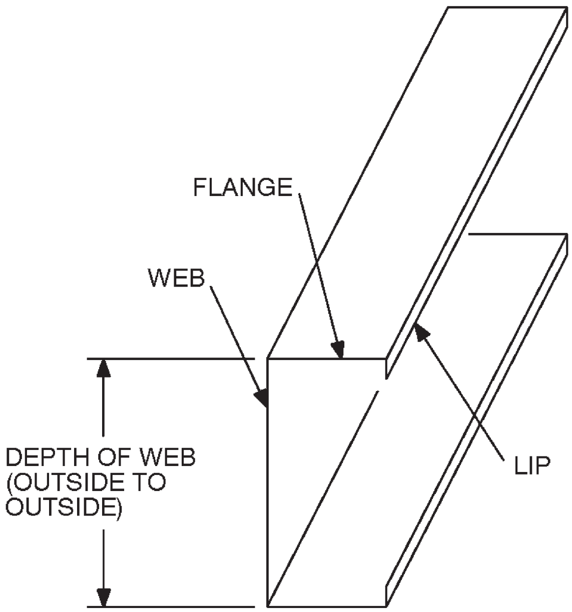



**FIGURE R505.2(1)**
**C-SHAPED SECTION**

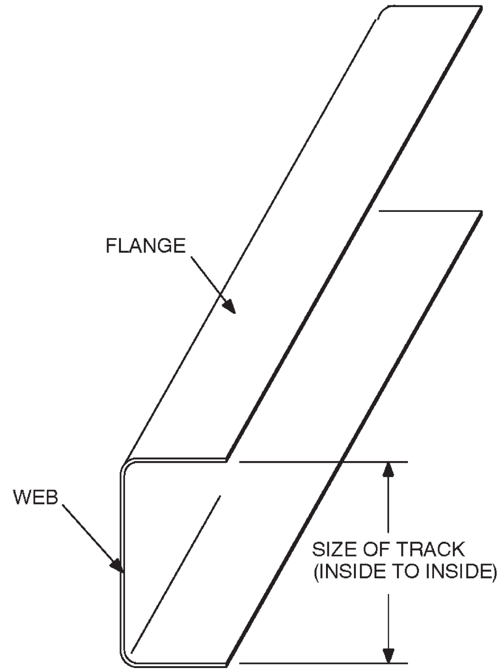



**FIGURE R505.2(2)**
**TRACK SECTION**

**TABLE R505.2(1)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL JOIST SIZES**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION[a] | WEB DEPTH (inches) | MINIMUM FLANGE WIDTH (inches) | MAXIMUM FLANGE WIDTH (inches) | MINIMUM LIP SIZE (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 550S162-t | 5.5 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 800S162-t | 8 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 1000S162-t | 10 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 1200S162-t | 12 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. The member designation is defined by the first number representing the member depth in 0.01 inch, the letter “S” representing a stud or joist member, the second number representing the flange width in 0.01 inch, and the letter “t” shall be a number representing the minimum base metal thickness in mils [See Table R505.2(2)].

**TABLE R505.2(2)**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS OF COLD-FORMED STEEL MEMBERS**

| DESIGNATION THICKNESS (mils) | MINIMUM BASE STEEL THICKNESS (inches) |
|---|---|
| 33 | 0.0329 |
| 43 | 0.0428 |
| 54 | 0.0538 |
| 68 | 0.0677 |
| 97 | 0.0966 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**R505.2.4 Fastening requirements.** Screws for steel-to-steel connections shall be installed with a minimum edge distance and center-to-center spacing of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm), shall be self-drilling tapping, and shall conform to ASTM C 1513. Floor sheathing shall be attached to cold-formed steel joists with minimum No. 8 self-drilling tapping screws that conform to ASTM C 1513. Screws attaching floor-sheathing to cold-formed steel joists shall have a minimum head diameter of 0.292 inch (7.4 mm) with countersunk heads and shall be installed with a minimum edge distance of $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm). Gypsum board ceilings shall be attached to cold-formed steel joists with minimum No. 6 screws conforming to ASTM C 954 or ASTM C 1513 with a bugle head style and shall be installed in accordance with Section R702. For all connections, screws shall extend through the steel a minimum of three exposed threads. All fasteners shall have rust inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.

Where No. 8 screws are specified in a steel-to-steel connection, the required number of screws in the connection is permitted to be reduced in accordance with the reduction factors in Table R505.2.4 when larger screws are used or when one of the sheets of steel being connected is thicker than 33 mils (0.84 mm). When applying the reduction factor, the resulting number of screws shall be rounded up.

**TABLE R505.2.4**
**SCREW SUBSTITUTION FACTOR**

| SCREW SIZE | THINNEST CONNECTED STEEL SHEET (mils) | |
|---|---|---|
| | 33 | 43 |
| #8 | 1.0 | 0.67 |
| #10 | 0.93 | 0.62 |
| #12 | 0.86 | 0.56 |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

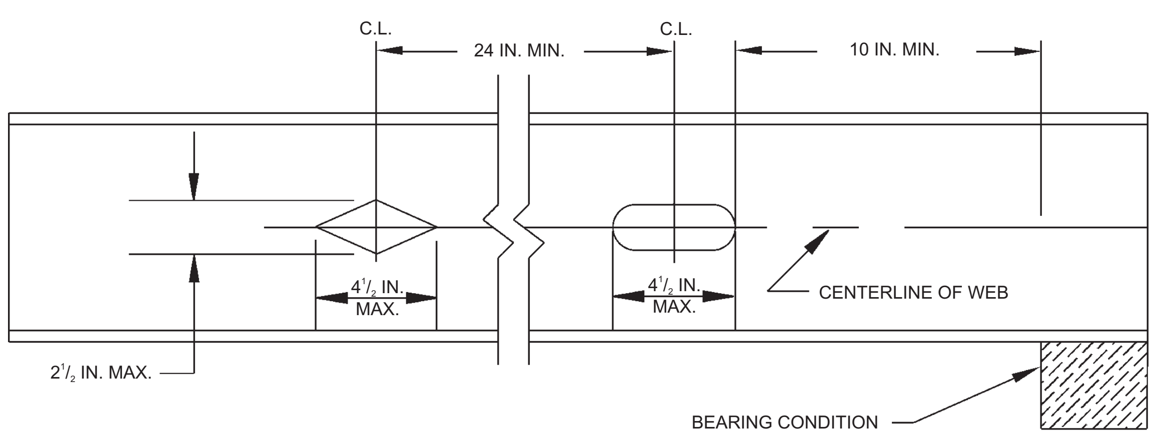
**R505.2.5 Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching.** Web holes, web hole reinforcing, and web hole patching shall be in accordance with this section.

**R505.2.5.1 Web holes.** Web holes in floor joists shall comply with all of the following conditions:

1. Holes shall conform to Figure R505.2.5.1;
2. Holes shall be permitted only along the centerline of the web of the framing member;
3. Holes shall have a center-to-center spacing of not less than 24 inches (610 mm);
4. Holes shall have a web hole width not greater than 0.5 times the member depth, or $2^1/_2$ inches (64.5 mm);
5. Holes shall have a web hole length not exceeding $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm); and
6. Holes shall have a minimum distance between the edge of the bearing surface and the edge of the web hole of not less than 10 inches (254 mm).

Framing members with web holes not conforming to the above requirements shall be reinforced in accordance with Section R505.2.5.2, patched in accordance with Section R505.2.5.3 or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices.

**R505.2.5.2 Web hole reinforcing.** Reinforcement of web holes in floor joists not conforming to the requirements of Section R505.2.5.1 shall be permitted if the hole is located fully within the center 40 percent of the span and the depth and length of the hole does not exceed 65 percent of the flat width of the web. The reinforcing shall be a steel plate or C-shape section with a hole that does not exceed the web hole size limitations of Section R505.2.5.1 for the member being reinforced. The steel reinforcing shall be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend at least 1 inch (25.4 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel reinforcing shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No.8 screws spaced no more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.2.5.1**
**FLOOR JOIST WEB HOLES**

**R505.2.5.3 Hole patching.** Patching of web holes in floor joists not conforming to the requirements in Section R505.2.5.1 shall be permitted in accordance with either of the following methods:

1. Framing members shall be replaced or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices where web holes exceed the following size limits:
   - 1.1. The depth of the hole, measured across the web, exceeds 70 percent of the flat width of the web; or
   - 1.2. The length of the hole measured along the web, exceeds 10 inches (254 mm) or the depth of the web, whichever is greater.
2. Web holes not exceeding the dimensional requirements in Section R505.2.5.3, Item 1, shall be patched with a solid steel plate, stud section, or track section in accordance with Figure R505.2.5.3. The steel patch shall, as a minimum, be of the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend at least 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel patch shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No.8 screws spaced no more than 1 inch (25 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm).

**R505.3 Floor construction.** Cold-formed steel floors shall be constructed in accordance with this section.

**R505.3.1 Floor to foundation or load-bearing wall connections.** Cold-formed steel framed floors shall be anchored to foundations, wood sills or load-bearing walls in accordance with Table R505.3.1(1) and Figure R505.3.1(1), R505.3.1(2), R505.3.1(3), R505.3.1(4), R505.3.1(5) or R505.3.1(6). Anchor bolts shall be located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from corners or the termination of bottom tracks. Continuous cold-formed steel joists supported by interior load-bearing walls shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R505.3.1(7). Lapped cold-formed steel joists shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R505.3.1(8). End floor joists constructed on foundation walls parallel to the joist span shall be doubled unless a C-shaped bearing stiffener, sized in accordance with Section R505.3.4, is installed web-to-web with the floor joist beneath each supported wall stud, as shown in Figure R505.3.1(9). Fastening of cold-formed steel joists to other framing members shall be in accordance with Section R505.2.4 and Table R505.3.1(2).

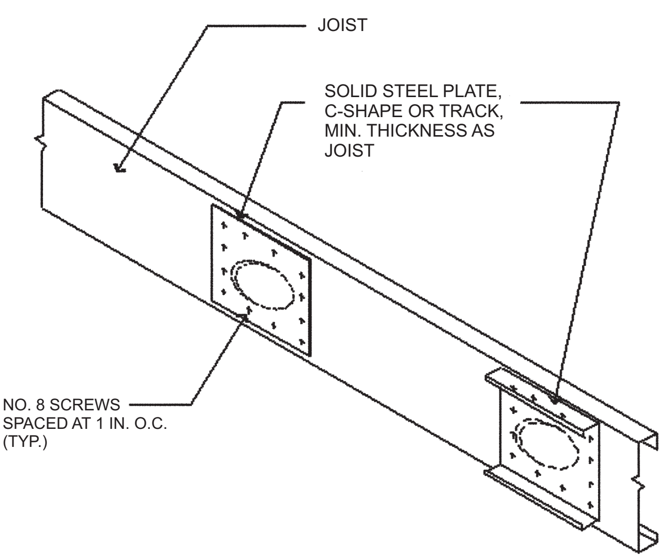



**FIGURE R505.2.5.3**
**WEB HOLE PATCH**

**R505.3.2 Minimum floor joist sizes.** Floor joist size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Table R505.3.2(1) for single spans, and Tables R505.3.2(2) and R505.3.2(3) for multiple spans. When continuous joist members are used, the interior bearing supports shall be located within 2 feet (610 mm) of mid-span of the cold-formed steel joists, and the individual spans shall not exceed the spans in Table R505.3.2(2) or R505.3.2(3), as applicable. Floor joists shall have a bearing support length of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) for exterior wall supports and $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) for interior wall supports. Tracks shall be a minimum of 33 mils (0.84 mm) thick except when used as part of a floor header or trimmer in accordance with Section R505.3.8. Bearing stiffeners shall be installed in accordance with Section R505.3.4.

**R505.3.3 Joist bracing and blocking.** Joist bracing and blocking shall be in accordance with this section.

**R505.3.3.1 Joist top flange bracing.** The top flanges of cold-formed steel joists shall be laterally braced by the application of floor sheathing fastened to the joists in accordance with Section R505.2.4 and Table R505.3.1(2).

**R505.3.3.2 Joist bottom flange bracing/blocking.** Floor joists with spans that exceed 12 feet (3658 mm) shall have the bottom flanges laterally braced in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gypsum board installed with minimum No. 6 screws in accordance with Section R702.
2. Continuous steel straps installed in accordance with Figure R505.3.3.2(1). Steel straps shall be spaced at a maximum of 12 feet (3658 mm) on center and shall be at least $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width and 33 mils (0.84 mm) in thickness. Straps shall be fastened to the bottom flange of each joist with one No. 8 screw, fastened to blocking with two No. 8 screws, and fastened at each end (of strap) with two No. 8 screws. Blocking in accordance with Figure R505.3.3.2(1) or Figure R505.3.3.2(2) shall be installed between joists at each end of the continuous strapping and at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured along the continuous strapping (perpendicular to the joist run). Blocking shall also be located at the termination of all straps. As an alternative to blocking at the ends, anchoring the strap to a stable building component with two No. 8 screws shall be permitted.

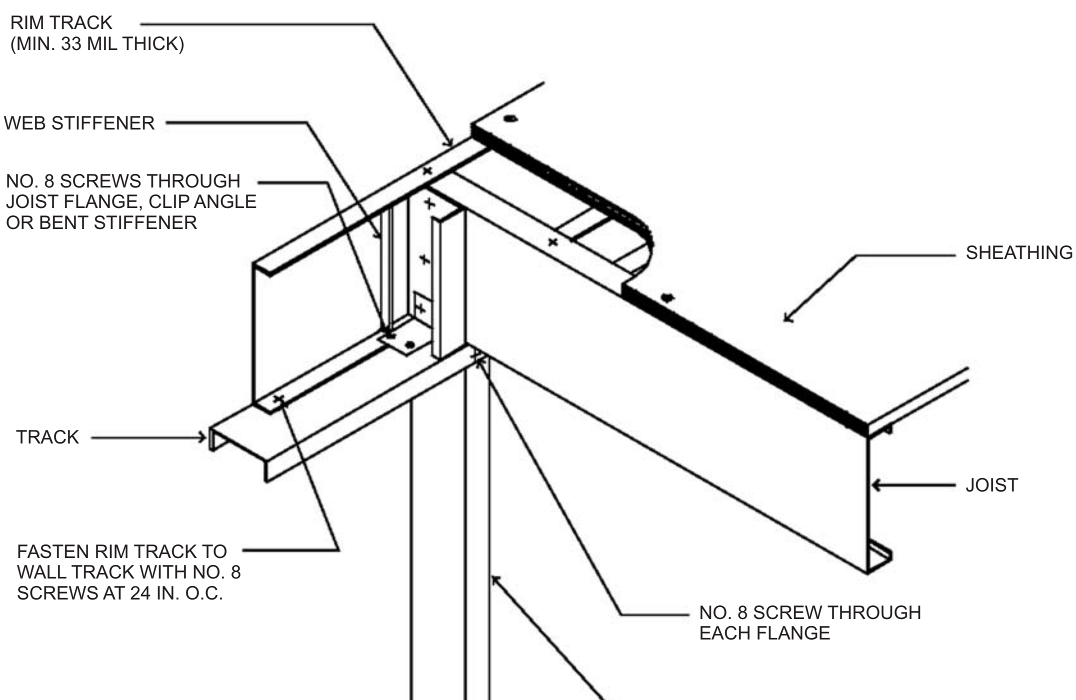
**TABLE R505.3.1(1)**
**FLOOR TO FOUNDATION OR BEARING WALL CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS[a, b]**

| FRAMING CONDITION | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND EXPOSURE | |
|---|---|---|
| | 85 mph Exposure C or less than 110 mph Exposure B | Less than 110 mph Exposure C |
| Floor joist to wall track of exterior wall per Figure R505.3.1(1) | 2-No. 8 screws | 3-No. 8 screws |
| Rim track or end joist to load-bearing wall top track per Figure R505.3.1(1) | 1-No. 8 screw at 24 inches o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw at 24 inches o.c. |
| Rim track or end joist to wood sill per Figure R505.3.1(2) | Steel plate spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails | Steel plate spaced at 2 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails |
| Rim track or end joist to foundation per Figure R505.3.1(3) | $^1/_2$ inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip angle spaced at 6 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws | $^1/_2$ inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip angle spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws |
| Cantilevered joist to foundation per Figure R505.3.1(4) | $^1/_2$ inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip angle spaced at 6 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws | $^1/_2$ inch minimum diameter anchor bolt and clip angle spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 8-No. 8 screws |
| Cantilevered joist to wood sill per Figure R505.3.1(5) | Steel plate spaced at 4 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails | Steel plate spaced at 2 feet o.c. with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails |
| Cantilevered joist to exterior load-bearing wall track per Figure R505.3.1(6) | 2-No. 8 screws | 3-No. 8 screws |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Anchor bolts are to be located not more than 12 inches from corners or the termination of bottom tracks (e.g., at door openings or corners). Bolts extend a minimum of 15 inches into masonry or 7 inches into concrete. Anchor bolts connecting cold-formed steel framing to the foundation structure are to be installed so that the distance from the center of the bolt hole to the edge of the connected member is not less than one and one-half bolt diameters.

b. All screw sizes shown are minimum.



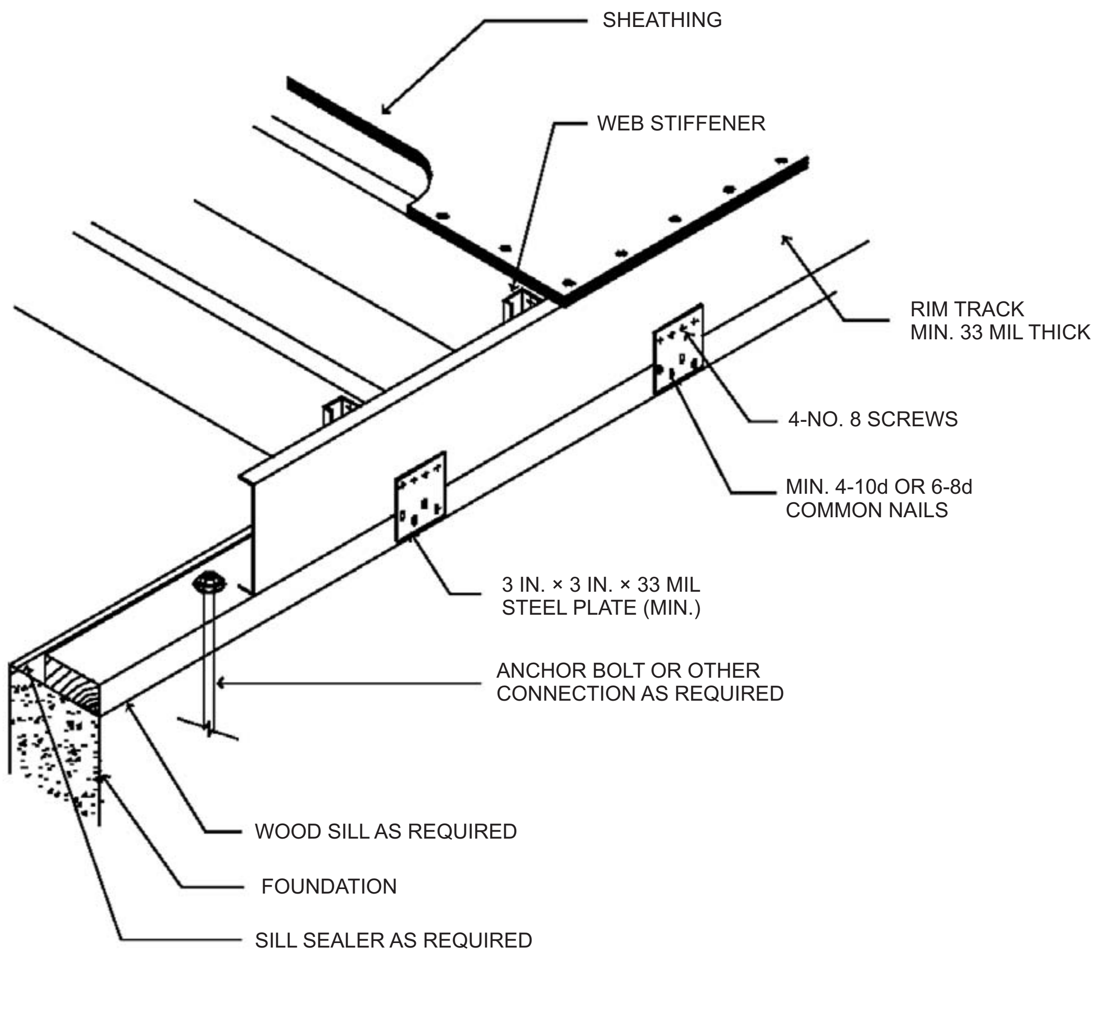

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 505.3.1(1)**
**FLOOR TO EXTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL STUD CONNECTION**

**TABLE R505.3.1(2)**
**FLOOR FASTENING SCHEDULE[a]**

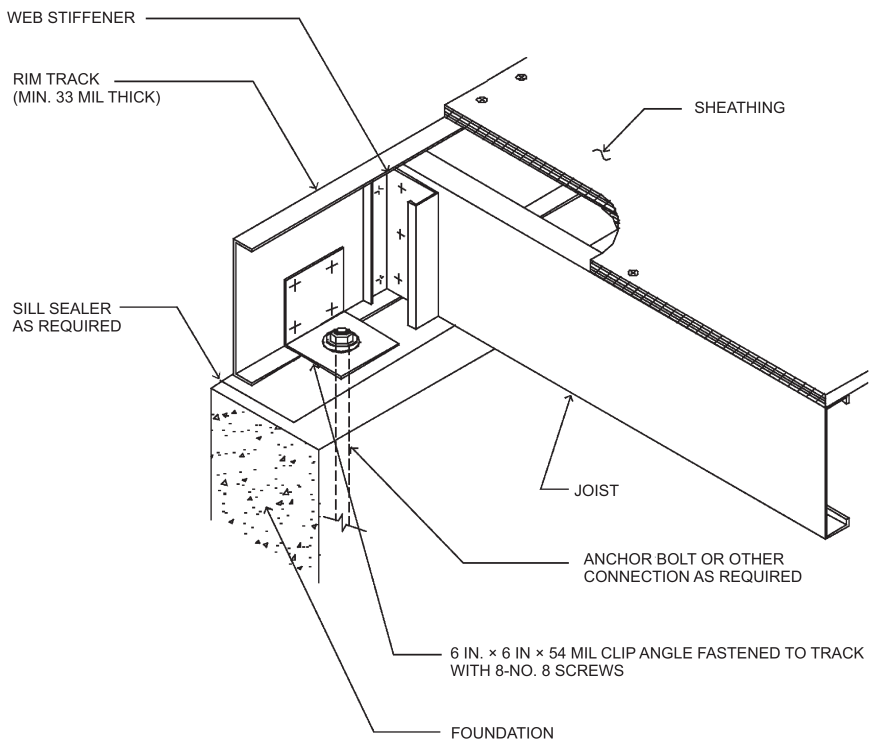
| DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS | NUMBER AND SIZE OF FASTENERS | SPACING OF FASTENERS |
|---|---|---|
| Floor joist to track of an interior load-bearing wall per Figures R505.3.1(7) and R505.3.1(8) | 2 No. 8 screws | Each joist |
| Floor joist to track at end of joist | 2 No. 8 screws | One per flange or two per bearing stiffener |
| Subfloor to floor joists | No. 8 screws | 6 in. o.c. on edges and 12 in. o.c. at intermediate supports |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. All screw sizes shown are minimum.



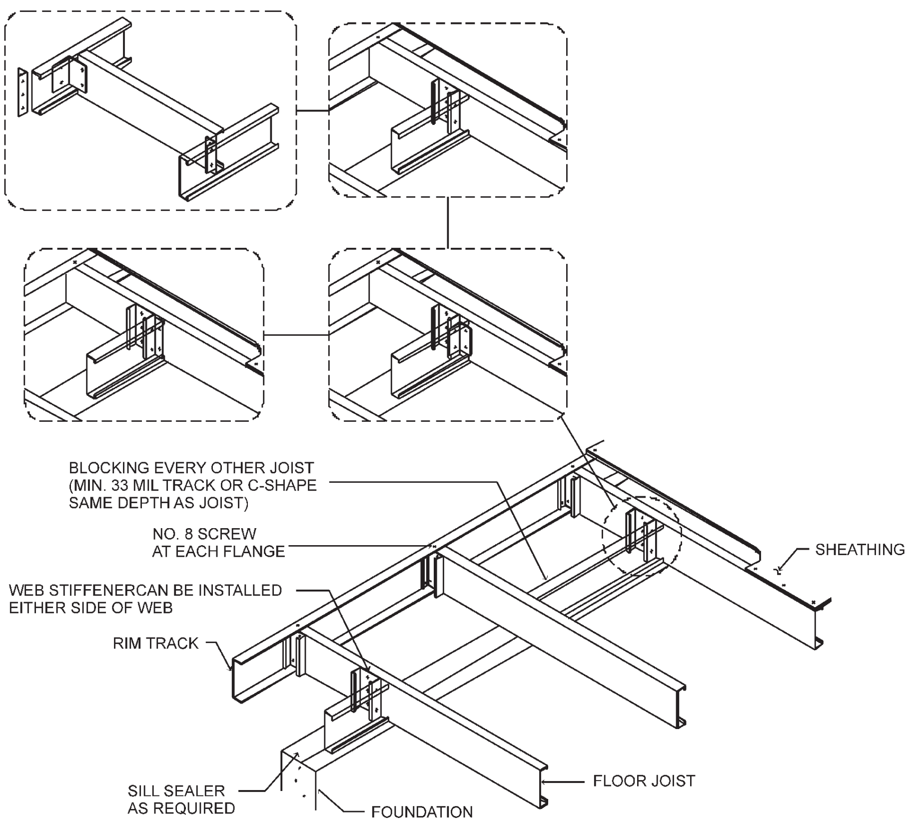

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.1(2)**
**FLOOR TO WOOD SILL CONNECTION**



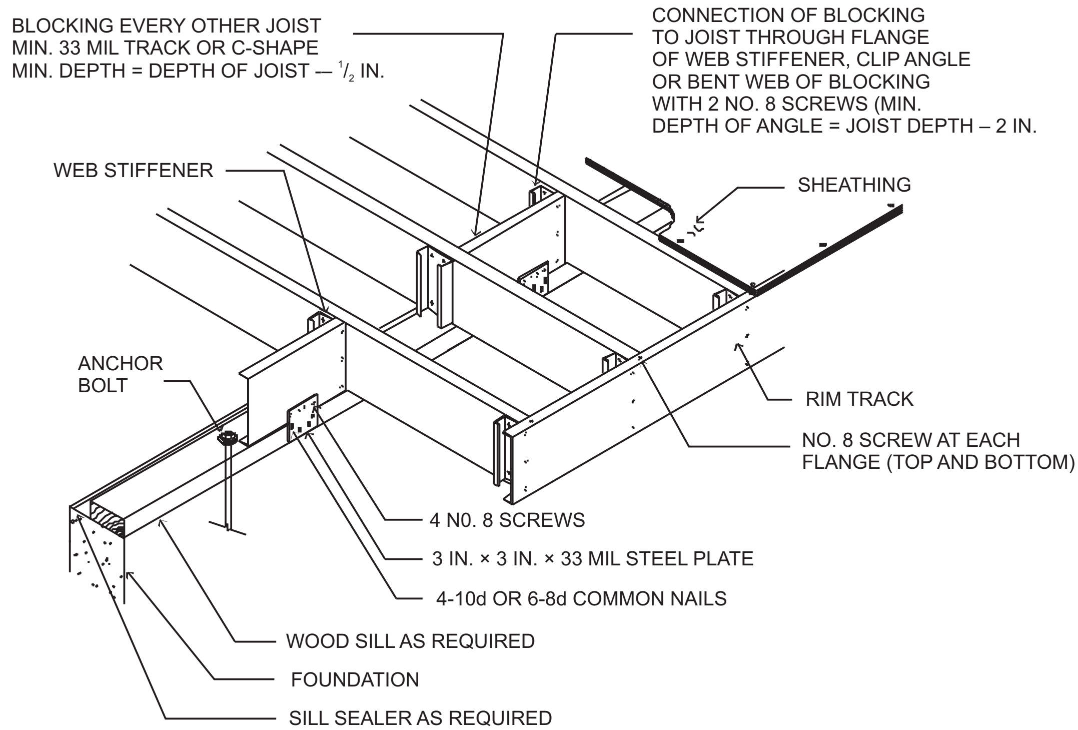

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.1(3)**
**FLOOR TO FOUNDATION CONNECTION**



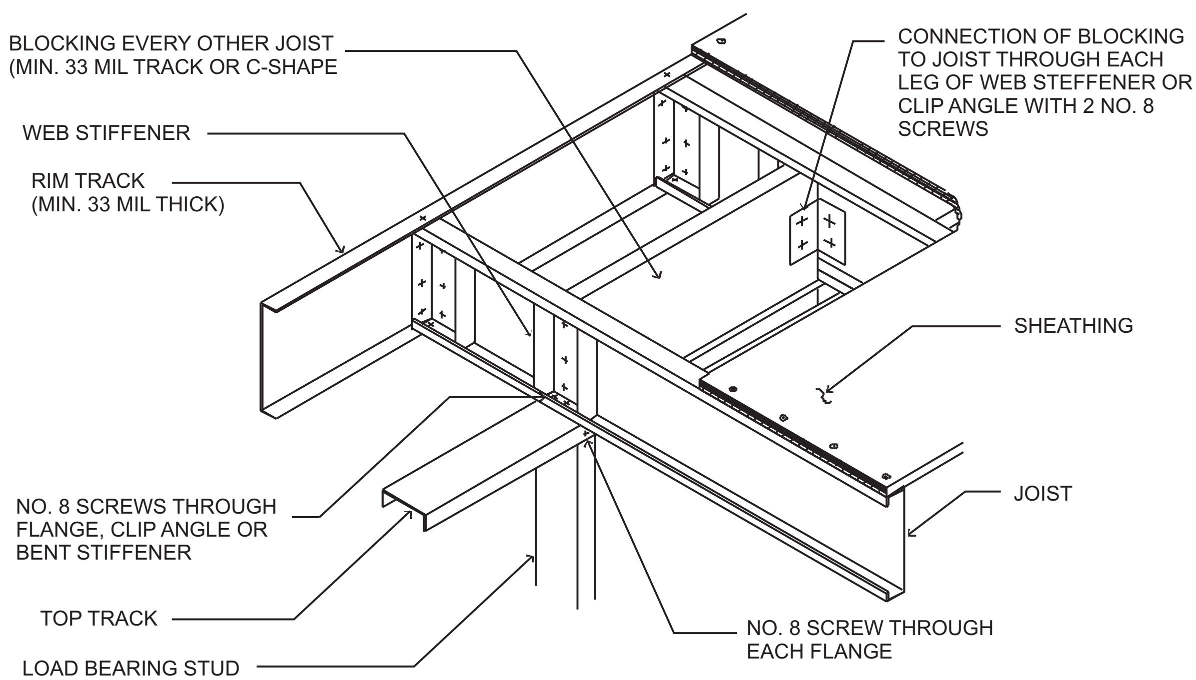

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.1(4)**
**CANTILEVERED FLOOR TO FOUNDATION CONNECTION**



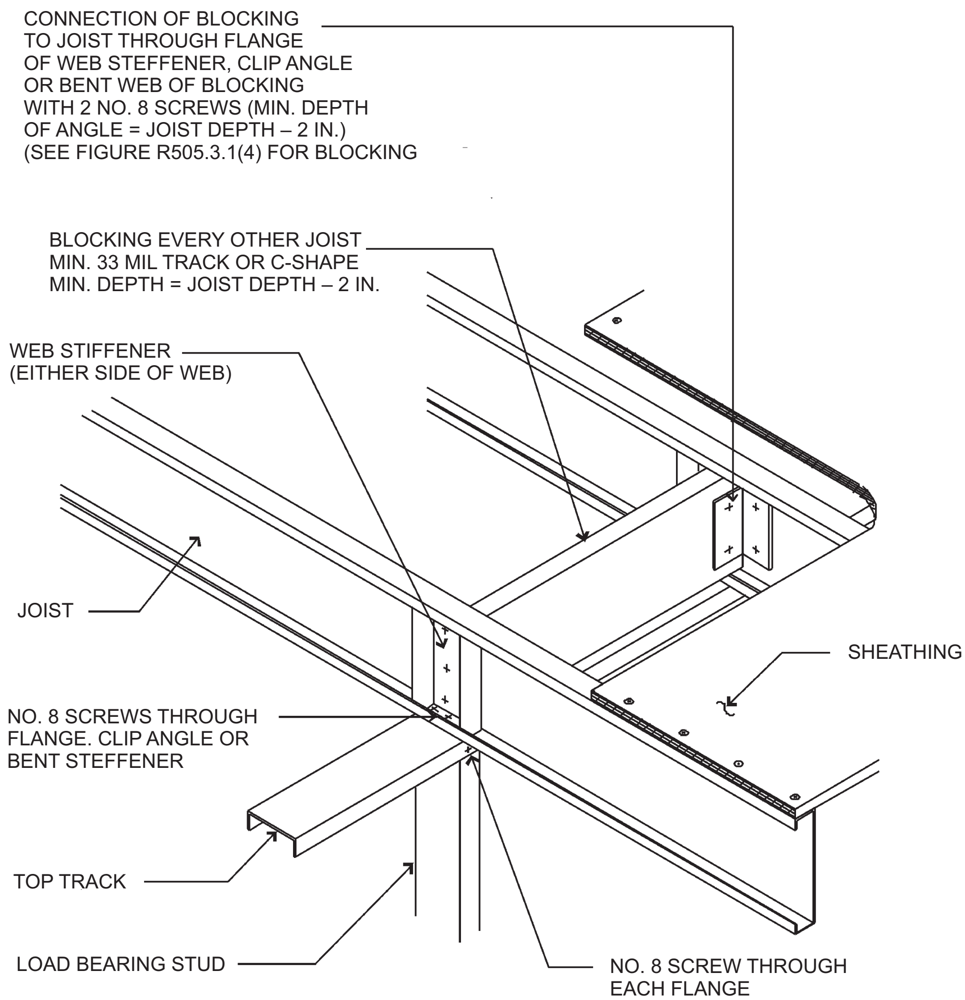

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.1(5)**
**CANTILEVERED FLOOR TO WOOD SILL CONNECTION**



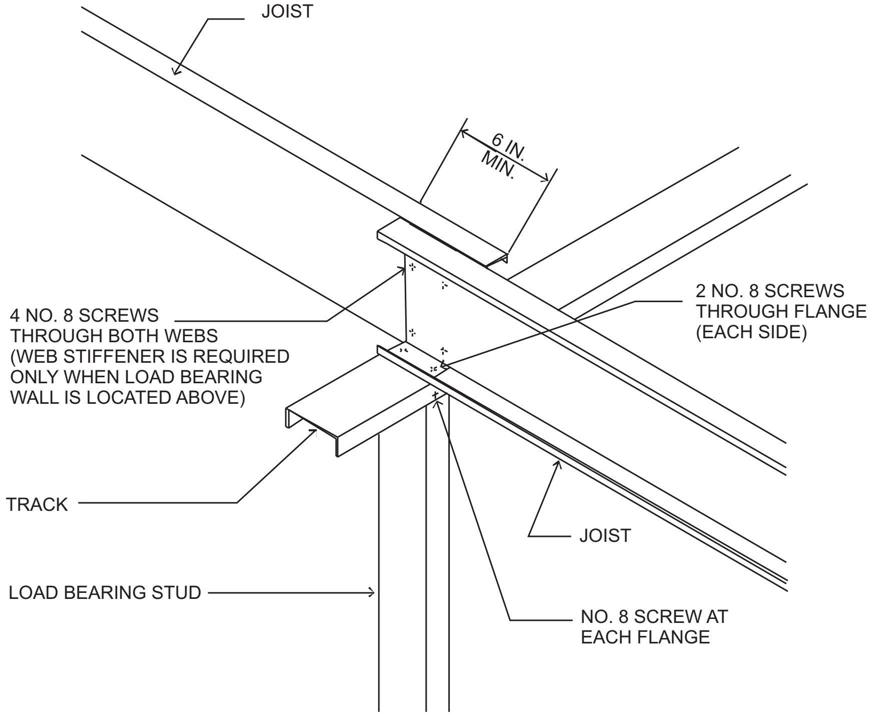

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.1(6)**
**CANTILEVERED FLOOR TO EXTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL CONNECTION**




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.1(7)**
**CONTINUOUS SPAN JOIST SUPPORTED ON INTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.1(8)**
**LAPPED JOISTS SUPPORTED ON INTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL**

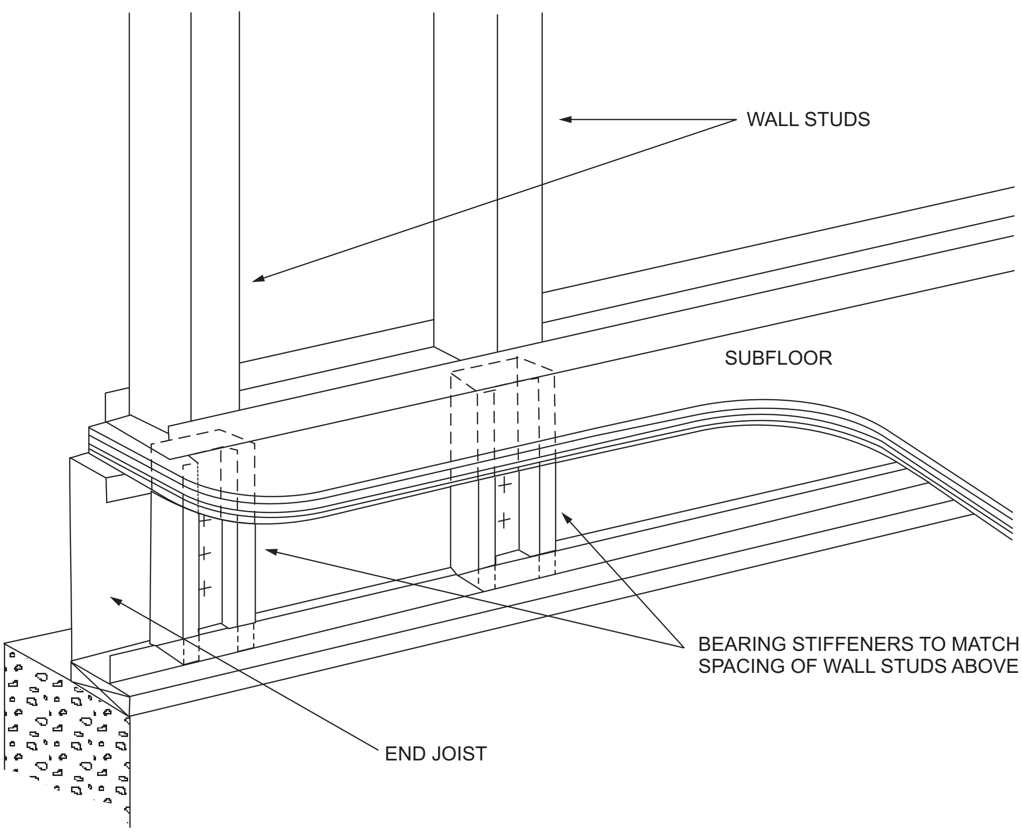



**FIGURE R505.3.1(9)**
**BEARING STIFFENERS FOR END JOISTS**

**TABLE R505.3.2(1)**
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR COLD-FORMED STEEL JOISTS—SINGLE SPANS[a, b, c, d] 33 ksi STEEL**

| JOIST DESIGNATION | 30 PSF LIVE LOAD | | | | 40 PSF LIVE LOAD | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Spacing (inches) | | | | Spacing (inches) | | | |
| | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 |
| 550S162-33 | 11′-7″ | 10′-7″ | 9′-6″ | 8′-6″ | 10′-7″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-6″ |
| 550S162-43 | 12′-8″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-10″ | 10′-2″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-1″ |
| 550S162-54 | 13′-7″ | 12′-4″ | 11′-7″ | 10′-9″ | 12′-4″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-6″ | 9′-9″ |
| 550S162-68 | 14′-7″ | 13′-3″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-7″ | 13′-3″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-4″ | 10′-6″ |
| 550S162-97 | 16′-2″ | 14′-9″ | 13′-10″ | 12′-10″ | 14′-9″ | 13′-4″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-8″ |
| 800S162-33 | 15′-8″ | 13′-11″ | 12′-9″ | 11′-5″ | 14′-3″ | 12′-5″ | 11′-3″ | 9′-0″ |
| 800S162-43 | 17′-1″ | 15′-6″ | 14′-7″ | 13′-7″ | 15′-6″ | 14′-1″ | 13′-3″ | 12′-4″ |
| 800S162-54 | 18′-4″ | 16′-8″ | 15′-8″ | 14′-7″ | 16′-8″ | 15′-2″ | 14′-3″ | 13′-3″ |
| 800S162-68 | 19′-9″ | 17′-11″ | 16′-10″ | 15′-8″ | 17′-11″ | 16′-3″ | 15′-4″ | 14′-2″ |
| 800S162-97 | 22′-0″ | 20′-0″ | 16′-10″ | 17′-5″ | 20′-0″ | 18′-2″ | 17′-1″ | 15′-10″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 20′-6″ | 18′-8″ | 17′-6″ | 15′-8″ | 18′-8″ | 16′-11″ | 15′-6″ | 13′-11″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 22′-1″ | 20′-0″ | 18′-10″ | 17′-6″ | 20′-0″ | 18′-2″ | 17′-2″ | 15′-11″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 23′- 9″ | 21′-7″ | 20′-3″ | 18′-10″ | 21′-7″ | 19′-7″ | 18′-5″ | 17′-1″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 26′-6″ | 24′-1″ | 22′-8″ | 21′-0″ | 24′-1″ | 21′-10″ | 20′-7″ | 19′-1″ |
| 1200S162-43 | 23′-9″ | 20′-10″ | 19′-0″ | 16′-8″ | 21′-5″ | 18′-6″ | 16′-6″ | 13′-2″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 25′-9″ | 23′-4″ | 22′-0″ | 20′-1″ | 23′-4″ | 21′-3″ | 20′-0″ | 17′-10″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 27′-8″ | 25′-1″ | 23′-8″ | 21′-11″ | 25′-1″ | 22′-10″ | 21′-6″ | 21′-1″ |
| 1200S162-97 | 30′-11″ | 28′-1″ | 26′-5″ | 24′-6″ | 28′-1″ | 25′-6″ | 24′-0″ | 22′-3″ |

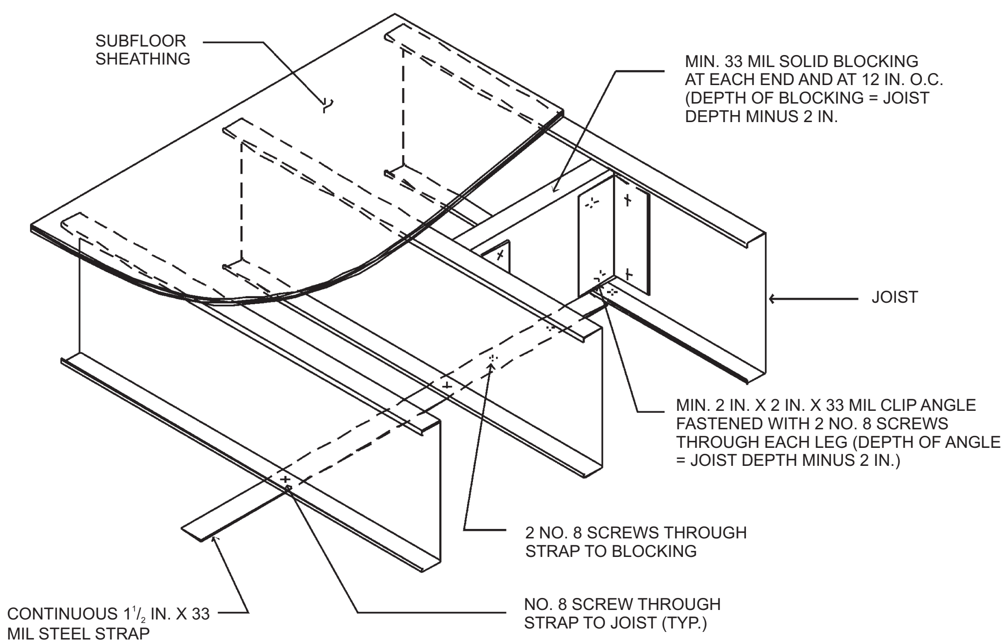
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/480 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Floor dead load = 10 psf.

c. Table provides the maximum clear span in feet and inches.

d. Bearing stiffeners are to be installed at all support points and concentrated loads.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

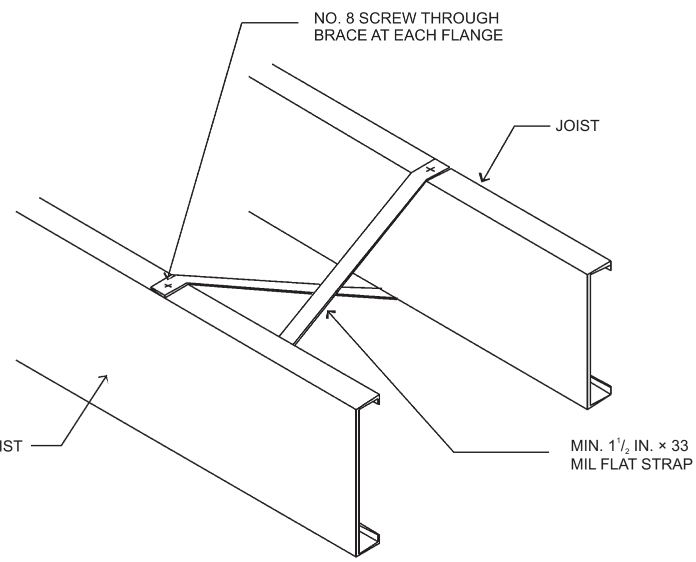
**FIGURE R505.3.3.2(1)**
**JOIST BLOCKING (SOLID)**

**TABLE R505.3.2(2)**
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR COLD-FORMED STEEL JOISTS—MULTIPLE SPANS[a, b, c, d, e, f] 33 ksi STEEL**

| JOIST DESIGNATION | 30 PSF LIVE LOAD | | | | 40 PSF LIVE LOAD | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Spacing (inches) | | | | Spacing (inches) | | | |
| | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 |
| 550S162-33 | 12′-1″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-6″ | 8′-6″ | 10′-9″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-6″ |
| 550S162-43 | 14′-5″ | 12′-5″ | 11′-4″ | 10′-2″ | 12′-9″ | 11′-11″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-0″ |
| 550S162-54 | 16′-3″ | 14′-1″ | 12′-10″ | 11′-6″ | 14′-5″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-2″ |
| 550S162-68 | 19′-7″ | 17′-9″ | 16′-9″ | 15′-6″ | 17′-9″ | 16′-2″ | 15′-2″ | 14′-1″ |
| 550S162-97 | 21′-9″ | 19′-9″ | 18′-7″ | 17′-3″ | 19′-9″ | 17′-11″ | 16′-10″ | 15′-4″ |
| 800S162-33 | 14′-8″ | 11′-10″ | 10′-4″ | 8′-8″ | 12′-4″ | 9′-11″ | 8′-7″ | 7′-2″ |
| 800S162-43 | 20′-0″ | 17′-4″ | 15′-9″ | 14′-1″ | 17′-9″ | 15′-4″ | 14′-0″ | 12′-0″ |
| 800S162-54 | 23′-7″ | 20′-5″ | 18′-8″ | 16′-8″ | 21′-0″ | 18′-2″ | 16′-7″ | 14′-10″ |
| 800S162-68 | 26′-5″ | 23′-1″ | 21′-0″ | 18′-10″ | 23′-8″ | 20′-6″ | 18′-8″ | 16′-9″ |
| 800S162-97 | 29′-6″ | 26′-10″ | 25′-3″ | 22′-8″ | 26′-10″ | 24′-4″ | 22′-6″ | 20′-2″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 22′-2″ | 18′-3″ | 16′-0″ | 13′-7″ | 18′-11″ | 15′-5″ | 13′-6″ | 11′-5″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 26′-2″ | 22′-8″ | 20′-8″ | 18′-6″ | 23′-3″ | 20′-2″ | 18′-5″ | 16′-5″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 31′- 5″ | 27′-2″ | 24′-10″ | 22′-2″ | 27′-11″ | 24′-2″ | 22′-1″ | 19′-9″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 35′-6″ | 32′-3″ | 29′-11″ | 26′-9″ | 32′-3″ | 29′-2″ | 26′-7″ | 23′-9″ |
| 1200S162-43 | 21′-8″ | 17′-6″ | 15′-3″ | 12′-10″ | 18′-3″ | 14′-8″ | 12′-8″ | 10′-6$^2$ |
| 1200S162-54 | 28′-5″ | 24′-8″ | 22′-6″ | 19′-6″ | 25′-3″ | 21′-11″ | 19′-4″ | 16′-6″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 33′-7″ | 29′-1″ | 26′-6″ | 23′-9″ | 29′-10″ | 25′-10″ | 23′-7″ | 21′-1″ |
| 1200S162-97 | 41′-5″ | 37′-8″ | 34′-6″ | 30′-10″ | 37′-8″ | 33′-6″ | 30′-7″ | 27′-5″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/480 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Floor dead load = 10 psf.
c. Table provides the maximum clear span in feet and inches to either side of the interior support.
d. Interior bearing supports for multiple span joists consist of structural (bearing) walls or beams.
e. Bearing stiffeners are to be installed at all support points and concentrated loads.
f. Interior supports shall be located within 2 feet of mid-span provided that each of the resulting spans does not exceed the appropriate maximum span shown in the table above.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.3.2(2)**
**JOIST BLOCKING (STRAP)**

**TABLE R505.3.2(3)**
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR COLD-FORMED STEEL JOISTS—MULTIPLE SPANS[a, b, c, d, e, f] 50 ksi STEEL**

| JOIST DESIGNATION | 30 PSF LIVE LOAD | | | | 40 PSF LIVE LOAD | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Spacing (inches) | | | | Spacing (inches) | | | |
| | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 |
| 550S162-33 | 13′-11″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-0″ | 9′-3″ | 12′-3″ | 10′-8″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-4″ |
| 550S162-43 | 16′-3″ | 14′-1″ | 12′-10″ | 11′-6″ | 14′-6″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-3″ |
| 550S162-54 | 18′-2″ | 16′-6″ | 15′-4″ | 13′-8″ | 16′-6″ | 14′-11″ | 13′-7″ | 12′-2″ |
| 550S162-68 | 19′-6″ | 17′-9″ | 16′-8″ | 15′-6″ | 17′-9″ | 16′-1″ | 15′-2″ | 14′-0″ |
| 550S162-97 | 21′-9″ | 19′-9″ | 18′-6″ | 17′-2″ | 19′-8″ | 17′-10″ | 16′-8″ | 15′-8″ |
| 800S162-33 | 15′-6″ | 12′-6″ | 10′-10″ | 9′-1″ | 13′-0″ | 10′-5″ | 8′-11″ | 6′-9″ |
| 800S162-43 | 22′-0″ | 19′-1″ | 17′-5″ | 15′-0″ | 19′-7″ | 16′-11″ | 14′-10″ | 12′-8″ |
| 800S162-54 | 24′-6″ | 22′-4″ | 20′-6″ | 17′-11″ | 22′-5″ | 19′-9″ | 17′-11″ | 15′-10″ |
| 800S162-68 | 26′-6″ | 24′-1″ | 22′-8″ | 21′-0″ | 24′-1″ | 21′-10″ | 20′-7″ | 19′-2″ |
| 800S162-97 | 29′-9″ | 26′-8″ | 25′-2″ | 23′-5″ | 26′-8″ | 24′-3″ | 22′-11″ | 21′-4″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 23′-6″ | 19′-2″ | 16′-9″ | 14′-2″ | 19′-11″ | 16′-2″ | 14′-0″ | 11′-9″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 28′-2″ | 23′-10″ | 21′-7″ | 18′-11″ | 24′-8″ | 20′-11″ | 18′-9″ | 18′-4″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 31′- 10″ | 28′-11″ | 27′-2″ | 25′-3″ | 28′-11″ | 26′-3″ | 24′-9″ | 22′-9″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 35′-4″ | 32′-1″ | 30′-3″ | 28′-1″ | 32′-1″ | 29′-2″ | 27′-6″ | 25′-6″ |
| 1200S162-43 | 22′-11″ | 18′-5″ | 16′-0″ | 13′-4″ | 19′-2″ | 15′-4″ | 13′-2″ | 10′-6″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 32′-8″ | 28′-1″ | 24′-9″ | 21′-2″ | 29′-0″ | 23′-10″ | 20′-11″ | 17′-9″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 37′-1″ | 32′-5″ | 29′-4″ | 25′-10″ | 33′-4″ | 28′-6″ | 25′-9″ | 22′-7″ |
| 1200S162-97 | 41′-2″ | 37′-6″ | 35′-3″ | 32′-9″ | 37′-6″ | 34′-1″ | 32′-1″ | 29′-9″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. Deflection criteria: *L*/480 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Floor dead load = 10 psf.

c. Table provides the maximum clear span in feet and inches to either side of the interior support.

d. Interior bearing supports for multiple span joists consist of structural (bearing) walls or beams.

e. Bearing stiffeners are to be installed at all support points and concentrated loads.

f. Interior supports shall be located within 2 feet of mid-span provided that each of the resulting spans does not exceed the appropriate maximum span shown in the table above.

**R505.3.3.3 Blocking at interior bearing supports.** Blocking is not required for continuous back-to-back floor joists at bearing supports. Blocking shall be installed between every other joist for single continuous floor joists across bearing supports in accordance with Figure R505.3.1(7). Blocking shall consist of C-shape or track section with a minimum thickness of 33 mils (0.84 mm). Blocking shall be fastened to each adjacent joist through a 33-mil (0.84 mm) clip angle, bent web of blocking or flanges of web stiffeners with two No. 8 screws on each side. The minimum depth of the blocking shall be equal to the depth of the joist minus 2 inches (51 mm). The minimum length of the angle shall be equal to the depth of the joist minus 2 inches (51 mm).

**R505.3.3.4 Blocking at cantilevers.** Blocking shall be installed between every other joist over cantilever bearing supports in accordance with Figure R505.3.1(4), R505.3.1(5) or R505.3.1(6). Blocking shall consist of C-shape or track section with minimum thickness of 33 mils (0.84 mm). Blocking shall be fastened to each adjacent joist through bent web of blocking, 33 mil clip angle or flange of web stiffener with two No.8 screws at each end. The depth of the blocking shall be equal to the depth of the joist. The minimum length of the angle shall be equal to the depth of the joist minus 2 inches (51 mm). Blocking shall be fastened through the floor sheathing and to the support with three No.8 screws (top and bottom).

**R505.3.4 Bearing stiffeners.** Bearing stiffeners shall be installed at each joist bearing location in accordance with this section, except for joists lapped over an interior support not carrying a load-bearing wall above. Floor joists supporting jamb studs with multiple members shall have two bearing stiffeners in accordance with Figure R505.3.4(1). Bearing stiffeners shall be fabricated from a C-shaped, track or clip angle member in accordance with the one of following:

1. C-shaped bearing stiffeners:

   1.1. Where the joist is not carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be a minimum 33 mil (0.84 mm) thickness.

1.2. Where the joist is carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be at least the same designation thickness as the wall stud above.

2. Track bearing stiffeners:

2.1. Where the joist is not carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be a minimum 43 mil (1.09 mm) thickness.

2.2. Where the joist is carrying a load-bearing wall above, the bearing stiffener shall be at least one designation thickness greater than the wall stud above.

3. Clip angle bearing stiffeners: Where the clip angle bearing stiffener is fastened to both the web of the member it is stiffening and an adjacent rim track using the fastener pattern shown in Figure R505.3.4(2), the bearing stiffener shall be a minimum 2-inch by 2-inch (51 mm by 51 mm) angle sized in accordance with Tables R505.3.4(1),R505.3.4(2),R505.3.4(3), and R505.3.4(4).

The minimum length of a bearing stiffener shall be the depth of member being stiffened minus $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm). Each bearing stiffener shall be fastened to the web of the member it is stiffening as shown in Figure R505.3.4(2). Each clip angle bearing stiffener shall also be fastened to the web of the adjacent rim track using the fastener pattern shown in Figure R505.3.4(2). No. 8 screws shall be used for C-shaped and track members of any thickness and for clip angle members with a designation thickness less than or equal to 54. No. 10 screws shall be used for clip angle members with a designation thickness greater than 54.

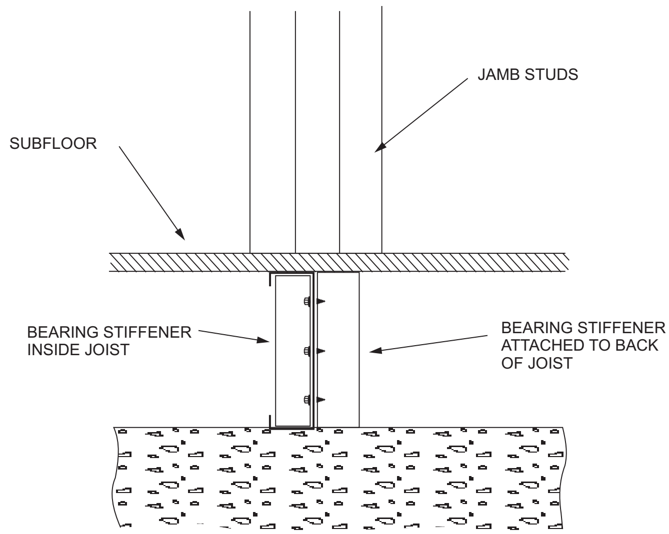



**FIGURE R505.3.4(1)**
**BEARING STIFFENERS UNDER JAMB STUDS**

**TABLE R505.3.4(1)**
**CLIP ANGLE BEARING STIFFENERS**
**(20 psf equivalent snow load)**

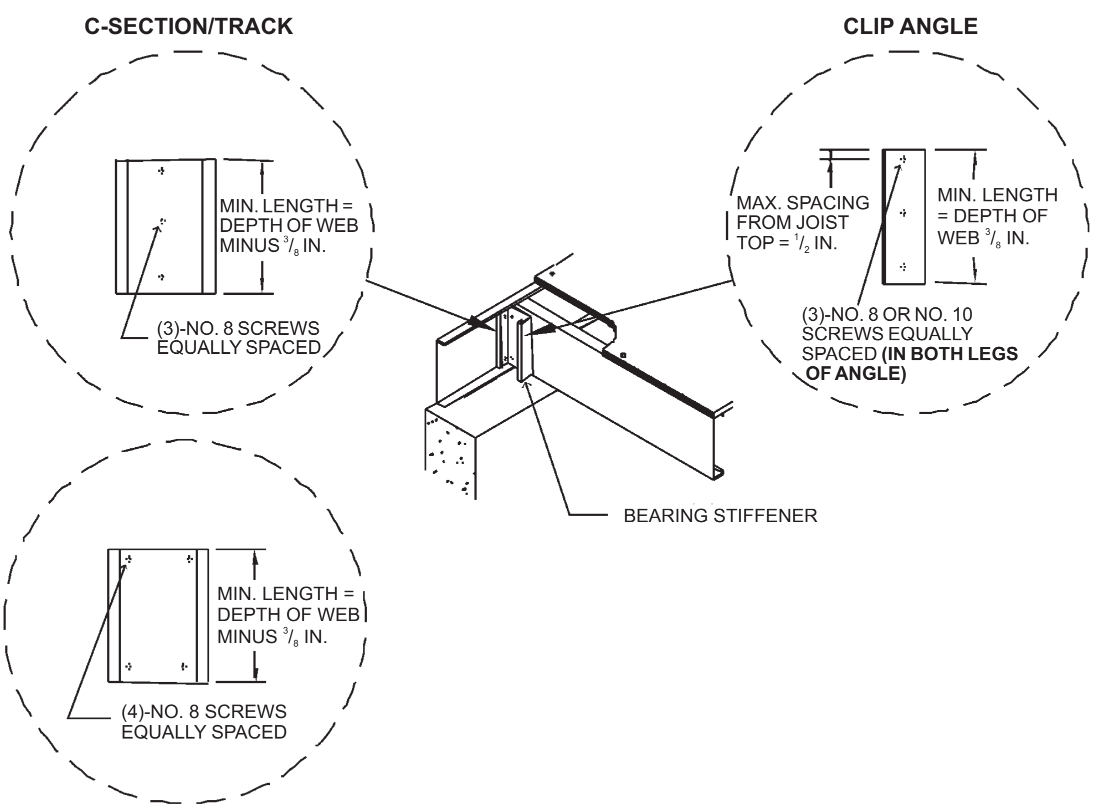
| | MINIMUM THICKNESS (mils) OF 2-INCH × 2-INCH (51 mm × 51 mm) CLIP ANGLE | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Top floor | | | | Bottom floor in 2 story<br>Middle floor in 3 story | | | | Bottom floor in 3 story | | | |
| | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | |
| JOIST DESIGNATION | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 |
| 800S162-33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — |
| 800S162-43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| 800S162-54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — |
| 800S162-68 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 97 | 97 | — |
| 800S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 97 |
| 1000S162-43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — |
| 1000S162-68 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 68 | 97 | — |
| 1200S162-43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa..

**TABLE R505.3.4(2)**
**CLIP ANGLE BEARING STIFFENERS**
**(30 psf equivalent snow load)**

| JOIST DESIGNATION | MINIMUM THICKNESS (mils) OF 2-INCH × 2 INCH (51 mm × 51 mm) CLIP ANGLE | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Top floor | | | | Bottom floor in 2 story<br>Middle floor in 3 story | | | | Bottom floor in 3 story | | | |
| | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | |
| | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 |
| 800S162-33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — |
| 800S162-43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — |
| 800S162-54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — |
| 800S162-68 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — |
| 800S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 68 | 97 |
| 1000S162-43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — | 97 | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 97 | — | — |
| 1200S162-43 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | — | 97 | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.4(2)**
**BEARING STIFFENER**

**TABLE R505.3.4(3)**
**CLIP ANGLE BEARING STIFFENERS**
**(50 psf equivalent snow load)**

| JOIST DESIGNATION | MINIMUM THICKNESS (mils) OF 2-INCH × 2-INCH (51 mm × 51 mm) CLIP ANGLE | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Top floor | | | | Bottom floor in 2 story Middle floor in 3 story | | | | Bottom floor in 3 story | | | |
| | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | |
| | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 |
| 800S162-33 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — |
| 800S162-43 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — |
| 800S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 97 | — |
| 1000S162-43 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | 97 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-43 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | — | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-97 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

**TABLE R505.3.4(4)**
**CLIP ANGLE BEARING STIFFENERS**
**(70 psf equivalent snow load)**

| JOIST DESIGNATION | MINIMUM THICKNESS (mils) OF 2-INCH × 2-INCH (51 mm × 51 mm) CLIP ANGLE | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Top floor | | | | Bottom floor in 2 story Middle floor in 3 story | | | | Bottom floor in 3 story | | | |
| | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | | Joist spacing (inches) | | | |
| | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 | 12 | 16 | 19.2 | 24 |
| 800S162-33 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-43 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-54 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-97 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — |
| 1000S162-43 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | — | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-68 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-43 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |

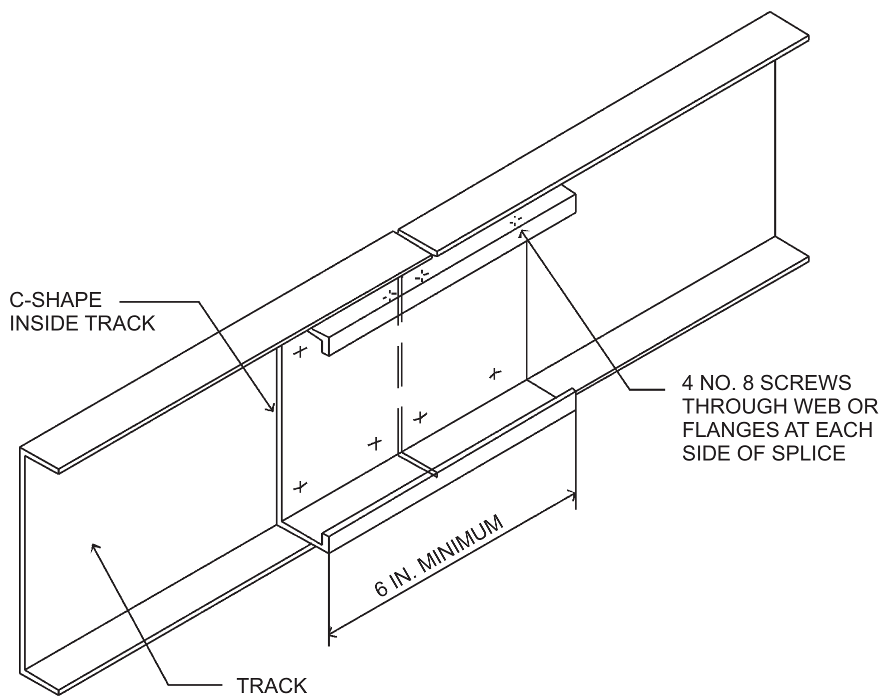
For SI: 1 mil 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

**R505.3.5 Cutting and notching.** Flanges and lips of load-bearing cold-formed steel floor framing members shall not be cut or notched.

**R505.3.6 Floor cantilevers.** Floor cantilevers for the top floor of a two- or three-story building or the first floor of a one-story building shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm). Cantilevers, not exceeding 24 inches (610 mm) and supporting two stories and roof (i.e., first floor of a two-story building), shall also be permitted provided that all cantilevered joists are doubled (nested or back-to-back). The doubled cantilevered joists shall extend a minimum of 6 feet (1829 mm) toward the inside and shall be fastened with a minimum of two No.8 screws spaced at 24 inches (610 mm) on center through the webs (for back-to-back) or flanges (for nested joists).

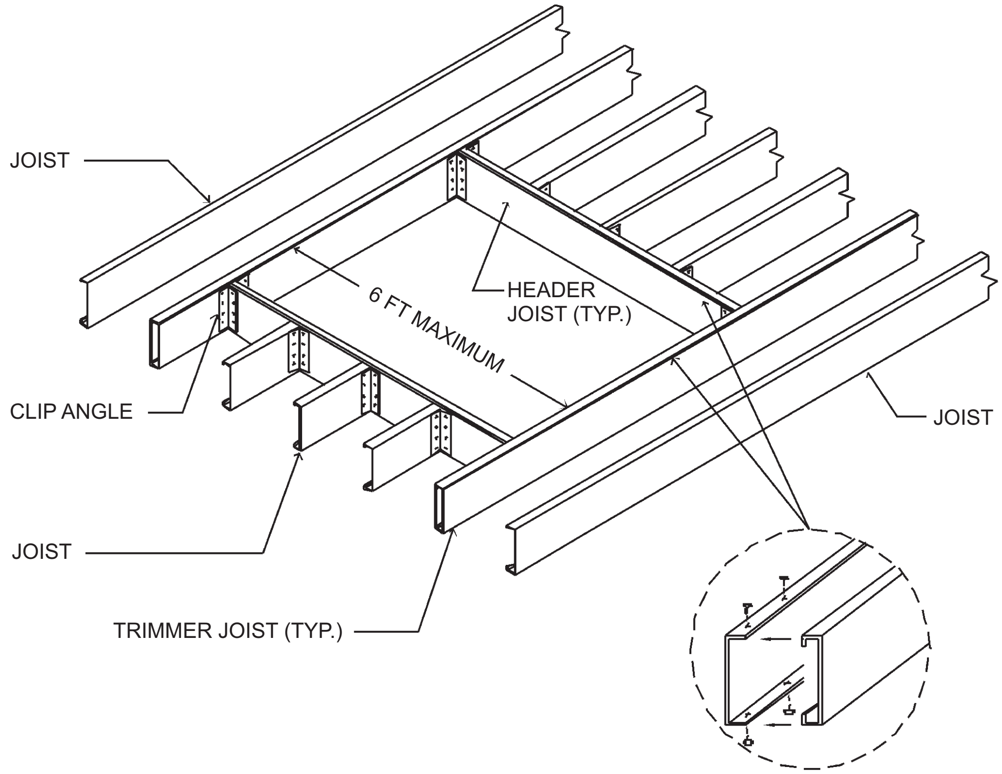
**R505.3.7 Splicing.** Joists and other structural members shall not be spliced. Splicing of tracks shall conform to Figure R505.3.7.

**R505.3.8 Framing of floor openings.** Openings in floors shall be framed with header and trimmer joists. Header joist spans shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) or 8 feet (2438 mm) in length in accordance with Figure R505.3.8(1) or R505.3.8(2), respectively. Header and trimmer joists shall be fabricated from joist and track members, having a minimum size and thickness at least equivalent to the adjacent floor joists and shall be installed in accordance with Figures R505.3.8(1), R505.3.8(2), R505.3.8(3), and R505.3.8(4). Each header joist shall be connected to trimmer joists with four 2-inch-by-2-inch (51mm by 51 mm) clip angles. Each clip angle shall be fastened to both the header and trimmer joists with four No. 8 screws, evenly spaced, through each leg of the clip angle. The clip angles shall have a thickness not less than that of the floor joist. Each track section for a built-up header or trimmer joist shall extend the full length of the joist (continuous).



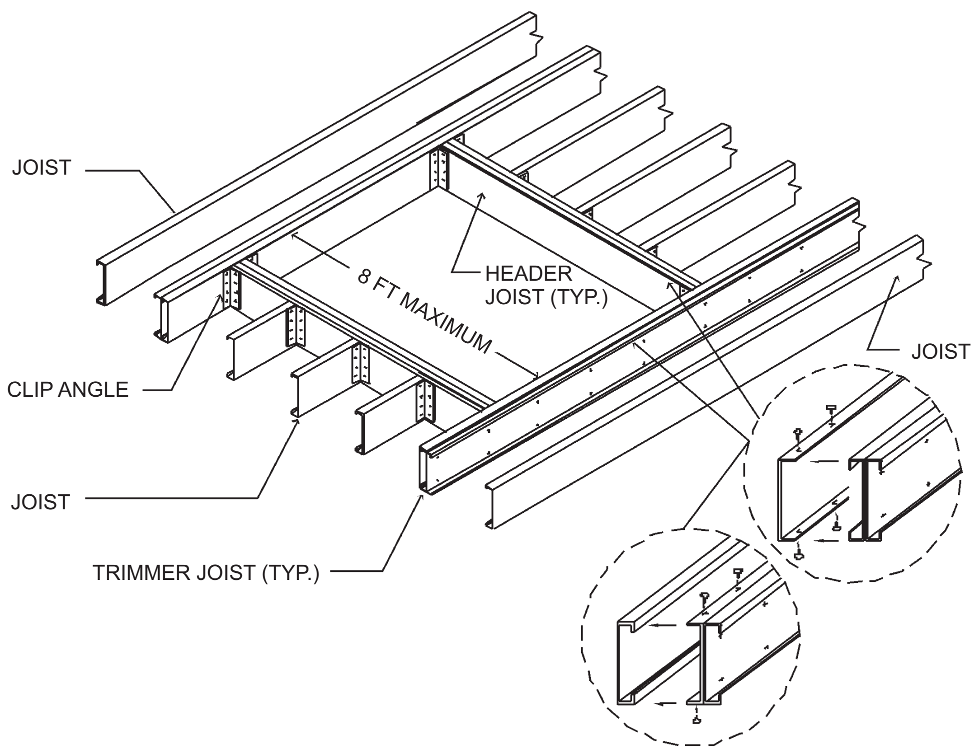

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.7**
**TRACK SPLICE**



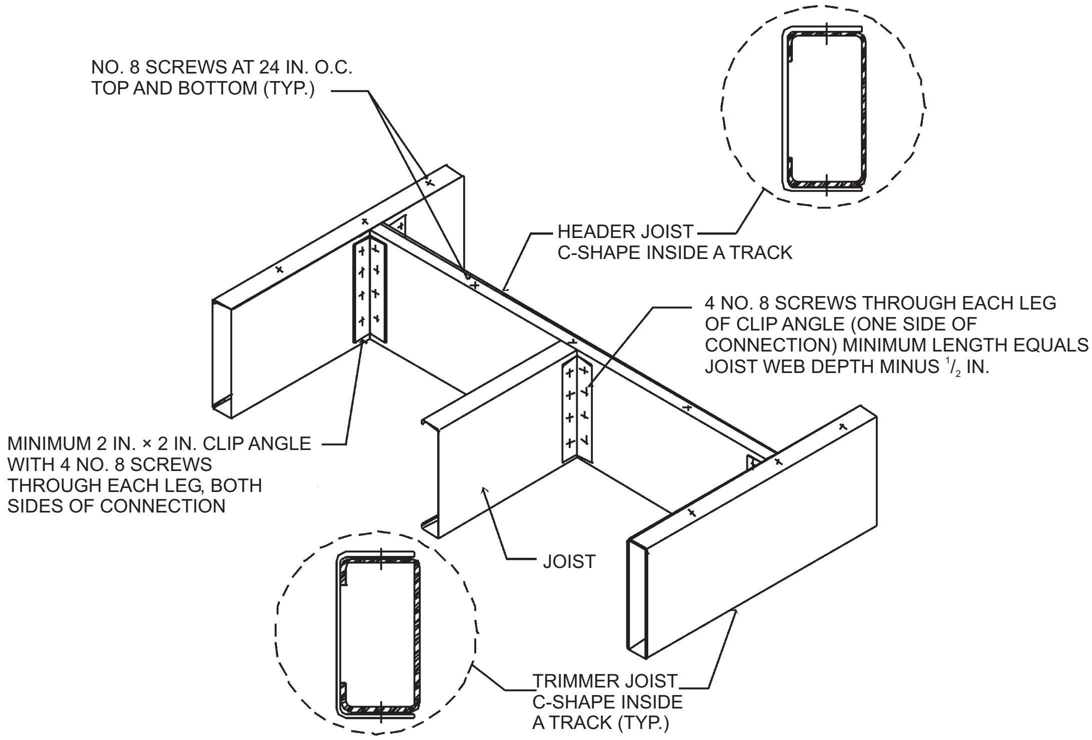

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.8(1)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION: 6-FOOT FLOOR OPENING**



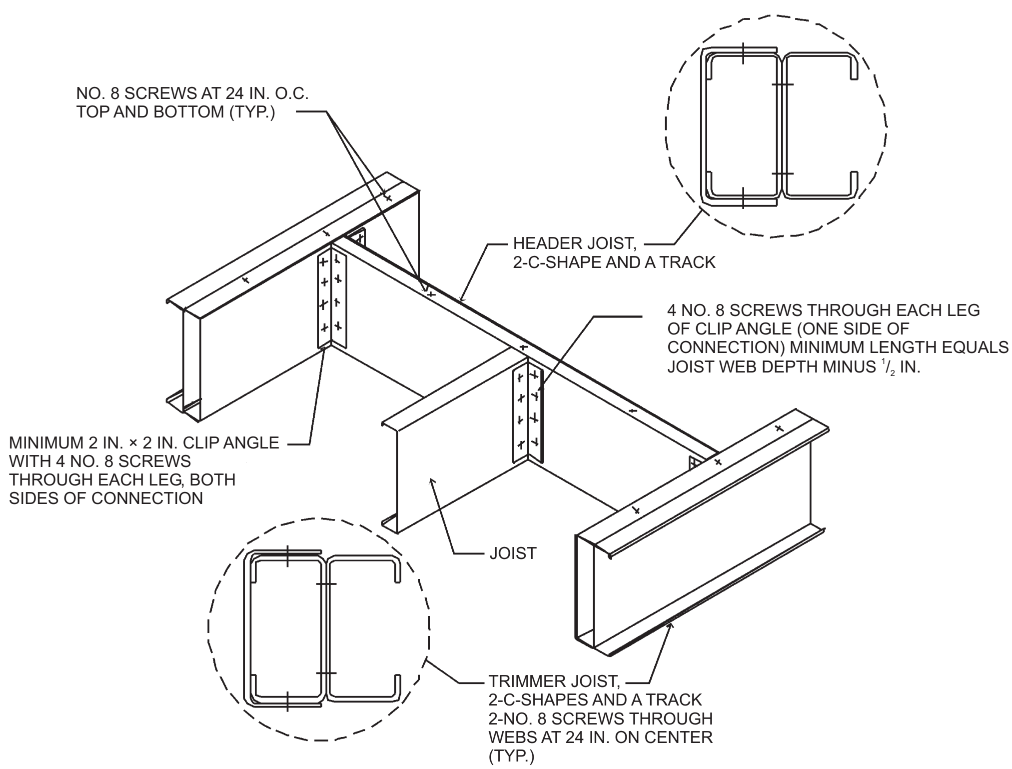

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.8(2)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION: 8-FOOT FLOOR OPENING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.8(3)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION:**
**FLOOR HEADER TO TRIMMER CONNECTION—6-FOOT OPENING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R505.3.8(4)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR CONSTRUCTION:**
**FLOOR HEADER TO TRIMMER CONNECTION—8-FOOT OPENING**

## SECTION R506
## CONCRETE FLOORS (ON GROUND)

**R506.1 General.** Concrete slab-on-ground floors shall be a minimum 3.5 inches (89 mm) thick (for expansive soils, see Section R403.1.8). The specified compressive strength of concrete shall be as set forth in Section R402.2.

**R506.2 Site preparation.** The area within the foundation walls shall have all vegetation, top soil and foreign material removed.

**R506.2.1 Fill.** Fill material shall be free of vegetation and foreign material. The fill shall be compacted to assure uniform support of the slab, and except where *approved*, the fill depths shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for clean sand or gravel and 8 inches (203 mm) for earth.

**R506.2.2 Base.** A 4-inch-thick (102 mm) base course consisting of clean graded sand, gravel, crushed stone or crushed blast-furnace slag passing a 2-inch (51 mm) sieve shall be placed on the prepared subgrade when the slab is below *grade*.

**Exception:** A base course is not required when the concrete slab is installed on well-drained or sand-gravel mixture soils classified as Group I according to the United Soil Classification System in accordance with Table R405.1.

**R506.2.3 Vapor retarder.** A 6 mil (0.006 inch; 152 μm) polyethylene or *approved* vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the concrete floor slab and the base course or the prepared subgrade where no base course exists.

**Exception:** The vapor retarder may be omitted:

1. From detached garages, utility buildings and other unheated *accessory structures*.
2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet (6.5 $m^2$) and carports.
3. From driveways, walks, patios and other flatwork not likely to be enclosed and heated at a later date.
4. Where *approved* by the *building official*, based on local site conditions.

**R506.2.4 Reinforcement support.** Where provided in slabs on ground, reinforcement shall be supported to remain in place from the center to upper one third of the slab for the duration of the concrete placement.

# CHAPTER 6

# WALL CONSTRUCTION

## SECTION R601 GENERAL

**R601.1 Application.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of all walls and partitions for all buildings.

**R601.2 Requirements.** Wall construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads imposed according to Section R301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting structural elements.

**R601.2.1 Compressible floor-covering materials.** Compressible floor-covering materials that compress more than $^1/_{32}$ inch (0.8 mm) when subjected to 50 pounds (23 kg) applied over 1 inch square (645 mm) of material and are greater than $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) in thickness in the uncompressed state shall not extend beneath walls, partitions or columns, which are fastened to the floor.

**R601.3 Vapor retarders.** Class I or II vapor retarders are required on the interior side of frame walls in Zones 5, 6, 7, 8 and Marine 4.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Basement walls*.
2. Below *grade* portion of any wall.
3. Construction where moisture or its freezing will not damage the materials.

**R601.3.1 Class III vapor retarders.** Class III vapor retarders shall be permitted where any one of the conditions in Table R601.3.1 is met.

**R601.3.2 Material vapor retarder class.** The vapor retarder class shall be based on the manufacturer's certified testing or a tested assembly.

The following shall be deemed to meet the class specified:

Class I: Sheet polyethylene, unperforated aluminum foil.

Class II: Kraft-faced fiberglass batts.

Class III: Latex or enamel paint.

**R601.3.3 Minimum clear air spaces and vented openings for vented cladding.** For the purposes of this section, vented cladding shall include the following minimum clear air spaces. Other openings with the equivalent vent area shall be permitted.

1. Vinyl lap or horizontal aluminum siding applied over a weather resistive barrier as specified in Table R703.4.
2. Brick veneer with a clear airspace as specified in Section R703.7.4.2.
3. Other *approved* vented claddings.

**TABLE R601.3.1**
**CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS**

| ZONE | CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR:[a] |
|---|---|
| Marine 4 | Vented cladding over OSB<br>Vented cladding over plywood<br>Vented cladding over fiberboard<br>Vented cladding over gypsum<br>Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 2.5 over 2 × 4 wall<br>Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 3.75 over 2 × 6 wall |
| 5 | Vented cladding over OSB<br>Vented cladding over plywood<br>Vented cladding over fiberboard<br>Vented cladding over gypsum<br>Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 5 over 2 × 4 wall<br>Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 7.5 over 2 × 6 wall |
| 6 | Vented cladding over fiberboard<br>Vented cladding over gypsum<br>Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 7.5 over 2 × 4 wall<br>Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 11.25 over 2 × 6 wall |
| 7 and 8 | Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 10 over 2 × 4 wall<br>Insulated sheathing with *R*-value ≥ 15 over 2 × 6 wall |

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/$m^3$.

a. Spray foam with a minimum density of 2 lb/$ft^3$ applied to the interior cavity side of OSB, plywood, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum is deemed to meet the insulating sheathing requirement where the spray foam *R*-value meets or exceeds the specified insulating sheathing *R*-value.

## SECTION R602
## WOOD WALL FRAMING

**R602.1 Identification.** Load-bearing dimension lumber for studs, plates and headers shall be identified by a grade mark of a lumber grading or inspection agency that has been *approved* by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade mark, a certification of inspection issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted.

**R602.1.1 End-jointed lumber.** *Approved* end-jointed lumber identified by a grade mark conforming to Section R602.1 may be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade.

**R602.1.2 Structural glued laminated timbers.** Glued laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI/AITC A190.1 and ASTM D 3737.

**R602.1.3 Structural log members.** Stress grading of structural log members of nonrectangular shape, as typically used in log buildings, shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3957. Such structural log members shall be identified by the grade mark of an *approved* lumber grading or inspection agency. In lieu of a grade mark on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade, issued by a lumber-grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section, shall be permitted to be accepted.

**R602.2 Grade.** Studs shall be a minimum No. 3, standard or stud grade lumber.

**Exception:** Bearing studs not supporting floors and nonbearing studs may be utility grade lumber, provided the studs are spaced in accordance with Table R602.3(5).

**R602.3 Design and construction.** Exterior walls of wood-frame construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Figures R602.3(1) and R602.3.(2) or in accordance with AF&PA's NDS. Components of exterior walls shall be fastened in accordance with Tables R602.3(1) through R602.3(4). Structural wall sheathing shall be fastened directly to structural framing members. Exterior wall coverings shall be capable of resisting the wind pressures listed in Table R301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure using Table R301.2(3). Wood structural panel sheathing used for exterior walls shall conform to the requirements of Table R602.3(3).

Studs shall be continuous from support at the sole plate to a support at the top plate to resist loads perpendicular to the wall. The support shall be a foundation or floor, ceiling or roof diaphragm or shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**Exception:** Jack studs, trimmer studs and cripple studs at openings in walls that comply with Tables R502.5(1) and R502.5(2).

**R602.3.1 Stud size, height and spacing.** The size, height and spacing of studs shall be in accordance with Table R602.3.(5).

**Exceptions:**

1. Utility grade studs shall not be spaced more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center, shall not support more than a roof and ceiling, and shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) in height for exterior walls and load-bearing walls or 10 feet (3048 mm) for interior nonload-bearing walls.
2. Studs more than 10 feet (3048 mm) in height which are in accordance with Table R602.3.1.

**R602.3.2 Top plate.** Wood stud walls shall be capped with a double top plate installed to provide overlapping at corners and intersections with bearing partitions. End joints in top plates shall be offset at least 24 inches (610 mm). Joints in plates need not occur over studs. Plates shall be not less than 2-inches (51 mm) nominal thickness and have a width at least equal to the width of the studs.

**Exception:** A single top plate may be installed in stud walls, provided the plate is adequately tied at joints, corners and intersecting walls by a minimum 3-inch-by-6-inch by a 0.036-inch-thick (76 mm by 152 mm by 0.914 mm) galvanized steel plate that is nailed to each wall or segment of wall by six 8d nails on each side, provided the rafters or joists are centered over the studs with a tolerance of no more than 1 inch (25 mm). The top plate may be omitted over lintels that are adequately tied to adjacent wall sections with steel plates or equivalent as previously described.

**R602.3.3 Bearing studs.** Where joists, trusses or rafters are spaced more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center and the bearing studs below are spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center, such members shall bear within 5 inches (127 mm) of the studs beneath.

**Exceptions:**

1. The top plates are two 2-inch by 6-inch (38 mm by 140 mm) or two 3-inch by 4-inch (64 mm by 89 mm) members.
2. A third top plate is installed.
3. Solid blocking equal in size to the studs is installed to reinforce the double top plate.

**R602.3.4 Bottom (sole) plate.** Studs shall have full bearing on a nominal 2-by (51 mm) or larger plate or sill having a width at least equal to the width of the studs.

**R602.4 Interior load-bearing walls.** Interior load-bearing walls shall be constructed, framed and fireblocked as specified for exterior walls.

**R602.5 Interior nonbearing walls.** Interior nonbearing walls shall be permitted to be constructed with 2-inch-by-3-inch (51 mm by 76 mm) studs spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center or, when not part of a *braced wall line*, 2-inch-by-4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) flat studs spaced at 16 inches (406 mm) on center. Interior nonbearing walls shall be capped with at least a single top plate. Interior nonbearing walls shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section R602.8.

**TABLE R602.3(1)
FASTENER SCHEDULE FOR STRUCTURAL MEMBERS**

| ITEM | DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS | NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER[a, b, c] | SPACING OF FASTENERS |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Roof** | | | |
| 1 | Blocking between joists or rafters to top plate, toe nail | 3-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″) | — |
| 2 | Ceiling joists to plate, toe nail | 3-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″) | — |
| 3 | Ceiling joists not attached to parallel rafter, laps over partitions, face nail | 3-10d | — |
| 4 | Collar tie rafter, face nail or $1^1/_4''$ × 20 gage ridge strap | 3-10d (3″ × 0.128″) | — |
| 5 | Rafter to plate, toe nail | 2-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | — |
| 6 | Roof rafters to ridge, valley or hip rafters:<br>toe nail<br>face nail | <br>4-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″)<br>3-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | <br>—<br>— |
| **Wall** | | | |
| 7 | Built-up corner studs | 10d (3″ × 0.128″) | 24″ o.c. |
| 8 | Built-up header, two pieces with $^1/_2''$ spacer | 16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | 16″ o.c. along each edge |
| 9 | Continued header, two pieces | 16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | 16″ o.c. along each edge |
| 10 | Continuous header to stud, toe nail | 4-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″) | — |
| 11 | Double studs, face nail | 10d (3″ × 0.128″) | 24″ o.c. |
| 12 | Double top plates, face nail | 10d (3″ × 0.128″) | 24″ o.c. |
| 13 | Double top plates, minimum 24-inch offset of end joints, face nail in lapped area | 8-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | — |
| 14 | Sole plate to joist or blocking, face nail | 16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | 16″ o.c. |
| 15 | Sole plate to joist or blocking at braced wall panels | 3-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | 16″ o.c. |
| 16 | Stud to sole plate, toe nail | 3-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″)<br>or<br>2-16d $3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | —<br><br>— |
| 17 | Top or sole plate to stud, end nail | 2-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | — |
| 18 | Top plates, laps at corners and intersections, face nail | 2-10d (3″ × 0.128″) | — |
| 19 | 1″ brace to each stud and plate, face nail | 2-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″)<br>2 staples $1^3/_4''$ | —<br>— |
| 20 | 1″ × 6″ sheathing to each bearing, face nail | 2-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″)<br>2 staples $1^3/_4''$ | —<br>— |
| 21 | 1″ × 8″ sheathing to each bearing, face nail | 2-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″)<br>3 staples $1^3/_4''$ | —<br>— |
| 22 | Wider than 1″ × 8″ sheathing to each bearing, face nail | 3-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″)<br>4 staples $1^3/_4''$ | —<br>— |
| **Floor** | | | |
| 23 | Joist to sill or girder, toe nail | 3-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″) | — |
| 24 | 1″ × 6″ subfloor or less to each joist, face nail | 2-8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″)<br>2 staples $1^3/_4''$ | —<br>— |
| 25 | 2″ subfloor to joist or girder, blind and face nail | 2-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | — |
| 26 | Rim joist to top plate, toe nail (roof applications also) | 8d ($2^1/_2''$ × 0.113″) | 6″ o.c. |
| 27 | 2″ planks (plank & beam – floor & roof) | 2-16d ($3^1/_2''$ × 0.135″) | at each bearing |
| 28 | Built-up girders and beams, 2-inch lumber layers | 10d (3″ × 0.128″) | Nail each layer as follows: 32″ o.c. at top and bottom and staggered. Two nails at ends and at each splice. |
| 29 | Ledger strip supporting joists or rafters | 3-16d ($3^1/_2$" × 0.135″) | At each joist or rafter |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R602.3(1)—continued**
**FASTENER SCHEDULE FOR STRUCTURAL MEMBERS**

| ITEM | DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING MATERIALS | DESCRIPTION OF FASTENER[b, c, e] | SPACING OF FASTENERS Edges (inches)[i] | SPACING OF FASTENERS Intermediate supports[c, e] (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Wood structural panels, subfloor, roof and interior wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing** | | | | |
| 30 | $^3/_8$″ - $^1/_2$″ | 6d common (2″ × 0.113″) nail (subfloor wall)[j]<br>8d common ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.131″) nail (roof) | 6 | 12[g] |
| 31 | $^5/_{16}$″ - $^1/_2$″ | 6d common (2″ × 0.113″) nail (subfloor, wall)<br>8d common ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.131″) nail (roof)[f] | 6 | 12[g] |
| 32 | $^{19}/_{32}$″ - 1″ | 8d common nail ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.131″) | 6 | 12[g] |
| 33 | $1^1/_8$″ - $1^1/_4$″ | 10d common (3″ × 0.148″) nail or<br>8d ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.131″) deformed nail | 6 | 12 |
| **Other wall sheathing[h]** | | | | |
| 34 | $^1/_2$″ structural cellulosic fiberboard sheathing | $^1/_2$″ galvanized roofing nail, $^7/_{16}$″ crown or 1″ crown staple 16 ga., $1^1/_4$″ long | 3 | 6 |
| 35 | $^{25}/_{32}$″ structural cellulosic fiberboard sheathing | $1^3/_4$″ galvanized roofing nail, $^7/_{16}$″ crown or 1″ crown staple 16 ga., $1^1/_2$″ long | 3 | 6 |
| 36 | $^1/_2$″ gypsum sheathing[d] | $1^1/_2$″ galvanized roofing nail; staple galvanized, $1^1/_2$″ long; $1^1/_4$ screws, Type W or S | 7 | 7 |
| 37 | $^5/_8$″ gypsum sheathing[d] | $1^3/_4$″ glavanized roofing nail; staple galvanized, $1^5/_8$″ long; $1^5/_8$″ screws, Type W or S | 7 | 7 |
| **Wood structural panels, combination subfloor underlayment to framing** | | | | |
| 38 | $^3/_4$″ and less | 6d deformed (2″ × 0.120″) nail or<br>8d common ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.131″) nail | 6 | 12 |
| 39 | $^7/_8$″ - 1″ | 8d common ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.131″) nail or<br>8d deformed ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.120″) nail | 6 | 12 |
| 40 | $1^1/_8$″ - $1^1/_4$″ | 10d common (3″ × 0.148″) nail or<br>8d deformed ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.120″) nail | 6 | 12 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s; 1ksi = 6.895 MPa.

a. All nails are smooth-common, box or deformed shanks except where otherwise stated. Nails used for framing and sheathing connections shall have minimum average bending yield strengths as shown: 80 ksi for shank diameter of 0.192 inch (20d common nail), 90 ksi for shank diameters larger than 0.142 inch but not larger than 0.177 inch, and 100 ksi for shank diameters of 0.142 inch or less.

b. Staples are 16 gage wire and have a minimum $^7/_{16}$-inch on diameter crown width.

c. Nails shall be spaced at not more than 6 inches on center at all supports where spans are 48 inches or greater.

d. Four-foot-by-8-foot or 4-foot-by-9-foot panels shall be applied vertically.

e. Spacing of fasteners not included in this table shall be based on Table R602.3(2).

f. For regions having basic wind speed of 110 mph or greater, 8d deformed ($2^1/_2$″ × 0.120) nails shall be used for attaching plywood and wood structural panel roof sheathing to framing within minimum 48-inch distance from gable end walls, if mean roof height is more than 25 feet, up to 35 feet maximum.

g. For regions having basic wind speed of 100 mph or less, nails for attaching wood structural panel roof sheathing to gable end wall framing shall be spaced 6 inches on center. When basic wind speed is greater than 100 mph, nails for attaching panel roof sheathing to intermediate supports shall be spaced 6 inches on center for minimum 48-inch distance from ridges, eaves and gable end walls; and 4 inches on center to gable end wall framing.

h. Gypsum sheathing shall conform to ASTM C 1396 and shall be installed in accordance with GA 253. Fiberboard sheathing shall conform to ASTM C 208.

i. Spacing of fasteners on floor sheathing panel edges applies to panel edges supported by framing members and required blocking and at all floor perimeters only. Spacing of fasteners on roof sheathing panel edges applies to panel edges supported by framing members and required blocking. Blocking of roof or floor sheathing panel edges perpendicular to the framing members need not be provided except as required by other provisions of this code. Floor perimeter shall be supported by framing members or solid blocking.

**TABLE R602.3(2)**
**ALTERNATE ATTACHMENTS**

| NOMINAL MATERIAL THICKNESS (inches) | DESCRIPTION[a, b] OF FASTENER AND LENGTH (inches) | SPACING[c] OF FASTENERS Edges (inches) | SPACING[c] OF FASTENERS Intermediate supports (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Wood structural panels subfloor, roof and wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing[f]** | | | |
| up to $^1/_2$ | Staple 15 ga. $1^3/_4$ | 4 | 8 |
| | 0.097 - 0.099 Nail $2^1/_4$ | 3 | 6 |
| | Staple 16 ga. $1^3/_4$ | 3 | 6 |
| $^{19}/_{32}$ and $^5/_8$ | 0.113 Nail 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | Staple 15 and 16 ga. 2 | 4 | 8 |
| | 0.097 - 0.099 Nail $2^1/_4$ | 4 | 8 |
| $^{23}/_{32}$ and $^3/_4$ | Staple 14 ga. 2 | 4 | 8 |
| | Staple 15 ga. $1^3/_4$ | 3 | 6 |
| | 0.097 - 0.099 Nail $2^1/_4$ | 4 | 8 |
| | Staple 16 ga. 2 | 4 | 8 |
| 1 | Staple 14 ga. $2^1/_4$ | 4 | 8 |
| | 0.113 Nail $2^1/_4$ | 3 | 6 |
| | Staple 15 ga. $2^1/_4$ | 4 | 8 |
| | 0.097 - 0.099 Nail $2^1/_2$ | 4 | 8 |
| **NOMINAL MATERIAL THICKNESS (inches)** | **DESCRIPTION[a,b] OF FASTENER AND LENGTH (inches)** | **SPACING[c] OF FASTENERS Edges (inches)** | **SPACING[c] OF FASTENERS Body of panel[d] (inches)** |
| **Floor underlayment; plywood-hardboard-particleboard[f]** | | | |
| **Plywood** | | | |
| $^1/_4$ and $^5/_{16}$ | $1^1/_4$ ring or screw shank nail—minimum $12^1/_2$ ga. (0.099″) shank diameter | 3 | 6 |
| | Staple 18 ga., $^7/_8$, $^3/_{16}$ crown width | 2 | 5 |
| $^{11}/_{32}$, $^3/_8$, $^{15}/_{32}$, and $^1/_2$ | $1^1/_4$ ring or screw shank nail—minimum $12^1/_2$ ga. (0.099″) shank diameter | 6 | 8[e] |
| $^{19}/_{32}$, $^5/_8$, $^{23}/_{32}$ and $^3/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ ring or screw shank nail—minimum $12^1/_2$ ga. (0.099″) shank diameter | 6 | 8 |
| | Staple 16 ga. $1^1/_2$ | 6 | 8 |
| **Hardboard[f]** | | | |
| 0.200 | $1^1/_2$ long ring-grooved underlayment nail | 6 | 6 |
| | 4d cement-coated sinker nail | 6 | 6 |
| | Staple 18 ga., $^7/_8$ long (plastic coated) | 3 | 6 |
| **Particleboard** | | | |
| $^1/_4$ | 4d ring-grooved underlayment nail | 3 | 6 |
| | Staple 18 ga., $^7/_8$ long, $^3/_{16}$ crown | 3 | 6 |
| $^3/_8$ | 6d ring-grooved underlayment nail | 6 | 10 |
| | Staple 16 ga., $1^1/_8$ long, $^3/_8$ crown | 3 | 6 |
| $^1/_2$, $^5/_8$ | 6d ring-grooved underlayment nail | 6 | 10 |
| | Staple 16 ga., $1^5/_8$ long, $^3/_8$ crown | 3 | 6 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Nail is a general description and may be T-head, modified round head or round head.

b. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $^7/_{16}$-inch on diameter except as noted.

c. Nails or staples shall be spaced at not more than 6 inches on center at all supports where spans are 48 inches or greater. Nails or staples shall be spaced at not more than 12 inches on center at intermediate supports for floors.

d. Fasteners shall be placed in a grid pattern throughout the body of the panel.

e. For 5-ply panels, intermediate nails shall be spaced not more than 12 inches on center each way.

f. Hardboard underlayment shall conform to ANSI/AHA A135.4.

**TABLE R602.3(3)**
**REQUIREMENTS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL WALL SHEATHING USED TO RESIST WIND PRESSURES[a,b,c]**

| MINIMUM NAIL | | MINIMUM WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SPAN RATING | MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inches) | MAXIMUM WALL STUD SPACING (inches) | PANEL NAIL SPACING | | MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | Wind exposure category | | |
| Size | Penetration (inches) | | | | Edges (inches o.c.) | Field (inches o.c.) | B | C | D |
| 6d Common (2.0″ × 0.113″) | 1.5 | 24/0 | 3/8 | 16 | 6 | 12 | 110 | 90 | 85 |
| 8d Common (2.5″ × 0.131″) | 1.75 | 24/16 | 7/16 | 16 | 6 | 12 | 130 | 110 | 105 |
| | | | | 24 | 6 | 12 | 110 | 90 | 85 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Panel strength axis parallel or perpendicular to supports. Three-ply plywood sheathing with studs spaced more than 16 inches on center shall be applied with panel strength axis perpendicular to supports.

b. Table is based on wind pressures acting toward and away from building surfaces per Section R301.2. Lateral bracing requirements shall be in accordance with Section R602.10.

c. Wood Structural Panels with span ratings of Wall-16 or Wall-24 shall be permitted as an alternate to panels with a 24/0 span rating. Plywood siding rated 16 oc or 24 oc shall be permitted as an alternate to panels with a 24/16 span rating. Wall-16 and Plywood siding 16 oc shall be used with studs spaced a maximum of 16 inches on center.

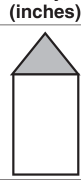
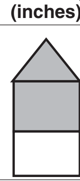
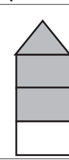
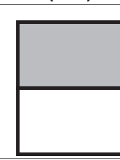
**TABLE R602.3(4)**
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR PARTICLEBOARD WALL SHEATHING[a]**

| THICKNESS (inch) | GRADE | STUD SPACING (inches) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | When siding is nailed to studs | When siding is nailed to sheathing |
| $^3/_8$ | M—1 Exterior glue | 16 | — |
| $^1/_2$ | M—2 Exterior glue | 16 | 16 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Wall sheathing not exposed to the weather. If the panels are applied horizontally, the end joints of the panel shall be offset so that four panels corners will not meet. All panel edges must be supported. Leave a $^1/_{16}$-inch gap between panels and nail no closer than $^3/_8$ inch from panel edges.

**TABLE R602.3(5)**
**SIZE, HEIGHT AND SPACING OF WOOD STUDS[a]**

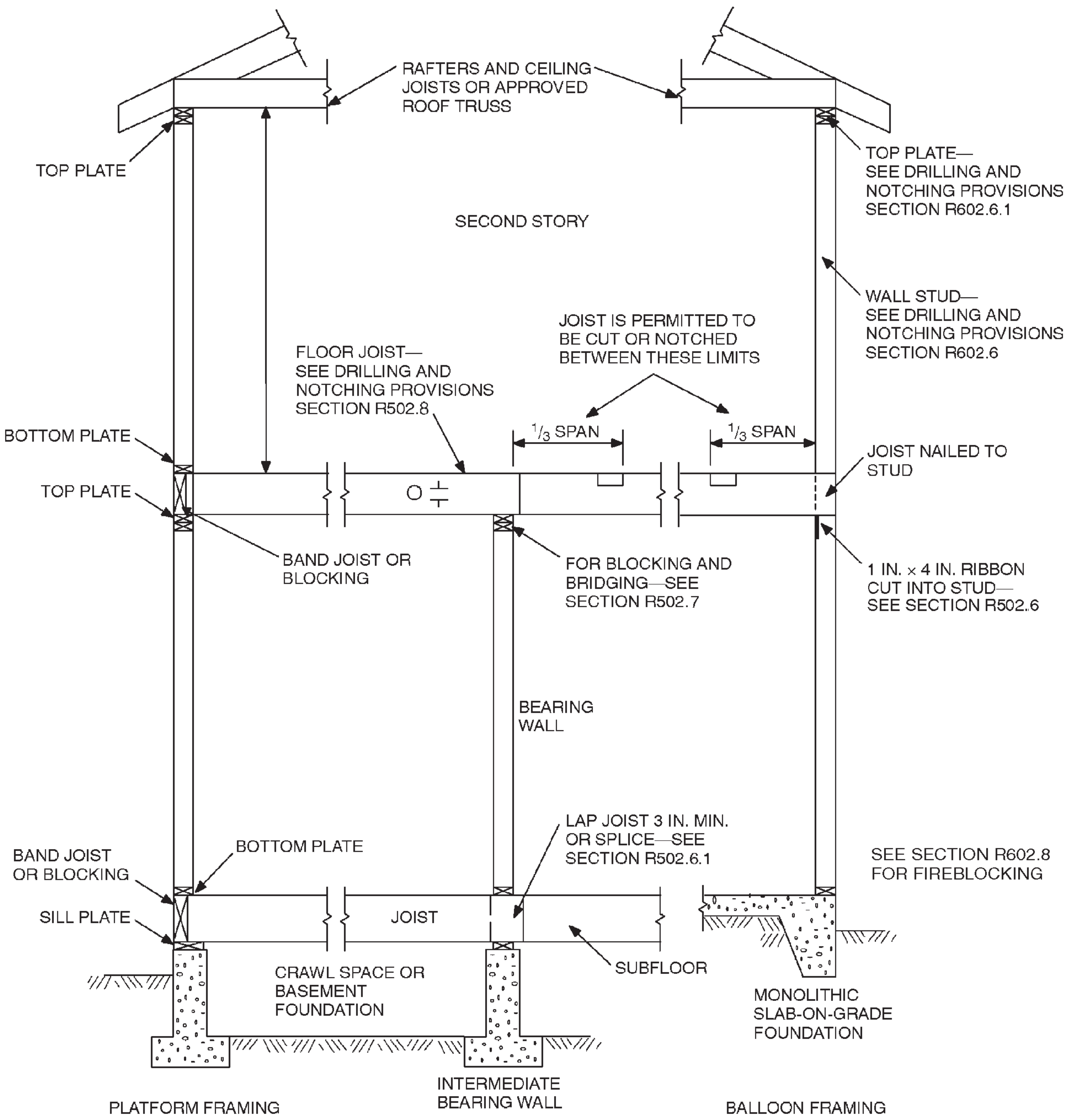
| STUD SIZE (inches) | BEARING WALLS | | | | | NONBEARING WALLS | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Laterally unsupported stud height[a] (feet) | Maximum spacing when supporting a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly, only (inches) | Maximum spacing when supporting one floor, plus a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly (inches) | Maximum spacing when supporting two floors, plus a roof-ceiling assembly or a habitable attic assembly (inches) | Maximum spacing when supporting one floor height[a] (feet) | Laterally unsupported stud height[a] (feet) | Maximum spacing (inches) |
| | |  |  |  |  | | |
| 2 × 3[b] | — | — | — | — | — | 10 | 16 |
| 2 × 4 | 10 | 24[c] | 16[c] | — | 24 | 14 | 24 |
| 3 × 4 | 10 | 24 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 14 | 24 |
| 2 × 5 | 10 | 24 | 24 | — | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 2 × 6 | 10 | 24 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 20 | 24 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.093 m$^2$.

a. Listed heights are distances between points of lateral support placed perpendicular to the plane of the wall. Increases in unsupported height are permitted where justified by analysis.

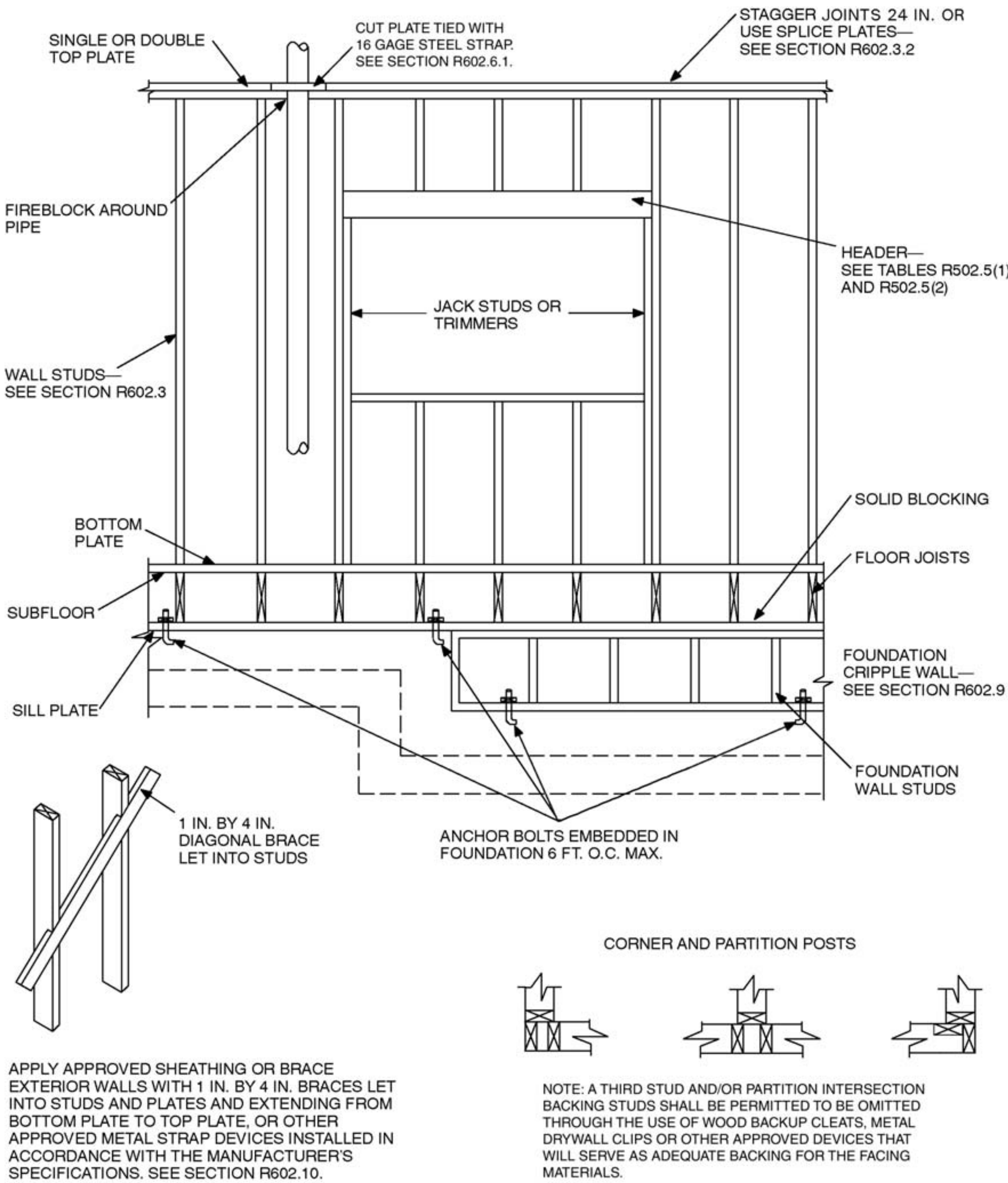
b. Shall not be used in exterior walls.

c. A habitable attic assembly supported by 2 × 4 studs is limited to a roof span of 32 feet. Where the roof span exceeds 32 feet, the wall studs shall be increased to 2 × 6 or the studs shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.3(1)**
**TYPICAL WALL, FLOOR AND ROOF FRAMING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R602.3(2)**
**FRAMING DETAILS**

**TABLE R602.3.1**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE LENGTH OF WOOD WALL STUDS EXPOSED TO WIND SPEEDS OF 100 mph OR LESS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B, C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$[b, c]**

| HEIGHT (feet) | ON-CENTER SPACING (inches) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 24 | 16 | 12 | 8 |
| **Supporting a roof only** | | | | |
| >10 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 |
| 12 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 |
| 14 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 4 |
| 16 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 4 |
| 18 | NA[a] | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 20 | NA[a] | NA[a] | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 24 | NA[a] | NA[a] | NA[a] | 2 × 6 |
| **Supporting one floor and a roof** | | | | |
| >10 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 |
| 12 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 4 |
| 14 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 16 | NA[a] | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 18 | NA[a] | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 20 | NA[a] | NA[a] | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 24 | NA[a] | NA[a] | NA[a] | 2 × 6 |
| **Supporting two floors and a roof** | | | | |
| >10 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 4 |
| 12 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 14 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 16 | NA[a] | NA[a] | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 18 | NA[a] | NA[a] | 2 × 6 | 2 × 6 |
| 20 | NA[a] | NA[a] | NA[a] | 2 × 6 |
| 22 | NA[a] | NA[a] | NA[a] | NA[a] |
| 24 | NA[a] | NA[a] | NA[a] | NA[a] |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

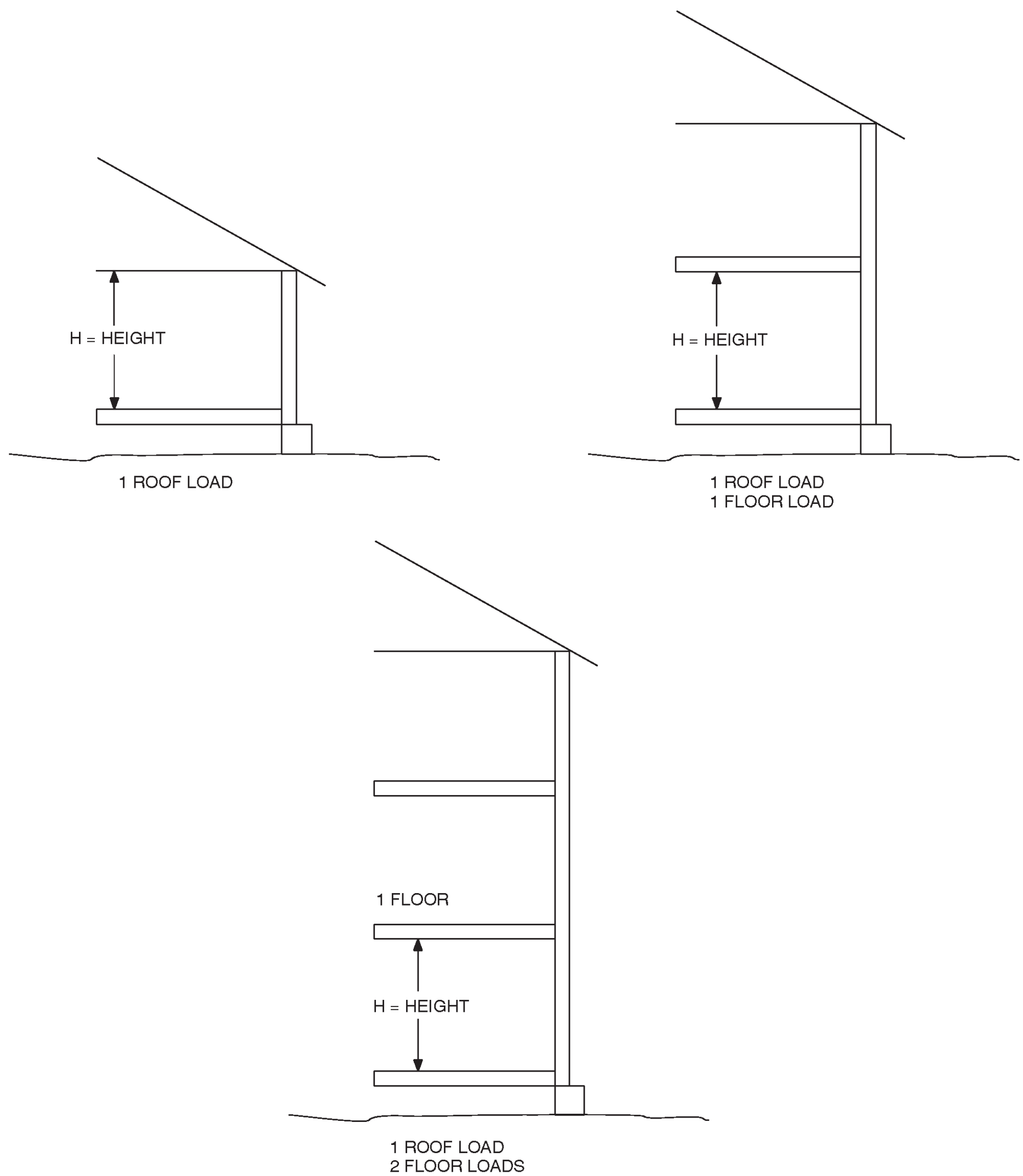
a. Design required.

b. Applicability of this table assumes the following: Snow load not exceeding 25 psf, $f_b$ not less than 1310 psi determined by multiplying the AF&PA NDS tabular base design value by the repetitive use factor, and by the size factor for all species except southern pine, E not less than $1.6 \times 10^6$ psi, tributary dimensions for floors and roofs not exceeding 6 feet, maximum span for floors and roof not exceeding 12 feet, eaves not over 2 feet in dimension and exterior sheathing. Where the conditions are not within these parameters, design is required.

c. Utility, standard, stud and No. 3 grade lumber of any species are not permitted.

*(continued)*

**TABLE R602.3.1—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE LENGTH OF WOOD WALL STUDS EXPOSED TO WIND SPEEDS OF 100 mph OR LESS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B, C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$**



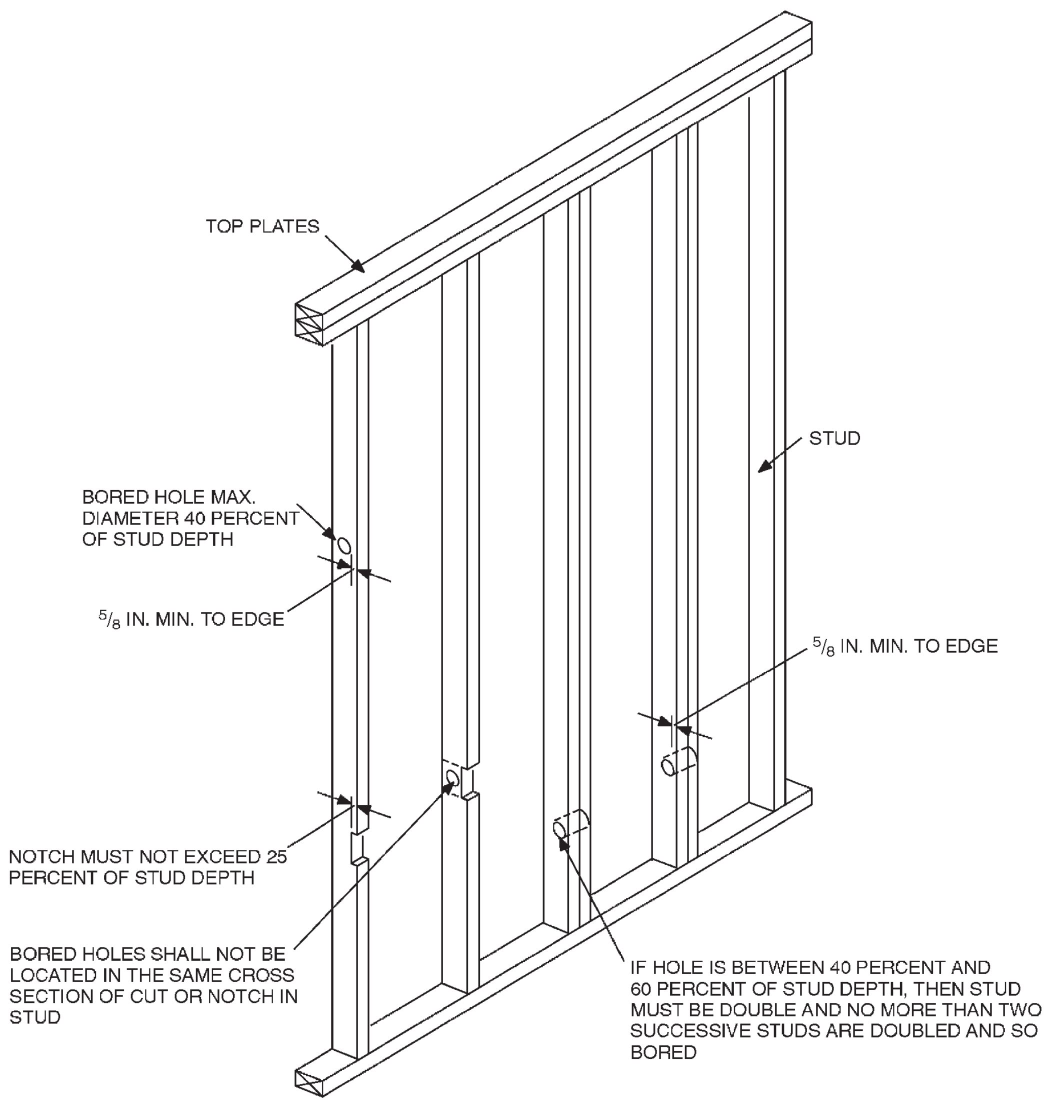
**R602.6 Drilling and notching–studs.** Drilling and notching of studs shall be in accordance with the following:

1. Notching. Any stud in an exterior wall or bearing partition may be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding 25 percent of its width. Studs in nonbearing partitions may be notched to a depth not to exceed 40 percent of a single stud width.
2. Drilling. Any stud may be bored or drilled, provided that the diameter of the resulting hole is no more than 60 percent of the stud width, the edge of the hole is no more than $^5/_8$ inch (16 mm) to the edge of the stud, and the hole is not located in the same section as a cut or notch. Studs located in exterior walls or bearing partitions drilled over 40 percent and up to 60 percent shall also be doubled with no more than two successive doubled studs bored. See Figures R602.6(1) and R602.6(2).

**Exception:** Use of *approved* stud shoes is permitted when they are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

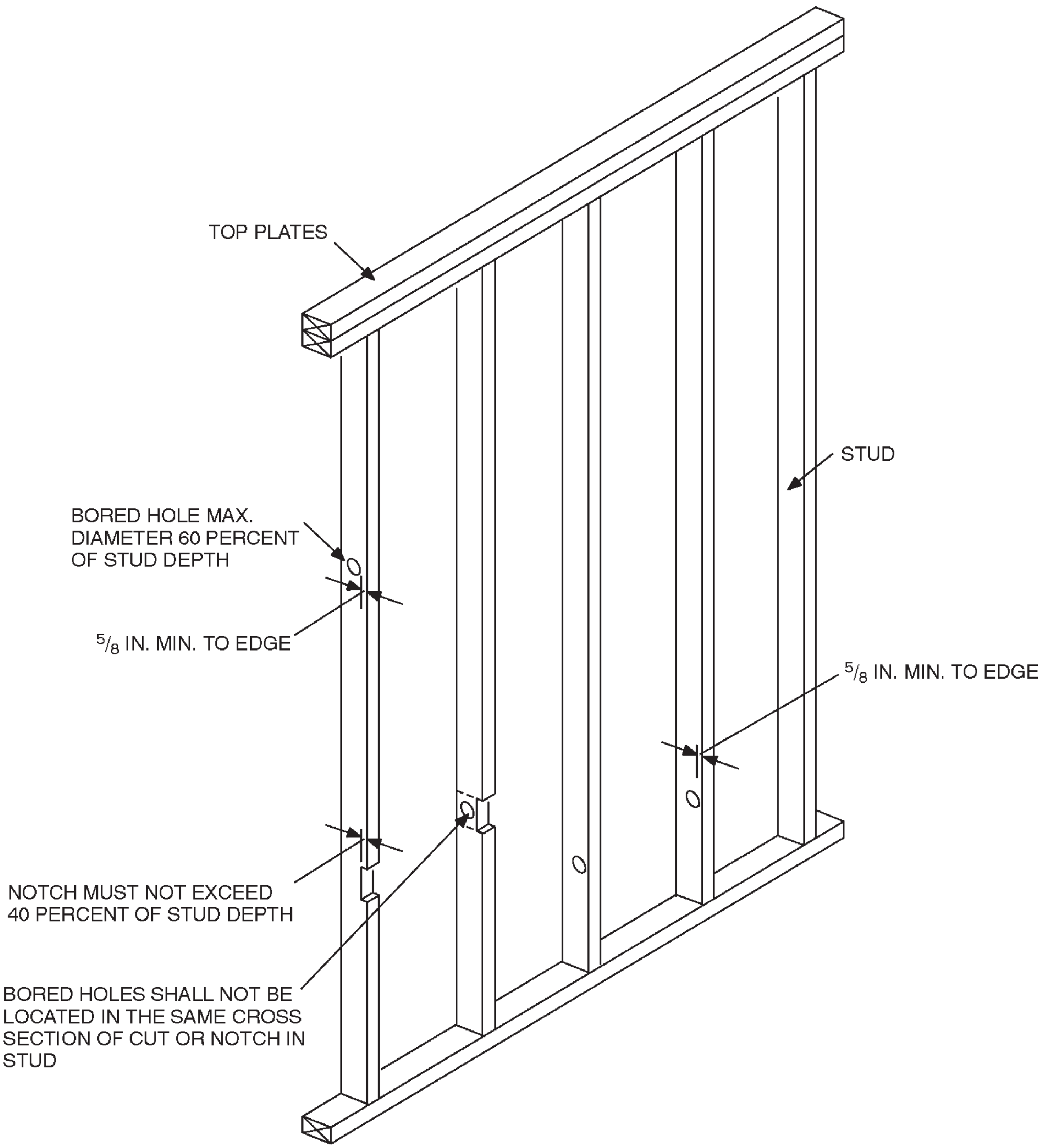
**R602.6.1 Drilling and notching of top plate.** When piping or ductwork is placed in or partly in an exterior wall or interior load-bearing wall, necessitating cutting, drilling or notching of the top plate by more than 50 percent of its width, a galvanized metal tie not less than 0.054 inch thick (1.37 mm) (16 ga) and $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) wide shall be fastened across and to the plate at each side of the opening with not less than eight 10d (0.148 inch diameter) having a minimum length of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) at each side or equivalent. The metal tie must extend a minimum of 6 inches past the opening. See Figure R602.6.1.

**Exception:** When the entire side of the wall with the notch or cut is covered by wood structural panel sheathing.



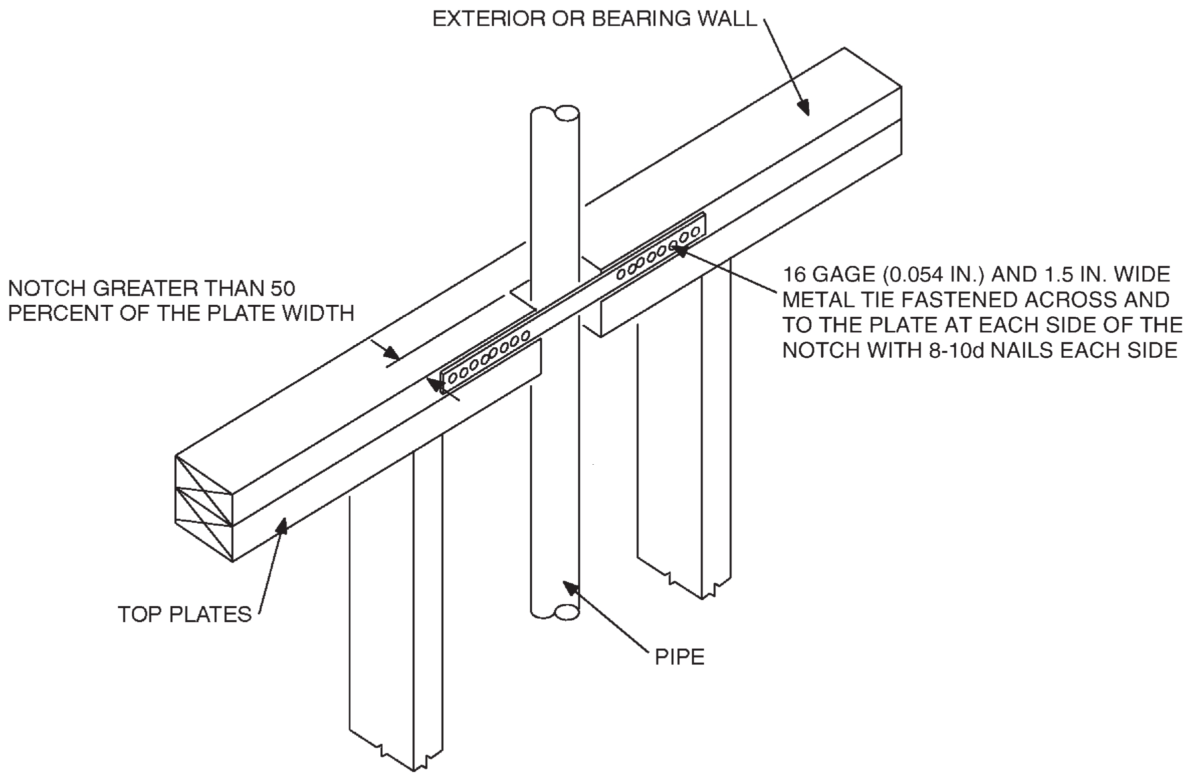

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
**NOTE:** Condition for exterior and bearing walls.

**FIGURE R602.6(1)**
**NOTCHING AND BORED HOLE LIMITATIONS FOR EXTERIOR WALLS AND BEARING WALLS**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.6(2)**
**NOTCHING AND BORED HOLE LIMITATIONS FOR INTERIOR NONBEARING WALLS**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.6.1**
**TOP PLATE FRAMING TO ACCOMMODATE PIPING**

**R602.7 Headers.** For header spans see Tables R502.5(1) and R502.5(2).

**R602.7.1 Wood structural panel box headers.** Wood structural panel box headers shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R602.7.2 and Table R602.7.2.

**R602.7.2 Nonbearing walls.** Load-bearing headers are not required in interior or exterior nonbearing walls. A single flat 2-inch-by-4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) member may be used as a header in interior or exterior nonbearing walls for openings up to 8 feet (2438 mm) in width if the vertical distance to the parallel nailing surface above is not more than 24 inches (610 mm). For such nonbearing headers, no cripples or blocking are required above the header.

**R602.8 Fireblocking required.** Fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with Section R302.11.

[W] **R602.9 ((~~Cripple~~)) Foundation cripple walls.** Foundation cripple walls shall be framed of studs not smaller than the studding above. When exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, such walls shall be framed of studs having the size required for an additional *story*.

Cripple walls supporting *bearing walls* or exterior walls or interior *braced wall panels* as required in Sections R403.1.2 and R602.10.7.1 with a stud height less than 14 inches (356 mm) shall be sheathed on at least one side with a wood structural panel that is fastened to both the top and bottom plates in accordance with Table R602.3(1), or the cripple walls shall be constructed of solid blocking. Cripple walls shall be supported on continuous *footings* or foundations.

**Exception:** Footings supporting cripple walls used to support interior *braced wall panels* as required in Sections R403.1.2 and R602.10.7.1 shall be continuous for the required length of the cripple wall and constructed beyond the cripple wall for a minimum distance of 4 inches (101.6 mm) and a maximum distance of the footing thickness. The footings extension is not required at intersections with other footings.

**R602.10 Wall bracing.** Buildings shall be braced in accordance with this section. Where a building, or portion thereof, does not comply with one or more of the bracing requirements in this section, those portions shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section R301.1.

**Exception:** Detached one- and two-family *dwellings* located in Seismic Design Category C are exempt from the seismic bracing requirements of this section. Wind speed provisions for bracing shall be applicable to detached one- and two-family *dwellings*.

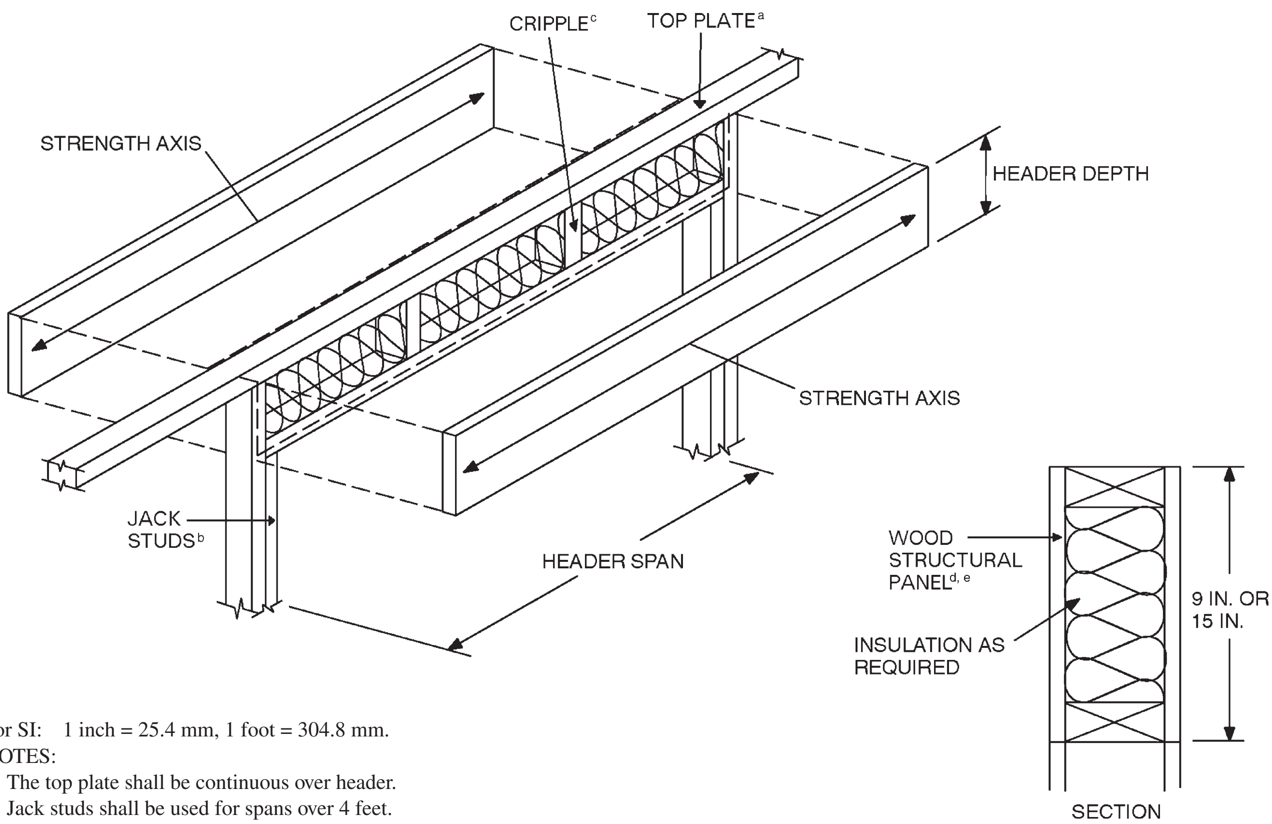
**TABLE R602.7.2**
**MAXIMUM SPANS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BOX HEADERS[a]**

| HEADER CONSTRUCTION[b] | HEADER DEPTH (inches) | HOUSE DEPTH (feet) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 24 | 26 | 28 | 30 | 32 |
| Wood structural panel—one side | 9<br>15 | 4<br>5 | 4<br>5 | 3<br>4 | 3<br>3 | —<br>3 |
| Wood structural panel—both sides | 9<br>15 | 7<br>8 | 5<br>8 | 5<br>7 | 4<br>7 | 3<br>6 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Spans are based on single story with clear-span trussed roof or two-story with floor and roof supported by interior-bearing walls.

b. See Figure R602.7.2 for construction details.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NOTES:

a. The top plate shall be continuous over header.

b. Jack studs shall be used for spans over 4 feet.

c. Cripple spacing shall be the same as for studs.

d. Wood structural panel faces shall be single pieces of $^{15}/_{32}$-inch-thick Exposure 1 (exterior glue) or thicker, installed on the interior or exterior or both sides of the header.

e. Wood structural panel faces shall be nailed to framing and cripples with 8d common or galvanized box nails spaced 3 inches on center, staggering alternate nails $^{1}/_{2}$ inch. Galvanized nails shall be hot-dipped or tumbled.

**FIGURE R602.7.2**
**TYPICAL WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BOX HEADER CONSTRUCTION**

**R602.10.1 Braced wall lines.** *Braced wall lines* shall be provided in accordance with this section. The length of a *braced wall line* shall be measured as the distance between the ends of the wall line. The end of a *braced wall line* shall be considered to be either:

1. The intersection with perpendicular exterior walls or projection thereof,
2. The intersection with perpendicular *braced wall lines*.

The end of the *braced wall line* shall be chosen such that the maximum length results.

**R602.10.1.1 Braced wall panels.** *Braced wall panels* shall be constructed in accordance with the intermittent bracing methods specified in Section R602.10.2, or the continuous sheathing methods specified in Sections R602.10.4 and R602.10.5. Mixing of bracing method shall be permitted as follows:

1. Mixing bracing methods from *story* to *story* is permitted.
2. Mixing bracing methods from *braced wall line* to *braced wall line* within a *story* is permitted, except that continuous sheathing methods shall conform to the additional requirements of Sections R602.10.4 and R602.10.5.
3. Mixing bracing methods within a *braced wall line* is permitted only in Seismic Design Categories A and B, and detached *dwellings* in Seismic Design Category C. The length of required bracing for the *braced wall line* with mixed sheathing types shall have the higher bracing length requirement, in accordance with Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2), of all types of bracing used.

<u>[W]</u> **R602.10.1.2 Length of bracing.** The length of bracing along each *braced wall line* shall be the greater of that required by the design wind speed and *braced wall line* spacing in accordance with Table R602.10.1.2(1) as adjusted by the factors in the footnotes or the Seismic Design Category and *braced wall line* length in accordance with Table R602.10.1.2(2) as adjusted by the factors in Table R602.10.1.2(3)<u>.</u> ((~~or braced~~)) <u>Braced</u> *wall panel* location<u>s shall comply with the</u> requirements of Section R602.10.1.4. Only walls that are parallel to the *braced wall line* shall be counted toward the bracing requirement of that line, except angled walls shall be counted in accordance with Section R602.10.1.3. In no case shall the minimum total length of bracing in a *braced wall line*, after all adjustments have been taken, be less than 48 inches (1219 mm) total.

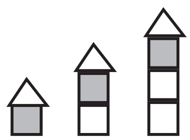
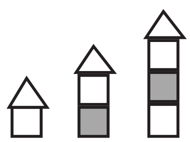
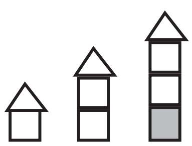
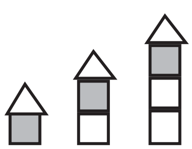
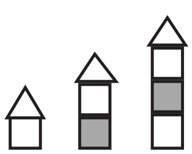
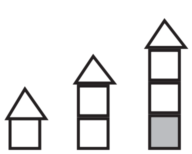
**R602.10.1.2.1 Braced wall panel uplift load path.** *Braced wall panels* located at exterior walls that support roof rafters or trusses (including stories below top *story*) shall have the framing members connected in accordance with one of the following:

1. Fastening in accordance with Table R602.3(1) where:
   1.1. The basic wind speed does not exceed 90 mph (40 m/s), the wind exposure category is B, the roof pitch is 5:12 or greater, and the roof span is 32 feet (9754 mm) or less, or
   1.2. The net uplift value at the top of a wall does not exceed 100 plf. The net uplift value shall be determined in accordance with Section R802.11 and shall be permitted to be reduced by 60 plf (86 N/mm) for each full wall above.
2. Where the net uplift value at the top of a wall exceeds 100 plf (146 N/mm), installing *approved* uplift framing connectors to provide a continuous load path from the top of the wall to the foundation. The net uplift value shall be as determined in Item 1.2 above.
3. Bracing and fasteners designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist combined uplift and shear forces.

**R602.10.1.3 Angled corners.** At corners, *braced wall lines* shall be permitted to angle out of plane up to 45 degrees with a maximum diagonal length of 8 feet (2438 mm). When determining the length of bracing required, the length of each *braced wall line* shall be determined as shown in Figure R602.10.1.3. The placement of bracing for the *braced wall lines* shall begin at the point where the *braced wall line*, which contains the angled wall adjoins the adjacent *braced wall line* (Point A as shown in Figure R602.10.1.3). Where an angled corner is constructed at an angle equal to 45 degrees (0.79 rad) and the diagonal length is no more than 8 feet (2438 mm), the angled wall may be considered as part of either of the adjoining *braced wall lines*, but not both. Where the diagonal length is greater than 8 feet (2438 mm), it shall be considered its own *braced wall line* and be braced in accordance with Section R602.10.1 and methods in Section R602.10.2.

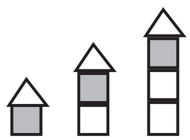
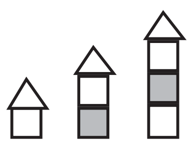
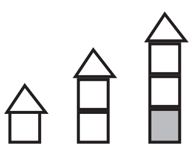
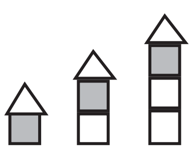
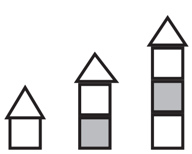
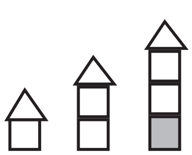
**R602.10.1.4 Braced wall panel location.** *Braced wall panels* shall be located in accordance with Figure R602.10.1.4(1). *Braced wall panels* shall be located not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center and shall be permitted to begin no more than 12.5 feet (3810 mm) from the end of a *braced wall line* in accordance with Section R602.10.1 and Figure R602.10.1.4(2). The total combined distance from each end of a *braced wall line* to the outermost *braced wall panel* or panels in the line shall not exceed 12.5 feet (3810 mm). *Braced wall panels* may be offset out-of-plane up to 4 feet (1219 mm) from the designated *braced wall line* provided that the total out-to-out offset of *braced wall panels* in a *braced wall line* is not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in accordance with Figures R602.10.1.4(3) and R602.10.1.4(4). All *braced wall panels* within a *braced wall line* shall be permitted to be offset from the designated *braced wall line*.

**TABLE R602.10.1.2(1)[a, b, c, d, e]**
**BRACING REQUIREMENTS BASED ON WIND SPEED**
**(as a function of braced wall line spacing)**

| EXPOSURE CATEGORY B, 30 FT MEAN ROOF HEIGHT, 10 FT EAVE TO RIDGE HEIGHT, 10 FT WALL HEIGHT, 2 BRACED WALL LINES | | | MINIMUM TOTAL LENGTH (feet) OF BRACED WALL PANELS REQUIRED ALONG EACH BRACED WALL LINE | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Basic Wind Speed (mph) | Story Location | Braced Wall Line Spacing (feet) | Method LIB[f, h] | Method GB (double sided)[g] | Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS[f, i] | Continuous Sheathing |
| ≤ 85 (mph) |  | 10 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 1.5 |
| | | 20 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 3.5 | 3.0 |
| | | 30 | 8.5 | 8.5 | 5.0 | 4.5 |
| | | 40 | 11.5 | 11.5 | 6.5 | 5.5 |
| | | 50 | 14.0 | 14.0 | 8.0 | 7.0 |
| | | 60 | 16.5 | 16.5 | 9.5 | 8.0 |
| |  | 10 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 3.5 | 3.0 |
| | | 20 | 11.5 | 11.5 | 6.5 | 5.5 |
| | | 30 | 16.5 | 16.5 | 9.5 | 8.0 |
| | | 40 | 21.5 | 21.5 | 12.5 | 10.5 |
| | | 50 | 26.5 | 26.5 | 15.0 | 13.0 |
| | | 60 | 31.5 | 31.5 | 18.0 | 15.5 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 9.0 | 5.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 20 | NP | 17.0 | 10.0 | 8.5 |
| | | 30 | NP | 24.5 | 14.0 | 12.0 |
| | | 40 | NP | 32.0 | 18.0 | 15.5 |
| | | 50 | NP | 39.0 | 22.5 | 19.0 |
| | | 60 | NP | 46.5 | 26.5 | 22.5 |
| ≤ 90 (mph) |  | 10 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 |
| | | 20 | 7.0 | 7.0 | 4.0 | 3.5 |
| | | 30 | 9.5 | 9.5 | 5.5 | 5.0 |
| | | 40 | 12.5 | 12.5 | 7.5 | 6.0 |
| | | 50 | 15.5 | 15.5 | 9.0 | 7.5 |
| | | 60 | 18.5 | 18.5 | 10.5 | 9.0 |
| |  | 10 | 7.0 | 7.0 | 4.0 | 3.5 |
| | | 20 | 13.0 | 13.0 | 7.5 | 6.5 |
| | | 30 | 18.5 | 18.5 | 10.5 | 9.0 |
| | | 40 | 24.0 | 24.0 | 14.0 | 12.0 |
| | | 50 | 29.5 | 29.5 | 17.0 | 14.5 |
| | | 60 | 35.0 | 35.0 | 20.0 | 17.0 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 10.5 | 6.0 | 5.0 |
| | | 20 | NP | 19.0 | 11.0 | 9.5 |
| | | 30 | NP | 27.5 | 15.5 | 13.5 |
| | | 40 | NP | 35.5 | 20.5 | 17.5 |
| | | 50 | NP | 44.0 | 25.0 | 21.5 |
| | | 60 | NP | 52.0 | 30.0 | 25.5 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R602.10.1.2(1)[a, b, c, d, e]—continued**
**BRACING REQUIREMENTS BASED ON WIND SPEED**
**(as a function of braced wall line spacing)**

| EXPOSURE CATEGORY B, 30 FT MEAN ROOF HEIGHT, 10 FT EAVE TO RIDGE HEIGHT, 10 FT WALL HEIGHT, 2 BRACED WALL LINES | | | MINIMUM TOTAL LENGTH (feet) OF BRACED WALL PANELS REQUIRED ALONG EACH BRACED WALL LINE | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Basic Wind Speed (mph) | Story Location | Braced wall Line Spacing (feet) | Method LIB[f, h] | Method GB (doubled sided)[g] | Method DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS[f, i] | Continuous Sheathing |
| ≤ 100 (mph) |  | 10 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 |
| | | 20 | 8.5 | 8.5 | 5.0 | 4.0 |
| | | 30 | 12.0 | 12.0 | 7.0 | 6.0 |
| | | 40 | 15.5 | 15.5 | 9.0 | 7.5 |
| | | 50 | 19.0 | 19.0 | 11.0 | 9.5 |
| | | 60 | 22.5 | 22.5 | 13.0 | 11.0 |
| |  | 10 | 8.5 | 8.5 | 5.0 | 4.5 |
| | | 20 | 16.0 | 16.0 | 9.0 | 8.0 |
| | | 30 | 23.0 | 23.0 | 13.0 | 11.0 |
| | | 40 | 29.5 | 29.5 | 17.0 | 14.5 |
| | | 50 | 36.5 | 36.5 | 21.0 | 18.0 |
| | | 60 | 43.5 | 43.5 | 25.0 | 21.0 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 12.5 | 7.5 | 6.0 |
| | | 20 | NP | 23.5 | 13.5 | 11.5 |
| | | 30 | NP | 34.0 | 19.5 | 16.5 |
| | | 40 | NP | 44.0 | 25.0 | 21.5 |
| | | 50 | NP | 54.0 | 31.0 | 26.5 |
| | | 60 | NP | 64.0 | 36.5 | 31.0 |
| ≤ 110 (mph) |  | 10 | 5.5 | 5.5 | 3.0 | 3.0 |
| | | 20 | 10.0 | 10.0 | 6.0 | 5.0 |
| | | 30 | 14.5 | 14.5 | 8.5 | 7.0 |
| | | 40 | 18.5 | 18.5 | 11.0 | 9.0 |
| | | 50 | 23.0 | 23.0 | 13.0 | 11.5 |
| | | 60 | 27.5 | 27.5 | 15.5 | 13.5 |
| |  | 10 | 10.5 | 10.5 | 6.0 | 5.0 |
| | | 20 | 19.0 | 19.0 | 11.0 | 9.5 |
| | | 30 | 27.5 | 27.5 | 16.0 | 13.5 |
| | | 40 | 36.0 | 36.0 | 20.5 | 17.5 |
| | | 50 | 44.0 | 44.0 | 25.5 | 21.5 |
| | | 60 | 52.5 | 52.5 | 30.0 | 25.5 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 15.5 | 9.0 | 7.5 |
| | | 20 | NP | 28.5 | 16.5 | 14.0 |
| | | 30 | NP | 41.0 | 23.5 | 20.0 |
| | | 40 | NP | 53.0 | 30.5 | 26.0 |
| | | 50 | NP | 65.5 | 37.5 | 32.0 |
| | | 60 | NP | 77.5 | 44.5 | 37.5 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R602.10.1.2(1)[a, b, c, d, e]—continued**
**BRACING REQUIREMENTS BASED ON WIND SPEED**
**(as a function of braced wall line spacing)**

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound force = 4.448 N.

a. Tabulated bracing lengths are based on Wind Exposure Category B, a 30-ft mean roof height, a 10-ft eave to ridge height, a 10-ft wall height, and two braced wall lines sharing load in a given plan direction on a given story level. Methods of bracing shall be as described in Sections R602.10.2, R602.10.4 and R602.10.5. Interpolation shall be permitted.

b. For other mean roof heights and exposure categories, the required bracing length shall be multiplied by the appropriate factor from the following table:

| NUMBER OF STORIES | EXPOSURE/HEIGHT FACTORS | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Exposure B | Exposure C | Exposure D |
| 1 | 1.0 | 1.2 | 1.5 |
| 2 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 1.6 |
| 3 | 1.0 | 1.4 | 1.7 |

c. For other roof-to-eave ridge heights, the required bracing length shall be multiplied by the appropriate factor from the following table: interpolation shall be permitted.

| SUPPORT CONDITION | ROOF EAVE-TO-RIDGE HEIGHT | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 5 ft or less | 10 ft | 15 ft | 20 ft |
| Roof only | 0.7 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 1.6 |
| Roof + floor | 0.85 | 1.0 | 1.15 | 1.3 |
| Roof + 2 floors | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.1 | NP |

d. For a maximum 9-foot wall height, multiplying the table values by 0.95 shall be permitted . For a maximum 8-foot wall height, multiplying, the table values by 0.90 shall be permitted. For a maximum 12-foot wall height, the table values shall be multiplied by 1.1.

e. For three or more braced wall lines in a given plan direction, the required bracing length on each braced wall line shall be multiplied by the appropriate factor from the following table:

| NUMBER OF BRACED WALL LINES | ADJUSTMENT FACTOR |
|---|---|
| 3 | 1.30 |
| 4 | 1.45 |
| ≥ 5 | 1.60 |

f. Bracing lengths are based on the application of gypsum board finish (or equivalent) applied to the inside face of a braced wall panel. When gypsum board finish (or equivalent) is not applied to the inside face of braced wall panels, the tabulated lengths shall be multiplied by the appropriate factor from the following table:

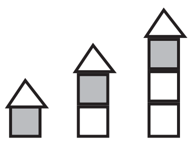
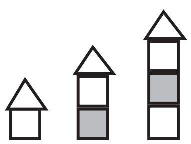
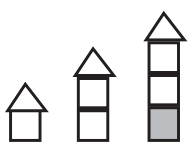
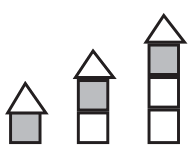
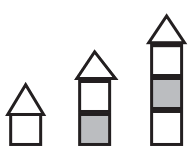
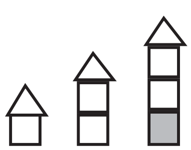
| BRACING METHOD | ADJUSTMENT FACTOR |
|---|---|
| Method LIB | 1.8 |
| Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS | 1.4 |

g. Bracing lengths for Method GB are based on the application of gypsum board on both faces of a braced wall panel. When Method GB is provided on only one side of the wall, the required bracing amounts shall be doubled. When Method GB braced wall panels installed in accordance with Section R602.10.2 are fastened at 4 inches on center at panel edges, including top and bottom plates, and are blocked at all horizontal joints, multiplying the required bracing percentage for wind loading by 0.7 shall be permitted.

h. Method LIB bracing shall have gypsum board attached to at least one side according to the Section R602.10.2 Method GB requirements.

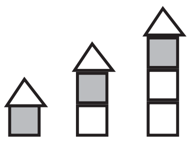
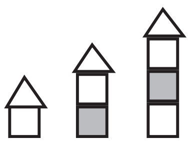
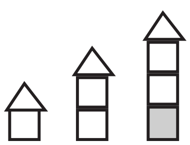
i. Required bracing length for Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS in braced wall lines located in one-story buildings and in the top story of two or three story buildings shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.80 when an approved hold-down device with a minimum uplift design value of 800 pounds is fastened to the end studs of each braced wall panel in the braced wall line and to the foundation or framing below.

**TABLE R602.10.1.2(2)[a, b, c]**
**BRACING REQUIREMENTS BASED ON SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY**
**(AS A FUNCTION OF BRACED WALL LINE LENGTH)**

| SOIL CLASS D[a]<br>WALL HEIGHT = 10 FT<br>10 PSF FLOOR DEAD LOAD<br>15 PSF ROOF/CEILING DEAD LOAD<br>BRACED WALL LINE SPACING ≤ 25 FT | | | MINIMUM TOTAL LENGTH (feet) OF BRACED WALL PANELS REQUIRED ALONG EACH BRACED WALL LINE | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Seismic Design Category (SDC)** | **Story Location** | **Braced Wall Line Length** | **Method LIB** | **Methods DWB, SFB, GB, PBS, PCP, HPS** | **Method WSP** | **Continuous Sheathing** |
| **SDC A and B and Detached Dwellings in C** | | **Exempt from Seismic Requirements Use Table R602.10.1.2(1) for Bracing Requirements** | | | | |
| SDC C |  | 10 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 1.6 | 1.4 |
| | | 20 | 5.0 | 5.0 | 3.2 | 2.7 |
| | | 30 | 7.5 | 7.5 | 4.8 | 4.1 |
| | | 40 | 10.0 | 10.0 | 6.4 | 5.4 |
| | | 50 | 12.5 | 12.5 | 8.0 | 6.8 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 4.5 | 3.0 | 2.6 |
| | | 20 | NP | 9.0 | 6.0 | 5.1 |
| | | 30 | NP | 13.5 | 9.0 | 7.7 |
| | | 40 | NP | 18.0 | 12.0 | 10.2 |
| | | 50 | NP | 22.5 | 15.0 | 12.8 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 6.0 | 4.5 | 3.8 |
| | | 20 | NP | 12.0 | 9.0 | 7.7 |
| | | 30 | NP | 18.0 | 13.5 | 11.5 |
| | | 40 | NP | 24.0 | 18.0 | 15.3 |
| | | 50 | NP | 30.0 | 22.5 | 19.1 |
| SDC $D_0$ or $D_1$ |  | 10 | NP | 3.0 | 2.0 | 1.7 |
| | | 20 | NP | 6.0 | 4.0 | 3.4 |
| | | 30 | NP | 9.0 | 6.0 | 5.1 |
| | | 40 | NP | 12.0 | 8.0 | 6.8 |
| | | 50 | NP | 15.0 | 10.0 | 8.5 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 6.0 | 4.5 | 3.8 |
| | | 20 | NP | 12.0 | 9.0 | 7.7 |
| | | 30 | NP | 18.0 | 13.5 | 11.5 |
| | | 40 | NP | 24.0 | 18.0 | 15.3 |
| | | 50 | NP | 30.0 | 22.5 | 19.1 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 8.5 | 6.0 | 5.1 |
| | | 20 | NP | 17.0 | 12.0 | 10.2 |
| | | 30 | NP | 25.5 | 18.0 | 15.3 |
| | | 40 | NP | 34.0 | 24.0 | 20.4 |
| | | 50 | NP | 42.5 | 30.0 | 25.5 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R602.10.1.2(2)[a, b, c]—continued**
**BRACING REQUIREMENTS BASED ON SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY**
**(AS A FUNCTION OF BRACED WALL LINE LENGTH)**

| SOIL CLASS D[a]<br>WALL HEIGHT = 10 FT<br>10 PSF FLOOR DEAD LOAD<br>15 PSF ROOF/CEILING DEAD LOAD<br>BRACED WALL LINE SPACING ≤ 25 FT | | | MINIMUM TOTAL LENGTH (feet) OF BRACED WALL PANELS REQUIRED ALONG EACH BRACED WALL LINE | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Seismic Design Category (SDC)** | **Story Location** | **Braced Wall Line Length** | **Method LIB** | **METHODS DWB, SFB, GB, PBS, PCP, HPS** | **Method WSP** | **Continuous Sheathing** |
| |  | 10 | NP | 4.0 | 2.5 | 2.1 |
| | | 20 | NP | 8.0 | 5.0 | 4.3 |
| | | 30 | NP | 12.0 | 7.5 | 6.4 |
| | | 40 | NP | 16.0 | 10.0 | 8.5 |
| | | 50 | NP | 20.0 | 12.5 | 10.6 |
| |  | 10 | NP | 7.5 | 5.5 | 4.7 |
| | | 20 | NP | 15.0 | 11.0 | 9.4 |
| SDC $D_2$ | | 30 | NP | 22.5 | 16.5 | 14.0 |
| | | 40 | NP | 30.0 | 22.0 | 18.7 |
| | | 50 | NP | 37.5 | 27.5 | 23.4 |
| |  | 10 | NP | NP | NP | NP |
| | | 20 | NP | NP | NP | NP |
| | | 30 | NP | NP | NP | NP |
| | | 40 | NP | NP | NP | NP |
| | | 50 | NP | NP | NP | NP |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 47.89 Pa.

a. Wall bracing lengths are based on a soil site class "D." Interpolation of bracing length between the $S_{ds}$ values associated with the seismic design categories shall be permitted when a site-specific $S_{ds}$ value is determined in accordance with Section 1613.5 of the *International Building Code.*

b. Foundation cripple wall panels shall be braced in accordance with Section R602.10.9.

c. Methods of bracing shall be as described in Sections R602.10.2, R602.10.4 and R602.10.5.

**TABLE R602.10.1.2(3)**
**ADJUSTMENT FACTORS TO THE LENGTH OF REQUIRED SEISMIC WALL BRACING[a]**

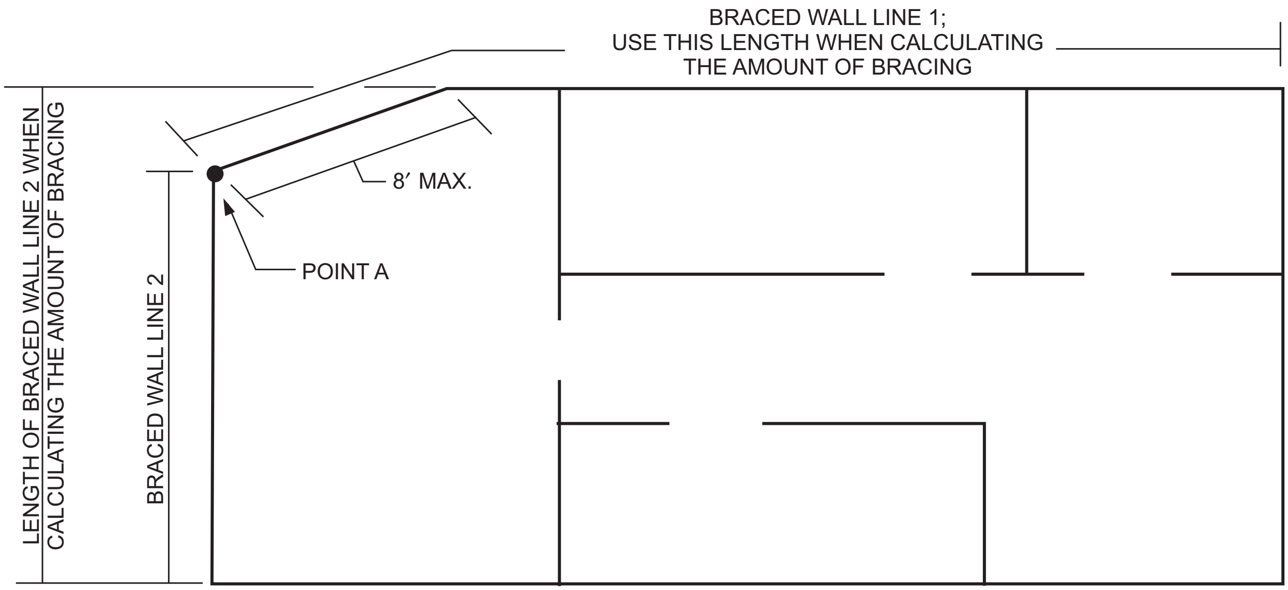
| ADJUSTMENT BASED ON: | | | MULTIPLY LENGTH OF BRACING PER WALL LINE BY: | APPLIES TO: |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Story height[b] (Section R301.3) | | ≤10 ft | 1.0 | All bracing methods - Sections R602.10.2, R602.10.4 and R602.10.5 |
| | | > 10 ≤ 12 ft | 1.2 | |
| Braced wall line spacing townhouses in SDC A-C[b,c] | | ≤ 35 ft | 1.0 | |
| | | > 35 ≤ 50 ft | 1.43 | |
| Wall dead load | | > 8 ≤ 15 psf | 1.0 | |
| | | ≤ 8 psf | 0.85 | |
| Roof/ceiling dead load for wall supporting[b] | roof only or roof plus one story | ≤ 15 psf | 1.0 | |
| | roof only | < 15 psf ≤ 25 psf | 1.1 | |
| | roof plus one story | < 15 psf ≤ 25 psf | 1.2 | |
| Walls with stone or masonry veneer in SDC C-$D_2$ | | See Section R703.7 | | |
| Cripple walls | | See Section R602.10.9 | | |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 47.89 Pa.

a. The total length of bracing required for a given wall line is the product of all applicable adjustment factors.

b. Linear interpolation shall be permitted.

c. Braced wall line spacing and adjustment to bracing length in SDC $D_0$, $D_1$, and $D_2$ shall comply with Section R602.10.1.5.




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.1.3**
**ANGLED CORNERS**

**R602.10.1.4.1 Braced wall panel location in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** *Braced wall lines* at exterior walls shall have a *braced wall panel* located at each end of the *braced wall line*.

**Exception:** For *braced wall panel* construction Method WSP of Section R602.10.2, the *braced wall panel* shall be permitted to begin no more than 8 feet (2438 mm) from each end of the *braced wall line* provided one of the following is satisfied in accordance with Figure R602.10.1.4.1:

1. A minimum 24-inch-wide (610 mm) panel is applied to each side of the building corner and the two 24-inch-wide (610 mm) panels at the corner are attached to framing in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(1), or
2. The end of each *braced wall panel* closest to the corner shall have a hold-down device fastened to the stud at the edge of the *braced wall panel* closest to the corner and to the foundation or framing below. The hold-down device shall be capable of providing an uplift allowable design value of at least 1,800 pounds (8 kN). The hold-down device shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**[W] R602.10.1.5 Braced wall line spacing for Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** Spacing between *braced wall lines* in each *story* shall not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm) on center in both the longitudinal and transverse directions.

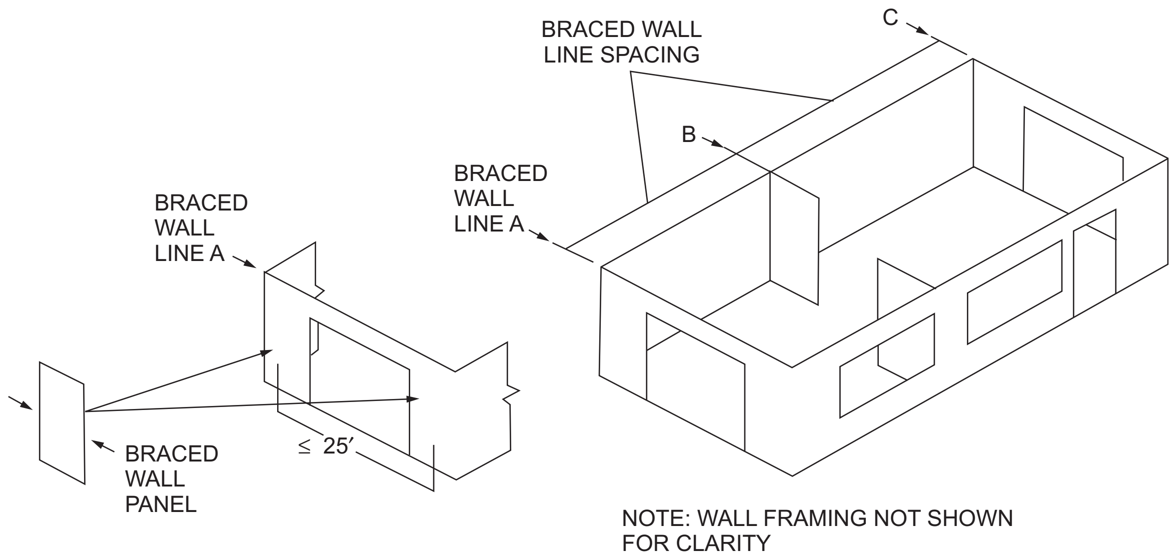
**Exception:** In one- and two-*story* buildings, spacing between two adjacent *braced wall lines* shall not exceed 35 feet (10 668 mm) on center in order to accommodate one single room not exceeding 900 square feet (84 m$^2$) in each *dwelling unit* *or accessory structure*. Spacing between all other *braced wall lines* shall not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm). A spacing of 35 feet (10 668 mm) or less shall be permitted between *braced wall lines* where the length of wall bracing required by Table R602.10.1.2(2) is multiplied by the appropriate adjustment factor from Table R602.10.1.5, the length-to-width ratio for the floor/roof *diaphragm* does not exceed 3:1, and the top plate lap splice face nailing is twelve 16d nails on each side of the splice.

**R602.10.2 Intermittent braced wall panel construction methods.** The construction of intermittent *braced wall panels* shall be in accordance with one of the methods listed in Table R602.10.2.

**R602.10.2.1 Intermittent braced wall panel interior finish material.** Intermittent *braced wall panels* shall have gypsum wall board installed on the side of the wall opposite the bracing material. Gypsum wall board shall be not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness and be fastened in accordance with Table R702.3.5 for interior gypsum wall board.

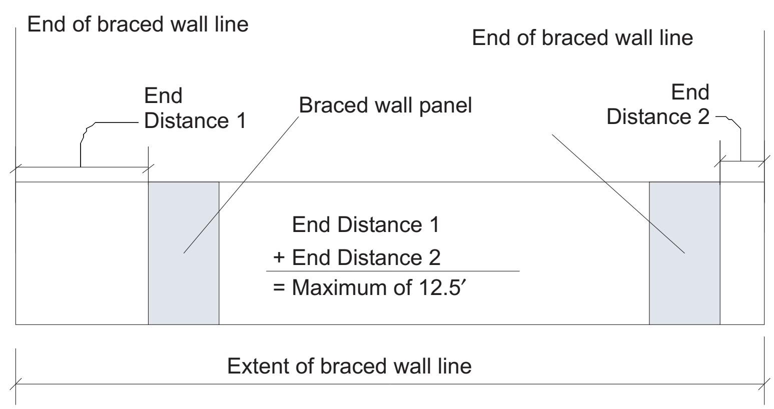
**Exceptions:**

1. Wall panels that are braced in accordance with Methods GB, ABW, PFG and PFH.
2. When an *approved* interior finish material with an in-plane shear resistance equivalent to gypsum board is installed.
3. For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS, omitting gypsum wall board is permitted provided the length of bracing in Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2) is multiplied by a factor of 1.5.




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

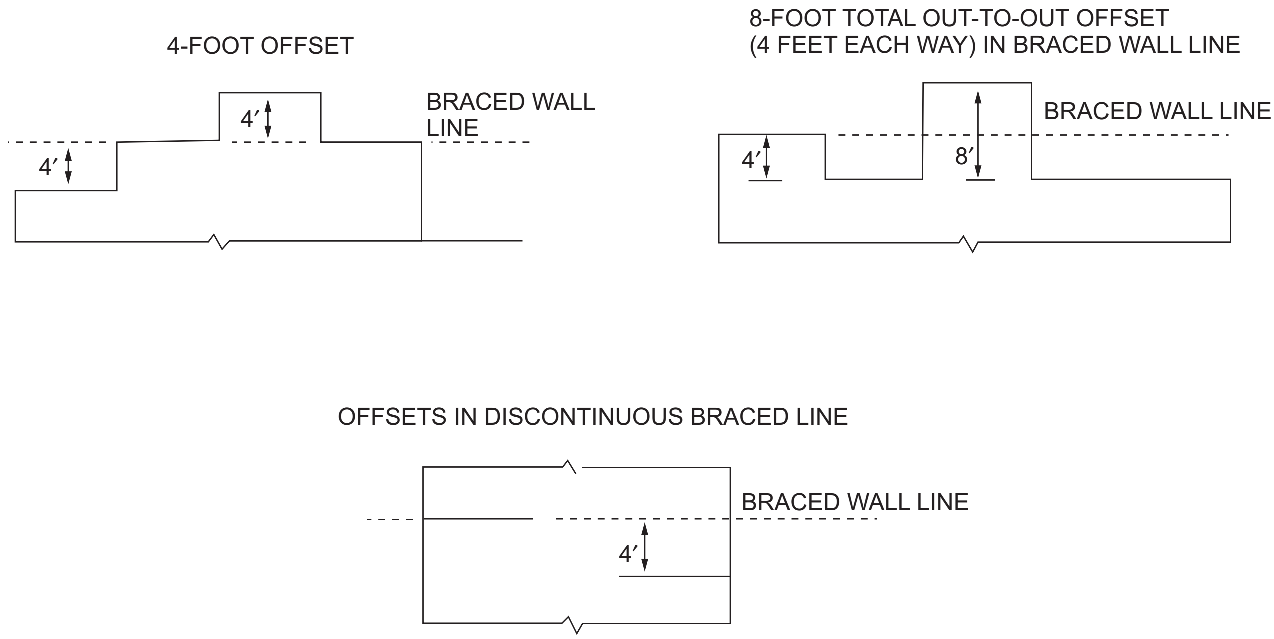
**FIGURE R602.10.1.4(1)**
**BRACED WALL PANELS AND BRACED WALL LINES**




Braced wall panel shall be permitted to be located away from the end of a braced wall line, provided the total end distance from each end to the nearest braced wall panel does not exceed 12.5′. If braced wall panel is located at the end of the braced wall line, then end distance is 0′.

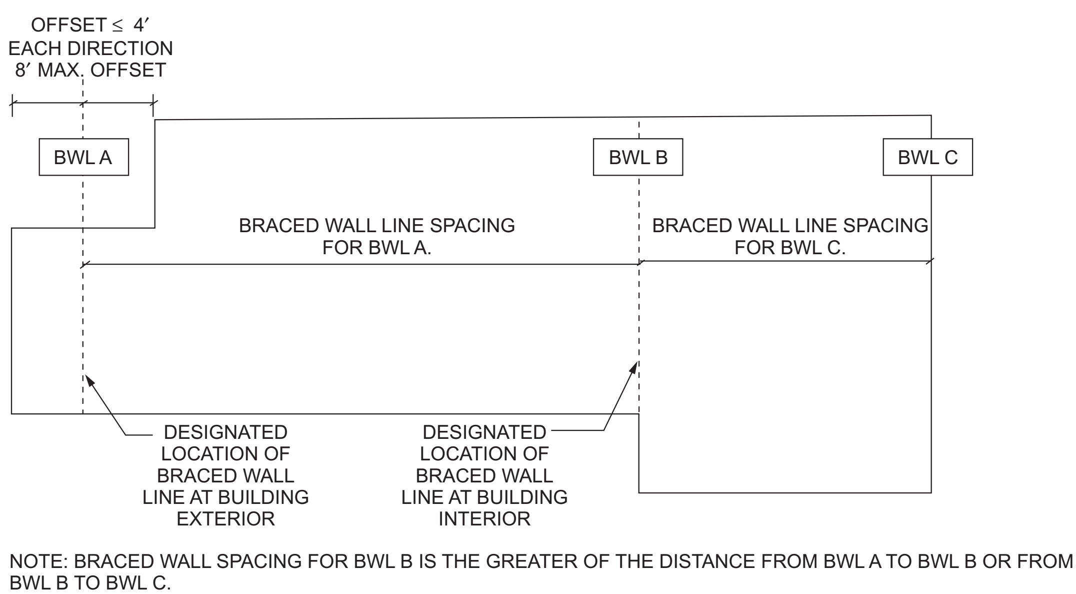
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.1.4(2)**
**BRACED WALL PANEL END DISTANCE REQUIREMENTS (SDC A, B AND C)**



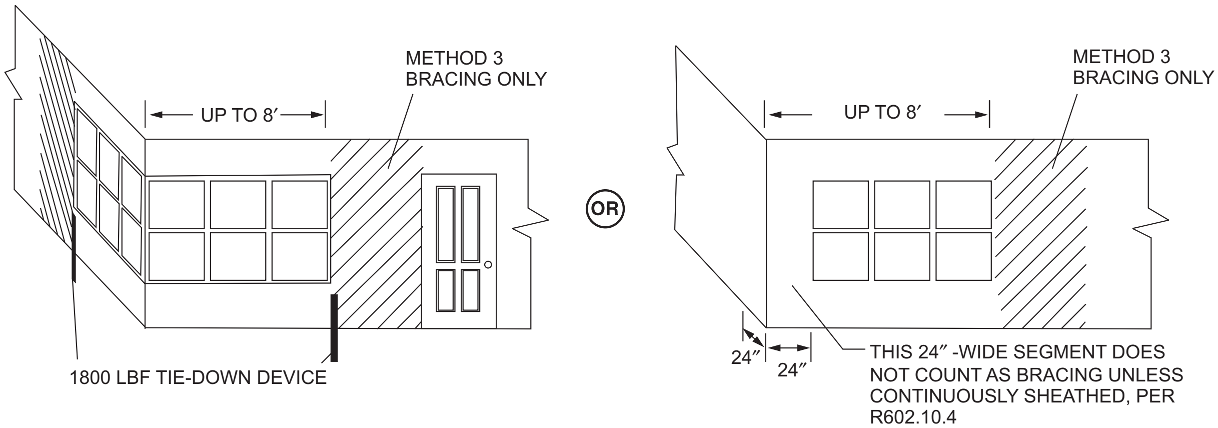

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.1.4(3)**
**OFFSETS PERMITTED FOR BRACED WALL LINES**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.1.4(4)**
**BRACED WALL LINE SPACING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound force = 4,448 N.

**FIGURE R602.10.1.4.1**
**BRACED WALL PANELS AT ENDS OF BRACED WALL LINES IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES $D_0$, $D_1$ AND $D_2$**

**TABLE R602.10.1.5**
**ADJUSTMENTS OF BRACING LENGTH FOR BRACED WALL LINE SPACING GREATER THAN 25 FEET[a,b]**

| BRACED WALL LINE SPACING (feet) | MULTIPLY BRACING LENGTH IN TABLE R602.10.1.2(2) BY: |
|---|---|
| 25 | 1.0 |
| 30 | 1.2 |
| 35 | 1.4 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Linear interpolation is permitted.
b. When a braced wall line has a parallel braced wall line on both sides, the larger adjustment factor shall be used.

**R602.10.2.2 Adhesive attachment of sheathing in Seismic Design Categories C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** Adhesive attachment of wall sheathing shall not be permitted in Seismic Design Categories C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.

<u>**[W[ R602.10.2.3 Redesignation of cripple walls.** In any seismic design category, cripple walls are permitted to be redesignated as the first story walls for purposes of determining wall bracing requirements. If the cripple walls are redesignated, the stories above the redesignated story shall be counted as the second and third stories, respectively.</u>

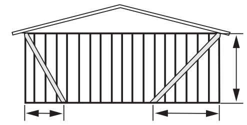
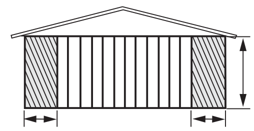
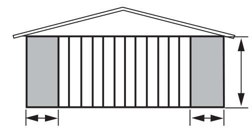
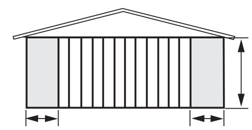
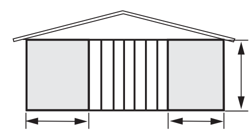
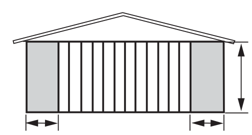
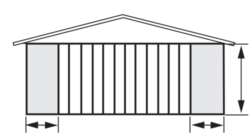
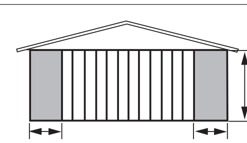
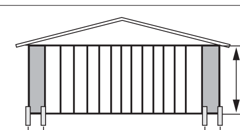
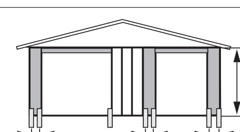
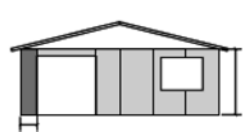
**R602.10.3 Minimum length of braced panels.** For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS, each *braced wall panel* shall be at least 48 inches (1219 mm) in length, covering a minimum of three stud spaces where studs are spaced 16 inches (406 mm) on center and covering a minimum of two stud spaces where studs are spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center. For Method GB, each *braced wall panel* and shall be at least 96 inches (2438 mm) in length where applied to one face of a *braced wall panel* and at least 48 inches (1219 mm) where applied to both faces. For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS, for purposes of computing the length of panel bracing required in Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2), the effective length of the *braced wall panel* shall be equal to the actual length of the panel. When Method GB panels are applied to only one face of a *braced wall panel*, bracing lengths required in Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2) for Method GB shall be doubled.

**Exceptions:**

1. Lengths of *braced wall panels* for continuous sheathing methods shall be in accordance with Table R602.10.4.2.
2. Lengths of Method ABW panels shall be in accordance with Sections R602.10.3.2.
3. Length of Methods PFH and PFG panels shall be in accordance with Section R602.10.3.3 and R602.10.3.4 respectively.
4. For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS in Seismic Design Categories A, B, and C: Panels between 36 inches (914 mm)and 48 inches (1219 mm) in length shall be permitted to count towards the required length of bracing in Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2), and the effective contribution shall comply with Table R602.10.3.

**R602.10.3.1 Adjustment of length of braced panels.** When *story height* (H), measured in feet, exceeds 10 feet (3048 mm), in accordance with Section R301.3, the minimum length of *braced wall panels* specified in Section R602.10.3 shall be increased by a factor H/10. See Table R602.10.3.1. Interpolation is permitted.

**TABLE R602.10.2**
**INTERMITTENT BRACING METHODS**

| METHOD | MATERIAL | MINIMUM THICKNESS | FIGURE | CONNECTION CRITERIA |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| LIB | Let-in-bracing | 1 × 4 wood or approved metal straps at 45° to 60° angles for maximum 16″ stud spacing |  | Wood: 2-8d nails per stud including top and bottom plate metal: per manufacturer |
| DWB | Diagonal wood boards | $^{3}/_{4}$″ (1″ nominal) for maximum 24″ stud spacing |  | 2-8d (2$^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.113″) nails or 2 staples, 1$^{3}/_{4}$″ per stud |
| WSP | Wood structural panel (see Section R604) | $^{3}/_{8}$″ |  | For exterior sheathing see Table R602.3(3) For interior sheathing see Table R602.3(1) |
| SFB | Structural fiberboard sheathing | $^{1}/_{2}$″ or $^{25}/_{32}$″ for maximum 16″ stud spacing |  | 1$^{1}/_{2}$″ galvanized roofing nails or 8d common (2$^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.131) nails at 3″ spacing (panel edges) at 6″ spacing (intermediate supports) |
| GB | Gypsum board | $^{1}/_{2}$″ |  | Nails or screws at 7″ spacing at panel edges including top and bottom plates; for all braced wall panel locations for exterior sheathing nail or screw size, see Table R602.3(1); for interior gypsum board nail or screw size, see Table R702.3.5 |
| PBS | Particleboard sheathing (see Section R605) | $^{3}/_{8}$″ or $^{1}/_{2}$″ for maximum 16″ stud spacing |  | 1$^{1}/_{2}$″ galvanized roofing nails or 8d common (2$^{1}/_{2}$″ × 0.131) nails at 3″ spacing (panel edges) at 6 spacing (intermediate supports) |
| PCP | Portland cement plaster | See Section R703.6 For maximum 16″ stud spacing |  | 1$^{1}/_{2}$″, 11 gage, $^{7}/_{16}$″ head nails at 6″ spacing or $^{7}/_{8}$″, 16 gage staples at 6″ spacing |
| HPS | Hardboard panel siding | $^{7}/_{16}$″ For maximum 16″ stud spacing |  | 0.092″ dia., 0.225″ head nails with length to accommodate 1$^{1}/_{2}$″ penetration into studs at 4″ spacing (panel edges), at 8″ spacing (intermediate supports) |
| ABW | Alternate braced wall | See Section R602.10.3.2 |  | See Section R602.10.3.2 |
| PFH | Intermittent portal frame | See Section R602.10.3.3 |  | See Section R602.10.3.3 |
| PFG | Intermittent portal frame at garage | See Section R602.10.3.4 |  | See Section R602.10.3.4 |

**R602.10.3.2 Method ABW: Alternate braced wall panels.** Method ABW *braced wall panels* constructed in accordance with one of the following provisions shall be permitted to replace each 4 feet (1219 mm) of *braced wall panel* as required by Section R602.10.3. The maximum height and minimum length and hold-down force of each panel shall be in accordance with Table R602.10.3.2:

1. In one-story buildings, each panel shall be installed in accordance with Figure R602.10.3.2. The hold-down device shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The panels shall be supported directly on a foundation or on floor framing supported directly on a foundation which is continuous across the entire length of the *braced wall line*.
2. In the first *story* of two-story buildings, each *braced wall panel* shall be in accordance with Item 1 above, except that the wood structural panel sheathing edge nailing spacing shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

**R602.10.3.3 Method PFH: Portal frame with hold-downs.** Method PFH *braced wall panels* constructed in accordance with one of the following provisions are also permitted to replace each 4 feet (1219 mm) of *braced wall panel* as required by Section R602.10.3 for use adjacent to a window or door opening with a full-length header:

1. Each panel shall be fabricated in accordance with Figure R602.10.3.3. The wood structural panel sheathing shall extend up over the solid sawn or glued-laminated header and shall be nailed in accordance with Figure R602.10.3.3. A spacer, if used with a built-up header, shall be placed on the side of the built-up beam opposite the wood structural panel sheathing. The header shall extend between the inside faces of the first full-length outer studs of each panel. One anchor bolt not less than $^5/_8$-inch-diameter (16 mm) and installed in accordance with Section R403.1.6 shall be provided in the center of each sill plate. The hold-down devices shall be an embedded-strap type, installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The panels shall be supported directly on a foundation which is continuous across the entire length of the braced wall line. The foundation shall be reinforced as shown on Figure R602.10.3.2. This reinforcement shall be lapped not less than 15 inches (381 mm) with the reinforcement required in the continuous foundation located directly under the braced wall line.
2. In the first *story* of two-story buildings, each wall panel shall be braced in accordance with item 1 above, except that each panel shall have a length of not less than 24 inches (610 mm).

**TABLE R602.10.3**
**EFFECTIVE LENGTHS FOR BRACED WALL PANELS LESS THAN 48 INCHES IN ACTUAL LENGTH (BRACE METHODS DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP AND HPS[a])**

| ACTUAL LENGTH OF BRACED WALL PANEL (inches) | EFFECTIVE LENGTH OF BRACED WALL PANEL (inches) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 8-foot Wall Height | 9-foot Wall Height | 10-foot Wall Height |
| 48 | 48 | 48 | 48 |
| 42 | 36 | 36 | N/A |
| 36 | 27 | N/A | N/A |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Interpolation shall be permitted.

**TABLE R602.10.3.1**
**MINIMUM LENGTH REQUIREMENTS FOR BRACED WALL PANELS**

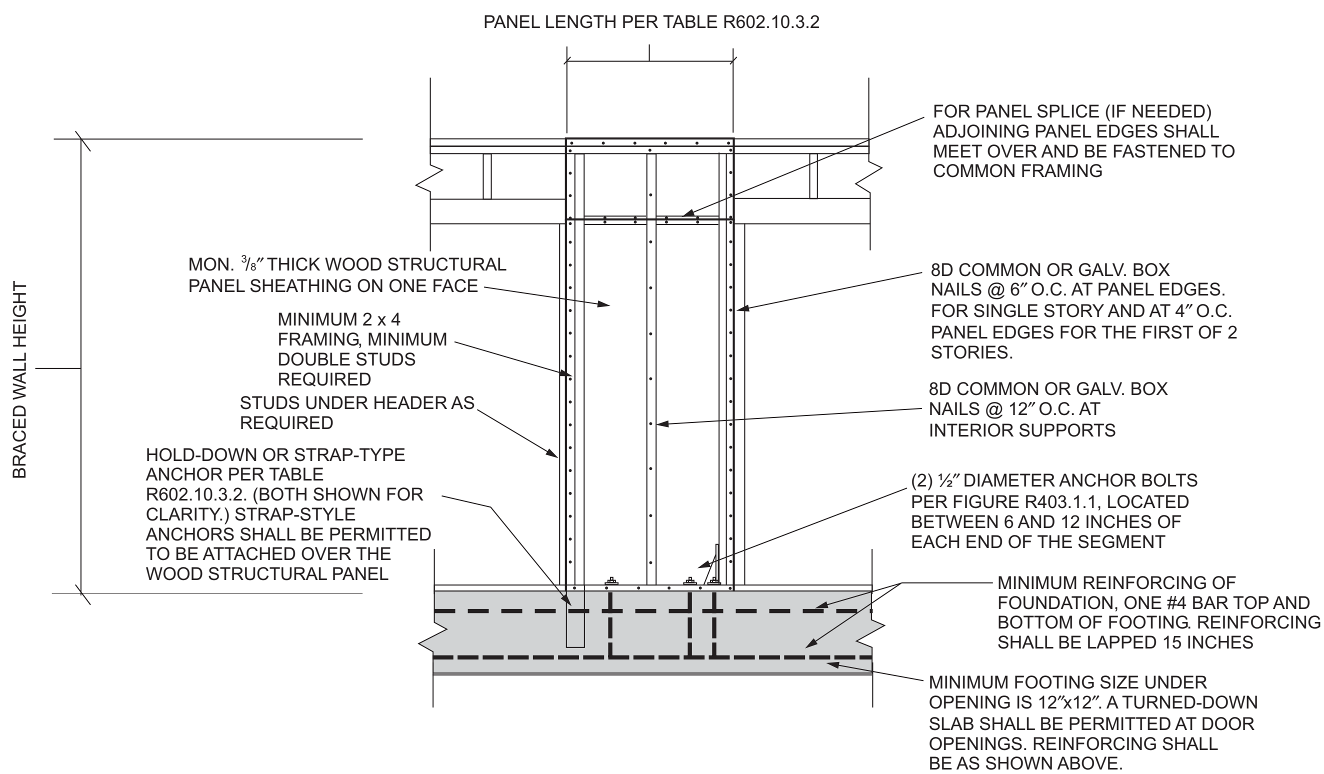
| SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY AND WIND SPEED | BRACING METHOD | HEIGHT OF BRACED WALL PANEL | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 8 ft | 9 ft | 10 ft | 11 ft | 12 ft |
| SDC A, B, C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ Wind speed < 110 mph | DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS and Method GB when double sided | 4′ - 0″ | 4′ - 0″ | 4′ - 0″ | 4′ - 5″ | 4′ - 10″ |
| | Method GB, single sided | 8′ - 0″ | 8′ - 0″ | 8′ - 0″ | 8′ - 10″ | 9′ - 8″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**TABLE R602.10.3.2**
**MINIMUM LENGTH REQUIREMENTS AND HOLD-DOWN FORCES FOR METHOD ABW BRACED WALL PANELS**

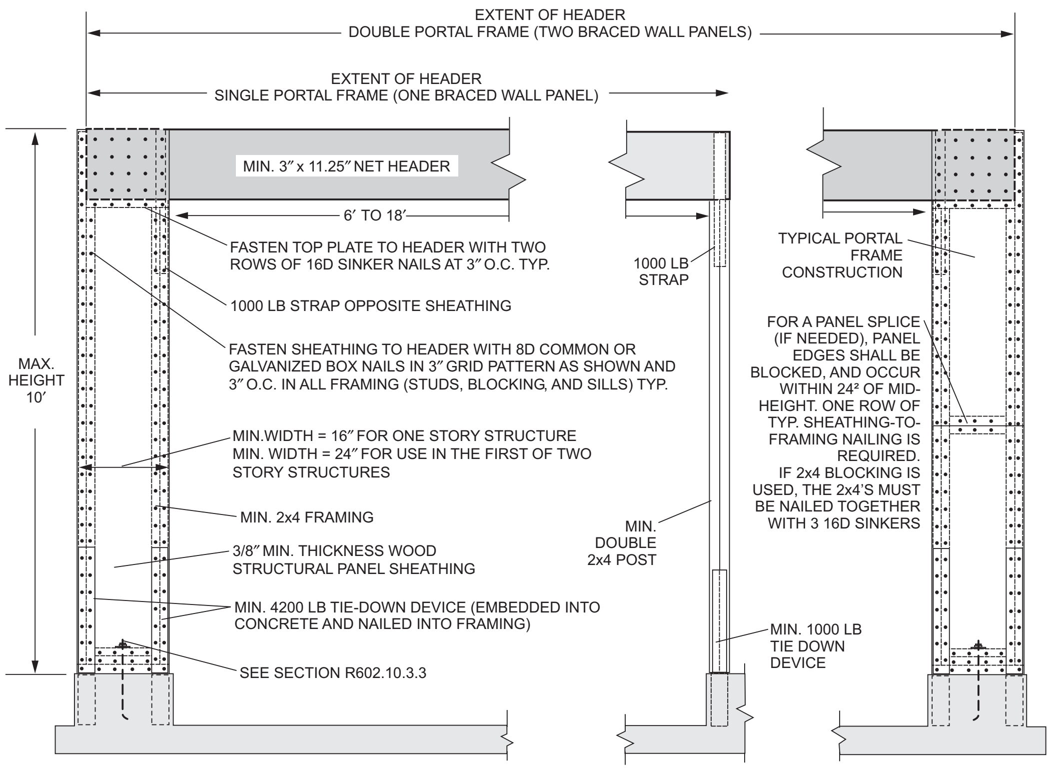
| SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY AND WIND SPEED | | HEIGHT OF BRACED WALL PANEL | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 8 ft | 9 ft | 10 ft | 11 ft | 12 ft |
| SDC A, B and C<br>Wind speed < 110 mph | Minimum sheathed length | 2′ - 4″ | 2′ - 8″ | 2′ - 10″ | 3′ - 2″ | 3′ - 6″ |
| | R602.10.3.2, item 1 hold-down force (lb) | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 2000 | 2200 |
| | R602.10.3.2, item 2 hold-down force (lb) | 3000 | 3000 | 3000 | 3300 | 3600 |
| SDC $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$<br>Wind speed < 110 mph | Minimum sheathed length | 2′ - 8″ | 2′ - 8″ | 2′ - 10″ | NP[a] | NP[a] |
| | R602.10.3.2, item 1 hold-down force (lb) | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | NP[a] | NP[a] |
| | R602.10.3.2, item 2 hold-down force (lb) | 3000 | 3000 | 3000 | NP[a] | NP[a] |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.
a. NP = Not Permitted. Maximum height of 10 feet.



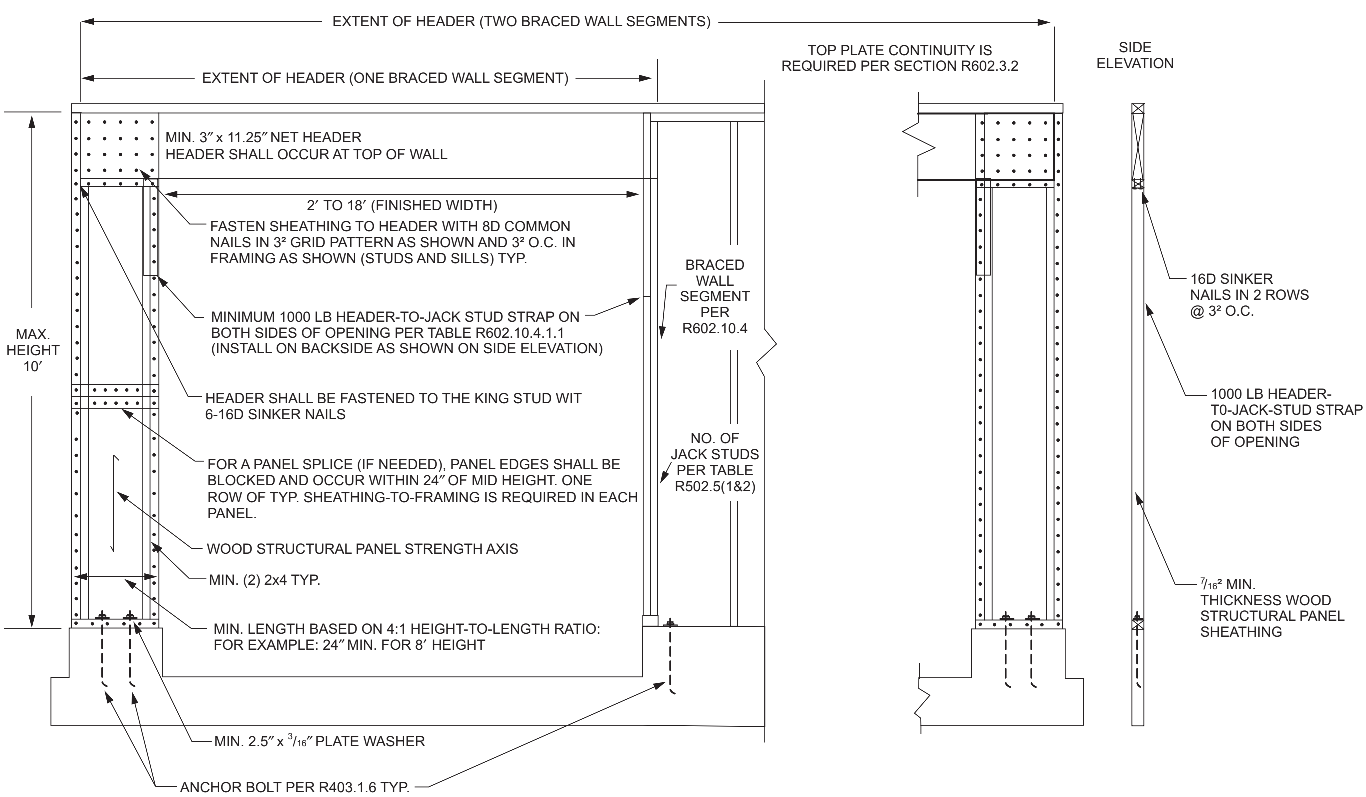

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.3.2**
**ALTERNATE BRACED WALL PANEL**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R602.10.3.3**
**METHOD PFH: PORTAL FRAME WITH HOLD-DOWNS**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R602.10.3.4**
**METHOD PFG PORTAL FRAME AT GARAGE DOOR OPENINGS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B AND C**

**R602.10.3.4 Method PFG: at garage door openings in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.** Where supporting a roof or one *story* and a roof, alternate *braced wall panels* constructed in accordance with the following provisions are permitted on either side of garage door openings. For the purpose of calculating wall bracing amounts to satisfy the minimum requirements of Table R602.10.1.2(1), the length of the alternate *braced wall panel* shall be multiplied by a factor of 1.5.

1. *Braced wall panel* length shall be a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) and *braced wall panel* height shall be a maximum of 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. *Braced wall panel* shall be sheathed on one face with a single layer of $^7/_{16}$-inch-minimum (11 mm) thickness wood structural panel sheathing attached to framing with 8d common nails at 3 inches (76 mm) on center in accordance with Figure R602.10.3.4.
3. The wood structural panel sheathing shall extend up over the solid sawn or glued-laminated header and shall be nailed to the header at 3 inches (76 mm) on center grid in accordance with Figure R602.10.3.4.
4. The header shall consist of a minimum of two solid sawn 2×12s (51 by 305 mm) or a 3 inches × 11.25 inch (76 by 286 mm) glued-laminated header. The header shall extend between the inside faces of the first full-length outer studs of each panel in accordance with Figure R602.10.3.4. The clear span of the header between the inner studs of each panel shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and not more than 18 feet (5486 mm) in length.
5. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4448 N) shall fasten the header to the side of the inner studs opposite the sheathing face. Where building is located in Wind Exposure Categories C or D, the strap uplift capacity shall be in accordance with Table R602.10.4.1.1.
6. A minimum of two bolts not less than $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) diameter shall be installed in accordance with Section R403.1.6. A $^3/_{16}$-inch by $2^1/_2$-inch (4.8 by 63 by 63 mm) by $2^1/_2$-inch steel plate washer is installed between the bottom plate and the nut of each bolt.
7. *Braced wall panel* shall be installed directly on a foundation.
8. Where an alternate *braced wall panel* is located only on one side of the garage opening, the header shall be connected to a supporting jack stud on the opposite side of the garage opening with a metal strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds. Where that supporting jack stud is not part of a *braced wall panel* assembly, another 1,000 pounds (4448 N) strap shall be installed to attach the supporting jack stud to the foundation.

**R602.10.4 Continuous sheathing.** *Braced wall lines* with continuous sheathing shall be constructed in accordance with this section. All *braced wall lines* along exterior walls on the same *story* shall be continuously sheathed.

**Exception:** Within Seismic Design Categories A, B and C or in regions where the basic wind speed is less than or equal to 100 mph (45 m/s), other bracing methods prescribed by this code shall be permitted on other *braced wall lines* on the same *story* level or on any *braced wall line* on different *story* levels of the building.

**R602.10.4.1 Continuous sheathing braced wall panels.** Continuous sheathing methods require structural panel sheathing to be used on all sheathable surfaces on one side of a *braced wall line* including areas above and below openings and gable end walls. *Braced wall panels* shall be constructed in accordance with one of the methods listed in Table R602.10.4.1. Different bracing methods, other than those listed in Table R602.10.4.1, shall not be permitted along a *braced wall line* with continuous sheathing.

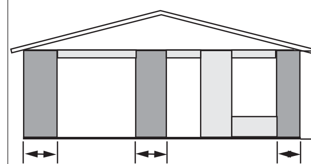
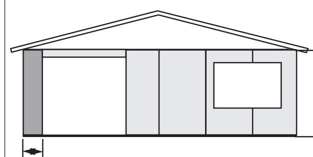
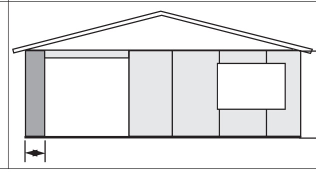
**R602.10.4.1.1 Continuous portal frame.** Continuous portal frame *braced wall panels* shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.1.1. The number of continuous portal frame panels in a single *braced wall line* shall not exceed four. For purposes of resisting wind pressures acting perpendicular to the wall, the requirements of Figure R602.10.4.1.1 and Table R602.10.4.1.1 shall be met. There shall be a maximum of two braced wall segments per header and header length shall not exceed 22 feet (6706 mm). Tension straps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**R602.10.4.2 Length of braced wall panels with continuous sheathing.** *Braced wall panels* along a *braced wall line* with continuous sheathing shall be full-height with a length based on the adjacent clear opening height in accordance with Table R602.10.4.2 and Figure R602.10.4.2. Within a *braced wall line* when a panel has an opening on either side of differing heights, the taller opening height shall be used to determine the panel length from Table R602.10.4.2. For Method CS-PF, wall height shall be measured from the top of the header to the bottom of the bottom plate as shown in Figure R602.10.4.1.1.

**R602.10.4.3 Length of bracing for continuous sheathing.** *Braced wall lines* with continuous sheathing shall be provided with *braced wall panels* in the length required in Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2). Only those full-height *braced wall panels* complying with the length requirements of Table R602.10.4.2 shall be permitted to contribute to the minimum required length of bracing.

**R602.10.4.4 Continuously sheathed braced wall panel location and corner construction.** For all continuous sheathing methods, full-height *braced wall panels* complying with the length requirements of Table

**TABLE R602.10.4.1**
**CONTINUOUS SHEATHING METHODS**

| METHOD | MATERIAL | MINIMUM THICKNESS | FIGURE | CONNECTION CRITERIA |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CS-WSP | Wood structural panel | $^{3}/_{8}''$ |  | 6d common ($2'' \times 0.113''$) nails at $6''$ spacing (panel edges) and at $12''$ spacing (intermediate supports) or 16 ga. $\times 1^{3}/_{4}$ staples at $3''$ spacing (panel edges) and $6''$ spacing (intermediate supports) |
| CS-G | Wood structural panel adjacent to garage openings and supporting roof load only[a,b] | $^{3}/_{8}''$ |  | See Method CS-WSP |
| CS-PF | Continuous portal frame | See Section R602.10.4.1.1 |  | See Section R602.10.4.1.1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 47.89 Pa.
a. Applies to one wall of a garage only.
b. Roof covering dead loads shall be 3 psf or less.

R602.10.4.2 shall be located at each end of a *braced wall line* with continuous sheathing and at least every 25 feet (7620 mm) on center. A minimum 24 inch (610 mm) wood structural panel corner return shall be provided at both ends of a *braced wall line* with continuous sheathing in accordance with Figures R602.10.4.4(1) and R602.10.4.4(2). In lieu of the corner return, a hold-down device with a minimum uplift design value of 800 pounds (3560 N) shall be fastened to the corner stud and to the foundation or framing below in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(3).

**Exception:** The first *braced wall panel* shall be permitted to begin 12.5 feet (3810 mm) from each end of the *braced wall line* in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C and 8 feet (2438 mm) in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ provided one of the following is satisfied:

1. A minimum 24 inch (610 mm) long, full-height wood structural panel is provided at both sides of a corner constructed in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(1) at the *braced wall line* ends in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(4), or
2. The *braced wall panel* closest to the corner shall have a hold-down device with a minimum uplift design value of 800 pounds (3560 N) fastened to the stud at the edge of the *braced wall panel* closest to the corner and to the foundation or framing below in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(5).

**R602.10.5 Continuously-sheathed braced wall line using Method CS-SFB (structural fiberboard sheathing).** Continuously sheathed *braced wall lines* using structural fiberboard sheathing shall comply with this section. Different bracing methods shall not be permitted within a continuously sheathed *braced wall line*. Other bracing methods prescribed by this code shall be permitted on other *braced wall lines* on the same *story* level or on different *story* levels of the building.

**R602.10.5.1 Continuously sheathed braced wall line requirements.** Continuously-sheathed *braced wall lines* shall be in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.2 and shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. Structural fiberboard sheathing shall be applied to all exterior sheathable surfaces of a *braced wall line* including areas above and below openings.
2. Only full-height or blocked *braced wall panels* shall be used for calculating the braced wall length in accordance with Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2).

**R602.10.5.2 Braced wall panel length.** In a continuously-sheathed structural fiberboard *braced wall line*, the minimum *braced wall panel* length shall be in accordance with Table R602.10.5.2.

**R602.10.5.3 Braced wall panel location and corner construction.** A *braced wall panel* shall be located at each end of a continuously-sheathed *braced wall line*. A minimum 32-inch (813 mm) structural fiberboard sheathing panel corner return shall be provided at both ends of a continuously-sheathed *braced wall line* in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(1) In lieu of the corner return, a hold-down device with a minimum uplift design value of 800 pounds (3560 N) shall be fastened to the corner stud and to the foundation or framing below in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(3).

**Exception:** The first *braced wall panel* shall be permitted to begin 12 feet 6 inches (3810 mm) from each end of the *braced wall line* in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C provided one of the following is satisfied:

1. A minimum 32-inch-long (813 mm), full-height structural fiberboard sheathing panel is provided at both sides of a corner constructed in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(1) at the *braced wall line* ends in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(4), or
2. The *braced wall panel* closest to the corner shall have a hold-down device with a minimum uplift design value of 800 pounds (3560 N) fastened to the stud at the edge of the *braced wall panel* closest to the corner and to the foundation or framing below in accordance with Figure R602.10.4.4(5).

**R602.10.5.4 Continuously sheathed braced wall lines.** Where a continuously-sheathed *braced wall line* is used in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ or regions where the basic wind speed exceeds 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), the *braced wall line* shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of the *International Building Code*. Also, all other exterior *braced wall lines* in the same *story* shall be continuously sheathed.

**R602.10.6 Braced wall panel connections.** *Braced wall panels* shall be connected to floor framing or foundations as follows:

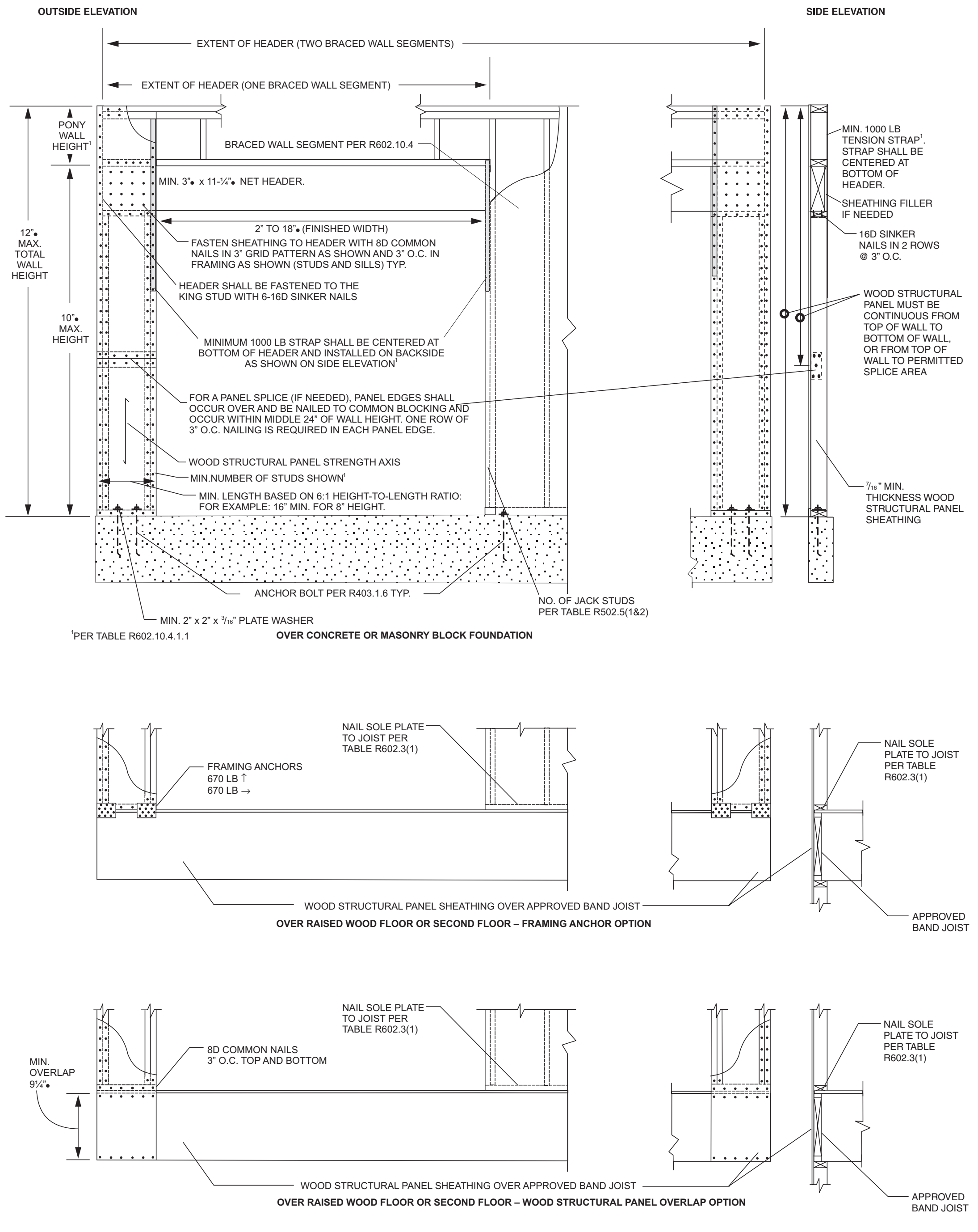
1. Where joists are perpendicular to a *braced wall panel* above or below, a rim joist, band joist or blocking shall be provided along the entire length of the *braced wall panel* in accordance with Figure R602.10.6(1). Fastening of top and bottom wall plates to framing, rim joist, band joist and/or blocking shall be in accordance with Table R602.3(1).
2. Where joists are parallel to a *braced wall panel* above or below, a rim joist, end joist or other parallel framing member shall be provided directly above and below the *braced wall panel* in accordance with Figure R602.10.6(2). Where a parallel framing member cannot be located directly above and below the panel, full-depth blocking at 16 inch (406 mm) spacing shall be provided between the parallel framing members to each side of the *braced wall panel* in accordance with Figure R602.10.6(2). Fastening of blocking and wall plates shall be in accordance with Table R602.3(1) and Figure R602.10.6(2).
3. Connections of *braced wall panel*s to concrete or masonry shall be in accordance with Section R403.1.6.

**R602.10.6.1 Braced wall panel connections for Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** *Braced wall panels* shall be fastened to required foundations in accordance with Section R602.11.1, and top plate lap splices shall be face-nailed with at least eight 16d nails on each side of the splice.

**R602.10.6.2 Connections to roof framing.** Exterior *braced wall panels* shall be connected to roof framing as follows.

1. Parallel rafters or roof trusses shall be attached to the top plates of *braced wall panels* in accordance with Table R602.3(1).
2. For SDC A, B and C and wind speeds less than 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), where the distance from the top of the rafters or roof trusses and perpendicular top plates is $9^1/_4$ inches (235 mm) or less, the rafters or roof trusses shall be connected to the top plates of *braced wall lines* in accordance with Table R602.3(1) and blocking need not be installed. Where the distance from the top of the rafters and perpendicular top plates is between $9^1/_4$ inches (235 mm) and $15^1/_4$ inches (387 mm) the rafters shall be connected to the top plates of *braced wall panels* with blocking in accordance with Figure R602.10.6.2(1) and attached in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Where the distance from the top of the roof trusses and perpendicular top plates is between $9^1/_4$ inches (235 mm) and $15^1/_4$ inches (387 mm) the roof trusses shall be connected to the top plates of *braced wall panels* with blocking in accordance with Table R602.3(1).
3. For SDC $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ or wind speeds of 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) or greater, where the distance between the top of rafters or roof trusses and perpendicular top plates is $15^1/_4$ inches (387 mm) or less, rafters or roof trusses shall be connected to the top plates of *braced wall panels* with blocking in accordance with Figure R602.10.6.2(1) and attached in accordance with Table R602.3(1).
4. For all seismic design categories and wind speeds, where the distance between the top of rafters or roof trusses and perpendicular top plates exceeds $15^1/_4$ inches (387 mm), perpendicular rafters or roof trusses shall be connected to the top plates of *braced wall panels* in accordance with one of the following methods:
   4.1. In accordance with Figure R602.10.6.2(2),
   4.2. In accordance with Figure R602.10.6.2(3),
   4.3. With full height engineered blocking panels designed for values listed in American Forest and Paper Association (AF&PA) Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family *Dwellings* (WFCM). Both the roof and floor sheathing shall be attached to the blocking panels in accordance with Table R602.3(1).
   4.4. Designed in accordance with accepted engineering methods.

Lateral support for the rafters and ceiling joists shall be provided in accordance with Section R802.8. Lateral support for trusses shall be provided in accordance with Section R802.10.3. Ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section R806.1.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R602.10.4.1.1**
**METHOD CS-PF: CONTINUOUS PORTAL FRAME PANEL CONSTRUCTION**

**TABLE R602.10.4.1.1**
**TENSION STRAP CAPACITY REQUIRED FOR RESISTING WIND PRESSURES PERPENDICULAR TO 6:1 ASPECT RATIO WALLS[a,b]**

| MINIMUM WALL STUD FRAMING NOMINAL SIZE AND GRADE | MAXIMUM PONY WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM TOTAL WALL HEIGHT (feet) | MAXIMUM OPENING WIDTH (feet) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 85 | 90 | 100 | 85 | 90 | 100 |
| | | | | Exposure B | | | Exposure C | | |
| | | | | Tension strap capacity required (lbf)[a,b] | | | | | |
| 2 × 4 No. 2 Grade | 0 | 10 | 18 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 |
| | 1 | 10 | 9 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1275 |
| | | | 16 | 1000 | 1000 | 1750 | 1800 | 2325 | 3500 |
| | | | 18 | 1000 | 1200 | 2100 | 2175 | 2725 | DR |
| | 2 | 10 | 9 | 1000 | 1000 | 1025 | 1075 | 1550 | 2500 |
| | | | 16 | 1525 | 2025 | 3125 | 3200 | 3900 | DR |
| | | | 18 | 1875 | 2400 | 3575 | 3700 | DR | DR |
| | 2 | 12 | 9 | 1000 | 1200 | 2075 | 2125 | 2750 | 4000 |
| | | | 16 | 2600 | 3200 | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | | | 18 | 3175 | 3850 | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | 4 | 12 | 9 | 1775 | 2350 | 3500 | 3550 | DR | DR |
| | | | 16 | 4175 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| 2 × 6 Stud Grade | 2 | 12 | 9 | 1000 | 1000 | 1325 | 1375 | 1750 | 2550 |
| | | | 16 | 1650 | 2050 | 2925 | 3000 | 3550 | DR |
| | | | 18 | 2025 | 2450 | 3425 | 3500 | 4100 | DR |
| | 4 | 12 | 9 | 1125 | 1500 | 2225 | 2275 | 2775 | 3800 |
| | | | 16 | 2650 | 3150 | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | | | 18 | 3125 | 3675 | DR | DR | DR | DR |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound force = 4.448 N.
a. DR = design required.
b. Strap shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

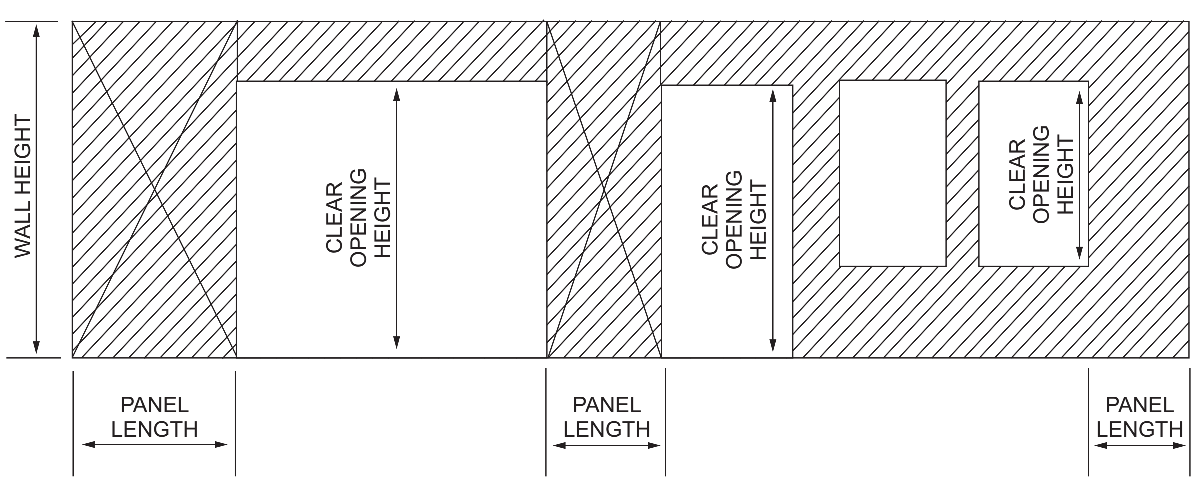
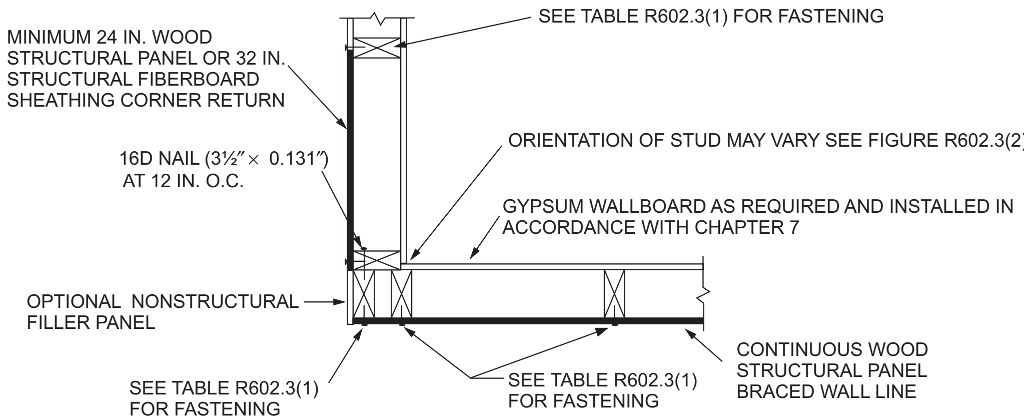



**FIGURE R602.10.4.2**
**BRACED WALL PANELS WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING**

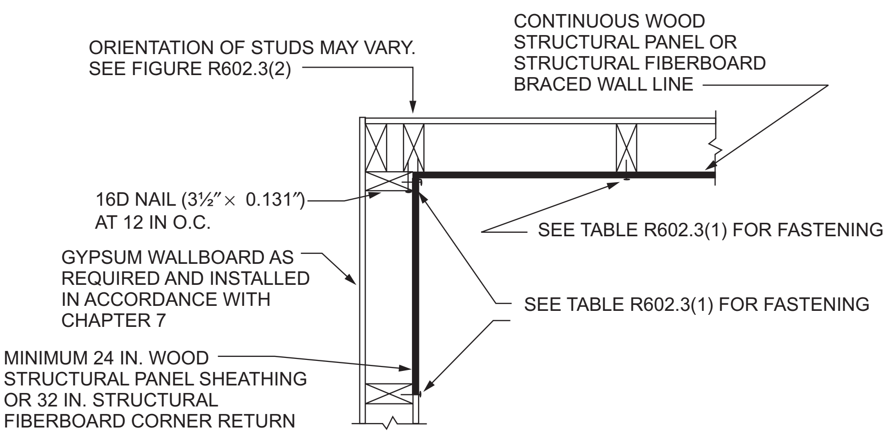
**TABLE R602.10.4.2**
**LENGTH REQUIREMENTS FOR BRACED WALL PANELS WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING[a] (inches)**

| METHOD | ADJACENT CLEAR OPENING HEIGHT (inches) | WALL HEIGHT (feet) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| CS-WSP | 64 | 24 | 27 | 30 | 33 | 36 |
| | 68 | 26 | 27 | 30 | — | — |
| | 72 | 28 | 27 | 30 | — | — |
| | 76 | 29 | 30 | 30 | — | — |
| | 80 | 31 | 33 | 30 | — | — |
| | 84 | 35 | 36 | 33 | — | — |
| | 88 | 39 | 39 | 36 | — | — |
| | 92 | 44 | 42 | 39 | — | — |
| | 96 | 48 | 45 | 42 | — | — |
| | 100 | — | 48 | 45 | — | — |
| | 104 | — | 51 | 48 | — | — |
| | 108 | — | 54 | 51 | — | — |
| | 112 | — | — | 54 | 44 | — |
| | 116 | — | — | 57 | — | — |
| | 120 | — | — | 60 | — | — |
| | 122 | — | — | — | — | 48 |
| | 132 | — | — | — | 66 | — |
| | 144 | — | — | — | — | 75 |
| CS-G | ≤ 120 | 24 | 27 | 30 | — | — |
| CS-PF | ≤ 120 | 16 | 18 | 20 | — | — |

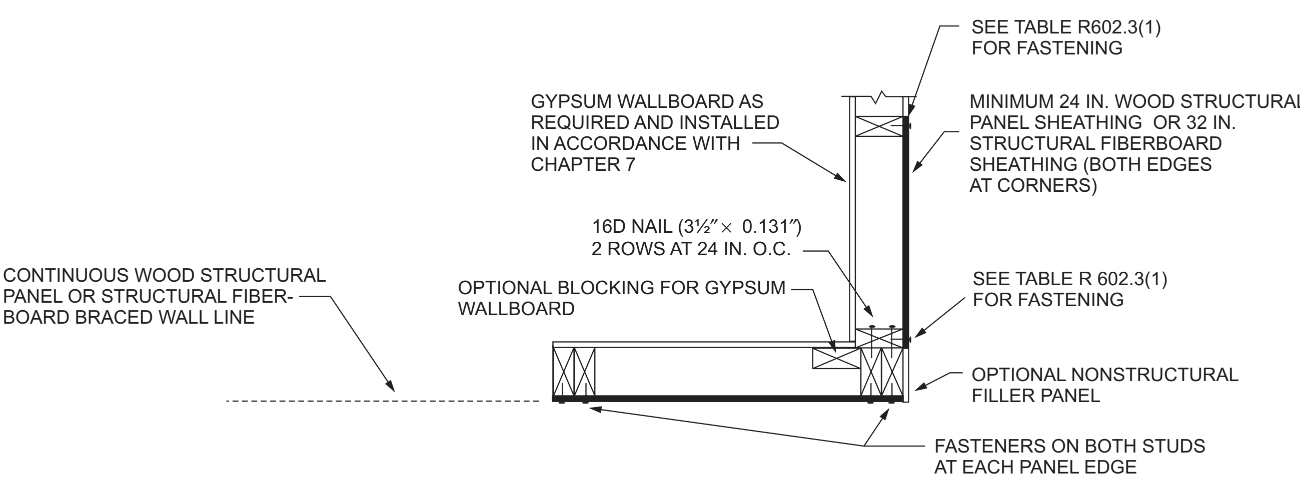
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Interpolation shall be permitted.




(a) OUTSIDE CORNER DETAIL



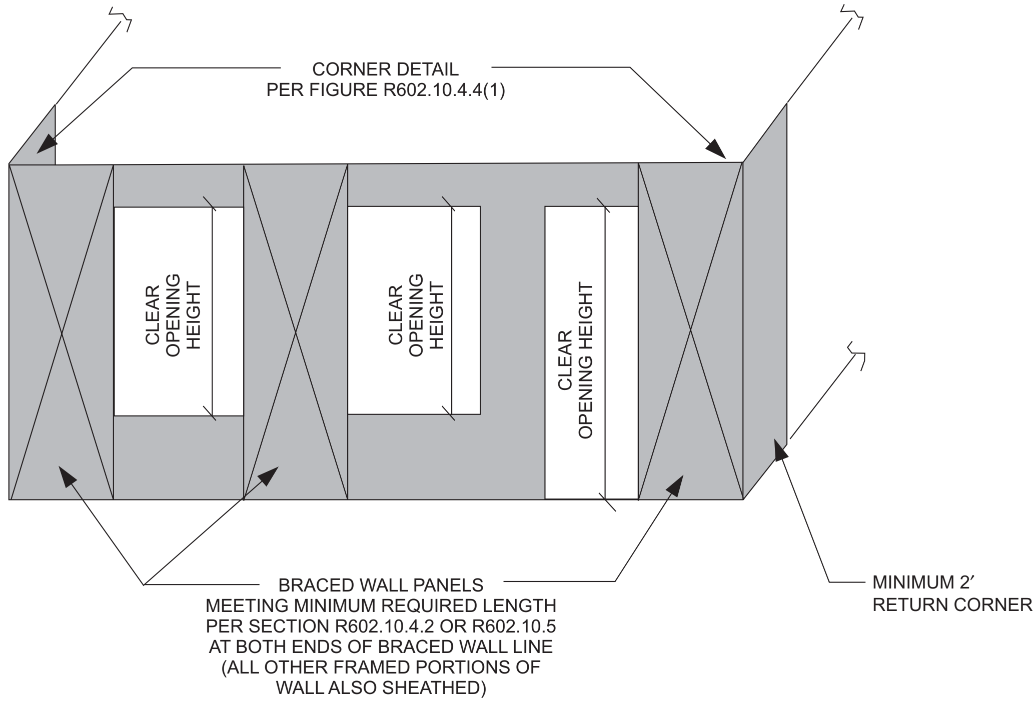

(b) INSIDE CORNER DETAIL




(c) GARAGE DOOR CORNER

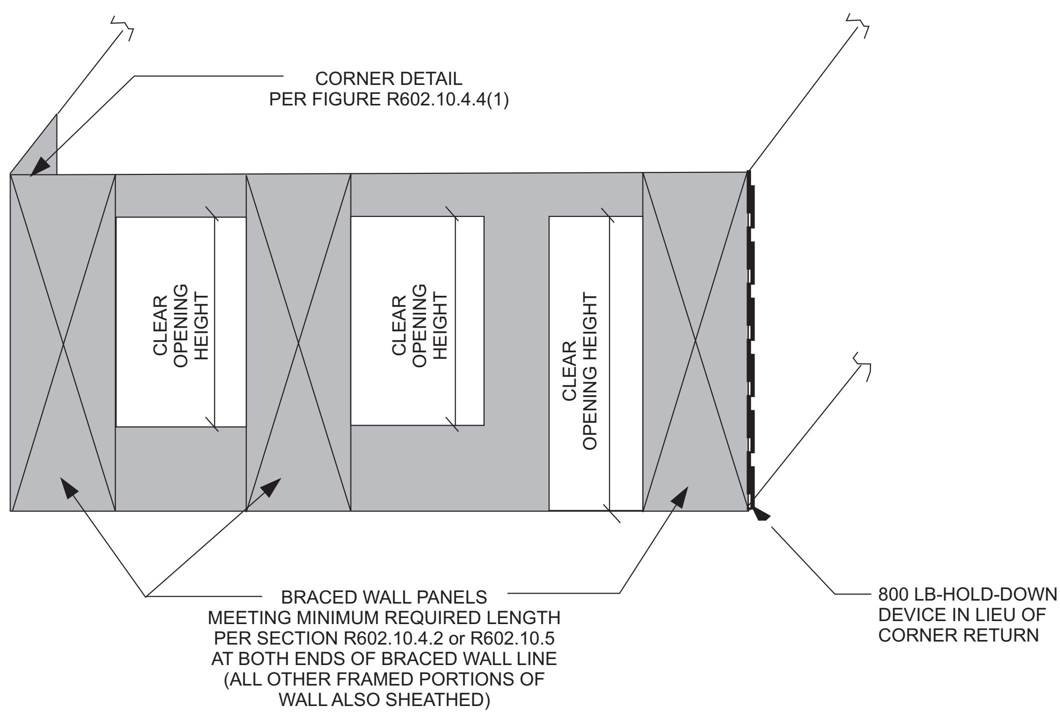
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.4.4(1)**
**TYPICAL EXTERIOR CORNER FRAMING FOR CONTINUOUS SHEATHING**



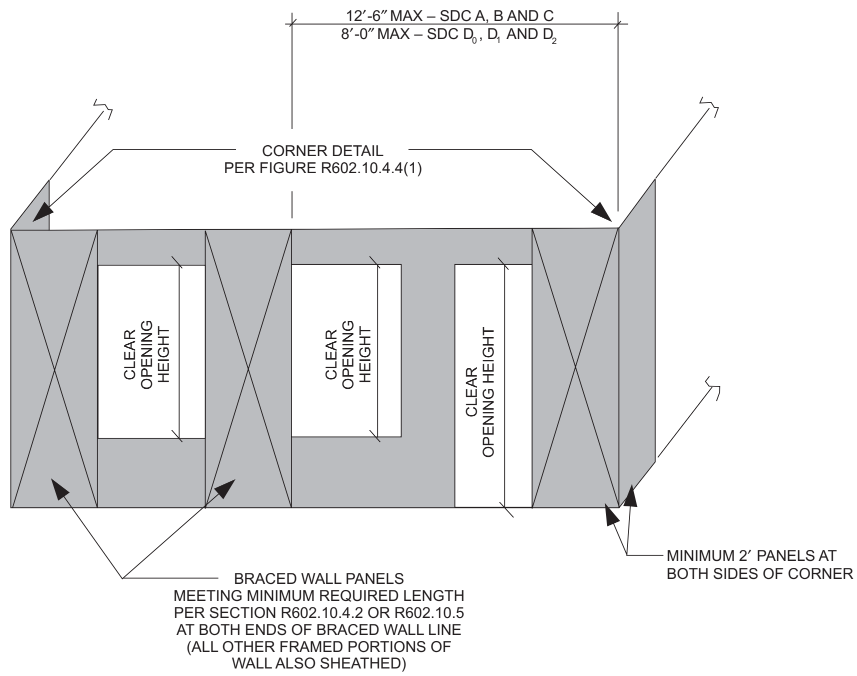

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.4.4(2)**
**BRACED WALL LINE WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING WITH CORNER RETURN PANEL**



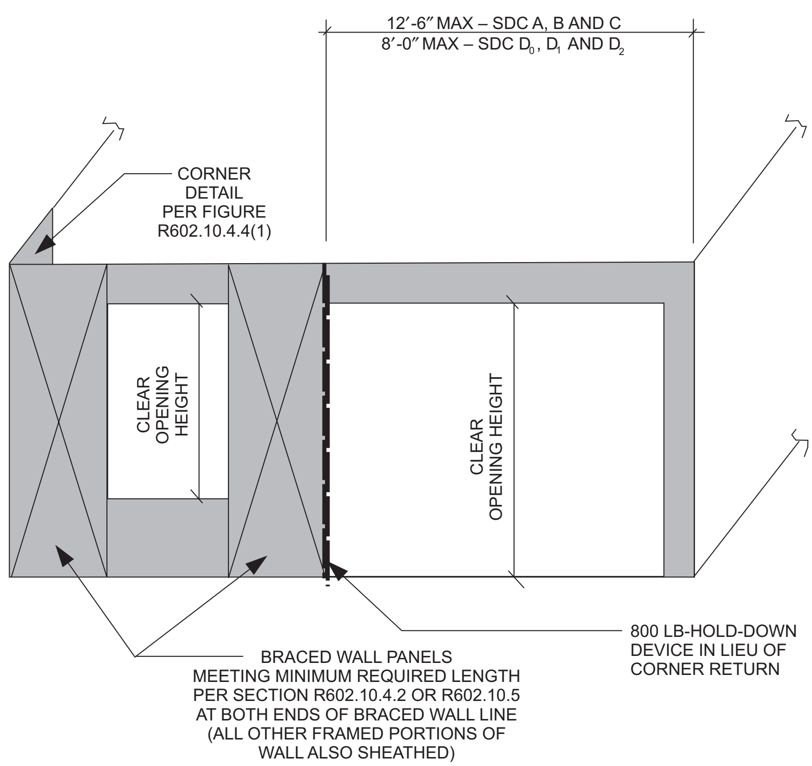

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R602.10.4.4(3)**
**BRACED WALL LINE WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING WITHOUT CORNER RETURN PANEL**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.4.4(4)**
**BRACED WALL LINE WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING FIRST BRACED WALL PANEL AWAY FROM END OF WALL LINE WITHOUT TIE DOWN**



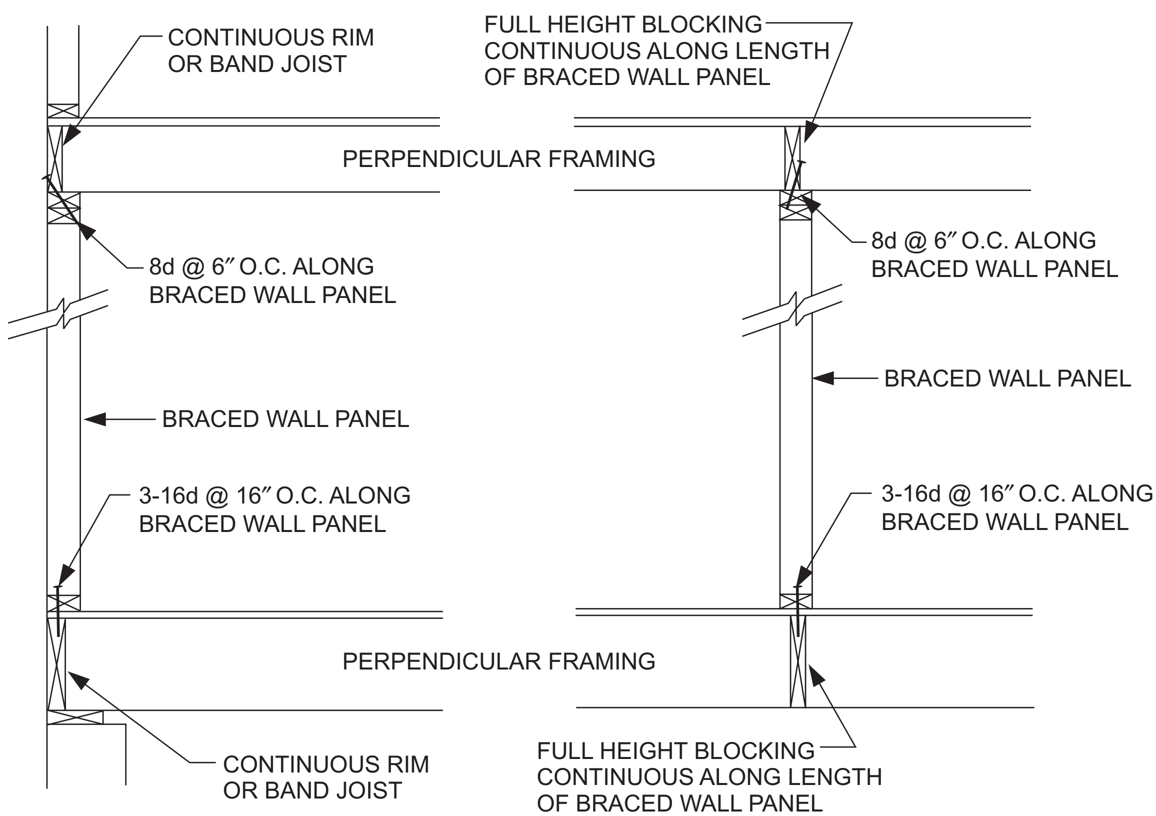

For SI: 1 foot = 305 mm. 1 pound = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R602.10.4.4(5)**
**BRACED WALL LINE WITH CONTINUOUS SHEATHING—FIRST BRACED WALL PANEL AWAY FROM END OF WALL LINE WITH HOLD-DOWN**

**TABLE R602.10.5.2**
**MINIMUM LENGTH REQUIREMENTS FOR STRUCTURAL FIBERBOARD BRACED WALL PANELS IN A CONTINUOUSLY-SHEATHED WALL[a]**

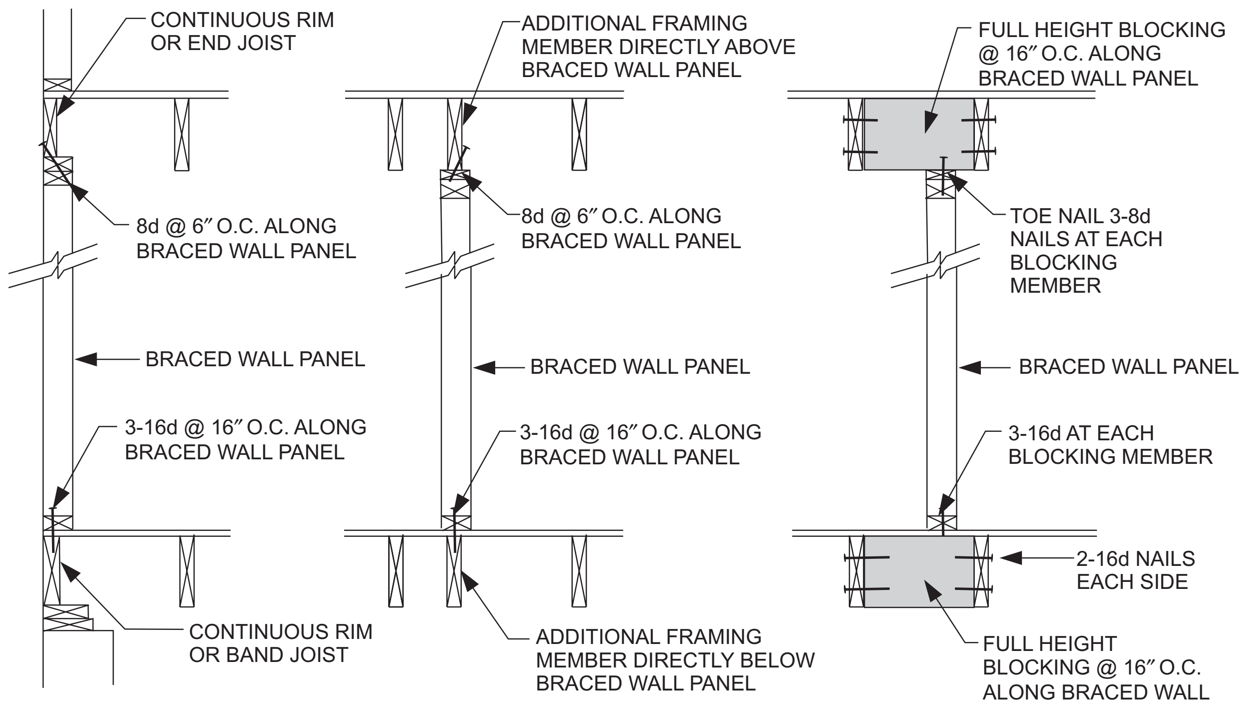
| MINIMUM LENGTH OF STRUCTURAL FIBERBOARD BRACED WALL PANEL (inches) | | | MINIMUM OPENING CLEAR HEIGHT NEXT TO THE STRUCTURAL FIBERBOARD BRACED WALL PANEL (% of wall height) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8-foot wall | 9-foot wall | 10-foot wall | |
| 48 | 54 | 60 | 100 |
| 32 | 36 | 40 | 85 |
| 24 | 27 | 30 | 67 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Interpolation is permitted.



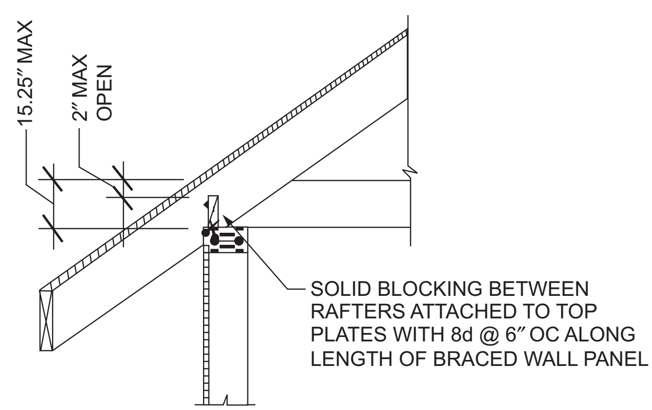

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.6(1)**
**BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION WHEN PERPENDICULAR TO FLOOR/CEILING FRAMING**



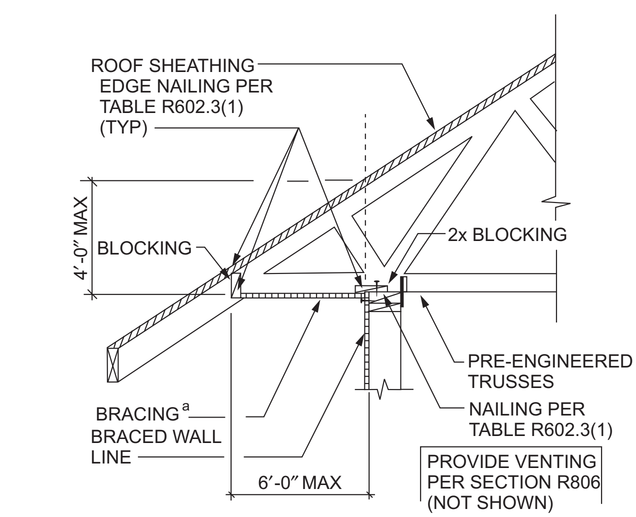

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.6(2)**
**BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION WHEN PARALLEL TO FLOOR/CEILING FRAMING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.6.2(1)**
**BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION**
**TO PERPENDICULAR RAFTERS**




a. METHODS OF BRACING SHALL BE AS DESCRIBED IN SECTION R602.10.2 METHOD DWB, WSP, SFB, GB, PBS, PCP OR HPS

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.6.2(2)**
**BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION OPTION TO**
**PERPENDICULAR RAFTERS OR ROOF TRUSSES**

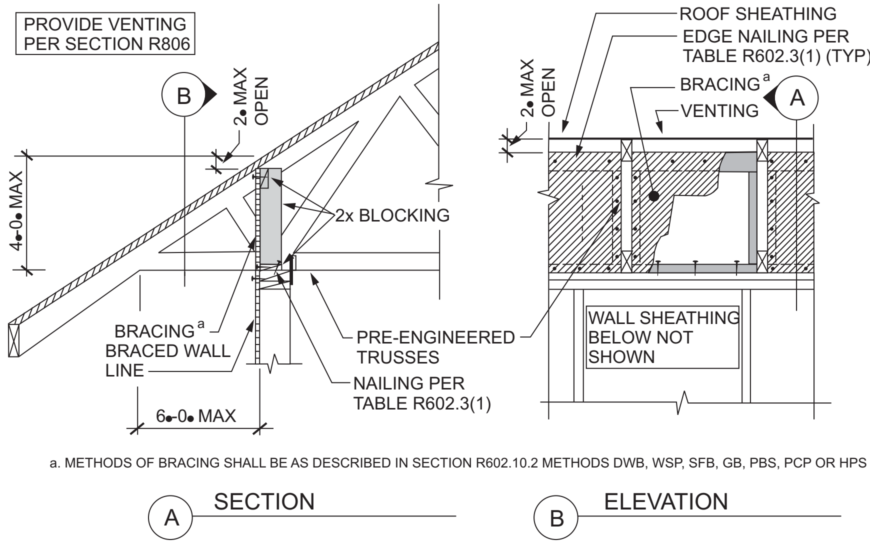



**FIGURE R602.10.6.2(3)**
**BRACED WALL PANEL CONNECTION OPTION TO PERPENDICULAR RAFTERS OR ROOF TRUSSES**

**R602.10.7 Braced wall panel support.** *Braced wall panel* support shall be provided as follows:

1. Cantilevered floor joists, supporting *braced wall lines*, shall comply with Section R502.3.3. Solid blocking shall be provided at the nearest bearing wall location. In Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, where the cantilever is not more than 24 inches (610 mm), a full height rim joist instead of solid blocking shall be provided.
2. Elevated post or pier foundations supporting *braced wall panels* shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.
3. Masonry stem walls with a length of 48 inches (1220 mm) or less supporting *braced wall panels* shall be reinforced in accordance with Figure R602.10.7. Masonry stem walls with a length greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) supporting *braced wall panels* shall be constructed in accordance with Section R403.1 *Braced wall panels* constructed in accordance with Sections R602.10.3.2 and R602.10.3.3 shall not be attached to masonry stem walls.

**[W] R602.10.7.1 Braced wall panel support for Seismic Design Category $D_2$.** In one-story buildings located in Seismic Design Category $D_2$, *braced wall panels* shall be supported on continuous foundations at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm). In two-story buildings located in Seismic Design Category $D_2$, all *braced wall panels* shall be supported on continuous foundations.

((~~**Exception:** Two-story buildings shall be permitted to have interior *braced wall panels* supported on continuous foundations at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm) provided that:~~))

((~~1. The height of cripple walls does not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).~~))

((~~2. First-floor *braced wall panels* are supported on doubled floor joists, continuous blocking or floor beams.~~))

((~~3. The distance between bracing lines does not exceed twice the building width measured parallel to the *braced wall line*.~~))

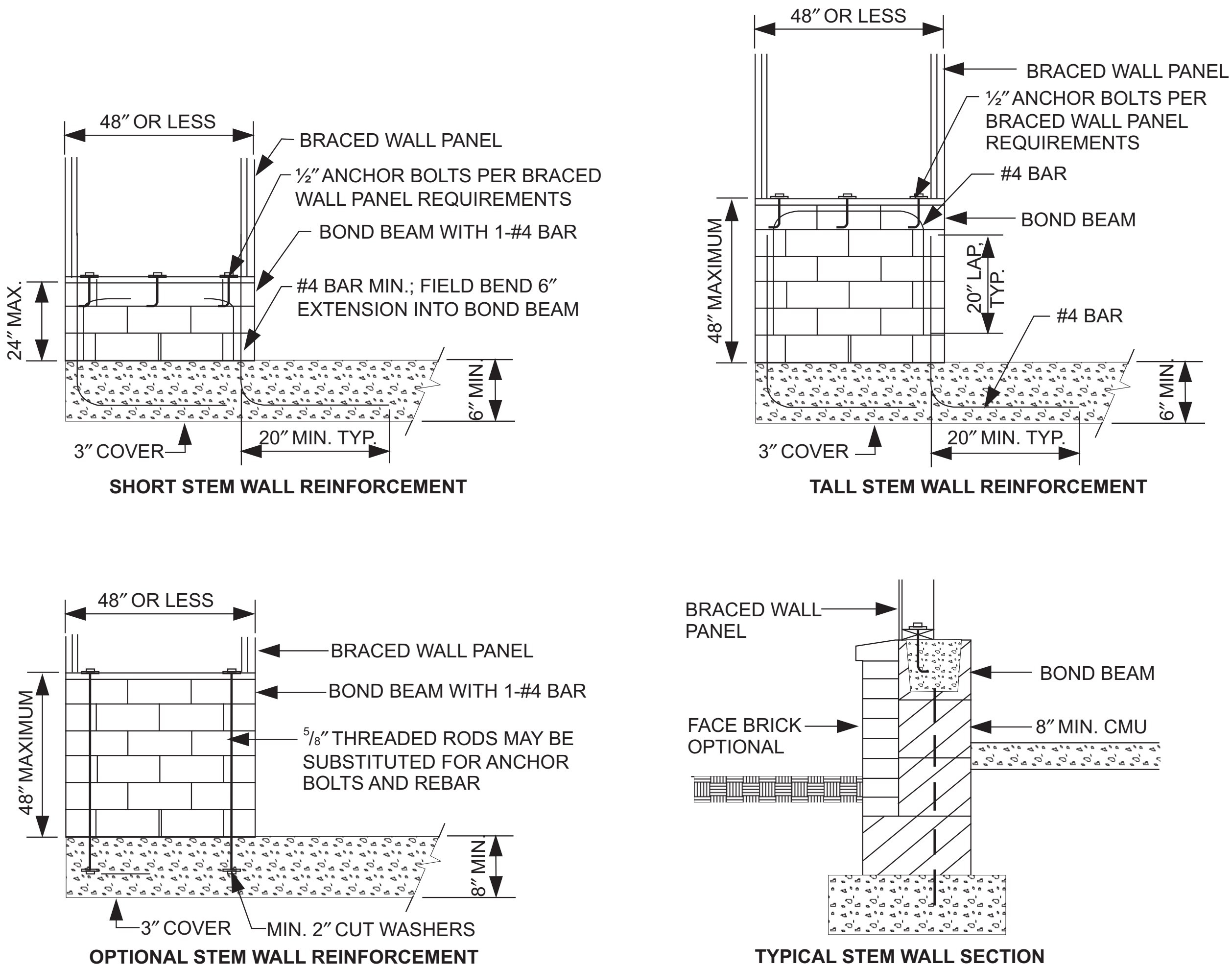
**R602.10.8 Panel joints.** All vertical joints of panel sheathing shall occur over, and be fastened to common studs. Horizontal joints in *braced wall panels* shall occur over, and be fastened to common blocking of a minimum $1^1/_2$ inch (38 mm) thickness.

**Exceptions:**

1. Blocking at horizontal joints shall not be required in wall segments that are not counted as *braced wall panels*.
2. Where the bracing length provided is at least twice the minimum length required by Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2) blocking at horizontal joints shall not be required in *braced wall panels* constructed using Methods WSP, SFB, GB, PBS or HPS.
3. When Method GB panels are installed horizontally, blocking of horizontal joints is not required.

**[W] R602.10.9 Cripple wall bracing.** In Seismic Design Categories other than $D_2$, cripple walls supporting bearing walls or exterior walls or interior *braced wall panels* as required in Sections R403.1.2 and R602.10.7.1 shall be braced with a length and type of bracing as required for the wall above in accordance with Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2) with the following modifications for cripple wall bracing:

1. The length of bracing as determined from Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2) shall be multiplied by a factor of 1.15, and
2. The wall panel spacing shall be decreased to 18 feet (5486 mm) instead of 25 feet (7620 mm).




**NOTE:** GROUT BOND BEAMS AND ALL CELLS WHICH CONTAIN REBAR, THREADED RODS AND ANCHOR BOLTS.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R602.10.7**
**MASONRY STEM WALLS SUPPORTING BRACED WALL PANELS**

**[W] R602.10.9.1 Cripple wall bracing in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** In addition to the requirements of Section R602.10.9, where *braced wall lines* at interior walls occur without a continuous foundation below, the length of parallel exterior cripple wall bracing shall be $1^1/_2$ times the length required by Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2). Where cripple walls braced using Method WSP of Section R602.10.2 cannot provide this additional length, the capacity of the sheathing shall be increased by reducing the spacing of fasteners along the perimeter of each piece of sheathing to 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

In Seismic Design Category $D_2$, cripple walls walls supporting bearing walls or exterior walls or interior *braced wall panels* as required in Sections R403.1.2 and R602.10.7.1 shall be braced in accordance with Tables R602.10.1.2(1) and R602.10.1.2(2).

**R602.10.9.2 Redesignation of cripple walls.** In any Seismic Design Category, cripple walls shall be permitted to be redesignated as the first *story* walls for purposes of determining wall bracing requirements. If the cripple walls are redesignated, the stories above the redesignated *story* shall be counted as the second and third stories, respectively.

**R602.11 Wall anchorage.** *Braced wall line* sills shall be anchored to concrete or masonry foundations in accordance with Sections R403.1.6 and R602.11.1.

**602.11.1 Wall anchorage for all buildings in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ and townhouses in Seismic Design Category C.** Plate washers, a minimum of 0.229 inch by 3 inches by 3 inches (5.8 mm by 76 mm by 76 mm) in size, shall be provided between the foundation sill plate and the nut except where *approved* anchor straps are used. The hole in the plate washer is permitted to be diagonally slotted with a width of up to $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) larger than the bolt diameter and a slot length not to exceed $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm), provided a standard cut washer is placed between the plate washer and the nut.

**R602.11.2 Stepped foundations in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** In all buildings located in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$, where the height of a required *braced wall line* that extends from foundation to floor above varies more than 4 feet (1219 mm), the *braced wall line* shall be constructed in accordance with the following:

1. Where the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to a foundation not less than 8 feet (2440 mm) in length along a line of bracing, the line shall be considered as braced. The double plate of the cripple stud wall beyond the segment of footing that extends to the lowest framed floor shall be spliced by extending the upper top plate a minimum of 4 feet (1219 mm) along the foundation. Anchor bolts shall be located a maximum of 1 foot and 3 feet (305 and 914 mm) from the step in the foundation. See Figure R602.11.2.
2. Where cripple walls occur between the top of the foundation and the lowest floor framing, the bracing requirements of Sections R602.10.9 and R602.10.9.1 shall apply.
3. Where only the bottom of the foundation is stepped and the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to the foundations, the requirements of Sections R403.1.6 and R602.11.1 shall apply.

**R602.12 Wall bracing and stone and masonry veneer.** Where stone and masonry veneer is installed in accordance with Section R703.7, wall bracing shall comply with this section.

For all buildings in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, wall bracing at exterior and interior *braced wall lines* shall be in accordance with Section R602.10 and the additional requirements of Table R602.12(1).

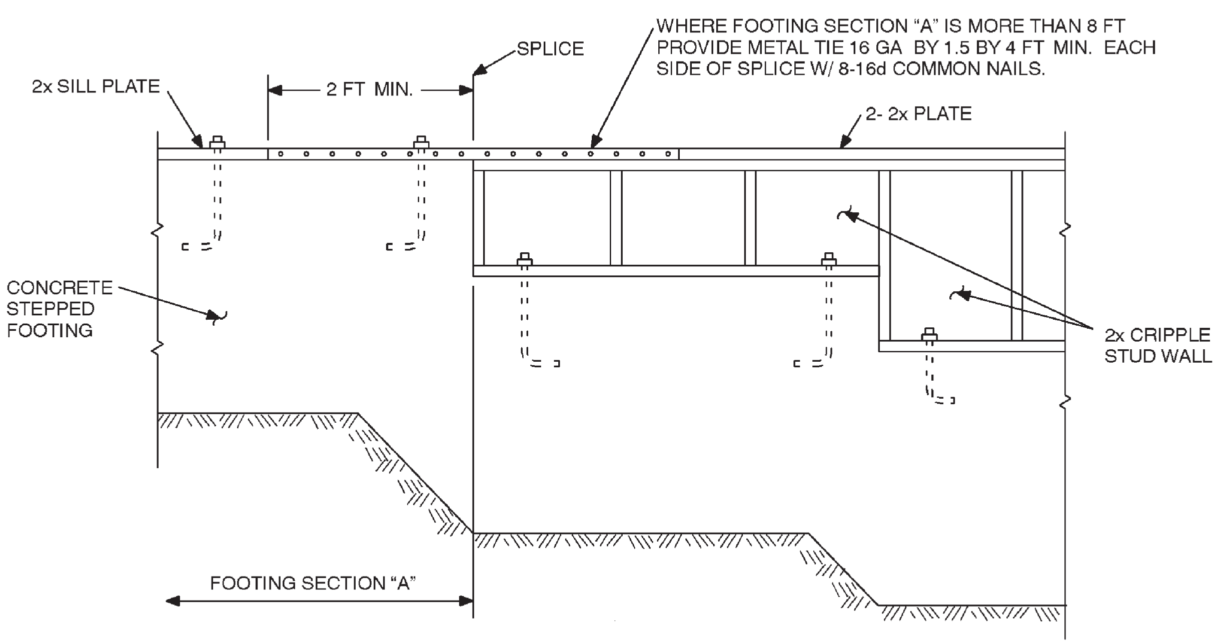
For detached one- or two-family *dwellings* in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, wall bracing and hold downs at exterior and interior *braced wall lines* shall be in accordance with Sections R602.10 and R602.11 and the additional requirements of Section R602.12.1 and Table R602.12(2). In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, cripple walls are not permitted, and required interior *braced wall lines* shall be supported on continuous foundations.

**R602.12.1 Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** Wall bracing where stone and masonry veneer exceeds the first *story height* in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ shall conform to the requirements of Sections R602.10 and R602.11 and the following requirements.

**R602.12.1.1 Length of bracing.** The length of bracing along each *braced wall line* shall be in accordance with Table R602.12(2).

**R602.12.1.2 Braced wall panel location.** *Braced wall panels* shall begin no more than 8 feet (2440 mm) from each end of a *braced wall line* and shall be spaced a maximum of 25 feet (7620 mm) on center.

**R602.12.1.3 Braced wall panel construction.** *Braced wall panels* shall be constructed of sheathing with a thickness of not less than $^7/_{16}$ inch (11 mm) nailed with 8d common nails spaced 4 inches (102 mm) on center at all panel edges and 12 inches (305 mm) on center at intermediate supports. The end of each *braced wall panel* shall have a




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

Note: Where footing Section "A" is less than 8 feet long in a 25-foot-long wall, install bracing at cripple stud wall.

**FIGURE R602.11.2**
**STEPPED FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION**

hold down device in accordance with Table R602.12(2) installed at each end. Size, height and spacing of wood studs shall be in accordance with Table R602.3(5).

**R602.12.1.4 Minimum length of braced panel.** Each *braced wall panel* shall be at least 48 inches (1219 mm) in length, covering a minimum of 3 stud spaces where studs are spaced 16 inches (406 mm) on center and covering a minimum of 2 stud spaced where studs are spaced 24 inches on center.

**R602.12.1.5 Alternate braced wall panel.** Alternate *braced wall panels* described in Section R602.10.3.2 shall not replace the *braced wall panel* specification of this section.

**R602.12.1.6 Continuously sheathed wall bracing.** Continuously sheathed provisions of Section R602.10.4 shall not be used in conjunction with the wall bracing provisions of this section.

## SECTION R603
## STEEL WALL FRAMING

**R603.1 General.** Elements shall be straight and free of any defects that would significantly affect structural performance. Cold-formed steel wall framing members shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**R603.1.1 Applicability limits.** The provisions of this section shall control the construction of exterior cold-formed steel wall framing and interior load-bearing cold-formed steel wall framing for buildings not more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) long perpendicular to the joist or truss span, not more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) wide parallel to the joist or truss span, and less than or equal to three stories above *grade plane*. All exterior walls installed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be considered as load-bearing walls. Cold-formed steel walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 110 miles per hour (49 m/s) Exposure B or C and a maximum ground snow load of 70 pounds per square foot (3.35 kPa).

**R603.1.2 In-line framing.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel studs constructed in accordance with Section R603 shall be located in-line with joists, trusses and rafters in accordance with Figure R603.1.2 and the tolerances specified as follows:

1. The maximum tolerance shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) between the centerline of the horizontal framing member and the centerline of the vertical framing member.
2. Where the centerline of the horizontal framing member and bearing stiffener are located to one side of the centerline of the vertical framing member, the maximum tolerance shall be $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) between the web of the horizontal framing member and the edge of the vertical framing member.

**R603.2 Structural framing.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel wall framing members shall comply with Figure R603.2(1) and with the dimensional and minimum thickness requirements specified in Tables R603.2(1) and R603.2(2). Tracks shall comply with Figure R603.2(2) and shall have a minimum flange width of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm). The maximum inside bend radius for members shall be the greater of $^3/_{32}$ inch (2.4 mm) minus half the base steel thickness or 1.5 times the base steel thickness.

**R603.2.1 Material.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be cold-formed to shape from structural quality sheet steel complying with the requirements of one of the following:

1. ASTM A 653: Grades 33, and 50 (Class 1 and 3).
2. ASTM A 792: Grades 33, and 50A.
3. ASTM A 1003: Structural Grades 33 Type H, and 50 Type H.

**TABLE R602.12(1)**
**STONE OR MASONRY VENEER WALL BRACING REQUIREMENTS, WOOD OR STEEL FRAMING, SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B and C**

| SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY | NUMBER OF WOOD FRAMED STORIES | WOOD FRAMED STORY | MINIMUM SHEATHING AMOUNT (length of braced wall line length)[a] |
|---|---|---|---|
| A or B | 1, 2 or 3 | all | Table R602.10.1.2(2) |
| C | 1 | 1 only | Table R602.10.1.2(2) |
| | 2 | top | Table R602.10.1.2(2) |
| | | bottom | 1.5 times length required by Table R602.10.1.2(2) |
| | 3 | top | Table R602.10.1.2(2) |
| | | middle | 1.5 times length required by Table R602.10.1.2(2) |
| | | bottom | 1.5 times length required by Table R602.10.1.2(2) |

a. Applies to exterior and interior braced wall lines.

**TABLE R602.12(2)**
**STONE OR MASONRY VENEER WALL BRACING REQUIREMENTS,**
**ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DETACHED DWELLINGS, SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$**

| SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY | NUMBER OF STORIES[a] | STORY | MINIMUM SHEATHING AMOUNT (percent of braced wall line length)[b] | MINIMUM SHEATHING THICKNESS AND FASTENING | SINGLE STORY HOLD DOWN FORCE (lb)[c] | CUMULATIVE HOLD DOWN FORCE (lb)[d] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $D_0$ | 1 | 1 only | 35 | $^7/_{16}$-inch wood structural panel sheathing with 8d common nails spaced at 4 inches on center at panel edges, 12 inches on center at intermediate supports; 8d common nails at 4 inches on center at braced wall panel end posts with hold down attached | N/A | — |
| | 2 | top | 35 | | 1900 | — |
| | | bottom | 45 | | 3200 | 5100 |
| | 3 | top | 40 | | 1900 | — |
| | | middle | 45 | | 3500 | 5400 |
| | | bottom | 60 | | 3500 | 8900 |
| $D_1$ | 1 | 1 only | 45 | | 2100 | — |
| | 2 | top | 45 | | 2100 | — |
| | | bottom | 45 | | 3700 | 5800 |
| | 3 | top | 45 | | 2100 | — |
| | | middle | 45 | | 3700 | 5800 |
| | | bottom | 60 | | 3700 | 9500 |
| $D_2$ | 1 | 1 only | 55 | | 2300 | — |
| | 2 | top | 55 | | 2300 | — |
| | | bottom | 55 | | 3900 | 6200 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.479 kPa, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

a. Cripple walls are not permitted in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.

b. Applies to exterior and interior braced wall lines.

c. Hold down force is minimum allowable stress design load for connector providing uplift tie from wall framing at end of braced wall panel at the noted story to wall framing at end of braced wall panel at the story below, or to foundation or foundation wall. Use single story hold down force where edges of braced wall panels do not align; a continuous load path to the foundation shall be maintained. [See Figure R602.12].

d. Where hold down connectors from stories above align with stories below, use cumulative hold down force to size middle and bottom story hold down connectors. (See Figure R602.12).

**R603.2.2 Identification.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall have a legible *label*, stencil, stamp or embossment with the following information as a minimum:

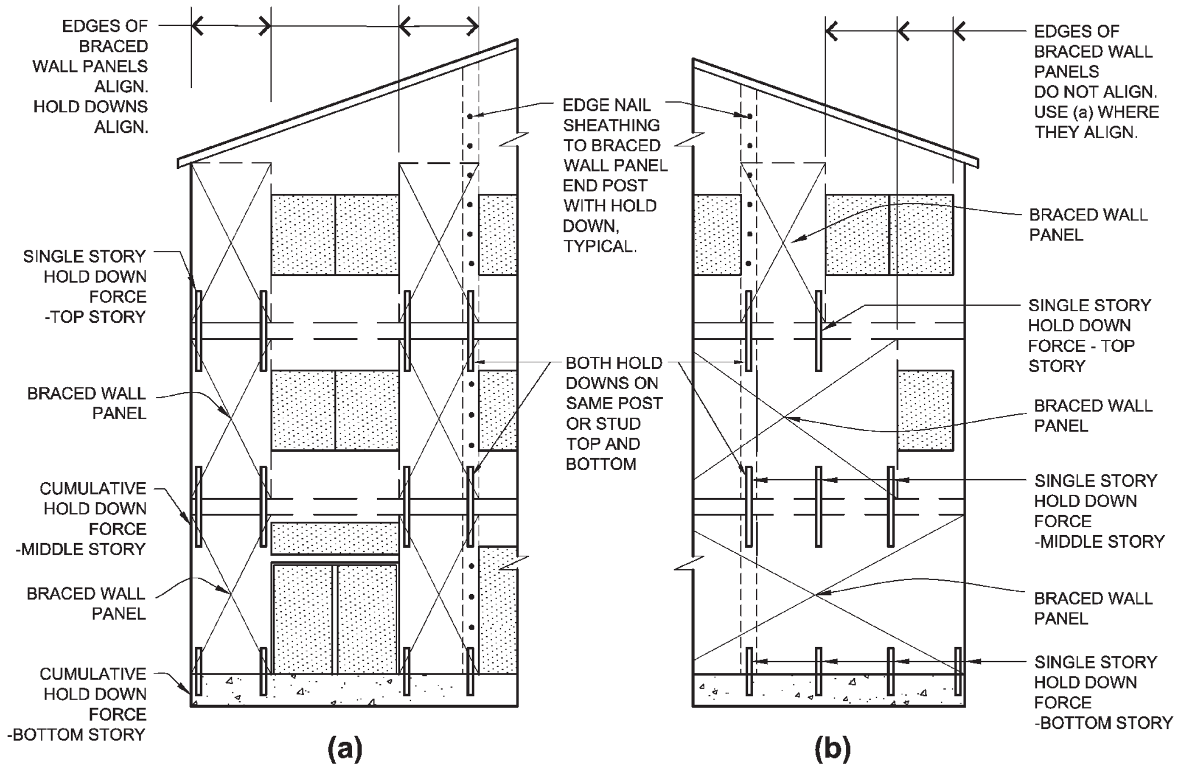
1. Manufacturer's identification.
2. Minimum base steel thickness in inches (mm).
3. Minimum coating designation.
4. Minimum yield strength, in kips per square inch (ksi) (MPa).

**R603.2.3 Corrosion protection.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing shall have a metallic coating complying with ASTM A 1003 and one of the following:

1. A minimum of G 60 in accordance with ASTM A 653.
2. A minimum of AZ 50 in accordance with ASTM A 792.

**R603.2.4 Fastening requirements.** Screws for steel-to-steel connections shall be installed with a minimum edge distance and center-to-center spacing of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm), shall be self-drilling tapping and shall conform to ASTM C 1513. Structural sheathing shall be attached to cold-formed steel studs with minimum No. 8 self-drilling tapping screws that conform to ASTM C 1513. Screws for attaching structural sheathing to cold-formed steel wall framing shall have a minimum head diameter of 0.292 inch (7.4 mm) with countersunk heads and shall be installed with a minimum edge distance of $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm). Gypsum board shall be attached to cold-formed steel wall framing with minimum No. 6 screws conforming to ASTM C 954 or ASTM C 1513 with a bugle head style and shall be installed in accordance with Section R702. For all connections, screws shall extend through the steel a minimum of three exposed threads. All fasteners shall have rust inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.

Where No. 8 screws are specified in a steel-to-steel connection, the required number of screws in the connection is permitted to be reduced in accordance with the reduction factors in Table R603.2.4, when larger screws are used or when one of the sheets of steel being connected is thicker than 33 mils (0.84 mm). When applying the reduction factor, the resulting number of screws shall be rounded up.




(a) Braced wall panels stacked (aligned story to story). Use cumulative hold down force.
(b) Braced wall panels not stacked. Use single story hold down force.

**FIGURE R602.12**
**HOLD DOWNS AT EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR BRACED WALL PANELS**

**TABLE R603.2.4**
**SCREW SUBSTITUTION FACTOR**

| SCREW SIZE | THINNEST CONNECTED STEEL SHEET (mils) | |
|---|---|---|
| | 33 | 43 |
| #8 | 1.0 | 0.67 |
| #10 | 0.93 | 0.62 |
| #12 | 0.86 | 0.56 |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

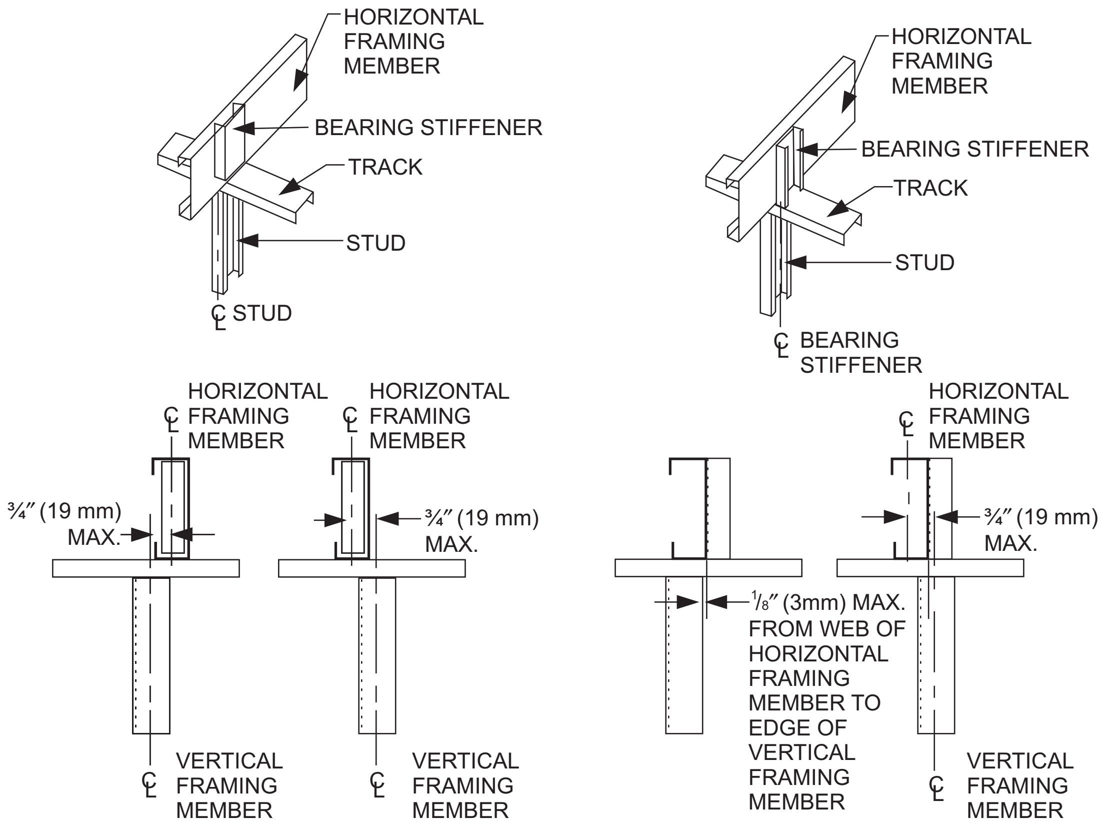
**R603.2.5 Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching.** Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching shall be in accordance with this section.

**R603.2.5.1 Web holes.** Web holes in wall studs and other structural members shall comply with all of the following conditions:

1. Holes shall conform to Figure R603.2.5.1;
2. Holes shall be permitted only along the centerline of the web of the framing member;
3. Holes shall have a center-to-center spacing of not less than 24 inches (610 mm);
4. Holes shall have a web hole width not greater than 0.5 times the member depth, or $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm);
5. Holes shall have a web hole length not exceeding $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm); and
6. Holes shall have a minimum distance between the edge of the bearing surface and the edge of the web hole of not less than 10 inches (254 mm).

Framing members with web holes not conforming to the above requirements shall be reinforced in accordance with Section R603.2.5.2, patched in accordance with Section R603.2.5.3 or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**R603.2.5.2 Web hole reinforcing.** Web holes in gable endwall studs not conforming to the requirements of Section R603.2.5.1 shall be permitted to be reinforced if the hole is located fully within the center 40 percent of the span and the depth and length of the hole does not exceed 65 percent of the flat width of the web. The reinforcing shall be a steel plate or C-shape section with a hole that does not exceed the web hole size limitations of Section R603.2.5.1 for the member being reinforced. The steel reinforcing shall be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend at least 1 inch (25.4 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel reinforcing shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No.8 screws spaced no more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm,

**FIGURE R603.1.2**
**IN-LINE FRAMING**

**TABLE R603.2(1)**
**LOAD-BEARING COLD-FORMED STEEL STUD SIZES**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION[a] | WEB DEPTH (inches) | MINIMUM FLANGE WIDTH (inches) | MAXIMUM FLANGE WIDTH (inches) | MINIMUM LIP SIZE (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 350S162-t | 3.5 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 550S162-t | 5.5 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. The member designation is defined by the first number representing the member depth in hundredths of an inch "S" representing a stud or joist member, the second number representing the flange width in hundredths of an inch, and the letter "t" shall be a number representing the minimum base metal thickness in mils [See Table R603.2(2)].

**TABLE R603.2(2)**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS OF COLD-FORMED STEEL MEMBERS**

| DESIGNATION THICKNESS (mils) | MINIMUM BASE STEEL THICKNESS (inches) |
|---|---|
| 33 | 0.0329 |
| 43 | 0.0428 |
| 54 | 0.0538 |
| 68 | 0.0677 |
| 97 | 0.0966 |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

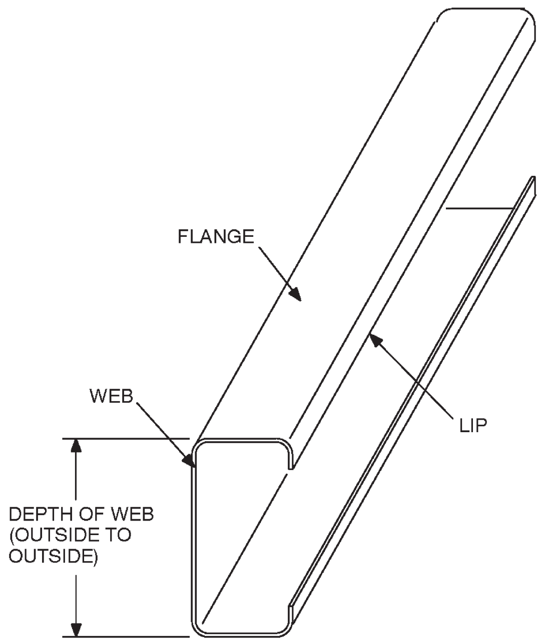



**FIGURE R603.2(1)**
**C-SHAPED SECTION**

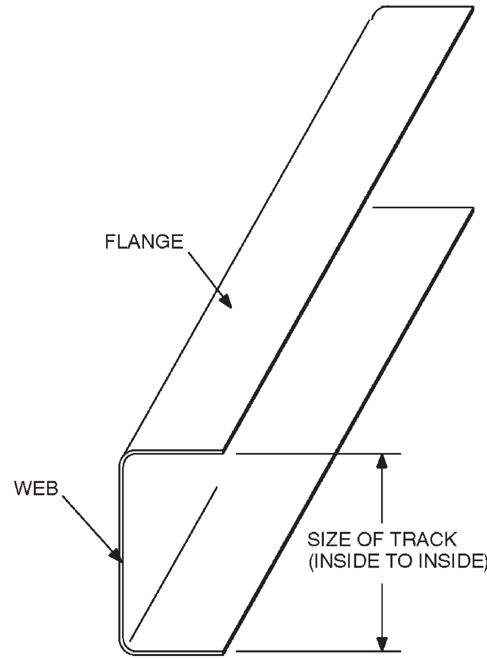
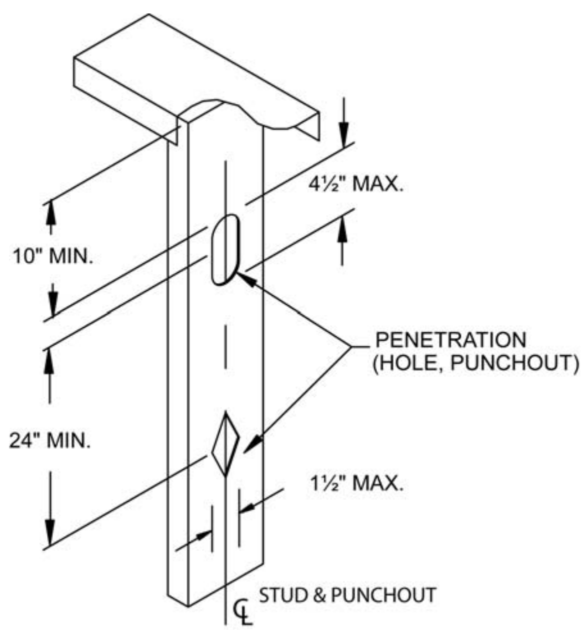



**FIGURE R603.2(2)**
**TRACK SECTION**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

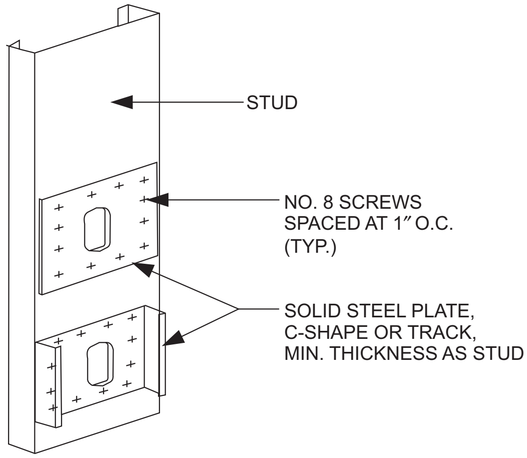
**FIGURE R603.2.5.1**
**WEB HOLES**

**R603.2.5.3 Hole patching.** Web holes in wall studs and other structural members not conforming to the requirements in Section R603.2.5.1 shall be permitted to be patched in accordance with either of the following methods:

1. Framing members shall be replaced or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice when web holes exceed the following size limits:
   - 1.1. The depth of the hole, measured across the web, exceeds 70 percent of the flat width of the web; or
   - 1.2. The length of the hole measured along the web exceeds 10 inches (254 mm) or the depth of the web, whichever is greater.
2. Web holes not exceeding the dimensional requirements in Section R603.2.5.3, Item 1 shall be patched with a solid steel plate, stud section or track section in accordance with Figure R603.2.5.3. The steel patch shall, as a minimum, be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend at least 1 inch (25.4 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel patch shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No. 8 screws spaced no more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with a minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

**R603.3 Wall construction.** All exterior cold-formed steel framed walls and interior load-bearing cold-formed steel framed walls shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**R603.3.1 Wall to foundation or floor connection.** Cold-formed steel framed walls shall be anchored to foundations or floors in accordance with Table R603.3.1 and Figure R603.3.1(1), R603.3.1(2) or R603.3.1(3). Anchor bolts shall be located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from corners or the termination of bottom tracks. Anchor bolts shall extend a minimum of 15 inches (381 mm) into masonry or 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete. Foundation anchor straps shall be permitted, in lieu of anchor bolts, if spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to the required anchor bolts and installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.2.5.3**
**STUD WEB HOLE PATCH**

**R603.3.1.1 Gable endwalls.** Gable endwalls with heights greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be anchored to foundations or floors in accordance with Tables R603.3.1.1(1) or R603.3.1.1(2).

**R603.3.2 Minimum stud sizes.** Cold-formed steel walls shall be constructed in accordance with Figures R603.3.1(1), R603.3.1(2), or R603.3.1(3), as applicable. Exterior wall stud size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables R603.3.2(2) through R603.3.2(31). Interior load-bearing wall stud size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables R603.3.2(2) through R603.3.2(31) based upon an 85 miles per hour (38 m/s) Exposure A/B wind value and the building width, stud spacing and snow load, as appropriate. Fastening requirements shall be in accordance with Section R603.2.4 and Table R603.3.2(1). Top and bottom tracks shall have the same minimum thickness as the wall studs.

Exterior wall studs shall be permitted to be reduced to the next thinner size, as shown in Tables R603.3.2(2) through R603.3.2(31), but not less than 33 mils (0.84 mm) ,where both of the following conditions exist:

1. Minimum of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board is installed and fastened in accordance with Section R702 on the interior surface.
2. Wood structural sheathing panels of minimum $^7/_{16}$ inch (11 mm) thick oriented strand board or $^{15}/_{32}$ inch (12 mm) thick plywood is installed and fastened in accordance with Section R603.9.1 and Table R603.3.2(1) on the outside surface.

Interior load-bearing walls shall be permitted to be reduced to the next thinner size, as shown in Tables R603.3.2(2) through R603.3.2(31), but not less than 33 mils (0.84 mm), where a minimum of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board is installed and fastened in accordance with Section R702 on both sides of the wall. The tabulated stud thickness for load-bearing walls shall be used when the *attic* load is 10 pounds per square feet (480 Pa) or less. A limited *attic* storage load of 20 pounds per square feet (960 Pa) shall be permitted provided that the next higher snow load column is used to select the stud size from Tables R603.3.2(2) through R603.3.2(31).

For two-story buildings, the tabulated stud thickness for walls supporting one floor, roof and ceiling shall be used when second floor live load is 30 pounds per square feet (1440 Pa). Second floor live loads of 40 psf (1920 pounds per square feet) shall be permitted provided that the next higher snow load column is used to select the stud size from Tables R603.3.2(2) through R603.3.2(21).

For three-story buildings, the tabulated stud thickness for walls supporting one or two floors, roof and ceiling shall be used when the third floor live load is 30 pounds per square feet (1440 Pa). Third floor live loads of 40 pounds per square feet (1920 Pa) shall be permitted provided that the next higher snow load column is used to select the stud size from Tables R603.3.2(22) through R603.3.2(31).

**R603.3.2.1 Gable endwalls.** The size and thickness of gable endwall studs with heights less than or equal to 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be permitted in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables R603.3.2.1(1) or R603.3.2.1(2). The size and thickness of gable endwall studs with heights greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables R603.3.2.1(3) or R603.3.2.1(4).

**R603.3.3 Stud bracing.** The flanges of cold-formed steel studs shall be laterally braced in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gypsum board on both sides, structural sheathing on both sides, or gypsum board on one side and structural sheathing on the other side of load-bearing walls with gypsum board installed with minimum No. 6 screws in accordance with Section R702 and structural sheathing installed in accordance with Section R603.9.1 and Table R603.3.2(1).
2. Horizontal steel straps fastened in accordance with Figure R603.3.3(1) on both sides at mid-height for 8-foot (2438 mm) walls, and at one-third points for 9-foot and 10-foot (2743 mm and 3048 mm) walls. Horizontal steel straps shall be at least 1.5 inches in width and 33 mils in thickness (38 mm by 0.84 mm). Straps shall be attached to the flanges of studs with one No. 8 screw. In-line blocking shall be installed between studs at the termination of all straps and at 12 foot (3658 mm) intervals along the strap. Straps shall be fastened to the blocking with two No. 8 screws.
3. Sheathing on one side and strapping on the other side fastened in accordance with Figure R603.3.3(2). Sheathing shall be installed in accordance with Item 1. Steel straps shall be installed in accordance with Item 2.

**R603.3.4 Cutting and notching.** Flanges and lips of cold-formed steel studs and headers shall not be cut or notched.

**R603.3.5 Splicing.** Steel studs and other structural members shall not be spliced. Tracks shall be spliced in accordance with Figure R603.3.5.

**R603.4 Corner framing.** In exterior walls, corner studs and the top tracks shall be installed in accordance with Figure R603.4.

**R603.5 Exterior wall covering.** The method of attachment of exterior wall covering materials to cold-formed steel stud wall framing shall conform to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R603.6 Headers.** Headers shall be installed above all wall openings in exterior walls and interior load-bearing walls. Box beam headers and back-to-back headers each shall be formed from two equal sized C-shaped members in accordance with Figures R603.6(1) and R603.6(2), respectively, and Tables R603.6(1) through R603.6(24). L-shaped headers shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with AISI S230. Alternately, headers shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with AISI S100, Section D4.

**R603.6.1 Headers in gable endwalls.** Box beam and back-to-back headers in gable endwalls shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with Section R603.6 or with the header directly above the opening in accordance with Figures R603.6.1(1) and R603.6.1(2) and the following provisions:

1. Two 362S162-33 for openings less than or equal to 4 feet (1219 mm).
2. Two 600S162-43 for openings greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) but less than or equal to 6 feet (1830 mm).
3. Two 800S162-54 for openings greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) but less than or equal to 9 feet (2743 mm).

**R603.7 Jack and king studs.** The number of jack and king studs installed on each side of a header shall comply with Table R603.7(1). King, jack and cripple studs shall be of the same dimension and thickness as the adjacent wall studs. Headers shall be connected to king studs in accordance with Table R603.7(2) and the following provisions:

1. For box beam headers, one-half of the total number of required screws shall be applied to the header and one half to the king stud by use of C-shaped or track member in accordance with Figure R603.6(1). The track or C-shape sections shall extend the depth of the header minus $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) and shall have a minimum thickness not less than that of the wall studs.
2. For back-to-back headers, one-half the total number of screws shall be applied to the header and one-half to the king stud by use of a minimum 2-inch-by-2-inch (51 mm × 51 mm) clip angle in accordance with Figure R603.6(2). The clip angle shall extend the depth of the header minus $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) and shall have a minimum thickness not less than that of the wall studs. Jack and king studs shall be interconnected with structural sheathing in accordance with Figures R603.6(1) and R603.6(2).

**R603.8 Head and sill track.** Head track spans above door and window openings and sill track spans beneath window openings shall comply with Table R603.8. For openings less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height that have both a head track and a sill track, multiplying the spans by 1.75 shall be permitted in Table R603.8. For openings less than or equal to 6 feet (1829 mm) in height that have both a head track and a sill track, multiplying the spans in Table R603.8 by 1.50 shall be permitted.

**R603.9 Structural sheathing.** Structural sheathing shall be installed in accordance with Figure R603.9 and this section on all sheathable exterior wall surfaces, including areas above and below openings.

**R603.9.1 Sheathing materials.** Structural sheathing panels shall consist of minimum $^7/_{16}$-inch (11 mm) thick oriented strand board or $^{15}/_{32}$-inch (12 mm) thick plywood.

**R603.9.2 Determination of minimum length of full height sheathing.** The minimum length of full height sheathing on each *braced wall line* shall be determined by multiplying the length of the *braced wall line* by the percentage obtained from Table R603.9.2(1) and by the plan aspect-ratio adjustment factors obtained from Table R603.9.2(2). The minimum length of full height sheathing shall not be less than 20 percent of the *braced wall line* length.

To be considered full height sheathing, structural sheathing shall extend from the bottom to the top of the wall without interruption by openings. Only sheathed, full height wall sections, uninterrupted by openings, which are a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, shall be counted toward meeting the minimum percentages in Table R603.9.2(1). In addition, structural sheathing shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. Be installed with the long dimension parallel to the stud framing (i.e. vertical orientation) and shall cover the full vertical height of wall from the bottom of the bottom track to the top of the top track of each *story*. Installing the long dimension perpendicular to the stud framing or using shorter segments shall be permitted provided that the horizontal joint is blocked as described in Item 2 below.
2. Be blocked when the long dimension is installed perpendicular to the stud framing (i.e. horizontal orientation). Blocking shall be a minimum of 33 mil (0.84 mm) thickness. Each horizontal structural sheathing panel shall be fastened with No. 8 screws spaced at 6 inches (152 mm) on center to the blocking at the joint.
3. Be applied to each end (corners) of each of the exterior walls with a minimum 48 inch (1219 mm) wide panel.

**R603.9.2.1** The minimum percentage of full-height structural sheathing shall be multiplied by 1.10 for 9 foot (2743 mm) high walls and multiplied by 1.20 for 10 foot (3048 mm) high walls.

**R603.9.2.2** For hip roofed homes, the minimum percentages of full height sheathing in Table R603.9.2(1), based upon wind, shall be permitted to be multiplied by a factor of 0.95 for roof slopes not exceeding 7:12 and a factor of 0.9 for roof slopes greater than 7:12.

**R603.9.2.3** In the lowest *story* of a *dwelling*, multiplying the percentage of full height sheathing required in Table R603.9.2(1) by 0.6, shall be permitted provided hold down anchors are provided in accordance with Section R603.9.4.2.

**TABLE R603.3.1**
**WALL TO FOUNDATION OR FLOOR CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS[a,b]**

| FRAMING CONDITION | WIND SPEED (mph) AND EXPOSURE | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 85 B | 90 B | 100 B<br>85 C | 110 B<br>90 C | 100 C | < 110 C |
| Wall bottom track to floor per Figure R603.3.1(1) | 1-No. 8 screw at 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw at 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw at 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw at 12″ o.c. | 2-No. 8 screws at 12″ o.c. | 2 No. 8 screws at 12″ o.c. |
| Wall bottom track to foundation per Figure R603.3.1(2)[d] | $^1/_2$″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 6′ o.c. | $^1/_2$″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 6′ o.c. | $^1/_2$″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 4′ o.c. | $^1/_2$″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 4′ o.c. | $^1/_2$″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 4′ o.c. | $^1/_2$″ minimum diameter anchor bolt at 4′ o.c. |
| Wall bottom track to wood sill per Figure R603.3.1(3) | Steel plate spaced at 4′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails | Steel plate spaced at 4′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails | Steel plate spaced at 3′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails | Steel plate spaced at 3′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails | Steel plate spaced at 2′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails | Steel plate spaced at 2′ o.c., with 4-No. 8 screws and 4-10d or 6-8d common nails |
| Wind uplift connector strength to 16″ stud spacing[c] | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | 65 lb per foot of wall length |
| Wind uplift connector strength for 24″ stud spacing[c] | NR | NR | NR | NR | NR | 100 lb per foot of wall length |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 lb = 4.45 N.

a. Anchor bolts are to be located not more than 12 inches from corners or the termination of bottom tracks (e.g., at door openings or corners). Bolts are to extend a minimum of 15 inches into masonry or 7 inches into concrete.

b. All screw sizes shown are minimum.

c. NR = uplift connector not required.

d. Foundation anchor straps are permitted in place of anchor bolts, if spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to the required anchor bolts and installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

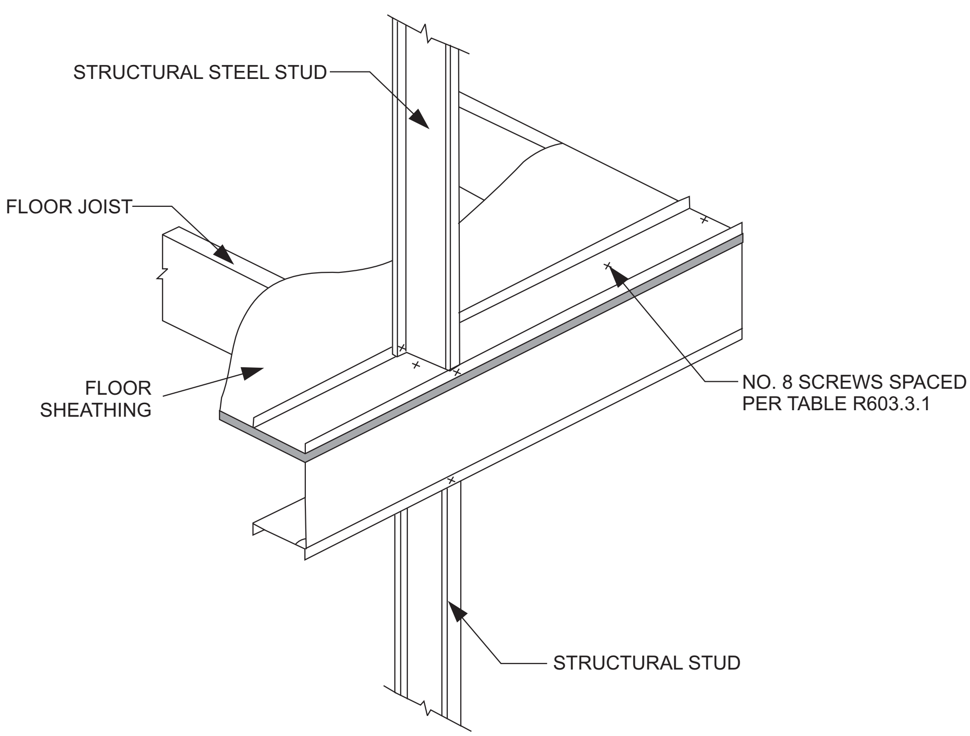
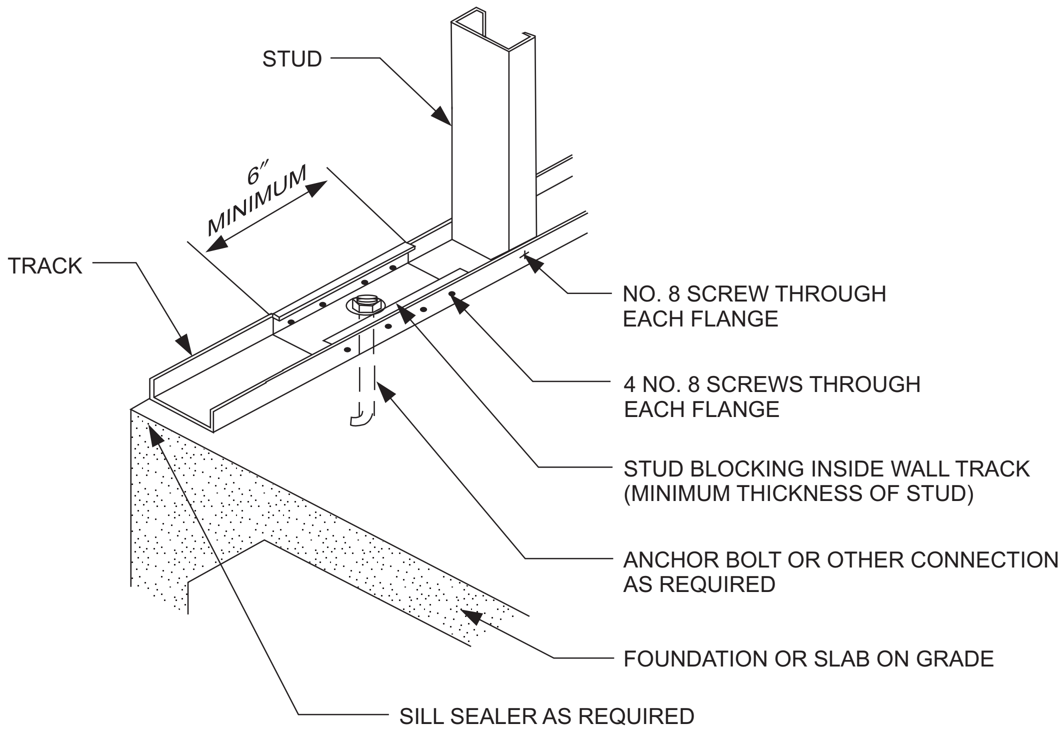
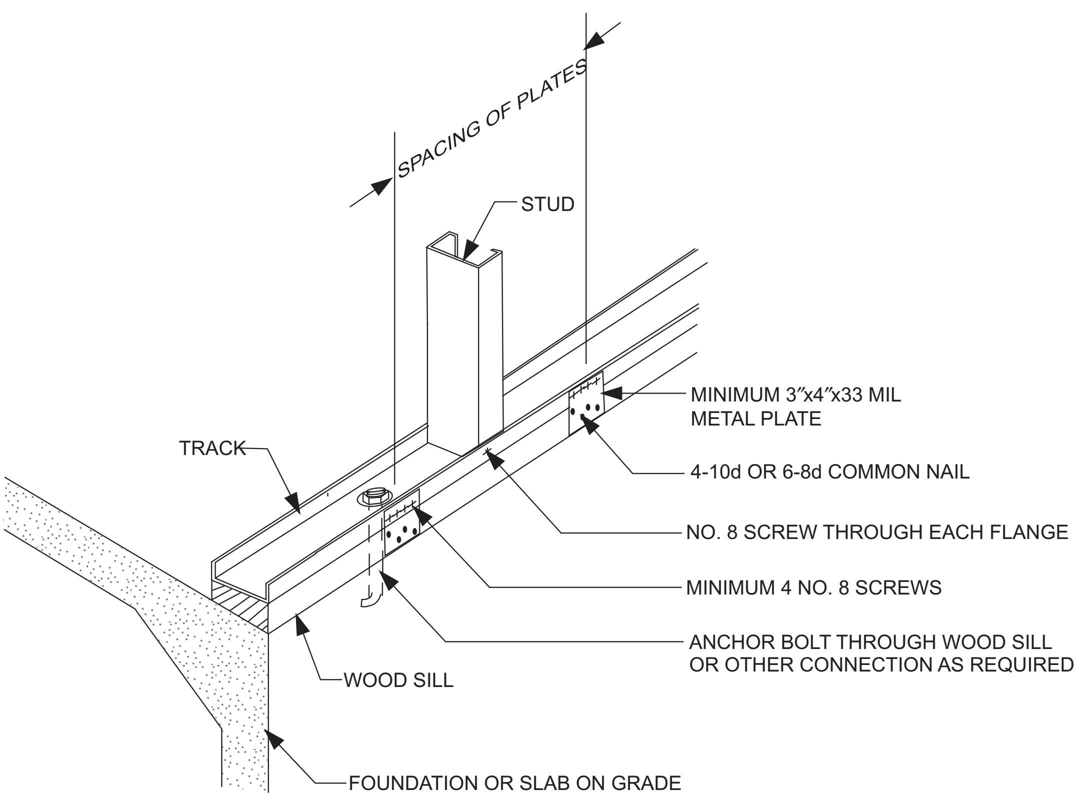



**FIGURE R603.3.1(1)**
**WALL TO FLOOR CONNECTION**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.3.1(2)**
**WALL TO FOUNDATION CONNECTION**




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.3.1(3)**
**WALL TO WOOD SILL CONNECTION**

**TABLE R603.3.1.1(1)**
**GABLE ENDWALL TO FLOOR CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS[a,b,c]**

| BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | WALL BOTTOM TRACK TO FLOOR JOIST OR TRACK CONNECTION | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exposure | | Stud height, h (ft) | | |
| B | C | 10 < h ≤ 14 | 14 < h ≤ 18 | 18 < h ≤ 22 |
| 85 | — | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. |
| 90 | — | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. |
| 100 | 85 | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. |
| 110 | 90 | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 2-No. 8 screws @ 12″ o.c. |
| — | 100 | 1-No. 8 screw @ 12″ o.c. | 2-No. 8 screws @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 8″ o.c. |
| — | 110 | 2-No. 8 screws @ 12″ o.c. | 1-No. 8 screw @ 8″ o.c. | 2-No. 8 screws @ 8″ o.c. |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Refer to Table R603.3.1.1(2) for gable endwall bottom track to foundation connections.
b. Where attachment is not given, special design is required.
c. Stud height, *h*, is measured from wall bottom track to wall top track or brace connection height.

**TABLE R603.3.1.1(2)**
**GABLE ENDWALL BOTTOM TRACK TO FOUNDATION CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS[a,b,c]**

| BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | MINIMUM SPACING FOR $^1/_2$ IN. DIAMETER ANCHOR BOLTS[d] | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exposure | | Stud height, h (ft) | | |
| B | C | 10 < h ≤ 14 | 14 < h ≤ 18 | 18 < h ≤ 22 |
| 85 | — | 6′ - 0″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. |
| 90 | — | 6′ - 0″ o.c. | 5′ - 7″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. |
| 100 | 85 | 5′ - 10″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. |
| 110 | 90 | 4′ - 10″ o.c. | 5′ - 6″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. |
| — | 100 | 4′ - 1″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. |
| — | 110 | 5′ - 1″ o.c. | 6′ - 0″ o.c. | 5′ - 2″ o.c. |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Refer to Table R603.3.1.1(1) for gable endwall bottom track to floor joist or track connection connections.
b. Where attachment is not given, special design is required.
c. Stud height, *h*, is measured from wall bottom track to wall top track or brace connection height.
d. Foundation anchor straps are permitted in place of anchor bolts if spaced as required to provide equivalent anchorage to the required anchor bolts and installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

**TABLE R603.3.2(1)**
**WALL FASTENING SCHEDULE[a]**

| DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENT | NUMBER AND SIZE OF FASTENERS[a] | SPACING OF FASTENERS |
|---|---|---|
| Floor joist to track of load-bearing wall | 2-No. 8 screws | Each joist |
| Wall stud to top or bottom track | 2-No. 8 screws | Each end of stud, one per flange |
| Structural sheathing to wall studs | No. 8 screws[b] | 6″ o.c. on edges and 12″ o.c. at intermediate supports |
| Roof framing to wall | Approved design or tie down in accordance with Section R802.11 | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. All screw sizes shown are minimum.
b. Screws for attachment of structural sheathing panels are to be bugle-head, flat-head, or similar head styles with a minimum head diameter of 0.29 inch.

**R603.9.3 Structural sheathing fastening.** All edges and interior areas of structural sheathing panels shall be fastened to framing members and tracks in accordance with Figure R603.9 and Table R603.3.2(1). Screws for attachment of structural sheathing panels shall be bugle-head, flat-head, or similar head style with a minimum head diameter of 0.29 inch (8 mm).

For continuously-sheathed *braced wall lines* using wood structural panels installed with No. 8 screws spaced 4-inches (102 mm) on center at all panel edges and 12 inches (304.8 mm) on center on intermediate framing members, the following shall apply:

1. Multiplying the percentages of full height sheathing in Table R603.9.2(1) by 0.72 shall be permitted.
2. For bottom track attached to foundations or framing below, the bottom track anchor or screw connection spacing in Table R505.3.1(1) and Table R603.3.1 shall be multiplied by 2/3.

**R603.9.4 Uplift connection requirements.** Uplift connections shall be provided in accordance with this section.

**R603.9.4.1** Where wind speeds are in excess of 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), Exposure C, walls shall be provided wind direct uplift connections in accordance with AISI S230, Section E13.3, and AISI S230, Section F7.2, as required for 110 miles per hour (49 m/s), Exposure C.

**R603.9.4.2** Where the percentage of full height sheathing is adjusted in accordance with Section R603.9.2.3, a hold-down anchor, with a strength of 4,300 pounds (19 kN), shall be provided at each end of each full-height sheathed wall section used to meet the minimum percent sheathing requirements of Section R603.9.2. Hold down anchors shall be attached to back-to-back studs; structural sheathing panels shall have edge fastening to the studs, in accordance with Section R603.9.3 and AISI S230, Table E11-1.

A single hold down anchor, installed in accordance with Figure R603.9.2, shall be permitted at the corners of buildings.

**R603.9.5 Structural sheathing for stone and masonry veneer.** In Seismic Design Category C, where stone and masonry veneer is installed in accordance with Section R703.7, the length of structural sheathing for walls supporting one *story*, roof and ceiling shall be the greater of the amount required by Section R603.9.2 or 36 percent, modified by Section R603.9.2 except Section R603.9.2.2 shall not be permitted.

## SECTION R604 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS

**R604.1 Identification and grade.** Wood structural panels shall conform to DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2 or, when manufactured in Canada, CSA O437 or CSA O325. All panels shall be identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency.

**R604.2 Allowable spans.** The maximum allowable spans for wood structural panel wall sheathing shall not exceed the values set forth in Table R602.3(3).

**R604.3 Installation.** Wood structural panel wall sheathing shall be attached to framing in accordance with Table R602.3(1) or Table R602.3.(3). Wood structural panels marked Exposure 1 or Exterior are considered water-repellent sheathing under the code.

## SECTION R605 PARTICLEBOARD

**R605.1 Identification and grade.** Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1 and shall be so identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency. Particleboard shall comply with the grades specified in Table R602.3(4).

## SECTION R606 GENERAL MASONRY CONSTRUCTION

**R606.1 General.** Masonry construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section or in accordance with the provisions of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

**R606.1.1 Professional registration not required.** When the empirical design provisions of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 Chapter 5 or the provisions of this section are used to design masonry, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the *jurisdiction* having authority.

**R606.2 Thickness of masonry.** The nominal thickness of masonry walls shall conform to the requirements of Sections R606.2.1 through R606.2.4.

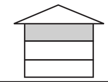
**R606.2.1 Minimum thickness.** The minimum thickness of masonry bearing walls more than one *story* high shall be 8 inches (203 mm). *Solid masonry* walls of one-story *dwellings* and garages shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm) in thickness when not greater than 9 feet (2743 mm) in height, provided that when gable construction is used, an additional 6 feet (1829 mm) is permitted to the peak of the gable. Masonry walls shall be laterally supported in either the horizontal or vertical direction at intervals as required by Section R606.9.

**R606.2.2 Rubble stone masonry wall.** The minimum thickness of rough, random or coursed rubble stone masonry walls shall be 16 inches (406 mm).

**R606.2.3 Change in thickness.** Where walls of masonry of hollow units or masonry-bonded hollow walls are decreased in thickness, a course of *solid masonry* shall be constructed between the wall below and the thinner wall above, or special units or construction shall be used to transmit the loads from face shells or wythes above to those below.

**R606.2.4 Parapet walls.** Unreinforced *solid masonry* parapet walls shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick and their height shall not exceed four times their thickness. Unreinforced hollow unit masonry parapet walls shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick, and their height shall not exceed three times their thickness. Masonry parapet walls in areas subject to wind loads of 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kPa) located in Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$, or on townhouses in Seismic Design Category C shall be reinforced in accordance with Section R606.12.

**TABLE R603.3.2(2)**
**24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a, b, c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**



| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(3)**
**24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |

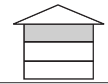
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(4)**
**28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**



| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(5)**
**28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |

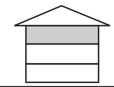
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
Second floor live load is 30 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(6)**
**32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**



| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(7)**
**32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |

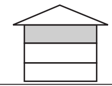
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(8)**
**36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**



| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |

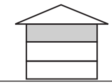
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(9)**
**36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**



| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(10)**
**40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |

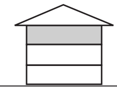
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(11)**
**40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**



| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
Second floor live load is 30 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(12)**
**24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(13)**
**24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(14)**
**28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(15)**
**28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED Exp. B | WIND SPEED Exp. C | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | 8-Foot Studs 20 | 8-Foot Studs 30 | 8-Foot Studs 50 | 8-Foot Studs 70 | 9-Foot Studs 20 | 9-Foot Studs 30 | 9-Foot Studs 50 | 9-Foot Studs 70 | 10-Foot Studs 20 | 10-Foot Studs 30 | 10-Foot Studs 50 | 10-Foot Studs 70 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) — Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
Second floor live load is 30 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(16)**
**32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(17)**
**32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | | | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
Second floor live load is 30 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(18)**
**36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(19)**
**36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(20)**
**40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
 Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
 Second floor live load is 30 psf.
 Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
 Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(21)**
**40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(22)**
**24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Top floor live load is 30 psf.
   Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(23)**
**24-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Top floor live load is 30 psf.
   Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(24)**
**28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Top floor live load is 30 psf.
   Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(25)**
**28-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Top floor live load is 30 psf.
   Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(26)**
**32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | | | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   - Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
   - Top floor live load is 30 psf.
   - Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
   - Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   - Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(27)**
**32-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: $L/240$.

b. Design load assumptions:
- Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
- Top floor live load is 30 psf.
- Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
- Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
- Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(28)**
**36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Top floor live load is 30 psf.
   Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(29)**
**36-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Top floor live load is 30 psf.
   Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(30)**
**40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 68 |
| | | | 24 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 68 | 68 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa,
1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
Top floor live load is 30 psf.
Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2(31)**
**40-FOOT-WIDE BUILDING SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

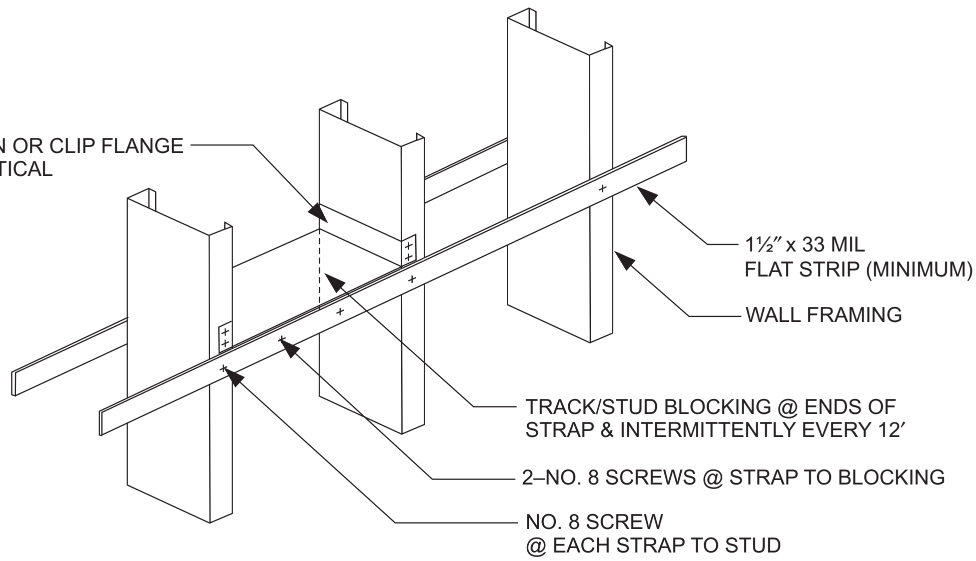
| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (mils) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 8-Foot Studs | | | | 9-Foot Studs | | | | 10-Foot Studs | | | |
| | | | | Ground Snow Load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 68 | 97 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 68 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 | 54 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 1000 psi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240.

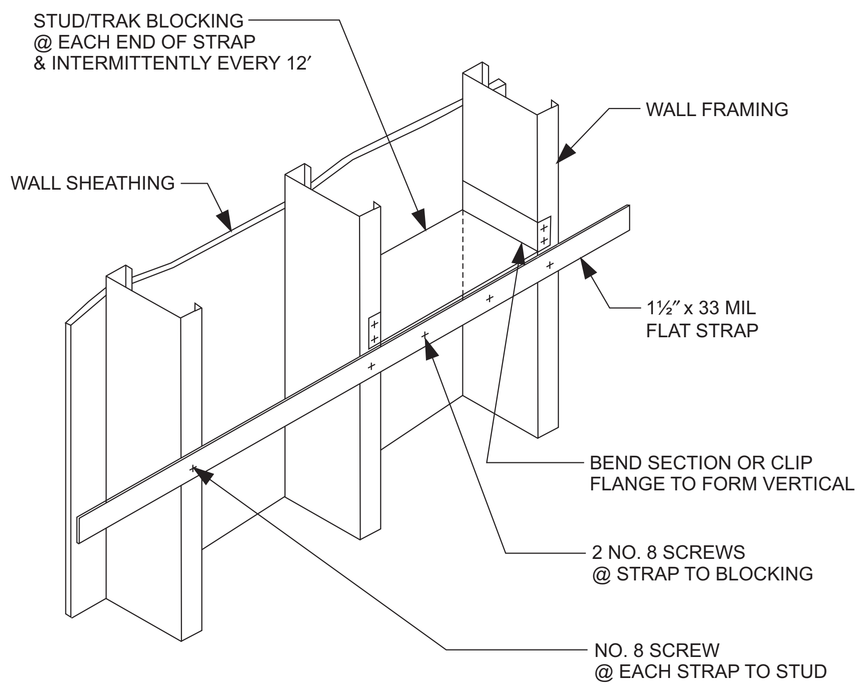
b. Design load assumptions:
Top and middle floor dead load is 10 psf.
Top floor live load is 30 psf.
Middle floor live load is 40 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.



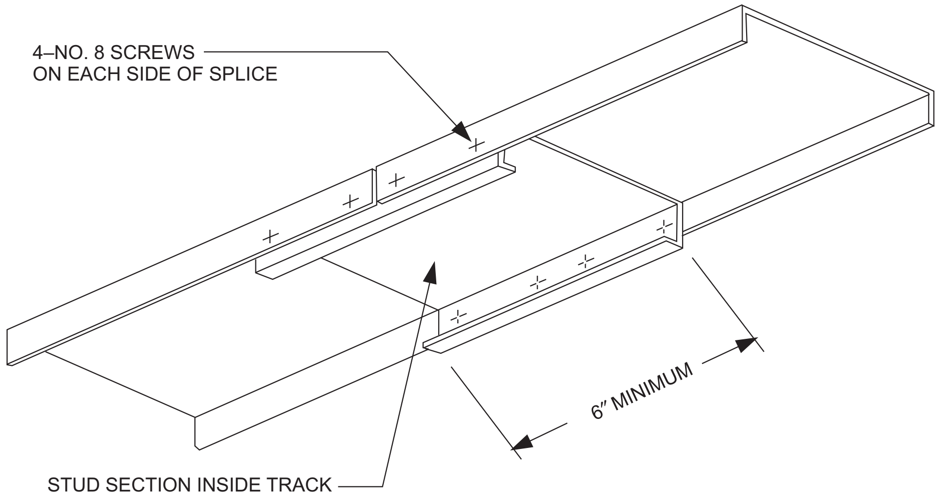

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.3.3(1)**
**STUD BRACING WITH STRAPPING ONLY**



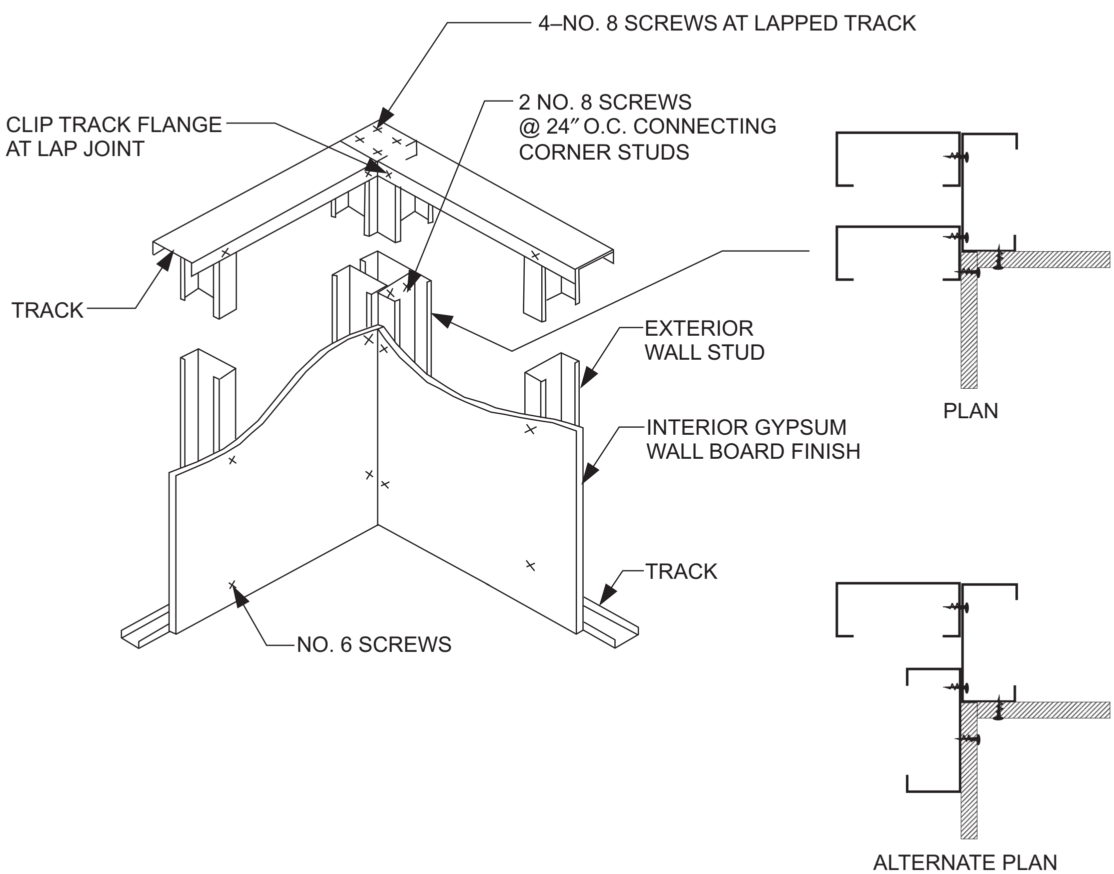

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.3.3(2)**
**STUD BRACING WITH STRAPPING AND SHEATHING MATERIAL**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.3.5**
**TRACK SPLICE**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.4**
**CORNER FRAMING**

**TABLE R603.3.2.1(1)**
**ALL BUILDING WIDTHS**
**GABLE ENDWALLS 8, 9 OR 10 FEET IN HEIGHT[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (Mils) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 8-foot studs | 9-foot studs | 10-foot studs |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 43 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Ground snow load is 70 psf.
Roof and ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Floor dead load is 10 psf.
Floor live load is 40 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2.1(2)**
**ALL BUILDING WIDTHS**
**GABLE ENDWALLS 8, 9 OR 10 FEET IN HEIGHT[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (Mils) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 8-foot studs | 9-foot studs | 10-foot studs |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Ground snow load is 70 psf.
Roof and ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Floor dead load is 10 psf.
Floor live load is 40 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2.1(3)**
**ALL BUILDING WIDTHS**
**GABLE ENDWALLS OVER 10 FEET IN HEIGHT[a,b,c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (Mils) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Stud Height, h (feet) | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 10 < h ≤ 12 | 12 < h ≤ 14 | 14 < h ≤ 16 | 16 < h ≤ 18 | 18 < h ≤ 20 | 20 < h ≤ 22 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 97 | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 68 | 97 | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 68 | 97 | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 68 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 68 | — | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 68 | — | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | — |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — | — |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 68 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | 97 | — |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 68 | 97 | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion *L*/240.

b. Design load assumptions:
Ground snow load is 70 psf.
Roof and ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Floor dead load is 10 psf.
Floor live load is 40 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

**TABLE R603.3.2.1(4)**
**ALL BUILDING WIDTHS**
**GABLE ENDWALLS OVER 10 FEET IN HEIGHT[a,b,c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

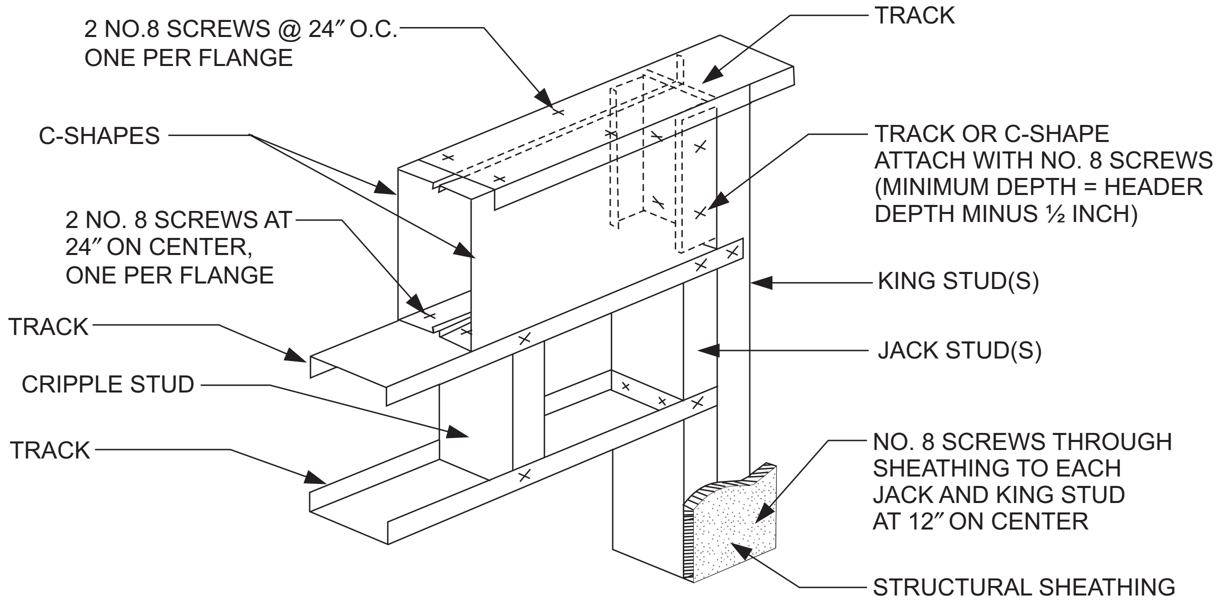
| WIND SPEED | | MEMBER SIZE | STUD SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM STUD THICKNESS (Mils) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Stud Height, h (feet) | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | | | 10 < h ≤ 12 | 12 < h ≤ 14 | 14 < h ≤ 16 | 16 < h ≤ 18 | 18 < h ≤ 20 | 20 < h ≤ 22 |
| 85 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 97 | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 97 |
| 90 mph | — | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 68 | 97 | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 68 | 97 | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 68 | 97 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 33 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 68 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 97 | 97 |
| 110 mph | 90 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 43 | 68 | — | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 68 | — | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 43 | 68 | 97 |
| | | | 24 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | — |
| — | 100 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 97 | — |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 54 | 54 | 97 | — | — |
| — | 110 mph | 350S162 | 16 | 54 | 97 | — | — | — | — |
| | | | 24 | 97 | — | — | — | — | — |
| | | 550S162 | 16 | 33 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | — |
| | | | 24 | 43 | 54 | 68 | 97 | — | — |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 ksi = 6.895 MPa.

a. Deflection criterion *L*/240.

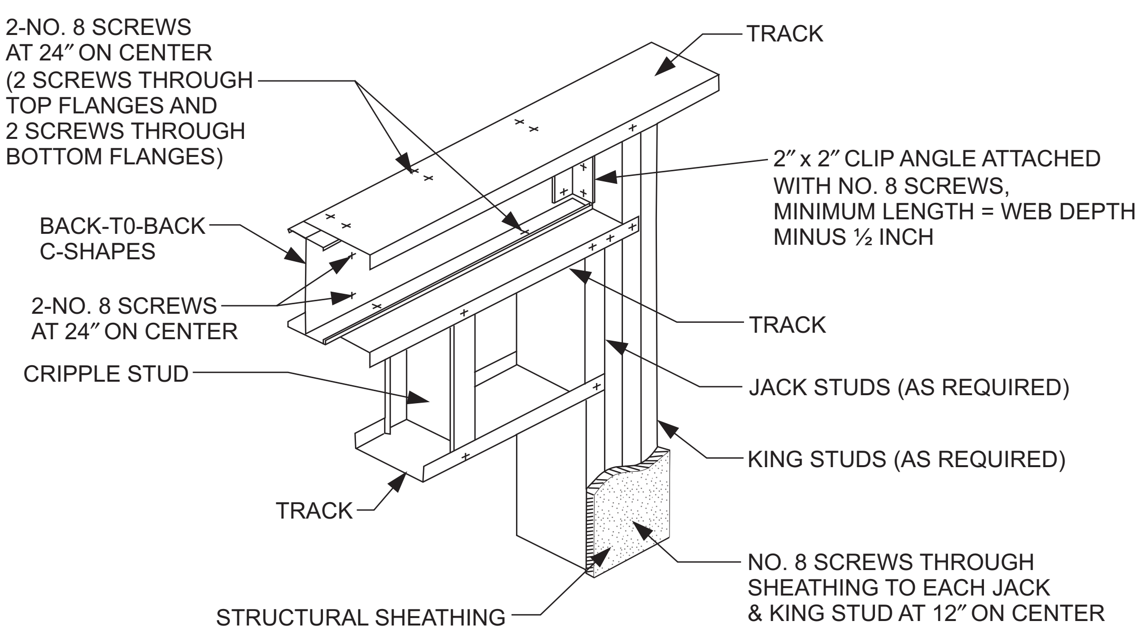
b. Design load assumptions:
   Ground snow load is 70 psf.
   Roof and ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Floor live load is 40 psf.
   Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.6(1)**
**BOX BEAM HEADER**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 603.6(2)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER**

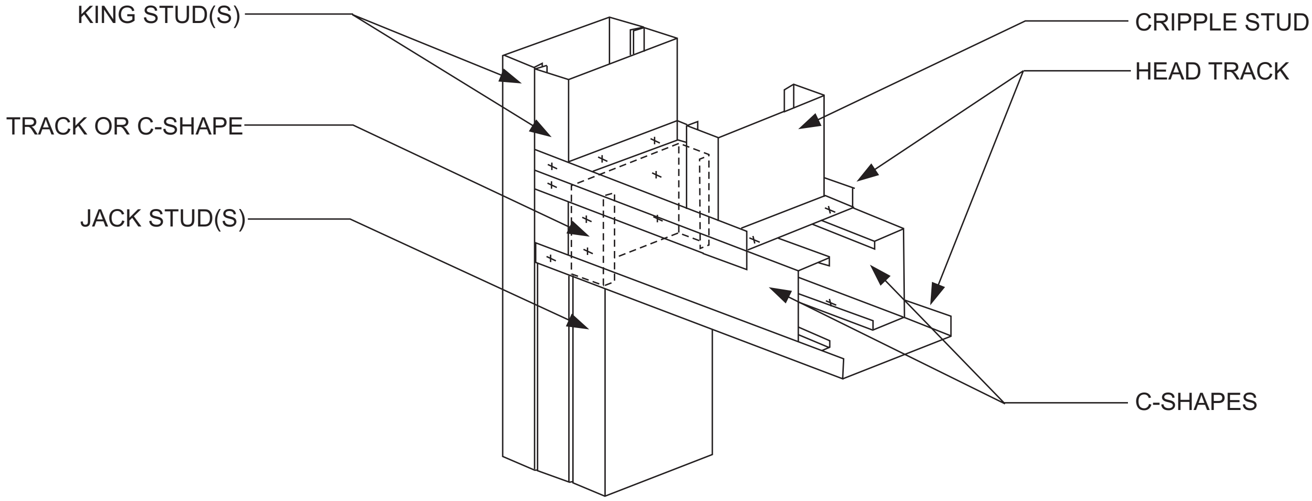
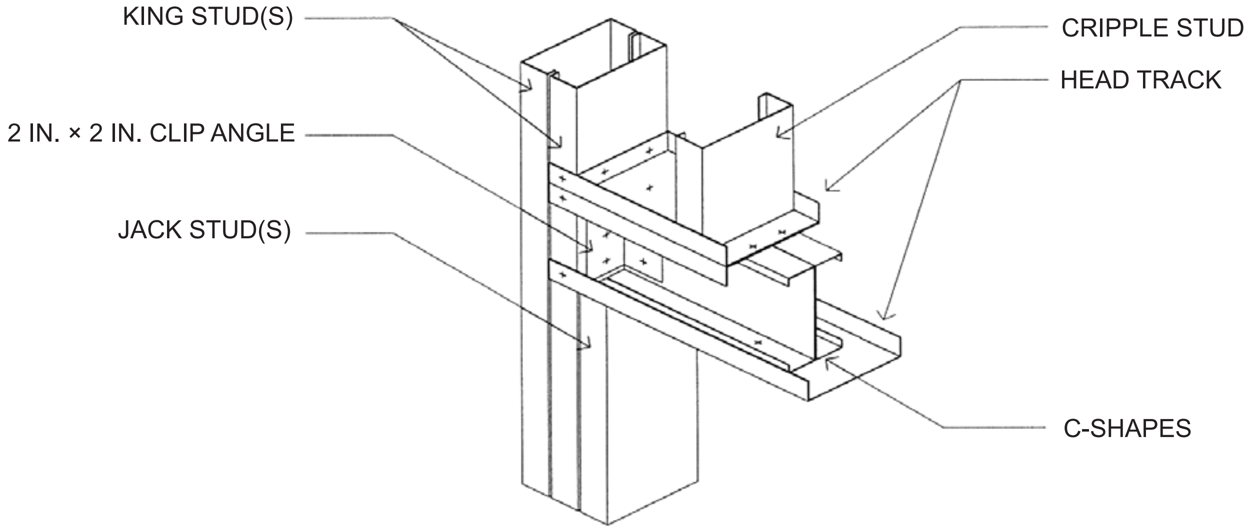



**FIGURE R603.6.1(1)**
**BOX BEAM HEADER IN GABLE ENDWALL**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.6.1(2)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER IN GABLE ENDWALL**

**TABLE R603.6(1)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | 3′-3″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | 2′-8″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 4′-2″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ |
| 2-350S162-54 | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 3′-0″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 5′-7″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-10″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 7′-1″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-11″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 4′-8″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-6″ | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 6′-0″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 7′-0″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-10″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 8′-0″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-10″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 9′-11″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-6″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-5″ | 7′-0″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-10″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-43 | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-10″ | 6′-7″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 8′-10″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-2″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 10′-5″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-7″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-0″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 13′-1″ | 12′-1″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-0″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-4″ | 10′-6″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 7′-10″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 10′-0″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-7″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 11′-11″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-4″ | 8′-8″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-7″ | 8′-0″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 15′-3″ | 14′-3″ | 13′-5″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-10″ | 14′-4″ | 13′-5″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-9″ | 11′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 11′-1″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-9″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 13′-3″ | 12′-1″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-7″ | 12′-3″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-6″ | 8′-10″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 16′-8″ | 15′-7″ | 14′-8″ | 13′-11″ | 13′-3″ | 15′-8″ | 14′-8″ | 13′-11″ | 13′-2″ | 12′-6″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: $L/360$ for live loads, $L/240$ for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Roof/Ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(2)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-10″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-5″ |
| 2-350S162-43 | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-6″ |
| 2-350S162-54 | 6′-2″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-10″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 6′-7″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-8″ | 6′-4″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-6″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 7′-3″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-3″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 6′-2″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-43 | 7′-9″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-8″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 8′-9″ | 8′-5″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-3″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 9′-5″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-4″ | 8′-1″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-4″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-10″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 10′-5″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-3″ | 9′-0″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-8″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-10″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-43 | 9′-1″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-8″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-3″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-8″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-8″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 10′-10″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-5″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-9″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 12′-8″ | 11′-10″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-1″ | 11′-11″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 14′-2″ | 13′-6″ | 13′-0″ | 12′-7″ | 12′-2″ | 13′-8″ | 13′-1″ | 12′-7″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 7′-10″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 12′-3″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-9″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-6″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-9″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 14′-5″ | 13′-5″ | 12′-8″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-6″ | 13′-6″ | 12′-8″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-10″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 17′-1″ | 16′-4″ | 15′-8″ | 14′-11″ | 14′-3″ | 16′-5″ | 15′-9″ | 14′-10″ | 14′-1″ | 13′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 12′-11″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-2″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-4″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 15′-11″ | 14′-10″ | 14′-0″ | 13′-4″ | 12′-8″ | 15′-0″ | 14′-0″ | 13′-3″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-11″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 19′-11″ | 18′-7″ | 17′-6″ | 16′-8″ | 15′-10″ | 18′-9″ | 17′-7″ | 16′-7″ | 15′-9″ | 15′-0″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Roof/Ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(3)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 2′-4″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 3′-1″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | 2′-1″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-7″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 3′-8″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-6″ | — | — | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 4′-7″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-6″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-1″ | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 5′-6″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-1″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-3″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 2′-7″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 4′-6″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-5″ | — | 2′-10″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 5′-10″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-4″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-9″ | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 7′-2″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-8″ | 5′-7″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 9′-7″ | 8′-9″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-7″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-9″ | — | 3′-3″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 6′-7″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-9″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-3″ | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 8′-3″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-5″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-7″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-5″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 11′-4″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-8″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-5″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-10″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-7″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 7′-3″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-7″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-2″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-5″ | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 9′-2″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-0″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 12′-10″ | 11′-9″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-6″ | 10′-7″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-6″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Roof/Ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(4)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-1″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 4′-8″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-0″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-10″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 6′-2″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-7″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 3′-11″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-4″ | — | 2′-7″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 5′-4″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-1″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 6′-11″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 5′-6″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 8′-0″ | 7′-6″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-11″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 8′-11″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-8″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 2′-8″ | 2′-4″ | 2′-1″ | 1′-11″ | 1′-9″ | 2′-0″ | 1′-9″ | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 5′-10″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 8′-0″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-0″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 9′-9″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 12′-1″ | 11′-7″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-8″ | 10′-2″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-9″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-7″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-3″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 9′-1″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-0″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 11′-1″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-1″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-6″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-3″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 13′-9″ | 12′-11″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-7″ | 11′-1″ | 11′-11″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-7″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-4″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 7′-8″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 12′-3″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-11″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-6″ | 6′-10″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 15′-4″ | 14′-5″ | 13′-7″ | 12′-11″ | 12′-4″ | 13′-4″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-10″ | 11′-1″ | 10′-5″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Roof/Ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(5)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-1″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 2′-11″ | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | 2′-10″ | 2′-4″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-4″ | — | 3′-7″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 4′-11″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 3′-5″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-1″ | — | — | 3′-3″ | 2′-7″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-1″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-6″ | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 5′-3″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-0″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-0″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 2′-1″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 4′-2″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-7″ | — | — | 4′-0″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-5″ | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 5′-6″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-9″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-8″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-8″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 6′-11″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-3″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 9′-4″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-10″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-8″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-7″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 2′-11″ | — | — | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 2′-9″ | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 6′-3″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-7″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-2″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-0″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 7′-11″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-6″ | 4′-10″ | 7′-9″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 11′-0″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-7″ | 8′-0″ | 10′-11″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-10″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 6′-11″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-5″ | 6′-9″ | 5′-9″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-3″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 8′-9″ | 7′-9″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-4″ | 8′-7″ | 7′-7″ | 6′-9″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-3″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 12′-4″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-6″ | 9′-8″ | 9′-0″ | 12′-3″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-6″ | 8′-10″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/Ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic dead load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(6)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | 2′-4″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-1″ | — | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-0″ | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 2′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-8″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 5′-0″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-9″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 5′-6″ | 5′-3″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-11″ | 2′-9″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-2″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 3′-6″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-4″ | — | — | 3′-5″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-3″ | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 5′-0″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-0″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 6′-6″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 7′-2″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-6″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-11″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-3″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-10″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-5″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-9″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 2′-5″ | 2′-2″ | 1′-11″ | 1′-9″ | — | 2′-5″ | 2′-1″ | 1′-10″ | 1′-8″ | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 5′-5″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-5″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 7′-6″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-0″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 9′-3″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-6″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 10′-9″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-3″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-9″ | 9′-5″ | 9′-1″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-8″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 8′-6″ | 7′-6″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-5″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 10′-6″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-9″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-5″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-7″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-3″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 12′-11″ | 12′-4″ | 11′-8″ | 11′-1″ | 10′-6″ | 12′-9″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-5″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 7′-1″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 11′-7″ | 10′-7″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-2″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-6″ | 8′-9″ | 8′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 14′-9″ | 13′-9″ | 13′-0″ | 12′-4″ | 11′-9″ | 14′-7″ | 13′-8″ | 12′-10″ | 12′-3″ | 11′-8″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(7)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 4′-0″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | — |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 2′-0″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 3′-1″ | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 4′-1″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-5″ | — | 3′-1″ | 2′-5″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-97 | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-0″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 4′-0″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-6″ | — | — | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 5′-5″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-8″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-6″ | — | — |
| 2-800S162-97 | 7′-9″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-5″ | 6′-7″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 2′-10″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 4′-7″ | 3′-8″ | 2′-9″ | — | — | 3′-0″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 6′-2″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-7″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-1″ | 4′-9″ | 3′-10″ | 2′-11″ | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 9′-3″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-6″ | 7′-10″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-2″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 5′-0″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-1″ | — | — | 3′-4″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 6′-10″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-5″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-2″ | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 10′-5″ | 9′-6″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-4″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-10″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(8)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 3′-5″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ | — | 2′-8″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-1″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 5′-1″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 2′-4″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 3′-10″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-3″ | — | 2′-11″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 5′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 6′-5″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-4″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-4″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 1′-11″ | 1′-8″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 4′-2″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-2″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-9″ | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-9″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 7′-8″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-2″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-0″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 9′-11″ | 9′-6″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-3″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-2″ | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 6′-7″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 8′-8″ | 7′-10″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 11′-7″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-0″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-8″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 5′-6″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11² | 3′-7″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 9′-7″ | 8′-8″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-6″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 12′-11″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-8″ | 10′-0″ | 11′-8″ | 10′-9″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-6″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(9)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 3′-1″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ | — | — |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 2′-9″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-97 | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-8″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 2′-1″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 3′-8″ | 2′-9″ | — | — | — | 3′-7″ | 2′-8″ | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-97 | 6′-3″ | 5′-6″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 4′-3″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | 4′-2″ | 3′-1″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 7′-5″ | 6′-7″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-7″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 2′-7″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 4′-8″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | 4′-7″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-0″ | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 8′-5″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-7″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-2″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
  Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
  Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
  Second floor live load is 40 psf.
  Third floor live load is 30 psf.
  Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(10)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-4″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-1″ | — | 3′-5″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-0″ | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 4′-9″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 2′-7″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 3′-11″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-0″ | — | 3′-10″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-7″ | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 5′-1″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-9″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-9″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 6′-10″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 3′-1″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | 3′-0″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 4′-7″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-5″ | — | 4′-6″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-4″ | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 6′-0″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-7″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-4″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 9′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-6″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-5″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 5′-0″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-9″ | — | 4′-11″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-7″ | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 6′-10″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-10″ | 6′-9″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 10′-0″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-0″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | — | 4′-1″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-10″ | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 7′-7″ | 6′-7″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-2″ | 7′-6″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-8″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-1″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 11′-2″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-10″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-2″ | 9′-2″ | 7′-9″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
  Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
  Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
  Second floor live load is 40 psf.
  Third floor live load is 30 psf.
  Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(11)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 2′-11″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-97 | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-5″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 3′-3″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-97 | 5′-11″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-5″ | 5′-6″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 3′-9″ | 2′-7″ | — | — | — | 3′-1″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 7′-0″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-2″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-10″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 4′-2″ | 2′-10″ | — | — | — | 3′-5″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 7′-11″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-8″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-4″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 40 psf.
   Third floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(12)**
**BOX-BEAM HEADER SPANS[a,b,c]**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a,b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 3′-3″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | 2′-11″ | 2′-5″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 4′-6″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 4′-3″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-3″ | 3′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 3′-7″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | 3′-3″ | 2′-7″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 4′-9″ | 2′-1″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-5″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-1″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 6′-5″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-8″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 4′-3″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-8″ | — | — | 3′-9″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-3″ | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 5′-8″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 2′-11″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 8′-9″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-7″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-10″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 2′-4″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | — | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 4′-8″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-2″ | — | 4′-3″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-7″ | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 6′-5″ | 5′-7″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-4″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-8″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 9′-6″ | 8′-8″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-8″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-6″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-4″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-4″ | — | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-10″ | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 7′-1″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-8″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-8″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-3″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 10′-8″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-5″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-1″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 40 psf.
   Third floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(13)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (33 ksi steel)[a,b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | 2′-11″ | 2′-4″ | — | — | — | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 4′-8″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-4″ |
| 2-350S162-54 | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-6″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-2″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 7′-3″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-8″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 4′-5″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-6″ | — | 3′-9″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-6″ | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 6′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 7′-5″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-4″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-11″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 6′-7″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-5″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 10′-5″ | 9′-8″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-0″ | 9′-9″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-3″ | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 7′-7″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 9′-3″ | 8′-7″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-10″ | 8′-8″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 10′-7″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-4″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-5″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-4″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 13′-9″ | 12′-9″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-8″ | 12′-10″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-0″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 7′-10″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 10′-5″ | 9′-9″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-9″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-2″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 12′-1″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-8″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-7″ | 11′-4″ | 10′-8″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-1″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 15′-3″ | 14′-3″ | 13′-5″ | 12′-9″ | 12′-2″ | 14′-4″ | 13′-5″ | 12′-8″ | 12′-1″ | 11′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 11′-6″ | 10′-9″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-2″ | 10′-10″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-4″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 13′-4″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-9″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-8″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-10″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-1″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 16′-8″ | 15′-7″ | 14′-8″ | 13′-11″ | 13′-3″ | 15′-8″ | 14′-8″ | 13′-11″ | 13′-2″ | 12′-7″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second floor dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by header.

**TABLE R603.6(14)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (50 ksi steel)[a,b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | 4′-2″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-6″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-1″ |
| 2-350S162-43 | 5′-5″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-6″ |
| 2-350S162-54 | 6′-2″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-0″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-8″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 6′-7″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-8″ | 6′-4″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-6″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 7′-3″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-3″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-9″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-3″ |
| 2-550S162-43 | 7′-9″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-8″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-3″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 8′-9″ | 8′-5″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-5″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-11″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 9′-5″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-4″ | 8′-1″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-4″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-10″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 10′-5″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-3″ | 9′-0″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-8″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-10″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-43 | 9′-1″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-8″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-3″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-8″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-8″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 10′-10″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-8″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-7″ | 8′-1″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 12′-8″ | 11′-10″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-1″ | 11′-11″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 14′-2″ | 13′-6″ | 13′-0″ | 12′-7″ | 12′-2″ | 13′-8″ | 13′-1″ | 12′-7″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 7′-10″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 12′-3″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-9″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-9″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-9″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-11″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 14′-5″ | 13′-5″ | 12′-8″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-6″ | 13′-6″ | 12′-8″ | 12′-0″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-11″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 17′-1″ | 16′-4″ | 15′-8″ | 14′-11″ | 14′-3″ | 16′-5″ | 15′-9″ | 14′-10″ | 14′-1″ | 13′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 12′-11″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-2″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-4″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 15′-11″ | 14′-10″ | 14′-0″ | 13′-4″ | 12′-8″ | 15′-0″ | 14′-0″ | 13′-3″ | 12′-7″ | 12′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 19′-11″ | 18′-7″ | 17′-6″ | 16′-8″ | 15′-10″ | 18′-9″ | 17′-7″ | 16′-7″ | 15′-9″ | 15′-0″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
  Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
  Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(15)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-4″ | 2′-0″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-1″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-4″ | 2′-1″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 5′-5″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-3″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 3′-10″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-2″ | — | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 6′-2″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-5″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-9″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-11″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-10″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 4′-10″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-3″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-5″ | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 6′-6″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-10″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 8′-1″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-11″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 10′-3″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-11″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-7″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-8″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-10″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 7′-5″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 9′-4″ | 8′-7″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-10″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 11′-9″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-5″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-7″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-10″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 7′-8″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 10′-4″ | 9′-6″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-7″ | 8′-7″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 12′-10″ | 12′-1″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-10″ | 10′-4″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-6″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-5″ | 9′-0″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(16)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Roof and Ceiling Only (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-5″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 5′-7″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-7″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-8″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 6′-2″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-3″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-11″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 3′-6″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | 2′-0″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 7′-2″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 8′-0″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-6″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 8′-11″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-8″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 2′-8″ | 2′-4″ | 2′-1″ | 1′-11″ | — | 2′-0″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 5′-10″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 8′-4″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-9″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 9′-9″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-10″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 12′-1″ | 11′-7″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-8″ | 10′-2″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-9″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-10″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 2′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 10′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-3″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 9′-3″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-0″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 11′-1″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-4″ | 8′-11″ | 9′-8″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-10″ | 7′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 13′-9″ | 12′-11″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-7″ | 11′-1″ | 11′-11″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-7″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 7′-8″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 12′-3″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-11″ | 10′-8″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-7″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 15′-4″ | 14′-5″ | 13′-7″ | 12′-11″ | 12′-4″ | 13′-4″ | 12′-6″ | 11′-10″ | 11′-3″ | 10′-9″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(17)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-1″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 3′-3″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-0″ | — | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-4″ | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 4′-4″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-8″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 5′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 3′-6″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | 3′-5″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-2″ | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 4′-9″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-1″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-4″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-6″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 4′-4″ | 3′-8″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-3″ | — | 4′-3″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-1″ | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 7′-8″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-5″ | 7′-7″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 9′-10″ | 9′-1″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-5″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-10″ | 7′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-8″ | — | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-6″ | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 6′-11″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-5″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 8′-10″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-4″ | 8′-8″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-2″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 11′-3″ | 10′-7″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-10″ | 11′-2″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-9″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 7′-1″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 9′-10″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-1$^{11}$ | 7′-6″ | 6′-11″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 12′-4″ | 11′-7″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-10″ | 12′-3″ | 11′-5″ | 10′-9″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-9″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
  Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
  Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
  Second floor live load is 30 psf.
  Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(18)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | — | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-1″ | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-350S162-68 | 5′-0″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-3″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-2″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 5′-6″ | 5′-3″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-9″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-2″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | 3′-1″ | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | 3′-0″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-54 | 6′-8″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-8″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 7′-2″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-4″ | 6′-1″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-0″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-11″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-3″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-10″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-5″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-9″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 2′-5″ | 2′-2″ | 1′-11″ | — | — | 2′-5″ | 2′-1″ | 1′-10″ | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 5′-5″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-5″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-5″ |
| 2-800S162-54 | 7′-11″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 9′-5″ | 8′-9″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-4″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 10′-9″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-11″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-3″ | 10′-7″ | 10′-1″ | 9′-9″ | 9′-5″ | 9′-1″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-8″ |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 8′-6″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-5″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 10′-8″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-4″ | 10′-7″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-4″ | 8′-9″ | 8′-3″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 12′-11″ | 12′-4″ | 11′-8″ | 11′-1″ | 10′-6″ | 12′-9″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-6″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-5″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 7′-1″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-5″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 11′-9″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-1″ | 11′-8″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-3″ | 9′-9″ | 8′-11″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 14′-9″ | 13′-9″ | 13′-0″ | 12′-4″ | 11′-9″ | 14′-7″ | 13′-8″ | 12′-10″ | 12′-3″ | 11′-8″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(19)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 2′-4″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | — | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 4′-4″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-1″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | 2′-10″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-4″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 6′-3″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-8″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 2′-11″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 4′-9″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-5″ | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 6′-4″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 8′-5″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-4″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-5″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 3′-4″ | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 5′-6″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-0″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-7″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-2″ | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 7′-4″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-1″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-0″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 9′-11″ | 8′-3″ | 8′-7″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-7″ | 8′-9″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 5′-6″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-6″ | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 8′-2″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-8″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 10′-10″ | 10′-2″ | 9′-8″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-7″ | 9′-9″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-6″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-5″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(20)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting One Floor, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | 2′-6″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-3″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 4′-7″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-6″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-10″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 5′-1″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-3″ | 4′-1″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-5″ | — | 3′-0″ | 2′-5″ | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 5′-7″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-9″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 6′-7″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-1″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-3″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 7′-4″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-4″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-2″ | 6′-0″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | 1′-11″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 4′-2″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-6″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-4″ | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 6′-7″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-6″ | 5′-6″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 8′-3″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-2″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 9′-11″ | 9′-6″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-7″ | 9′-5″ | 9′-0″ | 8′-7″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-2″ | 1′-11″ | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 6′-7″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-6″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 9′-4″ | 8′-9″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-1″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-7″ | 6′-11″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-11″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 11′-7″ | 10′-11″ | 10′-4″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-5″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-3″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-5″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 5′-6″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-7″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 10′-4″ | 9′-8″ | 8′-8″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-2″ | 8′-11″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-10″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 12′-11″ | 12′-2″ | 11′-6″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-6″ | 11′-8″ | 11′-0″ | 10′-5″ | 9′-10″ | 9′-5″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
   Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
   Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
   Second floor live load is 30 psf.
   Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(21)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-4″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-3″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-3″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 3′-9″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-4″ | — | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-4″ | — |
| 2-550S162-97 | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-7″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 3′-5″ | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | 3′-4″ | 2′-7″ | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 5′-1″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-10″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 7′-0″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-0″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-0″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 3′-11″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | 3′-10″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-2″ | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 5′-10″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-5″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 8′-5″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-1″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 4′-2″ | 3′-6″ | 2′-7″ | — | — | 4′-1″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-6″ | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 6′-6″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-10″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 9′-5″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-5″ | 6′-11″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-7″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-10″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
Second floor live load is 40 psf.
Third floor live load is 30 psf.
Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(22)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (20 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (30 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 2′-9″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | 2′-8″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 4′-9″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-10″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 2′-9″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | — | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 4′-5″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-5″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-5″ |
| 2-550S162-68 | 5′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-11″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-10″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 6′-10″ | 6′-6″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-7″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-5″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-6″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 3′-2″ | 2′-7″ | — | — | — | 3′-1″ | 2′-6″ | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 5′-2″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-11″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 6′-11″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 6′-10″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-8″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 9′-3″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-3″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-4″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-4″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | 1′-11″ | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 5′-0″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-2″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 7′-10″ | 7′-2″ | 6′-6″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-6″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-5″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 10′-1″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-11″ | 8′-6″ | 8′-0″ | 10′-0″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-11″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 7′-4″ | 6′-8″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-1″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-0″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 9′-5″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-1″ | 9′-4″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-0″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
 Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
 Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
 Second floor live load is 40 psf.
 Third floor live load is 30 psf.
 Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(23)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (33 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-97 | 3′-3″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-8″ | 2′-4″ | 2′-1″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-2″ | — |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 3′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-6″ | 2′-1″ | — | 3′-2″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-3″ | — | — |
| 2-550S162-97 | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-5″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 3′-0″ | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | 2′-7″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-68 | 4′-9″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 4′-5″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 6′-9″ | 6′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-7″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 3′-6″ | 2′-8″ | — | — | — | 3′-1″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 5′-6″ | 4′-10″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-1″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 8′-0″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ | 5′-9″ | 7′-7″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | 3′-11″ | 3′-0″ | 2′-0″ | — | — | 3′-5″ | 2′-6″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 6′-2″ | 5′-5″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-6″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-2″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 9′-1″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-8″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-7″ | 8′-8″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-4″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-3″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
  Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
  Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
  Second floor live load is 40 psf.
  Third floor live load is 30 psf.
  Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.6(24)**
**BACK-TO-BACK HEADER SPANS**
**Headers Supporting Two Floors, Roof and Ceiling (50 ksi steel)[a, b]**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | GROUND SNOW LOAD (50 psf) | | | | | GROUND SNOW LOAD (70 psf) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | | Building width[c] (feet) | | | | |
| | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| 2-350S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-54 | 2′-6″ | 2′-1″ | — | — | — | 2′-3″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-350S162-68 | 3′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-4″ | 3′-6″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ | 2′-5″ | 2′-2″ |
| 2-350S162-97 | 4′-6″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-8″ | 4′-4″ | 4′-2″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-9″ | 3′-6″ |
| 2-550S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-43 | 2′-5″ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-550S162-54 | 4′-1″ | 3′-7″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-7″ | 2′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-3″ | 2′-10″ | 2′-4″ | — |
| 2-550S162-68 | 5′-5″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-5″ | 4′-0″ | 3′-8″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 4′-2″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ |
| 2-550S162-97 | 6′-5″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-4″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-6″ | 5′-2″ |
| 2-800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-43 | 2′-11″ | 2′-2″ | — | — | — | 2′-6″ | — | — | — | — |
| 2-800S162-54 | 4′-11″ | 4′-3″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-2″ | 2′-8″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-11″ | 3′-5″ | 2′-11″ | 2′-4″ |
| 2-800S162-68 | 6′-7″ | 5′-11″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-11″ | 4′-6″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-7″ | 5′-1″ | 4′-8″ | 4′-3″ |
| 2-800S162-97 | 8′-9″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-0″ | 8′-5″ | 8′-1″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-10″ |
| 2-1000S162-43 | 2′-4″ | 2′-1″ | — | — | — | 2′-2″ | 1′-11″ | — | — | — |
| 2-1000S162-54 | 4′-8″ | 4′-1″ | 3′-8″ | 3′-3″ | 3′-0″ | 4′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 3′-5″ | 3′-1″ | 2′-9″ |
| 2-1000S162-68 | 7′-6″ | 6′-9″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-2″ | 7′-1″ | 6′-5″ | 5′-10″ | 5′-4″ | 4′-11″ |
| 2-1000S162-97 | 9′-9″ | 9′-2″ | 8′-7″ | 8′-2″ | 7′-8″ | 9′-5″ | 8′-10″ | 8′-5″ | 7′-11″ | 7′-5″ |
| 2-1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 2-1200S162-68 | 7′-0″ | 6′-4″ | 5′-9″ | 5′-3″ | 4′-9″ | 6′-7″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-5″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-6″ |
| 2-1200S162-97 | 9′-1″ | 8′-4″ | 7′-9″ | 7′-3″ | 6′-9″ | 8′-8″ | 8′-0″ | 7′-6″ | 7′-0″ | 6′-7″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/360 for live loads, *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Design load assumptions:
 Second floor dead load is 10 psf.
 Roof/ceiling dead load is 12 psf.
 Second floor live load is 40 psf.
 Third floor live load is 30 psf.
 Attic live load is 10 psf.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the header.

**TABLE R603.7(1)**
**TOTAL NUMBER OF JACK AND KING STUDS REQUIRED AT EACH END OF AN OPENING**

| SIZE OF OPENING (feet-inches) | 24″ O.C. STUD SPACING | | 16″ O.C. STUD SPACING | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | No. of jack studs | No. of king studs | No. of jack studs | No. of king studs |
| Up to 3′-6″ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| > 3′-6″ to 5′-0″ | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 |
| > 5′-0″ to 5′-6″ | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| > 5′-6″ to 8′-0″ | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| > 8′-0″ to 10′-6″ | 2 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| > 10′-6″ to 12′-0″ | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 |
| > 12′-0″ to 13′-0″ | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| > 13′-0″ to 14′-0″ | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |
| > 14′-0″ to 16′-0″ | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |
| > 16′-0″ to 18′-0″ | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**TABLE R603.7(2)**
**HEADER TO KING STUD CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS[a, b, c, d]**

| HEADER SPAN (feet) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph), EXPOSURE | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 85 B or Seismic Design Categories A, B, C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ | 85 C or less than 110 B | Less than 110 C |
| ≤ 4′ | 4-No. 8 screws | 4-No. 8 screws | 6-No. 8 screws |
| > 4′ to 8′ | 4-No. 8 screws | 4-No. 8 screws | 8-No. 8 screws |
| > 8′ to 12′ | 4-No. 8 screws | 6-No. 8 screws | 10-No. 8 screws |
| > 12′to 16′ | 4-No. 8 screws | 8-No. 8 screws | 12-No. 8 screws |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

a. All screw sizes shown are minimum.
b. For headers located on the first floor of a two-story building or the first or second floor of a three-story building, the total number of screws is permitted to be reduced by 2 screws, but the total number of screws shall be no less than 4.
c. For roof slopes of 6:12 or greater, the required number of screws may be reduced by half, but the total number of screws shall be no less than four.
d. Screws can be replaced by an uplift connector which has a capacity of the number of screws multiplied by 164 pounds (e.g., 12-No. 8 screws can be replaced by an uplift connector whose capacity exceeds 12 × 164 pounds = 1,968 pounds).

**TABLE R603.8**
**HEAD AND SILL TRACK SPAN**
**$F_y$ = 33 ksi**

| BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | ALLOWABLE HEAD AND SILL TRACK SPAN[a,b,c] (ft-in.) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| EXPOSURE | | TRACK DESIGNATION | | | | | |
| B | C | 350T125-33 | 350T125-43 | 350T125-54 | 550T125-33 | 550T125-43 | 550T125-54 |
| 85 | — | 5′-0″ | 5′-7″ | 6′-2″ | 5′-10″ | 6′-8″ | 7′-0″ |
| 90 | — | 4′-10″ | 5′-5″ | 6′-0″ | 5′-8″ | 6′-3″ | 6′-10″ |
| 100 | 85 | 4′-6″ | 5′-1″ | 5′-8″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-11″ | 6′-5″ |
| 110 | 90 | 4′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-1″ | 5′-7″ | 6′-1″ |
| 120 | 100 | 3′-11″ | 4′-6″ | 5′-0″ | 4′-10″ | 5′-4″ | 5′-10″ |
| 130 | 110 | 3′-8″ | 4′-2″ | 4′-9″ | 4′-1″ | 5′-1″ | 5′-7″ |
| 140 | 120 | 3′-7″ | 4′-1″ | 4′-7″ | 3′-6″ | 4′-11″ | 5′-5″ |
| 150 | 130 | 3′-5″ | 3′-10″ | 4′-4″ | 2′-11″ | 4′-7″ | 5′-2″ |
| — | 140 | 3′-1″ | 3′-6″ | 4′-1″ | 2′-3″ | 4′-0″ | 4′-10″ |
| — | 150 | 2′-9″ | 3′-4″ | 3′-10″ | 2′-0″ | 3′-7″ | 4′-7″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Deflection limit: *L*/240.

b. Head and sill track spans are based on components and cladding wind speeds and 48 inch tributary span.

c. For openings less than 4 feet in height that have both a head track and sill track, the above spans are permitted to be multiplied by 1.75. For openings less than or equal to 6 feet in height that have both a head track and a sill track, the above spans are permitted to be multiplied by a factor of 1.5.

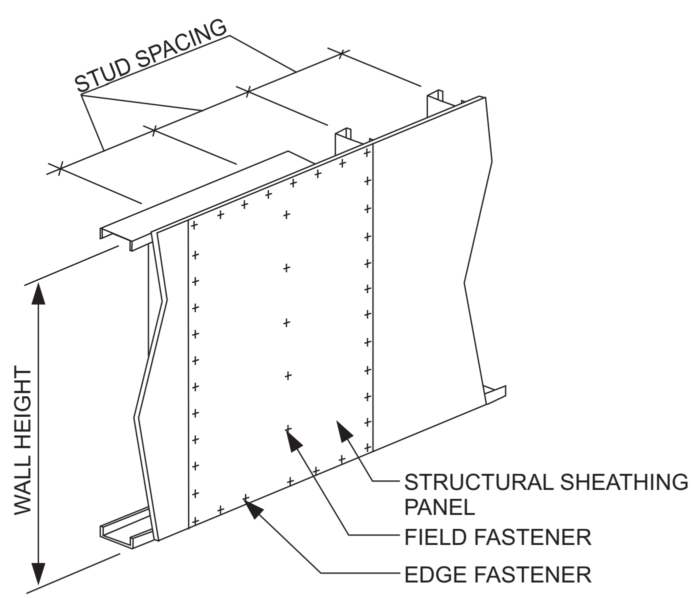
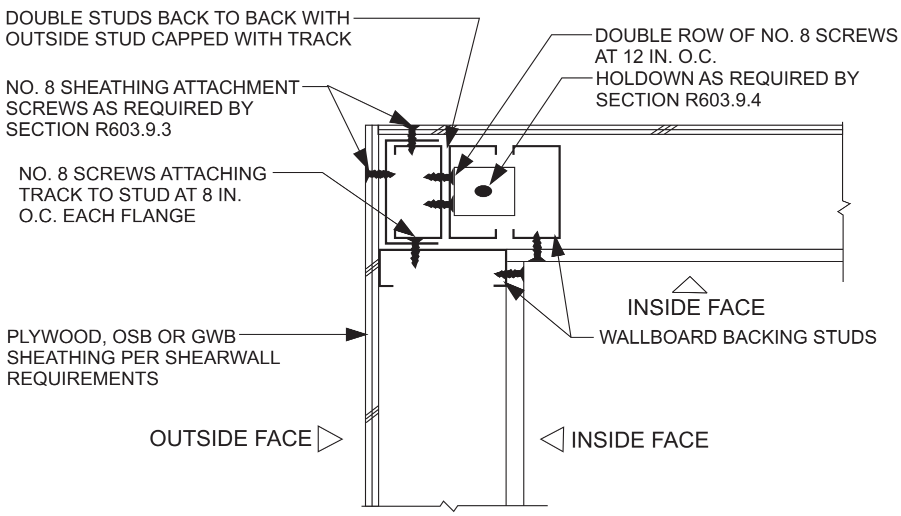



**FIGURE R603.9**
**STRUCTURAL SHEATHING FASTENING PATTERN**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R603.9.2**
**CORNER STUD HOLD DOWN DETAIL**

**TABLE R603.9.2(1)**
**MINIMUM PERCENTAGE OF FULL HEIGHT STRUCTURAL SHEATHING ON EXTERIOR WALLS[a,b]**

| WALL SUPPORTING | ROOF SLOPE | BASIC WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE (mph) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85 B | 90 B | 100 B / 85 C | < 110 B / 90 C | 100 C | < 110 C |
| Roof and ceiling only (One story or top floor of two or three story building) | 3:12 | 8 | 9 | 9 | 12 | 16 | 20 |
| | 6:12 | 12 | 13 | 15 | 20 | 26 | 35 |
| | 9:12 | 21 | 23 | 25 | 30 | 50 | 58 |
| | 12:12 | 30 | 33 | 35 | 40 | 66 | 75 |
| One story, roof and ceiling (First floor of a two-story building or second floor of a three story building) | 3:12 | 24 | 27 | 30 | 35 | 50 | 66 |
| | 6:12 | 25 | 28 | 30 | 40 | 58 | 74 |
| | 9:12 | 35 | 38 | 40 | 55 | 74 | 91 |
| | 12:12 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 65 | 100 | 115 |
| Two story, roof and ceiling (First floor of a three story building) | 3:12 | 40 | 45 | 51 | 58 | 84 | 112 |
| | 6:12 | 38 | 43 | 45 | 60 | 90 | 113 |
| | 9:12 | 49 | 53 | 55 | 80 | 98 | 124 |
| | 12:12 | 50 | 57 | 65 | 90 | 134 | 155 |

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.
a. Linear interpolation is permitted.
b. For hip-roofed homes the minimum percentage of full height sheathing, based upon wind, is permitted to be multiplied by a factor of 0.95 for roof slopes not exceeding 7:12 and a factor of 0.9 for roof slopes greater than 7:12.

**TABLE R603.9.2(2)**
**FULL HEIGHT SHEATHING LENGTH ADJUSTMENT FACTORS**

| PLAN ASPECT RATIO | LENGTH ADJUSTMENT FACTORS | |
|---|---|---|
| | Short wall | Long wall |
| 1:1 | 1.0 | 1.0 |
| 1.5:1 | 1.5 | 0.67 |
| 2:1 | 2.0 | 0.50 |
| 3:1 | 3.0 | 0.33 |
| 4:1 | 4.0 | 0.25 |

**R606.3 Corbeled masonry.** Corbeled masonry shall be in accordance with Sections R606.3.1 through R606.3.3.

**R606.3.1 Units.** *Solid masonry* units or masonry units filled with mortar or grout shall be used for corbeling.

**R606.3.2 Corbel projection.** The maximum projection of one unit shall not exceed one-half the height of the unit or one-third the thickness at right angles to the wall. The maximum corbeled projection beyond the face of the wall shall not exceed:

1. One-half of the wall thickness for multiwythe walls bonded by mortar or grout and wall ties or masonry headers, or
2. One-half the wythe thickness for single wythe walls, masonry-bonded hollow walls, multiwythe walls with open collar joints and veneer walls.

**R606.3.3 Corbeled masonry supporting floor or roof-framing members.** When corbeled masonry is used to support floor or roof-framing members, the top course of the corbel shall be a header course or the top course bed joint shall have ties to the vertical wall.

**R606.4 Support conditions.** Bearing and support conditions shall be in accordance with Sections R606.4.1 and R606.4.2.

**R606.4.1 Bearing on support.** Each masonry wythe shall be supported by at least two-thirds of the wythe thickness.

**R606.4.2 Support at foundation.** Cavity wall or masonry veneer construction may be supported on an 8-inch (203 mm) foundation wall, provided the 8-inch (203 mm) wall is corbeled to the width of the wall system above with masonry constructed of *solid masonry* units or masonry units filled with mortar or grout. The total horizontal projection of the corbel shall not exceed 2 inches (51 mm) with individual corbels projecting not more than one-third the thickness of the unit or one-half the height of the unit. The hollow space behind the corbeled masonry shall be filled with mortar or grout.

**R606.5 Allowable stresses.** Allowable compressive stresses in masonry shall not exceed the values prescribed in Table R606.5. In determining the stresses in masonry, the effects of all loads and conditions of loading and the influence of all forces affecting the design and strength of the several parts shall be taken into account.

**R606.5.1 Combined units.** In walls or other structural members composed of different kinds or grades of units, materials or mortars, the maximum stress shall not exceed the allowable stress for the weakest of the combination of units, materials and mortars of which the member is composed. The net thickness of any facing unit that is used to resist stress shall not be less than 1.5 inches (38 mm).

**R606.6 Piers.** The unsupported height of masonry piers shall not exceed ten times their least dimension. When structural clay tile or hollow concrete masonry units are used for isolated piers to support beams and girders, the cellular spaces shall be filled solidly with concrete or Type M or S mortar, except that unfilled hollow piers may be used if their unsupported height is not more than four times their least dimension. Where hollow masonry units are solidly filled with concrete or Type M, S or N mortar, the allowable compressive stress shall be permitted to be increased as provided in Table R606.5.

**TABLE R606.5**
**ALLOWABLE COMPRESSIVE STRESSES FOR EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY**

| CONSTRUCTION; COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF UNIT, GROSS AREA | ALLOWABLE COMPRESSIVE STRESSES[a] GROSS CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA[b] | |
|---|---|---|
| | Type M or S mortar | Type N mortar |
| Solid masonry of brick and other solid units of clay or shale; sand-lime or concrete brick: | | |
| 8,000+ psi | 350 | 300 |
| 4,500 psi | 225 | 200 |
| 2,500 psi | 160 | 140 |
| 1,500 psi | 115 | 100 |
| Grouted[c] masonry, of clay or shale; sand-lime or concrete: | | |
| 4,500+ psi | 225 | 200 |
| 2,500 psi | 160 | 140 |
| 1,500 psi | 115 | 100 |
| Solid masonry of solid concrete masonry units: | | |
| 3,000+ psi | 225 | 200 |
| 2,000 psi | 160 | 140 |
| 1,200 psi | 115 | 100 |
| Masonry of hollow load-bearing units: | | |
| 2,000+ psi | 140 | 120 |
| 1,500 psi | 115 | 100 |
| 1,000 psi | 75 | 70 |
| 700 psi | 60 | 55 |
| Hollow walls (cavity or masonry bonded[d]) solid units: | | |
| 2,500+ psi | 160 | 140 |
| 1,500 psi | 115 | 100 |
| Hollow units | 75 | 70 |
| Stone ashlar masonry: | | |
| Granite | 720 | 640 |
| Limestone or marble | 450 | 400 |
| Sandstone or cast stone | 360 | 320 |
| Rubble stone masonry: | | |
| Coarse, rough or random | 120 | 100 |

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. Linear interpolation shall be used for determining allowable stresses for masonry units having compressive strengths that are intermediate between those given in the table.

b. Gross cross-sectional area shall be calculated on the actual rather than nominal dimensions.

c. See Section R608.

d. Where floor and roof loads are carried upon one wythe, the gross cross-sectional area is that of the wythe under load; if both wythes are loaded, the gross cross-sectional area is that of the wall minus the area of the cavity between the wythes. Walls bonded with metal ties shall be considered as cavity walls unless the collar joints are filled with mortar or grout.

**R606.6.1 Pier cap.** Hollow piers shall be capped with 4 inches (102 mm) of *solid masonry* or concrete or shall have cavities of the top course filled with concrete or grout or other *approved* methods.

**R606.7 Chases.** Chases and recesses in masonry walls shall not be deeper than one-third the wall thickness, and the maximum length of a horizontal chase or horizontal projection shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm), and shall have at least 8 inches (203 mm) of masonry in back of the chases and recesses and between adjacent chases or recesses and the jambs of openings. Chases and recesses in masonry walls shall be designed and constructed so as not to reduce the required strength or required fire resistance of the wall and in no case shall a chase or recess be permitted within the required area of a pier. Masonry directly above chases or recesses wider than 12 inches (305 mm) shall be supported on noncombustible lintels.

**R606.8 Stack bond.** In unreinforced masonry where masonry units are laid in stack bond, longitudinal reinforcement consisting of not less than two continuous wires each with a minimum aggregate cross-sectional area of 0.017 square inch (11 mm$^2$) shall be provided in horizontal bed joints spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center vertically.

**R606.9 Lateral support.** Masonry walls shall be laterally supported in either the horizontal or the vertical direction. The maximum spacing between lateral supports shall not exceed the distances in Table R606.9. Lateral support shall be provided by cross walls, pilasters, buttresses or structural frame members when the limiting distance is taken horizontally, or by floors or roofs when the limiting distance is taken vertically.

**TABLE R606.9**
**SPACING OF LATERAL SUPPORT FOR MASONRY WALLS**

| CONSTRUCTION | MAXIMUM WALL LENGTH TO THICKNESS OR WALL HEIGHT TO THICKNESS[a,b] |
|---|---|
| Bearing walls: | |
| Solid or solid grouted | 20 |
| All other | 18 |
| Nonbearing walls: | |
| Exterior | 18 |
| Interior | 36 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Except for cavity walls and cantilevered walls, the thickness of a wall shall be its nominal thickness measured perpendicular to the face of the wall. For cavity walls, the thickness shall be determined as the sum of the nominal thicknesses of the individual wythes. For cantilever walls, except for parapets, the ratio of height to nominal thickness shall not exceed 6 for solid masonry, or 4 for hollow masonry. For parapets, see Section R606.2.4.

b. An additional unsupported height of 6 feet is permitted for gable end walls.

**R606.9.1 Horizontal lateral support.** Lateral support in the horizontal direction provided by intersecting masonry walls shall be provided by one of the methods in Section R606.9.1.1 or Section R606.9.1.2.

**R606.9.1.1 Bonding pattern.** Fifty percent of the units at the intersection shall be laid in an overlapping masonry bonding pattern, with alternate units having a bearing of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on the unit below.

**R606.9.1.2 Metal reinforcement.** Interior nonload-bearing walls shall be anchored at their intersections, at vertical intervals of not more than 16 inches (406 mm) with joint reinforcement of at least 9 gage [0.148 in. (4mm)], or $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) galvanized mesh hardware cloth. Intersecting masonry walls, other than interior nonloadbearing walls, shall be anchored at vertical intervals of not more than 8 inches (203 mm) with joint reinforcement of at least 9 gage and shall extend at least 30 inches (762 mm) in each direction at the intersection. Other metal ties, joint reinforcement or anchors, if used, shall be spaced to provide equivalent area of anchorage to that required by this section.

**R606.9.2 Vertical lateral support.** Vertical lateral support of masonry walls in Seismic Design Category A, B or C shall be provided in accordance with one of the methods in Section R606.9.2.1 or Section R606.9.2.2.

**R606.9.2.1 Roof structures.** Masonry walls shall be anchored to roof structures with metal strap anchors spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) bolts spaced not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center, or other *approved* anchors. Anchors shall be embedded at least 16 inches (406 mm) into the masonry, or be hooked or welded to bond beam reinforcement placed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the top of the wall.

**R606.9.2.2 Floor diaphragms.** Masonry walls shall be anchored to floor *diaphragm* framing by metal strap anchors spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, $^1/_2$-inch-diameter (13 mm) bolts spaced at intervals not to exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) and installed as shown in Figure R606.11(1), or by other *approved* methods.

**R606.10 Lintels.** Masonry over openings shall be supported by steel lintels, reinforced concrete or masonry lintels or masonry arches, designed to support load imposed.

**R606.11 Anchorage.** Masonry walls shall be anchored to floor and roof systems in accordance with the details shown in Figure R606.11(1), R606.11(2) or R606.11(3). Footings may be considered as points of lateral support.

**R606.12 Seismic requirements.** The seismic requirements of this section shall apply to the design of masonry and the construction of masonry building elements located in Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$. Townhouses in Seismic Design Category C shall comply with the requirements of Section R606.12.2. These requirements shall not apply to glass unit masonry conforming to Section R610 or masonry veneer conforming to Section R703.7.

**R606.12.1 General.** Masonry structures and masonry elements shall comply with the requirements of Sections R606.12.2 through R606.12.4 based on the seismic design category established in Table R301.2(1). Masonry structures and masonry elements shall comply with the requirements of Section R606.12 and Figures R606.11(1), R606.11(2) and R606.11(3) or shall be designed in accordance with TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

**R606.12.1.1 Floor and roof diaphragm construction.** Floor and roof *diaphragms* shall be constructed of wood structural panels attached to wood framing in accordance with Table R602.3(1) or to cold-formed steel floor framing in accordance with Table R505.3.1(2) or to cold-formed steel roof framing in accordance with Table

R804.3. Additionally, sheathing panel edges perpendicular to framing members shall be backed by blocking, and sheathing shall be connected to the blocking with fasteners at the edge spacing. For Seismic Design Categories C, $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, where the width-to-thickness dimension of the *diaphragm* exceeds 2-to-1, edge spacing of fasteners shall be 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

**R606.12.2 Seismic Design Category C.** Townhouses located in Seismic Design Category C shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**R606.12.2.1 Minimum length of wall without openings.** Table R606.12.2.1 shall be used to determine the minimum required solid wall length without openings at each masonry exterior wall. The provided percentage of solid wall length shall include only those wall segments that are 3 feet (914 mm) or longer. The maximum clear distance between wall segments included in determining the solid wall length shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm). Shear wall segments required to meet the minimum wall length shall be in accordance with Section R606.12.2.2.3.

**R606.12.2.2 Design of elements not part of the lateral force-resisting system.**

**R606.12.2.2.1 Load-bearing frames or columns.** Elements not part of the lateral-force-resisting system shall be analyzed to determine their effect on the response of the system. The frames or columns shall be adequate for vertical load carrying capacity and induced moment caused by the design *story* drift.

**R606.12.2.2.2 Masonry partition walls.** Masonry partition walls, masonry screen walls and other masonry elements that are not designed to resist vertical or lateral loads, other than those induced by their own weight, shall be isolated from the structure so that vertical and lateral forces are not imparted to these elements. Isolation joints and connectors between these elements and the structure shall be designed to accommodate the design *story* drift.

**R606.12.2.2.3 Reinforcement requirements for masonry elements.** Masonry elements listed in Section R606.12.2.2.2 shall be reinforced in either the horizontal or vertical direction as shown in Figure R606.11(2) and in accordance with the following:

1. Horizontal reinforcement. Horizontal joint reinforcement shall consist of at least two longitudinal W1.7 wires spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) for walls greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in width and at least one longitudinal W1.7 wire spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) for walls not exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) in width; or at least one No. 4 bar spaced not more than 48 inches (1219 mm). Where two longitudinal wires of joint reinforcement are used, the space between these wires shall be the widest that the mortar joint will accommodate. Horizontal reinforcement shall be provided within 16 inches (406 mm) of the top and bottom of these masonry elements.
2. Vertical reinforcement. Vertical reinforcement shall consist of at least one No. 4 bar spaced not more than 48 inches (1219 mm). Vertical reinforcement shall be located within 16 inches (406 mm) of the ends of masonry walls.

**R606.12.2.3 Design of elements part of the lateral-force-resisting system.**

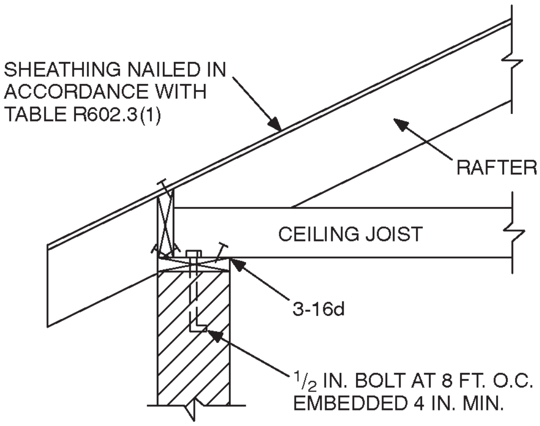
**R606.12.2.3.1 Connections to masonry shear walls.** Connectors shall be provided to transfer forces between masonry walls and horizontal elements in accordance with the requirements of Section 1.7.4 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5. Connectors shall be designed to transfer horizontal design forces acting either perpendicular or parallel to the wall, but not less than 200 pounds per linear foot (2919 N/m) of wall. The maximum spacing between connectors shall be 4 feet (1219 mm). Such anchorage mechanisms shall not induce tension stresses perpendicular to grain in ledgers or nailers.

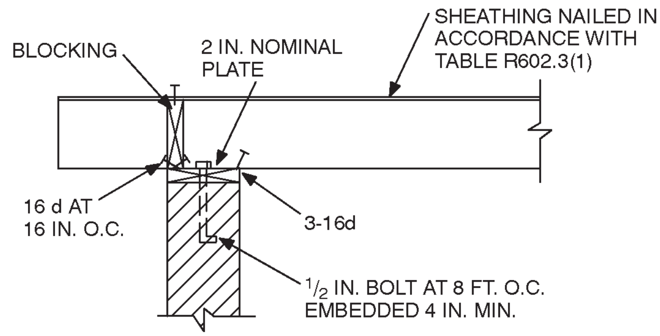
**R606.12.2.3.2 Connections to masonry columns.** Connectors shall be provided to transfer forces between masonry columns and horizontal elements in accordance with the requirements of Section 1.7.4 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5. Where anchor bolts are used to connect horizontal elements to the tops of columns, the bolts shall be placed within lateral ties. Lateral ties shall enclose both the vertical bars in the column and the anchor bolts. There shall be a minimum of two No. 4 lateral ties provided in the top 5 inches (127 mm) of the column.

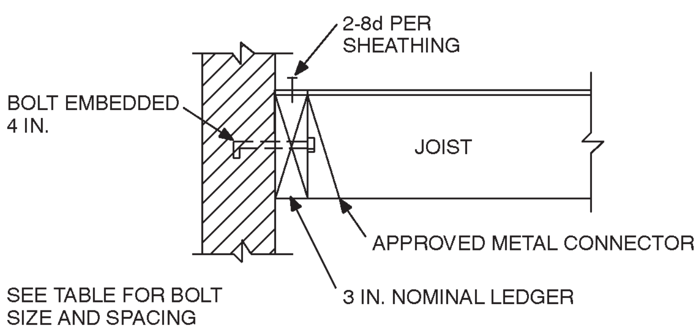
**R606.12.2.3.3 Minimum reinforcement requirements for masonry shear walls.** Vertical reinforcement of at least one No. 4 bar shall be provided at corners, within 16 inches (406 mm) of each side of openings, within 8 inches (203 mm) of each side of movement joints, within 8 inches (203 mm) of the ends of walls, and at a maximum spacing of 10 feet (3048 mm).

Horizontal joint reinforcement shall consist of at least two wires of W1.7 spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm); or bond beam reinforcement of at least one No. 4 bar spaced not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be provided. Horizontal reinforcement shall also be provided at the bottom and top of wall openings and shall extend not less than 24 inches (610 mm) nor less than 40 bar diameters past the opening; continuously at structurally connected roof and floor levels; and within 16 inches (406 mm) of the top of walls.

**R606.12.3 Seismic Design Category $D_0$ or $D_1$.** Structures in Seismic Design Category $D_0$ or $D_1$ shall comply with the requirements of Seismic Design Category C and the additional requirements of this section.

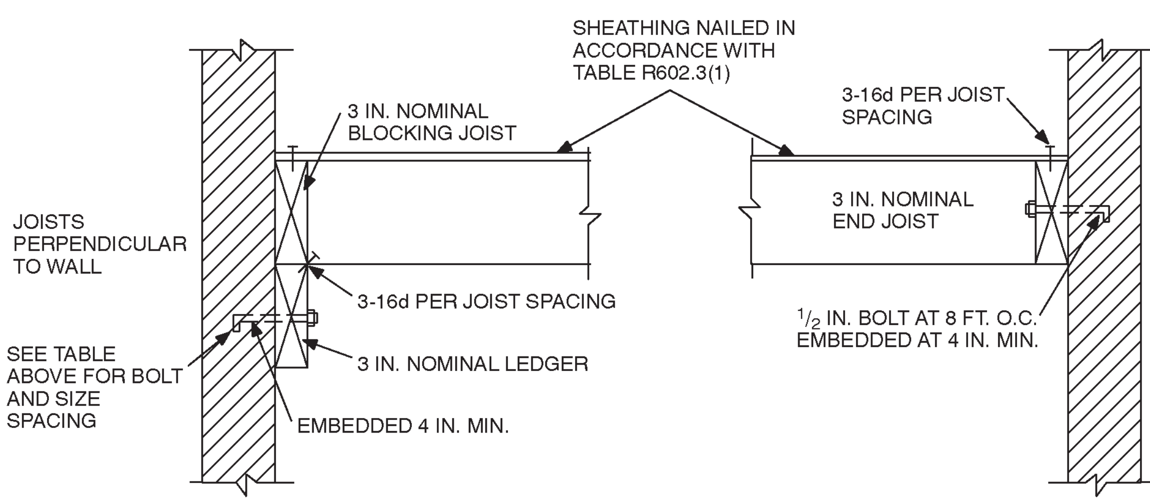



**LEDGER BOLT SIZE AND SPACING**

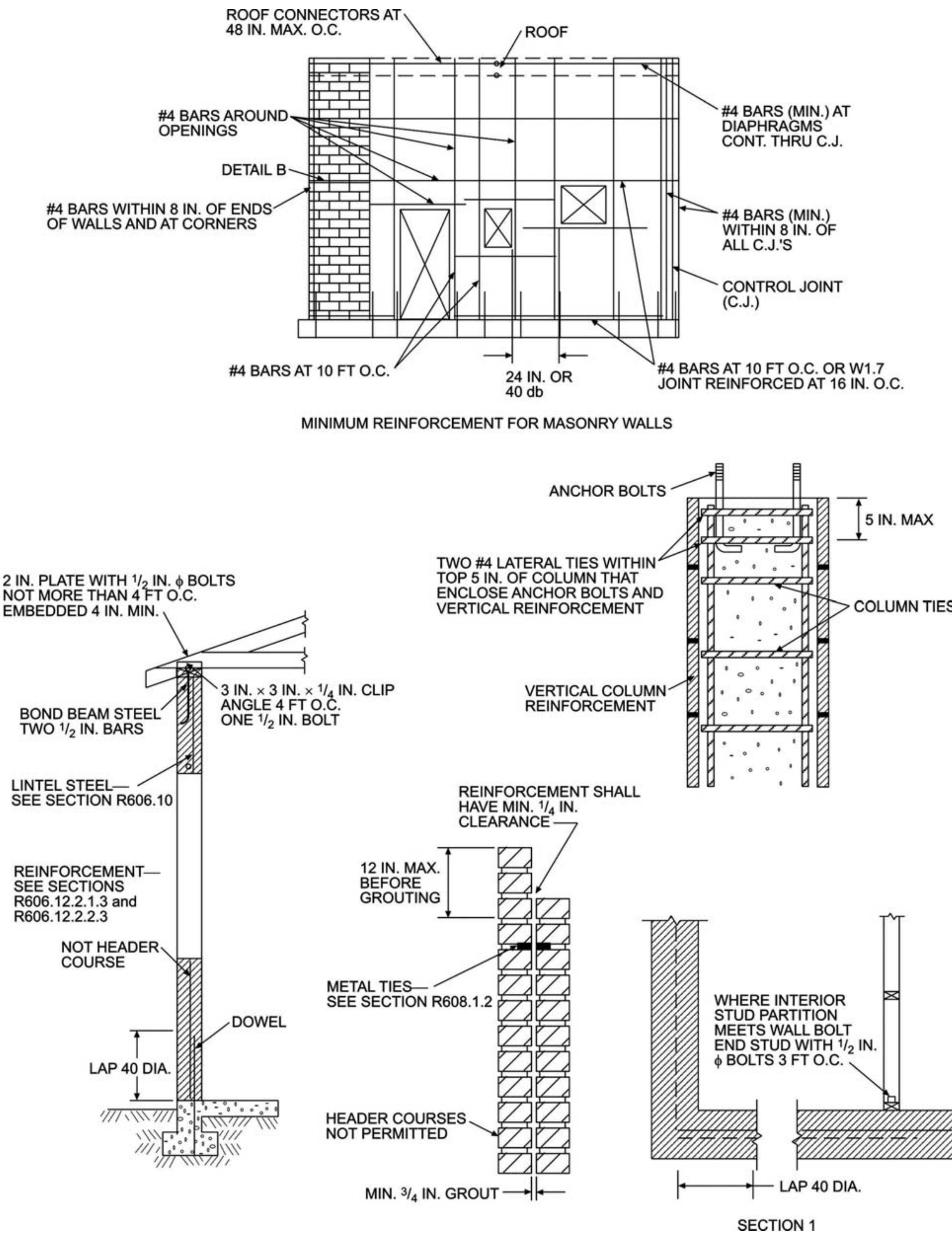
| JOIST SPAN | BOLT SIZE AND SPACING | |
|---|---|---|
| | ROOF | FLOOR |
| 10 FT. | 1/2 AT 2 FT. 6 IN.<br>7/8 AT 3 FT. 6 IN. | 1/2 AT 2 FT. 0 IN.<br>7/8 AT 2 FT. 9 IN. |
| 10–15 FT. | 1/2 AT 1 FT. 9 IN.<br>7/8 AT 2 FT. 6 IN. | 1/2 AT 1 FT. 4 IN.<br>7/8 AT 2 FT. 0 IN. |
| 15-20 FT. | 1/2 AT 1 FT. 3 IN.<br>7/8 AT 2 FT. 0 IN. | 1/2 AT 1 FT. 0 IN.<br>7/8 AT 1 FT. 6 IN. |




NOTE: Where bolts are located in hollow masonry, the cells in the courses receiving the bolt shall be grouted solid.

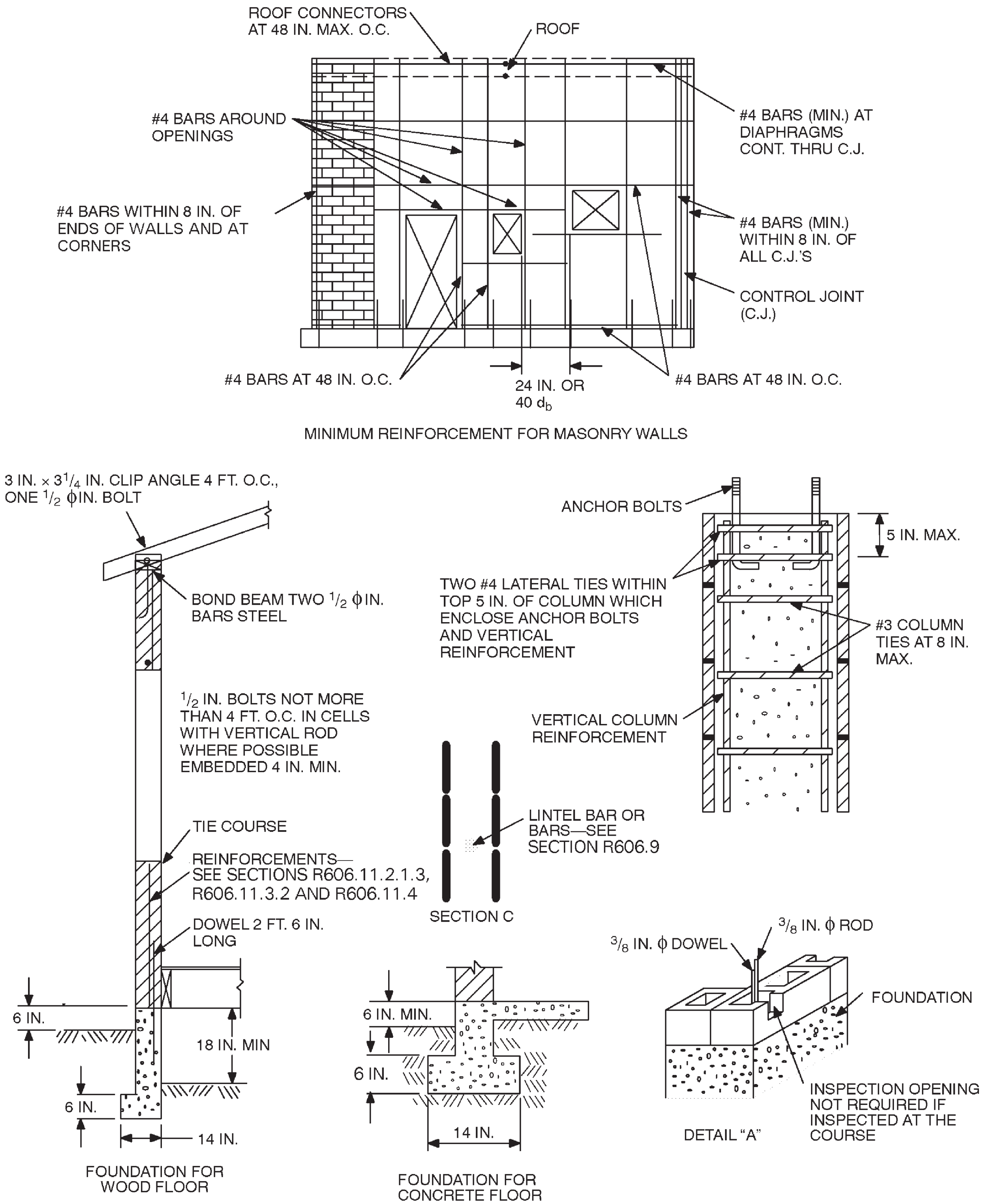
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0.479kPa.

**FIGURE R606.11(1)**
**ANCHORAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MASONRY WALLS LOCATED IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY A, B OR C AND WHERE WIND LOADS ARE LESS THAN 30 PSF**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R606.11(2)**
**REQUIREMENTS FOR REINFORCED GROUTED MASONRY CONSTRUCTION IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY C**




NOTE: A full bed joint must be provided. All cells containing vertical bars are to be filled to the top of wall and provide inspection opening as shown on detail "A." Horizontal bars are to be laid as shown on detail "B." Lintel bars are to be laid as shown on Section C.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R606.11(3)**
**REQUIREMENTS FOR REINFORCED MASONRY CONSTRUCTION IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY $D_0$, $D_1$, OR $D_2$**

**TABLE R606.12.2.1**
**MINIMUM SOLID WALL LENGTH ALONG EXTERIOR WALL LINES**

| SESIMIC DESIGN CATEGORY | MINIMUM SOLID WALL LENGTH (percent)[a] | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | One Story or Top Story of Two Story | Wall Supporting Light-framed Second Story and Roof | Wall Supporting Masonry Second Story and Roof |
| Townhouses in C | 20 | 25 | 35 |
| $D_0$ or $D_1$ | 25 | NP | NP |
| $D_2$ | 30 | NP | NP |

NP = Not permitted , except with design in accordance with the *International Building Code.*

a. For all walls, the minimum required length of solid walls shall be based on the table percent multiplied by the dimension, parallel to the wall direction under consideration, of a rectangle inscribing the overall building plan.

**R606.12.3.1 Design requirements.** Masonry elements other than those covered by Section R606.12.2.2.2 shall be designed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1 and Sections 2.1 and 2.3 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 and shall meet the minimum reinforcement requirements contained in Sections R606.12.3.2 and R606.12.3.2.1.

**Exception:** Masonry walls limited to one *story* in height and 9 feet (2743 mm) between lateral supports need not be designed provided they comply with the minimum reinforcement requirements of Sections R606.12.3.2 and R606.12.3.2.1.

**R606.12.3.2 Minimum reinforcement requirements for masonry walls.** Masonry walls other than those covered by Section R606.12.2.2.3 shall be reinforced in both the vertical and horizontal direction. The sum of the cross-sectional area of horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be at least 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area of the wall, and the minimum cross-sectional area in each direction shall be not less than 0.0007 times the gross cross-sectional area of the wall. Reinforcement shall be uniformly distributed. Table R606.12.3.2 shows the minimum reinforcing bar sizes required for varying thicknesses of masonry walls. The maximum spacing of reinforcement shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) provided that the walls are solid grouted and constructed of hollow open-end units, hollow units laid with full head joints or two wythes of solid units. The maximum spacing of reinforcement shall be 24 inches (610 mm) for all other masonry.

**R606.12.3.2.1 Shear wall reinforcement requirements.** The maximum spacing of vertical and horizontal reinforcement shall be the smaller of one-third the length of the shear wall, one-third the height of the shear wall, or 48 inches (1219 mm). The minimum cross-sectional area of vertical reinforcement shall be one-third of the required shear reinforcement. Shear reinforcement shall be anchored around vertical reinforcing bars with a standard hook.

**R606.12.3.3 Minimum reinforcement for masonry columns.** Lateral ties in masonry columns shall be spaced not more than 8 inches (203 mm) on center and shall be at least $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Lateral ties shall be embedded in grout.

**R606.12.3.4 Material restrictions.** Type N mortar or masonry cement shall not be used as part of the lateral-force-resisting system.

**R606.12.3.5 Lateral tie anchorage.** Standard hooks for lateral tie anchorage shall be either a 135-degree (2.4 rad) standard hook or a 180-degree (3.2 rad) standard hook.

**R606.12.4 Seismic Design Category $D_2$.** All structures in Seismic Design Category $D_2$ shall comply with the requirements of Seismic Design Category $D_1$ and to the additional requirements of this section.

**TABLE R606.12.3.2**
**MINIMUM DISTRIBUTED WALL REINFORCEMENT FOR BUILDING ASSIGNED TO SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY $D_0$ or $D_1$**

| NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches) | MINIMUM SUM OF THE VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL REINFORCEMENT AREAS[a] (square inches per foot) | MINIMUM REINFORCEMENT AS DISTRIBUTED IN BOTH HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL DIRECTIONS[b] (square inches per foot) | MINIMUM BAR SIZE FOR REINFORCEMENT SPACED AT 48 INCHES |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | 0.135 | 0.047 | #4 |
| 8 | 0.183 | 0.064 | #5 |
| 10 | 0.231 | 0.081 | #6 |
| 12 | 0.279 | 0.098 | #6 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch per foot = 2064 $mm^2/m$.

a. Based on the minimum reinforcing ratio of 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area of the wall.

b. Based on the minimum reinforcing ratio each direction of 0.0007 times the gross cross-sectional area of the wall.

**R606.12.4.1 Design of elements not part of the lateral-force-resisting system.** Stack bond masonry that is not part of the lateral-force-resisting system shall have a horizontal cross-sectional area of reinforcement of at least 0.0015 times the gross cross-sectional area of masonry. Table R606.12.4.1 shows minimum reinforcing bar sizes for masonry walls. The maximum spacing of horizontal reinforcement shall be 24 inches (610 mm). These elements shall be solidly grouted and shall be constructed of hollow open-end units or two wythes of solid units.

**TABLE R606.12.4.1**
**MINIMUM REINFORCING FOR STACKED BONDED MASONRY WALLS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY $D_2$**

| NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches) | MINIMUM BAR SIZE SPACED AT 24 INCHES |
|---|---|
| 6 | #4 |
| 8 | #5 |
| 10 | #5 |
| 12 | #6 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**R606.12.4.2 Design of elements part of the lateral-force-resisting system.** Stack bond masonry that is part of the lateral-force-resisting system shall have a horizontal cross-sectional area of reinforcement of at least 0.0025 times the gross cross-sectional area of masonry. Table R606.12.4.2 shows minimum reinforcing bar sizes for masonry walls. The maximum spacing of horizontal reinforcement shall be 16 inches (406 mm). These elements shall be solidly grouted and shall be constructed of hollow open-end units or two wythes of solid units.

**TABLE R606.12.4.2**
**MINIMUM REINFORCING FOR STACKED BONDED MASONRY WALLS IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY $D_2$**

| NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches) | MINIMUM BAR SIZE SPACED AT 16 INCHES |
|---|---|
| 6 | #4 |
| 8 | #5 |
| 10 | #5 |
| 12 | #6 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**R606.13 Protection for reinforcement.** Bars shall be completely embedded in mortar or grout. Joint reinforcement embedded in horizontal mortar joints shall not have less than $^5/_8$-inch (15.9 mm) mortar coverage from the exposed face. All other reinforcement shall have a minimum coverage of one bar diameter over all bars, but not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm), except where exposed to weather or soil, in which case the minimum coverage shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

**R606.14 Beam supports.** Beams, girders or other concentrated loads supported by a wall or column shall have a bearing of at least 3 inches (76 mm) in length measured parallel to the beam upon *solid masonry* not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness, or upon a metal bearing plate of adequate design and dimensions to distribute the load safely, or upon a continuous reinforced masonry member projecting not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the face of the wall.

**R606.14.1 Joist bearing.** Joists shall have a bearing of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), except as provided in Section R606.14, and shall be supported in accordance with Figure R606.11(1).

**R606.15 Metal accessories.** Joint reinforcement, anchors, ties and wire fabric shall conform to the following: ASTM A 82 for wire anchors and ties; ASTM A 36 for plate, headed and bent-bar anchors; ASTM A 510 for corrugated sheet metal anchors and ties; ASTM A 951 for joint reinforcement; ASTM B 227 for copper-clad steel wire ties; or ASTM A 167 for stainless steel hardware.

**R606.15.1 Corrosion protection.** Minimum corrosion protection of joint reinforcement, anchor ties and wire fabric for use in masonry wall construction shall conform to Table R606.15.1.

**TABLE R606.15.1**
**MINIMUM CORROSION PROTECTION**

| MASONRY METAL ACCESSORY | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Joint reinforcement, interior walls | ASTM A 641, Class 1 |
| Wire ties or anchors in exterior walls completely embedded in mortar or grout | ASTM A 641, Class 3 |
| Wire ties or anchors in exterior walls not completely embedded in mortar or grout | ASTM A 153, Class B-2 |
| Joint reinforcement in exterior walls or interior walls exposed to moist environment | ASTM A 153, Class B-2 |
| Sheet metal ties or anchors exposed to weather | ASTM A 153, Class B-2 |
| Sheet metal ties or anchors completely embedded in mortar or grout | ASTM A 653, Coating Designation G60 |
| Stainless steel hardware for any exposure | ASTM A 167, Type 304 |

## SECTION R607
## UNIT MASONRY

**R607.1 Mortar.** Mortar for use in masonry construction shall comply with ASTM C 270. The type of mortar shall be in accordance with Sections R607.1.1, R607.1.2 and R607.1.3 and shall meet the proportion specifications of Table R607.1 or the property specifications of ASTM C 270.

**R607.1.1 Foundation walls.** Masonry foundation walls constructed as set forth in Tables R404.1.1(1) through R404.1.1(4) and mortar shall be Type M or S.

**R607.1.2 Masonry in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.** Mortar for masonry serving as the lateral-force-resisting system in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C shall be Type M, S or N mortar.

**R607.1.3 Masonry in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.** Mortar for masonry serving as the lateral-force- resisting system in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ shall be Type M or S portland cement-lime or mortar cement mortar.

**R607.2 Placing mortar and masonry units.**

**R607.2.1 Bed and head joints.** Unless otherwise required or indicated on the project drawings, head and bed joints shall be $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm) thick, except that the thickness of the bed joint of the starting course placed over foundations shall not be less than $^1/_4$ inch (7 mm) and not more than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm).

**R607.2.1.1 Mortar joint thickness tolerance.** Mortar joint thickness for load-bearing masonry shall be within the following tolerances from the specified dimensions:

1. Bed joint: + $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm).
2. Head joint: - $^1/_4$ inch (7 mm), + $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).
3. Collar joints: - $^1/_4$ inch (7 mm), + $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).

**R607.2.2 Masonry unit placement.** The mortar shall be sufficiently plastic and units shall be placed with sufficient pressure to extrude mortar from the joint and produce a tight joint. Deep furrowing of bed joints that produces voids shall not be permitted. Any units disturbed to the extent that initial bond is broken after initial placement shall be removed and relaid in fresh mortar. Surfaces to be in contact with mortar shall be clean and free of deleterious materials.

**R607.2.2.1 Solid masonry.** *Solid masonry* units shall be laid with full head and bed joints and all interior vertical joints that are designed to receive mortar shall be filled.

**R607.2.2.2 Hollow masonry.** For hollow masonry units, head and bed joints shall be filled solidly with mortar for a distance in from the face of the unit not less than the thickness of the face shell.

**R607.3 Installation of wall ties.** The installation of wall ties shall be as follows:

1. The ends of wall ties shall be embedded in mortar joints. Wall tie ends shall engage outer face shells of hollow units by at least $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm). Wire wall ties shall be embedded at least $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into the mortar bed of *solid masonry* units or solid grouted hollow units.
2. Wall ties shall not be bent after being embedded in grout or mortar.

## SECTION R608
## MULTIPLE WYTHE MASONRY

**R608.1 General.** The facing and backing of multiple wythe masonry walls shall be bonded in accordance with Section R608.1.1, R608.1.2 or R608.1.3. In cavity walls, neither the facing nor the backing shall be less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness and the cavity shall not be more than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width. The backing shall be at least as thick as the facing.

**Exception:** Cavities shall be permitted to exceed the 4-inch (102 mm) nominal dimension provided tie size and tie spacing have been established by calculation.

**TABLE R607.1**
**MORTAR PROPORTIONS[a, b]**

| | | PROPORTIONS BY VOLUME (cementitious materials) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Mortar cement | | | Masonry cement | | | | |
| MORTAR | TYPE | Portland cement or blended cement | M | S | N | M | S | N | Hydrated lime[c] or lime putty | Aggregate ratio (measured in damp, loose conditions) |
| Cement-lime | M | 1 | — | — | — | — | — | — | $^1/_4$ | Not less than $2^1/_4$ and not more than 3 times the sum of separate volumes of lime, if used, and cement |
| | S | 1 | — | — | — | — | — | — | over $^1/_4$ to $^1/_2$ | |
| | N | 1 | — | — | — | — | — | — | over $^1/_2$ to $1^1/_4$ | |
| | O | 1 | — | — | — | — | — | — | over $1^1/_4$ to $2^1/_2$ | |
| Mortar cement | M | 1 | — | — | 1 | — | — | — | — | |
| | M | — | 1 | — | — | — | — | — | | |
| | S | $^1/_2$ | — | — | 1 | — | — | — | | |
| | S | — | — | 1 | — | — | — | — | | |
| | N | — | — | — | 1 | — | — | — | | |
| | O | — | — | — | 1 | — | — | — | | |
| Masonry cement | M | 1 | | | | — | — | 1 | — | |
| | M | — | | | | 1 | — | — | | |
| | S | $^1/_2$ | | | | — | — | 1 | | |
| | S | — | | | | — | 1 | — | | |
| | N | — | | | | — | — | 1 | | |
| | O | — | | | | — | — | 1 | | |

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 $m^3$, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For the purpose of these specifications, the weight of 1 cubic foot of the respective materials shall be considered to be as follows:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Portland Cement | 94 pounds | Masonry Cement | Weight printed on bag |
| Mortar Cement | Weight printed on bag | Hydrated Lime | 40 pounds |
| Lime Putty (Quicklime) | 80 pounds | Sand, damp and loose | 80 pounds of dry sand |

b. Two air-entraining materials shall not be combined in mortar.

c. Hydrated lime conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 270.

**R608.1.1 Bonding with masonry headers.** Bonding with solid or hollow masonry headers shall comply with Sections R608.1.1.1 and R608.1.1.2.

**R608.1.1.1 Solid units.** Where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of *solid masonry* construction are bonded by means of masonry headers, no less than 4 percent of the wall surface of each face shall be composed of headers extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into the backing. The distance between adjacent full-length headers shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) either vertically or horizontally. In walls in which a single header does not extend through the wall, headers from the opposite sides shall overlap at least 3 inches (76 mm), or headers from opposite sides shall be covered with another header course overlapping the header below at least 3 inches (76 mm).

**R608.1.1.2 Hollow units.** Where two or more hollow units are used to make up the thickness of a wall, the stretcher courses shall be bonded at vertical intervals not exceeding 34 inches (864 mm) by lapping at least 3 inches (76 mm) over the unit below, or by lapping at vertical intervals not exceeding 17 inches (432 mm) with units that are at least 50 percent thicker than the units below.

**R608.1.2 Bonding with wall ties or joint reinforcement.** Bonding with wall ties or joint reinforcement shall comply with Sections R608.1.2.1 through R608.1.2.3.

**R608.1.2.1 Bonding with wall ties.** Bonding with wall ties, except as required by Section R610, where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry walls are bonded with $^{3}/_{16}$-inch-diameter (5 mm) wall ties embedded in the horizontal mortar joints, there shall be at least one metal tie for each 4.5 square feet (0.418 $m^2$) of wall area. Ties in alternate courses shall be staggered. The maximum vertical distance between ties shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), and the maximum horizontal distance shall not exceed 36 inches (914 mm). Rods or ties bent to rectangular shape shall be used with hollow masonry units laid with the cells vertical. In other walls, the ends of ties shall be bent to 90-degree (0.79 rad) angles to provide hooks no less than 2 inches (51 mm) long. Additional bonding ties shall be provided at all openings, spaced not more than 3 feet (914 mm) apart around the perimeter and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the opening.

**R608.1.2.2 Bonding with adjustable wall ties.** Where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry are bonded with adjustable wall ties, there shall be at least one tie for each 2.67 square feet (0.248 $m^2$) of wall area. Neither the vertical nor the horizontal spacing of the adjustable wall ties shall exceed 24 inches (610 mm). The maximum vertical offset of bed joints from one wythe to the other shall be 1.25 inches (32 mm). The maximum clearance between connecting parts of the ties shall be $^{1}/_{16}$ inch (2 mm). When pintle legs are used, ties shall have at least two $^{3}/_{16}$-inch-diameter (5 mm) legs.

**R608.1.2.3 Bonding with prefabricated joint reinforcement.** Where the facing and backing (adjacent wythes) of masonry are bonded with prefabricated joint reinforcement, there shall be at least one cross wire serving as a tie for each 2.67 square feet (0.248 $m^2$) of wall area. The vertical spacing of the joint reinforcement shall not exceed 16 inches (406 mm). Cross wires on prefabricated joint reinforcement shall not be smaller than No. 9 gage. The longitudinal wires shall be embedded in the mortar.

**R608.1.3 Bonding with natural or cast stone.** Bonding with natural and cast stone shall conform to Sections R608.1.3.1 and R608.1.3.2.

**R608.1.3.1 Ashlar masonry.** In ashlar masonry, bonder units, uniformly distributed, shall be provided to the extent of not less than 10 percent of the wall area. Such bonder units shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) into the backing wall.

**R608.1.3.2 Rubble stone masonry.** Rubble stone masonry 24 inches (610 mm) or less in thickness shall have bonder units with a maximum spacing of 3 feet (914 mm) vertically and 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally, and if the masonry is of greater thickness than 24 inches (610 mm), shall have one bonder unit for each 6 square feet (0.557 $m^2$) of wall surface on both sides.

**R608.2 Masonry bonding pattern.** Masonry laid in running and stack bond shall conform to Sections R608.2.1 and R608.2.2.

**R608.2.1 Masonry laid in running bond.** In each wythe of masonry laid in running bond, head joints in successive courses shall be offset by not less than one-fourth the unit length, or the masonry walls shall be reinforced longitudinally as required in Section R608.2.2.

**R608.2.2 Masonry laid in stack bond.** Where unit masonry is laid with less head joint offset than in Section R608.2.1, the minimum area of horizontal reinforcement placed in mortar bed joints or in bond beams spaced not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) apart, shall be 0.0007 times the vertical cross-sectional area of the wall.

## SECTION R609
## GROUTED MASONRY

**R609.1 General.** Grouted multiple-wythe masonry is a form of construction in which the space between the wythes is solidly filled with grout. It is not necessary for the cores of masonry units to be filled with grout. Grouted hollow unit masonry is a form of construction in which certain cells of hollow units are continuously filled with grout.

**R609.1.1 Grout.** Grout shall consist of cementitious material and aggregate in accordance with ASTM C 476 and the proportion specifications of Table R609.1.1. Type M or Type S mortar to which sufficient water has been added to produce pouring consistency can be used as grout.

**R609.1.2 Grouting requirements.** Maximum pour heights and the minimum dimensions of spaces provided for grout placement shall conform to Table R609.1.2. If the work is stopped for one hour or longer, the horizontal construction joints shall be formed by stopping all tiers at the same elevation and with the grout 1 inch (25 mm) below the top.

**TABLE R609.1.1**
**GROUT PROPORTIONS BY VOLUME FOR MASONRY CONSTRUCTION**

| TYPE | PORTLAND CEMENT OR BLENDED CEMENT SLAG CEMENT | HYDRATED LIME OR LIME PUTTY | AGGREGATE MEASURED IN A DAMP, LOOSE CONDITION | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Fine | Coarse |
| Fine | 1 | 0 to 1/10 | $2^1/_4$ to 3 times the sum of the volume of the cementitious materials | — |
| Coarse | 1 | 0 to 1/10 | $2^1/_4$ to 3 times the sum of the volume of the cementitious materials | 1 to 2 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials |

**TABLE R609.1.2**
**GROUT SPACE DIMENSIONS AND POUR HEIGHTS**

| GROUT TYPE | GROUT POUR MAXIMUM HEIGHT (feet) | MINIMUM WIDTH OF GROUT SPACES[a,b] (inches) | MINIMUM GROUT[b,c] SPACE DIMENSIONS FOR GROUTING CELLS OF HOLLOW UNITS (inches x inches) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Fine | 1 | 0.75 | 1.5 × 2 |
| | 5 | 2 | 2 × 3 |
| | 12 | 2.5 | 2.5 × 3 |
| | 24 | 3 | 3 × 3 |
| Coarse | 1 | 1.5 | 1.5 × 3 |
| | 5 | 2 | 2.5 × 3 |
| | 12 | 2.5 | 3 × 3 |
| | 24 | 3 | 3 × 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For grouting between masonry wythes.

b. Grout space dimension is the clear dimension between any masonry protrusion and shall be increased by the horizontal projection of the diameters of the horizontal bars within the cross section of the grout space.

c. Area of vertical reinforcement shall not exceed 6 percent of the area of the grout space.

**R609.1.3 Grout space (cleaning).** Provision shall be made for cleaning grout space. Mortar projections that project more than 0.5 inch (13 mm) into grout space and any other foreign matter shall be removed from grout space prior to inspection and grouting.

**R609.1.4 Grout placement.** Grout shall be a plastic mix suitable for pumping without segregation of the constituents and shall be mixed thoroughly. Grout shall be placed by pumping or by an *approved* alternate method and shall be placed before any initial set occurs and in no case more than $1^1/_2$ hours after water has been added. Grouting shall be done in a continuous pour, in lifts not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm). It shall be consolidated by puddling or mechanical vibrating during placing and reconsolidated after excess moisture has been absorbed but before plasticity is lost.

**R609.1.4.1 Grout pumped through aluminum pipes.** Grout shall not be pumped through aluminum pipes.

**R609.1.5 Cleanouts.** Where required by the *building official*, cleanouts shall be provided as specified in this section. The cleanouts shall be sealed before grouting and after inspection.

**R609.1.5.1 Grouted multiple-wythe masonry.** Cleanouts shall be provided at the bottom course of the exterior wythe at each pour of grout where such pour exceeds 5 feet (1524 mm) in height.

**R609.1.5.2 Grouted hollow unit masonry.** Cleanouts shall be provided at the bottom course of each cell to be grouted at each pour of grout, where such pour exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.

**R609.2 Grouted multiple-wythe masonry.** Grouted multiple-wythe masonry shall conform to all the requirements specified in Section R609.1 and the requirements of this section.

**R609.2.1 Bonding of backup wythe.** Where all interior vertical spaces are filled with grout in multiple-wythe construction, masonry headers shall not be permitted. Metal wall ties shall be used in accordance with Section R608.1.2 to prevent spreading of the wythes and to maintain the vertical alignment of the wall. Wall ties shall be installed in accordance with Section R608.1.2 when the backup wythe in multiple-wythe construction is fully grouted.

**R609.2.2 Grout spaces.** Fine grout shall be used when interior vertical space to receive grout does not exceed 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness. Interior vertical spaces exceeding 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness shall use coarse or fine grout.

**R609.2.3 Grout barriers.** Vertical grout barriers or dams shall be built of *solid masonry* across the grout space the entire height of the wall to control the flow of the grout horizontally. Grout barriers shall not be more than 25 feet (7620 mm) apart. The grouting of any section of a wall between control barriers shall be completed in one day with no interruptions greater than one hour.

**R609.3 Reinforced grouted multiple-wythe masonry.** Reinforced grouted multiple-wythe masonry shall conform to all the requirements specified in Sections R609.1 and R609.2 and the requirements of this section.

**R609.3.1 Construction.** The thickness of grout or mortar between masonry units and reinforcement shall not be less than $^1/_4$ inch (7 mm), except that $^1/_4$-inch (7 mm) bars may be laid in horizontal mortar joints at least $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) thick, and steel wire reinforcement may be laid in horizontal mortar joints at least twice the thickness of the wire diameter.

**R609.4 Reinforced hollow unit masonry.** Reinforced hollow unit masonry shall conform to all the requirements of Section R609.1 and the requirements of this section.

**R609.4.1 Construction.** Requirements for construction shall be as follows:

1. Reinforced hollow-unit masonry shall be built to preserve the unobstructed vertical continuity of the cells to be filled. Walls and cross webs forming cells to be filled shall be full-bedded in mortar to prevent leakage of grout. Head and end joints shall be solidly filled with mortar for a distance in from the face of the wall or unit not less than the thickness of the longitudinal face shells. Bond shall be provided by lapping units in successive vertical courses.
2. Cells to be filled shall have vertical alignment sufficient to maintain a clear, unobstructed continuous vertical cell of dimensions prescribed in Table R609.1.2.
3. Vertical reinforcement shall be held in position at top and bottom and at intervals not exceeding 200 diameters of the reinforcement.
4. Cells containing reinforcement shall be filled solidly with grout. Grout shall be poured in lifts of 8-foot (2438 mm) maximum height. When a total grout pour exceeds 8 feet (2438 mm) in height, the grout shall be placed in lifts not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm) and special inspection during grouting shall be required.
5. Horizontal steel shall be fully embedded by grout in an uninterrupted pour.

## SECTION R610
## GLASS UNIT MASONRY

**R610.1 General.** Panels of glass unit masonry located in load-bearing and nonload-bearing exterior and interior walls shall be constructed in accordance with this section.

**R610.2 Materials.** Hollow glass units shall be partially evacuated and have a minimum average glass face thickness of $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm). The surface of units in contact with mortar shall be treated with a polyvinyl butyral coating or latex-based paint. The use of reclaimed units is prohibited.

**R610.3 Units.** Hollow or solid glass block units shall be standard or thin units.

**R610.3.1 Standard units.** The specified thickness of standard units shall be at least $3^7/_8$ inches (98 mm).

**R610.3.2 Thin units.** The specified thickness of thin units shall be at least $3^1/_8$ inches (79 mm) for hollow units and at least 3 inches (76 mm) for solid units.

**R610.4 Isolated panels.** Isolated panels of glass unit masonry shall conform to the requirements of this section.

**R610.4.1 Exterior standard-unit panels.** The maximum area of each individual standard-unit panel shall be 144 square feet (13.4 m$^2$) when the design wind pressure is 20 psf (958 Pa). The maximum area of such panels subjected to design wind pressures other than 20 psf (958 Pa) shall be in accordance with Figure R610.4.1. The maximum panel dimension between structural supports shall be 25 feet (7620 mm) in width or 20 feet (6096 mm) in height.

**R610.4.2 Exterior thin-unit panels.** The maximum area of each individual thin-unit panel shall be 85 square feet (7.9 m$^2$). The maximum dimension between structural supports shall be 15 feet (4572 mm) in width or 10 feet (3048 mm) in height. Thin units shall not be used in applications where the design wind pressure as stated in Table R301.2(1) exceeds 20 psf (958 Pa).

**R610.4.3 Interior panels.** The maximum area of each individual standard-unit panel shall be 250 square feet (23.2 m$^2$). The maximum area of each thin-unit panel shall be 150 square feet (13.9 m$^2$). The maximum dimension between structural supports shall be 25 feet (7620 mm) in width or 20 feet (6096 mm) in height.

**R610.4.4 Curved panels.** The width of curved panels shall conform to the requirements of Sections R610.4.1, R610.4.2 and R610.4.3, except additional structural supports shall be provided at locations where a curved section joins a straight section, and at inflection points in multicurved walls.

**R610.5 Panel support.** Glass unit masonry panels shall conform to the support requirements of this section.

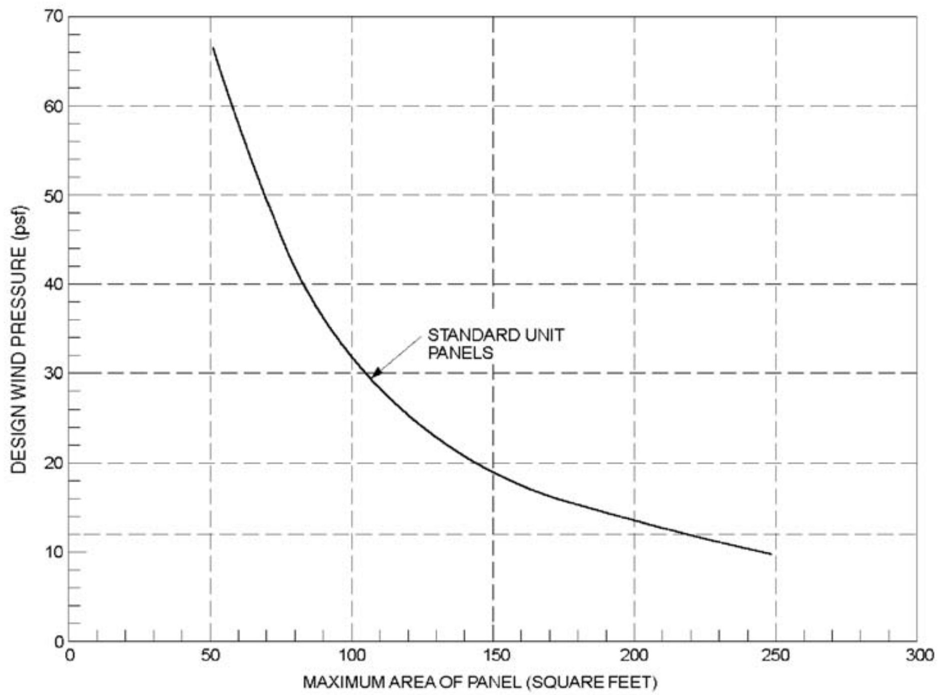
**R610.5.1 Deflection.** The maximum total deflection of structural members that support glass unit masonry shall not exceed $^l/_{600}$.

**R610.5.2 Lateral support.** Glass unit masonry panels shall be laterally supported along the top and sides of the panel. Lateral supports for glass unit masonry panels shall be designed to resist a minimum of 200 pounds per lineal feet (2918 N/m) of panel, or the actual applied loads, whichever is greater. Except for single unit panels, lateral support shall be provided by panel anchors along the top and sides spaced a maximum of 16 inches (406 mm) on center or by channel-type restraints. Single unit panels shall be supported by channel-type restraints.

**Exceptions:**

1. Lateral support is not required at the top of panels that are one unit wide.
2. Lateral support is not required at the sides of panels that are one unit high.

**R610.5.2.1 Panel anchor restraints.** Panel anchors shall be spaced a maximum of 16 inches (406 mm) on center in both jambs and across the head. Panel anchors shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) and shall be provided with two fasteners so as to resist the loads specified in Section R610.5.2.




For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m$^2$, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**FIGURE R610.4.1**
**GLASS UNIT MASONRY DESIGN WIND LOAD RESISTANCE**

**R610.5.2.2 Channel-type restraints.** Glass unit masonry panels shall be recessed at least 1 inch (25 mm) within channels and chases. Channel-type restraints shall be oversized to accommodate expansion material in the opening, packing and sealant between the framing restraints, and the glass unit masonry perimeter units.

**R610.6 Sills.** Before bedding of glass units, the sill area shall be covered with a water base asphaltic emulsion coating. The coating shall be a minimum of $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) thick.

**R610.7 Expansion joints.** Glass unit masonry panels shall be provided with expansion joints along the top and sides at all structural supports. Expansion joints shall be a minimum of $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm) in thickness and shall have sufficient thickness to accommodate displacements of the supporting structure. Expansion joints shall be entirely free of mortar and other debris and shall be filled with resilient material.

**R610.8 Mortar.** Glass unit masonry shall be laid with Type S or N mortar. Mortar shall not be retempered after initial set. Mortar unused within 1$^1/_2$ hours after initial mixing shall be discarded.

**R610.9 Reinforcement.** Glass unit masonry panels shall have horizontal joint reinforcement spaced a maximum of 16 inches (406 mm) on center located in the mortar bed joint. Horizontal joint reinforcement shall extend the entire length of the panel but shall not extend across expansion joints. Longitudinal wires shall be lapped a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) at splices. Joint reinforcement shall be placed in the bed joint immediately below and above openings in the panel. The reinforcement shall have not less than two parallel longitudinal wires of size W1.7 or greater, and have welded cross wires of size W1.7 or greater.

**R610.10 Placement.** Glass units shall be placed so head and bed joints are filled solidly. Mortar shall not be furrowed. Head and bed joints of glass unit masonry shall be $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) thick, except that vertical joint thickness of radial panels shall not be less than $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) or greater than $^5/_8$ inch (16 mm). The bed joint thickness tolerance shall be minus $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) and plus $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm). The head joint thickness tolerance shall be plus or minus $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm).

## SECTION R611
## EXTERIOR CONCRETE WALL CONSTRUCTION

**R611.1 General.** Exterior concrete walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section or in accordance with the provisions of PCA 100 or ACI 318. When PCA 100, ACI 318 or the provisions of this section are used to design concrete walls, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the jurisdiction having authority.

**R611.1.1 Interior construction.** These provisions are based on the assumption that interior walls and partitions, both load-bearing and nonload-bearing, floors and roof/ceiling assemblies are constructed of *light-framed construction* complying with the limitations of this code and the additional limitations of Section R611.2. Design and construction of light-framed assemblies shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of this code. Where second-story exterior walls are of *light-framed construction*, they shall be designed and constructed as required by this code.

Aspects of concrete construction not specifically addressed by this code, including interior concrete walls, shall comply with ACI 318.

**R611.1.2 Other concrete walls.** Exterior concrete walls constructed in accordance with this code shall comply with the shapes and minimum concrete cross-sectional dimensions of Table R611.3. Other types of forming systems resulting in concrete walls not in compliance with this section shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

**R611.2 Applicability limits.** The provisions of this section shall apply to the construction of exterior concrete walls for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in plan dimensions, floors with clear spans not greater than 32 feet (9754 mm) and roofs with clear spans not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm). Buildings shall not exceed 35 feet (10 668 mm) in mean roof height or two stories in height above-grade. Floor/ceiling dead loads shall not exceed 10 pounds per square foot (479 Pa), roof/ceiling dead loads shall not exceed 15 pounds per square foot (718 Pa) and *attic* live loads shall not exceed 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa). Roof overhangs shall not exceed 2 feet (610 mm) of horizontal projection beyond the exterior wall and the dead load of the overhangs shall not exceed 8 pounds per square foot (383 Pa).

Walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to buildings subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 130 miles per hour (58 m/s) Exposure B, 110 miles per hour (49 m/s) Exposure C and 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) Exposure D. Walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to detached one- and two-family *dwellings* and townhouses assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, and detached one- and two-family *dwellings* assigned to Seismic Design Category C.

Buildings that are not within the scope of this section shall be designed in accordance with PCA 100 or ACI 318.

**R611.3 Concrete wall systems.** Concrete walls constructed in accordance with these provisions shall comply with the shapes and minimum concrete cross-sectional dimensions of Table R611.3.

**R611.3.1 Flat wall systems.** Flat concrete wall systems shall comply with Table R611.3 and Figure R611.3(1) and have a minimum nominal thickness of 4 inches (102 mm).

**R611.3.2 Waffle-grid wall systems.** Waffle-grid wall systems shall comply with Table R611.3 and Figure R611.3(2). and shall have a minimum nominal thickness of 6 inches (152 mm) for the horizontal and vertical concrete members (cores). The core and web dimensions shall comply with Table R611. 3. The maximum weight of waffle-grid walls shall comply with Table R611.3.

**R611.3.3 Screen-grid wall systems.** Screen-grid wall systems shall comply with Table R611.3 and Figure R611.3(3) and shall have a minimum nominal thickness of 6 inches (152 mm) for the horizontal and vertical concrete members (cores). The core dimensions shall comply with Table R611.3. The maximum weight of screen-grid walls shall comply with Table R611.3.

**TABLE R611.3**
**DIMENSIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR WALLS[a,b]**

| WALL TYPE AND NOMINAL THICKNESS | MAXIMUM WALL WEIGHT[c] (psf) | MINIMUM WIDTH, W, OF VERTICAL CORES (inches) | MINIMUM THICKNESS, T, OF VERTICAL CORES (inches) | MAXIMUM SPACING OF VERTICAL CORES (inches) | MAXIMUM SPACING OF HORIZONTAL CORES (inches) | MINIMUM WEB THICKNESS (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4″ Flat[d] | 50 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 6″ Flat[d] | 75 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 8″ Flat[d] | 100 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 10″ Flat[d] | 125 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 6″ Waffle-grid | 56 | 8[e] | 5.5[e] | 12 | 16 | 2 |
| 8″ Waffle-grid | 76 | 8[f] | 8[f] | 12 | 16 | 2 |
| 6″ Screen-grid | 53 | 6.25[g] | 6.25[g] | 12 | 12 | N/A |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per cubic foot = 2402.77 kg/m$^3$, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$.

a. Width “W,” thickness “T,” spacing and web thickness, refer to Figures R611.3(2) and R611.3(3).

b. N/A indicates not applicable.

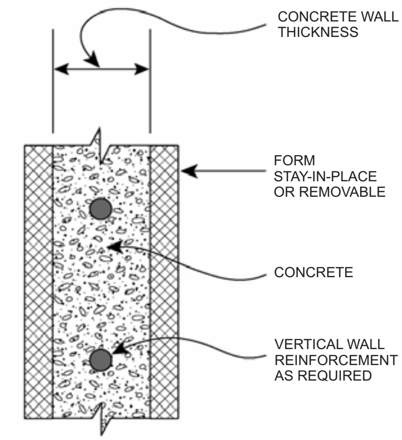
c. Wall weight is based on a unit weight of concrete of 150 pcf. For flat walls the weight is based on the nominal thickness. The tabulated values do not include any allowance for interior and exterior finishes.

d. Nominal wall thickness. The actual as-built thickness of a flat wall shall not be more than $^1/_2$-inch less or more than $^1/_4$-inch more than the nominal dimension indicated.

e. Vertical core is assumed to be elliptical-shaped. Another shape core is permitted provided the minimum thickness is 5 inches, the moment of inertia, *I*, about the centerline of the wall (ignoring the web) is not less than 65 in$^4$, and the area, *A*, is not less than 31.25 in$^2$. The width used to calculate *A* and *I* shall not exceed 8 inches.

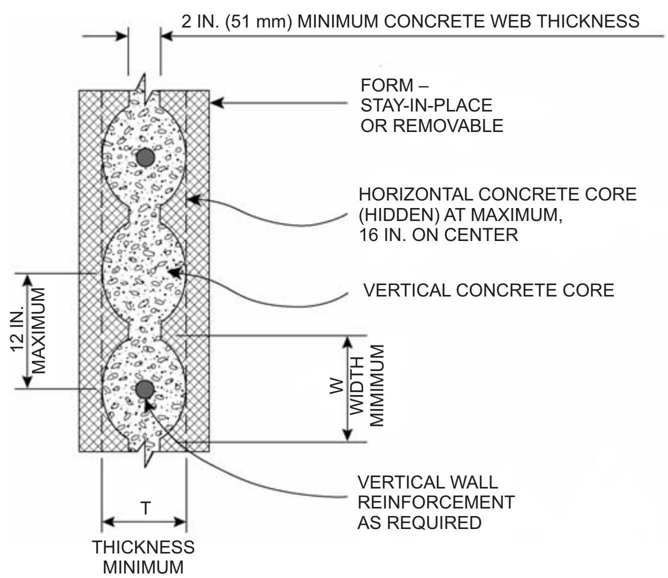
f. Vertical core is assumed to be circular. Another shape core is permitted provided the minimum thickness is 7 inches, the moment of inertia, *I*, about the centerline of the wall (ignoring the web) is not less than 200 in$^4$, and the area, *A*, is not less than 49 in$^2$. The width used to calculate *A* and *I* shall not exceed 8 inches.

g. Vertical core is assumed to be circular. Another shape core is permitted provided the minimum thickness is 5.5 inches, the moment of inertia, *I*, about the centerline of the wall is not less than 76 in$^4$, and the area, *A*, is not less than 30.25 in$^2$. The width used to calculate *A* and *I* shall not exceed 6.25 inches.




PLAN VIEW
SEE TABLE R611.3 FOR MINIMUM DIMENSIONS

**FIGURE R611.3(1)**
**FLAT WALL SYSTEM**




PLAN VIEW

SEE TABLE R611.3 FOR MINIMUM DIMENSIONS

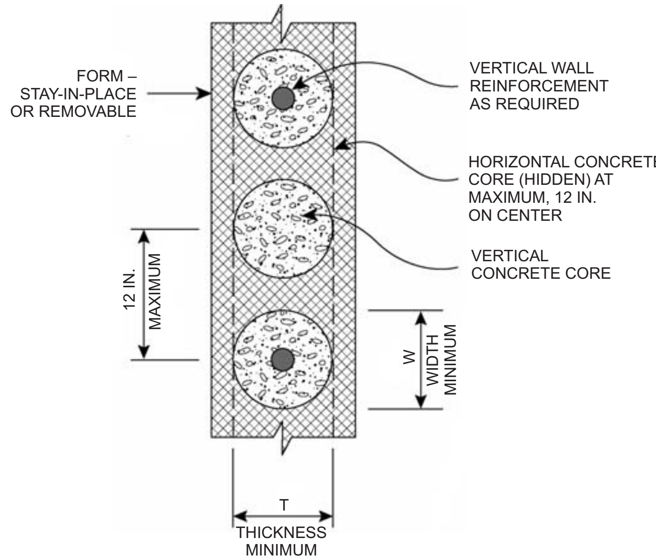
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R611.3(2)**
**WAFFLE-GRID WALL SYSTEM**

**R611.4 Stay-in-place forms.** Stay-in-place concrete forms shall comply with this section.

**R611.4.1 Surface burning characteristics.** The flame spread index and smoke-developed index of forming material, other than foam plastic, left exposed on the interior shall comply with Section R302.9. The surface burning characteristics of foam plastic used in insulating concrete forms shall comply with Section R316.3.

**R611.4.2 Interior covering.** Stay-in-place forms constructed of rigid foam plastic shall be protected on the interior of the building as required by Sections R316.4 and R702.3.4. Where gypsum board is used to protect the foam plastic, it shall be installed with a mechanical fastening system. Use of adhesives is permitted in addition to mechanical fasteners.




PLAN VIEW
SEE TABLE R611.3 FOR MINIMUM DIMENSIONS.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R611.3(3)**
**SCREEN-GRID WALL SYSTEM**

**R611.4.3 Exterior wall covering.** Stay-in-place forms constructed of rigid foam plastics shall be protected from sunlight and physical damage by the application of an *approved* exterior wall covering complying with this code. Exterior surfaces of other stay-in-place forming systems shall be protected in accordance with this code.

Requirements for installation of masonry veneer, stucco and other finishes on the exterior of concrete walls and other construction details not covered in this section shall comply with the requirements of this code.

**R611.5 Materials.** Materials used in the construction of concrete walls shall comply with this section.

**R611.5.1 Concrete and materials for concrete.** Materials used in concrete, and the concrete itself, shall conform to requirements of this section, or ACI 318.

**R611.5.1.1 Concrete mixing and delivery.** Mixing and delivery of concrete shall comply with ASTM C 94 or ASTM C 685.

**R611.5.1.2 Maximum aggregate size.** The nominal maximum size of coarse aggregate shall not exceed one-fifth the narrowest distance between sides of forms, or three-fourths the clear spacing between reinforcing bars or between a bar and the side of the form.

**Exception:** When *approved*, these limitations shall not apply where removable forms are used and workability and methods of consolidation permit concrete to be placed without honeycombs or voids.

**R611.5.1.3 Proportioning and slump of concrete.** Proportions of materials for concrete shall be established to provide workability and consistency to permit concrete to be worked readily into forms and around reinforcement under conditions of placement to be employed, without segregation or excessive bleeding. Slump of concrete placed in removable forms shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm).

**Exception:** When *approved*, the slump is permitted to exceed 6 inches (152 mm) for concrete mixtures that are resistant to segregation, and are in accordance with the form manufacturer's recommendations.

Slump of concrete placed in stay-in-place forms shall exceed 6 inches (152 mm). Slump of concrete shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 143.

**R611.5.1.4 Compressive strength.** The minimum specified compressive strength of concrete, $f'_c$, shall comply with Section R402.2 and shall be not less than 2,500 pounds per square inch (17.2 MPa) at 28 days.

**R611.5.1.5 Consolidation of concrete.** Concrete shall be consolidated by suitable means during placement and shall be worked around embedded items and reinforcement and into corners of forms. Where stay-in-place forms are used, concrete shall be consolidated by internal vibration.

**Exception:** When *approved*, self-consolidating concrete mixtures with slumps equal to or greater than 8 inches (203 mm) that are specifically designed for placement without internal vibration need not be internally vibrated.

**R611.5.2 Steel reinforcement and anchor bolts.**

**R611.5.2.1 Steel reinforcement.** Steel reinforcement shall comply with ASTM A 615, A 706, or A 996. ASTM A 996 bars produced from rail steel shall be Type R.

**R611.5.2.2 Anchor bolts.** Anchor bolts for use with connection details in accordance with Figures R611.9(1) through R611.9(12) shall be bolts with heads complying with ASTM A 307 or ASTM F 1554. ASTM A 307 bolts shall be Grade A (i.e., with heads). ASTM F 1554 bolts shall be Grade 36 minimum. Instead of bolts with heads, it is permissible to use rods with threads on both ends fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36. The threaded end of the rod to be embedded in the concrete shall be provided with a hex or square nut.

**R611.5.2.3 Sheet steel angles and tension tie straps.** Angles and tension tie straps for use with connection details in accordance with Figures R611.9(1) through R611.9(12) shall be fabricated from sheet steel complying with ASTM A 653 SS, ASTM A 792 SS, or ASTM A 875 SS. The steel shall be minimum Grade 33 unless a higher grade is required by the applicable figure.

**R611.5.3 Form materials and form ties.** Forms shall be made of wood, steel, aluminum, plastic, a composite of cement and foam insulation, a composite of cement and wood chips, or other *approved* material suitable for supporting and containing concrete. Forms shall provide sufficient strength to contain concrete during the concrete placement operation.

Form ties shall be steel, solid plastic, foam plastic, a composite of cement and wood chips, a composite of cement and foam plastic, or other suitable material capable of resisting the forces created by fluid pressure of fresh concrete.

**R611.5.4 Reinforcement installation details.**

**R611.5.4.1 Support and cover.** Reinforcement shall be secured in the proper location in the forms with tie wire or other bar support system such that displacement will not occur during the concrete placement operation. Steel reinforcement in concrete cast against the earth shall have a minimum cover of 3 inches (76 mm). Minimum cover for reinforcement in concrete cast in removable forms that will be exposed to the earth or weather shall be $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and 2 inches (50 mm) for No. 6 bars and larger. For concrete cast in removable forms that will not be exposed to the earth or weather, and for concrete cast in stay-in-place forms, minimum cover shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm). The minus tolerance for cover shall not exceed the smaller of one-third the required cover and $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm). See Section R611.5.4.4 for cover requirements for hooks of bars developed in tension.

**R611.5.4.2 Location of reinforcement in walls.** For location of reinforcement in foundation walls and above-grade walls, see Sections R404.1.2.3.7.2 and R611.6.5, respectively.

**R611.5.4.3 Lap splices.** Vertical and horizontal wall reinforcement required by Sections R611.6 and R611.7 shall be the longest lengths practical. Where splices are necessary in reinforcement, the length of lap splices shall be in accordance with Table R611.5.4(1) and Figure R611.5.4 (1). The maximum gap between noncontact parallel bars at a lap splice shall not exceed the smaller of one-fifth the required lap length and 6 inches (152 mm). See Figure R611.5.4(1).

**R611.5.4.4 Development of bars in tension.** Where bars are required to be developed in tension by other provisions of this code, development lengths and cover for hooks and bar extensions shall comply with Table R611.5.4(1) and Figure R611.5.4 (2). The development lengths shown in Table R611.5.4(1) also apply to bundled bars in lintels installed in accordance with Section R611.8.2.2.

**R611.5.4.5 Standard hooks.** Where reinforcement is required by this code to terminate with a standard hook, the hook shall comply with Figure R611.5.4(3).

**R611.5.4.6 Webs of waffle-grid walls.** Reinforcement, including stirrups, shall not be placed in webs of waffle-grid walls, including lintels. Webs are permitted to have form ties.

**R611.5.4.7 Alternate grade of reinforcement and spacing.** Where tables in Sections R404.1.2 and R611.6 specify vertical wall reinforcement based on minimum bar size and maximum spacing, which are based on Grade 60 (420 MPa) steel reinforcement, different size bars and/or bars made from a different grade of steel are permitted provided an equivalent area of steel per linear foot of wall is provided. Use of Table R611.5.4(2) is permitted to determine the maximum bar spacing for different bar sizes than specified in the tables and/or bars made from a different grade of steel. Bars shall not be spaced less than one-half the wall thickness, or more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center.

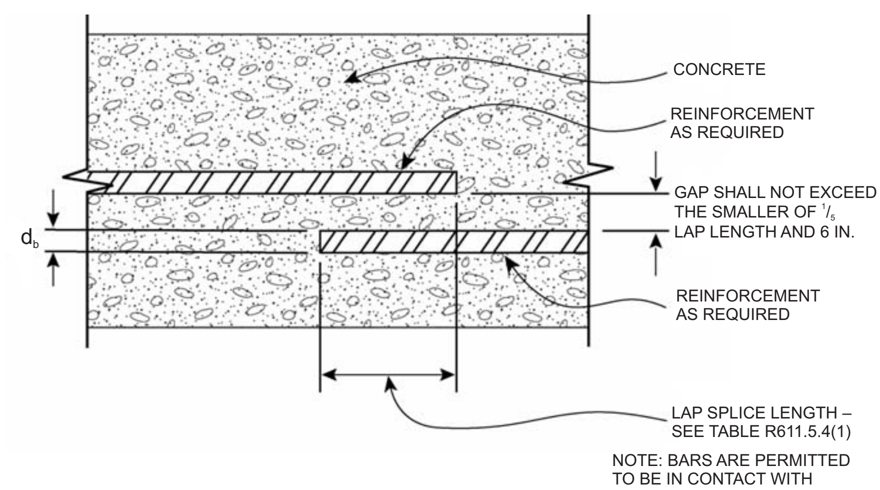
**R611.5.5 Construction joints in walls.** Construction joints shall be made and located to not impair the strength of the wall. Construction joints in plain concrete walls, including walls required to have not less than No. 4 bars at 48 inches (1219 mm) on center by Section R611.6, shall be located at points of lateral support, and a minimum of one No. 4 bar shall extend across the construction joint at a spacing not to exceed 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Construction joint reinforcement shall have a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) embedment on both sides of the joint. Construction joints in reinforced concrete walls shall be located in the middle third of the span between lateral supports, or located and constructed as required for joints in plain concrete walls.

**Exception:** Vertical wall reinforcement required by this code is permitted to be used in lieu of construction joint reinforcement, provided the spacing does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), or the combination of wall reinforcement and No. 4 bars described above does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm).

**TABLE R611.5.4(1)**
**LAP SPLICE AND TENSION DEVELOPMENT LENGTHS**

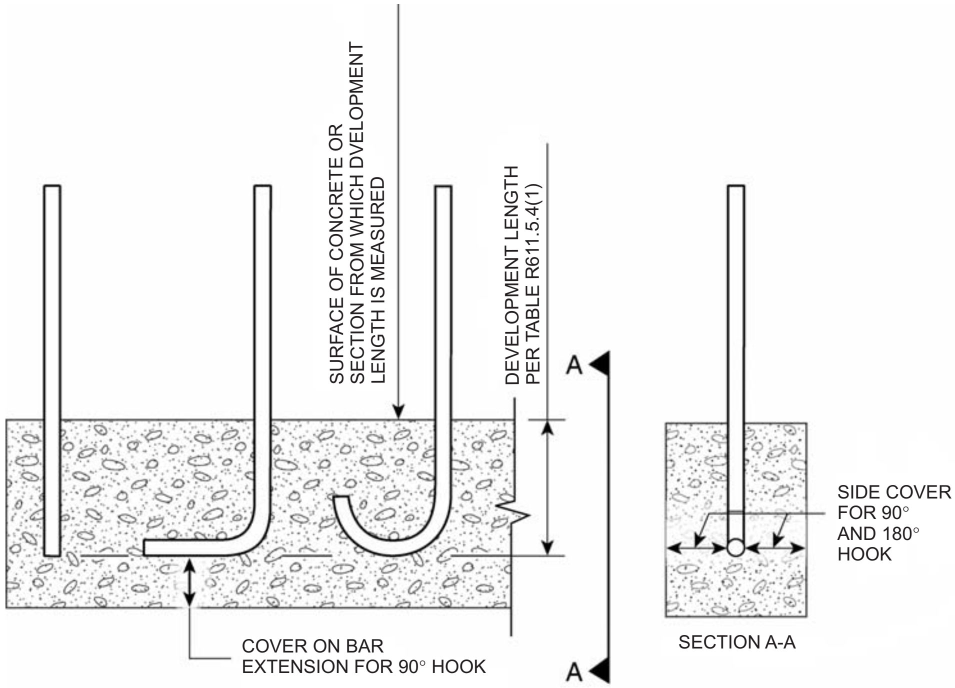
| | BAR SIZE NO. | YIELD STRENGTH OF STEEL, $f_y$ - psi (MPa) 40,000 (280) | 60,000 (420) |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Splice length or tension development length (inches) | |
| Lap splice length–tension | 4 | 20 | 30 |
| | 5 | 25 | 38 |
| | 6 | 30 | 45 |
| Tension development length for straight bar | 4 | 15 | 23 |
| | 5 | 19 | 28 |
| | 6 | 23 | 34 |
| Tension development length for: | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| a. 90-degree and 180-degree standard hooks with not less than $2^1/_2$ inches of side cover perpendicular to plane of hook, and | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| b. 90-degree standard hooks with not less than 2 inches of cover on the bar extension beyond the hook. | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| Tension development length for bar with 90-degree or 180-degree standard hook having less cover than required above. | 4 | 8 | 12 |
| | 5 | 10 | 15 |
| | 6 | 12 | 18 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.



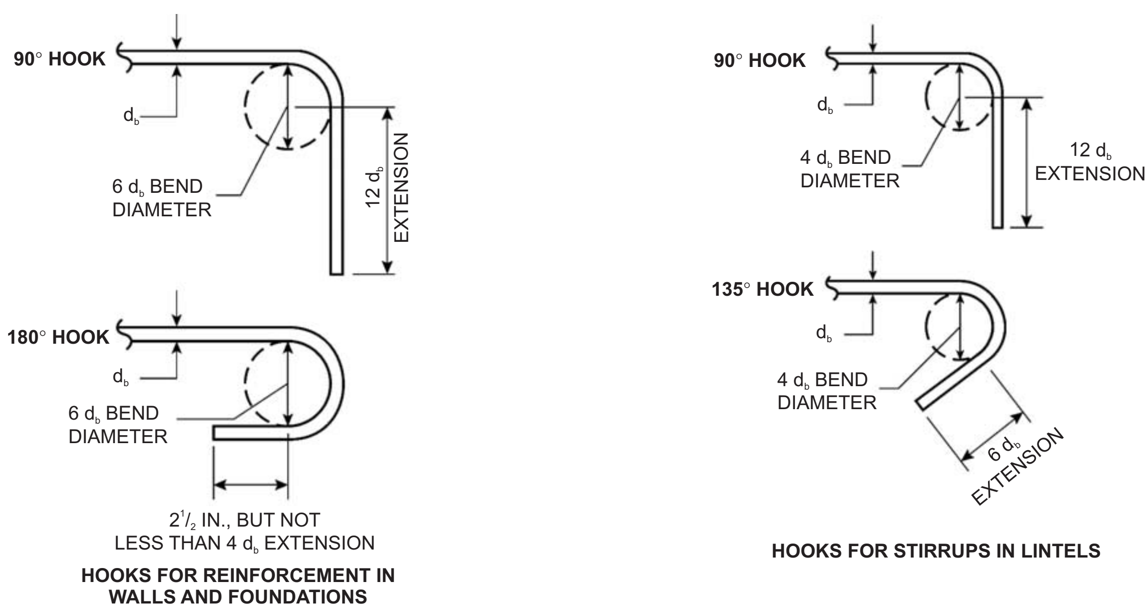

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R611.5.4(1)**
**LAP SPLICES**




For SI: 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**FIGURE R611.5.4(2)**
**DEVELOPMENT LENGTH AND COVER FOR HOOKS AND BAR EXTENSION**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**FIGURE R611.5.4(3)**
**STANDARD HOOKS**

**TABLE R611.5.4(2)**
**MAXIMUM SPACING FOR ALTERNATE BAR SIZE AND/OR ALTERNATE GRADE OF STEEL[a, b, c]**

| BAR SPACING FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION R611.6 (inches) | BAR SIZE FROM APPLICABLE TABLE IN SECTION R611.6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | #4 | | | | | #5 | | | | | #6 | | | | |
| | Alternate bar size and/or alternate grade of steel desired | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | | Grade 60 | | Grade 40 | | |
| | #5 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #4 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #4 | #5 | #4 | #5 | #6 |
| | Maximum spacing for alternate bar size and/or alternate grade of steel (inches) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 12 | 18 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 5 | 11 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 2 | 4 | 5 |
| 9 | 14 | 20 | 6 | 9 | 13 | 6 | 13 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 6 |
| 10 | 16 | 22 | 7 | 10 | 15 | 6 | 14 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| 11 | 17 | 24 | 7 | 11 | 16 | 7 | 16 | 5 | 7 | 10 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| 12 | 19 | 26 | 8 | 12 | 18 | 8 | 17 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 5 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 8 |
| 13 | 20 | 29 | 9 | 13 | 19 | 8 | 18 | 6 | 9 | 12 | 6 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| 14 | 22 | 31 | 9 | 14 | 21 | 9 | 20 | 6 | 9 | 13 | 6 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 9 |
| 15 | 23 | 33 | 10 | 16 | 22 | 10 | 21 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 7 | 11 | 5 | 7 | 10 |
| 16 | 25 | 35 | 11 | 17 | 23 | 10 | 23 | 7 | 11 | 15 | 7 | 11 | 5 | 8 | 11 |
| 17 | 26 | 37 | 11 | 18 | 25 | 11 | 24 | 7 | 11 | 16 | 8 | 12 | 5 | 8 | 11 |
| 18 | 28 | 40 | 12 | 19 | 26 | 12 | 26 | 8 | 12 | 17 | 8 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 12 |
| 19 | 29 | 42 | 13 | 20 | 28 | 12 | 27 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 9 | 13 | 6 | 9 | 13 |
| 20 | 31 | 44 | 13 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 28 | 9 | 13 | 19 | 9 | 14 | 6 | 9 | 13 |
| 21 | 33 | 46 | 14 | 22 | 31 | 14 | 30 | 9 | 14 | 20 | 10 | 15 | 6 | 10 | 14 |
| 22 | 34 | 48 | 15 | 23 | 32 | 14 | 31 | 9 | 15 | 21 | 10 | 16 | 7 | 10 | 15 |
| 23 | 36 | 48 | 15 | 24 | 34 | 15 | 33 | 10 | 15 | 22 | 10 | 16 | 7 | 11 | 15 |
| 24 | 37 | 48 | 16 | 25 | 35 | 15 | 34 | 10 | 16 | 23 | 11 | 17 | 7 | 11 | 16 |
| 25 | 39 | 48 | 17 | 26 | 37 | 16 | 35 | 11 | 17 | 24 | 11 | 18 | 8 | 12 | 17 |
| 26 | 40 | 48 | 17 | 27 | 38 | 17 | 37 | 11 | 17 | 25 | 12 | 18 | 8 | 12 | 17 |
| 27 | 42 | 48 | 18 | 28 | 40 | 17 | 38 | 12 | 18 | 26 | 12 | 19 | 8 | 13 | 18 |
| 28 | 43 | 48 | 19 | 29 | 41 | 18 | 40 | 12 | 19 | 26 | 13 | 20 | 8 | 13 | 19 |
| 29 | 45 | 48 | 19 | 30 | 43 | 19 | 41 | 12 | 19 | 27 | 13 | 20 | 9 | 14 | 19 |
| 30 | 47 | 48 | 20 | 31 | 44 | 19 | 43 | 13 | 20 | 28 | 14 | 21 | 9 | 14 | 20 |
| 31 | 48 | 48 | 21 | 32 | 45 | 20 | 44 | 13 | 21 | 29 | 14 | 22 | 9 | 15 | 21 |
| 32 | 48 | 48 | 21 | 33 | 47 | 21 | 45 | 14 | 21 | 30 | 15 | 23 | 10 | 15 | 21 |
| 33 | 48 | 48 | 22 | 34 | 48 | 21 | 47 | 14 | 22 | 31 | 15 | 23 | 10 | 16 | 22 |
| 34 | 48 | 48 | 23 | 35 | 48 | 22 | 48 | 15 | 23 | 32 | 15 | 24 | 10 | 16 | 23 |
| 35 | 48 | 48 | 23 | 36 | 48 | 23 | 48 | 15 | 23 | 33 | 16 | 25 | 11 | 16 | 23 |
| 36 | 48 | 48 | 24 | 37 | 48 | 23 | 48 | 15 | 24 | 34 | 16 | 25 | 11 | 17 | 24 |
| 37 | 48 | 48 | 25 | 38 | 48 | 24 | 48 | 16 | 25 | 35 | 17 | 26 | 11 | 17 | 25 |
| 38 | 48 | 48 | 25 | 39 | 48 | 25 | 48 | 16 | 25 | 36 | 17 | 27 | 12 | 18 | 25 |
| 39 | 48 | 48 | 26 | 40 | 48 | 25 | 48 | 17 | 26 | 37 | 18 | 27 | 12 | 18 | 26 |
| 40 | 48 | 48 | 27 | 41 | 48 | 26 | 48 | 17 | 27 | 38 | 18 | 28 | 12 | 19 | 27 |
| 41 | 48 | 48 | 27 | 42 | 48 | 26 | 48 | 18 | 27 | 39 | 19 | 29 | 12 | 19 | 27 |
| 42 | 48 | 48 | 28 | 43 | 48 | 27 | 48 | 18 | 28 | 40 | 19 | 30 | 13 | 20 | 28 |
| 43 | 48 | 48 | 29 | 44 | 48 | 28 | 48 | 18 | 29 | 41 | 20 | 30 | 13 | 20 | 29 |
| 44 | 48 | 48 | 29 | 45 | 48 | 28 | 48 | 19 | 29 | 42 | 20 | 31 | 13 | 21 | 29 |
| 45 | 48 | 48 | 30 | 47 | 48 | 29 | 48 | 19 | 30 | 43 | 20 | 32 | 14 | 21 | 30 |
| 46 | 48 | 48 | 31 | 48 | 48 | 30 | 48 | 20 | 31 | 44 | 21 | 32 | 14 | 22 | 31 |
| 47 | 48 | 48 | 31 | 48 | 48 | 30 | 48 | 20 | 31 | 44 | 21 | 33 | 14 | 22 | 31 |
| 48 | 48 | 48 | 32 | 48 | 48 | 31 | 48 | 21 | 32 | 45 | 22 | 34 | 15 | 23 | 32 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. This table is for use with tables in Section R611.6 that specify the minimum bar size and maximum spacing of vertical wall reinforcement for foundation walls and above-grade walls. Reinforcement specified in tables in Section R611.6 is based on Grade 60 (420 MPa) steel reinforcement.

b. Bar spacing shall not exceed 48 inches on center and shall not be less than one-half the nominal wall thickness.

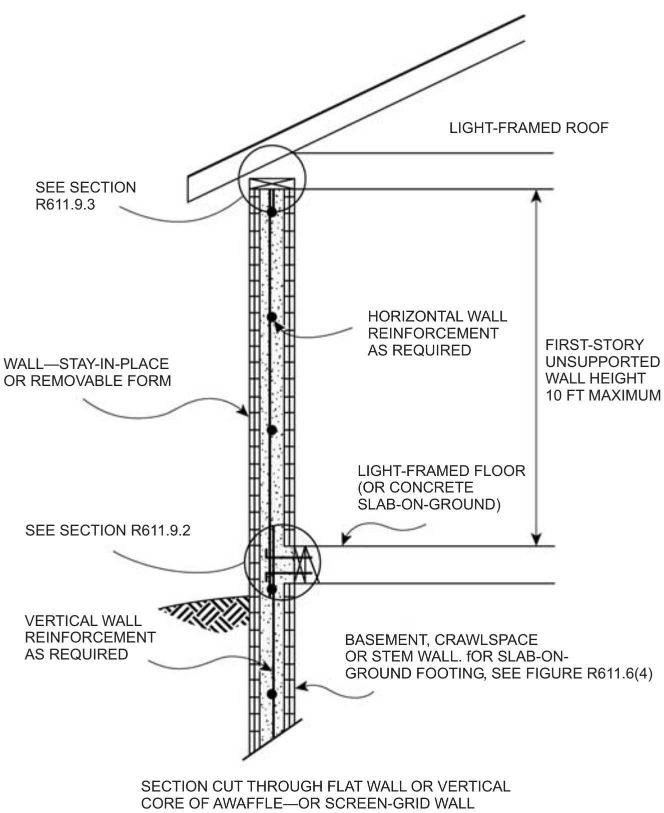
c. For Grade 50 (350 MPa) steel bars (ASTM A 996, Type R), use spacing for Grade 40 (280 MPa) bars or interpolate between Grade 40 (280 MPa) and Grade 60 (420 MPa).

**R611.6 Above-grade wall requirements.**

**R611.6.1 General.** The minimum thickness of load-bearing and nonload-bearing above-grade walls and reinforcement shall be as set forth in the appropriate table in this section based on the type of wall form to be used. Where the wall or building is not within the limitations of Section R611.2, design is required by the tables in this section, or the wall is not within the scope of the tables in this section, the wall shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

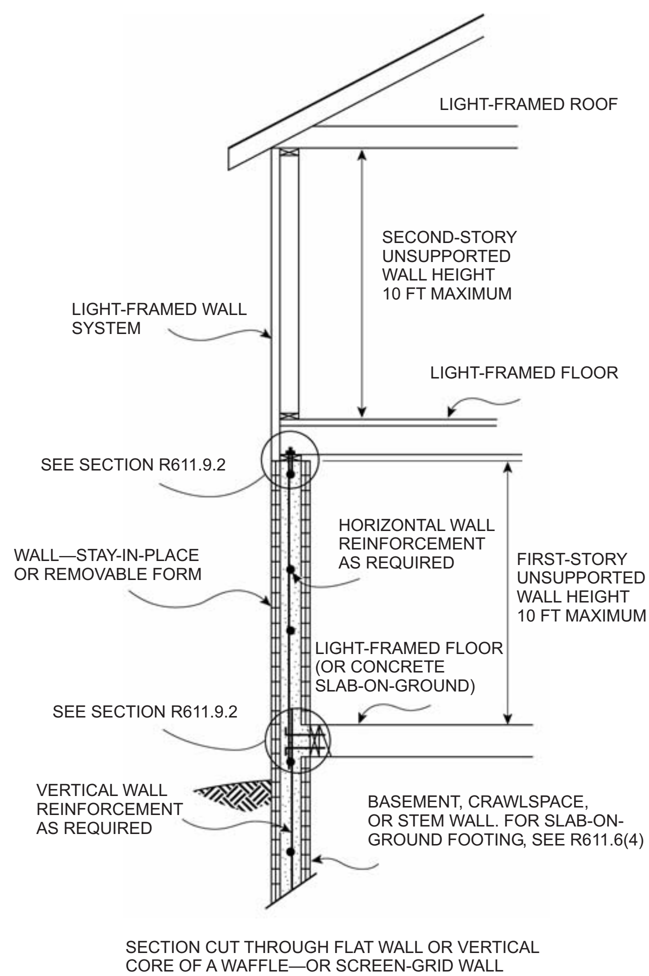
Above-grade concrete walls shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure R611.6(1), R611.6(2), R611.6(3), or R611.6(4). Above-grade concrete walls that are continuous with stem walls and not laterally supported by the slab-on-ground shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section. Concrete walls shall be supported on continuous foundation walls or slabs-on-ground that are monolithic with the footing in accordance with Section R403. The minimum length of solid wall without openings shall be in accordance with Section R611.7. Reinforcement around openings, including lintels, shall be in accordance with Section R611.8. Lateral support for above-grade walls in the out-of-plane direction shall be provided by connections to the floor framing system, if applicable, and to ceiling and roof framing systems in accordance with Section R611.9. The wall thickness shall be equal to or greater than the thickness of the wall in the *story* above.

**R611.6.2 Wall reinforcement for wind.** Vertical wall reinforcement for resistance to out-of-plane wind forces shall be determined from Table R611.6(1), R611.6(2), R611.6(3) or R611.6(4). Also, see Sections R611.7.2.2.2 and R611.7.2.2.3. There shall be a vertical bar at all corners of exterior walls. Unless more horizontal reinforcement is required by Section R611.7.2.2.1, the minimum horizontal reinforcement shall be four No. 4 bars [Grade 40 (280 MPa)] placed as follows: top bar within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the wall, bottom bar within 12 inches (305 mm) of the finish floor, and one bar each at approximately one-third and two-thirds of the wall height.



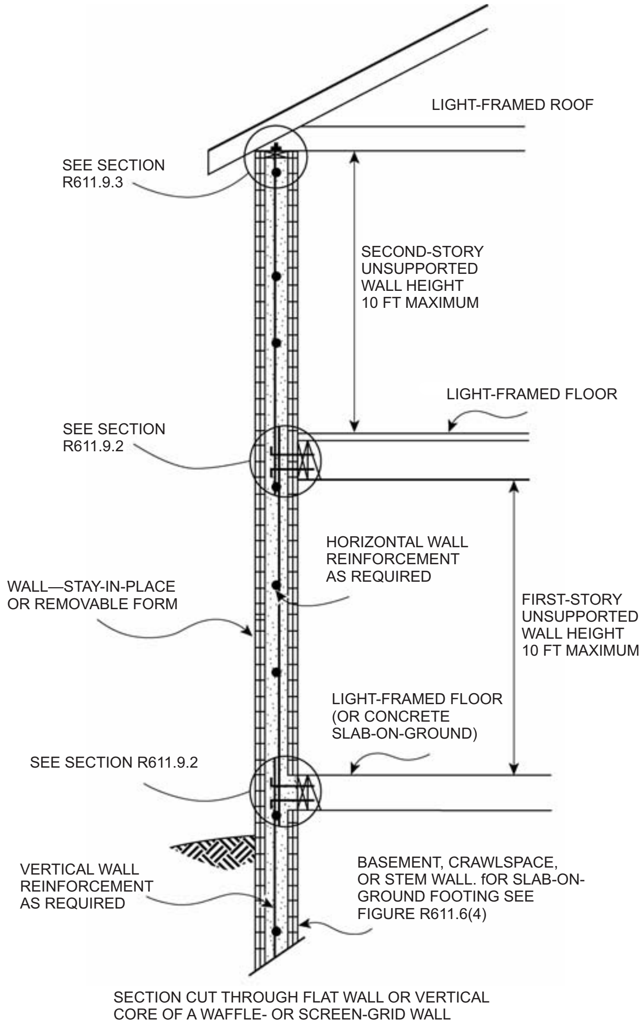

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R611.6(1)**
**ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE**
**WALL CONSTRUCTION ONE STORY**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R611.6(2)**
**ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE**
**WALL CONSTRUCTION CONCRETE FIRST-STORY AND**
**LIGHT-FRAMED SECOND-STORY**

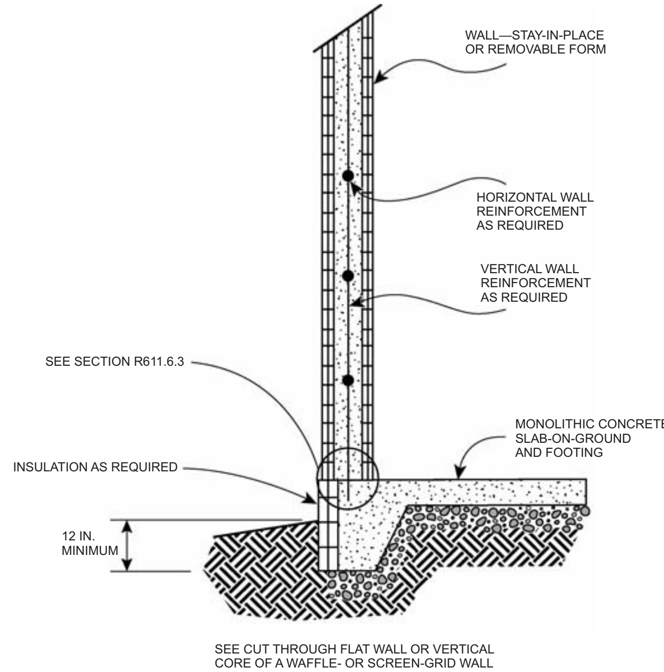



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R611.6(3)**
**ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE WALL CONSTRUCTION TWO-STORY**

**R611.6.3 Continuity of wall reinforcement between stories.** Vertical reinforcement required by this section shall be continuous between elements providing lateral support for the wall. Reinforcement in the wall of the *story* above shall be continuous with the reinforcement in the wall of the *story* below, or the foundation wall, if applicable. Lap splices, where required, shall comply with Section R611.5.4.3 and Figure R611.5.4(1). Where the above-grade wall is supported by a monolithic slab-on-ground and footing, dowel bars with a size and spacing to match the vertical above-grade concrete wall reinforcement shall be embedded in the monolithic slab-on-ground and footing the distance required to develop the dowel bar in tension in accordance with Section R611.5.4.4 and Figure R611.5.4(2) and lap-spliced with the above-grade wall reinforcement in accordance with Section R611.5.4.3 and Figure R611.5.4(1).

**Exception:** Where reinforcement in the wall above cannot be made continuous with the reinforcement in the wall




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R611.6(4)**
**ABOVE-GRADE CONCRETE WALL SUPPORTED ON MONOLITHIC SLAB-ON GROUND FOOTING**

below, the bottom of the reinforcement in the wall above shall be terminated in accordance with one of the following:

1. Extend below the top of the floor the distance required to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section R611.5.4.4 and Figure R611.5.4(2).
2. Lap-spliced in accordance with Section R611.5.4.3 and Figure R611.5.4(1) with a dowel bar that extends into the wall below the distance required to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section R611.5.4.4 and Figure R611.5.4(2).

Where a construction joint in the wall is located below the level of the floor and less than the distance required to develop the bar in tension, the distance required to develop the bar in tension shall be measured from the top of the concrete below the joint. See Section R611.5.5.

**R611.6.4 Termination of reinforcement.** Where indicated in items 1 through 3 below, vertical wall reinforcement in the top-most *story* with concrete walls shall be terminated with a 90-degree (1.57 rad) standard hook complying with Section R611.5.4.5 and Figure R611.5.4(3).

1. Vertical bars adjacent to door and window openings required by Section R611.8.1.2.
2. Vertical bars at the ends of required solid wall segments. See Section R611.7.2.2.2.
3. Vertical bars (other than end bars – see item 2) used as shear reinforcement in required solid wall segments

where the reduction factor for design strength, $R_3$, used is based on the wall having horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement. See Section R611.7.2.2.3.

The bar extension of the hook shall be oriented parallel to the horizontal wall reinforcement and be within 4 inches (102 mm) of the top of the wall.

Horizontal reinforcement shall be continuous around the building corners by bending one of the bars and lap-splicing it with the bar in the other wall in accordance with Section R611.5.4.3 and Figure R611.5.4(1).

**Exception:** In lieu of bending horizontal reinforcement at corners, separate bent reinforcing bars shall be permitted provided that the bent bar is lap-spliced with the horizontal reinforcement in both walls in accordance with Section R611.5.4.3 and Figure R611.5.4(1).

In required solid wall segments where the reduction factor for design strength, $R_3$, is based on the wall having horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement in accordance with Section R611.7.2.2.1, horizontal wall reinforcement shall be terminated with a standard hook complying with Section R611.5.4.5 and Figure R611.5.4(3) or in a lap-splice, except at corners where the reinforcement shall be continuous as required above.

**R611.6.5 Location of reinforcement in wall.** Except for vertical reinforcement at the ends of required solid wall segments, which shall be located as required by Section R611.7.2.2.2, the location of the vertical reinforcement shall not vary from the center of the wall by more than the greater of 10 percent of the wall thickness and $^3/_8$-inch (10 mm). Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be located to provide not less than the minimum cover required by Section R611.5.4.1.

**R611.7 Solid walls for resistance to lateral forces.**

**R611.7.1 Length of solid wall.** Each exterior wall line in each *story* shall have a total length of solid wall required by Section R611.7.1.1. A solid wall is a section of flat, waffle-grid or screen-grid wall, extending the full *story height* without openings or penetrations, except those permitted by Section R611.7.2. Solid wall segments that contribute to the total length of solid wall shall comply with Section R611.7.2.

**R611.7.1.1 Length of solid wall for wind.** All buildings shall have solid walls in each exterior endwall line (the side of a building that is parallel to the span of the roof or floor framing) and sidewall line (the side of a building that is perpendicular to the span of the roof or floor framing) to resist lateral in-plane wind forces. The site-appropriate basic wind speed and exposure category shall be used in Tables R611.7(1A) through (1C) to determine the unreduced total length, UR, of solid wall required in each exterior endwall line and sidewall line. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet (10 668 mm), the unreduced values determined from Tables R611.7(1A) though (1C) is permitted by multiplying by the applicable factor, R1, from Table R611.7(2); however, reduced values shall not be less than the minimum values in Tables R611.7(1A) through (1C). Where the floor-to-ceiling height of a *story* is less than 10 feet (3048 mm), the unreduced values determined from Tables R611.7(1A) through (C), including minimum values, is permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable factor, $R_2$, from Table R611.7(3). To account for different design strengths than assumed in determining the values in Tables R611.7(1A) through (1C), the unreduced lengths determined from Tables R611.7(1A) through (1C), including minimum values, are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable factor, $R_3$, from Table R611.7(4). The reductions permitted by Tables R611.7(2), R611.7(3) and R611.7(4) are cumulative.

The total length of solid wall segments, *TL*, in a wall line that comply with the minimum length requirements of Section R611.7.2.1 [see Figure R611.7(1)] shall be equal to or greater than the product of the unreduced length of solid wall from Tables R611.7(1A) through (1C), *UR* and the applicable reduction factors, if any, from Tables R611.7(2), R611.7(3) and R611.7(4) as indicated by Equation R611-1.

$$TL \geq R_1 \cdot R_2 \cdot R_3 \cdot UR \qquad \textbf{(Equation R611-1)}$$

Where

*TL* = total length of solid wall segments in a wall line that comply with Section R611.7.2.1 [see Figure R611.7(1)], and

$R_1$ = 1.0 or reduction factor for mean roof height from Table R611.7(2),

$R_2$ = 1.0 or reduction factor for floor-to-ceiling wall height from Table R611.7(3),

$R_3$ = 1.0 or reduction factor for design strength from Table R611.7(4), and

*UR* = unreduced length of solid wall from Tables R611.7(1A) through (1C).

The total length of solid wall in a wall line, *TL*, shall not be less than that provided by two solid wall segments complying with the minimum length requirements of Section R611.7.2.1.

To facilitate determining the required wall thickness, wall type, number and *grade* of vertical bars at the each end of each solid wall segment, and whether shear reinforcement is required, use of Equation R611-2 is permitted.

$$R_3 \leq \frac{TL}{R_1 \cdot R_2 \cdot UR} \qquad \textbf{(Equation R611-2)}$$

After determining the maximum permitted value of the reduction factor for design strength, $R_3$, in accordance with Equation R611-2, select a wall type from Table R611.7(4) with $R_3$ less than or equal to the value calculated.

**TABLE R611.6(1)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR FLAT ABOVE-GRADE WALLS[a, b, c, d, e]**

| MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph) | | | MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT PER STORY (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)[f, g] | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Nominal[h] wall thickness (inches) | | | | | | | |
| Exposure Category | | | | 4 | | 6 | | 8 | | 10 | |
| B | C | D | | Top[i] | Side[i] | Top[i] | Side[i] | Top[i] | Side[i] | Top[i] | Side[i] |
| 85 | — | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@48 | 4@43 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 10 | 4@47 | 4@36 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| 90 | — | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@47 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@48 | 4@39 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 10 | 4@42 | 4@34 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| 100 | 85 | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@40 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@42 | 4@34 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 10 | 4@34 | 4@34 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| 110 | 90 | 85 | 8 | 4@44 | 4@34 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@34 | 4@34 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 10 | 4@34 | 4@31 | 4@48 | 4@37 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| 120 | 100 | 90 | 8 | 4@36 | 4@34 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@34 | 4@32 | 4@48 | 4@38 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 10 | 4@30 | 4@27 | 4@48 | 5@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| 130 | 110 | 100 | 8 | 4@34 | 4@34 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@32 | 4@28 | 4@48 | 4@33 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 10 | 4@26 | 4@23 | 4@48 | 5@43 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |

For SI:1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square inch = 1.895kPa.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 ft, interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 $ft^2$, and topographic factor, $K_{zt}$, and importance factor, $I$, equal to 1.0.

b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi.

c. See Section R611.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the unsupported height of the wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.

g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R611.5.4.7 and Table R611.5.4(2).

h. See Table R611.3 for tolerances on nominal thicknesses.

i. Top means gravity load from roof and/or floor construction bears on top of wall. Side means gravity load from floor construction is transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. Where floor framing members span parallel to the wall, use of the top bearing condition is permitted.

**TABLE R611.6(2)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR WAFFLE-GRID ABOVE-GRADE WALLS[a, b, c, d, e]**

| MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph) | | | MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT PER STORY (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)[f, g] | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exposure Category | | | | Nominal[h] wall thickness (inches) | | | |
| | | | | 6 | | 8 | |
| B | C | D | | Top[i] | Side[i] | Top[i] | Side[i] |
| 85 | — | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@36, 5@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@48 | 4@30, 5@47 | 4@48 | 4@45 |
| | | | 10 | 4@48 | 4@26, 5@40 | 4@48 | 4@39 |
| 90 | — | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@33, 5@48 | 4@48 | 4@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@48 | 4@28, 5@43 | 4@48 | 4@42 |
| | | | 10 | 4@31, 5@48 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@48 | 4@36 |
| 100 | 85 | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@28, 5@44 | 4@48 | 4@43 |
| | | | 9 | 4@31, 5@48 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@48 | 4@36 |
| | | | 10 | 4@25, 5@39 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@48 | 4@31, 5@48 |
| 110 | 90 | 85 | 8 | 4@33, 5@48 | 4@25, 5@38 | 4@48 | 4@38 |
| | | | 9 | 4@26, 5@40 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@48 | 4@31, 5@48 |
| | | | 10 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@23, 5@35 | 4@48 | 4@27, 5@41 |
| 120 | 100 | 90 | 8 | 4@27, 5@42 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@48 | 4@33, 5@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@23, 5@36 | 4@48 | 4@27, 5@43 |
| | | | 10 | 4@23, 5@35 | 4@19, 5@30 | 4@48 | 4@23, 5@36 |
| 130 | 110 | 100 | 8 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@48 | 4@29, 5@45 |
| | | | 9 | 4@24, 5@37 | 4@20, 5@32 | 4@48 | 4@24, 5@37 |
| | | | 10 | 4@19, 5@30 | 4@17, 5@26 | 4@23, 5@36 | 4@20, 5@31 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm;1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895kPa.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 ft (10 668 mm), interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 ft$^2$ (0.9 m$^2$), and topographic factor, $K_{zt}$, and importance factor, $I$, equal to 1.0.

b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa).

c. See Section R611.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the unsupported height of the wall in inches.

e. Interpolation is not permitted.

f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.

g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 (420 MPa) and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (i.e., 12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R611.5.4.7 and Table R611.5.4(2).

h. See Table R611.3 for minimum core dimensions and maximum spacing of horizontal and vertical cores.

i. Top means gravity load from roof and/or floor construction bears on top of wall. Side means gravity load from floor construction is transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. Where floor framing members span parallel to the wall, the top bearing condition is permitted to be used.

**TABLE R611.6(3)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR 6-INCH SCREEN-GRID ABOVE-GRADE WALLS[a, b, c, d, e]**

| MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph) | | | MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED WALL HEIGHT PER STORY (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)[f, g] | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exposure Category | | | | Nominal[h] wall thickness (inches) | |
| | | | | 6 | |
| B | C | D | | Top[i] | Side[i] |
| 85 | — | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@34, 5@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@48 | 4@29, 5@45 |
| | | | 10 | 4@48 | 4@25, 5@39 |
| 90 | — | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@31, 5@48 |
| | | | 9 | 4@48 | 4@27, 5@41 |
| | | | 10 | 4@30, 5@47 | 4@23, 5@35 |
| 100 | 85 | — | 8 | 4@48 | 4@27, 5@42 |
| | | | 9 | 4@30, 5@47 | 4@23, 5@35 |
| | | | 10 | 4@24, 5@38 | 4@22, 5@34 |
| 110 | 90 | 85 | 8 | 4@48 | 4@24, 5@37 |
| | | | 9 | 4@25, 5@38 | 4@22, 5@34 |
| | | | 10 | 4@22, 5@34 | 4@22, 5@34 |
| 120 | 100 | 90 | 8 | 4@26, 5@41 | 4@22, 5@34 |
| | | | 9 | 4@22, 5@34 | 4@22, 5@34 |
| | | | 10 | 4@22, 6@34 | 4@19, 5@26 |
| 130 | 110 | 100 | 8 | 4@22, 5@35 | 4@22, 5@34 |
| | | | 9 | 4@22, 5@34 | 4@20, 5@30 |
| | | | 10 | 4@19, 5@29 | 4@16, 5@25 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s, pound per square inch = 6.895kPa.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 ft, interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 $ft^2$, and topographic factor, $K_{zt}$, and importance factor, $I$, equal to 1.0.
b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi.
c. See Section R611.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.
d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the unsupported height of the wall in inches.
e. Interpolation is not permitted.
f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.
g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi (420 MPa). Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. Where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (i.e., 12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R611.5.4.7 and Table R611.5.4(2).
h. See Table R611.3 for minimum core dimensions and maximum spacing of horizontal and vertical cores.
i. Top means gravity load from roof and/or floor construction bears on top of wall. Side means gravity load from floor construction is transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. Where floor framing members span parallel to the wall, use of the top bearing condition is permitted.

**TABLE R611.6(4)**
**MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT FOR FLAT, WAFFLE- AND SCREEN-GRID ABOVE-GRADE WALLS DESIGNED CONTINUOUS WITH FOUNDATION STEM WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, k, l]**

| MAXIMUM WIND SPEED (mph) | | | HEIGHT OF STEM WALL[h, i] (feet) | MAXIMUM DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD (psf/ft) | MAXIMUM UNSUPPORTED HEIGHT OF ABOVE-GRADE WALL (feet) | MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT—BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)[f, g] | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | Wall type and nominal thickness[j] (inches) | | | | | | |
| Exposure Category | | | | | | Flat | | | | Waffle | | Screen |
| B | C | D | | | | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 6 | 8 | 6 |
| 85 | — | — | 3 | 30 | 8 | 4@33 | 4@39 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@24 | 4@28 | 4@22 |
| | | | | | 10 | 4@26 | 5@48 | 4@41 | 4@48 | 4@19 | 4@22 | 4@18 |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | 4@21 | 5@40 | 5@48 | 4@44 | 4@16 | 4@19 | 4@15 |
| | | | 6 | 30 | 10 | DR | 5@22 | 6@35 | 6@43 | DR | 4@11 | DR |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | DR | DR | 6@26 | 6@28 | DR | DR | DR |
| 90 | — | — | 3 | 30 | 8 | 4@30 | 4@36 | 4@48 | 4@48 | 4@22 | 4@26 | 4@21 |
| | | | | | 10 | 4@24 | 5@44 | 4@38 | 4@48 | 4@17 | 4@21 | 4@17 |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | 4@20 | 5@37 | 4@48 | 4@41 | 4@15 | 4@18 | 4@14 |
| | | | 6 | 30 | 10 | DR | 5@21 | 6@35 | 6@41 | DR | 4@10 | DR |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | DR | DR | 6@26 | 6@28 | DR | DR | DR |
| 100 | 85 | — | 3 | 30 | 8 | 4@26 | 5@48 | 4@42 | 4@48 | 4@19 | 4@23 | 4@18 |
| | | | | | 10 | 4@20 | 5@37 | 4@33 | 4@41 | 4@15 | 4@18 | 4@14 |
| | | | 6 | 60 | 10 | 4@17 | 5@34 | 5@44 | 4@36 | 4@13 | 4@17 | 4@12 |
| | | | | 30 | 10 | DR | 5@20 | 6@35 | 6@38 | DR | 4@9 | DR |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | DR | DR | 6@24 | 6@28 | DR | DR | DR |
| 110 | 90 | 85 | 3 | 30 | 8 | 4@22 | 5@42 | 4@37 | 4@46 | 4@16 | 4@20 | 4@16 |
| | | | | | 10 | 4@17 | 5@34 | 5@44 | 4@35 | 4@12 | 4@17 | 4@12 |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | 4@15 | 5@34 | 5@39 | 5@48 | 4@11 | 4@17 | 4@11 |
| | | | 6 | 30 | 10 | DR | 5@18 | 6@35 | 6@35 | DR | 4@9 | DR |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | DR | DR | 6@23 | 6@28 | DR | DR | DR |
| 120 | 100 | 90 | 3 | 30 | 8 | 4@19 | 5@37 | 5@48 | 4@40 | 4@14 | 4@17 | 4@14 |
| | | | | | 10 | 4@14 | 5@34 | 5@38 | 5@48 | 4@11 | 4@17 | 4@10 |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | 4@13 | 5@33 | 6@48 | 5@43 | 4@10 | 4@16 | 4@9 |
| | | | 6 | 30 | 10 | DR | 5@16 | 6@33 | 6@32 | DR | 4@8 | DR |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | DR | DR | 6@22 | 6@28 | DR | DR | DR |
| 130 | 110 | 100 | 3 | 30 | 8 | 4@17 | 5@34 | 5@44 | 4@36 | 4@12 | 4@17 | 4@10 |
| | | | | | 10 | DR | 5@32 | 6@47 | 5@42 | 4@9 | 4@15 | DR |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | DR | 5@29 | 6@43 | 5@39 | DR | 4@14 | DR |
| | | | 6 | 30 | 10 | DR | 5@15 | 6@30 | 6@29 | DR | 4@7 | DR |
| | | | | 60 | 10 | DR | DR | 6@21 | 6@27 | DR | DR | DR |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s; 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.1571kPa/m.

a. Table is based on ASCE 7 components and cladding wind pressures for an enclosed building using a mean roof height of 35 ft (10 668 mm), interior wall area 4, an effective wind area of 10 ft$^2$, and topographic factor, $K_{zt}$, and importance factor, $I$, equal to 1.0.

b. Table is based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi.

c. See Section R611.6.5 for location of reinforcement in wall.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the height of the wall in inches from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the above-grade wall.

e. Interpolation is not permitted. For intermediate values of basic wind speed, heights of stem wall and above-grade wall, and design lateral soil load, use next higher value.

f. Where No. 4 reinforcing bars at a spacing of 48 inches are specified in the table, use of bars with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi is permitted.

g. Other than for No. 4 bars spaced at 48 inches on center, table values are based on reinforcing bars with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi. Maximum spacings shown are the values calculated for the specified bar size. In waffle and screen-grid walls where the bar used is Grade 60 and the size specified in the table, the actual spacing in the wall shall not exceed a whole-number multiple of 12 inches (i.e., 12, 24, 36 and 48) that is less than or equal to the tabulated spacing. Vertical reinforcement with a yield strength of less than 60,000 psi and/or bars of a different size than specified in the table are permitted in accordance with Section R611.5.4.7 and Table R611.5.4(2).

h. Height of stem wall is the distance from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the slab-on-ground.

i. Where the distance from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the slab-on-ground is equal to or greater than 4 feet, the stem wall shall be laterally supported at the top and bottom before backfilling. Where the wall is designed and constructed to be continuous with the above-grade wall, temporary supports bracing the top of the stem wall shall remain in place until the above-grade wall is laterally supported at the top by floor or roof construction.

j. See Table R611.3 for tolerances on nominal thicknesses, and minimum core dimensions and maximum spacing of horizontal and vertical cores for waffle- and screen-grid walls.

k. Tabulated values are applicable to construction where gravity loads bear on top of wall, and conditions where gravity loads from floor construction are transferred to wall from a wood ledger or cold-formed steel track bolted to side of wall. See Tables R611.6(1), R611.6(2) and R611.6(3).

l. DR indicates design required.

**R611.7.2 Solid wall segments.** Solid wall segments that contribute to the required length of solid wall shall comply with this section. Reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section R611.7.2.2 and Table R611.7(4). Solid wall segments shall extend the full story-height without openings, other than openings for the utilities and other building services passing through the wall. In flat walls and waffle-grid walls, such openings shall have an area of less than 30 square inches (19 355 $mm^2$) with no dimension exceeding $6^1/_4$ inches (159 mm), and shall not be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the side edges of the solid wall segment. In screen-grid walls, such openings shall be located in the portion of the solid wall segment between horizontal and vertical cores of concrete and opening size and location are not restricted provided no concrete is removed.

**R611.7.2.1 Minimum length of solid wall segment and maximum spacing.** Only solid wall segments equal to or greater than 24 inches (610 mm) in length shall be included in the total length of solid wall required by Section R611.7.1. In addition, no more than two solid wall segments equal to or greater than 24 inches (610 mm) in length and less than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length shall be included in the required total length of solid wall. The maximum clear opening width shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Figure R611.7(1).

**R611.7.2.2 Reinforcement in solid wall segments.**

**R611.7.2.2.1 Horizontal shear reinforcement.** Where reduction factors for design strength, $R_3$, from Table R611.7(4) based on horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement being provided are used, solid wall segments shall have horizontal reinforcement consisting of minimum No. 4 bars. Horizontal shear reinforcement shall be the same grade of steel required for the vertical reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments by Section R611.7.2.2.2.

The spacing of horizontal reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of one-half the length of the solid wall segment, minus 2 inches (51 mm), and 18 inches (457 mm). Horizontal shear reinforcement shall terminate in accordance with Section R611.6.4.

**R611.7.2.2.2 Vertical reinforcement.** Vertical reinforcement applicable to the reduction factor(s) for design strength, $R_3$, from Table R611.7(4) that is used, shall be located at each end of each solid wall segment in accordance with the applicable detail in Figure R611.7(2). The No. 4 vertical bar required on each side of an opening by Section R611.8.1.2 is permitted to be used as reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments where installed in accordance with the applicable detail in Figure R611.7(2). There shall be not less than two No. 4 bars at each end of solid wall segments located as required by the applicable detail in Figure R611.7(2). One of the bars at each end of solid wall segments shall be deemed to meet the requirements for vertical wall reinforcement required by Section R611.6.

The vertical wall reinforcement at each end of each solid wall segment shall be developed below the bottom of the adjacent wall opening [see Figure R611.7(3)] by one of the following methods:

1. Where the wall height below the bottom of the adjacent opening is equal to or greater than 22 inches (559 mm) for No. 4 or 28 inches (711 mm) for No. 5 vertical wall reinforcement, reinforcement around openings in accordance with Section R611.8.1 shall be sufficient, or
2. Where the wall height below the bottom of the adjacent opening is less than required by Item 1 above, the vertical wall reinforcement adjacent to the opening shall extend into the footing far enough to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section R611.5.4.4 and Figure R611.5.4(2), or shall be lap-spliced with a dowel that is embedded in the footing far enough to develop the dowel-bar in tension.

**R611.7.2.2.3 Vertical shear reinforcement.** Where reduction factors for design strength, $R_3$, from Table R611.7(4) based on horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement being provided are used, solid wall segments shall have vertical reinforcement consisting of minimum No. 4 bars. Vertical shear reinforcement shall be the same grade of steel required by Section R611.7.2.2.2 for the vertical reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments. The spacing of vertical reinforcement throughout the length of the segment shall not exceed the smaller of one third the length of the segment, and 18 inches (457 mm). Vertical shear reinforcement shall be continuous between stories in accordance with Section R611.6.3, and shall terminate in accordance with Section R611.6.4. Vertical shear reinforcement required by this section is permitted to be used for vertical reinforcement required by Table R611.6(1), R611.6(2), R611.6(3) or R611.6(4), whichever is applicable.

**R611.7.2.3 Solid wall segments at corners.** At all interior and exterior corners of exterior walls, a solid wall segment shall extend the full height of each wall *story*. The segment shall have the length required to develop the horizontal reinforcement above and below the adjacent opening in tension in accordance with Section R611.5.4.4. For an exterior corner, the limiting dimension is measured on the outside of the wall, and for an interior corner the limiting dimension is measured on the inside of the wall. See Section R611.8.1. The length of a segment contributing to the required length of solid wall shall comply with Section R611.7.2.1.

The end of a solid wall segment complying with the minimum length requirements of Section R611.7.2.1 shall be located no more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from each corner.

**R611.8 Requirements for lintels and reinforcement around openings.**

**R611.8.1 Reinforcement around openings.** Reinforcement shall be provided around openings in walls equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width in accordance with this section and Figure R611.8(1), in addition to the minimum wall reinforcement required by Sections R404.1.2, R611.6 and R611.7. Vertical wall reinforcement required by this section is permitted to be used as reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments required by Section R611.7.2.2.2 provided it is located in accordance with Section R611.8.1.2. Wall openings shall have a minimum depth of concrete over the width of the opening of 8 inches (203 mm) in flat walls and waffle-grid walls, and 12 inches (305 mm) in screen-grid walls. Wall openings in waffle-grid and screen-grid walls shall be located such that not less than one-half of a vertical core occurs along each side of the opening.

**R611.8.1.1 Horizontal reinforcement.** Lintels complying with Section R611.8.2 shall be provided above wall openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width.

**Exception:** Continuous horizontal wall reinforcement placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the wall *story* as required in Sections R404.1.2.2 and R611.6.2 is permitted in lieu of top or bottom lintel reinforcement required by Section R611.8.2 provided that the continuous horizontal wall reinforcement meets the location requirements specified in Figures R611.8(2), R611.8(3), and R611.8(4) and the size requirements specified in Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(10).

Openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width shall have a minimum of one No. 4 bar placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the opening. See Figure R611.8(1).

Horizontal reinforcement placed above and below an opening shall extend beyond the edges of the opening the dimension required to develop the bar in tension in accordance with Section R611.5.4.4.

**R611.8.1.2 Vertical reinforcement.** Not less than one No. 4 bar [Grade 40 (280 MPa)] shall be provided on each side of openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width. The vertical reinforcement required by this section shall extend the full height of the wall *story* and shall be located within 12 inches (305 mm) of each side of the opening. The vertical reinforcement required on each side of an opening by this section is permitted to serve as reinforcement at the ends of solid wall segments in accordance with Section R611.7.2.2.2, provided it is located as required by the applicable detail in Figure R611.7(2). Where the vertical reinforcement required by this section is used to satisfy the requirements of Section R611.7.2.2.2 in waffle- and screen-grid walls, a concrete flange shall be created at the ends of the solid wall segments in accordance with Table R611.7(4), note e. In the top-most *story*, the reinforcement shall terminate in accordance with Section R611.6.4.

**R611.8.2 Lintels.** Lintels shall be provided over all openings equal to or greater than 2 feet (610 mm) in width. Lintels with uniform loading shall conform to Sections R611.8.2.1, and R611.8.2.2, or Section R611.8.2.3. Lintels supporting concentrated loads, such as from roof or floor beams or girders, shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318.

**R611.8.2.1 Lintels designed for gravity load-bearing conditions.** Where a lintel will be subjected to gravity load condition 1 through 5 of Table R611.8(1), the clear span of the lintel shall not exceed that permitted by Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(8). The maximum clear span of lintels with and without stirrups in flat walls shall be determined in accordance with Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5), and constructed in accordance with Figure R611.8(2). The maximum clear span of lintels with and without stirrups in waffle-grid walls shall be determined in accordance with Tables R611.8(6) and R611.8(7), and constructed in accordance with Figure R611.8(3). The maximum clear span of lintels with and without stirrups in screen-grid walls shall be determined in accordance with Table R611.8(8), and constructed in accordance with Figure R611.8(4).

Where required by the applicable table, No. 3 stirrups shall be installed in lintels at a maximum spacing of $d/2$ where d equals the depth of the lintel, $D$, less the cover of the concrete as shown in Figures R611.8(2) through R611.8(4). The smaller value of $d$ computed for the top and bottom bar shall be used to determine the maximum stirrup spacing. Where stirrups are required in a lintel with a single bar or two bundled bars in the top and bottom, they shall be fabricated like the letter "c" or "s" with 135-degree (2.36 rad) standard hooks at each end that comply with Section R611.5.4.5 and Figure R611.5.4(3) and installed as shown in Figures R611.8(2) through R611.8(4). Where two bars are required in the top and bottom of the lintel and the bars are not bundled, the bars shall be separated by a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm). The free end of the stirrups shall be fabricated with 90- or 135-degree (1.57 or 2.36 rad) standard hooks that comply with Section R611.5.4.5 and Figure R611.5.4(3) and installed as shown in Figures R611.8(2) and R611.8(3). For flat, waffle-grid and screen-grid lintels, stirrups are not required in the center distance, A, portion of spans in accordance with Figure R611.8(1) and Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(8). See Section R611.8.2.2, item 5, for requirement for stirrups throughout lintels with bundled bars.

**TABLE R611.7(1A)**
**UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR ENDWALL FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE ONE STORY OR TOP STORY OF TWO-STORY[a,c,d,e,f,g]**

| SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet) | ENDWALL LENGTH (feet) | ROOF SLOPE | UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure | | | | | | |
| | | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B | Minimum[b] |
| | | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C | |
| | | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D | |
| 15 | 15 | < 1:12 | 0.90 | 1.01 | 1.25 | 1.51 | 1.80 | 2.11 | 0.98 |
| | | 5:12 | 1.25 | 1.40 | 1.73 | 2.09 | 2.49 | 2.92 | 1.43 |
| | | 7:12 | 1.75 | 1.96 | 2.43 | 2.93 | 3.49 | 4.10 | 1.64 |
| | | 12:12 | 2.80 | 3.13 | 3.87 | 4.68 | 5.57 | 6.54 | 2.21 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 0.90 | 1.01 | 1.25 | 1.51 | 1.80 | 2.11 | 1.09 |
| | | 5:12 | 1.25 | 1.40 | 1.73 | 2.09 | 2.49 | 2.92 | 2.01 |
| | | 7:12 | 2.43 | 2.73 | 3.37 | 4.08 | 4.85 | 5.69 | 2.42 |
| | | 12:12 | 4.52 | 5.07 | 6.27 | 7.57 | 9.01 | 10.58 | 3.57 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 0.90 | 1.01 | 1.25 | 1.51 | 1.80 | 2.11 | 1.21 |
| | | 5:12 | 1.25 | 1.40 | 1.73 | 2.09 | 2.49 | 2.92 | 2.59 |
| | | 7:12 | 3.12 | 3.49 | 4.32 | 5.22 | 6.21 | 7.29 | 3.21 |
| | | 12:12 | 6.25 | 7.00 | 8.66 | 10.47 | 12.45 | 14.61 | 4.93 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 0.90 | 1.01 | 1.25 | 1.51 | 1.80 | 2.11 | 1.33 |
| | | 5:12 | 1.25 | 1.40 | 1.73 | 2.09 | 2.49 | 2.92 | 3.16 |
| | | 7:12 | 3.80 | 4.26 | 5.26 | 6.36 | 7.57 | 8.89 | 3.99 |
| | | 12:12 | 7.97 | 8.94 | 11.05 | 13.36 | 15.89 | 18.65 | 6.29 |
| 30 | 15 | < 1:12 | 1.61 | 1.80 | 2.23 | 2.70 | 3.21 | 3.77 | 1.93 |
| | | 5:12 | 2.24 | 2.51 | 3.10 | 3.74 | 4.45 | 5.23 | 2.75 |
| | | 7:12 | 3.15 | 3.53 | 4.37 | 5.28 | 6.28 | 7.37 | 3.12 |
| | | 12:12 | 4.90 | 5.49 | 6.79 | 8.21 | 9.77 | 11.46 | 4.14 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 1.61 | 1.80 | 2.23 | 2.70 | 3.21 | 3.77 | 2.14 |
| | | 5:12 | 2.24 | 2.51 | 3.10 | 3.74 | 4.45 | 5.23 | 3.78 |
| | | 7:12 | 4.30 | 4.82 | 5.96 | 7.20 | 8.57 | 10.05 | 4.52 |
| | | 12:12 | 7.79 | 8.74 | 10.80 | 13.06 | 15.53 | 18.23 | 6.57 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 1.61 | 1.80 | 2.23 | 2.70 | 3.21 | 3.77 | 2.35 |
| | | 5:12 | 2.24 | 2.51 | 3.10 | 3.74 | 4.45 | 5.23 | 4.81 |
| | | 7:12 | 5.44 | 6.10 | 7.54 | 9.12 | 10.85 | 12.73 | 5.92 |
| | | 12:12 | 10.69 | 11.98 | 14.81 | 17.90 | 21.30 | 25.00 | 9.00 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 1.61 | 1.80 | 2.23 | 2.70 | 3.21 | 3.77 | 2.56 |
| | | 5:12 | 2.24 | 2.51 | 3.10 | 3.74 | 4.45 | 5.23 | 5.84 |
| | | 7:12 | 6.59 | 7.39 | 9.13 | 11.04 | 13.14 | 15.41 | 7.32 |
| | | 12:12 | 13.58 | 15.22 | 18.82 | 22.75 | 27.07 | 31.77 | 11.43 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.7(1A)—continued**
**UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR ENDWALL FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE ONE STORY OR TOP STORY OF TWO-STORY[a,c,d,e,f,g]**

| SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet) | ENDWALL LENGTH (feet) | ROOF SLOPE | UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure | | | | | | |
| | | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B | Minimum[b] |
| | | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C | |
| | | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D | |
| 60 | 15 | < 1:12 | 2.99 | 3.35 | 4.14 | 5.00 | 5.95 | 6.98 | 3.83 |
| | | 5:12 | 4.15 | 4.65 | 5.75 | 6.95 | 8.27 | 9.70 | 5.37 |
| | | 7:12 | 5.91 | 6.63 | 8.19 | 9.90 | 11.78 | 13.83 | 6.07 |
| | | 12:12 | 9.05 | 10.14 | 12.54 | 15.16 | 18.03 | 21.16 | 8.00 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 2.99 | 3.35 | 4.14 | 5.00 | 5.95 | 6.98 | 4.23 |
| | | 5:12 | 4.15 | 4.65 | 5.75 | 6.95 | 8.27 | 9.70 | 7.31 |
| | | 7:12 | 7.97 | 8.94 | 11.05 | 13.36 | 15.89 | 18.65 | 8.71 |
| | | 12:12 | 14.25 | 15.97 | 19.74 | 23.86 | 28.40 | 33.32 | 12.57 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 3.11 | 3.48 | 4.30 | 5.20 | 6.19 | 7.26 | 4.63 |
| | | 5:12 | 4.31 | 4.84 | 5.98 | 7.23 | 8.60 | 10.09 | 9.25 |
| | | 7:12 | 10.24 | 11.47 | 14.19 | 17.15 | 20.40 | 23.84 | 11.35 |
| | | 12:12 | 19.84 | 22.24 | 27.49 | 33.23 | 39.54 | 46.40 | 17.14 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 3.22 | 3.61 | 4.46 | 5.39 | 6.42 | 7.53 | 5.03 |
| | | 5:12 | 4.47 | 5.01 | 6.19 | 7.49 | 8.91 | 10.46 | 11.19 |
| | | 7:12 | 12.57 | 14.09 | 17.42 | 21.05 | 25.05 | 29.39 | 13.99 |
| | | 12:12 | 25.61 | 28.70 | 35.49 | 42.90 | 51.04 | 59.90 | 21.71 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound-force per linear foot = 0.146kN/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.88 Pa.

a. Tabulated lengths were derived by calculating design wind pressures in accordance with Figure 6-10 of ASCE 7 for a building with a mean roof height of 35 feet (10 668 mm). For wind perpendicular to the ridge, the effects of a 2-foot overhang on each endwall are included. The design pressures were used to calculate forces to be resisted by solid wall segments in each endwall [Table R611.7(1A) or R611.7(1B) or sidewall (Table R611.7(1C)], as appropriate. The forces to be resisted by each wall line were then divided by the default design strength of 840 pounds per linear foot (12.26 kN/m) of length to determine the required solid wall length. The actual mean roof height of the building shall not exceed the least horizontal dimension of the building.

b. Tabulated lengths in the "minimum" column are based on the requirement of Section 6.1.4.1 of ASCE 7 that the main wind-force resisting system be designed for a minimum service level force of 10 psf multiplied by the area of the building projected onto a vertical plane normal to the assumed wind direction. Tabulated lengths in shaded cells are less than the "minimum" value. Where the minimum controls, it is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Notes c, d and e. See Section R611.7.1.1.

c. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet, tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the appropriate factor, $R_1$, from Table R611.7(2). The reduced length shall not be less than the "minimum" value shown in the table.

d. Tabulated lengths for "one story or top story of two-story" are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet. Tabulated lengths for "first story of two-story" are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor-to-ceiling heights less than assumed, use the lengths in Table R611.7(1A), (1B) or (1C), or multiply the value in the table by the reduction factor, $R_2$, from Table R611.7(3).

e. Tabulated lengths are based on the default design shear strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of solid wall segment. The tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable reduction factor for design strength, $R_3$, from Table R611.7(4).

f. The reduction factors, $R_1$, $R_2$, and $R_3$, in Tables R611.7(2), R611.7(3), and R611.7(4), respectively, are permitted to be compounded, subject to the limitations of Note b. However, the minimum number and minimum length of solid walls segments in each wall line shall comply with Sections R611.7.1 and R611.7.2.1, respectively.

g. For intermediate values of sidewall length, endwall length, roof slope and basic wind speed, use the next higher value, or determine by interpolation.

**TABLE R611.7(1B)**
**UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR ENDWALL FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE FIRST STORY OF TWO-STORY[a,c,d,e,f,g]**

| SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet) | ENDWALL LENGTH (feet) | ROOF SLOPE | UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure | | | | | | |
| | | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B | |
| | | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C | |
| | | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D | |
| | | | Velocity pressure (psf) | | | | | | |
| | | | 11.51 | 12.90 | 15.95 | 19.28 | 22.94 | 26.92 | Minimum[b] |
| 15 | 15 | < 1:12 | 2.60 | 2.92 | 3.61 | 4.36 | 5.19 | 6.09 | 2.59 |
| | | 5:12 | 3.61 | 4.05 | 5.00 | 6.05 | 7.20 | 8.45 | 3.05 |
| | | 7:12 | 3.77 | 4.23 | 5.23 | 6.32 | 7.52 | 8.82 | 3.26 |
| | | 12:12 | 4.81 | 5.40 | 6.67 | 8.06 | 9.60 | 11.26 | 3.83 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 2.60 | 2.92 | 3.61 | 4.36 | 5.19 | 6.09 | 2.71 |
| | | 5:12 | 3.61 | 4.05 | 5.00 | 6.05 | 7.20 | 8.45 | 3.63 |
| | | 7:12 | 4.45 | 4.99 | 6.17 | 7.46 | 8.88 | 10.42 | 4.04 |
| | | 12:12 | 6.54 | 7.33 | 9.06 | 10.96 | 13.04 | 15.30 | 5.19 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 2.60 | 2.92 | 3.61 | 4.36 | 5.19 | 6.09 | 2.83 |
| | | 5:12 | 3.61 | 4.05 | 5.00 | 6.05 | 7.20 | 8.45 | 4.20 |
| | | 7:12 | 5.14 | 5.76 | 7.12 | 8.60 | 10.24 | 12.01 | 4.83 |
| | | 12:12 | 8.27 | 9.27 | 11.46 | 13.85 | 16.48 | 19.34 | 6.55 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 2.60 | 2.92 | 3.61 | 4.36 | 5.19 | 6.09 | 2.95 |
| | | 5:12 | 3.61 | 4.05 | 5.00 | 6.05 | 7.20 | 8.45 | 4.78 |
| | | 7:12 | 5.82 | 6.52 | 8.06 | 9.75 | 11.60 | 13.61 | 5.61 |
| | | 12:12 | 9.99 | 11.20 | 13.85 | 16.74 | 19.92 | 23.37 | 7.90 |
| 30 | 15 | < 1:12 | 4.65 | 5.21 | 6.45 | 7.79 | 9.27 | 10.88 | 5.16 |
| | | 5:12 | 6.46 | 7.24 | 8.95 | 10.82 | 12.87 | 15.10 | 5.98 |
| | | 7:12 | 6.94 | 7.78 | 9.62 | 11.62 | 13.83 | 16.23 | 6.35 |
| | | 12:12 | 8.69 | 9.74 | 12.04 | 14.55 | 17.32 | 20.32 | 7.38 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 4.65 | 5.21 | 6.45 | 7.79 | 9.27 | 10.88 | 5.38 |
| | | 5:12 | 6.46 | 7.24 | 8.95 | 10.82 | 12.87 | 15.10 | 7.01 |
| | | 7:12 | 8.09 | 9.06 | 11.21 | 13.54 | 16.12 | 18.91 | 7.76 |
| | | 12:12 | 11.58 | 12.98 | 16.05 | 19.40 | 23.08 | 27.09 | 9.81 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 4.65 | 5.21 | 6.45 | 7.79 | 9.27 | 10.88 | 5.59 |
| | | 5:12 | 6.46 | 7.24 | 8.95 | 10.82 | 12.87 | 15.10 | 8.04 |
| | | 7:12 | 9.23 | 10.35 | 12.79 | 15.46 | 18.40 | 21.59 | 9.16 |
| | | 12:12 | 14.48 | 16.22 | 20.06 | 24.25 | 28.85 | 33.86 | 12.24 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 4.65 | 5.21 | 6.45 | 7.79 | 9.27 | 10.88 | 5.80 |
| | | 5:12 | 6.46 | 7.24 | 8.95 | 10.82 | 12.87 | 15.10 | 9.08 |
| | | 7:12 | 10.38 | 11.63 | 14.38 | 17.38 | 20.69 | 24.27 | 10.56 |
| | | 12:12 | 17.37 | 19.47 | 24.07 | 29.10 | 34.62 | 40.63 | 14.67 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.7(1B)—continued**
**UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR ENDWALL FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE FIRST STORY OF TWO-STORY[a,c,d,e,f,g]**

| SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet) | ENDWALL LENGTH (feet) | ROOF SLOPE | UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure | | | | | | |
| | | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B | |
| | | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C | |
| | | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D | |
| | | | Velocity Pressure (psf) | | | | | | |
| | | | 11.51 | 12.90 | 15.95 | 19.28 | 22.94 | 26.92 | Minimum[b] |
| 60 | 15 | < 1:12 | 8.62 | 9.67 | 11.95 | 14.45 | 17.19 | 20.17 | 10.30 |
| | | 5:12 | 11.98 | 13.43 | 16.61 | 20.07 | 23.88 | 28.03 | 11.85 |
| | | 7:12 | 13.18 | 14.78 | 18.27 | 22.08 | 26.28 | 30.83 | 12.54 |
| | | 12:12 | 16.32 | 18.29 | 22.62 | 27.34 | 32.53 | 38.17 | 14.48 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 8.62 | 9.67 | 11.95 | 14.45 | 17.19 | 20.17 | 10.70 |
| | | 5:12 | 11.98 | 13.43 | 16.61 | 20.07 | 23.88 | 28.03 | 13.79 |
| | | 7:12 | 15.25 | 17.09 | 21.13 | 25.54 | 30.38 | 35.66 | 15.18 |
| | | 12:12 | 21.52 | 24.12 | 29.82 | 36.05 | 42.89 | 50.33 | 19.05 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 8.97 | 10.06 | 12.43 | 15.03 | 17.88 | 20.99 | 11.10 |
| | | 5:12 | 12.46 | 13.97 | 17.27 | 20.88 | 24.84 | 29.15 | 15.73 |
| | | 7:12 | 17.67 | 19.80 | 24.48 | 29.59 | 35.21 | 41.32 | 17.82 |
| | | 12:12 | 27.27 | 30.56 | 37.79 | 45.68 | 54.35 | 63.78 | 23.62 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 9.30 | 10.43 | 12.89 | 15.58 | 18.54 | 21.76 | 11.50 |
| | | 5:12 | 12.91 | 14.47 | 17.90 | 21.63 | 25.74 | 30.20 | 17.67 |
| | | 7:12 | 20.14 | 22.58 | 27.91 | 33.74 | 40.15 | 47.11 | 20.46 |
| | | 12:12 | 33.19 | 37.19 | 45.99 | 55.59 | 66.14 | 77.62 | 28.19 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound force per linear foot = 0.146kN/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.88 Pa.

a. Tabulated lengths were derived by calculating design wind pressures in accordance with Figure 6-10 of ASCE 7 for a building with a mean roof height of 35 feet (10 668 mm). For wind perpendicular to the ridge, the effects of a 2-foot (610 mm) overhang on each endwall are included. The design pressures were used to calculate forces to be resisted by solid wall segments in each endwall [Table R611.7(1A) or R611.7(1B)] or sidewall [Table R611.7(1C)], as appropriate. The forces to be resisted by each wall line were then divided by the default design strength of 840 pounds per linear foot (12.26 kN/m) of length to determine the required solid wall length. The actual mean roof height of the building shall not exceed the least horizontal dimension of the building.

b. Tabulated lengths in the “minimum” column are based on the requirement of Section 6.1.4.1 of ASCE 7 that the main wind-force resisting system be designed for a minimum service level force of 10 psf multiplied by the area of the building projected onto a vertical plane normal to the assumed wind direction. Tabulated lengths in shaded cells are less than the “minimum” value. Where the minimum controls, it is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Notes c, d and e. See Section R611.7.1.1.

c. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the appropriate factor, $R_1$, from Table R611.7(2). The reduced length shall not be less than the “minimum” value shown in the table.

d. Tabulated lengths for “one story or top story of two-story” are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet. Tabulated lengths for “first story of two-story” are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor-to-ceiling heights less than assumed, use the lengths in Table R611.7(1A), (1B) or (1C), or multiply the value in the table by the reduction factor, $R_2$, from Table R611.7(3).

e. Tabulated lengths are based on the default design shear strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of solid wall segment. The tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable reduction factor for design strength, $R_3$, from Table R611.7(4).

f. The reduction factors, $R_1$, $R_2$, and $R_3$, in Tables R611.7(2), R611.7(3), and R611.7(4), respectively, are permitted to be compounded, subject to the limitations of Note b. However, the minimum number and minimum length of solid walls segments in each wall line shall comply with Sections R611.7.1 and R611.7.2.1, respectively.

g. For intermediate values of sidewall length, endwall length, roof slope and basic wind speed, use the next higher value, or determine by interpolation.

**TABLE R611.7(1C)**
**UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR SIDEWALL FOR WIND PARALLEL TO RIDGE[a,c,d,e,f,g]**

| SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet) | ENDWALL LENGTH (feet) | ROOF SLOPE | UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure | | | | | | |
| | | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B | Minimum[b] |
| | | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C | |
| | | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D | |
| | | | One story or top story of two-story | | | | | | |
| < 30 | 15 | < 1:12 | 0.95 | 1.06 | 1.31 | 1.59 | 1.89 | 2.22 | 0.90 |
| | | 5:12 | 1.13 | 1.26 | 1.56 | 1.88 | 2.24 | 2.63 | 1.08 |
| | | 7:12 | 1.21 | 1.35 | 1.67 | 2.02 | 2.40 | 2.82 | 1.17 |
| | | 12:12 | 1.43 | 1.60 | 1.98 | 2.39 | 2.85 | 3.34 | 1.39 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 1.77 | 1.98 | 2.45 | 2.96 | 3.53 | 4.14 | 1.90 |
| | | 5:12 | 2.38 | 2.67 | 3.30 | 3.99 | 4.75 | 5.57 | 2.62 |
| | | 7:12 | 2.66 | 2.98 | 3.69 | 4.46 | 5.31 | 6.23 | 2.95 |
| | | 12:12 | 3.43 | 3.85 | 4.76 | 5.75 | 6.84 | 8.03 | 3.86 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 2.65 | 2.97 | 3.67 | 4.43 | 5.27 | 6.19 | 2.99 |
| | | 5:12 | 3.98 | 4.46 | 5.51 | 6.66 | 7.93 | 9.31 | 4.62 |
| | | 7:12 | 4.58 | 5.14 | 6.35 | 7.68 | 9.14 | 10.72 | 5.36 |
| | | 12:12 | 6.25 | 7.01 | 8.67 | 10.48 | 12.47 | 14.63 | 7.39 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 3.59 | 4.03 | 4.98 | 6.02 | 7.16 | 8.40 | 4.18 |
| | | 5:12 | 5.93 | 6.65 | 8.22 | 9.93 | 11.82 | 13.87 | 7.07 |
| | | 7:12 | 6.99 | 7.83 | 9.69 | 11.71 | 13.93 | 16.35 | 8.38 |
| | | 12:12 | 9.92 | 11.12 | 13.75 | 16.62 | 19.77 | 23.21 | 12.00 |
| 60 | 45 | < 1:12 | 2.77 | 3.11 | 3.84 | 4.65 | 5.53 | 6.49 | 2.99 |
| | | 5:12 | 4.15 | 4.66 | 5.76 | 6.96 | 8.28 | 9.72 | 4.62 |
| | | 7:12 | 4.78 | 5.36 | 6.63 | 8.01 | 9.53 | 11.18 | 5.36 |
| | | 12:12 | 6.51 | 7.30 | 9.03 | 10.91 | 12.98 | 15.23 | 7.39 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 3.86 | 4.32 | 5.35 | 6.46 | 7.69 | 9.02 | 4.18 |
| | | 5:12 | 6.31 | 7.08 | 8.75 | 10.57 | 12.58 | 14.76 | 7.07 |
| | | 7:12 | 7.43 | 8.32 | 10.29 | 12.44 | 14.80 | 17.37 | 8.38 |
| | | 12:12 | 10.51 | 11.78 | 14.56 | 17.60 | 20.94 | 24.57 | 12.00 |
| First story of two-story | | | | | | | | | |
| < 30 | 15 | < 1:12 | 2.65 | 2.97 | 3.67 | 4.44 | 5.28 | 6.20 | 2.52 |
| | | 5:12 | 2.83 | 3.17 | 3.92 | 4.74 | 5.64 | 6.62 | 2.70 |
| | | 7:12 | 2.91 | 3.26 | 4.03 | 4.87 | 5.80 | 6.80 | 2.79 |
| | | 12:12 | 3.13 | 3.51 | 4.34 | 5.25 | 6.24 | 7.32 | 3.01 |
| | 30 | < 1:12 | 4.81 | 5.39 | 6.67 | 8.06 | 9.59 | 11.25 | 5.14 |
| | | 5:12 | 5.42 | 6.08 | 7.52 | 9.09 | 10.81 | 12.69 | 5.86 |
| | | 7:12 | 5.70 | 6.39 | 7.90 | 9.55 | 11.37 | 13.34 | 6.19 |
| | | 12:12 | 6.47 | 7.25 | 8.97 | 10.84 | 12.90 | 15.14 | 7.10 |
| | 45 | < 1:12 | 6.99 | 7.83 | 9.69 | 11.71 | 13.93 | 16.35 | 7.85 |
| | | 5:12 | 8.32 | 9.33 | 11.53 | 13.94 | 16.59 | 19.47 | 9.48 |
| | | 7:12 | 8.93 | 10.01 | 12.37 | 14.95 | 17.79 | 20.88 | 10.21 |
| | | 12:12 | 10.60 | 11.88 | 14.69 | 17.75 | 21.13 | 24.79 | 12.25 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 9.23 | 10.35 | 12.79 | 15.46 | 18.40 | 21.59 | 10.65 |
| | | 5:12 | 11.57 | 12.97 | 16.03 | 19.38 | 23.06 | 27.06 | 13.54 |
| | | 7:12 | 12.63 | 14.15 | 17.50 | 21.15 | 25.17 | 29.54 | 14.85 |
| | | 12:12 | 15.56 | 17.44 | 21.56 | 26.06 | 31.01 | 36.39 | 18.48 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.7(1C)—continued**
**UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN EACH EXTERIOR ENDWALL FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE FIRST STORY OF TWO-STORY[a,c,d,e,f,g]**

| SIDEWALL LENGTH (feet) | ENDWALL LENGTH (feet) | ROOF SLOPE | UNREDUCED LENGTH, *UR*, OF SOLID WALL REQUIRED IN ENDWALLS FOR WIND PERPENDICULAR TO RIDGE (feet) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Basic Wind Speed (mph) Exposure | | | | | | |
| | | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B | |
| | | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C | |
| | | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D | Minimum[b] |
| 60 | 45 | < 1:12 | 7.34 | 8.22 | 10.17 | 12.29 | 14.62 | 17.16 | 7.85 |
| | | 5:12 | 8.72 | 9.77 | 12.08 | 14.60 | 17.37 | 20.39 | 9.48 |
| | | 7:12 | 9.34 | 10.47 | 12.95 | 15.65 | 18.62 | 21.85 | 10.21 |
| | | 12:12 | 11.08 | 12.41 | 15.35 | 18.55 | 22.07 | 25.90 | 12.25 |
| | 60 | < 1:12 | 9.94 | 11.14 | 13.77 | 16.65 | 19.81 | 23.25 | 10.65 |
| | | 5:12 | 12.40 | 13.89 | 17.18 | 20.76 | 24.70 | 28.99 | 13.54 |
| | | 7:12 | 13.51 | 15.14 | 18.72 | 22.63 | 26.92 | 31.60 | 14.85 |
| | | 12:12 | 16.59 | 18.59 | 22.99 | 27.79 | 33.06 | 38.80 | 18.48 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound force per linear foot = 0.146kN/m, 1 pound per square foot = 47.88 Pa.

a. Tabulated lengths were derived by calculating design wind pressures in accordance with Figure 6-10 of ASCE 7 for a building with a mean roof height of 35 feet (10 668 mm). For wind perpendicular to the ridge, the effects of a 2-foot (610 mm) overhang on each endwall are included. The design pressures were used to calculate forces to be resisted by solid wall segments in each endwall [Table R611.7(1A) or R611.7(1B)] or sidewall [(Table R611.7(1C)], as appropriate. The forces to be resisted by each wall line were then divided by the default design strength of 840 pounds per linear foot (12.26 kN/m) of length to determine the required solid wall length. The actual mean roof height of the building shall not exceed the least horizontal dimension of the building.

b. Tabulated lengths in the "minimum" column are based on the requirement of Section 6.1.4.1 of ASCE 7 that the main wind-force resisting system be designed for a minimum service level force of 10 psf multiplied by the area of the building projected onto a vertical plane normal to the assumed wind direction. Tabulated lengths in shaded cells are less than the "minimum" value. Where the minimum controls, it is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Notes c, d and e. See Section R611.7.1.1.

c. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than 35 feet, tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the appropriate factor, $R_1$, from Table R611.7(2). The reduced length shall not be less than the "minimum" value shown in the table.

d. Tabulated lengths for "one story or top story of two-story" are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet. Tabulated lengths for "first story of two-story" are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor-to-ceiling heights less than assumed, use the lengths in Table R611.7(1A), (1B) or (1C), or multiply the value in the table by the reduction factor, $R_2$, from Table R611.7(3).

e. Tabulated lengths are based on the default design shear strength of 840 pounds per linear foot of solid wall segment. The tabulated lengths are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the applicable reduction factor for design strength, $R_3$, from Table R611.7(4).

f. The reduction factors, $R_1$, $R_2$, and $R_3$, in Tables R611.7(2), R611.7(3), and R611.7(4), respectively, are permitted to be compounded, subject to the limitations of Note b. However, the minimum number and minimum length of solid walls segments in each wall line shall comply with Sections R611.7.1 and R611.7.2.1, respectively.

g. For intermediate values of sidewall length, endwall length, roof slope and basic wind speed, use the next higher value, or determine by interpolation.

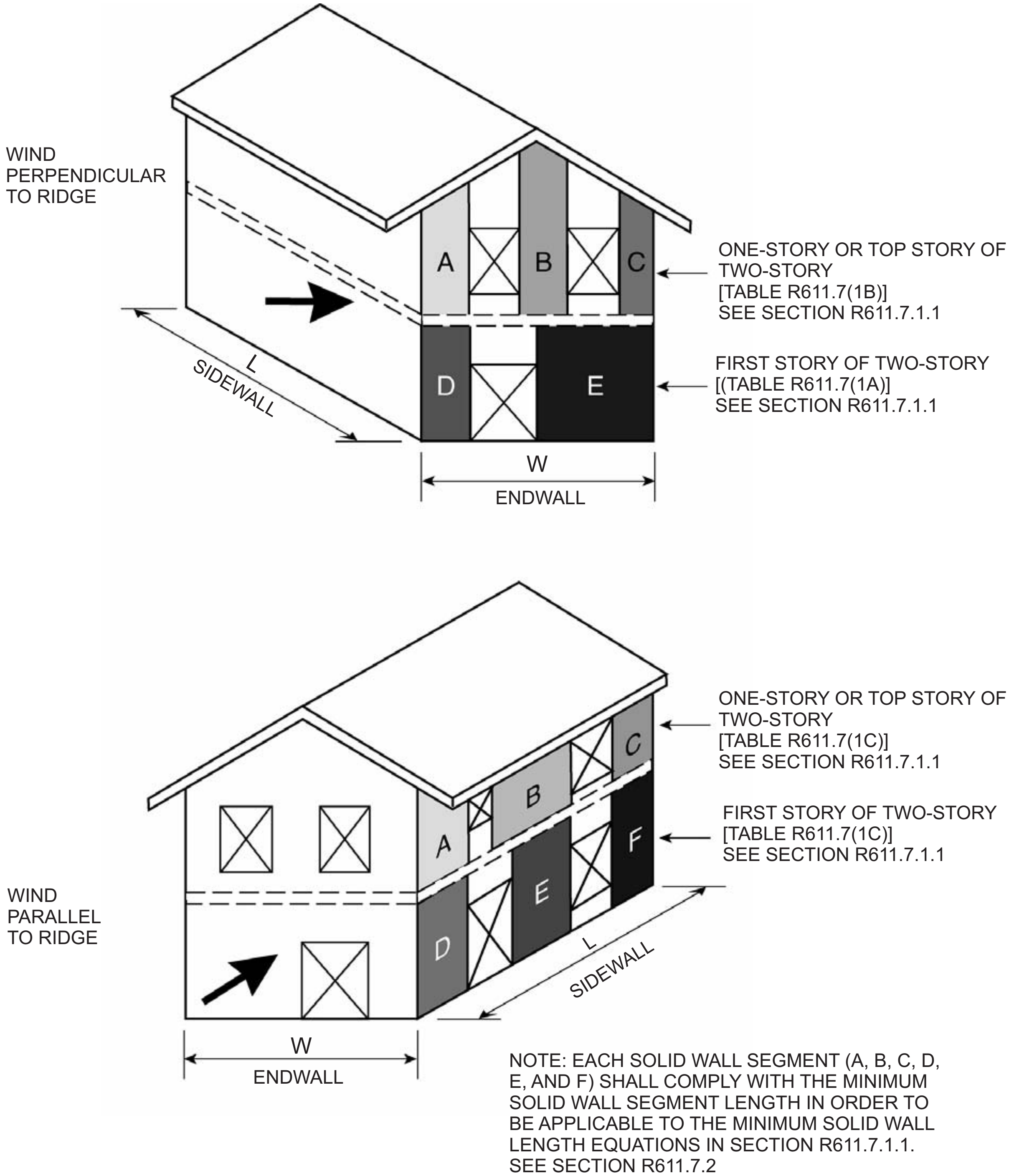
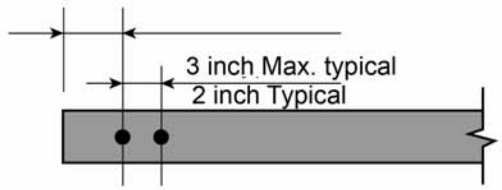
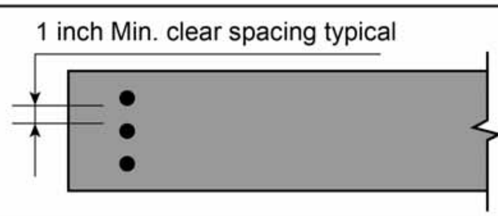
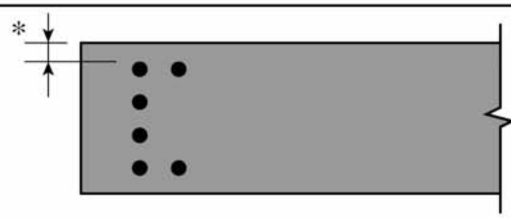



**FIGURE R611.7(1)**
**MINIMUM SOLID WALL LENGTH**

| DETAIL NO. | NOM. WALL THICKNESS, IN. | REINFORCEMENT LAYOUT AT ENDS OF SOLID WALL SEGMENTS |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 4 |   |
| 2 | 4 |  |
| 3 | 6<br>8<br>10 |  |
| 4 | 6 |  |
| 5 | 8 |   |
| 6 | 8 |  |
| 7 | 10 |  |
| 8 | 10 |   |

* For minimum cover see Section R611.5.4.1

**NOTES**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1. See Table R611.7(4) for use of details.
2. Minimum length of solid wall segment and size and grade of reinforcement in each end of each solid wall segment shall be determined from Table R611.7(4).
3. For minimum cover requirements, see Section R611.5.4.1.
4. For details 3 - 8 where two or more bars are in the same row parallel to the end of the segment, place bars so that corner bars are as close to the sides of the wall segments as minimum cover requirements of Section R611.5.4.1 will permit.
5. For waffle- and screen-grid walls, each end of each solid wall segment shall have rectangular flanges. In the through-the-wall dimension, the flange shall not be less than $5^1/_2$ inches for 6-inch nominal waffle- and screen-grid forms, and not less than $7^1/_2$ inches for 8-inch nominal waffle-grid forms. In the in-plane dimension, flanges shall be long enough to accommodate the vertical reinforcement required by the layout detail selected and provide the cover required by Section R611.5.4.1 If necessary to achieve the required dimensions, form material shall be removed or flat wall forms are permitted. See Table R611.7(4), Note e.

**FIGURE R611.7(2)**
**VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT LAYOUT DETAIL**

**TABLE R611.7(2)**
**REDUCTION FACTOR, $R_1$, FOR BUILDINGS WITH MEAN ROOF HEIGHT LESS THAN 35 FEET[a]**

| MEAN ROOF HEIGHT[b,c] (feet) | REDUCTION FACTOR $R_1$, FOR MEAN ROOF HEIGHT | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Exposure category | | |
| | B | C | D |
| < 15 | 0.96 | 0.84 | 0.87 |
| 20 | 0.96 | 0.89 | 0.91 |
| 25 | 0.96 | 0.93 | 0.94 |
| 30 | 0.96 | 0.97 | 0.98 |
| 35 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See Section R611.7.1.1 and note c to Table R611.7(1A) for application of reduction factors in this table. This reduction is not permitted for "minimum" values.

b. For intermediate values of mean roof height, use the factor for the next greater height, or determine by interpolation.

c. Mean roof height is the average of the roof eave height and height of the highest point on the roof surface, except that for roof slopes of less than or equal to $2^1/_8$:12 (10 degrees), the mean roof height is permitted to be taken as the roof eave height.

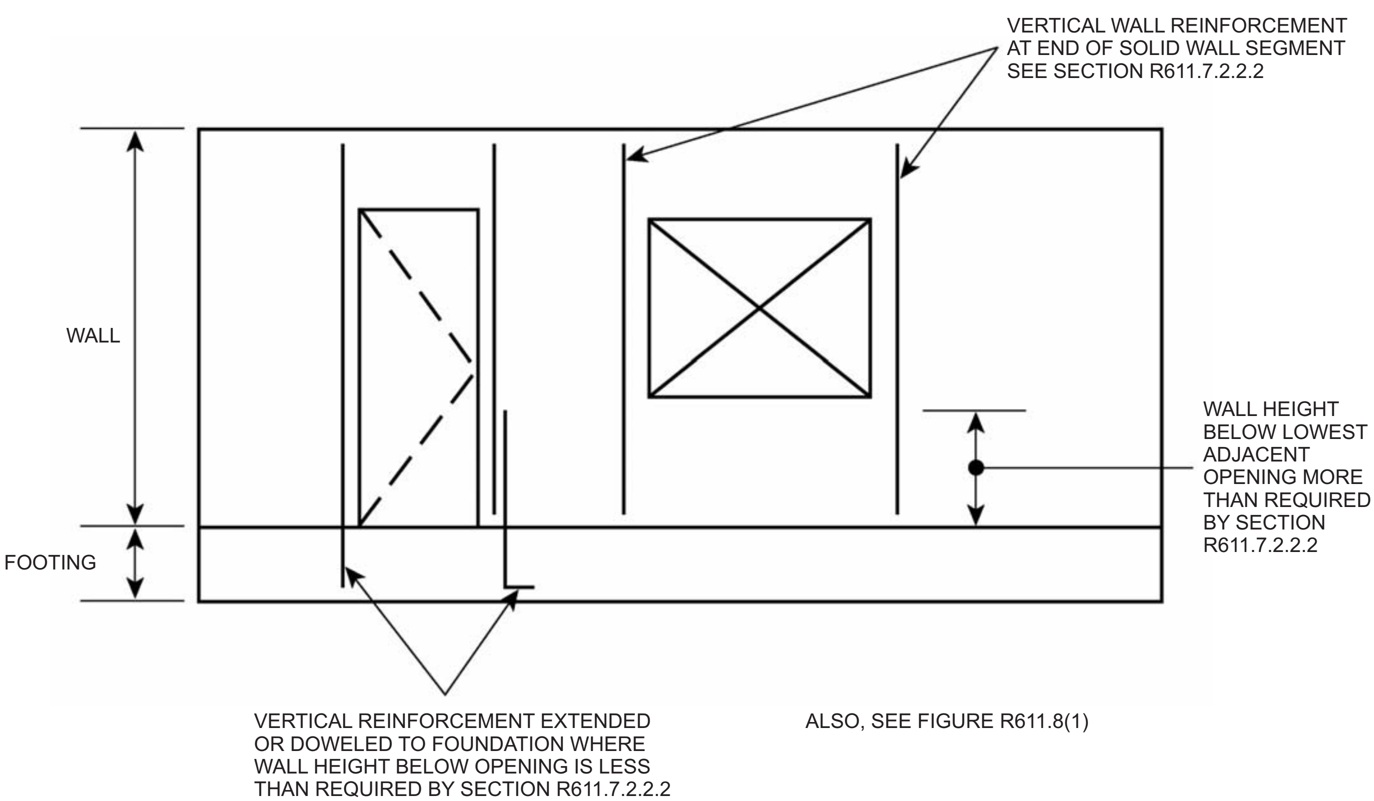



**FIGURE R611.7(3)**
**VERTICAL WALL REINFORCEMENT ADJACENT TO WALL OPENINGS**

**TABLE R611.7(3)**
**REDUCTION FACTOR, $R_2$, FOR FLOOR-TO-CEILING WALL HEIGHTS LESS THAN 10 FEET[a,b]**

| STORY UNDER CONSIDERATION | FLOOR-TO-CEILING HEIGHT[c] (feet) | ENDWALL LENGTH (feet) | ROOF SLOPE | REDUCTION FACTOR, $R_2$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Endwalls—for wind perpendicular to ridge** | | | | |
| One story or top story of two-story | 8 | 15 | < 5:12 | 0.83 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.90 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.94 |
| | | 60 | < 5:12 | 0.83 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.95 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.98 |
| First story of two-story | 16 combined first and second story | 15 | < 5:12 | 0.83 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.86 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.89 |
| | | 60 | < 5:12 | 0.83 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.91 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.95 |
| **Sidewalls—for wind parallel to ridge** | | | | |
| One story or top story of two-story | 8 | 15 | < 1:12 | 0.84 |
| | | | 5:12 | 0.87 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.88 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.89 |
| | | 60 | < 1:12 | 0.86 |
| | | | 5:12 | 0.92 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.93 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.95 |
| First story of two-story | 16 combined first and second story | 15 | < 1:12 | 0.83 |
| | | | 5:12 | 0.84 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.85 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.86 |
| | | 60 | < 1:12 | 0.84 |
| | | | 5:12 | 0.87 |
| | | | 7:12 | 0.88 |
| | | | 12:12 | 0.90 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See Section R611.7.1.1 and Note d to Table R611.7(1A) for application of reduction factors in this table.

b. For intermediate values of endwall length, and/or roof slope, use the next higher value, or determine by interpolation.

c. Tabulated values in Table R611.7(1A) and (1C) for "one story or top story of two-story" are based on a floor-to-ceiling height of 10 feet (3048 mm). Tabulated values in Table R611.7(1B) and (1C) for "first story of two-story" are based on floor-to-ceiling heights of 10 feet each for the first and second story. For floor to ceiling heights between those shown in this table and those assumed in Table R611.7(1A), (1B) or (1C), use the solid wall lengths in Table R611.7(1A), (1B) or (1C), or determine the reduction factor by interpolating between 1.0 and the factor shown in this table.

**TABLE R611.7(4)**
**REDUCTION FACTOR FOR DESIGN STRENGTH, $R_3$, FOR FLAT, WAFFLE- AND SCREEN-GRID WALLS[a,c]**

| NOMINAL THICKNESS OF WALL (inches) | VERTICAL BARS AT EACH END OF SOLID WALL SEGMENT | | VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT LAYOUT DETAIL [see Figure R611.7(2)] | REDUCTION FACTOR, $R_3$, FOR LENGTH OF SOLID WALL | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement provided | | | |
| | | | | No | | Yes[d] | |
| | Number of bars | Bar size | | 40,000[b] | 60,000[b] | 40,000[b] | 60,000[b] |
| Flat walls | | | | | | | |
| 4 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 0.74 | 0.61 | 0.74 | 0.50 |
| | 3 | 4 | 2 | 0.61 | 0.61 | 0.52 | 0.27 |
| | 2 | 5 | 1 | 0.61 | 0.61 | 0.48 | 0.25 |
| | 3 | 5 | 2 | 0.61 | 0.61 | 0.26 | 0.18 |
| 6 | 2 | 4 | 3 | 0.70 | 0.48 | 0.70 | 0.48 |
| | 3 | 4 | 4 | 0.49 | 0.38 | 0.49 | 0.33 |
| | 2 | 5 | 3 | 0.46 | 0.38 | 0.46 | 0.31 |
| | 3 | 5 | 4 | 0.38 | 0.38 | 0.32 | 0.16 |
| 8 | 2 | 4 | 3 | 0.70 | 0.47 | 0.70 | 0.47 |
| | 3 | 4 | 5 | 0.47 | 0.32 | 0.47 | 0.32 |
| | 2 | 5 | 3 | 0.45 | 0.31 | 0.45 | 0.31 |
| | 4 | 4 | 6 | 0.36 | 0.28 | 0.36 | 0.25 |
| | 3 | 5 | 5 | 0.31 | 0.28 | 0.31 | 0.16 |
| | 4 | 5 | 6 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.24 | 0.12 |
| 10 | 2 | 4 | 3 | 0.70 | 0.47 | 0.70 | 0.47 |
| | 2 | 5 | 3 | 0.45 | 0.30 | 0.45 | 0.30 |
| | 4 | 4 | 7 | 0.36 | 0.25 | 0.36 | 0.25 |
| | 6 | 4 | 8 | 0.25 | 0.22 | 0.25 | 0.13 |
| | 4 | 5 | 7 | 0.24 | 0.22 | 0.24 | 0.12 |
| | 6 | 5 | 8 | 0.22 | 0.22 | 0.12 | 0.08 |
| Waffle-grid walls[e] | | | | | | | |
| 6 | 2 | 4 | 3 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.70 | 0.48 |
| | 3 | 4 | 4 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.49 | 0.25 |
| | 2 | 5 | 3 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.46 | 0.23 |
| | 3 | 5 | 4 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.24 | 0.16 |
| 8 | 2 | 4 | 3 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.70 | 0.47 |
| | 3 | 4 | 5 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.47 | 0.24 |
| | 2 | 5 | 3 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.45 | 0.23 |
| | 4 | 4 | 6 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.36 | 0.18 |
| | 3 | 5 | 5 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.23 | 0.16 |
| | 4 | 5 | 6 | 0.78 | 0.78 | 0.18 | 0.13 |
| Screen-grid walls[e] | | | | | | | |
| 6 | 2 | 4 | 3 | 0.93 | 0.93 | 0.70 | 0.48 |
| | 3 | 4 | 4 | 0.93 | 0.93 | 0.49 | 0.25 |
| | 2 | 5 | 3 | 0.93 | 0.93 | 0.46 | 0.23 |
| | 3 | 5 | 4 | 0.93 | 0.93 | 0.24 | 0.16 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1,000 pounds per square inch = 6.895 MPa.

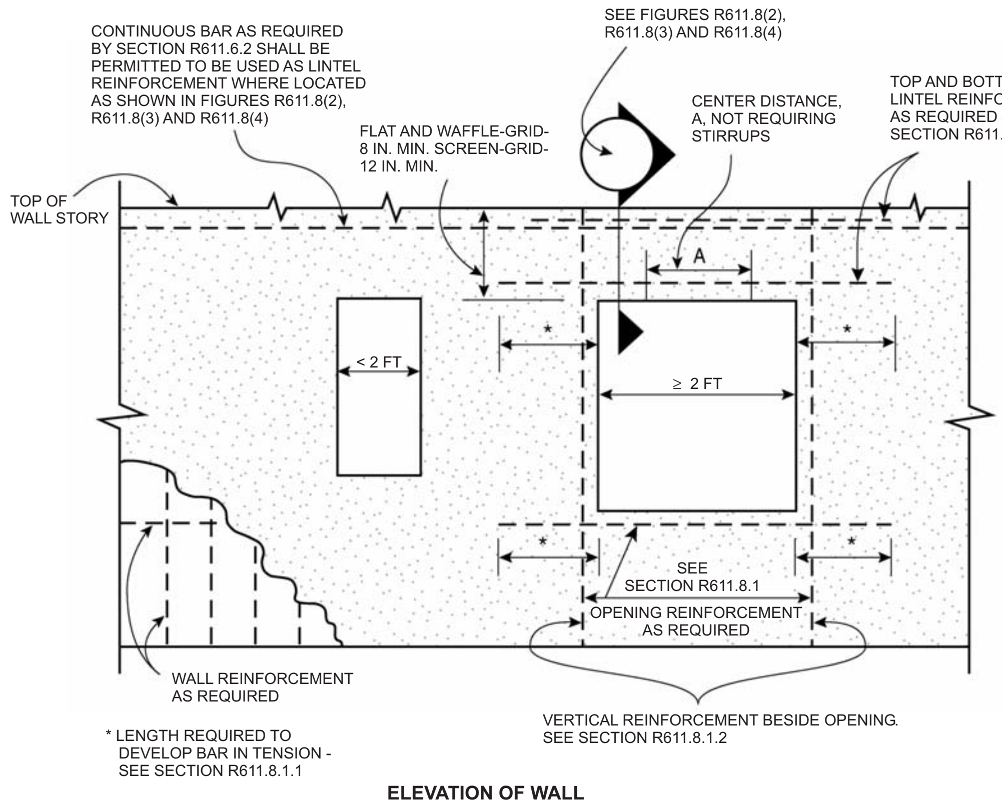
a. See note e to Table R611.7(1A) for application of adjustment factors in this table.

b. Yield strength in pounds per square inch of vertical wall reinforcement at ends of solid wall segments.

c. Values are based on concrete with a specified compressive strength, $f'_c$, of 2,500 psi. Where concrete with $f'_c$ of not less than 3,000 psi is used, values in shaded cells are permitted to be decreased by multiplying by 0.91.

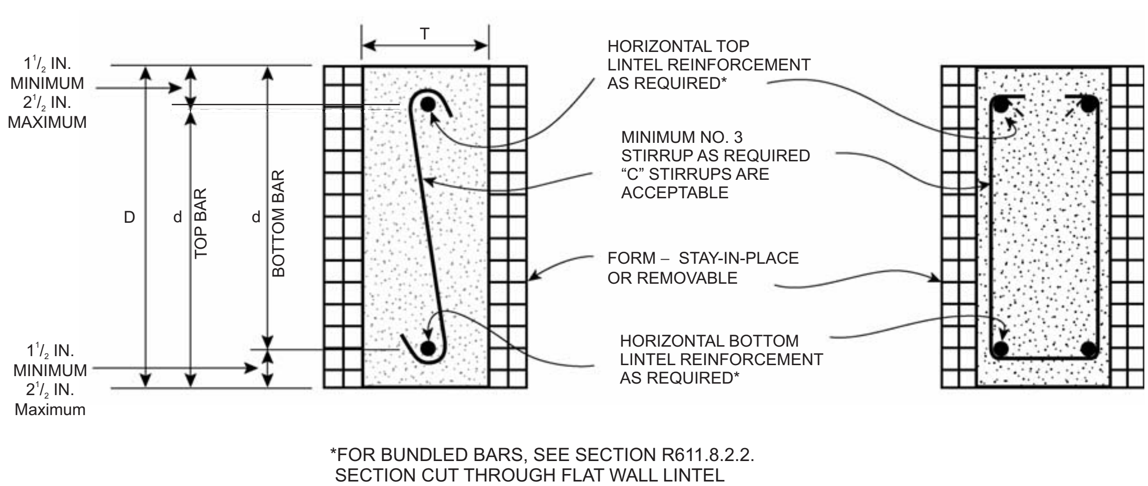
d. Horizontal and vertical shear reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section R611.7.2.2.

e. Each end of each solid wall segment shall have rectangular flanges. In the through-the-wall dimension, the flange shall not be less than $5^1/_2$ inches for 6-inch nominal waffle- and screen-grid walls, and not less than $7^1/_2$ inches for 8-inch nominal waffle-grid walls. In the in-plane dimension, flanges shall be long enough to accommodate the vertical reinforcement required by the layout detail selected from Figure R611.7(2) and provide the cover required by Section R611.5.4.1. If necessary to achieve the required dimensions, form material shall be removed or use of flat wall forms is permitted.



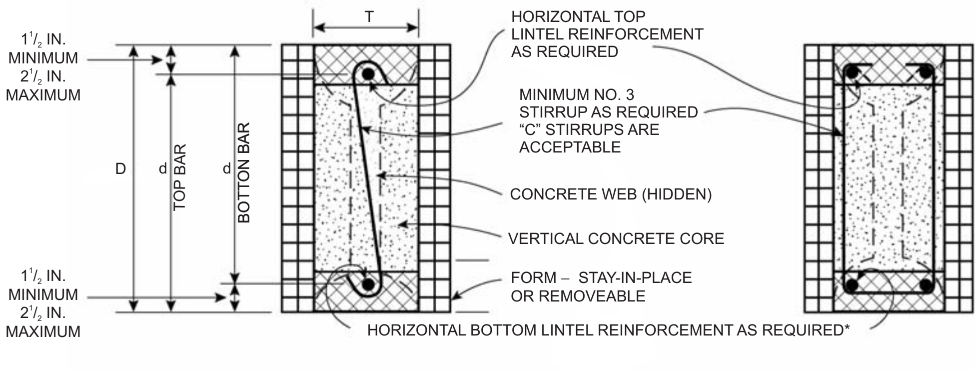

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R611.8(1)**
**REINFORCEMENT OF OPENINGS**

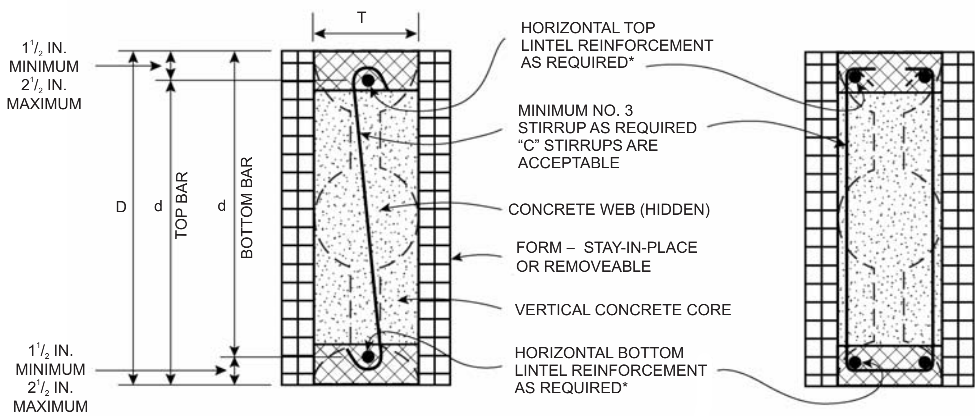



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R611.8(2)**
**LINTEL FOR FLAT WALLS**




(a) SINGLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A WAFFLE-GRID LINTEL




(b) DOUBLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A WAFFLE-GRID LINTEL

*FOR BUNDLED BARS, SEE SECTION R611.8.2.2.

NOTE: CROSS-HATCHING REPRESENTS THE AREA IN WHICH FORM MATERIAL SHALL BE REMOVED, IF NECESSARY, TO CREATE FLANGES CONTINUOUS THE LENGTH OF THE LINTEL. FLANGES SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM THICKNESS OF 3 IN., AND A MINIMUM WIDTH OF 5 IN. AND 7 IN. IN 6 IN. NOMINAL AND 8 IN. NOMINAL WAFFLE-GRID WALLS, RESPECTIVELY. SEE NOTE a TO TABLES R611.8(6) AND R611.8(10).

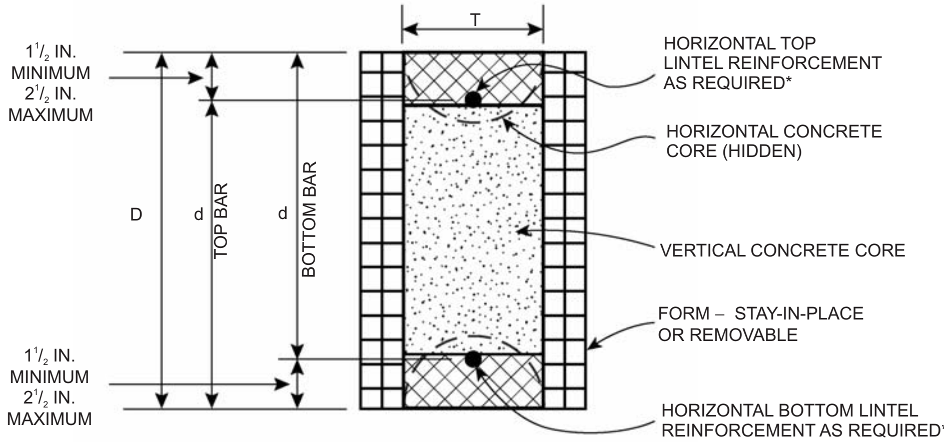
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R611.8(3)**
**LINTELS FOR WAFFLE-GRID WALLS**

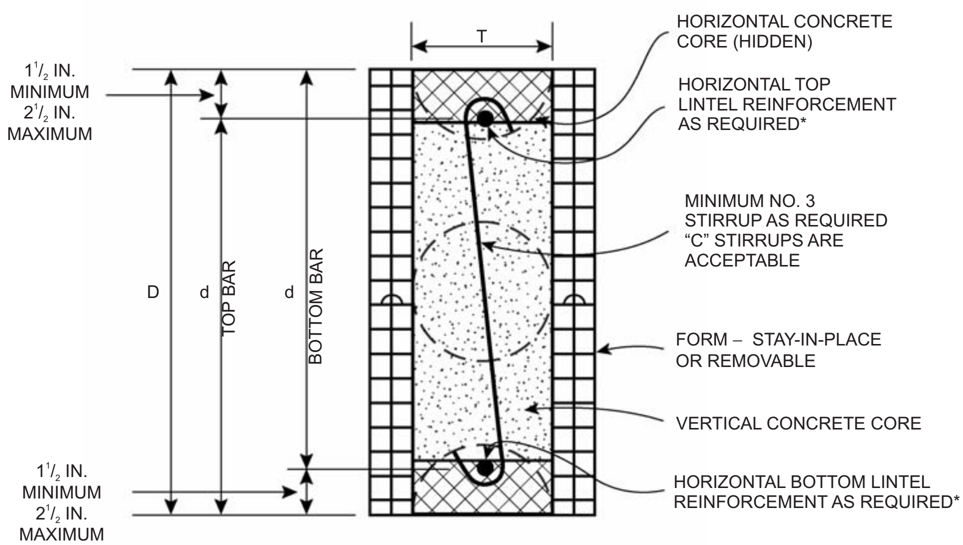
**R611.8.2.2 Bundled bars in lintels.** It is permitted to bundle two bars in contact with each other in lintels if all of the following are observed:

1. Bars no larger than No. 6 are bundled.
2. Where the wall thickness is not sufficient to provide not less than 3 inches (76 mm) of clear space beside bars (total on both sides) oriented horizontally in a bundle, the bundled bars shall be oriented in a vertical plane.
3. Where vertically oriented bundled bars terminate with standard hooks to develop the bars in tension beyond the support (see Section R611.5.4.4), the hook extensions shall be staggered to provide a minimum of one inch (25 mm) clear spacing between the extensions.
4. Bundled bars shall not be lap spliced within the lintel span and the length on each end of the lintel that is required to develop the bars in tension.
5. Bundled bars shall be enclosed within stirrups throughout the length of the lintel. Stirrups and the installation thereof shall comply with Section R611.8.2.1.

**R611.8.2.3 Lintels without stirrups designed for nonload-bearing conditions.** The maximum clear span of lintels without stirrups designed for nonload-bearing conditions of Table R611.8(1).1 shall be determined in accordance with this section. The maximum clear span of lintels without stirrups in flat walls shall be determined in accordance with Table R611.8(9), and the maximum clear span of lintels without stirrups in walls of waffle-grid or screen-grid construction shall be determined in accordance with Table R611.8(10).




(a) SINGLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A SCREEN-GRID LINTEL




(b) DOUBLE FORM HEIGHT SECTION CUT THROUGH VERTICAL CORE OF A SCREEN-GRID LINTEL

*FOR BUNDLED BARS, SEE SECTION R611.8.2.2.

NOTE: CROSS-HATCHING REPRESENTS THE AREA IN WHICH FORM MATERIAL SHALL BE REMOVED, IF NECESSARY, TO CREATE FLANGES CONTINUOUS THE LENGTH OF THE LINTEL. FLANGES SHALL HAVE A MINIMUM THICKNESS OF 2.5 IN. AND A MINIMUM WIDTH OF 5 IN. SEE NOTE a TO TABLES R611.8(8) AND R611.8(10).

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R611.8(4)**
**LINTELS FOR SCREEN-GRID WALLS**

**TABLE R611.8(1)**
**LINTEL DESIGN LOADING CONDITIONS[a, b, d]**

| DESCRIPTION OF LOADS AND OPENINGS ABOVE INFLUENCING DESIGN OF LINTEL | | | DESIGN LOAD CONDITION[c] |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Opening in wall of top story of two-story building, or first story of one-story building** | | | |
| Wall supporting loads from roof, including attic floor, if applicable, and | Top of lintel equal to or less than W/2 below top of wall | | 2 |
| | Top of lintel greater than W/2 below top of wall | | NLB |
| Wall not supporting loads from roof or attic floor | | | NLB |
| **Opening in wall of first story of two-story building where wall immediately above is of concrete construction, or opening in basement wall of one-story building where wall immediately above is of concrete construction** | | | |
| LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, and | Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above | | 1 |
| | Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and | Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above | 1 |
| | | Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above | 4 |
| LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger more than W/2 above top of lintel | | | NLB |
| NLB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, or no ledger board, and | Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above | | NLB |
| | Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and | Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above | NLB |
| | | Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above | 1 |
| **Opening in basement wall of two-story building where walls of two stories above are of concrete construction** | | | |
| LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, and | Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above | | 1 |
| | Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and | Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above | 1 |
| | | Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above | 5 |
| LB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger more than W/2 above top of lintel | | | NLB |
| NLB ledger board mounted to side of wall with bottom of ledger less than or equal to W/2 above top of lintel, or no ledger board, and | Top of lintel greater than W/2 below bottom of opening in story above | | NLB |
| | Top of lintel less than or equal to W/2 below bottom of opening in story above, and | Opening is entirely within the footprint of the opening in the story above | NLB |
| | | Opening is partially within the footprint of the opening in the story above | 1 |
| **Opening in wall of first story of two-story building where wall immediately above is of light framed construction, or opening in basement wall of one-story building, where wall immediately above is of light framed construction** | | | |
| Wall supporting loads from roof, second floor and top-story wall of light-framed construction, and | Top of lintel equal to or less than W/2 below top of wall | | 3 |
| | Top of lintel greater than W/2 below top of wall | | NLB |
| Wall not supporting loads from roof or second floor | | | NLB |

a. LB means load bearing, NLB means nonload-bearing, and W means width of opening.
b. Footprint is the area of the wall below an opening in the story above, bounded by the bottom of the opening and vertical lines extending downward from the edges of the opening.
c. For design loading condition “NLB” see Tables R611.8(9) and R611.8(10). For all other design loading conditions see Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(8).
d. A NLB ledger board is a ledger attached to a wall that is parallel to the span of the floor, roof or ceiling framing that supports the edge of the floor, ceiling or roof.

**TABLE R611.8(2)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 4-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D^g$ (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 40 | | 5 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 3-2 | 3-4 | 2-4 | 2-6 | 2-2 | 2-1 | 2-0 | 2-0 | 2-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-2 | 5-5 | 4-1 | 4-3 | 3-10 | 3-7 | 3-4 | 2-9 | 2-9 |
| | | 60,000 | 6-2 | 6-5 | 4-11 | 5-1 | 4-6 | 4-2 | 3-8 | 2-11 | 2-10 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 6-3 | 6-7 | 5-0 | 5-2 | 4-6 | 4-2 | 3-8 | 2-11 | 2-10 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 1-1 | 1-2 | 0-8 | 0-9 | 0-7 | 0-6 | 0-5 | 0-4 | 0-4 |
| 12 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 3-4 | 3-7 | 2-9 | 2-11 | 2-8 | 2-6 | 2-5 | 2-2 | 2-2 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 6-7 | 7-0 | 5-4 | 5-7 | 5-0 | 4-9 | 4-4 | 3-8 | 3-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-11 | 8-6 | 6-6 | 6-9 | 6-0 | 5-9 | 5-3 | 4-5 | 4-4 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-1 | 8-8 | 6-7 | 6-10 | 6-2 | 5-10 | 5-4 | 4-6 | 4-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-8 | 10-4 | 7-11 | 8-2 | 7-4 | 6-11 | 6-2 | 4-10 | 4-8 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-1 | 9-8 | 7-4 | 7-8 | 6-10 | 6-6 | 6-0 | 4-10 | 4-8 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 1-8 | 1-11 | 1-1 | 1-3 | 1-0 | 0-11 | 0-9 | 0-6 | 0-6 |
| 16 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 4-7 | 5-0 | 3-11 | 4-0 | 3-8 | 3-7 | 3-4 | 3-1 | 3-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 6-8 | 7-3 | 5-6 | 5-9 | 5-2 | 4-11 | 4-6 | 3-10 | 3-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-3 | 10-1 | 7-9 | 8-0 | 7-2 | 6-10 | 6-3 | 5-4 | 5-2 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 9-6 | 10-4 | 7-10 | 8-2 | 7-4 | 6-11 | 6-5 | 5-5 | 5-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-5 | 12-5 | 9-6 | 9-10 | 8-10 | 8-4 | 7-9 | 6-6 | 6-4 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 10-7 | 11-7 | 8-10 | 9-2 | 8-3 | 7-9 | 7-2 | 6-1 | 5-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-9 | 13-10 | 10-7 | 11-0 | 9-10 | 9-4 | 8-7 | 6-9 | 6-6 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 13-0 | 14-1 | 10-9 | 11-2 | 9-11 | 9-2 | 8-2 | 6-6 | 6-3 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance[k, l] | | 2-3 | 2-8 | 1-7 | 1-8 | 1-4 | 1-3 | 1-0 | 0-9 | 0-8 |
| 20 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 5-9 | 6-5 | 5-0 | 5-2 | 4-9 | 4-7 | 4-4 | 3-11 | 3-11 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 7-5 | 8-2 | 6-3 | 6-6 | 5-10 | 5-7 | 5-1 | 4-4 | 4-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-0 | 10-0 | 7-8 | 7-11 | 7-1 | 6-9 | 6-3 | 5-3 | 5-1 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 9-2 | 10-2 | 7-9 | 8-1 | 7-3 | 6-11 | 6-4 | 5-4 | 5-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-9 | 14-2 | 10-10 | 11-3 | 10-1 | 9-7 | 8-10 | 7-5 | 7-3 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 11-10 | 13-2 | 10-1 | 10-5 | 9-4 | 8-11 | 8-2 | 6-11 | 6-9 |
| | | 60,000 | 14-4 | 15-10 | 12-1 | 12-7 | 11-3 | 10-9 | 9-11 | 8-4 | 8-1 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 14-7 | 16-2 | 12-4 | 12-9 | 11-4 | 10-6 | 9-5 | 7-7 | 7-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 17-5 | 19-2 | 14-9 | 15-3 | 13-5 | 12-4 | 11-0 | 8-8 | 8-4 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 16-4 | 18-11 | 12-7 | 13-3 | 11-4 | 10-6 | 9-5 | 7-7 | 7-3 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 2-9 | 3-5 | 2-0 | 2-2 | 1-9 | 1-7 | 1-4 | 0-11 | 0-11 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.8(2)—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 4-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D^g$ (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 24 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 6-11 | 7-9 | 6-1 | 6-3 | 5-9 | 5-7 | 5-3 | 4-9 | 4-8 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 8-0 | 9-0 | 6-11 | 7-2 | 6-5 | 6-2 | 5-8 | 4-9 | 4-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-9 | 11-0 | 8-5 | 8-9 | 7-10 | 7-6 | 6-11 | 5-10 | 5-8 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 10-0 | 11-3 | 8-7 | 8-11 | 8-0 | 7-7 | 7-0 | 5-11 | 5-9 |
| | | 60,000 | 13-11 | 15-8 | 12-0 | 12-5 | 11-2 | 10-7 | 9-10 | 8-3 | 8-0 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 12-11 | 14-6 | 11-2 | 11-6 | 10-5 | 9-10 | 9-1 | 7-8 | 7-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 15-7 | 17-7 | 13-6 | 13-11 | 12-7 | 11-11 | 11-0 | 9-3 | 9-0 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 15-11 | 17-11 | 13-7 | 14-3 | 12-8 | 11-9 | 10-8 | 8-7 | 8-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 19-1 | 21-6 | 16-5 | 17-1 | 15-1 | 14-0 | 12-6 | 9-11 | 9-7 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 17-7 | 21-1 | 14-1 | 14-10 | 12-8 | 11-9 | 10-8 | 8-7 | 8-4 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 3-3 | 4-1 | 2-5 | 2-7 | 2-1 | 1-11 | 1-7 | 1-2 | 1-1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.
b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See note j.
c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section R611.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.
d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.
e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.
f. DR indicates design required.
g. Lintel depth, *D*, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, *D*. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall not be less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than d/2.
j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
k. Center distance, *A*, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, *A*, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

**TABLE R611.8(3)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D^g$ (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 4-2 | 4-8 | 3-1 | 3-3 | 2-10 | 2-6 | 2-3 | 2-0 | 2-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-1 | 5-5 | 4-2 | 4-3 | 3-10 | 3-6 | 3-3 | 2-8 | 2-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 6-2 | 6-7 | 5-0 | 5-2 | 4-8 | 4-2 | 3-11 | 3-3 | 3-2 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 6-3 | 6-8 | 5-1 | 5-3 | 4-9 | 4-3 | 4-0 | 3-3 | 3-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-6 | 8-0 | 6-1 | 6-4 | 5-8 | 5-1 | 4-9 | 3-8 | 3-6 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 7-0 | 7-6 | 5-8 | 5-11 | 5-3 | 4-9 | 4-5 | 3-8 | 3-6 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 1-7 | 1-10 | 1-1 | 1-2 | 0-11 | 0-9 | 0-8 | 0-5 | 0-5 |
| 12 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 4-2 | 4-8 | 3-5 | 3-6 | 3-2 | 2-11 | 2-9 | 2-5 | 2-4 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-7 | 6-1 | 4-8 | 4-10 | 4-4 | 3-11 | 3-8 | 3-0 | 2-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-9 | 8-6 | 6-6 | 6-9 | 6-1 | 5-6 | 5-1 | 4-3 | 4-1 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 7-11 | 8-8 | 6-8 | 6-11 | 6-2 | 5-7 | 5-2 | 4-4 | 4-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-7 | 10-6 | 8-0 | 8-4 | 7-6 | 6-9 | 6-3 | 5-2 | 5-1 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 8-11 | 9-9 | 7-6 | 7-9 | 6-11 | 6-3 | 5-10 | 4-10 | 4-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-8 | 11-9 | 8-12 | 9-4 | 8-4 | 7-6 | 7-0 | 5-10 | 5-8 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 10-11 | 12-0 | 9-2 | 9-6 | 8-6 | 7-8 | 7-2 | 5-6 | 5-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-11 | 14-3 | 10-10 | 11-3 | 10-1 | 9-0 | 8-1 | 6-1 | 5-10 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 12-9 | 14-0 | 10-8 | 11-1 | 9-7 | 8-1 | 7-3 | 5-6 | 5-3 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 2-6 | 3-0 | 1-9 | 1-10 | 1-6 | 1-3 | 1-1 | 0-9 | 0-8 |
| 16 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 5-7 | 6-5 | 4-9 | 4-11 | 4-5 | 4-0 | 3-10 | 3-4 | 3-4 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 6-5 | 7-2 | 5-6 | 5-9 | 5-2 | 4-8 | 4-4 | 3-7 | 3-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-10 | 8-9 | 6-9 | 7-0 | 6-3 | 5-8 | 5-3 | 4-4 | 4-3 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 7-11 | 8-11 | 6-10 | 7-1 | 6-5 | 5-9 | 5-4 | 4-5 | 4-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-1 | 12-6 | 9-7 | 9-11 | 8-11 | 8-0 | 7-6 | 6-2 | 6-0 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 10-3 | 11-7 | 8-10 | 9-2 | 8-3 | 7-6 | 6-11 | 5-9 | 5-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-5 | 14-0 | 10-9 | 11-1 | 10-0 | 9-0 | 8-5 | 7-0 | 6-9 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 12-8 | 14-3 | 10-11 | 11-4 | 10-2 | 9-2 | 8-7 | 6-9 | 6-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 15-2 | 17-1 | 13-1 | 13-7 | 12-3 | 11-0 | 10-3 | 7-11 | 7-7 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 14-11 | 16-9 | 12-8 | 13-4 | 11-4 | 9-8 | 8-8 | 6-9 | 6-6 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 3-3 | 4-1 | 2-5 | 2-7 | 2-1 | 1-9 | 1-6 | 1-0 | 1-0 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.8(3)—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D^g$ (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 6-11 | 8-2 | 6-1 | 6-3 | 5-8 | 5-2 | 4-11 | 4-4 | 4-3 |
| 20 | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-9 | 10-1 | 7-9 | 8-0 | 7-3 | 6-6 | 6-1 | 5-1 | 4-11 |
| 20 | 1-#5 | 60,000 | 10-8 | 12-3 | 9-5 | 9-9 | 8-10 | 8-0 | 7-5 | 6-2 | 6-0 |
| 20 | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-11 | 11-4 | 8-9 | 9-1 | 8-2 | 7-4 | 6-10 | 5-8 | 5-7 |
| 20 | 2-#4 1-#6 | 60,000 | 13-9 | 15-10 | 12-2 | 12-8 | 11-5 | 10-3 | 9-7 | 7-11 | 7-9 |
| 20 | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 14-0 | 16-2 | 12-5 | 12-11 | 11-7 | 10-6 | 9-9 | 7-11 | 7-8 |
| 20 | 2-#5 | 60,000 | 16-11 | 19-6 | 15-0 | 15-6 | 14-0 | 12-7 | 11-9 | 9-1 | 8-9 |
| 20 | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 16-7 | 19-1 | 14-7 | 15-3 | 13-1 | 11-3 | 10-2 | 7-11 | 7-8 |
| 20 | 2-#6 | 60,000 | 19-11 | 22-10 | 17-4 | 18-3 | 15-6 | 13-2 | 11-10 | 9-1 | 8-9 |
| 20 | Center distance A[k, l] | | 3-11 | 5-2 | 3-1 | 3-3 | 2-8 | 2-2 | 1-11 | 1-4 | 1-3 |
| 24 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 8-2 | 9-10 | 7-4 | 7-8 | 6-11 | 6-4 | 5-11 | 5-3 | 5-2 |
| 24 | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 9-5 | 11-1 | 8-7 | 8-10 | 8-0 | 7-3 | 6-9 | 5-7 | 5-5 |
| 24 | 1-#5 | 60,000 | 11-6 | 13-6 | 10-5 | 10-9 | 9-9 | 8-9 | 8-2 | 6-10 | 6-8 |
| 24 | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 10-8 | 12-6 | 9-8 | 10-0 | 9-0 | 8-2 | 7-7 | 6-4 | 6-2 |
| 24 | 2-#4 1-#6 | 60,000 | 12-11 | 15-2 | 11-9 | 12-2 | 11-0 | 9-11 | 9-3 | 7-8 | 7-6 |
| 24 | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 15-2 | 17-9 | 13-9 | 14-3 | 12-10 | 11-7 | 10-10 | 9-0 | 8-9 |
| 24 | 2-#5 | 60,000 | 18-4 | 21-6 | 16-7 | 17-3 | 15-6 | 14-0 | 13-1 | 10-4 | 10-0 |
| 24 | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 18-0 | 21-1 | 16-4 | 16-11 | 14-10 | 12-9 | 11-8 | 9-2 | 8-11 |
| 24 | 2-#6 | 60,000 | 21-7 | 25-4 | 19-2 | 20-4 | 17-2 | 14-9 | 13-4 | 10-4 | 10-0 |
| 24 | Center distance A[k, l] | | 4-6 | 6-2 | 3-8 | 4-0 | 3-3 | 2-8 | 2-3 | 1-7 | 1-6 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 psf = 0.0479 kPa; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.
b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note j.
c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section R611.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.
d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.
e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.
f. DR indicates design required.
g. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, $D$. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall not be less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than d/2.
j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
k. Center distance, $A$, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

**TABLE R611.8(4)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 8-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D$[g] (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 4-4 | 4-9 | 3-7 | 3-9 | 3-4 | 2-10 | 2-7 | 2-1 | 2-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 4-4 | 4-9 | 3-7 | 3-9 | 3-4 | 2-11 | 2-9 | 2-3 | 2-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 6-1 | 6-7 | 5-0 | 5-3 | 4-8 | 4-0 | 3-9 | 3-1 | 3-0 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 6-2 | 6-9 | 5-2 | 5-4 | 4-9 | 4-1 | 3-10 | 3-2 | 3-1 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-5 | 8-1 | 6-2 | 6-5 | 5-9 | 4-11 | 4-7 | 3-9 | 3-8 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 6-11 | 7-6 | 5-9 | 6-0 | 5-4 | 4-7 | 4-4 | 3-6 | 3-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-3 | 9-0 | 6-11 | 7-2 | 6-5 | 5-6 | 5-2 | 4-2 | 4-1 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 8-5 | 9-2 | 7-0 | 7-3 | 6-6 | 5-7 | 5-3 | 4-2 | 4-0 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 2-1 | 2-6 | 1-5 | 1-6 | 1-3 | 0-11 | 0-10 | 0-6 | 0-6 |
| 12 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 4-10 | 5-8 | 4-0 | 4-2 | 3-9 | 3-2 | 3-0 | 2-7 | 2-6 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-5 | 6-1 | 4-8 | 4-10 | 4-4 | 3-9 | 3-6 | 2-10 | 2-10 |
| | | 60,000 | 6-7 | 7-5 | 5-8 | 5-11 | 5-4 | 4-7 | 4-3 | 3-6 | 3-5 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 6-9 | 7-7 | 5-9 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-8 | 4-4 | 3-7 | 3-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-4 | 10-6 | 8-1 | 8-4 | 7-6 | 6-6 | 6-1 | 5-0 | 4-10 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 8-8 | 9-9 | 7-6 | 7-9 | 7-0 | 6-0 | 5-8 | 4-7 | 4-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-6 | 11-9 | 9-1 | 9-5 | 8-5 | 7-3 | 6-10 | 5-7 | 5-5 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 10-8 | 12-0 | 9-3 | 9-7 | 8-7 | 7-5 | 6-11 | 5-6 | 5-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-10 | 14-5 | 11-1 | 11-6 | 10-4 | 8-11 | 8-4 | 6-7 | 6-4 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 12-7 | 14-2 | 10-10 | 11-3 | 10-2 | 8-3 | 7-6 | 5-6 | 5-4 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 3-2 | 4-0 | 2-4 | 2-6 | 2-0 | 1-6 | 1-4 | 0-11 | 0-10 |
| 16 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 6-5 | 7-9 | 5-7 | 5-10 | 5-2 | 4-5 | 4-2 | 3-7 | 3-6 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 6-2 | 7-1 | 5-6 | 5-8 | 5-1 | 4-5 | 4-2 | 3-5 | 3-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-6 | 8-8 | 6-8 | 6-11 | 6-3 | 5-5 | 5-1 | 4-2 | 4-0 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 7-8 | 8-10 | 6-10 | 7-1 | 6-4 | 5-6 | 5-2 | 4-3 | 4-1 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-4 | 10-9 | 8-4 | 8-7 | 7-9 | 6-8 | 6-3 | 5-2 | 5-0 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 8-8 | 10-0 | 7-8 | 8-0 | 7-2 | 6-2 | 5-10 | 4-9 | 4-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-0 | 13-11 | 10-9 | 11-2 | 10-0 | 8-8 | 8-1 | 6-8 | 6-6 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 12-3 | 14-2 | 11-0 | 11-4 | 10-3 | 8-10 | 8-3 | 6-9 | 6-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 14-10 | 17-2 | 13-3 | 13-8 | 12-4 | 10-8 | 10-0 | 7-11 | 7-8 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 14-6 | 16-10 | 13-0 | 13-5 | 12-1 | 10-1 | 9-2 | 6-11 | 6-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 15-7 | 16-1 | 14-6 | 11-10 | 10-8 | 7-11 | 7-8 |
| | Center distance[k, l] | | 4-1 | 5-5 | 3-3 | 3-6 | 2-10 | 2-1 | 1-10 | 1-3 | 1-2 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.8(4)—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 8-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, D[g] (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 7-10 | 9-10 | 7-1 | 7-5 | 6-7 | 5-8 | 5-4 | 4-7 | 4-6 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-4 | 9-11 | 7-8 | 8-0 | 7-2 | 6-3 | 5-10 | 4-9 | 4-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-2 | 12-1 | 9-5 | 9-9 | 8-9 | 7-7 | 7-1 | 5-10 | 5-8 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-5 | 11-3 | 8-8 | 9-0 | 8-1 | 7-0 | 6-7 | 5-5 | 5-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-6 | 13-8 | 10-7 | 11-0 | 9-11 | 8-7 | 8-0 | 6-7 | 6-5 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 11-9 | 13-11 | 10-10 | 11-2 | 10-1 | 8-9 | 8-2 | 6-8 | 6-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 16-4 | 19-5 | 15-0 | 15-7 | 14-0 | 12-2 | 11-4 | 9-3 | 9-0 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 16-0 | 19-0 | 14-9 | 15-3 | 13-9 | 11-10 | 10-10 | 8-3 | 8-0 |
| | | 60,000 | 19-3 | 22-11 | 17-9 | 18-5 | 16-7 | 13-7 | 12-4 | 9-3 | 9-0 |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 4-10 | 6-10 | 4-1 | 4-5 | 3-7 | 2-8 | 2-4 | 1-7 | 1-6 |
| 24 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 9-2 | 11-9 | 8-7 | 8-11 | 8-0 | 6-11 | 6-6 | 5-7 | 5-6 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-11 | 10-10 | 8-6 | 8-9 | 7-11 | 6-10 | 6-5 | 5-3 | 5-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-11 | 13-3 | 10-4 | 10-8 | 9-8 | 8-4 | 7-10 | 6-5 | 6-3 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 10-1 | 12-3 | 9-7 | 9-11 | 8-11 | 7-9 | 7-3 | 6-0 | 5-10 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-3 | 15-0 | 11-8 | 12-1 | 10-11 | 9-5 | 8-10 | 7-3 | 7-1 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 12-6 | 15-3 | 11-11 | 12-4 | 11-1 | 9-7 | 9-0 | 7-5 | 7-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 17-6 | 21-3 | 16-7 | 17-2 | 15-6 | 13-5 | 12-7 | 10-4 | 10-1 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 17-2 | 20-11 | 16-3 | 16-10 | 15-3 | 13-2 | 12-4 | 9-7 | 9-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 20-9 | 25-3 | 19-8 | 20-4 | 18-5 | 15-4 | 14-0 | 10-7 | 10-3 |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 5-6 | 8-1 | 4-11 | 5-3 | 4-4 | 3-3 | 2-10 | 1-11 | 1-10 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 psf = 0.0479 kPa; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

**Note:** Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shown in shaded cells shall be equal to or greater than that required for lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups.

a. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.
b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note j.
c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section R611.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.
d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.
e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.
f. DR indicates design required.
g. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, $D$. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall not be less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than d/2.
j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
k. Center distance, $A$, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, $A$, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

**TABLE R611.8(5)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 10-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D^g$ (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 6-0 | 7-2 | 4-7 | 4-10 | 4-1 | 3-1 | 2-11 | 2-3 | 2-2 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 4-3 | 4-9 | 3-7 | 3-9 | 3-4 | 2-9 | 2-7 | 2-1 | 2-1 |
| | | 60,000 | 5-11 | 6-7 | 5-0 | 5-3 | 4-8 | 3-10 | 3-8 | 2-11 | 2-11 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 6-1 | 6-9 | 5-2 | 5-4 | 4-9 | 3-11 | 3-9 | 3-0 | 2-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-4 | 8-1 | 6-3 | 6-5 | 5-9 | 4-9 | 4-6 | 3-7 | 3-7 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 6-10 | 7-6 | 5-9 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-5 | 4-2 | 3-4 | 3-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-2 | 9-1 | 6-11 | 7-2 | 6-6 | 5-4 | 5-0 | 4-1 | 4-0 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 8-4 | 9-3 | 7-1 | 7-4 | 6-7 | 5-5 | 5-1 | 4-1 | 4-0 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-11 | 11-0 | 8-5 | 8-9 | 7-10 | 6-6 | 6-1 | 4-8 | 4-6 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 9-9 | 10-10 | 8-3 | 8-7 | 7-9 | 6-4 | 5-10 | 4-1 | 4-0 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 2-6 | 3-1 | 1-10 | 1-11 | 1-7 | 1-1 | 0-11 | 0-7 | 0-7 |
| 12 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 5-5 | 6-7 | 4-7 | 4-10 | 4-3 | 3-5 | 3-3 | 2-8 | 2-8 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-3 | 6-0 | 4-8 | 4-10 | 4-4 | 3-7 | 3-4 | 2-9 | 2-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 6-5 | 7-4 | 5-8 | 5-10 | 5-3 | 4-4 | 4-1 | 3-4 | 3-3 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 6-6 | 7-6 | 5-9 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-5 | 4-2 | 3-5 | 3-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-11 | 9-1 | 7-0 | 7-3 | 6-7 | 5-5 | 5-1 | 4-2 | 4-0 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 7-4 | 8-5 | 6-6 | 6-9 | 6-1 | 5-0 | 4-9 | 3-10 | 3-9 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-3 | 11-9 | 9-1 | 9-5 | 8-6 | 7-0 | 6-7 | 5-4 | 5-3 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 10-5 | 12-0 | 9-3 | 9-7 | 8-8 | 7-2 | 6-9 | 5-5 | 5-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-7 | 14-5 | 11-2 | 11-6 | 10-5 | 8-7 | 8-1 | 6-6 | 6-4 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 12-4 | 14-2 | 10-11 | 11-4 | 10-2 | 8-5 | 7-8 | 5-7 | 5-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 14-9 | 17-0 | 13-1 | 13-6 | 12-2 | 10-0 | 9-1 | 6-6 | 6-4 |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 3-9 | 4-11 | 2-11 | 3-2 | 2-7 | 1-9 | 1-7 | 1-0 | 1-0 |
| 16 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 7-1 | 9-0 | 6-4 | 6-8 | 5-10 | 4-9 | 4-6 | 3-9 | 3-8 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-11 | 7-0 | 5-5 | 5-8 | 5-1 | 4-3 | 4-0 | 3-3 | 3-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-3 | 8-7 | 6-8 | 6-11 | 6-3 | 5-2 | 4-10 | 3-11 | 3-10 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 7-4 | 8-9 | 6-9 | 7-0 | 6-4 | 5-3 | 4-11 | 4-0 | 3-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-0 | 10-8 | 8-3 | 8-7 | 7-9 | 6-5 | 6-0 | 4-11 | 4-9 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 8-4 | 9-11 | 7-8 | 7-11 | 7-2 | 5-11 | 5-7 | 4-6 | 4-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-2 | 12-0 | 9-4 | 9-8 | 8-9 | 7-3 | 6-10 | 5-6 | 5-5 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 10-4 | 12-3 | 9-6 | 9-10 | 8-11 | 7-4 | 6-11 | 5-8 | 5-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 14-4 | 17-1 | 13-3 | 13-8 | 12-4 | 10-3 | 9-8 | 7-10 | 7-8 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 14-1 | 16-9 | 13-0 | 13-5 | 12-2 | 10-1 | 9-6 | 7-0 | 6-10 |
| | | 60,000 | 17-0 | 20-2 | 15-8 | 16-2 | 14-7 | 12-0 | 10-11 | 8-0 | 7-9 |
| | Center distance[k, l] | | 4-9 | 6-8 | 4-0 | 4-4 | 3-6 | 2-5 | 2-2 | 1-5 | 1-4 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.8(5)—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 10-INCH NOMINAL THICK FLAT LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, m]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D$[g] (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 8-7 | 11-4 | 8-1 | 8-5 | 7-5 | 6-1 | 5-9 | 4-10 | 4-9 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 6-5 | 7-10 | 6-2 | 6-4 | 5-9 | 4-9 | 4-6 | 3-8 | 3-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-10 | 9-7 | 7-6 | 7-9 | 7-0 | 5-10 | 5-6 | 4-5 | 4-4 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-0 | 9-9 | 7-8 | 7-11 | 7-2 | 5-11 | 5-7 | 4-6 | 4-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 9-4 | 9-8 | 8-9 | 7-3 | 6-10 | 5-6 | 5-5 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-0 | 11-1 | 8-8 | 8-11 | 8-1 | 6-9 | 6-4 | 5-2 | 5-0 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 10-6 | 10-11 | 9-10 | 8-2 | 7-9 | 6-3 | 6-2 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 10-9 | 11-1 | 10-0 | 8-4 | 7-10 | 6-5 | 6-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 15-8 | 19-2 | 15-0 | 15-6 | 14-0 | 11-8 | 11-0 | 8-11 | 8-9 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 15-5 | 18-10 | 14-8 | 15-2 | 13-9 | 11-5 | 10-9 | 8-6 | 8-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 18-7 | 22-9 | 17-9 | 18-5 | 16-7 | 13-10 | 12-9 | 9-5 | 9-2 |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 5-7 | 8-4 | 5-1 | 5-5 | 4-5 | 3-1 | 2-9 | 1-10 | 1-9 |
| 24 | Span without stirrups[i, j] | | 9-11 | 13-7 | 9-9 | 10-2 | 9-0 | 7-5 | 7-0 | 5-10 | 5-9 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-6 | 10-8 | 8-5 | 8-8 | 7-10 | 6-6 | 6-2 | 5-0 | 4-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-5 | 13-0 | 10-3 | 10-7 | 9-7 | 8-0 | 7-6 | 6-1 | 6-0 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-7 | 12-1 | 9-6 | 9-9 | 8-10 | 7-5 | 7-0 | 5-8 | 5-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-9 | 14-9 | 11-7 | 11-11 | 10-10 | 9-0 | 8-6 | 6-11 | 6-9 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 12-0 | 15-0 | 11-9 | 12-2 | 11-0 | 9-2 | 8-8 | 7-1 | 6-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 14-7 | 18-3 | 14-4 | 14-10 | 13-5 | 11-2 | 10-7 | 8-7 | 8-5 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 14-3 | 17-11 | 14-1 | 14-7 | 13-2 | 11-0 | 10-4 | 8-5 | 8-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 19-11 | 25-0 | 19-7 | 20-3 | 18-4 | 15-3 | 14-5 | 10-10 | 10-7 |
| | Center distance A[k, l] | | 6-3 | 9-11 | 6-1 | 6-6 | 5-4 | 3-9 | 3-4 | 2-2 | 2-1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

**Note:** Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shown in shaded cells shall be equal to or greater than that required for lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups.

a. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.
b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note j.
c. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section R611.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.
d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.
e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads and between lintel depths.
f. DR indicates design required.
g. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, $D$. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall not be less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than d/2.
j. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
k. Center distance, $A$, is the center portion of the clear span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
m. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel clear spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

**TABLE R611.8(6)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH THICK WAFFLE-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, o]**
**MAXIMUM ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND MAXIMUM FLOOR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D^g$ (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 8[i] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 2-7 | 2-9 | 2-0 | 2-1 | 2-0 | 2-0 | 2-0 | 2-0 | 2-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-2 | 5-5 | 4-0 | 4-3 | 3-7 | 3-3 | 2-11 | 2-4 | 2-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 5-9 | 6-3 | 4-0 | 4-3 | 3-7 | 3-3 | 2-11 | 2-4 | 2-3 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 5-9 | 6-3 | 4-0 | 4-3 | 3-7 | 3-3 | 2-11 | 2-4 | 2-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 5-9 | 6-3 | 4-0 | 4-3 | 3-7 | 3-3 | 2-11 | 2-4 | 2-3 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 5-9 | 6-3 | 4-0 | 4-3 | 3-7 | 3-3 | 2-11 | 2-4 | 2-3 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 0-9 | 0-10 | 0-6 | 0-6 | 0-5 | 0-5 | 0-4 | STL | STL |
| 12[i] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 2-11 | 3-1 | 2-6 | 2-7 | 2-5 | 2-4 | 2-3 | 2-1 | 2-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-9 | 6-2 | 4-8 | 4-10 | 4-4 | 4-1 | 3-9 | 3-2 | 3-1 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-0 | 8-7 | 6-6 | 6-9 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-11 | 3-11 | 3-10 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-1 | 8-9 | 6-8 | 6-11 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-11 | 3-11 | 3-10 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-1 | 10-3 | 6-8 | 7-0 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-11 | 3-11 | 3-10 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-1 | 9-9 | 6-8 | 7-0 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-11 | 3-11 | 3-10 |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 1-3 | 1-5 | 0-10 | 0-11 | 0-9 | 0-8 | 0-6 | STL | STL |
| 16[i] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 4-0 | 4-4 | 3-6 | 3-7 | 3-4 | 3-3 | 3-1 | 2-10 | 2-10 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 6-7 | 7-3 | 5-6 | 5-9 | 5-2 | 4-10 | 4-6 | 3-9 | 3-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-0 | 8-10 | 6-9 | 7-0 | 6-3 | 5-11 | 5-5 | 4-7 | 4-5 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-2 | 9-0 | 6-11 | 7-2 | 6-5 | 6-0 | 5-7 | 4-8 | 4-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-5 | 12-6 | 9-3 | 9-9 | 8-4 | 7-7 | 6-10 | 5-6 | 5-4 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 10-7 | 11-7 | 8-11 | 9-3 | 8-3 | 7-7 | 6-10 | 5-6 | 5-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-2 | 14-0 | 9-3 | 9-9 | 8-4 | 7-7 | 6-10 | 5-6 | 5-4 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 12-2 | 14-2 | 9-3 | 9-9 | 8-4 | 7-7 | 6-10 | 5-6 | 5-4 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 1-8 | 2-0 | 1-2 | 1-3 | 1-0 | 0-11 | 0-9 | STL | STL |
| 20[i] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 5-0 | 5-6 | 4-6 | 4-7 | 4-3 | 4-1 | 4-0 | 3-8 | 3-8 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 7-2 | 8-2 | 6-3 | 6-6 | 5-10 | 5-6 | 5-1 | 4-3 | 4-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-11 | 9-11 | 7-8 | 7-11 | 7-1 | 6-8 | 6-2 | 5-2 | 5-0 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 9-1 | 10-2 | 7-9 | 8-1 | 7-3 | 6-10 | 6-4 | 5-4 | 5-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-8 | 14-2 | 10-11 | 11-3 | 10-2 | 9-6 | 8-9 | 7-1 | 6-10 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 10-3 | 11-5 | 8-9 | 9-1 | 8-2 | 7-8 | 7-1 | 6-0 | 5-10 |
| | | 60,000 | 14-3 | 15-11 | 11-9 | 12-5 | 10-8 | 9-9 | 8-9 | 7-1 | 6-10 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 14-6 | 16-3 | 11-6 | 12-1 | 10-4 | 9-6 | 8-6 | 6-11 | 6-8 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 2-0 | 2-6 | 1-6 | 1-7 | 1-3 | 1-1 | 1-0 | STL | STL |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.8(6)—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH THICK WAFFLE-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, o]**
**MAXIMUM ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND MAXIMUM FLOOR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D$[g] (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 24w[j] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 6-0 | 6-8 | 5-5 | 5-7 | 5-3 | 5-0 | 4-10 | 4-6 | 4-5 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 7-11 | 9-0 | 6-11 | 7-2 | 6-5 | 6-0 | 5-7 | 4-8 | 4-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-8 | 10-11 | 8-5 | 8-9 | 7-10 | 7-4 | 6-10 | 5-9 | 5-7 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 9-10 | 11-2 | 8-7 | 8-11 | 8-0 | 7-6 | 7-0 | 5-10 | 5-8 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-0 | 13-7 | 10-6 | 10-10 | 9-9 | 9-2 | 8-6 | 7-2 | 6-11 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 11-1 | 12-7 | 9-8 | 10-1 | 9-1 | 8-6 | 7-10 | 6-7 | 6-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 15-6 | 17-7 | 13-6 | 14-0 | 12-8 | 11-10 | 10-8 | 8-7 | 8-4 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 15-6 | 17-11 | 12-8 | 13-4 | 11-6 | 10-7 | 9-7 | 7-10 | 7-7 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 2-4 | 3-0 | 1-9 | 1-11 | 1-6 | 1-4 | 1-2 | STL | STL |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. Where lintels are formed with waffle-grid forms, form material shall be removed, if necessary, to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 3 inches in depth (in the vertical direction), are not less than 5 inches (127 mm) in width for 6-inch nominal waffle-grid forms and not less than 7 inches in width for 8-inch nominal waffle-grid forms. See Figure R611.8(3). Flat form lintels shall be permitted in place of waffle-grid lintels. See Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5).

b. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thicknesses and minimum dimensions and spacing of cores.

c. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa). See Notes l and n. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section R611.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^{1}/_{2}$-inch, whichever is less.

e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads.

f. DR indicates design required. STL – stirrups required throughout lintel.

g. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.

i. Lintels less than 24 inches in depth with stirrups shall be formed from flat-walls forms [see Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5)], or, if necessary, form material shall be removed from waffle-grid forms so as to provide the required cover for stirrups. Allowable spans for lintels formed with flat-wall forms shall be determined from Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5).

j. Where stirrups are required for 24-inch (610 mm) deep lintels, the spacing shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) on center.

k. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, $D$. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall not be less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than $d/2$.

l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.

m. Center distance, $A$, is the center portion of the span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.

n. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, $A$, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.

o. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

**TABLE R611.8(7)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 8-INCH THICK WAFFLE-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, o]**
**MAXIMUM ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND MAXIMUM FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D$[g] (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 8[i] | Span with stirrups[k, l] | | 2-6 | 2-9 | 2-0 | 2-1 | 2-0 | 2-0 | 2-0 | 2-0 | 2-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 4-5 | 4-9 | 3-7 | 3-9 | 3-4 | 3-0 | 2-10 | 2-3 | 2-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 5-6 | 6-2 | 4-0 | 4-3 | 3-7 | 3-1 | 2-10 | 2-3 | 2-2 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 5-6 | 6-2 | 4-0 | 4-3 | 3-7 | 3-1 | 2-10 | 2-3 | 2-2 |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 0-9 | 0-10 | 0-6 | 0-6 | 0-5 | 0-4 | 0-4 | STL | STL |
| 12[i] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 2-10 | 3-1 | 2-6 | 2-7 | 2-5 | 2-3 | 2-2 | 2-0 | 2-0 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 5-7 | 6-1 | 4-8 | 4-10 | 4-4 | 3-11 | 3-8 | 3-0 | 2-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 6-9 | 7-5 | 5-8 | 5-11 | 5-4 | 4-9 | 4-5 | 3-8 | 3-7 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 6-11 | 7-7 | 5-10 | 6-0 | 5-5 | 4-10 | 4-6 | 3-9 | 3-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-8 | 10-1 | 6-7 | 7-0 | 5-11 | 5-2 | 4-8 | 3-9 | 3-7 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 8-8 | 9-10 | 6-7 | 7-0 | 5-11 | 5-2 | 4-8 | 3-9 | 3-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-8 | 10-1 | 6-7 | 7-0 | 5-11 | 5-2 | 4-8 | 3-9 | 3-7 |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 1-2 | 1-5 | 0-10 | 0-11 | 0-9 | 0-7 | 0-6 | STL | STL |
| 16[i] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 3-10 | 4-3 | 3-6 | 3-7 | 3-4 | 3-2 | 3-0 | 2-10 | 2-9 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 6-5 | 7-2 | 5-6 | 5-9 | 5-2 | 4-8 | 4-4 | 3-7 | 3-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 7-9 | 8-9 | 6-9 | 7-0 | 6-3 | 5-8 | 5-3 | 4-4 | 4-3 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 7-11 | 8-11 | 6-10 | 7-1 | 6-5 | 5-9 | 5-4 | 4-5 | 4-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-8 | 10-11 | 8-4 | 8-8 | 7-10 | 7-0 | 6-6 | 5-2 | 5-1 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-0 | 10-1 | 7-9 | 8-0 | 7-3 | 6-6 | 6-1 | 5-0 | 4-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-5 | 13-10 | 9-2 | 9-8 | 8-3 | 7-2 | 6-6 | 5-2 | 5-1 |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 1-6 | 1-11 | 1-2 | 1-3 | 1-0 | 0-10 | 0-8 | STL | STL |
| 20[i] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 4-10 | 5-5 | 4-5 | 4-7 | 4-3 | 4-0 | 3-11 | 3-7 | 3-7 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 7-0 | 8-1 | 6-3 | 6-5 | 5-10 | 5-3 | 4-11 | 4-1 | 3-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 8-7 | 9-10 | 7-7 | 7-10 | 7-1 | 6-5 | 6-0 | 4-11 | 4-10 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 8-9 | 10-1 | 7-9 | 8-0 | 7-3 | 6-6 | 6-1 | 5-1 | 4-11 |
| | | 60,000 | 10-8 | 12-3 | 9-6 | 9-10 | 8-10 | 8-0 | 7-5 | 6-2 | 6-0 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 9-10 | 11-4 | 8-9 | 9-1 | 8-2 | 7-4 | 6-10 | 5-8 | 5-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-0 | 13-10 | 10-8 | 11-0 | 9-11 | 9-0 | 8-4 | 6-8 | 6-6 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 12-3 | 14-1 | 10-10 | 11-3 | 10-2 | 8-11 | 8-1 | 6-6 | 6-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 14-0 | 17-6 | 11-8 | 12-3 | 10-6 | 9-1 | 8-4 | 6-8 | 6-6 |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 1-10 | 2-5 | 1-5 | 1-7 | 1-3 | 1-0 | 0-11 | STL | STL |
| 24[j] | Span without stirrups[k, l] | | 5-9 | 6-7 | 5-5 | 5-6 | 5-2 | 4-11 | 4-9 | 4-5 | 4-4 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 7-6 | 8-10 | 6-10 | 7-1 | 6-5 | 5-9 | 5-5 | 4-6 | 4-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-2 | 10-9 | 8-4 | 8-8 | 7-10 | 7-1 | 6-7 | 5-6 | 5-4 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 9-5 | 11-0 | 8-6 | 8-10 | 8-0 | 7-2 | 6-8 | 5-7 | 5-5 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-5 | 13-5 | 10-5 | 10-9 | 9-9 | 8-9 | 8-2 | 6-10 | 6-8 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 10-7 | 12-5 | 9-8 | 10-0 | 9-0 | 8-1 | 7-7 | 6-3 | 6-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-11 | 15-2 | 11-9 | 12-2 | 11-0 | 9-11 | 9-3 | 7-8 | 7-6 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 13-2 | 15-6 | 12-0 | 12-5 | 11-2 | 9-11 | 9-2 | 7-5 | 7-3 |
| | | 60,000 | 16-3 | 21-0 | 14-1 | 14-10 | 12-9 | 11-1 | 10-1 | 8-1 | 7-11 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | 14-4 | 18-5 | 12-6 | 13-2 | 11-5 | 9-11 | 9-2 | 7-5 | 7-3 |
| | Center distance A[m, n] | | 2-1 | 2-11 | 1-9 | 1-10 | 1-6 | 1-3 | 1-1 | STL | STL |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.8(7)—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 8-INCH THICK WAFFLE-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, o]**
**MAXIMUM ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND MAXIMUM FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. Where lintels are formed with waffle-grid forms, form material shall be removed, if necessary, to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 3 inches in depth (in the vertical direction), are not less than 5 inches in width for 6-inch nominal waffle-grid forms and not less than 7 inches in width for 8-inch nominal waffle-grid forms. See Figure R611.8(3). Flat form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of waffle-grid lintels. See Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5).
b. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thicknesses and minimum dimensions and spacing of cores.
c. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa). See Notes l and n. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section R611.8.2 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.
d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.
e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads.
f. DR indicates design required. STL – stirrups required throughout lintel.
g. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.
i. Lintels less than 24 inches in depth with stirrups shall be formed from flat-walls forms [see Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5)], or, if necessary, form material shall be removed from waffle-grid forms so as to provide the required cover for stirrups. Allowable spans for lintels formed with flat-wall forms shall be determined from Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5).
j. Where stirrups are required for 24-inch (610 mm) deep lintels, the spacing shall not exceed 12 inches on center.
k. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, $D$. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall not be less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than $d/2$.
l. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.
m. Center distance, $A$, is the center portion of the span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.
n. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, A, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.
o. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet. See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

**TABLE R611.8(8)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR 6-INCH THICK SCREEN-GRID LINTELS IN LOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, f, p]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D^g$ (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE IN TOP AND BOTTOM OF LINTEL | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH[h], $f_y$ (psi) | DESIGN LOADING CONDITION DETERMINED FROM TABLE R611.8(1) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | |
| | | | | Maximum ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 | 30 | 70 |
| | | | Maximum clear span of lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | | |
| 12[i,j] | Span without stirrups | | 2-9 | 2-11 | 2-4 | 2-5 | 2-3 | 2-3 | 2-2 | 2-0 | 2-0 |
| 16[i,j] | Span without stirrups | | 3-9 | 4-0 | 3-4 | 3-5 | 3-2 | 3-1 | 3-0 | 2-9 | 2-9 |
| 20[i,j] | Span without stirrups | | 4-9 | 5-1 | 4-3 | 4-4 | 4-1 | 4-0 | 3-10 | 3-7 | 3-7 |
| 24[k] | Span without stirrups[l, m] | | 5-8 | 6-3 | 5-2 | 5-3 | 5-0 | 4-10 | 4-8 | 4-4 | 4-4 |
| | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 7-11 | 9-0 | 6-11 | 7-2 | 6-5 | 6-1 | 5-8 | 4-9 | 4-7 |
| | | 60,000 | 9-9 | 11-0 | 8-5 | 8-9 | 7-10 | 7-5 | 6-10 | 5-9 | 5-7 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 9-11 | 11-2 | 8-7 | 8-11 | 8-0 | 7-7 | 7-0 | 5-11 | 5-9 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-1 | 13-8 | 10-6 | 10-10 | 9-9 | 9-3 | 8-6 | 7-2 | 7-0 |
| | 2-#4<br>1-#6 | 40,000 | 11-2 | 12-8 | 9-9 | 10-1 | 9-1 | 8-7 | 7-11 | 6-8 | 6-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 15-7 | 17-7 | 12-8 | 13-4 | 11-6 | 10-8 | 9-8 | 7-11 | 7-8 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 14-11 | 18-0 | 12-2 | 12-10 | 11-1 | 10-3 | 9-4 | 7-8 | 7-5 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| | Center distance A[n, o] | | 2-0 | 2-6 | 1-6 | 1-7 | 1-4 | 1-2 | 1-0 | STL | STL |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. Where lintels are formed with screen-grid forms, form material shall be removed if necessary to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 5 inches in width and not less than 2.5 inches in depth (in the vertical direction). See Figure R611.8(4). Flat form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of screen-grid lintels. See Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5).

b. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness and minimum dimensions and spacings of cores.

c. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Notes m and o. Table values are based on uniform loading. See Section R611.7.2.1 for lintels supporting concentrated loads.

d. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.

e. Linear interpolation is permitted between ground snow loads.

f. DR indicates design required. STL indicates stirrups required throughout lintel.

g. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

h. Stirrups shall be fabricated from reinforcing bars with the same yield strength as that used for the main longitudinal reinforcement.

i. Stirrups are not required for lintels less than 24 inches in depth fabricated from screen-grid forms. Top and bottom reinforcement shall consist of a No. 4 bar having a yield strength of 40,000 psi or 60,000 psi.

j. Lintels between 12 and 24 inches in depth with stirrups shall be formed from flat-wall forms [see Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5)], or form material shall be removed from screen-grid forms to provide a concrete section comparable to that required for a flat wall. Allowable spans for flat lintels with stirrups shall be determined from Tables R611.8(2) through R6111.8(5).

k. Where stirrups are required for 24-inch deep lintels, the spacing shall not exceed 12 inches on center.

l. Allowable clear span without stirrups applicable to all lintels of the same depth, $D$. Top and bottom reinforcement for lintels without stirrups shall not be less than the least amount of reinforcement required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups. All other spans require stirrups spaced at not more than 12 inches.

m. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, clear spans for lintels without stirrups shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05. If the increased span exceeds the allowable clear span for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition with stirrups, the top and bottom reinforcement shall be equal to or greater than that required for a lintel of the same depth and loading condition that has an allowable clear span that is equal to or greater than that of the lintel without stirrups that has been increased.

n. Center distance, $A$, is the center portion of the span where stirrups are not required. This is applicable to all longitudinal bar sizes and steel yield strengths.

o. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, center distance, $A$, shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.10.

p. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information only.

**TABLE R611.8(9)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR FLAT LINTELS WITHOUT STIRRUPS IN NONLOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, g, h]**

| LINTEL DEPTH, $D$[f] (inches) | NUMBER OF BARS AND BAR SIZE | STEEL YIELD STRENGTH, $f_y$ (psi) | NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches) | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 4 | | 6 | | 8 | | 10 | |
| | | | Lintel Supporting | | | | | | | |
| | | | Concrete Wall | Light-framed Gable | Concrete Wall | Light-framed Gable | Concrete Wall | Light-framed Gable | Concrete Wall | Light-framed Gable |
| | | | Maximum Clear Span of Lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 10-11 | 11-5 | 9-7 | 11-2 | 7-10 | 9-5 | 7-3 | 9-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 12-5 | 11-7 | 10-11 | 13-5 | 9-11 | 13-2 | 9-3 | 12-10 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 12-7 | 11-7 | 11-1 | 13-8 | 10-1 | 13-5 | 9-4 | 13-1 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | 12-7 | 16-4 | 11-6 | 14-7 | 10-9 | 14-6 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | DR | DR | 12-0 | 15-3 | 10-11 | 15-0 | 10-2 | 14-8 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | 12-2 | 15-3 | 11-7 | 15-3 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | 12-7 | 16-7 | 11-9 | 16-7 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | 13-3 | 16-7 |
| | 2-#6 | 40,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | 13-2 | 17-8 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR | DR |
| 12 | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 11-5 | 9-10 | 10-6 | 12-0 | 9-6 | 11-6 | 8-9 | 11-1 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-5 | 9-10 | 11-8 | 13-3 | 10-11 | 14-0 | 10-1 | 13-6 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 11-5 | 9-10 | 11-8 | 13-3 | 11-1 | 14-4 | 10-3 | 13-9 |
| | | 60,000 | 11-5 | 9-10 | 11-8 | 13-3 | 11-10 | 16-0 | 11-9 | 16-9 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | DR | DR | 11-8 | 13-3 | 11-10 | 16-0 | 11-2 | 15-6 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | 11-8 | 13-3 | 11-10 | 16-0 | 11-11 | 18-4 |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | DR | DR | 11-8 | 13-3 | 11-10 | 16-0 | 11-11 | 18-4 |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | 11-8 | 13-3 | 11-10 | 16-0 | 11-11 | 18-4 |
| 16 | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 13-6 | 13-0 | 11-10 | 13-8 | 10-7 | 12-11 | 9-11 | 12-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 13-6 | 13-0 | 13-8 | 16-7 | 12-4 | 15-9 | 11-5 | 15-0 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 13-6 | 13-0 | 13-10 | 17-0 | 12-6 | 16-1 | 11-7 | 15-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 13-6 | 13-0 | 13-10 | 17-1 | 14-0 | 19-7 | 13-4 | 18-8 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 13-6 | 13-0 | 13-10 | 17-1 | 13-8 | 18-2 | 12-8 | 17-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 13-6 | 13-0 | 13-10 | 17-1 | 14-0 | 20-3 | 14-1 | — |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 13-6 | 13-0 | 13-10 | 17-1 | 14-0 | 20-3 | 14-1 | — |
| | | 60,000 | DR | DR | 13-10 | 17-1 | 14-0 | 20-3 | 14-1 | — |
| 20 | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 14-11 | 15-10 | 13-0 | 14-10 | 11-9 | 13-11 | 10-10 | 13-2 |
| | | 60,000 | 15-3 | 15-10 | 14-11 | 18-1 | 13-6 | 17-0 | 12-6 | 16-2 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 15-3 | 15-10 | 15-2 | 18-6 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 12-8 | 16-6 |
| | | 60,000 | 15-3 | 15-10 | 15-8 | 20-5 | 15-9 | — | 14-7 | 20-1 |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 15-3 | 15-10 | 15-8 | 20-5 | 14-11 | — | 13-10 | — |
| | | 60,000 | 15-3 | 15-10 | 15-8 | 20-5 | 15-10 | — | 15-11 | — |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 15-3 | 15-10 | 15-8 | 20-5 | 15-10 | — | 15-11 | — |
| | | 60,000 | 15-3 | 15-10 | 15-8 | 20-5 | 15-10 | — | 15-11 | — |
| 24 | 1-#4 | 40,000 | 16-1 | 17-1 | 13-11 | 15-10 | 12-7 | 14-9 | 11-8 | 13-10 |
| | | 60,000 | 16-11 | 18-5 | 16-1 | 19-3 | 14-6 | 18-0 | 13-5 | 17-0 |
| | 1-#5 | 40,000 | 16-11 | 18-5 | 16-3 | 19-8 | 14-9 | 18-5 | 13-8 | 17-4 |
| | | 60,000 | 16-11 | 18-5 | 17-4 | — | 17-0 | — | 15-8 | — |
| | 2-#4 1-#6 | 40,000 | 16-11 | 18-5 | 17-4 | — | 16-1 | — | 14-10 | — |
| | | 60,000 | 16-11 | 18-5 | 17-4 | — | 17-6 | — | 17-1 | — |
| | 2-#5 | 40,000 | 16-11 | 18-5 | 17-4 | — | 17-6 | — | 17-4 | — |
| | | 60,000 | 16-11 | 18-5 | 17-4 | — | 17-6 | — | 17-8 | — |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R611.8(9)—continued**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR FLAT LINTELS WITHOUT STIRRUPS IN NONLOAD-BEARING WALLS[a, b, c, d, e, g, h]**
**ROOF CLEAR SPAN 40 FEET AND FLOOR CLEAR SPAN 32 FEET**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa.

a. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness.
b. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note e.
c. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.
d. Linear interpolation between lintels depths, $D$, is permitted provided the two cells being used to interpolate are shaded.
e. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, spans in cells that are shaded shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05.
f. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.
g. DR indicates design required.
h. The maximum clear opening width between two solid wall segments shall be 18 feet (5486 mm). See Section R611.7.2.1. Lintel spans in the table greater than 18 feet are shown for interpolation and information purposes only.

**TABLE R611.8(10)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE CLEAR SPANS FOR WAFFLE-GRID AND SCREEN GRID LINTELS WITHOUT STIRRUPS IN NONLOAD-BEARING WALLS[c, d, e, f, g]**

| LINTEL DEPTH[h], $D$ (inches) | FORM TYPE AND NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 6-inch Waffle-grid[a] | | 8-inch Waffle-grid[a] | | 6-inch Screen-grid[b] | |
| | Lintel supporting | | | | | |
| | Concrete Wall | Light-framed Gable | Concrete Wall | Light-framed Gable | Concrete Wall | Light-framed Gable |
| | Maximum Clear Span of Lintel (feet - inches) | | | | | |
| 8 | 10-3 | 8-8 | 8-8 | 8-3 | — | — |
| 12 | 9-2 | 7-6 | 7-10 | 7-1 | 8-8 | 6-9 |
| 16 | 10-11 | 10-0 | 9-4 | 9-3 | — | — |
| 20 | 12-5 | 12-2 | 10-7 | 11-2 | — | — |
| 24 | 13-9 | 14-2 | 11-10 | 12-11 | 13-0 | 12-9 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; Grade 40 = 280 MPa; Grade 60 = 420 MPa

a. Where lintels are formed with waffle-grid forms, form material shall be removed, if necessary, to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 3 inches in depth (in the vertical direction), are not less than 5 inches in width for 6-inch waffle-grid forms and not less than 7 inches in width for 8-inch waffle-grid forms. See Figure R611.8(3). Flat form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of waffle-grid lintels. See Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5).
b. Where lintels are formed with screen-grid forms, form material shall be removed if necessary to create top and bottom flanges of the lintel that are not less than 5 inches in width and not less than 2.5 inches in depth (in the vertical direction). See Figure R611.8(4). Flat form lintels shall be permitted in lieu of screen-grid lintels. See Tables R611.8(2) through R611.8(5).
c. See Table R611.3 for tolerances permitted from nominal thickness and minimum dimensions and spacing of cores.
d. Table values are based on concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 2,500 psi. See Note g.
e. Deflection criterion is $L/240$, where $L$ is the clear span of the lintel in inches, or $^1/_2$-inch, whichever is less.
f. Top and bottom reinforcement shall consist of a No. 4 bar having a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi.
g. Where concrete with a minimum specified compressive strength of 3,000 psi is used, spans in shaded cells shall be permitted to be multiplied by 1.05.
h. Lintel depth, $D$, is permitted to include the available height of wall located directly above the lintel, provided that the increased lintel depth spans the entire length of the lintel.

**R611.9 Requirements for connections–general.** Concrete walls shall be connected to footings, floors, ceilings and roofs in accordance with this section.

**R611.9.1 Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor, ceiling and roof systems.** Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor, ceiling and roof systems using the prescriptive details of Figures R611.9(1) through R611.9(12) shall comply with this section and Sections R611.9.2 and R611.9.3.

**R611.9.1.1 Anchor bolts.** Anchor bolts used to connect light-framed floor, ceiling and roof systems to concrete walls in accordance with Figures R611.9(1) through R611.9(12) shall have heads, or shall be rods with threads on both ends with a hex or square nut on the end embedded in the concrete. Bolts and threaded rods shall comply with Section R611.5.2.2. Anchor bolts with J- or L-hooks shall not be used where the connection details in these figures are used.

**R611.9.1.2 Removal of stay-in-place form material at bolts.** Holes in stay-in-place forms for installing bolts for attaching face-mounted wood ledger boards to the wall shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter for forms not greater than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in thickness, and increased 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter for each $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) increase in form thickness. Holes in stay-in-place forms for installing bolts for attaching face-mounted cold-formed steel tracks to the wall shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) square. The wood ledger board or steel track shall be in direct contact with the concrete at each bolt location.

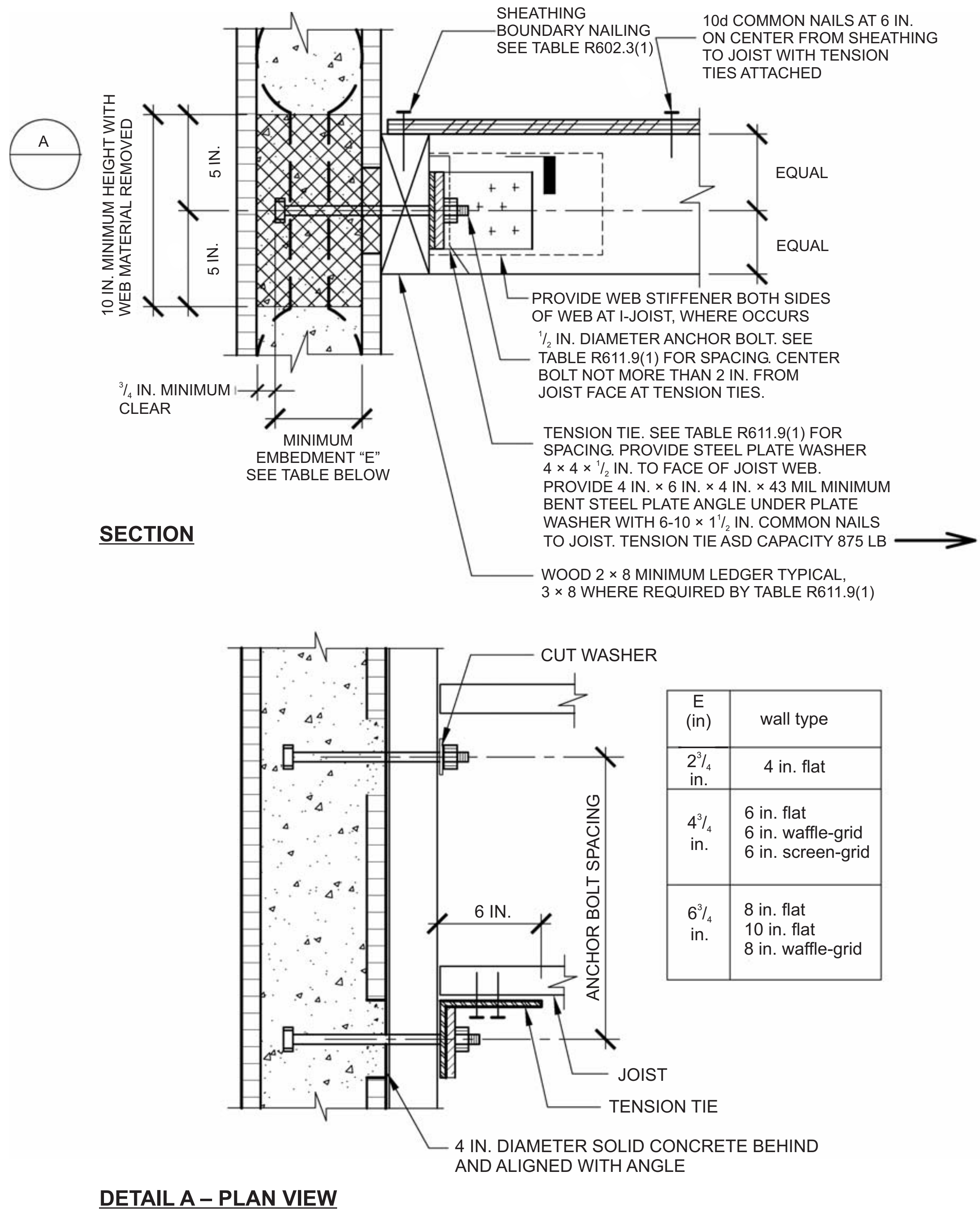
**Exception:** A vapor retarder or other material less than or equal to $^1/_{16}$-inch (1.6 mm) in thickness is permitted to be installed between the wood ledger or cold-formed track and the concrete.

**R611.9.2 Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor systems.** Connections between concrete walls and light-framed floor systems shall be in accordance with one of the following:

1. For floor systems of wood frame construction, the provisions of Section R611.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures R611.9(1) through R611.9(4), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of wood-framed floor systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section R502, or AF&PA/WFCM, if applicable.
2. For floor systems of cold-formed steel construction, the provisions of Section R611.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures R611.9(5) through R611.9(8), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of cold-formed-steel framed floor systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section R505, or AISI S230, if applicable.
3. Proprietary connectors selected to resist loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.
4. An engineered design using loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.
5. An engineered design using loads and material design provisions in accordance with this code, or in accordance with ASCE 7, ACI 318, and AF&PA/NDS for wood frame construction or AISI S100 for cold-formed steel frame construction.

**R611.9.3 Connections between concrete walls and light-framed ceiling and roof systems.** Connections between concrete walls and light-framed ceiling and roof systems shall be in accordance with one of the following:

1. For ceiling and roof systems of wood frame construction, the provisions of Section R611.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures R611.9(9) and R611.9(10), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of wood-framed ceiling and roof systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section R802, or AF&PA/WFCM, if applicable.
2. For ceiling and roof systems of cold-formed-steel construction, the provisions of Section R611.9.1 and the prescriptive details of Figures R611.9(11) and R611.9(12), where permitted by the tables accompanying those figures. Portions of connections of cold-formed-steel framed ceiling and roof systems not noted in the figures shall be in accordance with Section R804, or AISI S230, if applicable.
3. Proprietary connectors selected to resist loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.
4. An engineered design using loads and load combinations in accordance with Appendix A (ASD) or Appendix B (LRFD) of PCA 100.
5. An engineered design using loads and material design provisions in accordance with this code, or in accordance with ASCE 7, ACI 318, and AF&PA/NDS for wood-frame construction or AISI S100 for cold-formed-steel frame construction.




| E (in) | wall type |
|---|---|
| 2 3/4 in. | 4 in. flat |
| 4 3/4 in. | 6 in. flat<br>6 in. waffle-grid<br>6 in. screen-grid |
| 6 3/4 in. | 8 in. flat<br>10 in. flat<br>8 in. waffle-grid |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(1)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR**

**TABLE R611.9(1)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR[a, b, c]**

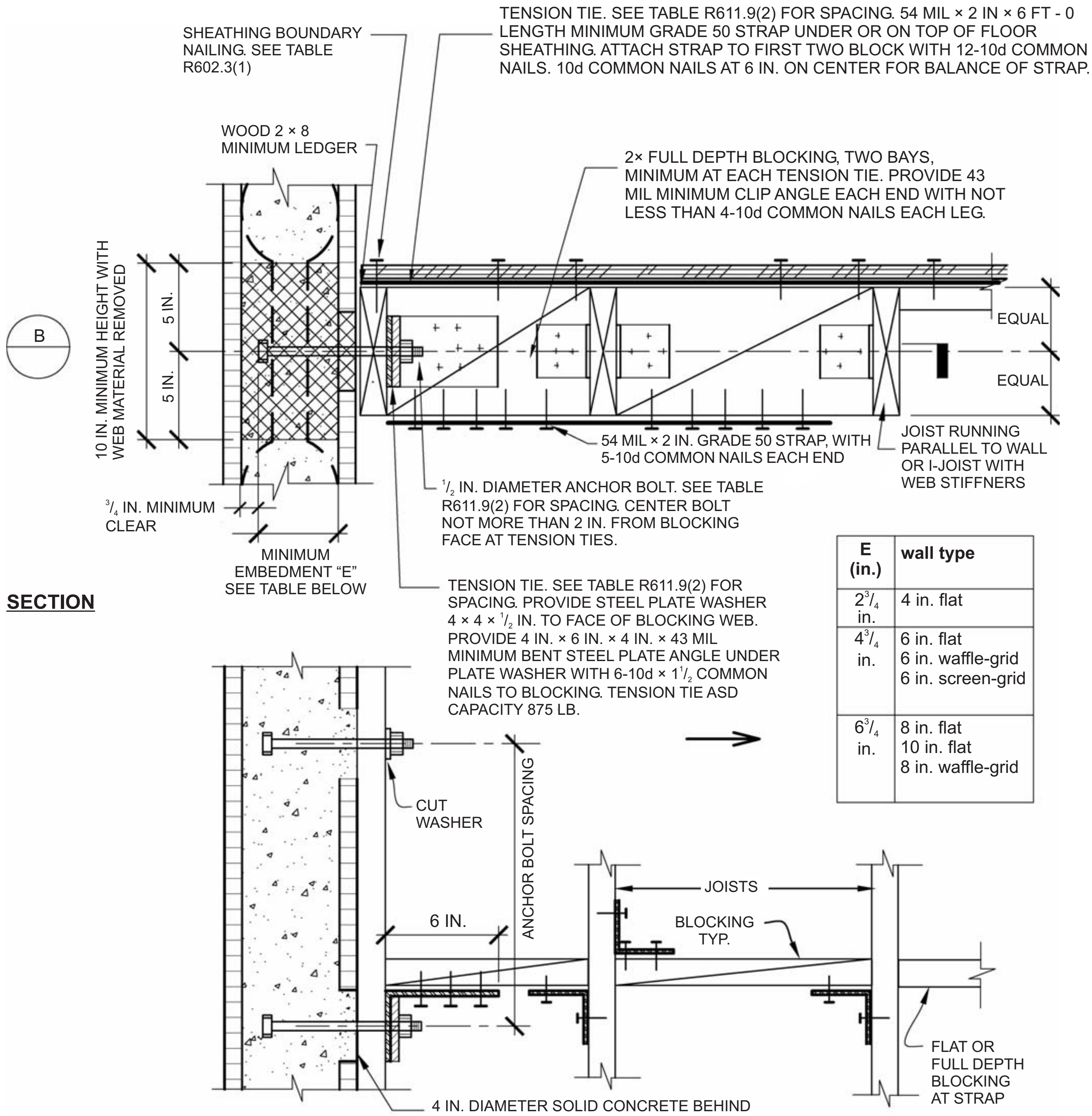
| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | A | A |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | A | A | A | A | A | |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | A | A | A | | | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(1). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded and prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.

c. Letter “A” indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 8 ledger is required.




| E (in.) | wall type |
|---|---|
| $2^3/_4$ in. | 4 in. flat |
| $4^3/_4$ in. | 6 in. flat<br>6 in. waffle-grid<br>6 in. screen-grid |
| $6^3/_4$ in. | 8 in. flat<br>10 in. flat<br>8 in. waffle-grid |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(2)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL FRAMING PARALLEL**

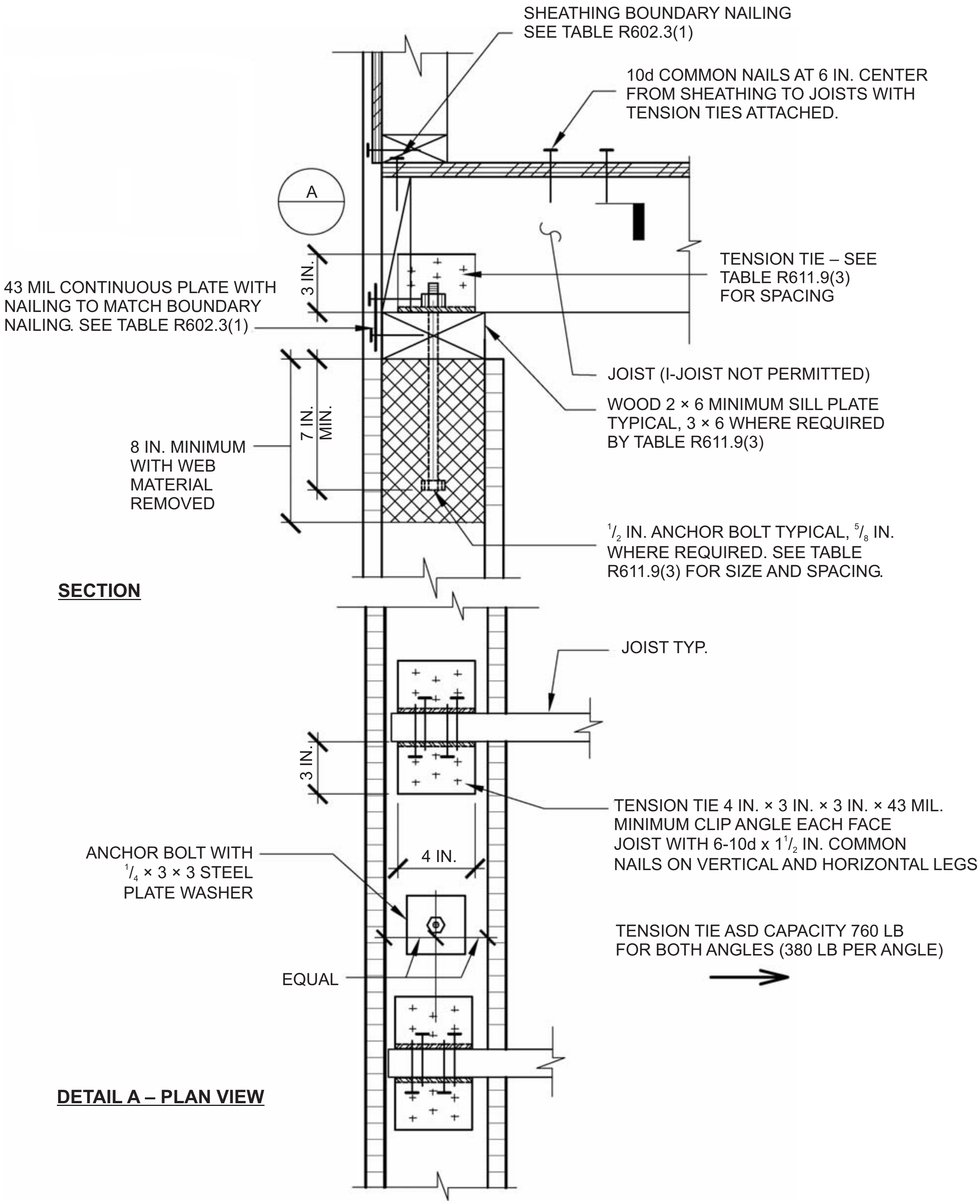
**TABLE R611.9(2)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL[a, b]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85b | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | | | |
| 24 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 24 | 48 | | | | | | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(2). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded and prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(3)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL FRAMING PERPENDICULAR**

**TABLE R611.9(3)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>A | |
| 24 | 24 | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B | 6<br>A | |
| 24 | 48 | | | 6<br>A | | | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

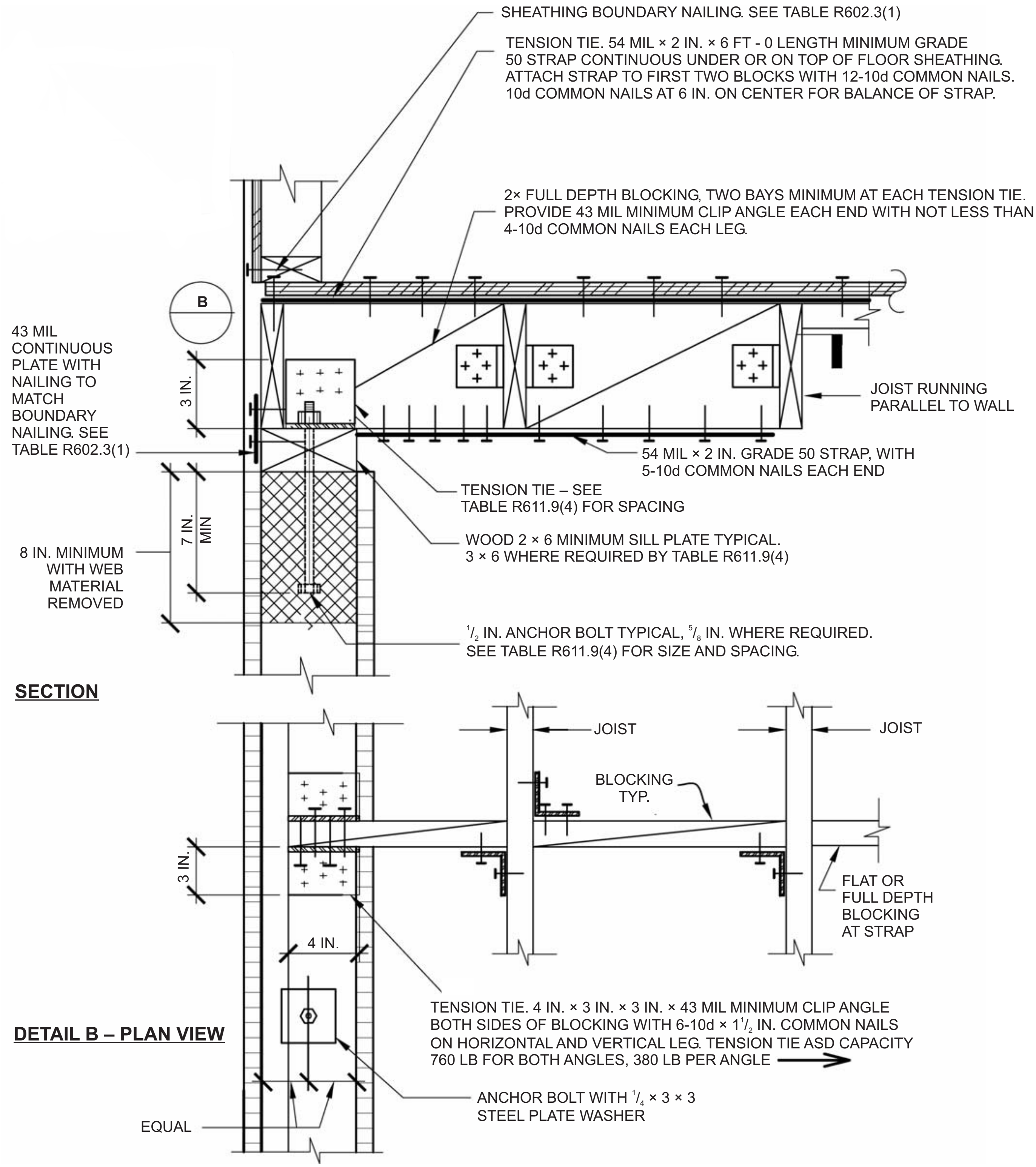
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(3). Use of this detail is permitted where cell is not shaded, prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions in Section R611 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(3). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (16 mm) diameter anchor bolt and a minimal nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(4)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL FRAMING PARALLEL**

**TABLE R611.9(4)**
**WOOD FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>A | |
| 24 | 24 | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B | 6<br>B | |
| 24 | 48 | | | 6<br>A | | | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

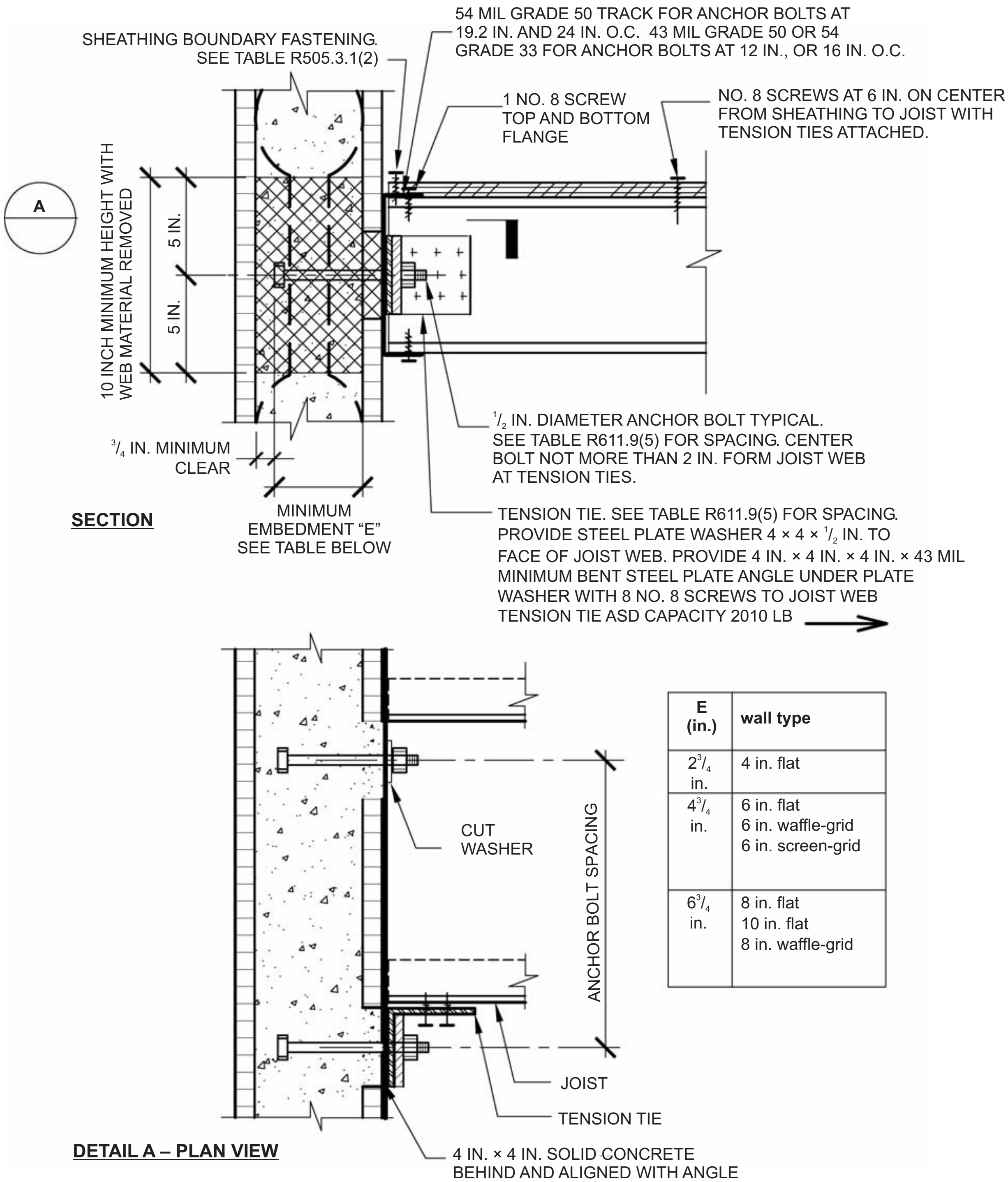
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(4). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded, prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(4). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$ inch diameter anchor bolt and a minimal nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.




| E (in.) | wall type |
|---|---|
| 2 3/4 in. | 4 in. flat |
| 4 3/4 in. | 6 in. flat<br>6 in. waffle-grid<br>6 in. screen-grid |
| 6 3/4 in. | 8 in. flat<br>10 in. flat<br>8 in. waffle-grid |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(5)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR**

**TABLE R611.9(5)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR[a, b, c, d]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | 6 |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | | | 6 |
| 24 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 24 | 48 | | | | | 6 | 6 |

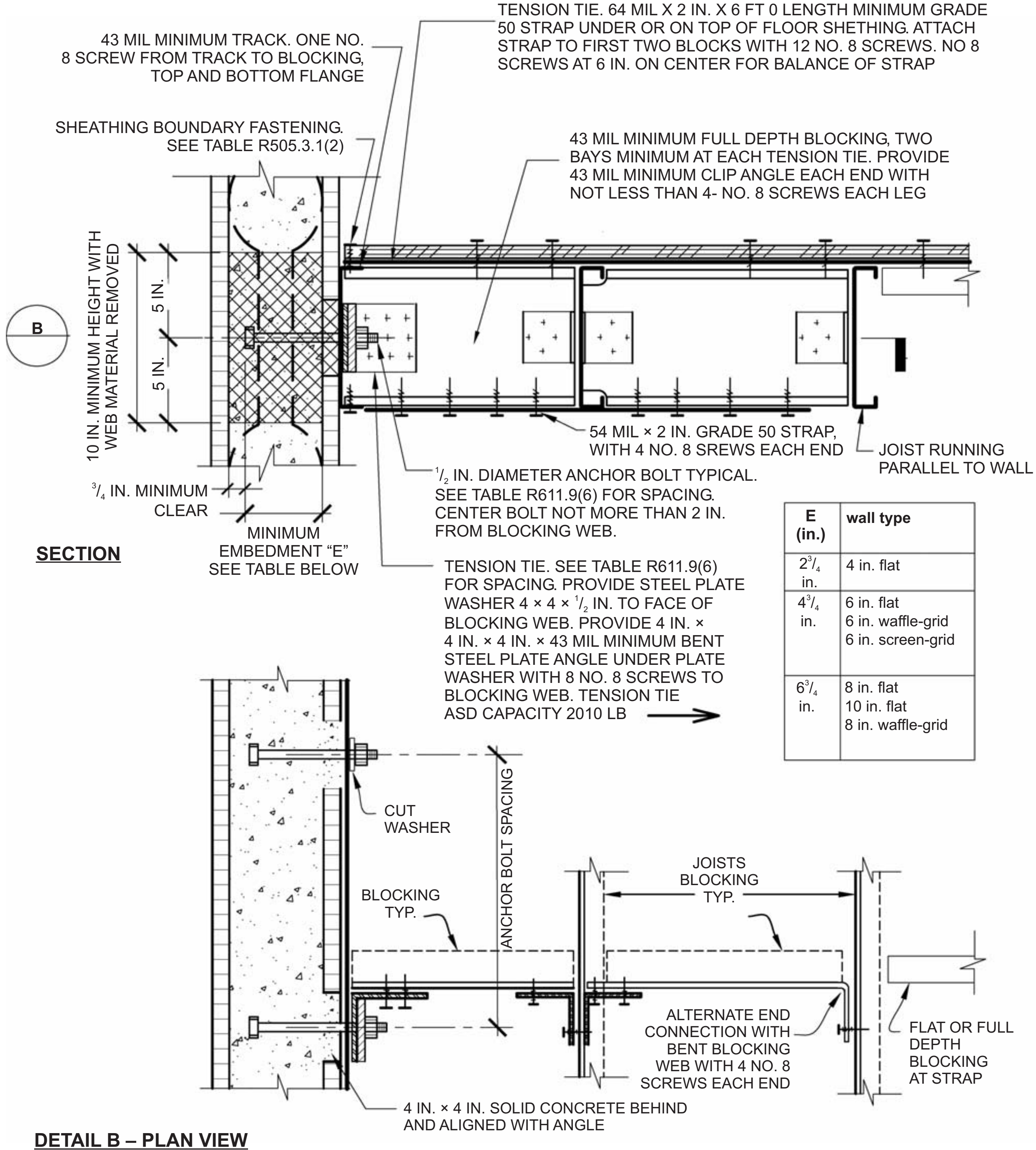
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.4470 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(5). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(5). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.




| E (in.) | wall type |
|---|---|
| $2^3/_4$ in. | 4 in. flat |
| $4^3/_4$ in. | 6 in. flat<br>6 in. waffle-grid<br>6 in. screen-grid |
| $6^3/_4$ in. | 8 in. flat<br>10 in. flat<br>8 in. waffle-grid |

For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(6)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL**

**TABLE R611.9(6)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMED FLOOR TO SIDE OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL[a, b, c, d]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | 6 |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | | | 6 |
| 24 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 24 | 48 | | | | | 6 | 6 |

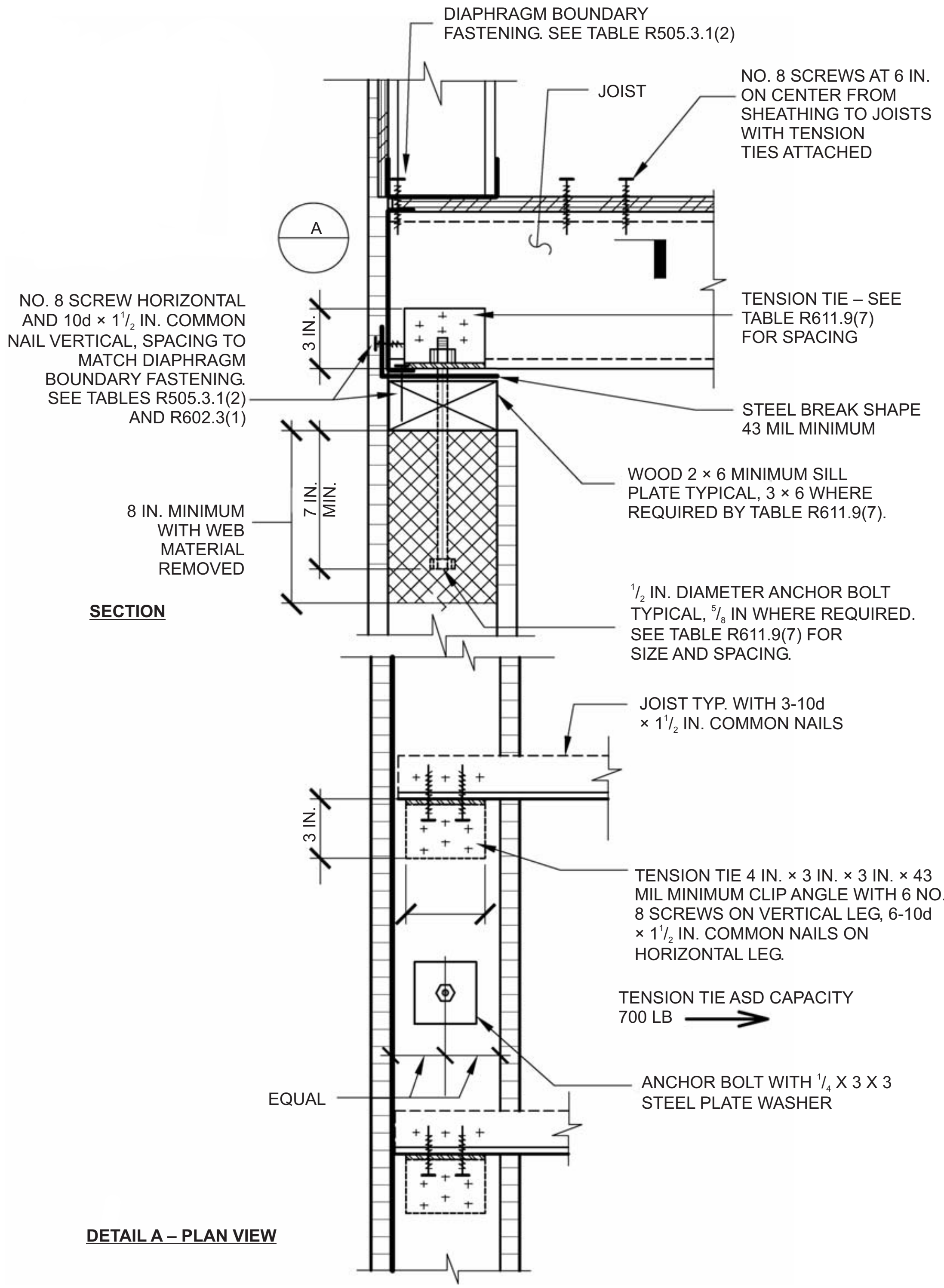
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(6). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(6). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

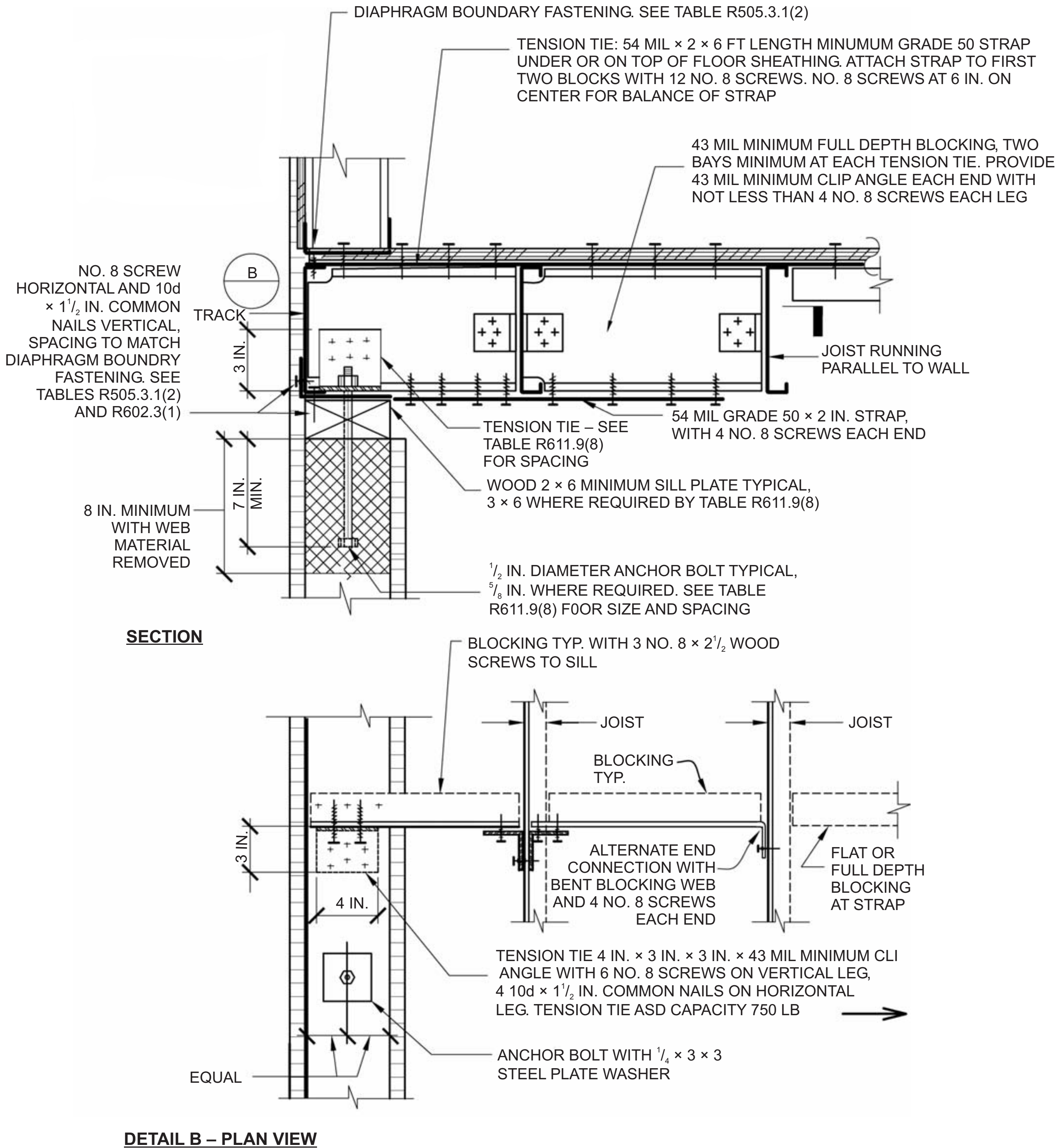
**FIGURE R611.9(7)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL FRAMING PERPENDICULAR**

**TABLE R611.9(7)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 858C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | 6<br>A | 8<br>B | 8<br>B |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | 6<br>A | 8<br>B | 8<br>B |
| 24 | 24 | | | 6<br>A | 8<br>B | 8<br>B | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(7). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded, prohibited where shaded.
b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.
c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.
d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(7). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.
e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$ inch diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(8)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL**

**TABLE R611.9(8)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMED FLOOR TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | 6<br>A | 8<br>B | 8<br>B |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | 6<br>A | 8<br>B | 8<br>B |
| 24 | 24 | | | 6<br>A | 8<br>B | 8<br>B | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

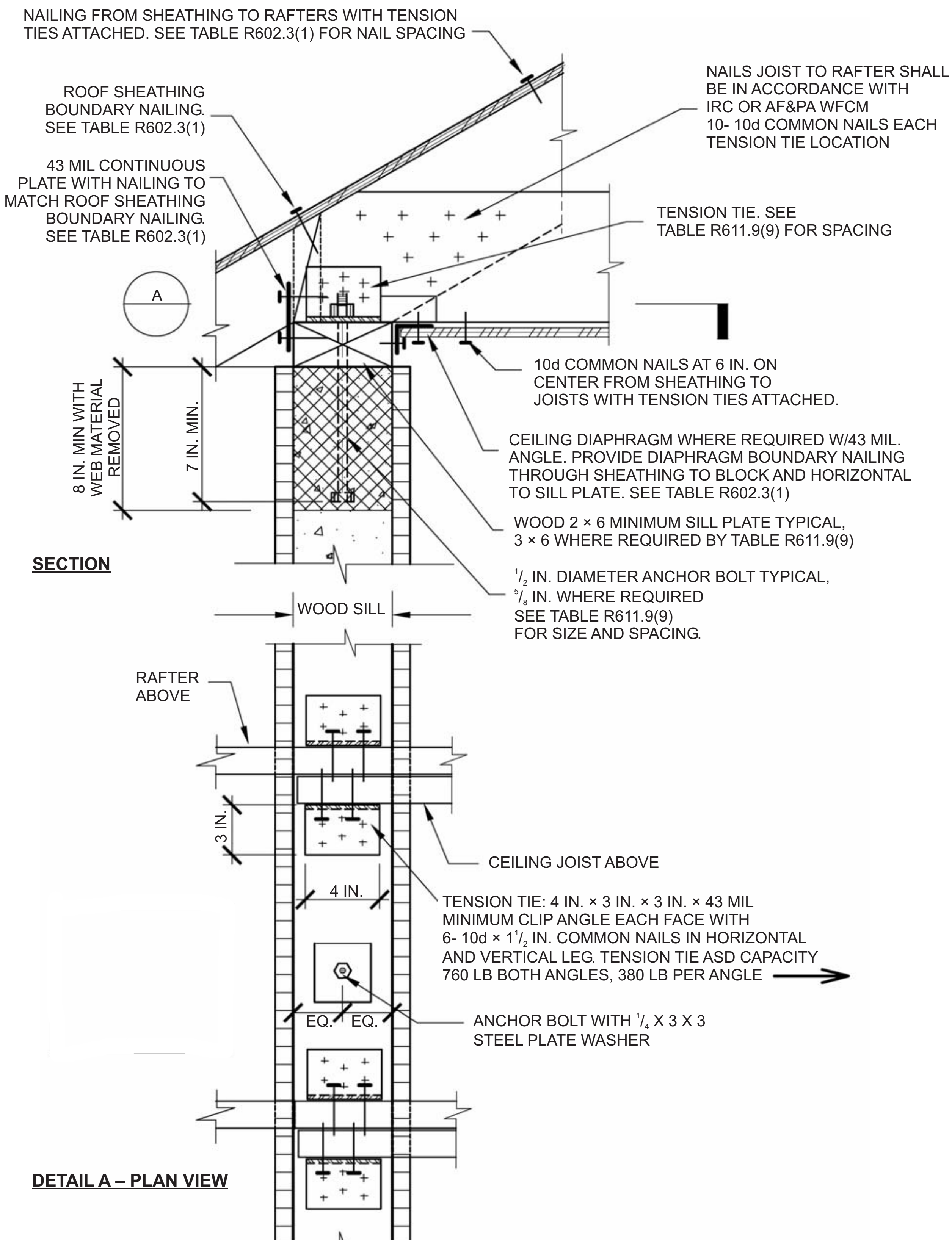
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(8). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded, prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.

d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(8). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal $3 \times 6$ sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^{5}/_{8}$ inch diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal $3 \times 6$ sill plate are required.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

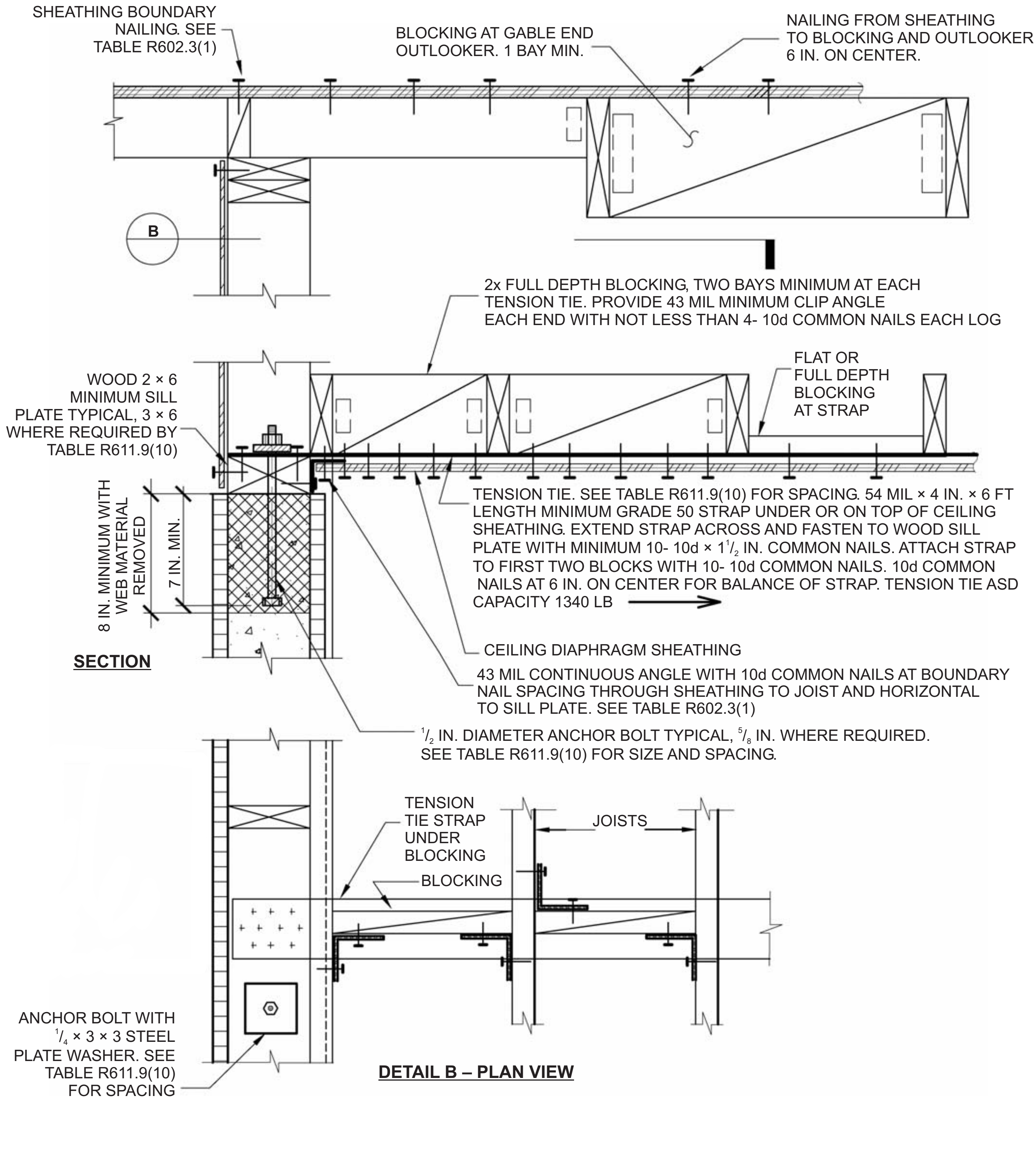
**FIGURE R611.9(9)**
**WOOD FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR**

**TABLE R611.9(9)**
**WOOD FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | | 6 |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | | 6 |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | | 6 | 6<br>A |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | | 6 | |
| 24 | 24 | | | | 6<br>A | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 24 | 48 | | | | | | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(9). Use of this detail is permitted where cell a is not shaded, prohibited where shaded.
b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.
c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.
d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(9). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.
e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $^5/_8$ inch diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(10)**
**WOOD FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL FRAMING PARALLEL**

**TABLE R611.9(10)**
**WOOD FRAMED ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 36 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 48 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 16 | 48 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | 6 | 6 | 6<br>A |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | 6 | 6 | 6<br>A |
| 24 | 24 | | | 6 | 6<br>A | 6<br>A | 6<br>B |
| 24 | 48 | | | 6 | 6<br>A | 6<br>B | 6<br>B |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; I mph = 0.447 m/s.

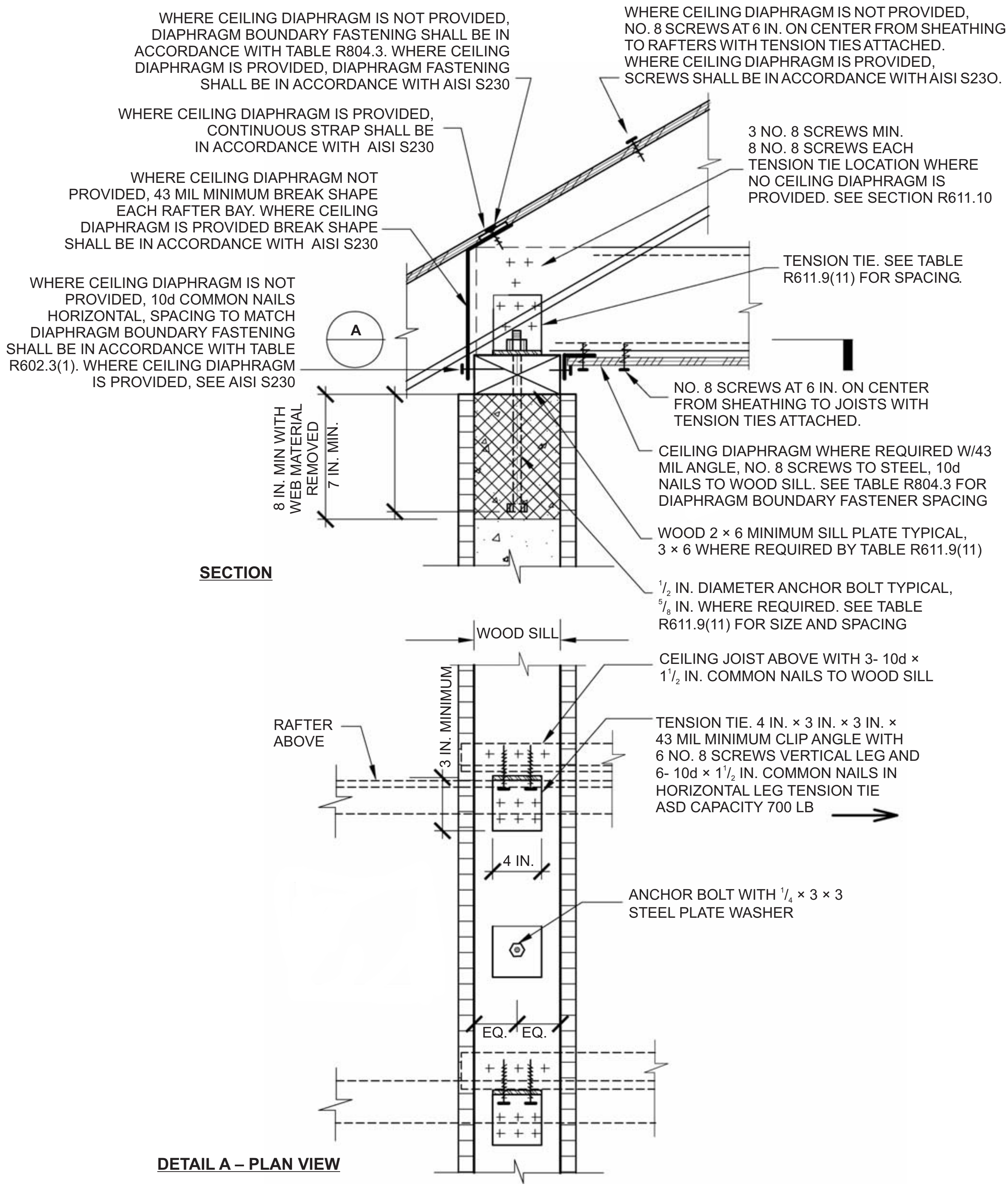
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(10). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in cells with no number.

d. Number 6 indicates minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(10). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "A" indicates that a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate is required. Letter "B" indicates that a $5/_8$ inch diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(11)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR**

**TABLE R611.9(11)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PERPENDICULAR[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | 6 | 6 | 8<br>B |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | 6 | 6 | 8<br>B |
| 24 | 24 | | | 6 | 6 | 8<br>B | (shaded) |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

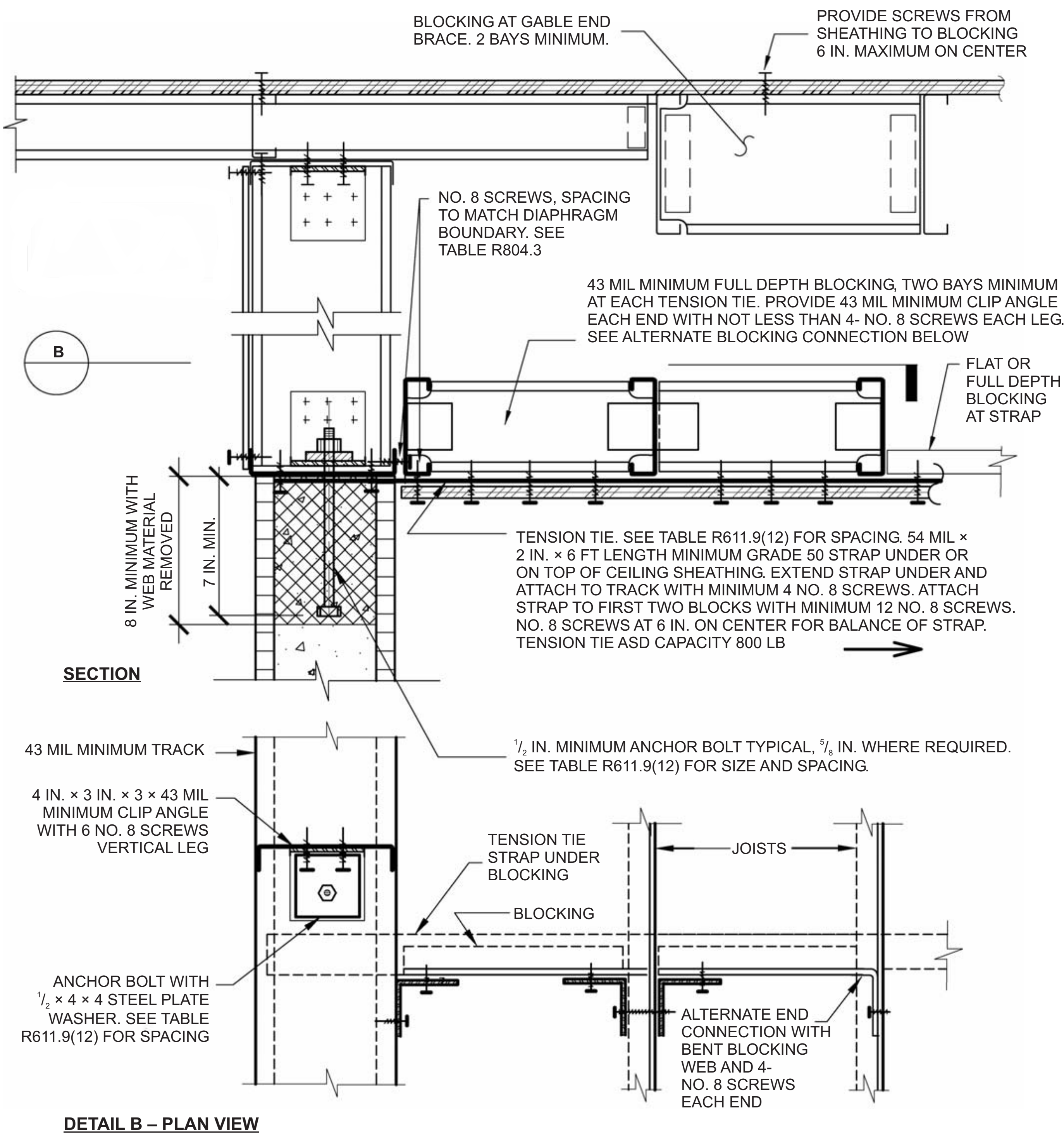
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(11). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded, prohibited where shaded.

b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.

c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in unshaded cells with no number.

d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(11). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.

e. Letter "B" indicates that a $^{5}/_{8}$ inch diameter anchor bolt and a minimum nominal 3 × 6 sill plate are required.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE R611.9(12)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL**

**TABLE R611.9(12)**
**COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TO TOP OF CONCRETE WALL, FRAMING PARALLEL[a, b, c, d, e]**

| ANCHOR BOLT SPACING (inches) | TENSION TIE SPACING (inches) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) AND WIND EXPOSURE CATEGORY | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 85B | 90B | 100B | 110B | 120B | 130B |
| | | | | 85C | 90C | 100C | 110C |
| | | | | | 85D | 90D | 100D |
| 12 | 12 | | | | | | |
| 12 | 24 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 16 | | | | | | |
| 16 | 32 | | | | | | |
| 19.2 | 19.2 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 19.2 | 38.4 | | | | | 6 | 6 |
| 24 | 24 | | | 6 | 6 | 8<br>B | 8<br>B |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.
a. This table is for use with the detail in Figure R611.9(12). Use of this detail is permitted where a cell is not shaded.
b. Wall design per other provisions of Section R611 is required.
c. For wind design, minimum 4-inch nominal wall is permitted in cells with no number.
d. Numbers 6 and 8 indicate minimum permitted nominal wall thickness in inches necessary to develop required strength (capacity) of connection. As a minimum, this nominal thickness shall occur in the portion of the wall indicated by the cross-hatching in Figure R611.9(12). For the remainder of the wall, see Note b.
e. Letter“B” indicates that a $^{5}/_{8}$ inch diameter anchor bolt is required.

**R611.10 Floor, roof and ceiling diaphragms.** Floors and roofs in all buildings with exterior walls of concrete shall be designed and constructed as *diaphragms*. Where gable-end walls occur, ceilings shall also be designed and constructed as *diaphragms*. The design and construction of floors, roofs and ceilings of wood framing or cold-formed-steel framing serving as *diaphragms* shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code, or AF&PA/WFCM or AISI S230, if applicable.

## SECTION R612
## EXTERIOR WINDOWS AND DOORS

**R612.1 General.** This section prescribes performance and construction requirements for exterior windows and doors installed in walls. Windows and doors shall be installed and flashed in accordance with the fenestration manufacturer's written installation instructions. Window and door openings shall be flashed in accordance with Section R703.8. Written installation instructions shall be provided by the fenestration manufacturer for each window or door.

**R612.2 Window sills.** In *dwelling* units, where the opening of an operable window is located more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above the finished *grade* or surface below, the lowest part of the clear opening of the window shall be a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) above the finished floor of the room in which the window is located. Operable sections of windows shall not permit openings that allow passage of a 4 inch (102 mm) diameter sphere where such openings are located within 24 inches (610 mm) of the finished floor.

**Exceptions:**

1. Windows whose openings will not allow a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere to pass through the opening when the opening is in its largest opened position.
2. Openings that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with Section R612.3.
3. Openings that are provided with fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F 2090.
4. Windows that are provided with opening limiting devices that comply with Section R612.4.

**R612.3 Window fall prevention devices.** Window fall prevention devices and window guards, where provided, shall comply with the requirements of ASTM F 2090.

**R612.4 Window opening limiting devices.** When required elsewhere in this code, window opening limiting devices shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R612.4.1 General requirements.** Window opening limiting devices shall be self acting and shall be positioned to prohibit the free passage of a 4-in. (102-mm) diameter rigid sphere through the window opening when the window opening limiting device is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**R612.4.2 Operation for emergency escape.** Window opening limiting devices shall be designed with release mechanisms to allow for emergency escape through the window opening without the need for keys, tools or special knowledge. Window opening limiting devices shall comply with all of the following:

1. Release of the window opening-limiting device shall require no more than 15 pounds (66 N) of force.
2. The window opening limiting device release mechanism shall operate properly in all types of weather.
3. Window opening limiting devices shall have their release mechanisms clearly identified for proper use in an emergency.
4. The window opening limiting device shall not reduce the minimum net clear opening area of the window unit below what is required by Section R310.1.1 of the code.

**R612.5 Performance.** Exterior windows and doors shall be designed to resist the design wind loads specified in Table R301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure per Table R301.2(3).

**[W] R612.6 Testing and labeling.** Exterior windows and sliding doors shall be tested by an *approved* independent laboratory, and bear a *label* identifying manufacturer, performance characteristics and *approved* inspection agency to indicate compliance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Exterior side-hinged doors shall be tested and *labeled* as conforming to AAMA/ WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 or comply with Section R612.8.

**Exceptions:**

1. Decorative glazed openings.
2. Custom exterior windows and doors manufactured by a *small business* are exempt from all testing requirements in Section R613 provided they meet the applicable provisions of Chapter 24 of the *International Building Code*.

**R612.6.1 Comparative analysis.** Structural wind load design pressures for window and door units smaller than the size tested in accordance with Section R612.6 shall be permitted to be higher than the design value of the tested unit provided such higher pressures are determined by accepted engineering analysis. All components of the small unit shall be the same as those of the tested unit. Where such calculated design pressures are used, they shall be validated by an additional test of the window or door unit having the highest allowable design pressure.

**R612.7 Vehicular access doors.** Vehicular access doors shall be tested in accordance with either ASTM E 330 or ANSI/ DASMA 108, and shall meet the acceptance criteria of ANSI/DASMA 108.

**R612.8 Other exterior window and door assemblies.** Exterior windows and door assemblies not included within the scope of Section R612.6 or Section R612.7 shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 330. Glass in assemblies covered by this exception shall comply with Section R308.5.

**R612.9 Wind-borne debris protection.** Protection of exterior windows and glass doors in buildings located in wind-borne debris regions shall be in accordance with Section R301.2.1.2.

**R612.9.1 Fenestration testing and labeling.** Fenestration shall be tested by an *approved* independent laboratory, listed by an *approved* entity, and bear a *label* identifying manufacturer, performance characteristics, and *approved* inspection agency to indicate compliance with the requirements of the following specification:

1. ASTM E 1886 and ASTM E 1996; or
2. AAMA 506.

**R612.10 Anchorage methods.** The methods cited in this section apply only to anchorage of window and glass door assemblies to the main force-resisting system.

**R612.10.1 Anchoring requirements.** Window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored in accordance with the published manufacturer's recommendations to achieve the design pressure specified. Substitute anchoring systems used for substrates not specified by the fenestration manufacturer shall provide equal or greater anchoring performance as demonstrated by accepted engineering practice.

**R612.10.2 Anchorage details.** Products shall be anchored in accordance with the minimum requirements illustrated in Figures R612.8(1), R612.8(2), R612.8(3), R612.8(4), R612.8(5), R612.8(6), R612.8(7) and R612.8(8).

**R612.10.2.1 Masonry, concrete or other structural substrate.** Where the wood shim or buck thickness is less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored through the jamb, or by jamb clip and anchors shall be embedded directly into the masonry, concrete or other substantial substrate material. Anchors shall adequately transfer load from the window or door frame into the rough opening substrate [see Figures R612.8(1) and R612.8(2).]

Where the wood shim or buck thickness is $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) or more, the buck is securely fastened to the masonry, concrete or other substantial substrate, and the buck extends beyond the interior face of the window or door frame, window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored through the jamb, or by jamb clip, or through the flange to the secured wood buck. Anchors shall be embedded into the secured wood buck to adequately transfer load from the window or door frame assembly [Figures R612.8(3), R612.8(4) and R612.8(5)].

**R612.10.2.2 Wood or other approved framing material.** Where the framing material is wood or other *approved* framing material, window and glass door assemblies shall be anchored through the frame, or by frame clip, or through the flange. Anchors shall be embedded into the frame construction to adequately transfer load [Figures R612.8(6), R612.8(7) and R612.8(8)].

**R612.11 Mullions.** Mullions shall be tested by an *approved* testing laboratory in accordance with AAMA 450, or be engineered in accordance with accepted engineering practice. Mullions tested as stand-alone units or qualified by engineering shall use performance criteria cited in Sections R612.11.1, R612.11.2 and R612.11.3. Mullions qualified by an actual test of an entire assembly shall comply with Sections R612.11.1 and R612.11.3.

**R612.11.1 Load transfer.** Mullions shall be designed to transfer the design pressure loads applied by the window and door assemblies to the rough opening substrate.

**R612.11.2 Deflection.** Mullions shall be capable of resisting the design pressure loads applied by the window and door assemblies to be supported without deflecting more than *L*/175, where *L* is the span of the mullion in inches.

**R612.11.3 Structural safety factor.** Mullions shall be capable of resisting a load of 1.5 times the design pressure loads applied by the window and door assemblies to be supported without exceeding the appropriate material stress levels. If tested by an *approved* laboratory, the 1.5 times the design pressure load shall be sustained for 10 seconds, and the permanent deformation shall not exceed 0.4 percent of the mullion span after the 1.5 times design pressure load is removed.

## SECTION R613 STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANEL WALL CONSTRUCTION

**R613.1 General.** Structural insulated panel (SIP) walls shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of this section. When the provisions of this section are used to design structural insulated panel walls, project drawings, typical details and specifications are not required to bear the seal of the architect or engineer responsible for design, unless otherwise required by the state law of the *jurisdiction* having authority.

**R613.2 Applicability limits.** The provisions of this section shall control the construction of exterior structural insulated panel walls and interior load-bearing structural insulated panel walls for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length perpendicular to the joist or truss span, not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width parallel to the joist or truss span and not greater than two stories in height with each wall not greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) high. All exterior walls installed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be considered as load-bearing walls. Structural insulated panel walls constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 130 miles per hour (58 m/s), Exposure A, B or C, and a maximum ground snow load of 70 pounds per foot (3.35 kPa), and Seismic Design Categories A, B, and C.

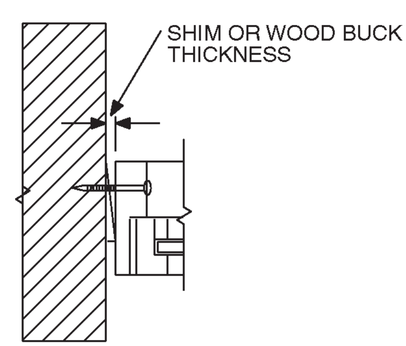
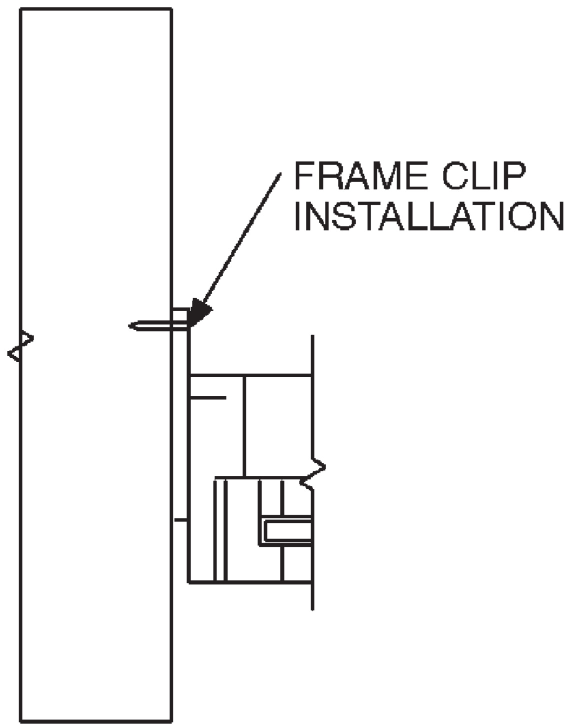
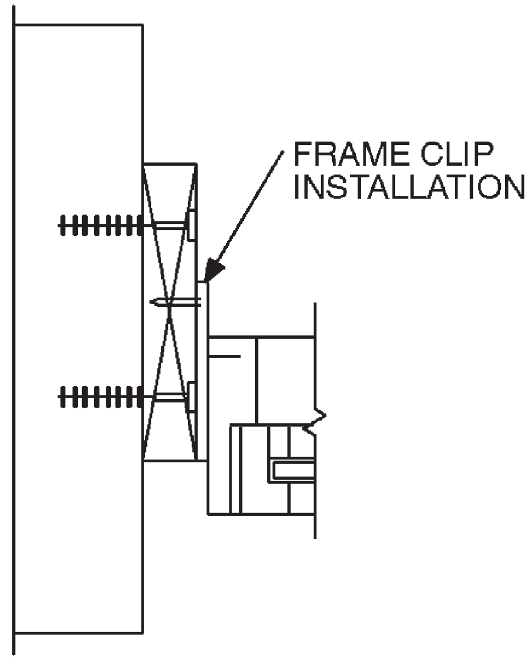



**FIGURE R612.8(1)**
**THROUGH THE FRAME**



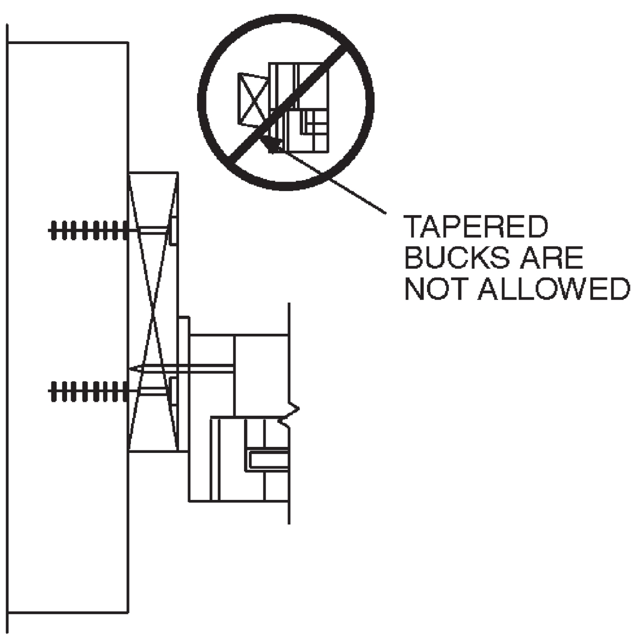

APPLY FRAME CLIP TO WINDOW OR DOOR IN ACCORDANCE WITH PUBLISHED MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDATIONS.

**FIGURE R612.8(2)**
**FRAME CLIP**



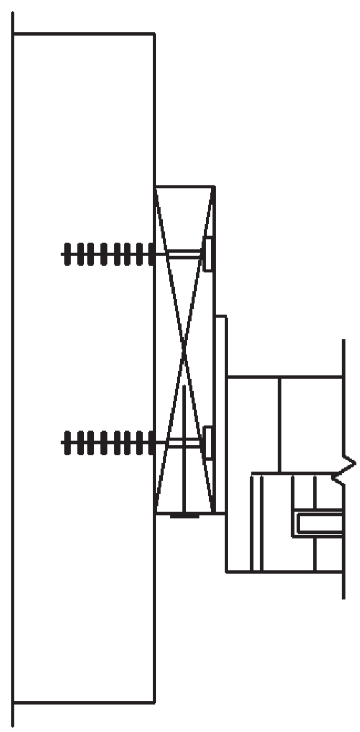

APPLY FRAME CLIP TO WINDOW OR DOOR FRAME IN ACCORDANCE WITH PUBLISHED MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDATIONS. ANCHORS SHALL BE PROVIDED TO TRANSFER LOAD FROM THE FRAME CLIP INTO THE ROUGH OPENING SUBSTRATE.

**FIGURE R612.8(4)**
**FRAME CLIP**




THROUGH THE FRAME ANCHORING METHOD. ANCHORS SHALL BE PROVIDED TO TRANSFER LOAD FROM THE WINDOW OR DOOR FRAME INTO THE ROUGH OPENING SUBSTRATE.

**FIGURE R612.8(3)**
**THROUGH THE FRAME**



APPLY ANCHORS THROUGH FLANGE IN ACCORDANCE WITH PUBLISHED MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDATIONS.

**FIGURE R612.8(5)**
**THROUGH THE FLANGE**

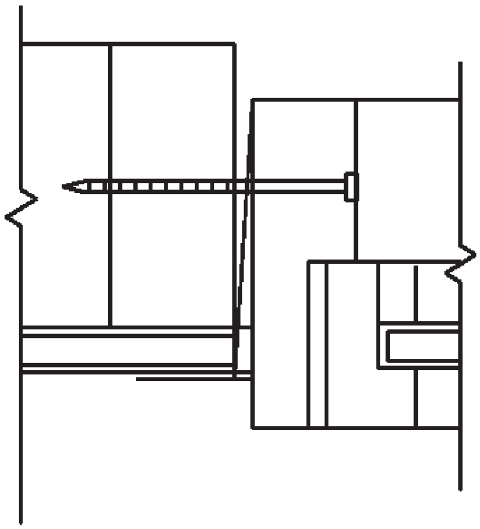


FIGURE R612.8(6)
THROUGH THE FLANGE

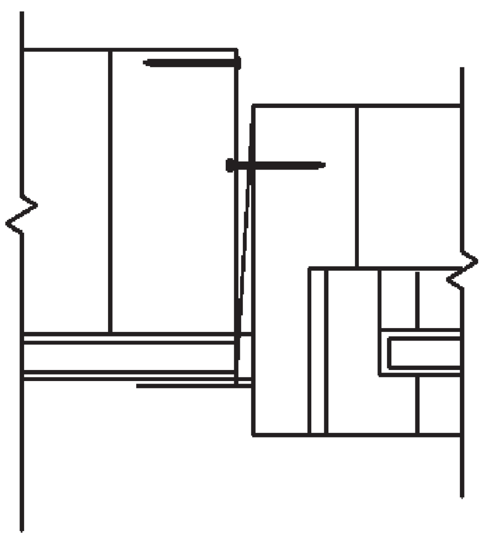


FIGURE R612.8(7)
FRAME CLIP

**R613.3 Materials.** SIPs shall comply with the following criteria:

**R613.3.1 Core.** The core material shall be composed of foam plastic insulation meeting one of the following requirements:

1. ASTM C 578 and have a minimum density of 0.90 pounds per cubic feet (14.4 kg/m$^3$); or
2. Polyurethane meeting the physical properties shown in Table R613.3.1, or;
3. An *approved* alternative.

All cores shall meet the requirements of Section R316.

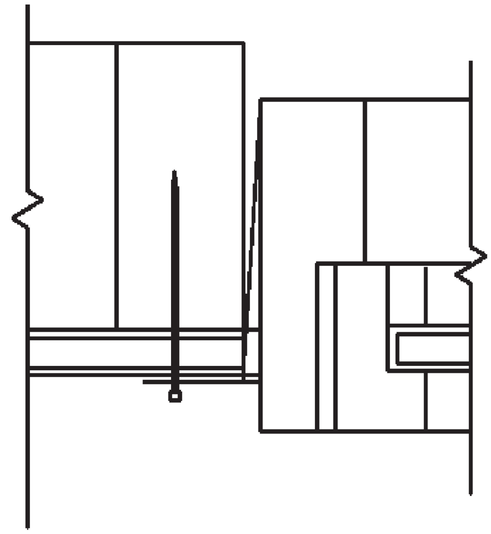


FIGURE R612.8(8)
THROUGH THE FLANGE

**R613.3.2 Facing.** Facing materials for SIPs shall be wood structural panels conforming to DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, each having a minimum nominal thickness of $^7/_{16}$ inch (11 mm) and shall meet the additional minimum properties specified in Table R613.3.2. Facing shall be identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency.

**R613.3.3 Adhesive.** Adhesives used to structurally laminate the foam plastic insulation core material to the structural wood facers shall conform to ASTM D 2559 or *approved* alternative specifically intended for use as an adhesive used in the lamination of structural insulated panels. Each container of adhesive shall bear a *label* with the adhesive manufacturer's name, adhesive name and type and the name of the quality assurance agency.

**R613.3.4 Lumber.** The minimum lumber framing material used for SIPs prescribed in this document is NLGA graded No. 2 Spruce-pine-fir. Substitution of other wood species/grades that meet or exceed the mechanical properties and specific gravity of No. 2 Spruce-pine-fir shall be permitted.

**R613.3.5 SIP screws.** Screws used for the erection of SIPs as specified in Section R613.5 shall be fabricated from steel, shall be provided by the SIPs manufacturer and shall be sized to penetrate the wood member to which the assembly is being attached by a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm). The screws shall be corrosion resistant and have a minimum shank diameter of 0.188 inch (4.7 mm) and a minimum head diameter of 0.620 inch (15.5 mm).

**R613.3.6 Nails.** Nails specified in Section R613 shall be common or galvanized box unless otherwise stated.

**R613.4 SIP wall panels**. SIPs shall comply with Figure R613.4 and shall have minimum panel thickness in accordance with Tables R613.5(1) and R613.5(2) for above-grade walls. All SIPs shall be identified by grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency.

**TABLE R613.3.1**
**MINIMUM PROPERTIES FOR POLYURETHANE INSULATION USED AS SIPS CORE**

| PHYSICAL PROPERTY | POLYURETHANE |
|---|---|
| Density, core nominal. (ASTM D 1622) | 2.2 lb/ft$^3$ |
| Compressive resistance at yield or 10% deformation, whichever occurs first. (ASTM D 1621) | 19 psi (perpendicular to rise) |
| Flexural strength, min. (ASTM C 203) | 30 psi |
| Tensile strength, min. (ASTM D 1623) | 35 psi |
| Shear strength, min. (ASTM C 273) | 25 psi |
| Substrate adhesion, min. (ASTM D 1623) | 22 psi |
| Water vapor permeance of 1.00-in. thickness, max. (ASTM E 96) | 2.3 perm |
| Water absorption by total immersion, max. (ASTM C 272) | 4.3% (volume) |
| Dimensional stability (change in dimensions), max. [ASTM D2126 (7 days at 158°F/100% humidity and 7 days at -20°F)] | 2% |

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m$^3$, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, °C = [(°F) - 32]1.8.

**TABLE R613.3.2**
**MINIMUM PROPERTIES[a] FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL FACING MATERIAL USED IN SIP WALLS**

| THICKNESS (inch) | PRODUCT | FLATWISE STIFFNESS[b] (lbf-in$^2$/ft) | | FLATWISE STRENGTH[c] (lbf-in/ft) | | TENSION[c] (lbf/ft) | | DENSITY[b, d] (pcf) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Along | Across | Along | Across | Along | Across | |
| $^7/_{16}$ | Sheathing | 54,700 | 27,100 | 950 | 870 | 6,800 | 6,500 | 35 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 lbf-in$^2$/ft = 9.415 × 10$^{-6}$ kPa/m, 1 lbf-in/ft = 3.707 × 10$^{-4}$ kN/m, 1 lbf/ft = 0.0146 N/mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.018 kg/m$^3$.
a. Values listed in Table R613.3.2 are qualification test values and are not to be used for design purposes.
b. Mean test value shall be in accordance with Section 7.6 of DOC PS 2.
c. Characteristic test value (5th percent with 75% confidence).
d. Density shall be based on oven-dry weight and oven-dry volume.

**R613.4.1 Labeling.** All panels shall be identified by grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency. Each (SIP) shall bear a stamp or *label* with the following minimum information:

1. Manufacturer name/logo.
2. Identification of the assembly.
3. Quality assurance agency.

**R613.5 Wall construction.** Exterior walls of SIP construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section and Tables R613.5(1) and R613.5(2) and Figures R613.5(1) through R613.5(5). SIP walls shall be fastened to other wood building components in accordance with Tables R602.3(1) through R602.3(4).

Framing shall be attached in accordance with Table R602.3(1) unless otherwise provided for in Section R613.

**R613.5.1 Top plate connection.** SIP walls shall be capped with a double top plate installed to provide overlapping at corner, intersections and splines in accordance with Figure R613.5.1. The double top plates shall be made up of a single 2 by top plate having a width equal to the width of the panel core, and shall be recessed into the SIP below. Over this top plate a cap plate shall be placed. The cap plate width shall match the SIP thickness and overlap the facers on both sides of the panel. End joints in top plates shall be offset at least 24 inches (610 mm).

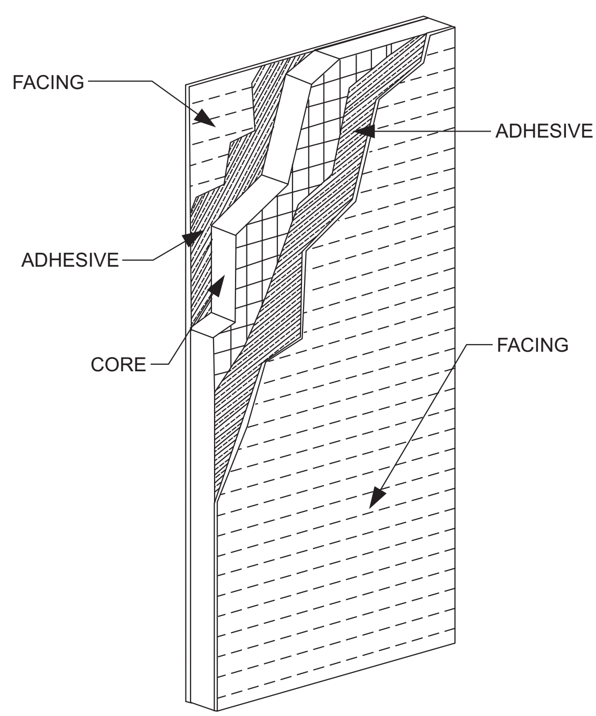



**FIGURE R613.4**
**SIP WALL PANEL**

**R613.5.2 Bottom (sole) plate connection.** SIP walls shall have full bearing on a sole plate having a width equal to the nominal width of the foam core. When SIP walls are supported directly on continuous foundations, the wall wood sill plate shall be anchored to the foundation in accordance with Figure R613.5.2 and Section R403.1.

**R613.5.3 Wall bracing.** SIP walls shall be braced in accordance with Section R602.10. SIP walls shall be considered continuous wood structural panel sheathing for purposes of computing required bracing. SIP walls shall meet the requirements of Section R602.10.4 except that SIPs corners shall be fabricated as shown in Figure R613.9. When SIP walls are used for wall bracing, the SIP bottom plate shall be attached to wood framing below in accordance with Table R602.3(1).

**R613.6 Interior load-bearing walls.** Interior load-bearing walls shall be constructed as specified for exterior walls.

**R613.7 Drilling and notching.** The maximum vertical chase penetration in SIPs shall have a maximum side dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) centered in the panel core. Vertical chases shall have a minimum spacing of 24-inches (610 mm) on center. Maximum of two horizontal chases shall be permitted in each wall panel, one at 14 inches (360 mm) from the bottom of the panel and one at mid-height of the wall panel. The maximum allowable penetration size in a wall panel shall be circular or rectangular with a maximum dimension of 12 inches (305 mm). Overcutting of holes in facing panels shall not be permitted.

**R613.8 Connection.** SIPs shall be connected at vertical in-plane joints in accordance with Figure R613.8 or by other *approved* methods.

**R613.9 Corner framing.** Corner framing of SIP walls shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R613.9.

**R613.10 Headers.** SIP headers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Table R613.10 and Figure R613.5.1. SIPs headers shall be continuous sections without splines. Headers shall be at least $11^7/_8$ inches (302 mm) deep. Headers longer than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed in accordance with Section R602.7.

**R613.10.1 Wood structural panel box headers.** Wood structural panel box headers shall be allowed where SIP headers are not applicable. Wood structural panel box headers shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R602.7.2 and Table R602.7.2.

**TABLE R613.5(1)**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR SIP WALL SUPPORTING SIP LIGHT-FRAME ROOF ONLY (inches)**

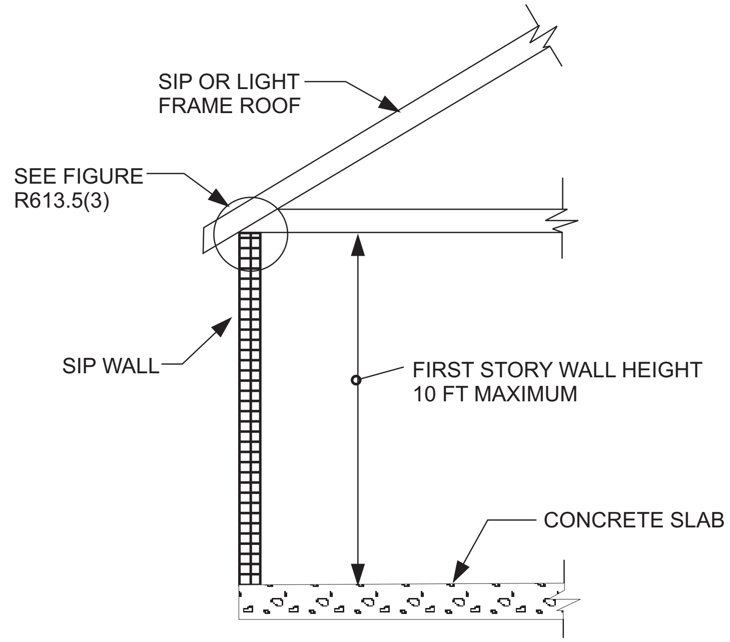
| WIND SPEED (3-second gust) | | SNOW LOAD (psf) | BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 24 | | | 28 | | | 32 | | | 36 | | | 40 | | |
| | | | Wall Height (ft) | | | Wall Height (ft) | | | Wall Height (ft) | | | Wall Height (ft) | | | Wall Height (ft) | | |
| Exp. A/B | Exp. C | | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| 85 | — | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 100 | 85 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 110 | 100 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| 120 | 110 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| 130 | 120 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A |
| — | 130 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 4.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 4.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 4.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 4.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 4.5 | N/A | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | N/A | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
Maximum deflection criterion: *L*/240.
Maximum roof dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum roof live load: 70 psf.
Maximum ceiling dead load: 5 psf.
Maximum ceiling live load: 20 psf.
Wind loads based on Table R301.2 (2).
N/A indicates not applicable.

**TABLE R613.5(2)**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR SIP WALLS SUPPORTING SIP OR LIGHT-FRAME ONE STORY AND ROOF (inches)**

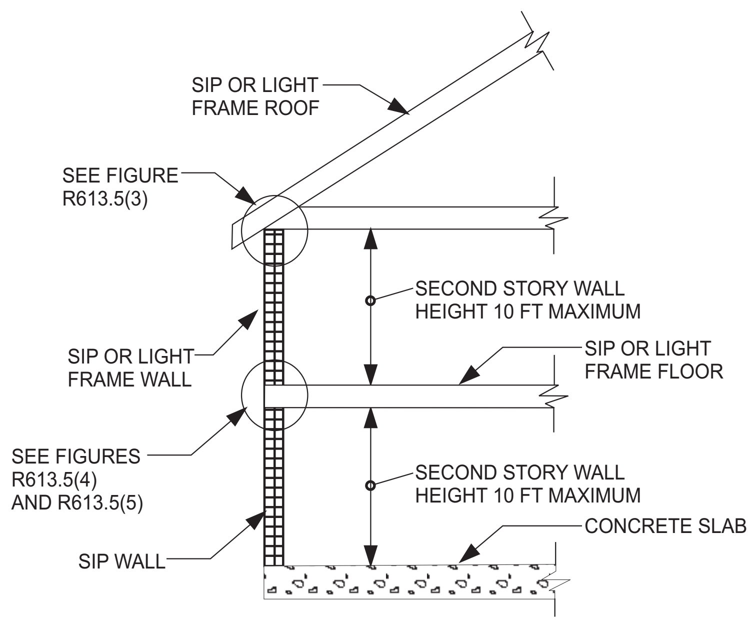
| WIND SPEED (3-second gust) | | SNOW LOAD (psf) | BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 24 | | | 28 | | | 32 | | | 36 | | | 40 | | |
| | | | Wall Height (feet) | | | Wall Height (feet) | | | Wall Height (feet) | | | Wall Height (feet) | | | Wall Height (feet) | | |
| Exp. A/B | Exp. C | | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| 85 | — | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| 100 | 85 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | N/A | N/A |
| 110 | 100 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | N/A |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 120 | 110 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | 6.5 | N/A |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 130 | 120 | 20 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A |
| | | 30 | 4.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 4.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A |
| | | 50 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | | 70 | 4.5 | 6.5 | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| — | 130 | 20 | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | | 30 | 6.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | | 50 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | | 70 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
Maximum deflection criterion: *L*/240.
Maximum roof dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum roof live load: 70 psf.
Maximum ceiling dead load: 5 psf.
Maximum ceiling live load: 20 psf.
Maximum second floor live load: 30 psf.
Maximum second floor dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum second floor dead load from walls: 10 psf.
Maximum first floor live load: 40 psf.
Maximum first floor dead load: 10 psf.
Wind loads based on Table R301.2 (2).
N/A indicates not applicable.



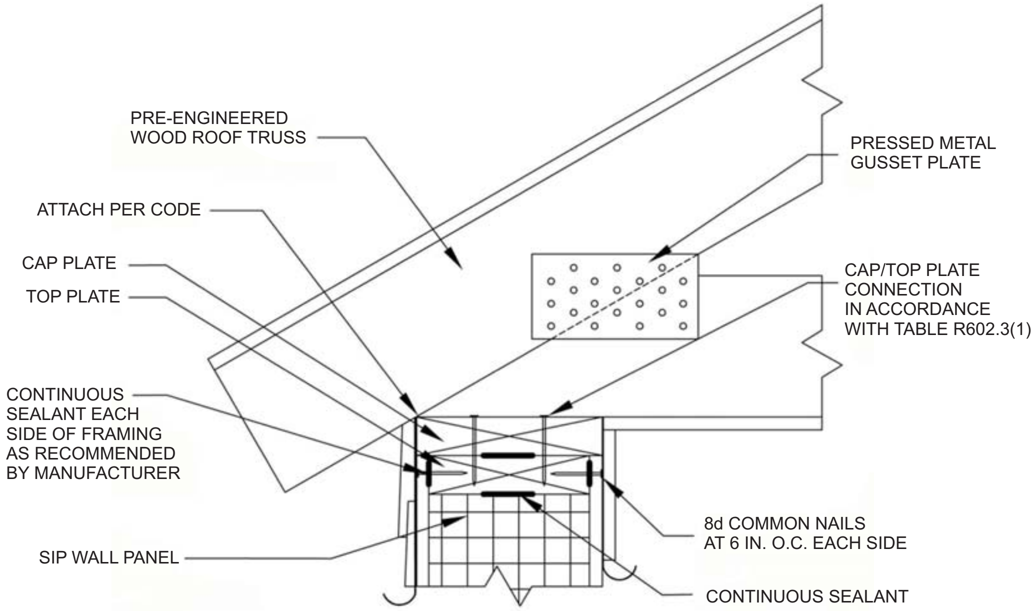

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R613.5(1)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HEIGHT OF SIP WALLS**



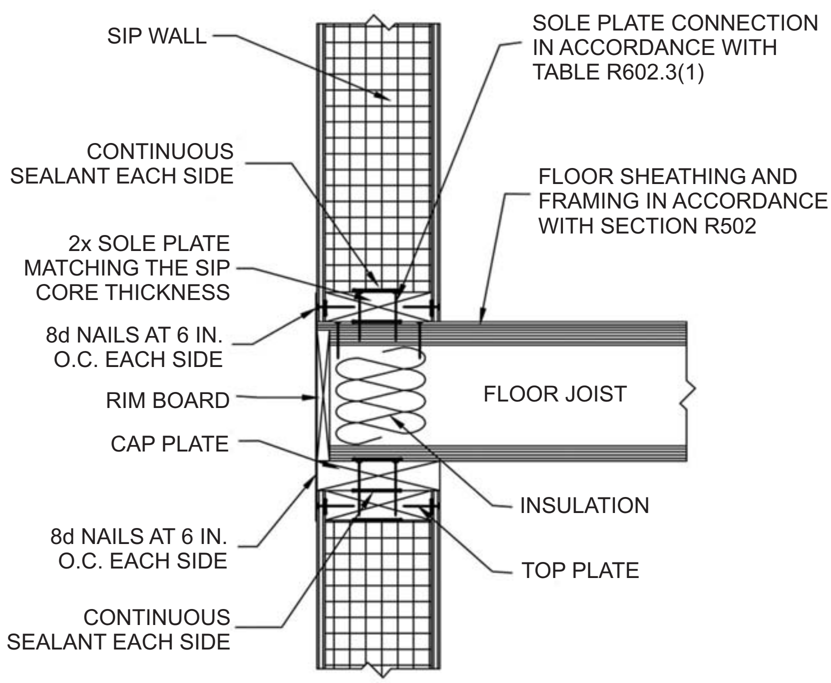

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R613.5(2)**
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HEIGHT OF SIP WALLS**



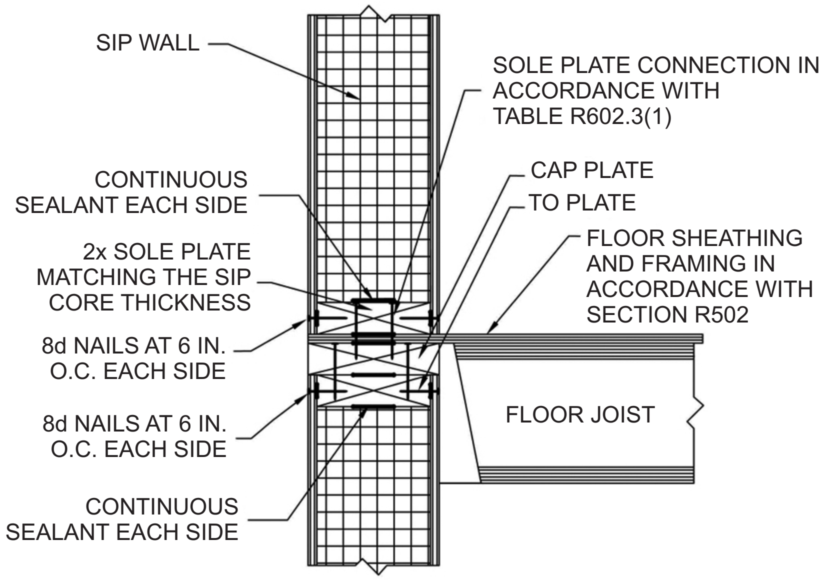

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R613.5(3)**
**TRUSSED ROOF TO TOP PLATE CONNECTION**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Note: Figures illustrate SIP-specific attachment requirements. Other connections shall be made in accordance with Table R602.3(1) and (2) as appropriate.

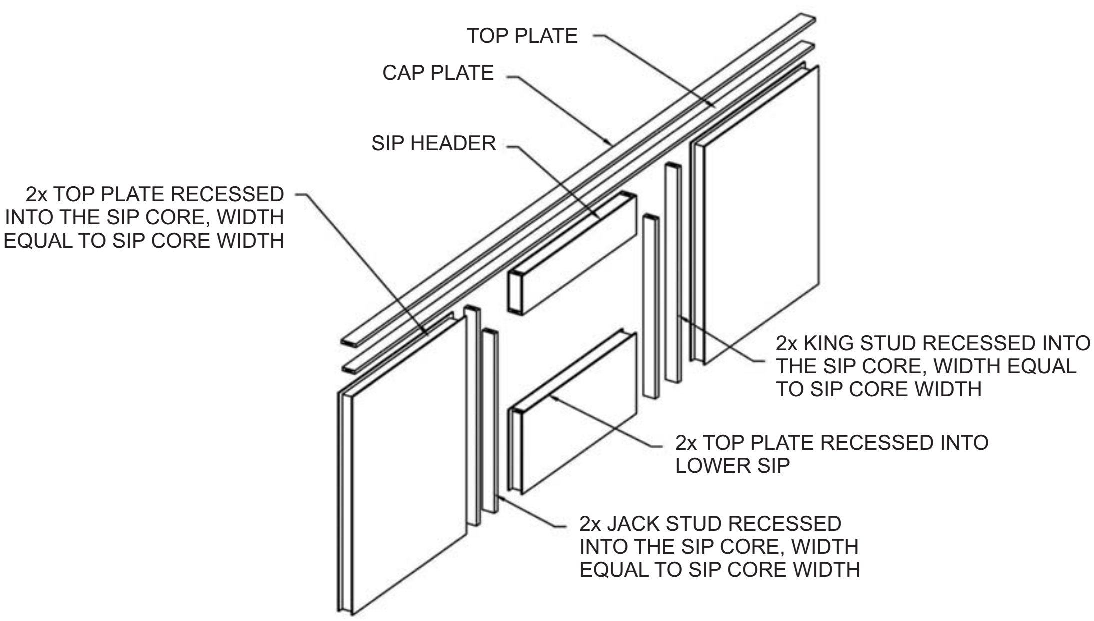
**FIGURE R613.5(4)**
**SIP WALL TO WALL PLATFORM FRAME CONNECTION**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Note: Figures illustrate SIP-specific attachment requirements. Other connections shall be made in accordance with Tables R602.3(1) and (2), as appropriate.

**FIGURE R613.5(5)**
**SIP WALL TO WALL BALLOON FRAME CONNECTION**
**(I-Joist floor shown for Illustration only)**

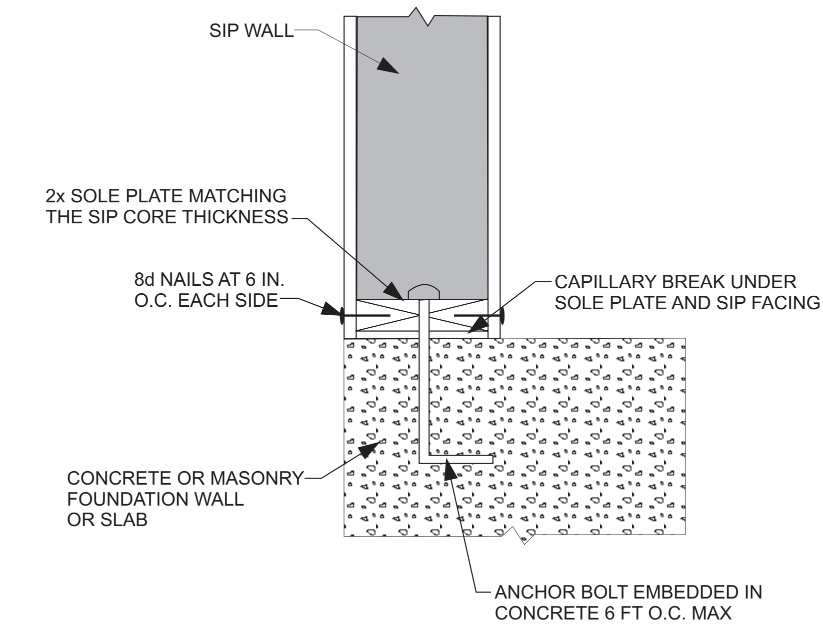



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Notes:

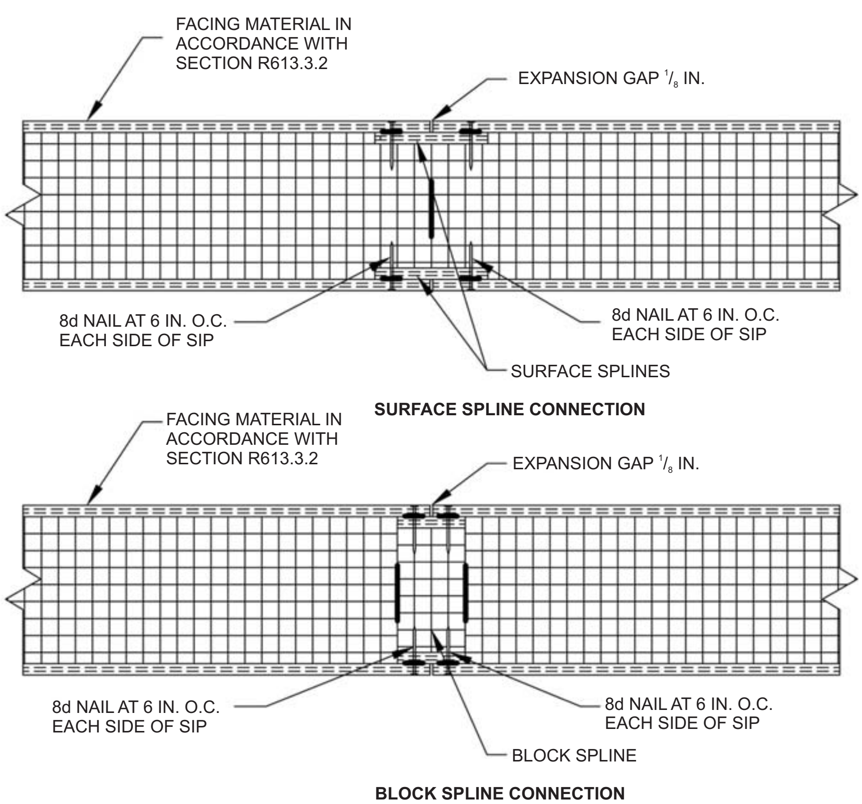
1. Top plates shall be continuous over header.
2. Lower 2x top plate shall have a width equal to the SIP core width and shall be recessed into the top edge of the panel. Cap plate shall be placed over the recessed top plate and shall have a width equal to the SIPs width.
3. SIP facing surfaces shall be nailed to framing and cripples with 8d common or galvanized box nails spaced 6 inches on center.
4. Galvanized nails shall be hot-dipped or tumbled. Framing shall be attached in accordance to Section R602.3(1) unless otherwise provide for in Section R613.

**FIGURE R613.5.1**
**SIP WALL FRAMING CONFIGURATION**



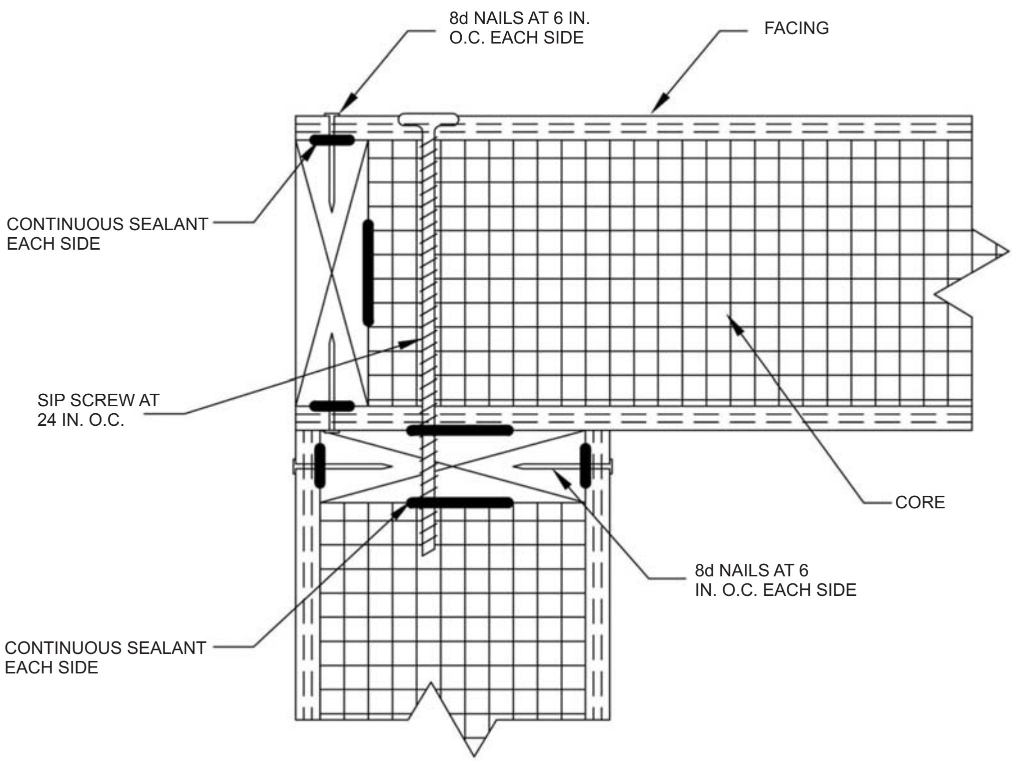

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R613.5.2**
**SIP WALL TO CONCRETE SLAB FOR FOUNDATION WALL ATTACHMENT**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R613.8**
**TYPICAL SIP CONNECTION DETAILS FOR VERTICAL IN-PLANE JOINTS**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R613.9**
**SIP CORNER FRAMING DETAIL**

**TABLE R613.10**
**MAXIMUM SPANS FOR $11^{7}/_{8}$ INCH DEEP SIP HEADERS (feet)**

| LOAD CONDITION | SNOW LOAD (psf) | BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 |
| Supporting roof only | 20 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 2 |
| | 30 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 2 | 2 |
| | 50 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| | 70 | 2 | 2 | 2 | N/A | N/A |
| Supporting roof and one-story | 20 | 2 | 2 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | 30 | 2 | 2 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | 50 | 2 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| | 70 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
Maximum deflection criterion: *L*/360.
Maximum roof dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum ceiling load: 5 psf.
Maximum second floor live load: 30 psf.
Maximum second floor dead load: 10 psf.
Maximum second floor dead load from walls: 10 psf.
N/A indicates not applicable.

# CHAPTER 7

# WALL COVERING

## SECTION R701 GENERAL

**R701.1 Application.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the interior and exterior wall covering for all buildings.

**R701.2 Installation.** Products sensitive to adverse weather shall not be installed until adequate weather protection for the installation is provided. Exterior sheathing shall be dry before applying exterior cover.

## SECTION R702 INTERIOR COVERING

**R702.1 General.** Interior coverings or wall finishes shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and Table R702.1(1), Table R702.1(2), Table R702.1(3) and Table R702.3.5. Interior masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section R703.7.1 for support and Section R703.7.4 for anchorage, except an air space is not required. Interior finishes and materials shall conform to the flame spread and smoke-development requirements of Section R302.9.

**TABLE R702.1(1)**
**THICKNESS OF PLASTER**

| PLASTER BASE | FINISHED THICKNESS OF PLASTER FROM FACE OF LATH, MASONRY, CONCRETE (inches) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Gypsum Plaster | Cement Plaster |
| Expanded metal lath | $^5/_8$, minimum[a] | $^5/_8$, minimum[a] |
| Wire lath | $^5/_8$, minimum[a] | $^3/_4$, minimum (interior)[b]<br>$^7/_8$, minimum (exterior)[b] |
| Gypsum lath[g] | $^1/_2$, minimum | $^3/_4$, minimum (interior)[b] |
| Masonry walls[c] | $^1/_2$, minimum | $^1/_2$, minimum |
| Monolithic concrete walls[c, d] | $^5/_8$, maximum | $^7/_8$, maximum |
| Monolithic concrete ceilings[c, d] | $^3/_8$, maximum[e] | $^1/_2$, maximum |
| Gypsum veneer base[f, g] | $^1/_{16}$, minimum | $^3/_4$, minimum (interior)[b] |
| Gypsum sheathing[g] | — | $^3/_4$, minimum (interior)[b]<br>$^7/_8$, minimum (exterior)[b] |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. When measured from back plane of expanded metal lath, exclusive of ribs, or self-furring lath, plaster thickness shall be $^3/_4$ inch minimum.
b. When measured from face of support or backing.
c. Because masonry and concrete surfaces may vary in plane, thickness of plaster need not be uniform.
d. When applied over a liquid bonding agent, finish coat may be applied directly to concrete surface.
e. Approved acoustical plaster may be applied directly to concrete or over base coat plaster, beyond the maximum plaster thickness shown.
f. Attachment shall be in accordance with Table R702.3.5.
g. Where gypsum board is used as a base for cement plaster, a water-resistive barrier complying with Section R703.2 shall be provided.

**TABLE R702.1(2)**
**GYPSUM PLASTER PROPORTIONS[a]**

| NUMBER | COAT | PLASTER BASE OR LATH | MAXIMUM VOLUME AGGREGATE PER 100 POUNDS NEAT PLASTER[b] (cubic feet) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Damp Loose Sand[a] | Perlite or Vermiculite[c] |
| Two-coat work | Base coat | Gypsum lath | 2.5 | 2 |
| | Base coat | Masonry | 3 | 3 |
| Three-coat work | First coat | Lath | 2[d] | 2 |
| | Second coat | Lath | 3[d] | 2[e] |
| | First and second coats | Masonry | 3 | 3 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 $m^3$, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. Wood-fibered gypsum plaster may be mixed in the proportions of 100 pounds of gypsum to not more than 1 cubic foot of sand where applied on masonry or concrete.
b. When determining the amount of aggregate in set plaster, a tolerance of 10 percent shall be allowed.
c. Combinations of sand and lightweight aggregate may be used, provided the volume and weight relationship of the combined aggregate to gypsum plaster is maintained.
d. If used for both first and second coats, the volume of aggregate may be 2.5 cubic feet.
e. Where plaster is 1 inch or more in total thickness, the proportions for the second coat may be increased to 3 cubic feet.

**TABLE R702.1(3)
CEMENT PLASTER PROPORTIONS, PARTS BY VOLUME**

| COAT | CEMENT PLASTER TYPE | CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS: Portland Cement Type I, II or III or Blended Cement Type IP, I (PM), IS or I (SM) | CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS: Plastic Cement | CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS: Masonry Cement Type M, S or N | CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS: Lime | VOLUME OF AGGREGATE PER SUM OF SEPARATE VOLUMES OF CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS[b] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| First | Portland or blended | 1 | | | $^3/_4$ - $1^1/_2$[a] | $2^1/_2$ - 4 |
| | Masonry | | | | 1 | $2^1/_2$ - 4 |
| | Plastic | | 1 | | | $2^1/_2$ - 4 |
| Second | Portland or blended | 1 | | | $^3/_4$ - $1^1/_2$ | 3 - 5 |
| | Masonry | | | 1 | | 3 - 5 |
| | Plastic | | 1 | | | 3 - 5 |
| Finish | Portland or blended | 1 | | | $^3/_4$ - 2 | $1^1/_2$ - 3 |
| | Masonry | | | 1 | | $1^1/_2$ - 3 |
| | Plastic | | 1 | | | $1^1/_2$ - 3 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.545 kg.

a. Lime by volume of 0 to $^3/_4$ shall be used when the plaster will be placed over low-absorption surfaces such as dense clay tile or brick.

b. The same or greater sand proportion shall be used in the second coat than used in the first coat.

**TABLE R702.3.5
MINIMUM THICKNESS AND APPLICATION OF GYPSUM BOARD**

| THICKNESS OF GYPSUM BOARD (inches) | APPLICATION | ORIENTATION OF GYPSUM BOARD TO FRAMING | MAXIMUM SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (inches o.c.) | MAXIMUM SPACING OF FASTENERS (inches): Nails[a] | MAXIMUM SPACING OF FASTENERS (inches): Screws[b] | SIZE OF NAILS FOR APPLICATION TO WOOD FRAMING[c] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Application without adhesive** | | | | | | |
| $^3/_8$ | Ceiling[d] | Perpendicular | 16 | 7 | 12 | 13 gage, $1^1/_4$″ long, $^{19}/_{64}$″ head; 0.098″ diameter, $1^1/_4$″ long, annular-ringed; or 4d cooler nail, 0.080″ diameter, $1^3/_8$″ long, $^7/_{32}$″ head. |
| | Wall | Either direction | 16 | 8 | 16 | |
| $^1/_2$ | Ceiling | Either direction | 16 | 7 | 12 | 13 gage, $1^3/_8$″ long, $^{19}/_{64}$″ head; 0.098″ diameter, $1^1/_4$″ long, annular-ringed; 5d cooler nail, 0.086″ diameter, $1^5/_8$″ long, $^{15}/_{64}$″ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.086″ diameter, $1^5/_8$″ long, $^9/_{32}$″ head. |
| | Ceiling[d] | Perpendicular | 24 | 7 | 12 | |
| | Wall | Either direction | 24 | 8 | 12 | |
| | Wall | Either direction | 16 | 8 | 16 | |
| $^5/_8$ | Ceiling | Either direction | 16 | 7 | 12 | 13 gage, $1^5/_8$″ long, $^{19}/_{64}$″ head; 0.098″ diameter, $1^3/_8$″ long, annular-ringed; 6d cooler nail, 0.092″ diameter, $1^7/_8$″ long, $^1/_4$″ head; or gypsum board nail, 0.0915″ diameter, $1^7/_8$″ long, $^{19}/_{64}$″ head. |
| | Ceiling[e] | Perpendicular | 24 | 7 | 12 | |
| | Wall | Either direction | 24 | 8 | 12 | |
| | Wall | Either direction | 16 | 8 | 16 | |
| **Application with adhesive** | | | | | | |
| $^3/_8$ | Ceiling[d] | Perpendicular | 16 | 16 | 16 | Same as above for $^3/_8$″ gypsum board |
| | Wall | Either direction | 16 | 16 | 24 | |
| $^1/_2$ or $^5/_8$ | Ceiling | Either direction | 16 | 16 | 16 | Same as above for $^1/_2$″ and $^5/_8$″ gypsum board, respectively |
| | Ceiling[d] | Perpendicular | 24 | 12 | 16 | |
| | Wall | Either direction | 24 | 16 | 24 | |
| Two $^3/_8$ layers | Ceiling | Perpendicular | 16 | 16 | 16 | Base ply nailed as above for $^1/_2$″ gypsum board; face ply installed with adhesive |
| | Wall | Either direction | 24 | 24 | 24 | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For application without adhesive, a pair of nails spaced not less than 2 inches apart or more than $2^1/_2$ inches apart may be used with the pair of nails spaced 12 inches on center.

b. Screws shall be in accordance with Section R702.3.6. Screws for attaching gypsum board to structural insulated panels shall penetrate the wood structural panel facing not less than $^7/_{16}$ inch.

c. Where cold-formed steel framing is used with a clinching design to receive nails by two edges of metal, the nails shall be not less than $^5/_8$ inch longer than the gypsum board thickness and shall have ringed shanks. Where the cold-formed steel framing has a nailing groove formed to receive the nails, the nails shall have barbed shanks or be 5d, $13^1/_2$ gage, $^{15}/_8$ inches long, $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head for $^1/_2$-inch gypsum board; and 6d, 13 gage, $1^7/_8$ inches long, $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head for $^5/_8$-inch gypsum board.

d. Three-eighths-inch-thick single-ply gypsum board shall not be used on a ceiling where a water-based textured finish is to be applied, or where it will be required to support insulation above a ceiling. On ceiling applications to receive a water-based texture material, either hand or spray applied, the gypsum board shall be applied perpendicular to framing. When applying a water-based texture material, the minimum gypsum board thickness shall be increased from $^3/_8$ inch to $^1/_2$ inch for 16-inch on center framing, and from $^1/_2$ inch to $^5/_8$ inch for 24-inch on center framing or $^1/_2$-inch sag-resistant gypsum ceiling board shall be used.

e. Type X gypsum board for garage ceilings beneath habitable rooms shall be installed perpendicular to the ceiling framing and shall be fastened at maximum 6 inches o.c. by minimum $1^7/_8$ inches 6d coated nails or equivalent drywall screws.

**R702.2 Interior plaster.**

**R702.2.1 Gypsum plaster.** Gypsum plaster materials shall conform to ASTM C 5, C 28, C 35, C 37, C 59, C 61, C 587, C 588, C 631, C 847, C 933, C 1032 and C 1047, and shall be installed or applied in conformance with ASTM C 843 and C 844. Plaster shall not be less than three coats when applied over metal lath and not less than two coats when applied over other bases permitted by this section, except that veneer plaster may be applied in one coat not to exceed $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.76 mm) thickness, provided the total thickness is in accordance with Table R702.1(1).

**R702.2.2 Cement plaster.** Cement plaster materials shall conform to ASTM C 37, C 91 (Type M, S or N), C 150 (Type I, II and III), C 588, C 595 [Type IP, I (PM), IS and I (SM), C 847, C 897, C 926, C 933, C 1032, C 1047 and C 1328, and shall be installed or applied in conformance with ASTM C 1063. Plaster shall not be less than three coats when applied over metal lath and not less than two coats when applied over other bases permitted by this section, except that veneer plaster may be applied in one coat not to exceed $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.76 mm) thickness, provided the total thickness is in accordance with Table R702.1(1).

**R702.2.2.1 Application.** Each coat shall be kept in a moist condition for at least 24 hours prior to application of the next coat.

**Exception:** Applications installed in accordance with ASTM C 926.

**R702.2.2.2 Curing.** The finish coat for two-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the first coat. For three coat cement plaster the second coat shall not be applied sooner than 24 hours after application of the first coat. The finish coat for three-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the second coat.

**R702.2.3 Support.** Support spacing for gypsum or metal lath on walls or ceilings shall not exceed 16 inches (406 mm) for $^{3}/_{8}$ inch thick (9.5 mm) or 24 inches (610 mm) for $^{1}/_{2}$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) plain gypsum lath. Gypsum lath shall be installed at right angles to support framing with end joints in adjacent courses staggered by at least one framing space.

**R702.3 Gypsum board.**

**R702.3.1 Materials.** All gypsum board materials and accessories shall conform to ASTM C 36, C 79, C 475, C 514, C 630, C 931, C 960, C 1002, C 1047, C 1177, C 1178, C 1278, C 1395, C 1396 or C 1658 and shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section. Adhesives for the installation of gypsum board shall conform to ASTM C 557.

**R702.3.2 Wood framing.** Wood framing supporting gypsum board shall not be less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal thickness in the least dimension except that wood furring strips not less than 1-inch-by-2 inch (25 mm by 51 mm) nominal dimension may be used over solid backing or framing spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center.

**R702.3.3 Cold-formed steel framing.** Cold-formed steel framing supporting gypsum board shall not be less than $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches (32 mm) wide in the least dimension. Nonload-bearing cold-formed steel framing shall comply with ASTM C 645. Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing and all cold-formed steel framing from 0.033 inch to 0.112 inch (1 mm to 3 mm) thick shall comply with ASTM C 955.

**R702.3.4 Insulating concrete form walls.** Foam plastics for insulating concrete form walls constructed in accordance with Sections R404.1.2 and R611 on the interior of *habitable spaces* shall be protected in accordance with Section R316.4. Use of adhesives in conjunction with mechanical fasteners is permitted. Adhesives used for interior and exterior finishes shall be compatible with the insulating form materials.

**R702.3.5 Application.** Maximum spacing of supports and the size and spacing of fasteners used to attach gypsum board shall comply with Table R702.3.5. Gypsum sheathing shall be attached to exterior walls in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Gypsum board shall be applied at right angles or parallel to framing members. All edges and ends of gypsum board shall occur on the framing members, except those edges and ends that are perpendicular to the framing members. Interior gypsum board shall not be installed where it is directly exposed to the weather or to water.

**R702.3.6 Fastening.** Screws for attaching gypsum board to wood framing shall be Type W or Type S in accordance with ASTM C 1002 and shall penetrate the wood not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (16 mm). Gypsum board shall be attached to cold-formed steel framing with minimum No. 6 screws. Screws for attaching gypsum board to cold-formed steel framing less than 0.033 inch (1 mm) thick shall be Type S in accordance with ASTM C 1002 or bugle head style in accordance with ASTM C1513 and shall penetrate the steel not less than $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm). Screws for attaching gypsum board to cold-formed steel framing 0.033 inch to 0.112 inch (1 mm to 3 mm) thick shall be in accordance with ASTM C 954 or bugle head style in accordance with ASTM C1513. Screws for attaching gypsum board to structural insulated panels shall penetrate the wood structural panel facing not less than $^{7}/_{16}$ inch (11 mm).

**R702.3.7 Horizontal gypsum board diaphragm ceilings.** Use of gypsum board shall be permitted on wood joists to create a horizontal *diaphragm* in accordance with Table R702.3.7. Gypsum board shall be installed perpendicular to ceiling framing members. End joints of adjacent courses of board shall not occur on the same joist. The maximum allowable *diaphragm* proportions shall be $1^{1}/_{2}$:1 between shear resisting elements. Rotation or cantilever conditions shall not be permitted. Gypsum board shall not be used in *diaphragm* ceilings to resist lateral forces imposed by masonry or concrete construction. All perimeter edges shall be blocked using wood members not less than 2-inch (51 mm) by 6-inch (152 mm) nominal dimension. Blocking material shall be installed flat over the top plate of the wall to provide a nailing surface not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in width for the attachment of the gypsum board.

**TABLE R702.3.7**
**SHEAR CAPACITY FOR HORIZONTAL WOOD-FRAMED GYPSUM BOARD DIAPHRAGM CEILING ASSEMBLIES**

| MATERIAL | THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (min.) (in.) | SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (max.) (in.) | SHEAR VALUE[a, b] (plf of ceiling) | MINIMUM FASTENER SIZE[c, d] |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Gypsum board | $^1/_2$ | 16 o.c. | 90 | 5d cooler or wallboard nail; $1^5/_8$-inch long; 0.086- inch shank; $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head |
| Gypsum board | $^1/_2$ | 24 o.c. | 70 | 5d cooler or wallboard nail; $1^5/_8$-inch long; 0.086- inch shank; $^{15}/_{64}$-inch head |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per linear foot = 1.488 kg/m.

a. Values are not cumulative with other horizontal diaphragm values and are for short-term loading caused by wind or seismic loading. Values shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.

b. Values shall be reduced 50 percent in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$, $D_2$ and E.

c. $1^1/_4''$, #6 Type S or W screws may be substituted for the listed nails.

d. Fasteners shall be spaced not more than 7 inches on center at all supports, including perimeter blocking, and not less than $^3/_8$ inch from the edges and ends of the gypsum board.

**R702.3.8 Water-resistant gypsum backing board.** Gypsum board used as the base or backer for adhesive application of ceramic tile or other required nonabsorbent finish material shall conform to ASTM C 1396, C 1178 or C1278. Use of water-resistant gypsum backing board shall be permitted on ceilings where framing spacing does not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) on center for $^1/_2$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) or 16 inches (406 mm) for $^5/_8$-inch-thick (16 mm) gypsum board. Water-resistant gypsum board shall not be installed over a Class I or II vapor retarder in a shower or tub compartment. Cut or exposed edges, including those at wall intersections, shall be sealed as recommended by the manufacturer.

**R702.3.8.1 Limitations.** Water resistant gypsum backing board shall not be used where there will be direct exposure to water, or in areas subject to continuous high humidity.

**R702.4 Ceramic tile.**

**R702.4.1 General.** Ceramic tile surfaces shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.1, A108.4, A108.5, A108.6, A108.11, A118.1, A118.3, A136.1 and A137.1.

**R702.4.2 Fiber-cement, fiber-mat reinforced cement, glass mat gypsum backers and fiber-reinforced gypsum backers.** Fiber-cement, fiber-mat reinforced cement, glass mat gypsum backers or fiber-reinforced gypsum backers in compliance with ASTM C 1288, C 1325, C 1178 or C 1278, respectively, and installed in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations shall be used as backers for wall tile in tub and shower areas and wall panels in shower areas.

[W] **R702.5 Other finishes.** Wood veneer paneling and hardboard paneling shall be placed on wood or cold-formed steel framing spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. Wood veneer and hard board paneling less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) nominal thickness shall not have less than a $^3/_8$-inch (10 mm) gypsum board backer. Wood veneer paneling not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) nominal thickness shall conform to ANSI/ HPVA HP-1. Hardboard paneling shall conform to CPA/ANSI A135.5. All structural panel components within the conditioned space such as plywood, particleboard, wafer board and oriented strand board shall be identified as "EXPOSURE 1," "EXTERIOR" or "HUD-APPROVED."

**R702.6 Wood shakes and shingles.** Wood shakes and shingles shall conform to CSSB *Grading Rules for Wood Shakes and Shingles* and shall be permitted to be installed directly to the studs with maximum 24 inches (610 mm) on-center spacing.

**R702.6.1 Attachment.** Nails, staples or glue are permitted for attaching shakes or shingles to the wall, and attachment of the shakes or shingles directly to the surface shall be permitted provided the fasteners are appropriate for the type of wall surface material. When nails or staples are used, two fasteners shall be provided and shall be placed so that they are covered by the course above.

**R702.6.2 Furring strips.** Where furring strips are used, they shall be 1 inch by 2 inches or 1 inch by 3 inches (25 mm by 51 mm or 25 mm by 76 mm), spaced a distance on center equal to the desired exposure, and shall be attached to the wall by nailing through other wall material into the studs.

## SECTION R703
## EXTERIOR COVERING

**R703.1 General.** Exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant exterior wall envelope. The exterior wall envelope shall include flashing as described in Section R703.8.

**R703.1.1 Water resistance.** The exterior wall envelope shall be designed and constructed in a manner that prevents the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a water-resistant barrier behind the exterior veneer as required by Section R703.2 and a means of draining to the exterior water that enters the assembly. Protection against condensation in the exterior wall assembly shall be provided in accordance with Section R601.3 of this code.

**Exceptions:**

1. A weather-resistant exterior wall envelope shall not be required over concrete or masonry walls designed in accordance with Chapter 6 and flashed according to Section R703.7 or R703.8.

2. Compliance with the requirements for a means of drainage, and the requirements of Section R703.2 and Section R703.8, shall not be required for an exterior wall envelope that has been demonstrated to resist wind-driven rain through testing of the exterior wall envelope, including joints, penetrations and intersections with dissimilar materials, in accordance with ASTM E 331 under the following conditions:
   - 2.1. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall include at least one opening, one control joint, one wall/eave interface and one wall sill. All tested openings and penetrations shall be representative of the intended end-use configuration.
   - 2.2. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall be at least 4 feet (1219 mm) by 8 feet (2438 mm) in size.
   - 2.3. Exterior wall assemblies shall be tested at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot (299 Pa).
   - 2.4. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be subjected to the minimum test exposure for a minimum of 2 hours.

   The exterior wall envelope design shall be considered to resist wind-driven rain where the results of testing indicate that water did not penetrate control joints in the exterior wall envelope, joints at the perimeter of openings penetration or intersections of terminations with dissimilar materials.

[W]3. The requirement for a means of drainage shall not be construed to mean an air space cavity under the exterior cladding for an exterior wall clad with panel or lapped siding made of plywood, engineered wood, hardboard, or fiber cement. A water-resistive barrier as required by Section R703.2 and Table R703.4 will be required on exterior walls.

**Interpretation R703.1.1:** According to Section R703.1 Exception 3, a rain-screen or similar construction method is not required for most exterior siding and cladding, and single-wall construction is allowed. Drainage methods are required to conform to the manufacturer's installation instructions and other sections of the *International Residential Code.*

**Note:** The "water-resistive barrier" behind the exterior wall covering provides drainage of the water that may enter an exterior wall envelope. If water penetrates the exterior wall covering, the felt paper or other *approved* material will direct the water to the bottom of the wall where it will escape to the exterior.

**703.1.2 Wind resistance.** Wall coverings, backing materials and their attachments shall be capable of resisting wind loads in accordance with Tables R301.2(2) and R301.2(3). Wind-pressure resistance of the siding and backing materials shall be determined by ASTM E 330 or other applicable standard test methods. Where wind-pressure resistance is determined by design analysis, data from *approved* design standards and analysis conforming to generally accepted engineering practice shall be used to evaluate the siding and backing material and its fastening. All applicable failure modes including bending rupture of siding, fastener withdrawal and fastener head pull-through shall be considered in the testing or design analysis. Where the wall covering and the backing material resist wind load as an assembly, use of the design capacity of the assembly shall be permitted.

**R703.2 Water-resistive barrier.** One layer of No. 15 asphalt felt, free from holes and breaks, complying with ASTM D 226 for Type 1 felt or other approved water-resistive barrier shall be applied over studs or sheathing of all exterior walls. Such felt or material shall be applied horizontally, with the upper layer lapped over the lower layer not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where joints occur, felt shall be lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm). The felt or other approved material shall be continuous to the top of walls and terminated at penetrations and building appendages in a manner to meet the requirements of the exterior wall envelope as described in Section R703.1.

**Exception:** Omission of the water-resistive barrier is permitted in the following situations:

1. In detached accessory buildings.
2. Under exterior wall finish materials as permitted in Table R703.4.
3. Under paperbacked stucco lath when the paper backing is an approved water-resistive barrier.

**R703.3 Wood, hardboard and wood structural panel siding.**

**R703.3.1 Panel siding.** Joints in wood, hardboard or wood structural panel siding shall be made as follows unless otherwise approved. Vertical joints in panel siding shall occur over framing members, unless wood or wood structural panel sheathing is used, and shall be shiplapped or covered with a batten. Horizontal joints in panel siding shall be lapped a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) or shall be shiplapped or shall be flashed with Z-flashing and occur over solid blocking, wood or wood structural panel sheathing.

**R703.3.2 Horizontal siding.** Horizontal lap siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Where there are no recommendations the siding shall be lapped a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm), or $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (13 mm) if rabbeted, and shall have the ends caulked, covered with a batten or sealed and installed over a strip of flashing.

**R703.4 Attachments.** Unless specified otherwise, all wall coverings shall be securely fastened in accordance with Table R703.4 or with other *approved* aluminum, stainless steel, zinc-coated or other *approved* corrosion-resistive fasteners. Where the basic wind speed per Figure R301.2(4) is 110 miles per hour (49 m/s) or higher, the attachment of wall coverings shall be designed to resist the component and cladding loads specified in Table R301.2(2), adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2(3).

**TABLE R703.4**
**WEATHER–RESISTANT SIDING ATTACHMENT AND MINIMUM THICKNESS**

| SIDING MATERIAL | | NOMINAL THICKNESS[a] (inches) | JOINT TREATMENT | WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER REQUIRED | TYPE OF SUPPORTS FOR THE SIDING MATERIAL AND FASTENERS[b, c, d] | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | Wood or wood structural panel sheathing | Fiberboard sheathing into stud | Gypsum sheathing into stud | Foam plastic sheathing into stud | Direct to studs | Number or spacing of fasteners |
| Horizontal aluminum[e] | Without insulation | 0.019[f] | Lap | Yes | 0.120 nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″ long | 0.120 nail 2″ long | 0.120 nail 2″ long | 0.120 nail[y] | Not allowed | Same as stud spacing |
| | | 0.024 | Lap | Yes | 0.120 nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″ long | 0.120 nail 2″ long | 0.120 nail 2″ long | 0.120 nail[y] | Not allowed | |
| | With insulation | 0.019 | Lap | Yes | 0.120 nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″ long | 0.120 nail $2\frac{1}{2}$″ long | 0.120 nail $2\frac{1}{2}$″ long | 0.120 nail[y] | 0.120 nail $1\frac{1}{2}$″ long | |
| Anchored veneer: brick, concrete, masonry or stone | | 2 | Section R703 | Yes | See Section R703 and Figure R703.7[g] | | | | | |
| Adhered veneer: concrete, stone or masonry[w] | | — | Section R703 | Yes Note w | See Section R703.6.1[g] or in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. | | | | | |
| Hardboard[k] Panel siding-vertical | | $\frac{7}{16}$ | — | Yes | Note m | Note m | Note m | Note m | Note m | 6″ panel edges 12″ inter. sup.[n] |
| Hardboard[k] Lap-siding-horizontal | | $\frac{7}{16}$ | Note p | Yes | Note o | Note o | Note o | Note o | Note o | Same as stud spacing 2 per bearing |
| Steel[h] | | 29 ga. | Lap | Yes | 0.113 nail $1\frac{3}{4}$″ Staple–$1\frac{3}{4}$″ | 0.113 nail $2\frac{3}{4}$″ Staple–$2\frac{1}{2}$″ | 0.113 nail $2\frac{1}{2}$″ Staple–$2\frac{1}{4}$″ | 0.113 nail[v] Staple[v] | Not allowed | Same as stud spacing |
| Particleboard panels | | $\frac{3}{8}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$ | — | Yes | 6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″) | 6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″) | 6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″) | box nail[v] | 6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″), $\frac{3}{8}$ not allowed | 6″ panel edge, 12″ inter. sup. |
| | | $\frac{5}{8}$ | — | Yes | 6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″) | 8d box nail ($2\frac{1}{2}$″ × 0.113″) | 8d box nail ($2\frac{1}{2}$″ × 0.113″) | box nail[v] | 6d box nail (2″ × 0.099″) | |
| Wood structural panel siding[i] (exterior grade) | | $\frac{3}{8}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$ | Note p | Yes | 0.099 nail–2″ | 0.113 nail–$2\frac{1}{2}$″ | 0.113 nail–$2\frac{1}{2}$″ | 0.113 nail[v] | 0.099 nail–2″ | 6″ panel edges, 12″ inter. sup. |
| Wood structural panel lapsiding | | $\frac{3}{8}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$ | Note p Note x | Yes | 0.099 nail–2″ | 0.113 nail–$2\frac{1}{2}$″ | 0.113 nail–$2\frac{1}{2}$″ | 0.113 nail[x] | 0.099 nail–2″ | 8″ along bottom edge |
| Vinyl siding[l] | | 0.035 | Lap | Yes | 0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16 gauge staple with $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$-inch crown[y, z] | 0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16 gage staple with $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$-inch crown[y] | 0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head or 16 gage staple with $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$-inch crown[y] | 0.120 nail (shank) with a 0.313 head per Section R703.11.2 | Not allowed | 16 inches on center or specified by the manufacturer instructions or test report |
| Wood[j] rustic, drop | | $\frac{3}{8}$ Min | Lap | Yes | Fastener penetration into stud–1″ | | | | 0.113 nail–$2\frac{1}{2}$″ Staple–2″ | Face nailing up to 6″ widths, 1 nail per bearing; 8″ widths and over, 2 nails per bearing |
| Shiplap | | $\frac{19}{32}$ Average | Lap | Yes | | | | | | |
| Bevel | | $\frac{7}{16}$ | | | | | | | | |
| Butt tip | | $\frac{3}{16}$ | Lap | Yes | | | | | | |
| Fiber cement panel siding[q] | | $\frac{5}{16}$ | Note q | Yes Note u | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r] | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r] | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r] | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r, v] | 4d common corrosion-resistant nail[r] | 6″ o.c. on edges, 12″ o.c. on intermed. studs |
| Fiber cement lap siding[s] | | $\frac{5}{16}$ | Note s | Yes Note u | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r] | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r] | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r] | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail[r, v] | 6d common corrosion-resistant nail or 11 gage roofing nail[r] | Note t |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Based on stud spacing of 16 inches on center where studs are spaced 24 inches, siding shall be applied to sheathing approved for that spacing.
b. Nail is a general description and shall be T-head, modified round head, or round head with smooth or deformed shanks.
c. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $\frac{7}{16}$-inch outside diameter and be manufactured of minimum 16 gage wire.
d. Nails or staples shall be aluminum, galvanized, or rust-preventative coated and shall be driven into the studs for fiberboard or gypsum backing.
e. Aluminum nails shall be used to attach aluminum siding.
f. Aluminum (0.019 inch) shall be unbacked only when the maximum panel width is 10 inches and the maximum flat area is 8 inches. The tolerance for aluminum siding shall be +0.002 inch of the nominal dimension.
g. All attachments shall be coated with a corrosion-resistant coating.
h. Shall be of approved type.
i. Three-eighths-inch plywood shall not be applied directly to studs spaced more than 16 inches on center when long dimension is parallel to studs. Plywood $\frac{1}{2}$-inch or thinner shall not be applied directly to studs spaced more than 24 inches on center. The stud spacing shall not exceed the panel span rating provided by the manufacturer unless the panels are installed with the face grain perpendicular to the studs or over sheathing approved for that stud spacing.
j. Wood board sidings applied vertically shall be nailed to horizontal nailing strips or blocking set 24 inches on center. Nails shall penetrate $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches into studs, studs and wood sheathing combined or blocking.

*(continued)*

**TABLE R703.4—continued**
**WEATHER–RESISTANT SIDING ATTACHMENT AND MINIMUM THICKNESS**

k. Hardboard siding shall comply with CPA/ANSI A135.6.
l. Vinyl siding shall comply with ASTM D 3679.
m. Minimum shank diameter of 0.092 inch, minimum head diameter of 0.225 inch, and nail length must accommodate sheathing and penetrate framing $1^1/_2$ inches.
n. When used to resist shear forces, the spacing must be 4 inches at panel edges and 8 inches on interior supports.
o. Minimum shank diameter of 0.099 inch, minimum head diameter of 0.240 inch, and nail length must accommodate sheathing and penetrate framing $1^1/_2$ inches.
p. Vertical end joints shall occur at studs and shall be covered with a joint cover or shall be caulked.
q. See Section R703.10.1.
r. Fasteners shall comply with the nominal dimensions in ASTM F 1667.
s. See Section R703.10.2.
t. Face nailing: one 6d common nail through the overlapping planks at each stud. Concealed nailing: one 11 gage $1^1/_2$ inch long galv. roofing nail through the top edge of each plank at each stud.
u. See Section R703.2 exceptions.
v. Minimum nail length must accommodate sheathing and penetrate framing $1^1/_2$ inches.
w. Adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section R703.6.3 and shall comply with the requirements in Sections 6.1 and 6.3 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
x. Vertical joints, if staggered shall be permitted to be away from studs if applied over wood structural panel sheathing.
y. Minimum fastener length must accommodate sheathing and penetrate framing .75 inches or in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
z. Where approved by the manufacturer's instructions or test report siding shall be permitted to be installed with fasteners penetrating not less than .75 inches through wood or wood structural sheathing with or without penetration into the framing.

**R703.5 Wood shakes and shingles.** Wood shakes and shingles shall conform to CSSB *Grading Rules for Wood Shakes and Shingles.*

**R703.5.1 Application.** Wood shakes or shingles shall be applied either single-course or double-course over nominal $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) wood-based sheathing or to furring strips over $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) nominal nonwood sheathing . A permeable water-resistive barrier shall be provided over all sheathing, with horizontal overlaps in the membrane of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and vertical overlaps of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Where furring strips are used, they shall be 1 inch by 3 inches or 1 inch by 4 inches (25 mm by 76 mm or 25 mm by 102 mm) and shall be fastened horizontally to the studs with 7d or 8d box nails and shall be spaced a distance on center equal to the actual weather exposure of the shakes or shingles, not to exceed the maximum exposure specified in Table R703.5.2. The spacing between adjacent shingles to allow for expansion shall not exceed $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm), and between adjacent shakes, it shall not exceed $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm). The offset spacing between joints in adjacent courses shall be a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).

**R703.5.2 Weather exposure.** The maximum weather exposure for shakes and shingles shall not exceed that specified in Table R703.5.2.

**R703.5.3 Attachment.** Each shake or shingle shall be held in place by two hot-dipped zinc-coated, stainless steel, or aluminum nails or staples. The fasteners shall be long enough to penetrate the sheathing or furring strips by a minimum of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) and shall not be overdriven.

**R703.5.3.1 Staple attachment.** Staples shall not be less than16 gage and shall have a crown width of not less than $^7/_{16}$ inch (11 mm), and the crown of the staples shall be parallel with the butt of the shake or shingle. In single-course application, the fasteners shall be concealed by the course above and shall be driven approximately 1 inch (25 mm) above the butt line of the succeeding course and $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) from the edge. In double-course applications, the exposed shake or shingle shall be face-nailed with two casing nails, driven approximately 2 inches (51 mm) above the butt line and $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) from each edge. In all applications, staples shall be concealed by the course above. With shingles wider than 8 inches (203 mm) two additional nails shall be required and shall be nailed approximately 1 inch (25 mm) apart near the center of the shingle.

**R703.5.4 Bottom courses.** The bottom courses shall be doubled.

**R703.6 Exterior plaster.** Installation of these materials shall be in compliance with ASTM C 926 and ASTM C 1063 and the provisions of this code.

**R703.6.1 Lath.** All lath and lath attachments shall be of corrosion-resistant materials. Expanded metal or woven wire

**TABLE R703.5.2**
**MAXIMUM WEATHER EXPOSURE FOR WOOD SHAKES AND SHINGLES ON EXTERIOR WALLS[a, b, c]**
**(Dimensions are in inches)**

| LENGTH | EXPOSURE FOR SINGLE COURSE | EXPOSURE FOR DOUBLE COURSE |
|---|---|---|
| Shingles[a] | | |
| 16 | $7^1/_2$ | 12[b] |
| 18 | $8^1/_2$ | 14[c] |
| 24 | $11^1/_2$ | 16 |
| Shakes[a] | | |
| 18 | $8^1/_2$ | 14 |
| 24 | $11^1/_2$ | 18 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Dimensions given are for No. 1 grade.
b. A maximum 10-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.
c. A maximum 11-inch exposure is permitted for No. 2 grade.

lath shall be attached with $1^1/_2$-inch-long (38 mm), 11 gage nails having a $^7/_{16}$-inch (11.1 mm) head, or $^7/_8$-inch-long (22.2 mm), 16 gage staples, spaced at no more than 6 inches (152 mm), or as otherwise *approved*.

**R703.6.2 Plaster.** Plastering with portland cement plaster shall be not less than three coats when applied over metal lath or wire lath and shall be not less than two coats when applied over masonry, concrete, pressure-preservative treated wood or decay-resistant wood as specified in Section R317.1 or gypsum backing. If the plaster surface is completely covered by veneer or other facing material or is completely concealed, plaster application need be only two coats, provided the total thickness is as set forth in Table R702.1(1).

On wood-frame construction with an on-grade floor slab system, exterior plaster shall be applied to cover, but not extend below, lath, paper and screed.

The proportion of aggregate to cementitious materials shall be as set forth in Table R702.1(3).

**R703.6.2.1 Weep screeds.** A minimum 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage), corrosion-resistant weep screed or plastic weep screed, with a minimum vertical attachment flange of $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) shall be provided at or below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with ASTM C 926. The weep screed shall be placed a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth or 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas and shall be of a type that will allow trapped water to drain to the exterior of the building. The weather-resistant barrier shall lap the attachment flange. The exterior lath shall cover and terminate on the attachment flange of the weep screed.

**R703.6.3 Water-resistive barriers.** Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section R703.2 and, where applied over wood-based sheathing, shall include a water-resistive vapor-permeable barrier with a performance at least equivalent to two layers of Grade D paper.

**Exception:** Where the water-resistive barrier that is applied over wood-based sheathing has a water resistance equal to or greater than that of 60 minute Grade D paper and is separated from the stucco by an intervening, substantially nonwater-absorbing layer or designed drainage space.

**R703.6.4 Application.** Each coat shall be kept in a moist condition for at least 48 hours prior to application of the next coat.

**Exception:** Applications installed in accordance with ASTM C 926.

**R703.6.5 Curing.** The finish coat for two-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than seven days after application of the first coat. For three-coat cement plaster, the second coat shall not be applied sooner than 48 hours after application of the first coat. The finish coat for three-coat cement plaster shall not be applied sooner than seven days after application of the second coat.

**R703.7 Stone and masonry veneer, general.** Stone and masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with this chapter, Table R703.4 and Figure R703.7. These veneers installed over a backing of wood or cold-formed steel shall be limited to the first *story* above-grade and shall not exceed 5 inches (127 mm) in thickness. See Section R602.12 for wall bracing requirements for masonry veneer for wood framed construction and Section R603.9.5 for wall bracing requirements for masonry veneer for cold-formed steel construction.

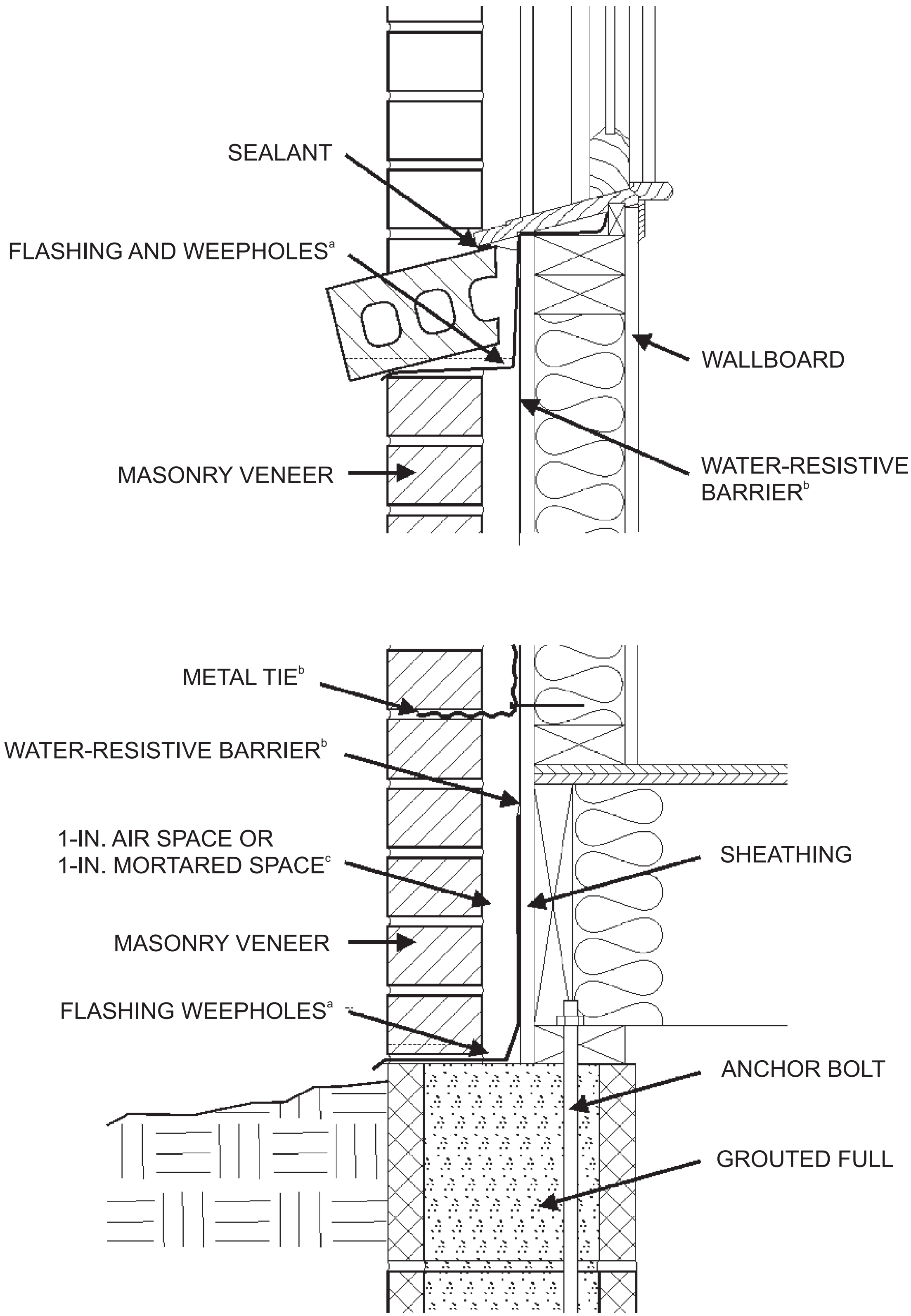
**Exceptions:**

1. For all buildings in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, exterior stone or masonry veneer, as specified in Table R703.7(1), with a backing of wood or steel framing shall be permitted to the height specified in Table R703.7(1) above a noncombustible foundation.
2. For detached one- or two-family *dwellings* in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, exterior stone or masonry veneer, as specified in Table R703.7(2), with a backing of wood framing shall be permitted to the height specified in Table R703.7(2) above a noncombustible foundation.

**R703.7.1 Interior veneer support.** Veneers used as interior wall finishes shall be permitted to be supported on wood or cold-formed steel floors that are designed to support the loads imposed.

**R703.7.2 Exterior veneer support.** Except in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, exterior masonry veneers having an installed weight of 40 pounds per square foot (195 kg/m$^2$) or less shall be permitted to be supported on wood or cold-formed steel construction. When masonry veneer supported by wood or cold-formed steel construction adjoins masonry veneer supported by the foundation, there shall be a movement joint between the veneer supported by the wood or cold-formed steel construction and the veneer supported by the foundation. The wood or cold-formed steel construction supporting the masonry veneer shall be designed to limit the deflection to $^1/_{600}$ of the span for the supporting members. The design of the wood or cold-formed steel construction shall consider the weight of the veneer and any other loads.

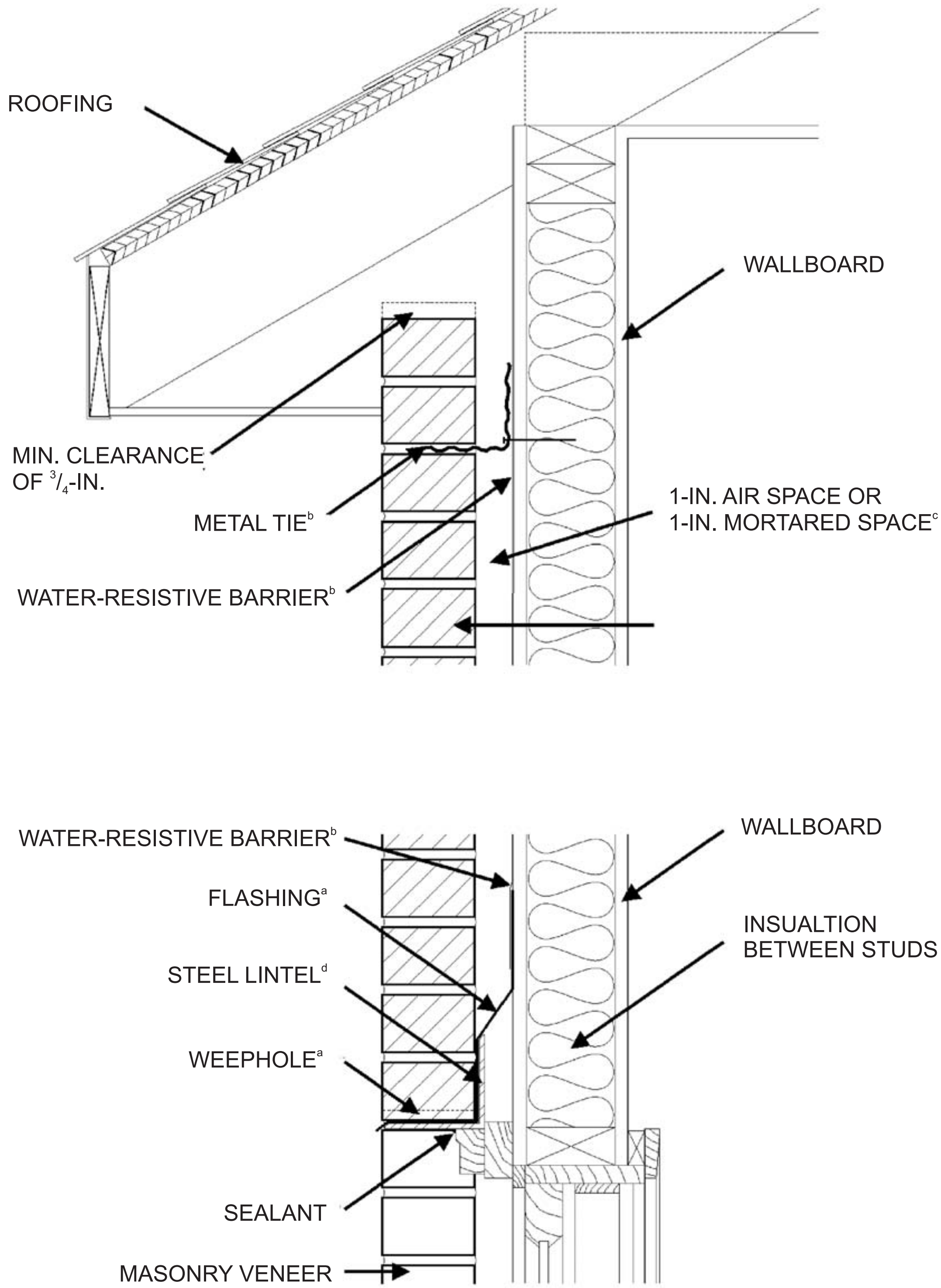
**R703.7.2.1 Support by steel angle.** A minimum 6 inches by 4 inches by $^5/_{16}$ inch (152 mm by 102 mm by 8 mm) steel angle, with the long leg placed vertically, shall be anchored to double 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) wood studs at a maximum on-center spacing of 16 inches (406 mm). Anchorage of the steel angle at every double stud spacing shall be a minimum of two $^7/_{16}$ inch (11 mm) diameter by 4 inch (102 mm) lag screws. The steel angle shall have a minimum clearance to underlying construction of $^1/_{16}$ inch (2 mm). A minimum of two-thirds the width of the masonry veneer thickness shall bear on the steel angle. Flashing and weep holes shall be located in the masonry veneer wythe in accordance with Figure R703.7.2.1. The maximum height of masonry veneer above the steel angle support shall be 12 feet, 8 inches (3861 mm). The air space separating the masonry veneer from the wood backing shall be in accordance with Sections R703.7.4 and R703.7.4.2. The method of support for the masonry veneer on wood construction shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R703.7.2.1.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R703.7**
**MASONRY VENEER WALL DETAILS**

*(continued)*




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. See Sections R703.7.5, R703.7.6 and R703.8.

b. See Sections R703.2 and R703.7.4.

c. See Sections R703.7.4.2 and R703.7.4.3.

d. See Section R703.7.3.

**FIGURE R703.7—continued**
**MASONRY VENEER WALL DETAILS**

**TABLE R703.7(1)**
**STONE OR MASONRY VENEER LIMITATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS, WOOD OR STEEL FRAMING, SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES A, B AND C**

| SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY | NUMBER OF WOOD OR STEEL FRAMED STORIES | MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF VENEER ABOVE NONCOMBUSTIBLE FOUNDATION[a] (feet) | MAXIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS OF VENEER (inches) | MAXIMUM WEIGHT OF VENEER (psf)[b] | WOOD OR STEEL FRAMED STORY |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A or B | Steel: 1 or 2<br>Wood: 1, 2 or 3 | 30 | 5 | 50 | all |
| C | 1 | 30 | 5 | 50 | 1 only |
| | 2 | 30 | 5 | 50 | top |
| | | | | | bottom |
| | Wood only: 3 | 30 | 5 | 50 | top |
| | | | | | middle |
| | | | | | bottom |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.479 kPa.

a. An Additional 8 feet is permitted for gable end walls. See also story height limitations of Section R301.3.

b. Maximum weight is installed weight and includes weight of mortar, grout, lath and other materials used for installation. Where veneer is placed on both faces of a wall, the combined weight shall not exceed that specified in this table.

**TABLE R703.7(2)**
**STONE OR MASONRY VENEER LIMITATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS, ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DETACHED DWELLINGS, WOOD FRAMING, SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES $D_0$, $D_1$ AND $D_2$**

| SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY | NUMBER OF WOOD FRAMED STORIES[a] | MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF VENEER ABOVE NONCOMBUSTIBLE FOUNDATION OR FOUNDATION WALL (feet) | MAXIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS OF VENEER (inches) | MAXIMUM WEIGHT OF VENEER (psf)[b] |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| $D_0$ | 1 | 20[c] | 4 | 40 |
| | 2 | 20[c] | 4 | 40 |
| | 3 | 30[d] | 4 | 40 |
| $D_1$ | 1 | 20[c] | 4 | 40 |
| | 2 | 20[c] | 4 | 40 |
| | 3 | 20[c] | 4 | 40 |
| $D_2$ | 1 | 20[c] | 3 | 30 |
| | 2 | 20[c] | 3 | 30 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.479 kPa, 1 pound-force = 4.448 N.

a. Cripple walls are not permitted in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$.

b. Maximum weight is installed weight and includes weight of mortar, grout and lath, and other materials used for installation.

c. The veneer shall not exceed 20 feet in height above a noncombustible foundation, with an additional 8 feet permitted for gable end walls, or 30 feet in height with an additional 8 feet for gable end walls where the lower 10 feet has a backing of concrete or masonry wall. See also story height limitations of Section R301.3.

d. The veneer shall not exceed 30 feet in height above a noncombustible foundation, with an additional 8 feet permitted for gable end walls. See also story height limitations of Section R301.3.

The maximum slope of the roof construction without stops shall be 7:12. Roof construction with slopes greater than 7:12 but not more than 12:12 shall have stops of a minimum 3 inch × 3 inch × $^1/_4$ inch (76 mm × 76 mm × 6 mm) steel plate welded to the angle at 24 inches (610 mm) on center along the angle or as *approved* by the *building official*.

**R703.7.2.2 Support by roof construction.** A steel angle shall be placed directly on top of the roof construction. The roof supporting construction for the steel angle shall consist of a minimum of three 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) wood members. The wood member abutting the vertical wall stud construction shall be anchored with a minimum of three $^5/_8$-inch (16 mm) diameter by 5-inch (127 mm) lag screws to every wood stud spacing. Each additional roof member shall be anchored by the use of two 10d nails at every wood stud spacing. A minimum of two-thirds the width of the masonry veneer thickness shall bear on the steel angle. Flashing and weep holes shall be located in the masonry veneer wythe in accordance with Figure R703.7.2.2. The maximum height of the masonry veneer above the steel angle support shall be 12 feet, 8 inches (3861 mm). The air space separating the masonry veneer from the wood backing shall be in accordance with Sections R703.7.4 and R703.7.4.2. The support for the masonry veneer on wood construction shall be constructed in accordance with Figure R703.7.2.2.

The maximum slope of the roof construction without stops shall be 7:12. Roof construction with slopes greater than 7:12 but not more than 12:12 shall have stops of a minimum 3 inch × 3 inch × $^1/_4$ inch (76 mm × 76 mm × 6 mm) steel plate welded to the angle at 24 inches (610 mm) on center along the angle or as *approved* by the *building official*.

**R703.7.3 Lintels.** Masonry veneer shall not support any vertical load other than the dead load of the veneer above. Veneer above openings shall be supported on lintels of noncombustible materials. The lintels shall have a length of bearing not less than 4 inches (102 mm). Steel lintels shall be shop coated with a rust-inhibitive paint, except for lintels made of corrosion-resistant steel or steel treated with coatings to provide corrosion resistance. Construction of openings shall comply with either Section R703.7.3.1 or 703.7.3.2.

**R703.7.3.1** The allowable span shall not exceed the values set forth in Table R703.7.3.1.

**R703.7.3.2** The allowable span shall not exceed 18 feet 3 inches (5562 mm) and shall be constructed to comply with Figure R703.7.3.2 and the following:

1. Provide a minimum length of 18 inches (457 mm) of masonry veneer on each side of opening as shown in Figure R703.7.3.2.
2. Provide a minimum 5 inch by 3$^1/_2$ inch by $^5/_{16}$ inch (127 mm by 89 mm by 7.9 mm) steel angle above the opening and shore for a minimum of 7 days after installation.

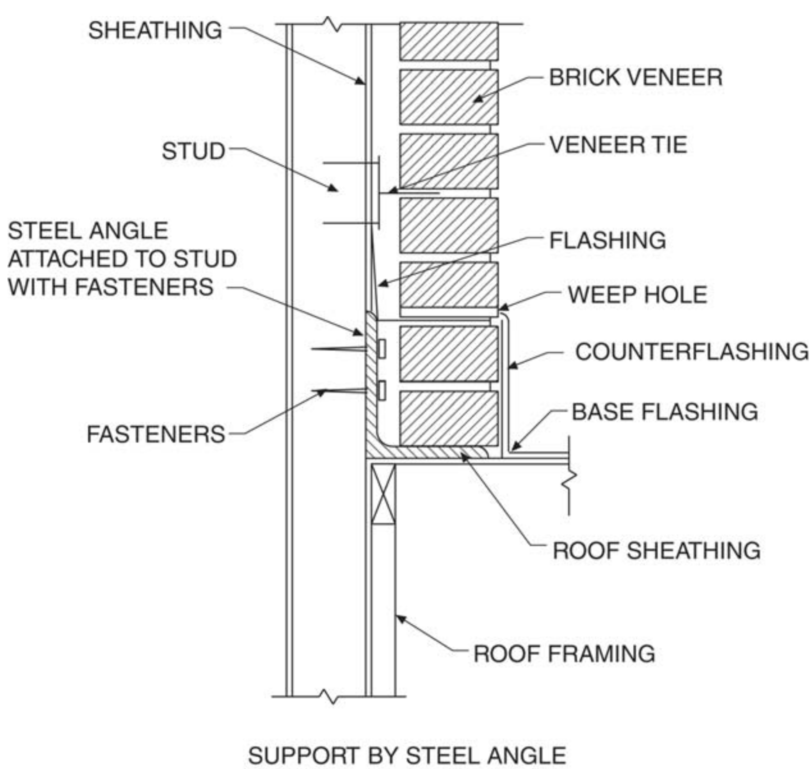



**FIGURE R703.7.2.1**
**EXTERIOR MASONRY VENEER SUPPORT BY STEEL ANGLES**

3. Provide double-wire joint reinforcement extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond each side of the opening. Lap splices of joint reinforcement a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm). Comply with one of the following:

   3.1. Double-wire joint reinforcement shall be $^3/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) diameter and shall be placed in the first two bed joints above the opening.

   3.2. Double-wire joint reinforcement shall be 9 gauge (0.144 inch or 3.66 mm diameter) and shall be placed in the first three bed joints above the opening.

**R703.7.4 Anchorage.** Masonry veneer shall be anchored to the supporting wall with corrosion-resistant metal ties embedded in mortar or grout and extending into the veneer a minimum of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), with not less than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) mortar or grout cover to outside face. Where veneer is anchored to wood backings by corrugated sheet metal ties, the distance separating the veneer from the sheathing material shall be a maximum of a nominal 1 inch (25 mm). Where the veneer is anchored to wood backings using metal strand wire ties, the distance separating the veneer from the sheathing material shall be a maximum of $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm). Where the veneer is anchored to cold-formed steel backings, adjustable metal strand wire ties shall be used. Where veneer is anchored to cold-formed steel backings, the distance separating the veneer from the sheathing material shall be a maximum of $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm).

**R703.7.4.1 Size and spacing.** Veneer ties, if strand wire, shall not be less in thickness than No. 9 U.S. gage [(0.148 in.) (4 mm)] wire and shall have a hook embedded in the mortar joint, or if sheet metal, shall be not less than No. 22 U.S. gage by [(0.0299 in.)(0.76 mm)] $^7/_8$ inch (22 mm) corrugated. Each tie shall be spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center horizontally and vertically and shall support not more than 2.67 square feet (0.25 $m^2$) of wall area.

**Exception:** In Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$ or townhouses in Seismic Design Category C or in wind areas of more than 30 pounds per square foot pressure (1.44 kPa), each tie shall support not more than 2 square feet (0.2 $m^2$) of wall area.

**R703.7.4.1.1 Veneer ties around wall openings.** Veneer ties around wall openings. Additional metal ties shall be provided around all wall openings greater than 16 inches (406 mm) in either dimension. Metal ties around the perimeter of openings shall be spaced not more than 3 feet (9144 mm) on center and placed within 12 inches (305 mm) of the wall opening.

**R703.7.4.2 Air space.** The veneer shall be separated from the sheathing by an air space of a minimum of a nominal 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm).

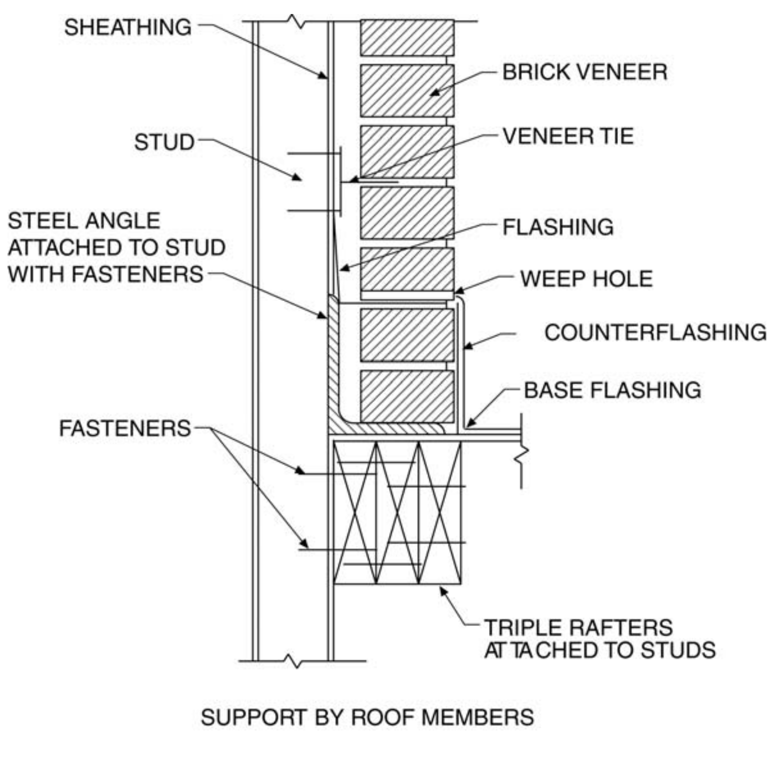



**FIGURE R703.7.2.2**
**EXTERIOR MASONRY VENEER SUPPORT BY ROOF MEMBERS**

**R703.7.4.3 Mortar or grout fill.** As an alternate to the air space required by Section R703.7.4.2, mortar or grout shall be permitted to fill the air space .When the air space is filled with mortar, a water-resistive barrier is required over studs or sheathing. When filling the air space, replacing the sheathing and water-resistive barrier with a wire mesh and *approved* water-resistive barrier or an *approved* water-resistive barrier-backed reinforcement attached directly to the studs is permitted.

**R703.7.5 Flashing.** Flashing shall be located beneath the first course of masonry above finished ground level above the foundation wall or slab and at other points of support, including structural floors, shelf angles and lintels when masonry veneers are designed in accordance with Section R703.7. See Section R703.8 for additional requirements.

**R703.7.6 Weepholes.** Weepholes shall be provided in the outside wythe of masonry walls at a maximum spacing of 33 inches (838 mm) on center. Weepholes shall not be less than $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) in diameter. Weepholes shall be located immediately above the flashing.

**R703.8 Flashing.** *Approved* corrosion-resistant flashing shall be applied shingle-fashion in a manner to prevent entry of water into the wall cavity or penetration of water to the building

**TABLE R703.7.3.1**
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR LINTELS SUPPORTING MASONRY VENEER[a, b, c, d]**

| SIZE OF STEEL ANGLE[a, c, d] (inches) | NO STORY ABOVE | ONE STORY ABOVE | TWO STORIES ABOVE | NO. OF $^1/_2$″ OR EQUIVALENT REINFORCING BARS IN REINFORCED LINTEL[b, d] |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| $3 \times 3 \times ^1/_4$ | 6′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 3′-0″ | 1 |
| $4 \times 3 \times ^1/_4$ | 8′-0″ | 6′-0″ | 4′-6″ | 1 |
| $5 \times 3^1/_2 \times ^5/_{16}$ | 10′-0″ | 8′-0″ | 6′-0″ | 2 |
| $6 \times 3^1/_2 \times ^5/_{16}$ | 14′-0″ | 9′-6″ | 7′-0″ | 2 |
| $2\text{-}6 \times 3^1/_2 \times ^5/_{16}$ | 20′-0″ | 12′-0″ | 9′-6″ | 4 |

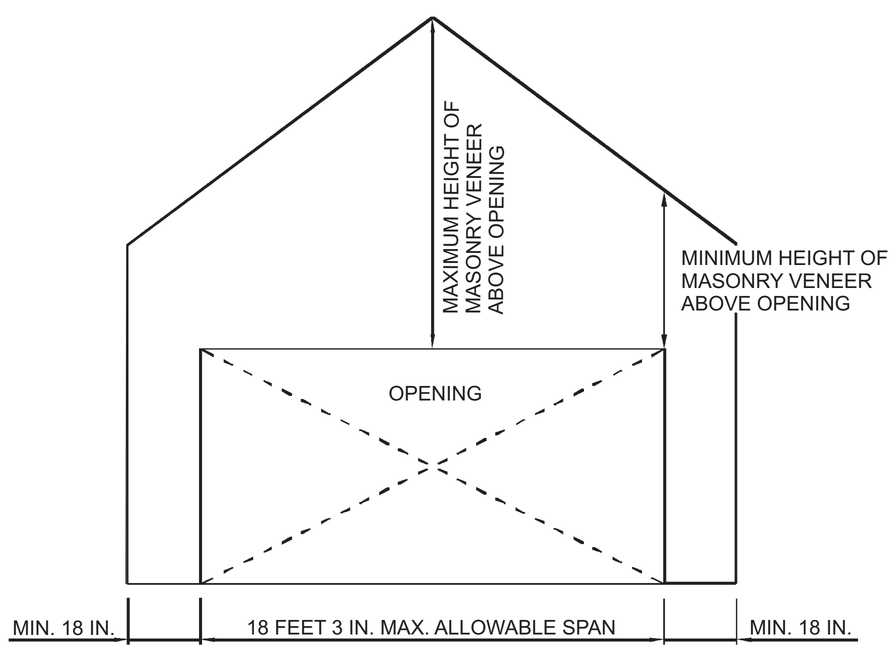
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot =304.8 mm.

a. Long leg of the angle shall be placed in a vertical position.

b. Depth of reinforced lintels shall not be less than 8 inches and all cells of hollow masonry lintels shall be grouted solid. Reinforcing bars shall extend not less than 8 inches into the support.

c. Steel members indicated are adequate typical examples; other steel members meeting structural design requirements may be used.

d. Either steel angle or reinforced lintel shall span opening.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R703.7.3.2**
**MASONRY VENEER OPENING**

structural framing components. Self-adhered membranes used as flashing shall comply with AAMA 711. The flashing shall extend to the surface of the exterior wall finish. *Approved* corrosion-resistant flashings shall be installed at all of the following locations:

1. Exterior window and door openings. Flashing at exterior window and door openings shall extend to the surface of the exterior wall finish or to the water-resistive barrier for subsequent drainage.
2. At the intersection of chimneys or other masonry construction with frame or stucco walls, with projecting lips on both sides under stucco copings.
3. Under and at the ends of masonry, wood or metal copings and sills.
4. Continuously above all projecting wood trim.
5. Where exterior porches, decks or stairs attach to a wall or floor assembly of wood-frame construction.
6. At wall and roof intersections.
7. At built-in gutters.

**R703.9 Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS)/EIFS with drainage.** Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS) shall comply with this chapter and Sections R703.9.1 and R703.9.3. EIFS with drainage shall comply with this chapter and Sections R703.9.2, R703.9.3 and R703.9.4.

**R703.9.1 Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS).** EIFS shall comply with ASTM E 2568.

**R703.9.2 Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) with drainage.** EIFS with drainage shall comply with ASTM E 2568 and shall have an average minimum drainage efficiency of 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM E 2273.

**R703.9.2.1 Water-resistive barrier.** The water-resistive barrier shall comply with Section R703.2 or ASTM E 2570.

**R703.9.2.2 Installation.** The water-resistive barrier shall be applied between the EIFS and the wall sheathing.

**R703.9.3 Flashing, general.** Flashing of EIFS shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section R703.8.

**R703.9.4 EIFS/EIFS with drainage installation.** All EIFS shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this section.

**R703.9.4.1 Terminations.** The EIFS shall terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the finished ground level.

**R703.9.4.2 Decorative trim.** Decorative trim shall not be face nailed though the EIFS.

**R703.10 Fiber cement siding.**

**R703.10.1 Panel siding.** Fiber-cement panels shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II. Panels shall be installed with the long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing. Vertical and horizontal joints shall occur over framing members and shall be sealed with caulking, covered with battens or shall be designed to comply with Section R703.1. Panel siding shall be installed with fasteners according to Table R703.4 or *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R703.10.2 Lap siding.** Fiber-cement lap siding having a maximum width of 12 inches shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II. Lap siding shall be lapped a minimum of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) and lap siding not having tongue-and-groove end joints shall have the ends sealed with caulking, installed with an H-section joint cover, located over a strip of flashing or shall be designed to comply with Section R703.1. Lap siding courses may be installed with the fastener heads exposed or concealed, according to Table R703.4 or *approved* manufacturers' installation instructions.

**R703.11 Vinyl siding.** Vinyl siding shall be certified and *labeled* as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D 3679 by an *approved* quality control agency.

**R703.11.1 Installation.** Vinyl siding, soffit and accessories shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R703.11.1.1** Soffit panels shall be individually fastened to a supporting component such as a nailing strip, fascia or subfascia component or as specified by the manufacturer's instructions.

**R703.11.2 Foam plastic sheathing.** Vinyl siding used with foam plastic sheathing shall be installed in accordance with Section R703.11.2.1, R703.11.2.2, or R703.11.2.3.

**Exception:** Where the foam plastic sheathing is applied directly over wood structural panels, fiberboard, gypsum sheathing or other *approved* backing capable of independently resisting the design wind pressure, the vinyl siding shall be installed in accordance with Section R703.11.1.

**R703.11.2.1 Basic wind speed not exceeding 90 miles per hour and Exposure Category B.** Where the basic wind speed does not exceed 90 miles per hour (40 m/s), the Exposure Category is B and gypsum wall board or equivalent is installed on the side of the wall opposite the foam plastic sheathing, the minimum siding fastener penetration into wood framing shall be $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) using minimum 0.120-inch diameter nail (shank) with a minimum 0.313-inch diameter head, 16 inches on center. The foam plastic sheathing shall be minimum $^1/_2$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) (nominal) extruded polystyrene per ASTM C578, $^1/_2$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) (nominal) polyisocyanurate per ASTM C1289, or 1-inch-thick (25 mm) (nominal) expanded polystyrene per ASTM C 578.

**R703.11.2.2 Basic wind speed exceeding 90 miles per hour or Exposure Categories C and D.** Where the basic wind speed exceeds 90 miles per hour (40 m/s) or the Exposure Category is C or D, or all conditions of Section R703.11.2.1 are not met, the adjusted design pressure rating for the assembly shall meet or exceed the loads listed in Tables R301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure using Table R301.2(3). The design wind pressure rating of the vinyl siding for installation over solid sheathing as provided in the vinyl siding manufacturer's product specifications shall be adjusted for the following wall assembly conditions:

1. For wall assemblies with foam plastic sheathing on the exterior side and gypsum wall board or equivalent on the interior side of the wall, the vinyl siding's design wind pressure rating shall be multiplied by 0.39.
2. For wall assemblies with foam plastic sheathing on the exterior side and no gypsum wall board or equivalent on the interior side of wall, the vinyl siding's design wind pressure rating shall be multiplied by 0.27.

**R703.11.2.3 Manufacturer specification.** Where the vinyl siding manufacturer's product specifications provide an *approved* design wind pressure rating for installation over foam plastic sheathing, use of this design wind pressure rating shall be permitted and the siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R703.12 Adhered masonry veneer installation.** Adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

# CHAPTER 8
# ROOF-CEILING CONSTRUCTION

## SECTION R801
## GENERAL

**R801.1 Application.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of the roof-ceiling system for all buildings.

**R801.2 Requirements.** Roof and ceiling construction shall be capable of accommodating all loads imposed according to Section R301 and of transmitting the resulting loads to the supporting structural elements.

**R801.3 Roof drainage.** In areas where expansive or collapsible soils are known to exist, all *dwellings* shall have a controlled method of water disposal from roofs that will collect and discharge roof drainage to the ground surface at least 5 feet (1524 mm) from foundation walls or to an *approved* drainage system.

## SECTION R802
## WOOD ROOF FRAMING

**R802.1 Identification.** Load-bearing dimension lumber for rafters, trusses and ceiling joists shall be identified by a grade mark of a lumber grading or inspection agency that has been approved by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20. In lieu of a grade mark, a certificate of inspection issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be accepted.

**R802.1.1 Blocking.** Blocking shall be a minimum of utility *grade* lumber.

**R802.1.2 End-jointed lumber.** *Approved* end-jointed lumber identified by a grade mark conforming to Section R802.1 may be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade.

**R802.1.3 Fire-retardant-treated wood.** Fire-retardant-treated wood (FRTW) is any wood product which, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, shall have, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84, a listed flame spread index of 25 or less and shows no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is continued for an additional 20-minute period. In addition, the flame front shall not progress more than 10.5 feet (3200 mm) beyond the center line of the burners at any time during the test.

**R802.1.3.1 Pressure process.** For wood products impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process, the process shall be performed in closed vessels under pressures not less than 50 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (344.7 kPa).

**R802.1.3.2 Other means during manufacture.** For wood products produced by other means during manufacture the treatment shall be an integral part of the manufacturing process of the wood product. The treatment shall provide permanent protection to all surfaces of the wood product.

**R802.1.3.3 Testing.** For wood products produced by other means during manufacture, other than a pressure process, all sides of the wood product shall be tested in accordance with and produce the results required in Section R802.1.3. Testing of only the front and back faces of wood structural panels shall be permitted.

**R802.1.3.4 Labeling.** Fire-retardant-treated lumber and wood structural panels shall be *labeled*. The *label* shall contain:

1. The identification *mark* of an *approved agency* in accordance with Section 1703.5 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Identification of the treating manufacturer.
3. The name of the fire-retardant treatment.
4. The species of wood treated.
5. Flame spread index and smoke-developed index.
6. Method of drying after treatment.
7. Conformance to applicable standards in accordance with Sections R802.1.3.5 through R802.1.3.8.
8. For FRTW exposed to weather, or a damp or wet location, the words "No increase in the listed classification when subjected to the Standard Rain Test" (ASTM D 2898).

**R802.1.3.5 Strength adjustments.** Design values for untreated lumber and wood structural panels as specified in Section R802.1 shall be adjusted for fire-retardant-treated wood. Adjustments to design values shall be based upon an *approved* method of investigation which takes into consideration the effects of the anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated wood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying procedures.

**R802.1.3.5.1 Wood structural panels.** The effect of treatment and the method of redrying after treatment, and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the flexure properties of fire-retardant-treated softwood plywood shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 5516. The test data developed by ASTM D 5516 shall be used to develop adjustment factors, maximum loads and spans, or both for untreated plywood design values in accordance with ASTM D 6305. Each manufacturer shall publish the allowable maximum loads and spans for service as floor and roof sheathing for their treatment.

**R802.1.3.5.2 Lumber.** For each species of wood treated, the effect of the treatment and the method of redrying after treatment and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the allowable design properties of fire-retardant-treated lumber shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 5664. The test data developed by ASTM D 5664 shall be used to develop modification factors for use at or near room temperature and at elevated temperatures and humidity in accordance with ASTM D 6841. Each manufacturer shall publish the modification factors for service at temperatures of not less than 80°F (27°C) and for roof framing. The roof framing modification factors shall take into consideration the climatological location.

**R802.1.3.6Exposure to weather.** Where fire-retardant-treated wood is exposed to weather or damp or wet locations, it shall be identified as "Exterior" to indicate there is no increase in the listed flame spread index as defined in Section R802.1.3 when subjected to ASTM D 2898.

**R802.1.3.7Interior applications.** Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall have a moisture content of not over 28 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3201 procedures at 92 percent relative humidity. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall be tested in accordance with Section R802.1.3.5.1 or R802.1.3.5.2. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood designated as Type A shall be tested in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**R802.1.3.8Moisture content.** Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be dried to a moisture content of 19 percent or less for lumber and 15 percent or less for wood structural panels before use. For wood kiln dried after treatment (KDAT) the kiln temperatures shall not exceed those used in kiln drying the lumber and plywood submitted for the tests described in Section R802.1.3.5.1 for plywood and R802.1.3.5.2 for lumber.

**R802.1.4 Structural glued laminated timbers.** Glued laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI/AITC A190.1 and ASTM D 3737.

**R802.1.5 Structural log members.** Stress grading of structural log members of nonrectangular shape, as typically used in log buildings, shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3957. Such structural log members shall be identified by the grade mark of an *approved* lumber grading or inspection agency. In lieu of a grade mark on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade issued by a lumber-grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be permitted to be accepted.

**R802.2 Design and construction.** The framing details required in Section R802 apply to roofs having a minimum slope of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater. Roof-ceilings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Figures R606.11(1), R606.11(2) and R606.11(3) or in accordance with AFPA/NDS. Components of roof-ceilings shall be fastened in accordance with Table R602.3(1).

**R802.3 Framing details.** Rafters shall be framed to ridge board or to each other with a gusset plate as a tie. Ridge board shall be at least 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. At all valleys and hips there shall be a valley or hip rafter not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. Hip and valley rafters shall be supported at the ridge by a brace to a bearing partition or be designed to carry and distribute the specific load at that point. Where the roof pitch is less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope), structural members that support rafters and ceiling joists, such as ridge beams, hips and valleys, shall be designed as beams.

**R802.3.1 Ceiling joist and rafter connections.** Ceiling joists and rafters shall be nailed to each other in accordance with Table R802.5.1(9), and the rafter shall be nailed to the top wall plate in accordance with Table R602.3(1). Ceiling joists shall be continuous or securely joined in accordance with Table R802.5.1(9) where they meet over interior partitions and are nailed to adjacent rafters to provide a continuous tie across the building when such joists are parallel to the rafters.

Where ceiling joists are not connected to the rafters at the top wall plate, joists connected higher in the *attic* shall be installed as rafter ties, or rafter ties shall be installed to provide a continuous tie. Where ceiling joists are not parallel to rafters, rafter ties shall be installed. Rafter ties shall be a minimum of 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) (nominal), installed in accordance with the connection requirements in Table R802.5.1(9), or connections of equivalent capacities shall be provided. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are not provided, the ridge formed by these rafters shall be supported by a wall or girder designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Collar ties or ridge straps to resist wind uplift shall be connected in the upper third of the *attic* space in accordance with Table R602.3(1).

Collar ties shall be a minimum of 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) (nominal), spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

**R802.3.2 Ceiling joists lapped.** Ends of ceiling joists shall be lapped a minimum of 3 inches (76 mm) or butted over bearing partitions or beams and toenailed to the bearing member. When ceiling joists are used to provide resistance to rafter thrust, lapped joists shall be nailed together in accordance with Table R802.5.1(9) and butted joists shall be tied together in a manner to resist such thrust.

**R802.4 Allowable ceiling joist spans.** Spans for ceiling joists shall be in accordance with Tables R802.4(1) and R802.4(2). For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AF&PA Span Tables for Joists and Rafters.

**R802.5 Allowable rafter spans.** Spans for rafters shall be in accordance with Tables R802.5.1(1) through R802.5.1(8). For other grades and species and for other loading conditions, refer to the AF&PA Span Tables for Joists and Rafters. The span of each rafter shall be measured along the horizontal projection of the rafter.

**R802.5.1 Purlins.** Installation of purlins to reduce the span of rafters is permitted as shown in Figure R802.5.1. Purlins shall be sized no less than the required size of the rafters that they support. Purlins shall be continuous and shall be supported by 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) braces installed to bearing walls at a slope not less than 45 degrees from the horizontal. The braces shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center and the unbraced length of braces shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm).

**R802.6 Bearing.** The ends of each rafter or ceiling joist shall have not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry or concrete.

**R802.6.1 Finished ceiling material.** If the finished ceiling material is installed on the ceiling prior to the attachment of the ceiling to the walls, such as in construction at a factory, a compression strip of the same thickness as the finish ceiling material shall be installed directly above the top plate of bearing walls if the compressive strength of the finish ceiling material is less than the loads it will be required to withstand. The compression strip shall cover the entire length of such top plate and shall be at least one-half the width of the top plate. It shall be of material capable of transmitting the loads transferred through it.

**R802.7 Cutting and notching.** Structural roof members shall not be cut, bored or notched in excess of the limitations specified in this section.

**R802.7.1 Sawn lumber.** Notches in solid lumber joists, rafters, blocking and beams shall not exceed one-sixth of the depth of the member, shall not be longer than one-third of the depth of the member and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span. Notches at the ends of the member shall not exceed one-fourth the depth of the member. The tension side of members 4 inches (102 mm) or greater in nominal thickness shall not be notched except at the ends of the members. The diameter of the holes bored or cut into members shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member. Holes shall not be closer than 2 inches (51 mm) to the top or bottom of the member, or to any other hole located in the member. Where the member is also notched, the hole shall not be closer than 2 inches (51 mm) to the notch.

**Exception:** Notches on cantilevered portions of rafters are permitted provided the dimension of the remaining portion of the rafter is not less than 4-inch nominal (102 mm) and the length of the cantilever does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm).

**R802.7.2 Engineered wood products.** Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glue-laminated members or I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such *alterations* are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered *design professional*.

**R802.8 Lateral support.** Roof framing members and ceiling joists having a depth-to-thickness ratio exceeding 5 to 1 based on nominal dimensions shall be provided with lateral support at points of bearing to prevent rotation. For roof rafters with ceiling joists attached per Table R602.3(1), the depth-thickness ratio for the total assembly shall be determined using the combined thickness of the rafter plus the attached ceiling joist.

**Exception:** Roof trusses shall be braced in accordance with Section R802.10.3.

**R802.8.1 Bridging.** Rafters and ceiling joists having a depth-to-thickness ratio exceeding 6 to 1 based on nominal dimensions shall be supported laterally by solid blocking, diagonal bridging (wood or metal) or a continuous 1-inch by 3-inch (25 mm by 76 mm) wood strip nailed across the rafters or ceiling joists at intervals not exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm).

**R802.9 Framing of openings.** Openings in roof and ceiling framing shall be framed with header and trimmer joists. When the header joist span does not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm), the header joist may be a single member the same size as the ceiling joist or rafter. Single trimmer joists may be used to carry a single header joist that is located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the trimmer joist bearing. When the header joist span exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm), the trimmer joists and the header joist shall be doubled and of sufficient cross section to support the ceiling joists or rafter framing into the header. *Approved* hangers shall be used for the header joist to trimmer joist connections when the header joist span exceeds 6 feet (1829 mm). Tail joists over 12 feet (3658 mm) long shall be supported at the header by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

**R802.10 Wood trusses.**

**R802.10.1 Truss design drawings.** Truss design drawings, prepared in conformance to Section R802.10.1, shall be provided to the *building official* and *approved* prior to installation. Truss design drawings shall include, at a minimum, the information specified below. Truss design drawing shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the jobsite.

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing.
2. Location of all joints.
3. Required bearing widths.
4. Design loads as applicable.
    - 4.1. Top chord live load (as determined from Section R301.6).
    - 4.2. Top chord dead load.
    - 4.3. Bottom chord live load.
    - 4.4. Bottom chord dead load.
    - 4.5. Concentrated loads and their points of application.
    - 4.6. Controlling wind and earthquake loads.
5. Adjustments to lumber and joint connector design values for conditions of use.
6. Each reaction force and direction.
7. Joint connector type and description (e.g., size, thickness or gage) and the dimensioned location of each joint connector except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface.
8. Lumber size, species and *grade for each member.*
9. Connection requirements for:
    - 9.1. Truss to girder-truss.
    - 9.2. Truss ply to ply.
    - 9.3. Field splices.
10. Calculated deflection ratio and/or maximum description for live and total load.
11. Maximum axial compression forces in the truss members to enable the building designer to design the size, connections and anchorage of the perma-

nent continuous lateral bracing. Forces shall be shown on the truss design drawing or on supplemental documents.

12. Required permanent truss member bracing location.

**R802.10.2 Design.** Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. The design and manufacture of metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall comply with ANSI/TPI 1. The truss design drawings shall be prepared by a registered professional where required by the statutes of the *jurisdiction* in which the project is to be constructed in accordance with Section R106.1.

**R802.10.2.1 Applicability limits.** The provisions of this section shall control the design of truss roof framing when snow controls for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length perpendicular to the joist, rafter or truss span, not greater than 36 feet (10 973 mm) in width parallel to the joist, rafter or truss span, not greater than two stories in height with each *story* not greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) high, and roof slopes not smaller than 3:12 (25-percent slope) or greater than 12:12 (100-percent slope). Truss roof framing constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 110 miles per hour (49 m/s), Exposure A, B or C, and a maximum ground snow load of 70 psf (3352 Pa). For consistent loading of all truss types, roof snow load is to be computed as: 0.7 $p_g$.

**R802.10.3 Bracing.** Trusses shall be braced to prevent rotation and provide lateral stability in accordance with the requirements specified in the *construction documents* for the building and on the individual truss design drawings. In the absence of specific bracing requirements, trusses shall be braced in accordance with the Building Component Safety Information (BCSI 1-03) Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses.

**R802.10.4 Alterations to trusses.** Truss members shall not be cut, notched, drilled, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the approval of a registered *design professional*. Alterations resulting in the addition of load (e.g., HVAC equipment, water heater) that exceeds the design load for the truss shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

**R802.10.5 Truss to wall connection.** Trusses shall be connected to wall plates by the use of *approved* connectors having a resistance to uplift of not less than 175 pounds (779 N) and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. For roof assemblies subject to wind uplift pressures of 20 pounds per square foot (960 Pa) or greater, as established in Table R301.2(2), adjusted for height and exposure per Table R301.2(3), see section R802.11.

**R802.11 Roof tie-down.**

**R802.11.1 Uplift resistance.** Roof assemblies which are subject to wind uplift pressures of 20 pounds per square foot (960 Pa) or greater shall have roof rafters or trusses attached to their supporting wall assemblies by connections capable of providing the resistance required in Table R802.11. Wind uplift pressures shall be determined using an effective wind area of 100 square feet (9.3 $m^2$) and Zone 1 in Table R301.2(2), as adjusted for height and exposure per Table R301.2(3).

A continuous load path shall be designed to transmit the uplift forces from the rafter or truss ties to the foundation.

**TABLE R802.4(1)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

| CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 5 psf | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 |
| | | | Maximum ceiling joist spans | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 13-2 | 20-8 | Note a | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 12-8 | 19-11 | Note a | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 12-5 | 19-6 | 25-8 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 10-10 | 15-10 | 20-1 | 24-6 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 12-5 | 19-6 | 25-8 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 12-2 | 19-1 | 25-2 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 11-7 | 18-2 | 24-0 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 10-10 | 15-10 | 20-1 | 24-6 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 12-11 | 20-3 | Note a | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 12-8 | 19-11 | Note a | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 12-5 | 19-6 | 25-8 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 11-6 | 17-0 | 21-8 | 25-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 12-2 | 19-1 | 25-2 | Note a |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 11-10 | 18-8 | 24-7 | Note a |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 11-10 | 18-8 | 24-7 | Note a |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 10-10 | 15-10 | 20-1 | 24-6 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 11-11 | 18-9 | 24-8 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 11-6 | 18-1 | 23-10 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 11-3 | 17-8 | 23-0 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 9-5 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-3 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 11-3 | 17-8 | 23-4 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 11-0 | 17-4 | 22-10 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 10-6 | 16-6 | 21-9 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 9-5 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-3 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 11-9 | 18-5 | 24-3 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 11-6 | 18-1 | 23-1 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 11-3 | 17-8 | 23-4 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 10-0 | 14-9 | 18-9 | 22-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 11-0 | 17-4 | 22-10 | Note a |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 10-9 | 16-11 | 22-4 | Note a |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 10-9 | 16-11 | 22-4 | Note a |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 9-5 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-3 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 11-3 | 17-8 | 23-3 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-10 | 17-0 | 22-5 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 10-7 | 16-7 | 21-0 | 25-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 10-7 | 16-8 | 21-11 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 10-4 | 16-4 | 21-6 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 9-11 | 15-7 | 20-6 | 25-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 |
| | Southern -pine | SS | 11-0 | 17-4 | 22-10 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-10 | 17-0 | 22-5 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 10-7 | 16-8 | 21-11 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 9-1 | 13-6 | 17-2 | 20-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 10-4 | 16-4 | 21-6 | Note a |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 10-2 | 15-11 | 21-0 | 25-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 10-2 | 15-11 | 21-0 | 25-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.4(1)—continued**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

| CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 5 psf | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 |
| | | | Maximum ceiling joist spans | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 10-5 | 16-4 | 21-7 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-1 | 24-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-10 | 14-10 | 18-9 | 22-11 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-7 | 23-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 9-2 | 14-5 | 18-6 | 22-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 10-3 | 16-1 | 21-2 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-10 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-1 | 23-11 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 8-2 | 12-0 | 15-4 | 18-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 9-5 | 14-9 | 18-9 | 22-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 9-5 | 14-9 | 18-9 | 22-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE R802.4(2)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

| CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 |
| | | | Maximum ceiling joist spans | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 10-5 | 16-4 | 21-7 | Note a |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-1 | 24-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-10 | 14-10 | 18-9 | 22-11 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note a |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-7 | 23-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 9-2 | 14-5 | 18-6 | 22-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 10-3 | 16-1 | 21-2 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-10 | Note a |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-1 | 23-11 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 8-2 | 12-0 | 15-4 | 18-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 9-5 | 14-9 | 18-9 | 22-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 9-5 | 14-9 | 18-9 | 22-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-6 | 14-11 | 19-7 | 25-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 9-1 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-9 | 12-10 | 16-3 | 19-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-8 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-9 | 13-5 | 16-10 | 20-8 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-4 | 12-8 | 16-0 | 19-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-8 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 9-4 | 14-7 | 19-3 | 24-7 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-11 | 23-1 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-11 | 13-6 | 17-5 | 20-9 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-3 | 15-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 23-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-7 | 12-10 | 16-3 | 19-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-7 | 12-10 | 16-3 | 19-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-8 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 15-0 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 8-11 | 14-0 | 18-5 | 23-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-3 | 12-3 | 15-6 | 18-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-10 | 11-7 | 14-8 | 17-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 23-1 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-9 | 21-1 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-5 | 12-3 | 15-10 | 18-11 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-5 | 9-6 | 12-1 | 14-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-3 | 12-11 | 17-1 | 21-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.4(2)—continued**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

| CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 |
| | | | Maximum ceiling joist spans | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 8-3 | 13-0 | 17-1 | 20-11 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 7-2 | 10-6 | 13-3 | 16-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-0 | 12-3 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-6 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 7-6 | 10-11 | 13-10 | 16-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-1 | 10-4 | 13-1 | 16-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-0 | 12-3 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-1 | 12-9 | 16-10 | 21-6 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-0 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 18-10 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-8 | 11-0 | 14-2 | 16-11 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 5-9 | 8-6 | 10-10 | 12-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 19-5 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 7-2 | 10-6 | 13-3 | 16-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 7-2 | 10-6 | 13-3 | 16-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-0 | 12-3 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE R802.5.1(1)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Roof live load=20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 11-6 | 18-0 | 23-9 | Note b | Note b | 11-6 | 18-0 | 23-5 | Note b | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 11-1 | 17-4 | 22-5 | Note b | Note b | 10-6 | 15-4 | 19-5 | 23-9 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 10-10 | 16-7 | 21-0 | 25-8 | Note b | 9-10 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 10-10 | 17-0 | 22-5 | Note b | Note b | 10-10 | 17-0 | 22-5 | Note b | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 10 -7 | 16-8 | 21-10 | Note b | Note b | 10-3 | 14-11 | 18-11 | 23-2 | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 10-1 | 15-11 | 20-8 | 25-3 | Note b | 9-8 | 14-2 | 17-11 | 21-11 | 25-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 11-3 | 17-8 | 23-4 | Note b | Note b | 11-3 | 17-8 | 23-4 | Note b | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 11-1 | 17-4 | 22-11 | Note b | Note b | 11-1 | 17-3 | 21-9 | 25-10 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 10-10 | 17-0 | 22-5 | Note b | Note b | 10-6 | 15-1 | 19-5 | 23-2 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 9-1 | 13-6 | 17-2 | 20-3 | 24-1 | 7-11 | 11-8 | 14-10 | 17-6 | 20-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 10-7 | 16-8 | 21-11 | Note b | Note b | 10-7 | 16-8 | 21-9 | Note b | Note b |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 10-4 | 16-3 | 21-0 | 25-8 | Note b | 9-10 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 10-4 | 16-3 | 21-0 | 25-8 | Note b | 9-10 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 10-5 | 16-4 | 21-7 | Note b | Note b | 10-5 | 16-0 | 20-3 | 24-9 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-0 | 15-4 | 19-5 | 23-9 | Note b | 9-1 | 13-3 | 16-10 | 20-7 | 23-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-10 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 | 8-6 | 12-5 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note b | Note b | 9-10 | 15-6 | 19-11 | 24-4 | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-8 | 14-11 | 18-11 | 23-2 | Note b | 8-10 | 12-11 | 16-5 | 20-0 | 23-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 9-2 | 14-2 | 17-11 | 21-11 | 25-5 | 8-5 | 12-3 | 15-6 | 18-11 | 22-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 10-3 | 16-1 | 21-2 | Note b | Note b | 10-3 | 16-1 | 21-2 | Note b | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-10 | 25-10 | Note b | 10-0 | 15-0 | 18-10 | 22-4 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-10 | 15-1 | 19-5 | 23-2 | Note b | 9-1 | 13-0 | 16-10 | 20-1 | 23-7 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-11 | 11-8 | 14-10 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 6-10 | 10-1 | 12-10 | 15-2 | 18-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 | Note b | 9-8 | 14-10 | 18-10 | 23-0 | Note b |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 9-5 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 | 8-6 | 12-5 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 9-5 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 | 8-6 | 12-5 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-10 | 15-5 | 20-4 | 25-11 | Note b | 9-10 | 14-7 | 18-6 | 22-7 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 9-5 | 14-0 | 17-9 | 21-8 | 25-2 | 8-4 | 12-2 | 15-4 | 18-9 | 21-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-11 | 13-1 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-6 | 7-9 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-9 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-3 | 14-7 | 19-2 | 24-6 | Note b | 9-3 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-1 | 13-8 | 17-4 | 21-1 | 24-6 | 8-1 | 11-10 | 15-0 | 18-4 | 21-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-8 | 12-11 | 16-4 | 20-0 | 23-2 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 | 20-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-9 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 | Note b | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 9-5 | 14-10 | 19-7 | 23-7 | Note b | 9-3 | 13-8 | 17-2 | 20-5 | 24-4 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-3 | 13-9 | 17-9 | 21-2 | 24-10 | 8-4 | 11-11 | 15-4 | 18-4 | 21-6 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-7 | 16-0 | 19-1 | 6-3 | 9-3 | 11-9 | 13-10 | 16-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-1 | 14-3 | 18-9 | 23-11 | Note b | 9-1 | 13-7 | 17-2 | 21-0 | 24-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-10 | 13-1 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-6 | 7-9 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-10 | 13-1 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-6 | 7-9 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-9 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(1)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Roof live load=20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-10 | 23-4 | Note b | 8-11 | 13-1 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 | 21-0 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 | 15-11 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-10 | 22-9 | Note b | 8-7 | 12-10 | 16-3 | 19-10 | 23-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-4 | 12-3 | 15-6 | 18-11 | 21-11 | 7-3 | 10-7 | 13-5 | 16-4 | 19-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-11 | 11-7 | 14-8 | 17-10 | 20-9 | 6-10 | 10-0 | 12-8 | 15-6 | 17-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 | 15-11 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 | Note b | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 22-11 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-9 | 13-9 | 17-9 | 21-1 | 25-2 | 8-3 | 12-3 | 15-4 | 18-3 | 21-9 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-7 | 12-3 | 15-10 | 18-11 | 22-2 | 7-5 | 10-8 | 13-9 | 16-5 | 19-3 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-5 | 9-6 | 12-1 | 14-4 | 17-1 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-5 | 14-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 21-8 | 25-2 | 8-4 | 12-2 | 15-4 | 18-9 | 21-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 | 21-0 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 | 21-0 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 | 15-11 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE R802.5.1(2)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Roof live load=20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 10-5 | 16-4 | 21-7 | Note b | Note b | 10-5 | 16-4 | 21-7 | Note b | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-10 | Note b | Note b | 10-0 | 15-4 | 19-5 | 23-9 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | 25-8 | Note b | 9-10 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note b | Note b | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note b | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 | Note b | 9-8 | 14-11 | 18-11 | 23-2 | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 9-2 | 14-5 | 19-0 | 24-3 | Note b | 9-2 | 14-2 | 17-11 | 21-11 | 25-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 10-3 | 16-1 | 21-2 | Note b | Note b | 10-3 | 16-1 | 21-2 | Note b | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-10 | Note b | Note b | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-10 | 25-10 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note b | Note b | 9-10 | 15-1 | 19-5 | 23-2 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 9-1 | 13-6 | 17-2 | 20-3 | 24-1 | 7-11 | 11-8 | 14-10 | 17-6 | 20-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 | Note b | 9-8 | 15-2 | 19-11 | 25-5 | Note b |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 9-5 | 14-9 | 19-6 | 24-10 | Note b | 9-5 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 9-5 | 14-9 | 19-6 | 24-10 | Note b | 9-5 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-6 | 14-11 | 19-7 | 25-0 | Note b | 9-6 | 14-11 | 19-7 | 24-9 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-11 | 23-9 | Note b | 9-1 | 13-3 | 16-10 | 20-7 | 23-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-2 | 22-3 | 25-9 | 8-6 | 12-5 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 | Note b | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 23-1 | Note b | 8-9 | 12-11 | 16-5 | 20-0 | 23-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-4 | 13-1 | 17-3 | 21-11 | 25-5 | 8-4 | 12-3 | 15-6 | 18-11 | 22-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 9-4 | 14-7 | 19-3 | 24-7 | Note b | 9-4 | 14-7 | 19-3 | 24-7 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-11 | 24-1 | Note b | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-10 | 22-4 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-2 | Note b | 8-11 | 13-0 | 16-10 | 20-1 | 23-7 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-11 | 11-8 | 14-10 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 6-10 | 10-1 | 12-10 | 15-2 | 18-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 23-1 | Note b | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 23-0 | Note b |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-7 | 13-5 | 17-9 | 22-3 | 25-9 | 8-6 | 12-5 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-7 | 13-5 | 17-9 | 22-3 | 25-9 | 8-6 | 12-5 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 8-11 | 14-0 | 18-5 | 23-7 | Note b | 8-11 | 14-0 | 18-5 | 22-7 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-9 | 21-8 | 25-2 | 8-4 | 12-2 | 15-4 | 18-9 | 21-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-5 | 13-1 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-6 | 7-9 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-9 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-3 | Note b | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-3 | 25-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-3 | 12-11 | 17-1 | 21-1 | 24-6 | 8-1 | 11-10 | 15-0 | 18-4 | 21-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-10 | 12-4 | 16-3 | 20-0 | 23-2 | 7-8 | 11-2 | 14-2 | 17-4 | 20-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-9 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 23-1 | Note b | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 23-1 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-9 | 22-8 | Note b | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-2 | 20-5 | 24-4 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 21-2 | 24-10 | 8-4 | 11-11 | 15-4 | 18-4 | 21-6 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-7 | 16-0 | 19-1 | 6-3 | 9-3 | 11-9 | 13-10 | 16-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-3 | 12-11 | 17-1 | 21-9 | Note b | 8-3 | 12-11 | 17-1 | 21-0 | 24-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-1 | 12-8 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-6 | 7-9 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-1 | 12-8 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-6 | 7-9 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-9 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(2)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Roof live load=20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 8-3 | 13-0 | 17-2 | 21-10 | Note b | 8-3 | 13-0 | 16-7 | 20-3 | 23-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-0 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 7-10 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 | 21-0 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 | 15-11 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-8 | 25-1 | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 19-10 | 23-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-6 | 18-11 | 21-11 | 7-3 | 10-7 | 13-5 | 16-4 | 19-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-3 | 11-5 | 14-8 | 17-10 | 20-9 | 6-10 | 10-0 | 12-8 | 15-6 | 17-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 | 15-11 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-1 | 12-9 | 16-10 | 21-6 | Note b | 8-1 | 12-9 | 16-10 | 21-6 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-0 | 12-6 | 16-6 | 21-1 | 25-2 | 8-0 | 12-3 | 15-4 | 18-3 | 21-9 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-10 | 12-3 | 15-10 | 18-11 | 22-2 | 7-5 | 10-8 | 13-9 | 16-5 | 19-3 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-5 | 9-6 | 12-1 | 14-4 | 17-1 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-5 | 14-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 20-2 | 24-7 | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-4 | 18-9 | 21-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 7-6 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 | 21-0 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 7-6 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-2 | 21-0 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-1 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-8 | 15-11 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE R802.5.1(3)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, $L/\Delta$ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-9 | Note b | Note b | 10-0 | 15-9 | 20-1 | 24-6 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 9-8 | 14-9 | 18-8 | 22-9 | Note b | 9-0 | 13-2 | 16-8 | 20-4 | 23-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 9-5 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-4 | 24-8 | 8-5 | 12-4 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 9-6 | 14-10 | 19-7 | 25-0 | Note b | 9-6 | 14-10 | 19-7 | 24-1 | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 9-3 | 14-4 | 18-2 | 22-2 | 25-9 | 8-9 | 12-10 | 16-3 | 19-10 | 23-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-10 | 13-7 | 17-2 | 21-0 | 24-4 | 8-4 | 12-2 | 15-4 | 18-9 | 21-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note b | Note b | 9-10 | 15-6 | 20-5 | Note b | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 9-8 | 15-2 | 20-0 | 24-9 | Note b | 9-8 | 14-10 | 18-8 | 22-2 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 9-6 | 14-5 | 18-8 | 22-3 | Note b | 9-0 | 12-11 | 16-8 | 19-11 | 23-4 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-7 | 11-2 | 14-3 | 16-10 | 20-0 | 6-9 | 10-0 | 12-9 | 15-1 | 17-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 9-3 | 14-7 | 19-2 | 24-6 | Note b | 9-3 | 14-7 | 18-8 | 22-9 | Note b |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 9-1 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-4 | 24-8 | 8-5 | 12-4 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 9-1 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-4 | 24-8 | 8-5 | 12-4 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-10 | 23-9 | Note b | 9-1 | 13-9 | 17-5 | 21-3 | 24-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-9 | 12-9 | 16-2 | 19-9 | 22-10 | 7-10 | 11-5 | 14-5 | 17-8 | 20-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-2 | 11-11 | 15-1 | 18-5 | 21-5 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 16-6 | 19-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-6 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-6 | 14-6 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-10 | 22-9 | Note b | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-1 | 20-10 | 24-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-5 | 12-5 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-3 | 7-7 | 11-1 | 14-1 | 17-2 | 19-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 14-11 | 18-2 | 21-1 | 7-2 | 10-6 | 13-4 | 16-3 | 18-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-6 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-6 | 14-6 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 | Note b | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-1 | 21-5 | 25-7 | 8-8 | 12-10 | 16-2 | 19-2 | 22-10 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 16-2 | 19-3 | 22-7 | 7-10 | 11-2 | 14-5 | 17-3 | 20-2 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-7 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 14-7 | 17-4 | 5-10 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-0 | 15-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-1 | 25-7 | 8-5 | 12-9 | 16-2 | 19-9 | 22-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-2 | 11-11 | 15-1 | 18-5 | 21-5 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 16-6 | 19-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-2 | 11-11 | 15-1 | 18-5 | 21-5 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 16-6 | 19-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-6 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-6 | 14-6 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-9 | 21-8 | 25-2 | 8-7 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-11 | 11-8 | 14-9 | 18-0 | 20-11 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 7-5 | 10-11 | 13-9 | 16-10 | 19-6 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-1 | 12-9 | 16-9 | 21-4 | 24-8 | 8-1 | 12-4 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 7-9 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-4 | 10-9 | 13-7 | 16-7 | 19-3 | 6-7 | 9-7 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-3 | Note b | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-0 | 25-9 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-3 | 13-0 | 16-6 | 19-7 | 23-4 | 7-11 | 11-9 | 14-9 | 17-6 | 20-11 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-11 | 11-5 | 14-9 | 17-7 | 20-7 | 7-1 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-0 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-4 | 15-10 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-11 | 12-5 | 16-5 | 20-2 | 23-4 | 7-11 | 11-8 | 14-9 | 18-0 | 20-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 7-5 | 10-11 | 13-9 | 16-10 | 19-6 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 7-5 | 10-11 | 13-9 | 16-10 | 19-6 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(3)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-11 | 12-6 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-8 | 11-3 | 14-2 | 17-4 | 20-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 5-11 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 15-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-6 | 6-7 | 8-4 | 10-2 | 11-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-6 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 | 7-6 | 11-0 | 13-11 | 17-0 | 19-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 | 6-2 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-0 | 16-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-7 | 9-7 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-6 | 6-7 | 8-4 | 10-2 | 11-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-8 | 25-1 | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 19-8 | 23-0 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 7-8 | 11-9 | 14-9 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 7-1 | 10-6 | 13-2 | 15-8 | 18-8 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-1 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 | 6-4 | 9-2 | 11-9 | 14-1 | 16-6 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 | 4-9 | 7-1 | 9-0 | 10-8 | 12-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-4 | 11-7 | 14-9 | 18-0 | 20-11 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 5-11 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 15-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 5-11 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 15-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-6 | 6-7 | 8-4 | 10-2 | 11-10 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE R802.5.1(4)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-6 | 22-4 | 26-0 | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-0 | 20-9 | 24-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-2 | 12-0 | 15-3 | 18-7 | 21-7 | 7-7 | 11-2 | 14-1 | 17-3 | 20-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 7-8 | 11-3 | 14-3 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-0 | 12-6 | 16-6 | 21-1 | 25-6 | 8-0 | 12-6 | 16-6 | 20-4 | 23-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 7-10 | 11-9 | 14-10 | 18-1 | 21-0 | 7-5 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-5 | 11-1 | 14-0 | 17-2 | 19-11 | 7-0 | 10-3 | 13-0 | 15-10 | 18-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-4 | 13-0 | 17-2 | 21-11 | Note b | 8-4 | 13-0 | 17-2 | 21-11 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-2 | 12-10 | 16-10 | 20-3 | 24-1 | 8-2 | 12-6 | 15-9 | 18-9 | 22-4 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-0 | 11-9 | 15-3 | 18-2 | 21-3 | 7-7 | 10-11 | 14-1 | 16-10 | 19-9 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-2 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 13-9 | 16-4 | 5-9 | 8-5 | 10-9 | 12-9 | 15-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-8 | 24-1 | 7-10 | 12-3 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 7-8 | 11-3 | 14-3 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 7-8 | 11-3 | 14-3 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-8 | 12-1 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-8 | 11-7 | 14-8 | 17-11 | 20-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-7 | 9-8 | 12-2 | 14-11 | 17-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-6 | 12-3 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-3 | 11-5 | 15-0 | 19-1 | 22-1 | 7-3 | 11-5 | 14-5 | 17-8 | 20-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-7 | 9-7 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 | 6-1 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-6 | 12-3 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 7-6 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-11 | 24-3 | 7-6 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-11 | 23-10 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 7-5 | 11-7 | 14-9 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 7-4 | 10-10 | 13-8 | 16-2 | 19-4 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-1 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 | 6-7 | 9-5 | 12-2 | 14-7 | 17-1 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 | 4-11 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-0 | 13-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-0 | 20-11 | 7-1 | 10-9 | 13-8 | 15-11 | 19-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-6 | 12-3 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-3 | 11-4 | 14-6 | 17-8 | 20-6 | 7-3 | 10-7 | 13-5 | 16-5 | 19-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 6-6 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-1 | 6-0 | 8-10 | 11-2 | 13-7 | 15-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-1 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-6 | 10-5 | 12-1 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-7 | 11-2 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-10 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 6-10 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-4 | 9-3 | 11-9 | 14-4 | 16-7 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-0 | 8-9 | 11-1 | 13-7 | 15-9 | 5-7 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-6 | 10-5 | 12-1 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-7 | 11-2 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18 7 | 21-9 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 7-0 | 10-8 | 13-5 | 16-0 | 19-1 | 6-8 | 9-11 | 12-5 | 14-10 | 17-8 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 6-6 | 9-4 | 12-0 | 14-4 | 16-10 | 6-0 | 8-8 | 11-2 | 13-4 | 15-7 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-11 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 10-10 | 12-11 | 4-6 | 6-8 | 8-6 | 10-1 | 12-0 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-8 | 10-6 | 13-5 | 16-5 | 19-1 | 6-8 | 9-10 | 12-5 | 15-3 | 17-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-1 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-1 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-6 | 10-5 | 12-1 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-7 | 11-2 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(4)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-8 | 10- | 13-0 | 15-10 | 18-4 | 6-6 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 | 3-10 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-7 | 10-0 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-4 | 9-11 | 12-9 | 15-7 | 18-0 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 5-8 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-10 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 5-4 | 7-10 | 9-11 | 12-1 | 14-1 | 4-11 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 | 3-10 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-7 | 10-0 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-7 | 10-4 | 13-8 | 17-5 | 21-0 | 6-7 | 10-4 | 13-8 | 16-7 | 19-5 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 6-5 | 9-7 | 12-0 | 14-4 | 17-1 | 6-0 | 8-10 | 11-2 | 13-3 | 15-9 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 5-10 | 8-4 | 10-9 | 12-10 | 15-1 | 5-5 | 7-9 | 10-0 | 11-11 | 13-11 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-4 | 6-5 | 8-3 | 9-9 | 11-7 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-0 | 10-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-2 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-1 | 6-0 | 8-10 | 11-2 | 13-7 | 15-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 | 3-10 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-7 | 10-0 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE R802.5.1(5)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-10 | 24-1 | Note b | 9-1 | 14-4 | 18-10 | 24-1 | Note b |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-2 | 22-9 | Note b | 8-9 | 13-2 | 16-8 | 20-4 | 23-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-5 | 21-4 | 24-8 | 8-5 | 12-4 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-10 | 22-9 | Note b | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-10 | 22-9 | Note b |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-2 | 25-9 | 8-5 | 12-10 | 16-3 | 19-10 | 23-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 8-0 | 12-7 | 16-7 | 21-0 | 24-4 | 8-0 | 12-2 | 15-4 | 18-9 | 21-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 | Note b | 8-11 | 14-1 | 18-6 | 23-8 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-2 | 23-2 | Note b | 8-9 | 13-9 | 18-2 | 22-2 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 8-7 | 13-6 | 17-10 | 22-3 | Note b | 8-7 | 12-11 | 16-8 | 19-11 | 23-4 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 7-7 | 11-2 | 14-3 | 16-10 | 20-0 | 6-9 | 10-0 | 12-9 | 15-1 | 17-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-3 | Note b | 8-5 | 13-3 | 17-5 | 22-3 | Note b |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 8-3 | 12-11 | 17-0 | 21-4 | 24-8 | 8-3 | 12-4 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 8-3 | 12-11 | 17-0 | 21-4 | 24-8 | 8-3 | 12-4 | 15-7 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 8-3 | 13-0 | 17-2 | 21-10 | Note b | 8-3 | 13-0 | 17-2 | 21-3 | 24-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 8-0 | 12-6 | 16-2 | 19-9 | 22-10 | 7-10 | 11-5 | 14-5 | 17-8 | 20-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 7-10 | 11-11 | 15-1 | 18-5 | 21-5 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 16-6 | 19-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-6 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-6 | 14-6 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-8 | 25-1 | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 20-8 | 24-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-9 | 19-3 | 22-3 | 7-7 | 11-1 | 14-1 | 17-2 | 19-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 7-3 | 11-5 | 14-11 | 18-2 | 21-1 | 7-2 | 10-6 | 13-4 | 16-3 | 18-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-6 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-6 | 14-6 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 8-1 | 12-9 | 16-10 | 21-6 | Note b | 8-1 | 12-9 | 16-10 | 21-6 | Note b |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 8-0 | 12-6 | 16-6 | 21-1 | 25-7 | 8-0 | 12-6 | 16-2 | 19-2 | 22-10 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-10 | 12-3 | 16-2 | 19-3 | 22-7 | 7-10 | 11-2 | 14-5 | 17-3 | 20-2 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-7 | 9-8 | 12-4 | 14-7 | 17-4 | 5-10 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-0 | 15-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 20-2 | 24-7 | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 19-9 | 22-10 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 7-6 | 11-9 | 15-1 | 18-5 | 21-5 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 16-6 | 19-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 7-6 | 11-9 | 15-1 | 18-5 | 21-5 | 7-3 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 16-6 | 19-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-6 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-6 | 14-6 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-9 | 12-3 | 16-1 | 20-7 | 25-0 | 7-9 | 12-3 | 15-10 | 19-5 | 22-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-6 | 11-8 | 14-9 | 18-0 | 20-11 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 7-4 | 10-11 | 13-9 | 16-10 | 19-6 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-4 | 11-7 | 15-3 | 19-5 | 23-7 | 7-4 | 11-7 | 15-3 | 19-1 | 22-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 7-2 | 11-4 | 14-4 | 17-7 | 20-4 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-10 | 10-9 | 13-7 | 16-7 | 19-3 | 6-7 | 9-7 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 20-2 | 24-7 | 7-8 | 12-0 | 15-10 | 20-2 | 24-7 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 7-6 | 11-9 | 15-6 | 19-7 | 23-4 | 7-6 | 11-9 | 14-9 | 17-6 | 20-11 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-4 | 11-5 | 14-9 | 17-7 | 20-7 | 7-1 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-0 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-4 | 15-10 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-2 | 11-4 | 14-11 | 19-0 | 23-1 | 7-2 | 11-4 | 14-9 | 18-0 | 20-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 7-0 | 10-11 | 13-9 | 16-10 | 19-6 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 7-0 | 10-11 | 13-9 | 16-10 | 19-6 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(5)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-3 | 11-4 | 15-0 | 19-1 | 22-6 | 7-3 | 11-3 | 14-2 | 17-4 | 20-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-0 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-4 | 9-4 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 16-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 5-11 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 15-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-6 | 6-7 | 8-4 | 10-2 | 11-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-10 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-0 | 21-11 | 6-10 | 10-9 | 13-11 | 17-0 | 19-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-8 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 | 6-2 | 9-1 | 11-6 | 14-0 | 16-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-4 | 9-7 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-6 | 6-7 | 8-4 | 10-2 | 11-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 7-0 | 10-11 | 14-5 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 7-0 | 10-6 | 13-2 | 15-8 | 18-8 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 6-10 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 | 6-4 | 9-2 | 11-9 | 14-1 | 16-6 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 | 4-9 | 7-1 | 9-0 | 10-8 | 12-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-8 | 10-6 | 13-10 | 17-8 | 20-11 | 6-8 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-6 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 5-11 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 15-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-6 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 5-11 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 15-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-6 | 6-7 | 8-4 | 10-2 | 11-10 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE R802.5.1(6)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-8 | 12-1 | 15-11 | 20-3 | 24-8 | 7-8 | 12-1 | 15-11 | 20-3 | 24-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-5 | 11-7 | 15-3 | 18-7 | 21-7 | 7-5 | 11-2 | 14-1 | 17-3 | 20-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 7-3 | 11-3 | 14-3 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-3 | 11-5 | 15-0 | 19-2 | 23-4 | 7-3 | 11-5 | 15-0 | 19-2 | 23-4 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-1 | 21-0 | 7-1 | 10-10 | 13-9 | 16-9 | 19-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-9 | 10-8 | 14-0 | 17-2 | 19-11 | 6-9 | 10-3 | 13-0 | 15-10 | 18-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 7-6 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-11 | 24-3 | 7-6 | 11-10 | 15-7 | 19-11 | 24-3 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 7-5 | 11-7 | 15-4 | 19-7 | 23-9 | 7-5 | 11-7 | 15-4 | 18-9 | 22-4 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-3 | 11-5 | 15-0 | 18-2 | 21-3 | 7-3 | 10-11 | 14-1 | 16-10 | 19-9 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 6-2 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 13-9 | 16-4 | 5-9 | 8-5 | 10-9 | 12-9 | 15-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-10 | 7-1 | 11-2 | 14-8 | 18-9 | 22-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-11 | 10-11 | 14-3 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 6-11 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-11 | 10-11 | 14-3 | 17-5 | 20-2 | 6-11 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-0 | 11-0 | 14-5 | 18-5 | 22-5 | 7-0 | 11-0 | 14-5 | 17-11 | 20-10 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 6-9 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-7 | 9-8 | 12-2 | 14-11 | 17-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-7 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-6 | 12-3 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-7 | 10-4 | 13-8 | 17-5 | 21-2 | 6-7 | 10-4 | 13-8 | 17-5 | 20-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-5 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 | 6-5 | 9-5 | 11-11 | 14-6 | 16-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-2 | 9-7 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 | 6-1 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-6 | 12-3 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-10 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-1 | 22-0 | 6-10 | 10-9 | 14-2 | 18-1 | 22-0 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 6-9 | 10-7 | 13-11 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 6-9 | 10-7 | 13-8 | 16-2 | 19-4 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 6-7 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 | 6-7 | 9-5 | 12-2 | 14-7 | 17-1 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 | 4-11 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-0 | 13-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-5 | 10-2 | 13-4 | 17-0 | 20-9 | 6-5 | 10-2 | 13-4 | 16-8 | 19-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-4 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-4 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-8 | 10-6 | 12-3 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-7 | 10-4 | 13-7 | 17-4 | 20-6 | 6-7 | 10-4 | 13-5 | 16-5 | 19-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 6-4 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-1 | 6-0 | 8-10 | 11-2 | 13-7 | 15-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-1 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-6 | 10-5 | 12-1 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-7 | 11-2 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-2 | 9-9 | 12-10 | 16-5 | 19-11 | 6-2 | 9-9 | 12-10 | 16-1 | 18-8 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-1 | 9-3 | 11-9 | 14-4 | 16-7 | 5-10 | 8-7 | 10-10 | 13-3 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 5-9 | 8-9 | 11-1 | 13-7 | 15-9 | 5-7 | 8-1 | 10-3 | 12-7 | 14-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-6 | 10-5 | 12-1 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-7 | 11-2 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-5 | 10-2 | 13-4 | 17-0 | 20-9 | 6-5 | 10-2 | 13-4 | 17-0 | 20-9 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 6-4 | 9-11 | 13-1 | 16-0 | 19-1 | 6-4 | 9-11 | 12-5 | 14-10 | 17-8 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 6-2 | 9-4 | 12-0 | 14-4 | 16-10 | 6-0 | 8-8 | 11-2 | 13-4 | 15-7 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-11 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 10-10 | 12-11 | 4-6 | 6-8 | 8-6 | 10-1 | 12-0 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-1 | 9-6 | 12-7 | 16-0 | 19-1 | 6-1 | 9-6 | 12-5 | 15-3 | 17-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 5-11 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 5-11 | 8-11 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-6 | 10-5 | 12-1 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 7-11 | 9-7 | 11-2 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(6)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
**(Ground snow load=50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-1 | 9-7 | 12-7 | 15-10 | 18-4 | 6-1 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 | 5-5 | 7-10 | 10-0 | 12-2 | 14-1 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 | 3-10 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-7 | 10-0 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 5-9 | 9-1 | 11-11 | 15-2 | 18-0 | 5-9 | 9-1 | 11-9 | 14-5 | 15-11 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 5-8 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-10 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-10 | 13-9 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 5-4 | 7-10 | 9-11 | 12-1 | 14-1 | 4-11 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 | 3-10 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-7 | 10-0 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-0 | 9-5 | 12-5 | 15-10 | 19-3 | 6-0 | 9-5 | 12-5 | 15-10 | 19-3 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 5-10 | 9-3 | 12-0 | 14-4 | 17-1 | 5-10 | 8-10 | 11-2 | 13-3 | 15-9 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 5-9 | 8-4 | 10-9 | 12-10 | 15-1 | 5-5 | 7-9 | 10-0 | 11-11 | 13-11 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-4 | 6-5 | 8-3 | 9-9 | 11-7 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-0 | 10-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 5-8 | 8-10 | 11-8 | 14-8 | 17-1 | 5-8 | 8-10 | 11-2 | 13-7 | 15-9 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 | 3-10 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-7 | 10-0 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

**TABLE R802.5.1(7)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR 70 PSF GROUND SNOW LOAD**
**(Ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum Rafter Spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) | (feet-inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 7-7 | 11-10 | 15-8 | 19-5 | 22-6 | 7-7 | 11-10 | 15-0 | 18-3 | 21-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 7-1 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-8 | 9-10 | 12-5 | 15-2 | 17-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-3 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-2 | 16-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 7-2 | 11-3 | 14-9 | 18-10 | 22-1 | 7-2 | 11-3 | 14-8 | 18-0 | 20-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-11 | 10-2 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 | 6-6 | 9-7 | 12-1 | 14-10 | 17-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-7 | 9-7 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 | 6-2 | 9-1 | 11-5 | 14-0 | 16-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 7-5 | 11-8 | 15-4 | 19-7 | 23-10 | 7-5 | 11-8 | 15-4 | 19-7 | 23-10 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 7-3 | 11-5 | 14-9 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 7-3 | 11-1 | 13-11 | 16-6 | 19-8 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 7-1 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 | 6-8 | 9-7 | 12-5 | 14-10 | 17-5 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 | 5-1 | 7-5 | 9-6 | 11-3 | 13-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 7-0 | 11-0 | 14-6 | 18-0 | 20-11 | 7-0 | 11-0 | 13-11 | 17-0 | 19-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-3 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-2 | 16-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-8 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-3 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-2 | 16-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-10 | 10-9 | 13-9 | 16-10 | 19-6 | 6-10 | 10-3 | 13-0 | 15-10 | 18-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 6-2 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 5-9 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-1 | 15-2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-4 | 6-4 | 8-1 | 9-10 | 11-5 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-6 | 10-2 | 13-5 | 16-6 | 19-2 | 6-6 | 10-1 | 12-9 | 15-7 | 18-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-0 | 8-9 | 11-2 | 13-7 | 15-9 | 5-8 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 5-8 | 8-4 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-11 | 5-4 | 7-10 | 9-11 | 12-1 | 14-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-4 | 6-4 | 8-1 | 9-10 | 11-5 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-9 | 10-7 | 14-0 | 17-10 | 21-8 | 6-9 | 10-7 | 14-0 | 17-10 | 21-0 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 6-7 | 10-2 | 12-9 | 15-2 | 18-1 | 6-5 | 9-7 | 12-0 | 14-4 | 17-1 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 6-2 | 8-10 | 11-5 | 13-7 | 16-0 | 5-10 | 8-4 | 10-9 | 12-10 | 15-1 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-9 | 10-4 | 12-3 | 4-4 | 6-5 | 8-3 | 9-9 | 11-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-4 | 10-0 | 12-9 | 15-7 | 18-1 | 6-4 | 9-6 | 12-0 | 14-8 | 17-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 5-9 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-1 | 15-2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 5-9 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-1 | 15-2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-4 | 6-4 | 8-1 | 9-10 | 11-5 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-5 | 9-11 | 12-7 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 6-5 | 9-4 | 11-10 | 14-5 | 16-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-4 | 7-9 | 9-10 | 12-0 | 13-11 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 13-10 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-0 | 5-10 | 7-4 | 9-0 | 10-5 | 3-9 | 5-6 | 6-11 | 8-6 | 9-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-1 | 9-7 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-4 | 6-1 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-2 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 5-6 | 8-0 | 10-2 | 12-5 | 14-5 | 5-2 | 7-7 | 9-7 | 11-8 | 13-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 5-2 | 7-7 | 9-7 | 11-9 | 13-7 | 4-11 | 7-2 | 9-1 | 11-1 | 12-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-0 | 5-10 | 7-4 | 9-0 | 10-5 | 3-9 | 5-6 | 6-11 | 8-6 | 9-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-4 | 10-0 | 13-2 | 16-9 | 20-4 | 6-4 | 10-0 | 13-2 | 16-5 | 19-2 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 6-3 | 9-3 | 11-8 | 13-10 | 16-6 | 5-11 | 8-9 | 11-0 | 13-1 | 15-7 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 5-7 | 8-1 | 10-5 | 12-5 | 14-7 | 5-4 | 7-7 | 9-10 | 11-9 | 13-9 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 8-0 | 9-5 | 11-2 | 4-0 | 5-11 | 7-6 | 8-10 | 10-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-0 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-3 | 16-6 | 5-11 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 13-10 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 13-10 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-0 | 5-10 | 7-4 | 9-0 | 10-5 | 3-9 | 5-6 | 6-11 | 8-6 | 9-10 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(7)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR 70 PSF GROUND SNOW LOAD**
**(Ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet-inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-0 | 8-10 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-9 | 8-4 | 10-7 | 12-11 | 15-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 4-8 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-8 | 12-4 | 4-5 | 6-6 | 8-3 | 10-0 | 11-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 3-7 | 5-2 | 6-7 | 8-1 | 9-4 | 3-4 | 4-11 | 6-3 | 7-7 | 8-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 5-8 | 8-8 | 11-0 | 13-6 | 13-11 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-4 | 12-4 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 4-11 | 7-2 | 9-1 | 11-1 | 12-10 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-7 | 10-6 | 12-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 4-8 | 6-9 | 8-7 | 10-6 | 12-2 | 4-4 | 6-5 | 8-1 | 9-11 | 11-6 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 3-7 | 5-2 | 6-7 | 8-1 | 9-4 | 3-4 | 4-11 | 6-3 | 7-7 | 8-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 5-11 | 9-3 | 12-2 | 15-7 | 18-2 | 5-11 | 9-3 | 12-2 | 14-8 | 17-2 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-5 | 14-9 | 5-3 | 7-10 | 9-10 | 11-8 | 13-11 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-4 | 11-1 | 13-0 | 4-9 | 6-10 | 8-9 | 10-6 | 12-4 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 3-9 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-5 | 10-0 | 3-7 | 5-3 | 6-9 | 7-11 | 9-5 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 5-6 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-4 | 7-9 | 9-10 | 12-0 | 12-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 4-8 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-8 | 12-4 | 4-5 | 6-6 | 8-3 | 10-0 | 11-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 4-8 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-8 | 12-4 | 4-5 | 6-6 | 8-3 | 10-0 | 11-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 3-7 | 5-2 | 6-7 | 8-1 | 9-4 | 3-4 | 4-11 | 6-3 | 7-7 | 8-10 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

**TABLE R802.5.1(8)**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR 70 PSF GROUND SNOW LOAD**
**(Ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 12 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-10 | 10-9 | 14-3 | 18-2 | 22-1 | 6-10 | 10-9 | 14-3 | 18-2 | 21-2 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 6-7 | 10-5 | 13-2 | 16-1 | 18-8 | 6-7 | 9-10 | 12-5 | 15-2 | 17-7 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 6-6 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-3 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-2 | 16-6 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 6-6 | 10-2 | 13-5 | 17-2 | 20-10 | 6-6 | 10-2 | 13-5 | 17-2 | 20-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 6-4 | 10-0 | 12-10 | 15-8 | 18-2 | 6-4 | 9-7 | 12-1 | 14-10 | 17-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 6-1 | 9-6 | 12-2 | 14-10 | 17-3 | 6-1 | 9-1 | 11-5 | 14-0 | 16-3 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-9 | 10-7 | 14-0 | 17-10 | 21-8 | 6-9 | 10-7 | 14-0 | 17-10 | 21-8 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 6-7 | 10-5 | 13-8 | 17-6 | 20-11 | 6-7 | 10-5 | 13-8 | 16-6 | 19-8 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 6-6 | 10-2 | 13-2 | 15-9 | 18-5 | 6-6 | 9-7 | 12-5 | 14-10 | 17-5 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 5-4 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 11-11 | 14-2 | 5-1 | 7-5 | 9-6 | 11-3 | 13-4 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 6-4 | 10-0 | 13-2 | 16-9 | 20-5 | 6-4 | 10-0 | 13-2 | 16-9 | 19-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 6-2 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-2 | 16-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 6-2 | 9-9 | 12-4 | 15-1 | 17-6 | 6-2 | 9-2 | 11-8 | 14-2 | 16-6 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| 16 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 6-3 | 9-10 | 12-11 | 16-6 | 19-6 | 6-3 | 9-10 | 12-11 | 15-10 | 18-4 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 6-0 | 9-0 | 11-5 | 13-11 | 16-2 | 5-10 | 8-6 | 10-9 | 13-2 | 15-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 5-9 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-1 | 15-2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-4 | 6-4 | 8-1 | 9-10 | 11-5 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 5-11 | 9-3 | 12-2 | 15-7 | 18-11 | 5-11 | 9-3 | 12-2 | 15-7 | 18-0 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 5-9 | 8-9 | 11-2 | 13-7 | 15-9 | 5-8 | 8-3 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 5-6 | 8-4 | 10-6 | 12-10 | 14-11 | 5-4 | 7-10 | 9-11 | 12-1 | 14-1 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-4 | 6-4 | 8-1 | 9-10 | 11-5 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 6-1 | 9-7 | 12-8 | 16-2 | 19-8 | 6-1 | 9-7 | 12-8 | 16-2 | 19-8 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 6-0 | 9-5 | 12-5 | 15-2 | 18-1 | 6-0 | 9-5 | 12-0 | 14-4 | 17-1 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 5-11 | 8-10 | 11-5 | 13-7 | 16-0 | 5-10 | 8-4 | 10-9 | 12-10 | 15-1 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-8 | 6-10 | 8-9 | 10-4 | 12-3 | 4-4 | 6-5 | 8-3 | 9-9 | 11-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 5-9 | 9-1 | 11-11 | 15-3 | 18-1 | 5-9 | 9-1 | 11-11 | 14-8 | 17-1 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 5-8 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-1 | 15-2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 5-8 | 8-5 | 10-8 | 13-1 | 15-2 | 5-5 | 7-11 | 10-1 | 12-4 | 14-3 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-4 | 6-4 | 8-1 | 9-10 | 11-5 | 4-1 | 6-0 | 7-7 | 9-4 | 10-9 |
| 19.2 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 5-10 | 9-3 | 12-2 | 15-4 | 17-9 | 5-10 | 9-3 | 11-10 | 14-5 | 16-9 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 5-7 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-4 | 7-9 | 9-10 | 12-0 | 13-11 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 13-10 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 4-0 | 5-10 | 7-4 | 9-0 | 10-5 | 3-9 | 5-6 | 6-11 | 8-6 | 9-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 5-6 | 8-8 | 11-6 | 14-8 | 17-4 | 5-6 | 8-8 | 11-6 | 14-2 | 15-5 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 5-5 | 8-0 | 10-2 | 12-5 | 14-5 | 5-2 | 7-7 | 9-7 | 11-8 | 13-7 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 5-2 | 7-7 | 9-7 | 11-9 | 13-7 | 4-11 | 7-2 | 9-1 | 11-1 | 12-10 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 4-0 | 5-10 | 7-4 | 9-0 | 10-5 | 3-9 | 5-6 | 6-11 | 8-6 | 9-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 5-9 | 9-1 | 11-11 | 15-3 | 18-6 | 5-9 | 9-1 | 11-11 | 15-3 | 18-6 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 5-8 | 8-11 | 11-8 | 13-10 | 16-6 | 5-8 | 8-9 | 11-0 | 13-1 | 15-7 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 5-6 | 8-1 | 10-5 | 12-5 | 14-7 | 5-4 | 7-7 | 9-10 | 11-9 | 13-9 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 4-3 | 6-3 | 8-0 | 9-5 | 11-2 | 4-0 | 5-11 | 7-6 | 8-10 | 10-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 5-5 | 8-6 | 11-3 | 14-3 | 16-6 | 5-5 | 8-6 | 11-0 | 13-5 | 15-7 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 13-10 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 5-3 | 7-8 | 9-9 | 11-11 | 13-10 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-2 | 11-3 | 13-0 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 4-0 | 5-10 | 7-4 | 9-0 | 10-5 | 3-9 | 5-6 | 6-11 | 8-6 | 9-10 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE R802.5.1(8)—continued**
**RAFTER SPANS FOR 70 PSF GROUND SNOW LOAD[a]**
**(Ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

| RAFTER SPACING (inches) | SPECIES AND GRADE | | DEAD LOAD = 10 psf | | | | | DEAD LOAD = 20 psf | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 | 2 × 4 | 2 × 6 | 2 × 8 | 2 × 10 | 2 × 12 |
| | | | Maximum rafter spans[a] | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) | (feet - inches) |
| 24 | Douglas fir-larch | SS | 5-5 | 8-7 | 11-3 | 13-9 | 15-11 | 5-5 | 8-4 | 10-7 | 12-11 | 15-0 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #1 | 5-0 | 7-4 | 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | 4-9 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-9 | 12-5 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #2 | 4-8 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-8 | 12-4 | 4-5 | 6-6 | 8-3 | 10-0 | 11-8 |
| | Douglas fir-larch | #3 | 3-7 | 5-2 | 6-7 | 8-1 | 9-4 | 3-4 | 4-11 | 6-3 | 7-7 | 8-10 |
| | Hem-fir | SS | 5-2 | 8-1 | 10-8 | 13-6 | 13-11 | 5-2 | 8-1 | 10-5 | 12-4 | 12-4 |
| | Hem-fir | #1 | 4-11 | 7-2 | 9-1 | 11-1 | 12-10 | 4-7 | 6-9 | 8-7 | 10-6 | 12-2 |
| | Hem-fir | #2 | 4-8 | 6-9 | 8-7 | 10-6 | 12-2 | 4-4 | 6-5 | 8-1 | 9-11 | 11-6 |
| | Hem-fir | #3 | 3-7 | 5-2 | 6-7 | 8-1 | 9-4 | 3-4 | 4-11 | 6-3 | 7-7 | 8-10 |
| | Southern pine | SS | 5-4 | 8-5 | 11-1 | 14-2 | 17-2 | 5-4 | 8-5 | 11-1 | 14-2 | 17-2 |
| | Southern pine | #1 | 5-3 | 8-3 | 10-5 | 12-5 | 14-9 | 5-3 | 7-10 | 9-10 | 11-8 | 13-11 |
| | Southern pine | #2 | 5-0 | 7-3 | 9-4 | 11-1 | 13-0 | 4-9 | 6-10 | 8-9 | 10-6 | 12-4 |
| | Southern pine | #3 | 3-9 | 5-7 | 7-1 | 8-5 | 10-0 | 3-7 | 5-3 | 6-9 | 7-11 | 9-5 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | SS | 5-0 | 7-11 | 10-5 | 12-9 | 14-9 | 5-0 | 7-9 | 9-10 | 12-0 | 12-11 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #1 | 4-8 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-8 | 12-4 | 4-5 | 6-6 | 8-3 | 10-0 | 11-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #2 | 4-8 | 6-11 | 8-9 | 10-8 | 12-4 | 4-5 | 6-6 | 8-3 | 10-0 | 11-8 |
| | Spruce-pine-fir | #3 | 3-7 | 5-2 | 6-7 | 8-1 | 9-4 | 3-4 | 4-11 | 6-3 | 7-7 | 8-10 |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Rafter Span Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 0.67 |
| 1/4 | 0.76 |
| 1/5 | 0.83 |
| 1/6 | 0.90 |
| 1/7.5 or less | 1.00 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

**TABLE R802.5.1(9)**
**RAFTER/CEILING JOIST HEEL JOINT CONNECTIONS[a, b, c, d, e, f, h]**

| RAFTER SLOPE | RAFTER SPACING (inches) | GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 20[g] | | | | 30 | | | | 50 | | | | 70 | | | |
| | | Roof span (feet) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 12 | 20 | 28 | 36 | 12 | 20 | 28 | 36 | 12 | 20 | 28 | 36 | 12 | 20 | 28 | 36 |
| | | Required number of 16d common nails[a, b] per heel joint splices[c, d, e, f] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3:12 | 12 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 11 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 15 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 20 |
| | 16 | 5 | 8 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 14 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 20 | 8 | 14 | 20 | 26 |
| | 24 | 7 | 11 | 15 | 19 | 7 | 11 | 16 | 21 | 9 | 16 | 23 | 30 | 12 | 21 | 30 | 39 |
| 4:12 | 12 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 11 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 15 |
| | 16 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 11 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 15 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 20 |
| | 24 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 15 | 5 | 9 | 12 | 16 | 7 | 12 | 17 | 22 | 9 | 16 | 23 | 29 |
| 5:12 | 12 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 12 |
| | 16 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 12 | 5 | 9 | 12 | 16 |
| | 24 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 12 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 13 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 18 | 7 | 13 | 18 | 23 |
| 7:12 | 12 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 |
| | 16 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 11 |
| | 24 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 9 | 13 | 17 |
| 9:12 | 12 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 |
| | 16 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 |
| | 24 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 13 |
| 12:12 | 12 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| | 16 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 |
| | 24 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 10 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. 40d box nails shall be permitted to be substituted for 16d common nails.

b. Nailing requirements shall be permitted to be reduced 25 percent if nails are clinched.

c. Heel joint connections are not required when the ridge is supported by a load-bearing wall, header or ridge beam.

d. When intermediate support of the rafter is provided by vertical struts or purlins to a loadbearing wall, the tabulated heel joint connection requirements shall be permitted to be reduced proportionally to the reduction in span.

e. Equivalent nailing patterns are required for ceiling joist to ceiling joist lap splices.

f. When rafter ties are substituted for ceiling joists, the heel joint connection requirement shall be taken as the tabulated heel joint connection requirement for two-thirds of the actual rafter-slope.

g. Applies to roof live load of 20 psf or less.

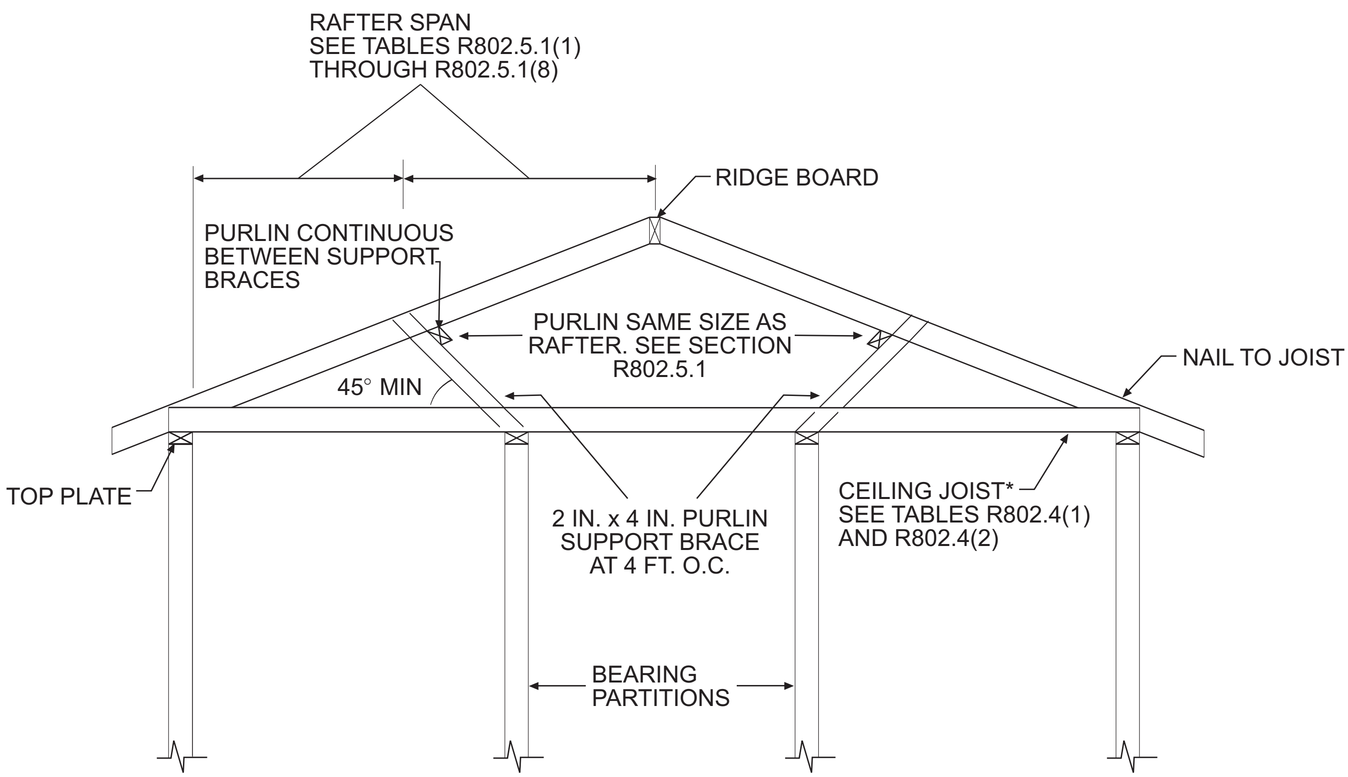
h. Tabulated heel joint connection requirements assume that ceiling joists or rafter ties are located at the bottom of the attic space. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic, heel joint connection requirements shall be increased by the following factors:

| $H_C/H_R$ | Heel Joint Connection Adjustment Factor |
|---|---|
| 1/3 | 1.5 |
| 1/4 | 1.33 |
| 1/5 | 1.25 |
| 1/6 | 1.2 |
| 1/10 or less | 1.11 |

where:

$H_C$ = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

$H_R$ = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 degree = 0.018 rad.

**Note:** Where ceiling joints run perpendicular to the rafters, rafter ties shall be nailed to each rafter near the top of the ceiling joist.

**FIGURE R802.5.1**
**BRACED RAFTER CONSTRUCTION**

**TABLE R802.11**
**REQUIRED STRENGTH OF TRUSS OR RAFTER CONNECTIONS TO RESIST WIND UPLIFT FORCES[a, b, c, e, f]**
**(Pounds per connection)**

| BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) (3–second gust) | ROOF SPAN (feet) | | | | | | | OVERHANGS[d] (pounds/foot) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 12 | 20 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | |
| 85 | -72 | -120 | -145 | -169 | -193 | -217 | -241 | -38.55 |
| 90 | -91 | -151 | -181 | -212 | -242 | -272 | -302 | -43.22 |
| 100 | -131 | -218 | -262 | -305 | -349 | -393 | -436 | -53.36 |
| 110 | -175 | -292 | -351 | -409 | -467 | -526 | -584 | -64.56 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 mph = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound/foot = 14.5939 N/m, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. The uplift connection requirements are based on a 30 foot mean roof height located in Exposure B. For Exposures C and D and for other mean roof heights, multiply the above loads by the Adjustment Coefficients in Table R301.2(3).

b. The uplift connection requirements are based on the framing being spaced 24 inches on center. Multiply by 0.67 for framing spaced 16 inches on center and multiply by 0.5 for framing spaced 12 inches on center.

c. The uplift connection requirements include an allowance for 10 pounds of dead load.

d. The uplift connection requirements do not account for the effects of overhangs. The magnitude of the above loads shall be increased by adding the overhang loads found in the table. The overhang loads are also based on framing spaced 24 inches on center. The overhang loads given shall be multiplied by the overhang projection and added to the roof uplift value in the table.

e. The uplift connection requirements are based on wind loading on end zones as defined in Figure 6-2 of ASCE 7. Connection loads for connections located a distance of 20% of the least horizontal dimension of the building from the corner of the building are permitted to be reduced by multiplying the table connection value by 0.7 and multiplying the overhang load by 0.8.

f. For wall-to-wall and wall-to-foundation connections, the capacity of the uplift connector is permitted to be reduced by 100 pounds for each full wall above. (For example, if a 600-pound rated connector is used on the roof framing, a 500-pound rated connector is permitted at the next floor level down).

## SECTION R803
## ROOF SHEATHING

**R803.1 Lumber sheathing.** Allowable spans for lumber used as roof sheathing shall conform to Table R803.1. Spaced lumber sheathing for wood shingle and shake roofing shall conform to the requirements of Sections R905.7 and R905.8. Spaced lumber sheathing is not allowed in Seismic Design Category $D_2$.

**TABLE R803.1**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS OF LUMBER ROOF SHEATHING**

| RAFTER OR BEAM SPACING (inches) | MINIMUM NET THICKNESS (inches) |
|---|---|
| 24 | $^5/_8$ |
| 48[a] | $1^1/_2$ T & G |
| 60[b] | |
| 72[c] | |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Minimum 270 $F_b$, 340,000 *E*.
b. Minimum 420 $F_b$, 660,000 *E*.
c. Minimum 600 $F_b$, 1,150,000 *E*.

**R803.2 Wood structural panel sheathing.**

**R803.2.1 Identification and grade.** Wood structural panels shall conform to DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or, when manufactured in Canada, CSA O437 or CSA O325, and shall be identified by a grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an *approved* agency. Wood structural panels shall comply with the grades specified in Table R503.2.1.1(1).

**R803.2.1.1 Exposure durability.** All wood structural panels, when designed to be permanently exposed in outdoor applications, shall be of an exterior exposure durability. Wood structural panel roof sheathing exposed to the underside may be of interior type bonded with exterior glue, identified as Exposure 1.

**R803.2.1.2 Fire-retardant-treated plywood.** The allowable unit stresses for fire-retardant-treated plywood, including fastener values, shall be developed from an *approved* method of investigation that considers the effects of anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated plywood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying process. The fire-retardant- treated plywood shall be graded by an *approved agency.*

**R803.2.2 Allowable spans.** The maximum allowable spans for wood structural panel roof sheathing shall not exceed the values set forth in Table R503.2.1.1(1), or APA E30.

**R803.2.3 Installation.** Wood structural panel used as roof sheathing shall be installed with joints staggered or not staggered in accordance with Table R602.3(1), or APA E30 for wood roof framing or with Table R804.3 for steel roof framing.

## SECTION R804
## STEEL ROOF FRAMING

**R804.1 General.** Elements shall be straight and free of any defects that would significantly affect their structural performance. Cold-formed steel roof framing members shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**R804.1.1 Applicability limits.** The provisions of this section shall control the construction of cold-formed steel roof framing for buildings not greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) perpendicular to the joist, rafter or truss span, not greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width parallel to the joist span or truss, less than or equal to three stories above *grade* plane and with roof slopes not less than 3:12 (25-percent slope) or greater than 12:12 (100 percent slope). Cold-formed steel roof framing constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall be limited to sites subjected to a maximum design wind speed of 110 miles per hour (49 m/s), Exposure B or C, and a maximum ground snow load of 70 pounds per square foot (3350 Pa).

**R804.1.2 In-line framing.** Cold-formed steel roof framing constructed in accordance with Section R804 shall be located in line with load-bearing studs in accordance with Figure R804.1.2 and the tolerances specified as follows:

1. The maximum tolerance shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) between the centerline of the horizontal framing member and the centerline of the vertical framing member.
2. Where the centerline of the horizontal framing member and bearing stiffener are located to one side of the center line of the vertical framing member, the maximum tolerance shall be $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) between the web of the horizontal framing member and the edge of the vertical framing member.

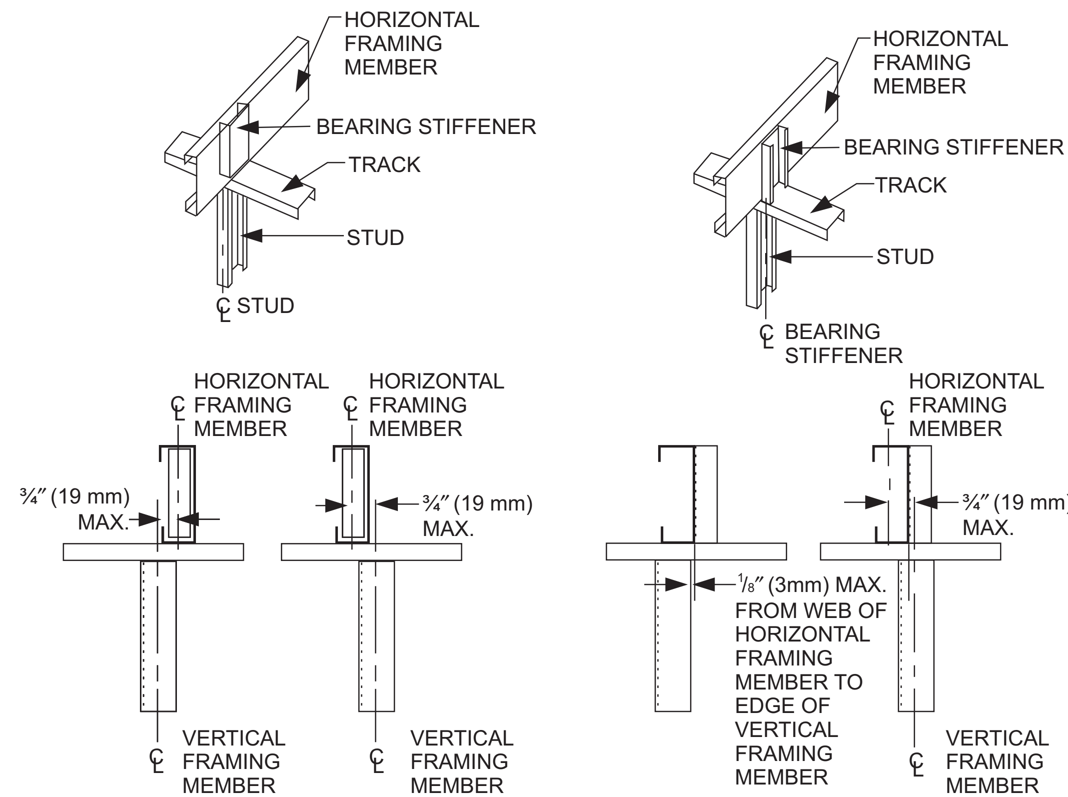
**R804.2 Structural framing.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel roof framing members shall comply with Figure R804.2(1) and with the dimensional and minimum thickness requirements specified in Tables R804.2(1) and R804.2(2). Tracks shall comply with Figure R804.2(2) and shall have a minimum flange width of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm). The maximum inside bend radius for members shall be the greater of $^3/_{32}$ inch (2.4 mm) minus half the base steel thickness or 1.5 times the base steel thickness.

**R804.2.1 Material.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be cold-formed to shape from structural quality sheet steel complying with the requirements of one of the following:

1. ASTM A 653: *Grades* 33 and 50 (Class 1 and 3).
2. ASTM A 792: *Grades* 33 and 50A.
3. ASTM A 1003: Structural *Grades* 33 Type H and 50 Type H.

**R804.2.2 Identification.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall have a legible *label*, stencil, stamp or embossment with the following information as a minimum:

1. Manufacturer's identification.
2. Minimum base steel thickness in inches (mm).
3. Minimum coating designation.
4. Minimum yield strength, in kips per square inch (ksi) (MPa).




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R804.1.2**
**IN-LINE FRAMING**

**TABLE R804.2(1)**
**LOAD-BEARING COLD-FORMED STEEL MEMBER SIZES**

| NOMINAL MEMBER SIZE MEMBER DESIGNATION[a] | WEB DEPTH (inches) | MINIMUM FLANGE WIDTH (inches) | MAXIMUM FLANGE WIDTH (inches) | MINIMUM LIP SIZE (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 350S162-t | 3.5 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 550S162-t | 5.5 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 800S162-t | 8 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 1000S162-t | 10 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 1200S162-t | 12 | 1.625 | 2 | 0.5 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The member designation is defined by the first number representing the member depth in hundredths of an inch, the letter "s" representing a stud or joist member, the second number representing the flange width in hundredths of an inch, and the letter "t" shall be a number representing the minimum base metal thickness in mils [see Table R804.2(2)].

**TABLE R804.2(2)**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS OF COLD-FORMED STEEL MEMBERS**

| DESIGNATION THICKNESS (mils) | MINIMUM BASE STEEL THICKNESS (inches) |
|---|---|
| 33 | 0.0329 |
| 43 | 0.0428 |
| 54 | 0.0538 |
| 68 | 0.0677 |
| 97 | 0.0966 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

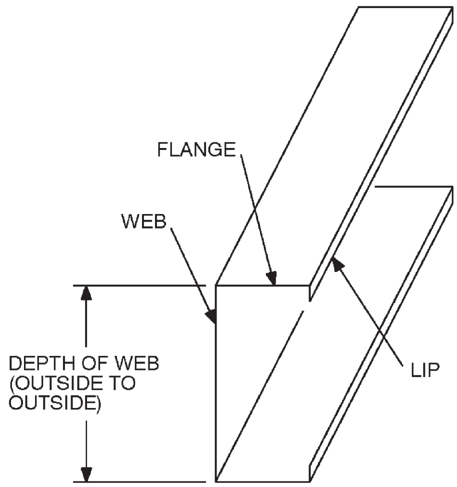



**FIGURE R804.2(1)**
**C-SHAPED SECTION**

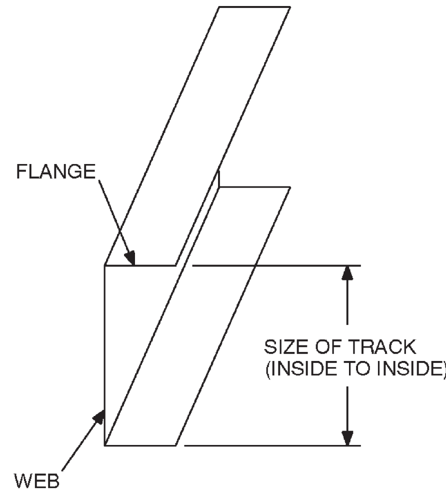



**FIGURE R804.2(2)**
**TRACK SECTION**

**R804.2.3 Corrosion protection.** Load-bearing cold-formed steel framing shall have a metallic coating complying with ASTM A 1003 and one of the following:

1. A minimum of G 60 in accordance with ASTM A 653.
2. A minimum of AZ 50 in accordance with ASTM A 792.

**R804.2.4 Fastening requirements.** Screws for steel-to-steel connections shall be installed with a minimum edge distance and center-to-center spacing of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm), shall be self-drilling tapping, and shall conform to ASTM C 1513. Structural sheathing shall be attached to cold-formed steel roof rafters with minimum No. 8 self-drilling tapping screws that conform to ASTM C 1513. Screws for attaching structural sheathing to cold-formed steel roof framing shall have a minimum head diameter of 0.292 inch (7.4 mm) with countersunk heads and shall be installed with a minimum edge distance of $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm). Gypsum board ceilings shall be attached to cold-formed steel joists with minimum No. 6 screws conforming to ASTM C 954 or ASTM C 1513 with a bugle head style and shall be installed in accordance with Section R805. For all connections, screws shall extend through the steel a minimum of three exposed threads. All fasteners shall have rust inhibitive coating suitable for the installation in which they are being used, or be manufactured from material not susceptible to corrosion.

Where No. 8 screws are specified in a steel-to-steel connection, reduction of the required number of screws in the connection is permitted in accordance with the reduction factors in Table R804.2.4 when larger screws are used or when one of the sheets of steel being connected is thicker than 33 mils (0.84 mm). When applying the reduction factor, the resulting number of screws shall be rounded up.

**TABLE R804.2.4**
**SCREW SUBSTITUTION FACTOR**

| SCREW SIZE | THINNEST CONNECTED STEEL SHEET (mils) | |
|---|---|---|
| | 33 | 43 |
| #8 | 1.0 | 0.67 |
| #10 | 0.93 | 0.62 |
| #12 | 0.86 | 0.56 |

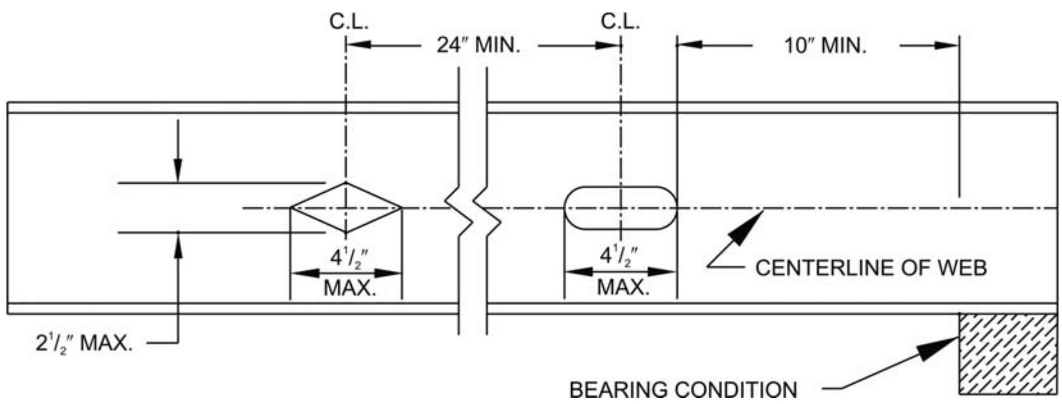
For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**R804.2.5 Web holes, web hole reinforcing and web hole patching.** Web holes, web hole reinforcing, and web hole patching shall be in accordance with this section.

**R804.2.5.1 Web holes.** Web holes in roof framing members shall comply with all of the following conditions:

1. Holes shall conform to Figure R804.2.5.1;
2. Holes shall be permitted only along the centerline of the web of the framing member;
3. Center-to-center spacing of holes shall not be less than 24 inches (610 mm);
4. The web hole width shall not be greater than one-half the member depth, or $2^1/_2$ inches (64.5 mm);
5. Holes shall have a web hole length not exceeding $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm); and
6. The minimum distance between the edge of the bearing surface and the edge of the web hole shall not be less than 10 inches (254 mm).

Framing members with web holes not conforming to the above requirements shall be reinforced in accordance with Section R804.2.5.2, patched in accordance with




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

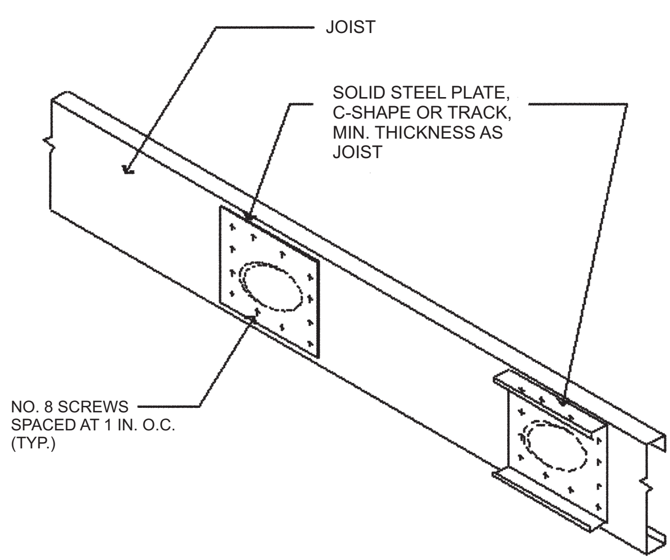
**FIGURE R804.2.5.1**
**WEB HOLES**

Section R804.2.5.3 or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices.

**R804.2.5.2 Web hole reinforcing.** Reinforcement of web holes in ceiling joists not conforming to the requirements of Section R804.2.5.1 shall be permitted if the hole is located fully within the center 40 percent of the span and the depth and length of the hole does not exceed 65 percent of the flat width of the web. The reinforcing shall be a steel plate or C-shape section with a hole that does not exceed the web hole size limitations of Section R804.2.5.1 for the member being reinforced. The steel reinforcing shall be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend at least 1 inch (25.4 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel reinforcing shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No.8 screws spaced no greater than 1 inch (25.4 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm).

**R804.2.5.3 Hole patching.** Patching of web holes in roof framing members not conforming to the requirements in Section R804.2.5.1 shall be permitted in accordance with either of the following methods:

1. Framing members shall be replaced or designed in accordance with accepted engineering practices where web holes exceed the following size limits:
   1.1. The depth of the hole, measured across the web, exceeds 70 percent of the flat width of the web; or
   1.2. The length of the hole measured along the web, exceeds 10 inches (254 mm) or the depth of the web, whichever is greater.
2. Web holes not exceeding the dimensional requirements in Section R804.2.5.3, Item 1, shall be patched with a solid steel plate, stud section or track section in accordance with Figure R804.2.5.3. The steel patch shall, as a minimum, be the same thickness as the receiving member and shall extend at least 1 inch (25 mm) beyond all edges of the hole. The steel patch shall be fastened to the web of the receiving member with No.8 screws spaced no greater than 1 inch (25 mm) center-to-center along the edges of the patch with minimum edge distance of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm).




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

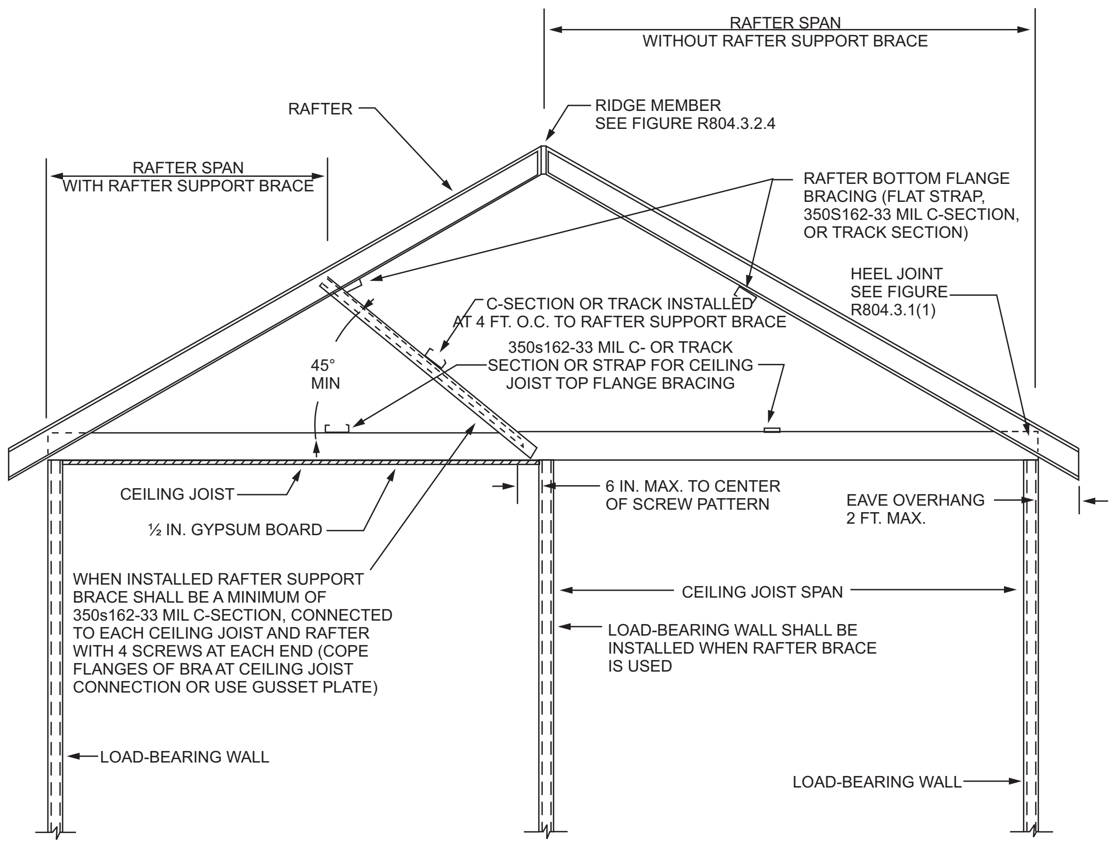
**FIGURE R804.2.5.3**
**WEB HOLE PATCH**

**R804.3 Roof construction.** Cold-formed steel roof systems constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section shall consist of both ceiling joists and rafters in accordance with Figure R804.3 and fastened in accordance with Table R804.3, and hip framing in accordance with Section R804.3.3.

**R804.3.1 Ceiling joists.** Cold-formed steel ceiling joists shall be in accordance with this section.

**R804.3.1.1 Minimum ceiling joist size.** Ceiling joist size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables R804.3.1.1(1) through R804.3.1.1(8). When determining the size of ceiling joists, the lateral support of the top flange shall be classified as unbraced, braced at mid-span or braced at third points in accordance with Section R804.3.1.4. Where sheathing material is attached to the top flange of ceiling joists or where the bracing is spaced closer than third point of the joists, the "third point" values from Tables R804.3.1.1(1) through R804.3.1.1(8) shall be used.

Ceiling joists shall have a bearing support length of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) and shall be connected to roof rafters (heel joint) with No. 10 screws in accordance with Figures R804.3.1.1(1) and R804.3.1.1(2) and Table 804.3.1.1(9).




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3**
**STEEL ROOF CONSTRUCTION**

**TABLE R804.3**
**ROOF FRAMING FASTENING SCHEDULE[a, b]**

| DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS | NUMBER AND SIZE OF FASTENERS | SPACING OF FASTENERS |
|---|---|---|
| Ceiling joist to top track of load-bearing wall | 2 No. 10 screws | Each joist |
| Roof sheathing (oriented strand board or plywood) to rafters | No. 8 screws | 6″ o.c. on edges and 12″ o.c. at interior supports. 6″ o.c. at gable end truss |
| Truss to bearing wall[a] | 2 No. 10 screws | Each truss |
| Gable end truss to endwall top track | No. 10 screws | 12″ o.c. |
| Rafter to ceiling joist | Minimum No. 10 screws, per Table R804.3.1.1(9) | Evenly spaced, not less than $^1/_2$″ from all edges. |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. Screws shall be applied through the flanges of the truss or ceiling joist or a 54 mil clip angle shall be used with two No. 10 screws in each leg. See Section R804.3.9 for additional requirements to resist uplift forces.

b. Spacing of fasteners on roof sheathing panel edges applies to panel edges supported by framing members and at all roof plane perimeters. Blocking of roof sheathing panel edges perpendicular to the framing members shall not be required except at the intersection of adjacent roof planes. Roof perimeter shall be supported by framing members or cold-formed blocking of the same depth and gage as the floor members.

When continuous joists are framed across interior bearing supports, the interior bearing supports shall be located within 24 inches (610 mm) of midspan of the ceiling joist, and the individual spans shall not exceed the applicable spans in Tables R804.3.1.1(2), R804.3.1.1(4), R804.3.1.1(6) and R804.3.1.1(8).

When the *attic* is to be used as an *occupied space*, the ceiling joists shall be designed in accordance with Section R505.

**R804.3.1.2 Ceiling joist bearing stiffeners.** Where required in Tables R804.3.1.1(1) through R804.3.1.1(8), bearing stiffeners shall be installed at each bearing support in accordance with Figure R804.3.1.1(2). Bearing stiffeners shall be fabricated from a C-shaped or track member in accordance with the one of following:

1. C-shaped bearing stiffeners shall be a minimum 33 mils (0.84 mm) thick.
2. Track bearing stiffener shall be a minimum 43 mils (1.09 mm) thick.

The minimum length of a bearing stiffener shall be the depth of member being stiffened minus $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm). Each stiffener shall be fastened to the web of the ceiling joist with a minimum of four No. 8 screws equally spaced as shown in Figure R804.3.1.1(2). Installation of stiffeners shall be permitted on either side of the web.

**R804.3.1.3 Ceiling joist bottom flange bracing.** The bottom flanges of ceiling joists shall be laterally braced by the application of gypsum board or continuous steel straps installed perpendicular to the joist run in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gypsum board shall be fastened with No. 6 screws in accordance with Section R702.
2. Steel straps with a minimum size of $1^1/_2$ inches × 33 mils (38 mm × 0.84 mm) shall be installed at a maximum spacing of 4 feet (1219 mm). Straps shall be fastened to the bottom flange at each joist with one No.8 screw and shall be fastened to blocking with two No.8 screws. Blocking shall be installed between joists at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured along a line of continuous strapping (perpendicular to the joist run). Blocking shall also be located at the termination of all straps.

**R804.3.1.4 Ceiling joist top flange bracing.** The top flanges of ceiling joists shall be laterally braced as required by Tables R804.3.1.1(1) through R804.3.1.1(8), in accordance with one of the following:

1. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) C-shaped member in accordance with Figure R804.3.1.4(1).
2. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) track section in accordance with Figure R804.3.1.4(1).
3. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) hat section in accordance with Figure R804.3.1.4(1).
4. Minimum 54-mil (1.37 mm) $1^1/_2$ inch cold-rolled channel section in accordance with Figure R804.3.1.4(1).
5. Minimum $1^1/_2$ inch by 33 mil (38 mm by 0.84 mm) continuous steel strap in accordance with Figure R804.3.1.4(2).

Lateral bracing shall be installed perpendicular to the ceiling joists and shall be fastened to the top flange of each joist with one No. 8 screw. Blocking shall be installed between joists in line with bracing at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured perpendicular to the joists. Ends of lateral bracing shall be attached to blocking or anchored to a stable building component with two No. 8 screws.

**R804.3.1.5 Ceiling joist splicing.** Splices in ceiling joists shall be permitted, if ceiling joist splices are supported at interior bearing points and are constructed in accordance with Figure R804.3.1.5. The number of screws on each side of the splice shall be the same as required for the heel joint connection in Table R804.3.1.1(9).

**R804.3.2 Roof rafters.** Cold-formed steel roof rafters shall be in accordance with this section.

**R804.3.2.1 Minimum roof rafter sizes.** Roof rafter size and thickness shall be determined in accordance with the limits set forth in Tables R804.3.2.1(1) and R804.3.2.1(2) based on the horizontal projection of the roof rafter span. For determination of roof rafter sizes, reduction of roof spans shall be permitted when a roof rafter support brace is installed in accordance with Section R804.3.2.2. The reduced roof rafter span shall be taken as the larger of the distance from the roof rafter support brace to the ridge or to the heel measured horizontally.

For the purpose of determining roof rafter sizes in Tables R804.3.2.1(1) and R804.3.2.1(2), wind speeds shall be converted to equivalent ground snow loads in accordance with Table R804.3.2.1(3). Roof rafter sizes shall be based on the higher of the ground snow load or the equivalent snow load converted from the wind speed.

**R804.3.2.1.1 Eave overhang.** Eave overhangs shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) measured horizontally.

**R804.3.2.1.2 Rake overhangs.** Rake overhangs shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) measured horizontally. Outlookers at gable endwalls shall be installed in accordance with Figure R804.3.2.1.2.

**R804.3.2.2 Roof rafter support brace.** When used to reduce roof rafter spans in determining roof rafter sizes, a roof rafter support brace shall meet all of the following conditions:

1. Minimum 350S162-33 C-shaped brace member with maximum length of 8 feet (2438 mm).
2. Minimum brace member slope of 45 degrees (0.785 rad) to the horizontal.

3. Minimum connection of brace to a roof rafter and ceiling joist with four No.10 screws at each end.
4. Maximum 6 inches (152 mm) between brace/ceiling joist connection and load-bearing wall below.
5. Each roof rafter support brace greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) in length, shall be braced with a supplemental brace having a minimum size of 350S162-33 or 350T162-33 such that the maximum unsupported length of the roof rafter support brace is 4 feet (1219 mm). The supplemental brace shall be continuous and shall be connected to each roof rafter support brace using two No.8 screws.

**R804.3.2.3 Roof rafter splice.** Roof rafters shall not be spliced.

**R804.3.2.4 Roof rafter to ceiling joist and ridge member connection.** Roof rafters shall be connected to a parallel ceiling joist to form a continuous tie between exterior walls in accordance with Figures R804.3.1.1(1) or R804.3.1.1(2) and Table R804.3.1.1(9). Ceiling joists shall be connected to the top track of the load-bearing wall in accordance with Table R804.3, either with two No.10 screws applied through the flange of the ceiling joist or by using a 54 mil (1.37 mm) clip angle with two No.10 screws in each leg. Roof rafters shall be connected to a ridge member with a minimum 2-inch by 2-inch (51 mm by 51 mm) clip angle fastened with No. 10 screws to the ridge member in accordance with Figure R804.3.2.4 and Table R804.3.2.4. The clip angle shall have a steel thickness equivalent to or greater than the roof rafter thickness and shall extend the depth of the roof rafter member to the extent possible. The ridge member shall be fabricated from a C-shaped member and a track section, which shall have a minimum size and steel thickness equivalent to or greater than that of adjacent roof rafters and shall be installed in accordance with Figure R804.3.2.4.The ridge member shall extend the full depth of the sloped roof rafter cut.

**R804.3.2.5 Roof rafter bottom flange bracing.** The bottom flanges of roof rafters shall be continuously braced, at a maximum spacing of 8 feet (2440 mm) as measured parallel to the roof rafters, with one of the following members:

1. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) C-shaped member.
2. Minimum 33-mil (0.84 mm) track section.
3. Minimum $1^1/_2$-inch by 33-mil (38 mm by 0.84 mm) steel strap.

The bracing element shall be fastened to the bottom flange of each roof rafter with one No.8 screw and shall be fastened to blocking with two No.8 screws. Blocking shall be installed between roof rafters in-line with the continuous bracing at a maximum spacing of 12 feet (3658 mm) measured perpendicular to the roof rafters. The ends of continuous bracing shall be fastened to blocking or anchored to a stable building component with two No.8 screws.

**R804.3.3 Hip framing.** Hip framing shall consist of jack-rafters, hip members, hip support columns and connections in accordance with this section, or shall be in accordance with an *approved* design. The provisions of this section for hip members and hip support columns shall apply only where the jack rafter slope is greater than or equal to the roof slope. For the purposes of determining member sizes in this section, wind speeds shall be converted to equivalent ground snow load in accordance with Table R804.3.2.1(3).

**R804.3.3.1 Jack rafters.** Jack rafters shall meet the requirements for roof rafters in accordance with Section R804.3.2, except that the requirements in Section R804.3.2.4 shall not apply.

**R804.3.3.2 Hip members.** Hip members shall be fabricated from C-shape members and track section, which shall have minimum sizes determined in accordance with Table R804.3.3.2. The C-shape member and track section shall be connected at a maximum spacing of 24 inches (610 mm) using No. 10 screws through top and bottom flanges in accordance with Figure R804.3.2.4. The depth of the hip member shall match that of the roof rafters and jack rafters, or shall be based on an *approved* design for a beam pocket at the corner of the supporting wall.

**R804.3.3.3 Hip support columns.** Hip support columns shall be used to support hip members at the ridge. A hip support column shall consist of a pair of C-shape members, with a minimum size determined in accordance with Table R804.3.3.3. The C-shape members shall be connected at a maximum spacing of 24 inches (610 mm) on center to form a box using minimum 3-inch (76 mm) × 33-mil (0.84 mm) strap connected to each of the flanges of the C-shape members with three-No. 10 screws. Hip support columns shall have a continuous load path to the foundation and shall be supported at the ceiling line by an interior wall or by an *approved* design for a supporting element.

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(1)
CEILING JOIST SPANS
SINGLE SPANS WITH BEARING STIFFENERS
10 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (NO ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b, c] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 9′-5″ | 8′-6″ | 12′-2″ | 10′-4″ | 12′-2″ | 10′-7″ |
| 350S162-43 | 10′-3″ | 9′-2″ | 12′-10″ | 11′-2″ | 12′-10″ | 11′-2″ |
| 350S162-54 | 11′-1″ | 9′-11″ | 13′-9″ | 12′-0″ | 13′-9″ | 12′-0″ |
| 350S162-68 | 12′-1″ | 10′-9″ | 14′-8″ | 12′-10″ | 14′-8″ | 12′-10″ |
| 350S162-97 | 14′-4″ | 12′-7″ | 16′-4″ | 14′-3″ | 16′-4″ | 14′-3″ |
| 550S162-33 | 10′-7″ | 9′-6″ | 14′-10″ | 12′-10″ | 15′-11″ | 13′-4″ |
| 550S162-43 | 11′-8″ | 10′-6″ | 16′-4″ | 14′-3″ | 17′-10″ | 15′-3″ |
| 550S162-54 | 12′-6″ | 11′-2″ | 17′-7″ | 15′-7″ | 19′-5″ | 16′-10″ |
| 550S162-68 | 13′-6″ | 12′-1″ | 19′-2″ | 17′-1″ | 21′-0″ | 18′-4″ |
| 550S162-97 | 15′-9″ | 13′-11″ | 21′-8″ | 19′-3″ | 23′-5″ | 20′-5″ |
| 800S162-33 | 12′-2″ | 10′-11″ | 17′-8″ | 15′-10″ | 19′-10″ | 17′-1″ |
| 800S162-43 | 13′-0″ | 11′-9″ | 18′-10″ | 17′-0″ | 21′-6″ | 19′-1″ |
| 800S162-54 | 13′-10″ | 12′-5″ | 20′-0″ | 18′-0″ | 22′-9″ | 20′-4″ |
| 800S162-68 | 14′-11″ | 13′-4″ | 21′-3″ | 19′-1″ | 24′-1″ | 21′-8″ |
| 800S162-97 | 17′-1″ | 15′-2″ | 23′-10″ | 21′-3″ | 26′-7″ | 23′-10″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 13′-11″ | 12′-6″ | 20′-2″ | 18′-3″ | 23′-1″ | 20′-9″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 14′-9″ | 13′-3″ | 21′-4″ | 19′-3″ | 24′-4″ | 22′-0″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 15′-10″ | 14′-2″ | 22′-8″ | 20′-5″ | 25′-9″ | 23′-2″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 18′-0″ | 16′-0″ | 25′-3″ | 22′-7″ | 28′-3″ | 25′-4″ |
| 1200S162-43 | 14′-8″ | 13′-3″ | 21′-4″ | 19′-3″ | 24′-5″ | 21′-8″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 15′-7″ | 14′-0″ | 22′-6″ | 20′-4″ | 25′-9″ | 23′-2″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 16′-8″ | 14′-11″ | 23′-11″ | 21′-6″ | 27′-2″ | 24′-6″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 18′-9″ | 16′-9″ | 26′-6″ | 23′-8″ | 29′-9″ | 26′-9″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.

c. Bearing stiffeners are required at all bearing points and concentrated load locations.

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(2)
CEILING JOIST SPANS
TWO EQUAL SPANS WITH BEARING STIFFENERS
10 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (NO ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b, c] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 12′-11″ | 10′-11″ | 13′-5″ | 10′-11″ | 13′-5″ | 10′-11″ |
| 350S162-43 | 14′-2″ | 12′-8″ | 15′-10″ | 12′-11″ | 15′-10″ | 12′-11″ |
| 350S162-54 | 15′-6″ | 13′-10″ | 17′-1″ | 14′-6″ | 17′-9″ | 14′-6″ |
| 350S162-68 | 17′-3″ | 15′-3″ | 18′-6″ | 16′-1″ | 19′-8″ | 16′-1″ |
| 350S162-97 | 20′-10″ | 18′-4″ | 21′-5″ | 18′-10″ | 21′-11″ | 18′-10″ |
| 550S162-33 | 14′-4″ | 12′-11″ | 16′-7″ | 14′-1″ | 17′-3″ | 14′-1″ |
| 550S162-43 | 16′-0″ | 14′-1″ | 17′-11″ | 16′-1″ | 20′-7″ | 16′-10″ |
| 550S162-54 | 17′-4″ | 15′-6″ | 19′-5″ | 17′-6″ | 23′-2″ | 19′-0″ |
| 550S162-68 | 19′-1″ | 16′-11″ | 20′-10″ | 18′-8″ | 25′-2″ | 21′-5″ |
| 550S162-97 | 22′-8″ | 19′-9″ | 23′-6″ | 20′-11″ | 27′-11″ | 25′-1″ |
| 800S162-33 | 16′-5″ | 14′-10″ | 19′-2″ | 17′-3″ | 23′-1″ | 18′-3″ |
| 800S162-43 | 17′-9″ | 15′-11″ | 20′-6″ | 18′-5″ | 25′-0″ | 22′-6″ |
| 800S162-54 | 19′-1″ | 17′-1″ | 21′-8″ | 19′-6″ | 26′-4″ | 23′-9″ |
| 800S162-68 | 20′-9″ | 18′-6″ | 23′-1″ | 20′-9″ | 28′-0″ | 25′-2″ |
| 800S162-97 | 24′-5″ | 21′-6″ | 26′-0″ | 23′-2″ | 31′-1″ | 27′-9″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 18′-11″ | 17′-0″ | 21′-11″ | 19′-9″ | 26′-8″ | 24′-1″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 20′-3″ | 18′-2″ | 23′-2″ | 20′-10″ | 28′-2″ | 25′-5″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 21′-11″ | 19′-7″ | 24′-7″ | 22′-2″ | 29′-10″ | 26′-11″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 25′-7″ | 22′-7″ | 27′-6″ | 24′-6″ | 33′-0″ | 29′-7″ |
| 1200S162-43 | 19′-11″ | 17′-11″ | 23′-1″ | 20′-10″ | 28′-3″ | 25′-6″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 21′-3″ | 19′-1″ | 24′-5″ | 22′-0″ | 29′-9″ | 26′-10″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 23′-0″ | 20′-7″ | 25′-11″ | 23′-4″ | 31′-6″ | 28′-4″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 26′-7″ | 23′-6″ | 28′-9″ | 25′-10″ | 34′-8″ | 31′-1″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.

c. Bearing stiffeners are required at all bearing points and concentrated load locations.

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(3)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS**
**SINGLE SPANS WITH BEARING STIFFENERS**
**20 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (LIMITED ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b, c] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 8′-2″ | 7′-2″ | 9′-9″ | 8′-1″ | 9′-11″ | 8′-1″ |
| 350S162-43 | 8′-10″ | 7′-10″ | 11′-0″ | 9′-5″ | 11′-0″ | 9′-7″ |
| 350S162-54 | 9′-6″ | 8′-6″ | 11′-9″ | 10′-3″ | 11′-9″ | 10′-3″ |
| 350S162-68 | 10′-4″ | 9′-2″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-0″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-0″ |
| 350S162-97 | 12′-1″ | 10′-8″ | 14′-0″ | 12′-0″ | 14′-0″ | 12′-0″ |
| 550S162-33 | 9′-2″ | 8′-3″ | 12′-2″ | 10′-2″ | 12′-6″ | 10′-5″ |
| 550S162-43 | 10′-1″ | 9′-1″ | 13′-7″ | 11′-7″ | 14′-5″ | 12′-2″ |
| 550S162-54 | 10′-9″ | 9′-8″ | 14′-10″ | 12′-10″ | 15′-11″ | 13′-6″ |
| 550S162-68 | 11′-7″ | 10′-4″ | 16′-4″ | 14′-0″ | 17′-5″ | 14′-11″ |
| 550S162-97 | 13′-4″ | 11′-10″ | 18′-5″ | 16′-2″ | 20′-1″ | 17′-1″ |
| 800S162-33 | 10′-7″ | 9′-6″ | 15′-1″ | 13′-0″ | 16′-2″ | 13′-7″ |
| 800S162-43 | 11′-4″ | 10′-2″ | 16′-5″ | 14′-6″ | 18′-2″ | 15′-9″ |
| 800S162-54 | 12′-0″ | 10′-9″ | 17′-4″ | 15′-6″ | 19′-6″ | 17′-0″ |
| 800S162-68 | 12′-10″ | 11′-6″ | 18′-5″ | 16′-6″ | 20′-10″ | 18′-3″ |
| 800S162-97 | 14′-7″ | 12′-11″ | 20′-5″ | 18′-3″ | 22′-11″ | 20′-5″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 12′-1″ | 10′-11″ | 17′-7″ | 15′-10″ | 19′-11″ | 17′-3″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 12′-10″ | 11′-6″ | 18′-7″ | 16′-9″ | 21′-2″ | 18′-10″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 13′-8″ | 12′-3″ | 19′-8″ | 17′-8″ | 22′-4″ | 20′-1″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 15′-4″ | 13′-8″ | 21′-8″ | 19′-5″ | 24′-5″ | 21′-11″ |
| 1200S162-43 | 12′-9″ | 11′-6″ | 18′-7″ | 16′-6″ | 20′-9″ | 18′-2″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 13′-6″ | 12′-2″ | 19′-7″ | 17′-8″ | 22′-5″ | 20′-2″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 14′-4″ | 12′-11″ | 20′-9″ | 18′-8″ | 23′-7″ | 21′-3″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 16′-1″ | 14′-4″ | 22′-10″ | 20′-6″ | 25′-9″ | 23′-2″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.

c. Bearing stiffeners are required at all bearing points and concentrated load locations.

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(4)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS**
**TWO EQUAL SPANS WITH BEARING STIFFENERS**
**20 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (LIMITED ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b, c] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 10′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 10′-2″ | 8′-4″ | 10′-2″ | 8′-4″ |
| 350S162-43 | 12′-1″ | 9′-10″ | 12′-1″ | 9′-10″ | 12′-1″ | 9′-10″ |
| 350S162-54 | 13′-3″ | 11′-0″ | 13′-6″ | 11′-0″ | 13′-6″ | 11′-0″ |
| 350S162-68 | 14′-7″ | 12′-3″ | 15′-0″ | 12′-3″ | 15′-0″ | 12′-3″ |
| 350S162-97 | 17′-6″ | 14′-3″ | 17′-6″ | 14′-3″ | 17′-6″ | 14′-3″ |
| 550S162-33 | 12′-5″ | 10′-9″ | 13′-2″ | 10′-9″ | 13′-2″ | 10′-9″ |
| 550S162-43 | 13′-7″ | 12′-1″ | 15′-6″ | 12′-9″ | 15′-8″ | 12′-9″ |
| 550S162-54 | 14′-11″ | 13′-4″ | 16′-10″ | 14′-5″ | 17′-9″ | 14′-5″ |
| 550S162-68 | 16′-3″ | 14′-5″ | 18′-0″ | 16′-1″ | 20′-0″ | 16′-4″ |
| 550S162-97 | 19′-1″ | 16′-10″ | 20′-3″ | 18′-0″ | 23′-10″ | 19′-5″ |
| 800S162-33 | 14′-3″ | 12′-4″ | 16′-7″ | 12′-4″ | 16′-7″ | 12′-4″ |
| 800S162-43 | 15′-4″ | 13′-10″ | 17′-9″ | 16′-0″ | 21′-8″ | 17′-9″ |
| 800S162-54 | 16′-5″ | 14′-9″ | 18′-10″ | 16′-11″ | 22′-11″ | 20′-6″ |
| 800S162-68 | 17′-9″ | 15′-11″ | 20′-0″ | 18′-0″ | 24′-3″ | 21′-10″ |
| 800S162-97 | 20′-8″ | 18′-3″ | 22′-3″ | 19′-11″ | 26′-9″ | 24′-0″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 16′-5″ | 14′-9″ | 19′-0″ | 17′-2″ | 23′-3″ | 18′-11″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 17′-6″ | 15′-8″ | 20′-1″ | 18′-1″ | 24′-6″ | 22′-1″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 18′-10″ | 16′-10″ | 21′-4″ | 19′-2″ | 25′-11″ | 23′-4″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 21′-8″ | 19′-3″ | 23′-7″ | 21′-2″ | 28′-5″ | 25′-6″ |
| 1200S162-43 | 17′-3″ | 15′-7″ | 20′-1″ | 18′-2″ | 24′-6″ | 18′-3″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 18′-5″ | 16′-6″ | 21′-3″ | 19′-2″ | 25′-11″ | 23′-5″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 19′-9″ | 17′-8″ | 22′-6″ | 20′-3″ | 27′-4″ | 24′-8″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 22′-7″ | 20′-1″ | 24′-10″ | 22′-3″ | 29′-11″ | 26′-11″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.

c. Bearing stiffeners are required at all bearing points and concentrated load locations.

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(5)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS**
**SINGLE SPANS WITHOUT BEARING STIFFENERS**
**10 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (NO ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 9′-5″ | 8′-6″ | 12′-2″ | 10′-4″ | 12′-2″ | 10′-7″ |
| 350S162-43 | 10′-3″ | 9′-12″ | 13′-2″ | 11′-6″ | 13′-2″ | 11′-6″ |
| 350S162-54 | 11′-1″ | 9′-11″ | 13′-9″ | 12′-0″ | 13′-9″ | 12′-0″ |
| 350S162-68 | 12′-1″ | 10′-9″ | 14′-8″ | 12′-10″ | 14′-8″ | 12′-10″ |
| 350S162-97 | 14′-4″ | 12′-7″ | 16′-10″ | 14′-3″ | 16′-4″ | 14′-3″ |
| 550S162-33 | 10′-7″ | 9′-6″ | 14′-10″ | 12′-10″ | 15′-11″ | 13′-4″ |
| 550S162-43 | 11′-8″ | 10′-6″ | 16′-4″ | 14′-3″ | 17′-10″ | 15′-3″ |
| 550S162-54 | 12′-6″ | 11′-2″ | 17′-7″ | 15′-7″ | 19′-5″ | 16′-10″ |
| 550S162-68 | 13′-6″ | 12′-1″ | 19′-2″ | 17′-0″ | 21′-0″ | 18′-4″ |
| 550S162-97 | 15′-9″ | 13′-11″ | 21′-8″ | 19′-3″ | 23′-5″ | 20′-5″ |
| 800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-43 | 13′-0″ | 11′-9″ | 18′-10″ | 17′-0″ | 21′-6″ | 19′-0″ |
| 800S162-54 | 13′-10″ | 12′-5″ | 20′-0″ | 18′-0″ | 22′-9″ | 20′-4″ |
| 800S162-68 | 14′-11″ | 13′-4″ | 21′-3″ | 19′-1″ | 24′-1″ | 21′-8″ |
| 800S162-97 | 17′-1″ | 15′-2″ | 23′-10″ | 21′-3″ | 26′-7″ | 23′-10″ |
| 1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | 14′-9″ | 13′-3″ | 21′-4″ | 19′-3″ | 24′-4″ | 22′-0″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 15′-10″ | 14′-2″ | 22′-8″ | 20′-5″ | 25′-9″ | 23′-2″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 18′-0″ | 16′-0″ | 25′-3″ | 22′-7″ | 28′-3″ | 25′-4″ |
| 1200S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | 16′-8″ | 14′-11″ | 23′-11″ | 21′-6″ | 27′-2″ | 24′-6″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 18′-9″ | 16′-9″ | 26′-6″ | 23′-8″ | 29′-9″ | 26′-9″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(6)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS**
**TWO EQUAL SPANS WITHOUT BEARING STIFFENERS**
**10 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (NO ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 11′-9″ | 8′-11″ | 11′-9″ | 8′-11″ | 11′-9″ | 8′-11″ |
| 350S162-43 | 14′-2″ | 11′-7″ | 14′-11″ | 11′-7″ | 14′-11″ | 11′-7″ |
| 350S162-54 | 15′-6″ | 13′-10″ | 17′-1″ | 13′-10″ | 17′-7″ | 13′-10″ |
| 350S162-68 | 17′-3″ | 15′-3″ | 18′-6″ | 16′-1″ | 19′-8″ | 16′-1″ |
| 350S162-97 | 20′-10″ | 18′-4″ | 21′-5″ | 18′-9″ | 21′-11″ | 18′-9″ |
| 550S162-33 | 13′-4″ | 9′-11″ | 13′-4″ | 9′-11″ | 13′-4″ | 9′-11″ |
| 550S162-43 | 16′-0″ | 13′-6″ | 17′-9″ | 13′-6″ | 17′-9″ | 13′-6″ |
| 550S162-54 | 17′-4″ | 15′-6″ | 19′-5″ | 16′-10″ | 21′-9″ | 16′-10″ |
| 550S162-68 | 19′-1″ | 16′-11″ | 20′-10″ | 18′-8″ | 24′-11″ | 20′-6″ |
| 550S162-97 | 22′-8″ | 20′-0″ | 23′-9″ | 21′-1″ | 28′-2″ | 25′-1″ |
| 800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-43 | 17′-9″ | 15′-7″ | 20′-6″ | 15′-7″ | 21′-0″ | 15′-7″ |
| 800S162-54 | 19′-1″ | 17′-1″ | 21′-8″ | 19′-6″ | 26′-4″ | 23′-10″ |
| 800S162-68 | 20′-9″ | 18′-6″ | 23′-1″ | 20′-9″ | 28′-0″ | 25′-2″ |
| 800S162-97 | 24′-5″ | 21′-6″ | 26′-0″ | 23′-2″ | 31′-1″ | 27′-9″ |
| 1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | 20′-3″ | 18′-2″ | 23′-2″ | 20′-10″ | 28′-2″ | 21′-2″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 21′-11″ | 19′-7″ | 24′-7″ | 22′-2″ | 29′-10″ | 26′-11″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 25′-7″ | 22′-7″ | 27′-6″ | 24′-6″ | 33′-0″ | 29′-7″ |
| 1200S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | 23′-0″ | 20′-7″ | 25′-11″ | 23′-4″ | 31′-6″ | 28′-4″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 26′-7″ | 23′-6″ | 28′-9″ | 25′-10″ | 34′-8″ | 31′-1″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(7)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS**
**SINGLE SPANS WITHOUT BEARING STIFFENERS**
**20 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (LIMITED ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 8′-2″ | 6′-10″ | 9′-9″ | 6′-10″ | 9′-11″ | 6′-10″ |
| 350S162-43 | 8′-10″ | 7′-10″ | 11′-0″ | 9′-5″ | 11′-0″ | 9′-7″ |
| 350S162-54 | 9′-6″ | 8′-6″ | 11′-9″ | 10′-3″ | 11′-9″ | 10′-3″ |
| 350S162-68 | 10′-4″ | 9′-2″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-0″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-0″ |
| 350S162-97 | 12′-10″ | 10′-8″ | 13′-9″ | 12′-0″ | 13′-9″ | 12′-0″ |
| 550S162-33 | 9′-2″ | 8′-3″ | 12′-2″ | 8′-5″ | 12′-6″ | 8′-5″ |
| 550S162-43 | 10′-1″ | 9′-1″ | 13′-7″ | 11′-8″ | 14′-5″ | 12′-2″ |
| 550S162-54 | 10′-9″ | 9′-8″ | 14′-10″ | 12′-10″ | 15′-11″ | 13′-6″ |
| 550S162-68 | 11′-7″ | 10′-4″ | 16′-4″ | 14′-0″ | 17′-5″ | 14′-11″ |
| 550S162-97 | 13′-4″ | 11′-10″ | 18′-5″ | 16′-2″ | 20′-1″ | 17′-4″ |
| 800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-43 | 11′-4″ | 10′-1″ | 16′-5″ | 13′-6″ | 18′-1″ | 13′-6″ |
| 800S162-54 | 20′-0″ | 10′-9″ | 17′-4″ | 15′-6″ | 19′-6″ | 27′-0″ |
| 800S162-68 | 12′-10″ | 11′-6″ | 18′-5″ | 16′-6″ | 20′-10″ | 18′-3″ |
| 800S162-97 | 14′-7″ | 12′-11″ | 20′-5″ | 18′-3″ | 22′-11″ | 20′-5″ |
| 1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | 12′-10″ | 11′-6″ | 18′-7″ | 16′-9″ | 21′-2″ | 15′-5″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 13′-8″ | 12′-3″ | 19′-8″ | 17′-8″ | 22′-4″ | 20′-1″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 15′-4″ | 13′-8″ | 21′-8″ | 19′-5″ | 24′-5″ | 21′-11″ |
| 1200S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | 14′-4″ | 12′-11″ | 20′-9″ | 18′-8″ | 23′-7″ | 21′-3″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 16′-1″ | 14′-4″ | 22′-10″ | 20′-6″ | 25′-9″ | 23′-2″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.
b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.

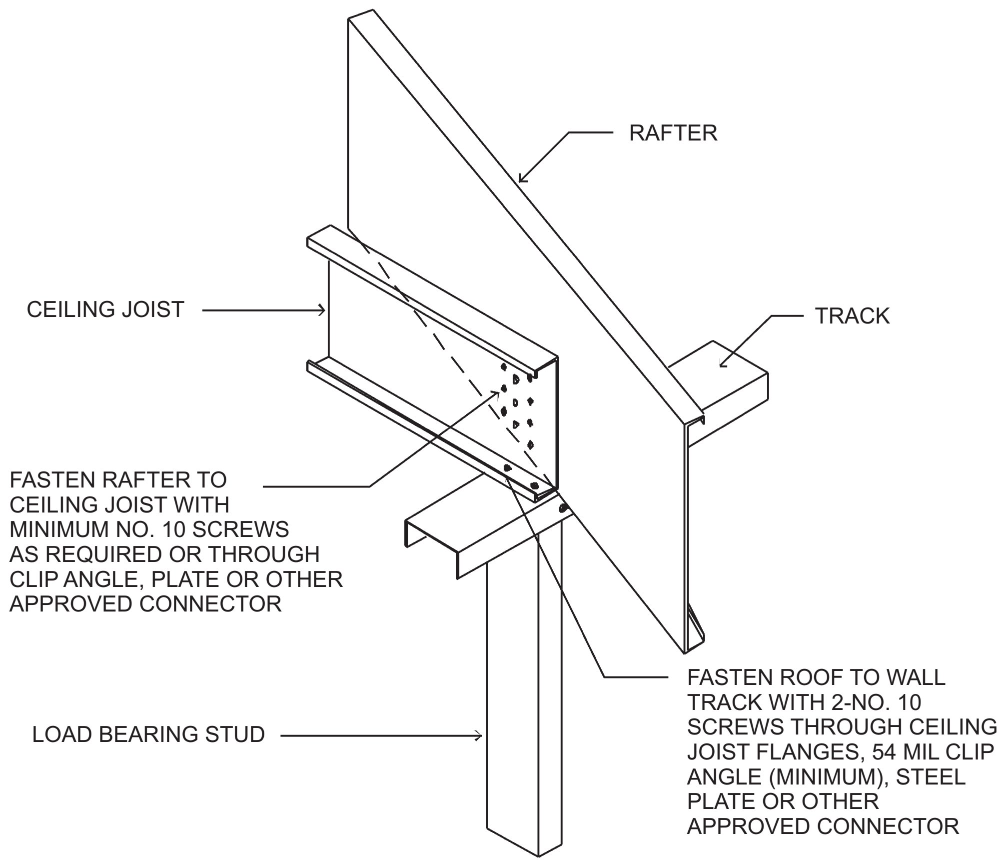
**TABLE R804.3.1.1(8)**
**CEILING JOIST SPANS**
**TWO EQUAL SPANS WITHOUT BEARING STIFFENERS**
**20 lb per sq ft LIVE LOAD (LIMITED ATTIC STORAGE)[a, b] 33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN (feet-inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Lateral Support of Top (Compression) Flange | | | | | |
| | Unbraced | | Mid-Span Bracing | | Third-Point Bracing | |
| | Ceiling Joist Spacing (inches) | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 350S162-33 | 8′-1″ | 6′-1″ | 8′-1″ | 6′-1″ | 8′-1″ | 6′-1″ |
| 350S162-43 | 10′-7″ | 8′-1″ | 10′-7″ | 8′-1″ | 10′-7″ | 8′-1″ |
| 350S162-54 | 12′-8″ | 9′-10″ | 12′-8″ | 9′-10″ | 12′-8″ | 9′-10″ |
| 350S162-68 | 14′-7″ | 11′-10″ | 14′-11″ | 11′-10″ | 14′-11″ | 11′-10″ |
| 350S162-97 | 17′-6″ | 14′-3″ | 17′-6″ | 14′-3″ | 17′-6″ | 14′-3″ |
| 550S162-33 | 8′-11″ | 6′-8″ | 8′-11″ | 6′-8″ | 8′-11″ | 6′-8″ |
| 550S162-43 | 12′-3″ | 9′-2″ | 12′-3″ | 9′-2″ | 12′-3″ | 9′-2″ |
| 550S162-54 | 14′-11″ | 11′-8″ | 15′-4″ | 11′-8″ | 15′-4″ | 11′-8″ |
| 550S162-68 | 16′-3″ | 14′-5″ | 18′-0″ | 15′-8″ | 18′-10″ | 14′-7″ |
| 550S162-97 | 19′-1″ | 16′-10″ | 20′-3″ | 18′-0″ | 23′-9″ | 19′-5″ |
| 800S162-33 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 800S162-43 | 13′-11″ | 9′-10″ | 13′-11″ | 9′-10″ | 13′-11″ | 9′-10″ |
| 800S162-54 | 16′-5″ | 13′-9″ | 18′-8″ | 13′-9″ | 18′-8″ | 13′-9″ |
| 800S162-68 | 17′-9″ | 15′-11″ | 20′-0″ | 18′-0″ | 24′-1″ | 18′-3″ |
| 800S162-97 | 20′-8″ | 18′-3″ | 22′-3″ | 19′-11″ | 26′-9″ | 24′-0″ |
| 1000S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1000S162-54 | 17′-6″ | 13′-11″ | 19′-1″ | 13′-11″ | 19′-1″ | 13′-11″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 18′-10″ | 16′-10″ | 21′-4″ | 19′-2″ | 25′-11″ | 19′-7″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 21′-8″ | 19′-3″ | 23′-7″ | 21′-2″ | 28′-5″ | 25′-6″ |
| 1200S162-43 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-54 | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1200S162-68 | 19′-9″ | 17′-8″ | 22′-6″ | 19′-8″ | 26′-8″ | 19′-8″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 22′-7″ | 20′-1″ | 24′-10″ | 22′-3″ | 29′-11″ | 26′-11″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for total loads.

b. Ceiling dead load = 5 psf.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.1.1(1)**
**JOIST TO RAFTER CONNECTION**

**TABLE R804.3.1.1(9)**
**NUMBER OF SCREWS REQUIRED FOR CEILING JOIST TO ROOF RAFTER CONNECTION[a]**

| ROOF SLOPE | NUMBER OF SCREWS | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Building width (feet) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 24 | | | | 28 | | | | 32 | | | | 36 | | | | 40 | | | |
| | Ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 70 |
| 3/12 | 5 | 6 | 9 | 11 | 5 | 7 | 10 | 13 | 6 | 8 | 11 | 15 | 7 | 8 | 13 | 17 | 8 | 9 | 14 | 19 |
| 4/12 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 4 | 5 | 8 | 10 | 5 | 6 | 9 | 12 | 5 | 7 | 10 | 13 | 6 | 7 | 11 | 14 |
| 5/12 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 10 | 5 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 5 | 6 | 9 | 12 |
| 6/12 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 4 | 5 | 8 | 10 |
| 7/12 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 9 |
| 8/12 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 8 |
| 9/12 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 8 |
| 10/12 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 |
| 11/12 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 |
| 12/12 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Screws shall be No. 10.

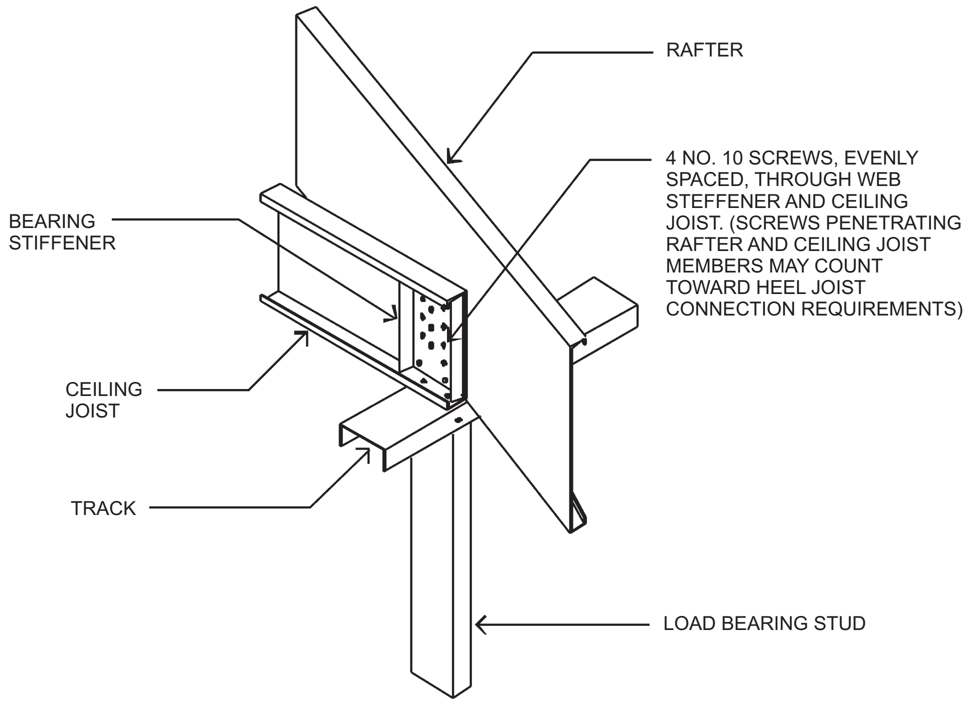



**FIGURE R804.3.1.1(2)**
**BEARING STIFFENER**

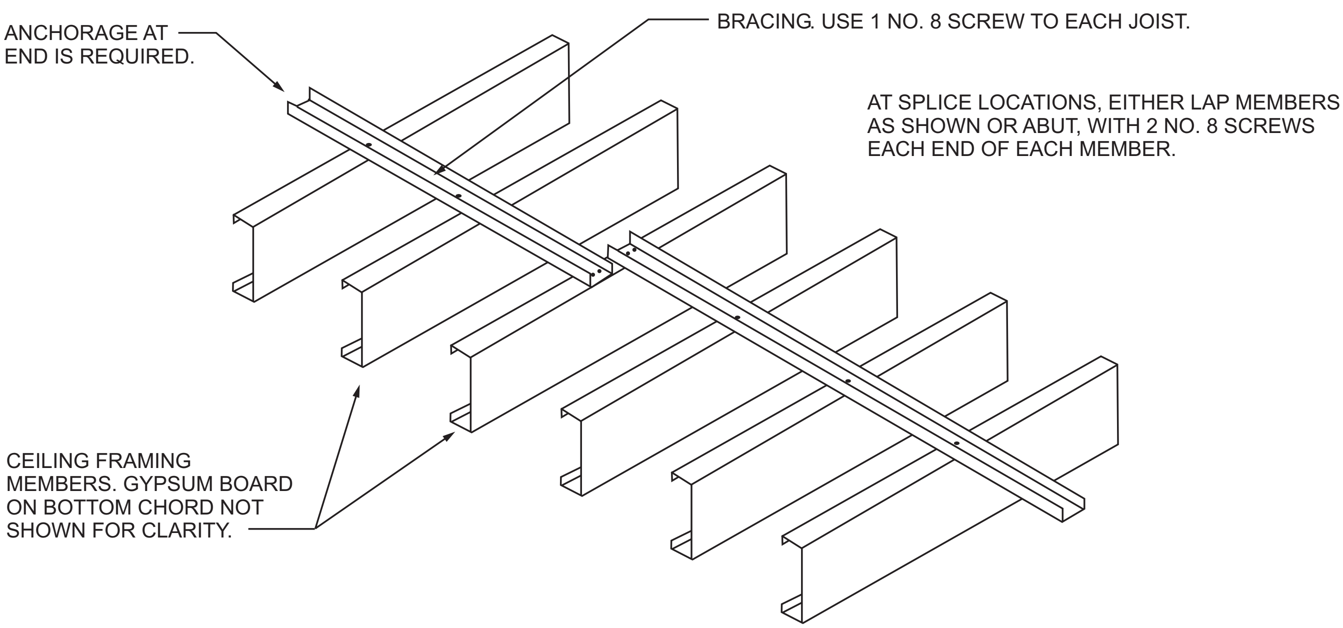
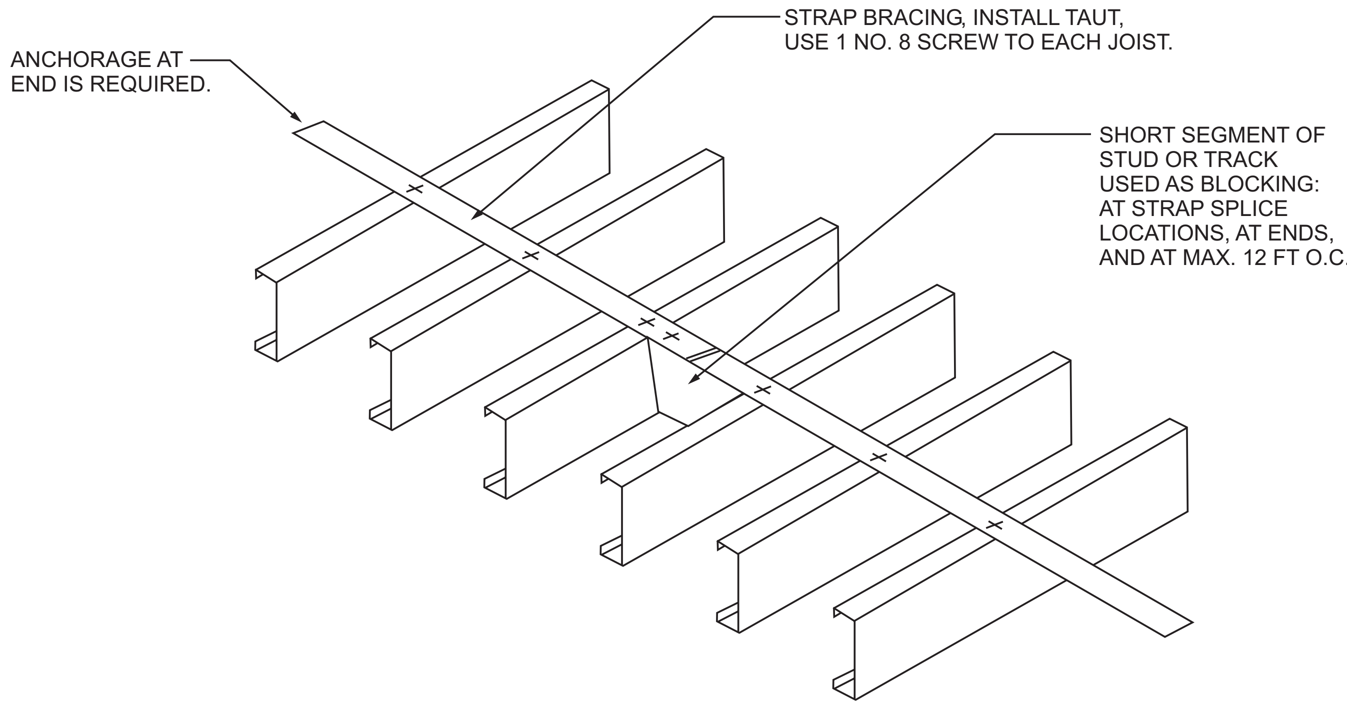
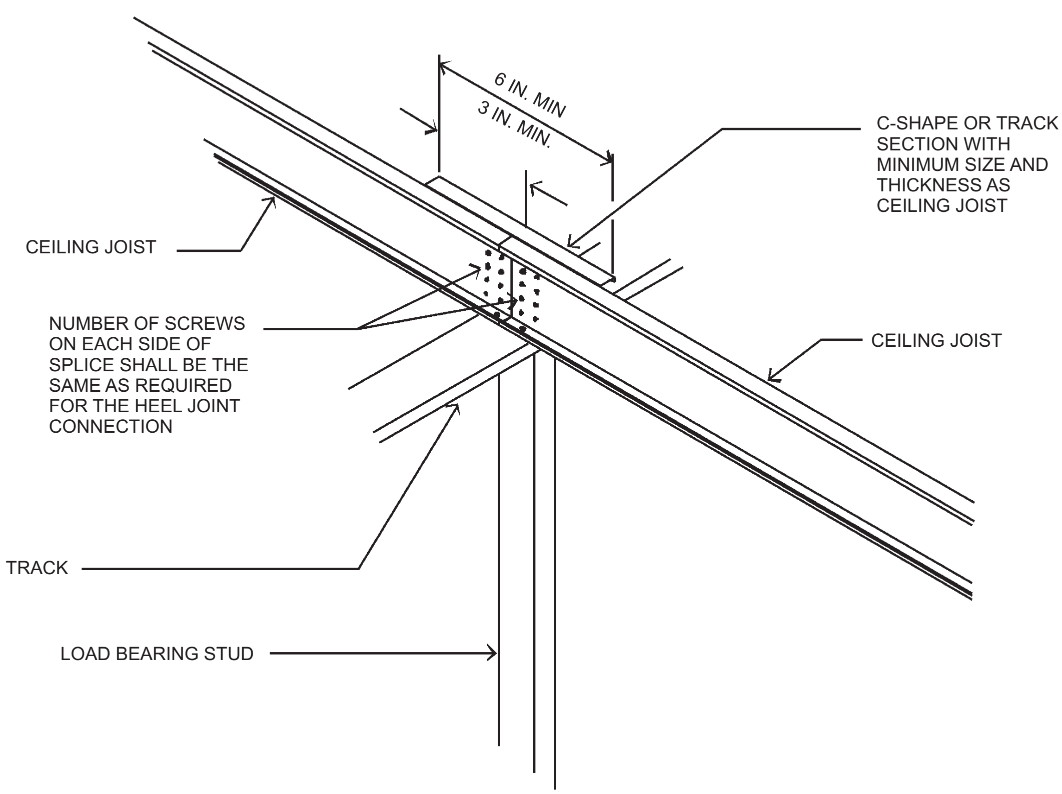



**FIGURE R804.3.1.4(1)**
**CEILING JOIST TOP FLANGE BRACING WITH C-SHAPE, TRACK OR COLD-ROLLED CHANNEL**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.1.4(2)**
**CEILING JOIST TOP FLANGE BRACING WITH CONTINUOUS STEEL STRAP AND BLOCKING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.1.5**
**SPLICED CEILING JOISTS**

**TABLE R804.3.2.1(1)**
**ROOF RAFTER SPANS[a, b, c]**
**33 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN MEASURED HORIZONTALLY (feet-inches) | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | |
| | 20 | | 30 | | 50 | | 70 | |
| | Rafter spacing (inches) | | | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 550S162-33 | 14′-0″ | 11′-6″ | 11′-11″ | 9′-7″ | 9′-6″ | 7′-9″ | 8′-2″ | 6′-8″ |
| 550S162-43 | 16′-8″ | 13′-11″ | 14′-5″ | 11′-9″ | 11′-6″ | 9′-5″ | 9′-10″ | 8′-0″ |
| 550S162-54 | 17′-11″ | 15′-7″ | 15′-7″ | 13′-3″ | 12′-11″ | 10′-7″ | 11′-1″ | 9′-1″ |
| 550S162-68 | 19′-2″ | 16′-9″ | 16′-9″ | 14′-7″ | 14′-1″ | 11′-10″ | 12′-6″ | 10′-2″ |
| 550S162-97 | 21′-3″ | 18′-6″ | 18′-6″ | 16′-2″ | 15′-8″ | 13′-8″ | 14′-0″ | 12′-2″ |
| 800S162-33 | 16′-5″ | 13′-5″ | 13′-11″ | 11′-4″ | 11′-1″ | 8′-2″ | 9′-0″ | 6′-0″ |
| 800S162-43 | 19′-9″ | 16′-1″ | 16′-8″ | 13′-7″ | 13′-4″ | 10′-10″ | 11′-5″ | 9′-4″ |
| 800S162-54 | 22′-8″ | 18′-6″ | 19′-2″ | 15′-8″ | 15′-4″ | 12′-6″ | 13′-1″ | 10′-8″ |
| 800S162-68 | 25′-10″ | 21′-2″ | 21′-11″ | 17′-10″ | 17′-6″ | 14′-4″ | 15′-0″ | 12′-3″ |
| 800S162-97 | 21′-3″ | 18′-6″ | 18′-6″ | 16′-2″ | 15′-8″ | 13′-8″ | 14′-0″ | 12′-2″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 22′-3″ | 18′-2″ | 18′-9″ | 15′-8″ | 15′-0″ | 12′-3″ | 12′-10″ | 10′-6″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 25′-8″ | 20′-11″ | 21′-8″ | 17′-9″ | 17′-4″ | 14′-2″ | 14′-10″ | 12′-1″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 29′-7″ | 24′-2″ | 25′-0″ | 20′-5″ | 20′-0″ | 16′-4″ | 17′-2″ | 14′-0″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 34′-8″ | 30′-4″ | 30′-4″ | 25′-10″ | 25′-3″ | 20′-8″ | 21′-8″ | 17′-8″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 28′-3″ | 23′-1″ | 23′-11″ | 19′-7″ | 19′-2″ | 15′-7″ | 16′-5″ | 13′-5″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 32′-10″ | 26′-10″ | 27′-9″ | 22′-8″ | 22′-2″ | 18′-1″ | 19′-0″ | 15′-6″ |
| 1200S162-97 | 40′-6″ | 33′-5″ | 34′-6″ | 28′-3″ | 27′-7″ | 22′-7″ | 23′-8″ | 19′-4″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Table provides maximum horizontal rafter spans in feet and inches for slopes between 3:12 and 12:12.

b. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for live loads and *L*/180 for total loads.

c. Roof dead load = 12 psf.

**TABLE R804.3.2.1(2)**
**ROOF RAFTER SPANS[a, b, c]**
**50 ksi STEEL**

| MEMBER DESIGNATION | ALLOWABLE SPAN MEASURED HORIZONTALLY (feet-inches) | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Equivalent ground snow load (psf) | | | | | | | |
| | 20 | | 30 | | 50 | | 70 | |
| | Rafter spacing (inches) | | | | | | | |
| | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 | 16 | 24 |
| 550S162-33 | 15′-4″ | 12′-11″ | 13′-4″ | 10′′-11″ | 10′-9″ | 8′-9″ | 9′-2″ | 7′-6″ |
| 550S162-43 | 16′-8″ | 14′-7″ | 14′-7″ | 12′-9″ | 12′-3″ | 10′-6″ | 11′-0″ | 9′-0″ |
| 550S162-54 | 17′-11″ | 15′-7″ | 15′-7″ | 13′-8″ | 13′-2″ | 11′-6″ | 11′-9″ | 10′-3″ |
| 550S162-68 | 19′-2″ | 16′-9″ | 16′-9″ | 14′-7″ | 14′-1″ | 12′-4″ | 12′-7″ | 11′-0″ |
| 550S162-97 | 21′-3″ | 18′-6″ | 18′-6″ | 16′-2″ | 15′-8″ | 13′-8″ | 14′-0″ | 12′-3″ |
| 800S162-33 | 18′-10″ | 15′-5″ | 15′-11″ | 12′-9″ | 12′-3″ | 8′-2″ | 9′-0″ | 6′-0″ |
| 800S162-43 | 22′-3″ | 18′-2″ | 18′-10″ | 15′-5″ | 15′-1″ | 12′-3″ | 12′-11″ | 10′-6″ |
| 800S162-54 | 24′-2″ | 21′-2″ | 21′-1″ | 18′-5″ | 17′-10″ | 14′-8″ | 15′-5″ | 12′-7″ |
| 800S162-68 | 25′-11″ | 22′-8″ | 22′-8″ | 19′-9″ | 19′-1″ | 16′-8″ | 17′-1″ | 14′-9″ |
| 800S162-97 | 28′-10″ | 25′-2″ | 25′-2″ | 22′-0″ | 21′-2″ | 18′-6″ | 19′-0″ | 16′-7″ |
| 1000S162-43 | 25′-2″ | 20′-7″ | 21′-4″ | 17′-5″ | 17′-0″ | 13′-11″ | 14′-7″ | 10′ − 7″ |
| 1000S162-54 | 29′-0″ | 24′-6″ | 25′-4″ | 20′-9″ | 20′-3″ | 16′-7″ | 17′-5″ | 14′-2″ |
| 1000S162-68 | 31′-2″ | 27′-3″ | 27′-3″ | 23′-9″ | 20′-0″ | 19′-6″ | 20′-6″ | 16′-8″ |
| 1000S162-97 | 34′-8″ | 30′-4″ | 30′-4″ | 26′-5″ | 25′-7″ | 22′-4″ | 22′-10″ | 20′-0″ |
| 1200S162-54 | 33′-2″ | 27′-1″ | 28′-1″ | 22′-11″ | 22′-5″ | 18′-4″ | 19′-3″ | 15′-8″ |
| 1200S162-68 | 36′- 4″ | 31′-9″ | 31′-9″ | 27′-0″ | 26′-5″ | 21′-6″ | 22′-6″ | 18′-6″ |
| 1200S162-97 | 40′-6″ | 35′-4″ | 35′-4″ | 30′-11″ | 29′-10″ | 26′-1″ | 26′-8″ | 23′-1″ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Table provides maximum horizontal rafter spans in feet and inches for slopes between 3:12 and 12:12.

b. Deflection criterion: *L*/240 for live loads and *L*/180 for total loads.

c. Roof dead load = 12 psf.

**TABLE R804.3.2.1(3)**
**BASIC WIND SPEED TO EQUIVALENT SNOW LOAD CONVERSION**

| BASIC WIND SPEED AND EXPOSURE | | EQUIVALENT GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Roof slope | | | | | | | | | |
| Exp. B | Exp. C | 3:12 | 4:12 | 5:12 | 6:12 | 7:12 | 8:12 | 9:12 | 10:12 | 11:12 | 12:12 |
| 85 mph | — | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 30 | 30 | 30 | 30 |
| 100 mph | 85 mph | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 30 | 30 | 30 | 30 | 50 | 50 |
| 110 mph | 100 mph | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 30 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| — | 110 mph | 30 | 30 | 30 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 70 | 70 | 70 | — |

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

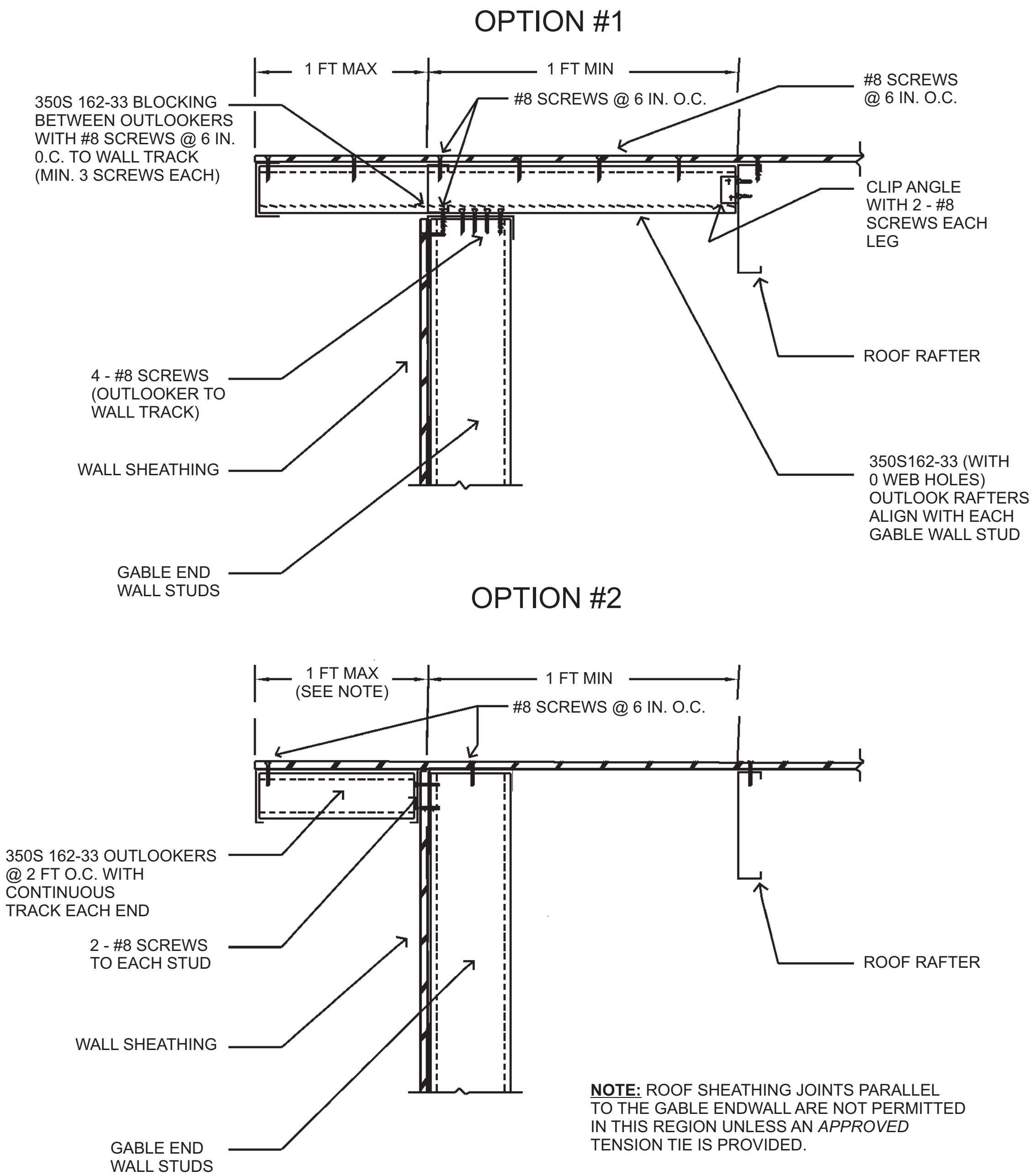



**FIGURE R804.3.2.1.2**
**GABLE ENDWALL OVERHANG DETAILS**

**R804.3.3.4 Hip framing connections.** Hip rafter framing connections shall be installed in accordance with the following:

1. Jack rafters shall be connected at the eave to a parallel C-shape blocking member in accordance with Figure R804.3.3.4(1). The C-shape blocking member shall be attached to the supporting wall track with minimum two No. 10 screws.
2. Jack rafters shall be connected to a hip member with a minimum 2 inch × 2 inch (51 mm × 51 mm) clip angle fastened with No. 10 screws to the hip member in accordance with Figure R804.3.2.4 and Table R804.3.2.4. The clip angle shall have a steel thickness equivalent to or greater than the jack rafter thickness and shall extend the depth of the jack rafter member to the extent possible.
3. The connection of the hip support columns at the ceiling line shall be in accordance with Figure R804.3.3.4(2), with an uplift strap sized in accordance with Table R804.3.3.4(1).
4. The connection of hip support members, ridge members and hip support columns at the ridge shall be in accordance with Figures R804.3.3.4(3) and R804.3.3.4(4) and Table R804.3.3.4(2).
5. The connection of hip members to the wall corner shall be in accordance with Figure R804.3.3.4(5) and Table R804.3.3.4(3).

**R804.3.4 Cutting and notching.** Flanges and lips of load-bearing cold-formed steel roof framing members shall not be cut or notched.

**R804.3.5 Headers.** Roof-ceiling framing above wall openings shall be supported on headers. The allowable spans for headers in load-bearing walls shall not exceed the values set forth in Section R603.6 and Tables R603.6(1) through R603.6(24).

**R804.3.6 Framing of openings in roofs and ceilings.** Openings in roofs and ceilings shall be framed with header and trimmer joists. Header joist spans shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) in length. Header and trimmer joists shall be fabricated from joist and track members having a minimum size and thickness at least equivalent to the adjacent ceiling joists or roof rafters and shall be installed in accordance with Figures R804.3.6(1) and R804.3.6(2). Each header joist shall be connected to trimmer joists with a minimum of four 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) clip angles. Each clip angle shall be fastened to both the header

**TABLE R804.3.2.4**
**SCREWS REQUIRED AT EACH LEG OF CLIP ANGLE FOR HIP RAFTER TO HIP MEMBER OR ROOF RAFTER TO RIDGE MEMBER CONNECTION[a]**

| BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | NUMBER OF SCREWS | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Ground snow load (psf) | | | |
| | 0 to 20 | 21 to 30 | 31 to 50 | 51 to 70 |
| 24 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| 28 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| 32 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| 36 | 3 | 3 | 5 | 6 |
| 40 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Screws shall be No. 10 minimum.

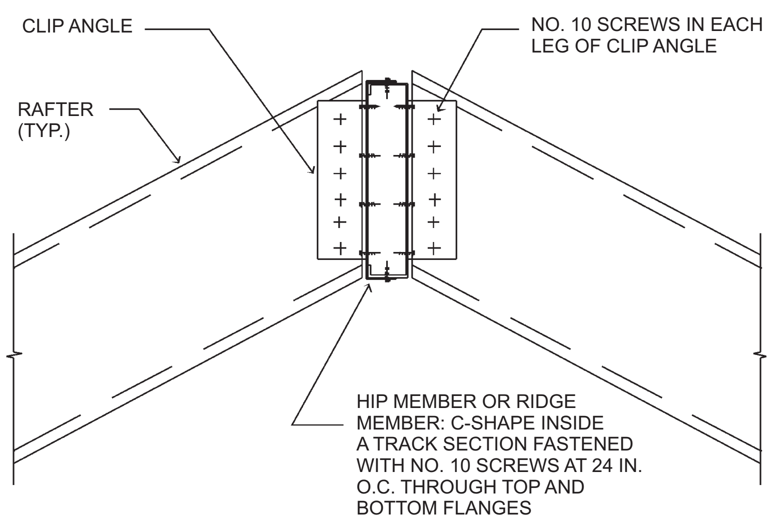



**FIGURE R804.3.2.4**
**HIP MEMBER OR RIDGE MEMBER CONNECTION**

and trimmer joists with four No. 8 screws, evenly spaced, through each leg of the clip angle. The steel thickness of the clip angles shall be not less than that of the ceiling joist or roof rafter. Each track section for a built-up header or trimmer joist shall extend the full length of the joist (continuous).

**R804.3.7 Roof trusses.** Cold-formed steel trusses shall be designed and installed in accordance with AISI S100, Section D4. Trusses shall be connected to the top track of the load-bearing wall in accordance with Table R804.3, either with two No.10 screws applied through the flange of the truss or by using a 54 mil (1.37 mm) clip angle with two No.10 screws in each leg.

**R804.3.8 Ceiling and roof diaphragms.** Ceiling and roof diaphragms shall be in accordance with this section.

**R804.3.8.1 Ceiling diaphragm.** At gable endwalls a ceiling *diaphragm* shall be provided by attaching a minimum $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board in accordance with Tables R804.3.8(1) and R804.3.8(2) or a minimum $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel sheathing, which complies with Section R803, in accordance with Table R804.3.8(3) to the bottom of ceiling joists or roof trusses and connected to wall framing in accordance with Figures R804.3.8(1) and R804.3.8(2), unless studs are designed as full height without bracing at the ceiling. Flat blocking shall consist of C-shape or track section with a minimum thickness of 33 mils (0.84 mm).

The ceiling *diaphragm* shall be secured with screws spaced at a maximum 6 inches (152 mm) o.c. at panel edges and a maximum 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. in the field. Multiplying the required lengths in Tables R804.3.8(1) and R804.3.8(2) for gypsum board sheathed ceiling diaphragms shall be permitted to be multiplied by 0.35 shall be permitted if all panel edges are blocked. Multiplying the required lengths in Tables R804.3.8(1) and R804.3.8(2) for gypsum board sheathed ceiling diaphragms by 0.9 shall be permitted if all panel edges are secured with screws spaced at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.

**R804.3.8.2 Roof diaphragm.** A roof *diaphragm* shall be provided by attaching a minimum of $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel which complies with Section R803 to roof rafters or truss top chords in accordance with Table R804.3. Buildings with 3:1 or larger plan *aspect ratio* and with roof rafter slope (pitch) of 9:12 or larger shall have the roof rafters and ceiling joists blocked in accordance with Figure R804.3.8(3).

**R804.3.9 Roof tie-down.** Roof assemblies subject to wind uplift pressures of 20 pounds per square foot (0.96 kPa) or greater, as established in Table R301.2(2), shall have rafter-to-bearing wall ties provided in accordance with Table R802.11.

**TABLE R804.3.3.2**
**HIP MEMBER SIZES, 33 ksi STEEL**

| BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | HIP MEMBER DESIGNATION[a] | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Equivalent ground snow load (psf) | | | |
| | 0 to 20 | 21 to 30 | 31 to 50 | 51 to 70 |
| 24 | 800S162-68<br>800T150-68 | 800S162-68<br>800T150-68 | 800S162-97<br>800T150-97 | 1000S162-97<br>1000T150-97 |
| 28 | 1000S162-68<br>1000T150-68 | 1000S162-68<br>1000T150-68 | 1000S162-97<br>1000T150-97 | 1200S162-97<br>1200T150-97 |
| 32 | 1000S162-97<br>1000T150-97 | 1000S162-97<br>1000T150-97 | 1200S162-97<br>1200T150-97 | — |
| 36 | 1200S162-97<br>1200T150-97 | — | — | — |
| 40 | — | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. The web depth of the roof rafters and jack rafters is to match at the hip or they shall be installed in accordance with an approved design.

**TABLE R804.3.3.3**
**HIP SUPPORT COLUMN SIZES**

| BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | HIP SUPPORT COLUMN DESIGNATION[a, b] | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Equivalent ground snow load (psf) | | | |
| | 0 to 20 | 21 to 30 | 31 to 50 | 51 to 70 |
| 24 | 2-350S162-33 | 2-350S162-33 | 2-350S162-43 | 2-350S162-54 |
| 28 | 2-350S162-54 | 2-550S162-54 | 2-550S162-68 | 2-550S162-68 |
| 32 | 2-550S162-68 | 2-550S162-68 | 2-550S162-97 | — |
| 36 | 2-550S162-97 | — | — | — |
| 40 | — | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 foot = 304,8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Box shape column only in accordance with Figure R804.3.3.4(2).
b. 33 ksi steel for 33 and 43 mil material; 50 ksi steel for thicker material.

**TABLE R804.3.3.4(1)**
**UPLIFT STRAP CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS**
**HIP SUPPORT COLUMN AT CEILING LINE**

| BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) EXPOSURE B | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 85 | 100 | 110 | — | — |
| | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) EXPOSURE C | | | | |
| | — | 85 | — | 100 | 110 |
| | Number of No. 10 screws in each end of each 3 inch by 54-mil steel strap[a, b, c] | | | | |
| 24 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 7 |
| 28 | 4 | 6 | 6 | 8 | 10 |
| 32 | 5 | 8 | 8 | 11 | 13 |
| 36 | 7 | 10 | 11 | 14 | 17 |
| 40 | — | — | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.
a. Two straps are required, one each side of the column.
b. Space screws at $^3/_4$ inch on-center and provide $^3/_4$ inch end distance.
c. 50 ksi steel strap.

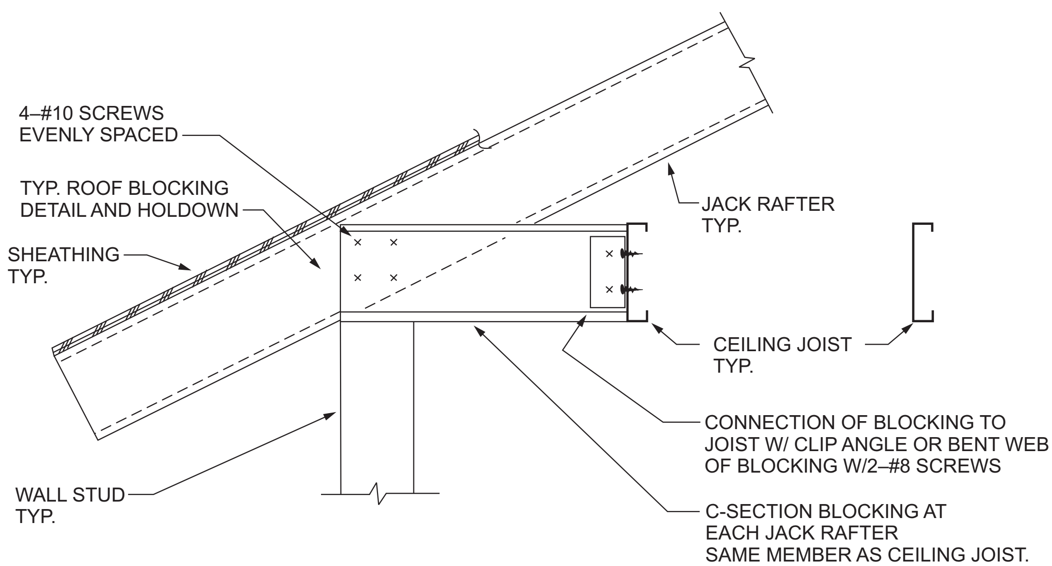



**FIGURE R804.3.3.4(1)**
**JACK RAFTER CONNECTION AT EAVE**

**TABLE R804.3.3.4(2)**
**CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS**
**HIP MEMBER TO HIP SUPPORT COLUMN**

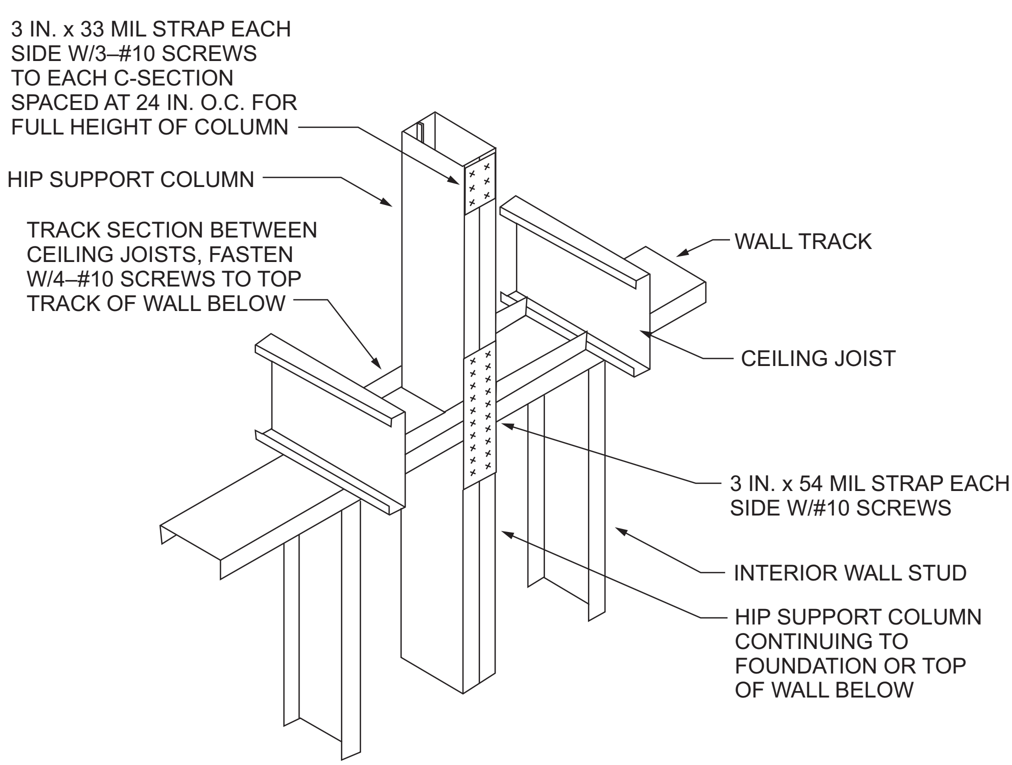
| BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | NUMBER OF NO. 10 SCREWS IN EACH FRAMING ANGLE[a, b, c] | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Equivalent ground snow load (psf) | | | |
| | 0 to 20 | 21 to 30 | 31 to 50 | 51 to 70 |
| 24 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 12 |
| 28 | 10 | 10 | 14 | 18 |
| 32 | 10 | 12 | — | — |
| 36 | 14 | — | — | — |
| 40 | — | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Screws to be divided equally between the connection to the hip member and the column. Refer to Figures R804.3.3.4(3) and R804.3.3.4(4).

b. The number of screws required in each framing angle is not to be less than shown in Table R804.3.3.4(1).

c. 50 ksi steel from the framing angle.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.3.4(2)**
**HIP SUPPORT COLUMN**

**TABLE R804.3.3.4(3)**
**UPLIFT STRAP CONNECTION REQUIREMENTS**
**HIP MEMBER TO WALL**

| BUILDING WIDTH (feet) | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) EXPOSURE B | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 85 | 100 | 110 | — | — |
| | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) EXPOSURE C | | | | |
| | — | 85 | — | 100 | 110 |
| | Number of No. 10 screws in each end of each 3 inch by 54-mil Steel strap[a, b, c] | | | | |
| 24 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |
| 28 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| 32 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 7 |
| 36 | 3 | 5 | 5 | 7 | 8 |
| 40 | — | — | — | — | — |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Two straps are required, one each side of the column.

b. Space screws at $^3/_4$ inches on-center and provide $^3/_4$ inch end distance.

c. 50 ksi steel strap.

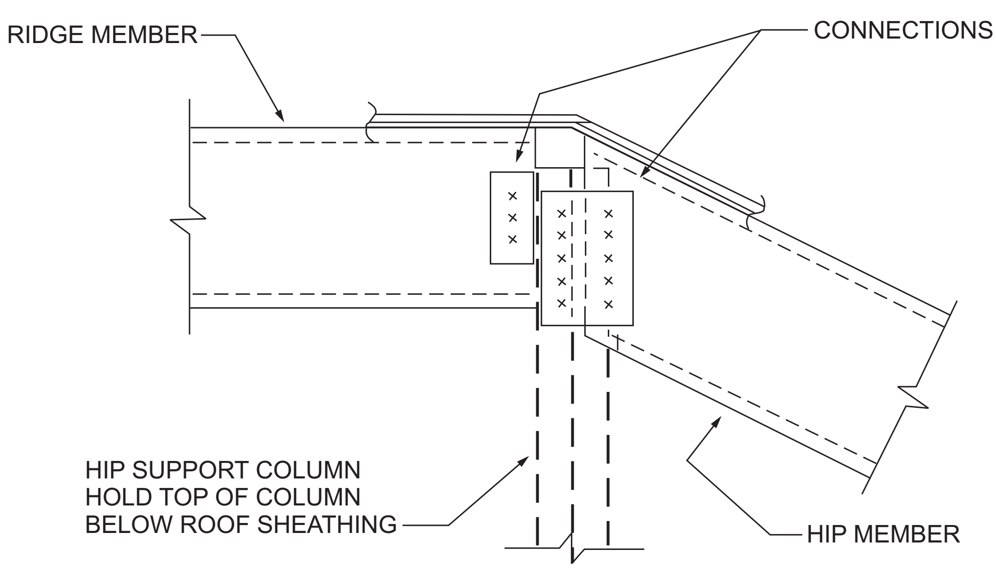
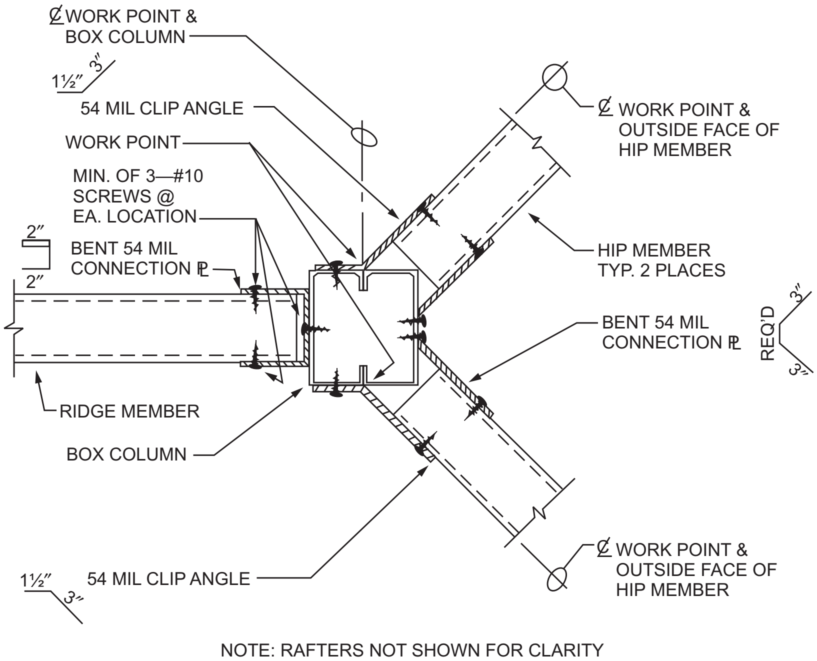
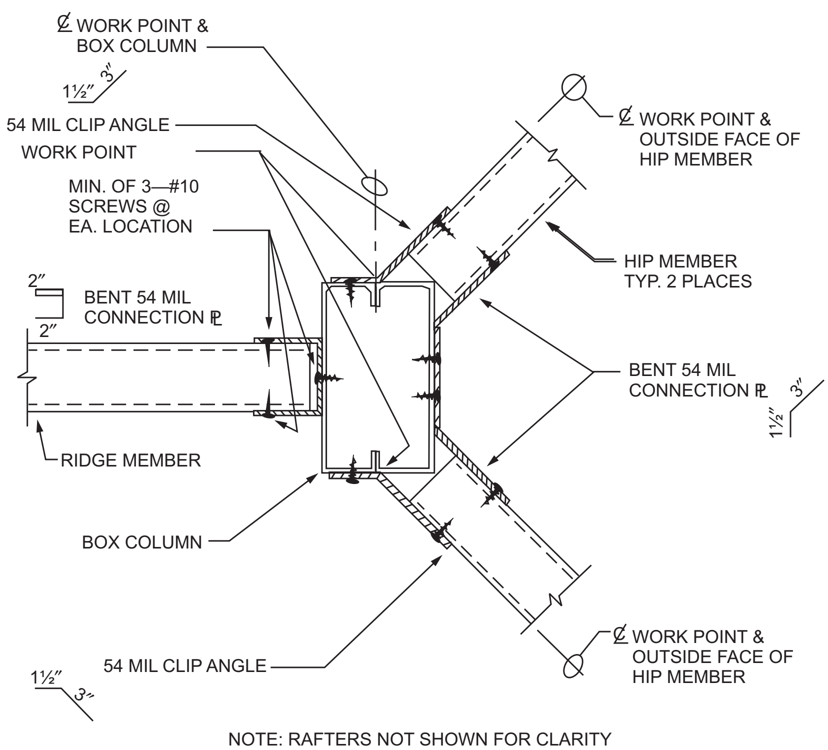



**FIGURE R804.3.3.4(3)**
**HIP CONNECTIONS AT RIDGE**




CONNECTION @ 3½″ BOX COLUMN




CONNECTION @ 5½″ BOX COLUMN

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.3.4(4)**
**HIP CONNECTIONS AT RIDGE AND BOX COLUMN**

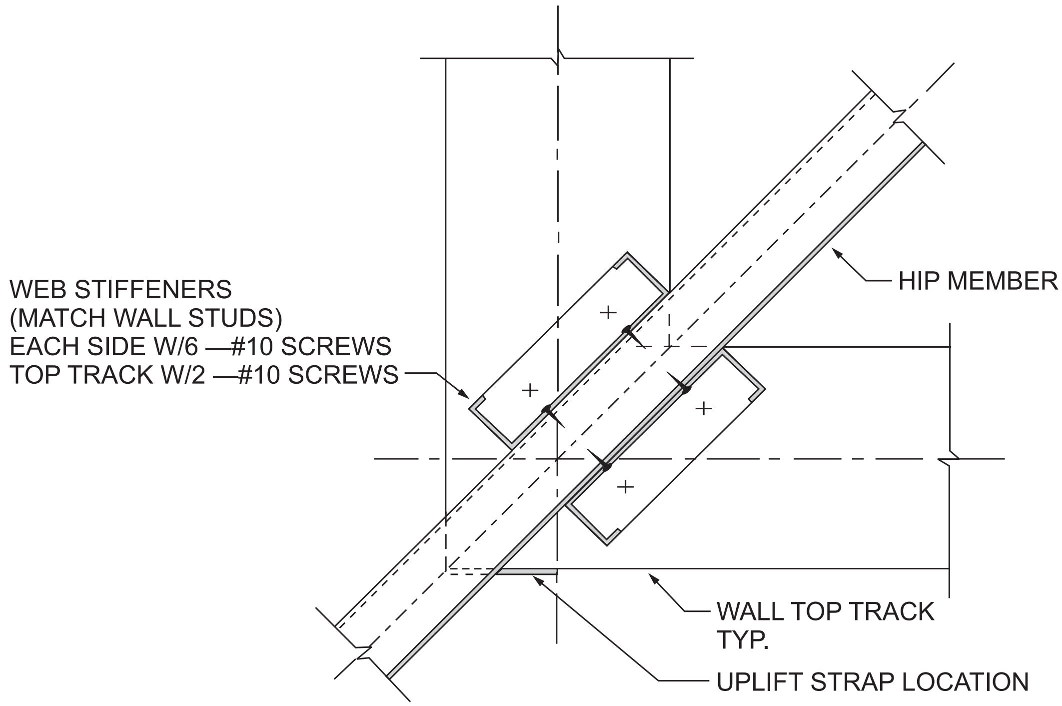
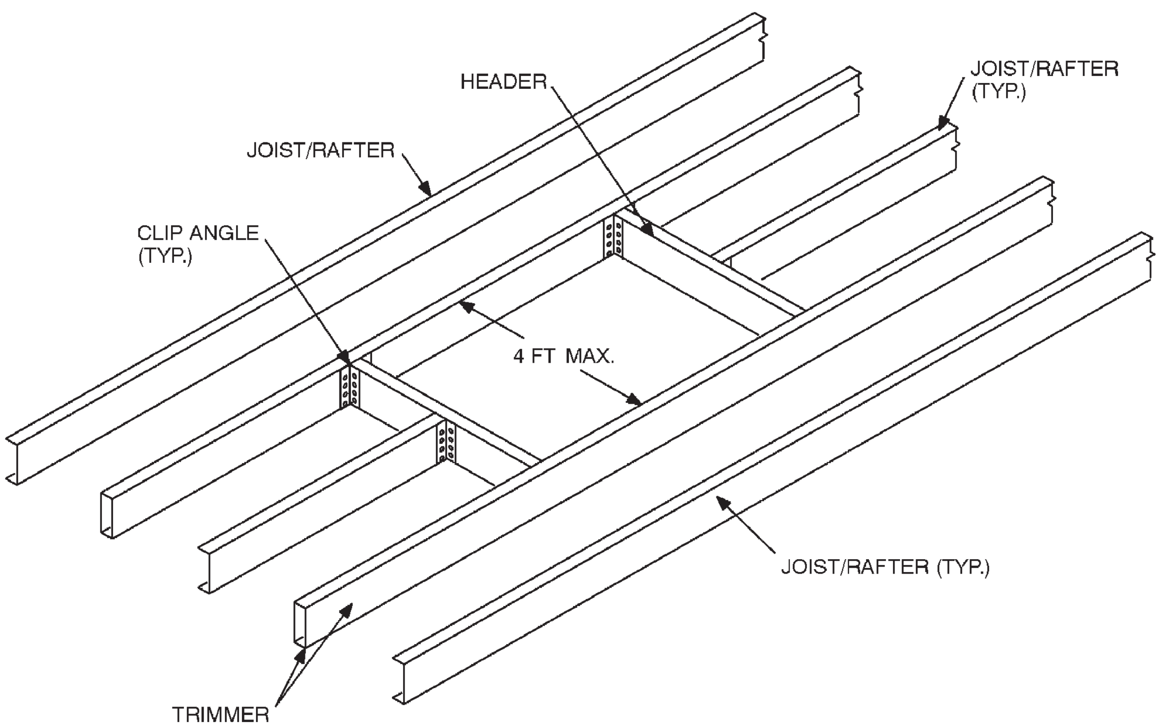
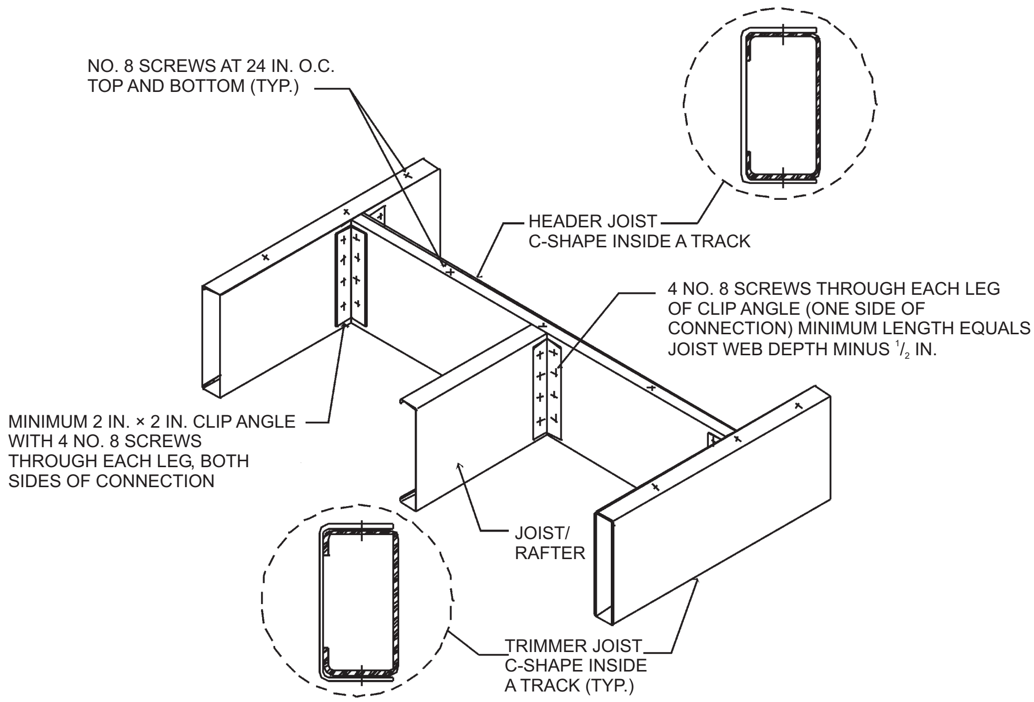



**FIGURE R804.3.3.4(5)**
**HIP MEMBER CONNECTION AT WALL CORNER**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.6(1)**
**ROOF OR CEILING OPENING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.6(2)**
**HEADER TO TRIMMER CONNECTION**

**TABLE R804.3.8(1)**
**REQUIRED LENGTHS FOR CEILING DIAPHRAGMS AT GABLE ENDWALLS**
**GYPSUM BOARD SHEATHED, CEILING HEIGHT = 8 FT [a, b, c, d, e, f]**

| | | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Exposure B | 85 | 100 | 110 | — | — |
| | Exposure C | — | 85 | — | 100 | 110 |
| Roof pitch | Building endwall width (feet) | Minimum diaphragm length (feet) | | | | |
| 3:12 to 6:12 | 24 - 28 | 14 | 20 | 22 | 28 | 32 |
| | 28 - 32 | 16 | 22 | 28 | 32 | 38 |
| | 32 - 36 | 20 | 26 | 32 | 38 | 44 |
| | 36 - 40 | 22 | 30 | 36 | 44 | 50 |
| 6:12 to 9:12 | 24 - 28 | 16 | 22 | 26 | 32 | 36 |
| | 28 - 32 | 20 | 26 | 32 | 38 | 44 |
| | 32 - 36 | 22 | 32 | 38 | 44 | 52 |
| | 36 - 40 | 26 | 36 | 44 | 52 | 60 |
| 9:12 to 12:12 | 24 - 28 | 18 | 26 | 30 | 36 | 42 |
| | 28 - 32 | 22 | 30 | 36 | 42 | 50 |
| | 32 - 36 | 26 | 36 | 42 | 50 | 60 |
| | 36 - 40 | 30 | 42 | 50 | 60 | 70 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. Ceiling diaphragm is composed of $^1/_2$ inch gypsum board (min. thickness) secured with screws spaced at 6 inches o.c. at panel edges and 12 inches o.c. in field. Use No. 8 screws (min.) when framing members have a designation thickness of 54 mils or less and No. 10 screws (min.) when framing members have a designation thickness greater than 54 mils.

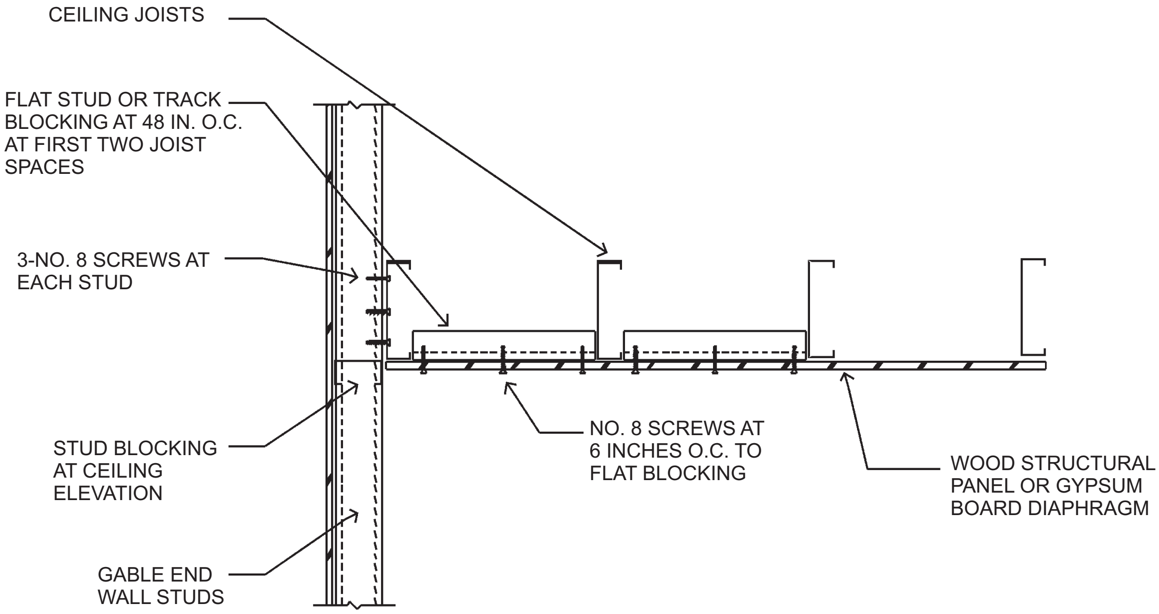
b. Maximum aspect ratio (length/width) of diaphragms is 2:1.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Required diaphragm lengths are to be provided at each end of the structure.

e. Multiplying required diaphragm lengths by 0.35 is permitted if all panel edges are blocked.

f. Multiplying required diaphragm lengths by 0.9 is permitted if all panel edges are secured with screws spaced at 4 inches o.c.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.8(1)**
**CEILING DIAPHRAGM TO GABLE ENDWALL DETAIL**

**TABLE R804.3.8(2)**
**REQUIRED LENGTHS FOR CEILING DIAPHRAGMS AT GABLE ENDWALLS**
**GYPSUM BOARD SHEATHED**
**CEILING HEIGHT = 9 OR 10 FT**[a, b, c, d, e, f]

| | | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exposure B | | 85 | 100 | 110 | — | — |
| Exposure C | | — | 85 | — | 100 | 110 |
| Roof pitch | Building endwall width (feet) | Minimum diaphragm length (feet) | | | | |
| 3:12 to 6:12 | 24 - 28 | 16 | 22 | 26 | 32 | 38 |
| | 28 - 32 | 20 | 26 | 32 | 38 | 44 |
| | 32 - 36 | 22 | 30 | 36 | 44 | 50 |
| | 36 - 40 | 26 | 36 | 42 | 50 | 58 |
| 6:12 to 9:12 | 24 - 28 | 18 | 26 | 30 | 36 | 42 |
| | 28 - 32 | 22 | 30 | 36 | 42 | 50 |
| | 32 - 36 | 26 | 36 | 42 | 50 | 58 |
| | 36 - 40 | 30 | 42 | 48 | 58 | 68 |
| 9:12 to 12:12 | 24 - 28 | 20 | 28 | 34 | 40 | 46 |
| | 28 - 32 | 24 | 34 | 40 | 48 | 56 |
| | 32 - 36 | 28 | 40 | 48 | 56 | 66 |
| | 36 - 40 | 34 | 46 | 56 | 66 | 78 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mph = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. Ceiling diaphragm is composed of $^1/_2$ inch gypsum board (min. thickness) secured with screws spaced at 6 inches o.c. at panel edges and 12 inches o.c. in field. Use No. 8 screws (min.) when framing members have a designation thickness of 54 mils or less and No. 10 screws (min.) when framing members have a designation thickness greater than 54 mils.

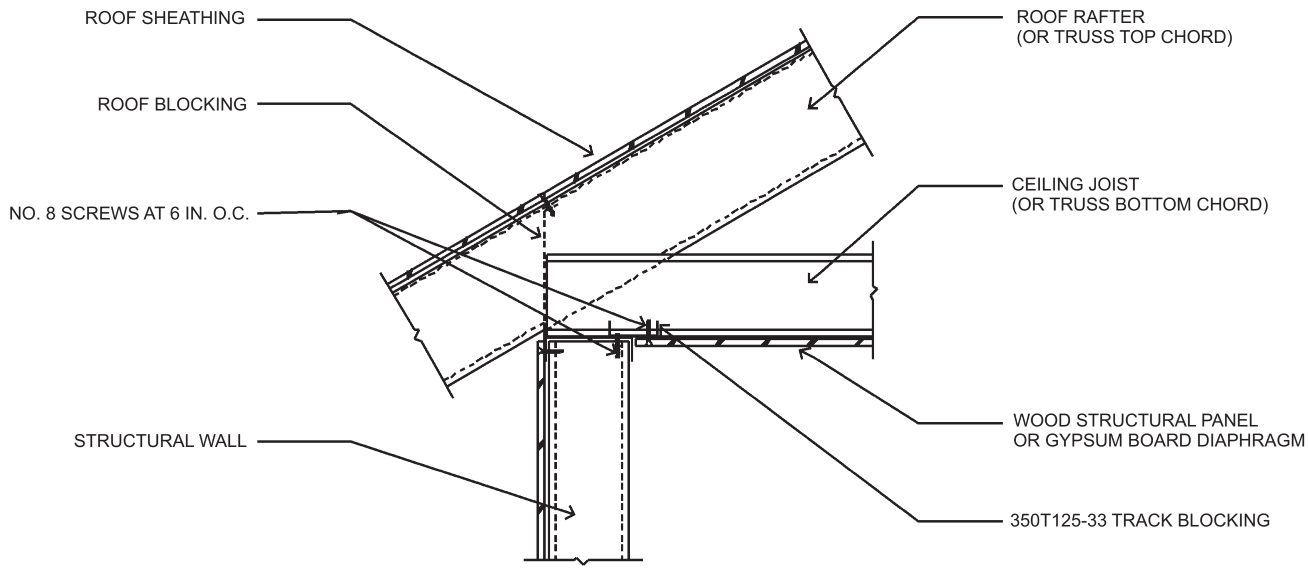
b. Maximum aspect ratio (length/width) of diaphragms is 2:1.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Required diaphragm lengths are to be provided at each end of the structure.

e. Required diaphragm lengths are permitted to be multiplied by 0.35 if all panel edges are blocked.

f. Required diaphragm lengths are permitted to be multiplied by 0.9 if all panel edges are secured with screws spaced at 4 inches o.c.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.8(2)**
**CEILING DIAPHRAGM TO SIDEWALL DETAIL**

**TABLE R804.3.8(3)**
**REQUIRED LENGTHS FOR CEILING DIAPHRAGMS AT GABLE ENDWALLS**
**WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHED**
**CEILING HEIGHT = 8, 9 OR 10 FT[a, b, c, d]**

| | | BASIC WIND SPEED (mph) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exposure B | | 85 | 100 | 110 | — | — |
| Exposure C | | — | 85 | — | 100 | 110 |
| Roof pitch | Building endwall width (feet) | Minimum diaphragm length (feet) | | | | |
| 3:12 to 6:12 | 24 - 28 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| | 28 - 32 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| | 32 - 36 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| | 36 - 40 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 |
| 6:12 to 9:12 | 24 - 28 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| | 28 - 32 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| | 32 - 36 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| | 36 - 40 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 |
| 9:12 to 12:12 | 24 - 28 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| | 28 - 32 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| | 32 - 36 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| | 36 - 40 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 | 14 |

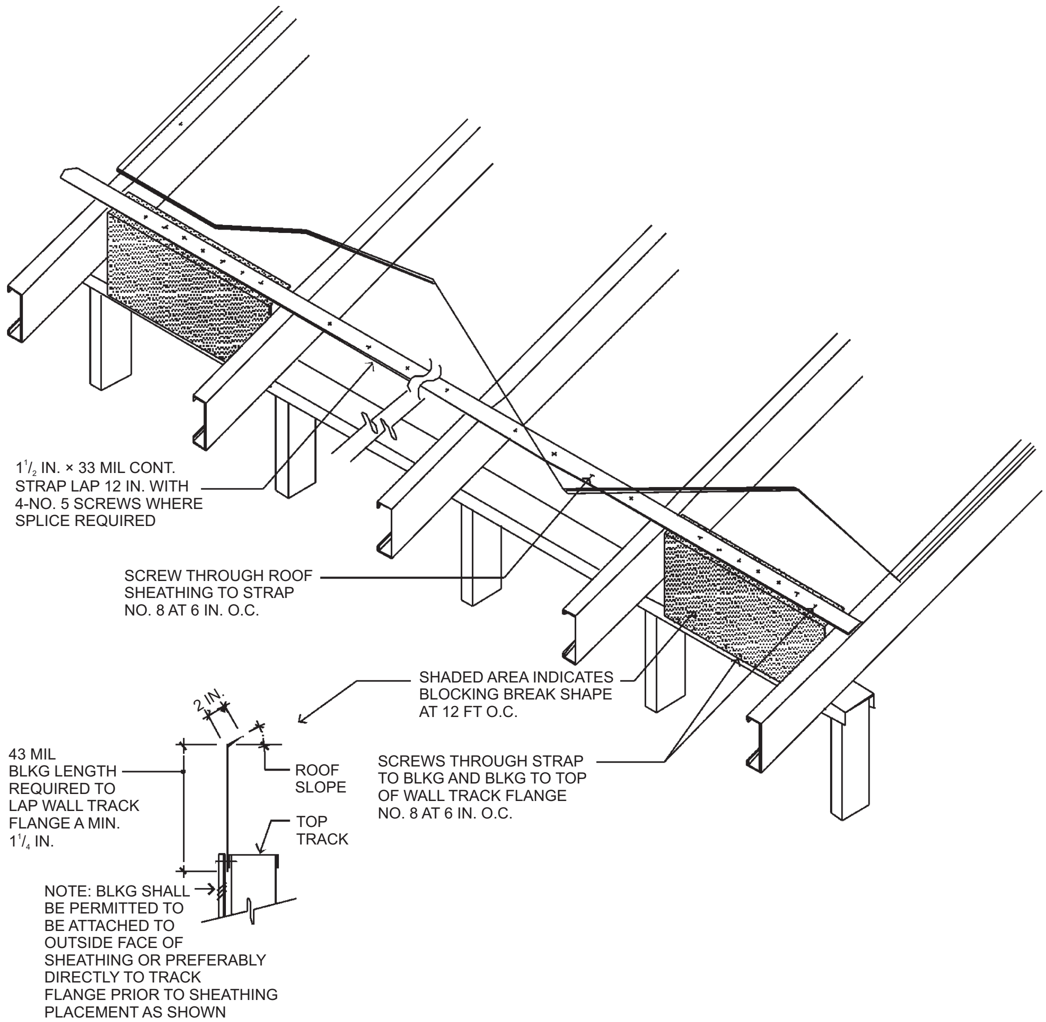
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mil = 0.0254 mm.

a. Ceiling diaphragm is composed of $^3/_8$ inch wood structural panel sheathing (min. thickness) secured with screws spaced at 6 inches o.c. at panel edges and in field. Use No. 8 screws (min.) when framing members have a designation thickness of 54 mils or less and No. 10 screws (min.) when framing members have a designation thickness greater than 54 mils.

b. Maximum aspect ratio (length/width) of diaphragms is 3:1.

c. Building width is in the direction of horizontal framing members supported by the wall studs.

d. Required diaphragm lengths are to be provided at each end of the structure.




For SI: 1 mil = 0.0254 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R804.3.8(3)**
**ROOF BLOCKING DETAIL**

## SECTION R805
## CEILING FINISHES

**R805.1 Ceiling installation.** Ceilings shall be installed in accordance with the requirements for interior wall finishes as provided in Section R702.

## SECTION R806
## ROOF VENTILATION

**R806.1 Ventilation required.** Enclosed *attics* and enclosed rafter spaces formed where ceilings are applied directly to the underside of roof rafters shall have cross ventilation for each separate space by ventilating openings protected against the entrance of rain or snow. Ventilation openings shall have a least dimension of $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) minimum and $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum. Ventilation openings having a least dimension larger than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) shall be provided with corrosion-resistant wire cloth screening, hardware cloth, or similar material with openings having a least dimension of $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) minimum and $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum. Openings in roof framing members shall conform to the requirements of Section R802.7.

**Code Alternate R806.1:** Exception 5 of Section R806.4 is permitted to be used for enclosed rafter spaces.

**R806.2 Minimum area.** The total net free ventilating area shall not be less than $^1/_{150}$ of the area of the space ventilated except that reduction of the total area to $^1/_{300}$ is permitted provided that at least 50 percent and not more than 80 percent of the required ventilating area is provided by ventilators located in the upper portion of the space to be ventilated at least 3 feet (914 mm) above the eave or cornice vents with the balance of the required ventilation provided by eave or cornice vents. As an alternative, the net free cross-ventilation area may be reduced to $^1/_{300}$ when a Class I or II vapor retarder is installed on the warm-in-winter side of the ceiling.

**R806.3 Vent and insulation clearance.** Where eave or cornice vents are installed, insulation shall not block the free flow of air. A minimum of a 1-inch (25 mm) space shall be provided between the insulation and the roof sheathing and at the location of the vent.

**R806.4 Unvented attic assemblies.** Unvented *attic* assemblies (spaces between the ceiling joists of the top *story* and the roof rafters) shall be permitted if all the following conditions are met:

1. The unvented *attic* space is completely contained within the *building thermal envelope*.
2. No interior vapor retarders are installed on the ceiling side (*attic* floor) of the unvented *attic* assembly.
3. Where wood shingles or shakes are used, a minimum $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) vented air space separates the shingles or shakes and the roofing underlayment above the structural sheathing.
4. ((~~In climate zones 5, 6, 7 and 8, any~~)) Any *air-impermeable insulation* shall be a vapor retarder, or shall have a vapor retarder coating or covering in direct contact with the underside of the insulation.
5. Either Items 5.1, 5.2 or 5.3 shall be met, depending on the air permeability of the insulation directly under the structural roof sheathing.
   - 5.1. *Air-impermeable insulation* only. Insulation shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing.
   - 5.2. Air-permeable insulation only. In addition to the air-permeable installed directly below the structural sheathing, minimum R-10 rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing ((~~as specified in Table R806.4~~)) for condensation control.
   - 5.3. Air-impermeable and air-permeable insulation. ((~~The~~)) Minimum R-10 *air-impermeable insulation* shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing ((~~as specified in Table R806.4~~)) for condensation control. The air-permeable insulation shall be installed directly under the *air-impermeable insulation*.

## SECTION R807
## ATTIC ACCESS

**R807.1 Attic access.** Buildings with combustible ceiling or roof construction shall have an *attic* access opening to *attic* areas that exceed 30 square feet (2.8 m$^2$) and have a vertical height of 30 inches (762 mm) or greater. The vertical height shall be measured from the top of the ceiling framing members to the underside of the roof framing members.

The rough-framed opening shall not be less than 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located in a hallway or other readily accessible location. When located in a wall, the opening shall be a minimum of 22 inches wide by 30 inches high. When the access is located in a ceiling, minimum unobstructed headroom in the *attic* space shall be 30 inches (762 mm) at some point above the access measured vertically from the bottom of ceiling framing members. See Section M1305.1.3 for access requirements where mechanical *equipment* is located in *attics*.

**TABLE R806.4**
**INSULATION FOR CONDENSATION CONTROL**

| CLIMATE ZONE | MINIMUM RIGID BOARD ON AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION *R*-VALUE[a] |
|---|---|
| 2B and 3B tile roof only | 0 (none required) |
| 1, 2A, 2B, 3A, 3B, 3C | R-5 |
| 4C | R-10 |
| 4A, 4B | R-15 |
| 5 | R-20 |
| 6 | R-25 |
| 7 | R-30 |
| 8 | R-35 |

a. Contributes to but does not supersede Chapter 11 energy requirements.

# CHAPTER 9

# ROOF ASSEMBLIES

## SECTION R901
## GENERAL

**R901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of roof assemblies.

## SECTION R902
## ROOF CLASSIFICATION

**R902.1 Roofing covering materials.** Roofs shall be covered with materials as set forth in Sections R904 and R905. Class A, B or C roofing shall be installed in areas designated by law as requiring their use or when the edge of the roof is less than 3 feet (914 mm) from a property line. Classes A, B and C roofing required by this section to be listed shall be tested in accordance with UL 790 or ASTM E 108.

**Exceptions:**

1. Class A roof assemblies include those with coverings of brick, masonry and exposed concrete roof deck.
2. Class A roof assemblies also include ferrous or copper shingles or sheets, metal sheets and shingles, clay or concrete roof tile, or slate installed on noncombustible decks.

**R902.2 Fire-retardant-treated shingles and shakes.** Fire-retardant-treated wood shakes and shingles shall be treated by impregnation with chemicals by the full-cell vacuum-pressure process, in accordance with AWPA C1. Each bundle shall be marked to identify the manufactured unit and the manufacturer, and shall also be *labeled* to identify the classification of the material in accordance with the testing required in Section R902.1, the treating company and the quality control agency.

## SECTION R903
## WEATHER PROTECTION

**R903.1 General.** Roof decks shall be covered with *approved* roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Roof assemblies shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code and the *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions such that the roof assembly shall serve to protect the building or structure.

**R903.2 Flashing.** Flashings shall be installed in a manner that prevents moisture from entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

**R903.2.1 Locations.** Flashings shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

**R903.2.2 Crickets and saddles.** A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration more than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpendicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

**R903.3 Coping.** Parapet walls shall be properly coped with noncombustible, weatherproof materials of a width no less than the thickness of the parapet wall.

**R903.4 Roof drainage.** Unless roofs are sloped to drain over roof edges, roof drains shall be installed at each low point of the roof. Where required for roof drainage, scuppers shall be placed level with the roof surface in a wall or parapet. The scupper shall be located as determined by the roof slope and contributing roof area.

<u>[W]</u> **R903.4.1 Overflow drains and scuppers.** Where roof drains are required, overflow drains having the same size as the roof drains shall be installed with the inlet flow line located 2 inches (51 mm) above the low point of the roof, or overflow scuppers having three times the size of the roof drains and having a minimum opening height of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be installed in the adjacent parapet walls with the inlet flow located 2 inches (51 mm) above the low point of the roof served. The installation and sizing of overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with the ((~~*International*~~)) <u>*Uniform*</u> *Plumbing Code*.

Overflow drains shall discharge to an *approved* location ((~~and shall not be connected to roof drain lines~~)).

**R903.5 Hail exposure.** Hail exposure, as specified in Sections R903.5.1 and R903.5.2, shall be determined using Figure R903.5.

**R903.5.1 Moderate hail exposure.** One or more hail days with hail diameters larger than 1.5 inches (38 mm) in a 20-year period.

**R903.5.2 Severe hail exposure.** One or more hail days with hail diameters larger than or equal to 2.0 inches (51 mm) in a 20-year period.

## SECTION R904
## MATERIALS

**R904.1 Scope.** The requirements set forth in this section shall apply to the application of roof covering materials specified herein. Roof assemblies shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Installation of roof assemblies shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section R905.

**R904.2 Compatibility of materials.** Roof assemblies shall be of materials that are compatible with each other and with the building or structure to which the materials are applied.

**R904.3 Material specifications and physical characteristics.** Roof covering materials shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter. In the absence of applicable standards or where materials are of questionable suitability, testing by an *approved* testing agency shall be required by the *building official* to determine the character, quality and limitations of application of the materials.

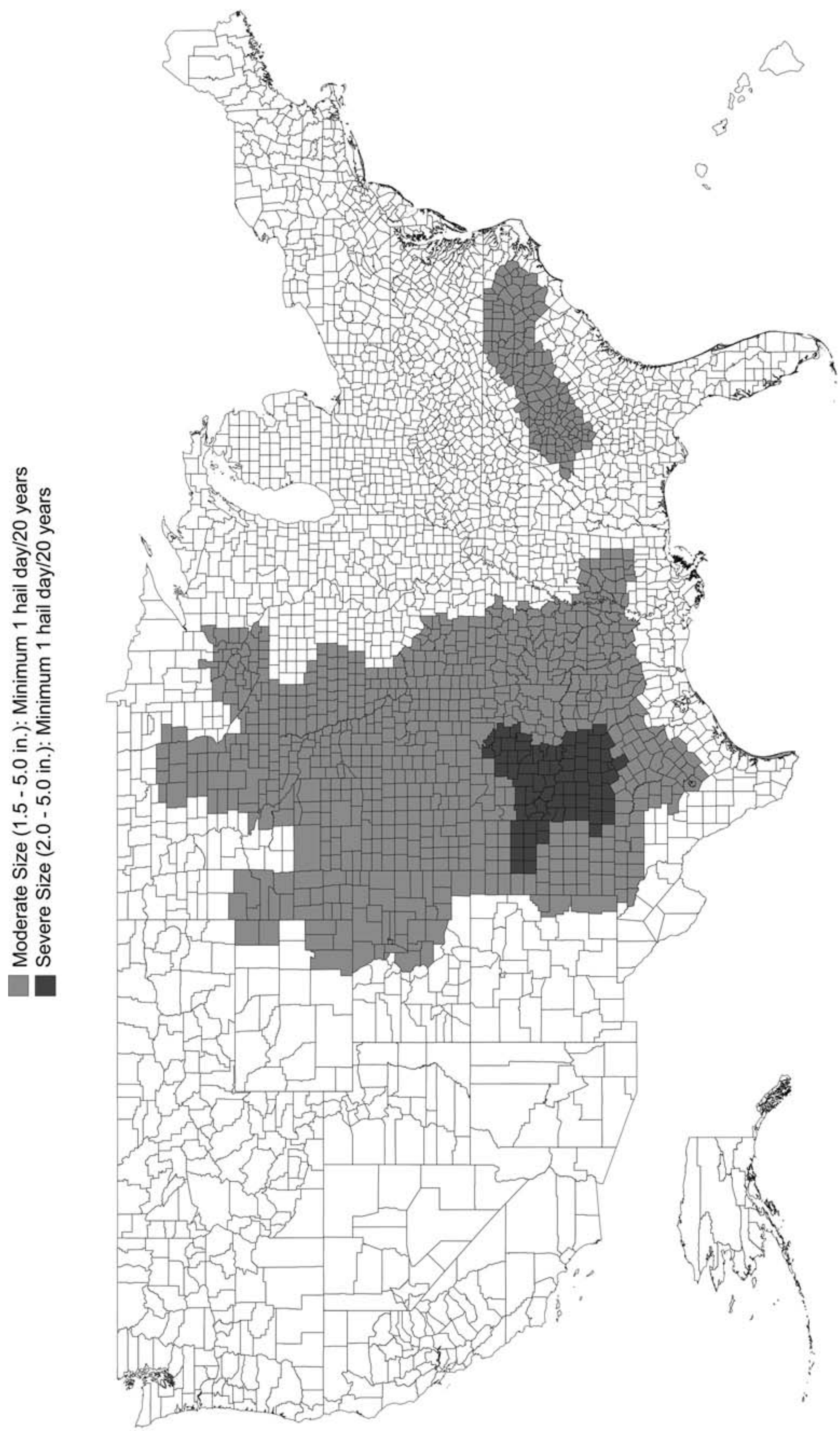



**FIGURE R903.5**
**HAIL EXPOSURE MAP**

**R904.4 Product identification.** Roof covering materials shall be delivered in packages bearing the manufacturer's identifying marks and *approved* testing agency *labels* when required. Bulk shipments of materials shall be accompanied by the same information issued in the form of a certificate or on a bill of lading by the manufacturer.

## SECTION R905
## REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF COVERINGS

**R905.1 Roof covering application.** Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Unless otherwise specified in this section, roof coverings shall be installed to resist the component and cladding loads specified in Table R301.2(2), adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2(3).

**R905.2 Asphalt shingles.** The installation of asphalt shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.2.1 Sheathing requirements.** Asphalt shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed decks.

**R905.2.2 Slope.** Asphalt shingles shall be used only on roof slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or greater. For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section R905.2.7.

**R905.2.3 Underlayment.** Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to ASTM D 226 Type I, ASTM D 4869 Type I, or ASTM D 6757.

Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall comply with ASTM D 1970.

**R905.2.4 Asphalt shingles.** Asphalt shingles shall comply with ASTM D 225 or D 3462.

**R905.2.4.1 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles.** Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D 7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table R905.2.4.1(1) for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a *label* to indicate compliance with ASTM D 7158 and the required classification in Table R905.2.4.1(1).

**Exception:** Asphalt shingles not included in the scope of ASTM D 7158 shall be tested and *labeled* to indicate compliance with ASTM D 3161 and the required classification in Table R905.2.4.1(2).

**R905.2.5 Fasteners.** Fasteners for asphalt shingles shall be galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12 gage [0.105 inch (3 mm)] shank with a minimum $^3/_8$-inch (10 mm) diameter head, ASTM F 1667, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) thick, the fasteners shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fasteners shall comply with ASTM F 1667.

**R905.2.6 Attachment.** Asphalt shingles shall have the minimum number of fasteners required by the manufacturer, but not less than four fasteners per strip shingle or two fasteners per individual shingle. Where the roof slope exceeds 21 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21:12, 175 percent slope), shingles shall be installed as required by the manufacturer.

**R905.2.7 Underlayment application.** For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner. Apply a 19-inch (483 mm) strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves, fastened sufficiently to hold in place. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide (914 mm) sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm), and fastened sufficiently to hold in place. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner. Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches (51 mm), fastened sufficiently to hold in place. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be offset by 6 feet (1829 mm).

**TABLE R905.2.4.1(1)**
**CLASSIFICATION OF ASPHALT ROOF SHINGLES PER ASTM D 7158**

| MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED FROM FIGURE 301.2(4) (mph) | CLASSIFICATION REQUIREMENT |
|---|---|
| 85 | D, G or H |
| 90 | D, G or H |
| 100 | G or H |
| 110 | G or H |
| 120 | G or H |
| 130 | H |
| 140 | H |
| 150 | H |

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

**TABLE R905.2.4.1(2)**
**CLASSIFICATION OF ASPHALT SHINGLES PER ASTM D 3161**

| MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED FROM FIGURE 301.2(4) (mph) | CLASSIFICATION REQUIREMENT |
|---|---|
| 85 | A, D or F |
| 90 | A, D or F |
| 100 | A, D or F |
| 110 | F |
| 120 | F |
| 130 | F |
| 140 | F |
| 150 | F |

**R905.2.7.1 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water as designated in Table R301.2(1), an ice barrier that consists of a least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet, shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached *accessory structures* that contain no *conditioned floor area*.

**R905.2.7.2 Underlayment and high wind.** Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [above 110 mph (49 m/s) per Figure R301.2(4)] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not farther apart than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

**R905.2.8 Flashing.** Flashing for asphalt shingles shall comply with this section.

**R905.2.8.1 Base and cap flashing.** Base and cap flashing shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Base flashing shall be of either corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) thickness or mineral surface roll roofing weighing a minimum of 77 pounds per 100 square feet (4 kg/m$^2$). Cap flashing shall be corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.5 mm) thickness.

**R905.2.8.2 Valleys.** Valley linings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions before applying shingles. Valley linings of the following types shall be permitted:

1. For open valleys (valley lining exposed) lined with metal, the valley lining shall be at least 24 inches (610 mm) wide and of any of the corrosion-resistant metals in Table R905.2.8.2.
2. For open valleys, valley lining of two plies of mineral surfaced roll roofing, complying with ASTM D 3909 or ASTM D 6380 Class M, shall be permitted. The bottom layer shall be 18 inches (457 mm) and the top layer a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) wide.
3. For closed valleys (valley covered with shingles), valley lining of one ply of smooth roll roofing complying with ASTM D 6380 and at least 36 inches wide (914 mm) or valley lining as described in Item 1 or 2 above shall be permitted. Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen underlayment complying with ASTM D 1970 shall be permitted in lieu of the lining material.

**TABLE R905.2.8.2**
**VALLEY LINING MATERIAL**

| MATERIAL | MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches) | GAGE | WEIGHT (pounds) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cold-rolled copper | 0.0216 nominal | — | ASTM B 370, 16 oz. per square foot |
| Lead-coated copper | 0.0216 nominal | — | ASTM B 101, 16 oz. per square foot |
| High-yield copper | 0.0162 nominal | — | ASTM B 370, 12 oz. per square foot |
| Lead-coated high-yield copper | 0.0162 nominal | — | ASTM B 101, 12 oz. per square foot |
| Aluminum | 0.024 | — | — |
| Stainless steel | — | 28 | — |
| Galvanized steel | 0.0179 | 26 (zinc coated G90) | — |
| Zinc alloy | 0.027 | — | — |
| Lead | — | — | $2^1/_2$ |
| Painted terne | — | — | 20 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

**R905.2.8.3 Sidewall flashing.** Flashing against a vertical sidewall shall be by the step-flashing method. The flashing shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) high and 4 inches (102 mm) wide. At the end of the vertical sidewall the step flashing shall be turned out in a manner that directs water away from the wall and onto the roof and/or gutter.

**R905.2.8.4 Other flashing.** Flashing against a vertical front wall, as well as soil stack, vent pipe and chimney flashing, shall be applied according to the asphalt shingle manufacturer's printed instructions.

**R905.3 Clay and concrete tile.** The installation of clay and concrete tile shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.3.1 Deck requirements.** Concrete and clay tile shall be installed only over solid sheathing or spaced structural sheathing boards.

**R905.3.2 Deck slope.** Clay and concrete roof tile shall be installed on roof slopes of two and one-half units vertical in 12 units horizontal ( $2^1/_2$:12) or greater. For roof slopes from two and one-half units vertical in 12 units horizontal ($2^1/_2$:12) to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section R905.3.3.

**R905.3.3 Underlayment.** Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to ASTM D 226 Type II; ASTM D 2626 Type I; or ASTM D 6380 Class M mineral surfaced roll roofing.

**R905.3.3.1 Low slope roofs.** For roof slopes from two and one-half units vertical in 12 units horizontal ($2^1/_2$:12), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be a minimum of two layers underlayment applied as follows:

1. Starting at the eave, a 19-inch (483 mm) strip of underlayment shall be applied parallel with the eave and fastened sufficiently in place.
2. Starting at the eave, 36-inch-wide (914 mm) strips of underlayment felt shall be applied, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm), and fastened sufficiently in place.

**R905.3.3.2 High slope roofs.** For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be a minimum of one layer of underlayment felt applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eaves and lapped 2 inches (51 mm), fastened sufficiently in place.

**R905.3.3.3 Underlayment and high wind.** Underlayment applied in areas subject to high wind [over 110 miles per hour (49 m/s) per Figure R301.2(4)] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not farther apart than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

**R905.3.4 Clay tile.** Clay roof tile shall comply with ASTM C 1167.

**R905.3.5 Concrete tile.** Concrete roof tile shall comply with ASTM C 1492.

**R905.3.6 Fasteners.** Nails shall be corrosion resistant and not less than 11 gage, $^5/_{16}$-inch (11 mm) head, and of sufficient length to penetrate the deck a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) or through the thickness of the deck, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay or concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch (2 mm). Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.

**R905.3.7 Application.** Tile shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions, based on the following:

1. Climatic conditions.
2. Roof slope.
3. Underlayment system.
4. Type of tile being installed.

Clay and concrete roof tiles shall be fastened in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Perimeter tiles shall be fastened with a minimum of one fastener per tile. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 pounds per square foot (0.4 kg/$m^2$) require a minimum of one fastener per tile regardless of roof slope. Clay and concrete roof tile attachment shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions where applied in areas where the wind speed exceeds 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) and on buildings where the roof is located more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) above *grade*. In areas subject to snow, a minimum of two fasteners per tile is required. In all other areas, clay and concrete roof tiles shall be attached in accordance with Table R905.3.7.

**TABLE R905.3.7**
**CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ATTACHMENT**

| SHEATHING | ROOF SLOPE | NUMBER OF FASTENERS |
|---|---|---|
| Solid without battens | All | One per tile |
| Spaced or solid with battens and slope < 5:12 | Fasteners not required | — |
| Spaced sheathing without battens | 5:12 ≤ slope < 12:12 | One per tile/every other row |
| | 12:12 ≤ slope < 24:12 | One per tile |

**R905.3.8 Flashing.** At the juncture of roof vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions and, where of metal, shall not be less than 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and greater, valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solid-cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes less than seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or be of self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet.

**R905.4 Metal roof shingles.** The installation of metal roof shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.4.1 Deck requirements.** Metal roof shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced sheathing.

**R905.4.2 Deck slope.** Metal roof shingles shall not be installed on roof slopes below three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

**R905.4.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D 226, Type I or Type II, ASTM D 4869, Type I or Type II, or ASTM D 1970. Underlayment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R905.4.3.1 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water as designated in Table R301.2(1), an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used in place of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached *accessory structures* that contain no *conditioned floor area*.

**R905.4.4 Material standards.** Metal roof shingle roof coverings shall comply with Table R905.10.3(1). The materials used for metal roof shingle roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or be made corrosion resistant in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses listed in Table R905.10.3(2).

**R905.4.5 Application.** Metal roof shingles shall be secured to the roof in accordance with this chapter and the *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R905.4.6 Flashing.** Roof valley flashing shall be of corrosion-resistant metal of the same material as the roof covering or shall comply with the standards in Table R905.10.3(1). The valley flashing shall extend at least 8 inches (203 mm) from the center line each way and shall have a splash diverter rib not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). The metal valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment directly under it consisting of one layer of underlayment running the full length of the valley, in addition to underlayment required for metal roof shingles. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solid cemented to the roofing underlayment for roof slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet.

**R905.5 Mineral-surfaced roll roofing.** The installation of mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall comply with this section.

**R905.5.1 Deck requirements.** Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

**R905.5.2 Deck slope.** Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall not be applied on roof slopes below one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope).

**R905.5.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D 226, Type I or ASTM D 4869, Type I or II.

**R905.5.3.1 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water as designated in Table R301.2(1), an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used in place of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached *accessory structures* that contain no *conditioned floor area*.

**R905.5.4 Material standards.** Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall conform to ASTM D 3909 or ASTM D 6380, Class M.

**R905.5.5 Application.** Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R905.6 Slate and slate-type shingles.** The installation of slate and slate-type shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.6.1 Deck requirements.** Slate shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

**R905.6.2 Deck slope.** Slate shingles shall be used only on slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope) or greater.

**R905.6.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D 226, Type I, or ASTM D 4869, Type I or II. Underlayment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R905.6.3.1 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water as designated in Table R301.2(1), an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached *accessory structures* that contain no *conditioned floor area*.

**R905.6.4 Material standards.** Slate shingles shall comply with ASTM C 406.

**R905.6.5 Application.** Minimum headlap for slate shingles shall be in accordance with Table R905.6.5. Slate shingles shall be secured to the roof with two fasteners per slate. Slate shingles shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE R905.6.5**
**SLATE SHINGLE HEADLAP**

| SLOPE | HEADLAP (inches) |
|---|---|
| 4:12 ≤ slope < 8:12 | 4 |
| 8:12 ≤ slope < 20:12 | 3 |
| Slope ≤ 20:12 | 2 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**R905.6.6 Flashing.** Flashing and counterflashing shall be made with sheet metal. Valley flashing shall be a minimum of 15 inches (381 mm) wide. Valley and flashing metal shall be a minimum uncoated thickness of 0.0179-inch (0.5 mm) zinc coated G90. Chimneys, stucco or brick walls shall have a minimum of two plies of felt for a cap flashing consisting of a 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of felt set in plastic cement and extending 1 inch (25 mm) above the first felt and a top coating of plastic cement. The felt shall extend over the base flashing 2 inches (51 mm).

**R905.7 Wood shingles.** The installation of wood shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.7.1 Deck requirements.** Wood shingles shall be installed on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall not be less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25.4 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.

**R905.7.1.1 Solid sheathing required.** In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, solid sheathing is required on that portion of the roof requiring the application of an ice barrier.

**R905.7.2 Deck slope.** Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater.

**R905.7.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D 226, Type I or ASTM D 4869, Type I or II.

**R905.7.3.1 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water as designated in Table R301.2(1), an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached *accessory structures* that contain no *conditioned floor area*.

**R905.7.4 Material standards.** Wood shingles shall be of naturally durable wood and comply with the requirements of Table R905.7.4.

**TABLE R905.7.4**
**WOOD SHINGLE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

| MATERIAL | MINIMUM GRADES | APPLICABLE GRADING RULES |
|---|---|---|
| Wood shingles of naturally durable wood | 1, 2 or 3 | Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau |

**R905.7.5 Application.** Wood shingles shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Wood shingles shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) between joints in courses, and no two joints in any three adjacent courses shall be in direct alignment. Spacing between shingles shall not be less than $^1/_4$ inch to $^3/_8$ inch (6 mm to 10 mm). Weather exposure for wood shingles shall not exceed those set in Table R905.7.5. Fasteners for wood shingles shall be corrosion resistant with a minimum penetration of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) in thickness, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Wood shingles shall be attached to the roof with two fasteners per shingle, positioned no more than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) from each edge and no more than 1 inch (25 mm) above the exposure line.

**TABLE R905.7.5**
**WOOD SHINGLE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE**

| ROOFING MATERIAL | LENGTH (inches) | GRADE | EXPOSURE (inches) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 3:12 pitch to < 4:12 | 4:12 pitch or steeper |
| Shingles of naturally durable wood | 16 | No. 1 | $3^3/_4$ | 5 |
| | | No. 2 | $3^1/_2$ | 4 |
| | | No. 3 | 3 | $3^1/_2$ |
| | 18 | No. 1 | $4^1/_4$ | $5^1/_2$ |
| | | No. 2 | 4 | $4^1/_2$ |
| | | No. 3 | $3^1/_2$ | 4 |
| | 24 | No. 1 | $5^3/_4$ | $7^1/_2$ |
| | | No. 2 | $5^1/_2$ | $6^1/_2$ |
| | | No. 3 | 5 | $5^1/_2$ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**R905.7.6 Valley flashing.** Roof flashing shall be not less than No. 26 gage [0.019 inches (0.5 mm)] corrosion-resistant sheet metal and shall extend 10 inches (254 mm) from the centerline each way for roofs having slopes less than 12 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (100-percent slope), and 7 inches (178 mm) from the centerline each way for slopes of 12 units vertical in 12 units horizontal and greater. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**R905.7.7 Label required.** Each bundle of shingles shall be identified by a *label* of an *approved* grading or inspection bureau or agency.

**R905.8 Wood shakes.** The installation of wood shakes shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.8.1 Deck requirements.** Wood shakes shall be used only on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall not be less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. Where 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches (254 mm) on center, additional 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) boards shall be installed between the sheathing boards.

**R905.8.1.1 Solid sheathing required.** In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less, solid sheathing is required on that portion of the roof requiring an ice barrier.

**R905.8.2 Deck slope.** Wood shakes shall only be used on slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater.

**R905.8.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D 226, Type I or ASTM D 4869, Type I or II.

**R905.8.3.1 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water as designated in Table R301.2(1), an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used in place of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached *accessory structures* that contain no *conditioned floor area*.

**R905.8.4 Interlayment.** Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D 226, Type I.

**R905.8.5 Material standards.** Wood shakes shall comply with the requirements of Table R905.8.5.

**TABLE R905.8.5**
**WOOD SHAKE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

| MATERIAL | MINIMUM GRADES | APPLICABLE GRADING RULES |
|---|---|---|
| Wood shakes of naturally durable wood | 1 | Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau |
| Taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood | 1 or 2 | Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau |
| Preservative-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood | 1 | Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau |
| Fire-retardant-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood | 1 | Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau |
| Preservative-treated taper sawn shakes of Southern pine treated in accordance with AWPA Standard U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 3B and Section 5.6) | 1 or 2 | Forest Products Laboratory of the Texas Forest Services |

**R905.8.6 Application.** Wood shakes shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Wood shakes shall be laid with a side lap not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes in the same course shall be $^3/_8$ inch to $^5/_8$ inch (9.5 mm to 15.9 mm) for shakes and tapersawn shakes of naturally durable wood and shall be $^3/_8$ inch to $^5/_8$ inch (9.5 mm to 15.9 mm) for preservative-treated taper sawn shakes. Weather exposure for wood shakes shall not exceed those set forth in Table R905.8.6. Fasteners for wood shakes shall be corrosion-resistant, with a minimum penetration of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) thick, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Wood shakes shall be attached to the roof with two fasteners per shake, positioned no more than 1 inch (25 mm) from each edge and no more than 2 inches (51 mm) above the exposure line.

**R905.8.7 Shake placement.** The starter course at the eaves shall be doubled and the bottom layer shall be either 15-inch (381 mm), 18-inch (457 mm) or 24-inch (610 mm) wood shakes or wood shingles. Fifteen-inch (381 mm) or 18-inch (457 mm) wood shakes may be used for the final course at the ridge. Shakes shall be interlaid with 18-inch-wide (457 mm) strips of not less than No. 30 felt shingled between each course in such a manner that no felt is exposed to the weather by positioning the lower edge of each felt strip above the butt end of the shake it covers a distance equal to twice the weather exposure.

**TABLE R905.8.6**
**WOOD SHAKE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE**

| ROOFING MATERIAL | LENGTH (inches) | GRADE | EXPOSURE (inches) 4:12 pitch or steeper |
|---|---|---|---|
| Shakes of naturally durable wood | 18 | No. 1 | $7^1/_2$ |
| | 24 | No. 1 | 10[a] |
| Preservative-treated taper sawn shakes of Southern Yellow Pine | 18 | No. 1 | $7^1/_2$ |
| | 24 | No. 1 | 10 |
| | 18 | No. 2 | $5^1/_2$ |
| | 24 | No. 2 | $7^1/_2$ |
| Taper-sawn shakes of naturally durable wood | 18 | No. 1 | $7^1/_2$ |
| | 24 | No. 1 | 10 |
| | 18 | No. 2 | $5^1/_2$ |
| | 24 | No. 2 | $7^1/_2$ |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For 24-inch by $^3/_8$-inch handsplit shakes, the maximum exposure is $7^1/_2$ inches.

**R905.8.8 Valley flashing.** Roof valley flashing shall not be less than No. 26 gage [0.019 inch (0.5 mm)] corrosion-resistant sheet metal and shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**R905.8.9 Label required.** Each bundle of shakes shall be identified by a *label* of an *approved* grading or inspection bureau or agency.

**R905.9 Built-up roofs.** The installation of built-up roofs shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.9.1 Slope.** Built-up roofs shall have a design slope of a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage, except for coal-tar built-up roofs, which shall have a design slope of a minimum one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

**R905.9.2 Material standards.** Built-up roof covering materials shall comply with the standards in Table R905.9.2.

**R905.9.3 Application.** Built-up roofs shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE R905.9.2**
**BUILT-UP ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS**

| MATERIAL STANDARD | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylic coatings used in roofing | ASTM D 6083 |
| Aggregate surfacing | ASTM D 1863 |
| Asphalt adhesive used in roofing | ASTM D 3747 |
| Asphalt cements used in roofing | ASTM D 3019; D 2822; D 4586 |
| Asphalt-coated glass fiber base sheet | ASTM D 4601 |
| Asphalt coatings used in roofing | ASTM D 1227; D 2823; D 2824; D 4479 |
| Asphalt glass felt | ASTM D 2178 |
| Asphalt primer used in roofing | ASTM D 41 |
| Asphalt-saturated and asphalt-coated organic felt base sheet | ASTM D 2626 |
| Asphalt-saturated organic felt (perforated) | ASTM D 226 |
| Asphalt used in roofing | ASTM D 312 |
| Coal-tar cements used in roofing | ASTM D 4022; D 5643 |
| Coal-tar primer used in roofing, dampproofing and waterproofing | ASTM D 43 |
| Coal-tar saturated organic felt | ASTM D 227 |
| Coal-tar used in roofing | ASTM D 450, Types I or II |
| Glass mat, coal tar | ASTM D 4990 |
| Glass mat, venting type | ASTM D 4897 |
| Mineral-surfaced inorganic cap sheet | ASTM D 3909 |
| Thermoplastic fabrics used in roofing | ASTM D 5665; D 5726 |

**R905.10 Metal roof panels.** The installation of metal roof panels shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.10.1 Deck requirements.** Metal roof panel roof coverings shall be applied to solid or spaced sheathing, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced supports.

**R905.10.2 Slope.** Minimum slopes for metal roof panels shall comply with the following:

1. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered-seam metal roofs without applied lap sealant shall be three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).
2. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered-seam metal roofs with applied lap sealant shall be one-half vertical unit in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope). Lap sealants shall be applied in accordance with the *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. The minimum slope for standing-seam roof systems shall be one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**R905.10.3 Material standards.** Metal-sheet roof covering systems that incorporate supporting structural members shall be designed in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Metal-sheet roof coverings installed over structural decking shall comply with Table R905.10.3(1). The materials used for metal-sheet roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses shown in Table R905.10.3(2).

**R905.10.4 Attachment.** Metal roof panels shall be secured to the supports in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's installation instructions, the following fasteners shall be used:

1. Galvanized fasteners shall be used for steel roofs.
2. Copper, brass, bronze, copper alloy and Three hundred series stainless steel fasteners shall be used for copper roofs.
3. Stainless steel fasteners are acceptable for metal roofs.

**R905.10.5 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE R905.10.3(2)**
**MINIMUM CORROSION RESISTANCE**

| | |
|---|---|
| 55% aluminum-zinc alloy coated steel | ASTM A 792 AZ 50 |
| 5% aluminum alloy-coated steel | ASTM A 875 GF60 |
| Aluminum-coated steel | ASTM A 463 T2 65 |
| Galvanized steel | ASTM A 653 G-90 |
| Prepainted steel | ASTM A 755[a] |

a. Paint systems in accordance with ASTM A 755 shall be applied over steel products with corrosion-resistant coatings complying with ASTM A 792, ASTM A 875, ASTM A 463, or ASTM A 653.

**TABLE R905.10.3(1)
METAL ROOF COVERINGS STANDARDS**

| ROOF COVERING TYPE | STANDARD APPLICATION RATE/THICKNESS |
|---|---|
| Galvanized steel | ASTM A 653 G90 Zinc coated |
| Stainless steel | ASTM A 240, 300 Series alloys |
| Steel | ASTM A 924 |
| Lead-coated copper | ASTM B 101 |
| Cold rolled copper | ASTM B 370 minimum 16 oz/square ft and 12 oz/square ft high yield copper for metal-sheet roof-covering systems; 12 oz/square ft for preformed metal shingle systems. |
| Hard lead | 2 lb/sq ft |
| Soft lead | 3 lb/sq ft |
| Aluminum | ASTM B 209, 0.024 minimum thickness for rollformed panels and 0.019 inch minimum thickness for pressformed shingles. |
| Terne (tin) and terne-coated stainless | Terne coating of 40 lb per double base box, field painted where applicable in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. |
| Zinc | 0.027 inch minimum thickness: 99.995% electrolytic high grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08 - 0.20%), titanium (0.07% - 0.12%) and aluminum (0.015%). |

For SI: 1 ounce per square foot = 0.305 kg/m$^2$, 1 pound per square foot = 4.214 kg/m$^2$, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

**R905.11 Modified bitumen roofing.** The installation of modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.11.1 Slope.** Modified bitumen membrane roofs shall have a design slope of a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

**R905.11.2 Material standards.** Modified bitumen roof coverings shall comply with the standards in Table R905.11.2.

**TABLE R905.11.2
MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylic coating | ASTM D 6083 |
| Asphalt adhesive | ASTM D 3747 |
| Asphalt cement | ASTM D 3019 |
| Asphalt coating | ASTM D 1227; D 2824 |
| Asphalt primer | ASTM D 41 |
| Modified bitumen roof membrane | ASTM D 6162; D 6163; D 6164; D 6222; D 6223; D 6298; CGSB 37–GP–56M |

**R905.11.3 Application.** Modified bitumen roofs shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R905.12 Thermoset single-ply roofing.** The installation of thermoset single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.12.1 Slope.** Thermoset single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

**R905.12.2 Material standards.** Thermoset single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D 4637, ASTM D 5019 or CGSB 37-GP-52M.

**R905.12.3 Application.** Thermoset single-ply roofs shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R905.13 Thermoplastic single-ply roofing.** The installation of thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.13.1 Slope.** Thermoplastic single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**R905.13.2 Material standards.** Thermoplastic single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D 4434, ASTM D 6754, ASTM D 6878, or CGSB CAN/CGSB 37.54.

**R905.13.3 Application.** Thermoplastic single-ply roofs shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R905.14 Sprayed polyurethane foam roofing.** The installation of sprayed polyurethane foam roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.14.1 Slope.** Sprayed polyurethane foam roofs shall have a design slope of a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

**R905.14.2 Material standards.** Spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation shall comply with ASTM C 1029, Type III or IV.

**R905.14.3 Application.** Foamed-in-place roof insulation shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions. A liquid-applied protective coating that complies with Section R905.15 shall be applied no less– than 2 hours nor more than 72 hours following the application of the foam.

**R905.14.4 Foam plastics.** Foam plastic materials and installation shall comply with Section R316.

**R905.15 Liquid-applied coatings.** The installation of liquid-applied coatings shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**R905.15.1 Slope.** Liquid-applied roofs shall have a design slope of a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**R905.15.2 Material standards.** Liquid-applied roof coatings shall comply with ASTM C 836, C 957, D 1227, D 3468, D 6083, D 6694 or D 6947.

**R905.15.3 Application.** Liquid-applied roof coatings shall be installed according to this chapter and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION R906
## ROOF INSULATION

**R906.1 General.** The use of above-deck thermal insulation shall be permitted provided such insulation is covered with an *approved* roof covering and passes FM 4450 or UL 1256.

**R906.2 Material standards.** Above-deck thermal insulation board shall comply with the standards in Table R906.2.

**TABLE R906.2**
**MATERIAL STANDARDS FOR ROOF INSULATION**

| | |
|---|---|
| Cellular glass board | ASTM C 552 |
| Composite boards | ASTM C 1289, Type III, IV, V or VI |
| Expanded polystyrene | ASTM C 578 |
| Extruded polystyrene board | ASTM C 578 |
| Perlite board | ASTM C 728 |
| Polyisocyanurate board | ASTM C 1289, Type I or Type II |
| Wood fiberboard | ASTM C 208 |

## SECTION R907
## REROOFING

**R907.1 General.** Materials and methods of application used for re-covering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 9.

**Exception:** Reroofing shall not be required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section R905 for roofs that provide positive roof drainage.

**R907.2 Structural and construction loads.** The structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the roof covering system.

**R907.3 Recovering versus replacement.** New roof coverings shall not be installed without first removing all existing layers of roof coverings where any of the following conditions exist:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water-soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.
2. Where the existing roof covering is wood shake, slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.
3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.
4. For asphalt shingles, when the building is located in an area subject to moderate or severe hail exposure according to Figure R903.5.

**Exceptions:**

1. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building's structural system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.
2. Installation of metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings over existing wood shake roofs shall be permitted when the application is in accordance with Section R907.4.
3. The application of new protective coating over existing spray polyurethane foam roofing systems shall be permitted without tear-off of existing roof coverings.

**R907.4 Roof recovering.** Where the application of a new roof covering over wood shingle or shake roofs creates a combustible concealed space, the entire existing surface shall be covered with gypsum board, mineral fiber, glass fiber or other *approved* materials securely fastened in place.

**R907.5 Reinstallation of materials.** Existing slate, clay or cement tile shall be permitted for reinstallation, except that damaged, cracked or broken slate or tile shall not be reinstalled. Existing vent flashing, metal edgings, drain outlets, collars and metal counterflashings shall not be reinstalled where rusted, damaged or deteriorated. Aggregate surfacing materials shall not be reinstalled.

**R907.6 Flashings.** Flashings shall be reconstructed in accordance with *approved* manufacturer's installation instructions. Metal flashing to which bituminous materials are to be adhered shall be primed prior to installation.

# CHAPTER 10

# CHIMNEYS AND FIREPLACES

## SECTION R1001 MASONRY FIREPLACES

**R1001.1 General.** Masonry fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with this section and the applicable provisions of Chapters 3 and 4.

**R1001.2 Footings and foundations.** Footings for masonry fireplaces and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or *solid masonry* at least 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the fireplace or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural, undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) below finished *grade*.

**R1001.2.1 Ash dump cleanout.** Cleanout openings located within foundation walls below fireboxes, when provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed except when in use. Cleanouts shall be accessible and located so that ash removal will not create a hazard to combustible materials.

**R1001.3 Seismic reinforcing.** Masonry or concrete chimneys in Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$ shall be reinforced. Reinforcing shall conform to the requirements set forth in Table R1001.1 and Section R609, Grouted Masonry.

**R1001.3.1 Vertical reinforcing.** For chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars shall be placed between wythes of *solid masonry* or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section R609. Grout shall be prevented from bonding with the flue liner so that the flue liner is free to move with thermal expansion. For chimneys more than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional flue incorporated into the chimney or for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

**R1001.3.2 Horizontal reinforcing.** Vertical reinforcement shall be placed within $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) ties, or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, placed in the bed joints according to Section R607 at a minimum of every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be installed at each bend in the vertical bars.

**R1001.4 Seismic anchorage.** Masonry or concrete chimneys in Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$ shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above *grade*, except where constructed completely within the exterior walls. Anchorage shall conform to the requirements of Section R1001.4.1.

**R1001.4.1 Anchorage.** Two $^3/_{16}$-inch by 1-inch (5 mm by 25 mm) straps shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to a minimum of four floor ceiling or floor joists or rafters with two $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) bolts.

**R1001.5 Firebox walls.** Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of *solid masonry* units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. When a lining of firebrick at least 2 inches (51 mm) thick or other *approved* lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and side walls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of *solid masonry*, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks shall not be greater than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm). When no lining is provided, the total minimum thickness of back and side walls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of *solid masonry*. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C 27 or C 1261 and shall be laid with medium duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C 199.

**R1001.5.1 Steel fireplace units.** Installation of steel fireplace units with *solid masonry* to form a masonry fireplace is permitted when installed either according to the requirements of their listing or according to the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining, shall be constructed with steel not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) thick, and an air circulating chamber which is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with *solid masonry* to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of *solid masonry* or concrete. Circulating air ducts used with steel fireplace units shall be constructed of metal or masonry.

**R1001.6 Firebox dimensions.** The firebox of a concrete or masonry fireplace shall have a minimum depth of 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) deep. The cross-sectional area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall not be less than the cross-sectional area of the flue.

**Exception:** Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is at least 12 inches (305 mm) and at least one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, that the throat is at least 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel and is at least $^1/_{20}$ the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

**[W] R1001.7 Lintel and throat.** Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) above the lintel.

**TABLE R1001.1**
**SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS FOR MASONRY FIREPLACES AND CHIMNEYS**

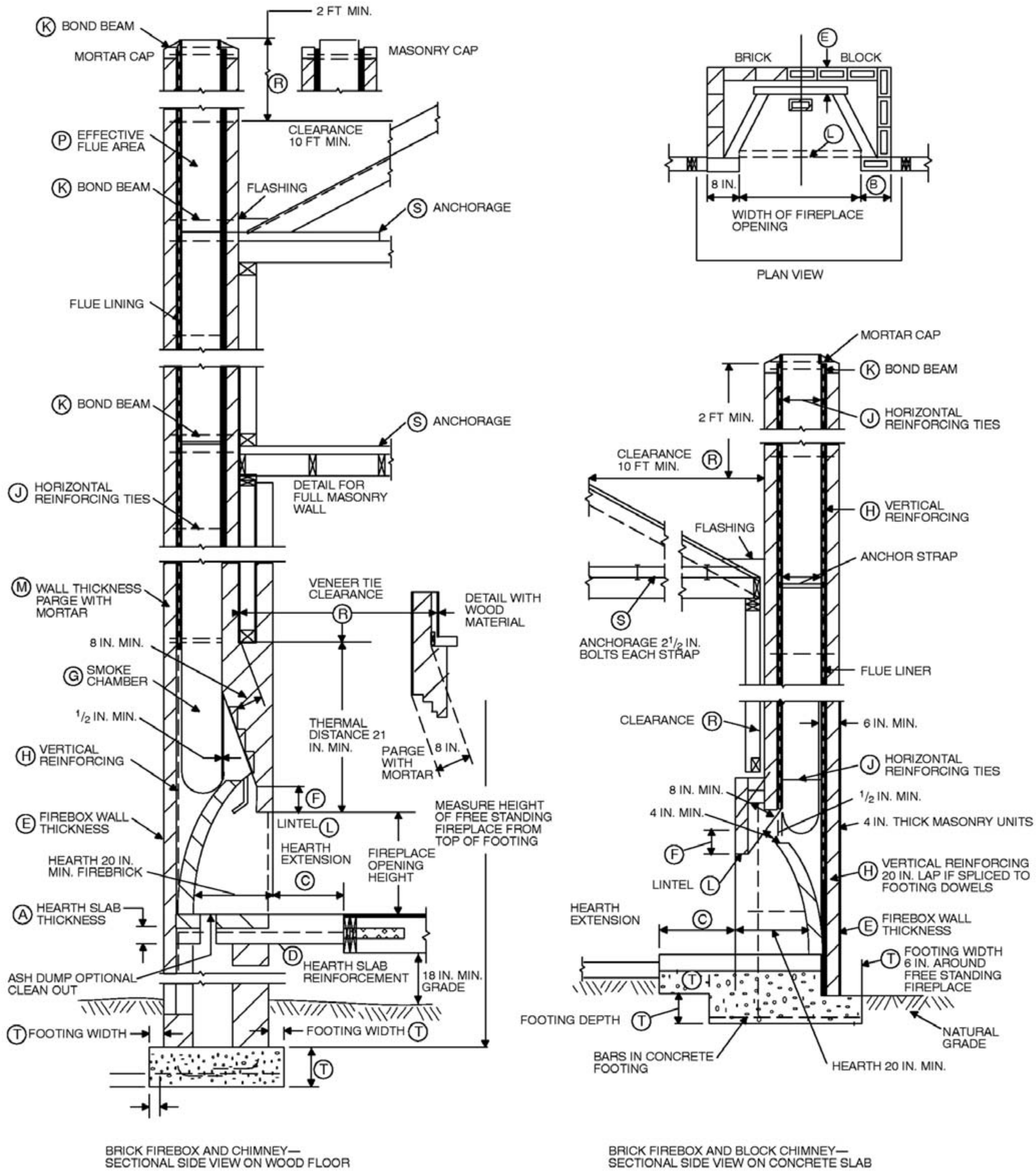
| ITEM | LETTER[a] | REQUIREMENTS |
|---|---|---|
| Hearth slab thickness | A | 4″ |
| Hearth extension<br>(each side of opening) | B | 8″ fireplace opening < 6 square foot.<br>12″ fireplace opening ≥ 6 square foot. |
| Hearth extension<br>(front of opening) | C | 16″ fireplace opening < 6 square foot.<br>20″ fireplace opening ≥ 6 square foot. |
| Hearth slab reinforcing | D | Reinforced to carry its own weight and all imposed loads. |
| Thickness of wall of firebox | E | 10″ solid brick or 8″ where a firebrick lining is used. Joints in firebrick $^{1}/_{4}$″ maximum. |
| Distance from top of opening to throat | F | 8″ |
| Smoke chamber wall thickness<br>Unlined walls | G | 6″<br>8″ |
| Chimney<br>Vertical reinforcing[b] | H | Four No. 4 full-length bars for chimney up to 40″ wide. Add two No. 4 bars for each additional 40″ or fraction of width or each additional flue. |
| Horizontal reinforcing | J | $^{1}/_{4}$″ ties at 18″ and two ties at each bend in vertical steel. |
| Bond beams | K | No specified requirements. |
| Fireplace lintel | L | Noncombustible material. |
| Chimney walls with flue lining | M | Solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with at least 4 inch nominal thickness. |
| Distances between adjacent flues | — | See Section R1003.13. |
| Effective flue area (based on area of fireplace opening) | P | See Section R1003.15. |
| Clearances:<br>Combustible material<br>Mantel and trim<br>Above roof | R | <br>See Sections R1001.11 and R1003.18.<br>See Section R1001.11, Exception 4.<br>3′ at roofline and 2′ at 10′. |
| Anchorage[b]<br>Strap<br>Number<br>Embedment into chimney<br>Fasten to<br>Bolts | S | <br>$^{3}/_{16}$″ × 1″<br>Two<br>12″ hooked around outer bar with 6″ extension.<br>4 joists<br>Two $^{1}/_{2}$″ diameter. |
| Footing<br>Thickness<br>Width | T | <br>12″ min.<br>6″ each side of fireplace wall. |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 $m^2$.

**Note:** This table provides a summary of major requirements for the construction of masonry chimneys and fireplaces. Letter references are to Figure R1001.1, which shows examples of typical construction. This table does not cover all requirements, nor does it cover all aspects of the indicated requirements. For the actual mandatory requirements of the code, see the indicated section of text.

a. The letters refer to Figure R1001.1.

b. Not required in Seismic Design Category A, B or C.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE R1001.1**
**FIREPLACE AND CHIMNEY DETAILS**

**R1001.7.1 Damper.** Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located at least 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or the chimney venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace.

Fireplaces shall be provided with each of the following:

1. Tightly fitting flue dampers, operated by a readily accessible manual or *approved* automatic control.

   **Exception:** Fireplaces with gas logs shall be installed in accordance with *International Mechanical Code* Section 901, except that the standards for liquefied petroleum gas installations shall be NFPA 58 (*Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*) and NFPA 54 (*National Fuel Gas Code*).

2. An outside source for combustion air ducted into the firebox. The duct shall be at least 6 square inches (0.004 m$^2$), and shall be provided with an operable outside air duct damper.

   **Exception:** Washington certified fireplaces shall be installed with the combustion air systems necessary for their safe and efficient combustion and specified by the manufacturer in accordance with Washington State Building Standard 31-2 (WAC 51-50-31200) and *International Building Code* Section 2114.

3. Site built fireplaces shall have tight fitting glass or metal doors, or a flue draft induction fan or as *approved* for minimizing backdrafting. Factory built fireplaces shall use doors listed for the installed appliance.

**R1001.8 Smoke chamber.** Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of *solid masonry* units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. The total minimum thickness of front, back and side walls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of *solid masonry*. The inside surface shall be parged smooth with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C 199. When a lining of firebrick at least 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay at least $^5/_8$ inch (16 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and side walls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of *solid masonry*, including the lining. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C 1261 and shall be laid with medium duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C 199. Vitrified clay linings shall conform to ASTM C 315.

**R1001.8.1 Smoke chamber dimensions.** The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall not be greater than the inside width of the fireplace opening. The inside surface of the smoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from vertical when prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or when the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. When the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

**R1001.9 Hearth and hearth extension.** Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by noncombustible materials, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. No combustible material shall remain against the underside of hearths and hearth extensions after construction.

**R1001.9.1 Hearth thickness.** The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

**R1001.9.2 Hearth extension thickness.** The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

**Exception:** When the bottom of the firebox opening is raised at least 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than $^3/_8$-inch-thick (10 mm) brick, concrete, stone, tile or other *approved* noncombustible material is permitted.

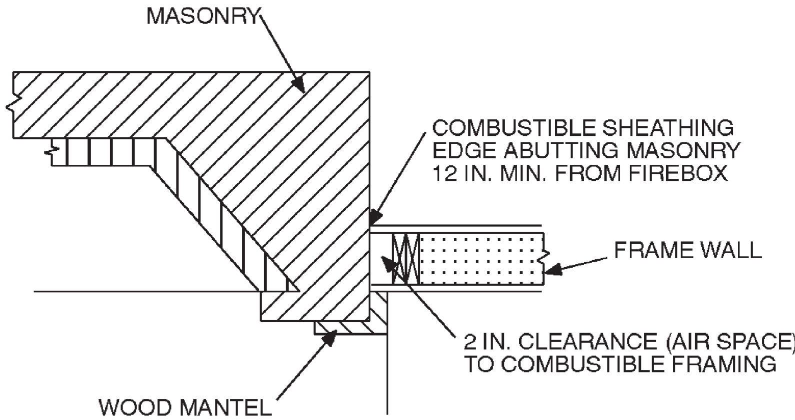
**R1001.10 Hearth extension dimensions.** Hearth extensions shall extend at least 16 inches (406 mm) in front of and at least 8 inches (203 mm) beyond each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplace opening is 6 square feet (0.6 m$^2$) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend at least 20 inches (508 mm) in front of and at least 12 inches (305 mm) beyond each side of the fireplace opening.

**R1001.11 Fireplace clearance.** All wood beams, joists, studs and other combustible material shall have a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The air space shall not be filled, except to provide fire blocking in accordance with Section R1001.12.

**Exceptions:**

1. Masonry fireplaces *listed* and *labeled* for use in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. When masonry fireplaces are part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials such as wood siding, flooring and drywall shall be permitted to abut the masonry fireplace side walls and hearth extension in accordance with Figure R1001.11, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
4. Exposed combustible mantels or trim may be placed directly on the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening providing such combustible materials are not placed within 6 inches (152 mm) of a fireplace opening. Combustible material within 12 inches (306 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such an opening.

**R1001.12 Fireplace fireblocking.** Fireplace fireblocking shall comply with the provisions of Section R602.8.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R1001.11**
**CLEARANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLES**

## SECTION R1002
## MASONRY HEATERS

**R1002.1 Definition.** A masonry heater is a heating *appliance* constructed of concrete or *solid masonry*, hereinafter referred to as masonry, which is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid-fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox may include flow in a horizontal or downward direction before entering the chimney and which delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

**R1002.2 Installation.** Masonry heaters shall be installed in accordance with this section and comply with one of the following:

1. Masonry heaters shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E 1602; or
2. Masonry heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1482 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R1002.3 Footings and foundation.** The firebox floor of a masonry heater shall be a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) of noncombustible material and be supported on a noncombustible footing and foundation in accordance with Section R1003.2.

**R1002.4 Seismic reinforcing.** In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$, masonry heaters shall be anchored to the masonry foundation in accordance with Section R1003.3. Seismic reinforcing shall not be required within the body of a masonry heater whose height is equal to or less than 3.5 times it's body width and where the masonry chimney serving the heater is not supported by the body of the heater. Where the masonry chimney shares a common wall with the facing of the masonry heater, the chimney portion of the structure shall be reinforced in accordance with Section R1003.

**R1002.5 Masonry heater clearance.** Combustible materials shall not be placed within 36 inches (914 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater in accordance with NFPA 211 Section 8-7 (clearances for solid-fuel-burning *appliances*), and the required space between the heater and combustible material shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

**Exceptions:**

1. When the masonry heater wall is at least 8 inches (203 mm) thick of *solid masonry* and the wall of the heat exchange channels is at least 5 inches (127 mm) thick of *solid masonry*, combustible materials shall not be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater. A clearance of at least 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.
2. Masonry heaters tested and listed by an American National Standards Association (ANSI)-accredited laboratory to the requirements of UL1482 may be installed in accordance with the listing specifications and the manufacturer's written instructions.

## SECTION R1003
## MASONRY CHIMNEYS

**R1003.1 Definition.** A masonry chimney is a chimney constructed of *solid masonry* units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete, hereinafter referred to as masonry. Masonry chimneys shall be constructed, anchored, supported and reinforced as required in this chapter.

**R1003.2 Footings and foundations.** Footings for masonry chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or *solid masonry* at least 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) below finished *grade*.

**R1003.3 Seismic reinforcing.** Masonry or concrete chimneys shall be constructed, anchored, supported and reinforced as required in this chapter. In Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$ masonry and concrete chimneys shall be reinforced and anchored as detailed in Section R1003.3.1, R1003.3.2 and

R1003.4. In Seismic Design Category A, B or C, reinforcement and seismic anchorage is not required.

**R1003.3.1 Vertical reinforcing.** For chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars, anchored in the foundation, shall be placed in the concrete, or between wythes of *solid masonry*, or within the cells of hollow unit masonry, and grouted in accordance with Section R609.1.1. Grout shall be prevented from bonding with the flue liner so that the flue liner is free to move with thermal expansion. For chimneys more than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be installed for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

**R1003.3.2 Horizontal reinforcing.** Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) ties, or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete, or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry, at a minimum of every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be installed at each bend in the vertical bars.

**R1003.4 Seismic anchorage.** Masonry and concrete chimneys and foundations in Seismic Design Category $D_0$, $D_1$ or $D_2$ shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above *grade*, except where constructed completely within the exterior walls. Anchorage shall conform to the requirements in Section R1003.4.1.

**R1003.4.1 Anchorage.** Two $^3/_{16}$-inch by 1-inch (5 mm by 25 mm) straps shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to a minimum of four floor joists with two $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) bolts.

**R1003.5 Corbeling.** Masonry chimneys shall not be corbeled more than one-half of the chimney's wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick unless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second *story* of a two-story *dwelling*, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls may equal the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

**R1003.6 Changes in dimension.** The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

**R1003.7 Offsets.** Where a masonry chimney is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centerline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the center of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an *approved* manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply. Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section R1003.5.

**R1003.8 Additional load.** Chimneys shall not support loads other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Construction of masonry chimneys as part of the masonry walls or reinforced concrete walls of the building shall be permitted.

**R1003.9 Termination.** Chimneys shall extend at least 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall not be less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

**R1003.9.1 Spark arrestors.** Where a spark arrestor is installed on a masonry chimney, the spark arrestor shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the arrestor shall not be less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.
2. The arrestor screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.
3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter less than $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).
4. The spark arrestor shall be accessible for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.

**R1003.10 Wall thickness.** Masonry chimney walls shall be constructed of *solid masonry* units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than a 4-inch (102 mm) nominal thickness.

**R1003.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys.** Where masonry is used to veneer a frame chimney, through-flashing and weep holes shall be installed as required by Section R703.

**R1003.11 Flue lining (material).** Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of *appliance* connected, according to the terms of the *appliance* listing and manufacturer's instructions.

**R1003.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general).** Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C 315.
2. Listed chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units listed for installation within masonry chimneys.
4. Other *approved* materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

**R1003.11.2 Flue linings for specific appliances.** Flue linings other than these covered in Section R1003.11.1, intended for use with specific types of *appliances*, shall comply with Sections R1003.11.3 through R1003.11.6.

**R1003.11.3 Gas appliances.** Flue lining systems for gas *appliances* shall be in accordance with Chapter 24.

**R1003.11.4 Pellet fuel-burning appliances.** Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with pellet fuel-burning *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section R1003.11.1.
2. Pellet vents listed for installation within masonry chimneys. (See Section R1003.11.6 for marking.)

**R1003.11.5 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with Type L vent.** Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with oil-fired *appliances approved* for use with Type L vent shall be limited to the following:

1. Flue lining systems complying with Section R1003.11.1.
2. Listed chimney liners complying with UL 641. (See Section R1003.11.6 for marking.)

**R1003.11.6 Notice of usage.** When a flue is relined with a material not complying with Section R1003.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a *label* attached to a wall, ceiling or other conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The *label* shall include the following message or equivalent language:

THIS CHIMNEY FLUE IS FOR USE ONLY WITH [TYPE OR CATEGORY OF *APPLIANCE*] *APPLIANCES* THAT BURN [TYPE OF FUEL]. DO NOT CONNECT OTHER TYPES OF *APPLIANCES*.

**R1003.12 Clay flue lining (installation).** Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C 1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a maximum slope no greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty water insoluble refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C 199 with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an air space or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue liners shall be supported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

**R1003.12.1 Listed materials.** *Listed* materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and manufacturer's instructions.

**R1003.12.2 Space around lining.** The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other *appliance*.

**Exception:** This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R1003.13 Multiple flues.** When two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be at least 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

**Exception:** When venting only one *appliance*, two flues may adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered at least 4 inches (102 mm).

**R1003.14 Flue area (appliance).** Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than that of the area of the connector from the *appliance* [see Tables R1003.14(1) and R1003.14(2)]. The sizing of a chimney flue to which multiple *appliance* venting systems are connected shall be in accordance with Section M1805.3.

**TABLE R1003.14(1)**
**NET CROSS–SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUE SIZES[a]**

| FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches) | CROSS–SECTIONAL AREA (square inches) |
|---|---|
| 6 | 28 |
| 7 | 38 |
| 8 | 50 |
| 10 | 78 |
| $10^3/_4$ | 90 |
| 12 | 113 |
| 15 | 176 |
| 18 | 254 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$.

a. Flue sizes are based on ASTM C 315.

**TABLE R1003.14(2)**
**NET CROSS–SECTIONAL AREA**
**OF SQUARE AND RECTANGULAR FLUE SIZES**

| FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches) | CROSS–SECTIONAL AREA (square inches) |
|---|---|
| 4.5 × 8.5 | 23 |
| 4.5 × 13 | 34 |
| 8 × 8 | 42 |
| 8.5 × 8.5 | 49 |
| 8 × 12 | 67 |
| 8.5 × 13 | 76 |
| 12 × 12 | 102 |
| 8.5 × 18 | 101 |
| 13 × 13 | 127 |
| 12 × 16 | 131 |
| 13 × 18 | 173 |
| 16 × 16 | 181 |
| 16 × 20 | 222 |
| 18 × 18 | 233 |
| 20 × 20 | 298 |
| 20 × 24 | 335 |
| 24 × 24 | 431 |

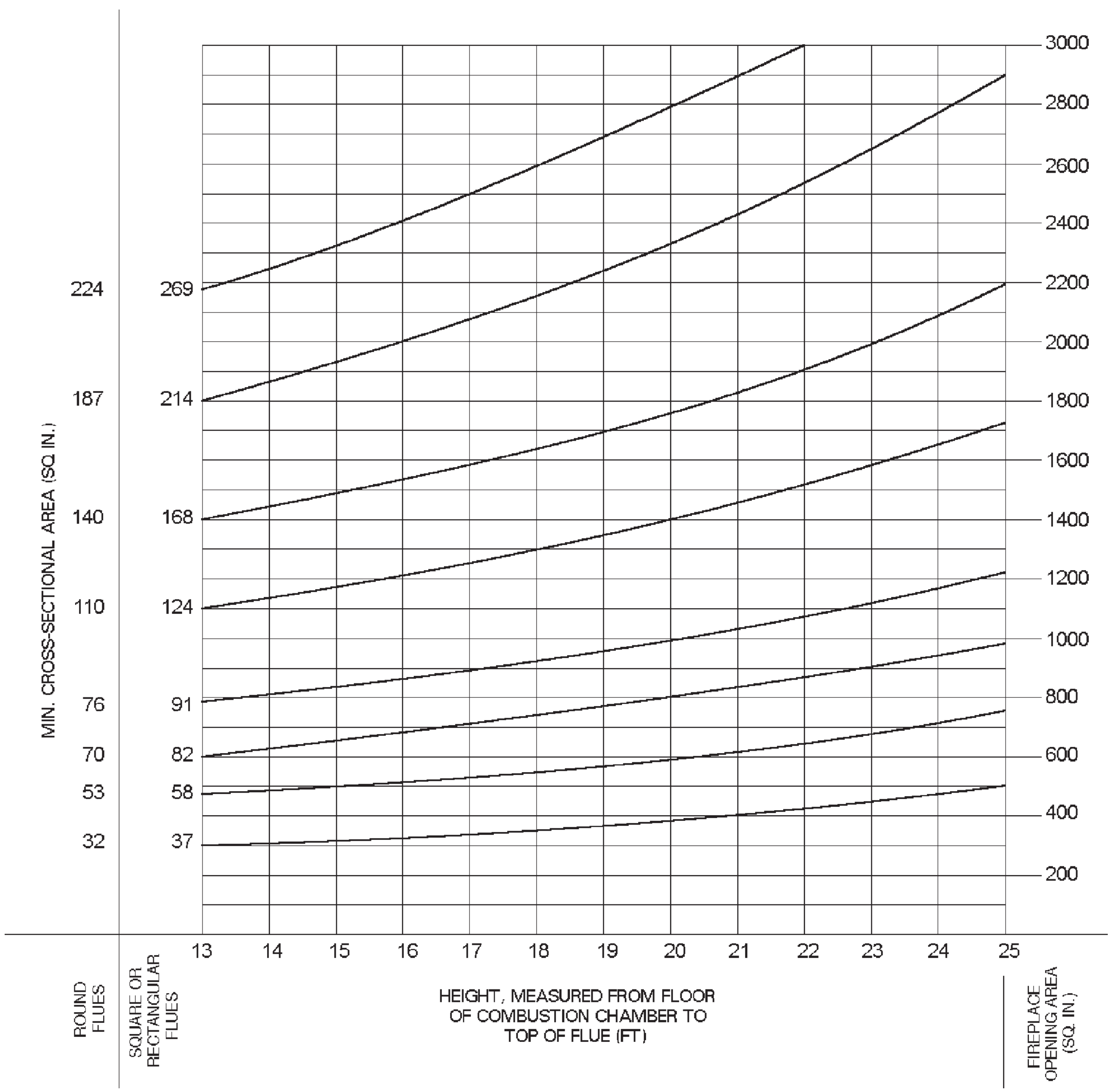
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$.

**R1003.15 Flue area (masonry fireplace).** Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section R1003.15.1 or Section R1003.15.2.

**R1003.15.1 Option 1.** Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of at least $^1/_{12}$ of the fireplace opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of $^1/_{10}$ of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an *aspect ratio* less than 2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of $^1/_{10}$ of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an *aspect ratio* of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of $^1/_8$ of the fireplace opening. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are shown in Tables R1003.14(1) and R1003.14(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field.

**R1003.15.2 Option 2.** The minimum net cross-sectional area of the chimney flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure R1003.15.2. A flue size providing at least the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are shown in Tables R1003.14(1) and R1003.14(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.

**R1003.16 Inlet.** Inlets to masonry chimneys shall enter from the side. Inlets shall have a thimble of fireclay, rigid refractory material or metal that will prevent the connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$.

**FIGURE R1003.15.2**
**FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS**

**R1003.17 Masonry chimney cleanout openings.** Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches (152 mm) of the base of each flue within every masonry chimney. The upper edge of the cleanout shall be located at least 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The height of the opening shall be at least 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

**Exception:** Chimney flues serving masonry fireplaces where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

**R1003.18 Chimney clearances.** Any portion of a masonry chimney located in the interior of the building or within the exterior wall of the building shall have a minimum air space clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51 mm). Chimneys located entirely outside the exterior walls of the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum air space clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The air space shall not be filled, except to provide fire blocking in accordance with Section R1003.19.

**Exceptions:**

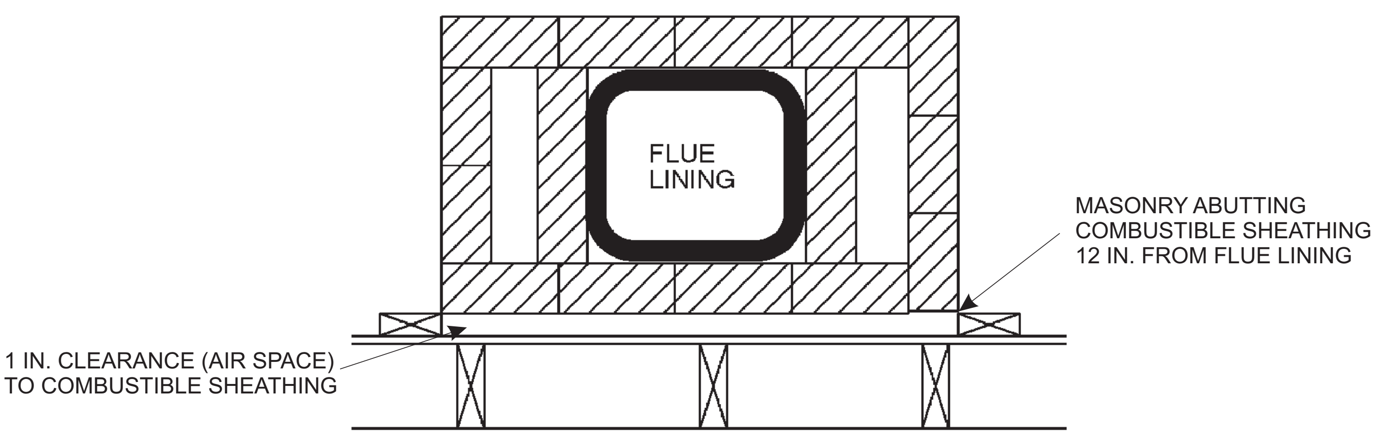
1. Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system listed and *labeled* for use in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. When masonry chimneys are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding and flooring, shall be permitted to abut the masonry chimney side walls, in accordance with Figure R1003.18, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining. Combustible material and trim shall not overlap the corners of the chimney by more than 1 inch (25 mm).

**R1003.19 Chimney fireblocking.** All spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between chimneys and wood joists, beams or headers shall be self-supporting or be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

**R1003.20 Chimney crickets.** Chimneys shall be provided with crickets when the dimension parallel to the ridgeline is greater than 30 inches (762 mm) and does not intersect the ridgeline. The intersection of the cricket and the chimney shall be flashed and counterflashed in the same manner as normal roof-chimney intersections. Crickets shall be constructed in compliance with Figure R1003.20 and Table R1003.20.

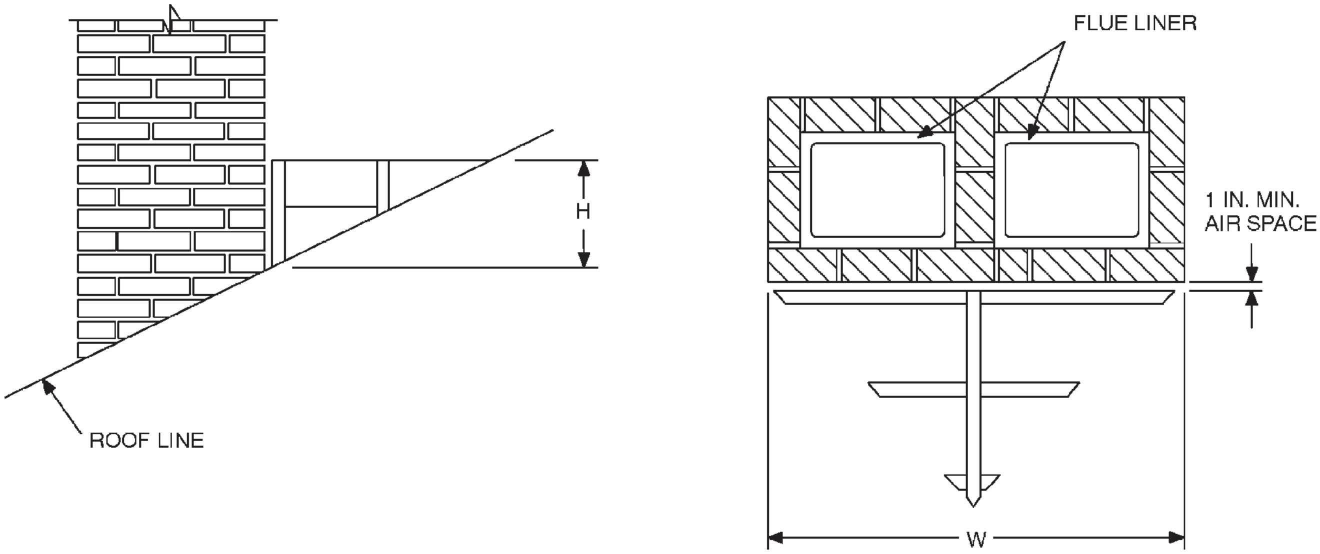
**TABLE R1003.20**
**CRICKET DIMENSIONS**

| ROOF SLOPE | H |
|---|---|
| 12 - 12 | $^1/_2$ of W |
| 8 - 12 | $^1/_3$ of W |
| 6 - 12 | $^1/_4$ of W |
| 4 - 12 | $^1/_6$ of W |
| 3 - 12 | $^1/_8$ of W |




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R1003.18**
**CLEARANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLES**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE R1003.20**
**CHIMNEY CRICKET**

## SECTION R1004
## FACTORY-BUILT FIREPLACES

**R1004.1 General.** Factory-built fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the *listing*. Factory-built fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 127.

**[W] R1004.1.1 Emission standards for factory-built fireplaces.** After January 1, 1997, no new or used factory-built fireplace shall be installed in Washington state unless it is certified and labeled in accordance with procedures and criteria specified in the *Washington State Building Code* Standard 31-2. To certify an entire fireplace model line, the internal assembly shall be tested to determine its particulate matter emission performance. Retesting and recertifying is required if the design and construction specifications of the fireplace model line internal assembly change. Testing for certification shall be performed by a Washington State Department of Ecology approved and United States Environmental Protection Agency accredited laboratory.

**[W] R1004.1.2 Emission standards for certified masonry and concrete fireplaces.** After January 1, 1997, new certified masonry or concrete fireplaces installed in Washington state shall be tested and labeled in accordance with procedures and criteria specified in the *Washington State Building Code* Standard 31-2.

To certify an entire fireplace model line, the internal assembly shall be tested to determine its particulate matter emission performance. Retesting and recertifying is required if the design and construction specifications of the fireplace model line internal assembly change. Testing for certification shall be performed by a Washington State Department of Ecology approved and United States Environmental Protection Agency accredited laboratory.

**R1004.2 Hearth extensions.** Hearth extensions of *approved* factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the *listing* of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area.

**R1004.3 Decorative shrouds.** Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of chimneys for factory-built fireplaces except where the shrouds are listed and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built fireplace system and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R1004.4 Unvented gas log heaters.** An unvented gas log heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

## SECTION R1005
## FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

**R1005.1 Listing.** Factory-built chimneys shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R1005.2 Decorative shrouds.** Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built chimneys except where the shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built chimney system and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**R1005.3 Solid-fuel appliances.** Factory-built chimneys installed in *dwelling units* with solid-fuel-burning *appliances* shall comply with the Type HT requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Type HT and "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance* Chimney."

**Exception:** Chimneys for use with open combustion chamber fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance* Chimney."

Chimneys for use with open combustion chamber *appliances* installed in buildings other than *dwelling units* shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Building Heating *Appliance* Chimney" or "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance* Chimney."

**R1005.4 Factory-built fireplaces.** Chimneys for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.

**R1005.5 Support.** Where factory-built chimneys are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, those members shall be designed to support the additional load.

**R1005.6 Medium-heat *appliances*.** Factory-built chimneys for medium-heat *appliances* producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000°F (538°C), measured at the entrance to the chimney shall comply with UL 959.

## SECTION R1006 EXTERIOR AIR SUPPLY

**R1006.1 Exterior air.** Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this chapter shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to assure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

((~~**R1006.1.1 Factory-built fireplaces.** Exterior *combustion air* ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be a *listed* component of the fireplace and shall be installed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.~~))

((~~**R1006.1.2 Masonry fireplaces.** *Listed combustion air* ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed according to the terms of their *listing* and the manufacturer's instructions.~~))

((~~**R1006.2 Exterior air intake.** The exterior air intake shall be capable of supplying all *combustion air* from the exterior of the *dwelling* or from spaces within the *dwelling* ventilated with outside air such as nonmechanically ventilated crawl or *attic* spaces. The exterior air intake shall not be located within the garage or *basement* of the *dwelling* nor shall the air intake be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of 1/4-inch (6 mm) mesh.~~))

**[W] R1006.2 Solid-fuel-burning appliances and fireplaces.** Solid-fuel-burning appliances and fireplaces shall be provided with tight-fitting metal or ceramic glass doors, and:

1. A source from outside the structure of primary combustion air, connected to the appliance as per manufacturer's specification. The air inlet shall originate at a point below the fire box. The duct shall be 4 inches (101.6 mm) or greater in diameter, not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in length, and be installed as per manufacturer's instructions; or
2. The appliance and manufacturer's recommended combustion air supply, as an installed unit, shall be certified by an independent testing laboratory to have passed Test No. 11-Negative Pressure Test, Section 12.3, of ULC S627-M1984 "Space Heaters for Use with Solid Fuels," modified as follows:
   1. Negative pressure of 8 Pascal shall be initially established with the chamber sealed and the air supply, if not directly connected to the appliance, closed off.
   2. The air supply, if not directly connected to the appliance, shall then be opened.
   3. The maximum allowable air exchange rate from chamber leakage and intentional air supply for the unit (appliance with combustion air supply) in the test chamber is 3.5 air changes per hour, or 28 cfm (cubic feet of air per minute), whichever is less.

**Exception:** Combustion air may be supplied to the room in which the solid-fuel-burning appliance is located in lieu of direct ducting, provided that one of the following conditions is met:

1. The solid-fuel-burning appliance is part of a central heating plant and installed in an unconditioned space in conformance with the *International Mechanical Code*; or
2. The solid-fuel-burning appliance is installed in existing construction directly on a concrete floor or surrounded by masonry materials as in a fireplace. The combustion air terminus shall be located as close to the solid-fuel-burning appliance as possible and shall be provided with a barometric damper or equivalent. The combustion air source shall be specified by the manufacturer or no less than 4 inches (101.6 mm) in diameter or the equivalent in area or as *approved*.

**R1006.3 Clearance.** Unlisted *combustion air* ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

**R1006.4 Passageway.** The *combustion air* passageway shall be a minimum of 6 square inches (3870 mm$^2$) and not more than 55 square inches (0.035 m$^2$), except that *combustion air* systems for listed fireplaces shall be constructed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

**R1006.5 Outlet.** Locating the exterior air outlet in the back or sides of the firebox chamber or within 24 inches (610 mm) of the firebox opening on or near the floor is permitted. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

# CHAPTER 11

# ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Chapter 11 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Washington State Energy Code with Seattle Amendments* for regulations pertaining to energy efficiency.

# Part IV—Energy Conservation

## CHAPTER 11
# ENERGY EFFICIENCY

### SECTION N1101
### GENERAL

**N1101.1 Scope.** This chapter regulates the energy efficiency for the design and construction of buildings regulated by this code.

> **Exception:** Portions of the building envelope that do not enclose *conditioned space*.

**N1101.2 Compliance.** Compliance shall be demonstrated by either meeting the requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code* or meeting the requirements of this chapter. Climate zones from Figure N1101.2 or Table N1101.2 shall be used in determining the applicable requirements from this chapter.

**N1101.2.1 Warm humid counties.** Warm humid counties are identified in Table N1101.2 by an asterisk.

**N1101.3 Identification.** Materials, systems and *equipment* shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this chapter.

**N1101.4 Building thermal envelope insulation.** An *R*-value identification *mark* shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or more wide. Alternately, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown or sprayed insulation (fiberglass and cellulose), the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be listed on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the area covered and *R*-value of installed thickness shall be listed on the certificate. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certificate in a conspicuous location on the job site.

**N1101.4.1 Blown or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation.** The thickness of blown in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation (fiberglass or cellulose) shall be written in inches (mm) on markers that are installed at least one for every 300 $ft^2$ (28 $m^2$) throughout the *attic* space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) high. Each marker shall face the *attic* access opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed *R*-value shall be listed on the certificate provided by the insulation installer.

**N1101.4.2 Insulation mark installation.** Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value *mark* is readily observable upon inspection.

**N1101.5 Fenestration product rating.** *U*-factors of fenestration products (windows, doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled* *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Tables N1101.5(1) and N1101.5(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled* SHGC shall be assigned a default SHGC from Table N1101.5(3).

**N1101.6 Insulation product rating.** The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the CFR Title 16, Part 460, in units of $h \cdot ft^2 \cdot °F/Btu$ at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

**N1101.7 Installation.** All materials, systems and *equipment* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the provisions of this code.

**N1101.7.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation.** Insulation applied to the exterior of *basement* walls, crawl space walls, and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) below *grade*.

**N1101.8 Above code programs.** The *building official* or other authority having *jurisdiction* shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy efficiency program to exceed the energy efficiency required by this chapter. Buildings *approved* in writing by such an energy efficiency program shall be considered in compliance with this chapter.

**N1101.9 Certificate.** A permanent certificate shall be posted on or in the electrical distribution panel. The certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory *label*, service disconnect *label* or other required *labels*. The certificate shall be completed by the builder or registered *design professional*. The certificate shall list the predominant *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceiling/roof, walls, foundation (slab, *basement wall*, crawlspace wall and/or floor) and ducts outside *conditioned spaces*; *U*-factors for fenestration; and the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of fenestration. Where there is more than one value for each component, the certificate shall list the value covering the largest area. The certificate shall list the types and efficiencies of heating, cooling and service water heating *equipment*. Where a gas-fired unvented room heater, electric furnace and/or baseboard electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall list "gas-fired unvented room heater," "electric furnace" or "baseboard electric heater," as appropriate. An efficiency shall not be listed for gas-fired unvented room heaters, electric furnaces or electric base board heaters.

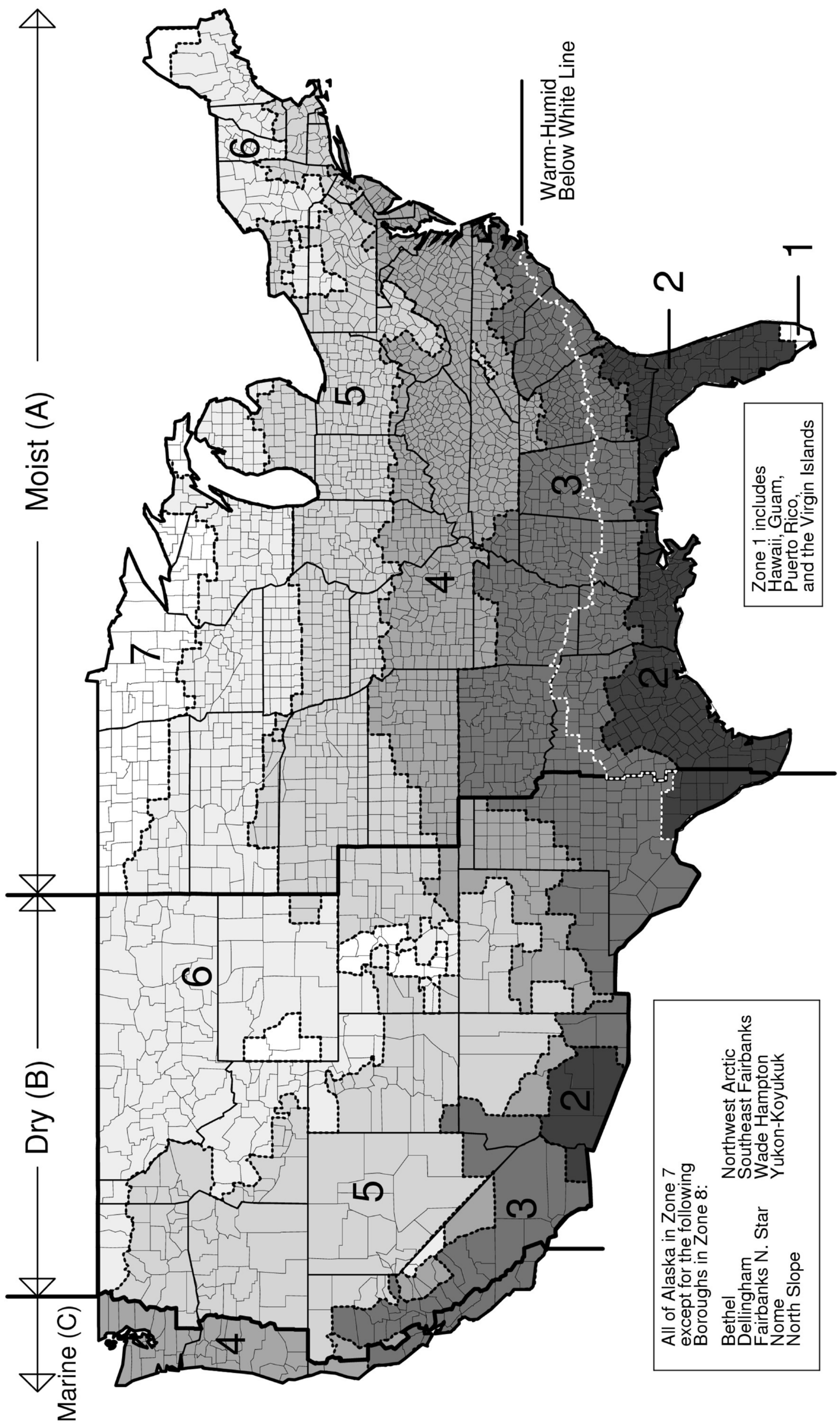



**FIGURE N1101.2**
**CLIMATE ZONES**

**TABLE N1101.2**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

**UNITED STATES**

**Alabama**

| | |
|---|---|
| 3A | Autauga* |
| 2A | Baldwin* |
| 3A | Barbour* |
| 3A | Bibb |
| 3A | Blount |
| 3A | Bullock* |
| 3A | Butler* |
| 3A | Calhoun |
| 3A | Chambers |
| 3A | Cherokee |
| 3A | Chilton |
| 3A | Choctaw* |
| 3A | Clarke* |
| 3A | Clay |
| 3A | Cleburne |
| 3A | Coffee* |
| 3A | Colbert |
| 3A | Conecuh* |
| 3A | Coosa |
| 3A | Covington* |
| 3A | Crenshaw* |
| 3A | Cullman |
| 3A | Dale* |
| 3A | Dallas* |
| 3A | Dekalb |
| 3A | Elmore* |
| 3A | Escambia* |
| 3A | Etowah |
| 3A | Fayette |
| 3A | Franklin |
| 3A | Geneva* |
| 3A | Greene |
| 3A | Hale |
| 3A | Henry* |
| 3A | Houston* |
| 3A | Jackson |
| 3A | Jefferson |
| 3A | Lamar |
| 3A | Lauderdale |
| 3A | Lawrence |
| 3A | Lee |
| 3A | Limestone |
| 3A | Lowndes* |
| 3A | Macon* |
| 3A | Madison |
| 3A | Marengo* |
| 3A | Marion |
| 3A | Marshall |
| 2A | Mobile* |
| 3A | Monroe* |
| 3A | Montgomery* |
| 3A | Morgan |
| 3A | Perry* |
| 3A | Pickens |
| 3A | Pike |
| 3A | Randolph |
| 3A | Russell* |
| 3A | Shelby |
| 3A | St. Clair |
| 3A | Sumter |
| 3A | Talladega |
| 3A | Tallapoosa |
| 3A | Tuscaloosa |
| 3A | Walker |
| 3A | Washington* |
| 3A | Wilcox* |
| 3A | Winston |

**Alaska**

| | |
|---|---|
| 7 | Aleutians East |
| 7 | Aleutians West |
| 7 | Anchorage |
| 8 | Bethel |
| 7 | Bristol Bay |
| 7 | Denali |
| 8 | Dillingham |
| 8 | Fairbanks North Star |
| 7 | Haines |
| 7 | Juneau |
| 7 | Kenai Peninsula |
| 7 | Ketchikan Gateway |
| 7 | Kodiak Island |
| 7 | Lake and Peninsula |
| 7 | Matanuska-Susitna |
| 8 | Nome |
| 8 | North Slope |
| 8 | Northwest Arctic |
| 7 | Prince of Wales-Outer ketchikan |
| 7 | Sitka |
| 7 | Skagway-Hoonah-Angoon |
| 8 | Southeast Fairbanks |
| 7 | Valdez-Cordova |
| 8 | Wade Hampton |
| 7 | Wrangell-Petersburg |
| 7 | Yakutat |
| 8 | Yukon-Koyukuk |

**Arizona**

| | |
|---|---|
| 5B | Apache |
| 3B | Cochise |
| 5B | Coconino |
| 4B | Gila |
| 3B | Graham |
| 3B | Greenlee |
| 2B | La Paz |
| 2B | Maricopa |
| 3B | Mohave |
| 5B | Navajo |
| 2B | Pima |
| 2B | Pinal |
| 3B | Santa Cruz |
| 4B | Yavapai |
| 2B | Yuma |

**Arkansas**

| | |
|---|---|
| 3A | Arkansas |
| 3A | Ashley |
| 4A | Baxter |
| 4A | Benton |
| 4A | Boone |
| 3A | Bradley |
| 3A | Calhoun |
| 4A | Carroll |
| 3A | Chicot |
| 3A | Clark |
| 3A | Clay |
| 3A | Cleburne |
| 3A | Cleveland |
| 3A | Columbia* |
| 3A | Conway |
| 3A | Craighead |
| 3A | Crawford |
| 3A | Crittenden |
| 3A | Cross |
| 3A | Dallas |
| 3A | Desha |
| 3A | Drew |
| 3A | Faulkner |
| 3A | Franklin |
| 4A | Fulton |
| 3A | Garland |
| 3A | Grant |
| 3A | Greene |
| 3A | Hempstead* |
| 3A | Hot Spring |
| 3A | Howard |
| 3A | Independence |
| 4A | Izard |
| 3A | Jackson |
| 3A | Jefferson |
| 3A | Johnson |
| 3A | Lafayette* |
| 3A | Lawrence |
| 3A | Lee |
| 3A | Lincoln |
| 3A | Little River* |
| 3A | Logan |
| 3A | Lonoke |
| 4A | Madison |
| 4A | Marion |
| 3A | Miller* |
| 3A | Mississippi |
| 3A | Monroe |
| 3A | Montgomery |
| 3A | Nevada |
| 4A | Newton |
| 3A | Ouachita |
| 3A | Perry |
| 3A | Phillips |
| 3A | Pike |
| 3A | Poinsett |
| 3A | Polk |
| 3A | Pope |
| 3A | Prairie |
| 3A | Pulaski |
| 3A | Randolph |
| 3A | Saline |
| 3A | Scott |
| 4A | Searcy |
| 3A | Sebastian |
| 3A | Sevier* |
| 3A | Sharp |
| 3A | St. Francis |
| 4A | Stone |
| 3A | Union* |
| 3A | Van Buren |
| 4A | Washington |
| 3A | White |
| 3A | Woodruff |
| 3A | Yell |

**California**

| | |
|---|---|
| 3C | Alameda |
| 6B | Alpine |
| 4B | Amador |
| 3B | Butte |
| 4B | Calaveras |
| 3B | Colusa |
| 3B | Contra Costa |
| 4C | Del Norte |
| 4B | El Dorado |
| 3B | Fresno |
| 3B | Glenn |
| 4C | Humboldt |
| 2B | Imperial |
| 4B | Inyo |
| 3B | Kern |
| 3B | Kings |
| 4B | Lake |
| 5B | Lassen |
| 3B | Los Angeles |
| 3B | Madera |
| 3C | Marin |
| 4B | Mariposa |
| 3C | Mendocino |
| 3B | Merced |
| 5B | Modoc |
| 6B | Mono |
| 3C | Monterey |
| 3C | Napa |
| 5B | Nevada |
| 3B | Orange |
| 3B | Placer |
| 5B | Plumas |
| 3B | Riverside |
| 3B | Sacramento |
| 3C | San Benito |
| 3B | San Bernardino |
| 3B | San Diego |
| 3C | San Francisco |
| 3B | San Joaquin |
| 3C | San Luis Obispo |
| 3C | San Mateo |
| 3C | Santa Barbara |
| 3C | Santa Clara |
| 3C | Santa Cruz |
| 3B | Shasta |
| 5B | Sierra |
| 5B | Siskiyou |
| 3B | Solano |
| 3C | Sonoma |
| 3B | Stanislaus |
| 3B | Sutter |
| 3B | Tehama |
| 4B | Trinity |
| 3B | Tulare |
| 4B | Tuolumne |
| 3C | Ventura |
| 3B | Yolo |
| 3B | Yuba |

**Colorado**

| | |
|---|---|
| 5B | Adams |
| 6B | Alamosa |
| 5B | Arapahoe |
| 6B | Archuleta |
| 4B | Baca |
| 5B | Bent |
| 5B | Boulder |
| 6B | Chaffee |
| 5B | Cheyenne |
| 7 | Clear Creek |
| 6B | Conejos |
| 6B | Costilla |
| 5B | Crowley |
| 6B | Custer |
| 5B | Delta |

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

5B Denver
6B Dolores
5B Douglas
6B Eagle
5B Elbert
5B El Paso
5B Fremont
5B Garfield
5B Gilpin
7 Grand
7 Gunnison
7 Hinsdale
5B Huerfano
7 Jackson
5B Jefferson
5B Kiowa
5B Kit Carson
7 Lake
5B La Plata
5B Larimer
4B Las Animas
5B Lincoln
5B Logan
5B Mesa
7 Mineral
6B Moffat
5B Montezuma
5B Montrose
5B Morgan
4B Otero
6B Ouray
7 Park
5B Phillips
7 Pitkin
5B Prowers
5B Pueblo
6B Rio Blanco
7 Rio Grande
7 Routt
6B Saguache
7 San Juan
6B San Miguel
5B Sedgwick
7 Summit
5B Teller
5B Washington
5B Weld
5B Yuma

**Connecticut**

5A (all)

**Delaware**

4A (all)

**District of Columbia**

4A (all)

**Florida**

2A Alachua*
2A Baker*
2A Bay*
2A Bradford*
2A Brevard*
1A Broward*
2A Calhoun*
2A Charlotte*
2A Citrus*
2A Clay*
2A Collier*
2A Columbia*
2A DeSoto*
2A Dixie*
2A Duval*
2A Escambia*
2A Flagler*
2A Franklin*
2A Gadsden*
2A Gilchrist*
2A Glades*
2A Gulf*
2A Hamilton*
2A Hardee*
2A Hendry*
2A Hernando*
2A Highlands*
2A Hillsborough*
2A Holmes*
2A Indian River*
2A Jackson*
2A Jefferson*
2A Lafayette*
2A Lake*
2A Lee*
2A Leon*
2A Levy*
2A Liberty*
2A Madison*
2A Manatee*
2A Marion*
2A Martin*
1A Miami-Dade*
1A Monroe*
2A Nassau*
2A Okaloosa*
2A Okeechobee*
2A Orange*
2A Osceola*
2A Palm Beach*
2A Pasco*
2A Pinellas*
2A Polk*
2A Putnam*
2A Santa Rosa*
2A Sarasota*
2A Seminole*
2A St. Johns*
2A St. Lucie*
2A Sumter*
2a Suwannee*
2A Taylor*
2A Union*
2A Volusia*
2A Wakulla*
2A Walton
2A Washington*

**Georgia**

2A Appling*
2A Atkinson*
2A Bacon*
2A Baker*
3A Baldwin
4A Banks
3A Barrow
3A Bartow
3A Ben Hill*
2A Berrien*
3A Bibb
3A Bleckley*
2A Brantley*
2A Brooks*
2A Bryan*
3A Bulloch*
3A Burke
3A Butts
3A Calhoun*
2A Camden*
3A Candler*
3A Carroll
4A Catoosa
2A Charlton*
2A Chatham*
3A Chattahoochee*
4A Chattooga
3A Cherokee
3A Clarke
3A Clay*
3A Clayton
2A Clinch*
3A Cobb
3A Coffee*
2A Colquitt*
3A Columbia
2A Cook*
3A Coweta
3A Crawford
3A Crisp
4A Dade
4A Dawson
2A Decatur*
3A Dekalb
3A Dodge*
3A Dooly*
3A Dougherty*
3A Douglas
3A Early*
2A Echols*
2A Effingham*
3A Elbert
3A Emanuel*
2A Evans*
4A Fannin
3A Fayette
4A Floyd
3A Forsyth
4A Franklin
3A Fulton
4A Gilmer
3A Glascock
2A Glynn*
4A Gordon
2A Grady*
3A Greene
3A Gwinnett
4A Habersham
4A Hall
3A Hancock
3A Haralson
3A Harris
3A Hart
3A Heard
3A Henry
3A Houston*
3A Irwin*
3A Jackson
3A Jasper
2A Jeff Davis*
3A Jefferson
3A Jenkins*
3A Johnson*
3A Jones
3A Lamar
2A Lanier*
3A Laurens*
3A Lee*
2A Liberty*
3A Lincoln
2A Long*
2A Lowndes*
4A Lumpkin
3A Macon*
3A Madison
3A Marion*
3A McDuffie
2A McIntosh*
3A Meriwether
2A Miller*
2A Mitchell*
3A Monroe
3A Montgomery*
3A Morgan
4A Murray
3A Muscogee
3A Newton
3A Oconee
3A Oglethorpe
3A Paulding
3A Peach*
4A Pickens
2A Pierce*
3A Pike
3A Polk
3A Pulaski*
3A Putnam
3A Quitman*
4A Rabun
3A Randolph*
3A Richmond
3A Rockdale
3A Schley*
3A Screven*
2A Seminole*
3A Spalding
4A Stephens
3A Stewart*
3A Sumter*
3A Talbot
3A Taliaferro
2A Tattnall*
3A Taylor*
3A Telfair*
3A Terrell*
2A Thomas*
3A Tift*
2A Toombs*
4A Towns
3A Treutlen*
3A Troup
3A Turner*
3A Twiggs*
4A Union
3A Upson
4A Walker
3A Walton
2A Ware*

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

3A Warren
3A Washington
2A Wayne*
3A Webster*
3A Wheeler*
4A White
4A Whitfield
3A Wilcox*
3A Wilkes
3A Wilkinson
3A Worth*

**Hawaii**

1A (all)*

**Idaho**

5B Ada
6B Adams
6B Bannock
6B Bear Lake
5B Benewah
6B Bingham
6B Blaine
6B Boise
6B Bonner
6B Bonneville
6B Boundary
6B Butte
6B Camas
5B Canyon
6B Caribou
5B Cassia
6B Clark
5B Clearwater
6B Custer
5B Elmore
6B Franklin
6B Fremont
5B Gem
5B Gooding
5B Idaho
6B Jefferson
5B Jerome
5B Kootenai
5B Latah
6B Lemhi
5B Lewis
5B Lincoln
6B Madison
5B Minidoka
5B Nez Perce
6B Oneida
5B Owyhee
5B Payette
5B Power
5B Shoshone
6B Teton
5B Twin Falls
6B Valley
5B Washington

**Illinois**

5A Adams
4A Alexander
4A Bond
5A Boone
5A Brown
5A Bureau
5A Calhoun
5A Carroll
5A Cass
5A Champaign
4A Christian
5A Clark
4A Clay
4A Clinton
5A Coles
5A Cook
4A Crawford
5A Cumberland
5A Dekalb
5A De Witt
5A Douglas
5A DuPage
5A Edgar
4A Edwards
4A Effingham
4A Fayette
5A Ford
4A Franklin
5A Fulton
4A Gallatin
5A Greene
5A Grundy
4A Hamilton
5A Hancock
4A Hardin
5A Henderson
5A Henry
5A Iroquois
4A Jackson
4A Jasper
4A Jefferson
5A Jersey
5A Jo Daviess
4A Johnson
5A Kane
5A Kankakee
5A Kendall
5A Knox
5A Lake
5A La Salle
4A Lawrence
5A Lee
5A Livingston
5A Logan
5A Macon
4A Macoupin
4A Madison
4A Marion
5A Marshall
5A Mason
4A Massac
5A McDonough
5A McHenry
5A McLean
5A Menard
5A Mercer
4A Monroe
4A Montgomery
5A Morgan
5A Moultrie
5A Ogle
5A Peoria
4A Perry
5A Piatt
5A Pike
4A Pope
4A Pulaski
5A Putnam
4A Randolph
4A Richland
5A Rock Island
4A Saline
5A Sangamon
5A Schuyler
5A Scott
4A Shelby
5A Stark
4A St. Clair
5A Stephenson
5A Tazewell
4A Union
5A Vermilion
4A Wabash
5A Warren
4A Washington
4A Wayne
4A White
5A Whiteside
5A Will
4A Williamson
5A Winnebago
5A Woodford

**Indiana**

5A Adams
5A Allen
5A Bartholomew
5A Benton
5A Blackford
5A Boone
4A Brown
5A Carroll
5A Cass
4A Clark
5A Clay
5A Clinton
4A Crawford
4A Daviess
4A Dearborn
5A Decatur
5A De Kalb
5A Delaware
4A Dubois
5A Elkhart
5A Fayette
4A Floyd
5A Fountain
5A Franklin
5A Fulton
4A Gibson
5A Grant
4A Greene
5A Hamilton
5A Hancock
5A Hendricks
5A Henry
5A Howard
5A Huntington
4A Jackson
5A Jasper
5A Jay
4A Jefferson
4A Jennings
5A Johnson
4A Knox
5A Kosciusko
5A Lagrange
5A Lake
5A La Porte
4A Lawrence
5A Madison
5A Marion
5A Marshall
4A Martin
5A Miami
4A Monroe
5A Montgomery
5A Morgan
5A Newton
5A Noble
4A Ohio
4A Orange
5A Owen
5A Parke
4A Perry
4A Pike
5A Porter
4A Posey
5a Pulaski
5A Putnam
5A Randolph
4A Ripley
5A Rush
4A Scott
5A Shelby
4A Spencer
5A Starke
5A Steuben
5A St. Joseph
4A Sullivan
4A Switzerland
5A Tippecanoe
5A Tipton
5A Union
4A Vanderburgh
5A Vermillion
5A Vigo
5A Wabash
5A Warren
4A Warrick
4A Washington
5A Wayne
5A Wells
5A White
5A Whitley

**Iowa**

5A Adair
5A Adams
6A Allamakee
5A Appanoose
5A Audubon
5A Benton
6A Black Hawk
5A Boone
6A Bremer
6A Buchanan
6A Buena Vista
6A Butler
6A Calhoun
5A Carroll
5A Cass
5A Cedar
6A Cerro Gordo

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 6A | Cherokee |
| 6A | Chickasaw |
| 5A | Clarke |
| 6A | Clay |
| 6A | Clayton |
| 6A | Clinton |
| 5A | Crawford |
| 5A | Dallas |
| 5A | Davis |
| 5A | Decatur |
| 6A | Delaware |
| 5A | Des Moines |
| 6A | Dickinson |
| 5A | Dubuque |
| 6A | Emmet |
| 6A | Fayette |
| 6A | Floyd |
| 6A | Franklin |
| 5A | Fremont |
| 5A | Greene |
| 6A | Grundy |
| 5A | Guthrie |
| 6A | Hanilton |
| 6A | Hancock |
| 6A | Hardin |
| 5A | Harrison |
| 5A | Henry |
| 6A | Howard |
| 6A | Humboldt |
| 6A | Ida |
| 5A | Iowa |
| 5A | Jackson |
| 5A | Jasper |
| 5A | Jefferson |
| 5A | Johnson |
| 5A | Jones |
| 5A | Keokuk |
| 6A | Kossuth |
| 5A | Lee |
| 5A | Linn |
| 5A | Louisa |
| 5A | Lucas |
| 6A | Lyon |
| 5A | Madison |
| 5A | Mahaska |
| 5A | Marion |
| 5A | Marshall |
| 5A | Mills |
| 6A | Mitchell |
| 5A | Monona |
| 5A | Monroe |
| 5A | Montgomery |
| 5A | Muscatine |
| 5A | O'Brien |
| 6A | Osceola |
| 5A | Page |
| 6A | Palo Alto |
| 6A | Plymouth |
| 6A | Pocahontas |
| 5A | Polk |
| 5A | Pottawattamie |
| 5A | Poweshiek |
| 5A | Ringgold |
| 6A | Sac |
| 5A | Scott |
| 5A | Shelby |
| 6A | Sioux |
| 5A | Story |
| 5A | Tama |
| 5A | Taylor |
| 5a | Union |
| 5A | Van Buren |
| 5A | Wapello |
| 5A | Warren |
| 5A | Washington |
| 5A | Wayne |
| 6A | Webster |
| 6A | Winnebago |
| 6A | Winneshiek |
| 5A | Woodbury |
| 6A | Worth |
| 6A | Wright |
| | **Kansas** |
| 4A | Allen |
| 4A | Anderson |
| 4A | Atchison |
| 4A | Barber |
| 4A | Barton |
| 4A | Bourbon |
| 4A | Brown |
| 4A | Butler |
| 4A | Chase |
| 4A | Chautauqua |
| 4A | Cherokee |
| 5A | Cheyenne |
| 4A | Clark |
| 4A | Clay |
| 5A | Cloud |
| 4A | Coffey |
| 4A | Comanche |
| 4A | Cowley |
| 4A | Crawford |
| 5A | Decatur |
| 4A | Dickinson |
| 4A | Doniphan |
| 4A | Douglas |
| 4A | Edwards |
| 4A | Elk |
| 5A | Ellis |
| 4A | Ellsworth |
| 4A | Finney |
| 4A | Ford |
| 4A | Franklin |
| 4A | Geary |
| 5A | Gove |
| 5A | Graham |
| 4A | Grant |
| 4A | Gray |
| 5A | Greeley |
| 4A | Greenwood |
| 5A | Hamilton |
| 4A | Harper |
| 4A | Harvey |
| 4A | Haskell |
| 4A | Hodgeman |
| 4A | Jackson |
| 4A | Jefferson |
| 5A | Jewell |
| 4A | Johnson |
| 4A | Kearny |
| 4A | Kingman |
| 4A | Kiowa |
| 4A | Labette |
| 5A | Lane |
| 4A | Leavenworth |
| 4A | Lincoln |
| 4A | Linn |
| 5A | Logan |
| 4A | Lyon |
| 4A | Marion |
| 4A | Marshall |
| 4A | McPherson |
| 4a | Meade |
| 4A | Miami |
| 5A | Mitchell |
| 4A | Montgomery |
| 4A | Morris |
| 4A | Morton |
| 4A | Nemaha |
| 4A | Neosho |
| 5A | Ness |
| 5A | Norton |
| 4A | Osage |
| 5A | Osborne |
| 4A | Ottawa |
| 4A | Pawnee |
| 5A | Phillips |
| 4A | Pottawatomie |
| 4A | Pratt |
| 5A | Rawlins |
| 4A | Reno |
| 5A | Republic |
| 4A | Rice |
| 4A | Riley |
| 5A | Rooks |
| 4A | Rush |
| 4A | Russell |
| 4A | Saline |
| 5A | Scott |
| 4A | Sedgwick |
| 4A | Seward |
| 4A | Shawnee |
| 5A | Sheridan |
| 5A | Sherman |
| 5A | Smith |
| 4A | Stafford |
| 4A | Stanton |
| 4A | Stevens |
| 4A | Sumner |
| 5A | Thomas |
| 5A | Trego |
| 4A | Wabaunsee |
| 5A | Wallace |
| 4A | Washington |
| 5A | Wichita |
| 4A | Wilson |
| 4A | Woodson |
| 4A | Wyandotte |
| | **Kentucky** |
| 4A | (all) |
| | **Louisiana** |
| 2A | Acadia* |
| 2A | Allen* |
| 2A | Ascension* |
| 2A | Assumption* |
| 2A | Avoyelles* |
| 2A | Beauregard* |
| 3A | Bienville* |
| 3A | Bossier* |
| 3A | Caddo* |
| 2A | Calcasieu* |
| 3A | Caldwell* |
| 2A | Cameron* |
| 3A | Catahoula* |
| 3A | Claiborne* |
| 3A | Concordia* |
| 3A | De Soto* |
| 2A | East Baton Rouge* |
| 3A | East Carroll |
| 2A | East Feliciana* |
| 2A | Evangeline* |
| 3A | Franklin* |
| 3A | Grant* |
| 2A | Iberia* |
| 2A | Iberville* |
| 3A | Jackson* |
| 2A | Jefferson |
| 2A | Jefferson Davis* |
| 2A | Lafayette* |
| 2A | Lafourche* |
| 3A | La Salle* |
| 3A | Lincoln* |
| 2A | Livingston* |
| 3A | Madison* |
| 3A | Morehouse |
| 3A | Natchitoches* |
| 2A | Orleans* |
| 3A | Ouachita* |
| 2A | Plaquemines* |
| 2A | Pointe Coupee* |
| 2A | Rapides* |
| 3A | Red River* |
| 3A | Richland* |
| 3A | Sabine* |
| 2A | St. Bernard* |
| 2A | St. Charles* |
| 2A | St. Helena* |
| 2A | St. James* |
| 2A | St. John the Baptist* |
| 2A | St. Landry* |
| 2A | St. Martin* |
| 2A | St. Mary* |
| 2A | St. Tammany* |
| 2A | Tangipahoa* |
| 3A | Tensas* |
| 2A | Terrebonne* |
| 3A | Union* |
| 2A | Vermilion* |
| 3A | Vernon* |
| 2A | Washington* |
| 3A | Webster* |
| 2A | West Baton Rouge* |
| 3A | West Carroll |
| 2A | West Feliciana* |
| 3A | Winn* |
| | **Maine** |
| 6A | Androscoggin |
| 7 | Aroostook |
| 6A | Cumberland |
| 6A | Franklin |
| 6A | Hancock |
| 6A | Kennebec |
| 6A | Knox |
| 6A | Lincoln |
| 6A | Oxford |
| 6A | Penobscot |
| 6A | Piscataquis |
| 6A | Sagadahoc |

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

6A Somerset
6A Waldo
6A Washington
6A York

### Maryland

4A Allegany
4A Anne Arundel
4A Baltimore
4A Baltimore (city)
4A Calvert
4A Caroline
4A Carroll
4A Cecil
4A Charles
4A Dorchester
4A Frederick
5A Garrett
4A Harford
4A Howard
4A Kent
4A Montgomery
4A Prince George’s
4A Queen Anne’s
4A Somerset
4A St. Mary’s
4A Talbot
4A Washington
4A Wicomico
4A Worcester

### Massachusetts

5A (all)

### Michigan

6A Alcona
6A Alger
5A Allegan
6A Alpena
6A Antrim
6A Arenac
7 Baraga
5A Barry
5A Bay
6A Benzie
5A Berrien
5A Branch
5A Calhoun
5A Cass
6A Charlevoix
6A Cheboygan
7 Chippewa
6A Clare
5A Clinton
6A Crawford
6A Delta
6A Dickinson
5A Eaton
6A Emmet
5A Genesee
6A Gladwin
7 Gogebic
6A Grand Traverse
5A Gratiot
5A Hillsdale
7 Houghton
6A Huron
5A Ingham
5A Ionia
6A Iosco
7 Iron
6A Isabella
5A Jackson
5A Kalamazoo
6A Kalkaska
5A Kent
7 Keweenaw
6A Lake
5A Lapeer
6A Leelanau
5A Lenawee
5A Livingston
7 Luce
7 Mackinac
5A Macomb
6A Manistee
6A Marquette
6A Mason
6A Mecosta
6A Menominee
5A Midland
6A Missaukee
5A Monroe
5A Montcalm
6A Montmorency
5A Muskegon
6A Newaygo
5A Oakland
6A Oceana
6A Ogemaw
7 Ontonagon
6A Osceola
6A Oscoda
6A Otsego
5A Ottawa
6A Presque Isle
6A Roscommon
5A Saginaw
6A Sanilac
7 Schoolcraft
5A Shiawassee
5A St. Clair
5A St. Joseph
5A Tuscola
5A Van Buren
5A Washtenaw
5A Wayne
6A Wexford

### Minnesota

7 Aitkin
6A Anoka
7 Becker
7 Beltrami
6A Benton
6A Big Stone
6A Blue Earth
6A Brown
7 Carlton
6A Carver
7 Cass
6A Chippewa
6A Chisago
7 Clay
7 Clearwater
7 Cook
6A Cottonwood
7 Crow Wing
6A Dakota
6A Dodge
6A Douglas
6A Faribault
6A Fillmore
6A Freeborn
6A Goodhue
7 Grant
6A Hennepin
6A Houston
7 Hubbard
6A Isanti
7 Itasca
6A Jackson
7 Kanabec
6A Kandiyohi
7 Kittson
7 Koochiching
6A Lac qui Parle
7 Lake
7 Lake of the Woods
6A Le Sueur
6A Lincoln
6A Lyon
7 Mahnomen
7 Marshall
6A Martin
6A McLeod
6A Meeker
7 Mille Lacs
6A Morrison
6A Mower
6A Murray
6A Nicollet
6A Nobles
7 Norman
6A Olmsted
7 Otter Tail
7 Pennington
7 Pine
6A Pipestone
7 Polk
6A Pope
6A Ramsey
7 Red Lake
6A Redwood
6A Renville
6A Rice
6A Rock
7 Roseau
6A Scott
6A Sherburne
6A Sibley
6A Stearns
6A Steele
6A Stevens
7 St. Louis
6 Swift
6A Todd
6A Traverse
6A Wabasha
7 Wadena
6A Waseca
6A Washington
6A Watonwan
7 Wilkin
6A Winona
6A Wright
6A Yellow Medicine

### Mississippi

3A Adams*
3A Alcorn
3A Amite*
3A Attala
3A Benton
3A Bolivar
3A Calhoun
3A Carroll
3A Chickasaw
3A Choctaw
3A Claiborne*
3A Clarke
3A Clay
3A Coahoma
3A Copiah*
3A Covington*
3A DeSoto
3A Forrest*
3A Franklin*
3A George*
3A Greene*
3A Grenada
2A Hancock*
2A Harrison*
3A Hinds*
3A Holmes
3A Humphreys
3A Issaquena
3A Itawamba
2A Jackson*
3A Jasper
3A Jefferson*
3A Jefferson Davis*
3A Jones*
3A Kemper
3A Lafayette
3A Lamar*
3A Lauderdale
3A Lawrence*
3A Leake
3A Lee
3A Leflore
3A Lincoln*
3A Lowndes
3A Madison
3A Marion*
3A Marshall
3A Monroe
3A Montgomery
3A Neshoba
3A Newton
3A Noxubee
3A Oktibbeha
3A Panola
2A Pearl River*
3A Perry*
3A Pike*
3A Pontotoc
3A Prentiss
3A Quitman
3A Rankin*
3A Scott
3A Sharkey
3A Simpson*
3A Smith*
2A Stone*
3A Sunflower

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

3A Tallahatchie
3A Tate
3A Tippah
3A Tishomingo
3A Tunica
3A Union
3A Walthall*
3A Warren*
3A Washington
3A Wayne*
3A Webster
3A Wilkinson*
3A Winston
3A Yalobusha
3A Yazoo

**Missouri**

5A Adair
5A Andrew
5A Atchison
4A Audrain
4A Barry
4A Barton
4A Bates
4A Benton
4A Bollinger
4A Boone
5A Buchanan
4A Butler
5A Caldwell
4A Callaway
4A Camden
4A Cape Girardeau
4A Carroll
4A Carter
4A Cass
4A Cedar
5A Chariton
4A Christian
5A Clark
4A Clay
5A Clinton
4A Cole
4a Cooper
4A Crawford
4A Dade
4A Dallas
5A Daviess
5A DeKalb
4A Dent
4A Douglas
4A Dunklin
4A Franklin
4A Gasconade
5A Gentry
4A Greene
5A Grundy
5A Harrison
4A Henry
4A Hickory
5A Holt
4A Howard
4A Howell
4A Iron
4A Jackson
4A Jasper
4A Jefferson
4A Johnson
5A Knox
4A Laclede
4A Lafayette
4A Lawrence
5A Lewis
4A Lincoln
5A Linn
5A Livingston
5A Macon
4A Madison
4A Maries
5A Marion
4A McDonald
5A Mercer
4A Miller
4A Mississippi
4A Moniteau
4A Monroe
4A Montgomery
4A Morgan
4A New Madrid
4A Newton
5A Nodaway
4A Oregon
4A Osage
4A Ozark
4A Pemiscot
4A Perry
4A Pettis
4A Phelps
5A Pike
4A Platte
4A Polk
4A Pulaski
5A Putnam
5A Ralls
4A Randolph
4A Ray
4A Reynolds
4A Ripley
4A Saline
5A Schuyler
5A Scotland
4A Scott
4a Shannon
5A Shelby
4A St. Charles
4A St. Clair
4A Ste. Genevieve
4A St. Francois
4A St. Louis
4A St. Louis (city)
4A Stoddard
4A Stone
5A Sullivan
4A Taney
4A Texas
4A Vernon
4A Warren
4A Washington
4A Wayne
4A Webster
5A Worth
4A Wright

**Montana**

6B (all)

**Nebraska**

5A (all)

**Nevada**

5B Carson City (city)
5B Churchill
3B Clark
5B Douglas
5B Elko
5B Esmeralda
5B Eureka
5B Humboldt
5B Lander
5B Lincoln
5B Lyon
5B Mineral
5B Nye
5B Pershing
5B Storey
5B Washoe
5B White Pine

**New Hampshire**

6A Belknap
6A Carroll
5A Cheshire
6A Coos
6A Grafton
5A Hillsborough
6A Merrimack
5A Rockingham
5A Strafford
6A Sullivan

**New Jersey**

4A Atlantic
5A Bergen
4A Burlington
4A Camden
4A Cape May
4A Cumberland
4A Essex
4A Gloucester
4A Hudson
5A Hunterdon
5A Mercer
4A Middlesex
4A Monmouth
5A Morris
4A Ocean
5A Passaic
4A Salem
5A Somerset
5A Sussex
4A Union
5A Warren

**New Mexico**

4B Bernalillo
5B Catron
3B Chaves
4B Cibola
5B Colfax
4B Curry
4B DeBaca
3B Dona Ana
3B Eddy
4B Grant
4B Guadalupe
5B Harding
3B Hidalgo
3B Lea
4B Lincoln
5B Los Alamos
3B Luna
5B McKinley
5B Mora
3B Otero
4B Quay
5B Rio Arriba
4B Roosevelt
5B Sandoval
5B San Juan
5B San Miguel
5B Santa Fe
4B Sierra
4B Socorro
5B Taos
5B Torrance
4B Union
4B Valencia

**New York**

5A Albany
6A Allegany
4A Bronx
6A Broome
6A Cattaraugus
5A Cayuga
5A Chautauga
5A Chemung
6A Chenango
6A Clinton
5A Columbia
5A Cortland
6A Delaware
5A Dutchess
5A Erie
6A Essex
6A Franklin
6A Fulton
5A Genesee
5A Greene
6A Hamilton
6A Herkimer
6A Jefferson
4A Kings
6A Lewis
5A Livingston
6A Madison
5A Monroe
6A Montgomery
4A Nassau
4A New York
5A Niagara
6A Oneida
5A Onondaga
5A Ontario
5A Orange
5A Orleans
5A Oswego
6A Otsego
5A Putnam
4A Queens
5A Rensselaer
4A Richmond
5A Rockland
5A Saratoga
5A Schenectady
6A Schoharie
6A Schuyler

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

5A Seneca
6A Steuben
6A St. Lawrence
4A Suffolk
6A Sullivan
5A Tioga
6A Tompkins
6A Ulster
6A Warren
5A Washington
5A Wayne
4A Westchester
6A Wyoming
5A Yates

**North Carolina**

4A Alamance
4A Alexander
5A Alleghany
3A Anson
5A Ashe
5A Avery
3A Beaufort
4A Bertie
3A Bladen
3A Brunswick*
4A Buncombe
4A Burke
3A Cabarrus
4A Caldwell
3A Camden
3A Carteret*
4A Caswell
4A Catawba
4A Chatham
4A Cherokee
3A Chowan
4A Clay
4A Cleveland
3A Columbus*
3A Craven
3A Cumberland
3A Currituck
3A Dare
3A Davidson
4A Davie
3A Duplin
4A Durham
3A Edgecombe
4A Forsyth
4A Franklin
3A Gaston
4A Gates
4A Graham
4A Granville
3A Greene
4A Guilford
4A Halifax
4A Harnett
4A Haywood
4A Henderson
4A Hertford
3A Hoke
3A Hyde
4A Iredell
4A Jackson
3A Johnston
3A Jones
4A Lee
3A Lenoir
4A Lincoln
4A Macon
4A Madison
3A Martin
4A McDowell
3A Mecklenburg
5A Mitchell
3A Montgomery
3A Moore
4A Nash
3A New Hanover*
4A Northampton
3A Onslow*
4A Orange
3A Pamlico
3A Pasquotank
3A Pender*
3A Perquimans
4A Person
3A Pitt
4A Polk
3A Randolph
3A Richmond
3A Robeson
4A Rockingham
3A Rowan
4A Rutherford
3A Sampson
3A Scotland
3A Stanly
4A Stokes
4A Surry
4A Swain
4A Transylvania
3A Tyrrell
3A Union
4A Vance
4A Wake
4A Warren
3A Washington
5A Watauga
3A Wayne
4A Wilkes
3A Wilson
4A Yadkin
5A Yancey

**North Dakota**

6A Adams
7 Barnes
7 Benson
6A Billings
7 Bottineau
6A Bowman
7 Burke
6A Burleigh
7 Cass
7 Cavalier
6A Dickey
7 Divide
6A Dunn
7 Eddy
6A Emmons
7 Foster
6A Golden Valley
7 Grand Forks
6A Grant
7 Griggs
6A Hettinger
7 Kidder
6A LaMoure
6A Logan
7 McHenry
6A McIntosh
6A McKenzie
7 McLean
6A Mercer
6A Morton
7 Mountrail
7 Nelson
6A Oliver
7 Pembina
7 Pierce
7 Ramsey
6A Ransom
7 Renville
6A Richland
7 Rolette
6A Sargent
7 Sheridan
6A Sioux
6A Slope
6A Stark
7 Steele
7 Stutsman
7 Towner
7 Traill
7 Walsh
7 Ward
7 Wells
7 Williams

**Ohio**

4A Adams
5A Allen
5A Ashland
5A Ashtabula
5A Athens
5A Auglaize
5A Belmont
4A Brown
5A Butler
5A Carroll
5A Champaign
5A Clark
4A Clermont
5A Clinton
5A Columbiana
5A Coshocton
5A Crawford
5A Cuyahoga
5A Darke
5A Defiance
5A Delaware
5A Erie
5A Fairfield
5A Fayette
5A Franklin
5A Fulton
4A Gallia
5A Geauga
5A Greene
5A Guernsey
4A Hamilton
5A Hancock
5A Hardin
5A Harrison
5A Henry
5A Highland
5A Hocking
5A Holmes
5A Huron
5A Jackson
5A Jefferson
5A Knox
5A Lake
4A Lawrence
5A Licking
5A Logan
5A Lorain
5A Lucas
5A Madison
5A Mahoning
5A Marion
5A Medina
5A Meigs
5A Mercer
5A Miami
5A Monroe
5A Montgomery
5A Morgan
5A Morrow
5A Muskingum
5A Noble
5A Ottawa
5A Paulding
5A Perry
5A Pickaway
4A Pike
5A Portage
5A Preble
5A Putnam
5A Richland
5A Ross
5A Sandusky
4A Scioto
5A Seneca
5A Shelby
5A Stark
5A Summit
5A Trumbull
5A Tuscarawas
5A Union
5A Van Wert
5A Vinton
5A Warren
4A Washington
5A Wayne
5A Williams
5A Wood
5A Wyandot

**Oklahoma**

3A Adair
3A Alfalfa
3A Atoka
4B Beaver
3A Beckham
3A Blaine
3A Bryan
3A Caddo
3A Canadian
3A Carter
3A Cherokee
3A Choctaw

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

4B Cimarron
3A Cleveland
3A Coal
3A Comanche
3A Cotton
3A Craig
3A Creek
3A Custer
3A Delaware
3A Dewey
3A Ellis
3A Garfield
3A Garvin
3A Grady
3A Grant
3A Greer
3A Harmon
3A Harper
3A Haskell
3A Hughes
3A Jackson
3A Jefferson
3A Johnston
3A Kay
3A Kingfisher
3A Kiowa
3A Latimer
3A Le Flore
3A Lincoln
3A Logan
3A Love
3A Major
3A Marshall
3A Mayes
3A MaClain
3A McCurtain
3A McIntosh
3A Murray
3A Muskogee
3A Noble
3A Nowata
3A Okfuskee
3A Oklahoma
3A Okmulgee
3A Osage
3A Ottawa
3A Pawnee
3A Payne
3A Pittsburg
3A Pontotoc
3A Pottawatomie
3A Pushmataha
3A Roger Mills
3A Rogers
3A Seminole
3A Sequoyah
3A Stephens
4B Texas
3A Tillman
3A Tulsa
3A Wagoner
3A Washington
3A Washita
3A Woods
3A Woodward

**Oregon**

5B Baker
4C Benton
4C Clackamas
4C Clatsop
4C Columbia
4C Coos
5B Crook
4C Curry
5B Deschutes
4C Douglas
5B Gilliam
5B Grant
5B Harney
5B Hood River
4C Jackson
5B Jefferson
4C Josephine
5B Klamath
5B Lake
4C Lane
4C Lincoln
4C Linn
5B Malheur
4C Marion
5B Morrow
4C Multnomah
4C Polk
5B Sherman
4C Tillamook
5B Umatilla
5B Union
5B Wallowa
5B Wasco
4C Washington
5B Wheeler
4C Yamhill

**Pennsylvania**

5A Adams
5A Allegheny
5A Armstrong
5A Beaver
5A Bedford
5A Berks
5A Blair
5A Bradford
4A Bucks
5A Butler
5A Cambria
6A Cameron
5A Carbon
5A Centre
4A Chester
5A Clarion
6A Clearfield
5A Clinton
5A Columbia
5A Crawford
5A Cumberland
5A Dauphin
4A Delaware
6A Elk
5A Erie
5A Fayette
5A Forest
5A Franklin
5A Fulton
5A Greene
5A Huntingdon
5A Indiana
5A Jefferson
5A Juniata
5A Lackawanna
5A Lancaster
5A Lawrence
5A Lebanon
5A Lehigh
5A Luzerne
5A Lycoming
6A McKean
5A Mercer
5A Mifflin
5A Monroe
4A Montgomery
5A Montour
5A Northampton
5A Northumberland
5A Perry
4A Philadelphia
5A Pike
6A Potter
5A Schuylkill
5A Snyder
5A Somerset
5A Sullivan
6A Susquehanna
6A Tioga
5A Union
5A Venango
5A Warren
5A Washington
6A Wayne
5A Westmoreland
5A Wyoming
4A York

**Rhode Island**

5A (all)

**South Carolina**

3A Abbeville
3A Aiken
3A Allendale*
3A Anderson
3A Bamberg*
3A Barnwell*
3A Beaufort*
3A Berkeley*
3A Calhoun
3A Charleston*
3A Cherokee
3A Chester
3A Chesterfield
3A Clarendon
3A Colleton*
3A Darlington
3A Dillon
3A Dorchester*
3A Edgefield
3A Fairfield
3A Florence
3A Georgetown*
3A Greenville
3A Greenwood
3A Hampton*
3A Horry*
3A Jasper*
3A Kershaw
3A Lancaster
3A Laurens
3A Lee
3A Lexington
3A Marion
3A Marlboro
3A McCormick
3A Newberry
3A Oconee
3A Orangeburg
3A Pickens
3A Richland
3A Saluda
3A Spartanburg
3A Sumter
3A Union
3A Williamsburg
3A York

**South Dakota**

6A Aurora
6A Beadle
5A Bennett
5A Bon Homme
6A Brookings
6A Brown
6A Brule
6A Buffalo
6A Butte
6A Campbell
5A Charles Mix
6A Clark
5A Clay
6A Codington
6A Corson
6A Custer
6A Davison
6A Day
6A Deuel
6A Dewey
5A Douglas
6A Edmunds
6A Fall River
6A Faulk
6A Grant
5A Gregory
6A Haakon
6A Hamlin
6A Hand
6A Hanson
6A Harding
6A Hughes
5A Hutchinson
6A Hyde
5A Jackson
6A Jerauld
6A Jones
6A Kingsbury
6A Lake
6A Lawrence
6A Lincoln
6A Lyman
6A Marshall
6A McCook
6A McPherson
6A Meade
5A Mellette
6A Miner
6A Minnehaha
6A Moody
6A Pennington

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

6A Perkins
6A Potter
6A Roberts
6A Sanborn
6A Shannon
6A Spink
6A Stanley
6A Sully
5A Todd
5A Tripp
6A Turner
5A Union
6A Walworth
5A Yankton
6A Ziebach

**Tennessee**

4A Anderson
4A Bedford
4A Benton
4A Bledsoe
4A Blount
4A Bradley
4A Campbell
4A Cannon
4A Carroll
4A Carter
4A Cheatham
3A Chester
4A Claiborne
4A Clay
4A Cocke
4A Coffee
3A Crockett
4A Cumberland
4A Davidson
4A Decatur
4A DeKalb
4A Dickson
3A Dyer
3A Fayette
4A Fentress
4A Franklin
4A Gibson
4A Giles
4A Grainger
4A Greene
4A Grundy
4A Hamblen
4A Hamilton
4A Hancock
3A Hardeman
3A Hardin
4A Hawkins
3A Haywood
3A Henderson
4A Henry
4A Hickman
4A Houston
4A Humphreys
4A Jackson
4A Jefferson
4A Johnson
4A Knox
3A Lake
3A Lauderdale
4A Lawrence
4A Lewis
4A Lincoln
4A Loudon
4A Macon
3A Madison
4A Marion
4A Marshall
4A Maury
4A McMinn
3A McNairy
4A Meigs
4A Monroe
4A Montgomery
4A Moore
4A Morgan
4A Obion
4A Overton
4A Perry
4A Pickett
4A Polk
4A Putnam
4A Rhea
4A Roane
4A Robertson
4A Rutherford
4A Scott
4A Sequatchie
4A Sevier
3A Shelby
4A Smith
4A Stewart
4A Sullivan
4A Sumner
3A Tipton
4A Trousdale
4A Unicoi
4A Union
4A Van Buren
4A Warren
4A Washington
4A Wayne
4A Weakley
4A White
4A Williamson
4A Wilson

**Texas**

2A Anderson*
3B Andrews
2A Angelina*
2A Aransas*
3A Archer
4B Armstrong
2A Atascosa*
2A Austin*
4B Bailey
2B Bandera*
2A Bastrop
3B Baylor
2A Bee*
2A Bell*
2A Bexar*
3A Blanco*
3B Borden
2A Bosque*
3A Bowie*
2A Brazoria*
2A Brazos*
3B Brewster
4B Briscoe
2A Brooks*
3A Brown*
2A Burleson*
3A Burnet*
2A Caldwell*
2A Calhoun*
3B Callahan
2A Cameron*
3A Camp*
4B Carson
3A Cass*
4B Castro
2A Chambers*
2A Cherokee*
3B Childress
3A Clay
4B Cochran
3B Coke
3B Coleman
3A Collin*
3B Collingsworth
2A Colorado*
2A Comal*
3A Comanche*
3B Concho
3A Cooke
2A Coryell*
3B Cottle
3B Crane
3B Crockett
3B Crosby
3B Culberson
4B Dallam
3A Dallas*
3B Dawson
4B Deaf Smith
3A Delta
3A Denton*
2A DeWitt*
3B Dickens
2B Dimmit*
4B Donley
2A Duval*
3A Eastland
3B Ector
2B Edwards*
3A Ellis*
3B El Paso
3A Erath*
2A Falls*
3A Fannin
2A Fayette*
3A Fisher
4B Floyd
3B Foard
2A Fort Bend*
3A Franklin*
2A Freestone*
2B Frio*
3B Gaines
2A Galveston*
3B Garza
3A Gillespie*
3B Glasscock
2A Goliad*
2A Gonzales*
4B Gray
3A Grayson
3A Gregg*
2A Grimes*
2A Guadalupe*
4B Hale
3B Hall
3A Hamilton*
4B Hansford
3B Hardeman
2A Hardin*
2A Harris*
3A Harrison*
4B Hartley
3B Haskell
2A Hays*
3B Hemphill
3A Henderson*
2A Hidalgo*
2A Hill*
4B Hockley
3A Hood*
3A Hopkins*
2A Houston*
3B Howard
3B Hudspeth
3A Hunt*
4B Hutchinson
3B Irion
3A Jack
2A Jackson*
2A Jasper*
3B Jeff Davis
2A Jefferson*
2A Jim Hogg*
2A Jim Wells*
3A Johnson*
3B Jones
2A Karnes*
3A Kaufman*
3A Kendall*
2A Kenedy*
3B Kent
3B Kerr
3B Kimble
3B King
2B Kinney*
2A Kleberg*
3B Knox
3A Lamar*
4B Lamb
3A Lampasas*
2B La Salle*
2A Lavaca*
2A Lee*
2A Leon*
2A Liberty*
2A Limestone*
4B Lipscomb
2A Live Oak*
3A Llano*
3B Loving
3B Lubbock
3B Lynn
2A Madison*
3A Marion*
3B Martin
3B Mason
2A Matagorda*
2B Maverick*
3B McCulloch
2A McLennan*

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

2A McMullen*
2A Medina*
3B Menard
3A Midland
2A Milam*
3A Mills*
3B Mitchell
3A Montague
2A Montgomery*
4A Moore
3A Morris*
3B Motley
3A Nacogdoches*
3A Navarro*
2A Newton*
3A Nolan
2A Nueces*
4B Ochiltree
4B Oldham
2A Orange*
3A Palo Pinto*
3A Panola*
3A Parker*
4B Parmer
3B Pecos
2A Polk*
4B Potter
3B Presidio
3A Rains*
4B Randall
3B Reagan
2B Real*
3A Red River*
3B Reeves
2A Refugio*
4B Roberts
2A Robertson*
3A Rockwall*
3B Runnels
3A Rusk*
3A Sabine*
3A San Augustine*
2A San Jacinto*
2A San Patricio*
3A San Saba*
3B Schleicher
3B Scurry
3B Shackelford
3A Shelby*
4B Sherman
3A Smith*
3A Somervell*
2A Starr*
3A Stephens
3B Sterling
3B Stonewall
3B Sutton
4B Swisher
3A Tarrant*
3B Taylor
3B Terrell
3B Terry
3B Throckmorton
3A Titus*
3B Tom Green
2A Travis*
2A Trinity*
2A Tyler*
3A Upshur*
3B Upton
2B Uvalde*
2B Val Verde*
3A Van Zandt*
2A Victoria*
2A Walker*
2A Waller*
3B Ward
2A Washington*
2B Webb*
2A Wharton*
3B Wheeler
3A Wichita
3B Wilbarger
2A Willacy*
2A Williamson*
2A Wilson*
3B Winkler
3A Wise
3A Wood*
4B Yoakum
3A Young
2B Zavala*

**Utah**

5B Beaver
6B Box Elder
6B Cache
6B Carbon
6B Daggett
5B Davis
6B Duchesne
5B Emery
5B Garfield
5B Grand
5B Iron
5B Juab
5B Kane
5B Millard
6B Morgan
5B Piute
6B Rich
5B Salt Lake
5B San Juan
5B Sanpete
5B Sevier
6B Summit
5B Tooele
6B Uintah
5B Utah
6B Wasatch
3B Washington
5B Wayne
5B Weber

**Vermont**

6A (all)

**Virginia**

4A (all)

**Washington**

5B Adams
5B Asotin
5B Benton
5B Chelan
4C Clallam
4C Clark
5B Columbia
4C Cowlitz
5B Douglas
6B Ferry
5B Franklin
5B Garfield
5B Grant
5C Grays Harbor
4C Island
4C Jefferson
4C King
4C Kitsap
5B Kittitas
5B Klickitat
4C Lewis
5B Lincoln
4C Mason
6B Okanogan
4C Pacific
6B Pend Oreille
4C Pierce
4C San Juan
4C Skagit
5B Skamania
4C Snohomish
5B Spokane
6B Stevens
4C Thurston
4C Wahkiakum
5B Walla Walla
4C Whatcom
5B Whitman
5B Yakima

**West Virginia**

5A Barbour
4A Berkeley
4A Boone
4A Braxton
5A Brooke
4A Cabell
4A Calhoun
4A Clay
5A Doddridge
5A Fayette
4A Gilmer
5A Grant
5A Greenbrier
5A Hamphire
5A Hancock
5A Hardy
5A Harrison
4A Jackson
4A Jefferson
4A Kanawha
5A Lewis
4A Lincoln
4A Logan
5A Marion
5A Marshall
4A Mason
4A McDowell
4A Mercer
5A Mineral
4A Mingo
5A Monongalia
4A Monroe
4A Morgan
5A Nicholas
5A Ohio
5A Pendleton
4A Pleasants
5A Pocahontas
5A Preston
4A Putnam
4A Raleigh
5A Randolph
4A Ritchie
4A Roane
5A Summers
5A Taylor
5A Tucker
4A Tyler
5A Upshur
4A Wayne
5A Webster
5A Wetzel
4A Wirt
4A Wood
4A Wyoming

**Wisconsin**

6A Adams
7 Ashland
6A Barron
7 Bayfield
6A Brown
6A Buffalo
7 Burnett
6A Calumet
6A Chippewa
6A Clark
6A Columbia
6A Crawford
6A Dane
6A Dodge
6A Door
7 Douglas
6A Dunn
6A Eau Claire
7 Florence
6A Fond du Lac
7 Forest
6A Grant
6A Green
6A Green Lake
6A Iowa
7 Iron
6A Jackson
6A Jefferson
6A Juneau
6A Kenosha
6A Kewaunee
6A La Crosse
6A Lafayette
7 Langlade
7 Lincoln
6A Manitowoc
6A Marathon
6A Marinette
6A Marquette
6A Menominee
6A Milwaukee
6A Monroe
6A Oconto
7 Oneida
6A Outagamie
6A Ozaukee

*(continued)*

**TABLE N1101.2—continued**
**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY**

**Key:**
**A—Moist, B—Dry, C—Marine, Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.**

6A Pepin
6A Pierce
6A Polk
6A Portage
7 Price
6A Racine
6A Richland
6A Rock
6A Rusk
6A Sauk
7 Sawyer
6A Shawano
6A Sheboyan
6A St. Croix
7 Taylor
6A Trempealeau
6A Vernon
7 Vilas
6A Walworth
7 Washburn
6A Washington
6A Waukesha
6A Waupaca
6A Waushara
6A Winnebago
6A Wood

**Wyoming**

6B Albany
6B Big Horn
6B Campbell
6B Carbon
6B Converse
6B Crook
6B Fremont
5B Goshen
6B Hot Springs
6B Johnson
6B Laramie
7 Lincoln
6B Natrona
6B Niobrara
6B Park
5B Platte
6B Sheridan
7 Sublette
6B Sweetwater
7 Teton
6B Uinta
6B Washakie
6B Weston

**US TERRITORIES**

**American Samoa**

1A (all)*

**Guam**

1A (all)*

**Northern Mariana Islands**

1A (all)*

**Puerto Rico**

1A (all)*

**Virgin Islands**

1A (all)*

**TABLE N1101.5(1)**
**DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION *U*-FACTORS**

| FRAME TYPE | SINGLE PANE | DOUBLE PANE | SKYLIGHT | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Single | Double |
| Metal | 1.2 | 0.8 | 2 | 1.3 |
| Metal with thermal break | 1.1 | 0.65 | 1.9 | 1.1 |
| Nonmetal or metal clad | 0.95 | 0.55 | 1.75 | 1.05 |
| Glazed block | 0.6 | | | |

**TABLE N1101.5(2)**
**DEFAULT DOOR *U*-FACTORS**

| DOOR TYPE | *U*-FACTOR |
|---|---|
| Uninsulated metal | 1.2 |
| Insulated metal | 0.6 |
| Wood | 0.5 |
| Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane | 0.35 |

**TABLE N1101.5(3)**
**DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC**

| SINGLE GLAZED | | DOUBLE GLAZED | | GLAZED BLOCK |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Clear | Tinted | Clear | Tinted | |
| 0.8 | 0.7 | 0.7 | 0.6 | 0.6 |

## SECTION N1102 BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

**N1102.1 Insulation and fenestration criteria.** The *building thermal envelope* shall meet the requirements of Table N1102.1 based on the climate zone specified in Table N1101.2.

**N1102.1.1 *R*-value computation.** Insulation material used in layers, such as framing cavity insulation and insulating sheathing, shall be summed to compute the component *R*-value. The manufacturer's settled *R*-value shall be used for blown insulation. Computed *R*-values shall not include an *R*-value for other building materials or air films.

**N1102.1.2 *U*-factor alternative.** An assembly with a *U*-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table N1102.1.2 shall be permitted as an alternative to the *R*-value in Table N1102.1.

**N1102.1.3 Total UA alternative.** If the total *building thermal envelope* UA (sum of *U*-factor times assembly area) is less than or equal to the total UA resulting from using the *U*-factors in Table N1102.1.2, (multiplied by the same assembly area as in the proposed building), the building shall be considered in compliance with Table N1102.1. The UA calculation shall be done using a method consistent with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials. The SHGC requirements shall be met in addition to UA compliance.

**TABLE N1102.1**
**INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]**

| CLIMATE ZONE | FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR | SKYLIGHT[b] *U*-FACTOR | GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC | CEILING *R*-VALUE | WOOD FRAME WALL *R*-VALUE | MASS WALL *R*-VALUE[k] | FLOOR *R*-VALUE | BASEMENT[c] WALL *R*-VALUE | SLAB[d] *R*-VALUE AND DEPTH | CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL *R*-VALUE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1.2 | 0.75 | 0.35[j] | 30 | 13 | 3/4 | 13 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 0.65[i] | 0.75 | 0.35[j] | 30 | 13 | 4/6 | 13 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 3 | 0.50[i] | 0.65 | 0.35[e, j] | 30 | 13 | 5/8 | 19 | 5/13[f] | 0 | 5/13 |
| 4 except Marine | 0.35 | 0.60 | NR | 38 | 13 | 5/10 | 19 | 10/13 | 10, 2 ft | 10/13 |
| 5 and Marine 4 | 0.35 | 0.60 | NR | 38 | 20 or 13 + 5[h] | 13/17 | 30[f] | 10/13 | 10, 2 ft | 10/13 |
| 6 | 0.35 | 0.60 | NR | 49 | 20 or 13 + 5[h] | 15/19 | 30[g] | 10/13 | 10, 4 ft | 10/13 |
| 7 and 8 | 0.35 | 0.60 | NR | 49 | 21 | 19/21 | 30[g] | 10/13 | 10, 4 ft | 10/13 |

a. *R*-values are minimums. *U*-factors and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) are maximums. R-19 batts compressed in to nominal 2 × 6 framing cavity such that the *R*-value is reduced by R-1 or more shall be marked with the compressed batt *R*-value in addition to the full thickness *R*-value.

b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

c. The first *R*-value applies to continuous insulation, the second to framing cavity insulation; either insulation meets the requirement.

d. R-5 shall be added to the required slab edge *R*-values for heated slabs. Insulation depth shall be the depth of the footing or 2 feet, whichever is less, in zones 1 through 3 for heated slabs.

e. There are no SHGC requirements in the Marine Zone.

f. Basement wall insulation is not required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure N1101.2 and Table N1101.2.

g. Or insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity, R-19 minimum.

h. "13+5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 insulated sheathing. If structural sheathing covers 25% or less of the exterior, R-5 sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used. If structural sheathing covers more than 25% of exterior, structural sheathing shall be supplemented with insulated sheathing of at least R-2.

i. For impact-rated fenestration complying with Section R301.2.1.2, the maximum *U*-factor shall be 0.75 in zone 2 and 0.65 in zone 3.

j. For impact-resistant fenestration complying with Section R301.2.1.2 of the *International Residential Code*, the maximum SHGC shall be 0.40.

k. The second *R*-value applies when more than half the insulation is on the interior.

**N1102.2 Specific insulation requirements.**

**N1102.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces.** When Section N1102.1 would require R-38 in the ceiling, R-30 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirement for R-38 wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Similarly R-38 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirement for R-49 wherever the full height of uncompressed R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.3.

**N1102.2.2 Ceilings without attic spaces.** Where Section N1102.1 would require insulation levels above R-30 and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section N1102.1 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m$^2$) of ceiling area. This reduction shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.3.

**N1102.2.3 Access hatches and doors.** Access doors from *conditioned spaces* to unconditioned spaces (e.g., attics and crawl spaces) shall be weatherstripped and insulated to a level equivalent to the insulation on the surrounding surfaces. Access shall be provided to all *equipment* which prevents damaging or compressing the insulation. A wood framed or equivalent baffle or retainer is required to be provided when loose fill insulation is installed, the purpose of which is to prevent the loose fill insulation from spilling into the living space when the *attic* access is opened and to provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed *R*-value of the loose fill insulation.

**N1102.2.4 Mass walls.** Mass walls, for the purposes of this chapter, shall be considered above-grade walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form (ICF), masonry cavity, brick (other than brick veneer), earth (adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth) and solid timber/logs.

**N1102.2.5 Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors.** Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors shall meet the insulation requirements of Table N1102.2.5 or shall meet the *U*-factor requirements in Table N1102.1.2. The calculation of the *U*-factor for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.

**Exception:** In climate zones 1 and 2, the continuous insulation requirements in Table N1102.2.5 shall be permitted to be reduced to R-3 for steel frame wall assemblies with studs spaced at 24 inches (610 mm) on center.

**N1102.2.6 Floors.** Floor insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking.

**N1102.2.7 Basement walls.** *Exterior walls* associated with conditioned basements shall be insulated from the top of the *basement wall* down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below *grade* or to the *basement* floor, whichever is less. Walls associated with unconditioned basements shall meet this requirement unless the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Sections N1102.1 and N1102.2.6.

**N1102.2.8 Slab-on-grade floors.** Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches below *grade* shall be insulated in accordance with Table N1102.1. The insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab on the outside or inside of the foundation wall. Insulation located below *grade* shall be extended the distance provided in Table N1102.1 by any combination of vertical insulation, insulation extending under the slab or insulation extending out from the building. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by a minimum of 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. The top edge of the insulation installed between the *exterior wall* and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the *exterior wall*. Slab-edge insulation is not required in jurisdictions designated by the code official as having a very heavy termite infestation.

**TABLE N1102.1.2**
**EQUIVALENT *U*-FACTORS[a]**

| CLIMATE ZONE | FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR | SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTOR | CEILING *U*-FACTOR | FRAME WALL *U*-FACTOR | MASS WALL *U*-FACTOR[b] | FLOOR *U*-FACTOR | BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR | CRAWL SPACE WALL *U*-FACTOR |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1.20 | 0.75 | 0.035 | 0.082 | 0.197 | 0.064 | 0.360 | 0.477 |
| 2 | 0.65 | 0.75 | 0.035 | 0.082 | 0.165 | 0.064 | 0.360 | 0.477 |
| 3 | 0.50 | 0.65 | 0.035 | 0.082 | 0.141 | 0.047 | 0.091[c] | 0.136 |
| 4 except Marine | 0.35 | 0.60 | 0.030 | 0.082 | 0.141 | 0.047 | 0.059 | 0.065 |
| 5 and Marine 4 | 0.35 | 0.60 | 0.030 | 0.060 | 0.082 | 0.033 | 0.059 | 0.065 |
| 6 | 0.35 | 0.60 | 0.026 | 0.060 | 0.060 | 0.033 | 0.059 | 0.065 |
| 7 and 8 | 0.35 | 0.60 | 0.026 | 0.057 | 0.057 | 0.033 | 0.059 | 0.065 |

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.

b. When more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall be a maximum of 0.17 in zone 1, 0.14 in zone 2, 0.12 in zone 3, 0.10 in zone 4 except Marine and the same as the frame wall *U*-factor in Marine zone 4 and in zones 5 through 8.

c. Basement wall *U*-factor of 0.360 in warm-humid climates as defined by Figure N1101.2 and Table N1101.2.

**TABLE N1102.2.5**
**STEEL-FRAME CEILING, WALL AND FLOOR INSULATION (*R*-VALUE)**

| WOOD FRAME *R*-VALUE REQUIREMENT | COLD-FORMED STEEL EQUIVALENT *R*-VALUE[a] |
|---|---|
| **Steel Truss Ceilings[a]** | |
| R-30 | R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5 |
| R-38 | R-49 or R-38 + 3 |
| R-49 | R-38 + 5 |
| **Steel Joist Ceilings[b]** | |
| R-30 | R-38 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8<br>R-49 in any framing |
| R-38 | R-49 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8 or 2 × 10 |
| **Steel Framed Wall** | |
| R-13 | R-13 + 5 or R15 + 4 or R-21 + 3 or R-0 + 10 |
| R-19 | R-13 + 9 or R-19 + 8 or R-25 + 7 |
| R-21 | R-13 + 10 or R-19 + 9 or R-25 + 8 |
| **Steel Joist Floor** | |
| R-13 | R-19 in 2 × 6<br>R-19 + R-6 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10 |
| R-19 | R-19 + R-6 in 2 × 6<br>R-19 + R-12 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Cavity insulation *R*-value is listed first, followed by continuous insulation *R*-value.
b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.

**N1102.2.9 Crawl space walls.** As an alternative to insulating floors over crawl spaces, insulation of crawl space walls shall be permitted when the crawl space is not vented to the outside. Crawl space wall insulation shall be permanently fastened to the wall and extend downward from the floor to the finished *grade* level and then vertically and/or horizontally for at least an additional 24 inches (610 mm). Exposed earth in unvented crawl space foundations shall be covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder. All joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (152 mm)and be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) up the stem wall and shall be attached to the stem wall.

**N1102.2.10 Masonry veneer.** Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of the foundation that supports a masonry veneer.

**N1102.2.11 Thermally isolated sunroom insulation.** The minimum ceiling insulation *R*-values shall be R-19 in zones 1 through 4 and R-24 in zones 5 though 8. The minimum wall *R*-value shall be R-13 in all zones. New wall(s) separating the sunroom from *conditioned space* shall meet the *building thermal envelope* requirements.

**N1102.3 Fenestration.**

**N1102.3.1 *U*-factor.** An area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements.

**N1102.3.2 Glazed fenestration SHGC.** An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50 percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) requirements.

**N1102.3.3 Glazed fenestration exemption.** Up to 15 square feet (1.4 $m^2$) of glazed fenestration per *dwelling unit* shall be permitted to be exempt from *U*-factor and SHGC requirements in Section N1102.1. This exemption shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.3.

**N1102.3.4 Opaque door exemption.** One side-hinged opaque door assembly up to 24 square feet (2.22 $m^2$) in area is exempted from the *U*-factor requirement in Section N1102.1.1. This exemption shall not apply to the *U*-factor alternative approach in Section N1102.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section N1102.1.3.

**N1102.3.5 Thermally isolated sunroom *U*-factor.** For zones 4 through 8 the maximum fenestration *U*-factor shall be 0.50 and the maximum skylight *U*-factor shall be 0.75. New windows and doors separating the sunroom from *conditioned space* shall meet the *building thermal envelope* requirements.

**N1102.3.6 Replacement fenestration.** Where some or all of an existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) in Table N1102.1.

**N1102.4 Air leakage.**

**N1102.4.1 Building thermal envelope.** The *building thermal envelope* shall be durably sealed to limit infiltration. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction. The following shall be caulked, gasketed, weatherstripped or otherwise sealed with an air barrier material, suitable film or solid material.

1. All joints, seams and penetrations.
2. Site-built windows, doors and skylights.
3. Openings between window and door assemblies and their respective jambs and framing.
4. Utility penetrations.
5. Dropped ceilings or chases adjacent to the thermal envelope.
6. Knee walls.
7. Walls and ceilings separating the garage from *conditioned spaces*.
8. Behind tubs and showers on *exterior walls*.
9. Common walls between *dwelling units*.
10. Attic access openings.
11. Rim joists junction.
12. Other sources of infiltration.

**N1102.4.2 Air sealing and insulation.** Building envelope air tightness and insulation installation shall be demonstrated to comply with one of the following options given by Section N1102.4.2.1 or N1102.4.2.2.

**N1102.4.2.1 Testing option.** Tested air leakage is less than 7 ACH when tested with a blower door at a pressure of 50 pascals (0.007 psi). Testing shall occur after rough in and after installation of penetrations of the building envelope, including penetrations for utilities, plumbing, electrical, ventilation and combustion appliances.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;
2. Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed; including exhaust, intake, makeup air, back draft, and flue dampers;
3. Interior doors shall be open;
4. Exterior openings for continuous ventilation systems and heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;
5. Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off;
6. HVAC ducts shall not be sealed; and
7. Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.

**N1102.4.2.2 Visual inspection option.** The items listed in Table N1102.4.2, applicable to the method of construction, are field verified. Where required by the code official, an *approved* party independent from the installer of the insulation , shall inspect the air barrier and insulation.

**N1102.4.3 Fireplaces.** New wood-burning fireplaces shall have gasketed doors and outdoor combustion air.

**N1102.4.4 Fenestration air leakage.** Windows, skylights and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of no more than 0.3 cubic foot per minute per square foot [1.5(L/s)/m$^2$], and swinging doors no more than 0.5 cubic foot per minute per square foot [2.5(L/s)/m$^2$], when tested according to NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and listed and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

**Exception:** Site-built windows, skylights and doors.

**N1102.4.5 Recessed lighting.** Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and unconditioned spaces. All recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and *labeled* as meeting ASTM E 283 when tested at 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential with no more than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) of air movement from the *conditioned space* to the ceiling cavity. All recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.

## SECTION N1103 SYSTEMS

**N1103.1 Controls.** At least one thermostat shall be installed for each separate heating and cooling system.

**N1103.1.1 Programmable thermostat.** Where the primary heating system is a forced air furnace, at least one thermostat per *dwelling unit* shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature set points at different times of the day. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C). The thermostat shall initially be programmed with a heating temperature set point no higher than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature set point no lower than 78°F (26°C).

**N1103.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat.** Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

**N1103.2 Ducts.**

**N1103.2.1 Insulation.** Supply ducts in attics shall be insulated to a minimum of R-8. All other ducts shall be insulated to a minimum of R-6.

**Exception:** Ducts or portions thereof located completely inside the *building thermal envelope*.

**N1103.2.2 Sealing.** Ducts, air handlers, filter boxes and building cavities used as ducts shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section M1601.4. Duct tightness shall be verified by either fo the following:

1. Post-construction test: Leakage to outdoors shall be less than or equal to 8 cfm (3.78 L/s) per 100 ft$^2$ (9.29

m$^2$) of conditioned floor area or a total leakage less than or equal to 12 cfm (5.66 L/s) per 100 ft$^2$ (9.29 m$^2$) of conditioned floor area when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler end closure. All register boots shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

2. Rough-in test: Total leakage shall be less than or equal to 6 cfm (2.83 L/s) per 100 ft$^2$ (9.29 m$^2$) of conditioned floor area when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the roughed in system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. All register boots shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test. If the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cfm (1.89 L/s) per 100 ft$^2$ (9.29 m$^2$) of conditioned floor area.

**Exception:** Duct tightness test is not required if the air handler and all ducts are located within *conditioned space*.

**N1103.2.3 Building cavities.** Building framing cavities shall not be used as supply ducts.

**N1103.3 Mechanical system piping insulation.** Mechanical system piping capable of carrying fluids above 105°F (40°C) or below 55°F (13°C) shall be insulated to a minimum of R-3.

**N1103.4 Circulating hot water systems.** All circulating service hot water piping shall be insulated to at least R-2. Circulating hot water systems shall include an automatic or *readily accessible* manual switch that can turn off the hot water circulating pump when the system is not in use.

**N1103.5 Mechanical ventilation.** Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the ventilation system is not operating.

**TABLE N1102.4.2**
**AIR BARRIER AND INSULATION INSPECTION**

| COMPONENT | CRITERIA |
|---|---|
| Air barrier and thermal barrier | Exterior thermal envelope insulation for framed walls is installed in substantial contact and continuous alignment with building envelope air barrier.<br>Breaks or joints in the air barrier are filled or repaired.<br>Air-permeable insulation is not used as a sealing material. |
| Ceiling/attic | Air barrier in any dropped ceiling/soffit is substantially aligned with insulation and any gaps are sealed<br>Attic access (except unvented attic), knee wall door, or drop down stair is sealed. |
| Walls | Corners and headers are insulated.<br>Junction of foundation and sill plate is sealed. |
| Windows and doors | Space between window/door jambs and framing is sealed. |
| Rim joists | Rim joists are insulated and include an air barrier. |
| Floors (including above garage and cantilevered floors) | Insulation is installed to maintain permanent contact with underside of subfloor decking.<br>Air barrier is installed at any exposed edge of floor. |
| Crawlspace walls | Insulation is permanently attached to walls.<br>Exposed earth in unvented crawlspaces is covered with Class I vapor retarder with overlapping joints taped. |
| Shafts, penetrations | Duct shafts, utility penetrations, knee walls and flue shafts opening to exterior or unconditioned space are sealed. |
| Narrow cavities | Batts in narrow cavities are cut to fit, or narrow cavities are filled by sprayed/blown insulation. |
| Garage separation | Air sealing is provided between the garage and conditioned spaces. |
| Recessed lighting | Recessed light fixtures are airtight, IC rated and sealed to drywall.<br>Exception—fixtures in conditioned space. |
| Plumbing and wiring | Insulation is placed between outside and pipes. Batt insulation is cut to fit around wiring and plumbing, or sprayed/blown insulation extends behind piping and wiring. |
| Shower/tub on exterior wall | Showers and tubs on exterior walls have insulation and an air barrier separating them from the exterior wall. |
| Electrical/phone box on exterior wall | Air barrier extends behind boxes or air sealed type boxes are installed. |
| Common wall | Air barrier is installed in common wall between dwelling units. |
| HVAC register boots | HVAC register boots that penetrate building envelope are sealed to subfloor or drywall. |
| Fireplace | Fireplace walls include an air barrier. |

**N1103.6 Equipment sizing.** Heating and cooling *equipment* shall be sized as specified in Section M1401.3.

**N1103.7 Snow melt system controls.** Snow- and ice-melting systems supplied through energy service to the building shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is above 50°F (10°C) and no precipitation is falling and an automatic or manual control that will allow shutoff when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (5°C).

**N1103.8 Pools.** Pools shall be provided with energy conserving measures in accordance with Sections N1103.8.1 through N1103.8.3.

**N1103.8.1 Pool heaters.** All pool heaters shall be equipped with a *readily accessible* on-off switch to allow shutting off the heater without adjusting the thermostat setting. Pool heaters fired by natural gas or LPG shall not have continuously burning pilot lights.

**N1103.8.2 Time switches.** Time switches that can automatically turn off and on heaters and pumps according to a preset schedule shall be installed on swimming pool heaters and pumps.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Where pumps are required to operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

**N1103.8.3 Pool covers.** Heated pools shall be equipped with a vapor retardant pool cover on or at the water surface. Pools heated to more than 90°F (32°C) shall have a pool cover with a minimum insulation value of R-12.

## SECTION N1104
## LIGHTING SYSTEMS

**N1104.1 Lighting equipment.** A minimum of 50 percent of the lamps in permanently installed lighting fixtures shall be *high-efficacy lamps*.

# *Part V—Mechanical*

## CHAPTER 12
# MECHANICAL ADMINISTRATION

### SECTION M1201 GENERAL

<u>[W]</u> **M1201.1 Scope.** The provisions of Chapters 12 through 24 shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, *alteration* and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and used to control environmental conditions within buildings. These chapters shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, *equipment* and *appliances* specifically addressed in this code.

> <u>**Exception:** The standards for liquefied petroleum gas installations are the 2008 edition of NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code* and the 2009 edition of ANSI Z223.1/NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*.</u>

**M1201.2 Application.** In addition to the general administration requirements of Chapter 1, the administrative provisions of this chapter shall also apply to the mechanical requirements of Chapters 13 through 24.

### [EB] SECTION M1202 EXISTING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

**M1202.1 Additions, alterations or repairs.** *Additions*, *alterations*, renovations or repairs to a mechanical system shall conform to the requirements for a new mechanical system without requiring the existing mechanical system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. *Additions, alterations* or repairs shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded. Minor *additions*, *alterations* or repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous, and is *approved*.

**M1202.2 Existing installations.** Except as otherwise provided for in this code, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing mechanical system lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

**M1202.3 Maintenance.** Mechanical systems, both existing and new, and parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for maintenance of the mechanical systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the *building official* shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected.

# CHAPTER 13

# GENERAL MECHANICAL SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

## SECTION M1301 GENERAL

**M1301.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the installation of mechanical systems not specifically covered in other chapters applicable to mechanical systems. Installations of mechanical *appliances, equipment* and systems not addressed by this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *International Mechanical Code* and the *International Fuel Gas Code.*

**M1301.1.1 Flood-resistant installation.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1), mechanical *appliances, equipment* and systems shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

## SECTION M1302 APPROVAL

**M1302.1 Listed and labeled.** *Appliances* regulated by this code shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application in which they are installed and used, unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with Section R104.11.

**[W] M1302.2 Construction documents.** The plans and specifications shall show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the materials, equipment and systems as herein governed, including, but not limited to, design criteria, size and type of apparatus and equipment, systems and equipment controls, provisions for combustion air to fuel-burning appliances, and other pertinent data to indicate conformance with the requirements of this code.

**[W] M1302.3 Testing.** At the discretion of the *building official*, flow testing may be required to verify that the mechanical system(s) satisfies the requirements of this code. Flow testing may be performed using flow hoods measuring at the intake or exhaust points of the system, in-line pitot tube, or pitot-traverse type measurement systems in the duct, short term tracer gas measurements, or other means approved by the *building official.*

## SECTION M1303 LABELING OF APPLIANCES

**M1303.1 Label information.** A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to *appliances* on which shall appear, in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, a serial number and the seal or *mark* of the testing agency. A *label* shall also include the following:

1. Electrical *appliances*. Electrical rating in volts, amperes and motor phase; identification of individual electrical components in volts, amperes or watts and motor phase; and in Btu/h (W) output and required clearances.
2. Absorption units. Hourly rating in Btu/h (W), minimum hourly rating for units having step or automatic modulating controls, type of fuel, type of refrigerant, cooling capacity in Btu/h (W) and required clearances.
3. Fuel-burning units. Hourly rating in Btu/h (W), type of fuel *approved* for use with the *appliance* and required clearances.
4. Electric comfort heating *appliances*. Name and trademark of the manufacturer; the model number or equivalent; the electric rating in volts, amperes and phase; Btu/h (W) output rating; individual marking for each electrical component in amperes or watts, volts and phase; required clearances from combustibles and a seal indicating approval of the *appliance* by an *approved agency*.
5. Maintenance instructions. Required regular maintenance actions and title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

## SECTION M1304 TYPE OF FUEL

**M1304.1 Fuel types.** Fuel-fired *appliances* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which they will be connected and the altitude at which they are installed. *Appliances* that comprise parts of the building mechanical system shall not be converted for the use of a different fuel, except where *approved* and converted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The fuel input rate shall not be increased or decreased beyond the limit rating for the altitude at which the *appliance* is installed.

## SECTION M1305 APPLIANCE ACCESS

**M1305.1 Appliance access for inspection service, repair and replacement.** *Appliances* shall be accessible for inspection, service, repair and replacement without removing permanent construction, other *appliances*, or any other piping or ducts not connected to the *appliance* being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space at least 30 inches deep and 30 inches wide (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an *appliance*. Installation of room heaters shall be permitted with at least an 18-inch (457 mm) working space. A platform shall not be required for room heaters.

**M1305.1.1 Furnaces and air handlers.** Furnaces and air handlers within compartments or alcoves shall have a minimum working space clearance of 3 inches (76 mm) along the sides, back and top with a total width of the enclosing space being at least 12 inches (305 mm) wider than the furnace or air handler. Furnaces having a firebox open to the atmosphere shall have at least a 6-inch (152 mm) working space along the front combustion chamber side. Combustion air openings at the rear or side of the compartment shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 17.

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to replacement *appliances* installed in existing compartments and alcoves where the working space clearances are in accordance with the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1305.1.2 Appliances in rooms.** *Appliances* installed in a compartment, alcove, *basement* or similar space shall be accessed by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance* in the space, provided there is a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), at the front or service side of the *appliance* with the door open.

**M1305.1.3 Appliances in attics.** *Attics* containing *appliances* shall be provided with an opening and a clear and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) long measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring in accordance with Chapter 5 not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space at least 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present along all sides of the *appliance* where access is required. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest appliance.

**Exceptions:**

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* can be serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall be not more than 50 feet (15 250 mm) long.

**M1305.1.3.1 Electrical requirements.** A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be installed at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with Chapter 39.

**M1305.1.4 Appliances under floors.** Underfloor spaces containing *appliances* shall be provided with an unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) long measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. A level service space at least 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm)wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry extending 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade in accordance with Chapter 4. The rough-framed access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to remove the largest *appliance*.

**Exceptions:**

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open, and the *appliance* can be serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet high (1929 mm) and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

**M1305.1.4.1 Ground clearance.** *Equipment* and *appliances* supported from the ground shall be level and firmly supported on a concrete slab or other *approved* material extending not less than 3 inches ( 76 mm ) above the adjoining ground. Such support shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. *Appliances* suspended from the floor shall have a clearance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the ground.

**M1305.1.4.2 Excavations.** Excavations for *appliance* installations shall extend to a depth of 6 inches (152 mm) below the *appliance* and 12 inches (305 mm) on all sides, except that the control side shall have a clearance of 30 inches (762 mm).

**M1305.1.4.3 Electrical requirements.** A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be installed at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with Chapter 39.

## SECTION M1306
## CLEARANCES FROM COMBUSTIBLE CONSTRUCTION

**M1306.1 Appliance clearance.** *Appliances* shall be installed with the clearances from unprotected combustible materials as indicated on the *appliance label* and in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1306.2 Clearance reduction.** Reduction of clearances shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions and Table M1306.2. Forms of protection with ventilated air space shall conform to the following requirements:

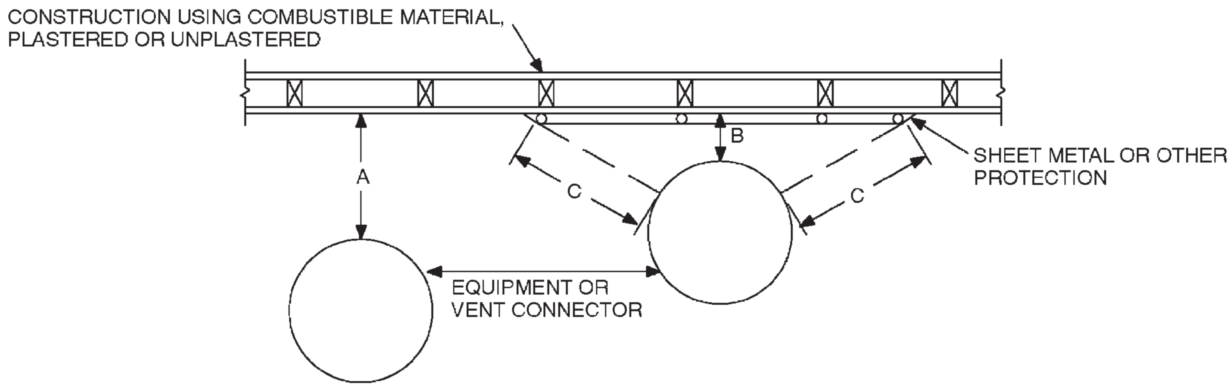
1. Not less than 1-inch (25 mm) air space shall be provided between the protection and combustible wall surface.
2. Air circulation shall be provided by having edges of the wall protection open at least 1 inch (25 mm).
3. If the wall protection is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, air circulation shall be provided by having the bottom and top edges, or the side and top edges open at least 1 inch (25 mm).
4. Wall protection covering two walls in a corner shall be open at the bottom and top edges at least 1 inch (25 mm).

**TABLE M1306.2**
**REDUCTION OF CLEARANCES WITH SPECIFIED FORMS OF PROTECTION[a, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l]**

| TYPE OF PROTECTION APPLIED TO AND COVERING ALL SURFACES OF COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL WITHIN THE DISTANCE SPECIFIED AS THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION (See Figures M1306.1 and M1306.2) | WHERE THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION FROM APPLIANCE, VENT CONNECTOR, OR SINGLE WALL METAL PIPE IS: | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 36 inches | | 18 inches | | 12 inches | | 9 inches | | 6 inches | |
| | Allowable clearances with specified protection (Inches)[b] | | | | | | | | | |
| | Use column 1 for clearances above an appliance or horizontal connector. Use column 2 for clearances from an appliance, vertical connector and single-wall metal pipe. | | | | | | | | | |
| | Above column 1 | Sides and rear column 2 | Above column 1 | Sides and rear column 2 | Above column 1 | Sides and rear column 2 | Above column 1 | Sides and rear column 2 | Above column 1 | Sides and rear column 2 |
| $3^1/_2$-inch thick masonry wall without ventilated air space | — | 24 | — | 12 | — | 9 | — | 6 | — | 5 |
| $^1/_2$-in. insulation board over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts | 24 | 18 | 12 | 9 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 |
| Galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire or rear face with a ventilated air space | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| $3^1/_2$-inch thick masonry wall with ventilated air space | — | 12 | — | 6 | — | 6 | — | 6 | — | 6 |
| Galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) with a ventilated air space 1-inch off the combustible assembly | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 2 |
| $^1/_2$-inch thick insulation board with ventilated air space | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| Galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) with ventilated air space over 24 gage sheet steel with a ventilated space | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets of galvanized sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0236-inch (No. 24 gage) with a ventilated air space | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |

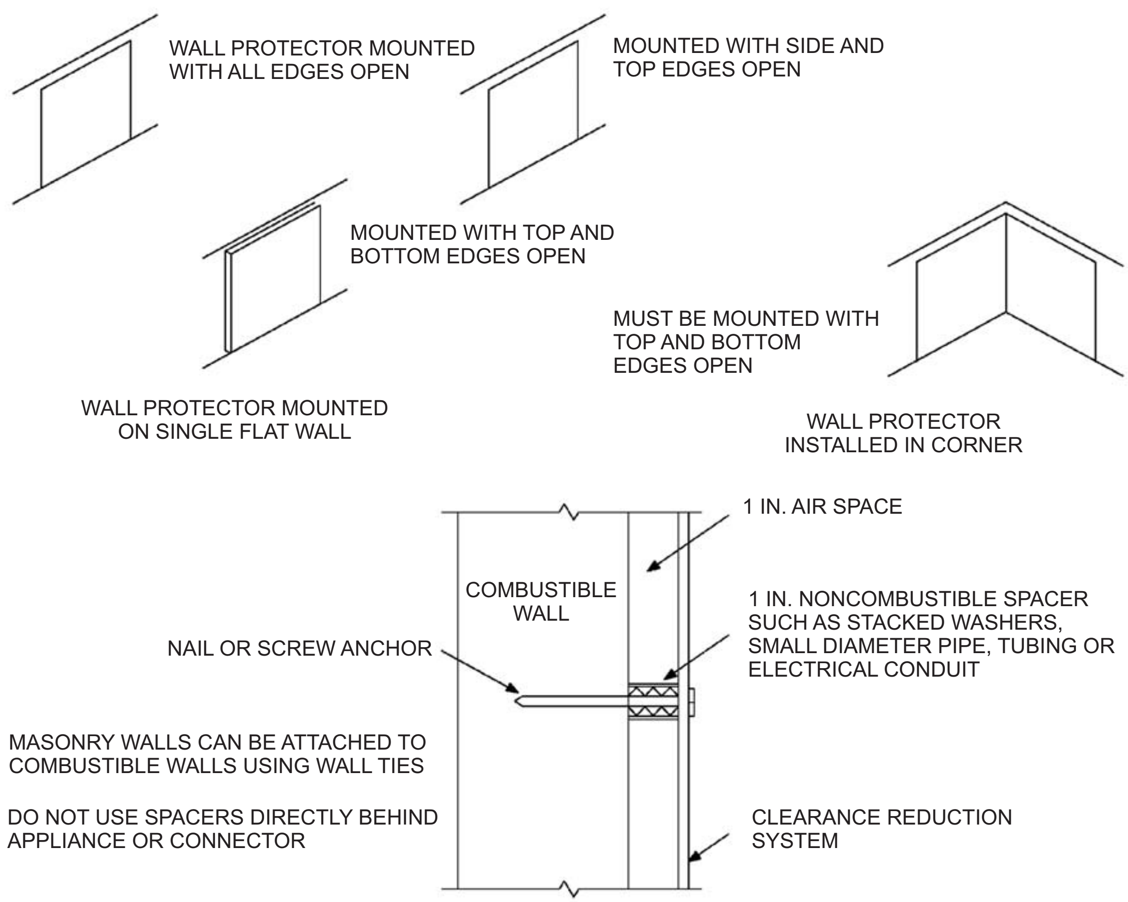
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.019 kg/m$^3$, °C = [(°F)-32/1.8], 1 Btu/(h × ft$^2$ × °F/in.) = 0.001442299 (W/cm$^2$ × °C/cm).

a. Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.
b. Clearances shall be measured from the surface of the heat producing appliance or equipment to the outer surface of the combustible material or combustible assembly.
c. Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. No spacer or tie shall be used directly opposite appliance or connector.
d. Where all clearance reduction systems use a ventilated air space, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described. (See Figures M1306.1 and M1306.2.)
e. There shall be at least 1 inch between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated air space.
f. If a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, adequate air circulation shall be permitted to be provided by leaving only the bottom and top edges or only the side and top edges open with at least a 1-inch air gap.
g. Mineral wool and glass fiber batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1,500°F.
h. Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu inch per square foot per hour °F or less. Insulation board shall be formed of noncombustible material.
i. There shall be at least 1 inch between the appliance and the protector. In no case shall the clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface be reduced below that allowed in this table.
j. All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.
k. Listed single-wall connectors shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.
l. For limitations on clearance reduction for solid-fuel-burning appliances see Section M1306.2.1.




NOTE: "A" equals the required clearance with no protection. "B" equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table M1306.2. The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

**FIGURE M1306.1**
**REDUCED CLEARANCE DIAGRAM**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE M1306.2**
**WALL PROTECTOR CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM**

**M1306.2.1 Solid-fuel appliances.** Table M1306.2 shall not be used to reduce the clearance required for solid-fuel *appliances* listed for installation with minimum clearances of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. For *appliances listed* for installation with minimum clearances greater than 12 inches (305 mm), Table M1306.2 shall not be used to reduce the clearance to less than 12 inches (305 mm).

## SECTION M1307 APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

**M1307.1 General.** Installation of *appliances* shall conform to the conditions of their *listing* and *label* and the manufacturer's installation instructions. The manufacturer's operating and installation instructions shall remain attached to the *appliance*.

**M1307.2 Anchorage of appliances.** *Appliances* designed to be fixed in position shall be fastened or anchored in an *approved* manner. In Seismic Design Categories $D_1$ and $D_2$, water heaters shall be anchored or strapped to resist horizontal displacement caused by earthquake motion. Strapping shall be at points within the upper one-third and lower one-third of the *appliance's* vertical dimensions. At the lower point, the strapping shall maintain a minimum distance of 4 inches (102 mm) above the controls.

**M1307.3 Elevation of ignition source.** *Appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor in garages. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the garage.

**M1307.3.1 Protection from impact.** *Appliances* shall not be installed in a location subject to vehicle damage except where protected by *approved* barriers.

**M1307.4 Hydrogen generating and refueling operations.** *Ventilation* shall be required in accordance with Section M1307.4.1, M1307.4.2 or M1307.4.3 in private garages that contain hydrogen-generating *appliances* or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

**M1307.4.1 Natural ventilation.** Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square feet (79 $m^2$) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections M1307.4.1.1 and M1307.4.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen generating *appliances* shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (1.9 L/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet (23 $m^2$) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In those locations, *equipment* and *appliance s*having an *ignition source* shall be located so that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

**M1307.4.1.1 Two openings.** Two permanent openings shall be constructed within the garage. The upper opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling of the garage. The lower opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor of the garage. Both openings shall be constructed in the same exterior wall. The openings shall communicate directly with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of $^1/_2$ square foot per 1,000 cubic feet (1.7 $m^2$/1000 $m^3$) of garage volume.

**M1307.4.1.2 Louvers and grilles.** In calculating free area required by Section M1307.4.1, the required size of openings shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have a 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have a 75-percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

**M1307.4.2 Mechanical ventilation.** Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16 of the *International Mechanical Code*. In these locations, *equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located so that the source of ignition is below the mechanical *ventilation* outlet(s).

**M1307.4.3 Specially engineered installations.** As an alternative to the provisions of Sections M1307.4.1 and M1307.4.2, the necessary supply of air for *ventilation* and dilution of flammable gases shall be provided by an *approved* engineered system.

**M1307.5 Electrical appliances.** Electrical *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with Chapters 14, 15, 19, 20 and 34 through 43 of this code.

**M1307.6 Plumbing connections.** Potable water and drainage system connections to *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with Chapters 29 and 30.

## SECTION M1308 MECHANICAL SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

**M1308.1 Drilling and notching.** Wood-framed structural members shall be drilled, notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Sections R502.8, R602.6, R602.6.1 and R802.7. Holes in load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be permitted only in accordance with Sections R505.2.5, R603.2.5 and R804.2.5. In accordance with the provisions of Sections R505.3.5, R603.3.4 and R804.3.4, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light frame construction shall not be permitted. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section R613.7.

**M1308.2 Protection against physical damage.** In concealed locations where piping, other than cast-iron or galvanized steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than 1.5 inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575-inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage), shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored, and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

# CHAPTER 14
# HEATING AND COOLING EQUIPMENT

## SECTION M1401 GENERAL

**M1401.1 Installation.** Heating and cooling *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this code.

**M1401.2 Access.** Heating and cooling *equipment* shall be located with respect to building construction and other *equipment* to permit maintenance, servicing and replacement. Clearances shall be maintained to permit cleaning of heating and cooling surfaces; replacement of filters, blowers, motors, controls and vent connections; lubrication of moving parts; and adjustments.

**M1401.3 Sizing.** Heating and cooling *equipment* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other *approved* heating and cooling calculation methodologies.

**M1401.4 Exterior installations.** *Equipment* installed outdoors shall be *listed* and *labeled* for outdoor installation. Supports and foundations shall prevent excessive vibration, settlement or movement of the *equipment*. Supports and foundations shall be level and conform to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1401.5 Flood hazard.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1), heating and cooling *equipment* and *appliances* shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

## SECTION M1402 CENTRAL FURNACES

**M1402.1 General.** Oil-fired central furnaces shall conform to ANSI/UL 727. Electric furnaces shall conform to UL 1995.

**M1402.2 Clearances.** Clearances shall be provided in accordance with the *listing* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1402.3 Combustion air.** *Combustion air* shall be supplied in accordance with Chapter 17. *Combustion air* openings shall be unobstructed for a distance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in front of the openings.

## SECTION M1403 HEAT PUMP EQUIPMENT

**M1403.1 Heat pumps.** The minimum unobstructed total area of the outside and return air ducts or openings to a heat pump shall be not less than 6 square inches per 1,000 Btu/h (13 208 $mm^2$/kW) output rating or as indicated by the conditions of the listing of the heat pump. Electric heat pumps shall conform to UL 1995.

**M1403.2 Foundations and supports.** Supports and foundations for the outdoor unit of a heat pump shall be raised at least 3 inches (76 mm) above the ground to permit free drainage of defrost water, and shall conform to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION M1404 REFRIGERATION COOLING EQUIPMENT

**M1404.1 Compliance.** Refrigeration cooling *equipment* shall comply with Section M1411.

## SECTION M1405 BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

**M1405.1 General.** Electric baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and Chapters 34 through 43 of this code.

## SECTION M1406 RADIANT HEATING SYSTEMS

**M1406.1 General.** Electric radiant heating systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and Chapters 34 through 43 of this code.

**M1406.2 Clearances.** Clearances for radiant heating panels or elements to any wiring, outlet boxes and junction boxes used for installing electrical devices or mounting luminaires shall comply with Chapters 34 through 43 of this code.

**M1406.3 Installation of radiant panels.** Radiant panels installed on wood framing shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Heating panels shall be installed parallel to framing members and secured to the surface of framing members or mounted between framing members.
2. Panels shall be nailed or stapled only through the unheated portions provided for this purpose and shall not be fastened at any point closer than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) to an element.
3. Unless *listed* and *labeled for field cutting, heating panels shall be installed as complete units.*

**M1406.4 Installation in concrete or masonry.** Radiant heating systems installed in concrete or masonry shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Radiant heating systems shall be identified as being suitable for the installation, and shall be secured in place as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Radiant heating panels or radiant heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless protected from expansion and contraction.

**M1406.5 Gypsum panels.** Where radiant heating systems are used on gypsum assemblies, operating temperatures shall not exceed 125°F (52°C).

**M1406.6 Finish surfaces.** Finish materials installed over radiant heating panels or systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Surfaces shall be secured so that nails or other fastenings do not pierce the radiant heating elements.

## SECTION M1407
## DUCT HEATERS

**M1407.1 General.** Electric duct heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and Chapters 34 through 43 of this code. Electric furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995.

**M1407.2 Installation.** Electric duct heaters shall be installed so that they will not create a fire hazard. Class 1 ducts, duct coverings and linings shall be interrupted at each heater to provide the clearances specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions. Such interruptions are not required for duct heaters *listed* and *labeled* for zero clearance to combustible materials. Insulation installed in the immediate area of each heater shall be classified for the maximum temperature produced on the duct surface.

**M1407.3 Installation with heat pumps and air conditioners.** Duct heaters located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of a heat pump or air conditioner shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such installations. The heat pump or air conditioner shall additionally be *listed* and *labeled* for such duct heater installations.

**M1407.4 Access.** Duct heaters shall be accessible for servicing, and clearance shall be maintained to permit adjustment, servicing and replacement of controls and heating elements.

**M1407.5 Fan interlock.** The fan circuit shall be provided with an interlock to prevent heater operation when the fan is not operating.

## SECTION M1408
## VENTED FLOOR FURNACES

**M1408.1 General.** Vented floor furnaces shall conform to UL 729 and be installed in accordance with their *listing*, the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this code.

**M1408.2 Clearances.** Vented floor furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1408.3 Location.** Location of floor furnaces shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Floor registers of floor furnaces shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from a wall.
2. Wall registers of floor furnaces shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the adjoining wall at inside corners.
3. The furnace register shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from doors in any position, draperies or similar combustible objects.
4. The furnace register shall be located at least 5 feet (1524 mm) below any projecting combustible materials.
5. The floor furnace burner assembly shall not project into an occupied under-floor area.
6. The floor furnace shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade.
7. The floor furnace shall not be installed where a door can swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the grille opening.

**M1408.4 Access.** An opening in the foundation not less than 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm), or a trap door not less than 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided for access to a floor furnace. The opening and passageway shall be large enough to allow replacement of any part of the *equipment*.

**M1408.5 Installation.** Floor furnace installations shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Thermostats controlling floor furnaces shall be located in the room in which the register of the floor furnace is located.
2. Floor furnaces shall be supported independently of the furnace floor register.
3. Floor furnaces shall be installed not closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the ground. Clearance may be reduced to 2 inches (51 mm), provided that the lower 6 inches (152 mm) of the furnace is sealed to prevent water entry.
4. Where excavation is required for a floor furnace installation, the excavation shall extend 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the control side of the floor furnace and 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the remaining sides. Excavations shall slope outward from the perimeter of the base of the excavation to the surrounding *grade* at an angle not exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from horizontal.
5. Floor furnaces shall not be supported from the ground.

## SECTION M1409
## VENTED WALL FURNACES

**M1409.1 General.** Vented wall furnaces shall conform to UL 730 and be installed in accordance with their listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this code.

**M1409.2 Location.** The location of vented wall furnaces shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Vented wall furnaces shall be located where they will not cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.
2. Vented wall furnaces shall not be located where a door can swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the furnace air inlet or outlet measured at right angles to the opening.

Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

**M1409.3 Installation.** Vented wall furnace installations shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Required wall thicknesses shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Ducts shall not be attached to a wall furnace. Casing extensions or boots shall be installed only when listed as part of a *listed* and *labeled appliance*.
3. A manual shut off valve shall be installed ahead of all controls.

**M1409.4 Access.** Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with access for cleaning of heating surfaces; removal of burners; replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts; and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

## SECTION M1410
## VENTED ROOM HEATERS

**M1410.1 General.** Vented room heaters shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 1509, UL 896 for oil-fired or UL 1482 for solid fuel-fired and installed in accordance with their *listing*, the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this code.

**M1410.2 Floor mounting.** Room heaters shall be installed on noncombustible floors or *approved*assemblies constructed of noncombustible materials that extend at least 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the *appliance*on all sides.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Listed* room heaters shall be installed on noncombustible floors, assemblies constructed of noncombustible materials or *listed* floor protectors with materials and dimensions in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.
2. Room heaters *listed* for installation on combustible floors without floor protection shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

## SECTION M1411
## HEATING AND COOLING EQUIPMENT

**M1411.1 Approved refrigerants.** Refrigerants used in direct refrigerating systems shall conform to the applicable provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE 34.

**M1411.2 Refrigeration coils in warm-air furnaces.** Where a cooling coil is located in the supply plenum of a warm-air furnace, the furnace blower shall be rated at not less than 0.5-inch water column (124 Pa) static pressure unless the furnace is *listed* and *labeled*for use with a cooling coil. Cooling coils shall not be located upstream from heat exchangers unless *listed* and *labeled* for such use. Conversion of existing furnaces for use with cooling coils shall be permitted provided the furnace will operate within the temperature rise specified for the furnace.

**M1411.3 Condensate disposal.** Condensate from all cooling coils or evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an *approved* place of disposal. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley or other areas where it would cause a nuisance.

**M1411.3.1 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems.** In addition to the requirements of Section M1411.3, a secondary drain or auxiliary drain pan shall be required for each cooling or evaporator coil where damage to any building components will occur as a result of overflow from the *equipment* drain pan or stoppage in the condensate drain piping. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Drain piping shall be a minimum of $^3/_4$-inch (19 mm) nominal pipe size. One of the following methods shall be used:

1. An auxiliary drain pan with a separate drain shall be installed under the coils on which condensation will occur. The auxiliary pan drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The pan shall have a minimum depth of 1.5 inches (38 mm), shall not be less than 3 inches (76 mm) larger than the unit or the coil dimensions in width and length and shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material. Galvanized sheet steel pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0236-inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 Gage). Nonmetallic pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).
2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan installed with the *equipment*. This overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection.
3. An auxiliary drain pan without a separate drain line shall be installed under the coils on which condensation will occur. This pan shall be equipped with a water level detection device conforming to UL 508 that will shut off the *equipment* served prior to overflow of the pan. The pan shall be equipped with a fitting to allow for drainage. The auxiliary drain pan shall be constructed in accordance with Item 1 of this section.
4. A water level detection device conforming to UL 508 shall be installed that will shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain is blocked. The device shall be installed in the primary drain line, the overflow drain line or the *equipment*-supplied drain pan, located at a point higher than the primary drain line connection and below the overflow rim of such pan.

**M1411.3.1.1 Water-level monitoring devices.** On down-flow units and all other coils that have no secondary drain or provisions to install a secondary or auxiliary drain pan, a water-level monitoring device shall be installed inside the primary drain pan. This device shall shut off the equipment served in the event that the primary drain becomes restricted. Devices shall not be installed in the drain line.

**M1411.3.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes.** Components of the condensate disposal system shall be cast iron, galvanized steel, copper, polybutylene, polyethylene, ABS, CPVC or PVC pipe or tubing. All components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the materials specified in Chapter 30. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^3/_4$-inch (19 mm) internal diameter and shall not decrease in size from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with an *approved* method.

**M1411.3.3 Appliances, equipment and insulation in pans.** Where *appliances, equipment* or insulation are subject to water damage when auxiliary drain pans fill, those portions of the *appliances, equipment* and insulation shall be installed above the flood level rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the *appliance* or *equipment* shall be water resistant and *approved*.

**M1411.4 Auxiliary drain pan.** Category IV condensing *appliances* shall have an auxiliary drain pan where damage to any building component will occur as a result of stoppage in the condensate drainage system. These pans shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section M1411.3.

**Exception:** Fuel-fired *appliances* that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

**M1411.5 Insulation of refrigerant piping.** Piping and fittings for refrigerant vapor (suction) lines shall be insulated with insulation having a thermal resistivity of at least R-4 and having external surface permeance not exceeding 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(s · m$^2$ · Pa)] when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96.

**M1411.6 Locking access port caps.** Refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with locking-type tamper-resistant caps.

## SECTION M1412 ABSORPTION COOLING EQUIPMENT

**M1412.1 Approval of equipment.** Absorption systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1412.2 Condensate disposal.** Condensate from the cooling coil shall be disposed of as provided in Section M1411.3.

**M1412.3 Insulation of piping.** Refrigerant piping, brine piping and fittings within a building shall be insulated to prevent condensation from forming on piping.

**M1412.4 Pressure-relief protection.** Absorption systems shall be protected by a pressure-relief device. Discharge from the pressure-relief device shall be located where it will not create a hazard to persons or property.

## SECTION M1413 EVAPORATIVE COOLING EQUIPMENT

**M1413.1 General.** Cooling *equipment* that uses evaporation of water for cooling shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Evaporative coolers shall be installed on a level platform or base not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the adjoining ground and secured to prevent displacement. Openings in exterior walls shall be flashed in accordance with Section R703.8.

**M1413.2 Protection of potable water.** The potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the provisions in Section P2902.

## SECTION 1414 FIREPLACE STOVES

**M1414.1 General.** Fireplace stoves shall be *listed*, *labeled* and installed in accordance with the terms of the listing. Fireplace stoves shall be tested in accordance with UL 737.

**M1414.2 Hearth extensions.** Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the *listing* of the fireplace stove. The supporting structure for a hearth extension for a fireplace stove shall be at the same level as the supporting structure for the fireplace unit. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area.

## SECTION M1415 MASONRY HEATERS

**[W] M1415.1 General.** ((~~Masonry heaters shall be constructed in accordance with Section R1002.~~)) Masonry heaters shall be approved by the Washington State Department of Ecology and shall contain both of the following:

1. Primary combustion air ducted from the outside of the structure to the appliance.
2. Tight-fitting ceramic glass or metal doors. Flue dampers, when provided, shall have an external control and when in the closed position shall have a net free area of not less than 5 percent of the flue cross-sectional area.

# CHAPTER 15

# EXHAUST SYSTEMS

## SECTION M1501
## GENERAL

**M1501.1 Outdoor discharge.** The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged to the outdoors. Air shall not be exhausted into an *attic*, soffit, ridge vent or crawl space.

**Exception:** Whole-house *ventilation*-type *attic* fans that discharge into the *attic* space of *dwelling units* having private *attics* shall be permitted.

## SECTION M1502
## CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

**M1502.1 General.** Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**M1502.2 Independent exhaust systems.** Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems and shall convey the moisture to the outdoors.

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to *listed* and *labeled* condensing (ductless) clothes dryers.

**M1502.3 Duct termination.** Exhaust ducts shall terminate on the outside of the building. Exhaust duct terminations shall be in accordance with the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. If the manufacturer's instructions do not specify a termination location, the exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into buildings. Exhaust duct terminations shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination.

**M1502.4 Dryer exhaust ducts.** Dryer exhaust ducts shall conform to the requirements of Sections M1502.4.1 through M1502.4.6.

**M1502.4.1 Material and size.** Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal a minimum 0.016-inch (0.4 mm) thick. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

**M1502.4.2 Duct installation.** Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4 foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct.

**M1502.4.3 Transition duct.** Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust *duct system* shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be a maximum of 8 feet (2438 mm) in length. Transition ducts shall not be concealed within construction.

**M1502.4.4 Duct length.** The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Section M1502.4.4.1 or M1502.4.4.2.

**M1502.4.4.1 Specified length.** The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 25 feet (7620 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table M1502.4.4.1.

**M1502.4.4.2 Manufacturer's instructions.** The size and maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer at the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table M1502.4.4.1 shall be used.

**M1502.4.5 Length identification.** Where the exhaust duct is concealed within the building construction, the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

**TABLE M1502.4.4.1**
**DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH**

| DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE | EQUIVALENT LENGTH |
|---|---|
| 4 inch radius mitered 45 degree elbow | 2 feet 6 inches |
| 4 inch radius mitered 90 degree elbow | 5 feet |
| 6 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow | 1 foot |
| 6 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow | 1 foot 9 inches |
| 8 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow | 1 foot |
| 8 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow | 1 foot 7 inches |
| 10 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow | 9 inches |
| 10 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow | 1 foot 6 inches |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**M1502.4.6 Exhaust duct required.** Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust *duct system* shall be installed. Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy the exhaust duct shall be capped or plugged in the space in which it originates and identified and marked "future use."

**Exception:** Where a *listed* condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of the structure.

**M1502.5 Protection required.** Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, shall have a minimum thickness of 0.062-inch (1.6 mm) and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

## SECTION M1503
## RANGE HOODS

**M1503.1 General.** Range hoods shall discharge to the outdoors through a single-wall duct. The duct serving the hood shall have a smooth interior surface, shall be air tight and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Ducts serving range hoods shall not terminate in an *attic* or crawl space or areas inside the building.

**Exception:** Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and where mechanical or natural *ventilation* is otherwise provided, *listed* and *labeled* ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

**M1503.2 Duct material.** Single-wall ducts serving range hoods shall be constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel or copper.

**Exception:** Ducts for domestic kitchen cooking *appliances* equipped with down-draft exhaust systems shall be permitted to be constructed of schedule 40 PVC pipe and fittings provided that the installation complies with all of the following:

1. The duct is installed under a concrete slab poured on grade*; and*
2. The underfloor trench in which the duct is installed is completely backfilled with sand or gravel; and
3. The PVC duct extends not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above the indoor concrete floor surface; and
4. The PVC duct extends not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above grade*outside of the building; and*
5. The PVC ducts are solvent cemented.

**M1503.3 Kitchen exhaust rates.** Where domestic kitchen cooking *appliances*are equipped with ducted range hoods or down-draft exhaust systems, the fans shall be sized in accordance with Section M1507.3.

**M1503.4 Makeup air required.** Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 $m^3/s$) shall be provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate. Such makeup air systems shall be equipped with a means of closure and shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system.

## SECTION M1504
## INSTALLATION OF MICROWAVE OVENS

**M1504.1 Installation of a microwave oven over a cooking appliance.** The installation of a *listed* and *labeled* cooking *appliance* or microwave oven over a *listed* and *labeled* cooking *appliance* shall conform to the terms of the upper *appliance's listing* and *label* and the manufacturer's installation instructions. The microwave oven shall conform to UL 923.

## SECTION M1505
## OVERHEAD EXHAUST HOODS

**M1505.1 General.** Domestic open-top broiler units shall have a metal exhaust hood, having a minimum thickness of 0.0157-inch (0.3950 mm) (No. 28 gage) with $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) clearance between the hood and the underside of combustible material or cabinets. A clearance of at least 24 inches (610 mm) shall be maintained between the cooking surface and the combustible material or cabinet. The hood shall be at least as wide as the broiler unit, extend over the entire unit, discharge to the outdoors and be equipped with a backdraft damper or other means to control infiltration/exfiltration when not in operation. Broiler units incorporating an integral exhaust system, and *listed* and *labeled* for use without an exhaust hood, need not have an exhaust hood.

## SECTION M1506
## EXHAUST DUCTS

**M1506.1 Ducts.** Where exhaust duct construction is not specified in this chapter, construction shall comply with Chapter 16.

## SECTION M1507
## MECHANICAL VENTILATION

**M1507.1 General.** ((~~Where toilet rooms and bathrooms are mechanically ventilated, the *ventilation equipment* shall be installed in accordance with this section.~~)) <u>*Source specific exhaust ventilation* is required in each kitchen, bathroom, water closet, laundry room, indoor swimming pool, spa, and other rooms where water vapor or cooking odor is produced. The minimum *source specific ventilation* effective exhaust capacity shall not be less than levels specified in Table M1507.3.</u>

**M1507.2 Recirculation of air.** Exhaust air from bathrooms and toilet rooms shall not be recirculated within a residence or to another *dwelling unit* and shall be exhausted directly to the outdoors. Exhaust air from bathrooms and toilet rooms shall not discharge into an *attic*, crawl space or other areas inside the building.

**M1507.3 Ventilation rate.** *Ventilation* systems shall be designed to have the capacity to exhaust the minimum air flow rate determined in accordance with Table M1507.3.

**TABLE M1507.3**
**MINIMUM REQUIRED EXHAUST RATES FOR ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS**

| AREA TO BE VENTILATED | VENTILATION RATES |
|---|---|
| Kitchens | 100 cfm intermittent or 25 cfm continuous |
| Bathrooms— Toilet Rooms | Mechanical exhaust capacity of 50 cfm intermittent or 20 cfm continuous |

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s.

**M1507.3.1 Source specific exhaust fans.** Exhaust fans providing *source specific ventilation* shall have a minimum fan flow rating not less than 50 cfm (23.60 L/s) at 0.25 inches water gauge for bathrooms, laundries, or similar rooms and 100 cfm at 0.25 inches water gauge for kitchens. Manufacturers' fan flow ratings shall be determined as per HVI 916 (April 1995) or AMCA 210.

**Exception:** Where a range hood or down draft exhaust fan is used to satisfy the *source specific ventilation* requirements for kitchens, the range hood or down draft exhaust shall not be less than 100 cfm (47.19 L/s) at 0.10 inches water gauge.

**M1507.3.2 Source specific ventilation controls.** *Source specific ventilation systems* shall be controlled by manual switches, dehumidistats, timers, or other *approved* means. *Source specific ventilation system* controls shall be readily accessible.

**M1507.3.3 Source specific ventilation ducts.** *Source specific ventilation* ducts shall terminate outside the building. Exhaust ducts shall be equipped with backdraft dampers. All exhaust ducts in unconditioned spaces shall be insulated to a minimum of R-4. Terminal elements shall have at least the equivalent net free area of the duct work. Terminal elements for exhaust fan duct systems shall be screened or otherwise protected from entry by leaves or other material. Minimum 50 percent net free area shall meet the requirements of Section R303.5.

## [W] SECTION M1508
## WHOLE HOUSE VENTILATION

**M1508.1 General.** This section establishes minimum prescriptive design requirements for *whole house ventilation systems*. Each *dwelling unit* or guest room shall be equipped with a ventilation system complying with Section M1508.4, M1508.5, M1508.6 or M1508.7. Compliance is also permitted to be demonstrated through compliance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

**M1508.1.1 Operating instructions.** Installers shall provide the manufacturer's installation, operating instructions, and a *whole house ventilation system* operation description.

**M1508.2 Continuously operating exhaust ventilation systems.** Continuously operating exhaust ventilation systems shall provide the minimum flow rates specified in Table M1508.2.

**TABLE M1508.2**
**MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES**
**(Continuously Operating Systems)**

| SQUARE FOOTAGE | BEDROOMS | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0-1 | 2-3 | 4-5 | 6-7 | > 7 |
| < 1500 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 |
| 1501-3000 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 |
| 3001-4500 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |
| 4501-6000 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | 135 |
| 6001-7500 | 90 | 105 | 120 | 135 | 150 |
| > 7500 | 105 | 120 | 135 | 150 | 165 |

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m$^2$.

**M1508.3 Intermittently operating ventilation systems.** The delivered ventilation rate for intermittently operating ventilation systems shall be the combination of its delivered capacity from Table M1508.2, and its ventilation effectiveness and daily fractional operation time from Table M1508.3.

$Q_f = Q_r/(\varepsilon f)$

where:

$Q_f$ = Outdoor air flow rate.

$Q_r$ = Ventilation air requirement (from Table M1508.2).

$\varepsilon$ = Ventilation effectiveness (from Table M1508.3).

$f$ = Fractional operation time is the on-time for one cycle divided by the cycle time (used in Table M1508.3).

cycle time = on-time plus off-time

**TABLE M1508.3**
**VENTILATION EFFECTIVENESS FOR INTERMITTENT FANS**

| DAILY FRACTIONAL OPERATION TIME, *f* | VENTILATION EFFECTIVENESS, $\varepsilon$ |
|---|---|
| $f \le 35\%$ | 0.33 |
| $35\% \le f < 60\%$ | 0.50 |
| $60\% \le f < 80\%$ | 0.75 |
| $80\% \le f$ | 1.0 |

For systems designed to operate at least once every 3 hours, ventilation effectiveness can be 1.0.

**M1508.4 Intermittent whole house ventilation using exhaust fans.** This section establishes minimum prescriptive requirements for intermittent *whole house ventilation systems* using exhaust fans. A system which meets all the requirements of this section shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements for a *whole house ventilation system*.

**M1508.4.1 Whole house ventilation fans.** Exhaust fans providing *whole house ventilation* shall have a flow rating at 0.25 inches water gauge as specified in Table M1508.2. Manufacturers' fan flow ratings shall be determined according to HVI 916 (April 1995) or AMCA 210.

**M1508.4.2 Fan noise.** Whole house fans located 4 feet (1219.2 mm) or less from the interior grille shall have a sone rating of 1.0 or less measured at 0.1 inches water gauge. Manufacturer's noise ratings shall be determined as per HVI 915 (October 1995). Remotely mounted fans shall be acoustically isolated from the structural elements of the building and from attached duct work using insulated flexible duct or other *approved* material.

**M1508.4.3 Fan controls.** The *whole house ventilation* fan shall be controlled by a 24-hour clock timer with the capability of continuous operation, manual and automatic control. The 24-hour timer shall be readily accessible. The 24-hour timer shall be capable of operating the whole house ventilation fan without energizing other energy-consuming appliances. At the time of final inspection, the automatic control timer shall be set to operate the whole house fan for at least 8 hours a day. A label shall be affixed to the control that reads "Whole House Ventilation (see operating instructions)."

**M1508.4.4 Exhaust ducts.** All exhaust ducts shall terminate outside the building. Exhaust ducts shall be equipped with backdraft dampers. All exhaust ducts in unconditioned spaces shall be insulated to a minimum of R-4.

**M1508.4.5 Outdoor air inlets.** Outdoor air shall be distributed to each *habitable* room by individual outdoor air inlets. Where outdoor air supplies are separated from exhaust points by doors, provisions shall be made to ensure air flow by installation of distribution ducts, undercutting doors, installation of grilles, transoms, or similar means. Doors shall be undercut to a minimum of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) above the surface of the finish floor covering.

Individual room outdoor air inlets shall:

1. Have controllable and secure openings;
2. Be sleeved or otherwise designed so as not to compromise the thermal properties of the wall or window in which they are placed;
3. Provide not less than 4 square inches (0.003 m$^2$) of net free area of opening for each *habitable* space. Any inlet or combination of inlets which provide 10 cfm at 10 Pascals as determined by the Home Ventilating Institute Air Flow Test Standard (HVI 901 November 1996) are deemed equivalent to 4 square inches net free area.

Inlets shall be screened or otherwise protected from entry by leaves or other material. Outdoor air inlets shall be located so as not to take air from the following areas:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an appliance vent outlet, unless such vent outlet is 3 feet (914.4 mm) above the outdoor air inlet.
2. Where it will pick up objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors.
3. A hazardous or unsanitary location.
4. A room or space having any fuel-burning appliances therein.
5. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a vent opening of a plumbing drainage system unless the vent opening is at least 3 feet (914.4 mm) above the air inlet.
6. Attic, crawl spaces or garages.

**M1508.5 Intermittent whole house ventilation integrated with a forced-air system.** This section establishes minimum prescriptive requirements for intermittent *whole house ventilation* systems integrated with forced-air ventilation systems. A system which meets all the requirements of this section shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements for a *whole house ventilation system.*

**M1508.5.1 Integrated whole house ventilation systems.** Integrated *whole house ventilation systems* shall provide outdoor air at the rate calculated using Section M1508.3. Integrated forced-air ventilation systems shall distribute outdoor air to each *habitable* room through the forced-air system ducts. Integrated forced-air ventilation systems shall have an outdoor air inlet duct connecting a terminal element on the outside of the building to the return air plenum of the forced-air system, at a point within 4 feet (1219.2 mm) upstream of the air handler. The outdoor air inlet duct connection to the return air stream shall be located upstream of the forced-air system blower and shall not be connected directly into a furnace cabinet to prevent thermal shock to the heat exchanger. The system shall be equipped with a motorized damper connected to the automatic ventilation control as specified in Section M1508.5.2. The required flow rate shall be verified by field testing with a flow hood or a flow measuring station.

**M1508.5.2 Ventilation controls.** The *whole house ventilation system* shall be controlled by a 24-hour clock timer with the capability of continuous operation, manual and automatic control. This control shall control the forced air system blower and the automatic damper. The 24-hour timer shall be readily accessible. The 24-hour timer shall be capable of operating the whole house ventilation system without energizing other energy-consuming appliances. At the time of final inspection, the automatic control timer shall be set to operate the whole house system for at least 8 hours a day. A label shall be affixed to the control that reads "Whole House Ventilation (see operating instructions)."

**M1508.5.3 Ventilation duct insulation.** All supply ducts in the conditioned space shall be insulated to a minimum of R-4.

**M1508.5.4 Outdoor air inlets.** Inlets shall be screened or otherwise protected from entry by leaves or other material. Outdoor air inlets shall be located so as not to take air from the following areas:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an appliance vent outlet, unless such vent outlet is 3 feet (914.4 mm) above the outdoor air inlet.
2. Where it will pick up objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors.
3. A hazardous or unsanitary location.
4. A room or space having any fuel-burning appliances therein.
5. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a vent opening of a plumbing drainage system unless the vent opening is at least 3 feet above the air inlet.
6. Attic, crawl spaces or garages.

**M1508.6 Intermittent whole house ventilation using a supply fan.** This section establishes minimum prescriptive requirements for intermittent *whole house ventilation systems* using an inline supply fan. A system which meets all the requirements of this section shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements for a *whole house ventilation system*.

**M1508.6.1 Outdoor air.** Supply fan ventilation systems shall distribute outdoor air to each *habitable* room through the forced-air system ducts or through dedicated ducts to each *habitable* room. Supply fans shall have the capacity to provide the amount of outdoor air specified in Table M1508.2 at 0.40 inches water gauge as per HVI 916 (April 1995). The outdoor air shall be filtered before it is delivered to *habitable* rooms. The filter may be located at the intake device, in line with the fan, or, in the case of a connection to the return plenum of the air handler, using the furnace filter. An outdoor air inlet shall be connected to either the supply or return air stream.

**M1508.6.2 Ducts.** An outdoor air inlet duct connection to the supply air stream shall be located downstream of the forced-air system blower. An outdoor air inlet duct connection to the return air stream shall be located at least 4 feet (1219.2 mm) upstream of the forced-air system blower and its filter. Neither type of duct shall be connected directly into a furnace cabinet to prevent thermal shock to the heat exchanger. The outdoor air inlet duct shall be prescriptively sized in accordance with Table M1508.6.2. The terminal element on the outside of the building shall be sized 2 inches (50.8 mm) in diameter larger than the outdoor air inlet duct.

**TABLE M1508.6.2**
**PRESCRIPTIVE SUPPLY FAN DUCT SIZING**

| SUPPLY FAN TESTED CFM AT 0.40" WG | | |
|---|---|---|
| Specified Volume from Table 1508.2 | Minimum Smooth Duct Diameter | Minimum Flexible Duct Diameter |
| 50 - 90 cfm | 4 inch | 5 inch |
| 90 - 150 cfm | 5 inch | 6 inch |
| 150 - 250 cfm | 6 inch | 7 inch |
| 250 - 400 cfm | 7 inch | 8 inch |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s.

**M1508.6.3 Dampers.** The system shall be equipped with a backdraft damper and one of the following:

1. A calibrated manual volume damper installed and set to meet the measured flow rates specified in Table M1508.2 by field testing with a pressure gauge and/or following manufacturer's installation instructions; or
2. A manual volume damper installed and set to meet the measured flow rates specified in Table M1508.2 by field testing with a flow hood or a flow measuring station; or
3. An automatic flow-regulating device sized to the specified flow rates in Table M1508.2 which provides constant flow over a pressure range of 0.20 to 0.60 inches water gauge.

**M1508.6.4 Ventilation controls.** The *whole house ventilation system* shall be controlled by a 24-hour clock timer with the capability of continuous operation, manual and automatic control. This will control the inline supply fan. The 24-hour timer shall be readily accessible. The 24-hour timer shall be capable of operating the *whole house ventilation system* without energizing other energy-consuming appliances. At the time of final inspection, the automatic control timer shall be set to operate the whole house system for at least 8 hours a day. A label shall be affixed to the control that reads "Whole House Ventilation (see operating instructions)."

**M1508.6.5 Ventilation duct insulation.** All supply ducts in the conditioned space shall be insulated to a minimum of R-4.

**M1508.6.6 Outdoor air inlets.** Inlets shall be screened or otherwise protected from entry by leaves or other material. Outdoor air inlets shall be located so as not to take air from the following areas:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an appliance vent outlet, unless such vent outlet is 3 feet (914.4 mm) above the outdoor air inlet.
2. Where it will pick up objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors.
3. A hazardous or unsanitary location.
4. A room or space having any fuel-burning appliances therein.
5. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a vent opening of a plumbing drainage system unless the vent opening is at least 3 feet (914.4 mm) above the air inlet.
6. Attic, crawl spaces or garages.

**M1508.7 Intermittent whole house ventilation using a heat recovery ventilation system.** This section establishes minimum prescriptive requirements for intermittent *whole house ventilation* using a heat recovery ventilation system.

**M1508.7.1 Heat recovery ventilation systems.** All duct work in heat recovery systems shall be sized and installed per the manufacturer's instructions. System minimum flow rating shall be not less than that specified in Table M1508.2. Heat recovery ventilation systems shall have a filter on the upstream side of the heat exchanger in both the intake and exhaust airstreams with a minimum efficiency ratings value (MERV) of 6.

**M1508.7.2 Ventilation controls.** The *whole house ventilation system* shall be controlled by a 24-hour clock timer with the capability of continuous operation, manual and automatic control. This control shall control the inline supply fan. The 24-hour timer shall be readily accessible. The 24-hour timer shall be capable of operating the whole house ventilation system without energizing other energy-consuming appliances. At the time of final inspection, the automatic control timer shall be set to operate the whole house system for at least 8 hours a day. A label shall be affixed to the control that reads "Whole House Ventilation (see operating instructions)."

**M1508.7.3 Ventilation duct insulation.** All supply ducts in the conditioned space installed upstream of the heat exchanger shall be insulated to a minimum of R-4.

**M1508.7.4 Outdoor air inlets.** Inlets shall be screened or otherwise protected from entry by leaves or other material.

Outdoor air inlets shall be located so as not to take air from the following areas:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an appliance vent outlet, unless such vent outlet is 3 feet (914.4 mm) above the outdoor air inlet.
2. Where it will pick up objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors.
3. A hazardous or unsanitary location.
4. A room or space having any fuel-burning appliances therein.
5. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a vent opening of a plumbing drainage system unless the vent opening is at least 3 feet (914.4 mm) above the air inlet.
6. Attic, crawl spaces or garages.

# CHAPTER 16

# DUCT SYSTEMS

## SECTION M1601
## DUCT CONSTRUCTION

**M1601.1 Duct design.** *Duct systems* serving heating, cooling and *ventilation equipment* shall be fabricated in accordance with the provisions of this section and ACCA Manual D or other *approved* methods.

[W] **M1601.1.1 Above-ground duct systems.** Above-ground *duct systems* shall conform to the following:

1. *Equipment* connected to *duct systems* shall be designed to limit discharge air temperature to a maximum of 250°F (121°C).
2. Factory-made air ducts shall be constructed of Class 0 or Class 1 materials as designated in Table M1601.1.1(1).
3. Fibrous duct construction shall conform to the SMACNA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards* or NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*.
4. Minimum thickness of metal duct material shall be as listed in Table M1601.1.1(2). Galvanized steel shall conform to ASTM A 653.
5. Use of gypsum products to construct return air ducts or plenums is permitted, provided that the air temperature does not exceed 125°F (52°C) and exposed surfaces are not subject to condensation.
6. *Duct systems* shall be constructed of materials having a flame spread index not greater than 200.
7. Stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists shall not be used as a duct or an air plenum in new construction. For existing systems, stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists to be used as air plenums shall comply with the following conditions:
   - 7.1. These cavities or spaces shall not be used as a plenum for supply air.
   - 7.2. These cavities or spaces shall not be part of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly.
   - 7.3. Stud wall cavities shall not convey air from more than one floor level.
   - 7.4. Stud wall cavities and joist-space plenums shall be isolated from adjacent concealed spaces by tight-fitting fire blocking in accordance with Section R602.8.

**TABLE M1601.1.1(1)**
**CLASSIFICATION OF FACTORY-MADE AIR DUCTS**

| DUCT CLASS | MAXIMUM FLAME-SPREAD INDEX |
|---|---|
| 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 25 |

**M1601.1.2 Underground duct systems.** Underground *duct systems* shall be constructed of *approved* concrete, clay, metal or plastic. The maximum duct temperature for plastic ducts shall not be greater than 150°F (66°C). Metal ducts shall be protected from corrosion in an *approved* manner or shall be completely encased in concrete not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick. Nonmetallic ducts shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Plastic pipe and fitting materials shall conform to cell classification 12454-B of ASTM D 1248 or ASTM D 1784 and external loading properties of ASTM D 2412. All ducts shall slope to an accessible point for drainage. Where encased in concrete, ducts shall be sealed and secured prior to any concrete being poured. Metallic ducts having an *approved* protective coating and nonmetallic ducts shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE M1601.1.1(2)**
**GAGES OF METAL DUCTS AND PLENUMS USED FOR HEATING OR COOLING**

| DUCT SIZE | GALVANIZED | | ALUMINUM |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Minimum Thickness (inches) | Equivalent Galvanized Sheet No. | Minimum Thickness (inches) |
| Round ducts and enclosed rectangular ducts | | | |
| 14 inches or less | 0.0157 | 28 | 0.0175 |
| 16 and 18 inches | 0.0187 | 26 | 0.018 |
| 20 inches and over | 0.0236 | 24 | 0.023 |
| Exposed rectangular ducts | | | |
| 14 inches or | 0.0157 | 28 | 0.0175 |
| Over 14[a] inches | 0.0187 | 26 | 0.018 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For duct gages and reinforcement requirements at static pressures of $^1/_2$ inch, 1 inch and 2 inches w.g., SMACNA *Duct Construction Standard*, Tables 2-1; 2-2 and 2-3 shall apply.

**M1601.2 Factory-made ducts.** Factory-made air ducts or duct material shall be *approved* for the use intended, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Each portion of a factory-made air *duct system* shall bear a *listing* and *label* indicating compliance with UL 181 and UL 181A or UL 181B.

**M1601.2.1 Vibration isolators.** Vibration isolators installed between mechanical *equipment*and metal ducts shall be fabricated from *approved*materials and shall not exceed 10 inches (254 mm) in length.

**M1601.3 Duct insulation materials.** Duct insulation materials shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Duct coverings and linings, including adhesives where used, shall have a flame spread index not higher than 25, and a smoke-developed index not over 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E 2231.

   **Exception:** Spray application of polyurethane foam to the exterior of ducts in *attics* and crawl spaces shall be permitted subject to all of the following:

   1. The flame spread index is not greater than 25 and the smoke-developed index is not greater than 450 at the specified installed thickness.
   2. The foam plastic is protected in accordance with the ignition barrier requirements of Sections R316.5.3 and R316.5.4.
   3. The foam plastic complies with the requirements of Section R316.

2. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C 411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C).

3. External duct insulation and factory-insulated flexible ducts shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not longer than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the thermal resistance *R*-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indexes of the composite materials. Spray polyurethane foam manufacturers shall provide the same product information and properties, at the nominal installed thickness, to the customer in writing at the time of foam application. All duct insulation product *R*-values shall be based on insulation only, excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components, and shall be based on tested C-values at 75°F (24°C) mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with recognized industry procedures. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its *R*-value shall be determined as follows:

   3.1. For duct board, duct liner and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.

   3.2. For ductwrap, the installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25-percent compression)of nominal thickness.

   3.3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, The installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.

   3.4. For spray polyurethane foam, the aged *R*-value per inch measured in accordance with recognized industry standards shall be provided to the customer in writing at the time of foam application. In addition, the total *R*-value for the nominal application thickness shall be provided.

**M1601.4 Installation.** Duct installation shall comply with Sections M1601.4.1 through M1601.4.7.

**M1601.4.1 Joints and seams.** Joints of *duct systems* shall be made substantially airtight by means of tapes, mastics, liquid sealants, gasketing or other *approved* closure systems. Closure systems used with rigid fibrous glass ducts shall comply with UL181A and shall be marked*181A-P for pressure-sensitive tape, 181A-M for mastic or 181 A-H for heat-sensitive tape. Closure systems used with flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall comply with UL 181B and shall be* marked*181B-FX for pressure-sensitive tape or 181B-M for mastic. Duct connections to flanges of air distribution system equipment or sheet metal fittings shall be mechanically fastened. Mechanical fasteners for use with flexible nonmetallic air ducts shall comply with UL 181B and shall be* marked 181B-C. Crimp joints for round metal ducts shall have a contact lap of at least 1$^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) and shall be mechanically fastened by means of at least three sheet-metal screws or rivets equally spaced around the joint. Closure systems used to seal metal ductwork shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**Exceptions:**

1. Spray polyurethane foam shall be permitted to be applied without additional joint seals.
2. Where a duct connection is made that is partially inaccessible, three screws or rivets shall be equally spaced on the exposed portion of the joint so as to prevent a hinge effect.
3. Continuously welded and locking type longitudinal joints and seams in ducts operating at static pressures less than 2 inches of water column (500 Pa) pressure classification shall not require additional closure systems.

**M1601.4.2 Plastic duct joints.** Joints between plastic ducts and plastic fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1601.4.3 Support.** Metal ducts shall be supported by $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) wide 18-gage metal straps or 12-gage galvanized wire at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm) or other *approved* means. Nonmetallic ducts shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1601.4.4 Fireblocking.** Duct installations shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section R602.8.

**M1601.4.5 Duct insulation.** Duct insulation shall be installed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. A vapor retarder having a maximum permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(s · m$^2$ · Pa)] in accordance with ASTM E 96, or aluminum foil with a minimum thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm), shall be installed on the exterior of insulation on cooling supply ducts that pass through unconditioned spaces conducive to condensation except where the insulation is spray polyurethane foam with a maximum water vapor permeance of 3 perm per inch [1722 ng/(s · m$^2$ ·Pa)] at the installed thickness.
2. Exterior *duct systems* shall be protected against the elements.
3. Duct coverings shall not penetrate a fireblocked wall or floor.

**M1601.4.6 Factory-made air ducts.** Factory-made air ducts shall not be installed in or on the ground, in tile or metal pipe, or within masonry or concrete.

**M 1601.4.7 Duct separation.** Ducts shall be installed with at least 4 inches (102 mm) separation from earth except where they meet the requirements of Section M1601.1.2.

**M1601.4.8 Ducts located in garages.** Ducts in garages shall comply with the requirements of Section R302.5.2.

**M1601.4.9 Flood hazard areas.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1), *duct systems*shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

**M1601.5 Under-floor plenums.** Under-floor plenums shall be prohibited in new structures. Modification or repairs to under-floor plenums in existing structures shall conform to the requirements of this section.

**M1601.5.1 General.** The space shall be cleaned of loose combustible materials and scrap, and shall be tightly enclosed. The ground surface of the space shall be covered with a moisture barrier having a minimum thickness of 4 mils (0.1 mm). Plumbing waste cleanouts shall not be located within the space.

**Exception:** Plumbing waste cleanouts shall be permitted to be located in unvented crawl spaces that receive *conditioned air* in accordance with Section R408.3.

**M1601.5.2 Materials.** The under-floor space, including the sidewall insulation, shall be formed by materials having flame-spread index values not greater than 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.

**M1601.5.3 Furnace connections.** A duct shall extend from the furnace supply outlet to not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the combustible framing. This duct shall comply with the provisions of Section M1601.1. A noncombustible receptacle shall be installed below any floor opening into the plenum in accordance with the following requirements:

1. The receptacle shall be securely suspended from the floor members and shall not be more than 18 inches (457 mm) below the floor opening.
2. The area of the receptacle shall extend 3 inches (76 mm) beyond the opening on all sides.
3. The perimeter of the receptacle shall have a vertical lip at least 1 inch (25 mm) high at the open sides.

**M1601.5.4 Access.** Access to an under-floor plenum shall be provided through an opening in the floor with minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).

**M1601.5.5 Furnace controls.** The furnace shall be equipped with an automatic control that will start the air-circulating fan when the air in the furnace bonnet reaches a temperature not higher than 150°F (66°C). The furnace shall additionally be equipped with an *approved*automatic control that limits the outlet air temperature to 200°F (93°C).

**M1601.6 Independent garage HVAC systems.** Furnaces and air-handling systems that supply air to living spaces shall not supply air to or return air from a garage.

## SECTION M1602
## RETURN AIR

**M1602.1 Return air.** Return air shall be taken from inside the *dwelling*. Dilution of return air with outdoor air shall be permitted.

**M1602.2 Prohibited sources.** Outdoor and return air for a forced-air heating or cooling system shall not be taken from the following locations:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) to an *appliance* vent outlet, a vent opening from a plumbing drainage system or the discharge outlet of an exhaust fan, unless the outlet is 3 feet (914 mm) above the outside air inlet.
2. Where flammable vapors are present; or where located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the surface of any abutting public way or driveway; or where located at grade level by a sidewalk, street, alley or driveway.
3. A room or space, the volume of which is less than 25 percent of the entire volume served by the system. Where connected by a permanent opening having an area sized in accordance with ACCA Manual D, adjoining rooms or spaces shall be considered as a single room or space for the purpose of determining the volume of the rooms or spaces.

   **Exception:** The minimum volume requirement shall not apply where the amount of return air taken from a room or space is less than or equal to the amount of supply air delivered to the room or space.
4. A closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, mechanical room, boiler room, furnace room, unconditioned *attic* or other *dwelling unit*.
5. A room or space containing a fuel-burning *appliance* where such room or space serves as the sole source of return air.

   **Exceptions:**

   1. The fuel-burning *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance* or an *appliance* not requiring a vent

in accordance with Section M1801.1 or Chapter 24.

2. The room or space complies with the following requirements:
   2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 cubic foot for each 10 Btu/h (9.6 L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning *appliances* therein.
   2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.
   2.3. Return-air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of any *appliance* firebox or draft hood in the same room or space.
3. Rooms or spaces containing solid-fuel burning *appliances*, if return-air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of those *appliances*.

6. An unconditioned crawl space by means of direct connection to the return side of a forced air system. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.

**M1602.3 Inlet opening protection.** Outdoor air inlets shall be covered with screens having openings that are not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) and not greater than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm).

# CHAPTER 17
# COMBUSTION AIR

## SECTION M1701
## GENERAL

[W] **M1701.1 Scope.** Solid-fuel-burning *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with NFPA 31. The methods of providing *combustion air* in this chapter do not apply to fireplaces, fireplace stoves and direct-vent *appliances*. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired *appliances* shall be in accordance with Chapter 24.

Fireplaces shall comply with Section 1001.

**M1701.2 Opening location.** In areas prone to flooding as established in Table R301.2(1), *combustion air* openings shall be located at or above the elevation required in Section R322.2.1 or R322.3.2.

# CHAPTER 18

# CHIMNEYS AND VENTS

## SECTION M1801 GENERAL

**M1801.1 Venting required.** Fuel-burning *appliances* shall be vented to the outdoors in accordance with their *listing* and *label* and manufacturer's installation instructions except *appliances listed* and *labeled* for unvented use. Venting systems shall consist of *approved* chimneys or vents, or venting assemblies that are integral parts of *labeled appliances*. Gas-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with Chapter 24.

**M1801.2 Draft requirements.** A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the *appliance* in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and shall be constructed and installed to develop a positive flow to convey combustion products to the outside atmosphere.

**M1801.3 Existing chimneys and vents.** Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing chimney or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing chimney or vent during the process of a new installation, the chimney or vent shall comply with Sections M1801.3.1 through M1801.3.4.

**M1801.3.1 Size.** The chimney or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the chimney or vent and to provide the *appliance*, or *appliances* served, with the required draft. For the venting of oil-fired *appliances* to masonry chimneys, the resizing shall be done in accordance with NFPA 31.

**M1801.3.2 Flue passageways.** The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid- or liquid-fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace. The flue liner, chimney inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and free of cracks, gaps, perforations, or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of combustion products, including gases, moisture and creosote.

**M1801.3.3 Cleanout.** Masonry chimneys shall be provided with a cleanout opening complying with Section R1003.17.

**M1801.3.4 Clearances.** Chimneys and vents shall have airspace clearance to combustibles in accordance with this code and the chimney or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

**Exception:** Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system tested and *listed* for installation in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction, shall not be required to have a clearance between combustible materials and exterior surfaces of the masonry chimney. Noncombustible firestopping shall be provided in accordance with this code.

**M1801.4 Space around lining.** The space surrounding a flue lining system or other vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other *appliance*. This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code.

**M1801.5 Mechanical draft systems.** A mechanical draft system shall be used only with *appliances listed* and *labeled* for such use. Provisions shall be made to prevent the flow of fuel to the *equipment* when the draft system is not operating. Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed to prevent leakage of flue gases into a building.

**M1801.6 Direct-vent appliances.** Direct-vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1801.7 Support.** Venting systems shall be adequately supported for the weight of the material used.

**M1801.8 Duct penetrations.** Chimneys, vents and vent connectors shall not extend into or through supply and return air ducts or plenums.

**M1801.9 Fireblocking.** Vent and chimney installations shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section R602.8.

**M1801.10 Unused openings.** Unused openings in any venting system shall be closed or capped.

**M1801.11 Multiple-appliance venting systems.** Two or more *listed* and *labeled appliances* connected to a common natural draft venting system shall comply with the following requirements:

1. *Appliances* that are connected to common venting systems shall be located on the same floor of the *dwelling*.

   **Exception:** Engineered systems as provided for in Section G2427.

2. Inlets to common venting systems shall be offset such that no portion of an inlet is opposite another inlet.
3. Connectors serving *appliances* operating under a natural draft shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive pressure.

**M1801.12 Multiple solid fuel prohibited.** A solid-fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace shall not connect to a chimney passageway venting another *appliance*.

## SECTION M1802 VENT COMPONENTS

**M1802.1 Draft hoods.** Draft hoods shall be located in the same room or space as the *combustion air* openings for the *appliances*.

**M1802.2 Vent dampers.** Vent dampers shall comply with Sections M1802.2.1 and M1802.2.2.

**M1802.2.1 Manually operated.** Manually operated dampers shall not be installed except in connectors or chimneys serving solid-fuel-burning *appliances*.

**M1802.2.2 Automatically operated.** Automatically operated dampers shall conform to UL 17 and be installed in accordance with the terms of their *listing* and *label*. The installation shall prevent firing of the burner when the damper is not opened to a safe position.

**M1802.3 Draft regulators.** Draft regulators shall be provided for oil-fired *appliances* that must be connected to a chimney. Draft regulators provided for solid-fuel-burning *appliances* to reduce draft intensity shall be installed and set in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1802.3.1 Location.** Where required, draft regulators shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* so that no difference in pressure will exist between the air at the regulator and the *combustion air* supply.

## SECTION M1803 CHIMNEY AND VENT CONNECTORS

**M1803.1 General.** Connectors shall be used to connect fuel-burning *appliances* to a vertical chimney or vent except where the chimney or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*.

**M1803.2 Connectors for oil and solid fuel appliances.** Connectors for oil and solid-fuel-burning *appliances* shall be constructed of factory-built chimney material, Type L vent material or single-wall metal pipe having resistance to corrosion and heat and thickness not less than that of galvanized steel as specified in Table M1803.2.

**TABLE M1803.2 THICKNESS FOR SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE CONNECTORS**

| DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches) | GALVANIZED SHEET METAL GAGE NUMBER | MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch) |
|---|---|---|
| Less than 6 | 26 | 0.019 |
| 6 to 10 | 24 | 0.024 |
| Over 10 through 16 | 22 | 0.029 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**M1803.3 Installation.** Vent and chimney connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and within the space where the *appliance* is located. *Appliances* shall be located as close as practical to the vent or chimney. Connectors shall be as short and straight as possible and installed with a slope of not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) rise per foot of run. Connectors shall be securely supported and joints shall be fastened with sheet metal screws or rivets. Devices that obstruct the flow of flue gases shall not be installed in a connector unless *listed* and *labeled* or *approved* for such installations.

**M1803.3.1 Floor, ceiling and wall penetrations.** A chimney connector or vent connector shall not pass through any floor or ceiling. A chimney connector or vent connector shall not pass through a wall or partition unless the connector is *listed* and *labeled* for wall pass-through, or is routed through a device *listed* and *labeled* for wall pass-through and is installed in accordance with the conditions of its *listing* and *label*. Connectors for oil-fired *appliances listed* and *labeled* for Type L vents, passing through walls or partitions shall be in accordance with the following:

1. Type L vent material for oil *appliances* shall be installed with not less than *listed* and *labeled* clearances to combustible material.
2. Single-wall metal pipe shall be guarded by a ventilated metal thimble not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger in diameter than the vent connector. A minimum 6 inches (152 mm) of clearance shall be maintained between the thimble and combustibles.

**M1803.3.2 Length.** The horizontal run of an uninsulated connector to a natural draft chimney shall not exceed 75 percent of the height of the vertical portion of the chimney above the connector. The horizontal run of a *listed* connector to a natural draft chimney shall not exceed 100 percent of the height of the vertical portion of the chimney above the connector.

**M1803.3.3 Size.** A connector shall not be smaller than the flue collar of the *appliance*.

**Exception:** Where installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1803.3.4 Clearance.** Connectors shall be installed with clearance to combustibles as set forth in Table M1803.3.4. Reduced clearances to combustible materials shall be in accordance with Table M1306.2 and Figure M1306.1.

**TABLE M1803.3.4 CHIMNEY AND VENT CONNECTOR CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS[a]**

| TYPE OF CONNECTOR | MINIMUM CLEARANCE (inches) |
|---|---|
| Single-wall metal pipe connectors: | |
| Oil and solid-fuel appliances | 18 |
| Oil appliances listed for use with Type L vents | 9 |
| Type L vent piping connectors: | |
| Oil and solid-fuel appliances | 9 |
| Oil appliances listed for use with Type L vents | 3[b] |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These minimum clearances apply to unlisted single-wall chimney and vent connectors. Reduction of required clearances is permitted as in Table M1306.2.

b. When listed Type L vent piping is used, the clearance shall be in accordance with the vent listing.

**M1803.3.5 Access.** The entire length of a connector shall be accessible for inspection, cleaning and replacement.

**M1803.4 Connection to fireplace flue.** Connection of *appliances* to chimney flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections M1803.4.1 through M1803.4.4.

**M1803.4.1 Closure and accessibility.** A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for access to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

**M1803.4.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue.** A different *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built fireplace unless the *appliance* is specifically *listed* for such an installation. The connection shall be made in conformance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

**M1803.4.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue.** A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a masonry fireplace to convey the flue gases directly into the flue. The connector shall be accessible or removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. *Listed* direct-connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their *listing*.

**M1803.4.4 Size of flue.** The size of the fireplace flue shall be in accordance with Section M1805.3.1.

## SECTION M1804
## VENTS

**M1804.1 Type of vent required.** *Appliances* shall be provided with a *listed* and *labeled* venting system as set forth in Table M1804.1.

**TABLE M1804.1**
**VENT SELECTION CHART**

| VENT TYPES | APPLIANCE TYPES |
|---|---|
| Type L oil vents | Oil-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type L vents |
| Pellet vents | Pellet fuel-burning appliances listed and labeled for use with pellet vents |

**M1804.2 Termination.** Vent termination shall comply with Sections M1804.2.1 through M1804.2.6.

**M1804.2.1 Through the roof.** Vents passing through a roof shall extend through flashing and terminate in accordance with the manufacturer's installation requirements.

**M1804.2.2 Decorative shrouds.** Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of vents except where the shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific venting system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1804.2.3 Natural draft appliances.** Vents for natural draft *appliances* shall terminate at least 5 feet (1524 mm) above the highest connected *appliance* outlet, and natural draft gas vents serving wall furnaces shall terminate at an elevation at least 12 feet (3658 mm) above the bottom of the furnace.

**M1804.2.4 Type L vent.** Type L venting systems shall conform to UL 641 and shall terminate with a *listed* and *labeled* cap in accordance with the vent manufacturer's installation instructions not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the roof and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm).

**M1804.2.5 Direct vent terminations.** Vent terminals for direct-vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1804.2.6 Mechanical draft systems.** Mechanical draft systems shall be installed in accordance with their *listing*, the manufacturer's installation instructions and, except for direct vent *appliances*, the following requirements:

1. The vent terminal shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above a forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. The vent terminal shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from, or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet into a *dwelling*.
3. The vent termination point shall not be located closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an interior corner formed by two walls perpendicular to each other.
4. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above finished ground level.
5. The vent termination shall not be mounted directly above or within 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally of an oil tank vent or gas meter.
6. Power exhauster terminations shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from *lot lines* and adjacent buildings.
7. The discharge shall be directed away from the building.

**M1804.3 Installation.** Type L and pellet vents shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their *listing* and *label* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1804.3.1 Size of single-appliance venting systems.** An individual vent for a single *appliance* shall have a cross-sectional area equal to or greater than the area of the connector to the *appliance*, but not less than 7 square inches (4515 $mm^2$) except where the vent is an integral part of a *listed* and *labeled appliance*.

## SECTION M1805
## MASONRY AND FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

**M1805.1 General.** Masonry and factory-built chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with Sections R1003 and R1005, respectively. Flue lining for masonry chimneys shall comply with Section R1003.11.

**M1805.2 Masonry chimney connection.** A chimney connector shall enter a masonry chimney not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the bottom of the chimney. Where it is not possible to locate the connector entry at least 6 inches (152 mm) above the bottom of the chimney flue, a cleanout shall be provided by installing a capped tee in the connector next to the chimney. A connector entering a masonry chimney shall extend through, but not beyond, the wall and shall be flush with the inner face of the liner. Connectors, or thimbles where used, shall be firmly cemented into the masonry.

**M1805.3 Size of chimney flues.** The effective area of a natural draft chimney flue for one *appliance* shall be not less than the area of the connector to the *appliance*. The area of chimney flues connected to more than one *appliance* shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

**Exception:** Chimney flues serving oil-fired *appliances* sized in accordance with NFPA 31.

**M1805.3.1 Size of chimney flue for solid-fuel appliance.** Except where otherwise specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions, the cross-sectional area of a flue connected to a solid-fuel-burning *appliance* shall be not less than the area of the flue collar or connector, and not larger than three times the area of the flue collar.

# CHAPTER 19

# SPECIAL FUEL-BURNING EQUIPMENT

## SECTION M1901
## RANGES AND OVENS

**M1901.1 Clearances.** Freestanding or built-in ranges shall have a vertical clearance above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) to unprotected combustible material. Reduced clearances are permitted in accordance with the *listing* and *labeling* of the range hoods or *appliances*.

**M1901.2 Cooking appliances.** Household cooking *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. The installation shall not interfere with *combustion air* or access for operation and servicing.

## SECTION M1902
## SAUNA HEATERS

**M1902.1 Locations and protection.** Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by persons with a guard of material having a low thermal conductivity, such as wood. The guard shall have no substantial effect on the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

**M1902.2 Installation.** Sauna heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**M1902.3 Combustion air.** *Combustion air* and venting for a nondirect vent-type heater shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 17 and 18, respectively.

**M1902.4 Controls.** Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat that will limit room temperature to not greater than 194°F (90°C). Where the thermostat is not an integral part of the heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling.

## SECTION M1903
## STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANTS

**M1903.1 General.** Stationary fuel cell power plants having a power output not exceeding 1,000 kW, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.83 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and NFPA 853.

## SECTION M1904
## GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

**M1904.1 Installation.** Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Sections M1307.4 and M1903.1 and the *International Fuel Gas Code*, the *International Fire Code* and the *International Building Code*.

# CHAPTER 20

# BOILERS AND WATER HEATERS

## ((~~SECTION M2001~~ ~~BOILERS~~))

((~~**M2001.1 Installation.** In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions. The manufacturer's rating data, the nameplate and operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all controls set, adjusted and tested by the installer. A complete control diagram together with complete boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer. Solid- and liquid-fuel-burning boilers shall be provided with *combustion air* as required by Chapter 17.~~))

((~~**M2001.1.1 Standards.** Oil-fired boilers and their control systems shall be listed and *labeled* in accordance with UL 726. Electric boilers and their control systems shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 834. Boilers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of ASME CSD-1 and as applicable, the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Sections I and IV. Gas-fired boilers shall conform to the requirements *listed* in Chapter 24.~~))

((~~**M2001.2 Clearance.** Boilers shall be installed in accordance with their *listing* and *label*.~~))

((~~**M2001.3 Valves.** Every boiler or modular boiler shall have a shutoff valve in the supply and return piping. For multiple boiler or multiple modular boiler installations, each boiler or modular boiler shall have individual shutoff valves in the supply and return piping.~~))

((~~**Exception:** Shutoff valves are not required in a system having a single low-pressure steam boiler.~~))

((~~**M2001.4 Flood-resistant installation.** In areas prone to flooding as established in Table R301.2(1), boilers, water heaters and their control systems shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.~~))

## ((~~SECTION M2002~~ ~~OPERATING AND SAFETY CONTROLS~~))

((~~**M2002.1 Safety controls.** Electrical and mechanical operating and safety controls for boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled*.~~))

((~~**M2002.2 Hot water boiler gauges.** Every hot water boiler shall have a pressure gauge and a temperature gauge, or combination pressure and temperature gauge. The gauges shall indicate the temperature and pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.~~))

((~~**M2002.3 Steam boiler gauges.** Every steam boiler shall have a water-gauge glass and a pressure gauge. The pressure gauge shall indicate the pressure within the normal range of the system's operation. The gauge glass shall be installed so that the midpoint is at the normal water level.~~))

((~~**M2002.4 Pressure-relief valve.** Boilers shall be equipped with pressure-relief valves with minimum rated capacities for the *equipment* served. Pressure-relief valves shall be set at the maximum rating of the boiler. Discharge shall be piped to drains by gravity to within 18 inches (457 mm) of the floor or to an open receptor.~~))

((~~**M2002.5 Boiler low-water cutoff.** All steam and hot water boilers shall be protected with a low-water cutoff control. The low-water cutoff shall automatically stop the combustion operation of the *appliance* when the water level drops below the lowest safe water level as established by the manufacturer.~~))

## ((~~SECTION M2003~~ ~~EXPANSION TANKS~~))

((~~**M2003.1 General.** Hot water boilers shall be provided with expansion tanks. Nonpressurized expansion tanks shall be securely fastened to the structure or boiler and supported to carry twice the weight of the tank filled with water. Provisions shall be made for draining nonpressurized tanks without emptying the system.~~))

((~~**M2003.1.1 Pressurized expansion tanks.** Pressurized expansion tanks shall be consistent with the volume and capacity of the system. Tanks shall be capable of withstanding a hydrostatic test pressure of two and one-half times the allowable working pressure of the system.~~))

((~~**M2003.2 Minimum capacity.** The minimum capacity of expansion tanks shall be determined from Table M2003.2.~~))

## SECTION M2004 WATER HEATERS USED FOR SPACE HEATING

**M2004.1 General.** Water heaters used to supply both potable hot water and hot water for space heating shall be installed in accordance with this chapter, Chapter 24, Chapter 28 and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION M2005 WATER HEATERS

**M2005.1 General.** Water heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of this code. Water heaters installed in an *attic* shall conform to the requirements of Section M1305.1.3. Gas-fired water heaters shall conform to the requirements in Chapter 24. Domestic electric water heaters shall conform to UL 174 or UL 1453. Commercial electric water heaters shall conform to UL 1453. Oiled-fired water heaters shall conform to UL 732.

**M2005.2 Prohibited locations.** Fuel-fired water heaters shall not be installed in a room used as a storage closet. Water heaters located in a bedroom or bathroom shall be installed in a sealed enclosure so that *combustion air* will not be taken from the living space. Installation of direct-vent water heaters within an enclosure is not required.

**TABLE M2003.2**
**EXPANSION TANK MINIMUM CAPACITY[a] FOR FORCED HOT-WATER SYSTEMS**

| SYSTEM VOLUME[b] (gallons) | PRESSURIZED DIAPHRAGM TYPE | NONPRESSURIZED TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 10 | 1.0 | 1.5 |
| 20 | 1.5 | 3.0 |
| 30 | 2.5 | 4.5 |
| 40 | 3.0 | 6.0 |
| 50 | 4.0 | 7.5 |
| 60 | 5.0 | 9.0 |
| 70 | 6.0 | 10.5 |
| 80 | 6.5 | 12.0 |
| 90 | 7.5 | 13.5 |
| 100 | 8.0 | 15.0 |

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 pound per square inch gauge = 6.895 kPa, °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.
a. Based on average water temperature of 195°F, fill pressure of 12 psig and a maximum operating pressure of 30 psig.
b. System volume includes volume of water in boiler, convectors and piping, not including the expansion tank.

**M2005.2.1 Water heater access.** Access to water heaters that are located in an *attic*or underfloor crawl space is permitted to be through a closet located in a sleeping room or bathroom where *ventilation*of those spaces is in accordance with this code.

**M2005.3 Electric water heaters.** Electric water heaters shall also be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapters 34 through 43.

**M2005.4 Supplemental water-heating devices.** Potable water heating devices that use refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be *approved* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION M2006
## POOL HEATERS

**M2006.1 General.** Pool and spa heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired pool heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 726. Electric pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance UL 1261.

**M2006.2 Clearances.** In no case shall the clearances interfere with *combustion air*, draft hood or flue terminal relief, or accessibility for servicing.

**M2006.3 Temperature-limiting devices.** Pool heaters shall have temperature-relief valves.

**M2006.4 Bypass valves.** Where an integral bypass system is not provided as a part of the pool heater, a bypass line and valve shall be installed between the inlet and outlet piping for use in adjusting the flow of water through the heater.

# CHAPTER 21

# HYDRONIC PIPING

## SECTION M2101
## HYDRONIC PIPING SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

**M2101.1 General.** Hydronic piping shall conform to Table M2101.1. *Approved* piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Pipe and fittings shall be rated for use at the operating temperature and pressure of the hydronic system. Used pipe, fittings, valves or other materials shall be free of foreign materials.

**M2101.2 System drain down.** Hydronic piping systems shall be installed to permit draining of the system. Where the system drains to the plumbing drainage system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of Chapters 25 through 32 of this code.

**Exception:** The buried portions of systems embedded underground or under floors.

**M2101.3 Protection of potable water.** The potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the provisions listed in Section P2902.

**M2101.4 Pipe penetrations.** Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved.

**M2101.5 Contact with building material.** A hydronic piping system shall not be in direct contact with any building material that causes the piping material to degrade or corrode.

**M2101.6 Drilling and notching.** Wood-framed structural members shall be drilled, notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Sections R502.8, R602.6, R602.6.1 and R802.7. Holes in load bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be permitted only in accordance with Sections R505.2.5, R603.2.5 and R804.2.5. In accordance with the provisions of Sections R505.3.5, R603.3.4 and R804.3.4, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall not be permitted. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section R613.

**M2101.7 Prohibited tee applications.** Fluid in the supply side of a hydronic system shall not enter a tee fitting through the branch opening.

**M2101.8 Expansion, contraction and settlement.** Piping shall be installed so that piping, connections and *equipment* shall not be subjected to excessive strains or stresses. Provisions shall be made to compensate for expansion, contraction, shrinkage and structural settlement.

**M2101.9 Piping support.** Hangers and supports shall be of material of sufficient strength to support the piping, and shall be fabricated from materials compatible with the piping material. Piping shall be supported at intervals not exceeding the spacing specified in Table M2101.9.

**M2101.10 Tests.** Hydronic piping shall be tested hydrostatically at a pressure of not less than 100 pounds per square inch (690 kPa) for a duration of not less than 15 minutes.

## SECTION M2102
## BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

**M2102.1 General.** Baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Convectors shall be supported independently of the hydronic piping.

## SECTION M2103
## FLOOR HEATING SYSTEMS

**M2103.1 Piping materials.** Piping for embedment in concrete or gypsum materials shall be standard-weight steel pipe, copper tubing, cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe, chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC), polybutylene, cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing or polypropylene (PP) with a minimum rating of 100 psi at 180°F (690 kPa at 82°C).

**M2103.2 Thermal barrier required.** Radiant floor heating systems shall have a thermal barrier in accordance with Sections M2103.2.1 through M2103.2.4.

**Exception:** Insulation shall not be required in engineered systems where it can be demonstrated that the insulation will decrease the efficiency or have a negative effect on the installation.

**M2103.2.1 Slab on grade installation.** Radiant piping used in slab-on-grade applications shall have insulating materials having a minimum *R*-value of 5 installed beneath the piping.

**M2103.2.2 Suspended floor installation.** In suspended floor applications, insulation shall be installed in the joist bay cavity serving the heating space above and shall consist of materials having a minimum *R*-value of 11.

**M2103.2.3 Thermal break required.** A thermal break consisting of asphalt expansion joint materials or similar insulating materials shall be provided at a point where a heated slab meets a foundation wall or other conductive slab.

**M2103.2.4 Thermal barrier material marking.** Insulating materials used in thermal barriers shall be installed so that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark *is readily observable upon inspection.*

**M2103.3 Piping joints.** Piping joints that are embedded shall be installed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Steel pipe joints shall be welded.
2. Copper tubing shall be joined with brazing material having a melting point exceeding 1,000°F (538°C).
3. Polybutylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polybutylene fittings.
4. CPVC tubing shall be joined using solvent cement joints.
5. Polypropylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings.
6. Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing shall be joined using cold expansion, insert or compression fittings.

**TABLE M2101.1**
**HYDRONIC PIPING MATERIALS**

| MATERIAL | USE CODE[a] | STANDARD[b] | JOINTS | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Brass pipe | 1 | ASTM B 43 | Brazed, welded, threaded, mechanical and flanged fittings | |
| Brass tubing | 1 | ASTM B 135 | Brazed, soldered and mechanical fittings | |
| Chlorinated poly (vinyl chloride) (CPVC) pipe and tubing | 1, 2, 3 | ASTM D 2846 | Solvent cement joints, compression joints and threaded adapters | |
| Copper pipe | 1 | ASTM B 42, B 302 | Brazed, soldered and mechanical fittings threaded, welded and flanged | |
| Copper tubing (type K, L or M) | 1, 2 | ASTM B 75, B 88, B 251, B 306 | Brazed, soldered and flared mechanical fittings | Joints embedded in concrete |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) | 1, 2, 3 | ASTM F 876, F 877 | (See PEX fittings) | Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/ cross-linked polyethylene-(PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe | 1, 2 | ASTM F 1281 or CAN/ CSA B137.10 | Mechanical, crimp/insert | Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. |
| PEX Fittings | | ASTM F 1807 ASTM F 1960 ASTM F 2098 | Copper-crimp/insert fittings, cold expansion fittings, stainless steel clamp, insert fittings | Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions |
| Plastic fittings PEX | | ASTM F 1807 | | |
| Polybutylene (PB) pipe and tubing | 1, 2, 3 | ASTM D 3309 | Heat-fusion, crimp/insert and compression | Joints in concrete shall be heat-fused. |
| Polyethylene (PE) pipe, tubing and fittings (for ground source heat pump loop systems) | 1, 2, 4 | ASTM D 2513; ASTM D 3350; ASTM D 2513; ASTM D 3035; ASTM D 2447; ASTM D 2683; ASTM F 1055; ASTM D 2837; ASTM D 3350; ASTM D 1693 | Heat-fusion | |
| Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe | 1, 2, 3 | ASTM F 1282 CSA B 137.9 | Mechanical, crimp/insert | |
| Polyproplylene (PP) | 1, 2, 3 | ISO 15874 ASTM F 2389 | Heat-fusion joints, mechanical fittings, threaded adapters, compression joints | |
| Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) | 1, 2, 3 | ASTM F 2623 | Copper crimp/insert fitting stainless steel clamp, insert fittings | |
| Soldering fluxes | 1 | ASTM B 813 | Copper tube joints | |
| Steel pipe | 1, 2 | ASTM A 53, A 106 | Brazed, welded, threaded, flanged and mechanical fittings | Joints in concrete shall be welded. Galvanized pipe shall not be welded or brazed. |
| Steel tubing | 1 | ASTM A 254 | Mechanical fittings, welded | |

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

a. Use code:
   1. Above ground.
   2. Embedded in radiant systems.
   3. Temperatures below 180°F only.
   4. Low temperature (below 130°F) applications only.

b. Standards as listed in Chapter 44.

**M2103.4 Testing.** Piping or tubing to be embedded shall be tested by applying a hydrostatic pressure of not less than 100 psi (690 kPa). The pressure shall be maintained for 30 minutes, during which all joints shall be visually inspected for leaks.

## SECTION M2104
## LOW TEMPERATURE PIPING

**M2104.1 Piping materials.** Low temperature piping for embedment in concrete or gypsum materials shall be as indicated in Table M2101.1.

**M2104.2 Piping joints.** Piping joints (other than those in Section M2103.2) that are embedded shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Polyethylene tubing shall be installed with heat fusion joints.
3. Polypropylene (PP) tubing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**M2104.2.1 Polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing for ground source heat pump loop systems.** Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings for ground source heat pump loop systems shall be heat fusion joints conforming to Section M2104.2.1.1, electrofusion joints conforming to Section M2104.2.1.2 or stab-type insertion joints conforming to Section M2104.2.1.3.

**M2104.2.1.1 Heat-fusion joints.** Joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion or butt-fusion type, fabricated in accordance with the piping manufacturer's instructions. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D 2683.

**M2104.2.1.2 Electrofusion joints.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture, and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F 1055.

**M2104.2.1.3 Stab-type insert fittings.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Pipe ends shall be chamfered and inserted into the fitting to full depth. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D 2513.

**M2104.3 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing.** Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections M2104.3.1 and M2104.3.2. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**M2104.3.1 Compression-type fittings.** Where compression type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting such inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

**M2104.3.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections.** Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

**TABLE M2101.9**
**HANGER SPACING INTERVALS**

| PIPING MATERIAL | MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet) | MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet) |
|---|---|---|
| ABS | 4 | 10 |
| CPVC ≤ 1 inch pipe or tubing | 3 | 5 |
| CPVC ≥ $1^1/_4$ inch | 4 | 10 |
| Copper or copper alloy pipe | 12 | 10 |
| Copper or copper alloy tubing | 6 | 10 |
| PB pipe or tubing | 2.67 | 4 |
| PE pipe or tubing | 2.67 | 4 |
| PEX tubing | 2.67 | 4 |
| PP < 1 inch pipe or tubing | 2.67 | 4 |
| PP > $1^1/_4$ inch | 4 | 10 |
| PVC | 4 | 10 |
| Steel pipe | 12 | 15 |
| Steel tubing | 8 | 10 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**M2104.4 Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe.** Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections M2104.4.1 and M2104.4.2. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**M2104.4.1 Compression-type fittings.** Where compression type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting such inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

**M2104.4.2 PE-AL-PE to metal connections.** Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

## SECTION M2105
## GROUND SOURCE HEAT PUMP SYSTEM LOOP PIPING

**M2105.1 Testing.** The assembled loop system shall be pressure tested with water at 100 psi (690 kPa) for 30 minutes with no observed leaks before connection (header) trenches are backfilled. Flow rates and pressure drops shall be compared to calculated values. If actual flow rate or pressure drop figures differ from calculated values by more than 10 percent, the problem shall be identified and corrected.

# CHAPTER 22

# SPECIAL PIPING AND STORAGE SYSTEMS

## SECTION M2201 OIL TANKS

**M2201.1 Materials.** Supply tanks shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall conform to UL 58 for underground tanks and UL 80 for indoor tanks.

**M2201.2 Above-ground tanks.** The maximum amount of fuel oil stored above ground or inside of a building shall be 660 gallons (2498 L). The supply tank shall be supported on rigid noncombustible supports to prevent settling or shifting.

**Exception:** The storage of fuel oil, used for space or water heating, above ground or inside buildings in quantities exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) shall comply with NFPA 31.

**M2201.2.1 Tanks within buildings.** Supply tanks for use inside of buildings shall be of such size and shape to permit installation and removal from *dwellings* as whole units. Supply tanks larger than 10 gallons (38 L) shall be placed not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from any fire or flame either within or external to any fuel-burning *appliance*.

**M2201.2.2 Outside above-ground tanks.** Tanks installed outside above ground shall be a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) from an adjoining property line. Such tanks shall be suitably protected from the weather and from physical damage.

**M2201.3 Underground tanks.** Excavations for underground tanks shall not undermine the foundations of existing structures. The clearance from the tank to the nearest wall of a *basement*, pit or property line shall not be less than 1 foot (305 mm). Tanks shall be set on and surrounded with noncorrosive inert materials such as clean earth, sand or gravel well tamped in place. Tanks shall be covered with not less than 1 foot (305 mm) of earth. Corrosion protection shall be provided in accordance with Section M2203.7.

**M2201.4 Multiple tanks.** Cross connection of two supply tanks shall be permitted in accordance with Section M2203.6.

**M2201.5 Oil gauges.** Inside tanks shall be provided with a device to indicate when the oil in the tank has reached a predetermined safe level. Glass gauges or a gauge subject to breakage that could result in the escape of oil from the tank shall not be used.

**M2201.6 Flood-resistant installation.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1), tanks shall be installed at or above the elevation required in Section R322.2.1 or R322.3.2 or shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse and lateral movement under conditions of the design flood.

**M2201.7 Tanks abandoned or removed.** Exterior above-grade fill piping shall be removed when tanks are abandoned or removed. Tank abandonment and removal shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

## SECTION M2202 OIL PIPING, FITTING AND CONNECTIONS

**M2202.1 Materials.** Piping shall consist of steel pipe, copper tubing or steel tubing conforming to ASTM A 539. Aluminum tubing shall not be used between the fuel-oil tank and the burner units.

**M2202.2 Joints and fittings.** Piping shall be connected with standard fittings compatible with the piping material. Cast iron fittings shall not be used for oil piping. Unions requiring gaskets or packings, right or left couplings, and sweat fittings employing solder having a melting point less than 1,000°F (538°C) shall not be used for oil piping. Threaded joints and connections shall be made tight with a lubricant or pipe thread compound.

**M2202.3 Flexible connectors.** Flexible metallic hoses shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 536 and shall be installed in accordance with their *listing* and *labeling* and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Connectors made from combustible materials shall not be used inside of buildings or above ground outside of buildings.

## SECTION M2203 INSTALLATION

**M2203.1 General.** Piping shall be installed in a manner to avoid placing stresses on the piping, and to accommodate expansion and contraction of the piping system.

**M2203.2 Supply piping.** Supply piping used in the installation of oil burners and *appliances* shall be not smaller than $^3/_8$-inch (9 mm) pipe or $^3/_8$-inch (9 mm) outside diameter tubing. Copper tubing and fittings shall be a minimum of Type L.

**M2203.3 Fill piping.** Fill piping shall terminate outside of buildings at a point at least 2 feet (610 mm) from any building opening at the same or lower level. Fill openings shall be equipped with a tight metal cover.

**M2203.4 Vent piping.** Vent piping shall be not smaller than $1^1/_4$-inch (32 mm) pipe. Vent piping shall be laid to drain toward the tank without sags or traps in which the liquid can collect. Vent pipes shall not be cross connected with fill pipes, lines from burners or overflow lines from auxiliary tanks. The lower end of a vent pipe shall enter the tank through the top and shall extend into the tank not more than 1 inch (25 mm).

**M2203.5 Vent termination.** Vent piping shall terminate outside of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm), measured vertically or horizontally, from any building opening. Outer ends of vent piping shall terminate in a weather-proof cap or fitting having an unobstructed area at least equal to the cross-sectional area of the vent pipe, and shall be located sufficiently above the ground to avoid being obstructed by snow and ice.

**M2203.6 Cross connection of tanks.** Cross connection of two supply tanks, not exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) aggregate capacity, with gravity flow from one tank to another, shall be acceptable providing that the two tanks are on the same horizontal plane.

**M2203.7 Corrosion protection.** Underground tanks and buried piping shall be protected by corrosion-resistant coatings or special alloys or fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

## SECTION M2204
## OIL PUMPS AND VALVES

**M2204.1 Pumps.** Oil pumps shall be positive displacement types that automatically shut off the oil supply when stopped. Automatic pumps shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 343 and shall be installed in accordance with their *listing*.

**M2204.2 Shutoff valves.** A *readily accessible* manual shutoff valve shall be installed between the oil supply tank and the burner. Where the shutoff valve is installed in the discharge line of an oil pump, a pressure-relief valve shall be incorporated to bypass or return surplus oil.

**M2204.3 Maximum pressure.** Pressure at the oil supply inlet to an *appliance* shall be not greater than 3 pounds per square inch (20.7 kPa).

**M2204.4 Relief valves.** Fuel-oil lines incorporating heaters shall be provided with relief valves that will discharge to a return line when excess pressure exists.

# CHAPTER 23

# SOLAR SYSTEMS

## SECTION M2301
## SOLAR ENERGY SYSTEMS

**M2301.1 General.** This section provides for the design, construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of *equipment* and systems using solar energy to provide space heating or cooling, hot water heating and swimming pool heating.

**M2301.2 Installation.** Installation of solar energy systems shall comply with Sections M2301.2.1 through M2301.2.9.

**M2301.2.1 Access.** Solar energy collectors, controls, dampers, fans, blowers and pumps shall be accessible for inspection, maintenance, repair and replacement.

**M2301.2.2 Roof-mounted collectors.** The roof shall be constructed to support the loads imposed by roof-mounted solar collectors. Roof-mounted solar collectors that serve as a roof covering shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings in Chapter 9 of this code. Where mounted on or above the roof coverings, the collectors and supporting structure shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood equivalent to that required for the roof construction.

**M2301.2.3 Pressure and temperature relief.** System components containing fluids shall be protected with pressure- and temperature-relief valves. Relief devices shall be installed in sections of the system so that a section cannot be valved off or isolated from a relief device.

**M2301.2.4 Vacuum relief.** System components that might be subjected to pressure drops below atmospheric pressure during operation or shutdown shall be protected by a vacuum-relief valve.

**M2301.2.5 Protection from freezing.** System components shall be protected from damage resulting from freezing of heat-transfer liquids at the winter design temperature provided in Table R301.2(1). Freeze protection shall be provided by heating, insulation, thermal mass and heat transfer fluids with freeze points lower than the winter design temperature, heat tape or other *approved* methods, or combinations thereof.

**Exception:** Where the winter design temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).

**M2301.2.6 Expansion tanks.** Expansion tanks in solar energy systems shall be installed in accordance with Section M2003 in closed fluid loops that contain heat transfer fluid.

**M2301.2.7 Roof and wall penetrations.** Roof and wall penetrations shall be flashed and sealed in accordance with Chapter 9 of this code to prevent entry of water, rodents and insects.

**M2301.2.8 Solar loop isolation.** Valves shall be installed to allow the solar collectors to be isolated from the remainder of the system. Each isolation valve shall be labeled with the open and closed position.

**M2301.2.9 Maximum temperature limitation.** Systems shall be equipped with means to limit the maximum water temperature of the system fluid entering or exchanging heat with any pressurized vessel inside the *dwelling* to 180°F (82°C). This protection is in addition to the required temperature- and pressure-relief valves required by Section M2301.2.3.

**M2301.3 Labeling.** *Labeling* shall comply with Sections M2301.3.1 and M2301.3.2.

**M2301.3.1 Collectors.** Collectors shall be *listed* and *labeled* to show the manufacturer's name, model number, serial number, collector weight, collector maximum allowable temperatures and pressures, and the type of heat transfer fluids that are compatible with the collector. The *label* shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the collector.

**M2301.3.2 Thermal storage units.** Pressurized thermal storage units shall be *listed* and *labeled* to show the manufacturer's name, model number, serial number, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating temperatures and pressures, and the type of heat transfer fluids that are compatible with the storage unit. The *label* shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the thermal storage unit.

**M2301.4 Prohibited heat transfer fluids.** Flammable gases and liquids shall not be used as heat transfer fluids.

**M2301.5 Backflow protection.** Connections from the potable water supply to solar systems shall comply with Section P2902.5.5.

# *Part VI—Fuel Gas*

## CHAPTER 24
# FUEL GAS

The text of this chapter is extracted from the 2009 edition of the *International Fuel Gas Code* and has been modified where necessary to conform to the scope of application of the *International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings*. The section numbers appearing in parentheses after each section number are the section numbers of the corresponding text in the *International Fuel Gas Code.*

### SECTION G2401 (101)
### GENERAL

**G2401.1 (101.2) Application.** This chapter covers those *fuel gas piping systems*, fuel-gas *appliances* and related accessories, *venting systems* and *combustion air* configurations most commonly encountered in the construction of one- and two-family dwellings and structures regulated by this *code*.

Coverage of *piping systems* shall extend from the *point of delivery* to the outlet of the *appliance* shutoff *valves* (see definition of *"Point of delivery"*). *Piping systems* requirements shall include design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance. Requirements for gas *appliances* and related accessories shall include installation, *combustion* and ventilation air and venting and connections to *piping systems*.

The omission from this chapter of any material or method of installation provided for in the *International Fuel Gas Code* shall not be construed as prohibiting the use of such material or method of installation. *Fuel-gas piping systems*, fuel-gas *appliances* and related accessories, *venting systems* and *combustion air* configurations not specifically covered in these chapters shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be regulated by Chapter 7 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

This chapter shall not apply to the following:

1. Liquified natural gas (LNG) installations.
2. Temporary LP-*gas piping* for buildings under construction or renovation that is not to become part of the permanent *piping system*.
3. Except as provided in Section G2412.1.1, *gas piping, meters*, gas *pressure regulators*, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in the distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-gas.
4. Portable LP-gas *appliances* and *equipment* of all types that is not connected to a fixed fuel *piping system*.
5. Portable fuel cell *appliances* that are neither connected to a fixed *piping system* nor interconnected to a power grid.
6. Installation of hydrogen gas, LP-gas and compressed natural gas (CNG) systems on vehicles.

### SECTION G2402 (201)
### GENERAL

**G2402.1 (201.1) Scope.** Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

**G2402.2 (201.2) Interchangeability.** Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

**G2402.3 (201.3) Terms defined in other codes.** Where terms are not defined in this *code* and are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Mechanical Code* or *International Plumbing Code*, such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in those *codes*.

### SECTION G2403 (202)
### GENERAL DEFINITIONS

**AIR CONDITIONING, GAS FIRED.** A gas-burning, automatically operated *appliance* for supplying cooled and/or dehumidified air or chilled liquid.

**AIR, EXHAUST.** Air being removed from any space or piece of *equipment* or *appliance* and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts.

**AIR-HANDLING UNIT.** A blower or fan used for the purpose of distributing supply air to a room, space or area.

**AIR, MAKEUP.** Air that is provided to replace air being exhausted.

**ALTERATION.** A change in a system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

**ANODELESS RISER.** A transition assembly in which plastic *piping* is installed and terminated above ground outside of a building.

**APPLIANCE.** Any apparatus or device that uses gas as a fuel or raw material to produce light, heat, power, refrigeration or air conditioning.

**APPLIANCE, FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION.** An *appliance* equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of *combustion* through the *combustion* chamber or heat exchanger.

**APPLIANCE, AUTOMATICALLY CONTROLLED.** *Appliances* equipped with an automatic *burner* ignition and safety shut-off device and other automatic devices, which accomplish complete turn-on and shut-off of the gas to the *main burner* or *burners*, and graduate the gas supply to the *burner* or *burners*, but do not affect complete shut-off of the gas.

**APPLIANCE, UNVENTED.** An *appliance* designed or installed in such a manner that the products of *combustion* are not conveyed by a vent or *chimney* directly to the outside atmosphere.

**APPLIANCE, VENTED.** An *appliance* designed and installed in such a manner that all of the products of *combustion* are conveyed directly from the *appliance* to the outside atmosphere through an *approved chimney* or vent system.

**APPROVED.** Acceptable to the *code official* or other authority having jurisdiction.

**ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE.** The pressure of the weight of air and water vapor on the surface of the earth, approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch (psia) (101 kPa absolute) at sea level.

**AUTOMATIC IGNITION.** Ignition of gas at the *burner(s)* when the gas controlling device is turned on, including reignition if the flames on the *burner(s)* have been extinguished by means other than by the closing of the gas controlling device.

**BAROMETRIC DRAFT REGULATOR.** A balanced *damper* device attached to a *chimney,* vent *connector,* breeching or flue gas manifold to protect *combustion appliances* by controlling *chimney draft*. A double-acting *barometric draft regulator* is one whose balancing *damper* is free to move in either direction to protect *combustion appliances* from both excessive *draft* and backdraft.

**BOILER, LOW-PRESSURE.** A self-contained gas-fired *appliance* for supplying steam or hot water.

**Hot water heating boiler.** A boiler in which no steam is generated, from which hot water is circulated for heating purposes and then returned to the boiler, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C) at or near the boiler outlet.

**Hot water supply boiler.** A boiler, completely filled with water, which furnishes hot water to be used externally to itself, and that operates at water pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1100 kPa gauge) and at water temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C) at or near the boiler outlet.

**Steam heating boiler.** A boiler in which steam is generated and that operates at a steam pressure not exceeding 15 psig (100 kPa gauge).

**BONDING JUMPER.** A conductor installed to electrically connect metallic *gas piping* to the grounding electrode system.

**BRAZING.** A metal joining process wherein coalescence is produced by the use of a nonferrous filler metal having a melting point above 1,000°F (538°C), but lower than that of the base metal being joined. The filler material is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary action.

**BTU.** Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound (454 g) of water 1°F (0.56°C) (1 *Btu* = 1055 J).

**BURNER.** A device for the final conveyance of the gas, or a mixture of gas and air, to the *combustion* zone.

**Induced-draft.** A *burner* that depends on *draft* induced by a fan that is an integral part of the *appliance* and is located downstream from the *burner.*

**Power.** A *burner* in which gas, air or both are supplied at pressures exceeding, for gas, the line pressure, and for air, *atmospheric pressure*, with this added pressure being applied at the *burner.*

**CHIMNEY.** A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of *combustion* and air from an *appliance* to the outside atmosphere.

**Factory-built chimney.** A listed and labeled *chimney* composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

**Masonry chimney.** A field-constructed *chimney* composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

**CLEARANCE.** The minimum distance through air measured between the heat-producing surface of the mechanical *appliance*, device or *equipment* and the surface of the combustible material or assembly.

**CLOTHES DRYER.** An *appliance* used to dry wet laundry by means of heated air.

**Type 1.** Factory-built package, multiple production. Primarily used in the family living environment. Usually the smallest unit physically and in function output.

**CODE.** These regulations, subsequent amendments thereto, or any emergency rule or regulation that the administrative authority having jurisdiction has lawfully adopted.

**CODE OFFICIAL.** The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this *code*, or a duly authorized representative.

**COMBUSTION.** In the context of this *code*, refers to the rapid oxidation of fuel accompanied by the production of heat or heat and light.

**COMBUSTION AIR.** Air necessary for complete *combustion* of a fuel, including theoretical air and excess air.

**COMBUSTION CHAMBER.** The portion of an *appliance* within which *combustion* occurs.

**COMBUSTION PRODUCTS.** Constituents resulting from the *combustion* of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including the inert gases, but excluding excess air.

**CONCEALED LOCATION.** A location that cannot be accessed without damaging permanent parts of the building structure or finish surface. Spaces above, below or behind readily removable panels or doors shall not be considered as concealed.

**CONCEALED PIPING.** *Piping* that is located in a *concealed location* (see *"Concealed location"*).

**CONDENSATE.** The liquid that condenses from a gas (including flue gas) caused by a reduction in temperature or increase in pressure.

**CONNECTOR, APPLIANCE (Fuel).** Rigid metallic *pipe* and fittings, semirigid metallic *tubing* and fittings or a listed and labeled device that connects an *appliance* to the *gas piping system*.

**CONNECTOR, CHIMNEY OR VENT.** The *pipe* that connects an *appliance* to a *chimney* or vent.

**CONTROL.** A manual or automatic device designed to regulate the gas, air, water or electrical supply to, or operation of, a mechanical system.

**CONVERSION BURNER.** A unit consisting of a *burner* and its *controls* for installation in an *appliance* originally utilizing another fuel.

**CUBIC FOOT.** The amount of gas that occupies 1 *cubic foot* (0.02832 $m^3$) when at a temperature of 60°F (16°C), saturated with water vapor and under a pressure equivalent to that of 30 inches of mercury (101 kPa).

**DAMPER.** A manually or automatically controlled device to regulate *draft* or the rate of flow of air or *combustion* gases.

**DECORATIVE GAS APPLIANCE, VENTED.** A *vented appliance* wherein the primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flames.

**DECORATIVE GAS APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN VENTED FIREPLACES.** A *vented appliance* designed for installation within the fire chamber of a vented *fireplace*, wherein the primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flames.

**DEMAND.** The maximum amount of gas input required per unit of time, usually expressed in cubic feet per hour, or *Btu*/h (1 *Btu*/h = 0.2931 W).

**DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.** The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard map.

**DILUTION AIR.** Air that is introduced into a *draft hood* and is mixed with the *flue gases*.

**DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCES.** *Appliances* that are constructed and installed so that all air for *combustion* is derived directly from the outside atmosphere and all *flue gases* are discharged directly to the outside atmosphere.

**DRAFT.** The pressure difference existing between the *appliance* or any component part and the atmosphere, that causes a continuous flow of air and products of *combustion* through the gas passages of the *appliance* to the atmosphere.

**Mechanical or induced draft.** The pressure difference created by the action of a fan, blower or ejector that is located between the *appliance* and the *chimney* or vent termination.

**Natural draft.** The pressure difference created by a vent or *chimney* because of its height, and the temperature difference between the *flue gases* and the atmosphere.

**DRAFT HOOD.** A nonadjustable device built into an *appliance*, or made as part of the vent *connector* from an *appliance*, that is designed to (1) provide for ready escape of the *flue gases* from the *appliance* in the event of no *draft,* backdraft, or stoppage beyond the *draft hood*, (2) prevent a backdraft from entering the *appliance*, and (3) neutralize the effect of stack action of the *chimney* or gas vent upon operation of the *appliance*.

**DRAFT REGULATOR.** A device that functions to maintain a desired *draft* in the *appliance* by automatically reducing the *draft* to the desired value.

**DRIP.** The container placed at a low point in a system of *piping* to collect *condensate* and from which the *condensate* is removable.

**DUCT FURNACE.** A warm-air *furnace* normally installed in an air-distribution duct to supply warm air for heating. This definition shall apply only to a warm-air heating *appliance* that depends for air circulation on a blower not furnished as part of the *furnace*.

**DWELLING UNIT.** A *single* unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

**EQUIPMENT.** Apparatus and devices other than *appliances*.

**EXTERIOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS.** *Masonry chimneys* exposed to the outdoors on one or more sides below the roof line.

**FIREPLACE.** A fire chamber and hearth constructed of noncombustible material for use with solid fuels and provided with a *chimney*.

**Masonry fireplace.** A hearth and fire chamber of solid masonry units such as bricks, stones, listed masonry units or reinforced concrete, provided with a suitable *chimney*.

**Factory-built fireplace.** A *fireplace* composed of listed factory-built components assembled in accordance with the terms of listing to form the completed *fireplace*.

**FLAME SAFEGUARD.** A device that will automatically shut off the fuel supply to a *main burner* or group of *burners* when the means of ignition of such *burners* becomes inoperative, and when flame failure occurs on the *burner* or group of *burners*.

**FLOOD HAZARD AREA.** The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a floodplain subject to a 1 percent or greater chance of flooding in any given year.
2. This area designated as a *flood hazard area* on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

**FLOOR FURNACE.** A completely self-contained *furnace* suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for *combustion* from outside such space and with means for observing flames and lighting the *appliance* from such space.

**FLUE, APPLIANCE.** The passage(s) within an *appliance* through which *combustion products* pass from the *combustion chamber* of the *appliance* to the *draft hood* inlet opening on an *appliance* equipped with a *draft hood* or to the outlet of the *appliance* on an *appliance* not equipped with a *draft hood*.

**FLUE COLLAR.** That portion of an *appliance* designed for the attachment of a *draft hood*, *vent connector* or venting system.

**FLUE GASES.** Products of *combustion* plus excess air in *appliance flues* or heat exchangers.

**FLUE LINER (LINING).** A system or material used to form the inside surface of a flue in a *chimney* or vent, for the purpose of protecting the surrounding structure from the effects of *combustion products* and for conveying *combustion products* without leakage to the atmosphere.

**FUEL GAS.** A natural gas, manufactured gas, *liquefied petroleum gas* or mixtures of these gases.

**FUEL GAS UTILIZATION EQUIPMENT.** See *"Appliance."*

**FURNACE.** A completely self-contained heating unit that is designed to supply heated air to spaces remote from or adjacent to the *appliance* location.

**FURNACE, CENTRAL FURNACE.** A self-contained *appliance* for heating air by transfer of heat of *combustion* through metal to the air, and designed to supply heated air through ducts to spaces remote from or adjacent to the *appliance* location.

**FURNACE PLENUM.** An air compartment or chamber to which one or more ducts are connected and which forms part of an air distribution system.

**GAS CONVENIENCE OUTLET.** A permanently mounted, manually operated device that provides the means for connecting an *appliance* to, and disconnecting an *appliance* from, the gas supply *piping*. The device includes an integral, manually operated *valve* with a nondisplaceable *valve* member and is designed so that disconnection of an *appliance* only occurs when the manually operated *valve* is in the closed position.

**GAS PIPING.** An installation of *pipe*, *valves* or fittings installed on a premises or in a building and utilized to convey *fuel gas*.

➡ **HAZARDOUS LOCATION.** Any location considered to be a fire hazard for flammable vapors, dust, combustible fibers or other highly combustible substances. The location is not necessarily categorized in the *International Building Code* as a high-hazard use group classification.

**HOUSE PIPING.** See *"Piping system."*

**IGNITION PILOT.** A *pilot* that operates during the lighting cycle and discontinues during *main burner* operation.

**IGNITION SOURCE.** A flame spark or hot surface capable of igniting flammable vapors or fumes. Such sources include *appliance burners, burner* ignitors and electrical switching devices.

**INFRARED RADIANT HEATER.** A heater which directs a substantial amount of its energy output in the form of infrared radiant energy into the area to be heated. Such heaters are of either the vented or unvented type.

**JOINT, FLARED.** A metal-to-metal compression joint in which a conical spread is made on the end of a tube that is compressed by a flare nut against a mating flare.

**JOINT, MECHANICAL.** A general form of gas-tight joints obtained by the joining of metal parts through a positive-holding mechanical construction, such as flanged joint, threaded joint, *flared joint* or compression joint.

**JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE.** A joint made in thermoset *plastic piping* by the use of an adhesive substance which forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dissolving either one of them.

**LEAK CHECK.** An operation performed on a *gas piping system* to verify that the system does not leak.

**LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS or LPG (LP-GAS).** *Liquefied petroleum gas* composed predominately of propane, propylene, butanes or butylenes, or mixtures thereof that is gaseous under normal atmospheric conditions, but is capable of being liquefied under moderate pressure at normal temperatures.

**LIVING SPACE.** Space within a *dwelling unit* utilized for living, sleeping, eating, cooking, bathing, washing and sanitation purposes.

**LOG LIGHTER, GAS-FIRED.** A manually operated solid-fuel ignition *appliance* for installation in a vented solid-fuel-burning *fireplace*.

**MAIN BURNER.** A device or group of devices essentially forming an integral unit for the final conveyance of gas or a mixture of gas and air to the *combustion* zone, and on which *combustion* takes place to accomplish the function for which the *appliance* is designed.

**METER.** The instrument installed to measure the volume of gas delivered through it.

**MODULATING.** Modulating or throttling is the action of a *control* from its maximum to minimum position in either predetermined steps or increments of movement as caused by its actuating medium.

**OFFSET (VENT).** A combination of *approved* bends that make two changes in direction bringing one section of the vent out of line, but into a line parallel with the other section.

**OUTLET.** The point at which a gas-fired *appliance* connects to the *gas piping system*.

**OXYGEN DEPLETION SAFETY SHUTOFF SYSTEM (ODS).** A system designed to act to shut off the gas supply to the main and *pilot burners* if the oxygen in the surrounding atmosphere is reduced below a predetermined level.

**PILOT.** A small flame that is utilized to ignite the gas at the *main burner* or *burners*.

**PIPING.** Where used in this *code*, *"piping"* refers to either *pipe* or *tubing*, or both.

**Pipe.** A rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, brass or plastic.

**Tubing.** Semirigid conduit of copper, aluminum, plastic or steel.

**PIPING SYSTEM.** All fuel *piping, valves* and fittings from the outlet of the *point of delivery* to the outlets of the *appliance* shutoff valves.

**PLASTIC, THERMOPLASTIC.** A plastic that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

**POINT OF DELIVERY.** For natural gas systems, the *point of delivery* is the outlet of the service *meter* assembly or the outlet of the service *regulator* or *service shutoff valve* where a *meter* is not provided. Where a *valve* is provided at the outlet of the service *meter* assembly, such *valve* shall be considered to be downstream of the *point of delivery.* For undiluted *liquefied petroleum gas* systems, the *point of delivery* shall be considered to be the outlet of the first *regulator* that reduces pressure to 2 psig (13.8 kPa) or less.

**PRESSURE DROP.** The loss in pressure due to friction or obstruction in pipes, *valves*, fittings, *regulators* and *burners*.

**PRESSURE TEST.** An operation performed to verify the gas-tight integrity of *gas piping* following its installation or modification.

**READY ACCESS (TO).** That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel, door or similar obstruction. (See "Access.")

**REGULATOR.** A device for controlling and maintaining a uniform gas supply pressure, either pounds-to-inches water column (MP *regulator*) or inches-to-inches water column (*appliance regulator*).

**REGULATOR, GAS APPLIANCE.** A *pressure regulator* for controlling pressure to the manifold of the gas *appliance*.

**REGULATOR, LINE GAS PRESSURE.** A device placed in a gas line between the *service pressure regulator* and the *appliance* for controlling, maintaining or reducing the pressure in that portion of the *piping system* downstream of the device.

**REGULATOR, MEDIUM-PRESSURE (MP Regulator).** A line *pressure regulator* that reduces gas pressure from the range of greater than 0.5 psig (3.4 kPa) and less than or equal to 5 psig (34.5 kPa) to a lower pressure.

**REGULATOR, PRESSURE.** A device placed in a gas line for reducing, controlling and maintaining the pressure in that portion of the *piping system* downstream of the device.

**REGULATOR, SERVICE PRESSURE.** A device installed by the serving gas supplier to reduce and limit the service line gas pressure to delivery pressure.

**RELIEF OPENING.** The opening provided in a *draft hood* to permit the ready escape to the atmosphere of the flue products from the *draft hood* in the event of no *draft*, backdraft or stoppage beyond the *draft hood*, and to permit air into the *draft hood* in the event of a strong *chimney* updraft.

**RELIEF VALVE (DEVICE).** A safety *valve* designed to forestall the development of a dangerous condition by relieving either pressure, temperature or vacuum in the hot water supply system.

**RELIEF VALVE, PRESSURE.** An *automatic valve* which opens and closes a *relief vent*, depending on whether the pressure is above or below a predetermined value.

**RELIEF VALVE, TEMPERATURE.**

**Manual reset type.** A *valve* which automatically opens a *relief* vent at a predetermined temperature and which must be manually returned to the closed position.

**Reseating or self-closing type.** An *automatic valve* which opens and closes a *relief* vent, depending on whether the temperature is above or below a predetermined value.

**RELIEF VALVE, VACUUM.** A *valve* that automatically opens and closes a vent for relieving a vacuum within the hot water supply system, depending on whether the vacuum is above or below a predetermined value.

**RISER, GAS.** A vertical *pipe* supplying *fuel gas*.

**ROOM HEATER, UNVENTED.** See *"Unvented room heater."*

**ROOM HEATER, VENTED.** A free-standing gas-fired heating unit used for direct heating of the space in and adjacent to that in which the unit is located. (See also *"Vented room heater."*)

**SAFETY SHUTOFF DEVICE.** See *"Flame safeguard."*

**SHAFT.** An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and the roof.

**SPECIFIC GRAVITY.** As applied to gas, *specific gravity* is the ratio of the weight of a given volume to that of the same volume of air, both measured under the same condition.

**THERMOSTAT.**

**Electric switch type.** A device that senses changes in temperature and controls electrically, by means of separate components, the flow of gas to the *burner(s)* to maintain selected temperatures.

**Integral gas valve type.** An automatic device, actuated by temperature changes, designed to control the gas supply to the *burner(s)* in order to maintain temperatures between predetermined limits, and in which the thermal actuating element is an integral part of the device.

1. Graduating thermostat. A *thermostat* in which the motion of the *valve* is approximately in direct proportion to the effective motion of the thermal element induced by temperature change.
2. Snap-acting thermostat. A *thermostat* in which the thermostatic valve travels instantly from the closed to the open position, and vice versa.

**TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL.** An adapter for joining plastic *pipe* to steel *pipe*. The purpose of this fitting is to provide a permanent, pressure-tight connection between two materials that cannot be joined directly one to another.

**UNIT HEATER.**

**High-static pressure type.** A self-contained, automatically controlled, *vented appliance* having integral means for circulation of air against 0.2 inch w.c. (50 Pa) or greater static pressure. Such *appliance* is equipped with provisions for attaching an outlet air duct and, where the *appliance* is for indoor installation remote from the space to be heated, is also equipped with provisions for attaching an inlet air duct.

**Low-static pressure type.** A self-contained, automatically controlled, *vented appliance*, intended for installation in the space to be heated without the use of ducts, having integral means for circulation of air. Such units are allowed to be equipped with louvers or face extensions made in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

**UNVENTED ROOM HEATER.** An unvented heating *appliance* designed for stationary installation and utilized to provide comfort heating. Such *appliances* provide radiant heat or convection heat by gravity or fan circulation directly from the heater and do not utilize ducts.

**VALVE.** A device used in *piping* to control the gas supply to any section of a system of *piping* or to an *appliance*.

**Automatic.** An automatic or semiautomatic device consisting essentially of a *valve* and an operator that control the gas supply to the *burner(s)* during operation of an *appliance*. The operator shall be actuated by application of gas pressure on a flexible diaphragm, by electrical means, by mechanical means or by other *approved* means.

**Appliance shutoff.** A *valve* located in the *piping system*, used to isolate individual *appliances* for purposes such as service or replacement.

**Automatic gas shutoff.** A *valve* used in conjunction with an automatic gas shutoff device to shut off the gas supply to a water heating system. It shall be constructed integrally with the gas shutoff device or shall be a separate assembly.

**Individual main burner.** A *valve* that controls the gas supply to an individual *main burner.*

**Main burner control.** A *valve* that controls the gas supply to the *main burner* manifold.

**Manual main gas-control.** A manually operated *valve* in the gas line for the purpose of completely turning on or shutting off the gas supply to the *appliance*, except to a *pilot* or pilots that have independent shutoff.

**Manual reset.** An automatic shutoff *valve* installed in the gas supply *piping* and set to shut off when unsafe conditions occur. The device remains closed until manually reopened.

**Service shutoff.** A *valve*, installed by the serving gas supplier between the service *meter* or source of supply and the customer *piping system,* to shut off the entire *piping system.*

**VENT.** A *pipe* or other conduit composed of factory-made components, containing a passageway for conveying *combustion products* and air to the atmosphere, listed and labeled for use with a specific type or class of *appliance*.

**Special gas vent.** A vent listed and labeled for use with listed Category II, III and IV gas *appliances*.

**Type B vent.** A vent listed and labeled for use with *appliances* with *draft hoods* and other Category I *appliances* that are listed for use with Type B vents.

**Type BW vent.** A vent listed and labeled for use with wall *furnaces*.

**Type L vent.** A vent listed and labeled for use with *appliances* that are listed for use with Type L or Type B vents.

**VENT CONNECTOR.** See "Connector."

**VENT PIPING.**

**Breather.** *Piping* run from a pressure-regulating device to the outdoors, designed to provide a reference to *atmospheric pressure*. If the device incorporates an integral pressure *relief* mechanism, a breather vent can also serve as a *relief* vent.

**Relief.** *Piping* run from a pressure-regulating or pressure-limiting device to the outdoors, designed to provide for the safe venting of gas in the event of excessive pressure in the *gas piping system*.

**VENTED GAS APPLIANCE CATEGORIES.** *Appliances* that are categorized for the purpose of vent selection are classified into the following four categories:

**Category I.** An *appliance* that operates with a nonpositive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive *condensate* production in the vent.

**Category II.** An *appliance* that operates with a nonpositive *vent* static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that is capable of causing excessive *condensate* production in the vent.

**Category III.** An *appliance* that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive *condensate* production in the vent.

**Category IV.** An *appliance* that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that is capable of causing excessive *condensate* production in the vent.

**VENTED ROOM HEATER.** A vented self-contained, free-standing, nonrecessed *appliance* for furnishing warm air to the space in which it is installed, directly from the heater without duct connections.

**VENTED WALL FURNACE.** A self-contained *vented appliance* complete with grilles or equivalent, designed for incorporation in or permanent attachment to the structure of a building, mobile home or travel trailer, and furnishing heated air circulated by gravity or by a fan directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing. This definition shall exclude *floor furnaces, unit heaters* and *central furnaces* as herein defined.

**VENTING SYSTEM.** A continuous open passageway from the *flue collar* or *draft hood* of an *appliance* to the outside atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a *chimney* and *vent connector,* if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

**WALL HEATER, UNVENTED TYPE.** A room heater of the type designed for insertion in or attachment to a wall or partition. Such heater does not incorporate concealed venting arrangements in its construction and discharges all products of *combustion* through the front into the room being heated.

**WATER HEATER.** Any heating *appliance* or *equipment* that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

## SECTION G2404 (301) GENERAL

**G2404.1 (301.1) Scope.** This section shall govern the approval and installation of all *equipment* and *appliances* that comprise parts of the installations regulated by this *code* in accordance with Section G2401.

**G2404.2 (301.1.1) Other fuels.** The requirements for *combustion* and *dilution air* for gas-fired *appliances* shall be governed by Section G2407. The requirements for *combustion* and *dilution air* for *appliances* operating with fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by Chapter 17.

**G2404.3 (301.3) Listed and labeled.** *Appliances* regulated by this *code* shall be listed and labeled for the application in which they are used unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with Section R104.11. The approval of unlisted *appliances* in accordance with Section R104.11 shall be based upon *approved* engineering evaluation.

**G2404.4 (301.8) Vibration isolation.** Where means for isolation of vibration of an *appliance* is installed, an *approved* means for support and restraint of that *appliance* shall be provided.

**G2404.5 (301.9) Repair.** Defective material or parts shall be replaced or repaired in such a manner so as to preserve the original approval or listing.

**G2404.6 (301.10) Wind resistance.** *Appliances* and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with this *code*.

**G2404.7 (301.11) Flood hazard.** For structures located in *flood hazard areas*, the *appliance*, *equipment* and system installations regulated by this *code* shall be located at or above the *design flood elevation* and shall comply with the flood-resistant construction requirements of Section R322.

> **Exception:** The *appliance, equipment* and system installations regulated by this *code* are permitted to be located below the *design flood elevation* provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation* and shall comply with the flood-resistant construction requirements of Section R322.

**G2404.8 (301.12) Seismic resistance.** When earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with this *code*, the supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with this *code*.

**G2404.9 (301.14) Rodentproofing.** Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed to protect against the entry of rodents.

**G2404.10 (307.5) Auxiliary drain pan.** Category IV condensing *appliances* shall be provided with an auxiliary drain pan where damage to any building component will occur as a result of stoppage in the *condensate* drainage system. Such pan shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section M1411.

> **Exception:** An auxiliary drain pan shall not be required for *appliances* that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the *condensate* drainage system.

## SECTION G2405 (302) STRUCTURAL SAFETY

**G2405.1 (302.1) Structural safety.** The building shall not be weakened by the installation of any *gas piping*. In the process of installing or repairing any *gas piping*, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises which are required to be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of this *code*.

**G2405.2 (302.4) Alterations to trusses.** Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without the written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. *Alterations* resulting in the addition of loads to any member (e.g., HVAC *equipment, water heaters*) shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

**G2405.3 (302.3.1) Engineered wood products.** Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members and I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such *alterations* are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

## SECTION G2406 (303) APPLIANCE LOCATION

**G2406.1 (303.1) General.** *Appliances* shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this *code* and the conditions of the *equipment* and *appliance* listing.

**G2406.2 (303.3) Prohibited locations.** *Appliances* shall not be located in sleeping rooms, bathrooms, toilet rooms, storage closets or surgical rooms, or in a space that opens only into such rooms or spaces, except where the installation complies with one of the following:

1. The *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance* installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.
2. *Vented room heaters*, wall *furnaces*, vented decorative *appliances*, vented gas *fireplaces*, vented gas *fireplace* heaters and decorative *appliances* for installation in vented solid fuel-burning *fireplaces* are installed in rooms that meet the required volume criteria of Section G2407.5.
3. A single wall-mounted *unvented room heater* is installed in a bathroom and such *unvented room heater* is equipped as specified in Section G2445.6 and has an input rating not greater than 6,000 *Btu*/h (1.76 kW). The bathroom shall meet the required volume criteria of Section G2407.5.
4. A single wall-mounted *unvented room heater* is installed in a bedroom and such *unvented room heater* is equipped

as specified in Section G2445.6 and has an input rating not greater than 10,000 *Btu*/h (2.93 kW). The bedroom shall meet the required volume criteria of Section G2407.5.

5. The *appliance* is installed in a room or space that opens only into a bedroom or bathroom, and such room or space is used for no other purpose and is provided with a solid weather-stripped door equipped with an *approved* self-closing device. All *combustion air* shall be taken directly from the outdoors in accordance with Section G2407.6.

**G2406.3 (303.6) Outdoor locations.** *Appliances* installed in outdoor locations shall be either listed for outdoor installation or provided with protection from outdoor environmental factors that influence the operability, durability and safety of the *appliance*.

## SECTION G2407 (304) COMBUSTION, VENTILATION AND DILUTION AIR

**G2407.1 (304.1) General.** Air for *combustion*, ventilation and dilution of *flue gases* for *appliances* installed in buildings shall be provided by application of one of the methods prescribed in Sections G2407.5 through G2407.9. Where the requirements of Section G2407.5 are not met, outdoor air shall be introduced in accordance with one of the methods prescribed in Sections G2407.6 through G2407.9. *Direct-vent appliances*, gas *appliances* of other than *natural draft* design and vented gas *appliances* other than Category I shall be provided with *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air* in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

**Exception:** *Type 1 clothes dryers* that are provided with *makeup air* in accordance with Section G2439.4.

**G2407.2 (304.2) Appliance location.** *Appliances* shall be located so as not to interfere with proper circulation of *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air.*

**G2407.3 (304.3) Draft hood/regulator location.** Where used, a *draft hood* or a *barometric draft regulator* shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* served so as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or *regulator* and the *combustion air* supply.

**G2407.4 (304.4) Makeup air provisions.** Where exhaust fans, *clothes dryers* and kitchen ventilation systems interfere with the operation of *appliances, makeup air* shall be provided.

**G2407.5 (304.5) Indoor combustion air.** The required volume of indoor air shall be determined in accordance with Section G2407.5.1 or G2407.5.2, except that where the air infiltration rate is known to be less than 0.40 air changes per hour (ACH), Section G2407.5.2 shall be used. The total required volume shall be the sum of the required volume calculated for all *appliances* located within the space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the *appliances* are installed through openings not furnished with doors, and through *combustion air* openings sized and located in accordance with Section G2407.5.3, are considered to be part of the required volume.

**G2407.5.1 (304.5.1) Standard method.** The minimum required volume shall be 50 cubic feet per 1,000 *Btu*/h (4.8 $m^3$/kW).

**G2407.5.2 (304.5.2) Known air-infiltration-rate method.** Where the air infiltration rate of a structure is known, the minimum required volume shall be determined as follows:

For *appliances* other than fan assisted, calculate volume using Equation 24-1.

$$\text{Required Volume}_{\text{other}} \geq \frac{21\ \text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{1{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right)$$

**(Equation 24-1)**

For fan-assisted *appliances*, calculate volume using Equation 24-2.

$$\text{Required Volume}_{\text{fan}} \geq \frac{15\ \text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{1{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right)$$

**(Equation 24-2)**

where:

$I_{other}$ = All *appliances* other than fan assisted (input in *Btu*/h).

$I_{fan}$ = Fan-assisted *appliance* (input in *Btu*/h).

$ACH$ = Air change per hour (percent of volume of space exchanged per hour, expressed as a decimal).

For purposes of this calculation, an infiltration rate greater than 0.60 ACH shall not be used in Equations 24-1 and 24-2.

**G2407.5.3 (304.5.3) Indoor opening size and location.** Openings used to connect indoor spaces shall be sized and located in accordance with Sections G2407.5.3.1 and G2407.5.3.2 (see Figure G2407.5.3).

**G2407.5.3.1 (304.5.3.1) Combining spaces on the same story.** Each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 1,000 *Btu*/h (2,200 $mm^2$/kW) of the total input rating of all *appliances* in the space, but not less than 100 square inches (0.06 $m^2$). One opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top and one opening shall commence within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

**G2407.5.3.2 (304.5.3.2) Combining spaces in different stories.** The volumes of spaces in different stories shall be considered as communicating spaces where such spaces are connected by one or more openings in doors or floors having a total minimum free area of 2 square inches per 1,000 *Btu*/h (4402 $mm^2$/kW) of total input rating of all *appliances*.

**G2407.6 (304.6) Outdoor combustion air.** Outdoor *combustion* air shall be provided through opening(s) to the outdoors in accordance with Section G2407.6.1 or G2407.6.2. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

**G2407.6.1 (304.6.1) Two-permanent-openings method.** Two permanent openings, one commencing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top and one commencing within 12 inches

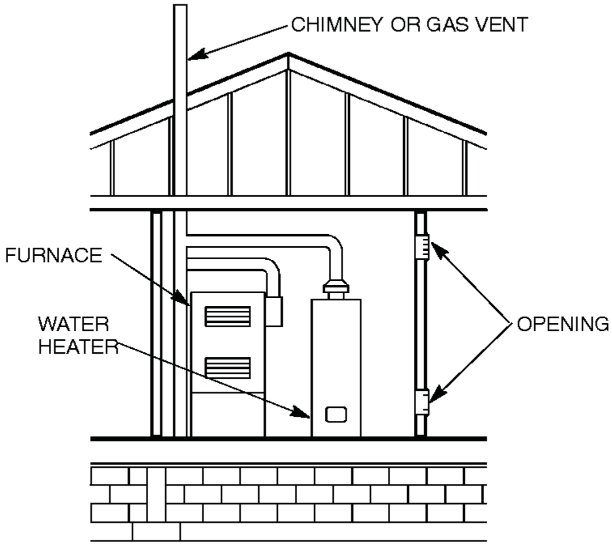



**FIGURE G2407.5.3 (304.5.3)**
**ALL AIR FROM INSIDE THE BUILDING**
**(see Section G2407.5.3)**

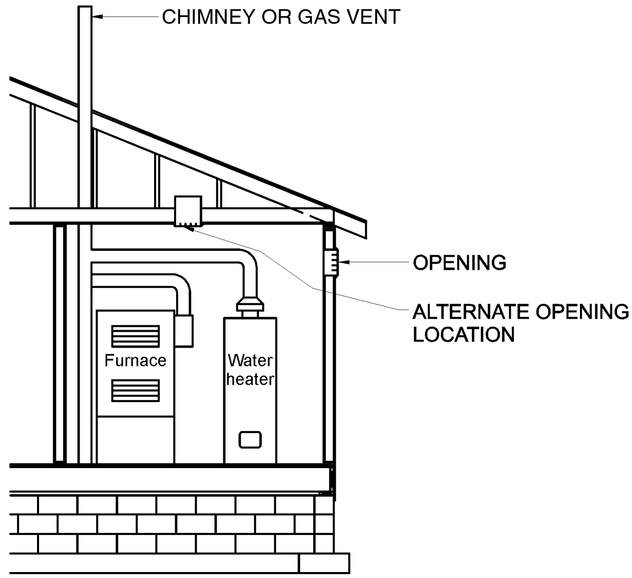



**FIGURE G2407.6.2 (304.6.2)**
**SINGLE COMBUSTION AIR OPENING,**
**ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS**
**(see Section G2407.6.2)**

(305 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure, shall be provided. The openings shall communicate directly, or by ducts, with the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors.

Where directly communicating with the outdoors, or where communicating with the outdoors through vertical ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 4,000 *Btu*/h (550 mm$^2$/kW) of total input rating of all *appliances* in the enclosure [see Figures G2407.6.1(1) and G2407.6.1(2)].

Where communicating with the outdoors through horizontal ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of not less than 1 square inch per 2,000 *Btu*/h (1,100 mm$^2$/kW) of total input rating of all *appliances* in the enclosure [see Figure G2407.6.1(3)].

**G2407.6.2 (304.6.2) One-permanent-opening method.** One permanent opening, commencing within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of the enclosure, shall be provided. The *appliance* shall have *clearances* of at least 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and back and 6 inches (152 mm) from the front of the *appliance*. The opening shall directly communicate with the outdoors or through a vertical or horizontal duct to the outdoors, or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors (see Figure G2407.6.2) and shall have a minimum free area of 1 square inch per 3,000 *Btu*/h (734 mm$^2$/kW) of the total input rating of all *appliances* located in the enclosure and not less than the sum of the areas of all *vent connectors* in the space.

**G2407.7 (304.7) Combination indoor and outdoor combustion air.** The use of a combination of indoor and outdoor *combustion air* shall be in accordance with Sections G2407.7.1 through G2407.7.3.

**G2407.7.1 (304.7.1) Indoor openings.** Where used, openings connecting the interior spaces shall comply with Section G2407.5.3.

**G2407.7.2 (304.7.2) Outdoor opening location.** Outdoor opening(s) shall be located in accordance with Section G2407.6.

**G2407.7.3 (304.7.3) Outdoor opening(s) size.** The outdoor opening(s) size shall be calculated in accordance with the following:

1. The ratio of interior spaces shall be the available volume of all communicating spaces divided by the required volume.
2. The outdoor size reduction factor shall be one minus the ratio of interior spaces.
3. The minimum size of outdoor opening(s) shall be the full size of outdoor opening(s) calculated in accordance with Section G2407.6, multiplied by the reduction factor. The minimum dimension of air openings shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

**G2407.8 (304.8) Engineered installations.** Engineered *combustion air* installations shall provide an adequate supply of *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air* and shall be *approved*.

**G2407.9 (304.9) Mechanical combustion air supply.** Where all *combustion air* is provided by a mechanical air supply system, the *combustion air* shall be supplied from the outdoors at a rate not less than 0.35 cubic feet per minute per 1,000 *Btu*/h (0.034 m$^3$/min per kW) of total input rating of all *appliances* located within the space.

**G2407.9.1 (304.9.1) Makeup air.** Where exhaust fans are installed, *makeup air* shall be provided to replace the exhausted air.

**G2407.9.2 (304.9.2) Appliance interlock.** Each of the *appliances* served shall be interlocked with the mechanical air supply system to prevent *main burner* operation when the mechanical air supply system is not in operation.

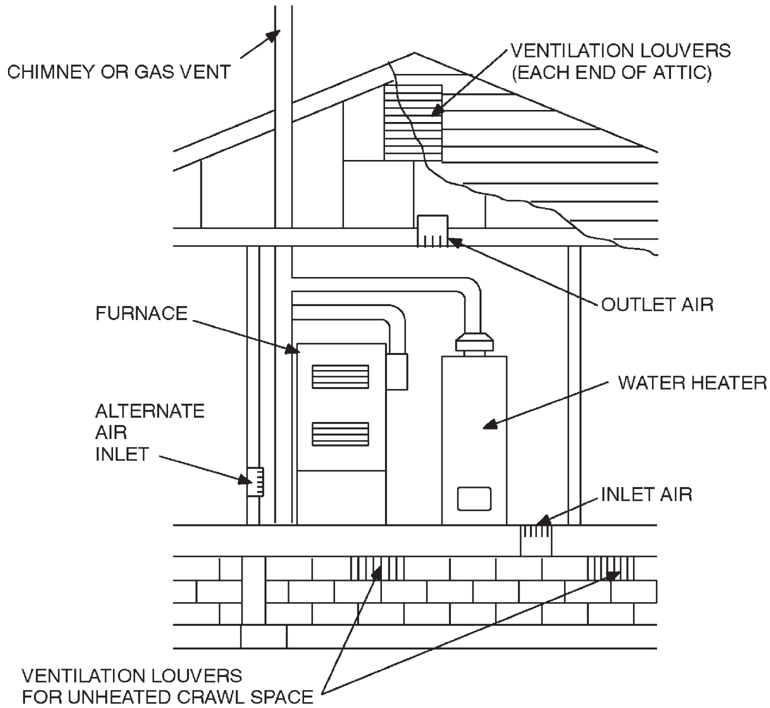
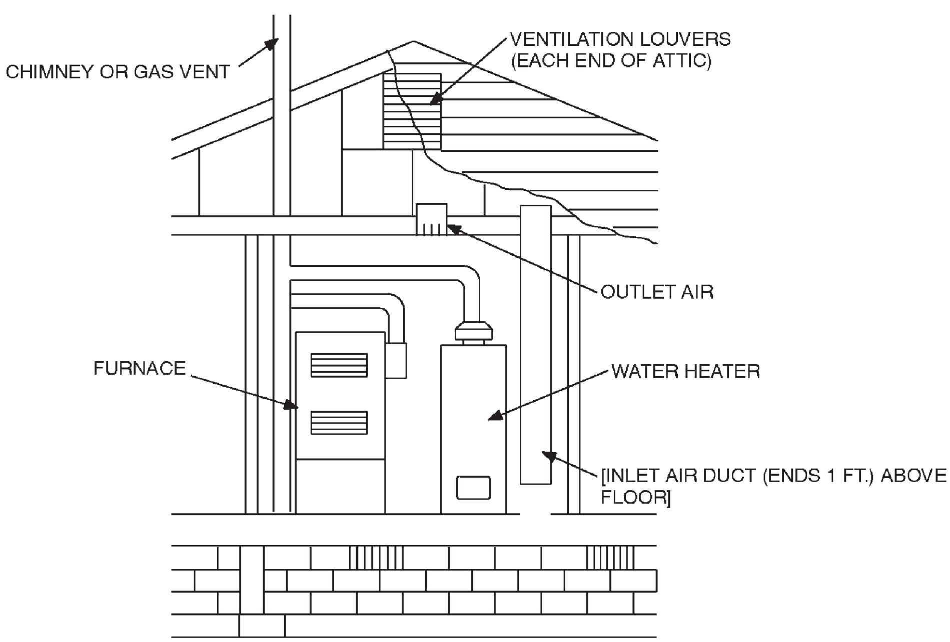



**FIGURE G2407.6.1(1) [304.6.1(1)]**
**ALL AIR FROM OUTDOOR-INLET AIR FROM VENTILATED CRAWL SPACE AND OUTLET AIR TO VENTILATED ATTIC (see Section G2407.6.1)**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE G2407.6.1(2) [304.6.1(2)]**
**ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS THROUGH VENTILATED ATTIC (see Section G2407.6.1)**

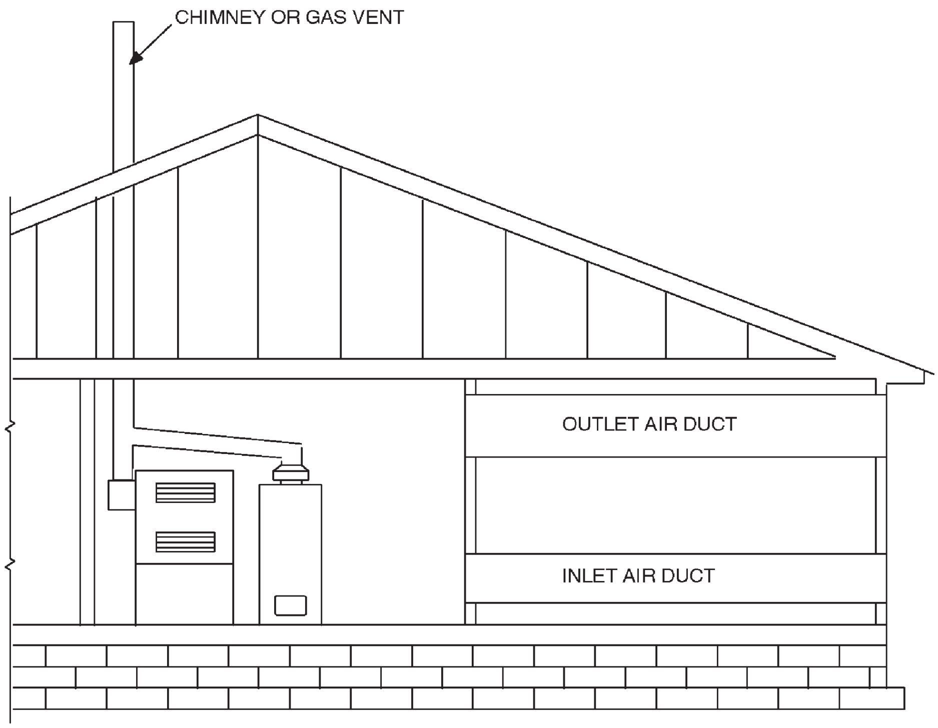



**FIGURE G2407.6.1(3) [304.6.1(3)]**
**ALL AIR FROM OUTDOORS**
**(see Section G2407.6.1)**

**G2407.9.3 (304.9.3) Combined combustion air and ventilation air system.** Where *combustion air* is provided by the building's mechanical ventilation system, the system shall provide the specified *combustion air* rate in addition to the required ventilation air.

**G2407.10 (304.10) Louvers and grilles.** The required size of openings for *combustion*, ventilation and *dilution air* shall be based on the net free area of each opening. Where the free area through a design of louver, grille or screen is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. Where the design and free area of louvers and grilles are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75-percent free area. Screens shall have a mesh size not smaller than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). Nonmotorized louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position. Motorized louvers shall be interlocked with the *appliance* so that they are proven to be in the full open position prior to *main burner* ignition and during *main burner* operation. Means shall be provided to prevent the *main burner* from igniting if the louvers fail to open during *burner* start-up and to shut down the *main burner* if the louvers close during operation.

**G2407.11 (304.11) Combustion air ducts.** *Combustion air* ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. Ducts shall be constructed of galvanized steel complying with Chapter 16 or of a material having equivalent corrosion resistance, strength and rigidity.

   **Exception:** Within dwellings units, unobstructed stud and joist spaces shall not be prohibited from conveying *combustion air*, provided that not more than one required fireblock is removed.

2. Ducts shall terminate in an unobstructed space allowing free movement of *combustion air* to the *appliances*.
3. Ducts shall serve a single enclosure.
4. Ducts shall not serve both upper and lower *combustion air* openings where both such openings are used. The separation between ducts serving upper and lower *combustion air* openings shall be maintained to the source of *combustion air*.
5. Ducts shall not be screened where terminating in an attic space.
6. Horizontal upper *combustion air* ducts shall not slope downward toward the source of *combustion air*.
7. The remaining space surrounding a *chimney* liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic *piping* installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built *chimney* shall not be used to supply *combustion air*.

   **Exception:** Direct-vent gas-fired *appliances* designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning *fireplace* where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

8. *Combustion air* intake openings located on the exterior of a building shall have the lowest side of such openings located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) vertically from the adjoining finished ground level.

**G2407.12 (304.12) Protection from fumes and gases.** Where corrosive or flammable process fumes or gases, other than products of *combustion*, are present, means for the disposal of such fumes or gases shall be provided. Such fumes or gases include carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, chlorine and halogenated hydrocarbons.

In barbershops, beauty shops and other facilities where chemicals that generate corrosive or flammable products, such as aerosol sprays, are routinely used, nondirect vent-type *appliances* shall be located in a mechanical room separated or partitioned off from other areas with provisions for *combustion air* and *dilution air* from the outdoors. *Direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION G2408 (305) INSTALLATION

**G2408.1 (305.1) General.** *Equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of listing, the manufacturer's instructions and this *code*. Manufacturers' installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection. Where a *code* provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance* or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

Unlisted *appliances approved* in accordance with Section G2404.3 shall be limited to uses recommended by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the provisions of this *code* and the requirements determined by the *code official*.

**G2408.2 (305.3) Elevation of ignition source.** *Equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor in *hazardous locations* and public garages, private garages, repair garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the *living space* of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

**Exception:** Elevation of the *ignition source* is not required for *appliances* that are listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

**G2408.2.1 (305.3.1) Installation in residential garages.** In residential garages where *appliances* are installed in a separate, enclosed space having access only from outside of the garage, such *appliances* shall be permitted to be installed at floor level, provided that the required *combustion air* is taken from the exterior of the garage.

**G2408.3 (305.5) Private garages.** *Appliances* located in private garages shall be installed with a minimum *clearance* of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

**Exception:** The requirements of this section shall not apply where the *appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section G2408.2.

**G2408.4 (305.7) Clearances from grade.** *Equipment* and *appliances* installed at grade level shall be supported on a level concrete slab or other *approved* material extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above adjoining grade or shall be suspended not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjoining grade. Such supports shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2408.5 (305.8) Clearances to combustible construction.** Heat-producing *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed to maintain the required clearances to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such *clearances* shall be reduced only in accordance with Section G2409. *Clearances* to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing. Devices, such as door stops or limits and closers, shall not be used to provide the required *clearances*.

**G2408.6 (305.12) Avoid strain on gas piping.** *Appliances* shall be supported and connected to the *piping* so as not to exert undue strain on the connections.

## SECTION G2409 (308) CLEARANCE REDUCTION

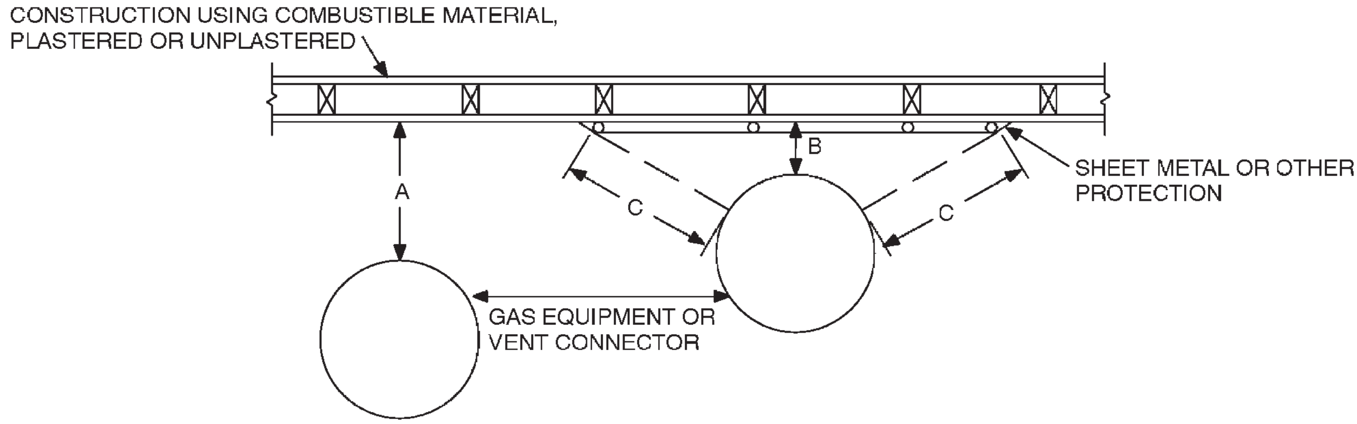
**G2409.1 (308.1) Scope.** This section shall govern the reduction in required *clearances* to combustible materials and combustible assemblies for *chimneys*, vents, *appliances*, devices and *equipment*.

**G2409.2 (308.2) Reduction table.** The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on one of the methods specified in Table G2409.2 or shall utilize an assembly listed for such application. Where required *clearances* are not listed in Table G2409.2, the reduced *clearances* shall be determined by linear interpolation between the distances listed in the table. Reduced *clearances* shall not be derived by extrapolation below the range of the table. The reduction of the required *clearances* to combustibles for listed and labeled *appliances* and *equipment* shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section except that such *clearances* shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the *appliance* or *equipment* listing [see Figures G2409.2(1), G2409.2(2) and G2409.2(3)].

**G2409.3 (308.3) Clearances for indoor air-conditioning appliances.** *Clearance* requirements for indoor air-conditioning *appliances* shall comply with Sections G2409.3.1 through G2409.3.5.

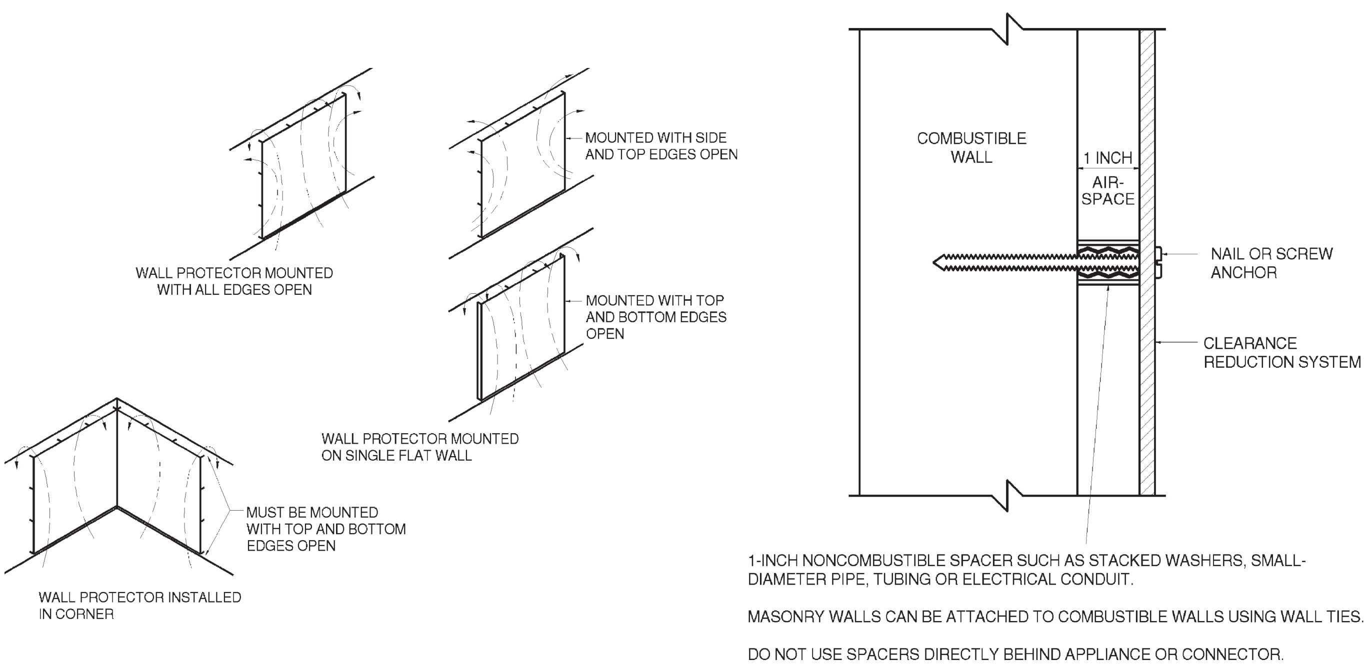
**G2409.3.1 (308.3.1) Appliances installed in rooms that are large in comparison with the size of the appliances.** Air-conditioning *appliances* installed in rooms that are large in comparison with the size of the *appliance* shall be installed with *clearances* in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**G2409.3.2 (308.3.2) Appliances installed in rooms that are not large in comparison with the size of the appliances.** Air-conditioning *appliances* installed in rooms that are not large in comparison with the size of the *appliance*, such as alcoves and closets, shall be listed for such installations and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Listed *clearances* shall not be reduced by the protection methods described in Table G2409.2, regardless of whether the enclosure is of combustible or noncombustible material.



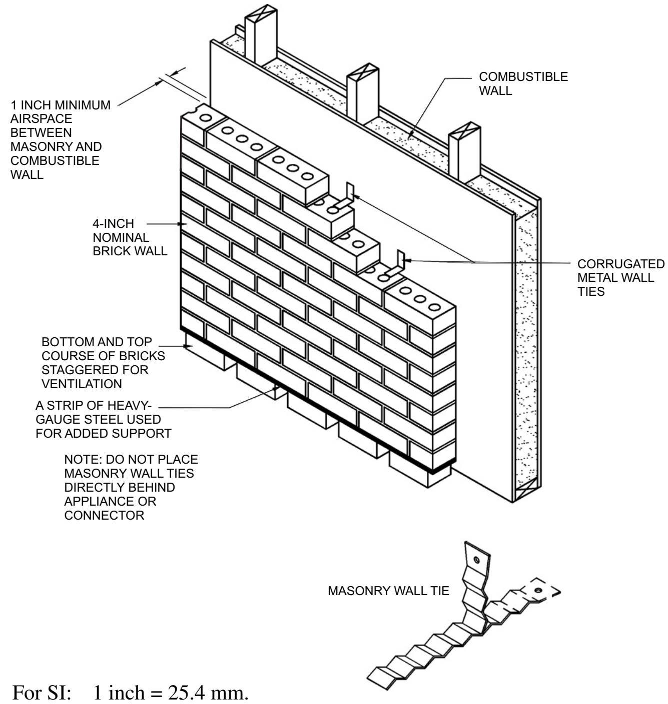

NOTES:
"A" equals the clearance with no protection.
"B" equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table G2409.2. The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make "C" equal to "A."

**FIGURE G2409.2(1) [308.2(1)]**
**EXTENT OF PROTECTION NECESSARY TO REDUCE CLEARANCES FROM GAS EQUIPMENT OR VENT CONNECTORS**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE G2409.2(2) [308.2(2)]**
**WALL PROTECTOR CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE G2409.2(3) [308.2(3)]**
**MASONRY CLEARANCE REDUCTION SYSTEM**

**G2409.3.3 (308.3.3) Clearance reduction.** Air-conditioning *appliances* installed in rooms that are large in comparison with the size of the *appliance* shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided that the combustible material or *appliance* is protected as described in Table G2409.2.

**G2409.3.4 (308.3.4) Plenum clearances.** Where the *furnace plenum* is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or noncombustible material attached to combustible material, the *clearance* shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the *clearance* specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

**G2409.3.5 (308.3.5) Clearance from supply ducts.** Air-conditioning *appliances* shall have the *clearance* from supply ducts within 3 feet (914 mm) of the *furnace plenum* be not less than that specified from the *furnace plenum*. *Clearance* is not necessary beyond this distance.

**G2409.4 (308.4) Central heating boilers and furnaces.** *Clearance* requirements for central-heating boilers and *furnaces* shall comply with Sections G2409.4.1 through G2409.4.6. The *clearance* to these *appliances* shall not interfere with *combustion air*; *draft hood clearance* and *relief*; and accessibility for servicing.

**G2409.4.1 (308.4.1) Appliances installed in rooms that are large in comparison with the size of the appliances.** Central-heating *furnaces* and *low-pressure boilers* installed in rooms large in comparison with the size of the *appliance* shall be installed with *clearances* in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**G2409.4.2 (308.4.2) Appliances installed in rooms that are not large in comparison with the size of the appliances.** Central-heating *furnaces* and *low-pressure boilers* installed in rooms that are not large in comparison with the size of the appliance, such as alcoves and closets, shall be listed for such installations. Listed *clearances* shall not be reduced by the protection methods described in Table G2409.2 and illustrated in Figures G2409.2(1) through G2409.2(3), regardless of whether the enclosure is of combustible or noncombustible material.

**G2409.4.3 (308.4.3) Clearance reduction.** Central heating *furnaces* and *low-pressure boilers* installed in rooms that are large in comparison with the size of the *appliance* shall be permitted to be installed with reduced *clearances* to combustible material provided the combustible material or equipment is protected as described in Table G2409.2.

**G2409.4.4 (308.4.5) Plenum clearances.** Where the *furnace plenum* is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or noncombustible material attached to combustible material, the *clearance* shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the *clearance* specified is 2 inches (51 mm) or less.

**G2409.4.5 (308.4.6) Clearance from supply ducts.** Central-heating *furnaces* shall have the *clearance* from supply ducts within 3 feet (914 mm) of the *furnace plenum* be not less than that specified from the *furnace plenum*. No *clearance* is necessary beyond this distance.

**G2409.4.6 (308.4.4) Clearance for servicing appliances.** Front *clearance* shall be sufficient for servicing the *burner* and the *furnace* or boiler.

## SECTION G2410 (309) ELECTRICAL

**G2410.1 (309.1) Grounding.** *Gas piping* shall not be used as a *grounding electrode*.

**G2410.2 (309.2) Connections.** Electrical connections between *appliances* and the building wiring, including the grounding of the *appliances,* shall conform to Chapters 34 through 43.

## SECTION G2411 (310) ELECTRICAL BONDING

**G2411.1 (310.1) Pipe and *tubing* other than CSST.** Each above-ground portion of a *gas piping system* other than corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST), that is likely to become energized shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground-fault current path. *Gas piping*, other than CSST, shall be considered to be bonded where it is connected to *appliances* that are connected to the equipment grounding conductor of the circuit supplying that *appliance*.

**G2411.1.1 (310.1.1) CSST.** Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) *gas piping systems* shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system at the point where the gas service enters the building. The *bonding jumper* shall be not smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent.

**TABLE G2409.2 (308.2)[a through k]**
**REDUCTION OF CLEARANCES WITH SPECIFIED FORMS OF PROTECTION**

| TYPE OF PROTECTION APPLIED TO AND COVERING ALL SURFACES OF COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL WITHIN THE DISTANCE SPECIFIED AS THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION [see Figures G2409.2(1), G2409.2(2), and G2409.2(3)] | WHERE THE REQUIRED CLEARANCE WITH NO PROTECTION FROM APPLIANCE, VENT CONNECTOR, OR SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPE IS: (inches) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 36 | | 18 | | 12 | | 9 | | 6 | |
| | Allowable clearances with specified protection (inches) | | | | | | | | | |
| | Use Column 1 for clearances above appliance or horizontal connector. Use Column 2 for clearances from appliance, vertical connector and single-wall metal pipe. | | | | | | | | | |
| | Above Col. 1 | Sides and rear Col. 2 | Above Col. 1 | Sides and rear Col. 2 | Above Col. 1 | Sides and rear Col. 2 | Above Col. 1 | Sides and rear Col. 2 | Above Col. 1 | Sides and rear Col. 2 |
| 1. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall without ventilated airspace | — | 24 | — | 12 | — | 9 | — | 6 | — | 5 |
| 2. $^1/_2$-inch insulation board over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts | 24 | 18 | 12 | 9 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 |
| 3. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal over 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire on rear face with ventilated airspace | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| 4. $3^1/_2$-inch-thick masonry wall with ventilated airspace | — | 12 | — | 6 | — | 6 | — | 6 | — | 6 |
| 5. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 2 |
| 6. $^1/_2$-inch-thick insulation board with ventilated airspace | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| 7. 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace over 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| 8. 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets 0.024-inch (nominal 24 gage) sheet metal with ventilated airspace | 18 | 12 | 9 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 3 | 3 | 3 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F - 32)/1.8], 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/$m^3$, 1 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per °F = 0.144 W/$m^2$ • K.

a. Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.
b. All clearances shall be measured from the outer surface of the combustible material to the nearest point on the surface of the appliance, disregarding any intervening protection applied to the combustible material.
c. Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. No spacer or tie shall be used directly opposite an appliance or connector.
d. For all clearance reduction systems using a ventilated airspace, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described [see Figures G2409.2(2) and G2409.2(3)].
e. There shall be at least 1 inch between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using ventilated airspace.
f. Where a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, it shall have a minimum 1-inch air gap. To provide air circulation, the bottom and top edges, or only the side and top edges, or all edges shall be left open.
g. Mineral wool batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1500°F.
h. Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu per inch per square foot per hour per °F or less.
i. There shall be at least 1 inch between the appliance and the protector. In no case shall the clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface be reduced below that allowed in this table.
j. All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.
k. Listed single-wall connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION G2412 (401) GENERAL

**G2412.1 (401.1) Scope.** This section shall govern the design, installation, modification and maintenance of *piping systems*. The applicability of this *code* to *piping systems* extends from the *point of delivery* to the connections with the *appliances* and includes the design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance of such *piping systems*.

**G2412.1.1 (401.1.1) Utility piping systems located within buildings.** Utility service *piping* located within buildings shall be installed in accordance with the structural safety and fire protection provisions of this *code*.

**G2412.2 (401.2) Liquefied petroleum gas storage.** The storage system for *liquefied petroleum gas* shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 58.

**G2412.3 (401.3) Modifications to existing systems.** In modifying or adding to existing *piping systems*, sizes shall be maintained in accordance with this chapter.

**G2412.4 (401.4) Additional appliances.** Where an additional *appliance* is to be served, the existing *piping* shall be checked to determine if it has adequate capacity for all *appliances* served. If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as required or separate *piping* of adequate capacity shall be provided.

**G2412.5 (401.5) Identification.** For other than steel *pipe*, exposed *piping* shall be identified by a yellow label marked "Gas" in black letters. The marking shall be spaced at intervals not exceeding 5 feet (1524 mm). The marking shall not be required on *pipe* located in the same room as the *appliance* served.

**G2412.6 (401.6) Interconnections.** Where two or more *meters* are installed on the same premises, but supply separate consumers, the *piping systems* shall not be interconnected on the outlet side of the *meters*.

**G2412.7 (401.7) Piping meter identification.** *Piping* from multiple *meter* installations shall be marked with an *approved* permanent identification by the installer so that the *piping system* supplied by each *meter* is readily identifiable.

**G2412.8 (401.8) Minimum sizes.** All *pipe* utilized for the installation, extension and *alteration* of any *piping system* shall be sized to supply the full number of outlets for the intended purpose and shall be sized in accordance with Section G2413.

## SECTION G2413 (402) PIPE SIZING

**G2413.1 (402.1) General considerations.** *Piping systems* shall be of such size and so installed as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum *demand* and supply gas to each *appliance* inlet at not less than the minimum supply pressure required by the *appliance*.

**G2413.2 (402.2) Maximum gas demand.** The volume of gas to be provided, in cubic feet per hour, shall be determined directly from the manufacturer's input ratings of the *appliances* served. Where an input rating is not indicated, the gas supplier, *appliance* manufacturer or a qualified agency shall be contacted, or the rating from Table G2413.2 shall be used for estimating the volume of gas to be supplied.

The total connected hourly load shall be used as the basis for *pipe* sizing, assuming that all *appliances* could be operating at full capacity simultaneously. Where a diversity of load can be established, *pipe* sizing shall be permitted to be based on such loads.

**TABLE G2413.2 (402.2)**
**APPROXIMATE GAS INPUT FOR TYPICAL APPLIANCES**

| APPLIANCE | INPUT BTU/H (Approx.) |
|---|---|
| **Space Heating Units** | |
| Hydronic boiler | |
| Single family | 100,000 |
| Multifamily, per unit | 60,000 |
| Warm-air furnace | |
| Single family | 100,000 |
| Multifamily, per unit | 60,000 |
| **Space and Water Heating Units** | |
| Hydronic boiler | |
| Single family | 120,000 |
| Multifamily, per unit | 75,000 |
| **Water Heating Appliances** | |
| Water heater, automatic instantaneous | |
| Capacity at 2 gal./minute | 142,800 |
| Capacity at 4 gal./minute | 285,000 |
| Capacity at 6 gal./minute | 428,400 |
| Water heater, automatic storage, 30- to 40-gal. tank | 35,000 |
| Water heater, automatic storage, 50-gal. tank | 50,000 |
| Water heater, domestic, circulating or side-arm | 35,000 |
| **Cooking Appliances** | |
| Built-in oven or broiler unit, domestic | 25,000 |
| Built-in top unit, domestic | 40,000 |
| Range, free-standing, domestic | 65,000 |
| **Other Appliances** | |
| Barbecue | 40,000 |
| Clothes dryer, Type 1 (domestic) | 35,000 |
| Gas fireplace, direct-vent | 40,000 |
| Gas light | 2,500 |
| Gas log | 80,000 |
| Refrigerator | 3,000 |

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

**G2413.3 (402.3) Sizing.** *Gas piping* shall be sized in accordance with one of the following:

1. *Pipe* sizing tables or sizing equations in accordance with Section G2413.4.

2. The sizing tables included in a listed *piping* system's manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Other *approved* engineering methods.

**G2413.4 (402.4) Sizing tables and equations.** Where Tables G2413.4(1) through G2413.4(21) are used to size *piping* or *tubing*, the *pipe* length shall be determined in accordance with Section G2413.4.1, G2413.4.2 or G2413.4.3.

Where Equations 24-3 and 24-4 are used to size *piping* or *tubing*, the *pipe* or *tubing* shall have smooth inside walls and the *pipe* length shall be determined in accordance with Section G2413.4.1, G2413.4.2 or G2413.4.3.

1. Low-pressure gas equation [Less than 1.5 pounds per square inch (psi) (10.3 kPa)]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{19.17\left(\frac{\Delta H}{C_r \times L}\right)^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-3)}$$

2. High-pressure gas equation [1.5 psi (10.3 kPa) and above]:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{18.93\left[\frac{\left(P_1^{\,2} - P_2^{\,2}\right) \times Y}{C_r \times L}\right]^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 24-4)}$$

where:

$D$ = Inside diameter of *pipe*, inches (mm).

$Q$ = Input rate *appliance(s)*, cubic feet per hour at 60°F (16°C) and 30-inch mercury column.

$P_1$ = Upstream pressure, psia ($P_1$ + 14.7).

$P_2$ = Downstream pressure, psia ($P_2$ + 14.7).

$L$ = Equivalent length of *pipe*, feet.

$\Delta H$ = *Pressure drop*, inch water column (27.7 inch water column = 1 psi).

**TABLE G2413.4 (402.4)**
**$C_r$ AND $Y$ VALUES FOR NATURAL GAS AND UNDILUTED PROPANE AT STANDARD CONDITIONS**

| GAS | EQUATION FACTORS | |
|---|---|---|
| | $C_r$ | $Y$ |
| Natural gas | 0.6094 | 0.9992 |
| Undiluted propane | 1.2462 | 0.9910 |

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m$^3$, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 inch water column = 0.249 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.293 W.

**G2413.4.1 (402.4.1) Longest length method.** The *pipe* size of each section of *gas piping* shall be determined using the longest length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* and the load of the section.

**G2413.4.2 (402.4.2) Branch length method.** *Pipe* shall be sized as follows:

1. *Pipe* size of each section of the longest *pipe* run from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* shall be determined using the longest run of *piping* and the load of the section.
2. The *pipe* size of each section of branch *piping* not previously sized shall be determined using the length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote *outlet* in each branch and the load of the section.

**G2413.4.3 (402.4.3) Hybrid pressure.** The *pipe* size for each section of higher pressure *gas piping* shall be determined using the longest length of *piping* from the *point of delivery* to the most remote line *pressure regulator*. The *pipe* size from the line *pressure regulator* to each *outlet* shall be determined using the length of *piping* from the *regulator* to the most remote outlet served by the *regulator*.

**G2413.5 (402.5) Allowable pressure drop.** The design pressure loss in any *piping system* under maximum probable flow conditions, from the *point of delivery* to the inlet connection of the *appliance*, shall be such that the supply pressure at the *appliance* is greater than or equal to the minimum pressure required by the *appliance*.

**G2413.6 (402.6) Maximum design operating pressure.** The maximum design operating pressure for *piping systems* located inside buildings shall not exceed 5 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (34 kPa gauge) except where one or more of the following conditions are met:

1. The *piping system* is welded.
2. The *piping* is located in a ventilated chase or otherwise enclosed for protection against accidental gas accumulation.
3. The *piping* is a temporary installation for buildings under construction.

**G2413.6.1 (402.6.1) Liquefied petroleum gas systems.** LP-gas systems designed to operate below -5°F (-21°C) or with butane or a propane-butane mix shall be designed to either accommodate liquid LP-gas or prevent LP-gas vapor from condensing into a liquid.

| | |
|---|---|
| Gas | Natural |
| Inlet Pressure | Less than 2 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| Specific Gravity | 0.60 |

## TABLE G2413.4(1) [402.4(2)]
## SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

| | PIPE SIZE (inch) | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nominal | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 | $2^1/_2$ | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 |
| Actual ID | 0.622 | 0.824 | 1.049 | 1.380 | 1.610 | 2.067 | 2.469 | 3.068 | 4.026 | 5.047 | 6.065 | 7.981 | 10.020 | 11.938 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 172 | 360 | 678 | 1,390 | 2,090 | 4,020 | 6,400 | 11,300 | 23,100 | 41,800 | 67,600 | 139,000 | 252,000 | 399,000 |
| 20 | 118 | 247 | 466 | 957 | 1,430 | 2,760 | 4,400 | 7,780 | 15,900 | 28,700 | 46,500 | 95,500 | 173,000 | 275,000 |
| 30 | 95 | 199 | 374 | 768 | 1,150 | 2,220 | 3,530 | 6,250 | 12,700 | 23,000 | 37,300 | 76,700 | 139,000 | 220,000 |
| 40 | 81 | 170 | 320 | 657 | 985 | 1,900 | 3,020 | 5,350 | 10,900 | 19,700 | 31,900 | 65,600 | 119,000 | 189,000 |
| 50 | 72 | 151 | 284 | 583 | 873 | 1,680 | 2,680 | 4,740 | 9,660 | 17,500 | 28,300 | 58,200 | 106,000 | 167,000 |
| 60 | 65 | 137 | 257 | 528 | 791 | 1,520 | 2,430 | 4,290 | 8,760 | 15,800 | 25,600 | 52,700 | 95,700 | 152,000 |
| 70 | 60 | 126 | 237 | 486 | 728 | 1,400 | 2,230 | 3,950 | 8,050 | 14,600 | 23,600 | 48,500 | 88,100 | 139,000 |
| 80 | 56 | 117 | 220 | 452 | 677 | 1,300 | 2,080 | 3,670 | 7,490 | 13,600 | 22,000 | 45,100 | 81,900 | 130,000 |
| 90 | 52 | 110 | 207 | 424 | 635 | 1,220 | 1,950 | 3,450 | 7,030 | 12,700 | 20,600 | 42,300 | 76,900 | 122,000 |
| 100 | 50 | 104 | 195 | 400 | 600 | 1,160 | 1,840 | 3,260 | 6,640 | 12,000 | 19,500 | 40,000 | 72,600 | 115,000 |
| 125 | 44 | 92 | 173 | 355 | 532 | 1,020 | 1,630 | 2,890 | 5,890 | 10,600 | 17,200 | 35,400 | 64,300 | 102,000 |
| 150 | 40 | 83 | 157 | 322 | 482 | 928 | 1,480 | 2,610 | 5,330 | 9,650 | 15,600 | 32,100 | 58,300 | 92,300 |
| 175 | 37 | 77 | 144 | 296 | 443 | 854 | 1,360 | 2,410 | 4,910 | 8,880 | 14,400 | 29,500 | 53,600 | 84,900 |
| 200 | 34 | 71 | 134 | 275 | 412 | 794 | 1,270 | 2,240 | 4,560 | 8,260 | 13,400 | 27,500 | 49,900 | 79,000 |
| 250 | 30 | 63 | 119 | 244 | 366 | 704 | 1,120 | 1,980 | 4,050 | 7,320 | 11,900 | 24,300 | 44,200 | 70,000 |
| 300 | 27 | 57 | 108 | 221 | 331 | 638 | 1,020 | 1,800 | 3,670 | 6,630 | 10,700 | 22,100 | 40,100 | 63,400 |
| 350 | 25 | 53 | 99 | 203 | 305 | 587 | 935 | 1,650 | 3,370 | 6,100 | 9,880 | 20,300 | 36,900 | 58,400 |
| 400 | 23 | 49 | 92 | 189 | 283 | 546 | 870 | 1,540 | 3,140 | 5,680 | 9,190 | 18,900 | 34,300 | 54,300 |
| 450 | 22 | 46 | 86 | 177 | 266 | 512 | 816 | 1,440 | 2,940 | 5,330 | 8,620 | 17,700 | 32,200 | 50,900 |
| 500 | 21 | 43 | 82 | 168 | 251 | 484 | 771 | 1,360 | 2,780 | 5,030 | 8,150 | 16,700 | 30,400 | 48,100 |
| 550 | 20 | 41 | 78 | 159 | 239 | 459 | 732 | 1,290 | 2,640 | 4,780 | 7,740 | 15,900 | 28,900 | 45,700 |
| 600 | 19 | 39 | 74 | 152 | 228 | 438 | 699 | 1,240 | 2,520 | 4,560 | 7,380 | 15,200 | 27,500 | 43,600 |
| 650 | 18 | 38 | 71 | 145 | 218 | 420 | 669 | 1,180 | 2,410 | 4,360 | 7,070 | 14,500 | 26,400 | 41,800 |
| 700 | 17 | 36 | 68 | 140 | 209 | 403 | 643 | 1,140 | 2,320 | 4,190 | 6,790 | 14,000 | 25,300 | 40,100 |
| 750 | 17 | 35 | 66 | 135 | 202 | 389 | 619 | 1,090 | 2,230 | 4,040 | 6,540 | 13,400 | 24,400 | 38,600 |
| 800 | 16 | 34 | 63 | 130 | 195 | 375 | 598 | 1,060 | 2,160 | 3,900 | 6,320 | 13,000 | 23,600 | 37,300 |
| 850 | 16 | 33 | 61 | 126 | 189 | 363 | 579 | 1,020 | 2,090 | 3,780 | 6,110 | 12,600 | 22,800 | 36,100 |
| 900 | 15 | 32 | 59 | 122 | 183 | 352 | 561 | 992 | 2,020 | 3,660 | 5,930 | 12,200 | 22,100 | 35,000 |
| 950 | 15 | 31 | 58 | 118 | 178 | 342 | 545 | 963 | 1,960 | 3,550 | 5,760 | 11,800 | 21,500 | 34,000 |
| 1,000 | 14 | 30 | 56 | 115 | 173 | 333 | 530 | 937 | 1,910 | 3,460 | 5,600 | 11,500 | 20,900 | 33,100 |
| 1,100 | 14 | 28 | 53 | 109 | 164 | 316 | 503 | 890 | 1,810 | 3,280 | 5,320 | 10,900 | 19,800 | 31,400 |
| 1,200 | 13 | 27 | 51 | 104 | 156 | 301 | 480 | 849 | 1,730 | 3,130 | 5,070 | 10,400 | 18,900 | 30,000 |
| 1,300 | 12 | 26 | 49 | 100 | 150 | 289 | 460 | 813 | 1,660 | 3,000 | 4,860 | 9,980 | 18,100 | 28,700 |
| 1,400 | 12 | 25 | 47 | 96 | 144 | 277 | 442 | 781 | 1,590 | 2,880 | 4,670 | 9,590 | 17,400 | 27,600 |
| 1,500 | 11 | 24 | 45 | 93 | 139 | 267 | 426 | 752 | 1,530 | 2,780 | 4,500 | 9,240 | 16,800 | 26,600 |
| 1,600 | 11 | 23 | 44 | 89 | 134 | 258 | 411 | 727 | 1,480 | 2,680 | 4,340 | 8,920 | 16,200 | 25,600 |
| 1,700 | 11 | 22 | 42 | 86 | 130 | 250 | 398 | 703 | 1,430 | 2,590 | 4,200 | 8,630 | 15,700 | 24,800 |
| 1,800 | 10 | 22 | 41 | 84 | 126 | 242 | 386 | 682 | 1,390 | 2,520 | 4,070 | 8,370 | 15,200 | 24,100 |
| 1,900 | 10 | 21 | 40 | 81 | 122 | 235 | 375 | 662 | 1,350 | 2,440 | 3,960 | 8,130 | 14,800 | 23,400 |
| 2,000 | NA | 20 | 39 | 79 | 119 | 229 | 364 | 644 | 1,310 | 2,380 | 3,850 | 7,910 | 14,400 | 22,700 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

## TABLE G2413.4(2) [402.4(3)]
## SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE

| | |
|---|---|
| **Gas** | Natural |
| **Inlet Pressure** | 2.0 psi |
| **Pressure Drop** | 1.0 psi |
| **Specific Gravity** | 0.60 |

| PIPE SIZE (inch) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Nominal** | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 | $2^1/_2$ | 3 | 4 |
| **Actual ID** | 0.622 | 0.824 | 1.049 | 1.380 | 1.610 | 2.067 | 2.469 | 3.068 | 4.026 |
| **Length (ft)** | **Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour** | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 1,510 | 3,040 | 5,560 | 11,400 | 17,100 | 32,900 | 52,500 | 92,800 | 189,000 |
| 20 | 1,070 | 2,150 | 3,930 | 8,070 | 12,100 | 23,300 | 37,100 | 65,600 | 134,000 |
| 30 | 869 | 1,760 | 3,210 | 6,590 | 9,880 | 19,000 | 30,300 | 53,600 | 109,000 |
| 40 | 753 | 1,520 | 2,780 | 5,710 | 8,550 | 16,500 | 26,300 | 46,400 | 94,700 |
| 50 | 673 | 1,360 | 2,490 | 5,110 | 7,650 | 14,700 | 23,500 | 41,500 | 84,700 |
| 60 | 615 | 1,240 | 2,270 | 4,660 | 6,980 | 13,500 | 21,400 | 37,900 | 77,300 |
| 70 | 569 | 1,150 | 2,100 | 4,320 | 6,470 | 12,500 | 19,900 | 35,100 | 71,600 |
| 80 | 532 | 1,080 | 1,970 | 4,040 | 6,050 | 11,700 | 18,600 | 32,800 | 67,000 |
| 90 | 502 | 1,010 | 1,850 | 3,810 | 5,700 | 11,000 | 17,500 | 30,900 | 63,100 |
| 100 | 462 | 934 | 1,710 | 3,510 | 5,260 | 10,100 | 16,100 | 28,500 | 58,200 |
| 125 | 414 | 836 | 1,530 | 3,140 | 4,700 | 9,060 | 14,400 | 25,500 | 52,100 |
| 150 | 372 | 751 | 1,370 | 2,820 | 4,220 | 8,130 | 13,000 | 22,900 | 46,700 |
| 175 | 344 | 695 | 1,270 | 2,601 | 3,910 | 7,530 | 12,000 | 21,200 | 43,300 |
| 200 | 318 | 642 | 1,170 | 2,410 | 3,610 | 6,960 | 11,100 | 19,600 | 40,000 |
| 250 | 279 | 583 | 1,040 | 2,140 | 3,210 | 6,180 | 9,850 | 17,400 | 35,500 |
| 300 | 253 | 528 | 945 | 1,940 | 2,910 | 5,600 | 8,920 | 15,800 | 32,200 |
| 350 | 232 | 486 | 869 | 1,790 | 2,670 | 5,150 | 8,210 | 14,500 | 29,600 |
| 400 | 216 | 452 | 809 | 1,660 | 2,490 | 4,790 | 7,640 | 13,500 | 27,500 |
| 450 | 203 | 424 | 759 | 1,560 | 2,330 | 4,500 | 7,170 | 12,700 | 25,800 |
| 500 | 192 | 401 | 717 | 1,470 | 2,210 | 4,250 | 6,770 | 12,000 | 24,400 |
| 550 | 182 | 381 | 681 | 1,400 | 2,090 | 4,030 | 6,430 | 11,400 | 23,200 |
| 600 | 174 | 363 | 650 | 1,330 | 2,000 | 3,850 | 6,130 | 10,800 | 22,100 |
| 650 | 166 | 348 | 622 | 1,280 | 1,910 | 3,680 | 5,870 | 10,400 | 21,200 |
| 700 | 160 | 334 | 598 | 1,230 | 1,840 | 3,540 | 5,640 | 9,970 | 20,300 |
| 750 | 154 | 322 | 576 | 1,180 | 1,770 | 3,410 | 5,440 | 9,610 | 19,600 |
| 800 | 149 | 311 | 556 | 1,140 | 1,710 | 3,290 | 5,250 | 9,280 | 18,900 |
| 850 | 144 | 301 | 538 | 1,100 | 1,650 | 3,190 | 5,080 | 8,980 | 18,300 |
| 900 | 139 | 292 | 522 | 1,070 | 1,600 | 3,090 | 4,930 | 8,710 | 17,800 |
| 950 | 135 | 283 | 507 | 1,040 | 1,560 | 3,000 | 4,780 | 8,460 | 17,200 |
| 1,000 | 132 | 275 | 493 | 1,010 | 1,520 | 2,920 | 4,650 | 8,220 | 16,800 |
| 1,100 | 125 | 262 | 468 | 960 | 1,440 | 2,770 | 4,420 | 7,810 | 15,900 |
| 1,200 | 119 | 250 | 446 | 917 | 1,370 | 2,640 | 4,220 | 7,450 | 15,200 |
| 1,300 | 114 | 239 | 427 | 878 | 1,320 | 2,530 | 4,040 | 7,140 | 14,600 |
| 1,400 | 110 | 230 | 411 | 843 | 1,260 | 2,430 | 3,880 | 6,860 | 14,000 |
| 1,500 | 106 | 221 | 396 | 812 | 1,220 | 2,340 | 3,740 | 6,600 | 13,500 |
| 1,600 | 102 | 214 | 382 | 784 | 1,180 | 2,260 | 3,610 | 6,380 | 13,000 |
| 1,700 | 99 | 207 | 370 | 759 | 1,140 | 2,190 | 3,490 | 6,170 | 12,600 |
| 1,800 | 96 | 200 | 358 | 736 | 1,100 | 2,120 | 3,390 | 5,980 | 12,200 |
| 1,900 | 93 | 195 | 348 | 715 | 1,070 | 2,060 | 3,290 | 5,810 | 11,900 |
| 2,000 | 91 | 189 | 339 | 695 | 1,040 | 2,010 | 3,200 | 5,650 | 11,500 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Natural |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | Less than 2 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| Specific Gravity | 0.60 |

**TABLE G2413.4(3) [402.4(7)]**
**SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING**

| | | TUBE SIZE (inch) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nominal | K & L | 1/4 | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| | ACR | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 7/8 | 1 1/8 | 1 3/8 | — | — |
| Outside | | 0.375 | 0.500 | 0.625 | 0.750 | 0.875 | 1.125 | 1.375 | 1.625 | 2.125 |
| Inside | | 0.305 | 0.402 | 0.527 | 0.652 | 0.745 | 0.995 | 1.245 | 1.481 | 1.959 |
| Length (ft) | | Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | 27 | 55 | 111 | 195 | 276 | 590 | 1,060 | 1,680 | 3,490 |
| 20 | | 18 | 38 | 77 | 134 | 190 | 406 | 730 | 1,150 | 2,400 |
| 30 | | 15 | 30 | 61 | 107 | 152 | 326 | 586 | 925 | 1,930 |
| 40 | | 13 | 26 | 53 | 92 | 131 | 279 | 502 | 791 | 1,650 |
| 50 | | 11 | 23 | 47 | 82 | 116 | 247 | 445 | 701 | 1,460 |
| 60 | | 10 | 21 | 42 | 74 | 105 | 224 | 403 | 635 | 1,320 |
| 70 | | NA | 19 | 39 | 68 | 96 | 206 | 371 | 585 | 1,220 |
| 80 | | NA | 18 | 36 | 63 | 90 | 192 | 345 | 544 | 1,130 |
| 90 | | NA | 17 | 34 | 59 | 84 | 180 | 324 | 510 | 1,060 |
| 100 | | NA | 16 | 32 | 56 | 79 | 170 | 306 | 482 | 1,000 |
| 125 | | NA | 14 | 28 | 50 | 70 | 151 | 271 | 427 | 890 |
| 150 | | NA | 13 | 26 | 45 | 64 | 136 | 245 | 387 | 806 |
| 175 | | NA | 12 | 24 | 41 | 59 | 125 | 226 | 356 | 742 |
| 200 | | NA | 11 | 22 | 39 | 55 | 117 | 210 | 331 | 690 |
| 250 | | NA | NA | 20 | 34 | 48 | 103 | 186 | 294 | 612 |
| 300 | | NA | NA | 18 | 31 | 44 | 94 | 169 | 266 | 554 |
| 350 | | NA | NA | 16 | 28 | 40 | 86 | 155 | 245 | 510 |
| 400 | | NA | NA | 15 | 26 | 38 | 80 | 144 | 228 | 474 |
| 450 | | NA | NA | 14 | 25 | 35 | 75 | 135 | 214 | 445 |
| 500 | | NA | NA | 13 | 23 | 33 | 71 | 128 | 202 | 420 |
| 550 | | NA | NA | 13 | 22 | 32 | 68 | 122 | 192 | 399 |
| 600 | | NA | NA | 12 | 21 | 30 | 64 | 116 | 183 | 381 |
| 650 | | NA | NA | 12 | 20 | 29 | 62 | 111 | 175 | 365 |
| 700 | | NA | NA | 11 | 20 | 28 | 59 | 107 | 168 | 350 |
| 750 | | NA | NA | 11 | 19 | 27 | 57 | 103 | 162 | 338 |
| 800 | | NA | NA | 10 | 18 | 26 | 55 | 99 | 156 | 326 |
| 850 | | NA | NA | 10 | 18 | 25 | 53 | 96 | 151 | 315 |
| 900 | | NA | NA | NA | 17 | 24 | 52 | 93 | 147 | 306 |
| 950 | | NA | NA | NA | 17 | 24 | 50 | 90 | 143 | 297 |
| 1,000 | | NA | NA | NA | 16 | 23 | 49 | 88 | 139 | 289 |
| 1,100 | | NA | NA | NA | 15 | 22 | 46 | 84 | 132 | 274 |
| 1,200 | | NA | NA | NA | 15 | 21 | 44 | 80 | 126 | 262 |
| 1,300 | | NA | NA | NA | 14 | 20 | 42 | 76 | 120 | 251 |
| 1,400 | | NA | NA | NA | 13 | 19 | 41 | 73 | 116 | 241 |
| 1,500 | | NA | NA | NA | 13 | 18 | 39 | 71 | 111 | 232 |
| 1,600 | | NA | NA | NA | 13 | 18 | 38 | 68 | 108 | 224 |
| 1,700 | | NA | NA | NA | 12 | 17 | 37 | 66 | 104 | 217 |
| 1,800 | | NA | NA | NA | 12 | 17 | 36 | 64 | 101 | 210 |
| 1,900 | | NA | NA | NA | 11 | 16 | 35 | 62 | 98 | 204 |
| 2,000 | | NA | NA | NA | 11 | 16 | 34 | 60 | 95 | 199 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10 cfh.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Natural |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 2.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 0.60 |

**TABLE G2413.4(4) [402.4(10)]**
**SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING**

| | | TUBE SIZE (inch) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nominal | K & L | 1/4 | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| | ACR | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 7/8 | 1 1/8 | 1 3/8 | — | — |
| Outside | | 0.375 | 0.500 | 0.625 | 0.750 | 0.875 | 1.125 | 1.375 | 1.625 | 2.125 |
| Inside | | 0.305 | 0.402 | 0.527 | 0.652 | 0.745 | 0.995 | 1.245 | 1.481 | 1.959 |
| Length (ft) | | Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | 245 | 506 | 1,030 | 1,800 | 2,550 | 5,450 | 9,820 | 15,500 | 32,200 |
| 20 | | 169 | 348 | 708 | 1,240 | 1,760 | 3,750 | 6,750 | 10,600 | 22,200 |
| 30 | | 135 | 279 | 568 | 993 | 1,410 | 3,010 | 5,420 | 8,550 | 17,800 |
| 40 | | 116 | 239 | 486 | 850 | 1,210 | 2,580 | 4,640 | 7,310 | 15,200 |
| 50 | | 103 | 212 | 431 | 754 | 1,070 | 2,280 | 4,110 | 6,480 | 13,500 |
| 60 | | 93 | 192 | 391 | 683 | 969 | 2,070 | 3,730 | 5,870 | 12,200 |
| 70 | | 86 | 177 | 359 | 628 | 891 | 1,900 | 3,430 | 5,400 | 11,300 |
| 80 | | 80 | 164 | 334 | 584 | 829 | 1,770 | 3,190 | 5,030 | 10,500 |
| 90 | | 75 | 154 | 314 | 548 | 778 | 1,660 | 2,990 | 4,720 | 9,820 |
| 100 | | 71 | 146 | 296 | 518 | 735 | 1,570 | 2,830 | 4,450 | 9,280 |
| 125 | | 63 | 129 | 263 | 459 | 651 | 1,390 | 2,500 | 3,950 | 8,220 |
| 150 | | 57 | 117 | 238 | 416 | 590 | 1,260 | 2,270 | 3,580 | 7,450 |
| 175 | | 52 | 108 | 219 | 383 | 543 | 1,160 | 2,090 | 3,290 | 6,850 |
| 200 | | 49 | 100 | 204 | 356 | 505 | 1,080 | 1,940 | 3,060 | 6,380 |
| 250 | | 43 | 89 | 181 | 315 | 448 | 956 | 1,720 | 2,710 | 5,650 |
| 300 | | 39 | 80 | 164 | 286 | 406 | 866 | 1,560 | 2,460 | 5,120 |
| 350 | | 36 | 74 | 150 | 263 | 373 | 797 | 1,430 | 2,260 | 4,710 |
| 400 | | 33 | 69 | 140 | 245 | 347 | 741 | 1,330 | 2,100 | 4,380 |
| 450 | | 31 | 65 | 131 | 230 | 326 | 696 | 1,250 | 1,970 | 4,110 |
| 500 | | 30 | 61 | 124 | 217 | 308 | 657 | 1,180 | 1,870 | 3,880 |
| 550 | | 28 | 58 | 118 | 206 | 292 | 624 | 1,120 | 1,770 | 3,690 |
| 600 | | 27 | 55 | 112 | 196 | 279 | 595 | 1,070 | 1,690 | 3,520 |
| 650 | | 26 | 53 | 108 | 188 | 267 | 570 | 1,030 | 1,620 | 3,370 |
| 700 | | 25 | 51 | 103 | 181 | 256 | 548 | 986 | 1,550 | 3,240 |
| 750 | | 24 | 49 | 100 | 174 | 247 | 528 | 950 | 1,500 | 3,120 |
| 800 | | 23 | 47 | 96 | 168 | 239 | 510 | 917 | 1,450 | 3,010 |
| 850 | | 22 | 46 | 93 | 163 | 231 | 493 | 888 | 1,400 | 2,920 |
| 900 | | 22 | 44 | 90 | 158 | 224 | 478 | 861 | 1,360 | 2,830 |
| 950 | | 21 | 43 | 88 | 153 | 217 | 464 | 836 | 1,320 | 2,740 |
| 1,000 | | 20 | 42 | 85 | 149 | 211 | 452 | 813 | 1,280 | 2,670 |
| 1,100 | | 19 | 40 | 81 | 142 | 201 | 429 | 772 | 1,220 | 2,540 |
| 1,200 | | 18 | 38 | 77 | 135 | 192 | 409 | 737 | 1,160 | 2,420 |
| 1,300 | | 18 | 36 | 74 | 129 | 183 | 392 | 705 | 1,110 | 2,320 |
| 1,400 | | 17 | 35 | 71 | 124 | 176 | 376 | 678 | 1,070 | 2,230 |
| 1,500 | | 16 | 34 | 68 | 120 | 170 | 363 | 653 | 1,030 | 2,140 |
| 1,600 | | 16 | 33 | 66 | 116 | 164 | 350 | 630 | 994 | 2,070 |
| 1,700 | | 15 | 31 | 64 | 112 | 159 | 339 | 610 | 962 | 2,000 |
| 1,800 | | 15 | 30 | 62 | 108 | 154 | 329 | 592 | 933 | 1,940 |
| 1,900 | | 14 | 30 | 60 | 105 | 149 | 319 | 575 | 906 | 1,890 |
| 2,000 | | 14 | 29 | 59 | 102 | 145 | 310 | 559 | 881 | 1,830 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(5) [402.4(13)]**
**CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Gas** | Natural |
| **Inlet Pressure** | Less than 2 psi |
| **Pressure Drop** | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| **Specific Gravity** | 0.60 |

| | TUBE SIZE (EHD) | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Flow Designation** | 13 | 15 | 18 | 19 | 23 | 25 | 30 | 31 | 37 | 39 | 46 | 48 | 60 | 62 |
| **Length (ft)** | **Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | 46 | 63 | 115 | 134 | 225 | 270 | 471 | 546 | 895 | 1,037 | 1,790 | 2,070 | 3,660 | 4,140 |
| 10 | 32 | 44 | 82 | 95 | 161 | 192 | 330 | 383 | 639 | 746 | 1,260 | 1,470 | 2,600 | 2,930 |
| 15 | 25 | 35 | 66 | 77 | 132 | 157 | 267 | 310 | 524 | 615 | 1,030 | 1,200 | 2,140 | 2,400 |
| 20 | 22 | 31 | 58 | 67 | 116 | 137 | 231 | 269 | 456 | 536 | 888 | 1,050 | 1,850 | 2,080 |
| 25 | 19 | 27 | 52 | 60 | 104 | 122 | 206 | 240 | 409 | 482 | 793 | 936 | 1,660 | 1,860 |
| 30 | 18 | 25 | 47 | 55 | 96 | 112 | 188 | 218 | 374 | 442 | 723 | 856 | 1,520 | 1,700 |
| 40 | 15 | 21 | 41 | 47 | 83 | 97 | 162 | 188 | 325 | 386 | 625 | 742 | 1,320 | 1,470 |
| 50 | 13 | 19 | 37 | 42 | 75 | 87 | 144 | 168 | 292 | 347 | 559 | 665 | 1,180 | 1,320 |
| 60 | 12 | 17 | 34 | 38 | 68 | 80 | 131 | 153 | 267 | 318 | 509 | 608 | 1,080 | 1,200 |
| 70 | 11 | 16 | 31 | 36 | 63 | 74 | 121 | 141 | 248 | 295 | 471 | 563 | 1,000 | 1,110 |
| 80 | 10 | 15 | 29 | 33 | 60 | 69 | 113 | 132 | 232 | 277 | 440 | 527 | 940 | 1,040 |
| 90 | 10 | 14 | 28 | 32 | 57 | 65 | 107 | 125 | 219 | 262 | 415 | 498 | 887 | 983 |
| 100 | 9 | 13 | 26 | 30 | 54 | 62 | 101 | 118 | 208 | 249 | 393 | 472 | 843 | 933 |
| 150 | 7 | 10 | 20 | 23 | 42 | 48 | 78 | 91 | 171 | 205 | 320 | 387 | 691 | 762 |
| 200 | 6 | 9 | 18 | 21 | 38 | 44 | 71 | 82 | 148 | 179 | 277 | 336 | 600 | 661 |
| 250 | 5 | 8 | 16 | 19 | 34 | 39 | 63 | 74 | 133 | 161 | 247 | 301 | 538 | 591 |
| 300 | 5 | 7 | 15 | 17 | 32 | 36 | 57 | 67 | 95 | 148 | 226 | 275 | 492 | 540 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where $L$ is additional length (feet) of tubing and $n$ is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Natural |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 2.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 0.60 |

**TABLE G2413.4(6) [402.4(16)]**
**CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)**

| | TUBE SIZE (EHD) | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Flow Designation | 13 | 15 | 18 | 19 | 23 | 25 | 30 | 31 | 37 | 39 | 46 | 48 | 60 | 62 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas Per Hour | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 270 | 353 | 587 | 700 | 1,100 | 1,370 | 2,590 | 2,990 | 4,510 | 5,037 | 9,600 | 10,700 | 18,600 | 21,600 |
| 25 | 166 | 220 | 374 | 444 | 709 | 876 | 1,620 | 1,870 | 2,890 | 3,258 | 6,040 | 6,780 | 11,900 | 13,700 |
| 30 | 151 | 200 | 342 | 405 | 650 | 801 | 1,480 | 1,700 | 2,640 | 2,987 | 5,510 | 6,200 | 10,900 | 12,500 |
| 40 | 129 | 172 | 297 | 351 | 567 | 696 | 1,270 | 1,470 | 2,300 | 2,605 | 4,760 | 5,380 | 9,440 | 10,900 |
| 50 | 115 | 154 | 266 | 314 | 510 | 624 | 1,140 | 1,310 | 2,060 | 2,343 | 4,260 | 4,820 | 8,470 | 9,720 |
| 75 | 93 | 124 | 218 | 257 | 420 | 512 | 922 | 1,070 | 1,690 | 1,932 | 3,470 | 3,950 | 6,940 | 7,940 |
| 80 | 89 | 120 | 211 | 249 | 407 | 496 | 892 | 1,030 | 1,640 | 1,874 | 3,360 | 3,820 | 6,730 | 7,690 |
| 100 | 79 | 107 | 189 | 222 | 366 | 445 | 795 | 920 | 1,470 | 1,685 | 3,000 | 3,420 | 6,030 | 6,880 |
| 150 | 64 | 87 | 155 | 182 | 302 | 364 | 646 | 748 | 1,210 | 1,389 | 2,440 | 2,800 | 4,940 | 5,620 |
| 200 | 55 | 75 | 135 | 157 | 263 | 317 | 557 | 645 | 1,050 | 1,212 | 2,110 | 2,430 | 4,290 | 4,870 |
| 250 | 49 | 67 | 121 | 141 | 236 | 284 | 497 | 576 | 941 | 1,090 | 1,890 | 2,180 | 3,850 | 4,360 |
| 300 | 44 | 61 | 110 | 129 | 217 | 260 | 453 | 525 | 862 | 999 | 1,720 | 1,990 | 3,520 | 3,980 |
| 400 | 38 | 52 | 96 | 111 | 189 | 225 | 390 | 453 | 749 | 871 | 1,490 | 1,730 | 3,060 | 3,450 |
| 500 | 34 | 46 | 86 | 100 | 170 | 202 | 348 | 404 | 552 | 783 | 1,330 | 1,550 | 2,740 | 3,090 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds $^3/_4$ psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator can vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where $L$ is additional length (feet) of tubing and $n$ is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(7) [402.4(19)]**
**POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE**

| | |
|---|---|
| Gas | Natural |
| Inlet Pressure | Less than 2 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| Specific Gravity | 0.60 |

| | PIPE SIZE (in.) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nominal OD | $^{1}/_{2}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ | 1 | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 2 |
| Designation | SDR 9.33 | SDR 11.0 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 10.00 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 11.00 |
| Actual ID | 0.660 | 0.860 | 1.077 | 1.328 | 1.554 | 1.943 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour | | | | | |
| 10 | 201 | 403 | 726 | 1,260 | 1,900 | 3,410 |
| 20 | 138 | 277 | 499 | 865 | 1,310 | 2,350 |
| 30 | 111 | 222 | 401 | 695 | 1,050 | 1,880 |
| 40 | 95 | 190 | 343 | 594 | 898 | 1,610 |
| 50 | 84 | 169 | 304 | 527 | 796 | 1,430 |
| 60 | 76 | 153 | 276 | 477 | 721 | 1,300 |
| 70 | 70 | 140 | 254 | 439 | 663 | 1,190 |
| 80 | 65 | 131 | 236 | 409 | 617 | 1,110 |
| 90 | 61 | 123 | 221 | 383 | 579 | 1,040 |
| 100 | 58 | 116 | 209 | 362 | 547 | 983 |
| 125 | 51 | 103 | 185 | 321 | 485 | 871 |
| 150 | 46 | 93 | 168 | 291 | 439 | 789 |
| 175 | 43 | 86 | 154 | 268 | 404 | 726 |
| 200 | 40 | 80 | 144 | 249 | 376 | 675 |
| 250 | 35 | 71 | 127 | 221 | 333 | 598 |
| 300 | 32 | 64 | 115 | 200 | 302 | 542 |
| 350 | 29 | 59 | 106 | 184 | 278 | 499 |
| 400 | 27 | 55 | 99 | 171 | 258 | 464 |
| 450 | 26 | 51 | 93 | 160 | 242 | 435 |
| 500 | 24 | 48 | 88 | 152 | 229 | 411 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Natural |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 2.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 0.60 |

**TABLE G2413.4(8) [402.4(20)]**
**POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE**

| | PIPE SIZE (in.) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Nominal OD** | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 |
| **Designation** | SDR 9.33 | SDR 11.0 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 10.00 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 11.00 |
| **Actual ID** | 0.660 | 0.860 | 1.077 | 1.328 | 1.554 | 1.943 |
| **Length (ft)** | Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour | | | | | |
| 10 | 1,860 | 3,720 | 6,710 | 11,600 | 17,600 | 31,600 |
| 20 | 1,280 | 2,560 | 4,610 | 7,990 | 12,100 | 21,700 |
| 30 | 1,030 | 2,050 | 3,710 | 6,420 | 9,690 | 17,400 |
| 40 | 878 | 1,760 | 3,170 | 5,490 | 8,300 | 14,900 |
| 50 | 778 | 1,560 | 2,810 | 4,870 | 7,350 | 13,200 |
| 60 | 705 | 1,410 | 2,550 | 4,410 | 6,660 | 12,000 |
| 70 | 649 | 1,300 | 2,340 | 4,060 | 6,130 | 11,000 |
| 80 | 603 | 1,210 | 2,180 | 3,780 | 5,700 | 10,200 |
| 90 | 566 | 1,130 | 2,050 | 3,540 | 5,350 | 9,610 |
| 100 | 535 | 1,070 | 1,930 | 3,350 | 5,050 | 9,080 |
| 125 | 474 | 949 | 1,710 | 2,970 | 4,480 | 8,050 |
| 150 | 429 | 860 | 1,550 | 2,690 | 4,060 | 7,290 |
| 175 | 395 | 791 | 1,430 | 2,470 | 3,730 | 6,710 |
| 200 | 368 | 736 | 1,330 | 2,300 | 3,470 | 6,240 |
| 250 | 326 | 652 | 1,180 | 2,040 | 3,080 | 5,530 |
| 300 | 295 | 591 | 1,070 | 1,850 | 2,790 | 5,010 |
| 350 | 272 | 544 | 981 | 1,700 | 2,570 | 4,610 |
| 400 | 253 | 506 | 913 | 1,580 | 2,390 | 4,290 |
| 450 | 237 | 475 | 856 | 1,480 | 2,240 | 4,020 |
| 500 | 224 | 448 | 809 | 1,400 | 2,120 | 3,800 |
| 550 | 213 | 426 | 768 | 1,330 | 2,010 | 3,610 |
| 600 | 203 | 406 | 733 | 1,270 | 1,920 | 3,440 |
| 650 | 194 | 389 | 702 | 1,220 | 1,840 | 3,300 |
| 700 | 187 | 374 | 674 | 1,170 | 1,760 | 3,170 |
| 750 | 180 | 360 | 649 | 1,130 | 1,700 | 3,050 |
| 800 | 174 | 348 | 627 | 1,090 | 1,640 | 2,950 |
| 850 | 168 | 336 | 607 | 1,050 | 1,590 | 2,850 |
| 900 | 163 | 326 | 588 | 1,020 | 1,540 | 2,770 |
| 950 | 158 | 317 | 572 | 990 | 1,500 | 2,690 |
| 1,000 | 154 | 308 | 556 | 963 | 1,450 | 2,610 |
| 1,100 | 146 | 293 | 528 | 915 | 1,380 | 2,480 |
| 1,200 | 139 | 279 | 504 | 873 | 1,320 | 2,370 |
| 1,300 | 134 | 267 | 482 | 836 | 1,260 | 2,270 |
| 1,400 | 128 | 257 | 463 | 803 | 1,210 | 2,180 |
| 1,500 | 124 | 247 | 446 | 773 | 1,170 | 2,100 |
| 1,600 | 119 | 239 | 431 | 747 | 1,130 | 2,030 |
| 1,700 | 115 | 231 | 417 | 723 | 1,090 | 1,960 |
| 1,800 | 112 | 224 | 404 | 701 | 1,060 | 1,900 |
| 1,900 | 109 | 218 | 393 | 680 | 1,030 | 1,850 |
| 2,000 | 106 | 212 | 382 | 662 | 1,000 | 1,800 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(9) [402.4(23)]**
**SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Gas** | Undiluted Propane |
| **Inlet Pressure** | 10.0 psi |
| **Pressure Drop** | 1.0 psi |
| **Specific Gravity** | 1.50 |

| **INTENDED USE** | **Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator).** | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **PIPE SIZE (in.)** | | | | | | | | |
| **Nominal** | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 | $2^1/_2$ | 3 | 4 |
| **Actual ID** | 0.622 | 0.824 | 1.049 | 1.380 | 1.610 | 2.067 | 2.469 | 3.068 | 4.026 |
| **Length (ft)** | **Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour** | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 3,320 | 6,950 | 13,100 | 26,900 | 40,300 | 77,600 | 124,000 | 219,000 | 446,000 |
| 20 | 2,280 | 4,780 | 9,000 | 18,500 | 27,700 | 53,300 | 85,000 | 150,000 | 306,000 |
| 30 | 1,830 | 3,840 | 7,220 | 14,800 | 22,200 | 42,800 | 68,200 | 121,000 | 246,000 |
| 40 | 1,570 | 3,280 | 6,180 | 12,700 | 19,000 | 36,600 | 58,400 | 103,000 | 211,000 |
| 50 | 1,390 | 2,910 | 5,480 | 11,300 | 16,900 | 32,500 | 51,700 | 91,500 | 187,000 |
| 60 | 1,260 | 2,640 | 4,970 | 10,200 | 15,300 | 29,400 | 46,900 | 82,900 | 169,000 |
| 70 | 1,160 | 2,430 | 4,570 | 9,380 | 14,100 | 27,100 | 43,100 | 76,300 | 156,000 |
| 80 | 1,080 | 2,260 | 4,250 | 8,730 | 13,100 | 25,200 | 40,100 | 70,900 | 145,000 |
| 90 | 1,010 | 2,120 | 3,990 | 8,190 | 12,300 | 23,600 | 37,700 | 66,600 | 136,000 |
| 100 | 956 | 2,000 | 3,770 | 7,730 | 11,600 | 22,300 | 35,600 | 62,900 | 128,000 |
| 125 | 848 | 1,770 | 3,340 | 6,850 | 10,300 | 19,800 | 31,500 | 55,700 | 114,000 |
| 150 | 768 | 1,610 | 3,020 | 6,210 | 9,300 | 17,900 | 28,600 | 50,500 | 103,000 |
| 175 | 706 | 1,480 | 2,780 | 5,710 | 8,560 | 16,500 | 26,300 | 46,500 | 94,700 |
| 200 | 657 | 1,370 | 2,590 | 5,320 | 7,960 | 15,300 | 24,400 | 43,200 | 88,100 |
| 250 | 582 | 1,220 | 2,290 | 4,710 | 7,060 | 13,600 | 21,700 | 38,300 | 78,100 |
| 300 | 528 | 1,100 | 2,080 | 4,270 | 6,400 | 12,300 | 19,600 | 34,700 | 70,800 |
| 350 | 486 | 1,020 | 1,910 | 3,930 | 5,880 | 11,300 | 18,100 | 31,900 | 65,100 |
| 400 | 452 | 945 | 1,780 | 3,650 | 5,470 | 10,500 | 16,800 | 29,700 | 60,600 |
| 450 | 424 | 886 | 1,670 | 3,430 | 5,140 | 9,890 | 15,800 | 27,900 | 56,800 |
| 500 | 400 | 837 | 1,580 | 3,240 | 4,850 | 9,340 | 14,900 | 26,300 | 53,700 |
| 550 | 380 | 795 | 1,500 | 3,070 | 4,610 | 8,870 | 14,100 | 25,000 | 51,000 |
| 600 | 363 | 759 | 1,430 | 2,930 | 4,400 | 8,460 | 13,500 | 23,900 | 48,600 |
| 650 | 347 | 726 | 1,370 | 2,810 | 4,210 | 8,110 | 12,900 | 22,800 | 46,600 |
| 700 | 334 | 698 | 1,310 | 2,700 | 4,040 | 7,790 | 12,400 | 21,900 | 44,800 |
| 750 | 321 | 672 | 1,270 | 2,600 | 3,900 | 7,500 | 12,000 | 21,100 | 43,100 |
| 800 | 310 | 649 | 1,220 | 2,510 | 3,760 | 7,240 | 11,500 | 20,400 | 41,600 |
| 850 | 300 | 628 | 1,180 | 2,430 | 3,640 | 7,010 | 11,200 | 19,800 | 40,300 |
| 900 | 291 | 609 | 1,150 | 2,360 | 3,530 | 6,800 | 10,800 | 19,200 | 39,100 |
| 950 | 283 | 592 | 1,110 | 2,290 | 3,430 | 6,600 | 10,500 | 18,600 | 37,900 |
| 1,000 | 275 | 575 | 1,080 | 2,230 | 3,330 | 6,420 | 10,200 | 18,100 | 36,900 |
| 1,100 | 261 | 546 | 1,030 | 2,110 | 3,170 | 6,100 | 9,720 | 17,200 | 35,000 |
| 1,200 | 249 | 521 | 982 | 2,020 | 3,020 | 5,820 | 9,270 | 16,400 | 33,400 |
| 1,300 | 239 | 499 | 940 | 1,930 | 2,890 | 5,570 | 8,880 | 15,700 | 32,000 |
| 1,400 | 229 | 480 | 903 | 1,850 | 2,780 | 5,350 | 8,530 | 15,100 | 30,800 |
| 1,500 | 221 | 462 | 870 | 1,790 | 2,680 | 5,160 | 8,220 | 14,500 | 29,600 |
| 1,600 | 213 | 446 | 840 | 1,730 | 2,590 | 4,980 | 7,940 | 14,000 | 28,600 |
| 1,700 | 206 | 432 | 813 | 1,670 | 2,500 | 4,820 | 7,680 | 13,600 | 27,700 |
| 1,800 | 200 | 419 | 789 | 1,620 | 2,430 | 4,670 | 7,450 | 13,200 | 26,900 |
| 1,900 | 194 | 407 | 766 | 1,570 | 2,360 | 4,540 | 7,230 | 12,800 | 26,100 |
| 2,000 | 189 | 395 | 745 | 1,530 | 2,290 | 4,410 | 7,030 | 12,400 | 25,400 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 10.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 3.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(10) [402.4(24)]**
**SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE**

| INTENDED USE | Pipe sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator). | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PIPE SIZE (in) | | | | | | | | |
| Nominal | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 | 2 1/2 | 3 | 4 |
| Actual ID | 0.622 | 0.824 | 1.049 | 1.380 | 1.610 | 2.067 | 2.469 | 3.068 | 4.026 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 5,890 | 12,300 | 23,200 | 47,600 | 71,300 | 137,000 | 219,000 | 387,000 | 789,000 |
| 20 | 4,050 | 8,460 | 15,900 | 32,700 | 49,000 | 94,400 | 150,000 | 266,000 | 543,000 |
| 30 | 3,250 | 6,790 | 12,800 | 26,300 | 39,400 | 75,800 | 121,000 | 214,000 | 436,000 |
| 40 | 2,780 | 5,810 | 11,000 | 22,500 | 33,700 | 64,900 | 103,000 | 183,000 | 373,000 |
| 50 | 2,460 | 5,150 | 9,710 | 19,900 | 29,900 | 57,500 | 91,600 | 162,000 | 330,000 |
| 60 | 2,230 | 4,670 | 8,790 | 18,100 | 27,100 | 52,100 | 83,000 | 147,000 | 299,000 |
| 70 | 2,050 | 4,300 | 8,090 | 16,600 | 24,900 | 47,900 | 76,400 | 135,000 | 275,000 |
| 80 | 1,910 | 4,000 | 7,530 | 15,500 | 23,200 | 44,600 | 71,100 | 126,000 | 256,000 |
| 90 | 1,790 | 3,750 | 7,060 | 14,500 | 21,700 | 41,800 | 66,700 | 118,000 | 240,000 |
| 100 | 1,690 | 3,540 | 6,670 | 13,700 | 20,500 | 39,500 | 63,000 | 111,000 | 227,000 |
| 125 | 1,500 | 3,140 | 5,910 | 12,100 | 18,200 | 35,000 | 55,800 | 98,700 | 201,000 |
| 150 | 1,360 | 2,840 | 5,360 | 11,000 | 16,500 | 31,700 | 50,600 | 89,400 | 182,000 |
| 175 | 1,250 | 2,620 | 4,930 | 10,100 | 15,200 | 29,200 | 46,500 | 82,300 | 167,800 |
| 200 | 1,160 | 2,430 | 4,580 | 9,410 | 14,100 | 27,200 | 43,300 | 76,500 | 156,100 |
| 250 | 1,030 | 2,160 | 4,060 | 8,340 | 12,500 | 24,100 | 38,400 | 67,800 | 138,400 |
| 300 | 935 | 1,950 | 3,680 | 7,560 | 11,300 | 21,800 | 34,800 | 61,500 | 125,400 |
| 350 | 860 | 1,800 | 3,390 | 6,950 | 10,400 | 20,100 | 32,000 | 56,500 | 115,300 |
| 400 | 800 | 1,670 | 3,150 | 6,470 | 9,690 | 18,700 | 29,800 | 52,600 | 107,300 |
| 450 | 751 | 1,570 | 2,960 | 6,070 | 9,090 | 17,500 | 27,900 | 49,400 | 100,700 |
| 500 | 709 | 1,480 | 2,790 | 5,730 | 8,590 | 16,500 | 26,400 | 46,600 | 95,100 |
| 550 | 673 | 1,410 | 2,650 | 5,450 | 8,160 | 15,700 | 25,000 | 44,300 | 90,300 |
| 600 | 642 | 1,340 | 2,530 | 5,200 | 7,780 | 15,000 | 23,900 | 42,200 | 86,200 |
| 650 | 615 | 1,290 | 2,420 | 4,980 | 7,450 | 14,400 | 22,900 | 40,500 | 82,500 |
| 700 | 591 | 1,240 | 2,330 | 4,780 | 7,160 | 13,800 | 22,000 | 38,900 | 79,300 |
| 750 | 569 | 1,190 | 2,240 | 4,600 | 6,900 | 13,300 | 21,200 | 37,400 | 76,400 |
| 800 | 550 | 1,150 | 2,170 | 4,450 | 6,660 | 12,800 | 20,500 | 36,200 | 73,700 |
| 850 | 532 | 1,110 | 2,100 | 4,300 | 6,450 | 12,400 | 19,800 | 35,000 | 71,400 |
| 900 | 516 | 1,080 | 2,030 | 4,170 | 6,250 | 12,000 | 19,200 | 33,900 | 69,200 |
| 950 | 501 | 1,050 | 1,970 | 4,050 | 6,070 | 11,700 | 18,600 | 32,900 | 67,200 |
| 1,000 | 487 | 1,020 | 1,920 | 3,940 | 5,900 | 11,400 | 18,100 | 32,000 | 65,400 |
| 1,100 | 463 | 968 | 1,820 | 3,740 | 5,610 | 10,800 | 17,200 | 30,400 | 62,100 |
| 1,200 | 442 | 923 | 1,740 | 3,570 | 5,350 | 10,300 | 16,400 | 29,000 | 59,200 |
| 1,300 | 423 | 884 | 1,670 | 3,420 | 5,120 | 9,870 | 15,700 | 27,800 | 56,700 |
| 1,400 | 406 | 849 | 1,600 | 3,280 | 4,920 | 9,480 | 15,100 | 26,700 | 54,500 |
| 1,500 | 391 | 818 | 1,540 | 3,160 | 4,740 | 9,130 | 14,600 | 25,700 | 52,500 |
| 1,600 | 378 | 790 | 1,490 | 3,060 | 4,580 | 8,820 | 14,100 | 24,800 | 50,700 |
| 1,700 | 366 | 765 | 1,440 | 2,960 | 4,430 | 8,530 | 13,600 | 24,000 | 49,000 |
| 1,800 | 355 | 741 | 1,400 | 2,870 | 4,300 | 8,270 | 13,200 | 23,300 | 47,600 |
| 1,900 | 344 | 720 | 1,360 | 2,780 | 4,170 | 8,040 | 12,800 | 22,600 | 46,200 |
| 2,000 | 335 | 700 | 1,320 | 2,710 | 4,060 | 7,820 | 12,500 | 22,000 | 44,900 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 2.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(11) [402.4(25)]**
**SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE**

| INTENDED USE | Pipe sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator. | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PIPE SIZE (in.) | | | | | | | | |
| Nominal | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 | 2 1/2 | 3 | 4 |
| Actual ID | 0.622 | 0.824 | 1.049 | 1.380 | 1.610 | 2.067 | 2.469 | 3.068 | 4.026 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 2,680 | 5,590 | 10,500 | 21,600 | 32,400 | 62,400 | 99,500 | 176,000 | 359,000 |
| 20 | 1,840 | 3,850 | 7,240 | 14,900 | 22,300 | 42,900 | 68,400 | 121,000 | 247,000 |
| 30 | 1,480 | 3,090 | 5,820 | 11,900 | 17,900 | 34,500 | 54,900 | 97,100 | 198,000 |
| 40 | 1,260 | 2,640 | 4,980 | 10,200 | 15,300 | 29,500 | 47,000 | 83,100 | 170,000 |
| 50 | 1,120 | 2,340 | 4,410 | 9,060 | 13,600 | 26,100 | 41,700 | 73,700 | 150,000 |
| 60 | 1,010 | 2,120 | 4,000 | 8,210 | 12,300 | 23,700 | 37,700 | 66,700 | 136,000 |
| 70 | 934 | 1,950 | 3,680 | 7,550 | 11,300 | 21,800 | 34,700 | 61,400 | 125,000 |
| 80 | 869 | 1,820 | 3,420 | 7,020 | 10,500 | 20,300 | 32,300 | 57,100 | 116,000 |
| 90 | 815 | 1,700 | 3,210 | 6,590 | 9,880 | 19,000 | 30,300 | 53,600 | 109,000 |
| 100 | 770 | 1,610 | 3,030 | 6,230 | 9,330 | 18,000 | 28,600 | 50,600 | 103,000 |
| 125 | 682 | 1,430 | 2,690 | 5,520 | 8,270 | 15,900 | 25,400 | 44,900 | 91,500 |
| 150 | 618 | 1,290 | 2,440 | 5,000 | 7,490 | 14,400 | 23,000 | 40,700 | 82,900 |
| 175 | 569 | 1,190 | 2,240 | 4,600 | 6,890 | 13,300 | 21,200 | 37,400 | 76,300 |
| 200 | 529 | 1,110 | 2,080 | 4,280 | 6,410 | 12,300 | 19,700 | 34,800 | 71,000 |
| 250 | 469 | 981 | 1,850 | 3,790 | 5,680 | 10,900 | 17,400 | 30,800 | 62,900 |
| 300 | 425 | 889 | 1,670 | 3,440 | 5,150 | 9,920 | 15,800 | 27,900 | 57,000 |
| 350 | 391 | 817 | 1,540 | 3,160 | 4,740 | 9,120 | 14,500 | 25,700 | 52,400 |
| 400 | 364 | 760 | 1,430 | 2,940 | 4,410 | 8,490 | 13,500 | 23,900 | 48,800 |
| 450 | 341 | 714 | 1,340 | 2,760 | 4,130 | 7,960 | 12,700 | 22,400 | 45,800 |
| 500 | 322 | 674 | 1,270 | 2,610 | 3,910 | 7,520 | 12,000 | 21,200 | 43,200 |
| 550 | 306 | 640 | 1,210 | 2,480 | 3,710 | 7,140 | 11,400 | 20,100 | 41,100 |
| 600 | 292 | 611 | 1,150 | 2,360 | 3,540 | 6,820 | 10,900 | 19,200 | 39,200 |
| 650 | 280 | 585 | 1,100 | 2,260 | 3,390 | 6,530 | 10,400 | 18,400 | 37,500 |
| 700 | 269 | 562 | 1,060 | 2,170 | 3,260 | 6,270 | 9,990 | 17,700 | 36,000 |
| 750 | 259 | 541 | 1,020 | 2,090 | 3,140 | 6,040 | 9,630 | 17,000 | 34,700 |
| 800 | 250 | 523 | 985 | 2,020 | 3,030 | 5,830 | 9,300 | 16,400 | 33,500 |
| 850 | 242 | 506 | 953 | 1,960 | 2,930 | 5,640 | 9,000 | 15,900 | 32,400 |
| 900 | 235 | 490 | 924 | 1,900 | 2,840 | 5,470 | 8,720 | 15,400 | 31,500 |
| 950 | 228 | 476 | 897 | 1,840 | 2,760 | 5,310 | 8,470 | 15,000 | 30,500 |
| 1,000 | 222 | 463 | 873 | 1,790 | 2,680 | 5,170 | 8,240 | 14,600 | 29,700 |
| 1,100 | 210 | 440 | 829 | 1,700 | 2,550 | 4,910 | 7,830 | 13,800 | 28,200 |
| 1,200 | 201 | 420 | 791 | 1,620 | 2,430 | 4,680 | 7,470 | 13,200 | 26,900 |
| 1,300 | 192 | 402 | 757 | 1,550 | 2,330 | 4,490 | 7,150 | 12,600 | 25,800 |
| 1,400 | 185 | 386 | 727 | 1,490 | 2,240 | 4,310 | 6,870 | 12,100 | 24,800 |
| 1,500 | 178 | 372 | 701 | 1,440 | 2,160 | 4,150 | 6,620 | 11,700 | 23,900 |
| 1,600 | 172 | 359 | 677 | 1,390 | 2,080 | 4,010 | 6,390 | 11,300 | 23,000 |
| 1,700 | 166 | 348 | 655 | 1,340 | 2,010 | 3,880 | 6,180 | 10,900 | 22,300 |
| 1,800 | 161 | 337 | 635 | 1,300 | 1,950 | 3,760 | 6,000 | 10,600 | 21,600 |
| 1,900 | 157 | 327 | 617 | 1,270 | 1,900 | 3,650 | 5,820 | 10,300 | 21,000 |
| 2,000 | 152 | 318 | 600 | 1,230 | 1,840 | 3,550 | 5,660 | 10,000 | 20,400 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 11.0 in. w.c. |
| Pressure Drop | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(12) [402.4(26)]**
**SCHEDULE 40 METALLIC PIPE**

| INTENDED USE | Pipe sizing between single- or second-stage (low pressure) regulator and appliance. | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PIPE SIZE (in.) | | | | | | | | |
| Nominal | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 | 2 1/2 | 3 | 4 |
| Actual ID | 0.622 | 0.824 | 1.049 | 1.380 | 1.610 | 2.067 | 2.469 | 3.068 | 4.026 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 291 | 608 | 1,150 | 2,350 | 3,520 | 6,790 | 10,800 | 19,100 | 39,000 |
| 20 | 200 | 418 | 787 | 1,620 | 2,420 | 4,660 | 7,430 | 13,100 | 26,800 |
| 30 | 160 | 336 | 632 | 1,300 | 1,940 | 3,750 | 5,970 | 10,600 | 21,500 |
| 40 | 137 | 287 | 541 | 1,110 | 1,660 | 3,210 | 5,110 | 9,030 | 18,400 |
| 50 | 122 | 255 | 480 | 985 | 1,480 | 2,840 | 4,530 | 8,000 | 16,300 |
| 60 | 110 | 231 | 434 | 892 | 1,340 | 2,570 | 4,100 | 7,250 | 14,800 |
| 80 | 101 | 212 | 400 | 821 | 1,230 | 2,370 | 3,770 | 6,670 | 13,600 |
| 100 | 94 | 197 | 372 | 763 | 1,140 | 2,200 | 3,510 | 6,210 | 12,700 |
| 125 | 89 | 185 | 349 | 716 | 1,070 | 2,070 | 3,290 | 5,820 | 11,900 |
| 150 | 84 | 175 | 330 | 677 | 1,010 | 1,950 | 3,110 | 5,500 | 11,200 |
| 175 | 74 | 155 | 292 | 600 | 899 | 1,730 | 2,760 | 4,880 | 9,950 |
| 200 | 67 | 140 | 265 | 543 | 814 | 1,570 | 2,500 | 4,420 | 9,010 |
| 250 | 62 | 129 | 243 | 500 | 749 | 1,440 | 2,300 | 4,060 | 8,290 |
| 300 | 58 | 120 | 227 | 465 | 697 | 1,340 | 2,140 | 3,780 | 7,710 |
| 350 | 51 | 107 | 201 | 412 | 618 | 1,190 | 1,900 | 3,350 | 6,840 |
| 400 | 46 | 97 | 182 | 373 | 560 | 1,080 | 1,720 | 3,040 | 6,190 |
| 450 | 42 | 89 | 167 | 344 | 515 | 991 | 1,580 | 2,790 | 5,700 |
| 500 | 40 | 83 | 156 | 320 | 479 | 922 | 1,470 | 2,600 | 5,300 |
| 550 | 37 | 78 | 146 | 300 | 449 | 865 | 1,380 | 2,440 | 4,970 |
| 600 | 35 | 73 | 138 | 283 | 424 | 817 | 1,300 | 2,300 | 4,700 |
| 650 | 33 | 70 | 131 | 269 | 403 | 776 | 1,240 | 2,190 | 4,460 |
| 700 | 32 | 66 | 125 | 257 | 385 | 741 | 1,180 | 2,090 | 4,260 |
| 750 | 30 | 64 | 120 | 246 | 368 | 709 | 1,130 | 2,000 | 4,080 |
| 800 | 29 | 61 | 115 | 236 | 354 | 681 | 1,090 | 1,920 | 3,920 |
| 850 | 28 | 59 | 111 | 227 | 341 | 656 | 1,050 | 1,850 | 3,770 |
| 900 | 27 | 57 | 107 | 220 | 329 | 634 | 1,010 | 1,790 | 3,640 |
| 950 | 26 | 55 | 104 | 213 | 319 | 613 | 978 | 1,730 | 3,530 |
| 1,000 | 25 | 53 | 100 | 206 | 309 | 595 | 948 | 1,680 | 3,420 |
| 1,100 | 25 | 52 | 97 | 200 | 300 | 578 | 921 | 1,630 | 3,320 |
| 1,200 | 24 | 50 | 95 | 195 | 292 | 562 | 895 | 1,580 | 3,230 |
| 1,300 | 23 | 48 | 90 | 185 | 277 | 534 | 850 | 1,500 | 3,070 |
| 1,400 | 22 | 46 | 86 | 176 | 264 | 509 | 811 | 1,430 | 2,930 |
| 1,500 | 21 | 44 | 82 | 169 | 253 | 487 | 777 | 1,370 | 2,800 |
| 1,600 | 20 | 42 | 79 | 162 | 243 | 468 | 746 | 1,320 | 2,690 |
| 1,700 | 19 | 40 | 76 | 156 | 234 | 451 | 719 | 1,270 | 2,590 |
| 1,800 | 19 | 39 | 74 | 151 | 226 | 436 | 694 | 1,230 | 2,500 |
| 1,900 | 18 | 38 | 71 | 146 | 219 | 422 | 672 | 1,190 | 2,420 |
| 2,000 | 18 | 37 | 69 | 142 | 212 | 409 | 652 | 1,150 | 2,350 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 10.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

## TABLE G2413.4(13) [402.4(27)]
## SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING

| INTENDED USE | | Sizing between first stage (high-pressure regulator) and second stage (low-pressure regulator). | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | TUBE SIZE (in.) | | | | | | | | |
| Nominal | K & L | 1/4 | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| | ACR | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 7/8 | 1 1/8 | 1 3/8 | — | — |
| Outside | | 0.375 | 0.500 | 0.625 | 0.750 | 0.875 | 1.125 | 1.375 | 1.625 | 2.125 |
| Inside | | 0.305 | 0.402 | 0.527 | 0.652 | 0.745 | 0.995 | 1.245 | 1.481 | 1.959 |
| Length (ft) | | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | 513 | 1,060 | 2,150 | 3,760 | 5,330 | 11,400 | 20,500 | 32,300 | 67,400 |
| 20 | | 352 | 727 | 1,480 | 2,580 | 3,670 | 7,830 | 14,100 | 22,200 | 46,300 |
| 30 | | 283 | 584 | 1,190 | 2,080 | 2,940 | 6,290 | 11,300 | 17,900 | 37,200 |
| 40 | | 242 | 500 | 1,020 | 1,780 | 2,520 | 5,380 | 9,690 | 15,300 | 31,800 |
| 50 | | 215 | 443 | 901 | 1,570 | 2,230 | 4,770 | 8,590 | 13,500 | 28,200 |
| 60 | | 194 | 401 | 816 | 1,430 | 2,020 | 4,320 | 7,780 | 12,300 | 25,600 |
| 70 | | 179 | 369 | 751 | 1,310 | 1,860 | 3,980 | 7,160 | 11,300 | 23,500 |
| 80 | | 166 | 343 | 699 | 1,220 | 1,730 | 3,700 | 6,660 | 10,500 | 21,900 |
| 90 | | 156 | 322 | 655 | 1,150 | 1,630 | 3,470 | 6,250 | 9,850 | 20,500 |
| 100 | | 147 | 304 | 619 | 1,080 | 1,540 | 3,280 | 5,900 | 9,310 | 19,400 |
| 125 | | 131 | 270 | 549 | 959 | 1,360 | 2,910 | 5,230 | 8,250 | 17,200 |
| 150 | | 118 | 244 | 497 | 869 | 1,230 | 2,630 | 4,740 | 7,470 | 15,600 |
| 175 | | 109 | 225 | 457 | 799 | 1,130 | 2,420 | 4,360 | 6,880 | 14,300 |
| 200 | | 101 | 209 | 426 | 744 | 1,060 | 2,250 | 4,060 | 6,400 | 13,300 |
| 250 | | 90 | 185 | 377 | 659 | 935 | 2,000 | 3,600 | 5,670 | 11,800 |
| 300 | | 81 | 168 | 342 | 597 | 847 | 1,810 | 3,260 | 5,140 | 10,700 |
| 350 | | 75 | 155 | 314 | 549 | 779 | 1,660 | 3,000 | 4,730 | 9,840 |
| 400 | | 70 | 144 | 292 | 511 | 725 | 1,550 | 2,790 | 4,400 | 9,160 |
| 450 | | 65 | 135 | 274 | 480 | 680 | 1,450 | 2,620 | 4,130 | 8,590 |
| 500 | | 62 | 127 | 259 | 453 | 643 | 1,370 | 2,470 | 3,900 | 8,120 |
| 550 | | 59 | 121 | 246 | 430 | 610 | 1,300 | 2,350 | 3,700 | 7,710 |
| 600 | | 56 | 115 | 235 | 410 | 582 | 1,240 | 2,240 | 3,530 | 7,350 |
| 650 | | 54 | 111 | 225 | 393 | 558 | 1,190 | 2,140 | 3,380 | 7,040 |
| 700 | | 51 | 106 | 216 | 378 | 536 | 1,140 | 2,060 | 3,250 | 6,770 |
| 750 | | 50 | 102 | 208 | 364 | 516 | 1,100 | 1,980 | 3,130 | 6,520 |
| 800 | | 48 | 99 | 201 | 351 | 498 | 1,060 | 1,920 | 3,020 | 6,290 |
| 850 | | 46 | 96 | 195 | 340 | 482 | 1,030 | 1,850 | 2,920 | 6,090 |
| 900 | | 45 | 93 | 189 | 330 | 468 | 1,000 | 1,800 | 2,840 | 5,910 |
| 950 | | 44 | 90 | 183 | 320 | 454 | 970 | 1,750 | 2,750 | 5,730 |
| 1,000 | | 42 | 88 | 178 | 311 | 442 | 944 | 1,700 | 2,680 | 5,580 |
| 1,100 | | 40 | 83 | 169 | 296 | 420 | 896 | 1,610 | 2,540 | 5,300 |
| 1,200 | | 38 | 79 | 161 | 282 | 400 | 855 | 1,540 | 2,430 | 5,050 |
| 1,300 | | 37 | 76 | 155 | 270 | 383 | 819 | 1,470 | 2,320 | 4,840 |
| 1,400 | | 35 | 73 | 148 | 260 | 368 | 787 | 1,420 | 2,230 | 4,650 |
| 1,500 | | 34 | 70 | 143 | 250 | 355 | 758 | 1,360 | 2,150 | 4,480 |
| 1,600 | | 33 | 68 | 138 | 241 | 343 | 732 | 1,320 | 2,080 | 4,330 |
| 1,700 | | 32 | 66 | 134 | 234 | 331 | 708 | 1,270 | 2,010 | 4,190 |
| 1,800 | | 31 | 64 | 130 | 227 | 321 | 687 | 1,240 | 1,950 | 4,060 |
| 1,900 | | 30 | 62 | 126 | 220 | 312 | 667 | 1,200 | 1,890 | 3,940 |
| 2,000 | | 29 | 60 | 122 | 214 | 304 | 648 | 1,170 | 1,840 | 3,830 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 11.0 in. w.c. |
| Pressure Drop | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(14) [402.4(28)]**
**SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING**

| INTENDED USE | | Sizing between single- or second-stage (low-pressure regulator) and appliance. | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | TUBE SIZE (in.) | | | | | | | | |
| Nominal | K & L | 1/4 | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| | ACR | 3/8 | 1/2 | 5/8 | 3/4 | 7/8 | 1 1/8 | 1 3/8 | — | — |
| Outside | | 0.375 | 0.500 | 0.625 | 0.750 | 0.875 | 1.125 | 1.375 | 1.625 | 2.125 |
| Inside | | 0.305 | 0.402 | 0.527 | 0.652 | 0.745 | 0.995 | 1.245 | 1.481 | 1.959 |
| Length (ft) | | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | 45 | 93 | 188 | 329 | 467 | 997 | 1,800 | 2,830 | 5,890 |
| 20 | | 31 | 64 | 129 | 226 | 321 | 685 | 1,230 | 1,950 | 4,050 |
| 30 | | 25 | 51 | 104 | 182 | 258 | 550 | 991 | 1,560 | 3,250 |
| 40 | | 21 | 44 | 89 | 155 | 220 | 471 | 848 | 1,340 | 2,780 |
| 50 | | 19 | 39 | 79 | 138 | 195 | 417 | 752 | 1,180 | 2,470 |
| 60 | | 17 | 35 | 71 | 125 | 177 | 378 | 681 | 1,070 | 2,240 |
| 70 | | 16 | 32 | 66 | 115 | 163 | 348 | 626 | 988 | 2,060 |
| 80 | | 15 | 30 | 61 | 107 | 152 | 324 | 583 | 919 | 1,910 |
| 90 | | 14 | 28 | 57 | 100 | 142 | 304 | 547 | 862 | 1,800 |
| 100 | | 13 | 27 | 54 | 95 | 134 | 287 | 517 | 814 | 1,700 |
| 125 | | 11 | 24 | 48 | 84 | 119 | 254 | 458 | 722 | 1,500 |
| 150 | | 10 | 21 | 44 | 76 | 108 | 230 | 415 | 654 | 1,360 |
| 175 | | NA | 20 | 40 | 70 | 99 | 212 | 382 | 602 | 1,250 |
| 200 | | NA | 18 | 37 | 65 | 92 | 197 | 355 | 560 | 1,170 |
| 250 | | NA | 16 | 33 | 58 | 82 | 175 | 315 | 496 | 1,030 |
| 300 | | NA | 15 | 30 | 52 | 74 | 158 | 285 | 449 | 936 |
| 350 | | NA | 14 | 28 | 48 | 68 | 146 | 262 | 414 | 861 |
| 400 | | NA | 13 | 26 | 45 | 63 | 136 | 244 | 385 | 801 |
| 450 | | NA | 12 | 24 | 42 | 60 | 127 | 229 | 361 | 752 |
| 500 | | NA | 11 | 23 | 40 | 56 | 120 | 216 | 341 | 710 |
| 550 | | NA | 11 | 22 | 38 | 53 | 114 | 205 | 324 | 674 |
| 600 | | NA | 10 | 21 | 36 | 51 | 109 | 196 | 309 | 643 |
| 650 | | NA | NA | 20 | 34 | 49 | 104 | 188 | 296 | 616 |
| 700 | | NA | NA | 19 | 33 | 47 | 100 | 180 | 284 | 592 |
| 750 | | NA | NA | 18 | 32 | 45 | 96 | 174 | 274 | 570 |
| 800 | | NA | NA | 18 | 31 | 44 | 93 | 168 | 264 | 551 |
| 850 | | NA | NA | 17 | 30 | 42 | 90 | 162 | 256 | 533 |
| 900 | | NA | NA | 17 | 29 | 41 | 87 | 157 | 248 | 517 |
| 950 | | NA | NA | 16 | 28 | 40 | 85 | 153 | 241 | 502 |
| 1,000 | | NA | NA | 16 | 27 | 39 | 83 | 149 | 234 | 488 |
| 1,100 | | NA | NA | 15 | 26 | 37 | 78 | 141 | 223 | 464 |
| 1,200 | | NA | NA | 14 | 25 | 35 | 75 | 135 | 212 | 442 |
| 1,300 | | NA | NA | 14 | 24 | 34 | 72 | 129 | 203 | 423 |
| 1,400 | | NA | NA | 13 | 23 | 32 | 69 | 124 | 195 | 407 |
| 1,500 | | NA | NA | 13 | 22 | 31 | 66 | 119 | 188 | 392 |
| 1,600 | | NA | NA | 12 | 21 | 30 | 64 | 115 | 182 | 378 |
| 1,700 | | NA | NA | 12 | 20 | 29 | 62 | 112 | 176 | 366 |
| 1,800 | | NA | NA | 11 | 20 | 28 | 60 | 108 | 170 | 355 |
| 1,900 | | NA | NA | 11 | 19 | 27 | 58 | 105 | 166 | 345 |
| 2,000 | | NA | NA | 11 | 19 | 27 | 57 | 102 | 161 | 335 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. NA means a flow of less than 10,000 Btu/hr.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 2.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(15) [402.4(29)]**
**SEMIRIGID COPPER TUBING**

| INTENDED USE | | Tube sizing between 2 psig service and line pressure regulator. | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | TUBE SIZE (in.) | | | | | | | | |
| Nominal | K & L | $^{1}/_{4}$ | $^{3}/_{8}$ | $^{1}/_{2}$ | $^{5}/_{8}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ | 1 | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 2 |
| | ACR | $^{3}/_{8}$ | $^{1}/_{2}$ | $^{5}/_{8}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ | $^{7}/_{8}$ | $1^{1}/_{8}$ | $1^{3}/_{8}$ | — | — |
| Outside | | 0.375 | 0.500 | 0.625 | 0.750 | 0.875 | 1.125 | 1.375 | 1.625 | 2.125 |
| Inside | | 0.305 | 0.402 | 0.527 | 0.652 | 0.745 | 0.995 | 1.245 | 1.481 | 1.959 |
| Length (ft) | | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | 413 | 852 | 1,730 | 3,030 | 4,300 | 9,170 | 16,500 | 26,000 | 54,200 |
| 20 | | 284 | 585 | 1,190 | 2,080 | 2,950 | 6,310 | 11,400 | 17,900 | 37,300 |
| 30 | | 228 | 470 | 956 | 1,670 | 2,370 | 5,060 | 9,120 | 14,400 | 29,900 |
| 40 | | 195 | 402 | 818 | 1,430 | 2,030 | 4,330 | 7,800 | 12,300 | 25,600 |
| 50 | | 173 | 356 | 725 | 1,270 | 1,800 | 3,840 | 6,920 | 10,900 | 22,700 |
| 60 | | 157 | 323 | 657 | 1,150 | 1,630 | 3,480 | 6,270 | 9,880 | 20,600 |
| 70 | | 144 | 297 | 605 | 1,060 | 1,500 | 3,200 | 5,760 | 9,090 | 18,900 |
| 80 | | 134 | 276 | 562 | 983 | 1,390 | 2,980 | 5,360 | 8,450 | 17,600 |
| 90 | | 126 | 259 | 528 | 922 | 1,310 | 2,790 | 5,030 | 7,930 | 16,500 |
| 100 | | 119 | 245 | 498 | 871 | 1,240 | 2,640 | 4,750 | 7,490 | 15,600 |
| 125 | | 105 | 217 | 442 | 772 | 1,100 | 2,340 | 4,210 | 6,640 | 13,800 |
| 150 | | 95 | 197 | 400 | 700 | 992 | 2,120 | 3,820 | 6,020 | 12,500 |
| 175 | | 88 | 181 | 368 | 644 | 913 | 1,950 | 3,510 | 5,540 | 11,500 |
| 200 | | 82 | 168 | 343 | 599 | 849 | 1,810 | 3,270 | 5,150 | 10,700 |
| 250 | | 72 | 149 | 304 | 531 | 753 | 1,610 | 2,900 | 4,560 | 9,510 |
| 300 | | 66 | 135 | 275 | 481 | 682 | 1,460 | 2,620 | 4,140 | 8,610 |
| 350 | | 60 | 124 | 253 | 442 | 628 | 1,340 | 2,410 | 3,800 | 7,920 |
| 400 | | 56 | 116 | 235 | 411 | 584 | 1,250 | 2,250 | 3,540 | 7,370 |
| 450 | | 53 | 109 | 221 | 386 | 548 | 1,170 | 2,110 | 3,320 | 6,920 |
| 500 | | 50 | 103 | 209 | 365 | 517 | 1,110 | 1,990 | 3,140 | 6,530 |
| 550 | | 47 | 97 | 198 | 346 | 491 | 1,050 | 1,890 | 2,980 | 6,210 |
| 600 | | 45 | 93 | 189 | 330 | 469 | 1,000 | 1,800 | 2,840 | 5,920 |
| 650 | | 43 | 89 | 181 | 316 | 449 | 959 | 1,730 | 2,720 | 5,670 |
| 700 | | 41 | 86 | 174 | 304 | 431 | 921 | 1,660 | 2,620 | 5,450 |
| 750 | | 40 | 82 | 168 | 293 | 415 | 888 | 1,600 | 2,520 | 5,250 |
| 800 | | 39 | 80 | 162 | 283 | 401 | 857 | 1,540 | 2,430 | 5,070 |
| 850 | | 37 | 77 | 157 | 274 | 388 | 829 | 1,490 | 2,350 | 4,900 |
| 900 | | 36 | 75 | 152 | 265 | 376 | 804 | 1,450 | 2,280 | 4,750 |
| 950 | | 35 | 72 | 147 | 258 | 366 | 781 | 1,410 | 2,220 | 4,620 |
| 1,000 | | 34 | 71 | 143 | 251 | 356 | 760 | 1,370 | 2,160 | 4,490 |
| 1,100 | | 32 | 67 | 136 | 238 | 338 | 721 | 1,300 | 2,050 | 4,270 |
| 1,200 | | 31 | 64 | 130 | 227 | 322 | 688 | 1,240 | 1,950 | 4,070 |
| 1,300 | | 30 | 61 | 124 | 217 | 309 | 659 | 1,190 | 1,870 | 3,900 |
| 1,400 | | 28 | 59 | 120 | 209 | 296 | 633 | 1,140 | 1,800 | 3,740 |
| 1,500 | | 27 | 57 | 115 | 201 | 286 | 610 | 1,100 | 1,730 | 3,610 |
| 1,600 | | 26 | 55 | 111 | 194 | 276 | 589 | 1,060 | 1,670 | 3,480 |
| 1,700 | | 26 | 53 | 108 | 188 | 267 | 570 | 1,030 | 1,620 | 3,370 |
| 1,800 | | 25 | 51 | 104 | 182 | 259 | 553 | 1,000 | 1,570 | 3,270 |
| 1,900 | | 24 | 50 | 101 | 177 | 251 | 537 | 966 | 1,520 | 3,170 |
| 2,000 | | 23 | 48 | 99 | 172 | 244 | 522 | 940 | 1,480 | 3,090 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.
2. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 11.0 in. w.c. |
| Pressure Drop | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(16) [402.4(30)]**
**CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)**

| INTENDED USE | Sizing between single or second stage (low pressure) regulator and the appliance shutoff valve. | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | TUBE SIZE (EHD) | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Flow Designation | 13 | 15 | 18 | 19 | 23 | 25 | 30 | 31 | 37 | 39 | 46 | 48 | 60 | 62 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | 72 | 99 | 181 | 211 | 355 | 426 | 744 | 863 | 1,420 | 1,638 | 2,830 | 3,270 | 5,780 | 6,550 |
| 10 | 50 | 69 | 129 | 150 | 254 | 303 | 521 | 605 | 971 | 1,179 | 1,990 | 2,320 | 4,110 | 4,640 |
| 15 | 39 | 55 | 104 | 121 | 208 | 248 | 422 | 490 | 775 | 972 | 1,620 | 1,900 | 3,370 | 3,790 |
| 20 | 34 | 49 | 91 | 106 | 183 | 216 | 365 | 425 | 661 | 847 | 1,400 | 1,650 | 2,930 | 3,290 |
| 25 | 30 | 42 | 82 | 94 | 164 | 192 | 325 | 379 | 583 | 762 | 1,250 | 1,480 | 2,630 | 2,940 |
| 30 | 28 | 39 | 74 | 87 | 151 | 177 | 297 | 344 | 528 | 698 | 1,140 | 1,350 | 2,400 | 2,680 |
| 40 | 23 | 33 | 64 | 74 | 131 | 153 | 256 | 297 | 449 | 610 | 988 | 1,170 | 2,090 | 2,330 |
| 50 | 20 | 30 | 58 | 66 | 118 | 137 | 227 | 265 | 397 | 548 | 884 | 1,050 | 1,870 | 2,080 |
| 60 | 19 | 26 | 53 | 60 | 107 | 126 | 207 | 241 | 359 | 502 | 805 | 961 | 1,710 | 1,900 |
| 70 | 17 | 25 | 49 | 57 | 99 | 117 | 191 | 222 | 330 | 466 | 745 | 890 | 1,590 | 1,760 |
| 80 | 15 | 23 | 45 | 52 | 94 | 109 | 178 | 208 | 307 | 438 | 696 | 833 | 1,490 | 1,650 |
| 90 | 15 | 22 | 44 | 50 | 90 | 102 | 169 | 197 | 286 | 414 | 656 | 787 | 1,400 | 1,550 |
| 100 | 14 | 20 | 41 | 47 | 85 | 98 | 159 | 186 | 270 | 393 | 621 | 746 | 1,330 | 1,480 |
| 150 | 11 | 15 | 31 | 36 | 66 | 75 | 123 | 143 | 217 | 324 | 506 | 611 | 1,090 | 1,210 |
| 200 | 9 | 14 | 28 | 33 | 60 | 69 | 112 | 129 | 183 | 283 | 438 | 531 | 948 | 1,050 |
| 250 | 8 | 12 | 25 | 30 | 53 | 61 | 99 | 117 | 163 | 254 | 390 | 476 | 850 | 934 |
| 300 | 8 | 11 | 23 | 26 | 50 | 57 | 90 | 107 | 147 | 234 | 357 | 434 | 777 | 854 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa,
1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where $L$ is additional length (feet) of tubing and $n$ is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
2. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
3. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 2.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(17) [402.4(31)]**
**CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)**

| INTENDED USE | Sizing between 2 psi service and the line pressure regulator. | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | TUBE SIZE (EHD) | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Flow Designation | 13 | 15 | 18 | 19 | 23 | 25 | 30 | 31 | 37 | 39 | 46 | 48 | 60 | 62 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 426 | 558 | 927 | 1,110 | 1,740 | 2,170 | 4,100 | 4,720 | 7,130 | 7,958 | 15,200 | 16,800 | 29,400 | 34,200 |
| 25 | 262 | 347 | 591 | 701 | 1,120 | 1,380 | 2,560 | 2,950 | 4,560 | 5,147 | 9,550 | 10,700 | 18,800 | 21,700 |
| 30 | 238 | 316 | 540 | 640 | 1,030 | 1,270 | 2,330 | 2,690 | 4,180 | 4,719 | 8,710 | 9,790 | 17,200 | 19,800 |
| 40 | 203 | 271 | 469 | 554 | 896 | 1,100 | 2,010 | 2,320 | 3,630 | 4,116 | 7,530 | 8,500 | 14,900 | 17,200 |
| 50 | 181 | 243 | 420 | 496 | 806 | 986 | 1,790 | 2,070 | 3,260 | 3,702 | 6,730 | 7,610 | 13,400 | 15,400 |
| 75 | 147 | 196 | 344 | 406 | 663 | 809 | 1,460 | 1,690 | 2,680 | 3,053 | 5,480 | 6,230 | 11,000 | 12,600 |
| 80 | 140 | 189 | 333 | 393 | 643 | 768 | 1,410 | 1,630 | 2,590 | 2,961 | 5,300 | 6,040 | 10,600 | 12,200 |
| 100 | 124 | 169 | 298 | 350 | 578 | 703 | 1,260 | 1,450 | 2,330 | 2,662 | 4,740 | 5,410 | 9,530 | 10,900 |
| 150 | 101 | 137 | 245 | 287 | 477 | 575 | 1,020 | 1,180 | 1,910 | 2,195 | 3,860 | 4,430 | 7,810 | 8,890 |
| 200 | 86 | 118 | 213 | 248 | 415 | 501 | 880 | 1,020 | 1,660 | 1,915 | 3,340 | 3,840 | 6,780 | 7,710 |
| 250 | 77 | 105 | 191 | 222 | 373 | 448 | 785 | 910 | 1,490 | 1,722 | 2,980 | 3,440 | 6,080 | 6,900 |
| 300 | 69 | 96 | 173 | 203 | 343 | 411 | 716 | 829 | 1,360 | 1,578 | 2,720 | 3,150 | 5,560 | 6,300 |
| 400 | 60 | 82 | 151 | 175 | 298 | 355 | 616 | 716 | 1,160 | 1,376 | 2,350 | 2,730 | 4,830 | 5,460 |
| 500 | 53 | 72 | 135 | 158 | 268 | 319 | 550 | 638 | 1,030 | 1,237 | 2,100 | 2,450 | 4,330 | 4,880 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds $^1/_2$ psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator can vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with the regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where $L$ is additional length (feet) of tubing and $n$ is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
4. EHD—Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 5.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 3.5 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(18) [402.4(32)]**
**CORRUGATED STAINLESS STEEL TUBING (CSST)**

| | TUBE SIZE (EHD) | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Flow Designation | 13 | 15 | 18 | 19 | 23 | 25 | 30 | 31 | 37 | 39 | 46 | 48 | 60 | 62 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | 826 | 1,070 | 1,710 | 2,060 | 3,150 | 4,000 | 7,830 | 8,950 | 13,100 | 14,441 | 28,600 | 31,200 | 54,400 | 63,800 |
| 25 | 509 | 664 | 1,090 | 1,310 | 2,040 | 2,550 | 4,860 | 5,600 | 8,400 | 9,339 | 18,000 | 19,900 | 34,700 | 40,400 |
| 30 | 461 | 603 | 999 | 1,190 | 1,870 | 2,340 | 4,430 | 5,100 | 7,680 | 8,564 | 16,400 | 18,200 | 31,700 | 36,900 |
| 40 | 396 | 520 | 867 | 1,030 | 1,630 | 2,030 | 3,820 | 4,400 | 6,680 | 7,469 | 14,200 | 15,800 | 27,600 | 32,000 |
| 50 | 352 | 463 | 777 | 926 | 1,460 | 1,820 | 3,410 | 3,930 | 5,990 | 6,717 | 12,700 | 14,100 | 24,700 | 28,600 |
| 75 | 284 | 376 | 637 | 757 | 1,210 | 1,490 | 2,770 | 3,190 | 4,920 | 5,539 | 10,300 | 11,600 | 20,300 | 23,400 |
| 80 | 275 | 363 | 618 | 731 | 1,170 | 1,450 | 2,680 | 3,090 | 4,770 | 5,372 | 9,990 | 11,200 | 19,600 | 22,700 |
| 100 | 243 | 324 | 553 | 656 | 1,050 | 1,300 | 2,390 | 2,760 | 4,280 | 4,830 | 8,930 | 10,000 | 17,600 | 20,300 |
| 150 | 196 | 262 | 453 | 535 | 866 | 1,060 | 1,940 | 2,240 | 3,510 | 3,983 | 7,270 | 8,210 | 14,400 | 16,600 |
| 200 | 169 | 226 | 393 | 464 | 755 | 923 | 1,680 | 1,930 | 3,050 | 3,474 | 6,290 | 7,130 | 12,500 | 14,400 |
| 250 | 150 | 202 | 352 | 415 | 679 | 828 | 1,490 | 1,730 | 2,740 | 3,124 | 5,620 | 6,390 | 11,200 | 12,900 |
| 300 | 136 | 183 | 322 | 379 | 622 | 757 | 1,360 | 1,570 | 2,510 | 2,865 | 5,120 | 5,840 | 10,300 | 11,700 |
| 400 | 117 | 158 | 279 | 328 | 542 | 657 | 1,170 | 1,360 | 2,180 | 2,498 | 4,430 | 5,070 | 8,920 | 10,200 |
| 500 | 104 | 140 | 251 | 294 | 488 | 589 | 1,050 | 1,210 | 1,950 | 2,247 | 3,960 | 4,540 | 8,000 | 9,110 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3$/h, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Notes:**

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds1 psi, DO NOT USE THIS TABLE. Consult with the regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator can vary with the flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in the table might exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with the tubing manufacturer for guidance.
3. Table includes losses for four 90-degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$ where $L$ is additional length (feet) of tubing and $n$ is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
4. EHD— Equivalent Hydraulic Diameter, which is a measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.
5. All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 11.0 in. w.c. |
| Pressure Drop | 0.5 in. w.c. |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

### TABLE G2413.4(19) [402.4(33)]
### POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE

| INTENDED USE | PE pipe sizing between integral 2-stage regulator at tank or second stage (low pressure regulator) and building. | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| PIPE SIZE (in.) | | | | | | |
| Nominal OD | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 |
| Designation | SDR 9.33 | SDR 11.0 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 10.00 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 11.00 |
| Actual ID | 0.660 | 0.860 | 1.077 | 1.328 | 1.554 | 1.943 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | |
| 10 | 340 | 680 | 1,230 | 2,130 | 3,210 | 5,770 |
| 20 | 233 | 468 | 844 | 1,460 | 2,210 | 3,970 |
| 30 | 187 | 375 | 677 | 1,170 | 1,770 | 3,180 |
| 40 | 160 | 321 | 580 | 1,000 | 1,520 | 2,730 |
| 50 | 142 | 285 | 514 | 890 | 1,340 | 2,420 |
| 60 | 129 | 258 | 466 | 807 | 1,220 | 2,190 |
| 70 | 119 | 237 | 428 | 742 | 1,120 | 2,010 |
| 80 | 110 | 221 | 398 | 690 | 1,040 | 1,870 |
| 90 | 103 | 207 | 374 | 648 | 978 | 1,760 |
| 100 | 98 | 196 | 353 | 612 | 924 | 1,660 |
| 125 | 87 | 173 | 313 | 542 | 819 | 1,470 |
| 150 | 78 | 157 | 284 | 491 | 742 | 1,330 |
| 175 | 72 | 145 | 261 | 452 | 683 | 1,230 |
| 200 | 67 | 135 | 243 | 420 | 635 | 1,140 |
| 250 | 60 | 119 | 215 | 373 | 563 | 1,010 |
| 300 | 54 | 108 | 195 | 338 | 510 | 916 |
| 350 | 50 | 99 | 179 | 311 | 469 | 843 |
| 400 | 46 | 92 | 167 | 289 | 436 | 784 |
| 450 | 43 | 87 | 157 | 271 | 409 | 736 |
| 500 | 41 | 82 | 148 | 256 | 387 | 695 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

| Gas | Undiluted Propane |
|---|---|
| Inlet Pressure | 2.0 psi |
| Pressure Drop | 1.0 psi |
| Specific Gravity | 1.50 |

**TABLE G2413.4(20) [402.4(34)]**
**POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC PIPE**

| INTENDED USE | PE pipe sizing between 2 psig service regulator and line pressure regulator. | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PIPE SIZE (in.) | | | | | |
| Nominal OD | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 |
| Designation | SDR 9.33 | SDR 11.0 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 10.00 | SDR 11.00 | SDR 11.00 |
| Actual ID | 0.660 | 0.860 | 1.077 | 1.328 | 1.554 | 1.943 |
| Length (ft) | Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour | | | | | |
| 10 | 3,130 | 6,260 | 11,300 | 19,600 | 29,500 | 53,100 |
| 20 | 2,150 | 4,300 | 7,760 | 13,400 | 20,300 | 36,500 |
| 30 | 1,730 | 3,450 | 6,230 | 10,800 | 16,300 | 29,300 |
| 40 | 1,480 | 2,960 | 5,330 | 9,240 | 14,000 | 25,100 |
| 50 | 1,310 | 2,620 | 4,730 | 8,190 | 12,400 | 22,200 |
| 60 | 1,190 | 2,370 | 4,280 | 7,420 | 11,200 | 20,100 |
| 70 | 1,090 | 2,180 | 3,940 | 6,830 | 10,300 | 18,500 |
| 80 | 1,010 | 2,030 | 3,670 | 6,350 | 9,590 | 17,200 |
| 90 | 952 | 1,910 | 3,440 | 5,960 | 9,000 | 16,200 |
| 100 | 899 | 1,800 | 3,250 | 5,630 | 8,500 | 15,300 |
| 125 | 797 | 1,600 | 2,880 | 4,990 | 7,530 | 13,500 |
| 150 | 722 | 1,450 | 2,610 | 4,520 | 6,830 | 12,300 |
| 175 | 664 | 1,330 | 2,400 | 4,160 | 6,280 | 11,300 |
| 200 | 618 | 1,240 | 2,230 | 3,870 | 5,840 | 10,500 |
| 250 | 548 | 1,100 | 1,980 | 3,430 | 5,180 | 9,300 |
| 300 | 496 | 994 | 1,790 | 3,110 | 4,690 | 8,430 |
| 350 | 457 | 914 | 1,650 | 2,860 | 4,320 | 7,760 |
| 400 | 425 | 851 | 1,530 | 2,660 | 4,020 | 7,220 |
| 450 | 399 | 798 | 1,440 | 2,500 | 3,770 | 6,770 |
| 500 | 377 | 754 | 1,360 | 2,360 | 3,560 | 6,390 |
| 550 | 358 | 716 | 1,290 | 2,240 | 3,380 | 6,070 |
| 600 | 341 | 683 | 1,230 | 2,140 | 3,220 | 5,790 |
| 650 | 327 | 654 | 1,180 | 2,040 | 3,090 | 5,550 |
| 700 | 314 | 628 | 1,130 | 1,960 | 2,970 | 5,330 |
| 750 | 302 | 605 | 1,090 | 1,890 | 2,860 | 5,140 |
| 800 | 292 | 585 | 1,050 | 1,830 | 2,760 | 4,960 |
| 850 | 283 | 566 | 1,020 | 1,770 | 2,670 | 4,800 |
| 900 | 274 | 549 | 990 | 1,710 | 2,590 | 4,650 |
| 950 | 266 | 533 | 961 | 1,670 | 2,520 | 4,520 |
| 1,000 | 259 | 518 | 935 | 1,620 | 2,450 | 4,400 |
| 1,100 | 246 | 492 | 888 | 1,540 | 2,320 | 4,170 |
| 1,200 | 234 | 470 | 847 | 1,470 | 2,220 | 3,980 |
| 1,300 | 225 | 450 | 811 | 1,410 | 2,120 | 3,810 |
| 1,400 | 216 | 432 | 779 | 1,350 | 2,040 | 3,660 |
| 1,500 | 208 | 416 | 751 | 1,300 | 1,960 | 3,530 |
| 1,600 | 201 | 402 | 725 | 1,260 | 1,900 | 3,410 |
| 1,700 | 194 | 389 | 702 | 1,220 | 1,840 | 3,300 |
| 1,800 | 188 | 377 | 680 | 1,180 | 1,780 | 3,200 |
| 1,900 | 183 | 366 | 661 | 1,140 | 1,730 | 3,110 |
| 2,000 | 178 | 356 | 643 | 1,110 | 1,680 | 3,020 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

**TABLE G2413.4(21) [402.4(35)]**
**POLYETHYLENE PLASTIC TUBING**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Gas** | Undiluted Propane | |
| **Inlet Pressure** | 11.0 in. w.c. | |
| **Pressure Drop** | 0.5 in. w.c. | |
| **Specific Gravity** | 1.50 | |
| **INTENDED USE** | **PE pipe sizing between integral 2-stage regulator at tank or second stage (low pressure regulator) and building.** | |
| | **Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (in.)** | |
| **Nominal OD** | $^1/_2$ | 1 |
| **Designation** | SDR 7.00 | SDR 11.00 |
| **Actual ID** | 0.445 | 0.927 |
| **Length (ft)** | **Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour** | |
| 10 | 121 | 828 |
| 20 | 83 | 569 |
| 30 | 67 | 457 |
| 40 | 57 | 391 |
| 50 | 51 | 347 |
| 60 | 46 | 314 |
| 70 | 42 | 289 |
| 80 | 39 | 269 |
| 90 | 37 | 252 |
| 100 | 35 | 238 |
| 125 | 31 | 211 |
| 150 | 28 | 191 |
| 175 | 26 | 176 |
| 200 | 24 | 164 |
| 225 | 22 | 154 |
| 250 | 21 | 145 |
| 275 | 20 | 138 |
| 300 | 19 | 132 |
| 350 | 18 | 121 |
| 400 | 16 | 113 |
| 450 | 15 | 106 |
| 500 | 15 | 100 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1-inch water column = 0.2488 kPa, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 cubic foot per hour = 0.0283 $m^3/h$, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**Note:** All table entries have been rounded to three significant digits.

## SECTION G2414 (403) PIPING MATERIALS

**G2414.1 (403.1) General.** Materials used for piping systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter or shall be *approved*.

**G2414.2 (403.2) Used materials.** *Pipe*, fittings, *valves* or other materials shall not be used again unless they are free of foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended.

**G2414.3 (403.3) Other materials.** Material not covered by the standards specifications listed herein shall be investigated and tested to determine that it is safe and suitable for the proposed service, and, in addition, shall be recommended for that service by the manufacturer and shall be *approved* by the *code official*.

**G2414.4 (403.4) Metallic pipe.** Metallic *pipe* shall comply with Sections G2414.4.1 and G2414.4.2.

**G2414.4.1 (403.4.1) Cast iron.** Cast-iron *pipe* shall not be used.

**G2414.4.2 (403.4.2) Steel.** Steel and wrought-iron *pipe* shall be at least of standard weight (Schedule 40) and shall comply with one of the following:

1. ASME B 36.10, 10M;
2. ASTM A 53/A 53M; or
3. ASTM A 106.

**G2414.5 (403.5) Metallic tubing.** Seamless copper, aluminum alloy or steel *tubing* shall be permitted to be used with gases not corrosive to such material.

**G2414.5.1 (403.5.1) Steel tubing.** Steel *tubing* shall comply with ASTM A 254.

**G2414.5.2 (403.5.2) Copper tubing.** Copper *tubing* shall comply with standard Type K or L of ASTM B 88 or ASTM B 280.

Copper and brass *tubing* shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 standard cubic feet of gas (0.7 milligrams per 100 liters).

**G2414.5.3 (403.5.4) Corrugated stainless steel tubing.** Corrugated stainless steel *tubing* shall be listed in accordance with ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26.

**G2414.6 (403.6) Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings.** *Plastic pipe, tubing* and fittings used to supply *fuel gas* shall conform to ASTM D 2513. *Pipe* shall be marked "Gas" and "ASTM D 2513."

**G2414.6.1 (403.6.1) Anodeless risers.** *Anodeless risers* shall comply with the following:

1. Factory-assembled *anodeless risers* shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used and shall be leak-tested by the manufacturer in accordance with written procedures.
2. Service head adapters and field-assembled *anodeless risers* incorporating service head adapters shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used by the manufacturer and shall be designed certified to meet the requirements of Category I of ASTM D 2513, and U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.281(e). The manufacturer shall provide the user qualified installation instructions as prescribed by the U.S. Department of Transportation, Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Part 192.283(b).

**G2414.6.2 (403.6.2) LP-gas systems.** The use of plastic *pipe, tubing* and fittings in undiluted *liquefied petroleum gas piping systems* shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

**G2414.6.3 (403.6.3) Regulator vent piping.** Plastic *pipe*, *tubing* and fittings used to connect *regulator* vents to remote vent terminations shall be of PVC conforming to ANSI/UL 651. PVC vent *piping* shall not be installed indoors.

**G2414.7 (403.7) Workmanship and defects.** *Pipe* or *tubing* and fittings shall be clear and free from cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading, and shall be thoroughly brushed, and chip and scale blown.

Defects in *pipe* or *tubing* or fittings shall not be repaired. Defective *pipe*, *tubing* or fittings shall be replaced. (See Section G2417.1.2.)

**G2414.8 (403.8) Protective coating.** Where in contact with material or atmosphere exerting a corrosive action, metallic *piping* and fittings coated with a corrosion-resistant material shall be used. External or internal coatings or linings used on *piping* or components shall not be considered as adding strength.

**G2414.9 (403.9) Metallic pipe threads.** Metallic *pipe* and fitting threads shall be taper *pipe* threads and shall comply with ASME B1.20.1.

**G2414.9.1 (403.9.1) Damaged threads.** *Pipe* with threads that are stripped, chipped, corroded or otherwise damaged shall not be used. If a weld opens during the operation of cutting or threading, that portion of the *pipe* shall not be used.

**G2414.9.2 (403.9.2) Number of threads.** Field threading of metallic *pipe* shall be in accordance with Table G2414.9.2.

**TABLE G2414.9.2 (403.9.2)**
**SPECIFICATIONS FOR THREADING METALLIC PIPE**

| IRON PIPE SIZE (inches) | APPROXIMATE LENGTH OF THREADED PORTION (inches) | APPROXIMATE NO. OF THREADS TO BE CUT |
|---|---|---|
| $^{1}/_{2}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ | 10 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ | 10 |
| 1 | $^{7}/_{8}$ | 10 |
| $1^{1}/_{4}$ | 1 | 11 |
| $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 1 | 11 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**G2414.9.3 (403.9.3) Thread compounds.** Thread (joint) compounds (*pipe* dope) shall be resistant to the action of *liquefied petroleum gas* or to any other chemical constituents of the gases to be conducted through the *piping*.

**G2414.10 (403.10) Metallic piping joints and fittings.** The type of *piping* joint used shall be suitable for the pressure-temperature conditions and shall be selected giving consideration to joint tightness and mechanical strength under the service conditions. The joint shall be able to sustain the maximum end force due to the internal pressure and any additional forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, fatigue, or to the weight of the *pipe* and its contents.

**G2414.10.1 (403.10.1) Pipe joints.** *Pipe* joints shall be threaded, flanged, brazed or welded. Where nonferrous *pipe* is brazed, the *brazing* materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). *Brazing* alloys shall not contain more than 0.05-percent phosphorus.

**G2414.10.2 (403.10.2) Tubing joints.** *Tubing* joints shall be made with *approved gas tubing* fittings or be brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) or made with press-connect fittings complying with ANSI LC-4. *Brazing alloys* shall not contain more than 0.05-percent phosphorus.

**G2414.10.3 (403.10.3) Flared joints.** *Flared joints* shall be used only in systems constructed from nonferrous *pipe* and *tubing* where experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions and where provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints.

**G2414.10.4 (403.10.4) Metallic fittings.** Metallic fittings, including *valves*, strainers and filters shall comply with the following:

1. Fittings used with steel or wrought-iron *pipe* shall be steel, brass, bronze, malleable iron, ductile iron or cast iron.
2. Fittings used with copper or brass *pipe* shall be copper, brass or bronze.
3. Cast-iron bushings shall be prohibited.
4. Special fittings. Fittings such as couplings, proprietary-type joints, saddle tees, gland-type compression fittings, and flared, flareless or compression-type *tubing* fittings shall be: used within the fitting manufacturer's pressure-temperature recommendations; used within the service conditions anticipated with respect to vibration, fatigue, thermal expansion or contraction; installed or braced to prevent separation of the joint by gas pressure or external physical damage; and shall be *approved*.

**G2414.11 (403.11) Plastic piping, joints and fittings.** Plastic *pipe, tubing* and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Such joints shall comply with the following:

1. The joints shall be designed and installed so that the longitudinal pull-out resistance of the joints will be at least equal to the tensile strength of the plastic *piping* material.
2. Heat-fusion joints shall be made in accordance with qualified procedures that have been established and proven by test to produce gas-tight joints at least as strong as the *pipe* or *tubing* being joined. Joints shall be made with the joining method recommended by the *pipe* manufacturer. Heat fusion fittings shall be marked "ASTM D 2513."
3. Where compression-type *mechanical joints* are used, the gasket material in the fitting shall be compatible with the plastic *piping* and with the gas distributed by the system. An internal tubular rigid stiffener shall be used in conjunction with the fitting. The stiffener shall be flush with the end of the *pipe* or *tubing* and shall extend at least to the outside end of the compression fitting when installed.

The stiffener shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be a force fit in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used.

4. Plastic *piping* joints and fittings for use in *liquefied petroleum gas piping systems* shall be in accordance with NFPA 58.

## SECTION G2415 (404) PIPING SYSTEM INSTALLATION

**G2415.1 (404.1) Prohibited locations.** *Piping* shall not be installed in or through a ducted supply, return or exhaust, or a clothes chute, *chimney* or gas vent, dumbwaiter or elevator *shaft. Piping* installed downstream of the *point of delivery* shall not extend through any townhouse unit other than the unit served by such *piping*.

**G2415.2 (404.2) Piping in solid partitions and walls.** *Concealed piping* shall not be located in solid partitions and solid walls, unless installed in a chase or casing.

**G2415.3 (404.3) Piping in concealed locations.** Portions of a *piping system* installed in *concealed locations* shall not have unions, *tubing* fittings, right and left couplings, bushings, compression couplings, and swing joints made by combinations of fittings.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Tubing* joined by *brazing*.
2. Fittings listed for use in *concealed locations*.

**G2415.4 (404.4) Underground penetrations prohibited.** *Gas piping* shall not penetrate building foundation walls at any point below grade. *Gas piping* shall enter and exit a building at a point above grade and the annular space between the *pipe* and the wall shall be sealed.

**G2415.5 (404.5) Protection against physical damage.** In *concealed locations*, where *piping* other than black or galvanized steel is installed through holes or notches in wood studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the *pipe* shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575-inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 Gage) shall cover the area of the *pipe* where the member is notched or bored and shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above sole plates, below top plates and to each side of a stud, joist or rafter.

**G2415.6 (404.6) Piping in solid floors.** *Piping* in solid floors shall be laid in channels in the floor and covered in a manner that will allow access to the *piping* with a minimum amount of damage to the building. Where such *piping* is subject to exposure to excessive moisture or corrosive substances, the *piping* shall be protected in an *approved* manner. As an alternative to installation in channels, the *piping* shall be installed in a conduit of Schedule 40 steel, wrought iron, PVC or ABS *pipe* in accordance with Section G2415.6.1 or G2415.6.2.

**G2415.6.1 (404.6.1) Conduit with one end terminating outdoors.** The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the *gas piping* shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the *pipe* emerges from the floor. If the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas *pipe,* the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the *pipe*. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside of the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

**G2415.6.2 (404.6.2) Conduit with both ends terminating indoors.** Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the *pipe* emerges from the floor.

**G2415.7 (404.7) Above-ground piping outdoors.** All *piping* installed outdoors shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (152 mm) above ground and where installed across roof surfaces, shall be elevated not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (152 mm) above the roof surface. *Piping* installed above ground, outdoors, and installed across the surface of roofs shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage. Where passing through an outside wall, the *piping* shall also be protected against corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material. Where *piping* is encased in a protective *pipe* sleeve, the annular space between the *piping* and the sleeve shall be sealed.

**G2415.8 (404.8) Isolation.** Metallic *piping* and metallic *tubing* that conveys *fuel gas* from an LP-gas storage container shall be provided with an *approved* dielectric fitting to electrically isolate the underground portion of the *pipe* or tube from the above ground portion that enters a building. Such dielectric fitting shall be installed aboveground outdoors.

**G2415.9 (404.9) Protection against corrosion.** Metallic *pipe* or *tubing* exposed to corrosive action, such as soil condition or moisture, shall be protected in an *approved* manner. Zinc coatings (galvanizing) shall not be deemed adequate protection for *gas piping* underground. Where dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used. *Piping* shall not be laid in contact with cinders.

**G2415.9.1 (404.9.1) Prohibited use.** Uncoated threaded or socket welded joints shall not be used in *piping* in contact with soil or where internal or external crevice corrosion is known to occur.

**G2415.9.2 (404.9.2) Protective coatings and wrapping.** *Pipe* protective coatings and wrappings shall be *approved* for the application and shall be factory applied.

**Exception:** Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, field application of coatings and wrappings shall be permitted for *pipe* nipples, fittings and locations where the factory coating or wrapping has been damaged or necessarily removed at joints.

**G2415.10 (404.10) Minimum burial depth.** Underground *piping systems* shall be installed a minimum depth of 12 inches (305 mm) below grade, except as provided for in Section G2415.10.1.

**G2415.10.1 (404.10.1) Individual outside appliances.** Individual lines to outside lights, grills or other *appliances* shall be installed a minimum of 8 inches (203 mm) below finished grade, provided that such installation is *approved* and is installed in locations not susceptible to physical damage.

**G2415.11 (404.11) Trenches.** The trench shall be graded so that the *pipe* has a firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench.

**G2415.12 (404.12) Piping underground beneath buildings.** *Piping* installed underground beneath buildings is prohibited except where the *piping* is encased in a conduit of wrought iron, plastic *pipe*, steel *pipe* or other *approved* conduit material designed to withstand the superimposed loads. The conduit shall be protected from corrosion in accordance with Section G2415.9 and shall be installed in accordance with Section G2415.12.1 or G2415.12.2.

**G2415.12.1 (404.12.1) Conduit with one end terminating outdoors.** The conduit shall extend into an occupiable portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the *gas piping* shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the *pipe* emerges from the floor. Where the end sealing is capable of withstanding the full pressure of the gas *pipe*, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the *pipe*. Such conduit shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) outside the building, shall be vented above grade to the outdoors and shall be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

**G2415.12.2 (404.12.2) Conduit with both ends terminating indoors.** Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed. The conduit shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond the point where the *pipe* emerges from the floor.

**G2415.13 (404.13) Outlet closures.** Gas *outlets* that do not connect to *appliances* shall be capped gas tight.

**Exception:** Listed and labeled flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and listed and labeled *gas convenience outlets* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2415.14 (404.14) Location of outlets.** The unthreaded portion of *piping outlets* shall extend not less than l inch (25 mm) through finished ceilings and walls and where extending through floors, outdoor patios and slabs, shall not be less than 2 inches (51 mm) above them. The *outlet* fitting or *piping* shall be securely supported. *Outlets* shall not be placed behind doors. *Outlets* shall be located in the room or space where the *appliance* is installed.

**Exception:** Listed and labeled flush-mounted-type quick-disconnect devices and listed and labeled *gas convenience outlets* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2415.15 (404.15) Plastic pipe.** The installation of plastic *pipe* shall comply with Sections G2415.15.1 through G2415.15.3.

**G2415.15.1 (404.15.1) Limitations.** Plastic *pipe* shall be installed outdoors underground only. Plastic *pipe* shall not be used within or under any building or slab or be operated at pressures greater than 100 psig (689 kPa) for natural gas or 30 psig (207 kPa) for LP-gas.

**Exceptions:**

1. Plastic *pipe* shall be permitted to terminate above ground outside of buildings where installed in premanufactured *anodeless risers* or service head adapter risers that are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Plastic *pipe* shall be permitted to terminate with a wall head adapter within buildings where the plastic *pipe* is inserted in a *piping* material for *fuel gas* use in buildings.
3. Plastic pipe shall be permitted under outdoor patio, walkway and driveway slabs provided that the burial depth complies with Section G2415.10.

**G2415.15.2 (404.15.2) Connections.** Connections outdoors and underground between metallic and plastic *piping* shall be made only with transition fittings conforming to ASTM D 2513 Category I or ASTM F 1973.

**G2415.15.3 (404.15.3) Tracer.** A yellow insulated copper tracer wire or other *approved* conductor shall be installed adjacent to underground nonmetallic *piping*. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate above ground at each end of the nonmetallic *piping*. The tracer wire size shall not be less than 18 AWG and the insulation type shall be suitable for direct burial.

**G2415.16 (404.16) Prohibited devices.** A device shall not be placed inside the *piping* or fittings that will reduce the cross-sectional area or otherwise obstruct the free flow of gas.

**Exception:** *Approved* gas filters.

**G2415.17 (404.17) Testing of piping.** Before any system of *piping* is put in service or concealed, it shall be tested to ensure that it is gas tight. Testing, inspection and purging of *piping systems* shall comply with Section G2417.

## SECTION G2416 (405)
## PIPING BENDS AND CHANGES IN DIRECTION

**G2416.1 (405.1) General.** Changes in direction of *pipe* shall be permitted to be made by the use of fittings, factory bends or field bends.

**G2416.2 (405.2) Metallic pipe.** Metallic *pipe* bends shall comply with the following:

1. Bends shall be made only with bending tools and procedures intended for that purpose.
2. All bends shall be smooth and free from buckling, cracks or other evidence of mechanical damage.
3. The longitudinal weld of the *pipe* shall be near the neutral axis of the bend.

4. *Pipe* shall not be bent through an arc of more than 90 degrees (1.6 rad).
5. The inside radius of a bend shall be not less than six times the outside diameter of the *pipe*.

**G2416.3 (405.3) Plastic pipe.** Plastic *pipe* bends shall comply with the following:

1. The *pipe* shall not be damaged and the internal diameter of the *pipe* shall not be effectively reduced.
2. Joints shall not be located in *pipe* bends.
3. The radius of the inner curve of such bends shall not be less than 25 times the inside diameter of the *pipe*.
4. Where the *piping* manufacturer specifies the use of special bending tools or procedures, such tools or procedures shall be used.

## SECTION G2417 (406) INSPECTION, TESTING AND PURGING

**G2417.1 (406.1) General.** Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all *piping* installations shall be inspected and *pressure tested* to determine that the materials, design, fabrication, and installation practices comply with the requirements of this *code*.

**G2417.1.1 (406.1.1) Inspections.** Inspection shall consist of visual examination, during or after manufacture, fabrication, assembly or *pressure tests* as appropriate.

**G2417.1.2 (406.1.2) Repairs and additions.** In the event repairs or additions are made after the *pressure test*, the affected *piping* shall be tested.

Minor repairs and additions are not required to be *pressure tested* provided that the work is inspected and connections are tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other *approved* leak-detecting methods.

**G2417.1.3 (406.1.3) New branches.** Where new branches are installed to new *appliances*, only the newly installed branches shall be required to be *pressure tested*. Connections between the new *piping* and the existing *piping* shall be tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other *approved* leak-detecting methods.

**G2417.1.4 (406.1.4) Section testing.** A *piping system* shall be permitted to be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a *valve* in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the *piping system* and test medium in an adjacent section, unless two *valves* are installed in series with a valved "tell-tale" located between these *valves*. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the test pressure.

**G2417.1.5 (406.1.5) Regulators and valve assemblies.** *Regulator* and valve assemblies fabricated independently of the *piping system* in which they are to be installed shall be permitted to be tested with inert gas or air at the time of fabrication.

**G2417.2 (406.2) Test medium.** The test medium shall be air, nitrogen, carbon dioxide or an inert gas. Oxygen shall not be used.

**G2417.3 (406.3) Test preparation.** *Pipe* joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test.

**Exception:** Covered or *concealed pipe* end joints that have been previously tested in accordance with this *code*.

**G2417.3.1 (406.3.1) Expansion joints.** Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required, for the additional thrust load under test.

**G2417.3.2 (406.3.2) Equipment isolation.** *Equipment* that is not to be included in the test shall be either disconnected from the *piping* or isolated by blanks, blind flanges or caps.

**G2417.3.3 (406.3.3) Appliance and equipment disconnection.** Where the *piping system* is connected to *appliances* or *equipment* designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such *appliances* or *equipment* shall be isolated from the *piping system* by disconnecting them and capping the *outlet(s)*.

**G2417.3.4 (406.3.4) Valve isolation.** Where the *piping system* is connected to *appliances* or *equipment* designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such *appliances* or *equipment* shall be isolated from the *piping system* by closing the individual *appliance* or *equipment* shutoff valve(s).

**G2417.3.5 (406.3.5) Testing precautions.** All testing of *piping systems* shall be done with due regard for the safety of employees and the public during the test. Prior to testing, the interior of the *pipe* shall be cleared of all foreign material.

**G2417.4 (406.4) Test pressure measurement.** Test pressure shall be measured with a manometer or with a pressure-measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss caused by leakage during the *pressure test* period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the *pressure tests* are made. Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than five times the test pressure.

**G2417.4.1 (406.4.1) Test pressure.** The test pressure to be used shall be not less than one and one-half times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 3 psig (20 kPa gauge), irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the *piping* greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the *pipe*.

**G2417.4.2 (406.4.2) Test duration.** The test duration shall be not less than 10 minutes.

**G2417.5 (406.5) Detection of leaks and defects.** The *piping system* shall withstand the test pressure specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects. Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gauges shall be deemed to indicate the presence of a leak unless such reduction can be readily attributed to some other cause.

**G2417.5.1 (406.5.1) Detection methods.** The leakage shall be located by means of an *approved* combustible gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid or an equivalent nonflammable solution. Matches, candles, open flames or other methods that could provide a source of ignition shall not be used.

**G2417.5.2 (406.5.2) Corrections.** Where leakage or other defects are located, the affected portion of the *piping system* shall be repaired or replaced and retested.

**G2417.6 (406.6) Piping system and equipment leakage check.** Leakage checking of systems and *equipment* shall be in accordance with Sections G2417.6.1 through G2417.6.4.

**G2417.6.1 (406.6.1) Test gases.** *Fuel gas* shall be permitted to be used for *leak checks* in *piping systems* that have been tested in accordance with Section G2417.

**G2417.6.2 (406.6.2) Turning gas on.** During the process of turning gas on into a system of new *gas piping*, the entire system shall be inspected to determine that there are no open fittings or ends and that all *valves* at unused outlets are closed and plugged or capped.

**G2417.6.3 (406.6.3) Leak check.** Immediately after the gas is turned on into a new system or into a system that has been initially restored after an interruption of service, the *piping system* shall be checked for leakage. Where leakage is indicated, the gas supply shall be shut off until the necessary repairs have been made.

**G2417.6.4 (406.6.4) Placing appliances and equipment in operation.** *Appliances* and *equipment* shall not be placed in operation until after the *piping system* has been checked for leakage and determined to be free of leakage and purged in accordance with Section G2417.7.2.

**G2417.7 (406.7) Purging.** Purging of *piping* shall comply with Sections G2417.7.1 through G2417.7.4.

**G2417.7.1 (406.7.1) Removal from service.** When *gas piping* is to be opened for servicing, addition or modification, the section to be worked on shall be turned off from the gas supply at the nearest convenient point, and the line pressure vented to the outdoors, or to ventilated areas of sufficient size to prevent accumulation of flammable mixtures.

**G2417.7.2 (406.7.2) Placing in operation.** When *piping* full of air is placed in operation, the air in the *piping* shall be displaced with *fuel gas*. The air can be safely displaced with *fuel gas* provided that a moderately rapid and continuous flow of *fuel gas* is introduced at one end of the line and air is vented out at the other end. The *fuel gas* flow should be continued without interruption until the vented gas is free of air. The point of discharge shall not be left unattended during purging. After purging, the vent shall then be closed.

**G2417.7.3 (406.7.3) Discharge of purged gases.** The open end of *piping systems* being purged shall not discharge into confined spaces or areas where there are sources of ignition unless precautions are taken to perform this operation in a safe manner by ventilation of the space, control or purging rate, and elimination of all hazardous conditions.

**G2417.7.4 (406.7.4) Placing appliances and equipment in operation.** After the *piping system* has been placed in operation, all *appliances* and *equipment* shall be purged and then placed in operation, as necessary.

## SECTION G2418 (407) PIPING SUPPORT

**G2418.1 (407.1) General.** *Piping* shall be provided with support in accordance with Section G2418.2.

**G2418.2 (407.2) Design and installation.** *Piping* shall be supported with metal *pipe* hooks, metal *pipe* straps, metal bands, metal brackets, metal hangers or building structural components suitable for the size of *piping*, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration. *Piping* shall be anchored to prevent undue strains on connected *appliances* and shall not be supported by other *piping*. *Pipe* hangers and supports shall conform to the requirements of MSS SP-58 and shall be spaced in accordance with Section G2424. Supports, hangers and anchors shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the *piping* between anchors. All parts of the supporting *equipment* shall be designed and installed so that they will not be disengaged by movement of the supported *piping*.

## SECTION G2419 (408) DRIPS AND SLOPED PIPING

**G2419.1 (408.1) Slopes.** *Piping* for other than dry gas conditions shall be sloped not less than 0.25 inch in 15 feet (6.4 mm in 4572 mm) to prevent traps.

**G2419.2 (408.2) Drips.** Where wet gas exists, a *drip* shall be provided at any point in the line of *pipe* where *condensate* could collect. A *drip* shall also be provided at the outlet of the *meter* and shall be installed so as to constitute a trap wherein an accumulation of *condensate* will shut off the flow of gas before the *condensate* will run back into the *meter*.

**G2419.3 (408.3) Location of drips.** *Drips* shall be provided with *ready access* to permit cleaning or emptying. A *drip* shall not be located where the *condensate* is subject to freezing.

**G2419.4 (408.4) Sediment trap.** Where a sediment trap is not incorporated as part of the *appliance,* a sediment trap shall be installed downstream of the *appliance shutoff valve* as close to the inlet of the *appliance* as practical. The sediment trap shall be either a tee fitting having a capped nipple of any length installed vertically in the bottom-most opening of the tee or other device *approved* as an effective sediment trap. Illuminating *appliances*, ranges, *clothes dryers* and outdoor grills need not be so equipped.

## SECTION G2420 (409) GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

**G2420.1 (409.1) General.** *Piping systems* shall be provided with shutoff *valves* in accordance with this section.

**G2420.1.1 (409.1.1) Valve approval.** Shutoff *valves* shall be of an *approved* type; shall be constructed of materials compatible with the *piping*; and shall comply with the standard that is applicable for the pressure and application, in accordance with Table G2420.1.1.

**G2420.1.2 (409.1.2) Prohibited locations.** Shutoff *valves* shall be prohibited in *concealed locations* and *furnace plenums*.

**G2420.1.3 (409.1.3) Access to shutoff valves.** Shutoff *valves* shall be located in places so as to provide access for operation and shall be installed so as to be protected from damage.

**G2420.2 (409.2) Meter valve.** Every *meter* shall be equipped with a shutoff *valve* located on the supply side of the *meter*.

**G2420.3 (409.3.2) Individual buildings.** In a common system serving more than one building, shutoff *valves* shall be installed outdoors at each building.

**G2420.4 (409.4) MP regulator valves.** A listed shutoff valve shall be installed immediately ahead of each MP *regulator*.

**G2420.5 (409.5) Appliance shutoff valve.** Each *appliance* shall be provided with a shutoff *valve* in accordance with Section G2420.5.1, G2420.5.2 or G2420.5.3.

**G2420.5.1 (409.5.1) Located within same room.** The shutoff *valve* shall be located in the same room as the *appliance*. The shutoff *valve* shall be within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance*, and shall be installed upstream of the union, connector or quick disconnect device it serves. Such shutoff *valves* shall be provided with access. *Appliance shutoff valves* located in the firebox of a *fireplace* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions.

**G2420.5.2 (409.5.2) Vented decorative appliances and room heaters.** Shutoff *valves* for vented decorative *appliances*, room heaters and decorative *appliances* for installation in vented fireplaces shall be permitted to be installed in an area remote from the *appliances* where such *valves* are provided with *ready access*. Such *valves* shall be permanently identified and shall serve no other *appliance*. The *piping* from the shutoff *valve* to within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance* shall be designed, sized and installed in accordance with Sections G2412 through G2419.

**G2420.5.3 (409.5.3) Located at manifold.** Where the *appliance shutoff valve* is installed at a manifold, such shutoff valve shall be located within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the *appliance* served and shall be readily accessible and permanently identified. The *piping* from the manifold to within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance* shall be designed, sized and installed in accordance with Sections G2412 through G2419.

## SECTION G2421 (410) FLOW CONTROLS

**G2421.1 (410.1) Pressure regulators.** A line *pressure regulator* shall be installed where the *appliance* is designed to operate at a lower pressure than the supply pressure. *Line gas pressure regulators* shall be listed as complying with ANSI Z21.80. Access shall be provided to *pressure regulators*. *Pressure regulators* shall be protected from physical damage. *Regulators* installed on the exterior of the building shall be *approved* for outdoor installation.

**G2421.2 (410.2) MP regulators.** MP *pressure regulators* shall comply with the following:

1. The MP *regulator* shall be *approved* and shall be suitable for the inlet and *outlet* gas pressures for the application.
2. The MP *regulator* shall maintain a reduced *outlet* pressure under lockup (no-flow) conditions.
3. The capacity of the MP *regulator*, determined by published ratings of its manufacturer, shall be adequate to supply the *appliances* served.
4. The MP *pressure regulator* shall be provided with access. Where located indoors, the *regulator* shall be vented to the outdoors or shall be equipped with a leak-limiting device, in either case complying with Section G2421.3.
5. A tee fitting with one opening capped or plugged shall be installed between the MP *regulator* and its upstream shutoff *valve*. Such tee fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure measuring instrument and to serve as a sediment trap.
6. A tee fitting with one opening capped or plugged shall be installed not less than 10 *pipe* diameters downstream of the MP *regulator* outlet. Such tee fitting shall be positioned to allow connection of a pressure measuring instrument.

**TABLE G2420.1.1**
**MANUAL GAS VALVE STANDARDS**

| VALVE STANDARDS | APPLIANCE SHUTOFF VALVE APPLICATION UP TO $^1/_2$ psig PRESSURE | OTHER VALVE APPLICATIONS | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | UP TO $^1/_2$ psig PRESSURE | UP TO 2 psig PRESSURE | UP TO 5 psig PRESSURE | UP TO 125 psig PRESSURE |
| ANSI Z21.15 | X | — | — | — | — |
| CSA Requirement 3-88 | X | X | X[a] | X[b] | — |
| ASME B16.44 | X | X | X[a] | X[b] | — |
| ASME B16.33 | X | X | X | X | X |

For SI: 1 pound per square inch gauge = 6.895 kPa.
a. If labeled 2G.
b. If labeled 5G.

**G2421.3 (410.3) Venting of regulators.** *Pressure regulators* that require a vent shall be vented directly to the outdoors. The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of insects, water and foreign objects.

**Exception:** A vent to the outdoors is not required for *regulators* equipped with and labeled for utilization with an *approved* vent-limiting device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**G2421.3.1 (410.3.1) Vent piping.** Vent *piping* for *relief* vents and *breather* vents shall be constructed of materials allowed for *gas piping* in accordance with Section G2414. Vent *piping* shall be not smaller than the vent connection on the pressure regulating device. Vent *piping* serving *relief* vents and combination relief and *breather* vents shall be run independently to the outdoors and shall serve only a single device vent. Vent *piping* serving only *breather* vents is permitted to be connected in a manifold arrangement where sized in accordance with an *approved* design that minimizes back pressure in the event of diaphragm rupture. *Regulator* vent *piping* shall not exceed the length specified in the *regulator* manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION G2422 (411) APPLIANCE CONNECTIONS

**G2422.1 (411.1) Connecting appliances.** *Appliances* shall be connected to the *piping system* by one of the following:

1. Rigid metallic *pipe* and fittings.
2. Corrugated stainless steel *tubing* (CSST) where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Listed and labeled *appliance connectors* in compliance with ANSI Z21.24 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and located entirely in the same room as the *appliance*.
4. Listed and labeled quick-disconnect devices used in conjunction with listed and labeled *appliance connectors*.
5. Listed and labeled convenience outlets used in conjunction with listed and labeled *appliance connectors*.
6. Listed and labeled outdoor *appliance connectors* in compliance with ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2422.1.1 (411.1.2) Protection from damage.** Connectors and *tubing* shall be installed so as to be protected against physical damage.

**G2422.1.2 (411.1.3) Connector installation.** *Appliance* fuel connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Sections G24221.2.1 through G2422.1.2.4.

**G2422.1.2.1 (411.1.3.1) Maximum length.** Connectors shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in overall length. Measurement shall be made along the centerline of the connector. Only one connector shall be used for each *appliance*.

**Exception:** Rigid metallic *piping* used to connect an *appliance* to the *piping system* shall be permitted to have a total length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm) provided that the connecting *pipe* is sized as part of the *piping system* in accordance with Section G2413 and the location of the *appliance shutoff valve* complies with Section G2420.5.

**G2422.1.2.2 (411.1.3.2) Minimum size.** Connectors shall have the capacity for the total *demand* of the connected *appliance*.

**G2422.1.2.3 (411.1.3.3) Prohibited locations and penetrations.** Connectors shall not be concealed within, or extended through, walls, floors, partitions, ceilings or *appliance* housings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Connectors constructed of materials allowed for *piping systems* in accordance with Section G2414 shall be permitted to pass through walls, floors, partitions and ceilings where installed in accordance with Section G2420.5.2 or G2420.5.3.
2. Rigid steel *pipe* connectors shall be permitted to extend through openings in *appliance* housings.
3. *Fireplace* inserts that are factory equipped with grommets, sleeves or other means of protection in accordance with the listing of the *appliance*.
4. Semirigid *tubing* and listed connectors shall be permitted to extend through an opening in an *appliance* housing, cabinet or casing where the tubing or connector is protected against damage.

**G2422.1.2.4 (411.1.3.4) Shutoff valve.** A shutoff *valve* not less than the nominal size of the connector shall be installed ahead of the connector in accordance with Section G2420.5.

**G2422.1.3 (411.1.5) Connection of gas engine-powered air conditioners.** Internal *combustion* engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping*.

**G2422.1.4 (411.1.6) Unions.** A union fitting shall be provided for *appliances* connected by rigid metallic *pipe*. Such unions shall be accessible and located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the *appliance*.

**G2422.1.5 (411.1.4) Movable appliances.** Where *appliances* are equipped with casters or are otherwise subject to periodic movement or relocation for purposes such as routine cleaning and maintenance, such *appliances* shall be connected to the supply system *piping* by means of an *approved* flexible connector designed and labeled for the application. Such flexible connectors shall be installed and protected against physical damage in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2422.2 (411.3) Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters.** Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters shall be connected to the building *piping system* with a connector listed for the application complying with ANSI Z21.24/CGA 6.10. The connector shall be installed as specified by the tube heater manufacturer's instructions.

## SECTION G2423 (413) CNG GAS-DISPENSING SYSTEMS

**G2423.1 (413.1) General.** Motor fuel-dispensing facilities for CNG fuel shall be in accordance with Section 413 of the *International Fuel Gas Code.*

## SECTION G2424 (415) PIPING SUPPORT INTERVALS

**G2424.1 (415.1) Interval of support.** *Piping* shall be supported at intervals not exceeding the spacing specified in Table G2424.1. Spacing of supports for CSST shall be in accordance with the CSST manufacturer's instructions.

**TABLE G2424.1 SUPPORT OF PIPING**

| STEEL PIPE, NOMINAL SIZE OF PIPE (inches) | SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet) | NOMINAL SIZE OF TUBING SMOOTH-WALL (inch O.D.) | SPACING OF SUPPORTS (feet) |
|---|---|---|---|
| $^1/_2$ | 6 | $^1/_2$ | 4 |
| $^3/_4$ or 1 | 8 | $^5/_8$ or $^3/_4$ | 6 |
| $1^1/_4$ or larger (horizontal) | 10 | $^7/_8$ or 1 (horizontal) | 8 |
| $1^1/_4$ or larger (vertical) | Every floor level | 1 or larger (vertical) | Every floor level |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

## SECTION G2425 (501) GENERAL

**G2425.1 (501.1) Scope.** This section shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built and *masonry chimneys, chimney* liners, vents and connectors serving gas-fired *appliances*.

**G2425.2 (501.2) General.** Every *appliance* shall discharge the products of *combustion* to the outdoors, except for *appliances* exempted by Section G2425.8.

**G2425.3 (501.3) Masonry chimneys.** *Masonry chimneys* shall be constructed in accordance with Section G2427.5 and Chapter 10.

**G2425.4 (501.4) Minimum size of chimney or vent.** *Chimneys* and vents shall be sized in accordance with Sections G2427 and G2428.

**G2425.5 (501.5) Abandoned inlet openings.** Abandoned inlet openings in *chimneys* and vents shall be closed by an *approved* method.

**G2425.6 (501.6) Positive pressure.** Where an *appliance* equipped with a mechanical forced *draft* system creates a positive pressure in the venting system, the venting system shall be designed for positive pressure applications.

**G2425.7 (501.7) Connection to fireplace.** Connection of *appliances* to *chimney* flues serving *fireplaces* shall be in accordance with Sections G2425.7.1 through G2425.7.3.

**G2425.7.1 (501.7.1) Closure and access.** A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for access to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

**G2425.7.2 (501.7.2) Connection to factory-built fireplace flue.** An *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a *factory-built fireplace* unless the *appliance* is specifically listed for such installation. The connection shall be made in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2425.7.3 (501.7.3) Connection to masonry fireplace flue.** A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a *masonry fireplace* such that the *flue gases* are exhausted directly into the flue. The connector shall be accessible or removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. Listed direct connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

**G2425.8 (501.8) Appliances not required to be vented.** The following *appliances* shall not be required to be vented:

1. Ranges.
2. Built-in domestic cooking units listed and marked for optional venting.
3. Hot plates and laundry stoves.
4. *Type 1 clothes dryers* (*Type 1 clothes dryers* shall be exhausted in accordance with the requirements of Section G2439).
5. Refrigerators.
6. Counter *appliances*.
7. Room heaters listed for unvented use.

Where the *appliances* listed in Items 5 through 7 above are installed so that the aggregate input rating exceeds 20 *Btu* per hour per *cubic foot* (207 W/m$^3$) of volume of the room or space in which such *appliances* are installed, one or more shall be provided with venting *systems* or other *approved* means for conveying the *vent gases* to the outdoor atmosphere so that the aggregate input rating of the remaining *unvented appliances* does not exceed 20 *Btu* per hour per *cubic foot* (207 W/m$^3$). Where the room or space in which the *appliance* is installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

**G2425.9 (501.9) Chimney entrance.** Connectors shall connect to a *masonry chimney* flue at a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lowest portion of the interior of the *chimney* flue.

**G2425.10 (501.10) Connections to exhauster.** *Appliance* connections to a *chimney* or vent equipped with a power exhauster shall be made on the inlet side of the exhauster. Joints on the positive pressure side of the exhauster shall be sealed to prevent flue-gas leakage as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the exhauster.

**G2425.11 (501.11) Masonry chimneys.** *Masonry chimneys* utilized to vent *appliances* shall be located, constructed and sized as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions for the *appliances* being vented and Section G2427.

**G2425.12 (501.12) Residential and low-heat appliances flue lining systems.** *Flue lining* systems for use with residential-type and low-heat *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. Clay *flue lining* complying with the requirements of ASTM C 315 or equivalent. Clay *flue lining* shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 10.
2. Listed *chimney* lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Other *approved* materials that will resist, without cracking, softening or corrosion, *flue gases* and *condensate* at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

**G2425.13 (501.13) Category I appliance flue lining systems.** *Flue lining* systems for use with Category I *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. *Flue lining* systems complying with Section G2425.12.
2. *Chimney* lining systems listed and labeled for use with *appliances* with *draft hoods* and other Category I gas *appliances* listed and labeled for use with Type B vents.

**G2425.14 (501.14) Category II, III and IV appliance venting systems.** The design, sizing and installation of vents for Category II, III and IV *appliances* shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2425.15 (501.15) Existing chimneys and vents.** Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing *chimney* or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing *chimney* or vent during the process of a new installation, the *chimney* or vent shall comply with Sections G2425.15.1 through G2425.15.4.

**G2425.15.1 (501.15.1) Size.** The *chimney* or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the *chimney* or vent and to provide the *appliance* or *appliances* served with the required *draft*. For Category I *appliances*, the resizing shall be in accordance with Section G2426.

**G2425.15.2 (501.15.2) Flue passageways.** The flue gas passageway shall be free of obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning appliance or *fireplace*. The *flue liner*, *chimney* inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free of cracks, gaps, perforations, or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of *combustion products*, including gases, moisture and creosote.

**G2425.15.3 (501.15.3) Cleanout.** *Masonry chimney* flues shall be provided with a cleanout opening having a minimum height of 6 inches (152 mm). The upper edge of the opening shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest *chimney* inlet opening. The cleanout shall be provided with a tight-fitting, noncombustible cover.

**G2425.15.4 (501.15.4) Clearances.** *Chimney*s and vents shall have airspace *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Chapter 10 and the *chimney* or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

**Exception:** *Masonry chimneys* without the required air-space *clearances* shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a *chimney* lining system listed for use in *chimneys* with reduced *clearances* in accordance with UL 1777. The *chimney clearance* shall be not less than that permitted by the terms of the *chimney* liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

**G2425.15.4.1 (501.15.4.1) Fireblocking.** Noncombustible fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 10.

## SECTION G2426 (502)
## VENTS

**G2426.1 (502.1) General.** All vents, except as provided in Section G2427.7, shall be listed and labeled. Type B and BW vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 441. Type L vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 641. Vents for Category II and III *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with UL 1738. Plastic vents for Category IV *appliances* shall not be required to be listed and labeled where such vents are as specified by the *appliance* manufacturer and are installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2426.2 (502.2) Connectors required.** Connectors shall be used to connect *appliances* to the vertical *chimney* or vent, except where the *chimney* or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*. Vent *connector* size, material, construction and installation shall be in accordance with Section G2427.

**G2426.3 (502.3) Vent application.** The application of vents shall be in accordance with Table G2427.4.

**G2426.4 (502.4) Insulation shield.** Where vents pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (26 gage) shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the vent and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall not be less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the vent manufacturer's installation instructions. Where vents pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a listed vent system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2426.5 (502.5) Installation.** Vent systems shall be sized, installed and terminated in accordance with the vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions and Section G2427.

**G2426.6 (502.6) Support of vents.** All portions of vents shall be adequately supported for the design and weight of the materials employed.

**G2426.7 (502.7) Protection against physical damage.** In *concealed locations*, where a vent is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the vent shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575-inch (1.463 mm) (16 gage) shall cover the area of the vent where the member is notched or bored and shall extend a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above sole plates, below top plates and to each side of a stud, joist or rafter.

## SECTION G2427 (503) VENTING OF APPLIANCES

**G2427.1 (503.1) General.** This section recognizes that the choice of venting materials and the methods of installation of *venting systems* are dependent on the operating characteristics of the *appliance* being vented. The operating characteristics of *vented appliances* can be categorized with respect to: (1) positive or negative pressure within the venting system; and (2) whether or not the *appliance* generates flue or *vent gases* that might condense in the venting system. See Section G2403 for the definitions of these *vented appliance* categories.

**G2427.2 (503.2) Venting systems required.** Except as permitted in Sections G2427.2.1, G2427.2.2 and G2425.8, all *appliances* shall be connected to *venting systems*.

**G2427.2.1 (503.2.3) Direct-vent appliances.** Listed *direct*-vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section G2427.8, Item 3.

**G2427.2.2 (503.2.4) Appliances with integral vents.** *Appliances* incorporating integral venting means shall be considered properly vented where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section G2427.8, Items 1 and 2.

**G2427.3 (503.3) Design and construction.** A venting system shall be designed and constructed so as to develop a positive flow adequate to convey flue or *vent gases* to the outdoors.

**G2427.3.1 (503.3.1) Appliance draft requirements.** A venting system shall satisfy the *draft* requirements of the *appliance* in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**G2427.3.2 (503.3.2) Design and construction.** *Appliances* required to be vented shall be connected to a venting system designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of Sections G2427.4 through G2427.16.

**G2427.3.3 (503.3.3) Mechanical draft systems.** *Mechanical draft* systems shall comply with the following:

1. *Mechanical draft* systems shall be listed and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for both the *appliance* and the *mechanical draft* system.
2. *Appliances*, except incinerators, requiring venting shall be permitted to be vented by means of *mechanical draft* systems of either forced or *induced draft* design.
3. Forced *draft* systems and all portions of *induced draft* systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to prevent leakage of flue or *vent gases* into a building.
4. *Vent connectors* serving *appliances* vented by *natural draft* shall not be connected into any portion of *mechanical draft* systems operating under positive pressure.
5. Where a *mechanical draft* system is employed, provisions shall be made to prevent the flow of gas to the *main burners* when the *draft* system is not performing so as to satisfy the operating requirements of the *appliance* for safe performance.
6. The exit terminals of *mechanical draft* systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above finished ground level where located adjacent to public walkways and shall be located as specified in Section G2427.8, Items 1 and 2.

**G2427.3.4 (503.3.5) Air ducts and furnace plenums.** *Venting systems* shall not extend into or pass through any fabricated air duct or *furnace plenum*.

**G2427.3.5 (503.3.6) Above-ceiling air-handling spaces.** Where a venting system passes through an above-ceiling air-handling space or other nonducted portion of an air-handling system, the venting system shall conform to one of the following requirements:

1. The venting system shall be a listed special gas vent; other venting system serving a Category III or Category IV *appliance*; or other positive pressure vent, with joints sealed in accordance with the *appliance* or vent manufacturer's instructions.
2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above-ceiling space.
3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

**G2427.4 (503.4) Type of venting system to be used.** The type of venting system to be used shall be in accordance with Table G2427.4.

**G2427.4.1 (503.4.1) Plastic piping.** Plastic *piping* used for venting *appliances* listed for use with such venting materials shall be *approved*.

**G2427.4.1.1 (503.4.1.1) (IFGS) Plastic vent joints.** Plastic *pipe* and fittings used to vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Where a primer is required, it shall be of a contrasting color.

**G2427.4.2 (503.4.2) Special gas vent.** *Special gas vent* shall be listed and installed in accordance with the *special gas vent* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.5 (503.5) Masonry, metal and factory-built chimneys.** Masonry, metal and factory-built *chimneys* shall comply with Sections G2427.5.1 through G2427.5.9.

**G2427.5.1 (503.5.1) Factory-built chimneys.** Factory-built *chimneys* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Factory-built *chimneys* used to vent *appliances* that operate at a positive vent pressure shall be listed for such application.

**G2427.5.2 (503.5.3) Masonry chimneys.** Masonry *chimneys* shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA

**TABLE G2427.4**
**TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM TO BE USED**

| APPLIANCES | TYPE OF VENTING SYSTEM |
|---|---|
| Listed Category I appliances<br>Listed appliances equipped with draft hood<br>Appliances listed for use with Type B gas vent | Type B gas vent (Section G2427.6)<br>Chimney (Section G2427.5)<br>Single-wall metal pipe (Section G2427.7)<br>Listed chimney lining system for gas venting (Section G2427.5.2)<br>Special gas vent listed for these appliances (Section G2427.4.2) |
| Listed vented wall furnaces | Type B-W gas vent (Sections G2427.6, G2436) |
| Category II appliances | As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances (Sections G2427.4.1, G2427.4.2) |
| Category III appliances | As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances (Sections G2427.4.1, G2427.4.2) |
| Category IV appliances | As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances (Sections G2427.4.1, G2427.4.2) |
| Unlisted appliances | Chimney (Section G2427.5) |
| Decorative appliances in vented fireplaces | Chimney |
| Direct-vent appliances | See Section G2427.2.1 |
| Appliances with integral vent | See Section G2427.2.2 |

211 and shall be lined with *approved* clay *flue lining*, a listed *chimney* lining system or other *approved* material that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from vent gases at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

**Exception:** Masonry *chimney* flues serving listed gas *appliances* with *draft hoods*, Category I *appliances* and other gas *appliances* listed for use with Type B vents shall be permitted to be lined with a *chimney* lining system specifically listed for use only with such *appliances*. The liner shall be installed in accordance with the liner manufacturer's installation instructions. A permanent identifying label shall be attached at the point where the connection is to be made to the liner. The label shall read: "This *chimney* liner is for *appliances* that burn gas only. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

**G2427.5.3 (503.5.4) Chimney termination.** *Chimneys* for residential-type or low-heat *appliances* shall extend at least 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where they pass through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) (see Figure G2427.5.3). *Chimneys* for medium-heat *appliances* shall extend at least 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm). *Chimneys* shall extend at least 5 feet (1524 mm) above the highest connected *appliance draft hood* outlet or *flue collar*. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built *chimneys* except where such shrouds are listed and labeled for use with the specific factory-built *chimney* system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

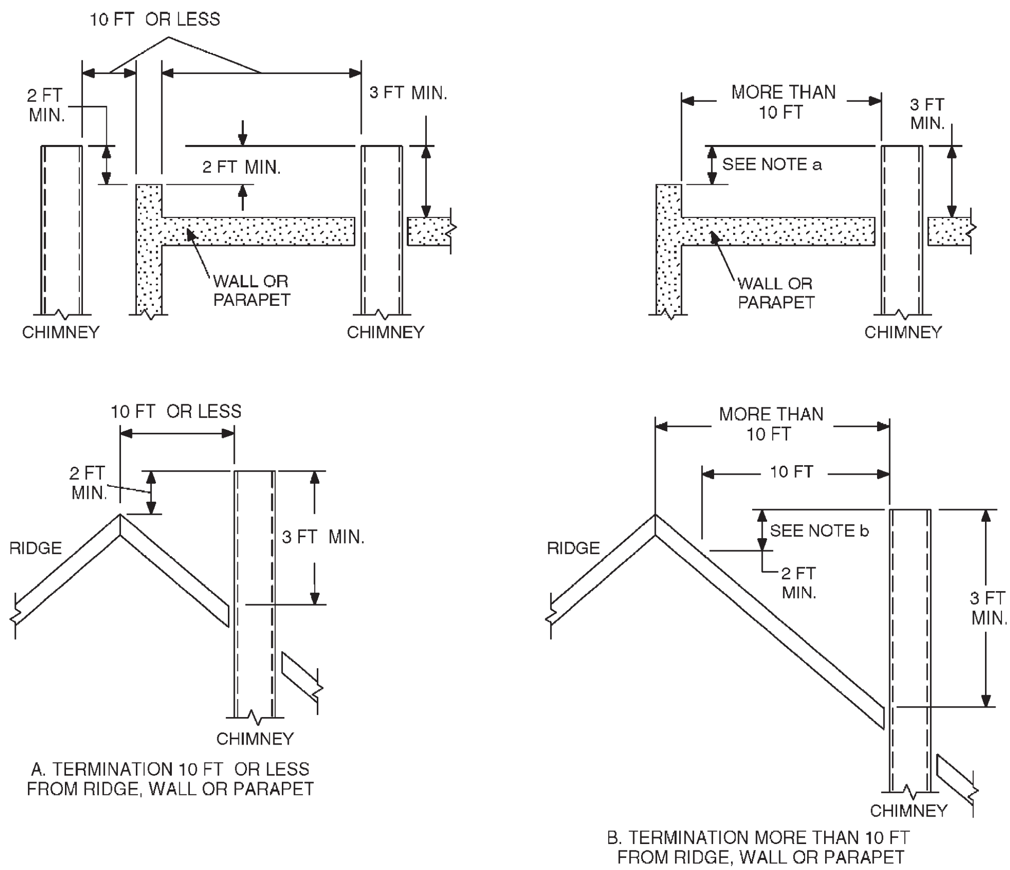
**G2427.5.4 (503.5.5) Size of chimneys.** The effective area of a *chimney* venting system serving listed *appliances* with *draft hoods*, Category I *appliances*, and other *appliances* listed for use with Type B vents shall be determined in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The provisions of Section G2428.
2. For sizing an individual *chimney* venting system for a single *appliance* with a *draft hood*, the effective areas of the *vent connector* and *chimney* flue shall be not less than the area of the *appliance flue collar* or *draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the *draft hood* outlet area.
3. For sizing a *chimney* venting system connected to two *appliances* with *draft hoods*, the effective area of the *chimney* flue shall be not less than the area of the larger *draft hood* outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller *draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the smallest *draft hood* outlet area.
4. *Chimney venting systems* using *mechanical draft* shall be sized in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.
5. Other *approved* engineering methods.

**G2427.5.5 (503.5.6) Inspection of chimneys.** Before replacing an existing *appliance* or connecting a vent *connector* to a *chimney*, the *chimney* passageway shall be examined to ascertain that it is clear and free of obstructions and it shall be cleaned if previously used for venting solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or *fireplaces*.

**G2427.5.5.1 (503.5.6.1) Chimney lining.** *Chimneys* shall be lined in accordance with NFPA 211.

**Exception:** Where an existing chimney complies with Sections G2427.5.5 through G2427.5.5.3 and its sizing is in accordance with Section G2427.5.4, its continued use shall be allowed where the *appliance* vented by that *chimney* is replaced by an *appliance* of similar type, input rating and efficiency.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NOTES:

a. No height above parapet required when distance from walls or parapet is more than 10 feet.

b. Height above any roof surface within 10 feet horizontally.

**FIGURE G2427.5.3 (503.5.4)**
**TYPICAL TERMINATION LOCATIONS FOR CHIMNEYS AND SINGLE-WALL METAL PIPES SERVING RESIDENTIAL-TYPE AND LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES**

**G2427.5.5.2 (503.5.6.2) Cleanouts.** Cleanouts shall be examined to determine that they will remain tightly closed when not in use.

**G2427.5.5.3 (503.5.6.3) Unsafe chimneys.** Where inspection reveals that an existing *chimney* is not safe for the intended application, it shall be repaired, rebuilt, lined, relined or replaced with a vent or *chimney* to conform to NFPA 211 and it shall be suitable for the *appliances* to be vented.

**G2427.5.6 (503.5.7) Chimneys serving appliances burning other fuels.** *Chimneys* serving *appliances* burning other fuels shall comply with Sections G2427.5.6.1 through G2427.5.6.4.

**G2427.5.6.1 (503.5.7.1) Solid fuel-burning appliances.** An *appliance* shall not be connected to a *chimney* flue serving a separate appliance designed to burn solid fuel.

**G2427.5.6.2 (503.5.7.2) Liquid fuel-burning appliances.** Where one *chimney* flue serves gas *appliances* and liquid fuel-burning appliances, the appliances shall be connected through separate openings or shall be connected through a single opening where joined by a suitable fitting located as close as practical to the *chimney.* Where two or more openings are provided into one *chimney* flue, they shall be at different levels. Where the appliances are automatically controlled, they shall be equipped with *safety shutoff devices*.

**G2427.5.6.3 (503.5.7.3) Combination gas- and solid fuel-burning appliances.** A combination gas- and solid fuel-burning *appliance* equipped with a manual reset device to shut off gas to the *main burner* in the event of sustained backdraft or flue gas spillage shall be permitted to be connected to a single *chimney* flue. The *chimney* flue shall be sized to properly vent the *appliance*.

**G2427.5.6.4 (503.5.7.4) Combination gas- and oil fuel-burning appliances.** A listed combination gas- and oil fuel-burning *appliance* shall be permitted to be connected to a single *chimney* flue. The *chimney* flue shall be sized to properly vent the *appliance*.

**G2427.5.7 (503.5.8) Support of chimneys.** All portions of *chimneys* shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Factory-built *chimneys* shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.5.8 (503.5.9) Cleanouts.** Where a *chimney* that formerly carried flue products from liquid or solid fuel-burning appliances is used with an *appliance* using *fuel gas*, an accessible cleanout shall be provided. The cleanout shall have a tight-fitting cover and be installed so its upper edge is at least 6 inches (152 mm) below the lower edge of the lowest *chimney* inlet opening.

**G2427.5.9 (503.5.10) Space surrounding lining or vent.** The remaining space surrounding a *chimney* liner, gas vent, *special gas vent* or plastic *piping* installed within a *masonry chimney* flue shall not be used to vent another *appliance*. The insertion of another liner or vent within the *chimney* as provided in this *code* and the liner or vent manufacturer's instructions shall not be prohibited.

The remaining space surrounding a *chimney* liner, gas vent, special gas vent or plastic *piping* installed within a masonry, metal or factory-built *chimney* shall not be used to supply *combustion air*. Such space shall not be prohibited from supplying *combustion air* to *direct-vent appliances* designed for installation in a solid fuel-burning *fireplace* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.6 (503.6) Gas vents.** Gas vents shall comply with Sections G2427.6.1 through G2427.6.11. (See Section G2403, Definitions.)

**G2427.6.1 (503.6.1) Installation, general.** Gas vents shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

**G2427.6.2 (503.6.2) Type B-W vent capacity.** A Type B-W gas vent shall have a listed capacity not less than that of the listed *vented wall furnace* to which it is connected.

**G2427.6.3 (503.6.4) Gas vent termination.** A gas vent shall terminate in accordance with one of the following:

1. Gas vents that are 12 inches (305 mm) or less in size and located not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate above the roof in accordance with Figure G2427.6.3.
2. Gas vents that are over 12 inches (305 mm) in size or are located less than 8 feet (2438 mm) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point where they pass through the roof and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. As provided for direct-vent systems in Section G2427.2.1.
4. As provided for *appliances* with integral vents in Section G2427.2.2.
5. As provided for *mechanical draft* systems in Section G2427.3.3.

**G2427.6.3.1 (503.6.4.1) Decorative shrouds.** Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of gas vents except where such shrouds are listed for use with the specific gas venting system and are installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.6.4 (503.6.5) Minimum height.** A Type B or L gas vent shall terminate at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance draft hood* or *flue collar*. A Type B-W gas vent shall terminate at least 12 feet (3658 mm) in vertical height above the bottom of the wall *furnace*.

**G2427.6.5 (503.6.6) Roof terminations.** Gas vents shall extend through the roof flashing, roof jack or roof thimble and terminate with a listed cap or listed roof assembly.

**G2427.6.6 (503.6.7) Forced air inlets.** Gas vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).

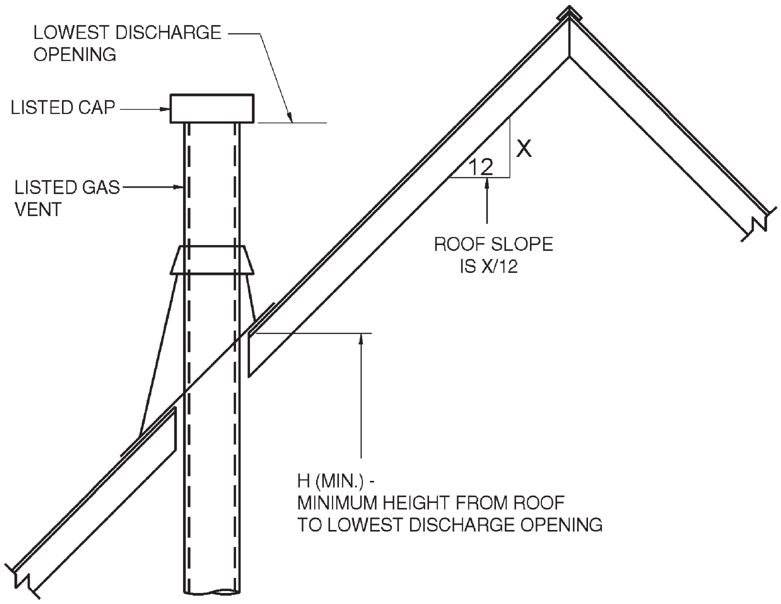
**G2427.6.7 (503.6.8) Exterior wall penetrations.** A gas *vent* extending through an exterior wall shall not terminate adjacent to the wall or below eaves or parapets, except as provided in Sections G2427.2.1 and G2427.3.3.

**G2427.6.8 (503.6.9) Size of gas vents.** *Venting systems* shall be sized and constructed in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods and the gas vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.6.8.1 (503.6.9.1) Category I appliances.** The sizing of *natural draft venting systems* serving one or more listed *appliances* equipped with a *draft hood* or *appliances* listed for use with Type B gas vent, installed in a single story of a building, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The provisions of Section G2428.
2. For sizing an individual gas vent for a single, draft-hood-equipped *appliance*, the effective area of the vent *connector* and the gas vent shall be not less than the area of the *appliance draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the *draft hood* outlet area.
3. For sizing a gas vent connected to two *appliances* with *draft hoods*, the effective area of the vent shall be not less than the area of the larger *draft hood* outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller *draft hood* outlet, nor greater than seven times the smaller *draft hood* outlet area.
4. *Approved* engineering practices.

**G2427.6.8.2 (503.6.9.2) Vent offsets.** Type B and L vents sized in accordance with Item 2 or 3 of Section G2427.6.8.1 shall extend in a generally vertical direction with offsets not exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad), except that a vent system having not more than one 60-degree (1.04 rad) *offset* shall be permitted. Any angle greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical is considered horizontal. The total horizontal distance of a vent plus the horizontal vent *connector* serving *draft hood*-equipped *appliances* shall be not greater than 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent.




| ROOF SLOPE | H (minimum) ft |
|---|---|
| Flat to $^{6}/_{12}$ | 1.0 |
| Over $^{6}/_{12}$ to $^{7}/_{12}$ | 1.25 |
| Over $^{7}/_{12}$ to $^{8}/_{12}$ | 1.5 |
| Over $^{8}/_{12}$ to $^{9}/_{12}$ | 2.0 |
| Over $^{9}/_{12}$ to $^{10}/_{12}$ | 2.5 |
| Over $^{10}/_{12}$ to $^{11}/_{12}$ | 3.25 |
| Over $^{11}/_{12}$ to $^{12}/_{12}$ | 4.0 |
| Over $^{12}/_{12}$ to $^{14}/_{12}$ | 5.0 |
| Over $^{14}/_{12}$ to $^{16}/_{12}$ | 6.0 |
| Over $^{16}/_{12}$ to $^{18}/_{12}$ | 7.0 |
| Over $^{18}/_{12}$ to $^{20}/_{12}$ | 7.5 |
| Over $^{20}/_{12}$ to $^{21}/_{12}$ | 8.0 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE G2427.6.3 (503.6.4)**
**GAS VENT TERMINATION LOCATIONS FOR LISTED CAPS 12 INCHES OR LESS IN SIZE AT LEAST 8 FEET FROM A VERTICAL WALL**

**G2427.6.8.3 (503.6.9.3) Category II, III and IV appliances.** The sizing of gas vents for Category II, III and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

**G2427.6.8.4 (503.6.9.4) Mechanical draft.** *Chimney venting systems* using *mechanical draft* shall be sized in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

**G2427.6.9 (503.6.11) Support of gas vents.** Gas vents shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.6.10 (503.6.12) Marking.** In those localities where solid and liquid fuels are used extensively, gas vents shall be permanently identified by a label attached to the wall or ceiling at a point where the *vent connector* enters the gas vent. The determination of where such localities exist shall be made by the *code official*. The label shall read:

"This gas vent is for *appliances* that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel-burning appliances or incinerators."

**G2427.6.11 (503.6.13) Fastener penetrations.** Screws, rivets and other fasteners shall not penetrate the inner wall of double-wall gas vents, except at the transition from an *appliance draft hood* outlet, a *flue collar* or a single-wall metal connector to a double-wall vent.

**G2427.7 (503.7) Single-wall metal pipe.** Single-wall metal *pipe* vents shall comply with Sections G2427.7.1 through G2427.7.13.

**G2427.7.1 (503.7.1) Construction.** Single-wall metal pipe shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0304 inch (0.7 mm) thick, or other *approved*, noncombustible, corrosion-resistant material.

**G2427.7.2 (503.7.2) Cold climate.** Uninsulated single-wall metal pipe shall not be used outdoors for venting *appliances* in regions where the 99-percent winter design temperature is below 32°F (0°C).

**G2427.7.3 (503.7.3) Termination.** Single-wall metal pipe shall terminate at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance draft hood* outlet or *flue collar*. Single-wall metal pipe shall extend at least 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) (see Figure G2427.5.3). An *approved* cap or roof assembly shall be attached to the terminus of a single-wall metal pipe (see also Section G2427.7.9, Item 3).

**G2427.7.4 (503.7.4) Limitations of use.** Single-wall metal pipe shall be used only for runs directly from the space in which the *appliance* is located through the roof or exterior wall to the outdoor atmosphere.

**G2427.7.5 (503.7.5) Roof penetrations.** A pipe passing through a roof shall extend without interruption through the roof flashing, roof jack, or roof thimble. Where a single-wall metal pipe passes through a roof constructed of combustible material, a noncombustible, nonventilating thimble shall be used at the point of passage. The thimble shall extend at least 18 inches (457 mm) above and 6 inches (152 mm) below the roof with the annular space open at the bottom and closed only at the top. The thimble shall be sized in accordance with Section G2427.7.7.

**G2427.7.6 (503.7.6) Installation.** Single-wall metal pipe shall not originate in any unoccupied attic or concealed space and shall not pass through any attic, inside wall, concealed space, or floor. The installation of a single-wall metal pipe through an exterior combustible wall shall comply with Section G2427.7.7. Single-wall metal pipe used for venting an incinerator shall be exposed and readily examinable for its full length and shall have suitable *clearances* maintained.

**G2427.7.7 (503.7.7) Single-wall penetrations of combustible walls.** Single-wall metal pipe shall not pass through a combustible exterior wall unless guarded at the point of passage by a ventilated metal thimble not smaller than the following:

1. For listed *appliances* equipped with *draft hoods* and *appliances* listed for use with Type B gas vents, the thimble shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe. Where there is a run of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) of metal pipe in the open between the *draft hood* outlet and the thimble, the thimble shall be permitted to be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
2. For unlisted *appliances* having *draft hoods*, the thimble shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
3. For residential and low-heat *appliances*, the thimble shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.

**Exception:** In lieu of thimble protection, all combustible material in the wall shall be removed a sufficient distance from the metal pipe to provide the specified *clearance* from such metal pipe to combustible material. Any material used to close up such opening shall be noncombustible.

**G2427.7.8 (503.7.8) Clearances.** Minimum *clearances* from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table G2427.10.5. The *clearance* from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for *vent connectors* in Table G2409.2.

**G2427.7.9 (503.7.8) Size of single-wall metal pipe.** A venting system constructed of single-wall metal pipe shall be sized in accordance with one of the following methods and the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions:

1. For a draft-hood-equipped *appliance*, in accordance with Section G2428.
2. For a venting system for a single *appliance* with a *draft hood*, the areas of the connector and the pipe each shall be not less than the area of the *appliance flue collar* or *draft hood* outlet, whichever is smaller. The vent area shall not be greater than seven times the *draft hood* outlet area.
3. Other *approved* engineering methods.

**G2427.7.10 (503.7.9) Pipe geometry.** Any shaped single-wall metal pipe shall be permitted to be used, provided that its equivalent effective area is equal to the effective area of the round pipe for which it is substituted, and provided that the minimum internal dimension of the pipe is not less than 2 inches (51 mm).

**G2427.7.11 (503.7.10) Termination capacity.** The vent cap or a roof assembly shall have a venting capacity not less than that of the pipe to which it is attached.

**G2427.7.12 (503.7.11) Support of single-wall metal pipe.** All portions of single-wall metal pipe shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed.

**G2427.7.13 (503.7.12) Marking.** Single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the marking provisions of Section G2427.6.10.

**G2427.8 (503.8) Venting system termination location.** The location of venting system terminations shall comply with the following (see Appendix C):

1. A *mechanical draft* venting system shall terminate at least 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced-air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).

   **Exceptions:**

   1. This provision shall not apply to the *combustion air* intake of a direct-vent *appliance*.

2. This provision shall not apply to the separation of the integral outdoor air inlet and flue gas discharge of listed outdoor *appliances*.

2. A *mechanical draft* venting system, excluding *direct*-vent *appliances*, shall terminate at least 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from, or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, operable window, or gravity air inlet into any building. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above finished ground level.
3. The vent terminal of a *direct*-vent *appliance* with an input of 10,000 *Btu* per hour (3 kW) or less shall be located at least 6 inches (152 mm) from any air opening into a building, and such an *appliance* with an input over 10,000 *Btu* per hour (3 kW) but not over 50,000 *Btu* per hour (14.7 kW) shall be installed with a 9-inch (230 mm) vent termination *clearance*, and an *appliance* with an input over 50,000 *Btu*/h (14.7 kW) shall have at least a 12-inch (305 mm) vent termination *clearance*. The bottom of the vent terminal and the air intake shall be located at least 12 inches (305 mm) above grade finished ground level.
4. Through-the-wall vents for Category II and IV *appliances* and noncategorized condensing *appliances* shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where *condensate* or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or could be detrimental to the operation of *regulators, relief valves*, or other *equipment*. Where local experience indicates that *condensate* is a problem with Category I and III *appliances*, this provision shall also apply. Drains for *condensate* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.9 (503.9) Condensation drainage.** Provisions shall be made to collect and dispose of *condensate* from *venting systems* serving Category II and IV *appliances* and noncategorized condensing *appliances* in accordance with Section G2427.8, Item 4. Where local experience indicates that condensation is a problem, provision shall be made to drain off and dispose of *condensate* from *venting systems* serving Category I and III *appliances* in accordance with Section G2427.8, Item 4.

**G2427.10 (503.10) Vent connectors for Category I appliances.** Vent *connectors* for Category I *appliances* shall comply with Sections G2427.10.1 through G2427.10.14.

**G2427.10.1 (503.10.1) Where required.** A vent *connector* shall be used to connect an *appliance* to a gas vent, *chimney* or single-wall metal pipe, except where the gas vent, *chimney* or single-wall metal pipe is directly connected to the *appliance*.

**G2427.10.2 (503.10.2) Materials.** *Vent connectors* shall be constructed in accordance with Sections G2427.10.2.1 through G2427.10.2.4.

**G2427.10.2.1 (503.10.2.1) General.** A *vent connector* shall be made of noncombustible corrosion-resistant material capable of withstanding the vent gas temperature produced by the *appliance* and of sufficient thickness to withstand physical damage.

**G2427.10.2.2 (503.10.2.2) Vent connectors located in unconditioned areas.** Where the *vent connector* used for an *appliance* having a *draft hood* or a Category I appliance is located in or passes through attics, crawl spaces or other unconditioned spaces, that portion of the *vent connector* shall be listed Type B, Type L or listed vent material having equivalent insulation properties.

**Exception:** Single-wall metal pipe located within the exterior walls of the building in areas having a local 99-percent winter design temperature of 5°F (-15°C) or higher shall be permitted to be used in unconditioned spaces other than attics and crawl spaces.

**G2427.10.2.3 (503.10.2.3) Residential-type appliance connectors.** Where *vent connectors* for residential-type *appliances* are not installed in attics or other unconditioned spaces, connectors for listed *appliances* having *draft hoods, appliances* having *draft hoods* and equipped with listed *conversion burners* and Category I *appliances* shall be one of the following:

1. Type B or L vent material;
2. Galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick;
3. Aluminum (1100 or 3003 alloy or equivalent) sheet not less than 0.027 inch (0.69 mm) thick;
4. Stainless steel sheet not less than 0.012 inch (0.31 mm) thick;
5. Smooth interior wall metal pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equal to or greater than that of Item 2, 3 or 4 above; or
6. A listed vent *connector*.

*Vent connectors* shall not be covered with insulation.

**Exception:** Listed insulated *vent connectors* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2427.10.2.4 (503.10.2.4) Low-heat appliance.** A *vent connector* for a nonresidential, low-heat *appliance* shall be a factory-built *chimney* section or steel *pipe* having resistance to heat and corrosion equivalent to that for the appropriate galvanized pipe as specified in Table G2427.10.2.4. Factory-built *chimney* sections shall be joined together in accordance with the *chimney* manufacturer's instructions.

**TABLE G2427.10.2.4 (503.10.2.4)**
**MINIMUM THICKNESS FOR GALVANIZED STEEL VENT CONNECTORS FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES**

| DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches) | MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch) |
|---|---|
| Less than 6 | 0.019 |
| 6 to less than 10 | 0.023 |
| 10 to 12 inclusive | 0.029 |
| 14 to 16 inclusive | 0.034 |
| Over 16 | 0.056 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**G2427.10.3 (503.10.3) Size of vent connector.** *Vent connectors* shall be sized in accordance with Sections G2427.10.3.1 through G2427.3.5.

**G2427.10.3.1 (503.10.3.1) Single draft hood and fan-assisted.** A *vent connector* for an *appliance* with a single *draft hood* or for a Category I fan-assisted *combustion* system *appliance* shall be sized and installed in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods.

**G2427.10.3.2 (503.10.3.2) Multiple draft hood.** For a single *appliance* having more than one *draft hood* outlet or *flue collar*, the manifold shall be constructed according to the instructions of the *appliance* manufacturer. Where there are no instructions, the manifold shall be designed and constructed in accordance with *approved* engineering practices. As an alternate method, the effective area of the manifold shall equal the combined area of the *flue collars* or *draft hood* outlets and the *vent connectors* shall have a minimum 1-foot (305 mm) rise.

**G2427.10.3.3 (503.10.3.3) Multiple appliances.** Where two or more *appliances* are connected to a common *vent* or *chimney*, each *vent connector* shall be sized in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods.

As an alternative method applicable only when all of the *appliances* are *draft hood* equipped, each *vent connector* shall have an effective area not less than the area of the *draft hood* outlet of the *appliance* to which it is connected.

**G2427.10.3.4 (503.10.3.4) Common connector/manifold.** Where two or more *appliances* are vented through a common *vent connector* or vent manifold, the common *vent connector* or vent manifold shall be located at the highest level consistent with available headroom and the required *clearance* to combustible materials and shall be sized in accordance with Section G2428 or other *approved* engineering methods.

As an alternate method applicable only where there are two *draft hood*-equipped *appliances*, the effective area of the common *vent connector* or vent manifold and all junction fittings shall be not less than the area of the larger *vent connector* plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller *flue collar* outlet.

**G2427.10.3.5 (503.10.3.5) Size increase.** Where the size of a *vent connector* is increased to overcome installation limitations and obtain connector capacity equal to the *appliance* input, the size increase shall be made at the *appliance draft hood* outlet.

**G2427.10.4 (503.10.4) Two or more appliances connected to a single vent or chimney.** Where two or more *vent connectors* enter a common gas vent, *chimney* flue, or single-wall metal pipe, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with the available headroom or *clearance* to combustible material. *Vent connectors* serving Category I *appliances* shall not be connected to any portion of a *mechanical draft* system operating under positive static pressure, such as those serving Category III or IV *appliances*.

**G2427.10.4.1 (503.10.4.1) Two or more openings.** Where two or more openings are provided into one *chimney* flue or vent, the openings shall be at different levels, or the connectors shall be attached to the vertical portion of the *chimney* or vent at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or less relative to the vertical.

**G2427.10.5 (503.10.5) Clearance.** Minimum *clearances* from *vent connectors* to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table G2427.10.5.

**Exception:** The *clearance* between a *vent connector* and combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for *vent connectors* in Table G2409.2.

**G2427.10.6 (503.10.6) Flow resistance.** A *vent connector* shall be installed so as to avoid turns or other construction features that create excessive resistance to flow of vent gases.

**TABLE G2427.10.5 (503.10.5)[a]**
**CLEARANCES FOR CONNECTORS**

| APPLIANCE | MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Listed Type B gas vent material | Listed Type L vent material | Single-wall metal pipe | Factory-built chimney sections |
| Listed appliances with draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents | As listed | As listed | 6 inches | As listed |
| Residential boilers and furnaces with listed gas conversion burner and with draft hood | 6 inches | 6 inches | 9 inches | As listed |
| Residential appliances listed for use with Type L vents | Not permitted | As listed | 9 inches | As listed |
| Listed gas-fired toilets | Not permitted | As listed | As listed | As listed |
| Unlisted residential appliances with draft hood | Not permitted | 6 inches | 9 inches | As listed |
| Residential and low-heat appliances other than above | Not permitted | 9 inches | 18 inches | As listed |
| Medium-heat appliances | Not permitted | Not permitted | 36 inches | As listed |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These clearances shall apply unless the manufacturer's installation instructions for a listed appliance or connector specify different clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

**G2427.10.7 (503.10.7) Joints.** Joints between sections of connector piping and connections to *flue collars* and *draft hood* outlets shall be fastened by one of the following methods:

1. Sheet metal screws.
2. *Vent connectors* of listed vent material assembled and connected to *flue collars* or *draft hood* outlets in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.
3. Other *approved* means.

**G2427.10.8 (503.10.8) Slope.** A *vent connector* shall be installed without dips or sags and shall slope upward toward the vent or *chimney* at least $^1/_4$ inch per foot (21 mm/m).

**Exception:** *Vent connectors* attached to a *mechanical draft* system installed in accordance with the *appliance* and *draft* system manufacturers' instructions.

**G2427.10.9 (503.10.9) Length of vent connector.** A *vent connector* shall be as short as practical and the *appliance* located as close as practical to the *chimney* or vent. The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the *chimney* or vent except for engineered systems. The maximum horizontal length of a Type B double-wall connector shall be 100 percent of the height of the *chimney* or vent except for engineered systems.

**G2427.10.10 (503.10.10) Support.** A *vent connector* shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed to maintain *clearances* and prevent physical damage and separation of joints.

**G2427.10.11 (503.10.11) Chimney connection.** Where entering a flue in a masonry or metal *chimney*, the *vent connector* shall be installed above the extreme bottom to avoid stoppage. Where a thimble or slip joint is used to facilitate removal of the connector, the connector shall be firmly attached to or inserted into the thimble or slip joint to prevent the connector from falling out. Means shall be employed to prevent the connector from entering so far as to restrict the space between its end and the opposite wall of the *chimney* flue (see Section G2425.9).

**G2427.10.12 (503.10.12) Inspection.** The entire length of a *vent connector* shall be provided with *ready access* for inspection, cleaning, and replacement.

**G2427.10.13 (503.10.13) Fireplaces.** A *vent connector* shall not be connected to a *chimney* flue serving a *fireplace* unless the *fireplace* flue opening is permanently sealed.

**G2427.10.14 (503.10.14) Passage through ceilings, floors or walls.** Single-wall metal pipe connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling except as permitted by Section G2427.7.4.

**G2427.11 (503.11) Vent connectors for Category II, III and IV appliances.** *Vent connectors* for Category II, III and IV *appliances* shall be as specified for the *venting systems* in accordance with Section G2427.4.

**G2427.12 (503.12) Draft hoods and draft controls.** The installation of *draft hoods* and *draft controls* shall comply with Sections G2427.12.1 through G2427.12.7.

**G2427.12.1 (503.12.1) Appliances requiring draft hoods.** *Vented appliances* shall be installed with *draft hoods*.

**Exception:** Dual oven-type combination ranges; incinerators; *direct*-vent *appliances*; fan-assisted *combustion* system *appliances*; *appliances* requiring *chimney draft* for operation; single firebox boilers equipped with *conversion burners* with inputs greater than 400,000 *Btu* per hour (117 kW); *appliances* equipped with blast, power or pressure *burners* that are not listed for use with *draft hoods*; and *appliances* designed for forced venting.

**G2427.12.2 (503.12.2) Installation.** A *draft hood* supplied with or forming a part of a listed *vented appliance* shall be installed without *alteration*, exactly as furnished and specified by the *appliance* manufacturer.

**G2427.12.2.1 (503.12.2.1) Draft hood required.** If a *draft hood* is not supplied by the *appliance* manufacturer where one is required, a *draft hood* shall be installed, shall be of a listed or *approved* type and, in the absence of other instructions, shall be of the same size as the *appliance flue* collar. Where a *draft hood* is required with a *conversion burner*, it shall be of a listed or *approved* type.

**G2427.12.2.2 (503.12.2.2) Special design draft hood.** Where it is determined that a *draft hood* of special design is needed or preferable for a particular installation, the installation shall be in accordance with the recommendations of the *appliance* manufacturer and shall be *approved*.

**G2427.12.3 (503.12.3) Draft control devices.** Where a *draft control* device is part of the *appliance* or is supplied by the *appliance* manufacturer, it shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's instructions, the device shall be attached to the *flue collar* of the *appliance* or as near to the *appliance* as practical.

**G2427.12.4 (503.12.4) Additional devices.** *Appliances* (except incinerators) requiring a controlled *chimney draft* shall be permitted to be equipped with a listed double-acting barometric-*draft regulator* installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**G2427.12.5 (503.12.5) Location.** *Draft hoods* and *barometric draft regulators* shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the *appliance* in such a manner as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or *regulator* and the *combustion air* supply.

**G2427.12.6 (503.12.6) Positioning.** *Draft hoods* and *draft regulators* shall be installed in the position for which they were designed with reference to the horizontal and vertical planes and shall be located so that the *relief opening* is not obstructed by any part of the *appliance* or adjacent construction. The *appliance* and its *draft hood* shall be located so that the *relief opening* is accessible for checking *vent* operation.

**G2427.12.7 (503.12.7) Clearance.** A *draft hood* shall be located so its *relief opening* is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from any surface except that of the *appliance* it serves and the venting system to which the *draft hood* is connected. Where a greater or lesser *clearance* is indicated on the *appli-*

ance label, the *clearance* shall be not less than that specified on the label. Such *clearances* shall not be reduced.

**G2427.13 (503.13) Manually operated dampers.** A manually operated *damper* shall not be placed in the vent *connector* for any *appliance*. Fixed baffles shall not be classified as manually operated *dampers*.

**G2427.14 (503.14) Automatically operated vent dampers.** An automatically operated vent damper shall be of a listed type.

**G2427.15 (503.15) Obstructions.** Devices that retard the flow of *vent gases* shall not be installed in a *vent connector*, *chimney*, or vent. The following shall not be considered as obstructions:

1. *Draft regulators* and safety *controls* specifically listed for installation in *venting systems* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. *Approved draft regulators* and safety *controls* that are designed and installed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.
3. Listed heat reclaimers and automatically operated vent dampers installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
4. *Approved* economizers, heat reclaimers, and recuperators installed in *venting systems* of *appliances* not required to be equipped with *draft hoods*, provided that the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions cover the installation of such a device in the venting system and performance in accordance with Sections G2427.3 and G2427.3.1 is obtained.
5. Vent dampers serving listed *appliances* installed in accordance with Sections G2428.2.1 and G2428.3.1 or other *approved* engineering methods.

**G2427.16 (503.16) (IFGS) Outside wall penetrations.** Where vents, including those for *direct-vent appliances*, penetrate outside walls of buildings, the annular spaces around such penetrations shall be permanently sealed using *approved* materials to prevent entry of *combustion products* into the building.

## SECTION G2428 (504) SIZING OF CATEGORY I APPLIANCE VENTING SYSTEMS

**G2428.1 (504.1) Definitions.** The following definitions apply to tables in this section.

**APPLIANCE CATEGORIZED VENT DIAMETER/AREA.** The minimum vent area/diameter permissible for Category I *appliances* to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

**FAN-ASSISTED COMBUSTION SYSTEM.** An *appliance* equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of *combustion* through the *combustion chamber* or heat exchanger.

**FAN MIN.** The minimum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted *appliance* attached to a vent or connector.

**FAN MAX.** The maximum input rating of a Category I fan-assisted *appliance* attached to a vent or connector.

**NAT MAX.** The maximum input rating of a Category I draft-hood-equipped *appliance* attached to a vent or connector.

**FAN + FAN.** The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of two or more Category I fan-assisted *appliances* attached to the common vent.

**FAN + NAT.** The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of one or more Category I fan-assisted *appliances* and one or more Category I draft-hood-equipped *appliances* attached to the common vent.

**NA.** Vent configuration is not permitted due to potential for *condensate* formation or pressurization of the venting system, or not applicable due to physical or geometric restraints.

**NAT + NAT.** The maximum combined *appliance* input rating of two or more Category I draft-hood-equipped *appliances* attached to the common vent.

**G2428.2 (504.2) Application of single appliance vent Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2).** The application of Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections G2428.2.1 through G2428.2.16.

**G2428.2.1 (504.2.1) Vent obstructions.** These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section G2427.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed *appliances* with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the vent system shall be determined using the "NAT Max" column.
2. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the *appliance* were a fan-assisted *appliance*, using the "FAN Min" column to determine the minimum capacity of the vent system. Where the corresponding "FAN Min" is "NA," the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

**G2428.2.2 (504.2.2) Minimum size.** Where the vent size determined from the tables is smaller than the *appliance draft hood* outlet or *flue collar*, the smaller size shall be permitted to be used provided all of the following are met:

1. The total vent height (H) is at least 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. Vents for *appliance draft hood* outlets or *flue collars* 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced more than one table size.
3. Vents for *appliance draft hood* outlets or *flue collars* larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes.
4. The maximum capacity listed in the tables for a fan-assisted *appliance* is reduced by 10 percent (0.90 by maximum table capacity).
5. The *draft hood* outlet is greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Do not connect a 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) vent to a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) *draft hood* outlet. This provision shall not apply to fan-assisted *appliances*.

## TABLE G2428.2(1) [504.2(1)]
## TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT

| | |
|---|---|
| **Number of Appliances** | Single |
| **Appliance Type** | Category I |
| **Appliance Vent Connection** | Connected directly to vent |

| HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | LATERAL (*L*) (feet) | VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 6 | 0 | 0 | 78 | 46 | 0 | 152 | 86 | 0 | 251 | 141 | 0 | 375 | 205 | 0 | 524 | 285 | 0 | 698 | 370 | 0 | 897 | 470 |
| | 2 | 13 | 51 | 36 | 18 | 97 | 67 | 27 | 157 | 105 | 32 | 232 | 157 | 44 | 321 | 217 | 53 | 425 | 285 | 63 | 543 | 370 |
| | 4 | 21 | 49 | 34 | 30 | 94 | 64 | 39 | 153 | 103 | 50 | 227 | 153 | 66 | 316 | 211 | 79 | 419 | 279 | 93 | 536 | 362 |
| | 6 | 25 | 46 | 32 | 36 | 91 | 61 | 47 | 149 | 100 | 59 | 223 | 149 | 78 | 310 | 205 | 93 | 413 | 273 | 110 | 530 | 354 |
| 8 | 0 | 0 | 84 | 50 | 0 | 165 | 94 | 0 | 276 | 155 | 0 | 415 | 235 | 0 | 583 | 320 | 0 | 780 | 415 | 0 | 1,006 | 537 |
| | 2 | 12 | 57 | 40 | 16 | 109 | 75 | 25 | 178 | 120 | 28 | 263 | 180 | 42 | 365 | 247 | 50 | 483 | 322 | 60 | 619 | 418 |
| | 5 | 23 | 53 | 38 | 32 | 103 | 71 | 42 | 171 | 115 | 53 | 255 | 173 | 70 | 356 | 237 | 83 | 473 | 313 | 99 | 607 | 407 |
| | 8 | 28 | 49 | 35 | 39 | 98 | 66 | 51 | 164 | 109 | 64 | 247 | 165 | 84 | 347 | 227 | 99 | 463 | 303 | 117 | 596 | 396 |
| 10 | 0 | 0 | 88 | 53 | 0 | 175 | 100 | 0 | 295 | 166 | 0 | 447 | 255 | 0 | 631 | 345 | 0 | 847 | 450 | 0 | 1,096 | 585 |
| | 2 | 12 | 61 | 42 | 17 | 118 | 81 | 23 | 194 | 129 | 26 | 289 | 195 | 40 | 402 | 273 | 48 | 533 | 355 | 57 | 684 | 457 |
| | 5 | 23 | 57 | 40 | 32 | 113 | 77 | 41 | 187 | 124 | 52 | 280 | 188 | 68 | 392 | 263 | 81 | 522 | 346 | 95 | 671 | 446 |
| | 10 | 30 | 51 | 36 | 41 | 104 | 70 | 54 | 176 | 115 | 67 | 267 | 175 | 88 | 376 | 245 | 104 | 504 | 330 | 122 | 651 | 427 |
| 15 | 0 | 0 | 94 | 58 | 0 | 191 | 112 | 0 | 327 | 187 | 0 | 502 | 285 | 0 | 716 | 390 | 0 | 970 | 525 | 0 | 1,263 | 682 |
| | 2 | 11 | 69 | 48 | 15 | 136 | 93 | 20 | 226 | 150 | 22 | 339 | 225 | 38 | 475 | 316 | 45 | 633 | 414 | 53 | 815 | 544 |
| | 5 | 22 | 65 | 45 | 30 | 130 | 87 | 39 | 219 | 142 | 49 | 330 | 217 | 64 | 463 | 300 | 76 | 620 | 403 | 90 | 800 | 529 |
| | 10 | 29 | 59 | 41 | 40 | 121 | 82 | 51 | 206 | 135 | 64 | 315 | 208 | 84 | 445 | 288 | 99 | 600 | 386 | 116 | 777 | 507 |
| | 15 | 35 | 53 | 37 | 48 | 112 | 76 | 61 | 195 | 128 | 76 | 301 | 198 | 98 | 429 | 275 | 115 | 580 | 373 | 134 | 755 | 491 |
| 20 | 0 | 0 | 97 | 61 | 0 | 202 | 119 | 0 | 349 | 202 | 0 | 540 | 307 | 0 | 776 | 430 | 0 | 1,057 | 575 | 0 | 1,384 | 752 |
| | 2 | 10 | 75 | 51 | 14 | 149 | 100 | 18 | 250 | 166 | 20 | 377 | 249 | 33 | 531 | 346 | 41 | 711 | 470 | 50 | 917 | 612 |
| | 5 | 21 | 71 | 48 | 29 | 143 | 96 | 38 | 242 | 160 | 47 | 367 | 241 | 62 | 519 | 337 | 73 | 697 | 460 | 86 | 902 | 599 |
| | 10 | 28 | 64 | 44 | 38 | 133 | 89 | 50 | 229 | 150 | 62 | 351 | 228 | 81 | 499 | 321 | 95 | 675 | 443 | 112 | 877 | 576 |
| | 15 | 34 | 58 | 40 | 46 | 124 | 84 | 59 | 217 | 142 | 73 | 337 | 217 | 94 | 481 | 308 | 111 | 654 | 427 | 129 | 853 | 557 |
| | 20 | 48 | 52 | 35 | 55 | 116 | 78 | 69 | 206 | 134 | 84 | 322 | 206 | 107 | 464 | 295 | 125 | 634 | 410 | 145 | 830 | 537 |

*(continued)*

| Number of Appliances | Single |
|---|---|
| Appliance Type | Category I |
| Appliance Vent Connection | Connected directly to vent |

**TABLE G2428.2(1) [504.2(1)]—continued**
**TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT**

| HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | LATERAL (*L*) (feet) | VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 30 | 0 | 0 | 100 | 64 | 0 | 213 | 128 | 0 | 374 | 220 | 0 | 587 | 336 | 0 | 853 | 475 | 0 | 1,173 | 650 | 0 | 1,548 | 855 |
| | 2 | 9 | 81 | 56 | 13 | 166 | 112 | 14 | 283 | 185 | 18 | 432 | 280 | 27 | 613 | 394 | 33 | 826 | 535 | 42 | 1,072 | 700 |
| | 5 | 21 | 77 | 54 | 28 | 160 | 108 | 36 | 275 | 176 | 45 | 421 | 273 | 58 | 600 | 385 | 69 | 811 | 524 | 82 | 1,055 | 688 |
| | 10 | 27 | 70 | 50 | 37 | 150 | 102 | 48 | 262 | 171 | 59 | 405 | 261 | 77 | 580 | 371 | 91 | 788 | 507 | 107 | 1,028 | 668 |
| | 15 | 33 | 64 | NA | 44 | 141 | 96 | 57 | 249 | 163 | 70 | 389 | 249 | 90 | 560 | 357 | 105 | 765 | 490 | 124 | 1,002 | 648 |
| | 20 | 56 | 58 | NA | 53 | 132 | 90 | 66 | 237 | 154 | 80 | 374 | 237 | 102 | 542 | 343 | 119 | 743 | 473 | 139 | 977 | 628 |
| | 30 | NA | NA | NA | 73 | 113 | NA | 88 | 214 | NA | 104 | 346 | 219 | 131 | 507 | 321 | 149 | 702 | 444 | 171 | 929 | 594 |
| 50 | 0 | 0 | 101 | 67 | 0 | 216 | 134 | 0 | 397 | 232 | 0 | 633 | 363 | 0 | 932 | 518 | 0 | 1,297 | 708 | 0 | 1,730 | 952 |
| | 2 | 8 | 86 | 61 | 11 | 183 | 122 | 14 | 320 | 206 | 15 | 497 | 314 | 22 | 715 | 445 | 26 | 975 | 615 | 33 | 1,276 | 813 |
| | 5 | 20 | 82 | NA | 27 | 177 | 119 | 35 | 312 | 200 | 43 | 487 | 308 | 55 | 702 | 438 | 65 | 960 | 605 | 77 | 1,259 | 798 |
| | 10 | 26 | 76 | NA | 35 | 168 | 114 | 45 | 299 | 190 | 56 | 471 | 298 | 73 | 681 | 426 | 86 | 935 | 589 | 101 | 1,230 | 773 |
| | 15 | 59 | 70 | NA | 42 | 158 | NA | 54 | 287 | 180 | 66 | 455 | 288 | 85 | 662 | 413 | 100 | 911 | 572 | 117 | 1,203 | 747 |
| | 20 | NA | NA | NA | 50 | 149 | NA | 63 | 275 | 169 | 76 | 440 | 278 | 97 | 642 | 401 | 113 | 888 | 556 | 131 | 1,176 | 722 |
| | 30 | NA | NA | NA | 69 | 131 | NA | 84 | 250 | NA | 99 | 410 | 259 | 123 | 605 | 376 | 141 | 844 | 522 | 161 | 1,125 | 670 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Number of Appliances** | Single |
| **Appliance Type** | Category I |
| **Appliance Vent Connection** | Single-wall metal connector |

**TABLE G2428.2(2) [504.2(2)]**
**TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT**

| HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | LATERAL (*L*) (feet) | VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | | 12 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 6 | 0 | 38 | 77 | 45 | 59 | 151 | 85 | 85 | 249 | 140 | 126 | 373 | 204 | 165 | 522 | 284 | 211 | 695 | 369 | 267 | 894 | 469 | 371 | 1,118 | 569 | 537 | 1,639 | 849 |
| | 2 | 39 | 51 | 36 | 60 | 96 | 66 | 85 | 156 | 104 | 123 | 231 | 156 | 159 | 320 | 213 | 201 | 423 | 284 | 251 | 541 | 368 | 347 | 673 | 453 | 498 | 979 | 648 |
| | 4 | NA | NA | 33 | 74 | 92 | 63 | 102 | 152 | 102 | 146 | 225 | 152 | 187 | 313 | 208 | 237 | 416 | 277 | 295 | 533 | 360 | 409 | 664 | 443 | 584 | 971 | 638 |
| | 6 | NA | NA | 31 | 83 | 89 | 60 | 114 | 147 | 99 | 163 | 220 | 148 | 207 | 307 | 203 | 263 | 409 | 271 | 327 | 526 | 352 | 449 | 656 | 433 | 638 | 962 | 627 |
| 8 | 0 | 37 | 83 | 50 | 58 | 164 | 93 | 83 | 273 | 154 | 123 | 412 | 234 | 161 | 580 | 319 | 206 | 777 | 414 | 258 | 1,002 | 536 | 360 | 1,257 | 658 | 521 | 1,852 | 967 |
| | 2 | 39 | 56 | 39 | 59 | 108 | 75 | 83 | 176 | 119 | 121 | 261 | 179 | 155 | 363 | 246 | 197 | 482 | 321 | 246 | 617 | 417 | 339 | 768 | 513 | 486 | 1,120 | 743 |
| | 5 | NA | NA | 37 | 77 | 102 | 69 | 107 | 168 | 114 | 151 | 252 | 171 | 193 | 352 | 235 | 245 | 470 | 311 | 305 | 604 | 404 | 418 | 754 | 500 | 598 | 1,104 | 730 |
| | 8 | NA | NA | 33 | 90 | 95 | 64 | 122 | 161 | 107 | 175 | 243 | 163 | 223 | 342 | 225 | 280 | 458 | 300 | 344 | 591 | 392 | 470 | 740 | 486 | 665 | 1,089 | 715 |
| 10 | 0 | 37 | 87 | 53 | 57 | 174 | 99 | 82 | 293 | 165 | 120 | 444 | 254 | 158 | 628 | 344 | 202 | 844 | 449 | 253 | 1,093 | 584 | 351 | 1,373 | 718 | 507 | 2,031 | 1,057 |
| | 2 | 39 | 61 | 41 | 59 | 117 | 80 | 82 | 193 | 128 | 119 | 287 | 194 | 153 | 400 | 272 | 193 | 531 | 354 | 242 | 681 | 456 | 332 | 849 | 559 | 475 | 1,242 | 848 |
| | 5 | 52 | 56 | 39 | 76 | 111 | 76 | 105 | 185 | 122 | 148 | 277 | 186 | 190 | 388 | 261 | 241 | 518 | 344 | 299 | 667 | 443 | 409 | 834 | 544 | 584 | 1,224 | 825 |
| | 10 | NA | NA | 34 | 97 | 100 | 68 | 132 | 171 | 112 | 188 | 261 | 171 | 237 | 369 | 241 | 296 | 497 | 325 | 363 | 643 | 423 | 492 | 808 | 520 | 688 | 1,194 | 788 |
| 15 | 0 | 36 | 93 | 57 | 56 | 190 | 111 | 80 | 325 | 186 | 116 | 499 | 283 | 153 | 713 | 388 | 195 | 966 | 523 | 244 | 1,259 | 681 | 336 | 1,591 | 838 | 488 | 2,374 | 1,237 |
| | 2 | 38 | 69 | 47 | 57 | 136 | 93 | 80 | 225 | 149 | 115 | 337 | 224 | 148 | 473 | 314 | 187 | 631 | 413 | 232 | 812 | 543 | 319 | 1,015 | 673 | 457 | 1,491 | 983 |
| | 5 | 51 | 63 | 44 | 75 | 128 | 86 | 102 | 216 | 140 | 144 | 326 | 217 | 182 | 459 | 298 | 231 | 616 | 400 | 287 | 795 | 526 | 392 | 997 | 657 | 562 | 1,469 | 963 |
| | 10 | NA | NA | 39 | 95 | 116 | 79 | 128 | 201 | 131 | 182 | 308 | 203 | 228 | 438 | 284 | 284 | 592 | 381 | 349 | 768 | 501 | 470 | 966 | 628 | 664 | 1,433 | 928 |
| | 15 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 72 | 158 | 186 | 124 | 220 | 290 | 192 | 272 | 418 | 269 | 334 | 568 | 367 | 404 | 742 | 484 | 540 | 937 | 601 | 750 | 1,399 | 894 |
| 20 | 0 | 35 | 96 | 60 | 54 | 200 | 118 | 78 | 346 | 201 | 114 | 537 | 306 | 149 | 772 | 428 | 190 | 1,053 | 573 | 238 | 1,379 | 750 | 326 | 1,751 | 927 | 473 | 2,631 | 1,346 |
| | 2 | 37 | 74 | 50 | 56 | 148 | 99 | 78 | 248 | 165 | 113 | 375 | 248 | 144 | 528 | 344 | 182 | 708 | 468 | 227 | 914 | 611 | 309 | 1,146 | 754 | 443 | 1,689 | 1,098 |
| | 5 | 50 | 68 | 47 | 73 | 140 | 94 | 100 | 239 | 158 | 141 | 363 | 239 | 178 | 514 | 334 | 224 | 692 | 457 | 279 | 896 | 596 | 381 | 1,126 | 734 | 547 | 1,665 | 1,074 |
| | 10 | NA | NA | 41 | 93 | 129 | 86 | 125 | 223 | 146 | 177 | 344 | 224 | 222 | 491 | 316 | 277 | 666 | 437 | 339 | 866 | 570 | 457 | 1,092 | 702 | 646 | 1,626 | 1,037 |
| | 15 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 80 | 155 | 208 | 136 | 216 | 325 | 210 | 264 | 469 | 301 | 325 | 640 | 419 | 393 | 838 | 549 | 526 | 1,060 | 677 | 730 | 1,587 | 1,005 |
| | 20 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 186 | 192 | 126 | 254 | 306 | 196 | 309 | 448 | 285 | 374 | 616 | 400 | 448 | 810 | 526 | 592 | 1,028 | 651 | 808 | 1,550 | 973 |

*(continued)*

| Number of Appliances | Single |
|---|---|
| Appliance Type | Category I |
| Appliance Vent Connection | Single-wall metal connector |

**TABLE G2428.2(2) [504.2(2)]—continued**
**TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL GAS VENT**

| HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | LATERAL (*L*) (feet) | VENT DIAMETER—(*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | | 12 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 30 | 0 | 34 | 99 | 63 | 53 | 211 | 127 | 76 | 372 | 219 | 110 | 584 | 334 | 144 | 849 | 472 | 184 | 1,168 | 647 | 229 | 1,542 | 852 | 312 | 1,971 | 1,056 | 454 | 2,996 | 1,545 |
| | 2 | 37 | 80 | 56 | 55 | 164 | 111 | 76 | 281 | 183 | 109 | 429 | 279 | 139 | 610 | 392 | 175 | 823 | 533 | 219 | 1,069 | 698 | 296 | 1,346 | 863 | 424 | 1,999 | 1,308 |
| | 5 | 49 | 74 | 52 | 72 | 157 | 106 | 98 | 271 | 173 | 136 | 417 | 271 | 171 | 595 | 382 | 215 | 806 | 521 | 269 | 1,049 | 684 | 366 | 1,324 | 846 | 524 | 1,971 | 1,283 |
| | 10 | NA | NA | NA | 91 | 144 | 98 | 122 | 255 | 168 | 171 | 397 | 257 | 213 | 570 | 367 | 265 | 777 | 501 | 327 | 1,017 | 662 | 440 | 1,287 | 821 | 620 | 1,927 | 1,234 |
| | 15 | NA | NA | NA | 115 | 131 | NA | 151 | 239 | 157 | 208 | 377 | 242 | 255 | 547 | 349 | 312 | 750 | 481 | 379 | 985 | 638 | 507 | 1,251 | 794 | 702 | 1,884 | 1,205 |
| | 20 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 181 | 223 | NA | 246 | 357 | 228 | 298 | 524 | 333 | 360 | 723 | 461 | 433 | 955 | 615 | 570 | 1,216 | 768 | 780 | 1,841 | 1,166 |
| | 30 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 389 | 477 | 305 | 461 | 670 | 426 | 541 | 895 | 574 | 704 | 1,147 | 720 | 937 | 1,759 | 1,101 |
| 50 | 0 | 33 | 99 | 66 | 51 | 213 | 133 | 73 | 394 | 230 | 105 | 629 | 361 | 138 | 928 | 515 | 176 | 1,292 | 704 | 220 | 1,724 | 948 | 295 | 2,223 | 1,189 | 428 | 3,432 | 1,818 |
| | 2 | 36 | 84 | 61 | 53 | 181 | 121 | 73 | 318 | 205 | 104 | 495 | 312 | 133 | 712 | 443 | 168 | 971 | 613 | 209 | 1,273 | 811 | 280 | 1,615 | 1,007 | 401 | 2,426 | 1,509 |
| | 5 | 48 | 80 | NA | 70 | 174 | 117 | 94 | 308 | 198 | 131 | 482 | 305 | 164 | 696 | 435 | 204 | 953 | 602 | 257 | 1,252 | 795 | 347 | 1,591 | 991 | 496 | 2,396 | 1,490 |
| | 10 | NA | NA | NA | 89 | 160 | NA | 118 | 292 | 186 | 162 | 461 | 292 | 203 | 671 | 420 | 253 | 923 | 583 | 313 | 1,217 | 765 | 418 | 1,551 | 963 | 589 | 2,347 | 1,455 |
| | 15 | NA | NA | NA | 112 | 148 | NA | 145 | 275 | 174 | 199 | 441 | 280 | 244 | 646 | 405 | 299 | 894 | 562 | 363 | 1,183 | 736 | 481 | 1,512 | 934 | 668 | 2,299 | 1,421 |
| | 20 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 176 | 257 | NA | 236 | 420 | 267 | 285 | 622 | 389 | 345 | 866 | 543 | 415 | 1,150 | 708 | 544 | 1,473 | 906 | 741 | 2,251 | 1,387 |
| | 30 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 315 | 376 | NA | 373 | 573 | NA | 442 | 809 | 502 | 521 | 1,086 | 649 | 674 | 1,399 | 848 | 892 | 2,159 | 1,318 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**G2428.2.3 (504.2.3) Vent offsets.** Single-*appliance* venting configurations with zero (0) lateral lengths in Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2) shall not have elbows in the *venting system*. Single-*appliance* venting configurations with lateral lengths include two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each additional elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. Where multiple *offsets* occur in a vent, the total lateral length of all *offsets* combined shall not exceed that specified in Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2).

**G2428.2.4 (504.2.4) Zero lateral.** Zero (0) lateral (L) shall apply only to a straight vertical vent attached to a top outlet *draft hood* or *flue collar*.

**G2428.2.5 (504.2.5) High altitude installations.** Sea level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high altitude installation. Actual input, derated for altitude, shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high altitude installation.

**G2428.2.6 (504.2.6) Multiple input rate appliances.** For *appliances* with more than one input rate, the minimum vent capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest *appliance* input rating, and the maximum vent capacity (FAN Max/NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest *appliance* rating input.

**G2428.2.7 (504.2.7) Liner system sizing and connections.** Listed corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems in *masonry chimneys* shall be sized by using Table G2428.2(1) or G2428.2(2) for Type B vents with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table G2428.2(1) or G2428.2(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Section G2428.2.3. The 20-percent reduction for corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems includes an allowance for one long-radius 90-degree (1.57 rad) turn at the bottom of the liner.

Connections between *chimney* liners and listed double-wall connectors shall be made with listed adapters designed for such purpose.

**G2428.2.8 (504.2.8) Vent area and diameter.** Where the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the *vent connector*, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum vent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not exceed seven times the flow area of the listed *appliance* categorized vent area, *flue collar* area, or *draft hood* outlet area unless designed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

**G2428.2.9 (504.2.9) Chimney and vent locations.** Tables G2428.2(1) and G2428.2(2) shall be used only for *chimneys* and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed *chimney* lining system passing through an unused *masonry chimney* flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R-8.

**G2428.2.10 (504.2.10) Corrugated vent connector size.** Corrugated *vent connectors* shall be not smaller than the listed *appliance* categorized *vent* diameter, *flue collar* diameter, or *draft hood* outlet diameter.

**G2428.2.11 (504.2.11) Vent connector size limitation.** *Vent connectors* shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed *appliance* categorized vent diameter, *flue collar* diameter or *draft hood* outlet diameter.

**G2428.2.12 (504.2.12) Component commingling.** In a single run of vent or *vent connector*, different diameters and types of vent and connector components shall be permitted to be used, provided that all such sizes and types are permitted by the tables.

**G2428.2.13 (504.2.13) Draft hood conversion accessories.** *Draft hood* conversion accessories for use with *masonry chimneys* venting listed Category I fan-assisted *appliances* shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for such listed accessories.

**G2428.2.14 (504.2.14) Table interpolation.** Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between the table entries (see Example 3, Appendix B).

**G2428.2.15 (504.2.15) Extrapolation prohibited.** Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

**G2428.2.16 (504.2.16) Engineering calculations.** For *vent* heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate *vent* capacities.

**G2428.3 (504.3) Application of multiple appliance vent Tables G2428.3(1) through G2428.3(4).** The application of Tables G2428.3(1) through G2428.3(4) shall be subject to the requirements of Sections G2428.3.1 through G2428.3.23.

| Number of Appliances | Two or more |
|---|---|
| Appliance Type | Category I |
| Appliance Vent Connection | Type B double-wall connector |

## TABLE G2428.3(1) [504.3(1)]
## TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

**VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY**

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet) | TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 6 | 1 | 22 | 37 | 26 | 35 | 66 | 46 | 46 | 106 | 72 | 58 | 164 | 104 | 77 | 225 | 142 | 92 | 296 | 185 | 109 | 376 | 237 | 128 | 466 | 289 |
| | 2 | 23 | 41 | 31 | 37 | 75 | 55 | 48 | 121 | 86 | 60 | 183 | 124 | 79 | 253 | 168 | 95 | 333 | 220 | 112 | 424 | 282 | 131 | 526 | 345 |
| | 3 | 24 | 44 | 35 | 38 | 81 | 62 | 49 | 132 | 96 | 62 | 199 | 139 | 82 | 275 | 189 | 97 | 363 | 248 | 114 | 463 | 317 | 134 | 575 | 386 |
| 8 | 1 | 22 | 40 | 27 | 35 | 72 | 48 | 49 | 114 | 76 | 64 | 176 | 109 | 84 | 243 | 148 | 100 | 320 | 194 | 118 | 408 | 248 | 138 | 507 | 303 |
| | 2 | 23 | 44 | 32 | 36 | 80 | 57 | 51 | 128 | 90 | 66 | 195 | 129 | 86 | 269 | 175 | 103 | 356 | 230 | 121 | 454 | 294 | 141 | 564 | 358 |
| | 3 | 24 | 47 | 36 | 37 | 87 | 64 | 53 | 139 | 101 | 67 | 210 | 145 | 88 | 290 | 198 | 105 | 384 | 258 | 123 | 492 | 330 | 143 | 612 | 402 |
| 10 | 1 | 22 | 43 | 28 | 34 | 78 | 50 | 49 | 123 | 78 | 65 | 189 | 113 | 89 | 257 | 154 | 106 | 341 | 200 | 125 | 436 | 257 | 146 | 542 | 314 |
| | 2 | 23 | 47 | 33 | 36 | 86 | 59 | 51 | 136 | 93 | 67 | 206 | 134 | 91 | 282 | 182 | 109 | 374 | 238 | 128 | 479 | 305 | 149 | 596 | 372 |
| | 3 | 24 | 50 | 37 | 37 | 92 | 67 | 52 | 146 | 104 | 69 | 220 | 150 | 94 | 303 | 205 | 111 | 402 | 268 | 131 | 515 | 342 | 152 | 642 | 417 |
| 15 | 1 | 21 | 50 | 30 | 33 | 89 | 53 | 47 | 142 | 83 | 64 | 220 | 120 | 88 | 298 | 163 | 110 | 389 | 214 | 134 | 493 | 273 | 162 | 609 | 333 |
| | 2 | 22 | 53 | 35 | 35 | 96 | 63 | 49 | 153 | 99 | 66 | 235 | 142 | 91 | 320 | 193 | 112 | 419 | 253 | 137 | 532 | 323 | 165 | 658 | 394 |
| | 3 | 24 | 55 | 40 | 36 | 102 | 71 | 51 | 163 | 111 | 68 | 248 | 160 | 93 | 339 | 218 | 115 | 445 | 286 | 140 | 565 | 365 | 167 | 700 | 444 |
| 20 | 1 | 21 | 54 | 31 | 33 | 99 | 56 | 46 | 157 | 87 | 62 | 246 | 125 | 86 | 334 | 171 | 107 | 436 | 224 | 131 | 552 | 285 | 158 | 681 | 347 |
| | 2 | 22 | 57 | 37 | 34 | 105 | 66 | 48 | 167 | 104 | 64 | 259 | 149 | 89 | 354 | 202 | 110 | 463 | 265 | 134 | 587 | 339 | 161 | 725 | 414 |
| | 3 | 23 | 60 | 42 | 35 | 110 | 74 | 50 | 176 | 116 | 66 | 271 | 168 | 91 | 371 | 228 | 113 | 486 | 300 | 137 | 618 | 383 | 164 | 764 | 466 |
| 30 | 1 | 20 | 62 | 33 | 31 | 113 | 59 | 45 | 181 | 93 | 60 | 288 | 134 | 83 | 391 | 182 | 103 | 512 | 238 | 125 | 649 | 305 | 151 | 802 | 372 |
| | 2 | 21 | 64 | 39 | 33 | 118 | 70 | 47 | 190 | 110 | 62 | 299 | 158 | 85 | 408 | 215 | 105 | 535 | 282 | 129 | 679 | 360 | 155 | 840 | 439 |
| | 3 | 22 | 66 | 44 | 34 | 123 | 79 | 48 | 198 | 124 | 64 | 309 | 178 | 88 | 423 | 242 | 108 | 555 | 317 | 132 | 706 | 405 | 158 | 874 | 494 |

**COMMON VENT CAPACITY**

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER (*D*)—inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | |
| | COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT |
| 6 | 92 | 81 | 65 | 140 | 116 | 103 | 204 | 161 | 147 | 309 | 248 | 200 | 404 | 314 | 260 | 547 | 434 | 335 | 672 | 520 | 410 |
| 8 | 101 | 90 | 73 | 155 | 129 | 114 | 224 | 178 | 163 | 339 | 275 | 223 | 444 | 348 | 290 | 602 | 480 | 378 | 740 | 577 | 465 |
| 10 | 110 | 97 | 79 | 169 | 141 | 124 | 243 | 194 | 178 | 367 | 299 | 242 | 477 | 377 | 315 | 649 | 522 | 405 | 800 | 627 | 495 |
| 15 | 125 | 112 | 91 | 195 | 164 | 144 | 283 | 228 | 206 | 427 | 352 | 280 | 556 | 444 | 365 | 753 | 612 | 465 | 924 | 733 | 565 |
| 20 | 136 | 123 | 102 | 215 | 183 | 160 | 314 | 255 | 229 | 475 | 394 | 310 | 621 | 499 | 405 | 842 | 688 | 523 | 1,035 | 826 | 640 |
| 30 | 152 | 138 | 118 | 244 | 210 | 185 | 361 | 297 | 266 | 547 | 459 | 360 | 720 | 585 | 470 | 979 | 808 | 605 | 1,209 | 975 | 740 |
| 50 | 167 | 153 | 134 | 279 | 244 | 214 | 421 | 353 | 310 | 641 | 547 | 423 | 854 | 706 | 550 | 1,164 | 977 | 705 | 1,451 | 1,188 | 860 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Number of Appliances** | Two or more |
| **Appliance Type** | Category I |
| **Appliance Vent Connection** | Single-wall metal connector |

### TABLE G2428.3(2) [504.3(2)]
### TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT

**VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY**

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet) | SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 6 | 1 | NA | NA | 26 | NA | NA | 46 | NA | NA | 71 | NA | NA | 102 | 207 | 223 | 140 | 262 | 293 | 183 | 325 | 373 | 234 | 447 | 463 | 286 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 31 | NA | NA | 55 | NA | NA | 85 | 168 | 182 | 123 | 215 | 251 | 167 | 271 | 331 | 219 | 334 | 422 | 281 | 458 | 524 | 344 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 34 | NA | NA | 62 | 121 | 131 | 95 | 175 | 198 | 138 | 222 | 273 | 188 | 279 | 361 | 247 | 344 | 462 | 316 | 468 | 574 | 385 |
| 8 | 1 | NA | NA | 27 | NA | NA | 48 | NA | NA | 75 | NA | NA | 106 | 226 | 240 | 145 | 285 | 316 | 191 | 352 | 403 | 244 | 481 | 502 | 299 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 32 | NA | NA | 57 | 125 | 126 | 89 | 184 | 193 | 127 | 234 | 266 | 173 | 293 | 353 | 228 | 360 | 450 | 292 | 492 | 560 | 355 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 35 | NA | NA | 64 | 130 | 138 | 100 | 191 | 208 | 144 | 241 | 287 | 197 | 302 | 381 | 256 | 370 | 489 | 328 | 501 | 609 | 400 |
| 10 | 1 | NA | NA | 28 | NA | NA | 50 | 119 | 121 | 77 | 182 | 186 | 110 | 240 | 253 | 150 | 302 | 335 | 196 | 372 | 429 | 252 | 506 | 534 | 308 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 33 | 84 | 85 | 59 | 124 | 134 | 91 | 189 | 203 | 132 | 248 | 278 | 183 | 311 | 369 | 235 | 381 | 473 | 302 | 517 | 589 | 368 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 36 | 89 | 91 | 67 | 129 | 144 | 102 | 197 | 217 | 148 | 257 | 299 | 203 | 320 | 398 | 265 | 391 | 511 | 339 | 528 | 637 | 413 |
| 15 | 1 | NA | NA | 29 | 79 | 87 | 52 | 116 | 138 | 81 | 177 | 214 | 116 | 238 | 291 | 158 | 312 | 380 | 208 | 397 | 482 | 266 | 556 | 596 | 324 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 34 | 83 | 94 | 62 | 121 | 150 | 97 | 185 | 230 | 138 | 246 | 314 | 189 | 321 | 411 | 248 | 407 | 522 | 317 | 568 | 646 | 387 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 39 | 87 | 100 | 70 | 127 | 160 | 109 | 193 | 243 | 157 | 255 | 333 | 215 | 331 | 438 | 281 | 418 | 557 | 360 | 579 | 690 | 437 |
| 20 | 1 | 49 | 56 | 30 | 78 | 97 | 54 | 115 | 152 | 84 | 175 | 238 | 120 | 233 | 325 | 165 | 306 | 425 | 217 | 390 | 538 | 276 | 546 | 664 | 336 |
| | 2 | 52 | 59 | 36 | 82 | 103 | 64 | 120 | 163 | 101 | 182 | 252 | 144 | 243 | 346 | 197 | 317 | 453 | 259 | 400 | 574 | 331 | 558 | 709 | 403 |
| | 3 | 55 | 62 | 40 | 87 | 107 | 72 | 125 | 172 | 113 | 190 | 264 | 164 | 252 | 363 | 223 | 326 | 476 | 294 | 412 | 607 | 375 | 570 | 750 | 457 |
| 30 | 1 | 47 | 60 | 31 | 77 | 110 | 57 | 112 | 175 | 89 | 169 | 278 | 129 | 226 | 380 | 175 | 296 | 497 | 230 | 378 | 630 | 294 | 528 | 779 | 358 |
| | 2 | 51 | 62 | 37 | 81 | 115 | 67 | 117 | 185 | 106 | 177 | 290 | 152 | 236 | 397 | 208 | 307 | 521 | 274 | 389 | 662 | 349 | 541 | 819 | 425 |
| | 3 | 54 | 64 | 42 | 85 | 119 | 76 | 122 | 193 | 120 | 185 | 300 | 172 | 244 | 412 | 235 | 316 | 542 | 309 | 400 | 690 | 394 | 555 | 855 | 482 |

**COMMON VENT CAPACITY**

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT DIAMETER— (*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | |
| | COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT |
| 6 | NA | 78 | 64 | NA | 113 | 99 | 200 | 158 | 144 | 304 | 244 | 196 | 398 | 310 | 257 | 541 | 429 | 332 | 665 | 515 | 407 |
| 8 | NA | 87 | 71 | NA | 126 | 111 | 218 | 173 | 159 | 331 | 269 | 218 | 436 | 342 | 285 | 592 | 473 | 373 | 730 | 569 | 460 |
| 10 | NA | 94 | 76 | 163 | 137 | 120 | 237 | 189 | 174 | 357 | 292 | 236 | 467 | 369 | 309 | 638 | 512 | 398 | 787 | 617 | 487 |
| 15 | 121 | 108 | 88 | 189 | 159 | 140 | 275 | 221 | 200 | 416 | 343 | 274 | 544 | 434 | 357 | 738 | 599 | 456 | 905 | 718 | 553 |
| 20 | 131 | 118 | 98 | 208 | 177 | 156 | 305 | 247 | 223 | 463 | 383 | 302 | 606 | 487 | 395 | 824 | 673 | 512 | 1,013 | 808 | 626 |
| 30 | 145 | 132 | 113 | 236 | 202 | 180 | 350 | 286 | 257 | 533 | 446 | 349 | 703 | 570 | 459 | 958 | 790 | 593 | 1,183 | 952 | 723 |
| 50 | 159 | 145 | 128 | 268 | 233 | 208 | 406 | 337 | 296 | 622 | 529 | 410 | 833 | 686 | 535 | 1,139 | 954 | 689 | 1,418 | 1,157 | 838 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Number of Appliances** | Two or more |
| **Appliance Type** | Category I |
| **Appliance Vent Connection** | Type B double-wall connector |

## TABLE G2428.3(3) [504.3(3)]
## MASONRY CHIMNEY

**VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY**

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet) | TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER—(*D*) inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 6 | 1 | 24 | 33 | 21 | 39 | 62 | 40 | 52 | 106 | 67 | 65 | 194 | 101 | 87 | 274 | 141 | 104 | 370 | 201 | 124 | 479 | 253 | 145 | 599 | 319 |
| | 2 | 26 | 43 | 28 | 41 | 79 | 52 | 53 | 133 | 85 | 67 | 230 | 124 | 89 | 324 | 173 | 107 | 436 | 232 | 127 | 562 | 300 | 148 | 694 | 378 |
| | 3 | 27 | 49 | 34 | 42 | 92 | 61 | 55 | 155 | 97 | 69 | 262 | 143 | 91 | 369 | 203 | 109 | 491 | 270 | 129 | 633 | 349 | 151 | 795 | 439 |
| 8 | 1 | 24 | 39 | 22 | 39 | 72 | 41 | 55 | 117 | 69 | 71 | 213 | 105 | 94 | 304 | 148 | 113 | 414 | 210 | 134 | 539 | 267 | 156 | 682 | 335 |
| | 2 | 26 | 47 | 29 | 40 | 87 | 53 | 57 | 140 | 86 | 73 | 246 | 127 | 97 | 350 | 179 | 116 | 473 | 240 | 137 | 615 | 311 | 160 | 776 | 394 |
| | 3 | 27 | 52 | 34 | 42 | 97 | 62 | 59 | 159 | 98 | 75 | 269 | 145 | 99 | 383 | 206 | 119 | 517 | 276 | 139 | 672 | 358 | 163 | 848 | 452 |
| 10 | 1 | 24 | 42 | 22 | 38 | 80 | 42 | 55 | 130 | 71 | 74 | 232 | 108 | 101 | 324 | 153 | 120 | 444 | 216 | 142 | 582 | 277 | 165 | 739 | 348 |
| | 2 | 26 | 50 | 29 | 40 | 93 | 54 | 57 | 153 | 87 | 76 | 261 | 129 | 103 | 366 | 184 | 123 | 498 | 247 | 145 | 652 | 321 | 168 | 825 | 407 |
| | 3 | 27 | 55 | 35 | 41 | 105 | 63 | 58 | 170 | 100 | 78 | 284 | 148 | 106 | 397 | 209 | 126 | 540 | 281 | 147 | 705 | 366 | 171 | 893 | 463 |
| 15 | 1 | 24 | 48 | 23 | 38 | 93 | 44 | 54 | 154 | 74 | 72 | 277 | 114 | 100 | 384 | 164 | 125 | 511 | 229 | 153 | 658 | 297 | 184 | 824 | 375 |
| | 2 | 25 | 55 | 31 | 39 | 105 | 55 | 56 | 174 | 89 | 74 | 299 | 134 | 103 | 419 | 192 | 128 | 558 | 260 | 156 | 718 | 339 | 187 | 900 | 432 |
| | 3 | 26 | 59 | 35 | 41 | 115 | 64 | 57 | 189 | 102 | 76 | 319 | 153 | 105 | 448 | 215 | 131 | 597 | 292 | 159 | 760 | 382 | 190 | 960 | 486 |
| 20 | 1 | 24 | 52 | 24 | 37 | 102 | 46 | 53 | 172 | 77 | 71 | 313 | 119 | 98 | 437 | 173 | 123 | 584 | 239 | 150 | 752 | 312 | 180 | 943 | 397 |
| | 2 | 25 | 58 | 31 | 39 | 114 | 56 | 55 | 190 | 91 | 73 | 335 | 138 | 101 | 467 | 199 | 126 | 625 | 270 | 153 | 805 | 354 | 184 | 1,011 | 452 |
| | 3 | 26 | 63 | 35 | 40 | 123 | 65 | 57 | 204 | 104 | 75 | 353 | 157 | 104 | 493 | 222 | 129 | 661 | 301 | 156 | 851 | 396 | 187 | 1,067 | 505 |

**COMMON VENT CAPACITY**

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 12 | | | 19 | | | 28 | | | 38 | | | 50 | | | 63 | | | 78 | | | 113 | | |
| | COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT |
| 6 | NA | 74 | 25 | NA | 119 | 46 | NA | 178 | 71 | NA | 257 | 103 | NA | 351 | 143 | NA | 458 | 188 | NA | 582 | 246 | 1,041 | 853 | NA |
| 8 | NA | 80 | 28 | NA | 130 | 53 | NA | 193 | 82 | NA | 279 | 119 | NA | 384 | 163 | NA | 501 | 218 | 724 | 636 | 278 | 1,144 | 937 | 408 |
| 10 | NA | 84 | 31 | NA | 138 | 56 | NA | 207 | 90 | NA | 299 | 131 | NA | 409 | 177 | 606 | 538 | 236 | 776 | 686 | 302 | 1,226 | 1,010 | 454 |
| 15 | NA | NA | 36 | NA | 152 | 67 | NA | 233 | 106 | NA | 334 | 152 | 523 | 467 | 212 | 682 | 611 | 283 | 874 | 781 | 365 | 1,374 | 1,156 | 546 |
| 20 | NA | NA | 41 | NA | NA | 75 | NA | 250 | 122 | NA | 368 | 172 | 565 | 508 | 243 | 742 | 668 | 325 | 955 | 858 | 419 | 1,513 | 1,286 | 648 |
| 30 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 270 | 137 | NA | 404 | 198 | 615 | 564 | 278 | 816 | 747 | 381 | 1,062 | 969 | 496 | 1,702 | 1,473 | 749 |
| 50 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 620 | 328 | 879 | 831 | 461 | 1,165 | 1,089 | 606 | 1,905 | 1,692 | 922 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 $mm^2$, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Number of Appliances** | Two or more |
| **Appliance Type** | Category I |
| **Appliance Vent Connection** | Single-wall metal connector |

## TABLE G2428.3(4) [504.3(4)] MASONRY CHIMNEY

### VENT CONNECTOR CAPACITY

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | CONNECTOR RISE (*R*) (feet) | SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR DIAMETER (*D*)—inches | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | | 8 | | | 9 | | | 10 | | |
| | | APPLIANCE INPUT RATING LIMITS IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT | FAN | | NAT |
| | | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max | Min | Max | Max |
| 6 | 1 | NA | NA | 21 | NA | NA | 39 | NA | NA | 66 | 179 | 191 | 100 | 231 | 271 | 140 | 292 | 366 | 200 | 362 | 474 | 252 | 499 | 594 | 316 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 28 | NA | NA | 52 | NA | NA | 84 | 186 | 227 | 123 | 239 | 321 | 172 | 301 | 432 | 231 | 373 | 557 | 299 | 509 | 696 | 376 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 34 | NA | NA | 61 | 134 | 153 | 97 | 193 | 258 | 142 | 247 | 365 | 202 | 309 | 491 | 269 | 381 | 634 | 348 | 519 | 793 | 437 |
| 8 | 1 | NA | NA | 21 | NA | NA | 40 | NA | NA | 68 | 195 | 208 | 103 | 250 | 298 | 146 | 313 | 407 | 207 | 387 | 530 | 263 | 529 | 672 | 331 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 28 | NA | NA | 52 | 137 | 139 | 85 | 202 | 240 | 125 | 258 | 343 | 177 | 323 | 465 | 238 | 397 | 607 | 309 | 540 | 766 | 391 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 34 | NA | NA | 62 | 143 | 156 | 98 | 210 | 264 | 145 | 266 | 376 | 205 | 332 | 509 | 274 | 407 | 663 | 356 | 551 | 838 | 450 |
| 10 | 1 | NA | NA | 22 | NA | NA | 41 | 130 | 151 | 70 | 202 | 225 | 106 | 267 | 316 | 151 | 333 | 434 | 213 | 410 | 571 | 273 | 558 | 727 | 343 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 29 | NA | NA | 53 | 136 | 150 | 86 | 210 | 255 | 128 | 276 | 358 | 181 | 343 | 489 | 244 | 420 | 640 | 317 | 569 | 813 | 403 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 34 | 97 | 102 | 62 | 143 | 166 | 99 | 217 | 277 | 147 | 284 | 389 | 207 | 352 | 530 | 279 | 430 | 694 | 363 | 580 | 880 | 459 |
| 15 | 1 | NA | NA | 23 | NA | NA | 43 | 129 | 151 | 73 | 199 | 271 | 112 | 268 | 376 | 161 | 349 | 502 | 225 | 445 | 646 | 291 | 623 | 808 | 366 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 30 | 92 | 103 | 54 | 135 | 170 | 88 | 207 | 295 | 132 | 277 | 411 | 189 | 359 | 548 | 256 | 456 | 706 | 334 | 634 | 884 | 424 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 34 | 96 | 112 | 63 | 141 | 185 | 101 | 215 | 315 | 151 | 286 | 439 | 213 | 368 | 586 | 289 | 466 | 755 | 378 | 646 | 945 | 479 |
| 20 | 1 | NA | NA | 23 | 87 | 99 | 45 | 128 | 167 | 76 | 197 | 303 | 117 | 265 | 425 | 169 | 345 | 569 | 235 | 439 | 734 | 306 | 614 | 921 | 347 |
| | 2 | NA | NA | 30 | 91 | 111 | 55 | 134 | 185 | 90 | 205 | 325 | 136 | 274 | 455 | 195 | 355 | 610 | 266 | 450 | 787 | 348 | 627 | 986 | 443 |
| | 3 | NA | NA | 35 | 96 | 119 | 64 | 140 | 199 | 103 | 213 | 343 | 154 | 282 | 481 | 219 | 365 | 644 | 298 | 461 | 831 | 391 | 639 | 1,042 | 496 |

### COMMON VENT CAPACITY

| VENT HEIGHT (*H*) (feet) | MINIMUM INTERNAL AREA OF MASONRY CHIMNEY FLUE (square inches) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 12 | | | 19 | | | 28 | | | 38 | | | 50 | | | 63 | | | 78 | | | 113 | | |
| | COMBINED APPLIANCE INPUT RATING IN THOUSANDS OF BTU/H | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT | FAN +FAN | FAN +NAT | NAT +NAT |
| 6 | **NA** | **NA** | **25** | **NA** | **118** | **45** | **NA** | **176** | **71** | **NA** | **255** | **102** | **NA** | **348** | **142** | **NA** | **455** | **187** | **NA** | **579** | **245** | **NA** | **846** | **NA** |
| 8 | NA | NA | 28 | NA | 128 | 52 | NA | 190 | 81 | NA | 276 | 118 | NA | 380 | 162 | NA | 497 | 217 | NA | 633 | 277 | 1,136 | 928 | 405 |
| 10 | NA | NA | 31 | NA | 136 | 56 | NA | 205 | 89 | NA | 295 | 129 | NA | 405 | 175 | NA | 532 | 234 | 171 | 680 | 300 | 1,216 | 1,000 | 450 |
| 15 | NA | NA | 36 | NA | NA | 66 | NA | 230 | 105 | NA | 335 | 150 | NA | 400 | 210 | 677 | 602 | 280 | 866 | 772 | 360 | 1,359 | 1,139 | 540 |
| 20 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 74 | NA | 247 | 120 | NA | 362 | 170 | NA | 503 | 240 | 765 | 661 | 321 | 947 | 849 | 415 | 1,495 | 1,264 | 640 |
| 30 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 135 | NA | 398 | 195 | NA | 558 | 275 | 808 | 739 | 377 | 1,052 | 957 | 490 | 1,682 | 1,447 | 740 |
| 50 | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | NA | 612 | 325 | NA | 821 | 456 | 1,152 | 1,076 | 600 | 1,879 | 1,672 | 910 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 $mm^2$, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**G2428.3.1 (504.3.1) Vent obstructions.** These venting tables shall not be used where obstructions, as described in Section G2427.15, are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed *appliances* with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

1. The maximum capacity of the *vent connector* shall be determined using the NAT Max column.
2. The maximum capacity of the vertical vent or *chimney* shall be determined using the FAN+NAT column when the second *appliance* is a fan-assisted *appliance*, or the NAT+NAT column when the second *appliance* is equipped with a *draft hood*.
3. The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the *appliance* were a fan-assisted *appliance*.
   3.1. The minimum capacity of the *vent connector* shall be determined using the FAN Min column.
   3.2. The FAN+FAN column shall be used when the second *appliance* is a fan-assisted *appliance*, and the FAN+NAT column shall be used when the second *appliance* is equipped with a *draft hood*, to determine whether the vertical vent or *chimney* configuration is not permitted (NA). Where the vent configuration is NA, the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

**G2428.3.2 (504.3.2) Connector length limit.** The *vent connector* shall be routed to the vent utilizing the shortest possible route. Except as provided in Section G2428.3.3, the maximum *vent connector* horizontal length shall be 1.5 feet (457 mm) for each inch (18 mm per mm) of connector diameter as shown in Table G2428.3.2.

**TABLE G2428.3.2 (504.3.2)**
**MAXIMUM VENT CONNECTOR LENGTH**

| CONNECTOR DIAMETER Maximum (inches) | CONNECTOR HORIZONTAL Length (feet) |
|---|---|
| 3 | 4.5 |
| 4 | 6 |
| 5 | 7.5 |
| 6 | 9 |
| 7 | 10.5 |
| 8 | 12 |
| 9 | 13.5 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**G2428.3.3 (504.3.3) Connectors with longer lengths.** Connectors with longer horizontal lengths than those listed in Section G2428.3.2 are permitted under the following conditions:

1. The maximum capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) of the *vent connector* shall be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length listed above. For example, the maximum length listed above for a 4-inch (102 mm) connector is 6 feet (1829 mm). With a connector length greater than 6 feet (1829 mm), but not exceeding 12 feet (3658 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum *vent connector* capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 feet (3658 mm), but not exceeding 18 feet (5486 mm), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum vent capacity).
2. For a connector serving a fan-assisted *appliance*, the minimum capacity (FAN Min) of the connector shall be determined by referring to the corresponding single *appliance* table. For Type B double-wall connectors, Table G2428.2(1) shall be used. For single-wall connectors, Table G2428.2(2) shall be used. The height (H) and lateral (L) shall be measured according to the procedures for a single *appliance* vent, *as* if the other *appliances* were not present.

**G2428.3.4 (504.3.4) Vent connector manifold.** Where the *vent connectors* are combined prior to entering the vertical portion of the common vent to form a common vent manifold, the size of the common vent manifold and the common vent shall be determined by applying a 10-percent reduction (0.90 × maximum common vent capacity) to the common vent capacity part of the common vent tables. The length of the common *vent connector* manifold ($L_M$) shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common *vent connector* manifold diameter (D) (see Appendix B Figure B-11).

**G2428.3.5 (504.3.5) Common vertical vent offset.** Where the common vertical vent is *offset*, the maximum capacity of the common vent shall be reduced in accordance with Section G2428.3.6. The horizontal length of the common vent *offset* ($L_o$) shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm per mm) of common vent diameter (D). Where multiple *offsets* occur in a common vent, the total horizontal length of all *offsets* combined shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ feet for each inch (18 mm/mm per) of the common vent diameter (D).

**G2428.3.6 (504.3.6) Elbows in vents.** For each elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad) in the common vent, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

**G2428.3.7 (504.3.7) Elbows in connectors.** The *vent connector* capacities listed in the common vent sizing tables include allowance for two 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees (0.79 rad), the maximum *vent connector* capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) up to and including 90 degrees (1.57 rad), the maximum *vent connector* capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

**G2428.3.8 (504.3.8) Common vent minimum size.** The cross-sectional area of the common vent shall be equal to or greater than the cross-sectional area of the largest connector.

**G2428.3.9 (504.3.9) Common vent fittings.** At the point where tee or wye fittings connect to a common vent, the opening size of the fitting shall be equal to the size of the common vent. Such fittings shall not be prohibited from having reduced-size openings at the point of connection of *appliance vent connectors*.

**G2428.3.9.1 (504.3.9.1) Tee and wye fittings.** Tee and wye fittings connected to a common gas vent shall be considered as part of the common gas vent and shall be constructed of materials consistent with that of the common gas vent.

**G2428.3.10 (504.3.10) High altitude installations.** Sea-level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high altitude installation. Actual input, derated for altitude, shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high altitude installation.

**G2428.3.11 (504.3.11) Connector rise measurement.** Connector rise (*R*) for each *appliance connector* shall be measured from the *draft hood* outlet or *flue collar* to the centerline where the vent gas streams come together.

**G2428.3.12 (504.3.12) Vent height measurement.** For multiple *appliances* all located on one floor, available total height (H) shall be measured from the highest *draft hood* outlet or *flue collar* up to the level of the outlet of the common vent.

**G2428.3.13 (504.3.17) Vertical vent maximum size.** Where two or more *appliances* are connected to a vertical vent or *chimney*, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or *chimney* shall not exceed seven times the smallest listed *appliance* categorized vent areas, *flue collar* area, or *draft hood* outlet area unless designed in accordance with *approved* engineering methods.

**G2428.3.14 (504.3.18) Multiple input rate appliances.** For *appliances* with more than one input rate, the minimum *vent connector* capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest *appliance* input rating, and the maximum *vent connector* capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest *appliance* input rating.

**G2428.3.15 (504.3.19) Liner system sizing and connections.** Listed, corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems in *masonry chimneys* shall be sized by using Table G2428.3(1) or G2428.3(2) for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table G2428.3(1) or G2428.3(2). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with Sections G2428.3.5 and G2428.3.6. The 20-percent reduction for corrugated metallic *chimney* liner systems includes an allowance for one long-radius 90-degree (1.57 rad) turn at the bottom of the liner. Where double-wall connectors are required, tee and wye fittings used to connect to the common vent *chimney* liner shall be listed double-wall fittings. Connections between *chimney* liners and listed double-wall fittings shall be made with listed adapter fittings designed for such purpose.

**G2428.3.16 (504.3.20) Chimney and vent location.** Tables G2428.3(1), G2428.3(2), G2428.3(3) and G2428.3(4) shall be used only for *chimneys* and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed *chimney* lining system passing through an unused masonry *chimney* flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. A Type B vent shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors where it passes through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R-8.

**G2428.3.17 (504.3.21) Connector maximum and minimum size.** *Vent connectors* shall not be increased in size more than two sizes greater than the listed *appliance* categorized vent diameter, *flue collar* diameter, or *draft hood* outlet diameter. *Vent connectors* for draft-hood-equipped *appliances* shall not be smaller than the *draft hood* outlet diameter. Where a *vent connector* size(s) determined from the tables for a fan-assisted *appliance(s)* is smaller than the *flue collar* diameter, the use of the smaller size(s) shall be permitted provided that the installation complies with all of the following conditions:

1. *Vent connectors* for fan-assisted *appliance flue collars* 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced by more than one table size [e.g., 12 inches to 10 inches (305 mm to 254 mm) is a one-size reduction] and those larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes [e.g., 24 inches to 20 inches (610 mm to 508 mm) is a two-size reduction].
2. The fan-assisted *appliance(s)* is common vented with a draft-hood-equipped *appliance(s)*.
3. The vent *connector* has a smooth interior wall.

**G2428.3.18 (504.3.22) Component commingling.** All combinations of pipe sizes, single-wall, and double-wall metal pipe shall be allowed within any connector run(s) or within the common vent, provided all of the appropriate tables permit all of the desired sizes and types of pipe, as if they were used for the entire length of the subject connector or vent. Where single-wall and Type B double-wall metal pipes are used for *vent connectors* within the same venting system, the common vent must be sized using Table G2428.3(2) or G2428.3(4), as appropriate.

**G2428.3.19 (504.3.23) Draft hood conversion accessories.** *Draft hood* conversion accessories for use with *masonry chimneys* venting listed Category I fan-assisted *appliances* shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for such listed accessories.

**G2428.3.20 (504.3.24) Multiple sizes permitted.** Where a table permits more than one diameter of pipe to be used for a connector or vent, all the permitted sizes shall be permitted to be used.

**G2428.3.21 (504.3.25) Table interpolation.** Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries. (See Example 3, Appendix B.)

**G2428.3.22 (504.3.26) Extrapolation prohibited.** Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

**G2428.3.23 (504.3.27) Engineering calculations.** For vent heights less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and greater than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

## SECTION G2429 (505) DIRECT-VENT, INTEGRAL VENT, MECHANICAL VENT AND VENTILATION/EXHAUST HOOD VENTING

**G2429.1 (505.1) General.** The installation of direct-vent and integral vent *appliances* shall be in accordance with Section G2427. Mechanical *venting systems* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section G2427.

## SECTION G2430 (506) FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

**G2430.1 (506.1) Listing.** Factory-built *chimneys* for building heating *appliances* producing *flue gases* having a temperature not greater than 1,000°F (538°C), measured at the entrance to the *chimney*, shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 103 and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2430.2 (506.2) Support.** Where factory-built *chimneys* are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

## SECTION G2431 (601) GENERAL

**G2431.1 (601.1) Scope.** Sections G2432 through G2453 shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of the *appliances* and *equipment* specifically identified herein.

## SECTION G2432 (602) DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN FIREPLACES

**G2432.1 (602.1) General.** Decorative *appliances* for installation in *approved* solid fuel burning *fireplaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.60 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Manually lighted natural gas decorative *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84.

**G2432.2 (602.2) Flame safeguard device.** Decorative *appliances* for installation in *approved* solid fuel-burning *fireplaces*, with the exception of those tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.84, shall utilize a direct ignition device, an ignitor or a *pilot* flame to ignite the fuel at the *main burner*, and shall be equipped with a *flame safeguard* device. The *flame safeguard* device shall automatically shut off the fuel supply to a *main burner* or group of *burners* when the means of ignition of such *burners* becomes inoperative.

**G2432.3 (602.3) Prohibited installations.** Decorative *appliances* for installation in *fireplaces* shall not be installed where prohibited by Section G2406.2.

## SECTION G2433 (603) LOG LIGHTERS

**G2433.1 (603.1) General.** Log lighters shall be tested in accordance with CSA 8 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION G2434 (604) VENTED GAS FIREPLACES (DECORATIVE APPLIANCES)

**G2434.1 (604.1) General.** Vented gas *fireplaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.50, shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section G2432.2.

**G2434.2 (604.2) Access.** Panels, grilles, and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

## SECTION G2435 (605) VENTED GAS FIREPLACE HEATERS

**G2435.1 (605.1) General.** Vented gas *fireplace* heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.88 and shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section G2432.2.

## SECTION G2436 (608) VENTED WALL FURNACES

**G2436.1 (608.1) General.** *Vented wall furnaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2436.2 (608.2) Venting.** *Vented wall furnaces* shall be vented in accordance with Section G2427.

**G2436.3 (608.3) Location.** *Vented wall furnaces* shall be located so as not to cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. *Vented wall furnaces* installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

**G2436.4 (608.4) Door swing.** *Vented wall furnaces* shall be located so that a door cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of an air inlet or air outlet of such *furnace* measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this *clearance*.

**G2436.5 (608.5) Ducts prohibited.** Ducts shall not be attached to wall *furnaces*. Casing extension boots shall not be installed unless listed as part of the *appliance*.

**G2436.6 (608.6) Access.** *Vented wall furnaces* shall be provided with access for cleaning of heating surfaces, removal of *burners*, replacement of sections, motors, *controls*, filters and other working parts, and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

## SECTION G2437 (609) FLOOR FURNACES

**G2437.1 (609.1) General.** *Floor furnaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2437.2 (609.2) Placement.** The following provisions apply to *floor furnaces*:

1. Floors. *Floor furnaces* shall not be installed in the floor of any doorway, stairway landing, aisle or passageway of any enclosure, public or private, or in an exitway from any such room or space.
2. Walls and corners. The register of a *floor furnace* with a horizontal warm air outlet shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the nearest wall. A distance of at least 18 inches (457 mm) from two adjoining sides of the *floor furnace* register to walls shall be provided to eliminate the necessity of occupants walking over the warm air discharge. The remaining sides shall be permitted to be placed not closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a wall. Wall-register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a corner.
3. Draperies. The *furnace* shall be placed so that a door, drapery, or similar object cannot be nearer than 12 inches (305 mm) to any portion of the register of the *furnace*.
4. Floor construction. *Floor furnaces* shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade.
5. *Thermostat.* The controlling *thermostat* for a *floor furnace* shall be located within the same room or space as the *floor furnace* or shall be located in an adjacent room or space that is permanently open to the room or space containing the *floor furnace*.

**G2437.3 (609.3) Bracing.** The floor around the *furnace* shall be braced and headed with a support framework designed in accordance with Chapter 5.

**G2437.4 (609.4) Clearance.** The lowest portion of the *floor furnace* shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the *floor furnace* is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum *clearance* shall be reduced to not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where these *clearances* cannot be provided, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the *furnace* so that the required *clearance* is provided beneath the lowest portion of the *furnace*. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum clearance shall be provided on all sides except the *control* side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum *clearance*.

**G2437.5 (609.5) First floor installation.** Where the basement story level below the floor in which a *floor furnace* is installed is utilized as habitable space, such *floor furnaces* shall be enclosed as specified in Section G2437.6 and shall project into a nonhabitable space.

**G2437.6 (609.6) Upper floor installations.** *Floor furnaces* installed in upper stories of buildings shall project below into nonhabitable space and shall be separated from the nonhabitable space by an enclosure constructed of noncombustible materials. The *floor furnace* shall be provided with access, *clearance* to all sides and bottom of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and *combustion air* in accordance with Section G2407.

## SECTION G2438 (613) CLOTHES DRYERS

**G2438.1 (613.1) General.** *Clothes dryers* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.5.1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION G2439 (614) CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

**G2439.1 (614.1) Installation.** *Clothes dryers* shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems shall be independent of all other systems and shall convey the moisture and any products of *combustion* to the outside of the building.

**G2439.2 (614.2) Duct penetrations.** Ducts that exhaust *clothes dryers* shall not penetrate or be located within any fireblocking, draftstopping or any wall, floor/ceiling or other assembly required by this *code* to be fire-resistance rated, unless such duct is constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum of the thickness specified in the mechanical provisions of this *code* and the fire-resistance rating is maintained in accordance with this *code*. Fire dampers shall not be installed in *clothes dryer* exhaust duct systems.

**G2439.3 (614.4) Exhaust installation.** Dryer exhaust ducts for *clothes dryers* shall terminate on the outside of the building and shall be equipped with a backdraft *damper*. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the flow. *Clothes dryer* exhaust ducts shall not be connected to a *vent connector*, vent or *chimney*. *Clothes dryer* exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or plenums.

**G2439.4 (614.5) Makeup air.** Installations exhausting more than 200 cfm (0.09 $m^3/s$) shall be provided with *makeup air*. Where a closet is designed for the installation of a *clothes dryer*, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.0645 $m^2$) for *makeup air* shall be provided in the closet enclosure, or *makeup air* shall be provided by other *approved* means.

**G2439.5 (614.6) Domestic clothes dryer exhaust ducts.** Exhaust ducts for domestic *clothes dryers* shall conform to the requirements of Sections G2439.5.1 through G2439.5.7.

**G2439.5.1 (614.6.1) Material and size.** Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal a minimum 0.016-inch (0.4 mm) thick. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

**G2439.5.2 (614.6.2) Duct installation.** Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4 foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct.

**G2439.5.3 (614.6.3) Protection required.** Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the *clothes dryer* exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, shall have a minimum thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

**G2439.5.4 (614.6.4) Transition ducts.** Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be a maximum of 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall not be concealed within construction.

**G2439.5.5 (614.6.5) Duct length.** The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Section G2439.5.5.1 or G2439.5.5.2.

**G2439.5.5.1 (614.6.5.1) Specified length.** The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table G2439.5.5.1.

**G2439.5.5.2 (614.6.5.2) Manufacturer's instructions.** The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The *code official* shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the *code official* prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table G2439.5.5.1 shall be used.

**G2439.5.6 (614.6.6) Length identification.** Where the exhaust duct is concealed within the building construction, the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

**G2439.5.7 (614.6.7) Exhaust duct required.** Where space for a *clothes dryer* is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed. Where the *clothes dryer* is not installed at the time of occupancy, the exhaust duct shall be capped at location of the future dryer.

**Exception:** Where a listed condensing *clothes dryer* is installed prior to occupancy of the structure.

## SECTION G2440 (615)
## SAUNA HEATERS

**G2440.1 (615.1) General.** Sauna heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2440.2 (615.2) Location and protection.** Sauna heaters shall be located so as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

**G2440.2.1 (615.2.1) Guards.** Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by an *approved* guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. The guard shall not substantially affect the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

**G2440.3 (615.3) Access.** Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations, shall not be attached to the building.

**G2440.4 (615.4) Combustion and dilution air intakes.** Sauna heaters of other than the direct-vent type shall be installed with the *draft hood* and *combustion air* intake located outside the sauna room. Where the *combustion air* inlet and the *draft hood* are in a dressing room adjacent to the sauna room, there shall be provisions to prevent physically blocking the *combustion air* inlet and the *draft hood* inlet, and to prevent physical contact with the *draft hood* and vent assembly, or warning notices shall be posted to avoid such contact. Any warning notice shall be easily readable, shall contrast with its background, and the wording shall be in letters not less than 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) high.

**TABLE G2439.5.5.1 (TABLE 614.6.5.1)**
**DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH**

| DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE | EQUIVALENT LENGTH |
|---|---|
| 4 inch radius mitered 45 degree elbow | 2 feet 6 inches |
| 4 inch radius mitered 90 degree elbow | 5 feet |
| 6 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow | 1 foot |
| 6 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow | 1 foot 9 inches |
| 8 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow | 1 foot |
| 8 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow | 1 foot 7 inches |
| 10 inch radius smooth 45 degree elbow | 9 inches |
| 10 inch radius smooth 90 degree elbow | 1 foot 6 inches |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**G2440.5 (615.5) Combustion and ventilation air.** Combustion air shall not be taken from inside the sauna room. *Combustion* and ventilation air for a sauna heater not of the direct-vent type shall be provided to the area in which the *combustion air* inlet and *draft hood* are located in accordance with Section G2407.

**G2440.6 (615.6) Heat and time controls.** Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a *thermostat* which will limit room temperature to 194°F (90°C). If the *thermostat* is not an integral part of the sauna heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. If the heat-sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support, and shall be protected against physical damage.

**G2440.6.1 (615.6.1) Timers.** A timer, if provided to *control main burner* operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The *control* for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

**G2440.7 (615.7) Sauna room.** A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided. The opening shall be not less than 4 inches by 8 inches (102 mm by 203 mm) located near the top of the door into the sauna room.

## SECTION G2441 (617) POOL AND SPA HEATERS

**G2441.1 (617.1) General.** Pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.56 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION G2442 (618) FORCED-AIR WARM-AIR FURNACES

**G2442.1 (618.1) General.** Forced-air warm-air *furnaces* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.47 or UL 795 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2442.2 (618.2) Forced-air furnaces.** The minimum unobstructed total area of the outside and return air ducts or openings to a forced-air warm-air *furnace* shall be not less than 2 square inches for each 1,000 *Btu*/h (4402 mm$^2$/W) output rating capacity of the *furnace* and not less than that specified in the *furnace* manufacturer's installation instructions. The minimum unobstructed total area of supply ducts from a forced-air warm-air *furnace* shall be not less than 2 square inches for each 1,000 *Btu*/h (4402 mm$^2$/W) output rating capacity of the *furnace* and not less than that specified in the *furnace* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**Exception:** The total area of the supply air ducts and outside and return air ducts shall not be required to be larger than the minimum size required by the *furnace* manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2442.3 (618.3) Dampers.** Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a *furnace* in a manner that will reduce the required air to the *furnace*.

**G2442.4 (618.4) Circulating air ducts for forced-air warm-air furnaces.** Circulating air for forced-air-type, warm-air *furnaces* shall be conducted into the blower housing from outside the *furnace* enclosure by continuous air-tight ducts.

**G2442.5 (618.5) Prohibited sources.** Outside or return air for a forced-air heating system shall not be taken from the following locations:

1. Closer than 10 feet (3048 mm) from an *appliance* vent outlet, a vent opening from a plumbing drainage system or the discharge outlet of an exhaust fan, unless the outlet is 3 feet (914 mm) above the outside air inlet.
2. Where objectionable odors, fumes or flammable vapors are present; or where located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the surface of any abutting public way or driveway; or where located at grade level by a sidewalk, street, alley or driveway.
3. A hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration machinery room as defined in the *International Mechanical Code.*
4. A room or space, the volume of which is less than 25 percent of the entire volume served by such system. Where connected by a permanent opening having an area sized in accordance with Section G2442.2, adjoining rooms or spaces shall be considered as a single room or space for the purpose of determining the volume of such rooms or spaces.

   **Exception:** The minimum volume requirement shall not apply where the amount of return air taken from a room or space is less than or equal to the amount of supply air delivered to that room or space.

5. A room or space containing an *appliance* where such a room or space serves as the sole source of return air.

   **Exception:** This shall not apply where:

   1. The *appliance* is a direct-vent *appliance* or an *appliance* not requiring a vent in accordance with Section G2425.8.
   2. The room or space complies with the following requirements:

      2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 *cubic foot* for each 10 *Btu*/h (9.6 L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning *appliances* therein.

      2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.

      2.3. Return-air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of any *appliance* firebox or *draft hood* in the same room or space.

3. Rooms or spaces containing solid-fuel-burning *appliances*, provided that return-air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of such *appliances*.

6. A closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, mechanical room, boiler room, *furnace* room or attic.

   **Exception:** Where return air intakes are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from cooking *appliances*, and serve only the kitchen area, taking return air from a kitchen area shall not be prohibited.

7. A crawl space by means of direct connection to the return side of a forced air system. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.

**G2442.6 (618.6) Screen.** Required outdoor air inlets shall be covered with a screen having $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) openings. Required outdoor air inlets serving a nonresidential portion of a building shall be covered with screen having openings larger than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) and not larger than 1 inch (25 mm).

**G2442.7 (618.7) Return-air limitation.** Return air from one *dwelling unit* shall not be discharged into another *dwelling unit*.

**G2442.8 (618.8) Furnace plenums and air ducts.** Where a *furnace* is installed so that supply ducts carry air circulated by the *furnace* to areas outside of the space containing the *furnace*, the return air shall also be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the *furnace* casing and terminating outside of the space containing the *furnace*.

## SECTION G2443 (619) CONVERSION BURNERS

**G2443.1 (619.1) Conversion burners.** The installation of *conversion burners* shall conform to ANSI Z21.8.

## SECTION G2444 (620) UNIT HEATERS

**G2444.1 (620.1) General.** *Unit heaters* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z83.8 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2444.2 (620.2) Support.** Suspended-type *unit heaters* shall be supported by elements that are designed and constructed to accommodate the weight and dynamic loads. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

**G2444.3 (620.3) Ductwork.** Ducts shall not be connected to a unit heater unless the heater is listed for such installation.

**G2444.4 (620.4) Clearance.** Suspended-type *unit heaters* shall be installed with *clearances* to combustible materials of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) at the sides, 12 inches (305 mm) at the bottom and 6 inches (152 mm) above the top where the unit heater has an internal *draft hood* or 1 inch (25 mm) above the top of the sloping side of the vertical *draft hood*.

Floor-mounted-type *unit heaters* shall be installed with *clearances* to combustible materials at the back and one side only of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Where the *flue gases* are vented horizontally, the 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* shall be measured from the *draft hood* or *vent* instead of the rear wall of the unit heater. Floor-mounted-type *unit heaters* shall not be installed on combustible floors unless listed for such installation.

*Clearance* for servicing all *unit heaters* shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**Exception:** *Unit heaters* listed for reduced *clearance* shall be permitted to be installed with such *clearances* in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

## SECTION G2445 (621) UNVENTED ROOM HEATERS

**G2445.1 (621.1) General.** *Unvented room heaters* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z 21.11.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2445.2 (621.2) Prohibited use.** One or more *unvented room heaters* shall not be used as the sole source of comfort heating in a *dwelling unit*.

**G2445.3 (621.3) Input rating.** *Unvented room heaters* shall not have an input rating in excess of 40,000 *Btu*/h (11.7 kW).

**G2445.4 (621.4) Prohibited locations.** The location of *unvented room heaters* shall comply with Section G2406.2.

**G2445.5 (621.5) Room or space volume.** The aggregate input rating of all *unvented appliances* installed in a room or space shall not exceed 20 *Btu*/h per *cubic foot* (0.21 kW/m$^3$) of volume of such room or space. Where the room or space in which the *appliance* is installed is directly connected to another room or space by a doorway, archway or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed, the volume of such adjacent room or space shall be permitted to be included in the calculations.

**G2445.6 (621.6) Oxygen-depletion safety system.** *Unvented room heaters* shall be equipped with an oxygen-depletion-sensitive safety shutoff system. The system shall shut off the gas supply to the main and *pilot burners* when the oxygen in the surrounding atmosphere is depleted to the percent concentration specified by the manufacturer, but not lower than 18 percent. The system shall not incorporate field adjustment means capable of changing the set point at which the system acts to shut off the gas supply to the room heater.

**G2445.7 (621.7) Unvented decorative room heaters.** An unvented decorative room heater shall not be installed in a *factory-built fireplace* unless the *fireplace* system has been specifically tested, listed and labeled for such use in accordance with UL 127.

**G2445.7.1 (621.7.1) Ventless firebox enclosures.** Ventless firebox enclosures used with unvented decorative room heaters shall be listed as complying with ANSI Z21.91.

## SECTION G2446 (622) VENTED ROOM HEATERS

**G2446.1 (622.1) General.** *Vented room heaters* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32, shall be designed and equipped as specified in Section G2432.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION G2447 (623) COOKING APPLIANCES

**G2447.1 (623.1) Cooking appliances.** Cooking *appliances* that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles, hot plates and barbecues, shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.1 or ANSI Z21.58 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2447.2 (623.2) Prohibited location.** Cooking *appliances* designed, tested, listed and labeled for use in commercial occupancies shall not be installed within *dwelling units* or within any area where domestic cooking operations occur.

**G2447.3 (623.3) Domestic appliances.** Cooking *appliances* installed within *dwelling units* and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be listed and labeled as household-type *appliances* for domestic use.

**G2447.4 (623.4) Range installation.** Ranges installed on combustible floors shall be set on their own bases or legs and shall be installed with *clearances* of not less than that shown on the label.

**G2447.5 (623.7) Vertical clearance above cooking top.** Household cooking *appliances* shall have a vertical *clearance* above the cooking top of not less than 30 inches (760 mm) to combustible material and metal cabinets. A minimum *clearance* of 24 inches (610 mm) is permitted where one of the following is installed:

1. The underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet above the cooking top is protected with not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) thick insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick.
2. A metal ventilating hood constructed of sheet metal not less than 0.0122 inch (0.3 mm) thick is installed above the cooking top with a *clearance* of not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6 mm) between the hood and the underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet. The hood shall have a width not less than the width of the *appliance* and shall be centered over the *appliance*.
3. A listed cooking *appliance* or microwave oven is installed over a listed cooking *appliance* and in compliance with the terms of the manufacturer's installation instructions for the upper *appliance*.

## SECTION G2448 (624) WATER HEATERS

**G2448.1 (624.1) General.** ***Water heaters*** shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z 21.10.1 and ANSI Z 21.10.3 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2448.1.1 (624.1.1) Installation requirements.** The requirements for *water heaters* relative to sizing, *relief valves*, drain pans and scald protection shall be in accordance with this *code*.

**G2448.2 (624.2) Water heaters utilized for space heating.** *Water heaters* utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be listed and labeled for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and this *code*.

## SECTION G2449 (627) AIR CONDITIONING APPLIANCES

**G2449.1 (627.1) General.** Air conditioning *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.40.1 or ANSI Z21.40.2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2449.2 (627.2) Independent piping.** *Gas piping* serving heating *appliances* shall be permitted to also serve cooling *appliances* where such heating and cooling *appliances* cannot be operated simultaneously. (See Section G2413.)

**G2449.3 (627.3) Connection of gas engine-powered air conditioners.** To protect against the effects of normal vibration in service, gas engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply *piping*.

**G2449.4 (627.6) Installation.** Air conditioning *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Unless the *appliance* is listed for installation on a combustible surface such as a floor or roof, or unless the surface is protected in an *approved* manner, the *appliance* shall be installed on a surface of noncombustible construction with noncombustible material and surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof.

## SECTION G2450 (628) ILLUMINATING APPLIANCES

**G2450.1 (628.1) General.** Illuminating *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z21.42 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2450.2 (628.2) Mounting on buildings.** Illuminating *appliances* designed for wall or ceiling mounting shall be securely attached to substantial structures in such a manner that they are not dependent on the *gas piping* for support.

**G2450.3 (628.3) Mounting on posts.** Illuminating *appliances* designed for post mounting shall be securely and rigidly attached to a post. Posts shall be rigidly mounted. The strength and rigidity of posts greater than 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be at least equivalent to that of a 2.5-inch-diameter (64 mm) post constructed of 0.064-inch-thick (1.6 mm) steel or a 1-inch (25 mm) Schedule 40 steel *pipe*. Posts 3 feet (914 mm) or less in height shall not be smaller than $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) Schedule 40 steel *pipe*. Drain openings shall be provided near the base of posts where there is a possibility of water collecting inside them.

**G2450.4 (628.4) Appliance pressure regulators.** Where an *appliance pressure regulator* is not supplied with an illuminating *appliance* and the service line is not equipped with a *service pressure regulator*, an *appliance pressure regulator* shall be installed in the line to the illuminating *appliance*. For multiple installations, one *regulator* of adequate capacity shall be permitted to serve more than one illuminating *appliance*.

## SECTION G2451 (630)
## INFRARED RADIANT HEATERS

**G2451.1 (630.1) General.** *Infrared radiant heaters* shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z 83.6 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**G2451.2 (630.2) Support.** *Infrared radiant heaters* shall be fixed in a position independent of gas and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

## SECTION G2452 (631)
## BOILERS

**G2452.1 (631.1) Standards.** Boilers shall be listed in accordance with the requirements of ANSI Z21.13 or UL 795. If applicable, the boiler shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of ASME CSD-1 and as applicable, the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Sections I, II, IV, V and IX and NFPA 85.

**G2452.2 (631.2) Installation.** In addition to the requirements of this *code*, the installation of boilers shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and this *code*. Operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all *controls* set, adjusted and tested by the installer. A complete *control* diagram together with complete boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer. The manufacturer's rating data and the nameplate shall be attached to the boiler.

**G2452.3 (631.3) Clearance to combustible material.** *Clearances* to combustible materials shall be in accordance with Section G2409.4.

## SECTION G2453 (634)
## CHIMNEY DAMPER OPENING AREA

**G2453.1 (634.1) Free opening area of chimney dampers.** Where an unlisted decorative *appliance* for installation in a vented *fireplace* is installed, the *fireplace damper* shall have a permanent free opening equal to or greater than specified in Table G2453.1.

**TABLE G2453.1 (634.1)**
**FREE OPENING AREA OF CHIMNEY DAMPER FOR VENTING FLUE GASES FROM UNLISTED DECORATIVE APPLIANCES FOR INSTALLATION IN VENTED FIREPLACES**

| CHIMNEY HEIGHT (feet) | MINIMUM PERMANENT FREE OPENING (square inches)[a] | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 8 | 13 | 20 | 29 | 39 | 51 | 64 |
| | Appliance input rating (Btu per hour) | | | | | | |
| 6 | 7,800 | 14,000 | 23,200 | 34,000 | 46,400 | 62,400 | 80,000 |
| 8 | 8,400 | 15,200 | 25,200 | 37,000 | 50,400 | 68,000 | 86,000 |
| 10 | 9,000 | 16,800 | 27,600 | 40,400 | 55,800 | 74,400 | 96,400 |
| 15 | 9,800 | 18,200 | 30,200 | 44,600 | 62,400 | 84,000 | 108,800 |
| 20 | 10,600 | 20,200 | 32,600 | 50,400 | 68,400 | 94,000 | 122,200 |
| 30 | 11,200 | 21,600 | 36,600 | 55,200 | 76,800 | 105,800 | 138,600 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$, 1,000 Btu per hour = 0.293 kW.

a. The first six minimum permanent free openings (8 square inches to 51 square inches) correspond approximately to the cross-sectional areas of chimneys having diameters of 3 inches through 8 inches, respectively. The 64-square inch opening corresponds to the cross-sectional area of standard 8-inch by 8-inch chimney tile.

## CHAPTER 25

# PLUMBING ADMINISTRATION

Chapter 25 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# *Part VII—Plumbing*

## CHAPTER 25
# PLUMBING ADMINISTRATION

### SECTION P2501
### GENERAL

**P2501.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall establish the general administrative requirements applicable to plumbing systems and inspection requirements of this code.

**P2501.2 Application.** In addition to the general administration requirements of Chapter 1, the administrative provisions of this chapter shall also apply to the plumbing requirements of Chapters 25 through 32.

### SECTION P2502
### EXISTING PLUMBING SYSTEMS

**P2502.1 Existing building sewers and drains.** Existing *building sewers* and drains shall be used in connection with new systems when found by examination and/or test to conform to the requirements prescribed by this document.

**P2502.2 Additions, alterations or repairs.** Additions, *alterations*, renovations or repairs to any plumbing system shall conform to that required for a new plumbing system without requiring the existing plumbing system to comply with all the requirements of this code. Additions, *alterations* or repairs shall not cause an existing system to become unsafe, insanitary or overloaded.

Minor additions, *alterations*, renovations and repairs to existing plumbing systems shall be permitted in the same manner and arrangement as in the existing system, provided that such repairs or replacement are not hazardous and are *approved*.

### SECTION P2503
### INSPECTION AND TESTS

**P2503.1 Inspection required.** New plumbing work and parts of existing systems affected by new work or *alterations* shall be inspected by the *building official* to ensure compliance with the requirements of this code.

**P2503.2 Concealment.** A plumbing or drainage system, or part thereof, shall not be covered, concealed or put into use until it has been tested, inspected and *approved* by the *building official*.

**P2503.3 Responsibility of permittee.** Test equipment, materials and labor shall be furnished by the permittee.

**P2503.4 Building sewer testing.** The *building sewer* shall be tested by insertion of a test plug at the point of connection with the public sewer and filling the *building sewer* with water, testing with not less than a 10-foot (3048 mm) head of water and be able to maintain such pressure for 15 minutes.

**P2503.5 DWV systems testing.** Rough and finished plumbing installations shall be tested in accordance with Sections P2503.5.1 and P2503.5.2.

**P2503.5.1 Rough plumbing.** DWV systems shall be tested on completion of the rough piping installation by water or air with no evidence of leakage. Either test shall be applied to the drainage system in its entirety or in sections after rough piping has been installed, as follows:

1. Water test. Each section shall be filled with water to a point not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the highest fitting connection in that section, or to the highest point in the completed system. Water shall be held in the section under test for a period of 15 minutes. The system shall prove leak free by visual inspection.
2. Air test. The portion under test shall be maintained at a gauge pressure of 5 pounds per square inch (psi) (34 kPa) or 10 inches of mercury column (34 kPa). This pressure shall be held without introduction of additional air for a period of 15 minutes.

**P2503.5.2 Finished plumbing.** After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, their connections shall be tested and proved gas tight and/or water tight as follows:

1. Water tightness. Each fixture shall be filled and then drained. Traps and fixture connections shall be proven water tight by visual inspection.
2. Gas tightness. When required by the local administrative authority, a final test for gas tightness of the DWV system shall be made by the smoke or peppermint test as follows:
   - 2.1. Smoke test. Introduce a pungent, thick smoke into the system. When the smoke appears at vent terminals, such terminals shall be sealed and a pressure equivalent to a 1-inch water column (249 Pa) shall be applied and maintained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes.
   - 2.2. Peppermint test. Introduce 2 ounces (59 mL) of oil of peppermint into the system. Add 10 quarts (9464 mL) of hot water and seal all vent terminals. The odor of peppermint shall not be detected at any trap or other point in the system.

**P2503.6 Shower liner test.** Where shower floors and receptors are made water tight by the application of materials required by Section P2709.2, the completed liner installation shall be tested. The pipe from the shower drain shall be plugged water tight for the test. The floor and receptor area shall be filled with potable water to a depth of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) measured at the threshold. Where a threshold of at least 2 inches high does not exist, a temporary threshold shall be constructed to retain the test water in the lined floor or receptor area to a level not less than 2 inches deep measured at the threshold. The water shall be retained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes and there shall be no evidence of leakage.

**P2503.7 Water-supply system testing.** Upon completion of the water-supply system or a section of it, the system or portion completed shall be tested and proved tight under a water pressure of not less than the working pressure of the system or, for piping systems other than plastic, by an air test of not less than 50 psi (345 kPa). This pressure shall be held for not less than 15 minutes. The water used for tests shall be obtained from a potable water source.

**P2503.8 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention devices.** Inspection and testing of backflow prevention devices shall comply with Sections P2503.8.1 and P2503.8.2.

**P2503.8.1 Inspections.** Inspections shall be made of all backflow prevention assemblies to determine whether they are operable.

**P2503.8.2 Testing.** Reduced pressure principle backflow preventers, double check valve assemblies, double-detector check valve assemblies and pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall be tested at the time of installation, immediately after repairs or relocation and at least annually.

**P2503.9 Test gauges.** Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 psi or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure higher than 10 psi (0.69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (690 kPa) shall use a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure higher than 100 psi (690 kPa) shall use a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

CHAPTER 26

# GENERAL PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS

Chapter 26 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# CHAPTER 26

# GENERAL PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS

## SECTION P2601 GENERAL

**P2601.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the installation of plumbing not specifically covered in other chapters applicable to plumbing systems. The installation of plumbing, *appliances, equipment* and systems not addressed by this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *International Plumbing Code*.

**P2601.2 Connection.** Plumbing fixtures, drains and *appliances* used to receive or discharge liquid wastes or sewage shall be connected to the sanitary drainage system of the building or premises in accordance with the requirements of this code. This section shall not be construed to prevent indirect waste systems.

**P2601.3 Flood hazard area.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1), plumbing fixtures, drains, and *appliances* shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.6.

## SECTION P2602 INDIVIDUAL WATER SUPPLY AND SEWAGE DISPOSAL

**P2602.1 General.** The water-distribution and drainage system of any building or premises where plumbing fixtures are installed shall be connected to a public water supply or sewer system, respectively, if available. When either a public water-supply or sewer system, or both, are not available, or connection to them is not feasible, an individual water supply or individual (private) sewage-disposal system, or both, shall be provided.

**P2602.2 Flood-resistant installation.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1):

1. Water supply systems shall be designed and constructed to prevent infiltration of floodwaters.
2. Pipes for sewage disposal systems shall be designed and constructed to prevent infiltration of floodwaters into the systems and discharges from the systems into floodwaters.

## SECTION P2603 STRUCTURAL AND PIPING PROTECTION

**P2603.1 General.** In the process of installing or repairing any part of a plumbing and drainage installation, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises that must be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of the building portion of this code.

**P2603.2 Drilling and notching.** Wood-framed structural members shall not be drilled, notched or altered in any manner except as provided in Sections R502.8, R602.5, R602.6, R802.7 and R802.7.1. Holes in load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be permitted only in accordance with Sections R505.3.5, R603.2.5 and R804.2.5. In accordance with the provisions in Sections R505.3.5, R603.3.4 and R804.3.4, cutting and notching of flanges and lips of load-bearing members of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall not be permitted. Structural insulated panels (SIPs) shall be drilled and notched or altered in accordance with the provisions of Section R613.7.

**P2603.2.1 Protection against physical damage.** In concealed locations, where piping, other than cast-iron or galvanized steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by steel shield plates. Such shield plates shall have a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 Gage). Such plates shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored, and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

**P2603.3 Breakage and corrosion.** Pipes passing through or under walls shall be protected from breakage. Pipes passing through concrete or cinder walls and floors, cold-formed steel framing or other corrosive material shall be protected against external corrosion by a protective sheathing or wrapping or other means that will withstand any reaction from lime and acid of concrete, cinder or other corrosive material. Sheathing or wrapping shall allow for movement including expansion and contraction of piping. Minimum wall thickness of material shall be 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).

**P2603.4 Sleeves.** Annular spaces between sleeves and pipes shall be filled or tightly caulked as *approved* by the *building official*. Annular spaces between sleeves and pipes in fire-rated assemblies shall be filled or tightly caulked in accordance with the building portion of this code.

**P2603.5 Pipes through footings or foundation walls.** Any pipe that passes under a footing or through a foundation wall shall be provided with a relieving arch; or there shall be built into the masonry wall a pipe sleeve two pipe sizes greater than the pipe passing through.

**P2603.6 Freezing.** In localities having a winter design temperature of 32°F (0°C) or lower as shown in Table R301.2(1) of this code, a water, soil or waste pipe shall not be installed outside of a building, in exterior walls, in *attics* or crawl spaces, or in any other place subjected to freezing temperature unless adequate provision is made to protect it from freezing by insulation or heat or both. Water service pipe shall be installed not less than 12 inches (305 mm) deep and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the frost line.

**P2603.6.1 Sewer depth.** *Building sewers* that connect to private sewage disposal systems shall be a minimum of [NUMBER] inches (mm) below finished *grade* at the point of septic tank connection. *Building sewers* shall be a minimum of [NUMBER] inches (mm) below *grade*.

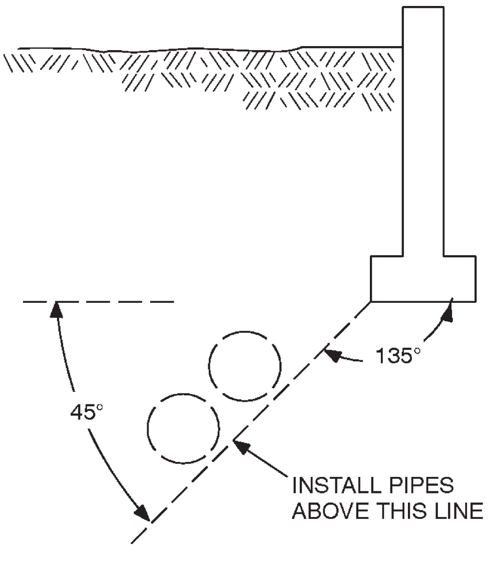
## SECTION P2604
## TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

**P2604.1 Trenching and bedding.** Where trenches are excavated such that the bottom of the trench forms the bed for the pipe, solid and continuous load-bearing support shall be provided between joints. Where over-excavated, the trench shall be backfilled to the proper grade*with compacted earth, sand, fine gravel or similar granular material. Piping shall not be supported on rocks or blocks at any point. Rocky or unstable soil shall be over-excavated by two or more pipe diameters and brought to the proper* grade with suitable compacted granular material.

**P2604.2 Common trench.** See Section P2905.4.2.

**P2604.3 Backfilling.** Backfill shall be free from discarded construction material and debris. Backfill shall be free from rocks, broken concrete and frozen chunks until the pipe is covered by at least 12 inches (305 mm) of tamped earth. Backfill shall be placed evenly on both sides of the pipe and tamped to retain proper alignment. Loose earth shall be carefully placed in the trench in 6-inch (152 mm) layers and tamped in place.

**P2604.4 Protection of footings.** Trenching installed parallel to footings shall not extend below the 45-degree (0.79 rad) bearing plane of the bottom edge of a wall or footing (see Figure P2604.4).




For SI: 1 degree = 0.018 rad.

**FIGURE P2604.4**
**PIPE LOCATION WITH RESPECT TO FOOTINGS**

## SECTION P2605
## SUPPORT

**P2605.1 General.** Piping shall be supported in accordance with the following:

1. Piping shall be supported to ensure alignment and prevent sagging, and allow movement associated with the expansion and contraction of the piping system.
2. Piping in the ground shall be laid on a firm bed for its entire length, except where support is otherwise provided.
3. Hangers and anchors shall be of sufficient strength to maintain their proportional share of the weight of pipe and contents and of sufficient width to prevent distortion to the pipe. Hangers and strapping shall be of *approved* material that will not promote galvanic action. Rigid support sway bracing shall be provided at changes in direction greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) for pipe sizes 4 inches (102 mm) and larger.
4. Piping shall be supported at distances not to exceed those indicated in Table P2605.1.

## SECTION P2606
## WATERPROOFING OF OPENINGS

**P2606.1 General.** Roof and exterior wall penetrations shall be made water tight. Joints at the roof, around vent pipes, shall be made water tight by the use of lead, copper or galvanized iron flashings or an *approved* elastomeric material. Counterflashing shall not restrict the required internal cross-sectional area of any vent.

## SECTION P2607
## WORKMANSHIP

**P2607.1 General.** Valves, pipes and fittings shall be installed in correct relationship to the direction of the flow. Burred ends shall be reamed to the full bore of the pipe.

## SECTION P2608
## MATERIALS EVALUATION AND LISTING

**P2608.1 Identification.** Each length of pipe and each pipe fitting, trap, fixture, material and device used in a plumbing system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer.

**P2608.2 Installation of materials.** All materials used shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and *approved*. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's installation instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's installation instructions do not conform to the minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

**P2608.3 Plastic pipe, fittings and components.** All plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be third-party certified as conforming to NSF 14.

**P2608.4 Third-party testing and certification.** All plumbing products and materials shall comply with the referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section P2608.1. Where required by Table P2608.4, plumbing products and materials shall either be tested by an *approved* third-party testing agency or certified by an *approved* third-party certification agency.

**P2608.5 Water supply systems.** Water service pipes, water distribution pipes and the necessary connecting pipes, fittings, control valves, faucets and all appurtenances used to dispense water intended for human ingestion shall be evaluated and listed as conforming to the requirements of NSF 61.

**TABLE P2605.1
PIPING SUPPORT**

| PIPING MATERIAL | MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet) | MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING |
|---|---|---|
| ABS pipe | 4 | 10[b] |
| Aluminum tubing | 10 | 15 |
| Brass pipe | 10 | 10 |
| Cast-iron pipe | 5[a] | 15 |
| Copper or copper alloy pipe | 12 | 10 |
| Copper or copper alloy tubing ($1^1/_4$ inch diameter and smaller) | 6 | 10 |
| Copper or copper alloy tubing ($1^1/_2$ inch diameter and larger) | 10 | 10 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) pipe | 2.67 (32 inches) | 10[b] |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe | 2.67 (32 inches) | 4[b] |
| CPVC pipe or tubing (1 inch in diameter and smaller) | 3 | 10[b] |
| CPVC pipe or tubing ($1^1/_4$ inch in diameter and larger) | 4 | 10[b] |
| Lead pipe | Continuous | 4 |
| PB pipe or tubing | 2.67 (32 inches) | 4 |
| Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pipe | 2.67 (32 inches) | 4[b] |
| Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing 1 inch and smaller | 2.67 (32 inches) | 10[b] |
| Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, $1^1/_4$ inches and larger | 4 | 10[b] |
| PVC pipe | 4 | 10[b] |
| Stainless steel drainage systems | 10 | 10[b] |
| Steel pipe | 12 | 15 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. The maximum horizontal spacing of cast-iron pipe hangers shall be increased to 10 feet where 10-foot lengths of pipe are installed.
b. Midstory guide for sizes 2 inches and smaller.

**TABLE P2608.4
PRODUCTS AND MATERIALS REQUIRING THIRD-PARTY TESTING AND THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION**

| PRODUCT OR MATERIAL | THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED | THIRD-PARTY TESTED |
|---|---|---|
| Backflow prevention devices | Required | — |
| Plumbing appliance | Required | — |
| Plumbing fixtures | — | Required |
| Potable water supply system components and potable water fixture fittings | Required | — |
| Sanitary drainage and vent system components | Plastic pipe, fittings, and pipe related components | All others |
| Special waste system components | — | Required |
| Storm drainage system components | Plastic pipe, fittings, and pipe related components | All others |
| Subsoil drainage system components | — | Required |
| Waste fixture fittings | Plastic pipe, fittings, and pipe related components | All others |
| Water distribution system safety devices | Required | — |

# CHAPTER 27

# PLUMBING FIXTURES

Chapter 27 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# CHAPTER 27
# PLUMBING FIXTURES

## SECTION P2701
## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

**P2701.1 Quality of fixtures.** Plumbing fixtures, faucets and fixture fittings shall be constructed of *approved* materials, shall have smooth impervious surfaces, shall be free from defects and concealed fouling surfaces, and shall conform to the standards cited in this code. Plumbing fixtures shall be provided with an adequate supply of potable water to flush and keep the fixtures in a clean and sanitary condition without danger of backflow or cross connection.

## SECTION P2702
## FIXTURE ACCESSORIES

**P2702.1 Plumbing fixtures.** Plumbing fixtures, other than water closets, shall be provided with *approved* strainers.

**P2702.2 Waste fittings.** Waste fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, ASTM F 409 or to one of the standards listed in Table P3002.1(1) for above-ground drainage and vent pipe and fittings.

**P2702.3 Plastic tubular fittings.** Plastic tubular fittings shall conform to ASTM F 409 listed in Table P2701.1.

**P2702.4 Carriers for wall-hung water closets.** Carriers for wall-hung water closets shall conform to ASME A112.6.1 or ASME A112.6.2.

## SECTION P2703
## TAIL PIECES

**P2703.1 Minimum size.** Fixture tail pieces shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter for sinks, dishwashers, laundry tubs, bathtubs and similar fixtures, and not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) in diameter for bidets, lavatories and similar fixtures.

## SECTION P2704
## ACCESS TO CONNECTIONS

**P2704.1 General.** Slip joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric gasket and shall be installed only on the trap outlet, trap inlet and within the trap seal. Fixtures with concealed slip-joint connections shall be provided with an access panel or utility space at least 12 inches (305 mm) in its smallest dimension or other *approved* arrangement so as to provide access to the slip connections for inspection and repair.

## SECTION P2705
## INSTALLATION

**P2705.1 General.** The installation of fixtures shall conform to the following:

1. Floor-outlet or floor-mounted fixtures shall be secured to the drainage connection and to the floor, where so designed, by screws, bolts, washers, nuts and similar fasteners of copper, brass or other corrosion-resistant material.
2. Wall-hung fixtures shall be rigidly supported so that strain is not transmitted to the plumbing system.
3. Where fixtures come in contact with walls and floors, the contact area shall be water tight.
4. Plumbing fixtures shall be usable.
5. Water closets, lavatories and bidets. A water closet, lavatory or bidet shall not be set closer than 15 inches (381 mm) from its center to any side wall, partition or vanity or closer than 30 inches (762 mm) center-to-center between adjacent fixtures. There shall be at least a 21-inch (533 mm) clearance in front of the water closet, lavatory or bidet to any wall, fixture or door.
6. The location of piping, fixtures or *equipment* shall not interfere with the operation of windows or doors.
7. In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1), plumbing fixtures shall be located or installed in accordance with Section R322.1.7.
8. Integral fixture-fitting mounting surfaces on manufactured plumbing fixtures or plumbing fixtures constructed on site, shall meet the design requirements of ASME A112.19.2 or ASME A 112.19.3.

## SECTION P2706
## WASTE RECEPTORS

**P2706.1 General.** Every waste receptor shall be of an *approved* type. Plumbing fixtures or other receptors receiving the discharge of indirect waste pipes shall be shaped and have a capacity to prevent splashing or flooding and shall be *readily accessible* for inspection and cleaning. Waste receptors and standpipes shall be trapped and vented and shall connect to the building drainage system. A removable strainer or basket shall cover the waste outlet of waste receptors. Waste receptors shall be installed in ventilated spaces. Waste receptors shall not be installed in bathrooms or in any inaccessible or unventilated space such as a closet. Ready access shall be provided to waste receptors.

**Exception:** Open hub waste receptors shall be permitted in the form of a hub or pipe extending not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above a water-impervious floor, and are not required to have a strainer.

**P2706.2 Standpipes.** Standpipes shall extend a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) and a maximum of 42 inches (1067 mm) above the trap weir. Access shall be provided to all standpipe traps and drains for rodding.

**P2706.2.1 Laundry tray connection.** A laundry tray waste line is permitted to connect into a standpipe for the automatic clothes washer drain. The standpipe shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the trap weir and shall extend above the flood level rim of the laundry tray. The outlet of the laundry tray shall be a maximum horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm) from the standpipe trap.

**TABLE P2701.1**
**PLUMBING FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Air gap fittings for use with plumbing fixtures, appliances and appurtenances | ASME A112.1.3 |
| Bathtub/whirlpool pressure-sealed doors | ASME A112.19.15 |
| Diverters for faucets with hose spray anti-syphon type, residential application | ASSE 1025 |
| Enameled cast-iron plumbing fixtures | ASME A112.19.1M, CSA B45.2 |
| Floor drains | ASME A112.6.3 |
| Floor-affixed supports for off-the-floor plumbing fixtures for public use | ASME A112.6.1M |
| Framing-affixed supports for off-the-floor water closets with concealed tanks | ASME A112.6.2 |
| Home laundry equipment | ASSE 1007 |
| Hose connection vacuum breaker | ASSE 1052 |
| Hot water dispensers, household storage type, electrical | ASSE 1023 |
| Household dishwashing machines | ASSE 1006 |
| Household disposers | ASSE 1008 |
| Hydraulic performance for water closets and urinals | ASME A112.19.2 |
| Individual pressure balancing valves for individual fixture fittings | ASSE 1066 |
| Individual shower control valves anti-scald | ASSE 1016, CSA B125 |
| Macerating toilet systems and related components | ASME A112.3.4 |
| Nonvitreous ceramic plumbing fixtures | ASME A112.19.9M, CSA B45.1 |
| Plastic bathtub units | ANSI Z124.1, CSA B45.1 |
| Plastic lavatories | ANSI Z124.3, CSA B45.5 |
| Plastic shower receptors and shower stall | ANSI Z124.2, CSA B45.5 |
| Plastic sinks | ANSI Z124.6, CSA B45.5 |
| Plastic water closet bowls and tanks | ANSI Z124.4, CSA B45.5 |
| Plumbing fixture fittings | ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 |
| Plumbing fixture waste fittings | ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, ASTM F 409 |
| Porcelain-enameled formed steel plumbing fixtures | ASME A112.19.4M, CSA B45.3 |
| Pressurized flushing devices for plumbing fixtures | ASSE 1037 |
| Specification for copper sheet and strip for building construction | ASTM B 370 |
| Stainless steel plumbing fixtures (residential) | ASME A112.19.3M, CSA B45.4 |
| Suction fittings for use in swimming pools, wading pools, spas, hot tubs and whirlpool bathtub appliances | ASME A112.19.8M |
| Temperature-actuated, flow reduction valves to individual fixture fittings | ASSE 1062 |
| Thermoplastic accessible and replaceable plastic tube and tubular fittings | ASTM F 409 |
| Trench drains | ASME A112.6.3 |
| Trim for water closet bowls, tanks and urinals | ASME A112.19.5 |
| Vacuum breaker wall hydrant—frost-resistant, automatic-draining type | ASSE 1019 |
| Vitreous china plumbing fixtures | ASME A112.19.2M |
| Wall-mounted and pedestal-mounted, adjustable and pivoting lavatory and sink carrier systems | ASME A112.19.12 |
| Water closet flush tank fill valves | ASSE 1002, CSA B125.3 |
| Whirlpool bathtub appliances | ASME A112.19.7M |

**P2706.3 Prohibited waste receptors.** Plumbing fixtures that are used for washing or bathing shall not be used to receive the discharge of indirect waste piping.

**Exceptions:**

1. A kitchen sink trap is acceptable for use as a receptor for a dishwasher.
2. A laundry tray is acceptable for use as a receptor for a clothes washing machine.

## SECTION P2707 DIRECTIONAL FITTINGS

**P2707.1 Directional fitting required.** *Approved*directional-type branch fittings shall be installed in fixture tailpieces receiving the discharge from food waste disposal units or dishwashers.

## SECTION P2708 SHOWERS

**P2708.1 General.** Shower compartments shall have at least 900 square inches (0.6 $m^2$) of interior cross-sectional area. Shower compartments shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in minimum dimension measured from the finished interior dimension of the shower compartment, exclusive of fixture valves, shower heads, soap dishes, and safety grab bars or rails. The minimum required area and dimension shall be measured from the finished interior dimension at a height equal to the top of the threshold and at a point tangent to its centerline and shall be continued to a height of not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the shower drain outlet. Hinged shower doors shall open outward. The wall area above built-in tubs having installed shower heads and in shower compartments shall be constructed in accordance with Section R702.4. Such walls shall form a water-tight joint with each other and with either the tub, receptor or shower floor.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fold-down seats shall be permitted in the shower, provided the required 900-square-inch (0.6 $m^2$) dimension is maintained when the seat is in the folded-up position.
2. Shower compartments having not less than 25 inches (635 mm) in minimum dimension measured from the finished interior dimension of the compartment provided that the shower compartment has a minimum of 1,300 square inches (0.838 $m^2$) of cross-sectional area.

**P2708.1.1 Access.** The shower compartment access and egress opening shall have a minimum clear and unobstructed finished width of 22 inches (559 mm).

**P2708.2 Water supply riser.** Water supply risers from the shower valve to the shower head outlet, whether exposed or concealed, shall be attached to the structure using support devices designed for use with the specific piping material or fittings anchored with screws.

**P2708.3 Shower control valves.** Individual shower and tub/shower combination valves shall be equipped with control valves of the pressure-balance, thermostatic-mixing or combination pressure-balance/thermostatic-mixing valve types with a high limit stop in accordance with ASSE 1016 or CSA B125. The high limit stop shall be set to limit water temperature to a maximum of 120°F (49°C). In-line thermostatic valves shall not be used for compliance with this section.

**P2708.4 Hand showers.** Hand-held showers shall conform to ASME A112.18.1 or CSA B125.1. Hand-held showers shall be provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1 or CSA B125.1 or shall be protected against backflow by a device complying with ASME A112.18.3.

## SECTION P2709 SHOWER RECEPTORS

**P2709.1 Construction.** Shower receptors shall have a finished curb threshold not less than 1 inch (25 mm) below the sides and back of the receptor. The curb shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and not more than 9 inches (229 mm) deep when measured from the top of the curb to the top of the drain. The finished floor shall slope uniformly toward the drain not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) nor more than $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm), and floor drains shall be flanged to provide a water-tight joint in the floor.

**P2709.2 Lining required.** The adjoining walls and floor framing enclosing on-site built-up shower receptors shall be lined with one of the following materials:

1. Sheet lead,
2. Sheet copper,
3. Plastic liner material that complies with ASTM D 4068 or ASTM D 4551,
4. Hot mopping in accordance with Section P2709.2.3 or
5. Sheet-applied load-bearing, bonded waterproof membranes that comply with ANSI A118.10.

The lining material shall extend not less than 3 inches (76 mm) beyond or around the rough jambs and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above finished thresholds. Sheet-applied load bearing, bonded waterproof membranes shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2709.2.1 PVC sheets.** Plasticized polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sheets shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1 mm) thick, and shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 4551. Sheets shall be joined by solvent welding in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2709.2.2 Chlorinated polyethylene (CPE) sheets.** Nonplasticized chlorinated polyethylene sheet shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1 mm) thick, and shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 4068. The liner shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2709.2.3 Hot-mopping.** Shower receptors lined by hot mopping shall be built-up with not less than three layers of standard grade Type 15 asphalt-impregnated roofing felt. The bottom layer shall be fitted to the formed subbase and each succeeding layer thoroughly hot-mopped to that below. All corners shall be carefully fitted and shall be made strong and water tight by folding or lapping, and each corner shall be reinforced with suitable webbing hot-mopped in place. All folds, laps and reinforcing webbing shall extend at least 4 inches (102 mm) in all directions from the corner and all webbing shall be of *approved* type and mesh, producing a tensile strength of not less than 50 pounds per inch (893 kg/m) in either direction.

**P2709.3 Installation.** Lining materials shall be pitched one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) to weep holes in the subdrain by means of a smooth, solidly formed subbase, shall be properly recessed and fastened to *approved* backing so as not to occupy the space required for the wall covering, and shall not be nailed or perforated at any point less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) above the finished threshold.

**P2709.3.1 Materials.** Lead and copper linings shall be insulated from conducting substances other than the connecting drain by 15-pound (6.80 kg) asphalt felt or its equivalent. Sheet lead liners shall weigh not less than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m$^2$). Sheet copper liners shall weigh not less than 12 ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m$^2$). Joints in lead and copper pans or liners shall be burned or silver brazed, respectively. Joints in plastic liner materials shall be jointed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

**P2709.4 Receptor drains.** An *approved* flanged drain shall be installed with shower subpans or linings. The flange shall be placed flush with the subbase and be equipped with a clamping ring or other device to make a water-tight connection between the lining and the drain. The flange shall have weep holes into the drain.

## SECTION P2710
## SHOWER WALLS

**P2710.1 Bathtub and shower spaces.** Shower walls shall be finished in accordance with Section R307.2.

## SECTION P2711
## LAVATORIES

**P2711.1 Approval.** Lavatories shall conform to ANSI Z124.3, ASME A112.19.1, ASME A112.19.2, ASME A112.19.3, ASME A112.19.4, ASME A112.19.9, CSA B45.1, CSA B45.2, CSA B45.3 or CSA B45.4.

**P2711.2 Cultured marble lavatories.** Cultured marble vanity tops with an integral lavatory shall conform to ANSI Z124.3 or CSA B45.5.

**P2711.3 Lavatory waste outlets.** Lavatories shall have waste outlets not less than 1$^1/_4$ inch (32 mm) in diameter. A strainer, pop-up stopper, crossbar or other device shall be provided to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

**P2711.4 Movable lavatory systems.** Movable lavatory systems shall comply with ASME A112.19.12.

## SECTION P2712
## WATER CLOSETS

**P2712.1 Approval.** Water closets shall conform to the water consumption requirements of Section P2903.2 and shall conform to ANSI Z124.4, ASME A112.19.2, CSA B45.1, CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5. Water closets shall conform to the hydraulic performance requirements of ASME A112.19.6. Water closets tanks shall conform to ANSI Z124.4, ASME A112.19.2, ASME A112.19.9, CSA B45.1, CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5. Water closets that have an invisible seal and unventilated space or walls that are not thoroughly washed at each discharge shall be prohibited. Water closets that permit backflow of the contents of the bowl into the flush tank shall be prohibited.

**P2712.2 Flushing devices required.** Water closets shall be provided with a flush tank, flushometer tank or flushometer valve designed and installed to supply water in sufficient quantity and flow to flush the contents of the fixture, to cleanse the fixture and refill the fixture trap in accordance with ASME A112.19.2 and ASME A112.19.6.

**P2712.3 Water supply for flushing devices.** An adequate quantity of water shall be provided to flush and clean the fixture served. The water supply to flushing devices equipped for manual flushing shall be controlled by a float valve or other automatic device designed to refill the tank after each discharge and to completely shut off the water flow to the tank when the tank is filled to operational capacity. Provision shall be made to automatically supply water to the fixture so as to refill the trap after each flushing.

**P2712.4 Flush valves in flush tanks.** Flush valve seats in tanks for flushing water closets shall be at least 1 inch (25 mm) above the flood-level rim of the bowl connected thereto, except an *approved*water closet and flush tank combination designed so that when the tank is flushed and the fixture is clogged or partially clogged, the flush valve will close tightly so that water will not spill continuously over the rim of the bowl or backflow from the bowl to the tank.

**P2712.5 Overflows in flush tanks.** Flush tanks shall be provided with overflows discharging to the water closet connected thereto and such overflow shall be of sufficient size to prevent flooding the tank at the maximum rate at which the tanks are supplied with water according to the manufacturer's design conditions.

**P2712.6 Access.** All parts in a flush tank shall be accessible for repair and replacement.

**P2712.7 Water closet seats.** Water closets shall be equipped with seats of smooth, nonabsorbent material and shall be properly sized for the water closet bowl type.

**P2712.8 Flush tank lining.** Sheet copper used for flush tank linings shall have a minimum weight of 10 ounces per square foot (3 kg/m$^2$).

**P2712.9 Electro-hydraulic water closets.** Electro-hydraulic water closets shall conform to ASME A112.19.13.

## SECTION P2713 BATHTUBS

**P2713.1 Bathtub waste outlets and overflows.** Bathtubs shall have outlets and overflows at least $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter, and the waste outlet shall be equipped with an *approved* stopper.

**P2713.2 Bathtub enclosures.** Doors within a bathtub enclosure shall conform to ASME A112.19.15.

**P2713.3 Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves.** The hot water supplied to bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall be limited to a maximum temperature of 120°F (49°C) by a water-temperature-limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070, except where such protection is otherwise provided by a combination tub/shower valve in accordance with Section P2708.3.

## SECTION P2714 SINKS

**P2714.1 Sink waste outlets.** Sinks shall be provided with waste outlets not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter. A strainer, crossbar or other device shall be provided to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

**P2714.2 Movable sink systems.** Movable sink systems shall comply with ASME A112.19.12.

## SECTION P2715 LAUNDRY TUBS

**P2715.1 Laundry tub waste outlet.** Each compartment of a laundry tub shall be provided with a waste outlet not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter and a strainer or crossbar to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

## SECTION P2716 FOOD WASTE GRINDER

**P2716.1 Food waste grinder waste outlets.** Food waste grinders shall be connected to a drain of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter.

**P2716.2 Water supply required.** Food waste grinders shall be provided with an adequate supply of water at a sufficient flow rate to ensure proper functioning of the unit.

## SECTION P2717 DISHWASHING MACHINES

**P2717.1 Protection of water supply.** The water supply for dishwashers shall be protected by an air gap or integral backflow preventer.

**P2717.2 Sink and dishwasher.** A sink and dishwasher are permitted to discharge through a single $1^1/_2$-inch (38 mm) trap. The discharge pipe from the dishwasher shall be increased to a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) in diameter and shall be connected with a wye fitting to the sink tailpiece. The dishwasher waste line shall rise and be securely fastened to the underside of the counter before connecting to the sink tailpiece.

**P2717.3 Sink, dishwasher and food grinder.** The combined discharge from a sink, dishwasher, and waste grinder is permitted to discharge through a single $1^1/_2$ inch (38 mm) trap. The discharge pipe from the dishwasher shall be increased to a minimum of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) in diameter and shall connect with a wye fitting between the discharge of the food-waste grinder and the trap inlet or to the head of the food grinder. The dishwasher waste line shall rise and be securely fastened to the underside of the counter before connecting to the sink tail piece or the food grinder.

## SECTION P2718 CLOTHES WASHING MACHINE

**P2718.1 Waste connection.** The discharge from a clothes washing machine shall be through an *air break*.

## SECTION P2719 FLOOR DRAINS

**P2719.1 Floor drains.** Floor drains shall have waste outlets not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter and a removable strainer. The floor drain shall be constructed so that the drain can be cleaned. Access shall be provided to the drain inlet. Floor drains shall not be located under or have their access restricted by permanently installed appliances.

## SECTION P2720 WHIRLPOOL BATHTUBS

**P2720.1 Access to pump.** Access shall be provided to circulation pumps in accordance with the fixture or pump manufacturer's installation instructions. Where the manufacturer's instructions do not specify the location and minimum size of field-fabricated access openings, a 12-inch by 12-inch (305 mm by 305 mm) minimum size opening shall be installed for access to the circulation pump. Where pumps are located more than 2 feet (610 mm) from the access opening, an 18-inch by 18-inch (457 mm by 457 mm) minimum size opening shall be installed. A door or panel shall be permitted to close the opening. In all cases, the access opening shall be unobstructed and be of the size necessary to permit the removal and replacement of the circulation pump.

**P2720.2 Piping drainage.** The circulation pump shall be accessibly located above the crown weir of the trap. The pump drain line shall be properly graded to ensure minimum water retention in the volute after fixture use. The circulation piping shall be installed to be self-draining.

**P2720.3 Leak testing.** Leak testing and pump operation shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2720.4 Manufacturer's instructions.** The product shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION P2721
## BIDET INSTALLATIONS

**P2721.1 Water supply.** The bidet shall be equipped with either an air-gap-type or vacuum-breaker-type fixture supply fitting.

**P2721.2 Bidet water temperature.** The discharge water temperature from a bidet fitting shall be limited to a maximum temperature of 110°F (43°C) by a water-temperature-limiting device conforming to ASSE 1070.

## SECTION P2722
## FIXTURE FITTING

**P2722.1 General.** Fixture supply valves and faucets shall comply with ASME A112.18.1/ CSA B125.1 as listed in Table P2701.1. Faucets and fixture fittings that supply drinking water for human ingestion shall conform to the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Flexible water connectors shall conform to the requirements of Section P2905.7.

**P2722.2 Hot water.** Fixture fittings and faucets that are supplied with both hot and cold water shall be installed and adjusted so that the left-hand side of the water temperature control represents the flow of hot water when facing the outlet.

> **Exception:** Shower and tub/shower mixing valves conforming to ASSE 1016 or CSA B125, where the water temperature control corresponds to the markings on the device.

**P2722.3 Hose-connected outlets.** Faucets and fixture fittings with hose-connected outlets shall conform to ASME A112.18.3 or CSA B125.

**P2722.4 Individual pressure-balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings.** Where individual pressure-balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings are installed, the valves shall comply with ASSE 1066. Such valves shall be installed in an accessible location and shall not be used alone as a substitute for the balanced pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required in Section P2708.3.

## SECTION P2723
## MACERATING TOILET SYSTEMS

**P2723.1 General.** Macerating toilet systems shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2723.2 Drain.** The minimum size of the drain from the macerating toilet system shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) in diameter.

## SECTION P2724
## SPECIALTY TEMPERATURE CONTROL DEVICES AND VALVES

**P2724.1 Temperature-actuated, flow-reduction devices for individual fixtures.** Temperature-actuated, flow-reduction devices, where installed for individual fixture fittings, shall conform to ASSE 1062. Such valves shall not be used alone as a substitute for the balanced pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required for showers in Section P2708.3.

# CHAPTER 28

# WATER HEATERS

<u>Chapter 28 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.</u>
<u>See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.</u>

# CHAPTER 28

# WATER HEATERS

## SECTION P2801 GENERAL

**P2801.1 Required.** Each *dwelling* shall have an *approved* automatic water heater or other type of domestic water-heating system sufficient to supply hot water to plumbing fixtures and appliances intended for bathing, washing or culinary purposes. Storage tanks shall be constructed of noncorrosive metal or shall be lined with noncorrosive material.

**P2801.2 Installation.** Water heaters shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and Chapters 20 and 24.

**P2801.3 Location.** Water heaters and storage tanks shall be installed in accordance with Section M1305 and shall be located and connected to provide access for observation, maintenance, servicing and replacement.

**P2801.4 Prohibited locations.** Water heaters shall be located in accordance with Chapter 20.

**P2801.5 Required pan.** Where water heaters or hot water storage tanks are installed in locations where leakage of the tanks or connections will cause damage, the tank or water heater shall be installed in a galvanized steel pan having a material thickness of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage), or other pans *approved* for such use. Listed pans shall comply with CSA LC3.

**P2801.5.1 Pan size and drain.** The pan shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) deep and shall be of sufficient size and shape to receive all dripping or condensate from the tank or water heater. The pan shall be drained by an indirect waste pipe having a minimum diameter of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm). Piping for safety pan drains shall be of those materials listed in Table P2905.5.

**P2801.5.2 Pan drain termination.** The pan drain shall extend full-size and terminate over a suitably located indirect waste receptor or shall extend to the exterior of the building and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and not more than 24 inches (610 mm) above the adjacent ground surface.

**P2801.6 Water heaters installed in garages.** Water heaters having an *ignition source* shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the garage floor.

**P2801.7 Water heater seismic bracing.** In Seismic Design Categories $D_0$, $D_1$ and $D_2$ and townhouses in Seismic Design Category C, water heaters shall be anchored or strapped in the upper one-third and in the lower one-third of the appliance to resist a horizontal force equal to one-third of the operating weight of the water heater, acting in any horizontal direction, or in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's recommendations.

## SECTION P2802 WATER HEATERS USED FOR SPACE HEATING

**P2802.1 Protection of potable water.** Piping and components connected to a water heater for space heating applications shall be suitable for use with potable water in accordance with Chapter 29. Water heaters that will be used to supply potable water shall not be connected to a heating system or components previously used with nonpotable-water heating *appliances*. Chemicals for boiler treatment shall not be introduced into the water heater.

**P2802.2 Temperature control.** Where a combination water heater-space heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures exceeding 140°F (60°C), a master thermostatic mixing valve complying with ASSE 1017 shall be installed to temper the water to a temperature of 140°F (60°C) or less for domestic uses.

## SECTION P2803 RELIEF VALVES

**P2803.1 Relief valves required.** Appliances and equipment used for heating water or storing hot water shall be protected by:

1. A separate pressure-relief valve and a separate temperature-relief valve; or
2. A combination pressure- and temperature-relief valve.

**P2803.2 Rating.** Relief valves shall have a minimum rated capacity for the equipment served and shall conform to ANSI Z 21.22.

**P2803.3 Pressure relief valves.** Pressure-relief valves shall have a relief rating adequate to meet the pressure conditions for the appliances or equipment protected. In tanks, they shall be installed directly into a tank tapping or in a water line close to the tank. They shall be set to open at least 25 psi (172 kPa) above the system pressure but not over 150 psi (1034 kPa). The relief-valve setting shall not exceed the tanks rated working pressure.

**P2803.4 Temperature relief valves.** Temperature-relief valves shall have a relief rating compatible with the temperature conditions of the appliances or equipment protected. The valves shall be installed such that the temperature-sensing element monitors the water within the top 6 inches (152 mm) of the tank. The valve shall be set to open at a maximum temperature of 210°F (99°C).

**P2803.5 Combination pressure-/temperature-relief valves.** Combination pressure-/temperature-relief valves shall comply with all the requirements for separate pressure- and temperature-relief valves.

**P2803.6 Installation of relief valves.** A check or shutoff valve shall not be installed in the following locations:

1. Between a relief valve and the termination point of the relief valve discharge pipe;
2. Between a relief valve and a tank; or
3. Between a relief valve and heating appliances or equipment.

**P2803.6.1 Requirements for discharge pipe.** The discharge piping serving a pressure-relief valve, temperature relief valve or combination valve shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge through an air gap located in the same room as the water heater.
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the air gap.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or equipment.
5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the water heater or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Discharge to a termination point that is readily observable by the building occupants.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed to flow by gravity.
10. Not terminate more than 6 inches (152 mm) above the floor or waste receptor.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of the piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Be constructed of those materials listed in Section P2904.5 or materials tested, rated and *approved* for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.

**P2803.7 Vacuum relief valve.** Bottom fed tank-type water heaters and bottom fed tanks connected to water heaters shall have a vacuum relief valve installed that complies with ANSI Z21.22.

# CHAPTER 29

# WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

Chapter 29 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# CHAPTER 29

# WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

## SECTION P2901
## GENERAL

**P2901.1 Potable water required.** *Dwelling units* shall be supplied with potable water in the amounts and pressures specified in this chapter. In a building where a nonpotable water-distribution system is installed, the nonpotable system shall be identified by color marking, metal tags or other appropriate method. Where color is used for marking, purple shall be used to identify municipally reclaimed water, rain water and gray water distribution systems. Any nonpotable outlet that could inadvertently be used for drinking or domestic purposes shall be posted.

## SECTION P2902
## PROTECTION OF POTABLE WATER SUPPLY

**P2902.1 General.** A potable water supply system shall be designed and installed as to prevent contamination from nonpotable liquids, solids or gases being introduced into the potable water supply. Connections shall not be made to a potable water supply in a manner that could contaminate the water supply or provide a cross-connection between the supply and a source of contamination unless an *approved* backflow-prevention device is provided. Cross-connections between an individual water supply and a potable public water supply shall be prohibited.

**P2902.2 Plumbing fixtures.** The supply lines and fittings for every plumbing fixture shall be installed to prevent backflow. Plumbing fixture fittings shall provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1.

**P2902.3 Backflow protection.** A means of protection against backflow shall be provided in accordance with Sections P2902.3.1 through P2902.3.6. Backflow prevention applications shall conform to Table P2902.3, except as specifically stated in Sections P2902.4 through P2902.5.5.

**P2902.3.1 Air gaps.** Air gaps shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 and air gap fittings shall comply with ASME A112.1.3. The minimum air gap shall be measured vertically from the lowest end of a water supply outlet to the flood level rim of the fixture or receptor into which such potable water outlets discharge. The minimum required air gap shall be twice the diameter of the effective opening of the outlet, but in no case less than the values specified in Table P2902.3.1. An air gap is required at the discharge point of a relief valve or piping. Air gap devices shall be incorporated in dishwashing and clothes washing *appliances*.

**P2902.3.2 Atmospheric-type vacuum breakers.** Pipe-applied atmospheric-type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1. Hose-connection vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1011, ASSE 1019, ASSE 1035, ASSE 1052, CSA B64.2, CSA B64.2.1, CSA B64.2.1.1, CSA B64.2.2 or CSA B64.7. These devices shall operate under normal atmospheric pressure when the critical level is installed at the required height.

**P2902.3.3 Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent.** Backflow preventers with intermediate atmospheric vents shall conform to ASSE 1012 or CAN/CSA B64.3. These devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. The relief opening shall discharge by air gap and shall be prevented from being submerged.

**P2902.3.4 Pressure-type vacuum breakers.** Pressure-type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1020 or CSA B64.1.2 and spillproof vacuum breakers shall comply with ASSE 1056. These devices are designed for installation under continuous pressure conditions when the critical level is installed at the required height. Pressure-type vacuum breakers shall not be installed in locations where spillage could cause damage to the structure.

**P2902.3.5 Reduced pressure principle backflow preventers.** Reduced pressure principle backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64.4 or CSA B64.4.1. Reduced pressure detector assembly backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1047. These devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. The relief opening shall discharge by air gap and shall be prevented from being submerged.

**P2902.3.6 Double check-valve assemblies.** Double check-valve assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1015, CSA B64.5, CSA B64.5.1 or AWWA C510. Double-detector check-valve assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1048. These devices shall be capable of operating under continuous pressure conditions.

**P2902.4 Protection of potable water outlets.** Potable water openings and outlets shall be protected by an air gap, reduced pressure principle backflow preventer with atmospheric vent, atmospheric-type vacuum breaker, pressure-type vacuum breaker or hose connection backflow preventer.

**P2902.4.1 Fill valves.** Flush tanks shall be equipped with an antisiphon fill valve conforming to ASSE 1002 or CSA B125.3. The fill valve backflow preventer shall be located at least 1 inch (25 mm) above the full opening of the overflow pipe.

**P2902.4.2 Deck-mounted and integral vacuum breakers.** *Approved* deck-mounted vacuum breakers and faucets with integral atmospheric or spill-proof vacuum breakers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements for labeling with the critical level not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the flood level rim.

**TABLE P2902.3**
**APPLICATION FOR BACKFLOW PREVENTERS**

| DEVICE | DEGREE OF HAZARD[a] | APPLICATION[b] | APPLICABLE STANDARDS |
|---|---|---|---|
| Air gap | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage or backpressure | ASME A112.1.2 |
| Air gap fittings for use with plumbing fixtures, appliances and appurtenances | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage or backpressure | ASME A112.1.3 |
| Antisiphon-type fill valves for gravity water closet flush tanks | High hazard | Backsiphonage only | ASSE 1002, CSA B125.3 |
| Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vents | Low hazard | Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $^1/_4''$ – $^3/_4''$ | ASSE 1012, CSA B64.3 |
| Double check backflow prevention assembly and double check fire protection backflow prevention assembly | Low hazard | Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $^3/_8''$ – 16″ | ASSE 1015, AWWA C510, CSA B64.5, CSA B64.5.1 |
| Double check detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies | Low hazard | Backpressure or backsiphonage (Fire sprinkler systems) Sizes 2″ – 16″ | ASSE 1048 |
| Dual-check-valve-type backflow preventer | Low hazard | Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $^1/_4''$ – 1″ | ASSE 1024, CSA B64.6 |
| Hose connection backflow preventer | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure, rated working pressure backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $^1/_2''$ – 1″ | ASSE 1052, CSA B64.2.1.1 |
| Hose-connection vacuum breaker | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $^1/_2''$, $^3/_4''$, 1″ | ASSE 1011, CSA B64.2, CSA B64.2.1 |
| Laboratory faucet backflow preventer | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure and backsiphonage | ASSE 1035, CSA B64.7 |
| Pipe-applied atmospheric-type vacuum breaker | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage only Sizes $^1/_4''$ – 4″ | ASSE 1001, CSA B64.1.1 |
| Pressure vacuum breaker assembly | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage only Sizes $^1/_2''$ – 2″ | ASSE 1020, CSA B64.1.2 |
| Reduced pressure detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage or backpressure (Fire sprinkler systems) | ASSE 1047 |
| Reduced pressure principle backflow preventer and reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow preventer | High or low hazard | Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $^3/_8''$ – 16″ | ASSE` 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64.4, CSA B64.4.1 |
| Spillproof vacuum breaker | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage only Sizes $^1/_4''$ – 2″ | ASSE 1056 |
| Vacuum breaker wall hydrants, frost-resistant, automatic draining type | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $^3/_4''$ – 1″ | ASSE 1019, CSA B64.2.2 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Low hazard—See Pollution (Section 202). High hazard—See Contamination (Section 202).

b. See Backpressure (Section 202). See Backpressure, Low Head (Section 202). See Backsiphonage (Section 202).

**P2902.4.3 Hose connection.** Sillcocks, hose bibbs, wall hydrants and other openings with a hose connection shall be protected by an atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breaker or a permanently attached hose connection vacuum breaker.

**Exceptions:**

1. This section shall not apply to water heater and boiler drain valves that are provided with hose connection threads and that are intended only for tank or vessel draining.
2. This section shall not apply to water supply valves intended for connection of clothes washing machines where backflow prevention is otherwise provided or is integral with the machine.

**P2902.5 Protection of potable water connections.** Connections to the potable water shall conform to Sections P2902.5.1 through P2902.5.5.

**P2902.5.1 Connections to boilers.** The potable supply to the boiler shall be equipped with a backflow preventer with an intermediate atmospheric vent complying with ASSE 1012 or CSA B64.3. Where conditioning chemicals are

**TABLE P2902.3.1**
**MINIMUM AIR GAPS**

| FIXTURE | MINIMUM AIR GAP | |
|---|---|---|
| | Away from a wall[a] (inches) | Close to a wall (inches) |
| Effective openings greater than 1 inch | Two times the diameter of the effective opening | Three times the diameter of the effective opening |
| Lavatories and other fixtures with effective opening not greater than $^1/_2$ inch in diameter | 1 | 1.5 |
| Over-rim bath fillers and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than 1 inch in diameter | 2 | 3 |
| Sink, laundry trays, gooseneck back faucets and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than $^3/_4$ inch in diameter | 1.5 | 2.5 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Applicable where walls or obstructions are spaced from the nearest inside edge of the spout opening a distance greater than three times the diameter of the effective opening for a single wall, or a distance greater than four times the diameter of the effective opening for two intersecting walls.

introduced into the system, the potable water connection shall be protected by an air gap or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1013, CSA B64.4 or AWWA C511.

**P2902.5.2 Heat exchangers.** Heat exchangers using an essentially toxic transfer fluid shall be separated from the potable water by double-wall construction. An air gap open to the atmosphere shall be provided between the two walls. Heat exchangers utilizing an essentially nontoxic transfer fluid shall be permitted to be of single-wall construction.

**P2902.5.3 Lawn irrigation systems.** The potable water supply to lawn irrigation systems shall be protected against backflow by an atmospheric-type vacuum breaker, a pressure-type vacuum breaker or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer. A valve shall not be installed downstream from an atmospheric vacuum breaker. Where chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer.

**P2902.5.4 Connections to automatic fire sprinkler systems.** The potable water supply to automatic fire sprinkler systems shall be protected against backflow by a double check-valve assembly or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer.

**Exception:** Where systems are installed as a portion of the water distribution system in accordance with the requirements of this code and are not provided with a fire department connection, isolation of the water supply system shall not be required.

**P2902.5.4.1 Additives or nonpotable source.** Where systems contain chemical additives or antifreeze, or where systems are connected to a nonpotable secondary water supply, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer. Where chemical additives or antifreeze is added to only a portion of an automatic fire sprinkler or standpipe system, the reduced pressure principle backflow preventer shall be permitted to be located so as to isolate that portion of the system.

**P2902.5.5 Solar systems.** The potable water supply to a solar system shall be equipped with a backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent complying with ASSE 1012 or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1013. Where chemicals are used, the potable water supply shall be protected by a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer.

**Exception:** Where all solar system piping is a part of the potable water distribution system, in accordance with the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*, and all components of the piping system are listed for potable water use, cross-connection protection measures shall not be required.

**P2902.6 Location of backflow preventers.** Access shall be provided to backflow preventers as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2902.6.1 Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices.** Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices shall comply with ASSE 1060.

**P2902.6.2 Protection of backflow preventers.** Backflow preventers shall not be located in areas subject to freezing except where they can be removed by means of unions, or are protected by heat, insulation or both.

**P2902.6.3 Relief port piping.** The termination of the piping from the relief port or air gap fitting of the backflow preventer shall discharge to an *approved* indirect waste receptor or to the outdoors where it will not cause damage or create a nuisance.

## SECTION P2903
## WATER-SUPPLY SYSTEM

**P2903.1 Water supply system design criteria.** The water service and water distribution systems shall be designed and pipe sizes shall be selected such that under conditions of peak demand, the capacities at the point of outlet discharge shall not be less than shown in Table P2903.1.

**TABLE P2903.1**
**REQUIRED CAPACITIES AT**
**POINT OF OUTLET DISCHARGE**

| FIXTURE AT POINT OF OUTLET | FLOW RATE (gpm) | FLOW PRESSURE (psi) |
|---|---|---|
| Bathtub, pressure-balanced or thermostatic mixing valve | 4 | 20 |
| Bidet, thermostatic mixing | 2 | 20 |
| Dishwasher | 2.75 | 8 |
| Laundry tub | 4 | 8 |
| Lavatory | 2 | 8 |
| Shower, pressure-balancing or thermostatic mixing valve | 3 | 20 |
| Sillcock, hose bibb | 5 | 8 |
| Sink | 2.5 | 8 |
| Water closet, flushometer tank | 1.6 | 20 |
| Water closet, tank, close coupled | 3 | 20 |
| Water closet, tank, one-piece | 6 | 20 |

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m,
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

**P2903.2 Maximum flow and water consumption.** The maximum water consumption flow rates and quantities for all plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings shall be in accordance with Table P2903.2.

**TABLEP2903.2**
**MAXIMUM FLOW RATES AND CONSUMPTION FOR PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE FITTINGS[b]**

| PLUMBING FIXTURE OR FIXTURE FITTING | PLUMBING FIXTURE OR FIXTURE FITTING |
|---|---|
| Lavatory faucet | 2.2 gpm at 60 psi |
| Shower head[a] | 2.5 gpm at 80 psi |
| Sink faucet | 2.2 gpm at 60 psi |
| Water closet | 1.6 gallons per flushing cycle |

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m,
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. A handheld shower spray is also a shower head.

b. Consumption tolerances shall be determined from referenced standards.

**P2903.3 Minimum pressure.** Minimum static pressure (as determined by the local water authority) at the building entrance for either public or private water service shall be 40 psi (276 kPa).

**P2903.3.1 Maximum pressure.** Maximum static pressure shall be 80 psi (551 kPa). When main pressure exceeds 80 psi (551 kPa), an *approved* pressure-reducing valve conforming to ASSE 1003 shall be installed on the domestic water branch main or riser at the connection to the water-service pipe.

**P2903.4 Thermal expansion control.** A means for controlling increased pressure caused by thermal expansion shall be installed where required in accordance with Sections P2903.4.1 and P2903.4.2.

**P2903.4.1 Pressure-reducing valve.** For water service system sizes up to and including 2 inches (51 mm), a device for controlling pressure shall be installed where, because of thermal expansion, the pressure on the downstream side of a pressure-reducing valve exceeds the pressure-reducing valve setting.

**P2903.4.2 Backflow prevention device or check valve.** Where a backflow prevention device, check valve or other device is installed on a water supply system using storage water heating equipment such that thermal expansion causes an increase in pressure, a device for controlling pressure shall be installed.

**P2903.5 Water hammer.** The flow velocity of the water distribution system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. Water-hammer arrestors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Water hammer arrestors shall conform to ASSE 1010.

**P2903.6 Determining water-supply fixture units.** Supply loads in the building water-distribution system shall be determined by total load on the pipe being sized, in terms of water-supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.), as shown in Table P2903.6, and gallon per minute (gpm) flow rates [see Table P2903.6(1)]. For fixtures not listed, choose a w.s.f.u. value of a fixture with similar flow characteristics.

**P2903.7 Size of water-service mains, branch mains and risers.** The minimum size water service pipe shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm). The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers shall be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including *equivalent length* of fittings. The size of each water distribution system shall be determined according to design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice, such as those methods in Appendix P and shall be *approved* by the code official.

**P2903.8 Gridded and parallel water distribution system manifolds.** Hot water and cold water manifolds installed with gridded or parallel-connected individual distribution lines to each fixture or fixture fittings shall be designed in accordance with Sections P2903.8.1 through P2903.8.6.

**P2903.8.1 Sizing of manifolds.** Manifolds shall be sized in accordance with Table P2903.8.1. Total gallons per minute is the demand for all outlets.

**P2903.8.2 Minimum size.** Where the *developed length* of the distribution line is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or less, and the available pressure at the meter is a minimum of 40 pounds per square inch (276 kPa), the minimum size of individual distri-

**TABLE P2903.6**
**WATER-SUPPLY FIXTURE-UNIT VALUES FOR VARIOUS PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE GROUPS**

| TYPE OF FIXTURES OR GROUP OF FIXTURES | WATER-SUPPLY FIXTURE-UNIT VALUE (w.s.f.u.) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Hot | Cold | Combined |
| Bathtub (with/without overhead shower head) | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Clothes washer | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Dishwasher | 1.4 | — | 1.4 |
| Full-bath group with bathtub (with/without shower head) or shower stall | 1.5 | 2.7 | 3.6 |
| Half-bath group (water closet and lavatory) | 0.5 | 2.5 | 2.6 |
| Hose bibb (sillcock)[a] | — | 2.5 | 2.5 |
| Kitchen group (dishwasher and sink with/without garbage grinder) | 1.9 | 1.0 | 2.5 |
| Kitchen sink | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Laundry group (clothes washer standpipe and laundry tub) | 1.8 | 1.8 | 2.5 |
| Laundry tub | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Lavatory | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.7 |
| Shower stall | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Water closet (tank type) | — | 2.2 | 2.2 |

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

a. The fixture unit value 2.5 assumes a flow demand of 2.5 gpm, such as for an individual lawn sprinkler device. If a hose bibb/sill cock will be required to furnish a greater flow, the equivalent fixture-unit value may be obtained from this table or Table P2903.6(1).

bution lines shall be $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm). Certain fixtures such as one-piece water closets and whirlpool bathtubs shall require a larger size where specified by the manufacturer. If a water heater is fed from the end of a cold water manifold, the manifold shall be one size larger than the water heater feed.

**P2903.8.3 Orientation.** Manifolds shall be permitted to be installed in a horizontal or vertical position.

**P2903.8.4 Support and protection.** Plastic piping bundles shall be secured in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and supported in accordance with Section P2605. Bundles that have a change in direction equal to or greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) shall be protected from chafing at the point of contact with framing members by sleeving or wrapping.

**P2903.8.5 Valving.** Fixture valves, when installed, shall be located either at the fixture or at the manifold. If valves are installed at the manifold, they shall be labeled indicating the fixture served.

**P2903.8.6 Hose bibb bleed.** A *readily accessible* air bleed shall be installed in hose bibb supplies at the manifold or at the hose bibb exit point.

**P2903.9 Valves.** Valves shall be installed in accordance with Sections P2903.9.1 through P2903.9.5.

**P2903.9.1 Service valve.** Each *dwelling unit* shall be provided with an accessible main shutoff valve near the entrance of the water service. The valve shall be of a full-open type having nominal restriction to flow, with provision for drainage such as a bleed orifice or installation of a separate drain valve. Additionally, the water service shall be valved at the curb or property line in accordance with local requirements.

**P2903.9.2 Water heater valve.** A *readily accessible* full-open valve shall be installed in the cold-water supply pipe to each water heater at or near the water heater.

**P2903.9.3 Fixture valves and access.** Valves serving individual fixtures, *appliances*, risers and branches shall be provided with access. An individual shutoff valve shall be required on the fixture supply pipe to each plumbing fixture other than bathtubs and showers.

**P2903.9.4 Valve requirements.** Valves shall be of an *approved* type and compatible with the type of piping material installed in the system. Ball valves, gate valves, globe valves and plug valves intended to supply drinking water shall meet the requirements of NSF 61.

**P2903.9.5 Valves and outlets prohibited below grade.** Potable water outlets and combination stop-and-waste valves shall not be installed underground or below grade. Freezeproof yard hydrants that drain the riser into the ground are considered to be stop-and-waste valves.

**Exception:** Installation of freezeproof yard hydrants that drain the riser into the ground shall be permitted if the potable water supply to such hydrants is protected upstream of the hydrants in accordance with Section P2902 and the hydrants are permanently identified as nonpotable outlets by *approved* signage that reads as follows: "Caution, Nonpotable Water. Do Not Drink."

**TABLE P2903.6(1)**
**CONVERSIONS FROM WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT TO GALLON PER MINUTE FLOW RATES**

| SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS | | | SUPPLY SYSTEM PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH VALVES | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Load | Demand | | Load | Demand | |
| (Water supply fixture units) | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) | (Water supply fixture units) | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) |
| 1 | 3.0 | 0.04104 | — | — | — |
| 2 | 5.0 | 0.0684 | — | — | — |
| 3 | 6.5 | 0.86892 | — | — | — |
| 4 | 8.0 | 1.06944 | — | — | — |
| 5 | 9.4 | 1.256592 | 5 | 15.0 | 2.0052 |
| 6 | 10.7 | 1.430376 | 6 | 17.4 | 2.326032 |
| 7 | 11.8 | 1.577424 | 7 | 19.8 | 2.646364 |
| 8 | 12.8 | 1.711104 | 8 | 22.2 | 2.967696 |
| 9 | 13.7 | 1.831416 | 9 | 24.6 | 3.288528 |
| 10 | 14.6 | 1.951728 | 10 | 27.0 | 3.60936 |
| 11 | 15.4 | 2.058672 | 11 | 27.8 | 3.716304 |
| 12 | 16.0 | 2.13888 | 12 | 28.6 | 3.823248 |
| 13 | 16.5 | 2.20572 | 13 | 29.4 | 3.930192 |
| 14 | 17.0 | 2.27256 | 14 | 30.2 | 4.037136 |
| 15 | 17.5 | 2.3394 | 15 | 31.0 | 4.14408 |
| 16 | 18.0 | 2.90624 | 16 | 31.8 | 4.241024 |
| 17 | 18.4 | 2.459712 | 17 | 32.6 | 4.357968 |
| 18 | 18.8 | 2.513184 | 18 | 33.4 | 4.464912 |
| 19 | 19.2 | 2.566656 | 19 | 34.2 | 4.571856 |
| 20 | 19.6 | 2.620128 | 20 | 35.0 | 4.6788 |
| 25 | 21.5 | 2.87412 | 25 | 38.0 | 5.07984 |
| 30 | 23.3 | 3.114744 | 30 | 42.0 | 5.61356 |
| 35 | 24.9 | 3.328632 | 35 | 44.0 | 5.88192 |
| 40 | 26.3 | 3.515784 | 40 | 46.0 | 6.14928 |
| 45 | 27.7 | 3.702936 | 45 | 48.0 | 6.41664 |
| 50 | 29.1 | 3.890088 | 50 | 50.0 | 6.684 |

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s.

**TABLE P2903.8.1**
**MANIFOLD SIZING**

| PLASTIC | | METALLIC | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nominal Size ID (inches) | Maximum[a] gpm | Nominal Size ID (inches) | Maximum[a] gpm |
| $^3/_4$ | 17 | $^3/_4$ | 11 |
| 1 | 29 | 1 | 20 |
| $1^1/_4$ | 46 | $1^1/_4$ | 31 |
| $1^1/_2$ | 66 | $1^1/_2$ | 44 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 foot per second = 0.3048 m/s.
**NOTE:** See Table P2903.6 for w.s.f.u and Table P2903.6(1) for gallon-per-minute (gpm) flow rates.
a. Based on velocity limitation: plastic—12 fps; metal—8 fps.

**P2903.10 Hose bibb.** Hose bibbs subject to freezing, including the "frost-proof" type, shall be equipped with an accessible stop-and-waste-type valve inside the building so that they can be controlled and/or drained during cold periods.

**Exception:** Frostproof hose bibbs installed such that the stem extends through the building insulation into an open heated or semi*conditioned space* need not be separately valved (see Figure P2903.10).

## SECTION P2904
## DWELLING UNIT FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

**P2904.1 General.** Where installed, residential fire sprinkler systems, or portions thereof, shall be in accordance with NFPA 13D or Section P2904, which shall be considered equivalent to NFPA 13D. Section P2904 shall apply to stand-alone and multipurpose wet-pipe sprinkler systems that do not include the use of antifreeze. A multipurpose fire sprinkler system shall supply domestic water to both fire sprinklers and plumbing fixtures. A stand-alone sprinkler system shall be separate and independent from the water distribution system. A backflow preventer shall not be required to separate a stand-alone sprinkler system from the water distribution system.

**P2904.1.1 Required sprinkler locations.** Sprinklers shall be installed to protect all areas of a *dwelling unit*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Attics, crawl spaces and normally unoccupied concealed spaces that do not contain fuel-fired appliances do not require sprinklers. In *attics*, crawl spaces and normally unoccupied concealed spaces that contain fuel-fired equipment, a sprinkler shall be installed above the equipment; however, sprinklers shall not be required in the remainder of the space.
2. Clothes closets, linen closets and pantries not exceeding 24 square feet (2.2 $m^2$) in area, with the smallest dimension not greater than 3 feet (915 mm) and having wall and ceiling surfaces of gypsum board.
3. Bathrooms not more than 55 square feet (5.1 $m^2$) in area.
4. Garages; carports; exterior porches; unheated entry areas, such as mud rooms, that are adjacent to an exterior door; and similar areas.

**P2904.2 Sprinklers.** Sprinklers shall be new listed residential sprinklers and shall be installed in accordance with the sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2904.2.1 Temperature rating and separation from heat sources.** Except as provided for in Section P2904.2.2, sprinklers shall have a temperature rating of not less than 135°F (57°C) and not more than 170°F (77°C). Sprinklers shall be separated from heat sources as required by the sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2904.2.2 Intermediate temperature sprinklers.** Sprinklers shall have an intermediate temperature rating not less than 175°F (79°C) and not more than 225°F (107°C) where installed in the following locations:

1. Directly under skylights, where the sprinkler is exposed to direct sunlight.
2. In *attics*.
3. In concealed spaces located directly beneath a roof.
4. Within the distance to a heat source as specified in Table P2904.2.2

**P2904.2.3 Freezing areas.** Piping shall be protected from freezing as required by Section P2603.6. Where sprinklers are required in areas that are subject to freezing, dry-sidewall or dry-pendent sprinklers extending from a nonfreezing area into a freezing area shall be installed.

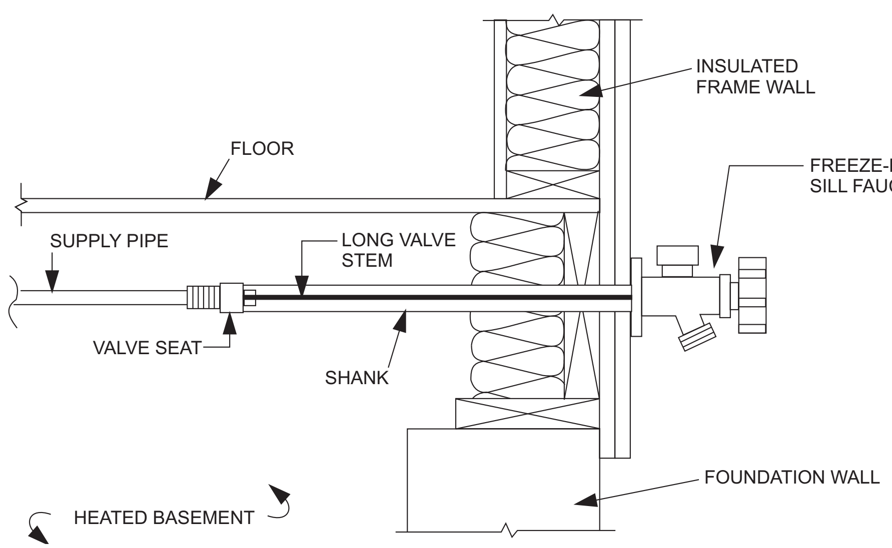



**FIGURE P2903.10**
**TYPICAL FROSTPROOF HOSE BIBB INSTALLATION NOT REQUIRING SEPARATE VALUE**

**TABLE P2904.2.2**
**LOCATIONS WHERE INTERMEDIATE TEMPERATURE SPRINKLERS ARE REQUIRED**

| HEAT SOURCE | RANGE OF DISTANCE FROM HEAT SOURCE WITHIN WHICH INTERMEDIATE TEMPERATURE SPRINKLERS ARE REQUIRED[a,b] (inches) |
|---|---|
| Fireplace, side of open or recessed fireplace | 12 to 36 |
| Fireplace, front of recessed fireplace | 36 to 60 |
| Coal and wood burning stove | 12 to 42 |
| Kitchen range top | 9 to 18 |
| Oven | 9 to 18 |
| Vent connector or chimney connector | 9 to 18 |
| Heating duct, not insulated | 9 to 18 |
| Hot water pipe, not insulated | 6 to 12 |
| Side of ceiling or wall warm air register | 12 to 24 |
| Front of wall mounted warm air register | 18 to 36 |
| Water heater, furnace or boiler | 3 to 6 |
| Luminaire up to 250 watts | 3 to 6 |
| Luminaire 250 watts up to 499 watts | 6 to 12 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Sprinklers shall not be located at distances less than the minimum table distance unless the sprinkler listing allows a lesser distance.
b. Distances shall be measured in a straight line from the nearest edge of the heat source to the nearest edge of the sprinkler

**P2904.2.4 Sprinkler coverage.** Sprinkler coverage requirements and sprinkler obstruction requirements shall be in accordance with Sections P2904.2.4.1 and P2904.2.4.2.

**P2904.2.4.1 Coverage area limit.** The area of coverage of a single sprinkler shall not exceed 400 square feet (37 $m^2$) and shall be based on the sprinkler listing and the sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2904.2.4.2 Obstructions to coverage.** Sprinkler discharge shall not be blocked by obstructions unless additional sprinklers are installed to protect the obstructed area. Sprinkler separation from obstructions shall comply with the minimum distances specified in the sprinkler manufacturer's instructions.

**P2904.2.4.2.1 Additional requirements for pendent sprinklers.** Pendent sprinklers within 3 feet (915 mm) of the center of a ceiling fan, surface-mounted ceiling luminaire or similar object shall be considered to be obstructed, and additional sprinklers shall be installed.

**P2904.2.4.2.2 Additional requirements for sidewall sprinklers.** Sidewall sprinklers within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the center of a ceiling fan, surface-mounted ceiling luminaire or similar object shall be considered to be obstructed, and additional sprinklers shall be installed.

**P2904.2.5 Sprinkler installation on systems assembled with solvent cement.** The solvent cementing of threaded adapter fittings shall be completed and threaded adapters for sprinklers shall be verified as being clear of excess cement prior to the installation of sprinklers on systems assembled with solvent cement.

**P2904.2.6 Sprinkler modifications prohibited.** Painting, caulking or modifying of sprinklers shall be prohibited. Sprinklers that have been painted, caulked, modified or damaged shall be replaced with new sprinklers.

**P2904.3 Sprinkler piping system.** Sprinkler piping shall be supported in accordance with the requirements for cold water distribution piping. Sprinkler piping shall comply with all requirements for cold water distribution piping. For multipurpose piping systems, the sprinkler piping shall connect to and be a part of the cold water distribution piping system.

**P2904.3.1 Nonmetallic pipe and tubing.** Nonmetallic pipe and tubing, such as CPVC and PEX, shall be listed for use in residential fire sprinkler systems.

**P2904.3.1.1 Nonmetallic pipe protection.** Nonmetallic pipe and tubing systems shall be protected from exposure to the living space by a layer of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) thick gypsum wallboard, $^1/_2$ inch thick plywood (13 mm), or other material having a 15 minute fire rating.

**Exceptions:**

1. Pipe protection shall not be required in areas that do not require protection with sprinklers as specified in Section P2904.1.1.
2. Pipe protection shall not be required where exposed piping is permitted by the pipe listing.

**P2904.3.2 Shutoff valves prohibited.** With the exception of shutoff valves for the entire water distribution system, valves shall not be installed in any location where the valve would isolate piping serving one or more sprinklers.

**P2904.3.3 Single dwelling limit.** Piping beyond the service valve located at the beginning of the water distribution system shall not serve more than one *dwelling*.

**P2904.3.4 Drain.** A means to drain the sprinkler system shall be provided on the system side of the water distribution shutoff valve.

**P2904.4 Determining system design flow.** The flow for sizing the sprinkler piping system shall be based on the flow rating of each sprinkler in accordance with Section P2904.4.1 and the calculation in accordance with Section P2904.4.2.

**P2904.4.1 Determining required flow rate for each sprinkler.** The minimum required flow for each sprinkler shall be determined using the sprinkler manufacturer's published data for the specific sprinkler model based on all of the following:

1. The area of coverage.
2. The ceiling configuration.
3. The temperature rating.
4. Any additional conditions specified by the sprinkler manufacturer.

**P2904.4.2 System design flow rate.** The design flow rate for the system shall be based on the following:

1. The design flow rate for a room having only one sprinkler shall be the flow rate required for that sprinkler, as determined by Section P2904.4.1.
2. The design flow rate for a room having two or more sprinklers a shall be determined by identifying the sprinkler in that room with the highest required flow rate, based on Section P2904.4.1, and multiplying that flow rate by 2.
3. Where the sprinkler manufacturer specifies different criteria for ceiling configurations that are not smooth, flat and horizontal, the required flow rate for that room shall comply with the sprinkler manufacturer's instructions.
4. The design flow rate for the sprinkler system shall be the flow required by the room with the largest flow rate, based on Items 1, 2 and 3.
5. For the purpose of this section, it shall be permissible to reduce the design flow rate for a room by subdividing the space into two or more rooms, where each room is evaluated separately with respect to the required design flow rate. Each room shall be bounded by walls and a ceiling. Openings in walls shall have a lintel not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth and each lintel shall form a solid barrier between the ceiling and the top of the opening.

**P2904.5 Water supply.** The water supply shall provide not less than the required design flow rate for sprinklers in accordance with Section P2904.4.2 at a pressure not less than that used to comply with Section P2904.6.

**P2904.5.1 Water supply from individual sources.** Where a *dwelling unit* water supply is from a tank system, a private well system or a combination of these, the available water supply shall be based on the minimum pressure control setting for the pump.

**P2904.5.2 Required capacity.** The water supply shall have the capacity to provide the required design flow rate for sprinklers for a period of time as follows:

1. 7 minutes for *dwelling units* one *story* in height and less than 2,000 square feet (186 $m^2$) in area.
2. 10 minutes for *dwelling units* two or more stories in height or equal to or greater than 2,000 square feet (186 $m^2$) in area.

Where a well system, a water supply tank system or a combination thereof is used, any combination of well capacity and tank storage shall be permitted to meet the capacity requirement.

**P2904.6 Pipe sizing.** The piping to sprinklers shall be sized for the flow required by Section P2904.4.2. The flow required to supply the plumbing fixtures shall not be required to be added to the sprinkler design flow.

**P2904.6.1 Method of sizing pipe.** Piping supplying sprinklers shall be sized using the prescriptive method in Section P2904.6.2 or by hydraulic calculation in accordance with NFPA 13D. The minimum pipe size from the water supply source to any sprinkler shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) nominal. Threaded adapter fittings at the point where sprinklers are attached to the piping shall be a minimum of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) nominal.

**P2904.6.2 Prescriptive pipe sizing method.** Pipe shall be sized by determining the available pressure to offset friction loss in piping and identifying a piping material, diameter and length using the equation in Section P2904.6.2.1 and the procedure in Section P2904.6.2.2.

**P2904.6.2.1 Available pressure equation.** The pressure available to offset friction loss in the interior piping system ($P_t$) shall be determined in accordance with the Equation 29-1.

$$P_t = P_{sup} - PL_{svc} - PL_m - PL_d - PL_e - P_{sp} \quad \textbf{(Equation 29-1)}$$

where:

$P_t$ = Pressure used in applying Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9).

$P_{sup}$ = Pressure available from the water supply source.

$PL_{svc}$ = Pressure loss in the water-service pipe.

$PL_m$ = Pressure loss in the water meter.

$PL_d$ = Pressure loss from devices other than the water meter.

$PL_e$ = Pressure loss associated with changes in elevation.

$P_{sp}$ = Maximum pressure required by a sprinkler.

**2904.6.2.2 Calculation procedure.** Determination of the required size for water distribution piping shall be in accordance with the following procedure:

**Step 1–Determine $P_{sup}$**

Obtain the static supply pressure that will be available from the water main from the water purveyor, or for an individual source, the available supply pressure shall be in accordance with Section P2904.5.1.

**Step 2–Determine $PL_{svc}$**

Use Table P2904.6.2(1) to determine the pressure loss in the water service pipe based on the selected size of the water service.

**Step 3–Determine $PL_m$**

Use Table P2904.6.2(2) to determine the pressure loss from the water meter, based on the selected water meter size.

**Step 4–Determine $PL_d$**

Determine the pressure loss from devices other than the water meter installed in the piping system supplying sprinklers, such as pressure-reducing valves, backflow preventers, water softeners or water filters. Device pressure losses shall be based on the device manufacturer's specifications. The flow rate used to determine pressure loss shall be the rate from Section P2904.4.2, except that 5 gpm (0.3 L/S) shall be added where the device is installed in a water-service pipe that supplies more than one *dwelling*. As alternative to deducting pressure loss for a device, an automatic bypass valve shall be installed to divert flow around the device when a sprinkler activates.

**Step 5–Determine $PL_e$**

Use Table P2904.6.2(3) to determine the pressure loss associated with changes in elevation. The elevation used in applying the table shall be the difference between the elevation where the water source pressure was measured and the elevation of the highest sprinkler.

**Step 6–Determine $P_{sp}$**

Determine the maximum pressure required by any individual sprinkler based on the flow rate from Section P2904.4.1. The required pressure is provided in the sprinkler manufacturer's published data for the specific sprinkler model based on the selected flow rate.

**Step 7–Calculate $P_t$**

Using Equation 29-1, calculate the pressure available to offset friction loss in water-distribution piping between the service valve and the sprinklers.

**Step 8–Determine the maximum allowable pipe length**

Use Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) to select a material and size for water distribution piping. The piping material and size shall be acceptable if the *developed length* of pipe between the service valve and the most remote sprinkler does not exceed the maximum allowable length specified by the applicable table. Interpolation of $P_t$ between the tabular values shall be permitted.

The maximum allowable length of piping in Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) incorporates an adjustment for pipe fittings, and no additional consideration of friction losses associated with pipe fittings shall be required.

**P2904.7 Instructions and signs.** An owner's manual for the fire sprinkler system shall be provided to the owner. A sign or valve tag shall be installed at the main shutoff valve to the water distribution system stating the following: "Warning, the water system for this home supplies fire sprinklers that require certain flows and pressures to fight a fire. Devices that restrict the flow or decrease the pressure or automatically shut off the water to the fire sprinkler system, such as water softeners, filtration systems and automatic shutoff valves, shall not be added to this system without a review of the fire sprinkler system by a fire protection specialist. Do not remove this sign."

**P2904.8 Inspections.** The water distribution system shall be inspected in accordance with Sections P2904.8.1 and P2904.8.2.

**P2904.8.1 Preconcealment inspection.** The following items shall be verified prior to the concealment of any sprinkler system piping:

1. Sprinklers are installed in all areas as required by Section P2904.1.1.
2. Where sprinkler water spray patterns are obstructed by construction features, luminaires or ceiling fans, additional sprinklers are installed as required by Section P2904.2.4.2.
3. Sprinklers are the correct temperature rating and are installed at or beyond the required separation distances from heat sources as required by Sections P2904.2.1 and P2904.2.2.
4. The pipe size equals or exceeds the size used in applying Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) or, if the piping system was hydraulically calculated in accordance with Section P2904.6.1, the size used in the hydraulic calculation.
5. The pipe length does not exceed the length permitted by Tables P2904.6.2(4) through P2904.6.2(9) or, if the piping system was hydraulically calculated in accordance with Section P2904.6.1, pipe lengths and fittings do not exceed those used in the hydraulic calculation.
6. Nonmetallic piping that conveys water to sprinklers is listed for use with fire sprinklers.
7. Piping is supported in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's and sprinkler manufacturer's installation instructions.
8. The piping system is tested in accordance with Section P2503.7.

**P2904.8.2 Final inspection.** The following items shall be verified upon completion of the system:

1. Sprinkler are not painted, damaged or otherwise hindered from operation.
2. Where a pump is required to provide water to the system, the pump starts automatically upon system water demand.
3. Pressure-reducing valves, water softeners, water filters or other impairments to water flow that were not part of the original design have not been installed.
4. The sign or valve tag required by Section P2904.7 is installed and the owner's manual for the system is present.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(1)**
**WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS ($PL_{svc}$)[a,b]**

| FLOW RATE[c] (gpm) | $^3/_4$ INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi) | | | | 1 INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi) | | | | $1^1/_4$ INCH WATER SERVICE PRESSURE LOSS (psi) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Length of water service pipe (feet) | | | | Length of water service pipe (feet) | | | | Length of water service pipe (feet) | | | |
| | 40 or less | 41 to 75 | 76 to 100 | 101 to 150 | 40 or less | 41 to 75 | 76 to 100 | 101 to 150 | 40 or less | 41 to 75 | 76 to 100 | 101 to 150 |
| 8 | 5.1 | 8.7 | 11.8 | 17.4 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 3.4 | 5.1 | 0.6 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 1.9 |
| 10 | 7.7 | 13.1 | 17.8 | 26.3 | 2.3 | 3.8 | 5.2 | 7.7 | 0.8 | 1.4 | 2.0 | 2.9 |
| 12 | 10.8 | 18.4 | 24.9 | NP | 3.2 | 5.4 | 7.3 | 10.7 | 1.2 | 2.0 | 2.7 | 4.0 |
| 14 | 14.4 | 24.5 | NP | NP | 4.2 | 7.1 | 9.6 | 14.3 | 1.6 | 2.7 | 3.6 | 5.4 |
| 16 | 18.4 | NP | NP | NP | 5.4 | 9.1 | 12.4 | 18.3 | 2.0 | 3.4 | 4.7 | 6.9 |
| 18 | 22.9 | NP | NP | NP | 6.7 | 11.4 | 15.4 | 22.7 | 2.5 | 4.3 | 5.8 | 8.6 |
| 20 | 27.8 | NP | NP | NP | 8.1 | 13.8 | 18.7 | 27.6 | 3.1 | 5.2 | 7.0 | 10.4 |
| 22 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 9.7 | 16.5 | 22.3 | NP | 3.7 | 6.2 | 8.4 | 12.4 |
| 24 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 11.4 | 19.3 | 26.2 | NP | 4.3 | 7.3 | 9.9 | 14.6 |
| 26 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 13.2 | 22.4 | NP | NP | 5.0 | 8.5 | 11.4 | 16.9 |
| 28 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 15.1 | 25.7 | NP | NP | 5.7 | 9.7 | 13.1 | 19.4 |
| 30 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 17.2 | NP | NP | NP | 6.5 | 11.0 | 14.9 | 22.0 |
| 32 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 19.4 | NP | NP | NP | 7.3 | 12.4 | 16.8 | 24.8 |
| 34 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 21.7 | NP | NP | NP | 8.2 | 13.9 | 18.8 | NP |
| 36 | NP | NP | NP | NP | 24.1 | NP | NP | NP | 9.1 | 15.4 | 20.9 | NP |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 0.063 L/s, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
NP - Not permitted. Pressure loss exceeds reasonable limits.
a. Values are applicable for underground piping materials listed in Table P2905.4 and are based on an SDR of 11 and a Hazen Williams C Factor of 150.
b. Values include the following length allowances for fittings: 25% length increase for actual lengths up to 100 feet and 15% length increase for actual lengths over 100 feet.
c. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2. Add 5 gpm to the flow rate required by Section P2904.4.2 where the water-service pipe supplies more than one dwelling.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(2)**
**MINIMUM WATER METER PRESSURE LOSS ($PL_m$)[a]**

| FLOW RATE (gallons per minute, gpm)[b] | $^5/_8$-INCH METER PRESSURE LOSS (pounds per square inch, psi) | $^3/_4$-INCH METER PRESSURE LESS (pounds per square inch, psi) | 1-INCH METER PRESSURE LOSS (pounds per square inch, psi) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | 2 | 1 | 1 |
| 10 | 3 | 1 | 1 |
| 12 | 4 | 1 | 1 |
| 14 | 5 | 2 | 1 |
| 16 | 7 | 3 | 1 |
| 18 | 9 | 4 | 1 |
| 20 | 11 | 4 | 2 |
| 22 | NP | 5 | 2 |
| 24 | NP | 5 | 2 |
| 26 | NP | 6 | 2 |
| 28 | NP | 6 | 2 |
| 30 | NP | 7 | 2 |
| 32 | NP | 7 | 3 |
| 34 | NP | 8 | 3 |
| 36 | NP | 8 | 3 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.063 L/s.
NP - Not permitted unless the actual water meter pressure loss is known.
a. Table P2904.6.2(2) establishes conservative values for water meter pressure loss or installations where the water meter loss is unknown. Where the actual water meter pressure loss is known, $P_m$ shall be the actual loss.
b. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2. Add 5 gpm to the flow rate required by Section P2904.4.2 where the water-service pipe supplies more than one dwelling.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(3)**
**ELEVATION LOSS ($PL_e$)**

| ELEVATION (feet) | PRESSURE LOSS (psi) |
|---|---|
| 5 | 2.2 |
| 10 | 4.4 |
| 15 | 6.5 |
| 20 | 8.7 |
| 25 | 10.9 |
| 30 | 13 |
| 35 | 15.2 |
| 40 | 17.4 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(4)**
**ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR $^3/_4$-INCH TYPE M COPPER WATER TUBING**

| SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm) | WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch) | AVAILABLE PRESSURE - $P_t$ (psi) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 |
| | | Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | $^3/_4$ | 217 | 289 | 361 | 434 | 506 | 578 | 650 | 723 | 795 | 867 |
| 9 | $^3/_4$ | 174 | 232 | 291 | 349 | 407 | 465 | 523 | 581 | 639 | 697 |
| 10 | $^3/_4$ | 143 | 191 | 239 | 287 | 335 | 383 | 430 | 478 | 526 | 574 |
| 11 | $^3/_4$ | 120 | 160 | 200 | 241 | 281 | 321 | 361 | 401 | 441 | 481 |
| 12 | $^3/_4$ | 102 | 137 | 171 | 205 | 239 | 273 | 307 | 341 | 375 | 410 |
| 13 | $^3/_4$ | 88 | 118 | 147 | 177 | 206 | 235 | 265 | 294 | 324 | 353 |
| 14 | $^3/_4$ | 77 | 103 | 128 | 154 | 180 | 205 | 231 | 257 | 282 | 308 |
| 15 | $^3/_4$ | 68 | 90 | 113 | 136 | 158 | 181 | 203 | 226 | 248 | 271 |
| 16 | $^3/_4$ | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 | 220 | 241 |
| 17 | $^3/_4$ | 54 | 72 | 90 | 108 | 125 | 143 | 161 | 179 | 197 | 215 |
| 18 | $^3/_4$ | 48 | 64 | 81 | 97 | 113 | 129 | 145 | 161 | 177 | 193 |
| 19 | $^3/_4$ | 44 | 58 | 73 | 88 | 102 | 117 | 131 | 146 | 160 | 175 |
| 20 | $^3/_4$ | 40 | 53 | 66 | 80 | 93 | 106 | 119 | 133 | 146 | 159 |
| 21 | $^3/_4$ | 36 | 48 | 61 | 73 | 85 | 97 | 109 | 121 | 133 | 145 |
| 22 | $^3/_4$ | 33 | 44 | 56 | 67 | 78 | 89 | 100 | 111 | 122 | 133 |
| 23 | $^3/_4$ | 31 | 41 | 51 | 61 | 72 | 82 | 92 | 102 | 113 | 123 |
| 24 | $^3/_4$ | 28 | 38 | 47 | 57 | 66 | 76 | 85 | 95 | 104 | 114 |
| 25 | $^3/_4$ | 26 | 35 | 44 | 53 | 61 | 70 | 79 | 88 | 97 | 105 |
| 26 | $^3/_4$ | 24 | 33 | 41 | 49 | 57 | 65 | 73 | 82 | 90 | 98 |
| 27 | $^3/_4$ | 23 | 30 | 38 | 46 | 53 | 61 | 69 | 76 | 84 | 91 |
| 28 | $^3/_4$ | 21 | 28 | 36 | 43 | 50 | 57 | 64 | 71 | 78 | 85 |
| 29 | $^3/_4$ | 20 | 27 | 33 | 40 | 47 | 53 | 60 | 67 | 73 | 80 |
| 30 | $^3/_4$ | 19 | 25 | 31 | 38 | 44 | 50 | 56 | 63 | 69 | 75 |
| 31 | $^3/_4$ | 18 | 24 | 29 | 35 | 41 | 47 | 53 | 59 | 65 | 71 |
| 32 | $^3/_4$ | 17 | 22 | 28 | 33 | 39 | 44 | 50 | 56 | 61 | 67 |
| 33 | $^3/_4$ | 16 | 21 | 26 | 32 | 37 | 42 | 47 | 53 | 58 | 63 |
| 34 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 |
| 35 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 19 | 24 | 28 | 33 | 38 | 42 | 47 | 52 | 57 |
| 36 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 18 | 22 | 27 | 31 | 36 | 40 | 45 | 49 | 54 |
| 37 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 17 | 21 | 26 | 30 | 34 | 38 | 43 | 47 | 51 |
| 38 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 16 | 20 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 45 | 49 |
| 39 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 15 | 19 | 23 | 27 | 31 | 35 | 39 | 42 | 46 |
| 40 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | 18 | 22 | 26 | 29 | 33 | 37 | 40 | 44 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
NP - Not permitted
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(5)**
**ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH TYPE M COPPER WATER TUBING**

| SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm) | WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch) | AVAILABLE PRESSURE - $P_t$ (psi) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 |
| | | Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 1 | 806 | 1075 | 1343 | 1612 | 1881 | 2149 | 2418 | 2687 | 2955 | 3224 |
| 9 | 1 | 648 | 864 | 1080 | 1296 | 1512 | 1728 | 1945 | 2161 | 2377 | 2593 |
| 10 | 1 | 533 | 711 | 889 | 1067 | 1245 | 1422 | 1600 | 1778 | 1956 | 2134 |
| 11 | 1 | 447 | 586 | 745 | 894 | 1043 | 1192 | 1341 | 1491 | 1640 | 1789 |
| 12 | 1 | 381 | 508 | 634 | 761 | 888 | 1015 | 1142 | 1269 | 1396 | 1523 |
| 13 | 1 | 328 | 438 | 547 | 657 | 766 | 875 | 985 | 1094 | 1204 | 1313 |
| 14 | 1 | 286 | 382 | 477 | 572 | 668 | 763 | 859 | 954 | 1049 | 1145 |
| 15 | 1 | 252 | 336 | 420 | 504 | 588 | 672 | 756 | 840 | 924 | 1008 |
| 16 | 1 | 224 | 298 | 373 | 447 | 522 | 596 | 671 | 745 | 820 | 894 |
| 17 | 1 | 200 | 266 | 333 | 400 | 466 | 533 | 600 | 666 | 733 | 799 |
| 18 | 1 | 180 | 240 | 300 | 360 | 420 | 479 | 539 | 599 | 659 | 719 |
| 19 | 1 | 163 | 217 | 271 | 325 | 380 | 434 | 488 | 542 | 597 | 651 |
| 20 | 1 | 148 | 197 | 247 | 296 | 345 | 395 | 444 | 493 | 543 | 592 |
| 21 | 1 | 135 | 180 | 225 | 270 | 315 | 360 | 406 | 451 | 496 | 541 |
| 22 | 1 | 124 | 165 | 207 | 248 | 289 | 331 | 372 | 413 | 455 | 496 |
| 23 | 1 | 114 | 152 | 190 | 228 | 267 | 305 | 343 | 381 | 419 | 457 |
| 24 | 1 | 106 | 141 | 176 | 211 | 246 | 282 | 317 | 352 | 387 | 422 |
| 25 | 1 | 98 | 131 | 163 | 196 | 228 | 261 | 294 | 326 | 359 | 392 |
| 26 | 1 | 91 | 121 | 152 | 182 | 212 | 243 | 273 | 304 | 334 | 364 |
| 27 | 1 | 85 | 113 | 142 | 170 | 198 | 226 | 255 | 283 | 311 | 340 |
| 28 | 1 | 79 | 106 | 132 | 159 | 185 | 212 | 238 | 265 | 291 | 318 |
| 29 | 1 | 74 | 99 | 124 | 149 | 174 | 198 | 223 | 248 | 273 | 298 |
| 30 | 1 | 70 | 93 | 116 | 140 | 163 | 186 | 210 | 233 | 256 | 280 |
| 31 | 1 | 66 | 88 | 110 | 132 | 153 | 175 | 197 | 219 | 241 | 263 |
| 32 | 1 | 62 | 83 | 103 | 124 | 145 | 165 | 186 | 207 | 227 | 248 |
| 33 | 1 | 59 | 78 | 98 | 117 | 137 | 156 | 176 | 195 | 215 | 234 |
| 34 | 1 | 55 | 74 | 92 | 111 | 129 | 148 | 166 | 185 | 203 | 222 |
| 35 | 1 | 53 | 70 | 88 | 105 | 123 | 140 | 158 | 175 | 193 | 210 |
| 36 | 1 | 50 | 66 | 83 | 100 | 116 | 133 | 150 | 166 | 183 | 199 |
| 37 | 1 | 47 | 63 | 79 | 95 | 111 | 126 | 142 | 158 | 174 | 190 |
| 38 | 1 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | 135 | 150 | 165 | 181 |
| 39 | 1 | 43 | 57 | 72 | 86 | 100 | 115 | 129 | 143 | 158 | 172 |
| 40 | 1 | 41 | 55 | 68 | 82 | 96 | 109 | 123 | 137 | 150 | 164 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(6)**
**ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 3/4-INCH CPVC PIPE**

| SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm) | WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch) | AVAILABLE PRESSURE - $P_t$ (psi) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 |
| | | Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 3/4 | 348 | 465 | 581 | 697 | 813 | 929 | 1045 | 1161 | 1278 | 1394 |
| 9 | 3/4 | 280 | 374 | 467 | 560 | 654 | 747 | 841 | 934 | 1027 | 1121 |
| 10 | 3/4 | 231 | 307 | 384 | 461 | 538 | 615 | 692 | 769 | 845 | 922 |
| 11 | 3/4 | 193 | 258 | 322 | 387 | 451 | 515 | 580 | 644 | 709 | 773 |
| 12 | 3/4 | 165 | 219 | 274 | 329 | 384 | 439 | 494 | 549 | 603 | 658 |
| 13 | 3/4 | 142 | 189 | 237 | 284 | 331 | 378 | 426 | 473 | 520 | 568 |
| 14 | 3/4 | 124 | 165 | 206 | 247 | 289 | 330 | 371 | 412 | 454 | 495 |
| 15 | 3/4 | 109 | 145 | 182 | 218 | 254 | 290 | 327 | 363 | 399 | 436 |
| 16 | 3/4 | 97 | 129 | 161 | 193 | 226 | 258 | 290 | 322 | 354 | 387 |
| 17 | 3/4 | 86 | 115 | 144 | 173 | 202 | 230 | 259 | 288 | 317 | 346 |
| 18 | 3/4 | 78 | 104 | 130 | 155 | 181 | 207 | 233 | 259 | 285 | 311 |
| 19 | 3/4 | 70 | 94 | 117 | 141 | 164 | 188 | 211 | 234 | 258 | 281 |
| 20 | 3/4 | 64 | 85 | 107 | 128 | 149 | 171 | 192 | 213 | 235 | 256 |
| 21 | 3/4 | 58 | 78 | 97 | 117 | 136 | 156 | 175 | 195 | 214 | 234 |
| 22 | 3/4 | 54 | 71 | 89 | 107 | 125 | 143 | 161 | 179 | 197 | 214 |
| 23 | 3/4 | 49 | 66 | 82 | 99 | 115 | 132 | 148 | 165 | 181 | 198 |
| 24 | 3/4 | 46 | 61 | 76 | 91 | 107 | 122 | 137 | 152 | 167 | 183 |
| 25 | 3/4 | 42 | 56 | 71 | 85 | 99 | 113 | 127 | 141 | 155 | 169 |
| 26 | 3/4 | 39 | 52 | 66 | 79 | 92 | 105 | 118 | 131 | 144 | 157 |
| 27 | 3/4 | 37 | 49 | 61 | 73 | 86 | 98 | 110 | 122 | 135 | 147 |
| 28 | 3/4 | 34 | 46 | 57 | 69 | 80 | 92 | 103 | 114 | 126 | 137 |
| 29 | 3/4 | 32 | 43 | 54 | 64 | 75 | 86 | 96 | 107 | 118 | 129 |
| 30 | 3/4 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 81 | 91 | 101 | 111 | 121 |
| 31 | 3/4 | 28 | 38 | 47 | 57 | 66 | 76 | 85 | 95 | 104 | 114 |
| 32 | 3/4 | 27 | 36 | 45 | 54 | 63 | 71 | 80 | 89 | 98 | 107 |
| 33 | 3/4 | 25 | 34 | 42 | 51 | 59 | 68 | 76 | 84 | 93 | 101 |
| 34 | 3/4 | 24 | 32 | 40 | 48 | 56 | 64 | 72 | 80 | 88 | 96 |
| 35 | 3/4 | 23 | 30 | 38 | 45 | 53 | 61 | 68 | 76 | 83 | 91 |
| 36 | 3/4 | 22 | 29 | 36 | 43 | 50 | 57 | 65 | 72 | 79 | 86 |
| 37 | 3/4 | 20 | 27 | 34 | 41 | 48 | 55 | 61 | 68 | 75 | 82 |
| 38 | 3/4 | 20 | 26 | 33 | 39 | 46 | 52 | 59 | 65 | 72 | 78 |
| 39 | 3/4 | 19 | 25 | 31 | 37 | 43 | 50 | 56 | 62 | 68 | 74 |
| 40 | 3/4 | 18 | 24 | 30 | 35 | 41 | 47 | 53 | 59 | 65 | 71 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(7)**
**ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH CPVC PIPE**

| SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm) | WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch) | AVAILABLE PRESSURE - $P_t$ (psi) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 |
| | | Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 1 | 1049 | 1398 | 1748 | 2098 | 2447 | 2797 | 3146 | 3496 | 3845 | 4195 |
| 9 | 1 | 843 | 1125 | 1406 | 1687 | 1968 | 2249 | 2530 | 2811 | 3093 | 3374 |
| 10 | 1 | 694 | 925 | 1157 | 1388 | 1619 | 1851 | 2082 | 2314 | 2545 | 2776 |
| 11 | 1 | 582 | 776 | 970 | 1164 | 1358 | 1552 | 1746 | 1940 | 2133 | 2327 |
| 12 | 1 | 495 | 660 | 826 | 991 | 1156 | 1321 | 1486 | 1651 | 1816 | 1981 |
| 13 | 1 | 427 | 570 | 712 | 854 | 997 | 1139 | 1281 | 1424 | 1566 | 1709 |
| 14 | 1 | 372 | 497 | 621 | 745 | 869 | 993 | 1117 | 1241 | 1366 | 1490 |
| 15 | 1 | 328 | 437 | 546 | 656 | 765 | 874 | 983 | 1093 | 1202 | 1311 |
| 16 | 1 | 291 | 388 | 485 | 582 | 679 | 776 | 873 | 970 | 1067 | 1164 |
| 17 | 1 | 260 | 347 | 433 | 520 | 607 | 693 | 780 | 867 | 954 | 1040 |
| 18 | 1 | 234 | 312 | 390 | 468 | 546 | 624 | 702 | 780 | 858 | 936 |
| 19 | 1 | 212 | 282 | 353 | 423 | 494 | 565 | 635 | 706 | 776 | 847 |
| 20 | 1 | 193 | 257 | 321 | 385 | 449 | 513 | 578 | 642 | 706 | 770 |
| 21 | 1 | 176 | 235 | 293 | 352 | 410 | 469 | 528 | 586 | 645 | 704 |
| 22 | 1 | 161 | 215 | 269 | 323 | 377 | 430 | 484 | 538 | 592 | 646 |
| 23 | 1 | 149 | 198 | 248 | 297 | 347 | 396 | 446 | 496 | 545 | 595 |
| 24 | 1 | 137 | 183 | 229 | 275 | 321 | 366 | 412 | 458 | 504 | 550 |
| 25 | 1 | 127 | 170 | 212 | 255 | 297 | 340 | 382 | 425 | 467 | 510 |
| 26 | 1 | 118 | 158 | 197 | 237 | 276 | 316 | 355 | 395 | 434 | 474 |
| 27 | 1 | 111 | 147 | 184 | 221 | 258 | 295 | 332 | 368 | 405 | 442 |
| 28 | 1 | 103 | 138 | 172 | 207 | 241 | 275 | 310 | 344 | 379 | 413 |
| 29 | 1 | 97 | 129 | 161 | 194 | 226 | 258 | 290 | 323 | 355 | 387 |
| 30 | 1 | 91 | 121 | 152 | 182 | 212 | 242 | 273 | 303 | 333 | 364 |
| 31 | 1 | 86 | 114 | 143 | 171 | 200 | 228 | 257 | 285 | 314 | 342 |
| 32 | 1 | 81 | 108 | 134 | 161 | 188 | 215 | 242 | 269 | 296 | 323 |
| 33 | 1 | 76 | 102 | 127 | 152 | 178 | 203 | 229 | 254 | 280 | 305 |
| 34 | 1 | 72 | 96 | 120 | 144 | 168 | 192 | 216 | 240 | 265 | 289 |
| 35 | 1 | 68 | 91 | 114 | 137 | 160 | 182 | 205 | 228 | 251 | 273 |
| 36 | 1 | 65 | 87 | 108 | 130 | 151 | 173 | 195 | 216 | 238 | 260 |
| 37 | 1 | 62 | 82 | 103 | 123 | 144 | 165 | 185 | 206 | 226 | 247 |
| 38 | 1 | 59 | 78 | 98 | 117 | 137 | 157 | 176 | 196 | 215 | 235 |
| 39 | 1 | 56 | 75 | 93 | 112 | 131 | 149 | 168 | 187 | 205 | 224 |
| 40 | 1 | 53 | 71 | 89 | 107 | 125 | 142 | 160 | 178 | 196 | 214 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.

a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(8)**
**ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR $^3/_4$-INCH PEX TUBING**

| SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm) | WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch) | AVAILABLE PRESSURE - $P_t$ (psi) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 |
| | | Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | $^3/_4$ | 93 | 123 | 154 | 185 | 216 | 247 | 278 | 309 | 339 | 370 |
| 9 | $^3/_4$ | 74 | 99 | 124 | 149 | 174 | 199 | 223 | 248 | 273 | 298 |
| 10 | $^3/_4$ | 61 | 82 | 102 | 123 | 143 | 163 | 184 | 204 | 225 | 245 |
| 11 | $^3/_4$ | 51 | 68 | 86 | 103 | 120 | 137 | 154 | 171 | 188 | 205 |
| 12 | $^3/_4$ | 44 | 58 | 73 | 87 | 102 | 117 | 131 | 146 | 160 | 175 |
| 13 | $^3/_4$ | 38 | 50 | 63 | 75 | 88 | 101 | 113 | 126 | 138 | 151 |
| 14 | $^3/_4$ | 33 | 44 | 55 | 66 | 77 | 88 | 99 | 110 | 121 | 132 |
| 15 | $^3/_4$ | 29 | 39 | 48 | 58 | 68 | 77 | 87 | 96 | 106 | 116 |
| 16 | $^3/_4$ | 26 | 34 | 43 | 51 | 60 | 68 | 77 | 86 | 94 | 103 |
| 17 | $^3/_4$ | 23 | 31 | 38 | 46 | 54 | 61 | 69 | 77 | 84 | 92 |
| 18 | $^3/_4$ | 21 | 28 | 34 | 41 | 48 | 55 | 62 | 69 | 76 | 83 |
| 19 | $^3/_4$ | 19 | 25 | 31 | 37 | 44 | 50 | 56 | 62 | 69 | 75 |
| 20 | $^3/_4$ | 17 | 23 | 28 | 34 | 40 | 45 | 51 | 57 | 62 | 68 |
| 21 | $^3/_4$ | 16 | 21 | 26 | 31 | 36 | 41 | 47 | 52 | 57 | 62 |
| 22 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 19 | 24 | 28 | 33 | 38 | 43 | 47 | 52 | 57 |
| 23 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 17 | 22 | 26 | 31 | 35 | 39 | 44 | 48 | 52 |
| 24 | $^3/_4$ | NP | 16 | 20 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 36 | 40 | 44 | 49 |
| 25 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | 19 | 22 | 26 | 30 | 34 | 37 | 41 | 45 |
| 26 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | 17 | 21 | 24 | 28 | 31 | 35 | 38 | 42 |
| 27 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | 16 | 20 | 23 | 26 | 29 | 33 | 36 | 39 |
| 28 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | 15 | 18 | 21 | 24 | 27 | 30 | 33 | 36 |
| 29 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | 17 | 20 | 23 | 26 | 28 | 31 | 34 |
| 30 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | 16 | 19 | 21 | 24 | 27 | 29 | 32 |
| 31 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | 15 | 18 | 20 | 23 | 25 | 28 | 30 |
| 32 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | 17 | 19 | 21 | 24 | 26 | 28 |
| 33 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 25 | 27 |
| 34 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | 17 | 19 | 21 | 23 | 25 |
| 35 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
| 36 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | 15 | 17 | 19 | 21 | 23 |
| 37 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 |
| 38 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | 16 | 17 | 19 | 21 |
| 39 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | 16 | 18 | 20 |
| 40 | $^3/_4$ | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | NP | 16 | 17 | 19 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
NP - Not permitted.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

**TABLE P2904.6.2(9)**
**ALLOWABLE PIPE LENGTH FOR 1-INCH PEX TUBING**

| SPRINKLER FLOW RATE[a] (gpm) | WATER DISTRIBUTION SIZE (inch) | AVAILABLE PRESSURE - $P_t$ (psi) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 |
| | | Allowable length of pipe from service valve to farthest sprinkler (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | 1 | 314 | 418 | 523 | 628 | 732 | 837 | 941 | 1046 | 1151 | 1255 |
| 9 | 1 | 252 | 336 | 421 | 505 | 589 | 673 | 757 | 841 | 925 | 1009 |
| 10 | 1 | 208 | 277 | 346 | 415 | 485 | 554 | 623 | 692 | 761 | 831 |
| 11 | 1 | 174 | 232 | 290 | 348 | 406 | 464 | 522 | 580 | 638 | 696 |
| 12 | 1 | 148 | 198 | 247 | 296 | 346 | 395 | 445 | 494 | 543 | 593 |
| 13 | 1 | 128 | 170 | 213 | 256 | 298 | 341 | 383 | 426 | 469 | 511 |
| 14 | 1 | 111 | 149 | 186 | 223 | 260 | 297 | 334 | 371 | 409 | 446 |
| 15 | 1 | 98 | 131 | 163 | 196 | 229 | 262 | 294 | 327 | 360 | 392 |
| 16 | 1 | 87 | 116 | 145 | 174 | 203 | 232 | 261 | 290 | 319 | 348 |
| 17 | 1 | 78 | 104 | 130 | 156 | 182 | 208 | 233 | 259 | 285 | 311 |
| 18 | 1 | 70 | 93 | 117 | 140 | 163 | 187 | 210 | 233 | 257 | 280 |
| 19 | 1 | 63 | 84 | 106 | 127 | 148 | 169 | 190 | 211 | 232 | 253 |
| 20 | 1 | 58 | 77 | 96 | 115 | 134 | 154 | 173 | 192 | 211 | 230 |
| 21 | 1 | 53 | 70 | 88 | 105 | 123 | 140 | 158 | 175 | 193 | 211 |
| 22 | 1 | 48 | 64 | 80 | 97 | 113 | 129 | 145 | 161 | 177 | 193 |
| 23 | 1 | 44 | 59 | 74 | 89 | 104 | 119 | 133 | 148 | 163 | 178 |
| 24 | 1 | 41 | 55 | 69 | 82 | 96 | 110 | 123 | 137 | 151 | 164 |
| 25 | 1 | 38 | 51 | 64 | 76 | 89 | 102 | 114 | 127 | 140 | 152 |
| 26 | 1 | 35 | 47 | 59 | 71 | 83 | 95 | 106 | 118 | 130 | 142 |
| 27 | 1 | 33 | 44 | 55 | 66 | 77 | 88 | 99 | 110 | 121 | 132 |
| 28 | 1 | 31 | 41 | 52 | 62 | 72 | 82 | 93 | 103 | 113 | 124 |
| 29 | 1 | 29 | 39 | 48 | 58 | 68 | 77 | 87 | 97 | 106 | 116 |
| 30 | 1 | 27 | 36 | 45 | 54 | 63 | 73 | 82 | 91 | 100 | 109 |
| 31 | 1 | 26 | 34 | 43 | 51 | 60 | 68 | 77 | 85 | 94 | 102 |
| 32 | 1 | 24 | 32 | 40 | 48 | 56 | 64 | 72 | 80 | 89 | 97 |
| 33 | 1 | 23 | 30 | 38 | 46 | 53 | 61 | 68 | 76 | 84 | 91 |
| 34 | 1 | 22 | 29 | 36 | 43 | 50 | 58 | 65 | 72 | 79 | 86 |
| 35 | 1 | 20 | 27 | 34 | 41 | 48 | 55 | 61 | 68 | 75 | 82 |
| 36 | 1 | 19 | 26 | 32 | 39 | 45 | 52 | 58 | 65 | 71 | 78 |
| 37 | 1 | 18 | 25 | 31 | 37 | 43 | 49 | 55 | 62 | 68 | 74 |
| 38 | 1 | 18 | 23 | 29 | 35 | 41 | 47 | 53 | 59 | 64 | 70 |
| 39 | 1 | 17 | 22 | 28 | 33 | 39 | 45 | 50 | 56 | 61 | 67 |
| 40 | 1 | 16 | 21 | 27 | 32 | 37 | 43 | 48 | 53 | 59 | 64 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 0.963 L/s.
a. Flow rate from Section P2904.4.2.

## SECTION P2905 MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

**P2905.1 Soil and groundwater.** The installation of water service pipe, water distribution pipe, fittings, valves, appurtenances and gaskets shall be prohibited in soil and groundwater that is contaminated with solvents, fuels, organic compounds or other detrimental materials that cause permeation, corrosion, degradation or structural failure of the water service or water distribution piping material.

**P2905.1.1 Investigation required.** Where detrimental conditions are suspected by or brought to the attention of the *building official*, a chemical analysis of the soil and groundwater conditions shall be required to ascertain the acceptability of the water service material for the specific installation.

**P2905.1.2 Detrimental condition.** When a detrimental condition exists, *approved* alternate materials or alternate routing shall be required.

**P2905.2 Lead content.** Pipe and fittings used in the water-supply system shall have a maximum of 8 percent lead.

**P2905.3 Polyethylene plastic piping installation.** Polyethylene pipe shall be cut square using a cutter designed for plastic pipe. Except where joined by heat fusion, pipe ends shall be chamfered to remove sharp edges. Pipe that has been kinked shall not be installed. For bends, the installed radius of pipe curvature shall be greater than 30 pipe diameters or the coil radius when bending with the coil. Coiled pipe shall not be bent beyond straight. Bends shall not be permitted within 10 pipe diameters of any fitting or valve. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections P2905.3.1 and P2905.3.2.

**P2905.3.1 Heat-fusion joints.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melting temperature and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D 2657.

**P2905.3.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P2905.4 Water service pipe.** Water service pipe shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table P2905.4. Water service pipe or tubing, installed underground and outside of the structure, shall have a minimum working pressure rating of 160 pounds per square inch at 73°F (1103 kPa at 23°C). Where the water pressure exceeds 160 pounds per square inch (1103 kPa), piping material shall have a rated working pressure equal to or greater than the highest available pressure. Water service piping materials not third-party certified for water distribution shall terminate at or before the full open valve located at the entrance to the structure. Ductile iron water service piping shall be cement mortar lined in accordance with AWWA C104.

**P2905.4.1 Dual check-valve-type backflow preventer.** Where a dual check-valve backflow preventer is installed on the water supply system, it shall comply with ASSE 1024 or CSA B64.6.

**P2905.4.2 Water service installation.** Trenching, pipe installation and backfilling shall be in accordance with Section P2604. Water-service pipe is permitted to be located in the same trench with a *building sewer* provided such sewer is constructed of materials listed for underground use within a building in Section P3002.1. If the *building sewer* is not constructed of materials listed in Section P3002.1, the water-service pipe shall be separated from the *building sewer* by a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm), measured horizontally, of undisturbed or compacted earth or placed on a solid ledge at least 12 inches (305 mm) above and to one side of the highest point in the sewer line.

**Exception:** The required separation distance shall not apply where a water service pipe crosses a sewer pipe, provided that the water service pipe is sleeved to at least 5 feet (1524 mm), horizontally from the sewer pipe centerline, on both sides of the crossing with pipe materials listed in Tables P2905.4, P3002.1(1), P3002.1(2) or P3002.2.

**P2905.5 Water-distribution pipe.** Water-distribution piping within *dwelling units* shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table P2905.5. All hot-water-distribution pipe and tubing shall have a minimum pressure rating of 100 psi at 180°F (689 kPa at 82°C).

**P2905.6 Fittings.** Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table P2905.6. All pipe fittings used in water supply systems shall also comply with NSF 61.

**P2905.7 Flexible water connectors.** Flexible water connectors, exposed to continuous pressure, shall conform to ASME A112.18.6. Access shall be provided to all flexible water connectors.

**P2905.8 Joint and connection tightness.** Joints and connections in the plumbing system shall be gas tight and water tight for the intended use or required test pressure.

**P2905.9 Plastic pipe joints.** Joints in plastic piping shall be made with *approved* fittings by solvent cementing, heat fusion, corrosion-resistant metal clamps with insert fittings or compression connections. Flared joints for polyethylene pipe are permitted in accordance with Section P2905.3.

**P2905.9.1 Solvent cementing.** Solvent-cemented joints shall comply with Sections P2905.9.1.1 through P2905.9.1.3.

**P2905.9.1.1 ABS plastic pipe.** Solvent cement for ABS plastic pipe conforming to ASTM D 2235 shall be applied to all joint surfaces.

**P2905.9.1.2 CPVC plastic pipe.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture and an *approved* primer shall be applied. Solvent cement for CPVC plastic pipe, orange in color and conforming to ASTM F 493, shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The parts shall be joined while the cement is wet and in accordance with ASTM D

2846 or ASTM F 493. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**Exception:** A primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F 493.
2. The solvent cement used is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) through 2-inch (51 mm) diameter CPVC pipe and fittings.
4. The CPVC pipe and fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D 2846.

**P2905.9.1.3 PVC plastic pipe.** A purple primer that conforms to ASTM F 656 shall be applied to PVC solvent cemented joints. Solvent cement for PVC plastic pipe conforming to ASTM D 2564 shall be applied to all joint surfaces.

**P2905.9.1.4 Cross-linked polyethylene plastic (PEX).** Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing or fittings shall comply with Section P2905.9.1.4.1 or Section P2905.9.1.4.2.

**P2905.9.1.4.1 Flared joints.** Flared pipe ends shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

**P2905.9.1.4.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table P2905.6 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. PEX tubing shall be factory marked with the applicable standards for the fittings that the PEX manufacturer specifies for use with the tubing.

**P2905.10 Polypropylene (PP) plastic.** Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Section P2905.10.1 or P2905.10.2.

**P2905.10.1 Heat-fusion joints.** Heat fusion joints for polypropylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, butt-fusion polypropylene fittings or electrofusion polypropylene fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F 2389.

**P2905.10.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints.** Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE P2905.4**
**WATER SERVICE PIPE**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe | ASTM D 1527; ASTM D 2282 |
| Asbestos-cement pipe | ASTM C 296 |
| Brass pipe | ASTM B 43 |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe | ASTM D 2846; ASTM F 441; ASTM F 442; CSA B137.6 |
| Copper or copper-alloy pipe | ASTM B 42; ASTM B 302 |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM) | ASTM B 75; ASTM B 88; ASTM B 251; ASTM B 447 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe | ASTM F 1281; ASTM F 2262; CSA B137.10M |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE) | ASTM F 1986 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing | ASTM F 876; ASTM F 877; CSA B137.5 |
| Ductile iron water pipe | AWWA C151; AWWA C115 |
| Galvanized steel pipe | ASTM A 53 |
| Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pipe | ASTM F 1282; CSA CAN/CSA-B137.9M |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe | ASTM D 2104; ASTM D 2239; CSA-B137.1 |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic tubing | ASTM D 2737; CSA B137.1 |
| Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing | ASTM F 2389; CSA B137.11 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe | ASTM D 1785; ASTM D 2241; ASTM D 2672; CSA B137.3 |
| Stainless steel (Type 304/304L) pipe | ASTM A 312; ASTM A 778 |
| Stainless steel (Type 316/316L) pipe | ASTM A 312; ASTM A 778 |

**TABLE P2905.5**
**WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPE**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Brass pipe | ASTM B 43 |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe and tubing | ASTM D 2846; ASTM F 441; ASTM F 442; CSA B137.6 |
| Copper or copper-alloy pipe | ASTM B 42; ASTM B 302 |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM) | ASTM B 75; ASTM B 88; ASTM B 251; ASTM B 447 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing | ASTM F 876; ASTM F 877; CSA B137.5 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe | ASTM F 1281; ASTM F 2262; CSA B137.10M |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE) | ASTM F 1986 |
| Galvanized steel pipe | ASTM A 53 |
| Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) composite pipe | ASTM F 1282 |
| Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing | ASTM F 2389; CSA B137.11 |
| Stainless steel (Type 304/304L) pipe | ASTM A 312; ASTM A 778 |

**TABLE P2905.6**
**PIPE FITTINGS**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic | ASTM D 2468 |
| Brass | ASTM F1974 |
| Cast-iron | ASME B16.4; ASME B16.12 |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic | ASSE 1061; ASTM D 2846; ASTM F 437; ASTM F 438; ASTM F 439; CSA B137.6 |
| Copper or copper alloy | ASSE 1061; ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.23; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.29 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE) | ASTM F 1986 |
| Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing | ASSE 1061; ASTM F 877; ASTM F 1807; ASTM F 1960; ASTM F 2080; ASTM F 2098; ASTM F 2159; ASTM F 2434; CSA B137.5 |
| Gray iron and ductile iron | AWWA C110; AWWA C153 |
| Malleable iron | ASME B16.3 |
| Insert fittings for Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) | ASTM F 1974; ASTM F 1281; ASTM F 1282; CSA B137.9; CSA B137.10 |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic | ASTM D 2609; CSA B137.1 |
| Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing | ASTM F 2389; CSA B137.11 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic | ASTM D 2464; ASTM D 2466; ASTM D 2467; CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3 |
| Stainless steel (Type 304/304L) pipe | ASTM A 312; ASTM A 778 |
| Stainless steel (Type 316/316L) pipe | ASTM A 312; ASTM A 778 |
| Steel | ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28 |

**P2905.11 Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene.** Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe and fittings shall comply with Section P2905.11.1.

**P2905.11.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for PE-AL-PE and PEX-AL-PEX as described in ASTM F 1974, ASTM F 1281, ASTM F 1282, CSA B137.9 and CSA B137.10 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**P2905.12 Stainless steel.** Joints between stainless steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections P2905.12.1 and P2905.12.2.

**P2905.12.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**P2905.12.2 Welded joints.** Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded autogenously or with an *approved* filler metal in accordance with ASTM A 312.

**P2905.13 Threaded pipe joints.** Threaded joints shall conform to American National Taper Pipe Thread specifications. Pipe ends shall be deburred and chips removed. Pipe joint compound shall be used only on male threads.

**P2905.14 Soldered joints.** Soldered joints in tubing shall be made with fittings *approved* for water piping and shall conform to ASTM B 828. Surfaces to be soldered shall be cleaned bright. The joints shall be properly fluxed and made with *approved* solder. Solders and fluxes used in potable water-supply systems shall have a maximum of 0.2 percent lead. Fluxes shall conform to ASTM B 813.

**P2905.15 Flared joints.** Flared joints in water tubing shall be made with *approved* fittings. The tubing shall be reamed and then expanded with a flaring tool.

**P2905.16 Above-ground joints.** Joints within the building between copper pipe or CPVC tubing, in any combination with compatible outside diameters, are permitted to be made with the use of *approved* push-in mechanical fittings of a pressure-lock design.

**P2905.17 Joints between different materials.** Joints between different piping materials shall be made in accordance with Sections P2905.17.1, P2905.17.2 and P2905.17.3 or with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical sealing type having an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D 1869 or ASTM F 477. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**P2905.17.1 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to galvanized steel pipe.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a brass fitting or dielectric fitting. The copper tubing shall be joined to the fitting in an *approved* manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

**P2904.17.2 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material.** Joints between different types of plastic pipe or between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with an approved adapter fitting.

**P2905.17.3 Stainless steel.** Joints between stainless steel and different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type or a dielectric fitting.

**P2905.18 Press joints.** Press-type mechanical joints in copper tubing shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions using *approved* tools which affix the copper fitting with integral O-ring to the tubing.

## SECTION P2906
## CHANGES IN DIRECTION

**P2906.1 Bends.** Changes in direction in copper tubing are permitted to be made with bends having a radius of not less than four diameters of the tube, providing such bends are made by use of forming equipment that does not deform or create loss in cross-sectional area of the tube.

## SECTION P2907
## SUPPORT

**P2907.1 General.** Pipe and tubing support shall conform to Section P2605.

## SECTION P2908
## DRINKING WATER TREATMENT UNITS

**P2908.1 Design.** Drinking water treatment units shall meet the requirements of NSF 42, NSF 44 or NSF 53.

**P2908.2 Reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units.** Point-of-use reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units, designed for residential use, shall meet the requirements of NSF 58. Waste or discharge from reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units shall enter the drainage system through an air gap or an air gap device that meets the requirements of NSF 58.

**P2908.3 Connection tubing.** The tubing to and from drinking water treatment units shall be of a size and material as recommended by the manufacturer. The tubing shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 42, NSF 44, NSF 53, NSF 58 or NSF 61.

# CHAPTER 30

# SANITARY DRAINAGE

Chapter 30 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# CHAPTER 30

# SANITARY DRAINAGE

## SECTION P3001 GENERAL

**P3001.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of sanitary drainage systems. Plumbing materials shall conform to the requirements of this chapter. The drainage, waste and vent (DWV) system shall consist of all piping for conveying wastes from plumbing fixtures, appliances and appurtenances, including fixture traps; above-grade drainage piping; below-grade drains within the building (*building drain*); below- and above-grade venting systems; and piping to the public sewer or private septic system.

**P3001.2 Protection from freezing.** No portion of the above grade DWV system other than vent terminals shall be located outside of a building, in *attics* or crawl spaces, concealed in outside walls, or in any other place subjected to freezing temperatures unless adequate provision is made to protect them from freezing by insulation or heat or both, except in localities having a winter design temperature above 32°F (0°C) (ASHRAE 97.5 percent column, winter, see Chapter 3).

**P3001.3 Flood-resistant installation.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1), drainage, waste and vent systems shall be located and installed to prevent infiltration of floodwaters into the systems and discharges from the systems into floodwaters.

## SECTION P3002 MATERIALS

**P3002.1 Piping within buildings.** Drain, waste and vent (DWV) piping in buildings shall be as shown in Tables P3002.1(1) and P3002.1(2) except that galvanized wrought-iron or galvanized steel pipe shall not be used underground and shall be maintained not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above ground. Allowance shall be made for the thermal expansion and contraction of plastic piping.

**P3002.2 Building sewer.** *Building sewer* piping shall be as shown in Table P3002.2. Forced main sewer piping shall conform to one of the standards for ABS plastic pipe, copper or copper-alloy tubing, PVC plastic pipe or pressure-rated pipe listed in Table P3002.2.

**P3002.3 Fittings.** Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table P3002.3.

**P3002.3.1 Drainage.** Drainage fittings shall have a smooth interior waterway of the same diameter as the piping served. All fittings shall conform to the type of pipe used. Drainage fittings shall have no ledges, shoulders or reductions which can retard or obstruct drainage flow in the piping. Threaded drainage pipe fittings shall be of the recessed drainage type, black or galvanized. Drainage fittings shall be designed to maintain one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) grade.

**P3002.4 Other materials.** Sheet lead, lead bends, lead traps and sheet copper shall comply with Sections P3002.4.1 through P3002.4.3.

**P3002.4.1 Sheet lead.** Sheet lead for the following uses shall weigh not less than indicated below:

1. Flashing of vent terminals, 3 psf (15 kg/m$^2$).
2. Prefabricated flashing for vent pipes, $2^1/_2$ psf (12 kg/m$^2$).

**P3002.4.2 Lead bends and traps.** Lead bends and lead traps shall not be less than $^1/_8$-inch (3 mm) wall thickness.

**P3002.4.3 Sheet copper.** Sheet copper for the following uses shall weigh not less than indicated below:

1. General use, 12 ounces per square feet (4 kg/m$^2$).
2. Flashing for vent pipes, 8 ounces per square feet (2.5 kg/m$^2$).

## SECTION P3003 JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

**P3003.1 Tightness.** Joints and connections in the DWV system shall be gas tight and water tight for the intended use or pressure required by test.

**P3003.1.1 Threaded joints, general.** Pipe and fitting threads shall be tapered.

**P3003.2 Prohibited joints.** Running threads and bands shall not be used in the drainage system. Drainage and vent piping shall not be drilled, tapped, burned or welded.

The following types of joints and connections shall be prohibited:

1. Cement or concrete.
2. Mastic or hot-pour bituminous joints.
3. Joints made with fittings not *approved* for the specific installation.
4. Joints between different diameter pipes made with elastomeric rolling O-rings.
5. Solvent-cement joints between different types of plastic pipe.
6. Saddle-type fittings.

**P3003.3 ABS plastic.** Joints between ABS plastic pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.3.1 through P3003.3.3.

**P3003.3.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipes shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C 1173, ASTM D 3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed only in underground systems unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE P3002.1(1)**
**ABOVE-GROUND DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPE**

| PIPE | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2661; ASTM F 628; ASTM F 1488; CSA B181.1 |
| Brass pipe | ASTM B 43 |
| Cast-iron pipe | ASTM A 74; CISPI 301; ASTM A 888 |
| Copper or copper-alloy pipe | ASTM B 42; ASTM B 302 |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV) | ASTM B 75; ASTM B 88; ASTM B 251; ASTM B 306 |
| Galvanized steel pipe | ASTM A 53 |
| Polyolefin pipe | CSA B181.3 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2665; ASTM F 891; CSA B181.2; ASTM F 1488 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25 inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2949, ASTM F 1488 |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L | ASME A 112.3.1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**TABLE P3002.1(2)**
**UNDERGROUND BUILDING DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPE**

| PIPE | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2661; ASTM F 628; ASTM F 1488; CSA B181.1 |
| Asbestos-cement pipe | ASTM C 428 |
| Cast-iron pipe | ASTM A 74; CISPI 301; ASTM A 888 |
| Copper or copper alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV) | ASTM B 75; ASTM B 88; ASTM B 251; ASTM B 306 |
| Polyolefin pipe | ASTM F 1412; CSA B181.3 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2665; ASTM F 891; ASTM F 1488; CSA B181.2 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25 inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2949; ASTM F 1488 |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L | ASME A 112.3.1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**P3003.3.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D 2235 or CSA B181.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D 2235, ASTM D 2661, ASTM F 628 or CSA B181.1. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**P3003.3.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**P3003.4 Asbestos-cement.** Joints between asbestos-cement pipe or fittings shall be made with a sleeve coupling of the same composition as the pipe, sealed with an elastomeric ring conforming to ASTM D 1869.

**P3003.5 Brass.** Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.5.1 through P3003.5.3.

**P3003.5.1 Brazed joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**P3003.5.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE P3002.2**
**BUILDING SEWER PIPE**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2661; ASTM F 628; ASTM F 1488 |
| Asbestos-cement pipe | ASTM C 428 |
| Cast-iron pipe | ASTM A 74; ASTM A 888; CISPI 301 |
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including SDR 42 (PS 20), PS35, SDR 35 (PS 45), PS50, PS100, PS140, SDR 23.5 (PS 150) and PS200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM F 1488; ASTM D 2751 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including PS 25, SDR 41 (PS 28), PS 35, SDR 35 (PS 46), PS 50, PS 100, SDR 26 (PS 115), PS140 and PS 200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM F 891; ASTM F 1488; ASTM D 3034; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4 |
| Concrete pipe | ASTM C 14; ASTM C 76; CSA A257.1M; CSA A257.2M |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K or L) | ASTM B 75; ASTM B 88; ASTM B 251 |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe (SDR-PR) | ASTM F 714 |
| Polyolefin pipe | ASTM F 1412; CSA B181.3 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2665; ASTM D 2949; ASTM D 3034; ASTM F 1412; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25 inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D 2949, ASTM F 1488 |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L | ASME A 112.3.1 |
| Vitrified clay pipe | ASTM C 425; ASTM C 700 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**TABLE P3002.3**
**PIPE FITTINGS**

| PIPE MATERIAL | FITTING STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters | ASTM D 2661; ASTM D 3311; ASTM F 628; CSA B181.1 |
| Asbestos cement | ASTM C 428 |
| Cast-iron | ASME B 16.4; ASME B 16.12; ASTM A 74; ASTM A 888; CISPI 301 |
| Acrylonotrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters | ASTM D 2751 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters | ASTM D 3034 |
| Copper or copper alloy | ASME B 16.15; ASME B 16.18; ASME B 16.22; ASME B 16.23; ASME B 16.26; ASME B 16.29 |
| Gray iron and ductile iron | AWWA C 110 |
| Polyolefin | ASTM F 1412; CSA B181.3 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic in IPS diameters | ASTM D 2665; ASTM D 3311; ASTM F 1866 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25 inch O.D. | ASTM D 2949 |
| PVC fabricated fittings | ASTM F 1866 |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L | ASME A 112.3.1 |
| Vitrified clay | ASTM C 700 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**P3003.5.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**P3003.6 Cast iron.** Joints between cast-iron pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.6.1 through P3003.6.3.

**P3003.6.1 Caulked joints.** Joints for hub and spigot pipe shall be firmly packed with oakum or hemp. Molten lead shall be poured in one operation to a depth of not less than 1 inch (25 mm). The lead shall not recede more than $^1/_8$ inch (3 mm) below the rim of the hub and shall be caulked tight. Paint, varnish or other coatings shall not be permitted on the jointing material until after the joint has been tested and *approved*. Lead shall be run in one pouring and shall be caulked tight. Acid-resistant rope and acidproof cement shall be permitted.

**P3003.6.2 Compression gasket joints.** Compression gaskets for hub and spigot pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM C 564. Gaskets shall be compressed when the pipe is fully inserted.

**P3003.6.3 Mechanical joint coupling.** Mechanical joint couplings for hubless pipe and fittings shall comply with CISPI 310 or ASTM C 1277. The elastomeric sealing sleeve shall conform to ASTM C 564 or CSA B602 and shall have a center stop. Mechanical joint couplings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.7 Concrete joints.** Joints between concrete pipe and fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C 443, ASTM C 1173, CSA A257.3M or CSA B602.

**P3003.8 Coextruded composite ABS pipe.** Joints between coextruded composite pipe with an ABS outer layer or ABS fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.8.1 and P3003.8.2.

**P3003.8.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C 1173, ASTM D 3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.8.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D 2235 or CSA B181.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D 2235, ASTM D 2661, ASTM F 628 or CSA B181.1. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**P3003.9 Coextruded composite PVC pipe.** Joints between coextruded composite pipe with a PVC outer layer or PVC fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.9.1 and P3003.9.2.

**P3003.9.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D 3212. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.9.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer that conforms to ASTM F 656 shall be applied. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D 2564, CSA B137.3 or CSA B181.2 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and shall be in accordance with ASTM D 2855. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**P3003.10 Copper pipe.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.10.1 through P3003.10.4.

**P3003.10.1 Brazed joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**P3003.10.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.10.3 Soldered joints.** Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B 828. All cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B 813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B 32.

**P3003.10.4 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**P3003.11 Copper tubing.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.11.1 through P3003.11.3.

**P3003.11.1 Brazed joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**P3003.11.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.11.3 Soldered joints.** Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B 828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B 813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B 32.

**P3003.12 Steel.** Joints between galvanized steel pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.12.1 and P3003.12.2.

**P3003.12.1 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**P3003.12.2 Mechanical joints.** Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.13 Lead.** Joints between lead pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.13.1 and P3003.13.2.

**P3003.13.1 Burned.** Burned joints shall be uniformly fused together into one continuous piece. The thickness of the joint shall be at least as thick as the lead being joined. The filler metal shall be of the same material as the pipe.

**P3003.13.2 Wiped.** Joints shall be fully wiped, with an exposed surface on each side of the joint not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm). The joint shall be at least $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) thick at the thickest point.

**P3003.14 PVC plastic.** Joints between PVC plastic pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.14.1 through P3003.14.3.

**P3003.14.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C 1173, ASTM D 3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.14.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer that conforms to ASTM F 656 shall be applied. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D 2564, CSA B137.3 or CSA B181.2 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and shall be in accordance with ASTM D 2855. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**P3003.14.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**P3003.15 Vitrified clay.** Joints between vitrified clay pipe or fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C 425, ASTM C 1173 or CSA B602.

**P3003.16 Polyolefin plastic.** Joints between polyolefin plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections P3003.16.1 and P3003.16.2.

**P3003.16.1 Heat-fusion joints.** Heat-fusion joints for polyolefin pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polyolefin fittings or electrofusion polyolefin fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F 1412 or CSA B181.3.

**P3003.16.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints.** Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.17 Polyethylene plastic pipe.** Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and fittings shall be underground and shall comply with Section P3003.17.1 or P3003.17.2.

**P3003.17.1 Heat fusion joints.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. All joint surfaces shall be cut, heated to melting temperature and joined using tools specifically designed for the operation. Joints shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D 2657 and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.17.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints in drainage piping shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C 1173, ASTM D 3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.18 Joints between different materials.** Joints between different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type conforming to ASTM C 1173, ASTM C 1460 or ASTM C 1461. Connectors and adapters shall be *approved* for the application and such joints shall have an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C 425, ASTM C 443, ASTM C 564, ASTM C 1440, ASTM D 1869, ASTM F 477, CSA A257.3M or CSA B602, or as required in Sections P3003.18.1 through P3003.18.6. Joints between glass pipe and other types of materials shall be made with adapters having a TFE seal. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3003.18.1 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to cast-iron hub pipe.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made with a brass ferrule or compression joint. The copper or copper-alloy tubing shall be soldered to the ferrule in an *approved* manner, and the ferrule shall be joined to the cast-iron hub by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

**P3003.18.2 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to galvanized steel pipe.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a brass converter fitting or dielectric fitting. The copper tubing shall be soldered to the fitting in an *approved* manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

**P3003.18.3 Cast-iron pipe to galvanized steel or brass pipe.** Joints between cast-iron and galvanized steel or brass pipe shall be made by either caulked or threaded joints or with an *approved* adapter fitting.

**P3003.18.4 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material.** Joints between different types of plastic pipe or between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting. Joints between plastic pipe and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

**P3003.18.5 Lead pipe to other piping material.** Joints between lead pipe and other piping material shall be made by a wiped joint to a caulking ferrule, soldering nipple, or bushing or shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting.

**P3003.18.6 Stainless steel drainage systems to other materials.** Joints between stainless steel drainage systems and other piping materials shall be made with *approved* mechanical couplings.

**P3003.19 Joints between drainage piping and water closets.** Joints between drainage piping and water closets or similar fixtures shall be made by means of a closet flange compatible with the drainage system material, securely fastened to a structurally firm base. The inside diameter of the drainage pipe shall not be used as a socket fitting for a four by three closet flange. The joint shall be bolted, with an *approved* gasket, flange to fixture connection complying with ASME A112.4.3 or setting compound between the fixture and the closet flange.

## SECTION P3004 DETERMINING DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS

**P3004.1 DWV system load.** The load on DWV-system piping shall be computed in terms of drainage fixture unit (d.f.u.) values in accordance with Table P3004.1.

## SECTION P3005 DRAINAGE SYSTEM

**P3005.1 Drainage fittings and connections.** Changes in direction in drainage piping shall be made by the appropriate use of sanitary tees, wyes, sweeps, bends or by a combination of these drainage fittings in accordance with Table P3005.1. Change in direction by combination fittings, heel or side inlets or increasers shall be installed in accordance with Table P3005.1 and Sections P3005.1.1 through P3005.1.4. based on the pattern of flow created by the fitting.

**TABLE P3004.1**
**DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT (d.f.u.) VALUES FOR VARIOUS PLUMBING FIXTURES**

| TYPE OF FIXTURE OR GROUP OF FIXTURES | DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT VALUE (d.f.u.)[a] |
|---|---|
| Bar sink | 1 |
| Bathtub (with or without shower head and/or whirlpool attachments) | 2 |
| Bidet | 1 |
| Clothes washer standpipe | 2 |
| Dishwasher | 2 |
| Floor drain[b] | 0 |
| Kitchen sink | 2 |
| Lavatory | 1 |
| Laundry tub | 2 |
| Shower stall | 2 |
| Water closet (1.6 gallons per flush) | 3 |
| Water closet (greater than 1.6 gallons per flush) | 4 |
| Full-bath group with bathtub (with 1.6 gallon per flush water closet, and with or without shower head and/or whirlpool attachment on the bathtub or shower stall) | 5 |
| Full-bath group with bathtub (water closet greater than 1.6 gallon per flush, and with or without shower head and/or whirlpool attachment on the bathtub or shower stall) | 6 |
| Half-bath group (1.6 gallon per flush water closet plus lavatory) | 4 |
| Half-bath group (water closet greater than 1.6 gallon per flush plus lavatory) | 5 |
| Kitchen group (dishwasher and sink with or without garbage grinder) | 2 |
| Laundry group (clothes washer standpipe and laundry tub) | 3 |
| Multiple-bath groups[c]: | |
| 1.5 baths | 7 |
| 2 baths | 8 |
| 2.5 baths | 9 |
| 3 baths | 10 |
| 3.5 baths | 11 |

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

a. For a continuous or semicontinuous flow into a drainage system, such as from a pump or similar device, 1.5 fixture units shall be allowed per gpm of flow. For a fixture not listed, use the highest d.f.u. value for a similar listed fixture.

b. A floor drain itself adds no hydraulic load. However, where used as a receptor, the fixture unit value of the fixture discharging into the receptor shall be applicable.

c. Add 2 d.f.u. for each additional full bath.

**TABLE P3005.1**
**FITTINGS FOR CHANGE IN DIRECTION**

| TYPE OF FITTING PATTERN | CHANGE IN DIRECTION | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Horizontal to vertical[c] | Vertical to horizontal | Horizontal to horizontal |
| Sixteenth bend | X | X | X |
| Eighth bend | X | X | X |
| Sixth bend | X | X | X |
| Quarter bend | X | X[a] | X[a] |
| Short sweep | X | X[a,b] | X[a] |
| Long sweep | X | X | X |
| Sanitary tee | X[c] | — | — |
| Wye | X | X | X |
| Combination wye and eighth bend | X | X | X |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. The fittings shall only be permitted for a 2-inch or smaller fixture drain.
b. Three inches and larger.
c. For a limitation on multiple connection fittings, see Section P3005.1.1.

**P3005.1.1 Horizontal to vertical (multiple connection fittings).** Double fittings such as double sanitary tees and tee-wyes or *approved* multiple connection fittings and back-to-back fixture arrangements that connect two or more branches at the same level shall be permitted as long as directly opposing connections are the same size and the discharge into directly opposing connections is from similar fixture types or fixture groups. Double sanitary tee patterns shall not receive the discharge of back-to-back water closets and fixtures or appliances with pumping action discharge.

**Exception:** Back-to-back water closet connections to double sanitary tee patterns shall be permitted where the horizontal *developed length* between the outlet of the water closet and the connection to the double sanitary tee is 18 inches (457 mm) or greater.

**P3005.1.2 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends, drainage.** Heel-inlet quarter bends shall be an acceptable means of connection, except where the quarter bends serves a water closet. A low-heel inlet shall not be used as a wet-vented connection. Side-inlet quarter bends shall be an acceptable means of connection for both drainage, wet venting and stack venting arrangements.

**P3005.1.3 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends, venting.** Heel-inlet or side-inlet quarter bends, or any arrangement of pipe and fittings producing a similar effect, shall be acceptable as a dry vent where the inlet is placed in a vertical position. The inlet is permitted to be placed in a horizontal position only where the entire fitting is part of a dry vent arrangement.

**P3005.1.4 Water closet connection between flange and pipe.** One-quarter bends 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter shall be acceptable for water closet or similar connections, provided a 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) flange is installed to receive the closet fixture horn. Alternately, a 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) elbow shall be acceptable with a 4-inch (102 mm) flange.

**P3005.1.5 Dead ends.** Dead ends shall be prohibited except where necessary to extend a cleanout or as an *approved* part of a rough-in more than 2 feet (610 mm) in length.

**P3005.1.6 Provisions for future fixtures.** Where drainage has been roughed-in for future fixtures, the drainage unit values of the future fixtures shall be considered in determining the required drain sizes. Such future installations shall be terminated with an accessible permanent plug or cap fitting.

**P3005.1.7 Change in size.** The size of the drainage piping shall not be reduced in size in the direction of the flow. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) water closet connection shall not be considered as a reduction in size.

**P3005.2 Drainage pipe cleanouts.** Drainage pipe cleanouts shall comply with Sections P3005.2.1 through P3005.2.11.

**Exception:** These provisions shall not apply to pressurized *building drains* and *building sewers* that convey the discharge of automatic pumping equipment to a gravity drainage system.

**P3005.2.1 Materials.** Cleanouts shall be liquid and gas tight. Cleanout plugs shall be brass or plastic.

**P3005.2.2 Spacing.** Cleanouts shall be installed not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) apart in horizontal drainage lines measured from the upstream entrance of the cleanout.

**P3005.2.3 Underground drainage cleanouts.** When installed in underground drains, cleanouts shall be extended vertically to or above finished grade either inside or outside the building.

**P3005.2.4 Change of direction.** Cleanouts shall be installed at each fitting with a change of direction more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) in the *building sewer, building drain* and horizontal waste or soil lines. Where more than one change of direction occurs in a run of piping, only one cleanout shall be required in each 40 feet (12 192 mm) of *developed length* of the drainage piping.

**P3005.2.5 Accessibility.** Cleanouts shall be accessible. Minimum clearance in front of cleanouts shall be 18 inches (457 mm) on 3-inch (76 mm) and larger pipes, and 12 inches (305 mm) on smaller pipes. Concealed cleanouts shall be provided with access of sufficient size to permit removal of the cleanout plug and rodding of the system. Cleanout plugs shall not be concealed by permanent finishing material.

**P3005.2.6 Base of stacks.** A cleanout shall be provided at the base of each waste or soil stack.

**P3005.2.7 Building drain and building sewer junction.** There shall be a cleanout near the junction of the *building drain* and *building sewer.* This cleanout shall be either inside or outside the building wall, provided that it is brought up to finish grade or to the lowest floor level. An *approved* two-way cleanout shall be permitted to serve as the required cleanout for both the *building drain* and the *building sewer.* The cleanout at the junction of the *building drain* and *building sewer* shall not be required where a cleanout on a 3-inch (76 mm) or larger diameter soil stack is located within a *developed length* of 10 feet (3048 mm) of the *building drain* and *building sewer* junction.

**P3005.2.8 Direction of flow.** Cleanouts shall be installed so that the cleanout opens to allow cleaning in the direction of the flow of the drainage line.

**P3005.2.9 Cleanout size.** Cleanouts shall be the same nominal size as the pipe they serve up to 4 inches (102 mm). For pipes larger than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal size, the minimum size of the cleanout shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. "P" trap connections with slip joints or ground joint connections, or stack cleanouts that are not more than one pipe diameter smaller than the drain served, shall be permitted.
2. Cast-iron cleanouts sized in accordance with the referenced standards in Table P3002.3, ASTM A 74 for hub and spigot fittings or ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301 for hubless fittings.

**P3005.2.10 Cleanout equivalent.** A fixture trap or a fixture with integral trap, readily removable without disturbing concealed piping shall be acceptable as a cleanout equivalent.

**P3005.2.11 Connections to cleanouts prohibited.** Cleanout openings shall not be used for the installation of new fixtures except where *approved* and an acceptable alternate cleanout is provided.

**P3005.3 Horizontal drainage piping slope.** Horizontal drainage piping shall be installed in uniform alignment at uniform slopes not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for $2^1/_2$-inch (64 mm) diameter and less, and not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope) for diameters of 3 inches (76 mm) or more.

**P3005.4 Drain pipe sizing.** Drain pipes shall be sized according to drainage fixture unit (d.f.u.) loads. The size of the drainage piping shall not be reduced in size in the direction of flow. The following general procedure is permitted to be used:

1. Draw an isometric layout or riser diagram denoting fixtures on the layout.
2. Assign d.f.u. values to each fixture group plus individual fixtures using Table P3004.1.
3. Starting with the top floor or most remote fixtures, work downstream toward the *building drain* accumulating d.f.u. values for fixture groups plus individual fixtures for each branch. Where multiple bath groups are being added, use the reduced d.f.u. values in Table P3004.1, which take into account probability factors of simultaneous use.
4. Size branches and stacks by equating the assigned d.f.u. values to pipe sizes shown in Table P3005.4.1.
5. Determine the pipe diameter and slope of the *building drain* and *building sewer* based on the accumulated d.f.u. values, using Table P3005.4.2.

**P3005.4.1 Branch and stack sizing.** Branches and stacks shall be sized in accordance with Table P3005.4.1. Below grade drain pipes shall be not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in diameter. Drain stacks shall be not smaller than the largest horizontal branch connected.

**Exceptions:**

1. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) closet bend or flange.
2. A 4-inch (102 mm) closet bend connected to a 3-inch (76 mm) stack tee shall not be prohibited.

**TABLE P3005.4.1**
**MAXIMUM FIXTURE UNITS ALLOWED TO BE CONNECTED TO BRANCHES AND STACKS**

| NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches) | ANY HORIZONTAL FIXTURE BRANCH | ANY ONE VERTICAL STACK OR DRAIN |
|---|---|---|
| $1^1/_4$[a] | — | — |
| $1^1/_2$[b] | 3 | 4 |
| 2[b] | 6 | 10 |
| $2^1/_2$[b] | 12 | 20 |
| 3 | 20 | 48 |
| 4 | 160 | 240 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. $1^1/_4$-inch pipe size limited to a single–fixture drain or trap arm. See Table P3201.7.

b. No water closets.

**P3005.4.2 Building drain and sewer size and slope.** Pipe sizes and slope shall be determined from Table P3005.4.2 on the basis of drainage load in fixture units (d.f.u.) computed from Table P3004.1.

**TABLE P3005.4.2**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF FIXTURE UNITS ALLOWED TO BE CONNECTED TO THE BUILDING DRAIN, BUILDING DRAIN BRANCHES OR THE BUILDING SEWER**

| DIAMETER OF PIPE (inches) | SLOPE PER FOOT | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | $^1/_8$ inch | $^1/_4$ inch | $^1/_2$ inch |
| $1^1/_2$ [a,b] | — | Note a | Note a |
| 2[b] | — | 21 | 27 |
| $2^1/_2$[b] | — | 24 | 31 |
| 3 | 36 | 42 | 50 |
| 4 | 180 | 216 | 250 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. $1^1/_2$-inch pipe size limited to a building drain branch serving not more than two waste fixtures, or not more than one waste fixture if serving a pumped discharge fixture or garbage grinder discharge.

b. No water closets.

**P3005.5 Connections to offsets and bases of stacks.** Horizontal branches shall connect to the bases of stacks at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage stack downstream from the stack. Horizontal branches shall connect to horizontal stack offsets at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage stack downstream from the upper stack.

## SECTION P3006
## SIZING OF DRAIN PIPE OFFSETS

**P3006.1 Vertical offsets.** An offset in a vertical drain, with a change of direction of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or less from the vertical, shall be sized as a straight vertical drain.

**P3006.2 Horizontal offsets above the lowest branch.** A stack with an offset of more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical shall be sized as follows:

1. The portion of the stack above the offset shall be sized as for a regular stack based on the total number of fixture units above the offset.
2. The offset shall be sized as for a *building drain* in accordance with Table P3005.4.2.
3. The portion of the stack below the offset shall be sized as for the offset or based on the total number of fixture units on the entire stack, whichever is larger.

**P3006.3 Horizontal offsets below the lowest branch.** In soil or waste stacks below the lowest horizontal branch, there shall be no change in diameter required if the offset is made at an angle not greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical. If an offset greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical is made, the offset and stack below it shall be sized as a *building drain* (see Table P3005.4.2).

## SECTION P3007
## SUMPS AND EJECTORS

**P3007.1 Building subdrains.** Building subdrains that cannot be discharged to the sewer by gravity flow shall be discharged into a tightly covered and vented sump from which the liquid shall be lifted and discharged into the building gravity drainage system by automatic pumping equipment or other *approved* method. In other than existing structures, the sump shall not receive drainage from any piping within the building capable of being discharged by gravity to the *building sewer.*

**P3007.2 Valves required.** A check valve and a full open valve located on the discharge side of the check valve shall be installed in the pump or ejector discharge piping between the pump or ejector and the gravity drainage system. Access shall be provided to such valves. Such valves shall be located above the sump cover required by Section P3007.3.2 or, where the discharge pipe from the ejector is below grade, the valves shall be accessibly located outside the sump below grade in an access pit with a removable access cover.

**P3007.3 Sump design.** The sump pump, pit and discharge piping shall conform to the requirements of Sections P3007.3.1 through P3007.3.5.

**P3007.3.1 Sump pump.** The sump pump capacity and head shall be appropriate to anticipated use requirements.

**P3007.3.2 Sump pit.** The sump pit shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter and 24 inches (610 mm) deep, unless otherwise *approved*. The pit shall be accessible and located so that all drainage flows into the pit by gravity. The sump pit shall be constructed of tile, concrete, steel, plastic or other *approved* materials. The pit bottom shall be solid and provide permanent support for the pump. The sump pit shall be fitted with a gastight removable cover adequate to support anticipated loads in the area of use. The sump pit shall be vented in accordance with Chapter 31.

**P3007.3.3 Discharge piping.** Discharge piping shall meet the requirements of Section P3007.2.

**P3007.3.4 Maximum effluent level.** The effluent level control shall be adjusted and maintained to at all times prevent the effluent in the sump from rising to within 2 inches (51 mm) of the invert of the gravity drain inlet into the sump.

**P3007.3.5 Ejector connection to the drainage system.** Pumps connected to the drainage system shall connect to the *building sewer* or shall connect to a wye fitting in the *building drain* a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the base of any soil stack, waste stack or *fixture drain*. Where the discharge line connects into horizontal drainage piping, the connection shall be made through a wye fitting into the top of the drainage piping.

**P3007.4 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors.** A sewage pump or sewage ejector shall automatically discharge the contents of the sump to the building drainage system.

**P3007.5 Macerating toilet systems.** Macerating toilet systems shall comply with CSA B45.9 or ASME A112.3.4 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**P3007.6 Capacity.** A sewage pump or sewage ejector shall have the capacity and head for the application requirements. Pumps or ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including 2 inches (51 mm). Other pumps or ejectors shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including 1 inch (25.4 mm). The minimum capacity of a pump or ejector based on the diameter of the discharge pipe shall be in accordance with Table 3007.6.

**Exceptions:**

1. Grinder pumps or grinder ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall have a minimum discharge opening of $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm).
2. Macerating toilet assemblies that serve single water closets shall have a minimum discharge opening of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm).

**TABLE 3007.6**
**MINIMUM CAPACITY OF SEWAGE PUMP OR SEWAGE EJECTOR**

| DIAMETER OF THE DISCHARGE PIPE (inches) | CAPACITY OF PUMP OR EJECTOR (gpm) |
|---|---|
| 2 | 21 |
| $2^1/_2$ | 30 |
| 3 | 46 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

## SECTION P3008
## BACKWATER VALVES

**P3008.1 Sewage backflow.** Where the flood level rims of plumbing fixtures are below the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public sewer, the fixtures shall be protected by a backwater valve installed in the *building drain*, branch of the *building drain* or horizontal branch serving such fixtures. Plumbing fixtures having flood level rims above the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public sewer shall not discharge through a backwater valve.

**P3008.2 Material.** All bearing parts of backwater valves shall be of corrosion-resistant material. Backwater valves shall comply with ASME A112.14.1, CSA B181.1 or CSA B181.2.

**P3008.3 Seal.** Backwater valves shall be constructed to provide a mechanical seal against backflow.

**P3008.4 Diameter.** Backwater valves, when fully opened, shall have a capacity not less than that of the pipes in which they are installed.

**P3008.5 Location.** Backwater valves shall be installed so that access is provided to the working parts for service and repair.

# CHAPTER 31

# VENTS

Chapter 31 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# CHAPTER 31

# VENTS

## SECTION P3101 VENT SYSTEMS

**P3101.1 General.** This chapter shall govern the selection and installation of piping, tubing and fittings for vent systems. This chapter shall control the minimum diameter of vent pipes, circuit vents, branch vents and individual vents, and the size and length of vents and various aspects of vent stacks and stack vents. Additionally, this chapter regulates vent grades and connections, height above fixtures and relief vents for stacks and fixture traps, and the venting of sumps and sewers.

**P3101.2 Trap seal protection.** The plumbing system shall be provided with a system of vent piping that will permit the admission or emission of air so that the seal of any fixture trap shall not be subjected to a pneumatic pressure differential of more than 1 inch of water column (249 Pa).

**P3101.2.1 Venting required.** Every trap and trapped fixture shall be vented in accordance with one of the venting methods specified in this chapter.

**P3101.3 Use limitations.** The plumbing vent system shall not be used for purposes other than the venting of the plumbing system.

**P3101.4 Extension outside a structure.** In climates where the 97.5-percent value for outside design temperature is 0°F (-18°C) or less (ASHRAE 97.5-percent column, winter, see Chapter 3), vent pipes installed on the exterior of the structure shall be protected against freezing by insulation, heat or both. Vent terminals shall be protected from frost closure in accordance with Section P3103.2.

**P3101.5 Flood resistance.** In areas prone to floodings as established by Table R301.2(1), vents shall be located at or above the elevation required in Section R322.1 (flood hazard areas including A Zones) or R322.2 (coastal high-hazard areas including V Zones).

## SECTION P3102 VENT STACKS AND STACK VENTS

**P3102.1 Required vent extension.** The vent system serving each *building drain* shall have at least one vent pipe that extends to the outdoors.

**P3102.2 Installation.** The required vent shall be a dry vent that connects to the *building drain* or an extension of a drain that connects to the *building drain*. Such vent shall not be an island fixture vent as permitted by Section P3112.

**P3102.3 Size.** The required vent shall be sized in accordance with Section P3113.1 based on the required size of the *building drain*.

## SECTION P3103 VENT TERMINALS

**P3103.1 Roof extension.** Open vent pipes that extend through a roof shall be terminated at least 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof or 6 inches (152 mm) above the anticipated snow accumulation, whichever is greater, except that where a roof is to be used for any purpose other than weather protection, the vent extension shall be run at least 7 feet (2134 mm) above the roof.

**P3103.2 Frost closure.** Where the 97.5-percent value for outside design temperature is 0°F (-18°C) or less, every vent extension through a roof or wall shall be a minimum of 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. Any increase in the size of the vent shall be made inside the structure a minimum of 1 foot (305 mm) below the roof or inside the wall.

**P3103.3 Flashings and sealing.** The juncture of each vent pipe with the roof line shall be made water tight by an *approved* flashing. Vent extensions in walls and soffits shall be made weather tight by caulking.

**P3103.4 Prohibited use.** Vent terminals shall not be used as a flag pole or to support flag poles, TV aerials, or similar items, except when the piping has been anchored in an *approved* manner.

**P3103.5 Location of vent terminal.** An open vent terminal from a drainage system shall not be located less than 4 feet (1219 mm) directly beneath any door, openable window, or other air intake opening of the building or of an adjacent building, nor shall any such vent terminal be within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of such an opening unless it is at least 2 feet (610 mm) above the top of such opening.

**P3103.6 Extension through the wall.** Vent terminals extending through the wall shall terminate a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the *lot line* and 10 feet (3048 mm) above the highest adjacent *grade* within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of the vent terminal. Vent terminals shall not terminate under the overhang of a structure with soffit vents. Side wall vent terminals shall be protected to prevent birds or rodents from entering or blocking the vent opening.

## SECTION P3104 VENT CONNECTIONS AND GRADES

**3104.1 Connection.** All individual branch and circuit vents shall connect to a vent stack, stack vent or extend to the open air.

**Exception:** Individual, branch and circuit vents shall be permitted to terminate at an *air admittance valve* in accordance with Section P3114.

**P3104.2 Grade.** Vent and branch vent pipes shall be graded, connected and supported to allow moisture and condensate to drain back to the soil or waste pipe by gravity.

**P3104.3 Vent connection to drainage system.** Every dry vent connecting to a horizontal drain shall connect above the centerline of the horizontal drain pipe.

**P3104.4 Vertical rise of vent.** Every dry vent shall rise vertically to a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest trap or trapped fixture being vented.

**P3104.5 Height above fixtures.** A connection between a vent pipe and a vent stack or stack vent shall be made at least 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture served by the vent. Horizontal vent pipes forming branch vents shall be at least 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture served.

**P3104.6 Vent for future fixtures.** Where the drainage piping has been roughed-in for future fixtures, a rough-in connection for a vent shall be installed a minimum of one-half the diameter of the drain. The vent rough-in shall connect to the vent system or shall be vented by other means as provided in this chapter. The connection shall be identified to indicate that the connection is a vent.

## SECTION P3105
## FIXTURE VENTS

**P3105.1 Distance of trap from vent.** Each fixture trap shall have a protecting vent located so that the slope and the *developed length*in the *fixture drain*from the trap weir to the vent fitting are within the requirements set forth in Table P3105.1.

**Exception:** The *developed length*of the *fixture drain*from the trap weir to the vent fitting for self-siphoning fixtures, such as water closets, shall not be limited.

**TABLE P3105.1**
**MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF FIXTURE TRAP FROM VENT**

| SIZE OF TRAP (inches) | SLOPE (inch per foot) | DISTANCE FROM TRAP (feet) |
|---|---|---|
| $1^1/_4$ | $^1/_4$ | 5 |
| $1^1/_2$ | $^1/_4$ | 6 |
| 2 | $^1/_4$ | 8 |
| 3 | $^1/_8$ | 12 |
| 4 | $^1/_8$ | 16 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,
1 inch per foot = 83.3 mm/m.

**P3105.2 Fixture drains.** The total fall in a *fixture drain*resulting from pipe slope shall not exceed one pipe diameter, nor shall the vent pipe connection to a *fixture drain*, except for water closets, be below the weir of the trap.

**P3105.3 Crown vent.** A vent shall not be installed within two pipe diameters of the trap weir.

## SECTION P3106
## INDIVIDUAL VENT

**P3106.1 Individual vent permitted.** Each trap and trapped fixture is permitted to be provided with an individual vent. The individual vent shall connect to the *fixture drain*of the trap or trapped fixture being vented.

## SECTION P3107
## COMMON VENT

**P3107.1 Individual vent as common vent.** An individual vent is permitted to vent two traps or trapped fixtures as a common vent. The traps or trapped fixtures being common vented shall be located on the same floor level.

**P3107.2 Connection at the same level.** Where the *fixture drains*being common vented connect at the same level, the vent connection shall be at the interconnection of the *fixture drains*or downstream of the interconnection.

**P3107.3 Connection at different levels.** Where the *fixture drains*connect at different levels, the vent shall connect as a vertical extension of the vertical drain. The vertical drain pipe connecting the two *fixture drains*shall be considered the vent for the lower *fixture drain*, and shall be sized in accordance with Table P3107.3. The upper fixture shall not be a water closet.

**TABLE P3107.3**
**COMMON VENT SIZES**

| PIPE SIZE (inches) | MAXIMUM DISCHARGE FROM UPPER FIXTURE DRAIN (d.f.u.) |
|---|---|
| $1^1/_2$ | 1 |
| 2 | 4 |
| $2^1/_2$ to 3 | 6 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## SECTION P3108
## WET VENTING

**P3108.1 Horizontal wet vent permitted.** Any combination of fixtures within two *bathroom groups* located on the same floor level are permitted to be vented by a horizontal wet vent. The wet vent shall be considered the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent along the direction of the flow in the drain pipe to the most downstream *fixture drain* connection. Each *fixture drain* shall connect horizontally to the horizontal branch being wet vented or shall have a dry vent. Each wet-vented *fixture drain* shall connect independently to the horizontal wet vent. Only the fixtures within the *bathroom groups* shall connect to the wet-vented horizontal branch drain. Any additional fixtures shall discharge downstream of the horizontal wet vent.

**P3108.2 Dry vent connection.** The required dry-vent connection for wet-vented systems shall comply with Sections P3108.2.1 and P3108.2.2.

**P3108.2.1 Horizontal wet vent.** The dry-vent connection for a horizontal wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or a common vent for any *bathroom group* fixture, except an emergency floor drain. Where the dry vent connects to a water closet *fixture drain*, the drain shall connect horizontally to the horizontal wet vent system. Not more than one wet-vented *fixture drain* shall discharge upstream of the dry-vented *fixture drain* connection.

**P3108.2.2 Vertical wet vent.** The dry-vent connection for a vertical wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or common vent for the most upstream *fixture drain*.

**P3108.3 Size.** Horizontal and vertical wet vents shall be of a minimum size as specified in Table P3108.3, based on the fixture unit discharge to the wet vent. The dry vent serving the wet vent shall be sized based on the largest required diameter of pipe within the wet-vent system served by the dry vent.

**TABLE P3108.3**
**WET VENT SIZE**

| WET VENT PIPE SIZE (inches) | FIXTURE UNIT LOAD (d.f.u.) |
|---|---|
| $1^1/_2$ | 1 |
| 2 | 4 |
| $2^1/_2$ | 6 |
| 3 | 12 |
| 4 | 32 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**P3108.4 Vertical wet vent permitted.** A combination of fixtures located on the same floor level are permitted to be vented by a vertical wet vent. The vertical wet vent shall be considered the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent down to the lowest *fixture drain* connection. Each wet-vented fixture shall connect independently to the vertical wet vent. All water closet drains shall connect at the same elevation. Other *fixture drains* shall connect above or at the same elevation as the water closet *fixture drains*. The dry vent connection to the vertical wet vent shall be an individual or common vent serving one or two fixtures.

**P3108.5 Trap weir to wet vent distances.** The maximum *developed length* of wet-vented *fixture drains* shall comply with Table P3105.1.

## SECTION P3109
## WASTE STACK VENT

**P3109.1 Waste stack vent permitted.** A waste stack shall be considered a vent for all of the fixtures discharging to the stack where installed in accordance with the requirements of this section.

**P3109.2 Stack installation.** The waste stack shall be vertical, and both horizontal and vertical offsets shall be prohibited between the lowest *fixture drain* connection and the highest *fixture drain* connection to the stack. Every *fixture drain* shall connect separately to the waste stack. The stack shall not receive the discharge of water closets or urinals.

**P3109.3 Stack vent.** A stack vent shall be installed for the waste stack. The size of the stack vent shall be not less than the size of the waste stack. Offsets shall be permitted in the stack vent and shall be located at least 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level of the highest fixture, and shall be in accordance with Section P3104.5. The stack vent shall be permitted to connect with other stack vents and vent stacks in accordance with Section P3113.3.

**P3109.4 Waste stack size.** The waste stack shall be sized based on the total discharge to the stack and the discharge within a *branch interval* in accordance with Table P3109.4. The waste stack shall be the same size throughout the length of the waste stack.

**TABLE P3109.4**
**WASTE STACK VENT SIZE**

| STACK SIZE (inches) | MAXIMUM NUMBER OF FIXTURE UNITS (d.f.u.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Total discharge into one branch interval | Total discharge for stack |
| $1^1/_2$ | 1 | 2 |
| 2 | 2 | 4 |
| $2^1/_2$ | No limit | 8 |
| 3 | No limit | 24 |
| 4 | No limit | 50 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## SECTION P3110
## CIRCUIT VENTING

**P3110.1 Circuit vent permitted.** A maximum of eight fixtures connected to a horizontal branch drain shall be permitted to be circuit vented. Each *fixture drain* shall connect horizontally to the horizontal branch being circuit vented. The horizontal branch drain shall be classified as a vent from the most downstream *fixture drain* connection to the most upstream *fixture drain* connection to the horizontal branch.

**P3110.2 Vent connection.** The circuit vent connection shall be located between the two most upstream *fixture drains*. The vent shall connect to the horizontal branch and shall be installed in accordance with Section P3104. The circuit vent pipe shall not receive the discharge of any soil or waste.

**P3110.3 Slope and size of horizontal branch.** The maximum slope of the vent section of the horizontal branch drain shall be one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The entire length of the vent section of the horizontal branch drain shall be sized for the total drainage discharge to the branch in accordance with Table P3005.4.1.

**P3110.4 Additional fixtures.** Fixtures, other than the circuit vented fixtures are permitted to discharge, to the horizontal branch drain. Such fixtures shall be located on the same floor as the circuit vented fixtures and shall be either individually or common vented.

## SECTION P3111
## COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM

**P3111.1 Type of fixtures.** A combination waste and vent system shall not serve fixtures other than floor drains, sinks and lavatories. A combination waste and vent system shall not receive the discharge of a food waste grinder.

**P3111.2 Installation.** The only vertical pipe of a combination drain and vent system shall be the connection between the *fixture drain* and the horizontal combination waste and vent pipe. The maximum vertical distance shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**P3111.2.1 Slope.** The horizontal combination waste and vent pipe shall have a maximum slope of $^1/_2$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope). The minimum slope shall be in accordance with Section P3005.3.

**P3111.2.2 Connection.** The combination waste and vent pipe shall connect to a horizontal drain that is vented or a vent shall connect to the combination waste and vent. The vent connecting to the combination waste and vent pipe shall extend vertically a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture being vented before offsetting horizontally.

**P3111.2.3 Vent size.** The vent shall be sized for the total fixture unit load in accordance with Section P3113.1.

**P3111.2.4 Fixture branch or drain.** The fixture branch or *fixture drain* shall connect to the combination waste and vent within a distance specified in Table P3105.1. The combination waste and vent pipe shall be considered the vent for the fixture.

**P3111.3 Size.** The minimum size of a combination waste and vent pipe shall be in accordance with Table P3111.3.

**TABLE P3111.3**
**SIZE OF COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT PIPE**

| DIAMETER PIPE (inches) | MAXIMUM NUMBER OF FIXTURE UNITS (d.f.u.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Connecting to a horizontal branch or stack | Connecting to a building drain or building subdrain |
| 2 | 3 | 4 |
| $2^1/_2$ | 6 | 26 |
| 3 | 12 | 31 |
| 4 | 20 | 50 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## SECTION P3112
## ISLAND FIXTURE VENTING

**P3112.1 Limitation.** Island fixture venting shall not be permitted for fixtures other than sinks and lavatories. Kitchen sinks with a dishwasher waste connection, a food waste grinder, or both, in combination with the kitchen sink waste, shall be permitted to be vented in accordance with this section.

**P3112.2 Vent connection.** The island fixture vent shall connect to the *fixture drain* as required for an individual or common vent. The vent shall rise vertically to above the drainage outlet of the fixture being vented before offsetting horizontally or vertically downward. The vent or branch vent for multiple island fixture vents shall extend to a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest island fixture being vented before connecting to the outside vent terminal.

**P3112.3 Vent installation below the fixture flood level rim.** The vent located below the flood level rim of the fixture being vented shall be installed as required for drainage piping in accordance with Chapter 30, except for sizing. The vent shall be sized in accordance with Section P3113.1. The lowest point of the island fixture vent shall connect full size to the drainage system. The connection shall be to a vertical drain pipe or to the top half of a horizontal drain pipe. Cleanouts shall be provided in the island fixture vent to permit rodding of all vent piping located below the flood level rim of the fixtures. Rodding in both directions shall be permitted through a cleanout.

## SECTION P3113
## VENT PIPE SIZING

**P3113.1 Size of vents.** The minimum required diameter of individual vents, branch vents, circuit vents, vent stacks and stack vents shall be at least one-half the required diameter of the drain served. The required size of the drain shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 30. Vent pipes shall be not less than$1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) in diameter. Vents exceeding 40 feet (12 192 mm) in *developed length* shall be increased by one nominal pipe size for the entire *developed length* of the vent pipe.

**P3113.2 Developed length.** The *developed length* of individual, branch, and circuit vents shall be measured from the farthest point of vent connection to the drainage system, to the point of connection to the vent stack, stack vent or termination outside of the building.

**P3113.3 Branch vents.** Where branch vents are connected to a common branch vent, the common branch vent shall be sized in accordance with this section, based on the size of the common horizontal drainage branch that is or would be required to serve the total drainage fixture unit (dfu) load being vented.

**P3113.4 Sump vents.** Sump vent sizes shall be determined in accordance with Sections P3113.4.1 and P3113.4.2.

**P3113.4.1 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors other than pneumatic.** Drainage piping below sewer level shall be vented in a manner similar to that of a gravity system. Building sump vent sizes for sumps with sewage pumps or sewage ejectors, other than pneumatic, shall be determined in accordance with Table P3113.4.1.

**P3113.4.2 Pneumatic sewage ejectors.** The air pressure relief pipe from a pneumatic sewage ejector shall be connected to an independent vent stack terminating as required for vent extensions through the roof. The relief pipe shall be sized to relieve air pressure inside the ejector to atmospheric pressure, but shall not be less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) in size.

## SECTION P3114
## AIR ADMITTANCE VALVES

**P3114.1 General.** Vent systems using *air admittance valves* shall comply with this section. Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1051. Stack-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1050.

**P3114.2 Installation.** The valves shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions. *Air admittance valves* shall be installed after the DWV testing required by Section P2503.5.1 or P2503.5.2 has been performed.

**P3114.3 Where permitted.** Individual vents, branch vents, circuit vents and stack vents shall be permitted to terminate with a connection to an *air admittance valve*. Individual and branch type air admittance valves shall vent only fixtures that are on the same floor level and connect to a horizontal branch drain.

**P3114.4 Location.** Individual and branch *air admittance valves* shall be located a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the horizontal branch drain or *fixture drain* being vented. Stack-type air admittance valves shall be located a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture being vented. The *air admittance valve* shall be located within the maximum *developed length* permitted for the vent. The *air admittance valve* shall be installed a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above insulation materials where installed in *attics*.

**P3114.5 Access and ventilation.** Access shall be provided to all *air admittance valves*. The valve shall be located within a ventilated space that allows air to enter the valve.

**P3114.6 Size.** The *air admittance valve* shall be rated for the size of the vent to which the valve is connected.

**P3114.7 Vent required.** Within each plumbing system, a minimum of one stack vent or a vent stack shall extend outdoors to the open air.

**P3114.8 Prohibited installations.** *Air admittance valves* without an engineered design shall not be used to vent sumps or tanks of any type.

**TABLE P3113.4.1**
**SIZE AND LENGTH OF SUMP VENTS**

| DISCHARGE CAPACITY OF PUMP (gpm) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPED LENGTH OF VENT (feet)[a] | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Diameter of vent (inches) | | | | |
| | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 | $2^1/_2$ | 3 |
| 10 | No limit[b] | No limit | No limit | No limit | No limit |
| 20 | 270 | No limit | No limit | No limit | No limit |
| 40 | 72 | 160 | No limit | No limit | No limit |
| 60 | 31 | 75 | 270 | No limit | No limit |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute (gpm) = 3.785 L/m.

a. Developed length plus an appropriate allowance for entrance losses and friction caused by fittings, changes in direction and diameter. Suggested allowances shall be obtained from NBS Monograph 31 or other approved sources. An allowance of 50 percent of the developed length shall be assumed if a more precise value is not available.

b. Actual values greater than 500 feet.

# CHAPTER 32

# TRAPS

Chapter 32 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# CHAPTER 32

# TRAPS

## SECTION P3201
## FIXTURE TRAPS

**P3201.1 Design of traps.** Traps shall be of standard design, shall have smooth uniform internal waterways, shall be self-cleaning and shall not have interior partitions except where integral with the fixture. Traps shall be constructed of lead, cast iron, cast or drawn brass or *approved* plastic. Tubular brass traps shall be not less than No. 20 gage (0.8 mm) thickness. Solid connections, slip joints and couplings are permitted to be used on the trap inlet, trap outlet, or within the trap seal. Slip joints shall be accessible.

**P3201.2 Trap seals and trap seal protection.** Traps shall have a liquid seal not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and not more than 4 inches (102 mm). Traps for floor drains shall be fitted with a trap primer or shall be of the deep seal design. Trap seal primer valves shall connect to the trap at a point above the level of the trap seal.

**P3201.3 Trap setting and protection.** Traps shall be set level with respect to their water seals and shall be protected from freezing. Trap seals shall be protected from siphonage, aspiration or back pressure by an *approved* system of venting (see Section P3101).

**P3201.4 Building traps.** Building traps shall not be installed, except in special cases where sewer gases are extremely corrosive or noxious, as directed by the *building official*.

**P3201.5 Prohibited trap designs.** The following types of traps are prohibited:

1. Bell traps.
2. Separate fixture traps with interior partitions, except those lavatory traps made of plastic, stainless steel or other corrosion-resistant material.
3. "S" traps.
4. Drum traps.
5. Trap designs with moving parts.

**P3201.6 Number of fixtures per trap.** Each plumbing fixture shall be separately trapped by a water seal trap. The vertical distance from the fixture outlet to the trap weir shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) and the horizontal distance shall not exceed 30 inches (762 mm) measured from the center line of the fixture outlet to the centerline of the inlet of the trap. The height of a clothes washer standpipe above a trap shall conform to Section P2706.2. Fixtures shall not be double trapped.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fixtures that have integral traps.
2. A single trap shall be permitted to serve two or three like fixtures limited to kitchen sinks, laundry tubs and lavatories. Such fixtures shall be adjacent to each other and located in the same room with a continuous waste arrangement. The trap shall be installed at the center fixture where three fixtures are installed. Common trapped fixture outlets shall be not more than 30 inches (762 mm) apart.
3. Connection of a laundry tray waste line into a standpipe for the automatic clothes-washer drain is permitted in accordance with Section P2706.2.1.

**P3201.7 Size of fixture traps.** Fixture trap size shall be sufficient to drain the fixture rapidly and not less than the size indicated in Table P3201.7. A trap shall not be larger than the drainage pipe into which the trap discharges.

**TABLE P3201.7**
**SIZE OF TRAPS AND TRAP ARMS FOR PLUMBING FIXTURES**

| PLUMBING FIXTURE | TRAP SIZE MINIMUM (inches) |
|---|---|
| Bathtub (with or without shower head and/or whirlpool attachments) | $1^1/_2$ |
| Bidet | $1^1/_4$ |
| Clothes washer standpipe | 2 |
| Dishwasher (on separate trap) | $1^1/_2$ |
| Floor drain | 2 |
| Kitchen sink (one or two traps, with or without dishwasher and garbage grinder) | $1^1/_2$ |
| Laundry tub (one or more compartments) | $1^1/_2$ |
| Lavatory | $1^1/_4$ |
| Shower (based on the total flow rate through showerheads and bodysprays)<br>Flow rate:<br>5.7 gpm and less<br>More than 5.7 gpm up to 12.3 gpm<br>More than 12.3 gpm up to 25.8 gpm<br>More than 25.8 gpm up to 55.6 gpm | <br><br><br>$1^1/_2$<br>2<br>3<br>4 |
| Water closet | Note a |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Consult fixture standards for trap dimensions of specific bowls.

CHAPTER 33

# STORM DRAINAGE

Chapter 33 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Uniform Plumbing Code* for plumbing regulations.

# CHAPTER 33
# STORM DRAINAGE

## SECTION P3301
## GENERAL

**P3301.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of storm drainage.

## SECTION P3302
## SUBSOIL DRAINS

**P3302.1 Subsoil drains.** Subsoil drains shall be open-jointed, horizontally split or perforated pipe conforming to one of the standards listed in Table P3302.1 Such drains shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Where the building is subject to backwater, the subsoil drain shall be protected by an accessibly located backwater valve. Subsoil drains shall discharge to a trapped area drain, sump, dry well or *approved* location above ground. The subsoil sump shall not be required to have either a gas-tight cover or a vent. The sump and pumping system shall comply with Section P3303.

## SECTION P3303
## SUMPS AND PUMPING SYSTEMS

**P3303.1 Pumping system.** The sump pump, pit and discharge piping shall conform to Sections P3303.1.1 through P3303.1.4.

**P3303.1.1 Pump capacity and head.** The sump pump shall be of a capacity and head appropriate to anticipated use requirements.

**P3303.1.2 Sump pit.** The sump pit shall not be less than 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter and 24 inches (610 mm) deep, unless otherwise *approved*. The pit shall be accessible and located so that all drainage flows into the pit by gravity. The sump pit shall be constructed of tile, steel, plastic, cast-iron, concrete or other *approved* material, with a removable cover adequate to support anticipated loads in the area of use. The pit floor shall be solid and provide permanent support for the pump.

**P3303.1.3 Electrical.** Electrical outlets shall meet the requirements of Chapters 34 through 43.

**P3303.1.4 Piping.** Discharge piping shall meet the requirements of Sections P3002.1, P3002.2, P3002.3 and P3003. Discharge piping shall include an accessible full flow check valve. Pipe and fittings shall be the same size as, or larger than, pump discharge tapping.

**TABLE P3302.1**
**SUBSOIL DRAIN PIPE**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Asbestos-cement pipe | ASTM C 508 |
| Cast-iron pipe | ASTM A 74; ASTM A 888; CISPI 301 |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe | ASTM F 405; CSA B182.1; CSA B182.6; CSA B182.8 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) Plastic pipe (type sewer pipe, PS25, PS50 or PS100) | ASTM D 2729; ASTM F 891; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4 |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L | ASME A112.3.1 |
| Vitrified clay pipe | ASTM C 4; ASTM C 700 |

# CHAPTER 34

# GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Chapter 34 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# Part VIII—Electrical

## CHAPTER 34

# GENERAL REQUIREMENTS



### SECTION E3401
### GENERAL

**E3401.1 Applicability.** The provisions of Chapters 34 through 43 shall establish the general scope of the electrical system and equipment requirements of this code. Chapters 34 through 43 cover those wiring methods and materials most commonly encountered in the construction of one- and two-family dwellings and structures regulated by this code. Other wiring methods, materials and subject matter covered in the NFPA 70 are also allowed by this code.

**E3401.2 Scope.** Chapters 34 through 43 shall cover the installation of electrical systems, equipment and components indoors and outdoors that are within the scope of this code, including services, power distribution systems, fixtures, appliances, devices and appurtenances. Services within the scope of this code shall be limited to 120/240-volt, 0- to 400-ampere, single-phase systems. These chapters specifically cover the equipment, fixtures, appliances, wiring methods and materials that are most commonly used in the construction or alteration of one- and two-family dwellings and accessory structures regulated by this code. The omission from these chapters of any material or method of construction provided for in the referenced standard NFPA 70 shall not be construed as prohibiting the use of such material or method of construction. Electrical systems, equipment or components not specifically covered in these chapters shall comply with the applicable provisions of the NFPA 70.

**E3401.3 Not covered.** Chapters 34 through 43 do not cover the following:

1. Installations, including associated lighting, under the exclusive control of communications utilities and electric utilities.
2. Services over 400 amperes.

**E3401.4 Additions and alterations.** Any addition or alteration to an existing electrical system shall be made in conformity with the provisions of Chapters 34 through 43. Where additions subject portions of existing systems to loads exceeding those permitted herein, such portions shall be made to comply with Chapters 34 through 43.

## SECTION E3402
## BUILDING STRUCTURE PROTECTION

**E3402.1 Drilling and notching.** Wood-framed structural members shall not be drilled, notched or altered in any manner except as provided for in this code.

**E3402.2 Penetrations of fire-resistance-rated assemblies.** Electrical installations in hollow spaces, vertical shafts and ventilation or air-handling ducts shall be made so that the possible spread of fire or products of combustion will not be substantially increased. Electrical penetrations through fire-resistance-rated walls, partitions, floors or ceilings shall be protected by approved methods to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the element penetrated. Penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls shall be limited as specified in Section R317.3.

**E3402.3 Penetrations of firestops and draftstops.** Penetrations through fire blocking and draftstopping shall be protected in an approved manner to maintain the integrity of the element penetrated.

## SECTION E3403
## INSPECTION AND APPROVAL

**E3403.1 Approval.** Electrical materials, components and equipment shall be approved.

**E3403.2 Inspection required.** New electrical work and parts of existing systems affected by new work or alterations shall be inspected by the building official to ensure compliance with the requirements of Chapters 34 through 43.

**E3403.3 Listing and labeling.** Electrical materials, components, devices, fixtures and equipment shall be listed for the application, shall bear the label of an approved agency and shall be installed, and used, or both, in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION E3404
## GENERAL EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

**E3404.1 Voltages.** Throughout Chapters 34 through 43, the voltage considered shall be that at which the circuit operates.

**E3404.2 Interrupting rating.** Equipment intended to interrupt current at fault levels shall have a minimum interrupting rating of 10,000 amperes. Equipment intended to interrupt current at levels other than fault levels shall have an interrupting rating at nominal circuit voltage sufficient for the current that must be interrupted.

**E3404.3 Circuit characteristics.** The overcurrent protective devices, total impedance, component short-circuit current ratings and other characteristics of the circuit to be protected shall be so selected and coordinated as to permit the circuit protective devices that are used to clear a fault to do so without extensive damage to the electrical components of the circuit. This fault shall be assumed to be either between two or more of the circuit conductors or between any circuit conductor and the grounding conductor or enclosing metal raceway. Listed products applied in accordance with their listing shall be considered to meet the requirements of this section.

**E3404.4 Enclosure types.** Enclosures, other than surrounding fences or walls, of panelboards, meter sockets, and motor controllers, rated not over 600 volts nominal and intended for such locations, shall be marked with an enclosure-type number as shown in Table E3404.4.

Table E3404.4 shall be used for selecting these enclosures for use in specific locations other than hazardous (classified) locations. The enclosures are not intended to protect against conditions such as condensation, icing, corrosion, or contamination that might occur within the enclosure or enter through the conduit or unsealed openings.

**E3404.5 Protection of equipment.** Equipment not identified for outdoor use and equipment identified only for indoor use, such as "dry locations," "indoor use only" "damp locations," or enclosure Type 1, 2, 5, 12, 12K and/or 13, shall be protected against permanent damage from the weather during building construction.

**E3404.6 Unused openings.** Unused openings, other than those intended for the operation of equipment, those intended for mounting purposes, and those permitted as part of the design for listed equipment, shall be closed to afford protection substantially equivalent to the wall of the equipment. Where metallic plugs or plates are used with nonmetallic enclosures they shall be recessed at least $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) from the outer surface of the enclosure.

**E3404.7 Integrity of electrical equipment.** Internal parts of electrical equipment, including busbars, wiring terminals, insulators and other surfaces, shall not be damaged or contaminated by foreign materials such as paint, plaster, cleaners or abrasives, and corrosive residues. There shall not be any damaged parts that might adversely affect safe operation or mechanical strength of the equipment such as parts that are broken; bent; cut; deteriorated by corrosion, chemical action, or overheating. Foreign debris shall be removed from equipment.

**E3404.8 Mounting.** Electrical equipment shall be firmly secured to the surface on which it is mounted. Wooden plugs driven into masonry, concrete, plaster, or similar materials shall not be used.

**E3404.9 Energized parts guarded against accidental contact.** Approved enclosures shall guard energized parts that are operating at 50 volts or more against accidental contact.

**E3404.10 Prevent physical damage.** In locations where electrical equipment is likely to be exposed to physical damage, enclosures or guards shall be so arranged and of such strength as to prevent such damage.

**E3404.11 Equipment identification.** The manufacturer's name, trademark or other descriptive marking by which the organization responsible for the product can be identified shall be placed on all electric equipment. Other markings shall be provided that indicate voltage, current, wattage or other ratings as specified elsewhere in Chapters 34 through 43. The marking shall have the durability to withstand the environment involved.

**E3404.12 Identification of disconnecting means.** Each disconnecting means shall be legibly marked to indicate its purpose, except where located and arranged so that the purpose is evident. The marking shall have the durability to withstand the environment involved.

**TABLE E3404.4**
**ENCLOSURE SELECTION**

| PROVIDES A DEGREE OF PROTECTION AGAINST THE FOLLOWING ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS | FOR OUTDOOR USE | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Enclosure-type Number | | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | 3R | 3S | 3X | 3RX | 3SX | 4 | 4X | 6 | 6P |
| Incidental contact with the enclosed equipment | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Rain, snow and sleet | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Sleet[a] | — | — | X | — | — | X | — | — | — | — |
| Windblown dust | X | — | X | X | — | X | X | X | X | X |
| Hosedown | — | — | — | — | — | — | X | X | X | X |
| Corrosive agents | — | — | — | X | X | X | — | X | — | X |
| Temporary submersion | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | X | X |
| Prolonged submersion | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | X |
| **PROVIDES A DEGREE OF PROTECTION AGAINST THE FOLLOWING ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS** | **FOR INDOOR USE** | | | | | | | | | |
| | Enclosure-type Number | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | 2 | 4 | 4X | 5 | 6 | 6P | 12 | 12K | 13 |
| Incidental contact with the enclosed equipment | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Falling dirt | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Falling liquids and light splashing | — | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Circulating dust, lint, fibers and flyings | — | — | X | X | — | X | X | X | X | X |
| Settling airborne dust, lint, fibers and flings | — | — | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Hosedown and splashing water | — | — | X | X | — | X | X | — | — | — |
| Oil and coolant seepage | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | X | X | X |
| Oil or coolant spraying and splashing | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | X |
| Corrosive agents | — | — | — | X | — | — | X | — | — | — |
| Temporary submersion | — | — | — | — | — | X | X | — | — | — |
| Prolonged submersion | — | — | — | — | — | — | X | — | — | — |

a. Mechanism shall be operable when ice covered.

Note: The term raintight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 6 and 6P. The term rainproof is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 3R and 3RX. The term watertight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 4, 4X, 6 and 6P. The term driptight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 2, 5, 12, 12K and 13. The term dusttight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 5, 12, 12K and 13.

## SECTION E3405
## EQUIPMENT LOCATION AND CLEARANCES

**E3405.1 Working space and clearances.** Sufficient access and working space shall be provided and maintained around all electrical equipment to permit ready and safe operation and maintenance of such equipment in accordance with this section and Figure E3405.1.

**E3405.2 Working clearances for energized equipment and panelboards.** Except as otherwise specified in Chapters 34 through 43, the dimension of the working space in the direction of access to panelboards and live parts likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing or maintenance while energized shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in depth. Distances shall be measured from the energized parts where such parts are exposed or from the enclosure front or opening where such parts are enclosed. In addition to the 36-inch dimension (914 mm), the work space shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) wide in front of the electrical equipment and not less than the width of such equipment. The work space shall be clear and shall extend from the floor or platform to a height of 6.5 feet (1981 mm). In all cases, the work space shall allow at least a 90-degree (1.57 rad) opening of equipment doors or hinged panels. Equipment associated with the electrical installation located above or below the electrical equipment shall be permitted to extend not more than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the front of the electrical equipment.

**E3405.3 Dedicated panelboard space.** The space equal to the width and depth of the panelboard and extending from the floor to a height of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the panelboard, or to the structural ceiling, whichever is lower, shall be dedicated to the electrical installation. Piping, ducts, leak protection apparatus and other equipment foreign to the electrical installation shall not be installed in such dedicated space. The area above the dedicated space shall be permitted to contain foreign systems, provided that protection is installed to avoid damage to the electrical equipment from condensation, leaks and breaks in such foreign systems (see Figure E3405.1).

**Exception:** Suspended ceilings with removable panels shall be permitted within the 6-foot (1829 mm) dedicated space.

**E3405.4 Location of working spaces and equipment.** Required working space shall not be designated for storage. Panelboards and overcurrent protection devices shall not be located in clothes closets, in bathrooms, or over the steps of a stairway.

**E3405.5 Access and entrance to working space.** Access shall be provided to the required working space.

**E3405.6 Illumination.** Artificial illumination shall be provided for all working spaces for service equipment and panelboards installed indoors.

**E3405.7 Headroom.** The minimum headroom for working spaces for service equipment and panelboards shall be 6.5 feet (1981 mm).

## SECTION E3406
## ELECTRICAL CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTIONS

**E3406.1 General.** This section provides general requirements for conductors, connections and splices. These requirements do not apply to conductors that form an integral part of equipment, such as motors, appliances and similar equipment, or to conductors specifically provided for elsewhere in Chapters 34 through 43.

**E3406.2 Conductor material.** Conductors used to conduct current shall be of copper except as otherwise provided in Chapters 34 through 43. Where the conductor material is not specified, the material and the sizes given in these chapters shall apply to copper conductors. Where other materials are used, the conductor sizes shall be changed accordingly.

**E3406.3 Minimum size of conductors.** The minimum size of conductors for feeders and branch circuits shall be 14 AWG copper and 12 AWG aluminum. The minimum size of service conductors shall be as specified in Chapter 36. The minimum size of Class 2 remote control, signaling and power-limited circuits conductors shall be as specified in Chapter 43.

**E3406.4 Stranded conductors.** Where installed in raceways, conductors of size 8 AWG and larger shall be stranded. A solid 8 AWG conductor shall be permitted to be installed in a raceway only to meet the requirements of Sections E3610.2 and E4204.

**E3406.5 Individual conductor insulation.** Except where otherwise permitted in Sections E3605.1 and E3908.9, and E4303, current-carrying conductors shall be insulated. Insulated conductors shall have insulation types identified as RHH, RHW, RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW, THW-2, THWN, THWN-2, TW, UF, USE, USE-2, XHHW or XHHW-2. Insulation types shall be approved for the application.

**E3406.6 Conductors in parallel.** Circuit conductors that are connected in parallel shall be limited to sizes 1/0 AWG and larger. Conductors in parallel shall be of the same length, same conductor material, same circular mil area and same insulation type. Conductors in parallel shall be terminated in the same manner. Where run in separate raceways or cables, the raceway or cables shall have the same physical characteristics. Where conductors are in separate raceways or cables, the same number of conductors shall be used in each raceway or cable.

**E3406.7 Conductors of the same circuit.** All conductors of the same circuit and, where used, the grounded conductor and all equipment grounding conductors and bonding conductors shall be contained within the same raceway, cable or cord.

**E3406.8 Aluminum and copper connections.** Terminals and splicing connectors shall be identified for the material of the conductors joined. Conductors of dissimilar metals shall not be joined in a terminal or splicing connector where physical contact occurs between dissimilar conductors such as copper and aluminum, copper and copper-clad aluminum, or aluminum and copper-clad aluminum, except where the device is listed for the purpose and conditions of application. Materials such as inhibitors and compounds shall be suitable for the application and shall be of a type that will not adversely affect the conductors, installation or equipment.

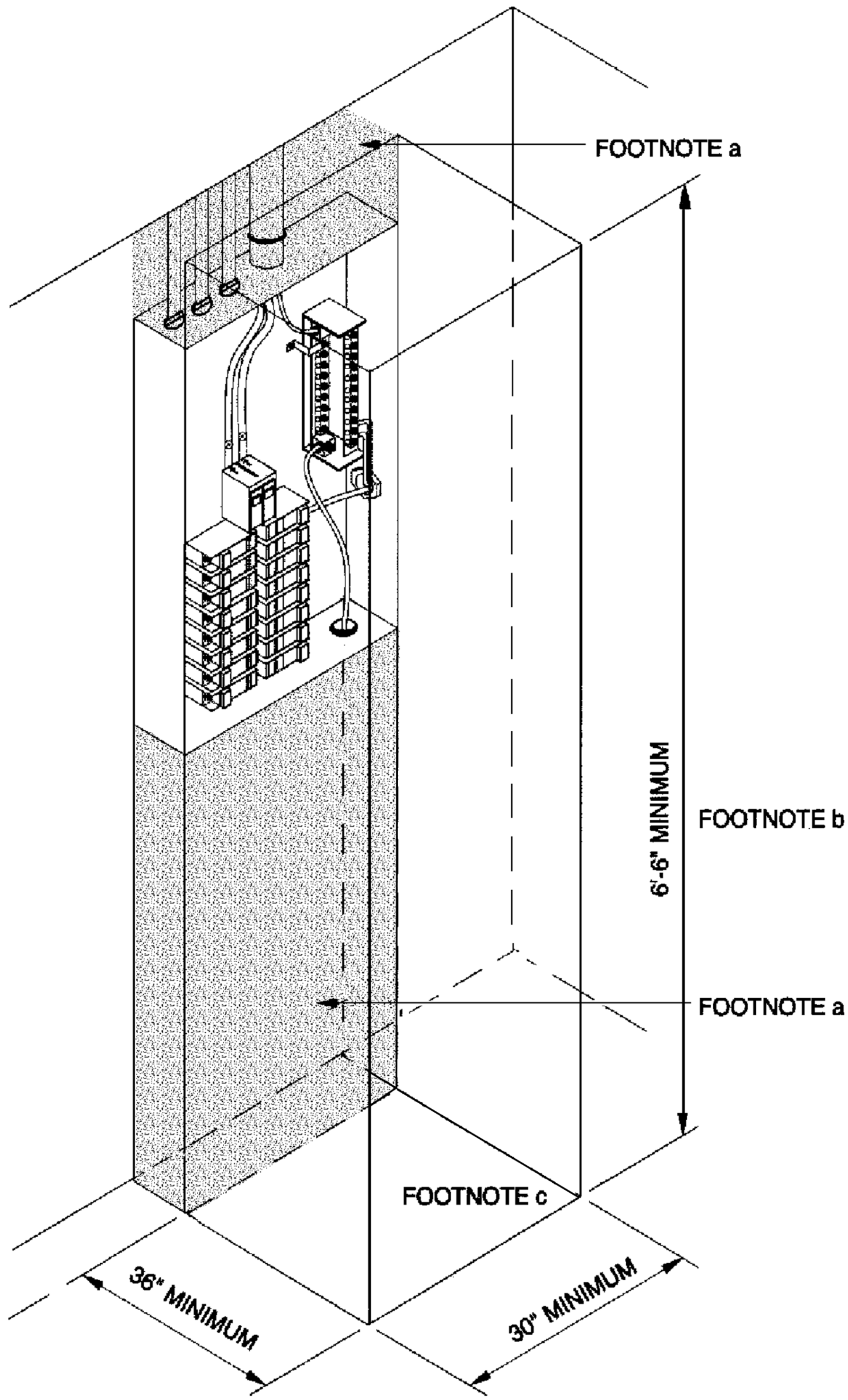



**FIGURE E3405.1[a, b, c, d, e]**
**WORKING SPACE AND CLEARANCES**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Equipment, piping and ducts foreign to the electrical installation shall not be placed in the shaded areas extending from the floor to a height of 6 feet above the panelboard enclosure, or to the structural ceiling, whichever is lower.
b. The working space shall be clear and unobstructed from the floor to a height of 6.5 feet.
c. The working space shall not be designated for storage.
d. Panelboards, service equipment and similar enclosures shall not be located in bathrooms, toilet rooms, clothes closets or over the steps of a stairway.
e. Such work spaces shall be provided with artificial lighting where located indoors.

**E3406.9 Terminals.** Connection of conductors to terminal parts shall be made without damaging the conductors and shall be made by means of pressure connectors, including set-screw type, by means of splices to flexible leads, or for conductor sizes of 10 AWG and smaller, by means of wire binding screws or studs and nuts having upturned lugs or the equivalent. Terminals for more than one conductor and terminals for connecting aluminum conductors shall be identified for the application.

**E3406.10 Splices.** Conductors shall be spliced or joined with splicing devices listed for the purpose. Splices and joints and the free ends of conductors shall be covered with an insulation equivalent to that of the conductors or with an insulating device listed for the purpose. Wire connectors or splicing means installed on conductors for direct burial shall be listed for such use.

**E3406.10.1 Continuity.** Conductors in raceways shall be continuous between outlets, boxes, and devices and shall be without splices or taps in the raceway.

**Exception:** Splices shall be permitted within surface-mounted raceways that have a removable cover.

**E3406.10.2 Device connections.** The continuity of a grounded conductor in multiwire branch circuits shall not be dependent on connection to devices such as receptacles and lampholders. The arrangement of grounding connections shall be such that the disconnection or the removal of a receptacle, luminaire or other device fed from the box does not interfere with or interrupt the grounding continuity.

**E3406.10.3 Length of conductor for splice or termination.** Where conductors are to be spliced, terminated or connected to fixtures or devices, a minimum length of 6 inches (152 mm) of free conductor shall be provided at each outlet, junction or switch point. The required length shall be measured from the point in the box where the conductor emerges from its raceway or cable sheath. Where the opening to an outlet, junction or switch point is less than 8 inches (200 mm) in any dimension, each conductor shall be long enough to extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) outside of such opening.

**E3406.11 Grounded conductor continuity.** The continuity of a grounded conductor shall not depend on connection to a metallic enclosure, raceway or cable armor.

## SECTION E3407 CONDUCTOR AND TERMINAL IDENTIFICATION

**E3407.1 Grounded conductors.** Insulated grounded conductors of sizes 6 AWG or smaller shall be identified by a continuous white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white stripes on other than green insulation along the entire length of the conductors. Conductors of sizes larger than 6 AWG shall be identified either by a continuous white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white stripes on other than green insulation along its entire length or at the time of installation by a distinctive white or gray marking at its terminations. This marking shall encircle the conductor or insulation.

**E3407.2 Equipment grounding conductors.** Equipment grounding conductors of sizes 6 AWG and smaller shall be identified by a continuous green color or a continuous green color with one or more yellow stripes on the insulation or covering, except where bare. Conductors with insulation or individual covering that is green, green with one or more yellow stripes, or otherwise identified as permitted by this section shall not be used for ungrounded or grounded circuit conductors.

Equipment grounding conductors larger than 6 AWG that are not identified as required for conductors of sizes 6 AWG and smaller shall, at the time of installation, be permanently identified as an equipment grounding conductor at each end and at every point where the conductor is accessible, except where such conductors are bare.

The required identification for conductors larger than 6 AWG shall encircle the conductor and shall be accomplished by one of the following:

1. Stripping the insulation or covering from the entire exposed length.
2. Coloring the exposed insulation or covering green at the termination.
3. Marking the exposed insulation or covering with green tape or green adhesive labels at the termination.

**Exceptions:**

1. Conductors larger than 6 AWG shall not be required to be identified in conduit bodies that do not contain splices or unused hubs.
2. Power-limited, Class 2 or Class 3 circuit cables containing only circuits operating at less than 50 volts shall be permitted to use a conductor with green insulation for other than equipment grounding purposes.

**E3407.3 Ungrounded conductors.** Insulation on the ungrounded conductors shall be a continuous color other than white, gray and green.

**Exceptions:**

1. An insulated conductor that is part of a cable or flexible cord assembly and that has a white or gray finish or a finish marking with three continuous white stripes shall be permitted to be used as an ungrounded conductor where it is permanently reidentified to indicate its use as an ungrounded conductor at all terminations and at each location where the conductor is visible and accessible. Identification shall encircle the insulation and shall be a color other than white, gray, and green.
2. Where a cable assembly contains an insulated conductor for single-pole, 3-way or 4-way switch loops and the conductor with white or gray insulation or a marking of three continuous white stripes is used for the supply to the switch but not as a return conductor from the switch to the switched outlet. In these applications, the conductor with white or gray insulation or with three continuous white stripes shall be permanently reidentified to indicate its use by painting or other effective means at its terminations and at each location where the conductor is visible and accessible.

**E3407.4 Identification of terminals.** Terminals for attachment to conductors shall be identified in accordance with Sections E3407.4.1 and E3407.4.2.

**E3407.4.1 Device terminals.** All devices excluding panelboards, provided with terminals for the attachment of conductors and intended for connection to more than one side of the circuit shall have terminals properly marked for identification, except where the terminal intended to be connected to the grounded conductor is clearly evident.

**Exception:** Terminal identification shall not be required for devices that have a normal current rating of over 30 amperes, other than polarized attachment caps and polarized receptacles for attachment caps as required in Section E3407.4.2.

**E3407.4.2 Receptacles, plugs and connectors.** Receptacles, polarized attachment plugs and cord connectors for plugs and polarized plugs shall have the terminal intended for connection to the grounded (white) conductor identified. Identification shall be by a metal or metal coating substantially white in color or by the word "white" or the letter "W" located adjacent to the identified terminal. Where the terminal is not visible, the conductor entrance hole for the connection shall be colored white or marked with the word "white" or the letter "W."

# CHAPTER 35

# ELECTRICAL DEFINITIONS

Chapter 35 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 35

# ELECTRICAL DEFINITIONS

## SECTION E3501 GENERAL

**E3501.1 Scope.** This chapter contains definitions that shall apply only to the electrical requirements of Chapters 34 through 43. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following terms shall, for the purpose of this code, have the meanings indicated in this chapter. Words used in the present tense include the future; the singular number includes the plural and the plural the singular. Where terms are not defined in this section and are defined in Section R202 of this code, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them in that section. Where terms are not defined in these sections, they shall have their ordinarily accepted meanings or such as the context implies.

**ACCESSIBLE.** (As applied to equipment.) Admitting close approach; not guarded by locked doors, elevation or other effective means.

**ACCESSIBLE.** (As applied to wiring methods.) Capable of being removed or exposed without damaging the building structure or finish, or not permanently closed in by the structure or finish of the building.

**ACCESSIBLE, READILY.** Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal or inspections, without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders, etc.

**AMPACITY.** The current in amperes that a conductor can carry continuously under the conditions of use without exceeding its temperature rating.

**APPLIANCE.** Utilization equipment, normally built in standardized sizes or types, that is installed or connected as a unit to perform one or more functions such as clothes washing, air conditioning, food mixing, deep frying, etc.

**APPROVED**. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

**ARC-FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTER.** A device intended to provide protection from the effects of arc-faults by recognizing characteristics unique to arcing and by functioning to de-energize the circuit when an arc-fault is detected.

**ATTACHMENT PLUG (PLUG CAP) (PLUG).** A device that, by insertion into a receptacle, establishes connection between the conductors of the attached flexible cord and the conductors connected permanently to the receptacle.

**AUTOMATIC.** Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration.

**BATHROOM.** An area, including a basin, with one or more of the following: a toilet, a tub or a shower.

**BONDED (BONDING).** Connected to establish electrical continuity and conductivity.

**BONDING JUMPER.** A reliable conductor to ensure the required electrical conductivity between metal parts required to be electrically connected.

**BONDING JUMPER (EQUIPMENT).** The connection between two or more portions of the equipment grounding conductor.

**BONDING JUMPER, MAIN.** The connection between the grounded circuit conductor and the equipment grounding conductor at the service.

**BRANCH CIRCUIT.** The circuit conductors between the final overcurrent device protecting the circuit and the outlet(s).

**BRANCH CIRCUIT, APPLIANCE.** A branch circuit that supplies energy to one or more outlets to which appliances are to be connected, and that has no permanently connected luminaires that are not a part of an appliance.

**BRANCH CIRCUIT, GENERAL PURPOSE.** A branch circuit that supplies two or more receptacle outlets or outlets for lighting and appliances.

**BRANCH CIRCUIT, INDIVIDUAL.** A branch circuit that supplies only one utilization equipment.

**BRANCH CIRCUIT, MULTIWIRE.** A branch circuit consisting of two or more ungrounded conductors having voltage difference between them, and a grounded conductor having equal voltage difference between it and each ungrounded conductor of the circuit, and that is connected to the neutral or grounded conductor of the system.

**CABINET.** An enclosure designed either for surface or flush mounting and provided with a frame, mat or trim in which a swinging door or doors are or may be hung.

**CIRCUIT BREAKER.** A device designed to open and close a circuit by nonautomatic means and to open the circuit automatically on a predetermined overcurrent without damage to itself when properly applied within its rating.

**CLOTHES CLOSET.** A nonhabitable room or space intended primarily for storage of garments and apparel.

**CONCEALED.** Rendered inaccessible by the structure or finish of the building. Wires in concealed raceways are considered to be concealed, even though they become accessible upon withdrawing them [see "Accessible (As applied to wiring methods)"].

**CONDUCTOR**

**Bare.** A conductor having no covering or electrical insulation whatsoever.

**Covered.** A conductor encased within material of composition or thickness that is not recognized by this code as electrical insulation.

**Insulated.** A conductor encased within material of composition and thickness that is recognized by this code as electrical insulation.

**CONDUIT BODY.** A separate portion of a conduit or tubing system that provides access through a removable cover(s) to the interior of the system at a junction of two or more sections of the system or at a terminal point of the system. Boxes such as FS and FD or larger cast or sheet metal boxes are not classified as conduit bodies.

**CONNECTOR, PRESSURE (SOLDERLESS).** A device that establishes a connection between two or more conductors or between one or more conductors and a terminal by means of mechanical pressure and without the use of solder.

**CONTINUOUS LOAD.** A load where the maximum current is expected to continue for 3 hours or more.

**COOKING UNIT, COUNTER-MOUNTED.** A cooking appliance designed for mounting in or on a counter and consisting of one or more heating elements, internal wiring and built-in or separately mountable controls.

**COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM CONDUCTORS.** Conductors drawn from a copper-clad aluminum rod with the copper metallurgically bonded to an aluminum core. The copper forms a minimum of 10 percent of the cross-sectional area of a solid conductor or each strand of a stranded conductor.

**CUTOUT BOX.** An enclosure designed for surface mounting and having swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with the walls of the box proper (see "Cabinet").

**DEAD FRONT.** Without live parts exposed to a person on the operating side of the equipment.

**DEMAND FACTOR.** The ratio of the maximum demand of a system, or part of a system, to the total connected load of a system or the part of the system under consideration.

**DEVICE.** A unit of an electrical system that carries or controls electrical energy as it principal function.

**DISCONNECTING MEANS.** A device, or group of devices, or other means by which the conductors of a circuit can be disconnected from their source of supply.

**DWELLING**

**Dwelling unit.** A single unit, providing complete and independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, cooking and sanitation.

**One-family dwelling.** A building consisting solely of one dwelling unit.

**Two-family dwelling.** A building consisting solely of two dwelling units.

**ENCLOSED.** Surrounded by a case, housing, fence or walls that will prevent persons from accidentally contacting energized parts.

**ENCLOSURE.** The case or housing of apparatus, or the fence or walls surrounding an installation, to prevent personnel from accidentally contacting energized parts or to protect the equipment from physical damage.

**ENERGIZED.** Electrically connected to, or is, a source of voltage.

**EQUIPMENT.** A general term including material, fittings, devices, appliances, luminaires, apparatus, machinery and the like used as a part of, or in connection with, an electrical installation.

**EXPOSED.** (As applied to live parts.) Capable of being inadvertently touched or approached nearer than a safe distance by a person. It is applied to parts not suitably guarded, isolated or insulated.

**EXPOSED.** (As applied to wiring methods.) On or attached to the surface or behind panels designed to allow access.

**EXTERNALLY OPERABLE.** Capable of being operated without exposing the operator to contact with live parts.

**FEEDER.** All circuit conductors between the service equipment, or the source of a separately derived system, or other power supply source and the final branch-circuit overcurrent device.

**FITTING.** An accessory such as a locknut, bushing or other part of a wiring system that is intended primarily to perform a mechanical rather than an electrical function.

**GROUND.** The earth.

**GROUNDED (GROUNDING).** Connected (connecting) to ground or to a conductive body that extends the ground connection.

**GROUNDED, EFFECTIVELY.** Intentionally connected to earth through a ground connection or connections of sufficiently low impedance and having sufficient current-carrying capacity to prevent the buildup of voltages that may result in undue hazards to connected equipment or to persons.

**GROUNDED CONDUCTOR.** A system or circuit conductor that is intentionally grounded.

**GROUNDING CONDUCTOR.** A conductor used to connect equipment or the grounded circuit of a wiring system to a grounding electrode or electrodes.

**GROUNDING CONDUCTOR, EQUIPMENT (EGC).** The conductive path installed to connect normally noncurrent-carrying metal parts of equipment together and, to the system grounded conductor, the grounding electrode conductor or both.

**GROUNDING ELECTRODE.** A conducting object through which a direct connection to earth is established.

**GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR.** A conductor used to connect the system grounded conductor or the equipment to a grounding electrode or to a point on the grounding electrode system.

**GROUND-FAULT CIRCUIT-INTERRUPTER.** A device intended for the protection of personnel that functions to de-energize a circuit or portion thereof within an established period of time when a current to ground exceeds the value for a Class A device.

**GUARDED.** Covered, shielded, fenced, enclosed or otherwise protected by means of suitable covers, casings, barriers, rails, screens, mats or platforms to remove the likelihood of approach or contact by persons or objects to a point of danger.

**IDENTIFIED.** (As applied to equipment.) Recognizable as suitable for the specific purpose, function, use, environment, application, etc., where described in a particular code requirement.

**INTERRUPTING RATING.** The highest current at rated voltage that a device is intended to interrupt under standard test conditions.

**INTERSYSTEM BONDING TERMINATION.** A device that provides a means for connecting communications system(s) grounding conductor(s) and bonding conductor(s) at the service equipment or at the disconnecting means for buildings or structures supplied by a feeder or branch.

**ISOLATED.** (As applied to location.) Not readily accessible to persons unless special means for access are used.

**KITCHEN.** An area with a sink and permanent facilities for food preparation and cooking.

**LABELED.** Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol or other identifying mark of an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

**LIGHTING OUTLET.** An outlet intended for the direct connection of a lampholder or luminaire.

**LISTED.** Equipment, materials or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services, and whose listing states either that the equipment, material or services meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**LIVE PARTS.** Energized conductive components.

**LOCATION, DAMP.** Location protected from weather and not subject to saturation with water or other liquids but subject to moderate degrees of moisture. Examples of such locations include partially protected locations under canopies, marquees, roofed open porches and like locations, and interior locations subject to moderate degrees of moisture, such as some basements, some barns and some cold-storage warehouses.

**LOCATION, DRY.** A location not normally subject to dampness or wetness. A location classified as dry may be temporarily subject to dampness or wetness, as in the case of a building under construction.

**LOCATION, WET.** Installations underground or in concrete slabs or masonry in direct contact with the earth and locations subject to saturation with water or other liquids, such as vehicle-washing areas, and locations exposed to weather.

**LUMINAIRE.** A complete lighting unit consisting of a light source such as a lamp or lamps together with the parts designed to position the light source and connect it to the power supply. A luminaire can include parts to protect the light source or the ballast or to distribute the light. A lampholder itself is not a luminaire.

**MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLY.** A type of surface, or flush, or freestanding raceway; designed to hold conductors and receptacles, assembled in the field or at the factory.

**NEUTRAL CONDUCTOR.** The conductor connected to the neutral point of a system that is intended to carry current under normal conditions.

**NEUTRAL POINT.** The common point on a wye-connection in a polyphase system or midpoint on a single-phase, 3-wire system, or midpoint of a single-phase portion of a 3-phase delta system, or a midpoint of a 3-wire, direct-current system.

**OUTLET.** A point on the wiring system at which current is taken to supply utilization equipment.

**OVERCURRENT.** Any current in excess of the rated current of equipment or the ampacity of a conductor. Such current might result from overload, short circuit or ground fault.

**OVERLOAD.** Operation of equipment in excess of normal, full-load rating, or of a conductor in excess of rated ampacity that, when it persists for a sufficient length of time, would cause damage or dangerous overheating. A fault, such as a short circuit or ground fault, is not an overload.

**PANELBOARD.** A single panel or group of panel units designed for assembly in the form of a single panel, including buses and automatic overcurrent devices, and equipped with or without switches for the control of light, heat or power circuits, designed to be placed in a cabinet or cutout box placed in or against a wall, partition or other support and accessible only from the front.

**PLENUM.** A compartment or chamber to which one or more air ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.

**POWER OUTLET.** An enclosed assembly that may include receptacles, circuit breakers, fuseholders, fused switches, buses and watt-hour meter mounting means, intended to supply and control power to mobile homes, recreational vehicles or boats, or to serve as a means for distributing power required to operate mobile or temporarily installed equipment.

**PREMISES WIRING (SYSTEM).** Interior and exterior wiring, including power, lighting, control and signal circuit wiring together with all of their associated hardware, fittings and wiring devices, both permanently and temporarily installed. This includes wiring from the service point or power source to the outlets and wiring from and including the power source to the outlets where there is no service point. Such wiring does not include wiring internal to appliances, luminaires, motors, controllers, and similar equipment.

**QUALIFIED PERSON.** One who has the skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of the electrical equipment and installations and has received safety training to recognize and avoid the hazards involved.

**RACEWAY.** An enclosed channel of metal or nonmetallic materials designed expressly for holding wires, cables, or busbars, with additional functions as permitted in this code. Raceways include, but are not limited to, rigid metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, intermediate metal conduit, liquid-tight flexible conduit, flexible metallic tubing, flexible metal conduit, electrical nonmetallic tubing, electrical metallic tubing, underfloor raceways, cellular concrete floor raceways, cellular metal floor raceways, surface raceways, wireways and busways.

**RAINPROOF.** Constructed, protected or treated so as to prevent rain from interfering with the successful operation of the apparatus under specified test conditions.

**RAIN TIGHT.** Constructed or protected so that exposure to a beating rain will not result in the entrance of water under specified test conditions.

**RECEPTACLE.** A receptacle is a contact device installed at the outlet for the connection of an attachment plug. A single receptacle is a single contact device with no other contact device on the same yoke. A multiple receptacle is two or more contact devices on the same yoke.

**RECEPTACLE OUTLET.** An outlet where one or more receptacles are installed.

**SERVICE.** The conductors and equipment for delivering energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

**SERVICE CABLE.** Service conductors made up in the form of a cable.

**SERVICE CONDUCTORS.** The conductors from the service point to the service disconnecting means.

**SERVICE DROP.** The overhead service conductors from the last pole or other aerial support to and including the splices, if any, connecting to the service-entrance conductors at the building or other structure.

**SERVICE-ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS, OVERHEAD SYSTEM.** The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and a point usually outside the building, clear of building walls, where joined by tap or splice to the service drop.

**SERVICE-ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS, UNDERGROUND SYSTEM.** The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and the point of connection to the service lateral.

**SERVICE EQUIPMENT.** The necessary equipment, usually consisting of a circuit breaker(s) or switch(es) and fuse(s), and their accessories, connected to the load end of the service conductors to a building or other structure, or an otherwise designated area, and intended to constitute the main control and cutoff of the supply.

**SERVICE LATERAL.** The underground service conductors between the street main, including any risers at a pole or other structure or from transformers, and the first point of connection to the service-entrance conductors in a terminal box or meter or other enclosure, inside or outside the building wall. Where there is no terminal box, meter or other enclosure with adequate space, the point of connection shall be considered to be the point of entrance of the service conductors into the building.

**SERVICE POINT.** Service point is the point of connection between the facilities of the serving utility and the premises wiring.

**STRUCTURE.** That which is built or constructed.

**SWITCHES**

**General-use switch.** A switch intended for use in general distribution and branch circuits. It is rated in amperes and is capable of interrupting its rated current at its rated voltage.

**General-use snap switch.** A form of general-use switch constructed so that it can be installed in device boxes or on box covers or otherwise used in conjunction with wiring systems recognized by this code.

**Isolating switch.** A switch intended for isolating an electric circuit from the source of power. It has no interrupting rating and is intended to be operated only after the circuit has been opened by some other means.

**Motor-circuit switch.** A switch, rated in horsepower that is capable of interrupting the maximum operating overload current of a motor of the same horsepower rating as the switch at the rated voltage.

**UNGROUNDED.** Not connected to ground or to a conductive body that extends the ground connection.

**UTILIZATION EQUIPMENT.** Equipment that utilizes electric energy for electronic, electromechanical, chemical, heating, lighting or similar purposes.

**VENTILATED.** Provided with a means to permit circulation of air sufficient to remove an excess of heat, fumes or vapors.

**VOLTAGE (OF A CIRCUIT).** The greatest root-mean-square (rms) (effective) difference of potential between any two conductors of the circuit concerned.

**VOLTAGE, NOMINAL.** A nominal value assigned to a circuit or system for the purpose of conveniently designating its voltage class (e.g., 120/240). The actual voltage at which a circuit operates can vary from the nominal within a range that permits satisfactory operation of equipment.

**VOLTAGE TO GROUND.** For grounded circuits, the voltage between the given conductor and that point or conductor of the circuit that is grounded. For ungrounded circuits, the greatest voltage between the given conductor and any other conductor of the circuit.

**WATERTIGHT.** Constructed so that moisture will not enter the enclosure under specified test conditions.

**WEATHERPROOF.** Constructed or protected so that exposure to the weather will not interfere with successful operation.

# CHAPTER 36

# SERVICES

Chapter 36 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 36

# SERVICES

## SECTION E3601 GENERAL SERVICES

**E3601.1 Scope.** This chapter covers service conductors and equipment for the control and protection of services and their installation requirements.

**E3601.2 Number of services.** One- and two-family dwellings shall be supplied by only one service.

**E3601.3 One building or other structure not to be supplied through another.** Service conductors supplying a building or other structure shall not pass through the interior of another building or other structure.

**E3601.4 Other conductors in raceway or cable.** Conductors other than service conductors shall not be installed in the same service raceway or service cable.

**Exceptions:**

1. Grounding conductors and bonding jumpers.
2. Load management control conductors having overcurrent protection.

**E3601.5 Raceway seal.** Where a service raceway enters from an underground distribution system, it shall be sealed in accordance with Section E3803.6.

**E3601.6 Service disconnect required.** Means shall be provided to disconnect all conductors in a building or other structure from the service entrance conductors.

**E3601.6.1 Marking of service equipment and disconnects.** Service disconnects shall be permanently marked as a service disconnect. Service equipment shall be listed for the purpose. Individual meter socket enclosures shall not be considered service equipment.

**E3601.6.2 Service disconnect location.** The service disconnecting means shall be installed at a readily accessible location either outside of a building or inside nearest the point of entrance of the service conductors. Service disconnecting means shall not be installed in bathrooms. Each occupant shall have access to the disconnect serving the dwelling unit in which they reside.

**E3601.7 Maximum number of disconnects.** The service disconnecting means shall consist of not more than six switches or six circuit breakers mounted in a single enclosure or in a group of separate enclosures.

## SECTION E3602 SERVICE SIZE AND RATING

**E3602.1 Ampacity of ungrounded conductors.** Ungrounded service conductors shall have an ampacity of not less than the load served. For one-family dwellings, the ampacity of the ungrounded conductors shall be not less than 100 amperes, 3 wire. For all other installations, the ampacity of the ungrounded conductors shall be not less than 60 amperes.

**E3602.2 Service load.** The minimum load for ungrounded service conductors and service devices that serve 100 percent of the dwelling unit load shall be computed in accordance with Table E3602.2. Ungrounded service conductors and service devices that serve less than 100 percent of the dwelling unit load shall be computed as required for feeders in accordance with Chapter 37.

**TABLE E3602.2
MINIMUM SERVICE LOAD CALCULATION**

| LOADS AND PROCEDURE |
|---|
| 3 volt-amperes per square foot of floor area for general lighting and general use receptacle outlets. |
| **Plus** |
| 1,500 volt-amperes multiplied by total number of 20-ampere-rated small appliance and laundry circuits. |
| **Plus** |
| The nameplate volt-ampere rating of all fastened-in-place, permanently connected or dedicated circuit-supplied appliances such as ranges, ovens, cooking units, clothes dryers not connected to the laundry branch circuit and water heaters. |
| **Apply the following demand factors to the above subtotal:** |
| The minimum subtotal for the loads above shall be 100 percent of the first 10,000 volt-amperes of the sum of the above loads plus 40 percent of any portion of the sum that is in excess of 10,000 volt-amperes. |
| **Plus the largest of the following:** |
| One-hundred percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the air-conditioning and cooling equipment. |
| One hundred percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the heat pump where a heat pump is used without any supplemental electric heating. |
| One-hundred percent of the nameplate rating of the electric thermal storage and other heating systems where the usual load is expected to be continuous at the full nameplate value. Systems qualifying under this selection shall not be figured under any other category in this table. |
| One-hundred percent of nameplate rating of the heat pump compressor and sixty-five percent of the supplemental electric heating load for central electric space-heating systems. If the heat pump compressor is prevented from operating at the same time as the supplementary heat, the compressor load does not need to be added to the supplementary heat load for the total central electric space-heating load. |
| Sixty-five percent of nameplate rating(s) of electric space-heating units if less than four separately controlled units. |
| Forty percent of nameplate rating(s) of electric space-heating units of four or more separately controlled units. |
| **The minimum total load in amperes shall be the volt-ampere sum calculated above divided by 240 volts.** |

**E3602.2.1 Services under 100 amperes.** Services that are not required to be 100 amperes shall be sized in accordance with Chapter 37.

**E3602.3 Rating of service disconnect.** The combined rating of all individual service disconnects serving a single dwelling unit shall not be less than the load determined from Table E3602.2 and shall not be less than as specified in Section E3602.1.

**E3602.4 Voltage rating.** Systems shall be three-wire, 120/240-volt, single-phase with a grounded neutral.

## SECTION E3603 SERVICE, FEEDER AND GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR SIZING

**E3603.1 Grounded and ungrounded service conductor size.** Conductors used as ungrounded service entrance conductors, service lateral conductors, and feeder conductors that serve as the main power feeder to a dwelling unit shall be those listed in Table E3603.1. The main power feeder shall be the feeder(s) between the main disconnect and the panelboard that supplies, either by branch circuits or by feeders, or both, all loads that are part of or are associated with the dwelling unit. The feeder conductors to a dwelling unit shall not be required to have an allowable ampacity greater than that of the service-entrance conductors that supply them. Ungrounded service conductors shall have a minimum size in accordance with Table E3603.1. The grounded conductor ampacity shall be not less than the maximum unbalance of the load and its size shall be not smaller than the required minimum grounding electrode conductor size specified in Table E3603.1.

**E3603.2 Ungrounded service conductors for accessory buildings and structures.** Ungrounded conductors for other than dwelling units shall have an ampacity of not less than 60 amperes and shall be sized as required for feeders in Chapter 37.

**Exceptions:**

1. For limited loads of a single branch circuit, the service conductors shall have an ampacity of not less than 15 amperes.
2. For loads consisting of not more than two two-wire branch circuits, the service conductors shall have an ampacity of not less than 30 amperes.

**TABLE E3603.1**
**SERVICE CONDUCTOR AND GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR SIZING**

| CONDUCTOR TYPES AND SIZES—THHN, THHW, THW, THWN, USE, RHH, RHW, XHHW, RHW-2, THW-2, THWN-2, XHHW-2, SE, USE-2 (Parallel sets of 1/0 and larger conductors are permitted in either a single raceway or in separate raceways) | | SERVICE OR FEEDER RATING (AMPERES) | MINIMUM GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR SIZE[a] | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Copper (AWG) | Aluminum and copper–clad aluminum (AWG) | Maximum load (amps) | Copper (AWG) | Aluminum (AWG) |
| 4 | 2 | 100 | 8[b] | 6[c] |
| 3 | 1 | 110 | 8[b] | 6[c] |
| 2 | 1/0 | 125 | 8[b] | 6[c] |
| 1 | 2/0 | 150 | 6[c] | 4 |
| 1/0 | 3/0 | 175 | 6[c] | 4 |
| 2/0 | 4/0 or two sets of 1/0 | 200 | 4[d] | 2[d] |
| 3/0 | 250 kcmil or two sets of 2/0 | 225 | 4[d] | 2[d] |
| 4/0 or two sets of 1/0 | 300 kcmil or two sets of 3/0 | 250 | 2[d] | 1/0[d] |
| 250 kcmil or two sets of 2/0 | 350 kcmil or two sets of 4/0 | 300 | 2[d] | 1/0[d] |
| 350 kcmil or two sets of 3/0 | 500 kcmil or two sets of 250 kcmil | 350 | 2[d] | 1/0[d] |
| 400 kcmil or two sets of 4/0 | 600 kcmil or two sets of 300 kcmil | 400 | 1/0[d] | 3/0[d] |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where protected by a ferrous metal raceway, grounding electrode conductors shall be electrically bonded to the ferrous metal raceway at both ends.
b. An 8 AWG grounding electrode conductor shall be protected with metal conduit, nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing or cable armor
c. Where not protected, 6 AWG grounding electrode conductor shall closely follow a structural surface for physical protection. The supports shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center and shall be within 12 inches of any enclosure or termination.
d. Where the sole grounding electrode system is a ground rod or pipe as covered in Section E3608.2, the grounding electrode conductor shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum. Where the sole grounding electrode system is the footing steel as covered in Section E3608.1.2, the grounding electrode conductor shall not be required to be larger than 4 AWG copper conductor.

**E3603.3 Overload protection.** Each ungrounded service conductor shall have overload protection.

**E3603.3.1 Ungrounded conductor.** Overload protection shall be provided by an overcurrent device installed in series with each ungrounded service conductor. The overcurrent device shall have a rating or setting not higher than the allowable service or feeder rating specified in Table E3603.1. A set of fuses shall be considered all the fuses required to protect all of the ungrounded conductors of a circuit. Single pole circuit breakers, grouped in accordance with Section E3601.7, shall be considered as one protective device.

**Exception:** Two to six circuit breakers or sets of fuses shall be permitted as the overcurrent device to provide the overload protection. The sum of the ratings of the circuit breakers or fuses shall be permitted to exceed the ampacity of the service conductors, provided that the calculated load does not exceed the ampacity of the service conductors.

**E3603.3.2 Not in grounded conductor.** Overcurrent devices shall not be connected in series with a grounded service conductor except where a circuit breaker is used that simultaneously opens all conductors of the circuit.

**E3603.3.3 Location.** The service overcurrent device shall be an integral part of the service disconnecting means or shall be located immediately adjacent thereto.

**E3603.4 Grounding electrode conductor size.** The grounding electrode conductors shall be sized based on the size of the service entrance conductors as required in Table E3603.1.

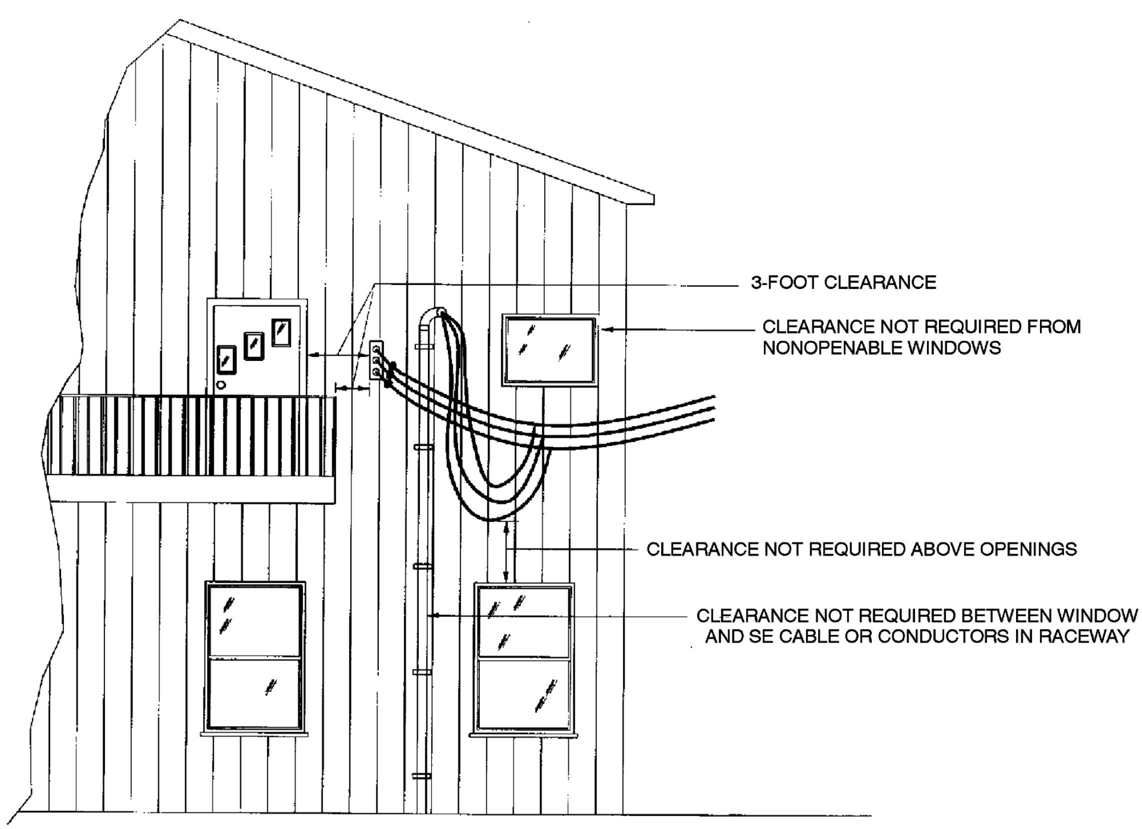
**E3603.5 Temperature limitations.** Except where the equipment is marked otherwise, conductor ampacities used in determining equipment termination provisions shall be based on Table E3603.1.

## SECTION E3604
## OVERHEAD SERVICE-DROP AND SERVICE CONDUCTOR INSTALLATION

**E3604.1 Clearances on buildings.** Open conductors and multiconductor cables without an overall outer jacket shall have a clearance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the sides of doors, porches, decks, stairs, ladders, fire escapes and balconies, and from the sides and bottom of windows that open. See Figure E3604.1.

**E3604.2 Vertical clearances.** Service-drop conductors shall not have ready access and shall comply with Sections E3604.2.1 and E3604.2.2.

**E3604.2.1 Above roofs.** Conductors shall have a vertical clearance of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the roof surface. The vertical clearance above the roof level shall be maintained for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm)




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE E3604.1**
**CLEARANCES FROM BUILDING OPENINGS**

in all directions from the edge of the roof. See Figure E3604.2.1.

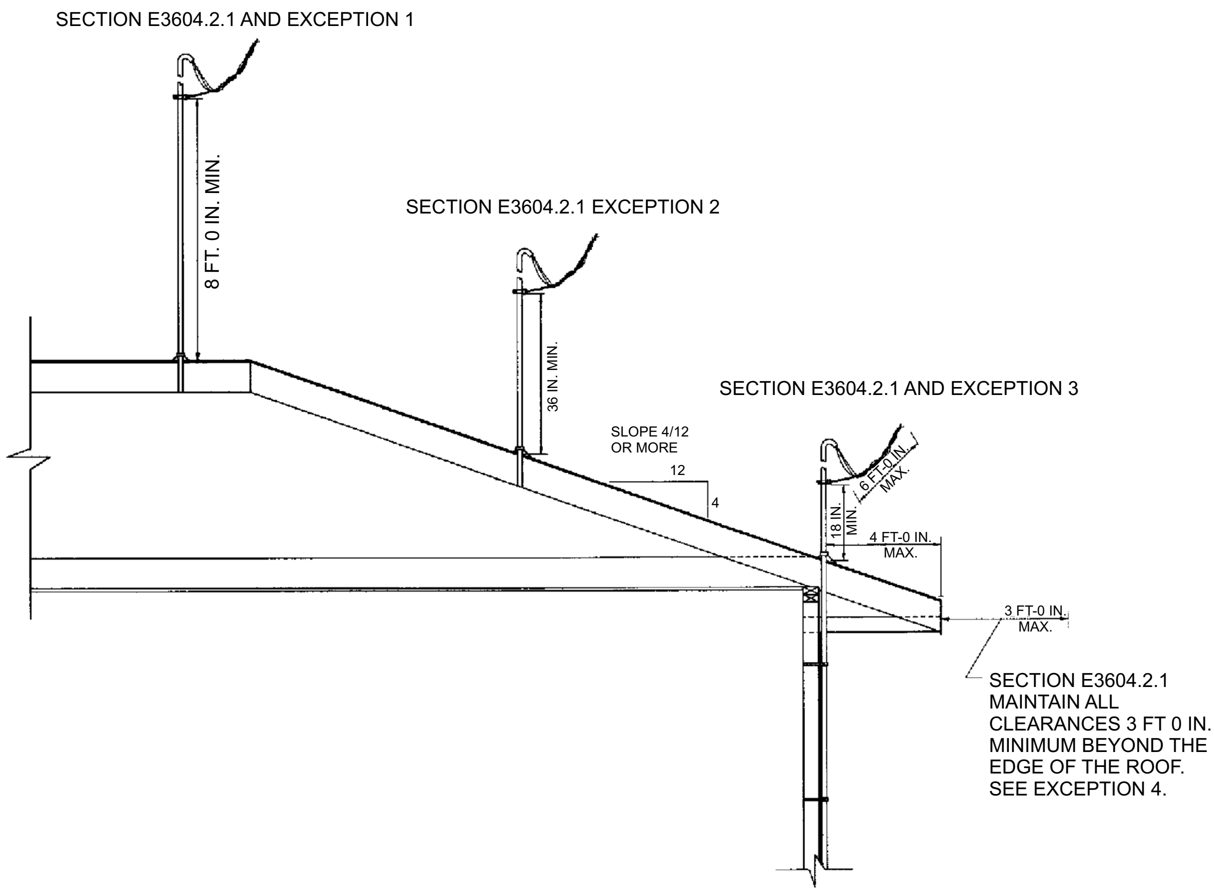
**Exceptions:**

1. Conductors above a roof surface subject to pedestrian traffic shall have a vertical clearance from the roof surface in accordance with Section E3604.2.2.
2. Where the roof has a slope of 4 inches (102 mm) in 12 inches (305 mm), or greater, the minimum clearance shall be 3 feet (914 mm).
3. The minimum clearance above only the overhanging portion of the roof shall not be less than 18 inches (457 mm) where not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) of conductor length passes over 4 feet (1219 mm) or less of roof surface measured horizontally and such conductors are terminated at a through-the-roof raceway or approved support.
4. The requirement for maintaining the vertical clearance for a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) from the edge of the roof shall not apply to the final conductor span where the service drop is attached to the side of a building.

**E3604.2.2 Vertical clearance from grade.** Service-drop conductors shall have the following minimum clearances from final grade:

1. For service-drop cables supported on and cabled together with a grounded bare messenger wire, the minimum vertical clearance shall be 10 feet (3048 mm) at the electric service entrance to buildings, at the lowest point of the drip loop of the building electric entrance, and above areas or sidewalks accessed by pedestrians only. Such clearance shall be measured from final grade or other accessible surfaces.
2. Twelve feet (3658 mm)—over residential property and driveways.
3. Eighteen feet (5486 mm)—over public streets, alleys, roads or parking areas subject to truck traffic.

**E3604.3 Point of attachment.** The point of attachment of the service-drop conductors to a building or other structure shall provide the minimum clearances as specified in Sections E3604.1 through E3604.2.2. In no case shall the point of attachment be less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above finished grade.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE E3604.2.1**
**CLEARANCES FROM ROOFS**

**E3604.4 Means of attachment.** Multiconductor cables used for service drops shall be attached to buildings or other structures by fittings approved for the purpose.

**E3604.5 Service masts as supports.** Where a service mast is used for the support of service-drop conductors, it shall be of adequate strength or be supported by braces or guys to withstand the strain imposed by the service drop. Where raceway-type service masts are used, all equipment shall be approved. Only power service drop conductors shall be permitted to be attached to a service mast.

**E3604.6 Supports over buildings.** Service-drop conductors passing over a roof shall be securely supported. Where practicable, such supports shall be independent of the building.

## SECTION E3605
## SERVICE-ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS

**E3605.1 Insulation of service-entrance conductors.** Service-entrance conductors entering or on the exterior of buildings or other structures shall be insulated in accordance with Section E3406.5.

**Exceptions:**

1. A copper grounded conductor shall not be required to be insulated where it is:
   1.1. In a raceway or part of a service cable assembly,
   1.2. Directly buried in soil of suitable condition, or
   1.3. Part of a cable assembly listed for direct burial without regard to soil conditions.
2. An aluminum or copper-clad aluminum grounded conductor shall not be required to be insulated where part of a cable or where identified for direct burial or utilization in underground raceways.

**E3605.2 Wiring methods for services.** Service-entrance wiring methods shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements in Chapter 38.

**E3605.3 Spliced conductors.** Service-entrance conductors shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped. Splices shall be made in enclosures or, if directly buried, with listed underground splice kits. Conductor splices shall be made in accordance with Chapters 34, 37, 38 and 39.

**E3605.4 Protection against physical damage.** Underground service-entrance conductors shall be protected against physical damage in accordance with Chapter 38.

**E3605.5 Protection of service cables against damage.** Above-ground service-entrance cables, where subject to physical damage, shall be protected by one or more of the following: rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, Schedule 80 PVC conduit, electrical metallic tubing or other approved means.

**E3605.6 Locations exposed to direct sunlight.** Insulated conductors and cables used where exposed to direct rays of the sun shall comply with one of the following:

1. The conductors and cables shall be listed, or listed and marked, as being sunlight resistant.
2. The conductors and cables are covered with insulating material, such as tape or sleeving, that is listed, or listed and marked, as being sunlight resistant.

**E3605.7 Mounting supports.** Service cables shall be supported by straps or other approved means within 12 inches (305 mm) of every service head, gooseneck or connection to a raceway or enclosure and at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm).

**E3605.8 Raceways to drain.** Where exposed to the weather, raceways enclosing service-entrance conductors shall be suitable for use in wet locations and arranged to drain. Where embedded in masonry, raceways shall be arranged to drain.

**E3605.9 Overhead service locations.** Connections at service heads shall be in accordance with Sections E3605.9.1 through E3605.9.7.

**E3605.9.1 Rain-tight service head.** Service raceways shall be equipped with a rain-tight service head at the point of connection to service-drop conductors. The service head shall comply with the requirements for fittings in Section E3905.12.

**E3605.9.2 Service cable, service head or gooseneck.** Service cable shall be equipped with a rain-tight service head or shall be formed into a gooseneck in an approved manner. The service head shall comply with the requirements for fittings in Section E3905.12.

**E3605.9.3 Service head location.** Service heads, and goosenecks in service-entrance cables, shall be located above the point of attachment of the service-drop conductors to the building or other structure.

**Exception:** Where it is impracticable to locate the service head or gooseneck above the point of attachment, the service head or gooseneck location shall be not more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the point of attachment.

**E3605.9.4 Separately bushed openings.** Service heads shall have conductors of different potential brought out through separately bushed openings.

**E3605.9.5 Drip loops.** Drip loops shall be formed on individual conductors. To prevent the entrance of moisture, service-entrance conductors shall be connected to the service-drop conductors either below the level of the service head or below the level of the termination of the service-entrance cable sheath.

**E3605.9.6 Conductor arrangement.** Service-drop conductors and service-entrance conductors shall be arranged so that water will not enter service raceways or equipment.

**E3605.9.7 Secured.** Service cables shall be held securely in place.

## SECTION E3606
## SERVICE EQUIPMENT—GENERAL

**E3606.1 Service equipment enclosures.** Energized parts of service equipment shall be enclosed.

**E3606.2 Working space.** In no case shall the working space in the vicinity of service equipment be less than that specified in Chapter 34.

**E3606.3 Available short-circuit current.** Service equipment shall be suitable for the maximum fault current available at its supply terminals, but not less than 10,000 amperes.

**E3606.4 Marking.** Service equipment shall be marked to identify it as being suitable for use as service equipment. Individual meter socket enclosures shall not be considered service equipment.

## SECTION E3607 SYSTEM GROUNDING

**E3607.1 System service ground.** The premises wiring system shall be grounded at the service with a grounding electrode conductor connected to a grounding electrode system as required by this code. Grounding electrode conductors shall be sized in accordance with Table E3603.1.

**E3607.2 Location of grounding electrode conductor connection.** The grounding electrode conductor shall be connected to the grounded service conductor at any accessible point from the load end of the service drop or service lateral to and including the terminal or bus to which the grounded service conductor is connected at the service disconnecting means. A grounding connection shall not be made to any grounded circuit conductor on the load side of the service disconnecting means, except as provided in Section E3607.3.2.

**E3607.3 Buildings or structures supplied by feeder(s) or branch circuit(s).** Buildings or structures supplied by feeder(s) or branch circuit(s) shall have a grounding electrode or grounding electrode system installed in accordance with Section E3608. The grounding electrode conductor(s) shall be connected in a manner specified in Section E3607.3.1 or, for existing premises wiring systems only, Section E3607.3.2. Where there is no existing grounding electrode, the grounding electrode(s) required in Section E3608 shall be installed.

**Exception:** A grounding electrode shall not be required where only one branch circuit, including a multiwire branch circuit, supplies the building or structure and the branch circuit includes an equipment grounding conductor for grounding the noncurrent-carrying parts of all equipment. For the purposes of this section, a multiwire branch circuit shall be considered as a single branch circuit.

**E3607.3.1 Equipment grounding conductor.** An equipment grounding conductor as described in Section E3908 shall be run with the supply conductors and connected to the building or structure disconnecting means and to the grounding electrode(s). The equipment grounding conductor shall be used for grounding or bonding of equipment, structures or frames required to be grounded or bonded. The equipment grounding conductor shall be sized in accordance with Section E3908.12. Any installed grounded conductor shall not be connected to the equipment grounding conductor or to the grounding electrode(s).

**E3607.3.2 Grounded conductor, existing premises.** This section shall apply only to existing premises wiring systems. Where an equipment grounding conductor is not run with the supply conductors to the building or structure, there are no continuous metallic paths bonded to the grounding system in both buildings or structures involved, and ground-fault protection of equipment has not been installed on the supply side of the feeder(s), the grounded conductor run with the supply to the buildings or structure shall be connected to the building or structure disconnecting means and to the grounding electrode(s) and shall be used for grounding or bonding of equipment, structures, or frames required to be grounded or bonded. Where used for grounding in accordance with this provision, the grounded conductor shall be not smaller than the larger of:

1. That required by Section E3704.3.
2. That required by Section E3908.12.

**E3607.4 Grounding electrode conductor.** A grounding electrode conductor shall be used to connect the equipment grounding conductors, the service equipment enclosures, and the grounded service conductor to the grounding electrode(s). This conductor shall be sized in accordance with Table E3603.1.

**E3607.5 Main bonding jumper.** An unspliced main bonding jumper shall be used to connect the equipment grounding conductor(s) and the service-disconnect enclosure to the grounded conductor of the system within the enclosure for each service disconnect.

**E3607.6 Common grounding electrode.** Where an ac system is connected to a grounding electrode in or at a building or structure, the same electrode shall be used to ground conductor enclosures and equipment in or on that building or structure. Where separate services, feeders or branch circuits supply a building and are required to be connected to a grounding electrode(s), the same grounding electrode(s) shall be used. Two or more grounding electrodes that are effectively bonded together shall be considered as a single grounding electrode system.

## SECTION E3608 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

**E3608.1 Grounding electrode system.** All electrodes specified in Sections E3608.1.1, E3608.1.2, E3608.1.3, E3608.1.4 E3608.1.5 and E3608.1.6 that are present at each building or structure served shall be bonded together to form the grounding electrode system. Where none of these electrodes are present, one or more of the electrodes specified in Sections E3608.1.3, E3608.1.4, E3608.1.5 and E3608.1.6 shall be installed and used.

**Exception:** Concrete-encased electrodes of existing buildings or structures shall not be required to be part of the grounding electrode system where the steel reinforcing bars or rods are not accessible for use without disturbing the concrete.

**E3608.1.1 Metal underground water pipe.** A metal underground water pipe that is in direct contact with the earth for 10 feet (3048 mm) or more, including any well casing effectively bonded to the pipe and that is electrically continuous, or made electrically continuous by bonding around insulating joints or insulating pipe to the points of connection of the grounding electrode conductor and the bonding conductors, shall be considered as a grounding electrode (see Section E3608.1). Interior metal water piping located more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the entrance to the building shall not be used as part of the grounding electrode system or as a conductor to interconnect electrodes that are part of the grounding electrode system.

**E3608.1.1.1 Installation.** Continuity of the grounding path or the bonding connection to interior piping shall not rely on water meters, filtering devices and similar equipment. A metal underground water pipe shall be supplemented by an additional electrode of a type specified in Sections E3608.1.2 through E3608.1.6. The supplemental electrode shall be bonded to the grounding electrode conductor, the grounded service entrance conductor, a nonflexible grounded service raceway or any grounded service enclosure. Where the supplemental electrode is a rod, pipe or plate electrode in accordance with Section E3608.1.4 or E3608.1.5, it shall comply with Section E3608.4.

Where the supplemental electrode is a rod, pipe or plate electrode in accordance with Section E3608.1.4 or E3608.1.5, that portion of the bonding jumper that is the sole connection to the supplemental grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum wire.

**E3608.1.2 Concrete-encased electrode.** An electrode encased by at least 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete, located horizontally near the bottom or vertically and within that portion of a concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with the earth, consisting of at least 20 feet (6096 mm) of one or more bare or zinc-galvanized or other electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) diameter, or consisting of at least 20 feet (6096 mm) of bare copper conductor not smaller than 4 AWG shall be considered as a grounding electrode. Reinforcing bars shall be permitted to be bonded together by the usual steel tie wires or other effective means. Where multiple concrete-encased electrodes are present at a building or structure, only one shall be required to be bonded into the grounding electrode system.

**E3608.1.3 Ground rings.** A ground ring encircling the building or structure, in direct contact with the earth at a depth below the earth's surface of not less than 30 inches (762 mm), consisting of at least 20 feet (6096 mm) of bare copper conductor not smaller than 2 AWG shall be considered as a grounding electrode.

**E3608.1.4 Rod and pipe electrodes.** Rod and pipe electrodes not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and consisting of the following materials shall be considered as a grounding electrode:

1. Grounding electrodes of pipe or conduit shall not be smaller than trade size $^3/_4$ (metric designator 21) and, where of iron or steel, shall have the outer surface galvanized or otherwise metal-coated for corrosion protection.
2. Grounding electrodes of rods of stainless steel and copper or zinc-coated steel shall be at least $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) in diameter. Stainless steel rods less than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) in diameter, nonferrous rods or their equivalent shall be listed and shall be not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in diameter.

**E3608.1.4.1 Installation.** The rod and pipe electrodes shall be installed such that at least 8 feet (2438 mm) of length is in contact with the soil. They shall be driven to a depth of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) except that, where rock bottom is encountered, electrodes shall be driven at an oblique angle not to exceed 45 degrees from the vertical or shall be buried in a trench that is at least 30 inches (762 mm) deep. The upper end of the electrodes shall be flush with or below ground level except where the aboveground end and the grounding electrode conductor attachment are protected against physical damage.

**E3608.1.5 Plate electrodes.** A plate electrode that exposes not less than 2 square feet (0.186 m$^2$) of surface to exterior soil shall be considered as a grounding electrode. Electrodes of iron or steel plates shall be at least $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) in thickness. Electrodes of nonferrous metal shall be at least 0.06 inch (1.5 mm) in thickness. Plate electrodes shall be installed not less than 30 inches (762 mm) below the surface of the earth.

**E3608.1.6 Other electrodes.** In addition to the grounding electrodes specified in Sections E3608.1.1 through E3608.1.5, other listed grounding electrodes shall be permitted.

**E3608.2 Bonding jumper.** The bonding jumper(s) used to connect the grounding electrodes together to form the grounding electrode system shall be installed in accordance with Sections E3610.2, and E3610.3, shall be sized in accordance with Section E3603.4, and shall be connected in the manner specified in Section E3611.1.

**E3608.3 Rod, pipe and plate electrode requirements.** Where practicable, rod, pipe and plate electrodes shall be embedded below permanent moisture level. Such electrodes shall be free from nonconductive coatings such as paint or enamel. Where more than one such electrode is used, each electrode of one grounding system shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from any other electrode of another grounding system. Two or more grounding electrodes that are effectively bonded together shall be considered as a single grounding electrode system. That portion of a bonding jumper that is the sole connection to a rod, pipe or plate electrode shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum wire.

**E3608.4 Resistance of rod, pipe and plate electrodes.** A single electrode consisting of a rod, pipe or plate that does not have a resistance to ground of 25 ohms or less shall be augmented by one additional electrode of any of the types specified in Sections E3608.1.2 through E3608.1.6. Where multiple listed electrodes or rod, pipe or plate electrodes are installed to meet the requirements of this section, they shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) apart.

**E3608.5 Aluminum electrodes.** Aluminum electrodes shall not be permitted.

**E3608.6 Metal underground gas piping system.** A metal underground gas piping system shall not be used as a grounding electrode.

## SECTION E3609
## BONDING

**E3609.1 General.** Bonding shall be provided where necessary to ensure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any fault current likely to be imposed.

**E3609.2 Bonding of services.** The noncurrent-carrying metal parts of the following equipment shall be effectively bonded together:

1. The service raceways or service cable armor.
2. All service enclosures containing service conductors, including meter fittings, and boxes, interposed in the service raceway or armor.

**E3609.3 Bonding for other systems.** An intersystem bonding termination for connecting intersystem bonding and grounding conductors required for other systems shall be provided external to enclosures at the service equipment and at the disconnecting means for any additional buildings or structures. The intersystem bonding termination shall be accessible for connection and inspection. The intersystem bonding termination shall have the capacity for connection of not less than three intersystem bonding conductors. The intersystem bonding termination device shall not interfere with the opening of a service or metering equipment enclosure. The intersystem bonding termination shall be one of the following:

1. A set of terminals securely mounted to the meter enclosure and electrically connected to the meter enclosure. The terminals shall be listed as grounding and bonding equipment.
2. A bonding bar near the service equipment enclosure, meter enclosure, or raceway for service conductors. The bonding bar shall be connected with a minimum 6 AWG copper conductor to an equipment grounding conductor(s) in the service equipment enclosure, to a meter enclosure, or to an exposed nonflexible metallic raceway.
3. A bonding bar near the grounding electrode conductor. The bonding bar shall be connected to the grounding electrode conductor with a minimum 6 AWG copper conductor.

**E3609.4 Method of bonding at the service.** Electrical continuity at service equipment, service raceways and service conductor enclosures shall be ensured by one or more of the methods specified in Sections E3609.4.1 through E3609.4.4.

Bonding jumpers meeting the other requirements of this code shall be used around concentric or eccentric knockouts that are punched or otherwise formed so as to impair the electrical connection to ground. Standard locknuts or bushings shall not be the sole means for the bonding required by this section.

**E3609.4.1 Grounded service conductor.** Equipment shall be bonded to the grounded service conductor in a manner provided in this code.

**E3609.4.2 Threaded connections.** Equipment shall be bonded by connections using threaded couplings or threaded bosses on enclosures. Such connections shall be made wrench tight.

**E3609.4.3 Threadless couplings and connectors.** Equipment shall be bonded by threadless couplings and connectors for metal raceways and metal-clad cables. Such couplings and connectors shall be made wrench tight. Standard locknuts or bushings shall not be used for the bonding required by this section.

**E3609.4.4 Other devices.** Equipment shall be bonded by other listed devices, such as bonding-type locknuts, bushings and bushings with bonding jumpers.

**E3609.5 Sizing bonding jumper on supply side of service and main bonding jumper.** The bonding jumper shall not be smaller than the sizes shown in Table E3603.1 for grounding electrode conductors. Where the service-entrance conductors are paralleled in two or more raceways or cables, the equipment bonding jumper, where routed with the raceways or cables, shall be run in parallel. The size of the bonding jumper for each raceway or cable shall be based on the size of the service-entrance conductors in each raceway or cable.

**E3609.6 Metal water piping bonding.** The metal water piping system shall be bonded to the service equipment enclosure, the grounded conductor at the service, the grounding electrode conductor where of sufficient size, or to the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding jumper shall be sized in accordance with Table E3603.1. The points of attachment of the bonding jumper(s) shall be accessible.

**E3609.7 Bonding other metal piping.** Where installed in or attached to a building or structure, metal piping systems, including gas piping, capable of becoming energized shall be bonded to the service equipment enclosure, the grounded conductor at the service, the grounding electrode conductor where of sufficient size, or to the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding jumper shall be sized in accordance with Table E3908.12 using the rating of the circuit capable of energizing the piping. The equipment grounding conductor for the circuit that is capable of energizing the piping shall be permitted to serve as the bonding means. The points of attachment of the bonding jumper(s) shall be accessible.

## SECTION E3610
## GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTORS

**E3610.1 Continuous.** The grounding electrode conductor shall be unspliced and shall run to any convenient grounding electrode available in the grounding electrode system where the other electrode(s), if any, are connected by bonding jumpers in accordance with Section E3608.2, or to one or more grounding electrode(s) individually. The grounding electrode conductor shall be sized for the largest grounding electrode conductor required among all of the electrodes connected to it.

**Exception:** Splicing of the grounding electrode conductor by irreversible compression-type connectors listed as grounding and bonding equipment or by the exothermic welding process shall not be prohibited.

**E3610.2 Securing and protection against physical damage.** Where exposed, a grounding electrode conductor or its enclosure shall be securely fastened to the surface on which it is carried. A 4 AWG or larger conductor shall be protected where exposed to physical damage. A 6 AWG grounding conductor that is free from exposure to physical damage shall be permitted to be run along the surface of the building construction without metal covering or protection where it is securely fastened to the construction; otherwise, it shall be in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing or cable armor. Grounding electrode conductors smaller than 6 AWG shall be in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing or cable armor.

Bare aluminum or copper-clad aluminum grounding conductors shall not be used where in direct contact with masonry or the earth or where subject to corrosive conditions. Where used outside, aluminum or copper-clad aluminum grounding conductors shall not be installed within 18 inches (457 mm) of the earth.

**E3610.3 Enclosures for grounding electrode conductors.** Ferrous metal enclosures for grounding electrode conductors shall be electrically continuous from the point of attachment to cabinets or equipment to the grounding electrode, and shall be securely fastened to the ground clamp or fitting. Nonferrous metal enclosures shall not be required to be electrically continuous. Ferrous metal enclosures that are not physically continuous from cabinet or equipment to the grounding electrode shall be made electrically continuous by bonding each end to the grounding conductor. The bonding jumper for a grounding electrode conductor raceway shall be the same size or larger than the required enclosed grounding electrode conductor.

Where a raceway is used as protection for a grounding conductor, the installation shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 38.

## SECTION E3611 GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR CONNECTION TO THE GROUNDING ELECTRODES

**E3611.1 Methods of grounding conductor connection to electrodes.** The grounding or bonding conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode by exothermic welding, listed lugs, listed pressure connectors, listed clamps or other listed means. Connections depending on solder shall not be used. Ground clamps shall be listed for the materials of the grounding electrode and the grounding electrode conductor and, where used on pipe, rod or other buried electrodes, shall also be listed for direct soil burial or concrete encasement. Not more than one conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode by a single clamp or fitting unless the clamp or fitting is listed for multiple conductors. One of the methods indicated in the following items shall be used:

1. A pipe fitting, pipe plug or other approved device screwed into a pipe or pipe fitting.
2. A listed bolted clamp of cast bronze or brass, or plain or malleable iron.
3. For indoor telecommunications purposes only, a listed sheet metal strap-type ground clamp having a rigid metal base that seats on the electrode and having a strap of such material and dimensions that it is not likely to stretch during or after installation.
4. Other equally substantial approved means.

**E3611.2 Accessibility.** All mechanical elements used to terminate a grounding electrode conductor or bonding jumper to the grounding electrodes that are not buried or concrete encased shall be accessible.

**E3611.3 Effective grounding path.** The connection of the grounding electrode conductor or bonding jumper shall be made in a manner that will ensure a permanent and effective grounding path. Where necessary to ensure effective grounding for a metal piping system used as a grounding electrode, effective bonding shall be provided around insulated joints and sections and around any equipment that is likely to be disconnected for repairs or replacement. Bonding jumpers shall be of sufficient length to permit removal of such equipment while retaining the integrity of the grounding path.

**E3611.4 Protection of ground clamps and fittings.** Ground clamps or other fittings shall be approved for applications without protection or shall be protected from physical damage by installing them where they are not likely to be damaged or by enclosing them in metal, wood or equivalent protective coverings.

**E3611.5 Clean surfaces.** Nonconductive coatings (such as paint, enamel and lacquer) on equipment to be grounded shall be removed from threads and other contact surfaces to ensure good electrical continuity or shall be connected by fittings that make such removal unnecessary.

# CHAPTER 37

# BRANCH CIRCUIT AND FEEDER REQUIREMENTS

Chapter 37 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 37

# BRANCH CIRCUIT AND FEEDER REQUIREMENTS

## SECTION E3701
## GENERAL

**E3701.1 Scope.** This chapter covers branch circuits and feeders and specifies the minimum required branch circuits, the allowable loads and the required overcurrent protection for branch circuits and feeders that serve less than 100 percent of the total dwelling unit load. Feeder circuits that serve 100 percent of the dwelling unit load shall be sized in accordance with the procedures in Chapter 36.

**E3701.2 Branch-circuit and feeder ampacity.** Branch-circuit and feeder conductors shall have ampacities not less than the maximum load to be served. Where a branch circuit or a feeder supplies continuous loads or any combination of continuous and noncontinuous loads, the minimum branch-circuit or feeder conductor size, before the application of any adjustment or correction factors, shall have an allowable ampacity equal to or greater than the noncontinuous load plus 125 percent of the continuous load.

**Exception:** The grounded conductors of branch circuits and feeders that are not connected to an overcurrent device shall be permitted to be sized at 100 percent of the continuous and noncontinuous load.

**E3701.3 Selection of ampacity.** Where more than one calculated or tabulated ampacity could apply for a given circuit length, the lowest value shall be used.

**Exception:** Where two different ampacities apply to adjacent portions of a circuit, the higher ampacity shall be permitted to be used beyond the point of transition, a distance equal to 10 feet (3048 mm) or 10 percent of the circuit length figured at the higher ampacity, whichever is less.

**E3701.4 Multi-outlet branch circuits.** Conductors of multi-outlet branch circuits supplying more than one receptacle for cord-and-plug-connected portable loads shall have ampacities of not less than the rating of the branch circuit.

**E3701.5 Multiwire branch circuits.** All conductors for multiwire branch circuits shall originate from the same panelboard or similar distribution equipment. Except where all ungrounded conductors are opened simultaneously by the branch-circuit overcurrent device, multiwire branch circuits shall supply only line-to-neutral loads or only one appliance.

**E3701.5.1 Disconnecting means.** Each multiwire branch circuit shall be provided with a means that will simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors at the point where the branch circuit originates.

**E3701.5.2 Grouping.** The ungrounded and grounded conductors of each multiwire branch circuit shall be grouped by wire ties or similar means in at least one location within the panelboard or other point of origination.

**Exception:** Grouping shall not be required where the circuit conductors enter from a cable or raceway unique to the circuit, thereby making the grouping obvious.

## SECTION E3702
## BRANCH CIRCUIT RATINGS

**E3702.1 Branch-circuit voltage limitations.** The voltage ratings of branch circuits that supply luminaires or receptacles for cord-and-plug-connected loads of up to 1,440 volt-amperes or of less than $^1/_4$ horsepower shall be limited to a maximum rating of 120 volts, nominal, between conductors.

Branch circuits that supply cord-and-plug-connected or permanently connected utilization equipment and appliances rated at over 1,440 volt-amperes or $^1/_4$ horsepower (0.186 kW) and greater shall be rated at 120 volts or 240 volts, nominal.

**E3702.2 Branch-circuit ampere rating.** Branch circuits shall be rated in accordance with the maximum allowable ampere rating or setting of the overcurrent protection device. The rating for other than individual branch circuits shall be 15, 20, 30, 40 and 50 amperes. Where conductors of higher ampacity are used, the ampere rating or setting of the specified over-current device shall determine the circuit rating.

**E3702.3 Fifteen- and 20-ampere branch circuits.** A 15- or 20-ampere branch circuit shall be permitted to supply lighting units, or other utilization equipment, or a combination of both. The rating of any one cord-and-plug-connected utilization equipment not fastened in place shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch-circuit ampere rating. The total rating of utilization equipment fastened in place, other than luminaires, shall not exceed 50 percent of the branch-circuit ampere rating where lighting units, cord-and-plug-connected utilization equipment not fastened in place, or both, are also supplied.

**E3702.4 Thirty-ampere branch circuits.** A 30-ampere branch circuit shall be permitted to supply fixed utilization equipment. A rating of any one cord-and-plug-connected utilization equipment shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch-circuit ampere rating.

**E3702.5 Branch circuits serving multiple loads or outlets.** General-purpose branch circuits shall supply lighting outlets, appliances, equipment or receptacle outlets, and combinations of such. Multi-outlet branch circuits serving lighting or receptacles shall be limited to a maximum branch-circuit rating of 20 amperes.

**E3702.6 Branch circuits serving a single motor.** Branch-circuit conductors supplying a single motor shall have an ampacity not less than 125 percent of the motor full-load current rating.

**E3702.7 Branch circuits serving motor-operated and combination loads.** For circuits supplying loads consisting of motor-operated utilization equipment that is fastened in place and that has a motor larger than $^1/_8$ horsepower (0.093 kW) in combination with other loads, the total calculated load shall be based on 125 percent of the largest motor load plus the sum of the other loads.

**E3702.8 Branch-circuit inductive lighting loads.** For circuits supplying luminaires having ballasts, the calculated load shall be based on the total ampere ratings of such units and not on the total watts of the lamps.

**E3702.9 Branch-circuit load for ranges and cooking appliances.** It shall be permissible to calculate the branch-circuit load for one range in accordance with Table E3704.2(2). The branch-circuit load for one wall-mounted oven or one counter-mounted cooking unit shall be the nameplate rating of the appliance. The branch-circuit load for a counter-mounted cooking unit and not more than two wall-mounted ovens all supplied from a single branch circuit and located in the same room shall be calculated by adding the nameplate ratings of the individual appliances and treating the total as equivalent to one range.

**E3702.9.1 Minimum branch circuit for ranges.** Ranges with a rating of 8.75 kVA or more shall be supplied by a branch circuit having a minimum rating of 40 amperes.

**E3702.10 Branch circuits serving heating loads.** Electric space-heating and water-heating appliances shall be considered continuous loads. Branch circuits supplying two or more outlets for fixed electric space-heating equipment shall be rated 15, 20, 25 or 30 amperes.

**E3702.11 Branch circuits for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment.** The ampacity of the conductors supplying multimotor and combination load equipment shall not be less than the minimum circuit ampacity marked on the equipment. The branch-circuit overcurrent device rating shall be the size and type marked on the appliance.

**E3702.12 Branch circuits serving room air conditioners.** A room air conditioner shall be considered as a single motor unit in determining its branch-circuit requirements where all the following conditions are met:

1. It is cord- and attachment plug-connected.
2. The rating is not more than 40 amperes and 250 volts; single phase.
3. Total rated-load current is shown on the room air-conditioner nameplate rather than individual motor currents.
4. The rating of the branch-circuit short-circuit and ground-fault protective device does not exceed the ampacity of the branch-circuit conductors, or the rating of the branch-circuit conductors, or the rating of the receptacle, whichever is less.

**E3702.12.1 Where no other loads are supplied.** The total marked rating of a cord- and attachment plug-connected room air conditioner shall not exceed 80 percent of the rating of a branch circuit where no other appliances are also supplied.

**E3702.12.2 Where lighting units or other appliances are also supplied.** The total marked rating of a cord- and attachment plug-connected room air conditioner shall not exceed 50 percent of the rating of a branch circuit where lighting or other appliances are also supplied. Where the circuitry is interlocked to prevent simultaneous operation of the room air conditioner and energization of other outlets on the same branch circuit, a cord- and attachment-plug-connected room air conditioner shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch-circuit rating.

**E3702.13 Branch-circuit requirement—summary.** The requirements for circuits having two or more outlets, or receptacles, other than the receptacle circuits of Sections E3703.2 and E3703.3, are summarized in Table E3702.13. Branch circuits in dwelling units shall supply only loads within that dwelling unit or loads associated only with that dwelling unit. Branch circuits required for the purpose of lighting, central alarm, signal, communications or other needs for public or common areas of a two-family dwelling shall not be supplied from equipment that supplies an individual dwelling unit.

**TABLE E3702.13**
**BRANCH-CIRCUIT REQUIREMENTS—SUMMARY[a,b]**

| | CIRCUIT RATING | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **15 amp** | **20 amp** | **30 amp** |
| Conductors:<br>Minimum size (AWG) circuit conductors | 14 | 12 | 10 |
| Maximum overcurrent-protection device rating<br>Ampere rating | 15 | 20 | 30 |
| Outlet devices:<br>Lampholders permitted<br>Receptacle rating (amperes) | <br>Any type<br>15 maximum | <br>Any type<br>15 or 20 | <br>N/A<br>30 |
| Maximum load (amperes) | 15 | 20 | 30 |

a. These gages are for copper conductors.
b. N/A means not allowed.

## SECTION E3703
## REQUIRED BRANCH CIRCUITS

**E3703.1 Branch circuits for heating.** Central heating equipment other than fixed electric space heating shall be supplied by an individual branch circuit. Permanently connected air-conditioning equipment, and auxiliary equipment directly associated with the central heating equipment such as pumps, motorized valves, humidifiers and electrostatic air cleaners, shall not be prohibited from connecting to the same branch circuit as the central heating equipment.

**E3703.2 Kitchen and dining area receptacles.** A minimum of two 20-ampere-rated branch circuits shall be provided to serve all wall and floor receptacle outlets located in the kitchen, pantry, breakfast area, dining area or similar area of a dwelling. The kitchen countertop receptacles shall be served by a minimum of two 20-ampere-rated branch circuits, either or both of which shall also be permitted to supply other receptacle outlets in the same kitchen, pantry, breakfast and dining area including receptacle outlets for refrigeration appliances.

**Exception:** The receptacle outlet for refrigeration appliances shall be permitted to be supplied from an individual branch circuit rated 15 amperes or greater.

**E3703.3 Laundry circuit.** A minimum of one 20-ampere-rated branch circuit shall be provided for receptacles located in the laundry area and shall serve only receptacle outlets located in the laundry area.

**E3703.4 Bathroom branch circuits.** A minimum of one 20-ampere branch circuit shall be provided to supply bathroom receptacle outlet(s). Such circuits shall have no other outlets.

**Exception:** Where the 20-ampere circuit supplies a single bathroom, outlets for other equipment within the same bathroom shall be permitted to be supplied in accordance with Section E3702.

**E3703.5 Number of branch circuits.** The minimum number of branch circuits shall be determined from the total calculated load and the size or rating of the circuits used. The number of circuits shall be sufficient to supply the load served. In no case shall the load on any circuit exceed the maximum specified by Section E3702.

**E3703.6 Branch-circuit load proportioning.** Where the branch-circuit load is calculated on a volt-amperes-per-square-foot ($m^2$) basis, the wiring system, up to and including the branch-circuit panelboard(s), shall have the capacity to serve not less than the calculated load. This load shall be evenly proportioned among multioutlet branch circuits within the panelboard(s). Branch-circuit overcurrent devices and circuits shall only be required to be installed to serve the connected load.

## SECTION E3704 FEEDER REQUIREMENTS

**E3704.1 Conductor size.** Feeder conductors that do not serve 100 percent of the dwelling unit load and branch-circuit conductors shall be of a size sufficient to carry the load as determined by this chapter. Feeder conductors shall not be required to be larger than the service-entrance conductors that supply the dwelling unit. The load for feeder conductors that serve as the main power feeder to a dwelling unit shall be determined as specified in Chapter 36 for services.

**E3704.2 Feeder loads.** The minimum load in volt-amperes shall be calculated in accordance with the load calculation procedure prescribed in Table E3704.2(1). The associated table demand factors shall be applied to the actual load to determine the minimum load for feeders.

**E3704.3 Feeder neutral load.** The feeder neutral load shall be the maximum unbalance of the load determined in accordance with this chapter. The maximum unbalanced load shall be the maximum net calculated load between the neutral and any one ungrounded conductor. For a feeder or service supplying electric ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units and electric dryers, the maximum unbalanced load shall be considered as 70 percent of the load on the ungrounded conductors.

**E3704.4 Lighting and general use receptacle load.** A unit load of not less than 3 volt-amperes shall constitute the minimum lighting and general use receptacle load for each square foot of floor area (33 VA for each square meter of floor area). The floor area for each floor shall be calculated from the outside dimensions of the building. The calculated floor area shall not include open porches, garages, or unused or unfinished spaces not adaptable for future use.

**E3704.5 Ampacity and calculated loads.** The calculated load of a feeder shall be not less than the sum of the loads on the branch circuits supplied, as determined by Section E3704, after any applicable demand factors permitted by Section E3704 have been applied.

**E3704.6 Equipment grounding conductor.** Where a feeder supplies branch circuits in which equipment grounding conductors are required, the feeder shall include or provide an

**TABLE E3704.2(1)**
**FEEDER LOAD CALCULATION**

| LOAD CALCULATION PROCEDURE | APPLIED DEMAND FACTOR |
|---|---|
| Lighting and receptacles: A unit load of not less than 3 VA per square foot of total floor area shall constitute the lighting and 120-volt, 15- and 20-ampere general use receptacle load. 1,500 VA shall be added for each 20-ampere branch circuit serving receptacles in the kitchen, dining room, pantry, breakfast area and laundry area. | 100 percent of first 3,000 VA or less and 35 percent of that in excess of 3,000 VA. |
| **Plus** | |
| Appliances and motors: The nameplate rating load of all fastened-in-place appliances other than dryers, ranges, air-conditioning and space-heating equipment. | 100 percent of load for three or less appliances.<br>75 percent of load for four or more appliances. |
| **Plus** | |
| Fixed motors: Full-load current of motors plus 25 percent of the full load current of the largest motor. | |
| **Plus** | |
| Electric clothes dryer: The dryer load shall be 5,000 VA for each dryer circuit or the nameplate rating load of each dryer, whichever is greater. | |
| **Plus** | |
| Cooking appliances: The nameplate rating of ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units and other cooking appliances rated in excess of 1.75 kVA shall be summed. | Demand factors shall be as allowed by Table E3704.2(2). |
| **Plus the largest of either the heating or cooling load** | |
| Largest of the following two selections:<br>1. 100 percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the air conditioning and cooling, including heat pump compressors.<br>2. 100 percent of the fixed electric space heating. | |

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 $m^2$.

equipment grounding conductor that is one or more or a combination of the types specified in Section E3908.8, to which the equipment grounding conductors of the branch circuits shall be connected. Where the feeder supplies a separate building or structure, the requirements of Section E3607.3.1 shall apply.

## SECTION E3705 CONDUCTOR SIZING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTION

**E3705.1 General.** Ampacities for conductors shall be determined based in accordance with Table E3705.1 and Sections E3705.2 and E3705.3.

**E3705.2 Correction factor for ambient temperatures.** For ambient temperatures other than 30°C (86°F), multiply the allowable ampacities specified in Table E3705.1 by the appropriate correction factor shown in Table E3705.2.

**E3705.3 Adjustment factor for conductor proximity.** Where the number of current-carrying conductors in a raceway or cable exceeds three, or where single conductors or multiconductor cables are stacked or bundled for distances greater than 24 inches (610 mm) without maintaining spacing and are not installed in raceways, the allowable ampacity of each conductor shall be reduced as shown in Table E3705.3.

**Exceptions:**

1. Adjustment factors shall not apply to conductors in nipples having a length not exceeding 24 inches (610 mm).
2. Adjustment factors shall not apply to underground conductors entering or leaving an outdoor trench if those conductors have physical protection in the form

**TABLE E3704.2(2)**
**DEMAND LOADS FOR ELECTRIC RANGES, WALL-MOUNTED OVENS, COUNTER-MOUNTED COOKING UNITS AND OTHER COOKING APPLIANCES OVER $1^3/_4$ kVA RATING[a,b]**

| NUMBER OF APPLIANCES | MAXIMUM DEMAND[b,c] Column A maximum 12 kVA rating | DEMAND FACTORS (percent)[d] Column B less than $3^1/_2$ kVA rating | Column C $3^1/_2$ to $8^3/_4$ kVA rating |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 8 kVA | 80 | 80 |
| 2 | 11 kVA | 75 | 65 |

a. Column A shall be used in all cases except as provided for in Footnote d.
b. For ranges all having the same rating and individually rated more than 12 kVA but not more than 27 kVA, the maximum demand in Column A shall be increased 5 percent for each additional kVA of rating or major fraction thereof by which the rating of individual ranges exceeds 12 kVA.
c. For ranges of unequal ratings and individually rated more than 8.75 kVA, but none exceeding 27 kVA, an average value of rating shall be computed by adding together the ratings of all ranges to obtain the total connected load (using 12 kVA for any ranges rated less than 12 kVA) and dividing by the total number of ranges; and then the maximum demand in Column A shall be increased 5 percent for each kVA or major fraction thereof by which this average value exceeds 12 kVA.
d. Over 1.75 kVA through 8.75 kVA. As an alternative to the method provided in Column A, the nameplate ratings of all ranges rated more than 1.75 kVA but not more than 8.75 kVA shall be added and the sum shall be multiplied by the demand factor specified in Column B or C for the given number of appliances.

**TABLE E3705.1**
**ALLOWABLE AMPACITIES**

| CONDUCTOR SIZE | CONDUCTOR TEMPERATURE RATING | | | | | | CONDUCTOR SIZE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 60°C | 75°C | 90°C | 60°C | 75°C | 90°C | |
| AWG kcmil | Types TW, UF | Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, USE, XHHW | Types RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, USE-2 | Types TW, UF | Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, USE, XHHW | Types RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, USE-2 | AWG kcmil |
| | Copper | | | Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum | | | |
| 18 | — | — | 14 | — | — | — | — |
| 16 | — | — | 18 | — | — | — | — |
| 14 | 20 | 20 | 25 | — | — | — | — |
| 12 | 25 | 25 | 30 | 20 | 20 | 25 | 12 |
| 10 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 10 |
| 8 | 40 | 50 | 55 | 30 | 40 | 45 | 8 |
| 6 | 55 | 65 | 75 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 6 |
| 4 | 70 | 85 | 95 | 55 | 65 | 75 | 4 |
| 3 | 85 | 100 | 110 | 65 | 75 | 85 | 3 |
| 2 | 95 | 115 | 130 | 75 | 90 | 100 | 2 |
| 1 | 110 | 130 | 150 | 85 | 100 | 115 | 1 |
| 1/0 | 125 | 150 | 170 | 100 | 120 | 135 | 1/0 |
| 2/0 | 145 | 175 | 195 | 115 | 135 | 150 | 2/0 |
| 3/0 | 165 | 200 | 225 | 130 | 155 | 175 | 3/0 |
| 4/0 | 195 | 230 | 260 | 150 | 180 | 205 | 4/0 |

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

**TABLE E3705.2**
**AMBIENT TEMPERATURE CORRECTION FACTORS**

| AMBIENT TEMP. °C | FOR AMBIENT TEMPERATURES OTHER THAN 30°C (86°F), MULTIPLY THE ALLOWABLE AMPACITIES SPECIFIED IN TABLE E3705.1 BY THE APPROPRIATE FACTOR SHOWN BELOW | | | | | | AMBIENT TEMP. °F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | CONDUCTOR TEMPERATURE RATING | | | | | | |
| | 60°C | 75°C | 90°C | 60°C | 75°C | 90°C | |
| | Types TW, UF | Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, USE, XHHW | Types RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, USE-2 | Types TW, UF | Types RHW, THHW, THW, THWN, USE, XHHW | Types RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, USE-2 | |
| | Copper | | | Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum | | | |
| 21-25 | 1.08 | 1.05 | 1.04 | 1.08 | 1.05 | 1.04 | 70-77 |
| 26-30 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 78-86 |
| 31-35 | 0.91 | 0.94 | 0.96 | 0.91 | 0.94 | 0.96 | 87-95 |
| 36-40 | 0.82 | 0.88 | 0.91 | 0.82 | 0.88 | 0.91 | 96-104 |
| 41-45 | 0.71 | 0.82 | 0.87 | 0.71 | 0.82 | 0.87 | 105-113 |
| 46-50 | 0.58 | 0.75 | 0.82 | 0.58 | 0.75 | 0.82 | 114-122 |
| 51-55 | 0.41 | 0.67 | 0.76 | 0.41 | 0.67 | 0.76 | 123-131 |
| 56-60 | — | 0.58 | 0.71 | — | 0.58 | 0.71 | 132-140 |
| 61-70 | — | 0.33 | 0.58 | — | 0.33 | 0.58 | 141-158 |
| 71-80 | — | — | 0.41 | — | — | 0.41 | 159-176 |

of rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or rigid nonmetallic conduit having a length not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm) and the number of conductors does not exceed four.

3. Adjustment factors shall not apply to type AC cable or to type MC cable without an overall outer jacket meeting all of the following conditions:
   - 3.1. Each cable has not more than three current-carrying conductors.
   - 3.2. The conductors are 12 AWG copper.
   - 3.3. Not more than 20 current-carrying conductors are bundled, stacked or supported on bridle rings. A 60 percent adjustment factor shall be applied where the current-carrying conductors in such cables exceed 20 and the cables are stacked or bundled for distances greater than 24 inches (610 mm) without maintaining spacing.

**TABLE E3705.3**
**CONDUCTOR PROXIMITY ADJUSTMENT FACTORS**

| NUMBER OF CURRENT-CARRYING CONDUCTORS IN CABLE OR RACEWAY | PERCENT OF VALUES IN TABLE E3705.1 |
|---|---|
| 4-6 | 80 |
| 7-9 | 70 |
| 10-20 | 50 |
| 21-30 | 45 |
| 31-40 | 40 |
| 41 and above | 35 |

**E3705.4 Temperature limitations.** The temperature rating associated with the ampacity of a conductor shall be so selected and coordinated to not exceed the lowest temperature rating of any connected termination, conductor or device. Conductors with temperature ratings higher than specified for terminations shall be permitted to be used for ampacity adjustment, correction, or both. Except where the equipment is marked otherwise, conductor ampacities used in determining equipment termination provisions shall be based on Table E3705.1.

**E3705.4.1 Conductors rated 60°C.** Except where the equipment is marked otherwise, termination provisions of equipment for circuits rated 100 amperes or less, or marked for 14 AWG through 1 AWG conductors, shall be used only for one of the following:

1. Conductors rated 60°C (140°F);
2. Conductors with higher temperature ratings, provided that the ampacity of such conductors is determined based on the 60°C (140°F) ampacity of the conductor size used;
3. Conductors with higher temperature ratings where the equipment is listed and identified for use with such conductors; or
4. For motors marked with design letters B, C, or D conductors having an insulation rating of 75°C (167°F) or higher shall be permitted to be used provided that the ampacity of such conductors does not exceed the 75°C (167°F) ampacity.

**E3705.4.2 Conductors rated 75°C.** Termination provisions of equipment for circuits rated over 100 amperes, or marked for conductors larger than 1 AWG, shall be used only for:

1. Conductors rated 75°C (167°F).
2. Conductors with higher temperature ratings provided that the ampacity of such conductors does not exceed the 75°C (167°F) ampacity of the conductor size used, or provided that the equipment is listed and identified for use with such conductors.

**E3705.4.3 Separately installed pressure connectors.** Separately installed pressure connectors shall be used with conductors at the ampacities not exceeding the ampacity at the listed and identified temperature rating of the connector.

**E3705.4.4 Conductors of Type NM cable.** Conductors in NM cable assemblies shall be rated at 90°C (194°F). Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable identified by the markings NM-B, NMC-B, and NMS-B meet this requirement. The ampacity of Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable shall be at 60°C (140°F) conductors and shall comply with Section E3705.1 and Table E3705.5.3. The 90°C (194°F) rating shall be permitted to be used for ampacity correction and adjustment purposes provided that the final corrected or adjusted ampacity does not exceed that for a 60°C (140°F) rated conductor. Where more than two NM cables containing two or more current-carrying conductors are installed, without maintaining spacing between the cables, through the same opening in wood framing that is to be fire- or draft-stopped using thermal insulation, caulk or sealing foam, the allowable ampacity of each conductor shall be adjusted in accordance with Table E3705.3. Where more than two NM cables containing two or more current-carrying conductors are installed in contact with thermal insulation without maintaining spacing between cables, the allowable ampacity of each conductor shall be adjusted in accordance with Table E3705.3.

**E3705.5 Overcurrent protection required.** All ungrounded branch-circuit and feeder conductors shall be protected against overcurrent by an overcurrent device installed at the point where the conductors receive their supply. Overcurrent devices shall not be connected in series with a grounded conductor. Overcurrent protection and allowable loads for branch circuits and feeders that do not serve as the main power feeder to the dwelling unit load shall be in accordance with this chapter.

Branch-circuit conductors and equipment shall be protected by overcurrent protective devices having a rating or setting not exceeding the allowable ampacity specified in Table E3705.1 and Sections E3705.2, E3705.3 and E3705.4 except where otherwise permitted or required in Sections E3705.5.1 through E3705.5.3.

**E3705.5.1 Cords.** Cords shall be protected in accordance with Section E3909.2.

**E3705.5.2 Overcurrent devices of the next higher rating.** The next higher standard overcurrent device rating, above the ampacity of the conductors being protected, shall be permitted to be used, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. The conductors being protected are not part of a multioutlet branch circuit supplying receptacles for cord- and plug-connected portable loads.
2. The ampacity of conductors does not correspond with the standard ampere rating of a fuse or a circuit breaker without overload trip adjustments above its rating (but that shall be permitted to have other trip or rating adjustments).
3. The next higher standard device rating does not exceed 400 amperes.

**E3705.5.3 Small conductors.** Except as specifically permitted by Section E3705.5.4, the rating of overcurrent protection devices shall not exceed the ratings shown in Table E3705.5.3 for the conductors specified therein.

**E3705.5.4 Air-conditioning and heat pump equipment.** Air-conditioning and heat pump equipment circuit conductors shall be permitted to be protected against overcurrent in accordance with Section E3702.11.

**E3705.6 Fuses and fixed trip circuit breakers.** The standard ampere ratings for fuses and inverse time circuit breakers shall be considered 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 125, 150, 175, 200, 225, 250, 300, 350 and 400 amperes.

**TABLE E3705.5.3**
**OVERCURRENT-PROTECTION RATING**

| COPPER | | ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Size (AWG) | Maximum overcurrent-protection-device rating[a] (amps) | Size (AWG) | Maximum overcurrent-protection-device rating[a] (amps) |
| 14 | 15 | 12 | 15 |
| 12 | 20 | 10 | 25 |
| 10 | 30 | 8 | 30 |

a. The maximum overcurrent-protection-device rating shall not exceed the conductor allowable ampacity determined by the application of the correction and adjustment factors in accordance with Sections E3705.2 and E3705.3.

**E3705.7 Location of overcurrent devices in or on premises.** Overcurrent devices shall:

1. Be readily accessible.
2. Not be located where they will be exposed to physical damage.
3. Not be located where they will be in the vicinity of easily ignitible material such as in clothes closets.
4. Not be located in bathrooms.
5. Not be located over steps of a stairway.
6. Be installed so that the center of the grip of the operating handle of the switch or circuit breaker, when in its highest position, is not more than 6 feet 7 inches (2007 mm) above the floor or working platform.

**Exceptions:**

1. This section shall not apply to supplementary overcurrent protection that is integral to utilization equipment.
2. Overcurrent devices installed adjacent to the utilization equipment that they supply shall be permitted to be accessible by portable means.

**E3705.8 Ready access for occupants.** Each occupant shall have ready access to all overcurrent devices protecting the conductors supplying that occupancy.

**E3705.9 Enclosures for overcurrent devices.** Overcurrent devices shall be enclosed in cabinets or cutout boxes except where an overcurrent device is part of an assembly that provides equivalent protection. The operating handle of a circuit breaker shall be permitted to be accessible without opening a door or cover.

## SECTION E3706 PANELBOARDS

**E3706.1 Panelboard rating.** All panelboards shall have a rating not less than that of the minimum service entrance or feeder capacity required for the calculated load.

**E3706.2 Panelboard circuit identification.** All circuits and circuit modifications shall be legibly identified as to their clear, evident, and specific purpose or use. The identification shall include sufficient detail to allow each circuit to be distinguished from all others. Spare positions that contain unused overcurrent devices or switches shall be described accordingly. The identification shall be included in a circuit directory located on the face of the panelboard enclosure or inside the panel door. Circuits shall not be described in a manner that depends on transient conditions of occupancy.

**E3706.3 Panelboard overcurrent protection.** In addition to the requirement of Section E3706.1, a panelboard shall be protected by an overcurrent protective device having a rating not greater than that of the panelboard. Such overcurrent protective device shall be located within or at any point on the supply side of the panelboard.

**E3706.4 Grounded conductor terminations.** Each grounded conductor shall terminate within the panelboard on an individual terminal that is not also used for another conductor, except that grounded conductors of circuits with parallel conductors shall be permitted to terminate on a single terminal where the terminal is identified for connection of more than one conductor.

**E3706.5 Back-fed devices.** Plug-in-type overcurrent protection devices or plug-in-type main lug assemblies that are back-fed and used to terminate field-installed ungrounded supply conductors shall be secured in place by an additional fastener that requires other than a pull to release the device from the mounting means on the panel.

# CHAPTER 38

# WIRING METHODS

Chapter 38 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 38

# WIRING METHODS

## SECTION E3801
## GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**E3801.1 Scope.** This chapter covers the wiring methods for services, feeders and branch circuits for electrical power and distribution.

**E3801.2 Allowable wiring methods.** The allowable wiring methods for electrical installations shall be those listed in Table E3801.2. Single conductors shall be used only where part of one of the recognized wiring methods listed in Table E3801.2. As used in this code, abbreviations of the wiring-method types shall be as indicated in Table E3801.2.

**TABLE E3801.2**
**ALLOWABLE WIRING METHODS**

| ALLOWABLE WIRING METHOD | DESIGNATED ABBREVIATION |
|---|---|
| Armored cable | AC |
| Electrical metallic tubing | EMT |
| Electrical nonmetallic tubing | ENT |
| Flexible metal conduit | FMC |
| Intermediate metal conduit | IMC |
| Liquidtight flexible conduit | LFC |
| Metal-clad cable | MC |
| Nonmetallic sheathed cable | NM |
| Rigid nonmetallic conduit | RNC |
| Rigid metallic conduit | RMC |
| Service entrance cable | SE |
| Surface raceways | SR |
| Underground feeder cable | UF |
| Underground service cable | USE |

**E3801.3 Circuit conductors.** All conductors of a circuit, including equipment grounding conductors and bonding conductors, shall be contained in the same raceway, trench, cable or cord.

**E3801.4 Wiring method applications.** Wiring methods shall be applied in accordance with Table E3801.4.

## SECTION E3802
## ABOVE-GROUND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

**E3802.1 Installation and support requirements.** Wiring methods shall be installed and supported in accordance with Table E3802.1.

**E3802.2 Cables in accessible attics.** Cables in attics or roof spaces provided with access shall be installed as specified in Sections E3802.2.1 and E3802.2.2.

**E3802.2.1 Across structural members.** Where run across the top of floor joists, or run within 7 feet (2134 mm) of floor or floor joists across the face of rafters or studding, in attics and roof spaces that are provided with access, the cable shall be protected by substantial guard strips that are at least as high as the cable. Where such spaces are not provided with access by permanent stairs or ladders, protection shall only be required within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the nearest edge of the attic entrance.

**E3802.2.2 Cable installed through or parallel to framing members.** Where cables are installed through or parallel to the sides of rafters, studs or floor joists, guard strips and running boards shall not be required, and the installation shall comply with Table E3802.1.

**E3802.3 Exposed cable.** In exposed work, except as provided for in Sections E3802.2 and E3802.4, cable assemblies shall be installed as specified in Sections E3802.3.1 and E3802.3.2.

**E3802.3.1 Surface installation.** Cables shall closely follow the surface of the building finish or running boards.

**E3802.3.2 Protection from physical damage.** Where subject to physical damage, cables shall be protected by rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, Schedule 80 PVC rigid nonmetallic conduit, or other approved means. Where passing through a floor, the cable shall be enclosed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, Schedule 80 PVC rigid nonmetallic conduit or other approved means extending not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the floor.

**E3802.3.3 Locations exposed to direct sunlight.** Insulated conductors and cables used where exposed to direct rays of the sun shall be listed or listed and marked, as being "sunlight resistant," or shall be covered with insulating material, such as tape or sleeving, that is listed or listed and marked as being "sunlight resistant."

**E3802.4 In unfinished basements and crawl spaces.** Where type SE or NM cable is run at angles with joists in unfinished basements and crawl spaces, cable assemblies containing two or more conductors of sizes 6 AWG and larger and assemblies containing three or more conductors of sizes 8 AWG and larger shall not require additional protection where attached directly to the bottom of the joists. Smaller cables shall be run either through bored holes in joists or on running boards. NM cable installed on the wall of an unfinished basement shall be permitted to be installed in a listed conduit or tubing or shall be protected in accordance with Table E3802.1. Conduit or tubing shall be provided with a suitable insulating bushing or adapter at the point the where cable enters the raceway. The NM or SE cable sheath shall extend through the conduit or tubing and into the outlet or device box not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). The cable shall be secured within 12 inches (305 mm) of the point where the cable enters the conduit or tubing. Metal conduit, tubing, and metal outlet boxes shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor.

**TABLE E3801.4**
**ALLOWABLE APPLICATIONS FOR WIRING METHODS[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k]**

| ALLOWABLE APPLICATIONS (application allowed where marked with an "A") | AC | EMT | ENT | FMC | IMC RMC RNC | LFC[a] | MC | NM | SR | SE | UF | USE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Services | — | A | A[h] | A[i] | A | A[i] | A | — | — | A | — | A |
| Feeders | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | — | A[b] | A | A[b] |
| Branch circuits | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A[c] | A | — |
| Inside a building | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | — |
| Wet locations exposed to sunlight | — | A | A[h] | — | A | A | A | — | — | A | A[e] | A[e] |
| Damp locations | — | A | A | A[d] | A | A | A | — | — | A | A | A |
| Embedded in noncinder concrete in dry location | — | A | A | — | A | A[j] | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| In noncinder concrete in contact with grade | — | A[f] | A | — | A[f] | A[j] | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| Embedded in plaster not exposed to dampness | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | — | — | A | A | — |
| Embedded in masonry | — | A | A | — | A[f] | A | A | — | — | — | — | — |
| In masonry voids and cells exposed to dampness or below grade line | — | A[f] | A | A[d] | A[f] | A | A | — | — | A | A | — |
| Fished in masonry voids | A | — | — | A | — | A | A | A | — | A | A | — |
| In masonry voids and cells not exposed to dampness | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | — | A | A | — |
| Run exposed | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | A | — |
| Run exposed and subject to physical damage | — | — | — | — | A[g] | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| For direct burial | — | A[f] | — | — | A[f] | A | A[f] | — | — | — | A | A |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Liquid-tight flexible nonmetallic conduit without integral reinforcement within the conduit wall shall not exceed 6 feet in length.
b. The grounded conductor shall be insulated except where used to supply other buildings on the same premises. Type USE cable shall not be used inside buildings.
c. The grounded conductor shall be insulated.
d. Conductors shall be a type approved for wet locations and the installation shall prevent water from entering other raceways.
e. Shall be listed as "Sunlight Resistant."
f. Metal raceways shall be protected from corrosion and approved for the application. Aluminum RMC requires approved supplementary corrosion protection.
g. RNC shall be Schedule 80.
h. Shall be listed as "Sunlight Resistant" where exposed to the direct rays of the sun.
i. Conduit shall not exceed 6 feet in length.
j. Liquid-tight flexible nonmetallic conduit is permitted to be encased in concrete where listed for direct burial and only straight connectors listed for use with LFNC are used.
k. In wet locations under any of the following conditions:
   a. The metallic covering is impervious to moisture.
   b. A lead sheath or moisture-impervious jacket is provided under the metal covering.
   c. The insulated conductors under the metallic covering are listed for use in wet locations and a corrosion-resistant jacket is provided over the metallic sheath.

**TABLE E3802.1**
**GENERAL INSTALLATION AND SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR WIRING METHODS[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k]**

| INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS (Requirement applicable only to wiring methods marked "A" ) | AC MC | EMT IMC RMC | ENT | FMC LFC | NM UF | RNC | SE | SR[a] | USE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Where run parallel with the framing member or furring strip, the wiring shall be not less than 1 1/4 inches from the edge of a furring strip or a framing member such as a joist, rafter or stud or shall be physically protected. | A | — | A | A | A | — | A | — | — |
| Bored holes in framing members for wiring shall be located not less than 1 1/4 inches from the edge of the framing member or shall be protected with a minimum 0.0625-inch steel plate or sleeve, a listed steel plate or other physical protection. | A[k] | — | A[k] | A[k] | A[k] | — | A[k] | — | — |
| Where installed in grooves, to be covered by wallboard, siding, paneling, carpeting, or similar finish, wiring methods shall be protected by 0.0625-inch-thick steel plate, sleeve, or equivalent, a listed steel plate or by not less than 1 1/4-inch free space for the full length of the groove in which the cable or raceway is installed. | A | — | A | A | A | — | A | A | A |
| Securely fastened bushings or grommets shall be provided to protect wiring run through openings in metal framing members. | — | — | A[j] | — | A[j] | — | A[j] | — | — |
| The maximum number of 90-degree bends shall not exceed four between junction boxes. | — | A | A | A | — | A | — | — | — |
| Bushings shall be provided where entering a box, fitting or enclosure unless the box or fitting is designed to afford equivalent protection. | A | A | A | A | — | A | — | A | — |
| Ends of raceways shall be reamed to remove rough edges. | — | A | A | A | — | A | — | A | — |
| Maximum allowable on center support spacing for the wiring method in feet. | 4.5[b, c] | 10[l] | 3[b] | 4.5b | 4.5[i] | 3[d,l] | 2.5[e] | — | 2.5[e] |
| Maximum support distance in inches from box or other terminations. | 12[b, f] | 36 | 36 | 12[b,g] | 12[h,i] | 36 | 12 | — | 12 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

a. Installed in accordance with listing requirements.
b. Supports not required in accessible ceiling spaces between light fixtures where lengths do not exceed 6 feet.
c. Six feet for MC cable.
d. Five feet for trade sizes greater than 1 inch.
e. Two and one-half feet where used for service or outdoor feeder and 4.5 feet where used for branch circuit or indoor feeder.
f. Twenty-four inches where flexibility is necessary.
g. Thirty-six inches where flexibility is necessary.
h. Within 8 inches of boxes without cable clamps.
i. Flat cables shall not be stapled on edge.
j. Bushings and grommets shall remain in place and shall be listed for the purpose of cable protection.
k. See Sections R502.8 and R802.7 for additional limitations on the location of bored holes in horizontal framing members.
l. Where oversized, concentric or eccentric knockouts are not encountered, a raceway not greater than 18 inches in length shall not require support where it is a continuous length without couplings. Such raceways shall terminate at an outlet box, junction box, device box, cabinet, or other termination at each end of the raceway.

**E3802.5 Bends.** Bends shall be made so as not to damage the wiring method or reduce the internal diameter of raceways.

For types NM and SE cable, bends shall be so made, and other handling shall be such that the cable will not be damaged and the radius of the curve of the inner edge of any bend shall be not less than five times the diameter of the cable.

**E3802.6 Raceways exposed to different temperatures.** Where portions of a cable, raceway or sleeve are known to be subjected to different temperatures and where condensation is known to be a problem, as in cold storage areas of buildings or where passing from the interior to the exterior of a building, the raceway or sleeve shall be filled with an approved material to prevent the circulation of warm air to a colder section of the raceway or sleeve.

**E3802.7 Raceways in wet locations above grade.** Where raceways are installed in wet locations abovegrade, the interior of such raceways shall be considered to be a wet location. Insulated conductors and cables installed in raceways in wet locations abovegrade shall be listed for use in wet locations.

## SECTION E3803 UNDERGROUND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

**E3803.1 Minimum cover requirements.** Direct buried cable or raceways shall be installed in accordance with the minimum cover requirements of Table E3803.1.

**E3803.2 Warning ribbon.** Underground service conductors that are not encased in concrete and that are buried 18 inches (457 mm) or more below grade shall have their location identified by a warning ribbon that is placed in the trench not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the underground installation.

**E3803.3 Protection from damage.** Direct buried conductors and cables emerging from the ground shall be protected by enclosures or raceways extending from the minimum cover

**TABLE E3803.1**
**MINIMUM COVER REQUIREMENTS, BURIAL IN INCHES[a, b, c, d, e]**

| LOCATION OF WIRING METHOD OR CIRCUIT | TYPE OF WIRING METHOD OR CIRCUIT | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1<br>Direct burial cables or conductors | 2<br>Rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit | 3<br>Nonmetallic raceways listed for direct burial without concrete encasement or other approved raceways | 4<br>Residential branch circuits rated 120 volts or less with GFCI protection and maximum overcurrent protection of 20 amperes | 5<br>Circuits for control of irrigation and landscape lighting limited to not more than 30 volts and installed with type UF or in other identified cable or raceway |
| All locations not specified below | 24 | 6 | 18 | 12 | 6 |
| In trench below 2-inch-thick concrete or equivalent | 18 | 6 | 12 | 6 | 6 |
| Under a building | 0 (In raceway only) | 0 | 0 | 0 (In raceway only) | 0 (In raceway only) |
| Under minimum of 4-inch-thick concrete exterior slab with no vehicular traffic and the slab extending not less than 6 inches beyond the underground installation | 18 | 4 | 4 | 6 (Direct burial)<br>4 (In raceway) | 6 (Direct burial)<br>4 (In raceway) |
| Under streets, highways, roads, alleys, driveways and parking lots | 24 | 24 | 24 | 24 | 24 |
| One- and two-family dwelling driveways and outdoor parking areas, and used only for dwelling-related purposes | 18 | 18 | 18 | 12 | 18 |
| In solid rock where covered by minimum of 2 inches concrete extending down to rock | 2 (In raceway only) | 2 | 2 | 2 (In raceway only) | 2 (In raceway only) |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Raceways approved for burial only where encased concrete shall require concrete envelope not less than 2 inches thick.

b. Lesser depths shall be permitted where cables and conductors rise for terminations or splices or where access is otherwise required.

c. Where one of the wiring method types listed in columns 1 to 3 is combined with one of the circuit types in columns 4 and 5, the shallower depth of burial shall be permitted.

d. Where solid rock prevents compliance with the cover depths specified in this table, the wiring shall be installed in metal or nonmetallic raceway permitted for direct burial. The raceways shall be covered by a minimum of 2 inches of concrete extending down to the rock.

e. Cover is defined as the shortest distance in inches (millimeters) measured between a point on the top surface of any direct-buried conductor, cable, conduit or other raceway and the top surface of finished grade, concrete, or similar cover.

distance below grade required by Section E3803.1 to a point at least 8 feet (2438 mm) above finished grade. In no case shall the protection be required to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) below finished grade. Conductors entering a building shall be protected to the point of entrance. Where the enclosure or raceway is subject to physical damage, the conductors shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, Schedule 80 rigid nonmetallic conduit or the equivalent.

**E3803.4 Splices and taps.** Direct buried conductors or cables shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped without the use of splice boxes. The splices or taps shall be made by approved methods with materials listed for the application.

**E3803.5 Backfill.** Backfill containing large rock, paving materials, cinders, large or sharply angular substances, or corrosive material shall not be placed in an excavation where such materials cause damage to raceways, cables or other substructures or prevent adequate compaction of fill or contribute to corrosion of raceways, cables or other substructures. Where necessary to prevent physical damage to the raceway or cable, protection shall be provided in the form of granular or selected material, suitable boards, suitable sleeves or other approved means.

**E3803.6 Raceway seals.** Conduits or raceways shall be sealed or plugged at either or both ends where moisture will enter and contact live parts.

**E3803.7 Bushing.** A bushing, or terminal fitting, with an integral bushed opening shall be installed on the end of a conduit or other raceway that terminates underground where the conductors or cables emerge as a direct burial wiring method. A seal incorporating the physical protection characteristics of a bushing shall be considered equivalent to a bushing.

**E3803.8 Single conductors.** All conductors of the same circuit and, where present, the grounded conductor and all equipment grounding conductors shall be installed in the same raceway or shall be installed in close proximity in the same trench.

> **Exception:** Where conductors are installed in parallel in raceways, each raceway shall contain all conductors of the same circuit including grounding conductors.

**E3803.9 Ground movement.** Where direct buried conductors, raceways or cables are subject to movement by settlement or frost, direct buried conductors, raceways or cables shall be arranged to prevent damage to the enclosed conductors or to equipment connected to the raceways.

**E3803.10 Wet locations.** The interior of enclosures or raceways installed underground shall be considered to be a wet location. Insulated conductors and cables installed in such enclosures or raceways in underground installations shall be listed for use in wet locations. Connections or splices in an underground installation shall be approved for wet locations.

**E3803.11 Under buildings.** Underground cable installed under a building shall be in a raceway.

# CHAPTER 39

# POWER AND LIGHTING DISTRIBUTION

Chapter 39 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 39

# POWER AND LIGHTING DISTRIBUTION

## SECTION E3901
## RECEPTACLE OUTLETS

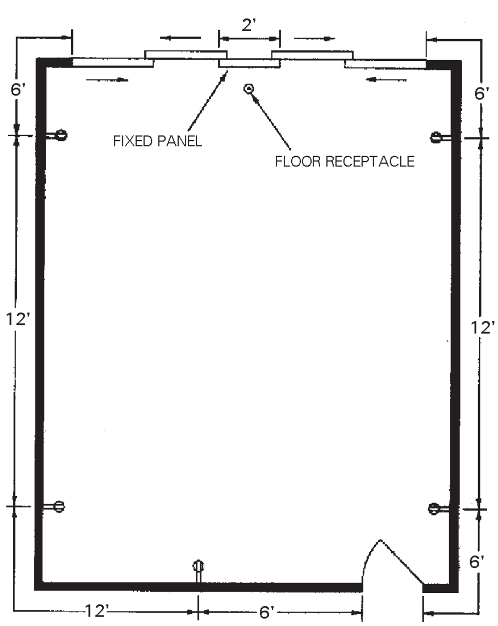
**E3901.1 General.** Outlets for receptacles rated at 125 volts, 15- and 20-amperes shall be provided in accordance with Sections E3901.2 through E3901.11. Receptacle outlets required by this section shall be in addition to any receptacle that is:

1. Part of a luminaire or appliance;
2. Located within cabinets or cupboards;
3. Controlled by a wall switch in accordance with Section E3903.2, Exception 1; or
4. Located over 5.5 feet (1676 mm) above the floor.

Permanently installed electric baseboard heaters equipped with factory-installed receptacle outlets, or outlets provided as a separate assembly by the baseboard manufacturer shall be permitted as the required outlet or outlets for the wall space utilized by such permanently installed heaters. Such receptacle outlets shall not be connected to the heater circuits.

**E3901.2 General purpose receptacle distribution.** In every kitchen, family room, dining room, living room, parlor, library, den, sun room, bedroom, recreation room, or similar room or area of dwelling units, receptacle outlets shall be installed in accordance with the general provisions specified in Sections E3901.2.1 through E3901.2.3 (see Figure E3901.2).

**E3901.2.1 Spacing.** Receptacles shall be installed so that no point measured horizontally along the floor line in any wall space is more than 6 feet 1829 mm, from a receptacle outlet.




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE E3901.2**
**GENERAL USE RECEPTACLE DISTRIBUTION**

**E3901.2.2 Wall space.** As used in this section, a wall space shall include the following:

1. Any space that is 2 feet (610 mm) or more in width, including space measured around corners, and that is unbroken along the floor line by doorways, fireplaces, and similar openings.
2. The space occupied by fixed panels in exterior walls, excluding sliding panels.
3. The space created by fixed room dividers such as railings and freestanding bar-type counters.

**E3901.2.3 Floor receptacles.** Receptacle outlets in floors shall not be counted as part of the required number of receptacle outlets except where located within 18 inches (457 mm) of the wall.

**E3901.3 Small appliance receptacles.** In the kitchen, pantry, breakfast room, dining room, or similar area of a dwelling unit, the two or more 20-ampere small-appliance branch circuits required by Section E3703.2, shall serve all wall and floor receptacle outlets covered by Sections E3901.2 and E3901.4 and those receptacle outlets provided for refrigeration appliances.

**Exceptions:**

1. In addition to the required receptacles specified by Sections E3901.1 and E3901.2, switched receptacles supplied from a general-purpose branch circuit as defined in Section E3903.2, Exception 1 shall be permitted.
2. The receptacle outlet for refrigeration appliances shall be permitted to be supplied from an individual branch circuit rated at 15 amperes or greater.

**E3901.3.1 Other outlets prohibited.** The two or more small-appliance branch circuits specified in Section E3901.3 shall serve no other outlets.

**Exceptions:**

1. A receptacle installed solely for the electrical supply to and support of an electric clock in any of the rooms specified in Section E3901.3.
2. Receptacles installed to provide power for supplemental equipment and lighting on gas-fired ranges, ovens, and counter-mounted cooking units.

**E3901.3.2 Limitations.** Receptacles installed in a kitchen to serve countertop surfaces shall be supplied by not less than two small-appliance branch circuits, either or both of which shall also be permitted to supply receptacle outlets in the same kitchen and in other rooms specified in Section E3901.3. Additional small-appliance branch circuits shall be permitted to supply receptacle outlets in the kitchen and other rooms specified in Section E3901.3. A small-appliance branch circuit shall not serve more than one kitchen.

**E3901.4 Countertop receptacles.** In kitchens pantries, breakfast rooms, dining rooms and similar areas of dwelling units, receptacle outlets for countertop spaces shall be installed in accordance with Sections E3901.4.1 through E3901.4.5 (see Figure E3901.4). Where a range, counter-mounted cooking unit, or sink is installed in an island or peninsular countertop and the width of the countertop behind the range, counter-mounted cooking unit, or sink is less than 12 inches (305 mm), the range, counter-mounted cooking unit, or sink has divided the countertop space into two separate countertop spaces as defined in Section E3901.4.4. Each separate countertop space shall comply with the applicable requirements of this section.

**E3901.4.1 Wall countertop space.** A receptacle outlet shall be installed at each wall countertop space 12 inches (305 mm) or wider. Receptacle outlets shall be installed so that no point along the wall line is more than 24 inches (610 mm), measured horizontally from a receptacle outlet in that space.

**Exception:** Receptacle outlets shall not be required on a wall directly behind a range, counter-mounted cooking unit or sink in the installation described in Figure E3901.4.1.

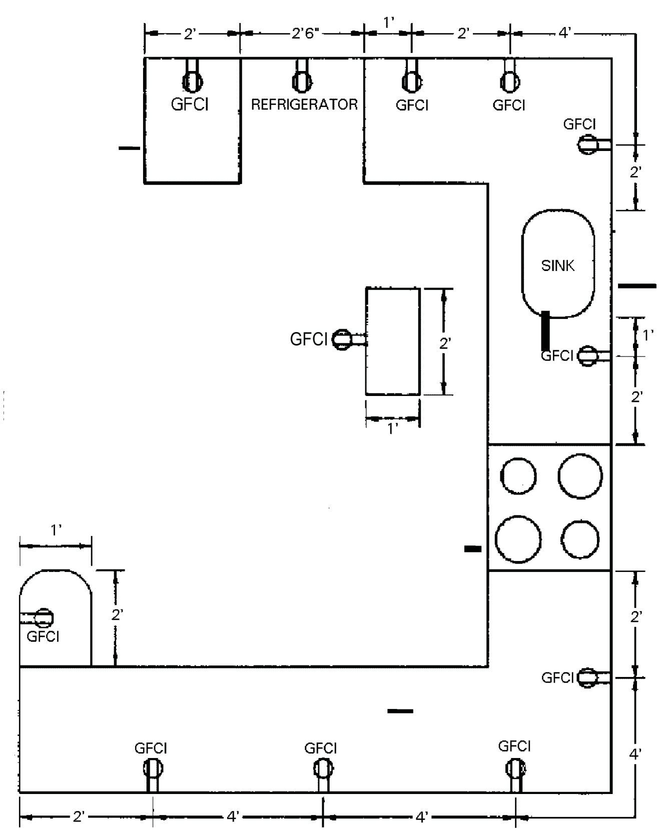
**E3901.4.2 Island countertop spaces.** At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed at each island countertop space with a long dimension of 24 inches (610 mm) or greater and a short dimension of 12 inches (305 mm) or greater.

**E3901.4.3 Peninsular countertop space.** At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed at each peninsular countertop space with a long dimension of 24 inches (610 mm) or greater and a short dimension of 12 inches (305 mm) or greater. A peninsular countertop is measured from the connecting edge.

**E3901.4.4 Separate spaces.** Countertop spaces separated by range tops, refrigerators, or sinks shall be considered as separate countertop spaces in applying the requirements of Sections E3901.4.1, E3901.4.2 and E3901.4.3.

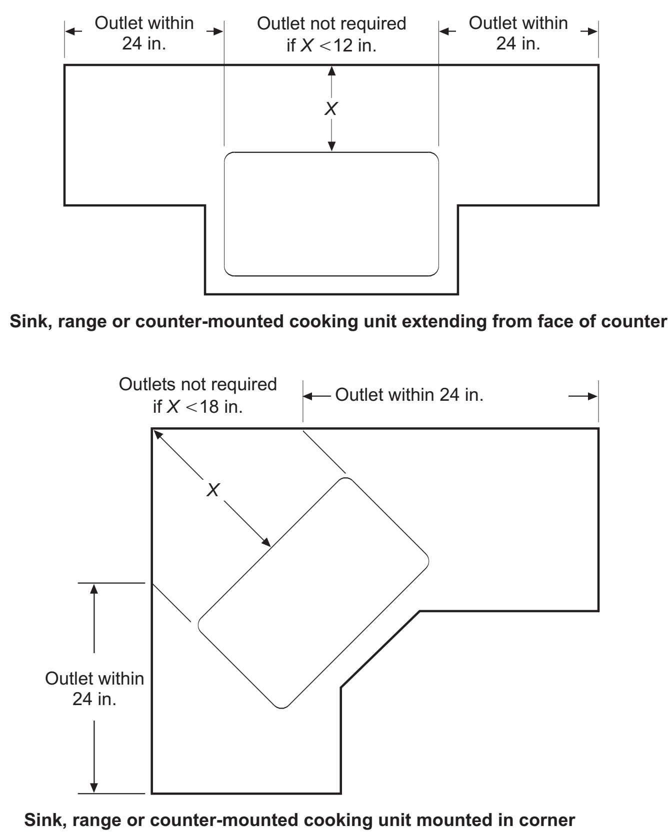
**E3901.4.5 Receptacle outlet location.** Receptacle outlets shall be located not more than 20 inches (508 mm) above the countertop. Receptacle outlets shall not be installed in a face-up position in the work surfaces or countertops. Receptacle outlets rendered not readily accessible by appliances fastened in place, appliance garages, sinks or rangetops as addressed in the exception to Section E3901.4.1, or appliances occupying dedicated space shall not be considered as these required outlets.

**Exception:** Receptacle outlets shall be permitted to be mounted not more than 12 inches (305 mm) below the countertop in construction designed for the physically impaired and for island and peninsular countertops where the countertop is flat across its entire surface and there are no means to mount a receptacle within 20 inches (508 mm)




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE E3901.4**
**COUNTERTOP RECEPTACLES**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE E3901.4.1**
**DETERMINATION OF AREA BEHIND SINK OR RANGE**

above the countertop, such as in an overhead cabinet. Receptacles mounted below the countertop in accordance with this exception shall not be located where the countertop extends more than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond its support base.

**E3901.5 Appliance receptacle outlets.** Appliance receptacle outlets installed for specific appliances, such as laundry equipment, shall be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the intended location of the appliance.

**E3901.6 Bathroom.** At least one wall receptacle outlet shall be installed in bathrooms and such outlet shall be located within 36 inches (914 mm) of the outside edge of each lavatory basin. The receptacle outlet shall be located on a wall or partition that is adjacent to the lavatory basin location, or installed on the side or face of the basin cabinet not more than 12 inches (305 mm) below the countertop.

Receptacle outlets shall not be installed in a face-up position in the work surfaces or countertops in a bathroom basin location.

**E3901.7 Outdoor outlets.** At least one receptacle outlet that is accessible while standing at grade level and located not more than 6 feet, 6 inches (1981 mm) above grade, shall be installed outdoors at the front and back of each dwelling unit having direct access to grade. Balconies, decks, and porches that are accessible from inside of the dwelling unit and that have a usable area of 20 square feet (1.86 $m^2$) or greater shall have at least one receptacle outlet installed within the perimeter of the balcony, deck, or porch. The receptacle shall be located not more than 6 feet, 6 inches (1981 mm) above the balcony, deck, or porch surface.

**E3901.8 Laundry areas.** At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed to serve laundry appliances.

**E3901.9 Basements and garages.** At least one receptacle outlet, in addition to any provided for specific equipment, shall be installed in each basement and in each attached garage, and in each detached garage that is provided with electrical power. Where a portion of the basement is finished into one or more habitable room(s), each separate unfinished portion shall have a receptacle outlet installed in accordance with this section.

**E3901.10 Hallways.** Hallways of 10 feet (3048 mm) or more in length shall have at least one receptacle outlet. The hall length shall be considered the length measured along the centerline of the hall without passing through a doorway.

**E3901.11 HVAC outlet.** A 125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere-rated receptacle outlet shall be installed at an accessible location for the servicing of heating, air-conditioning and refrigeration equipment. The receptacle shall be located on the same level and within 25 feet (7620 mm) of the heating, air-conditioning and refrigeration equipment. The receptacle outlet shall not be connected to the load side of the HVAC equipment disconnecting means.

**Exception:** A receptacle outlet shall not be required for the servicing of evaporative coolers.

## SECTION E3902
## GROUND-FAULT AND ARC-FAULT CIRCUIT-INTERRUPTER PROTECTION

**E3902.1 Bathroom receptacles.** All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in bathrooms shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

**E3902.2 Garage and accessory building receptacles.** All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere receptacles installed in garages and grade-level portions of unfinished accessory buildings used for storage or work areas shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

**E3902.3 Outdoor receptacles.** All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed outdoors shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

**Exception:** Receptacles as covered in Section E4101.7.

**E3902.4 Crawl space receptacles.** Where a crawl space is at or below grade level, all 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in such spaces shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

**E3902.5 Unfinished basement receptacles.** All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in unfinished basements shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel. For purposes of this section, unfinished basements are defined as portions or areas of the basement not intended as habitable rooms and limited to storage areas, work areas, and the like.

**Exception:** A receptacle supplying only a permanently installed fire alarm or burglar alarm system.

**E3902.6 Kitchen receptacles.** All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles that serve countertop surfaces shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

**E3902.7 Laundry, utility, and bar sink receptacles.** All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles that are located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the outside edge of a laundry, utility or wet bar sink shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel. Receptacle outlets shall not be installed in a face-up position in the work surfaces or countertops.

**E3902.8 Boathouse receptacles.** All 125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere receptacles installed in boathouses shall have ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

**E3902.9 Boat hoists.** Ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel shall be provided for 240-volt and less outlets that supply boat hoists.

**E3902.10 Electrically heated floors.** Ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel shall be provided for electrically heated floors in bathrooms, and in hydromassage bathtub, spa and hot tub locations.

**E3902.11 Arc-fault circuit-interrupter protection.** All branch circuits that supply 120-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere outlets installed in family rooms, dining rooms, living rooms, parlors, libraries, dens, bedrooms, sunrooms, recreations rooms, closets, hallways and similar rooms or areas shall be protected by a combination type arc-fault circuit interrupter installed to provide protection of the branch circuit.

**Exception:**

1. Where a combination AFCI is installed at the first outlet to provide protection for the remaining portion of the branch circuit, the portion of the branch circuit between the branch-circuit overcurrent device and such outlet shall be wired with metal outlet and junction boxes and RMC, IMC, EMT or steel armored cable, Type AC meeting the requirements of Section E3908.8.
2. AFCI protection is not required for a branch circuit supplying only a fire alarm system where the branch circuit is wired with metal outlet and junction boxes and RMC, IMC, EMT or steel armored cable Type AC meeting the requirements of Section E3908.8.

## SECTION E3903 LIGHTING OUTLETS

**E3903.1 General.** Lighting outlets shall be provided in accordance with Sections E3903.2 through E3903.4.

**E3903.2 Habitable rooms.** At least one wall switch-controlled lighting outlet shall be installed in every habitable room and bathroom.

**Exceptions:**

1. In other than kitchens and bathrooms, one or more receptacles controlled by a wall switch shall be considered equivalent to the required lighting outlet.
2. Lighting outlets shall be permitted to be controlled by occupancy sensors that are in addition to wall switches, or that are located at a customary wall switch location and equipped with a manual override that will allow the sensor to function as a wall switch.

**E3903.3 Additional locations.** At least one wall-switch-controlled lighting outlet shall be installed in hallways, stairways, attached garages, and detached garages with electric power. At least one wall-switch-controlled lighting outlet shall be installed to provide illumination on the exterior side of each outdoor egress door having grade level access, including outdoor egress doors for attached garages and detached garages with electric power. A vehicle door in a garage shall not be considered as an outdoor egress door. Where one or more lighting outlets are installed for interior stairways, there shall be a wall switch at each floor level and landing level that includes an entryway to control the lighting outlets where the stairway between floor levels has six or more risers.

**Exception:** In hallways, stairways, and at outdoor egress doors, remote, central, or automatic control of lighting shall be permitted.

**E3903.4 Storage or equipment spaces.** In attics, under-floor spaces, utility rooms and basements, at least one lighting outlet shall be installed where these spaces are used for storage or contain equipment requiring servicing. Such lighting outlet shall be controlled by a wall switch or shall have an integral switch. At least one point of control shall be at the usual point of entry to these spaces. The lighting outlet shall be provided at or near the equipment requiring servicing.

## SECTION E3904 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

**E3904.1 Electrical continuity of metal raceways and enclosures.** Metal raceways, cable armor and other metal enclosures for conductors shall be mechanically joined together into a continuous electric conductor and shall be connected to all boxes, fittings and cabinets so as to provide effective electrical continuity. Raceways and cable assemblies shall be mechanically secured to boxes, fittings cabinets and other enclosures.

**Exception:** Short sections of raceway used to provide cable assemblies with support or protection against physical damage.

**E3904.2 Mechanical continuity—raceways and cables.** Metal or nonmetallic raceways, cable armors and cable sheaths shall be continuous between cabinets, boxes, fittings or other enclosures or outlets.

**Exception:** Short sections of raceway used to provide cable assemblies with support or protection against physical damage.

**E3904.3 Securing and supporting.** Raceways, cable assemblies, boxes, cabinets and fittings shall be securely fastened in place.

**E3904.3.1 Prohibited means of support.** Cable wiring methods shall not be used as a means of support for other cables, raceways and nonelectrical equipment.

**E3904.4 Raceways as means of support.** Raceways shall be used as a means of support for other raceways, cables or nonelectric equipment only under the following conditions:

1. Where the raceway or means of support is identified for the purpose; or
2. Where the raceway contains power supply conductors for electrically controlled equipment and is used to support Class 2 circuit conductors or cables that are solely for the purpose of connection to the control circuits of the equipment served by such raceway; or
3. Where the raceway is used to support boxes or conduit bodies in accordance with Sections E3906.8.4 and E3906.8.5.

**E3904.5 Raceway installations.** Raceways shall be installed complete between outlet, junction or splicing points prior to the installation of conductors.

**Exception:** Short sections of raceways used to contain conductors or cable assemblies for protection from physical damage shall not be required to be installed complete between outlet, junction, or splicing points.

**E3904.6 Conduit and tubing fill.** The maximum number of conductors installed in conduit or tubing shall be in accordance with Tables E3904.6(1) through E3904.6(10).

**E3904.7 Air handling—stud cavity and joist spaces.** Where wiring methods having a nonmetallic covering pass through stud cavities and joist spaces used for air handling, such wiring shall pass through such spaces perpendicular to the long dimension of the spaces.

**TABLE E3904.6(1)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 4 | 7 | 11 | 20 | 27 | 46 |
| | 12 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 17 | 23 | 38 |
| | 10 | 2 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| | 8 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 9 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| TW | 14 | 8 | 15 | 25 | 43 | 58 | 96 |
| | 12 | 6 | 11 | 19 | 33 | 45 | 74 |
| | 10 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 24 | 33 | 55 |
| | 8 | 2 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 28 | 39 | 64 |
| | 12 | 4 | 8 | 13 | 23 | 31 | 51 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 18 | 24 | 40 |
| | 8 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 24 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 11 | 18 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 12 | 22 | 35 | 61 | 84 | 138 |
| | 12 | 9 | 16 | 26 | 45 | 61 | 101 |
| | 10 | 5 | 10 | 16 | 28 | 38 | 63 |
| | 8 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 16 | 22 | 36 |
| | 6 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 16 | 26 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 8 | 15 | 25 | 43 | 58 | 96 |
| | 12 | 6 | 11 | 19 | 33 | 45 | 74 |
| | 10 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 24 | 33 | 55 |
| | 8 | 2 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 22 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(2)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN ELECTRICAL NONMETALLIC TUBING (ENT)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 19 | 26 | 43 |
| | 12 | 2 | 5 | 9 | 16 | 22 | 36 |
| | 10 | 1 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 17 | 29 |
| | 8 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 15 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| TW | 14 | 7 | 13 | 22 | 40 | 55 | 92 |
| | 12 | 5 | 10 | 17 | 31 | 42 | 71 |
| | 10 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 23 | 32 | 52 |
| | 8 | 1 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 17 | 29 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 4 | 8 | 15 | 27 | 37 | 61 |
| | 12 | 3 | 7 | 12 | 21 | 29 | 49 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 17 | 23 | 38 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 10 | 14 | 23 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 17 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 10 | 18 | 32 | 58 | 80 | 132 |
| | 12 | 7 | 13 | 23 | 42 | 58 | 96 |
| | 10 | 4 | 8 | 15 | 26 | 36 | 60 |
| | 8 | 2 | 5 | 8 | 15 | 21 | 35 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 25 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 7 | 13 | 22 | 40 | 55 | 92 |
| | 12 | 5 | 10 | 17 | 31 | 42 | 71 |
| | 10 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 23 | 32 | 52 |
| | 8 | 1 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 17 | 29 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 13 | 21 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(3)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN FLEXIBLE METALLIC CONDUIT (FMC)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 4 | 7 | 11 | 17 | 25 | 44 |
| | 12 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 14 | 21 | 37 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 | 17 | 30 |
| | 8 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 15 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 10 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| TW | 14 | 9 | 15 | 23 | 36 | 53 | 94 |
| | 12 | 7 | 11 | 18 | 28 | 41 | 72 |
| | 10 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 21 | 30 | 54 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 | 17 | 30 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 6 | 10 | 15 | 24 | 35 | 62 |
| | 12 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 19 | 28 | 50 |
| | 10 | 4 | 6 | 10 | 15 | 22 | 39 |
| | 8 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 13 | 23 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 18 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 13 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 11 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 10 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 13 | 22 | 33 | 52 | 76 | 134 |
| | 12 | 9 | 16 | 24 | 38 | 56 | 98 |
| | 10 | 6 | 10 | 15 | 24 | 35 | 62 |
| | 8 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 14 | 20 | 35 |
| | 6 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 25 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 9 | 15 | 23 | 36 | 53 | 94 |
| | 12 | 7 | 11 | 18 | 28 | 41 | 72 |
| | 10 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 21 | 30 | 54 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 | 17 | 30 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 12 | 22 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(4)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN INTERMEDIATE METALLIC CONDUIT (IMC)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 4 | 8 | 13 | 22 | 30 | 49 |
| | 12 | 4 | 6 | 11 | 18 | 25 | 41 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 15 | 20 | 33 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 10 | 17 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 11 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| TW | 14 | 10 | 17 | 27 | 47 | 64 | 104 |
| | 12 | 7 | 13 | 21 | 36 | 49 | 80 |
| | 10 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 27 | 36 | 59 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 15 | 20 | 33 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 6 | 11 | 18 | 31 | 42 | 69 |
| | 12 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 25 | 34 | 56 |
| | 10 | 4 | 7 | 11 | 19 | 26 | 43 |
| | 8 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 16 | 26 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 12 | 20 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 15 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 14 | 24 | 39 | 68 | 91 | 149 |
| | 12 | 10 | 17 | 29 | 49 | 67 | 109 |
| | 10 | 6 | 11 | 18 | 31 | 42 | 68 |
| | 8 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 18 | 24 | 39 |
| | 6 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 17 | 28 |
| | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 10 | 17 |
| | 3 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 | 15 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 9 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 8 |
| | 2/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 10 | 17 | 27 | 47 | 64 | 104 |
| | 12 | 7 | 13 | 21 | 36 | 49 | 80 |
| | 10 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 27 | 36 | 59 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 15 | 20 | 33 |
| | 6 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 24 |
| | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 11 | 18 |
| | 3 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 9 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 2/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(5)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN LIQUID-TIGHT FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC CONDUIT (FNMC-B)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3/8 | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 21 | 27 | 44 |
| | 12 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 17 | 22 | 36 |
| | 10 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 18 | 29 |
| | 8 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 7 | 12 |
| | 4 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| | 3 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| TW | 14 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 57 | 93 |
| | 12 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 43 | 71 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 25 | 32 | 53 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 18 | 29 |
| RHW[a], RGW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 29 | 38 | 62 |
| | 12 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 23 | 30 | 50 |
| | 10 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 18 | 23 | 39 |
| | 8 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 11 | 14 | 23 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 18 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 8 | 13 | 22 | 36 | 63 | 81 | 133 |
| | 12 | 5 | 9 | 16 | 26 | 46 | 59 | 97 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 29 | 37 | 61 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 16 | 21 | 35 |
| | 6 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 15 | 25 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 57 | 93 |
| | 12 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 43 | 71 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 25 | 32 | 53 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 18 | 29 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 13 | 22 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(6)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN LIQUID-TIGHT FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC CONDUIT (FNMC-A)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3/8 | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 11 | 20 | 27 | 45 |
| | 12 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 17 | 23 | 38 |
| | 10 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| | 8 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 13 |
| | 4 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 3 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| TW | 14 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 24 | 43 | 58 | 96 |
| | 12 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 44 | 74 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 24 | 33 | 55 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 28 | 38 | 64 |
| | 12 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 13 | 23 | 31 | 51 |
| | 10 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 18 | 24 | 40 |
| | 8 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 24 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 8 | 11 | 18 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 8 | 13 | 22 | 35 | 62 | 83 | 137 |
| | 12 | 5 | 9 | 16 | 25 | 45 | 60 | 100 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 28 | 38 | 63 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 16 | 22 | 36 |
| | 6 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 12 | 16 | 26 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 24 | 43 | 58 | 96 |
| | 12 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 44 | 74 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 24 | 33 | 55 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 10 | 13 | 22 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(7)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN LIQUID-TIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (LFMC)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 21 | 27 | 44 |
| | 12 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 17 | 22 | 36 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 18 | 29 |
| | 8 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 7 | 12 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| TW | 14 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 57 | 93 |
| | 12 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 43 | 71 |
| | 10 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 25 | 32 | 53 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 18 | 29 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 29 | 38 | 62 |
| | 12 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 23 | 30 | 50 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 18 | 23 | 39 |
| | 8 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 11 | 14 | 23 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 18 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 13 | 22 | 36 | 63 | 81 | 133 |
| | 12 | 9 | 16 | 26 | 46 | 59 | 97 |
| | 10 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 29 | 37 | 61 |
| | 8 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 16 | 21 | 35 |
| | 6 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 15 | 25 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 57 | 93 |
| | 12 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 43 | 71 |
| | 10 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 25 | 32 | 53 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 18 | 29 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 13 | 22 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(8)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 21 | 28 | 46 |
| | 12 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 17 | 23 | 38 |
| | 10 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 19 | 31 |
| | 8 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 16 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 9 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| TW | 14 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 59 | 98 |
| | 12 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 45 | 75 |
| | 10 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 25 | 34 | 56 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 19 | 31 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 6 | 10 | 17 | 29 | 39 | 65 |
| | 12 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 23 | 32 | 52 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 18 | 25 | 41 |
| | 8 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 24 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 18 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 13 | 22 | 36 | 63 | 85 | 140 |
| | 12 | 9 | 16 | 26 | 46 | 62 | 102 |
| | 10 | 6 | 10 | 17 | 29 | 39 | 64 |
| | 8 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 16 | 22 | 37 |
| | 6 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 16 | 27 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 59 | 98 |
| | 12 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 45 | 75 |
| | 10 | 5 | 9 | 14 | 25 | 34 | 56 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 14 | 19 | 31 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 23 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 9 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(9)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN RIGID PVC CONDUIT, SCHEDULE 80 (PVC-80)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 17 | 23 | 39 |
| | 12 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 14 | 19 | 32 |
| | 10 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 26 |
| | 8 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 11 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 3 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 6 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| TW | 14 | 6 | 11 | 20 | 35 | 49 | 82 |
| | 12 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 27 | 38 | 63 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 20 | 28 | 47 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 26 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 4 | 8 | 13 | 23 | 32 | 55 |
| | 12 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 19 | 26 | 44 |
| | 10 | 2 | 5 | 8 | 15 | 20 | 34 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 12 | 20 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 9 | 17 | 28 | 51 | 70 | 118 |
| | 12 | 6 | 12 | 20 | 37 | 51 | 86 |
| | 10 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 23 | 32 | 54 |
| | 8 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 18 | 31 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 13 | 22 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 6 | 11 | 20 | 35 | 49 | 82 |
| | 12 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 27 | 38 | 63 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 20 | 28 | 47 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 26 |
| | 6 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 11 | 19 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 14 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

**TABLE E3904.6(10)**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN RIGID PVC CONDUIT SCHEDULE 40 (PVC-40)[a]**

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
| RHW, RHW-2 | 14 | 4 | 7 | 11 | 20 | 27 | 45 |
| | 12 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 16 | 22 | 37 |
| | 10 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| | 8 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 15 |
| | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 12 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 8 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| TW | 14 | 8 | 14 | 24 | 42 | 57 | 94 |
| | 12 | 6 | 11 | 18 | 32 | 44 | 72 |
| | 10 | 4 | 8 | 13 | 24 | 32 | 54 |
| | 8 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14 | 5 | 9 | 16 | 28 | 38 | 63 |
| | 12 | 4 | 8 | 12 | 22 | 30 | 50 |
| | 10 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 17 | 24 | 39 |
| | 8 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 14 | 23 |
| RHW[a], RHW-2[a], TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 6 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 11 | 18 |
| | 4 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 14 | 11 | 21 | 34 | 60 | 82 | 135 |
| | 12 | 8 | 15 | 25 | 43 | 59 | 99 |
| | 10 | 5 | 9 | 15 | 27 | 37 | 62 |
| | 8 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 16 | 21 | 36 |
| | 6 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 11 | 15 | 26 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14 | 8 | 14 | 24 | 42 | 57 | 94 |
| | 12 | 6 | 11 | 18 | 32 | 44 | 72 |
| | 10 | 4 | 8 | 13 | 24 | 32 | 54 |
| | 8 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 13 | 18 | 30 |
| | 6 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 10 | 13 | 22 |
| | 4 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 16 |
| | 3 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 |
| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| | 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| | 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| | 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

## SECTION E3905 BOXES, CONDUIT BODIES AND FITTINGS

**E3905.1 Box, conduit body or fitting—where required.** A box or conduit body shall be installed at each conductor splice point, outlet, switch point, junction point and pull point except as otherwise permitted in Sections E3905.1.1 through E3905.1.6.

Fittings and connectors shall be used only with the specific wiring methods for which they are designed and listed.

**E3905.1.1 Equipment.** An integral junction box or wiring compartment that is part of listed equipment shall be permitted to serve as a box or conduit body.

**E3905.1.2 Protection.** A box or conduit body shall not be required where cables enter or exit from conduit or tubing that is used to provide cable support or protection against physical damage. A fitting shall be provided on the end(s) of the conduit or tubing to protect the cable from abrasion.

**E3905.1.3 Integral enclosure.** A wiring device with integral enclosure identified for the use, having brackets that securely fasten the device to walls or ceilings of conventional on-site frame construction, for use with nonmetallic-sheathed cable, shall be permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body.

**E3905.1.4 Fitting.** A fitting identified for the use shall be permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body where such fitting is accessible after installation and does not contain spliced or terminated conductors.

**E3905.1.5 Buried conductors.** Splices and taps in buried conductors and cables shall not be required to be enclosed in a box or conduit body where installed in accordance with Section E3803.4.

**E3905.1.6 Luminaires.** Where a luminaire is listed to be used as a raceway, a box or conduit body shall not be required for wiring installed therein.

➡ **E3905.2 Metal boxes.** All metal boxes shall be grounded.

**E3905.3 Nonmetallic boxes.** Nonmetallic boxes shall be used only with cabled wiring methods with entirely nonmetallic sheaths, flexible cords and nonmetallic raceways.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where internal bonding means are provided between all entries, nonmetallic boxes shall be permitted to be used with metal raceways and metal-armored cables.
2. Where integral bonding means with a provision for attaching an equipment grounding jumper inside the box are provided between all threaded entries in nonmetallic boxes listed for the purpose, nonmetallic boxes shall be permitted to be used with metal raceways and metal-armored cables.

**E3905.3.1 Nonmetallic-sheathed cable and nonmetallic boxes.** Where nonmetallic-sheathed cable is used, the cable assembly, including the sheath, shall extend into the box not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) through a nonmetallic-sheathed cable knockout opening.

**E3905.3.2 Securing to box.** All permitted wiring methods shall be secured to the boxes.

**Exception:** Where nonmetallic-sheathed cable is used with boxes not larger than a nominal size of $2^1/_4$ inches by 4 inches (57 mm by 102 mm) mounted in walls or ceilings, and where the cable is fastened within 8 inches (203 mm) of the box measured along the sheath, and where the sheath extends through a cable knockout not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm), securing the cable to the box shall not be required.

**E3905.3.3 Conductor rating.** Nonmetallic boxes shall be suitable for the lowest temperature-rated conductor entering the box.

**E3905.4 Minimum depth of boxes for outlets, devices, and utilization equipment.** Outlet and device boxes shall have sufficient depth to allow equipment installed within them to be mounted properly and with sufficient clearance to prevent damage to conductors within the box.

**E3905.4.1 Outlet boxes without enclosed devices or utilization equipment.** Boxes that do not enclose devices or utilization equipment shall have an internal depth of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

**E3905.4.2 Outlet and device boxes with enclosed devices.** Boxes intended to enclose flush devices shall have an internal depth of not less than $^{15}/_{16}$ inch (23.8 mm).

**E3905.4.3 Utilization equipment.** Outlet and device boxes that enclose utilization equipment shall have a minimum internal depth that accommodates the rearward projection of the equipment and the size of the conductors that supply the equipment. The internal depth shall include that of any extension boxes, plaster rings, or raised covers. The internal depth shall comply with all of the applicable provisions that follow.

**Exception:** Utilization equipment that is listed to be installed with specified boxes.

1. Large equipment. Boxes that enclose utilization equipment that projects more than $1^7/_8$ in. (48 mm) rearward from the mounting plane of the box shall have a depth that is not less than the depth of the equipment plus $^1/_4$ in. (6.4 mm).
2. Conductors larger than 4 AWG. Boxes that enclose utilization equipment supplied by conductors larger than 4 AWG shall be identified for their specific function.
3. Conductors 8, 6, or 4 AWG. Boxes that enclose utilization equipment supplied by 8, 6, or 4 AWG conductors shall have an internal depth that is not less than $2^1/_{16}$ in. (52.4 mm).
4. Conductors 12 or 10 AWG. Boxes that enclose utilization equipment supplied by 12 or 10 AWG conductors shall have an internal depth that is not less than $1^3/_{16}$ in. (30.2 mm).Where the equipment projects rearward from the mounting plane of the box by more than 1 in. (25.4 mm), the box shall have a depth that is not less than that of the equipment plus $^1/_4$ in. (6.4 mm).
5. Conductors 14 AWG and smaller. Boxes that enclose equipment supplied by 14 AWG or smaller conductors shall have a depth that is not less than $^{15}/_{16}$ in. (23.8 mm).

**E3905.5 Boxes enclosing flush-mounted devices.** Boxes enclosing flush-mounted devices shall be of such design that the devices are completely enclosed at the back and all sides and shall provide support for the devices. Screws for supporting the box shall not be used for attachment of the device contained therein.

**E3905.6 Boxes at luminaire outlets.** Boxes used at luminaire or lampholder outlets in a ceiling shall be designed for the purpose and shall be capable of supporting a luminaire weighing up to 50 pounds (22.7 kg). Boxes used at luminaire or lampholder outlets in a wall shall be designed for the purpose and shall be marked on the interior to indicate the maximum weight of the luminaire that is permitted to be supported by the box in the wall, if other than 50 pounds (22.7 kg). At every outlet used exclusively for lighting, the box shall be designed or installed so that a luminaire can be attached.

**Exception:** A wall-mounted luminaire weighing not more than 6 pounds (2.7 kg) shall be permitted to be supported on other boxes or plaster rings that are secured to other boxes, provided that the luminaire or its supporting yoke is secured to the box with not fewer than two No. 6 or larger screws.

**E3905.7 Maximum luminaire weight.** Outlet boxes or fittings designed for the support of luminaires and installed as required by Section E3904.3 shall be permitted to support a luminaire weighing 50 pounds (22.7 kg) or less. A luminaire that weighs more than 50 pounds (22.7 kg) shall be supported independently of the outlet box unless the outlet box is listed and marked for the maximum weight to be supported.

**E3905.8 Floor boxes.** Where outlet boxes for receptacles are installed in the floor, such boxes shall be listed specifically for that application.

**E3905.9 Boxes at fan outlets.** Outlet boxes and outlet box systems used as the sole support of ceiling-suspended fans (paddle) shall be marked by their manufacturer as suitable for this purpose and shall not support ceiling-suspended fans (paddle) that weigh more than 70 pounds (31.8 kg). For outlet boxes and outlet box systems designed to support ceiling-suspended fans (paddle) that weigh more than 35 pounds (15.9 kg), the required marking shall include the maximum weight to be supported.

**E3905.10 Utilization equipment.** Boxes used for the support of utilization equipment other than ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans shall meet the requirements of Sections E3905.6 and E3905.7 for the support of a luminaire that is the same size and weight.

**Exception:** Utilization equipment weighing not more than 6 pounds (2.7 kg) shall be permitted to be supported on other boxes or plaster rings that are secured to other boxes, provided that the equipment or its supporting yoke is secured to the box with not fewer than two No. 6 or larger screws.

**E3905.11 Conduit bodies and junction, pull and outlet boxes to be accessible.** Conduit bodies and junction, pull and outlet boxes shall be installed so that the wiring therein can be accessed without removing any part of the building or, in underground circuits, without excavating sidewalks, paving, earth or other substance used to establish the finished grade.

**Exception:** Boxes covered by gravel, light aggregate or noncohesive granulated soil shall be listed for the application, and the box locations shall be effectively identified and access shall be provided for excavation.

**E3905.12 Damp or wet locations.** In damp or wet locations, boxes, conduit bodies and fittings shall be placed or equipped so as to prevent moisture from entering or accumulating within the box, conduit body or fitting. Boxes, conduit bodies and fittings installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

**E3905.13 Number of conductors in outlet, device, and junction boxes, and conduit bodies.** Boxes and conduit bodies shall be of sufficient size to provide free space for all enclosed conductors. In no case shall the volume of the box, as calculated in Section E3905.13.1, be less than the box fill calculation as calculated in Section E3905.13.2. The minimum volume for conduit bodies shall be as calculated in Section E3905.13.3. The provisions of this section shall not apply to terminal housings supplied with motors or generators.

**E3905.13.1 Box volume calculations.** The volume of a wiring enclosure (box) shall be the total volume of the assembled sections, and, where used, the space provided by plaster rings, domed covers, extension rings, etc., that are marked with their volume in cubic inches or are made from boxes the dimensions of which are listed in Table E3905.13.1.

**E3905.13.1.1 Standard boxes.** The volumes of standard boxes that are not marked with a cubic-inch capacity shall be as given in Table E3905.13.1.

**E3905.13.1.2 Other boxes.** Boxes 100 cubic inches (1640 $cm^3$) or less, other than those described in Table E3905.13.1, and nonmetallic boxes shall be durably and legibly marked by the manufacturer with their cubic-inch capacity. Boxes described in Table E3905.13.1 that have a larger cubic inch capacity than is designated in the table shall be permitted to have their cubic-inch capacity marked as required by this section.

**E3905.13.2 Box fill calculations.** The volumes in Section E3905.13.2.1 through Section E3905.13.2.5, as applicable, shall be added together. No allowance shall be required for small fittings such as locknuts and bushings.

**E3905.13.2.1 Conductor fill.** Each conductor that originates outside the box and terminates or is spliced within the box shall be counted once, and each conductor that passes through the box without splice or termination shall be counted once. Each loop or coil of unbroken conductor having a length equal to or greater than twice that required for free conductors by Section E3406.10.3, shall be counted twice. The conductor fill, in cubic inches, shall be computed using Table E3905.13.2.1. A conductor, no part of which leaves the box, shall not be counted.

**Exception:** An equipment grounding conductor or not more than four fixture wires smaller than No. 14, or both, shall be permitted to be omitted from the calculations where such conductors enter a box from a domed fixture or similar canopy and terminate within that box.

**TABLE E3905.13.1**
**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN METAL BOXES[a]**

| BOX DIMENSIONS (inches trade size and type) | MAXIMUM CAPACITY (cubic inches) | MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS[a] | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 18 Awg | 16 Awg | 14 Awg | 12 Awg | 10 Awg | 8 Awg | 6 Awg |
| $4 \times 1^1/_4$ round or octagonal | 12.5 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| $4 \times 1^1/_2$ round or octagonal | 15.5 | 10 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 6 | 5 | 3 |
| $4 \times 2^1/_8$ round or octagonal | 21.5 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 4 |
| $4 \times 1^1/_4$ square | 18.0 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 3 |
| $4 \times 1^1/_2$ square | 21.0 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 4 |
| $4 \times 2^1/_8$ square | 30.3 | 20 | 17 | 15 | 13 | 12 | 10 | 6 |
| $4^{11}/_{16} \times {}^{11}/_4$ square | 25.5 | 17 | 14 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 8 | 5 |
| $4^{11}/_{16} \times {}^{11}/_2$ square | 29.5 | 19 | 16 | 14 | 13 | 11 | 9 | 5 |
| $4^{11}/_{16} \times 2^1/_8$ square | 42.0 | 28 | 24 | 21 | 18 | 16 | 14 | 8 |
| $3 \times 2 \times 1^1/_2$ device | 7.5 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| $3 \times 2 \times 2$ device | 10.0 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| $3 \times 2 \times 2^1/_4$ device | 10.5 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| $3 \times 2 \times 2^1/_2$ device | 12.5 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| $3 \times 2 \times 2^3/_4$ device | 14.0 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| $3 \times 2 \times 3^1/_2$ device | 18.0 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 3 |
| $4 \times 2^1/_8 \times 1^1/_2$ device | 10.3 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| $4 \times 2^1/_8 \times 1^7/_8$ device | 13.0 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| $4 \times 2^1/_8 \times 2^1/_8$ device | 14.5 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| $3^3/_4 \times 2 \times 2^1/_2$ masonry box/gang | 14.0 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| $3^3/_4 \times 2 \times 3^1/_2$ masonry box/gang | 21.0 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 cubic inch = 16.4 $cm^3$.
a. Where volume allowances are not required by Sections E3905.13.2.2 through E3905.13.2.5.

**TABLE E3905.13.2.1**
**VOLUME ALLOWANCE REQUIRED PER CONDUCTOR**

| SIZE OF CONDUCTOR | FREE SPACE WITHIN BOX FOR EACH CONDUCTOR (cubic inches) |
|---|---|
| 18 AWG | 1.50 |
| 16 AWG | 1.75 |
| 14 AWG | 2.00 |
| 12 AWG | 2.25 |
| 10 AWG | 2.50 |
| 8 AWG | 3.00 |
| 6 AWG | 5.00 |

For SI: 1 cubic inch = 16.4 $cm^3$.

**E3905.13.2.2 Clamp fill.** Where one or more internal cable clamps, whether factory or field supplied, are present in the box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.13.2.1 shall be made based on the largest conductor present in the box. No allowance shall be required for a cable connector with its clamping mechanism outside the box.

**E3905.13.2.3 Support fittings fill.** Where one or more fixture studs or hickeys are present in the box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.13.2.1 shall be made for each type of fitting based on the largest conductor present in the box.

**E3905.13.2.4 Device or equipment fill.** For each yoke or strap containing one or more devices or equipment, a double volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.13.2.1 shall be made for each yoke or strap based on the largest conductor connected to a device(s) or equipment supported by that yoke or strap. For a device or utilization equipment that is wider than a single 2 in. (51 mm) device box as described in Table E3905.13.1, a double volume allowance shall be made for each ganged portion required for mounting of the device or equipment.

**E3905.13.2.5 Equipment grounding conductor fill.** Where one or more equipment grounding conductors or equipment bonding jumpers enters a box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.13.2.1 shall be made based on the largest equipment grounding conductor or equipment bonding jumper present in the box.

**E3905.13.3 Conduit bodies.** Conduit bodies enclosing 6 AWG conductors or smaller, other than short radius conduit bodies, shall have a cross-sectional area not less than twice the cross-sectional area of the largest conduit or tubing to which they can be attached. The maximum number of conductors permitted shall be the maximum number permitted by Section E3904.6 for the conduit to which it is attached.

**E3905.13.3.1 Splices, taps or devices.** Only those conduit bodies that are durably and legibly marked by the manufacturer with their cubic inch capacity shall be permitted to contain splices, taps or devices. The maximum number of conductors shall be calculated using the same procedure for similar conductors in other than standard boxes.

## SECTION E3906 INSTALLATION OF BOXES, CONDUIT BODIES AND FITTINGS

**E3906.1 Conductors entering boxes, conduit bodies or fittings.** Conductors entering boxes, conduit bodies or fittings shall be protected from abrasion.

**E3906.1.1 Insulated fittings.** Where raceways contain 4 AWG or larger insulated circuit conductors and these conductors enter a cabinet, box enclosure, or raceway, the conductors shall be protected by a substantial fitting providing a smoothly rounded insulating surface, unless the conductors are separated from the fitting or raceway by substantial insulating material securely fastened in place.

**Exception:** Where threaded hubs or bosses that are an integral part of a cabinet, box enclosure, or raceway provide a smoothly rounded or flared entry for conductors.

Conduit bushings constructed wholly of insulating material shall not be used to secure a fitting or raceway. The insulating fitting or insulating material shall have a temperature rating not less than the insulation temperature rating of the installed conductors.

**E3906.2 Openings.** Openings through which conductors enter shall be adequately closed.

**E3906.3 Metal boxes, conduit bodies and fittings.** Where raceway or cable is installed with metal boxes, or conduit bodies, the raceway or cable shall be secured to such boxes and conduit bodies.

**E3906.4 Unused openings.** Unused openings other than those intended for the operation of equipment, those intended for mounting purposes, or those permitted as part of the design for listed equipment, shall be closed to afford protection substantially equivalent to that of the wall of the equipment. Metal plugs or plates used with nonmetallic boxes or conduit bodies shall be recessed at least $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) from the outer surface of the box or conduit body.

**E3906.5 In wall or ceiling.** In walls or ceilings of concrete, tile or other noncombustible material, boxes employing a flush-type cover or faceplate shall be installed so that the front edge of the box, plaster ring, extension ring, or listed extender will not be set back from the finished surface more than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). In walls and ceilings constructed of wood or other combustible material, boxes, plaster rings, extension rings and listed extenders shall be flush with the finished surface or project therefrom.

**E3906.6 Plaster, gypsum board and plasterboard.** Openings in plaster, gypsum board or plasterboard surfaces that accommodate boxes employing a flush-type cover or faceplate shall be made so that there are no gaps or open spaces greater than $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) around the edge of the box.

**E3906.7 Surface extensions.** Surface extensions shall be made by mounting and mechanically securing an extension ring over the box.

**Exception:** A surface extension shall be permitted to be made from the cover of a flush-mounted box where the cover is designed so it is unlikely to fall off, or be removed if its securing means becomes loose. The wiring method shall be flexible for a length sufficient to permit removal of the cover and provide access to the box interior and arranged so that any bonding or grounding continuity is independent of the connection between the box and cover.

**E3906.8 Supports.** Boxes and enclosures shall be supported in accordance with one or more of the provisions in Sections E3906.8.1 through E3906.8.6.

**E3906.8.1 Surface mounting.** An enclosure mounted on a building or other surface shall be rigidly and securely fastened in place. If the surface does not provide rigid and secure support, additional support in accordance with other provisions of Section E3906.8 shall be provided.

**E3906.8.2 Structural mounting.** An enclosure supported from a structural member of a building or from grade shall be rigidly supported either directly, or by using a metal, polymeric or wood brace.

**E3906.8.2.1 Nails and screws.** Nails and screws, where used as a fastening means, shall be attached by using brackets on the outside of the enclosure, or they shall pass through the interior within $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) of the back or ends of the enclosure. Screws shall not be permitted to pass through the box except where exposed threads in the box are protected by an approved means to avoid abrasion of conductor insulation.

**E3906.8.2.2 Braces.** Metal braces shall be protected against corrosion and formed from metal that is not less than 0.020 inch (0.508 mm) thick uncoated. Wood braces shall have a cross section not less than nominal 1 inch by 2 inches (25.4 mm by 51 mm). Wood braces in wet locations shall be treated for the conditions. Polymeric braces shall be identified as being suitable for the use.

**E3906.8.3 Mounting in finished surfaces.** An enclosure mounted in a finished surface shall be rigidly secured there to by clamps, anchors, or fittings identified for the application.

**E3906.8.4 Raceway supported enclosures without devices or fixtures.** An enclosure that does not contain a device(s), other than splicing devices, or support a luminaire, lampholder or other equipment, and that is supported by entering raceways shall not exceed 100 cubic inches (1640 $cm^3$) in size. The enclosure shall have threaded entries or have hubs identified for the purpose. The enclosure shall be supported by two or more conduits threaded wrenchtight into the enclosure or hubs. Each conduit shall be secured within 3 feet (914 mm) of the enclosure, or within 18 inches (457 mm) of the enclosure if all entries are on the same side of the enclosure.

**Exception:** Rigid metal, intermediate metal, or rigid nonmetallic conduit or electrical metallic tubing shall be permitted to support a conduit body of any size, provided that the conduit body is not larger in trade size than the largest trade size of the supporting conduit or electrical metallic tubing.

**E3906.8.5 Raceway supported enclosures, with devices or luminaire.** An enclosure that contains a device(s), other than splicing devices, or supports a luminaire, lampholder or other equipment and is supported by entering raceways shall not exceed 100 cubic inches (1640 $cm^3$) in size. The enclosure shall have threaded entries or have hubs identified for the purpose. The enclosure shall be supported by two or more conduits threaded wrench-tight into the enclosure or hubs. Each conduit shall be secured within 18 inches (457 mm) of the enclosure.

**Exceptions:**

1. Rigid metal or intermediate metal conduit shall be permitted to support a conduit body of any size, provided that the conduit bodies are not larger in trade size than the largest trade size of the supporting conduit.
2. An unbroken length(s) of rigid or intermediate metal conduit shall be permitted to support a box used for luminaire or lampholder support, or to support a wiring enclosure that is an integral part of a luminaire and used in lieu of a box in accordance with Section E3905.1.1, where all of the following conditions are met:
   2.1. The conduit is securely fastened at a point so that the length of conduit beyond the last point of conduit support does not exceed 3 feet (914 mm).
   2.2. The unbroken conduit length before the last point of conduit support is 12 inches (305 mm) or greater, and that portion of the conduit is securely fastened at some point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from its last point of support.
   2.3. Where accessible to unqualified persons, the luminaire or lampholder, measured to its lowest point, is not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above grade or standing area and at least 3 feet (914 mm) measured horizontally to the 8-foot (2438 mm) elevation from windows, doors, porches, fire escapes, or similar locations.
   2.4. A luminaire supported by a single conduit does not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) in any direction from the point of conduit entry.
   2.5. The weight supported by any single conduit does not exceed 20 pounds (9.1 kg).
   2.6. At the luminaire or lampholder end, the conduit(s) is threaded wrenchtight into the box, conduit body, or integral wiring enclosure, or into hubs identified for the purpose. Where a box or conduit body is used for support, the luminaire shall be secured directly to the box or conduit body, or through a threaded conduit nipple not over 3 inches (76 mm) long.

**E3906.8.6 Enclosures in concrete or masonry.** An enclosure supported by embedment shall be identified as being suitably protected from corrosion and shall be securely embedded in concrete or masonry.

**E3906.9 Covers and canopies.** Outlet boxes shall be effectively closed with a cover, faceplate or fixture canopy.

**E3906.10 Metal covers and plates.** Metal covers and plates shall be grounded.

**E3906.11 Exposed combustible finish.** Combustible wall or ceiling finish exposed between the edge of a fixture canopy or pan and the outlet box shall be covered with noncombustible material.

## SECTION E3907
## CABINETS AND PANELBOARDS

**E3907.1 Enclosures for switches or overcurrent devices.** Enclosures for switches or overcurrent devices shall not be used as junction boxes, auxiliary gutters, or raceways for conductors feeding through or tapping off to other switches or overcurrent devices, except where adequate space for this purpose is provided. The conductors shall not fill the wiring space at any cross section to more than 40 percent of the cross-sectional area of the space, and the conductors, splices, and taps shall not fill the wiring space at any cross section to more than 75 percent of the cross-sectional area of that space.

**E3907.2 Damp and wet locations.** In damp or wet locations, cabinets and panelboards of the surface type shall be placed or equipped so as to prevent moisture or water from entering and accumulating within the cabinet, and shall be mounted to provide an airspace not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) between the enclosure and the wall or other supporting surface. Cabinets installed in wet locations shall be weatherproof. For enclosures in wet locations, raceways and cables entering above the level of uninsulated live parts shall be installed with fittings listed for wet locations.

**E3907.3 Position in wall.** In walls of concrete, tile or other noncombustible material, cabinets and panelboards shall be installed so that the front edge of the cabinet will not set back of the finished surface more than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). In walls constructed of wood or other combustible material, cabinets shall be flush with the finished surface or shall project therefrom.

**E3907.4 Repairing noncombustible surfaces.** Noncombustible surfaces that are broken or incomplete shall be repaired so that there will not be gaps or open spaces greater than $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) at the edge of the cabinet or cutout box employing a flush-type cover.

**E3907.5 Unused openings.** Unused openings, other than those intended for the operation of equipment, those intended for mounting purposes, and those permitted as part of the design for listed equipment, shall be closed to afford protection substantially equivalent to that of the wall of the equipment. Metal plugs and plates used with nonmetallic cabinets shall be recessed at least $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) from the outer surface. Unused openings for circuit breakers and switches shall be closed using identified closures, or other approved means that provide protection substantially equivalent to the wall of the enclosure.

**E3907.6 Conductors entering cabinets.** Conductors entering cabinets and panelboards shall be protected from abrasion and shall comply with Section E3906.1.1.

**E3907.7 Openings to be closed.** Openings through which conductors enter cabinets, panelboards and meter sockets shall be adequately closed.

**E3907.8 Cables.** Where cables are used, each cable shall be secured to the cabinet, panelboard, cutout box, or meter socket enclosure.

**Exception:** Cables with entirely nonmetallic sheaths shall be permitted to enter the top of a surface-mounted enclosure through one or more sections of rigid raceway not less than 18 inches (457 mm) nor more than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length, provided all the following conditions are met:

1. Each cable is fastened within 12 inches (305 mm), measured along the sheath, of the outer end of the raceway.
2. The raceway extends directly above the enclosure and does not penetrate a structural ceiling.
3. A fitting is provided on each end of the raceway to protect the cable(s) from abrasion and the fittings remain accessible after installation.
4. The raceway is sealed or plugged at the outer end using approved means so as to prevent access to the enclosure through the raceway.
5. The cable sheath is continuous through the raceway and extends into the enclosure beyond the fitting not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm).
6. The raceway is fastened at its outer end and at other points in accordance with Section E3802.1.
7. The allowable cable fill shall not exceed that permitted by Table E3907.8. A multiconductor cable having two or more conductors shall be treated as a single conductor for calculating the percentage of conduit fill area. For cables that have elliptical cross sections, the cross-sectional area calculation shall be based on the major diameter of the ellipse as a circle diameter.

**TABLE E3907.8**
**PERCENT OF CROSS SECTION**
**OF CONDUIT AND TUBING FOR CONDUCTORS**

| NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS | MAXIMUM PERCENT OF CONDUIT AND TUBING AREA FILLED BY CONDUCTORS |
|---|---|
| 1 | 53 |
| 2 | 31 |
| Over 2 | 40 |

## SECTION E3908
## GROUNDING

**E3908.1 Metal enclosures.** Metal enclosures of conductors, devices and equipment shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor.

**Exceptions:**

1. Short sections of metal enclosures or raceways used to provide cable assemblies with support or protection against physical damage.
2. A metal elbow that is installed in an underground installation of rigid nonmetallic conduit and is isolated from possible contact by a minimum cover of 18 inches (457 mm) to any part of the elbow or that is encased in not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.

**E3908.2 Equipment fastened in place or connected by permanent wiring methods (fixed).** Exposed noncurrent- carrying metal parts of fixed equipment likely to become energized shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor where any of the following conditions apply:

1. Where within 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically or 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of earth or grounded metal objects and subject to contact by persons;
2. Where located in a wet or damp location and not isolated; or
3. Where in electrical contact with metal.

**E3908.3 Specific equipment fastened in place or connected by permanent wiring methods.** Exposed noncurrent-carrying metal parts of the following equipment and enclosures shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor:

1. Luminaires as provided in Chapter 40.

2. Motor-operated water pumps, including submersible types. Where a submersible pump is used in a metal well casing, the well casing shall be bonded to the pump circuit equipment grounding conductor.

**E3908.4 Effective ground-fault current path.** Electrical equipment and wiring and other electrically conductive material likely to become energized shall be installed in a manner that creates a low-impedance circuit facilitating the operation of the overcurrent device. Such circuit shall be capable of safely carrying the maximum ground-fault current likely to be imposed on it from any point on the wiring system where a ground fault to the electrical supply source might occur.

**E3908.5 Earth as a ground-fault current path.** The earth shall not be considered as an effective ground-fault current path.

**E3908.6 Load-side grounded conductor neutral.** A grounded conductor shall not be connected to normally noncurrent-carrying metal parts of equipment, to equipment grounding conductor(s), or be reconnected to ground on the load side of the service disconnecting means.

**E3908.7 Load-side equipment.** A grounded circuit conductor shall not be used for grounding noncurrent-carrying metal parts of equipment on the load side of the service disconnecting means.

**E3908.8 Types of equipment grounding conductors.** The equipment grounding conductor run with or enclosing the circuit conductors shall be one or more or a combination of the following:

1. A copper, aluminum or copper-clad conductor. This conductor shall be solid or stranded; insulated, covered or bare; and in the form of a wire or a busbar of any shape.
2. Rigid metal conduit.
3. Intermediate metal conduit.
4. Electrical metallic tubing.
5. Armor of Type AC cable in accordance with Section E3908.4.
6. Type MC cable where listed and identified for grounding in accordance with the following:
   - 6.1. The combined metallic sheath and grounding conductor of interlocked metal tape-type MC cable.
   - 6.2. The metallic sheath or the combined metallic sheath and grounding conductors of the smooth or corrugated tube-type MC cable.
7. Other electrically continuous metal raceways and auxiliary gutters.
8. Surface metal raceways listed for grounding.

**E3908.8.1 Flexible metal conduit.** Flexible metal conduit shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The conduit is terminated in listed fittings.
2. The circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at 20 amperes or less.
3. The combined length of flexible metal conduit and flexible metallic tubing and liquid-tight flexible metal conduit in the same ground return path does not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm).
4. An equipment grounding conductor shall be installed where the conduit is used to connect equipment where flexibility is necessary after installation.

**E3908.8.2 Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit.** Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The conduit is terminated in listed fittings.
2. For trade sizes $^3/_8$ through $^1/_2$ (metric designator 12 through 16), the circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at 20 amperes or less.
3. For trade sizes $^3/_4$ through $1^1/_4$ (metric designator 21 through 35), the circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at not more than 60 amperes and there is no flexible metal conduit, flexible metallic tubing, or liquid-tight flexible metal conduit in trade sizes $^3/_8$ inch or $^1/_2$ inch (9.5 mm through 12.7 mm) in the grounding path.
4. The combined length of flexible metal conduit and flexible metallic tubing and liquid tight flexible metal conduit in the same ground return path does not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm).
5. An equipment grounding conductor shall be installed where the conduit is used to connect equipment where flexibility is necessary after installation.

**E3908.8.3 Nonmetallic sheathed cable (Type NM).** In addition to the insulated conductors, the cable shall have an insulated or bare equipment grounding conductor. Equipment grounding conductors shall be sized in accordance with Table E3908.12.

**E3908.9 Equipment fastened in place or connected by permanent wiring methods.** Noncurrent-carrying metal parts of equipment, raceways and other enclosures, where required to be grounded, shall be grounded by one of the following methods:

1. By any of the equipment grounding conductors permitted by Sections E3908.8 through E3908.8.3.
2. By an equipment grounding conductor contained within the same raceway, cable or cord, or otherwise run with the circuit conductors. Equipment grounding conductors shall be identified in accordance with Section E3407.2.

**E3908.10 Methods of equipment grounding.** Fixtures and equipment shall be considered grounded where mechanically connected to an equipment grounding conductor as specified in Sections E3908.8 through E3908.8.3. Wire type equipment grounding conductors shall be sized in accordance with Section E3908.12.

**E3908.11 Equipment grounding conductor installation.** Where an equipment grounding conductor consists of a raceway, cable armor or cable sheath or where such conductor is a wire within a raceway or cable, it shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Chapters 34 and 38 using fittings for joints and terminations approved for installation with the type of raceway or cable used. All connections, joints and fittings shall be made tight using suitable tools.

**E3908.12 Equipment grounding conductor size.** Copper, aluminum and copper-clad aluminum equipment grounding conductors of the wire type shall be not smaller than shown in Table E3908.12, but in no case shall they be required to be larger than the circuit conductors supplying the equipment. Where a raceway or a cable armor or sheath is used as the equipment grounding conductor, as provided in Section E3908.8, it shall comply with Section E3908.4. Where ungrounded connectors are increased in size, equipment grounding conductors shall be increased proportionally according to the circular mil area of the ungrounded conductors.

**TABLE E3908.12**
**EQUIPMENT GROUNDING CONDUCTOR SIZING**

| RATING OR SETTING OF AUTOMATIC OVERCURRENT DEVICE IN CIRCUIT AHEAD OF EQUIPMENT, CONDUIT, ETC., NOT EXCEEDING THE FOLLOWING RATINGS (amperes) | MINIMUM SIZE | |
|---|---|---|
| | Copper wire No. (AWG) | Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum wire No. (AWG) |
| 15 | 14 | 12 |
| 20 | 12 | 10 |
| 30 | 10 | 8 |
| 40 | 10 | 8 |
| 60 | 10 | 8 |
| 100 | 8 | 6 |
| 200 | 6 | 4 |
| 300 | 4 | 2 |
| 400 | 3 | 1 |

**E3908.12.1 Multiple circuits.** Where a single equipment grounding conductor is run with multiple circuits in the same raceway or cable, it shall be sized for the largest overcurrent device protecting conductors in the raceway or cable.

**E3908.13 Continuity and attachment of equipment grounding conductors to boxes.** Where circuit conductors are spliced within a box or terminated on equipment within or supported by a box, any equipment grounding conductors associated with the circuit conductors shall be connected within the box or to the box with devices suitable for the use. Connections depending solely on solder shall not be used. Splices shall be made in accordance with Section E3406.10 except that insulation shall not be required. The arrangement of grounding connections shall be such that the disconnection or removal of a receptacle, luminaire or other device fed from the box will not interfere with or interrupt the grounding continuity.

**E3908.14 Connecting receptacle grounding terminal to box.** An equipment bonding jumper, sized in accordance with Table E3908.12 based on the rating of the overcurrent device protecting the circuit conductors, shall be used to connect the grounding terminal of a grounding-type receptacle to a grounded box except where grounded in accordance with one of the following:

1. Surface mounted box. Where the box is mounted on the surface, direct metal-to-metal contact between the device yoke and the box shall be permitted to ground the receptacle to the box. At least one of the insulating washers shall be removed from receptacles that do not have a contact yoke or device designed and listed to be used in conjunction with the supporting screws to establish the grounding circuit between the device yoke and flush-type boxes. This provision shall not apply to cover-mounted receptacles except where the box and cover combination are listed as providing satisfactory ground continuity between the box and the receptacle. A listed exposed work cover shall be considered to be the grounding and bonding means where the device is attached to the cover with at least two fasteners that are permanent, such as a rivet or have a thread locking or screw locking means and where the cover mounting holes are located on a flat non-raised portion of the cover.
2. Contact devices or yokes. Contact devices or yokes designed and listed for the purpose shall be permitted in conjunction with the supporting screws to establish the grounding circuit between the device yoke and flush-type boxes.
3. Floor boxes. The receptacle is installed in a floor box designed for and listed as providing satisfactory ground continuity between the box and the device.

**E3908.15 Metal boxes.** A connection shall be made between the one or more equipment grounding conductors and a metal box by means of a grounding screw that shall be used for no other purpose, equipment listed for grounding or by means of a listed grounding device. Where screws are used to connect grounding conductors or connection devices to boxes, such screws shall be:

1. Machine screw-type fasteners that engage not less than two threads,
2. Secured with a nut, or
3. Thread-forming machine screws that engage not less than two threads in the enclosure.

**E3908.16 Nonmetallic boxes.** One or more equipment grounding conductors brought into a nonmetallic outlet box shall be arranged to allow connection to fittings or devices installed in that box.

**E3908.17 Clean surfaces.** Nonconductive coatings such as paint, lacquer and enamel on equipment to be grounded shall be removed from threads and other contact surfaces to ensure electrical continuity or the equipment shall be connected by means of fittings designed so as to make such removal unnecessary.

**E3908.18 Bonding other enclosures.** Metal raceways, cable armor, cable sheath, enclosures, frames, fittings and other metal noncurrent-carrying parts that serve as grounding conductors, with or without the use of supplementary equipment grounding conductors, shall be effectively bonded where necessary to ensure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any fault current likely to be imposed on them. Any nonconductive paint, enamel and similar coating shall be removed at threads, contact points and contact surfaces, or connections shall be made by means of fittings designed so as to make such removal unnecessary.

**E3908.19 Size of equipment bonding jumper on load side of service.** The equipment bonding jumper on the load side of the service overcurrent devices shall be sized, as a minimum, in accordance with Table E3908.12, but shall not be required to be larger than the circuit conductors supplying the equipment. An equipment bonding conductor shall be not smaller than No. 14 AWG.

A single common continuous equipment bonding jumper shall be permitted to connect two or more raceways or cables where the bonding jumper is sized in accordance with Table E3908.12 for the largest overcurrent device supplying circuits therein.

**E3908.20 Installation equipment bonding jumper.** The equipment bonding jumper shall be permitted to be installed inside or outside of a raceway or enclosure. Where installed on the outside, the length of the equipment bonding jumper shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) and shall be routed with the raceway or enclosure. Where installed inside of a raceway, the equipment bonding jumper shall comply with the requirements of Sections E3908.9, Item 2; E3908.13; E3908.15; and E3908.16.

**Exception:** An equipment bonding jumper longer than 6 feet (1829 mm) shall be permitted at outdoor pole locations for the purpose of bonding or grounding isolated sections of metal raceways or elbows installed in exposed risers of metal conduit or other metal raceway.

## SECTION E3909
## FLEXIBLE CORDS

**E3909.1 Where permitted.** Flexible cords shall be used only for the connection of appliances where the fastening means and mechanical connections of such appliances are designed to permit ready removal for maintenance, repair or frequent interchange and the appliance is listed for flexible cord connection. Flexible cords shall not be installed as a substitute for the fixed wiring of a structure; shall not be run through holes in walls, structural ceilings, suspended ceilings, dropped ceilings or floors; shall not be concealed behind walls, floors, ceilings or located above suspended or dropped ceilings.

**E3909.2 Loading and protection.** The ampere load of flexible cords serving fixed appliances shall be in accordance with Table E3909.2. This table shall be used in conjunction with applicable end use product standards to ensure selection of the proper size and type. Where flexible cord is approved for and used with a specific listed appliance, it shall be considered to be protected where applied within the appliance listing requirements.

**E3909.3 Splices.** Flexible cord shall be used only in continuous lengths without splices or taps.

**E3909.4 Attachment plugs.** Where used in accordance with Section E3909.1, each flexible cord shall be equipped with an attachment plug and shall be energized from a receptacle outlet.

**TABLE E3909.2**
**MAXIMUM AMPERE LOAD FOR FLEXIBLE CORDS**

| CORD SIZE (AWG) | CORD TYPES S, SE, SEO, SJ, SJE, SJEO, SJO, SJOO, SJT, SJTO, SJTOO, SO, SOO, SRD, SRDE, SRDT, ST, STD, SV, SVO, SVOO, SVTO, SVTOO | |
|---|---|---|
| | Maximum ampere load | |
| | Three current-carrying conductors | Two current-carrying conductors |
| 18 | 7 | 10 |
| 16 | 10 | 13 |
| 14 | 15 | 18 |
| 12 | 20 | 25 |

## CHAPTER 40

# DEVICES AND LUMINAIRES

Chapter 40 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 40
# DEVICES AND LUMINAIRES

## SECTION E4001
## SWITCHES

**E4001.1 Rating and application of snap switches.** General-use snap switches shall be used within their ratings and shall control only the following loads:

1. Resistive and inductive loads, including electric-discharge lamps, not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at the voltage involved.
2. Tungsten-filament lamp loads not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at 120 volts.
3. Motor loads not exceeding 80 percent of the ampere rating of the switch at its rated voltage.

**E4001.2 CO/ALR snap switches.** Snap switches rated 20 amperes or less directly connected to aluminum conductors shall be marked CO/ALR.

**E4001.3 Indicating.** General-use and motor-circuit switches and circuit breakers shall clearly indicate whether they are in the open OFF or closed ON position. Where single-throw switches or circuit breaker handles are operated vertically rather than rotationally or horizontally, the up position of the handle shall be the ON position.

**E4001.4 Time switches and similar devices.** Time switches and similar devices shall be of the enclosed type or shall be mounted in cabinets or boxes or equipment enclosures. A barrier shall be used around energized parts to prevent operator exposure when making manual adjustments or switching.

**E4001.5 Grounding of enclosures.** Metal enclosures for switches or circuit breakers shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor. Metal enclosures for switches or circuit breakers used as service equipment shall comply with the provisions of Section E3609.4. Where nonmetallic enclosures are used with metal raceways or metal-armored cables, provisions shall be made for connecting the equipment grounding conductor.

Nonmetallic boxes for switches shall be installed with a wiring method that provides or includes an equipment grounding conductor.

**E4001.6 Access.** All switches and circuit breakers used as switches shall be located to allow operation from a readily accessible location. Such devices shall be installed so that the center of the grip of the operating handle of the switch or circuit breaker, when in its highest position, will not be more than 6 feet 7 inches (2007 mm) above the floor or working platform.

**E4001.7 Damp or wet locations.** A surface mounted switch or circuit breaker located in a damp or wet location or outside of a building shall be enclosed in a weatherproof enclosure or cabinet. A flush-mounted switch or circuit breaker in a damp or wet location shall be equipped with a weatherproof cover. Switches shall not be installed within wet locations in tub or shower spaces unless installed as part of a listed tub or shower assembly.

**E4001.8 Grounded conductors.** Switches or circuit breakers shall not disconnect the grounded conductor of a circuit except where the switch or circuit breaker simultaneously disconnects all conductors of the circuit.

**E4001.9 Switch connections.** Three- and four-way switches shall be wired so that all switching occurs only in the ungrounded circuit conductor. Color coding of switch connection conductors shall comply with Section E3407.3. Where in metal raceways or metal-jacketed cables, wiring between switches and outlets shall be in accordance with Section E3406.7.

**Exception:** Switch loops do not require a grounded conductor.

**E4001.10 Box mounted.** Flush-type snap switches mounted in boxes that are recessed from the finished wall surfaces as covered in Section E3906.5 shall be installed so that the extension plaster ears are seated against the surface of the wall. Flush-type snap switches mounted in boxes that are flush with the finished wall surface or project therefrom shall be installed so that the mounting yoke or strap of the switch is seated against the box.

**E4001.11 Snap switch faceplates.** Faceplates provided for snap switches mounted in boxes and other enclosures shall be installed so as to completely cover the opening and, where the switch is flush mounted, seat against the finished surface.

**E4001.11.1 Faceplate grounding.** Snap switches, including dimmer and similar control switches, shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor and shall provide a means to connect metal faceplates to the equipment grounding conductor, whether or not a metal faceplate is installed. Snap switches shall be considered to be part of an effective ground-fault current path if either of the following conditions is met:

1. The switch is mounted with metal screws to a metal box or metal cover that is connected to an equipment grounding conductor or to a nonmetallic box with integral means for connecting to an equipment grounding conductor.
2. An equipment grounding conductor or equipment bonding jumper is connected to an equipment grounding termination of the snap switch.

**Exception:** Where a means to connect to an equipment grounding conductor does not exist within the snap-switch enclosure or where the wiring method does not include or provide an equipment grounding conductor, a snap switch without a grounding connection to an equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted for replacement purposes only. A snap switch wired under the provisions of this exception and located within reach of earth, grade, conducting floors, or other conducting surfaces shall be provided with a faceplate of nonconducting, noncombustible material or shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter.

**E4001.12 Dimmer switches.** General-use dimmer switches shall be used only to control permanently installed incandescent luminaires (lighting fixtures) except where listed for the control of other loads and installed accordingly.

**E4001.13 Multipole snap switches.** A multipole, general-use snap switch shall not be fed from more than a single circuit unless it is listed and marked as a two-circuit or three-circuit switch, or unless its voltage rating is not less than the nominal line-to-line voltage of the system supplying the circuits.

## SECTION E4002 RECEPTACLES

**E4002.1 Rating and type.** Receptacles and cord connectors shall be rated at not less than 15 amperes, 125 volts, or 15 amperes, 250 volts, and shall not be a lampholder type. Receptacles shall be rated in accordance with this section.

**E4002.1.1 Single receptacle.** A single receptacle installed on an individual branch circuit shall have an ampere rating not less than that of the branch circuit.

**E4002.1.2 Two or more receptacles.** Where connected to a branch circuit supplying two or more receptacles or outlets, receptacles shall conform to the values listed in Table E4002.1.2.

**TABLE E4002.1.2
RECEPTACLE RATINGS FOR VARIOUS SIZE MULTI-OUTLET CIRCUITS**

| CIRCUIT RATING (amperes) | RECEPTACLE RATING (amperes) |
|---|---|
| 15 | 15 |
| 20 | 15 or 20 |
| 30 | 30 |
| 40 | 40 or 50 |
| 50 | 50 |

**E4002.2 Grounding type.** Receptacles installed on 15- and 20-ampere-rated branch circuits shall be of the grounding type.

**E4002.3 CO/ALR receptacles.** Receptacles rated at 20 amperes or less and directly connected to aluminum conductors shall be marked CO/ALR.

**E4002.4 Faceplates.** Metal face plates shall be grounded.

**E4002.5 Position of receptacle faces.** After installation, receptacle faces shall be flush with or project from face plates of insulating material and shall project a minimum of 0.015 inch (0.381 mm) from metal face plates. Faceplates shall be installed so as to completely cover the opening and seat against the mounting surface.

**Exception:** Listed kits or assemblies encompassing receptacles and nonmetallic faceplates that cover the receptacle face, where the plate cannot be installed on any other receptacle, shall be permitted.

**E4002.6 Receptacle mounted in boxes.** Receptacles mounted in boxes that are set back from the finished wall surface as permitted by Section E3906.5 shall be installed so that the mounting yoke or strap of the receptacle is held rigidly at the finished surface of the wall. Receptacles mounted in boxes that are flush with the wall surface or project therefrom shall be so installed that the mounting yoke or strap is seated against the box or raised cover.

**E4002.7 Receptacles mounted on covers.** Receptacles mounted to and supported by a cover shall be held rigidly against the cover by more than one screw or shall be a device assembly or box cover listed and identified for securing by a single screw.

**E4002.8 Damp locations.** A receptacle installed outdoors in a location protected from the weather or in other damp locations shall have an enclosure for the receptacle that is weatherproof when the receptacle cover(s) is closed and an attachment plug cap is not inserted. An installation suitable for wet locations shall also be considered suitable for damp locations. A receptacle shall be considered to be in a location protected from the weather where located under roofed open porches, canopies and similar structures and not subject to rain or water runoff. Fifteen- and 20-ampere, 125- and 250-volt nonlocking receptacles installed in damp locations shall be listed a weather-resistant type.

**E4002.9 Fifteen- and 20-ampere receptacles in wet locations.** Where installed in a wet location, 15- and 20-ampere, 125- and 250-volt receptacles shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof whether or not the attachment plug cap is inserted. Fifteen- and 20-ampere, 125- and 250-volt nonlocking receptacles installed in wet locations shall be a listed weather-resistant type.

**E4002.10 Other receptacles in wet locations.** Where a receptacle other than a 15- or 20-amp, 125- or 250-volt receptacle is installed in a wet location and where the product intended to be plugged into it is not attended while in use, the receptacle shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof both when the attachment plug cap is inserted and when it is removed. Where such receptacle is installed in a wet location and where the product intended to be plugged into it will be attended while in use, the receptacle shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof when the attachment plug cap is removed.

**E4002.11 Bathtub and shower space.** A receptacle shall not be installed within or directly over a bathtub or shower stall.

**E4002.12 Flush mounting with faceplate.** In damp or wet locations, the enclosure for a receptacle installed in an outlet box flush-mounted in a finished surface shall be made weatherproof by means of a weatherproof faceplate assembly that provides a water-tight connection between the plate and the finished surface.

**E4002.13 Exposed terminals.** Receptacles shall be enclosed so that live wiring terminals are not exposed to contact.

**E4002.14 Tamper-resistant receptacles.** In areas specified in Section E3901.1, 125-volt, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles shall be listed tamper-resistant receptacles.

## SECTION E4003
## FIXTURES

**E4003.1 Energized parts.** Luminaires, lampholders, and lamps shall not have energized parts normally exposed to contact.

**E4003.2 Luminaires near combustible material.** Luminaires shall be installed so that combustible material will not be subjected to temperatures in excess of 90°C (194°F).

**E4003.3 Exposed conductive parts.** The exposed metal parts of luminaires shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor or shall be insulated from the equipment grounding conductor and other conducting surfaces. Lamp tie wires, mounting screws, clips and decorative bands on glass spaced at least $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from lamp terminals shall not be required to be grounded.

**E4003.4 Screw-shell type.** Lampholders of the screw-shell type shall be installed for use as lampholders only.

**E4003.5 Recessed incandescent luminaires.** Recessed incandescent luminaires shall have thermal protection and shall be listed as thermally protected.

**Exceptions:**

1. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed luminaires listed for the purpose and installed in poured concrete.
2. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed luminaires having design, construction, and thermal performance characteristics equivalent to that of thermally protected luminaires, and such luminaires are identified as inherently protected.

**E4003.6 Thermal protection.** The ballast of a fluorescent luminaire installed indoors shall have integral thermal protection. Replacement ballasts shall also have thermal protection integral with the ballast. A simple reactance ballast in a fluorescent luminaire with straight tubular lamps shall not be required to be thermally protected.

**E4003.7 High-intensity discharge luminaires.** Recessed high-intensity luminaires designed to be installed in wall or ceiling cavities shall have thermal protection and be identified as thermally protected. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed high-intensity luminaires having design, construction and thermal performance characteristics equivalent to that of thermally protected luminaires, and such luminaires are identified as inherently protected. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed high-intensity discharge luminaires installed in and identified for use in poured concrete. A recessed remote ballast for a high-intensity discharge luminaire shall have thermal protection that is integral with the ballast and shall be identified as thermally protected.

**E4003.8 Metal halide lamp containment.** Luminaires that use a metal halide lamp other than a thick-glass parabolic reflector lamp (PAR) shall be provided with a containment barrier that encloses the lamp, or shall be provided with a physical means that allows the use of only a lamp that is Type O.

**E4003.9 Wet or damp locations.** Luminaires installed in wet or damp locations shall be installed so that water cannot enter or accumulate in wiring compartments, lampholders or other electrical parts. All luminaires installed in wet locations shall be marked SUITABLE FOR WET LOCATIONS. All luminaires installed in damp locations shall be marked SUITABLE FOR WET LOCATIONS or SUITABLE FOR DAMP LOCATIONS.

**E4003.10 Lampholders in wet or damp locations.** Lampholders installed in wet or damp locations shall be of the weatherproof type.

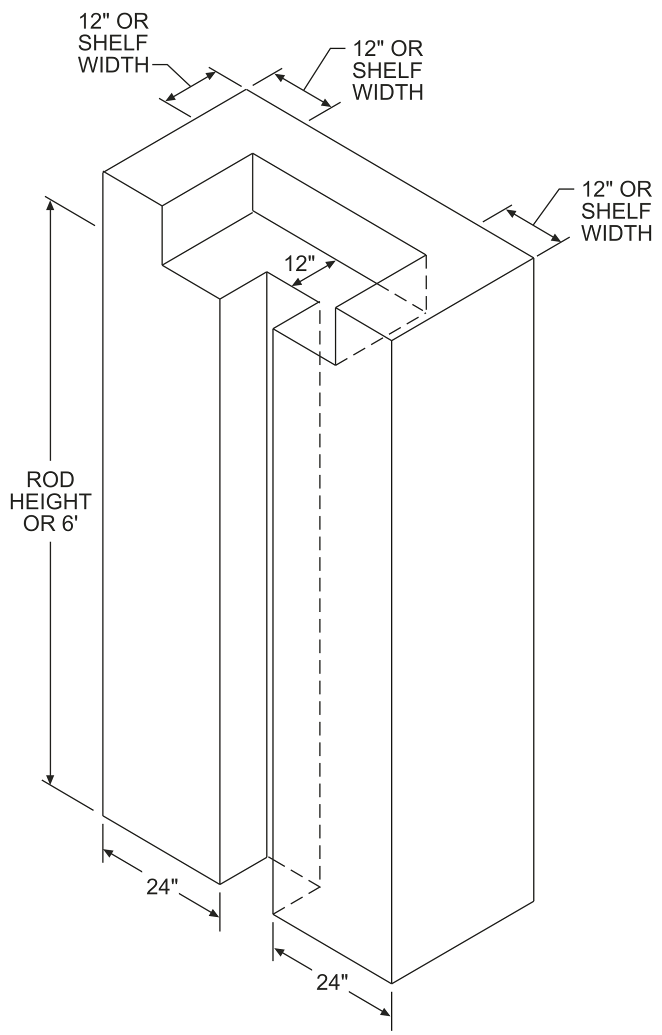
**E4003.11 Bathtub and shower areas.** Cord-connected luminaires, chain-, cable-, or cord-suspended-luminaires, lighting track, pendants, and ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans shall not have any parts located within a zone measured 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally and 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically from the top of a bathtub rim or shower stall threshold. This zone is all encompassing and includes the space directly over the tub or shower. Luminaires within the actual outside dimension of the bathtub or shower to a height of 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically from the top of the bathtub rim or shower threshold shall be marked for damp locations and where subject to shower spray, shall be marked for wet locations.

**E4003.12 Luminaires in clothes closets.** For the purposes of this section, storage space shall be defined as a volume bounded by the sides and back closet walls and planes extending from the closet floor vertically to a height of 6 feet (1829 mm) or the highest clothes-hanging rod and parallel to the walls at a horizontal distance of 24 inches (610 mm) from the sides and back of the closet walls respectively, and continuing vertically to the closet ceiling parallel to the walls at a horizontal distance of 12 inches (305 mm) or the width of the shelf, whichever is greater. For a closet that permits access to both sides of a hanging rod, the storage space shall include the volume below the highest rod extending 12 inches (305 mm) on either side of the rod on a plane horizontal to the floor extending the entire length of the rod (see Figure E4003.12).

The types of luminaires installed in clothes closets shall be limited to surface-mounted or recessed incandescent luminaires with completely enclosed lamps, surface-mounted or recessed fluorescent luminaires, and surface-mounted fluorescent or LED luminaires identified as suitable for installation within the storage area. Incandescent luminaires with open or partially enclosed lamps and pendant luminaires or lamp-holders shall be prohibited. The minimum clearance between luminaires installed in clothes closets and the nearest point of a storage area shall be as follows:

1. Surface-mounted incandescent or LED luminaires with a completely enclosed light source shall be installed on the wall above the door or on the ceiling, provided that there is a minimum clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) between the fixture and the nearest point of a storage space.
2. Surface-mounted fluorescent luminaires shall be installed on the wall above the door or on the ceiling, provided that there is a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm).
3. Recessed incandescent luminaires or LED luminaires with a completely enclosed light source shall be installed in the wall or the ceiling provided that there is a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm).

4. Recessed fluorescent luminaires shall be installed in the wall or on the ceiling provided that there is a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm) between the fixture and the nearest point of a storage space.
5. Surface-mounted fluorescent or LED luminaires shall be permitted to be installed within the storage space where identified for this use.




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE E4003.12**
**CLOSET STORAGE SPACE**

**E4003.13 Luminaire wiring—general.** Wiring on or within luminaires shall be neatly arranged and shall not be exposed to physical damage. Excess wiring shall be avoided. Conductors shall be arranged so that they are not subjected to temperatures above those for which the conductors are rated.

**E4003.13.1 Polarization of luminaires.** Luminaires shall be wired so that the screw shells of lampholders will be connected to the same luminaire or circuit conductor or terminal. The grounded conductor shall be connected to the screw shell.

**E4003.13.2 Luminaires as raceways.** Luminaires shall not be used as raceways for circuit conductors except where such luminaires are listed and marked for use as a raceway.

## SECTION E4004
## LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

**E4004.1 Outlet box covers.** In a completed installation, each outlet box shall be provided with a cover except where covered by means of a luminaire canopy, lampholder or device with a faceplate.

**E4004.2 Combustible material at outlet boxes.** Combustible wall or ceiling finish exposed between the inside edge of a luminaire canopy or pan and the outlet box to which the luminaire connects shall be covered with a noncombustible material.

**E4004.3 Access.** Luminaires shall be installed so that the connections between the luminaire conductors and the circuit conductors can be accessed without requiring the disconnection of any part of the wiring.

**E4004.4 Supports.** Luminaires and lampholders shall be securely supported. A luminaire that weighs more than 6 pounds (2.72 kg) or exceeds 16 inches (406 mm) in any dimension shall not be supported by the screw shell of a lampholder.

**E4004.5 Means of support.** Outlet boxes or fittings installed as required by Sections E3905 and E3906 shall be permitted to support luminaires.

**E4004.6 Exposed ballasts.** Luminaires having exposed ballasts or transformers shall be installed so that such ballasts or transformers are not in contact with combustible material.

**E4004.7 Combustible low-density cellulose fiberboard.** Where a surface-mounted luminaire containing a ballast is installed on combustible low-density cellulose fiberboard, the luminaire shall be marked for this purpose or it shall be spaced not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the surface of the fiberboard. Where such luminaires are partially or wholly recessed, the provisions of Sections E4004.8 and E4004.9 shall apply.

**E4004.8 Recessed luminaire clearance.** A recessed luminaire that is not identified for contact with insulation shall have all recessed parts spaced at least $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) from combustible materials. The points of support and the finish trim parts at the opening in the ceiling or wall surface shall be permitted to be in contact with combustible materials. A recessed luminaire that is identified for contact with insulation, Type IC, shall be permitted to be in contact with combustible materials at recessed parts, points of support, and portions passing through the building structure and at finish trim parts at the opening in the ceiling or wall.

**E4004.9 Recessed luminaire installation.** Thermal insulation shall not be installed above a recessed luminaire or within 3 inches (76 mm) of the recessed luminaire's enclosure, wiring compartment or ballast except where such luminaire is identified for contact with insulation, Type IC.

## SECTION E4005
## TRACK LIGHTING

**E4005.1 Installation.** Lighting track shall be permanently installed and permanently connected to a branch circuit having a rating not more than that of the track.

**E4005.2 Fittings.** Fittings identified for use on lighting track shall be designed specifically for the track on which they are to be installed. Fittings shall be securely fastened to the track, shall maintain polarization and connection to the equipment grounding conductor, and shall be designed to be suspended directly from the track. Only lighting track fittings shall be installed on lighting track. Lighting track fittings shall not be equipped with general-purpose receptacles.

**E4005.3 Connected load.** The connected load on lighting track shall not exceed the rating of the track.

**E4005.4 Prohibited locations.** Lighting track shall not be installed in the following locations:

1. Where likely to be subjected to physical damage.
2. In wet or damp locations.
3. Where subject to corrosive vapors.
4. In storage battery rooms.
5. In hazardous (classified) locations.
6. Where concealed.
7. Where extended through walls or partitions.
8. Less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the finished floor except where protected from physical damage or the track operates at less than 30 volts rms open-circuit voltage.
9. Where prohibited by Section E4003.11.

**E4005.5 Fastening.** Lighting track shall be securely mounted so that each fastening will be suitable for supporting the maximum weight of luminaires that can be installed. Except where identified for supports at greater intervals, a single section 4 feet (1219 mm) or shorter in length shall have two supports and, where installed in a continuous row, each individual section of not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) in length shall have one additional support.

**E4005.6 Grounding.** Lighting track shall be grounded in accordance with Chapter 39, and the track sections shall be securely coupled to maintain continuity of the circuitry, polarization and grounding throughout.

# CHAPTER 41

# APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

Chapter 41 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 41

# APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

## SECTION E4101 GENERAL

**E4101.1 Scope.** This section covers installation requirements for appliances and fixed heating equipment.

**E4101.2 Installation.** Appliances and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Electrically heated appliances and equipment shall be installed with the required clearances to combustible materials.

**E4101.3 Flexible cords.** Cord-and-plug-connected appliances shall use cords suitable for the environment and physical conditions likely to be encountered. Flexible cords shall be used only where the appliance is listed to be connected with a flexible cord. The cord shall be identified as suitable for the purpose in the installation instructions of the appliance manufacturer. Receptacles for cord-and-plug-connected appliances shall be accessible and shall be located to avoid physical damage to the flexible cord. Except for a listed appliance marked to indicate that it is protected by a system of double-insulation, the flexible cord supplying an appliance shall terminate in a grounding-type attachment plug. A receptacle for a cord-and-plug-connected range hood shall be supplied by an individual branch circuit. Specific appliances have additional requirements as specified in Table E4101.3 (see Section E3909).

**TABLE E4101.3**
**FLEXIBLE CORD LENGTH**

| APPLIANCE | MINIMUM CORD LENGTH (inches) | MAXIMUM CORD LENGTH (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| Kitchen waste disposal | 18 | 36 |
| Built-in dishwasher | 36 | 48 |
| Trash compactor | 36 | 48 |
| Range hoods | 18 | 36 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**E4101.4 Overcurrent protection.** Each appliance shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with the rating of the appliance and its listing.

**E4101.4.1 Single nonmotor-operated appliance.** The overcurrent protection for a branch circuit that supplies a single nonmotor-operated appliance shall not exceed that marked on the appliance. Where the overcurrent protection rating is not marked and the appliance is rated at over 13.3 amperes, the overcurrent protection shall not exceed 150 percent of the appliance rated current. Where 150 percent of the appliance rating does not correspond to a standard overcurrent device ampere rating, the next higher standard rating shall be permitted. Where the overcurrent protection rating is not marked and the appliance is rated at 13.3 amperes or less, the overcurrent protection shall not exceed 20 amperes.

**E4101.5 Disconnecting means.** Each appliance shall be provided with a means to disconnect all ungrounded supply conductors. For fixed electric space-heating equipment, means shall be provided to disconnect the heater and any motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent-protective devices. Switches and circuit breakers used as a disconnecting means shall be of the indicating type. Disconnecting means shall be as set forth in Table E4101.5.

**E4101.6 Support of ceiling-suspended paddle fans.** Ceiling-suspended fans (paddle) shall be supported independently of an outlet box or by a listed outlet box or outlet box system identified for the use and installed in accordance with Section E3905.9.

**E4101.7 Snow-melting and deicing equipment protection.** Outdoor receptacles that are not readily accessible and are supplied from a dedicated branch circuit for electric snow-melting or deicing equipment shall be permitted to be installed without ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel. However, ground-fault protection of equipment shall be provided for fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow-melting equipment.

**TABLE E4101.5**
**DISCONNECTING MEANS**

| DESCRIPTION | ALLOWED DISCONNECTING MEANS |
|---|---|
| Permanently connected appliance rated at not over 300 volt-amperes or $^1/_8$ horsepower. | Branch-circuit overcurrent device. |
| Permanently connected appliances rated in excess of 300 volt-amperes or $^1/_8$ horsepower. | Branch circuit breaker or switch located within sight of appliance or such devices in any location that are capable of being locked in the open position. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed. |
| Appliances listed for cord-and-plug connection. | A separable connector or attachment plug and receptacle provided with access. |
| Permanently installed heating equipment with motors rated at not over $^1/_8$ horsepower with supplementary overcurrent protection. | Disconnect, on the supply side of fuses, in sight from the supplementary overcurrent device, and in sight of the heating equipment or, in any location, if capable of being locked in the open position. |
| Heating equipment containing motors rated over $^1/_8$ horsepower with supplementary overcurrent protection. | Disconnect permitted to serve as required disconnect for both the heating equipment and the controller where, on the supply side of fuses, and in sight from the supplementary overcurrent devices, if the disconnecting means is also in sight from the controller, or is capable of being locked off and simultaneously disconnects the heater, motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent protective devices from all ungrounded conductors. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed. The disconnecting means shall have an ampere rating not less than 125 percent of the total load of the motors and the heaters. |
| Heating equipment containing no motor rated over $^1/_8$ horsepower without supplementary overcurrent protection. | Branch-circuit switch or circuit breaker where within sight from the heating equipment or capable of being locked off and simultaneously disconnects the heater, motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent protective devices from all ungrounded conductors. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed. The disconnecting means shall have an ampere rating not less than 125 percent of the total load of the motors and the heaters. |
| Heating equipment containing motors rated over $^1/_8$ horsepower without supplementary overcurrent protection. | Disconnecting means in sight from motor controller or as provided for heating equipment with motor rated over $^1/_8$ horsepower with supplementary overcurrent protection and simultaneously disconnects the heater, motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent protective devices from all ungrounded conductors. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed. The disconnecting means shall have an ampere rating not less than 125 percent of the total load of the motors and the heaters. |
| Air-conditioning condensing units and heat pump units. | A readily accessible disconnect within sight from unit as the only allowable means.[a] |
| Appliances and fixed heating equipment with unit switches having a marked OFF position. | Unit switch where an additional individual switch or circuit breaker serves as a redundant disconnecting means. |
| Thermostatically controlled fixed heating equipment. | Thermostats with a marked OFF position that directly open all ungrounded conductors, which when manually placed in the OFF position are designed so that the circuit cannot be energized automatically and that are located within sight of the equipment controlled. |

For SI: 1 horsepower = 0.746 kW.

a. The disconnecting means shall be permitted to be installed on or within the unit. It shall not be located on panels designed to allow access to the unit or located so as to obscure the air-conditioning equipment nameplate(s).

# CHAPTER 42

# SWIMMING POOLS

Chapter 42 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 42
# SWIMMING POOLS

## SECTION E4201
## GENERAL

**E4201.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the construction and installation of electric wiring and equipment associated with all swimming pools, wading pools, decorative pools, fountains, hot tubs and spas, and hydromassage bathtubs, whether permanently installed or storable, and shall apply to metallic auxiliary equipment, such as pumps, filters and similar equipment. Sections E4202 through E4206 provide general rules for permanent pools, spas and hot tubs. Section E4207 provides specific rules for storable pools. Section E4208 provides specific rules for spas and hot tubs. Section E4209 provides specific rules for hydromassage bathtubs.

**E4201.2 Definitions.**

**CORD-AND-PLUG-CONNECTED LIGHTING ASSEMBLY.** A lighting assembly consisting of a cord-and-plug-connected transformer and a luminaire intended for installation in the wall of a spa, hot tub, or storable pool.

**DRY-NICHE LUMINAIRE.** A luminaire intended for installation in the wall of a pool or fountain in a niche that is sealed against the entry of pool water.

**FORMING SHELL.** A structure designed to support a wet-niche luminaire assembly and intended for mounting in a pool or fountain structure.

**FOUNTAIN.** Fountains, ornamental pools, display pools, and reflection pools. The definition does not include drinking fountains.

**HYDROMASSAGE BATHTUB.** A permanently installed bathtub equipped with a recirculating piping system, pump, and associated equipment. It is designed so it can accept, circulate and discharge water upon each use.

**MAXIMUM WATER LEVEL.** The highest level that water can reach before it spills out.

**NO-NICHE LUMINAIRE.** A luminaire intended for installation above or below the water without a niche.

**PACKAGED SPA OR HOT TUB EQUIPMENT ASSEMBLY.** A factory-fabricated unit consisting of water-circulating, heating and control equipment mounted on a common base, intended to operate a spa or hot tub. Equipment may include pumps, air blowers, heaters, luminaires, controls and sanitizer generators.

**PERMANENTLY INSTALLED SWIMMING, WADING, IMMERSION AND THERAPEUTIC POOLS.** Those that are constructed in the ground or partially in the ground, and all others capable of holding water with a depth greater than 42 inches (1067 mm), and all pools installed inside of a building, regardless of water depth, whether or not served by electrical circuits of any nature.

**POOL.** Manufactured or field-constructed equipment designed to contain water on a permanent or semipermanent basis and used for swimming, wading, immersion, or therapeutic purposes.

**POOL COVER, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED.** Motor-driven equipment designed to cover and uncover the water surface of a pool by means of a flexible sheet or rigid frame.

**SELF-CONTAINED SPA OR HOT TUB.** A factory-fabricated unit consisting of a spa or hot tub vessel with all water-circulating, heating and control equipment integral to the unit. Equipment may include pumps, air blowers, heaters, luminaires, controls and sanitizer generators.

**SPA OR HOT TUB.** A hydromassage pool, or tub for recreational or therapeutic use, not located in health care facilities, designed for immersion of users, and usually having a filter, heater, and motor-driven blower. They are installed indoors or outdoors, on the ground or supporting structure, or in the ground or supporting structure. Generally, a spa or hot tub is not designed or intended to have its contents drained or discharged after each use.

**STORABLE SWIMMING OR WADING POOL.** Those that are constructed on or above the ground and are capable of holding water with a maximum depth of 42 inches (1067 mm), or a pool with nonmetallic, molded polymeric walls or inflatable fabric walls regardless of dimension.

**THROUGH-WALL LIGHTING ASSEMBLY.** A lighting assembly intended for installation above grade, on or through the wall of a pool, consisting of two interconnected groups of components separated by the pool wall.

**WET-NICHE LUMINAIRE.** A luminaire intended for installation in a forming shell mounted in a pool or fountain structure where the luminaire will be completely surrounded by water.

## SECTION E4202
## WIRING METHODS FOR POOLS, SPAS, HOT TUBS AND HYDROMASSAGE BATHTUBS

**E4202.1 General.** Wiring methods used in conjunction with permanently installed swimming pools, spas, hot tubs or hydromassage bathtubs shall be installed in accordance with Table E4202.1 and Chapter 38 except as otherwise stated in this section. Storable swimming pools shall comply with Section E4207.

**E4202.2 Flexible cords.** Flexible cords used in conjunction with a pool, spa, hot tub or hydromassage bathtub shall be installed in accordance with the following:

1. For other than underwater luminaires, fixed or stationary equipment shall be permitted to be connected with a flexible cord to facilitate removal or disconnection for maintenance or repair. For other than storable pools, the flexible cord shall not exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in length. Cords that supply swimming pool equipment, shall have a copper

equipment grounding conductor not smaller than 12 AWG and shall be provided with a grounding-type attachment plug.

2. Flexible cord that is supplied as part of a listed underwater swimming pool lighting luminaire shall be permitted to be installed in any of the permitted wiring methods from the luminaire to a deck box or other enclosure. Splices shall not be made within a raceway. The equipment grounding conductor shall be an insulated copper conductor that is not smaller than the supply conductors and not smaller than 16 AWG.
3. A listed packaged spa or hot tub installed outdoors that is GFCI protected shall be permitted to be cord and plug-connected provided that such cord does not exceed 15 feet (4572 mm) in length.
4. A listed packaged spa or hot tub rated at 20 amperes or less and installed indoors shall be permitted to be cord and plug-connected to facilitate maintenance and repair.
5. For other than underwater and storable pool lighting luminaire, the requirements of Item 1 shall apply to any cord-equipped luminaire that is located within 16 feet (4877 mm) radially from any point on the water surface.

**E4202.3 Double insulated pool pumps.** A listed cord and plug-connected pool pump incorporating an approved system of double insulation that provides a means for grounding only the internal and nonaccessible, noncurrent-carrying metal parts of the pump shall be connected to any wiring method recognized in Chapter 38 that is suitable for the location. Where the bonding grid is connected to the equipment grounding conductor of the motor circuit in accordance with Section E4204.2, Item 6.1, the branch circuit wiring shall comply with Sections E4202.1 and E4205.5.

**TABLE E4202.1**
**ALLOWABLE APPLICATIONS FOR WIRING METHODS[a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, l]**

| WIRING LOCATION OR PURPOSE (Application allowed where marked with an "A") | AC, FMC, NM, SR, SE | EMT | ENT | IMC[j], RMC[j], RNC[i] | LFMC | LFNMC | UF | MC[k] | FLEX CORD |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Panelboard(s) that supply pool equipment: from service equipment to panelboard | A[b, e] SR not permitted | A[c] | A[b] | A | — | A | A[e] | A[e] | — |
| Wet-niche and no-niche luminaires: from branch circuit OCPD to deck or junction box | AC[b] only | A[c] | A[b] | A | — | A | — | A[b] | — |
| Wet-niche and no-niche luminaires: from deck or junction box to forming shell | — | — | — | A[d] | — | A | — | — | A[h] |
| Dry niche: from branch circuit OCPD to luminaires | AC[b] only | A[c] | A[b] | A | — | A | — | A[b] | — |
| Pool-associated motors: from branch circuit OCPD to motor | A[b] | A[c] | A[b] | A | A[f] | A[f] | A[b] | A | A[h] |
| Packaged or self-contained outdoor spas and hot tubs with underwater luminaire: from branch circuit OCPD to spa or hot tub | AC[b] only | A[c] | A[b] | A | A[f] | A[f] | — | A[b] | A[h] |
| Packaged or self-contained outdoor spas and hot tubs without underwater luminaire: from branch circuit OCPD to spa or hot tub | A[b] | A[c] | A[b] | A | A[f] | A[f] | A[b] | A | A[h] |
| Indoor spas and hot tubs, hydromassage bathtubs, and other pool, spa or hot tub associated equipment: from branch circuit OCPD to equipment | A[b] | A[c] | A[b] | A | A | A | A | A | A[h] |
| Connection at pool lighting transformers | AC[b] only | A[c] | A[b] | A | A[g] | A[g] | — | A[b] | — |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For all wiring methods, see Section E4205 for equipment grounding conductor requirements.
b. Limited to use within buildings.
c. Limited to use on or within buildings.
d. Metal conduit shall be constructed of brass or other approved corrosion-resistant metal.
e. Permitted only for existing installations in accordance with the exception to Section E4205.6.
f. Limited to use at pool, spa or hot tub equipment where flexibility is necessary. For spas and hot tubs, the maximum length shall be 6 feet.
g. Limited to use in individual lengths not to exceed 6 feet. The total length of all individual runs of LFMC and LFNMC shall not exceed 10 feet. LFNMC Type B shall be limited to lengths not exceeding 10 feet.
h. Flexible cord shall be installed in accordance with Section E4202.2.
i. Nonmetallic conduit shall be rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit Type PVC or reinforced thermosetting resin conduit Type RTRC.
j. Aluminum conduits shall not be permitted in the pool area where subject to corrosion.
k. Where installed as direct burial cable or in wet locations, Type MC cable shall be listed and identified for the location.
l. See Section E4202.3 for listed, double-insulated pool pump motors.

## SECTION E4203
## EQUIPMENT LOCATION AND CLEARANCES

**E4203.1 Receptacle outlets.** Receptacles outlets shall be installed and located in accordance with Sections E4203.1.1 through E4203.1.5. Distances shall be measured as the shortest path that an appliance supply cord connected to the receptacle would follow without penetrating a floor, wall, ceiling, doorway with hinged or sliding door, window opening, or other effective permanent barrier.

**E4203.1.1 Location.** Receptacles that provide power for water-pump motors or other loads directly related to the circulation and sanitation system shall be permitted to be located between 6 feet and 10 feet (1829 mm and 3048 mm) from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs, and, where so located, shall be single and of the locking and grounding type and shall be protected by ground-fault circuit interrupters.

Other receptacles on the property shall be located not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs.

**E4203.1.2 Where required.** At least one 125-volt, 15- or 20-ampere receptacle supplied by a general-purpose branch circuit shall be located a minimum of 6 feet (1829 mm) from and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from the inside wall of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs. This receptacle shall be located not more than 6 feet, 6 inches (1981 mm) above the floor, platform or grade level serving the pool, spa or hot tub.

**E4203.1.3 GFCI protection.** All 15- and 20-ampere, single phase, 125-volt receptacles located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit-interrupter. Outlets supplying pool pump motors from branch circuits with short-circuit and ground-fault protection rated 15 or 20 amperes, 125 volt or 240 volt, single phase, whether by receptacle or direct connection, shall be provided with ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection for personnel.

**E4203.1.4 Indoor locations.** Receptacles shall be located not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the inside walls of indoor spas and hot tubs. A minimum of one 125-volt receptacle shall be located between 6 feet (1829 mm) and 10 feet (3048 mm) from the inside walls of indoor spas or hot tubs.

**E4203.1.5 Indoor GFCI protection.** All 125-volt receptacles rated 30 amperes or less and located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the inside walls of spas and hot tubs installed indoors, shall be protected by ground-fault circuit-interrupters.

**E4203.2 Switching devices.** Switching devices shall be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of pools, spas and hot tubs except where separated from the pool, spa or hot tub by a solid fence, wall, or other permanent barrier or the switches are listed for use within 5 feet (1524 mm). Switching devices located in a room or area containing a hydromassage bathtub shall be located in accordance with the general requirements of this code.

**E4203.3 Disconnecting means.** One or more means to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors for all utilization equipment, other than lighting, shall be provided. Each of such means shall be readily accessible and within sight from the equipment it serves and shall be located at least 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of a pool, spa, or hot tub unless separated from the open water by a permanently installed barrier that provides a 5 foot (1524 mm) or greater reach path. This horizontal distance shall be measured from the water's edge along the shortest path required to reach the disconnect.

**E4203.4 Luminaires and ceiling fans.** Lighting outlets, luminaires, and ceiling-suspended paddle fans shall be installed and located in accordance with Sections E4203.4.1 through E4203.4.5.

**E4203.4.1 Outdoor location.** In outdoor pool, outdoor spas and outdoor hot tubs areas, luminaires, lighting outlets, and ceiling-suspended paddle fans shall not be installed over the pool or over the area extending 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of a pool except where no part of the luminaire or ceiling-suspended paddle fan is less than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the maximum water level.

**E4203.4.2 Indoor locations.** In indoor pool areas, the limitations of Section E4203.4.1 shall apply except where the luminaires, lighting outlets and ceiling-suspended paddle fans comply with all of the following conditions:

1. The luminaires are of a totally enclosed type;
2. A ground-fault circuit interrupter is installed in the branch circuit supplying the luminaires or ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans; and
3. The distance from the bottom of the luminaire or ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan to the maximum water level is not less than 7 feet, 6 inches (2286 mm).

**E4203.4.3 Existing lighting outlets and luminaires.** Existing lighting outlets and luminaires that are located within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) vertically above the maximum water level, provided that such luminaires and outlets are rigidly attached to the existing structure and are protected by a ground-fault circuit-interrupter.

**E4203.4.4 Indoor spas and hot tubs.**

1. Luminaires, lighting outlets, and ceiling-suspended paddle fans located over the spa or hot tub or within 5 feet (1524 mm) from the inside walls of the spa or hot tub shall be a minimum of 7 feet, 6 inches (2286 mm) above the maximum water level and shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter.

   Luminaires, lighting outlets, and ceiling-suspended paddle fans that are located 12 feet (3658 mm) or more above the maximum water level shall not require ground-fault circuit interrupter protection.
2. Luminaires protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter and complying with Item 2.1 or 2.2 shall be permitted to be installed less than 7 feet, 6 inches (2286 mm) over a spa or hot tub.
   2.1. Recessed luminaires shall have a glass or plastic lens and nonmetallic or electrically isolated metal trim, and shall be suitable for use in damp locations.

2.2. Surface-mounted luminaires shall have a glass or plastic globe and a nonmetallic body or a metallic body isolated from contact. Such luminaires shall be suitable for use in damp locations.

**E4203.4.5 GFCI protection in adjacent areas.** Luminaires and outlets that are installed in the area extending between 5 feet (1524 mm) and 10 feet (3048 mm) from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall be protected by ground-fault circuit-interrupters except where such fixtures and outlets are installed not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the maximum water level and are rigidly attached to the structure.

**E4203.5 Other outlets.** Other outlets such as for remote control, signaling, fire alarm and communications shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the inside walls of the pool. Measurements shall be determined in accordance with Section E4203.1.

**E4203.6 Overhead conductor clearances.** Except where installed with the clearances specified in Table E4203.5, the following parts of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall not be placed under existing service-drop conductors or any other open overhead wiring; nor shall such wiring be installed above the following:

1. Pools and the areas extending 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from the inside of the walls of the pool;
2. Diving structures; or
3. Observation stands, towers, and platforms.

Overhead conductors of network-powered broadband communications systems shall comply with the provisions in Table E4203.5 for conductors operating at 0 to 750 volts to ground.

Utility-owned, -operated and -maintained communications conductors, community antenna system coaxial cables and the supporting messengers shall be permitted at a height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above swimming and wading pools, diving structures, and observation stands, towers, and platforms.

**E4203.7 Underground wiring.** Underground wiring shall not be installed under or within the area extending 5 feet(1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of pools and outdoor hot tubs and spas except where the wiring is installed to supply pool, spa or hot tub equipment or where space limitations prevent wiring from being routed 5 feet (1524 mm) or more horizontally from the inside walls. Where installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside walls, the wiring method shall be a complete raceway system of rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit or a nonmetallic raceway system. Metal conduit shall be corrosion resistant and suitable for the location. The minimum cover depth shall be in accordance with Table E4203.7.

## SECTION E4204 BONDING

**E4204.1 Performance.** The equipotential bonding required by this section shall be installed to reduce voltage gradients in the pool area as prescribed.

**TABLE E4203.5
OVERHEAD CONDUCTOR CLEARANCES**

| | INSULATED SUPPLY OR SERVICE DROP CABLES, 0-750 VOLTS TO GROUND, SUPPORTED ON AND CABLED TOGETHER WITH AN EFFECTIVELY GROUNDED BARE MESSENGER OR EFFECTIVELY GROUNDED NEUTRAL CONDUCTOR (feet) | ALL OTHER SUPPLY OR SERVICE DROP CONDUCTORS (feet) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Voltage to ground | |
| | | 0-15 kV | Greater than 15 to 50 kV |
| A. Clearance in any direction to the water level, edge of water surface, base of diving platform, or permanently-anchored raft | 22.5 | 25 | 27 |
| B. Clearance in any direction to the diving platform | 14.5 | 17 | 18 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**TABLE E4203.7
MINIMUM BURIAL DEPTHS**

| WIRING METHOD | UNDERGROUND WIRING (inches) |
|---|---|
| Rigid metal conduit | 6 |
| Intermediate metal conduit | 6 |
| Nonmetallic raceways listed for direct burial without concrete encasement | 18 |
| Other approved raceways[a] | 18 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Raceways approved for burial only where concrete-encased shall require a concrete envelope not less than 2 inches in thickness.

**E4204.2 Bonded parts.** The parts of pools, spas, and hot tubs specified in Items 1 through 7 shall be bonded together using insulated, covered or bare solid copper conductors not smaller than 8 AWG or using rigid metal conduit of brass or other identified corrosion-resistant metal. An 8 AWG or larger solid copper bonding conductor provided to reduce voltage gradients in the pool, spa, or hot tub area shall not be required to be extended or attached to remote panelboards, service equipment, or electrodes. Connections shall be made by exothermic welding or by listed pressure connectors or clamps that are labeled as being suitable for the purpose and that are made of stainless steel, brass, copper or copper alloy. Connection devices or fittings that depend solely on solder shall not be used. Sheet metal screws shall not be used to connect bonding conductors or connection devices:

1. Conductive pool shells. Bonding to conductive pool shells shall be provided as specified in Item 1.1 or 1.2. Poured concrete, pneumatically applied or sprayed concrete, and concrete block with painted or plastered coatings shall be considered to be conductive materials because of their water permeability and porosity. Vinyl liners and fiberglass composite shells shall be considered to be nonconductive materials.
    - 1.1. Structural Reinforcing Steel. Unencapsulated structural reinforcing steel shall be bonded together by steel tie wires or the equivalent. Where structural reinforcing steel is encapsulated in a nonconductive compound, a copper conductor grid shall be installed in accordance with Item 1.2.
    - 1.2. Copper Conductor Grid. A copper conductor grid shall be provided and shall comply with Items 1.2.1 through 1.2.4:
        - 1.2.1. It shall be constructed of minimum 8 AWG bare solid copper conductors bonded to each other at all points of crossing.
        - 1.2.2. It shall conform to the contour of the pool and the pool deck.
        - 1.2.3. It shall be arranged in a 12 inch (305 mm) by 12 inch (305 mm) network of conductors in a uniformly spaced perpendicular grid pattern with a tolerance of 4 inches (102 mm).
        - 1.2.4. It shall be secured within or under the pool not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from the outer contour of the pool shell.
2. Perimeter surfaces. The perimeter surface shall extend for 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally beyond the inside walls of the pool and shall include unpaved surfaces, poured concrete and other types of paving. Bonding to perimeter surfaces shall be provided as specified in Item 2.1 or 2.2 and shall be attached to the pool, spa, or hot tub reinforcing steel or copper conductor grid at a minimum of four points uniformly spaced around the perimeter of the pool, spa, or hot tub. For nonconductive pool shells, bonding at four points shall not be required.
    - 2.1. Structural Reinforcing Steel. Structural reinforcing steel shall be bonded in accordance with Item 1.1.
    - 2.2. Alternate Means. Where structural reinforcing steel is not available or is encapsulated in a nonconductive compound, a copper conductor(s) shall be used in accordance with Items 2.2.1 through 2.2.5:
        - 2.2.1. At least one minimum 8 AWG bare solid copper conductor shall be provided.
        - 2.2.2. The conductors shall follow the contour of the perimeter surface.
        - 2.2.3. Splices shall be listed.
        - 2.2.4. The required conductor shall be 18 to 24 inches (457 to 610 mm) from the inside walls of the pool.
        - 2.2.5. The required conductor shall be secured within or under the perimeter surface 4 to 6 inches (102 mm to 152 mm) below the subgrade.
3. Metallic components. All metallic parts of the pool structure, including reinforcing metal not addressed in Item 1.1, shall be bonded. Where reinforcing steel is encapsulated with a nonconductive compound, the reinforcing steel shall not be required to be bonded.
4. Underwater lighting. All metal forming shells and mounting brackets of no-niche luminaires shall be bonded.

    **Exception:** Listed low-voltage lighting systems with nonmetallic forming shells shall not require bonding.
5. Metal fittings. All metal fittings within or attached to the pool structure shall be bonded. Isolated parts that are not over 4 inches (102 mm) in any dimension and do not penetrate into the pool structure more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) shall not require bonding.
6. Electrical equipment. Metal parts of electrical equipment associated with the pool water circulating system, including pump motors and metal parts of equipment associated with pool covers, including electric motors, shall be bonded.

    **Exception:** Metal parts of listed equipment incorporating an approved system of double insulation shall not be bonded.
    - 6.1. Double-Insulated Water Pump Motors. Where a double-insulated water pump motor is installed under the provisions of this item, a solid 8 AWG copper conductor of sufficient length to make a bonding connection to a replacement motor shall be extended from the bonding grid to an accessible point in the vicinity of the pool pump motor.

Where there is no connection between the swimming pool bonding grid and the equipment grounding system for the premises, this bonding conductor shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor of the motor circuit.

6.2. Pool Water Heaters. For pool water heaters rated at more than 50 amperes and having specific instructions regarding bonding and grounding, only those parts designated to be bonded shall be bonded and only those parts designated to be grounded shall be grounded.

7. Metal wiring methods and equipment. Metal-sheathed cables and raceways, metal piping, and all fixed metal parts shall be bonded.

**Exceptions:**

1. Those separated from the pool by a permanent barrier shall not be required to be bonded.
2. Those greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of the pool shall not be required to be bonded.
3. Those greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) measured vertically above the maximum water level of the pool, or as measured vertically above any observation stands, towers, or platforms, or any diving structures, shall not be required to be bonded.

**E4204.3 Pool water.** The pool water shall be intentionally bonded by means of a conductive surface area not less than 9 square inches (5806 mm$^2$) installed in contact with the pool water. This bond shall be permitted to consist of parts that are required to be bonded in Section E4204.2.

**E4204.4 Bonding of outdoor hot tubs and spas.** Outdoor hot tubs and spas shall comply with the bonding requirements of Sections E4204.1 through E4204.3. Bonding by metal-to-metal mounting on a common frame or base shall be permitted. The metal bands or hoops used to secure wooden staves shall not be required to be bonded as required in Section E4204.2.

**E4204.5 Bonding of indoor hot tubs and spas.** The following parts of indoor hot tubs and spas shall be bonded together:

1. All metal fittings within or attached to the hot tub or spa structure.
2. Metal parts of electrical equipment associated with the hot tub or spa water circulating system, including pump motors.
3. Metal raceway and metal piping that are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside walls of the hot tub or spa and that are not separated from the spa or hot tub by a permanent barrier.
4. All metal surfaces that are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside walls of the hot tub or spa and that are not separated from the hot tub or spa area by a permanent barrier.

**Exceptions:**

1. Small conductive surfaces not likely to become energized, such as air and water jets and drain fittings, where not connected to metallic piping, towel bars, mirror frames, and similar nonelectrical equipment, shall not be required to be bonded.
2. Metal parts of electrical equipment associated with the water circulating system, including pump motors that are part of a listed self-contained hot tub or spa.

5. Electrical devices and controls that are not associated with the hot tubs or spas and that are located less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from such units.

**E4204.5.1 Methods.** All metal parts associated with the hot tub or spa shall be bonded by any of the following methods:

1. The interconnection of threaded metal piping and fittings.
2. Metal-to-metal mounting on a common frame or base
3. The provision of an insulated, covered or bare solid copper bonding jumper not smaller than 8 AWG. It shall not be the intent to require that the 8 AWG or larger solid copper bonding conductor be extended or attached to any remote panelboard, service equipment, or any electrode, but only that it shall be employed to eliminate voltage gradients in the hot tub or spa area as prescribed.

**E4204.5.2 Connections.** Connections shall be made by exothermic welding or by listed pressure connectors or clamps that are labeled as being suitable for the purpose and that are made of stainless steel, brass, copper or copper alloy. Connection devices or fittings that depend solely on solder shall not be used. Sheet metal screws shall not be used to connect bonding conductors or connection devices.

## SECTION E4205
## GROUNDING

**E4205.1 Equipment to be grounded.** The following equipment shall be grounded:

1. Through-wall lighting assemblies and underwater luminaires other than those low-voltage lighting products listed for the application without a grounding conductor.
2. All electrical equipment located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside wall of the pool, spa or hot tub.
3. All electrical equipment associated with the recirculating system of the pool, spa or hot tub.
4. Junction boxes.
5. Transformer enclosures.
6. Ground-fault circuit-interrupters.
7. Panelboards that are not part of the service equipment and that supply any electrical equipment associated with the pool, spa or hot tub.

**E4205.2 Luminaires and related equipment.** Through-wall lighting assemblies, wet-niche, dry-niche, or no-niche luminaires shall be connected to an insulated copper equipment grounding conductor sized in accordance with Table

E3908.12 but not smaller than 12 AWG. The equipment grounding conductor between the wiring chamber of the secondary winding of a transformer and a junction box shall be sized in accordance with the overcurrent device in such circuit. The junction box, transformer enclosure, or other enclosure in the supply circuit to a wet-niche or no-niche luminaire and the field-wiring chamber of a dry-niche luminaire shall be grounded to the equipment grounding terminal of the panelboard. The equipment grounding terminal shall be directly connected to the panelboard enclosure. The equipment grounding conductor shall be installed without joint or splice.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where more than one underwater luminaire is supplied by the same branch circuit, the equipment grounding conductor, installed between the junction boxes, transformer enclosures, or other enclosures in the supply circuit to wet-niche luminaires, or between the field-wiring compartments of dry-niche luminaires, shall be permitted to be terminated on grounding terminals.
2. Where an underwater luminaire is supplied from a transformer, ground-fault circuit-interrupter, clock-operated switch, or a manual snap switch that is located between the panelboard and a junction box connected to the conduit that extends directly to the underwater luminaire, the equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted to terminate on grounding terminals on the transformer, ground-fault circuit-interrupter, clock-operated switch enclosure, or an outlet box used to enclose a snap switch.

**E4205.3 Nonmetallic conduit.** Where a nonmetallic conduit is installed between a forming shell and a junction box, transformer enclosure, or other enclosure, a 8 AWG insulated copper bonding jumper shall be installed in this conduit except where a listed low-voltage lighting system not requiring grounding is used. The bonding jumper shall be terminated in the forming shell, junction box or transformer enclosure, or ground-fault circuit-interrupter enclosure. The termination of the 8 AWG bonding jumper in the forming shell shall be covered with, or encapsulated in, a listed potting compound to protect such connection from the possible deteriorating effect of pool water.

**E4205.4 Flexible cords.** Wet-niche luminaires that are supplied by a flexible cord or cable shall have all exposed noncurrent-carrying metal parts grounded by an insulated copper equipment grounding conductor that is an integral part of the cord or cable. This grounding conductor shall be connected to a grounding terminal in the supply junction box, transformer enclosure, or other enclosure. The grounding conductor shall not be smaller than the supply conductors and not smaller than 16 AWG.

**E4205.5 Motors.** Pool-associated motors shall be connected to an insulated copper equipment grounding conductor sized in accordance with Table E3908.12, but not smaller than 12 AWG. Where the branch circuit supplying the motor is installed in the interior of a one-family dwelling or in the interior of accessory buildings associated with a one-family dwelling, using a cable wiring method permitted by Table E4202.1, an uninsulated equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted provided that it is enclosed within the outer sheath of the cable assembly.

**E4205.6 Feeders.** An equipment grounding conductor shall be installed with the feeder conductors between the grounding terminal of the pool equipment panelboard and the grounding terminal of the applicable service equipment or source of a separately derived system. The equipment grounding conductor shall be insulated, shall be sized in accordance with Table E3908.12, and shall be not smaller than 12 AWG.

**Exception:** An existing feeder between an existing remote panelboard and service equipment shall be permitted to run in flexible metal conduit or an approved cable assembly that includes an equipment grounding conductor within its outer sheath. The equipment grounding conductor shall not be connected to the grounded conductor in the remote panelboard.

**E4205.6.1 Separate buildings.** A feeder to a separate building or structure shall be permitted to supply swimming pool equipment branch circuits, or feeders supplying swimming pool equipment branch circuits, provided that the grounding arrangements in the separate building meet the requirements of Section E3607.3. Where installed in other than existing feeders covered in the exception to Section E4205.6, a separate equipment grounding conductor shall be an insulated conductor.

**E4205.7 Cord-connected equipment.** Where fixed or stationary equipment is connected with a flexible cord to facilitate removal or disconnection for maintenance, repair, or storage, as provided in Section E4202.2, the equipment grounding conductors shall be connected to a fixed metal part of the assembly. The removable part shall be mounted on or bonded to the fixed metal part.

**E4205.8 Other equipment.** Other electrical equipment shall be grounded in accordance with Section E3908.

## SECTION E4206
## EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

**E4206.1 Transformers.** Transformers used for the supply of underwater luminaires, together with the transformer enclosure, shall be listed as a swimming pool and spa transformer. Such transformers shall be of an isolated winding type with an ungrounded secondary that has a grounded metal barrier between the primary and secondary windings.

**E4206.2 Ground-fault circuit-interrupters.** Ground-fault circuit-interrupters shall be self-contained units, circuit-breaker types, receptacle types or other approved types.

**E4206.3 Wiring on load side of ground-fault circuit-interrupters and transformers.** For other than grounding conductors, conductors installed on the load side of a ground-fault circuit-interrupter or transformer used to comply with the provisions of Section E4206.4, shall not occupy raceways, boxes, or enclosures containing other conductors except where the other conductors are protected by ground-fault circuit interrupters or are grounding conductors. Supply conductors to a feed-through type ground-fault circuit interrupter shall be permitted in the same enclosure. Ground-fault circuit interrupters shall be permitted in a panelboard that contains circuits protected by other than ground-fault circuit interrupters.

**E4206.4 Underwater luminaires.** The design of an underwater luminaire supplied from a branch circuit either directly or by way of a transformer meeting the requirements of Section E4206.1, shall be such that, where the fixture is properly installed without a ground-fault circuit-interrupter, there is no shock hazard with any likely combination of fault conditions during normal use (not relamping). In addition, a ground-fault circuit-interrupter shall be installed in the branch circuit supplying luminaires operating at more than 15 volts, so that there is no shock hazard during relamping. The installation of the ground-fault circuit-interrupter shall be such that there is no shock hazard with any likely fault-condition combination that involves a person in a conductive path from any ungrounded part of the branch circuit or the luminaire to ground. Compliance with this requirement shall be obtained by the use of a listed underwater luminaire and by installation of a listed ground-fault circuit-interrupter in the branch circuit. Luminaires that depend on submersion for safe operation shall be inherently protected against the hazards of overheating when not submerged.

**E4206.4.1 Maximum voltage.** Luminaires shall not be installed for operation on supply circuits over 150 volts between conductors.

**E4206.4.2 Luminaire location.** Luminaires mounted in walls shall be installed with the top of the fixture lens not less than 18 inches (457 mm) below the normal water level of the pool, except where the luminaire is listed and identified for use at a depth of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) below the normal water level of the pool. A luminaire facing upward shall have the lens adequately guarded to prevent contact by any person or shall be listed for use without a guard.

**E4206.5 Wet-niche luminaires.** Forming shells shall be installed for the mounting of all wet-niche underwater luminaires and shall be equipped with provisions for conduit entries. Conduit shall extend from the forming shell to a suitable junction box or other enclosure located as provided in Section E4206.9. Metal parts of the luminaire and forming shell in contact with the pool water shall be of brass or other approved corrosion-resistant metal.

The end of flexible-cord jackets and flexible-cord conductor terminations within a luminaire shall be covered with, or encapsulated in, a suitable potting compound to prevent the entry of water into the luminaire through the cord or its conductors. In addition, the grounding connection within a luminaire shall be similarly treated to protect such connection from the deteriorating effect of pool water in the event of water entry into the luminaire.

Luminaires shall be bonded to and secured to the forming shell by a positive locking device that ensures a low-resistance contact and requires a tool to remove the luminaire from the forming shell.

**E4206.5.1 Servicing.** All wet-niche luminaires shall be removable from the water for inspection, relamping, or other maintenance. The forming shell location and length of cord in the forming shell shall permit personnel to place the removed luminaire on the deck or other dry location for such maintenance. The luminaire maintenance location shall be accessible without entering or going into the pool water.

**E4206.6 Dry-niche luminaires.** Dry-niche luminaires shall be provided with provisions for drainage of water and means for accommodating one equipment grounding conductor for each conduit entry. Junction boxes shall not be required but, if used, shall not be required to be elevated or located as specified in Section E4206.9 if the luminaire is specifically identified for the purpose.

**E4206.7 No-niche luminaires.** No-niche luminaires shall be listed for the purpose and shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section E4206.5. Where connection to a forming shell is specified, the connection shall be to the mounting bracket.

**E4206.8 Through-wall lighting assembly.** A through-wall lighting assembly shall be equipped with a threaded entry or hub, or a nonmetallic hub, for the purpose of accommodating the termination of the supply conduit. A through-wall lighting assembly shall meet the construction requirements of Section E4205.4 and be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section E4206.5 Where connection to a forming shell is specified, the connection shall be to the conduit termination point.

**E4206.9 Junction boxes and enclosures for transformers or ground-fault circuit interrupters.** Junction boxes for underwater luminaires and enclosures for transformers and ground-fault circuit-interrupters that supply underwater luminaires shall comply with the following:

**E4206.9.1 Junction boxes.** A junction box connected to a conduit that extends directly to a forming shell or mounting bracket of a no-niche luminaire shall be:

1. Listed as a swimming pool junction box;
2. Equipped with threaded entries or hubs or a nonmetallic hub;
3. Constructed of copper, brass, suitable plastic, or other approved corrosion-resistant material;
4. Provided with electrical continuity between every connected metal conduit and the grounding terminals by means of copper, brass, or other approved corrosion-resistant metal that is integral with the box; and
5. Located not less than 4 inches (102 mm), measured from the inside of the bottom of the box, above the ground level, or pool deck, or not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the maximum pool water level, whichever provides the greatest elevation, and shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the inside wall of the pool, unless separated from the pool by a solid fence, wall or other permanent barrier. Where used on a lighting system operating at 15 volts or less, a flush deck box shall be permitted provided that an approved potting compound is used to fill the box to prevent the entrance of moisture; and the flush deck box is located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the inside wall of the pool.

**E4206.9.2 Other enclosures.** An enclosure for a transformer, ground-fault circuit-interrupter or a similar device connected to a conduit that extends directly to a forming shell or mounting bracket of a no-niche luminaire shall be:

1. Listed and labeled for the purpose, comprised of copper, brass, suitable plastic, or other approved corrosion-resistant material;
2. Equipped with threaded entries or hubs or a nonmetallic hub;
3. Provided with an approved seal, such as duct seal at the conduit connection, that prevents circulation of air between the conduit and the enclosures;
4. Provided with electrical continuity between every connected metal conduit and the grounding terminals by means of copper, brass or other approved corrosion-resistant metal that is integral with the enclosures; and
5. Located not less than 4 inches (102 mm), measured from the inside bottom of the enclosure, above the ground level or pool deck, or not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the maximum pool water level, whichever provides the greater elevation, and shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the inside wall of the pool, except where separated from the pool by a solid fence, wall or other permanent barrier.

**E4206.9.3 Protection of junction boxes and enclosures.** Junction boxes and enclosures mounted above the grade of the finished walkway around the pool shall not be located in the walkway unless afforded additional protection, such as by location under diving boards or adjacent to fixed structures.

**E4206.9.4 Grounding terminals.** Junction boxes, transformer enclosures, and ground-fault circuit-interrupter enclosures connected to a conduit that extends directly to a forming shell or mounting bracket of a no-niche luminaire shall be provided with grounding terminals in a quantity not less than the number of conduit entries plus one.

**E4206.9.5 Strain relief.** The termination of a flexible cord of an underwater luminaire within a junction box, transformer enclosure, ground-fault circuit-interrupter, or other enclosure shall be provided with a strain relief.

**E4206.10 Underwater audio equipment.** Underwater audio equipment shall be identified for the purpose.

**E4206.10.1 Speakers.** Each speaker shall be mounted in an approved metal forming shell, the front of which is enclosed by a captive metal screen, or equivalent, that is bonded to and secured to the forming shell by a positive locking device that ensures a low-resistance contact and requires a tool to open for installation or servicing of the speaker. The forming shell shall be installed in a recess in the wall or floor of the pool.

**E4206.10.2 Wiring methods.** Rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit of brass or other identified corrosion-resistant metal, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit (LFNC-B) shall extend from the forming shell to a suitable junction box or other enclosure as provided in Section E4206.9. Where rigid nonmetallic conduit or liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit is used, an 8 AWG solid or stranded insulated copper bonding jumper shall be installed in this conduit with provisions for terminating in the forming shell and the junction box. The termination of the 8 AWG bonding jumper in the forming shell shall be covered with, or encapsulated in, a suitable potting compound to protect such connection from the possible deteriorating effect of pool water.

**E4206.10.3 Forming shell and metal screen.** The forming shell and metal screen shall be of brass or other approved corrosion-resistant metal. All forming shells shall include provisions for terminating an 8 AWG copper conductor.

**E4206.11 Electrically operated pool covers.** The electric motors, controllers, and wiring for pool covers shall be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the inside wall of the pool except where separated from the pool by a wall, cover, or other permanent barrier. Electric motors installed below grade level shall be of the totally enclosed type. The electric motor and controller shall be connected to a circuit protected by a ground-fault circuit-interrupter. The device that controls the operation of the motor for an electrically operated pool cover shall be located so that the operator has full view of the pool.

**E4206.12 Electric pool water heaters.** All electric pool water heaters shall have the heating elements subdivided into loads not exceeding 48 amperes and protected at not more than 60 amperes. The ampacity of the branch-circuit conductors and the rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices shall be not less than 125 percent of the total nameplate load rating.

**E4206.13 Pool area heating.** The provisions of Sections E4206.13.1 through E4206.13.3 shall apply to all pool deck areas, including a covered pool, where electrically operated comfort heating units are installed within 20 feet (6096 mm) of the inside wall of the pool.

**E4206.13.1 Unit heaters.** Unit heaters shall be rigidly mounted to the structure and shall be of the totally enclosed or guarded types. Unit heaters shall not be mounted over the pool or within the area extending 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of a pool.

**E4206.13.2 Permanently wired radiant heaters.** Electric radiant heaters shall be suitably guarded and securely fastened to their mounting devices. Heaters shall not be installed over a pool or within the area extending 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of the pool and shall be mounted not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) vertically above the pool deck.

**E4206.13.3 Radiant heating cables prohibited.** Radiant heating cables embedded in or below the deck shall be prohibited.

## SECTION E4207
## STORABLE SWIMMING POOLS

**E4207.1 Pumps.** A cord and plug-connected pool filter pump for use with storable pools shall incorporate an approved system of double insulation or its equivalent and shall be provided with means for grounding only the internal and nonaccessible noncurrent-carrying metal parts of the appliance.

The means for grounding shall be an equipment grounding conductor run with the power-supply conductors in a flexible cord that is properly terminated in a grounding-type attachment plug having a fixed grounding contact. Cord and plug-connected pool filter pumps shall be provided with a ground-fault circuit interrupter that is an integral part of the attachment plug or located in the power supply cord within 12 inches (305 mm) of the attachment plug.

**E4207.2 Ground-fault circuit-interrupters required.** Electrical equipment, including power-supply cords, used with storable pools shall be protected by ground-fault circuit-interrupters. All 125-volt receptacles located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of the inside walls of a storable pool shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter. In determining these dimensions, the distance to be measured shall be the shortest path that the supply cord of an appliance connected to the receptacle would follow without passing through a floor, wall, ceiling, doorway with hinged or sliding door, window opening, or other effective permanent barrier.

**E4207.3 Luminaires.** Luminaires for storable pools shall not have exposed metal parts and shall be listed for the purpose as an assembly. In addition, luminaires for storable pools shall comply with the requirements of Section E4207.3.1 or E4207.3.2.

**E4207.3.1 Fifteen volts or less.** A luminaire installed in or on the wall of a storable pool shall be part of a cord and plug-connected lighting assembly. The assembly shall:

1. Have a luminaire lamp that operates at 15 volts or less;
2. Have an impact-resistant polymeric lens, luminaire body, and transformer enclosure;
3. Have a transformer meeting the requirements of section E4206.1 with a primary rating not over 150 volts; and
4. Have no exposed metal parts.

**E4207.3.2 Not over 150 volts.** A lighting assembly without a transformer, and with the luminaire lamp(s) operating at not over 150 volts, shall be permitted to be cord and plug-connected where the assembly is listed as an assembly for the purpose and complies with all of the following:

1. It has an impact-resistant polymeric lens and luminaire body.
2. A ground-fault circuit interrupter with open neutral conductor protection is provided as an integral part of the assembly.
3. The luminaire lamp is permanently connected to the ground-fault circuit interrupter with open-neutral protection.
4. It complies with the requirements of Section E4206.4.
5. It has no exposed metal parts.

**E4207.4 Receptacle locations.** Receptacles shall be located not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the inside walls of a pool. In determining these dimensions, the distance to be measured shall be the shortest path that the supply cord of an appliance connected to the receptacle would follow without passing through a floor, wall, ceiling, doorway with hinged or sliding door, window opening, or other effective permanent barrier.

## SECTION E4208
## SPAS AND HOT TUBS

**E4208.1 Ground-fault circuit-interrupters.** The outlet(s) that supplies a self-contained spa or hot tub, or a packaged spa or hot tub equipment assembly, or a field-assembled spa or hot tub with a heater load of 50 amperes or less, shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit-interrupter.

A listed self-contained unit or listed packaged equipment assembly marked to indicate that integral ground-fault circuit-interrupter protection is provided for all electrical parts within the unit or assembly, including pumps, air blowers, heaters, luminaires, controls, sanitizer generators and wiring, shall not require that the outlet supply be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter.

A combination pool/hot tub or spa assembly commonly bonded need not be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter.

**E4208.2 Electric water heaters.** Electric spa and hot tub water heaters shall be listed and shall have the heating elements subdivided into loads not exceeding 48 amperes and protected at not more than 60 amperes. The ampacity of the branch-circuit conductors, and the rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices, shall be not less than 125 percent of the total nameplate load rating.

**E4208.3 Underwater audio equipment.** Underwater audio equipment used with spas and hot tubs shall comply with the provisions of Section E4206.10.

**E4208.4 Emergency switch for spas and hot tubs.** A clearly labeled emergency shutoff or control switch for the purpose of stopping the motor(s) that provides power to the recirculation system and jet system shall be installed at a point that is readily accessible to the users, adjacent to and within sight of the spa or hot tub and not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) away from the spa or hot tub. This requirement shall not apply to single-family dwellings.

## SECTION E4209
## HYDROMASSAGE BATHTUBS

**E4209.1 Ground-fault circuit-interrupters.** Hydromassage bathtubs and their associated electrical components shall be supplied by an individual branch circuit(s) and protected by a readily accessible ground-fault circuit-interrupter. All 125-volt, single-phase receptacles not exceeding 30 amperes and located within 6 feet (1829 mm) measured horizontally of the inside walls of a hydromassage tub shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter(s).

**E4209.2 Other electric equipment.** Luminaires, switches, receptacles, and other electrical equipment located in the same room, and not directly associated with a hydromassage bathtub, shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this code relative to the installation of electrical equipment in bathrooms.

**E4209.3 Accessibility.** Hydromassage bathtub electrical equipment shall be accessible without damaging the building structure or building finish.

**E4209.4 Bonding.** All metal piping systems and all grounded metal parts in contact with the circulating water shall be bonded together using an insulated, covered or bare solid copper bonding jumper not smaller than 8 AWG. The bonding jumper shall be connected to the terminal on the circulating pump motor that is intended for this purpose. The bonding jumper shall not be required to be connected to a double insualted circulating pump motor. The 8 AWG or larger solid copper bonding jumper shall be required for equipotential bonding in the area of the hydromassage bathtub and shall not be required to be extended or attached to any remote panelboard, service equipment, or any electrode.

# CHAPTER 43

# CLASS 2 REMOTE-CONTROL, SIGNALING AND POWER-LIMITED CIRCUITS

Chapter 43 is not adopted in the City of Seattle.
See the *Seattle Electrical Code* for electrical regulations.

# CHAPTER 43

# CLASS 2 REMOTE-CONTROL, SIGNALING AND POWER-LIMITED CIRCUITS

## SECTION E4301 GENERAL

**E4301.1 Scope.** This chapter contains requirements for power supplies and wiring methods associated with Class 2 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits that are not an integral part of a device or appliance. Other classes of remote-control, signaling and power-limited conductors shall comply with Article 725 of NFPA 70.

**E4301.2 Definitions.**

**CLASS 2 CIRCUIT.** That portion of the wiring system between the load side of a Class 2 power source and the connected equipment. Due to its power limitations, a Class 2 circuit considers safety from a fire initiation standpoint and provides acceptable protection from electric shock.

**REMOTE-CONTROL CIRCUIT.** Any electrical circuit that controls any other circuit through a relay or an equivalent device.

**SIGNALING CIRCUIT.** Any electrical circuit that energizes signaling equipment.

## SECTION E4302 POWER SOURCES

**E4302.1 Power sources for Class 2 circuits.** The power source for a Class 2 circuit shall be one of the following:

1. A listed Class 2 transformer.
2. A listed Class 2 power supply.
3. Other listed equipment marked to identify the Class 2 power source.
4. Listed information technology (computer) equipment limited power circuits.
5. A dry cell battery provided that the voltage is 30 volts or less and the capacity is equal to or less than that available from series connected No. 6 carbon zinc cells.

**E4302.2 Interconnection of power sources.** A Class 2 power source shall not have its output connections paralleled or otherwise interconnected with another Class 2 power source except where listed for such interconnection.

## SECTION E4303 WIRING METHODS

**E4303.1 Wiring methods on supply side of Class 2 power source.** Conductors and equipment on the supply side of the power source shall be installed in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Chapters 34 through 41. Transformers or other devices supplied from electric light or power circuits shall be protected by an over current device rated at not over 20 amperes. The input leads of a transformer or other power source supplying Class 2 circuits shall be permitted to be smaller than 14 AWG, if not over 12 inches (305 mm) long and if the conductor insulation is rated at not less than 600 volts. In no case shall such leads be smaller than 18 AWG.

**E4303.2 Wiring methods and materials on load side of the Class 2 power source.** Class 2 cables installed as wiring within buildings shall be listed as being resistant to the spread of fire and listed as meeting the criteria specified in Sections E4303.2.1 through E4303.2.3. Cables shall be marked in accordance with Section E4303.2.4. Cable substitutions as described in Table E4303.2 and wiring methods covered in Chapter 38 shall also be permitted.

**TABLE E4303.2
CABLE USES AND PERMITTED SUBSTITUTIONS**

| CABLE TYPE | USE | PERMITTED SUBSTITUTIONS[a] |
|---|---|---|
| CL2P | Class 2 Plenum Cable | CMP, CL3P |
| CL2 | Class 2 Cable | CMP, CL3P, CL2P, CMR, CL3R, CL2R CMG, CM, CL3 |
| CL2X | Class 2 Cable, Limited Use | CMP, CL3P CL2P, CMR, CL3R, CL2R, CMG, CM, CL3, CL2, CMX, CL3X |

a. For identification of cables other than Class 2 cables, see NFPA 70.

**E4303.2.1 Type CL2P cables.** Cables installed in ducts, plenums and other spaces used to convey environmental air shall be Type CL2P cables listed as being suitable for the use and listed as having adequate fire-resistant and low smoke-producing characteristics.

**E4303.2.2 Type CL2 cables.** Cables for general-purpose use, shall be listed as being resistant to the spread of fire and listed for the use.

**E4303.2.3 Type CL2X cables.** Type CL2X limited-use cable shall be listed as being suitable for use in dwellings and for the use and in raceways and shall also be listed as being flame retardant. Cables with a diameter of less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) shall be permitted to be installed without a raceway.

**E4303.2.4 Marking.** Cables shall be marked in accordance with Table E4303.2. Voltage ratings shall not be marked on cables.

## SECTION E4304 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

**E4304.1 Separation from other conductors.** In cables, compartments, enclosures, outlet boxes, device boxes, and raceways, conductors of Class 2 circuits shall not be placed in any cable, compartment, enclosure, outlet box, device box, raceway, or similar fitting with conductors of electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpower-limited fire alarm circuits.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where the conductors of the electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpower-limited fire alarm circuits are separated by a barrier from the Class 2 circuits. In enclosures, Class 2 circuits shall be permitted to be installed in a raceway within the enclosure to separate them from Class 1, electric light, power and nonpower-limited fire alarm circuits.
2. Class 2 conductors in compartments, enclosures, device boxes, outlet boxes and similar fittings where electric light, power, Class 1 or nonpower-limited fire alarm circuit conductors are introduced solely to connect to the equipment connected to the Class 2 circuits. The electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpower-limited fire alarm circuit conductors shall be routed to maintain a minimum of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) separation from the conductors and cables of the Class 2 circuits; or the electric light power, Class 1 and nonpower-limited fire alarm circuit conductors operate at 150 volts or less to ground and the Class 2 circuits are installed using Types CL3, CL3R, or CL3P or permitted substitute cables, and provided that these Class 3 cable conductors extending beyond their jacket are separated by a minimum of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) or by a nonconductive sleeve or nonconductive barrier from all other conductors.

**E4304.2 Other applications.** Conductors of Class 2 circuits shall be separated by not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from conductors of any electric light, power, Class 1 or nonpower-limited fire alarm circuits except where one of the following conditions is met:

1. All of the electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpower-limited fire alarm circuit conductors are in raceways or in metal-sheathed, metal-clad, nonmetallic-sheathed or Type UF cables.
2. All of the Class 2 circuit conductors are in raceways or in metal-sheathed, metal-clad, nonmetallic-sheathed or Type UF cables.

**E4304.3 Class 2 circuits with communications circuits.** Where Class 2 circuit conductors are in the same cable as communications circuits, the Class 2 circuits shall be classified as communications circuits and shall meet the requirements of Article 800 of NFPA 70. The cables shall be listed as communications cables or multipurpose cables.

Cables constructed of individually listed Class 2 and communications cables under a common jacket shall be permitted to be classified as communications cables. The fire-resistance rating of the composite cable shall be determined by the performance of the composite cable.

**E4304.4 Class 2 cables with other circuit cables.** Jacketed cables of Class 2 circuits shall be permitted in the same enclosure or raceway with jacketed cables of any of the following:

1. Power-limited fire alarm systems in compliance with Article 760 of NFPA 70.
2. Nonconductive and conductive optical fiber cables in compliance with Article 770 of NFPA 70.
3. Communications circuits in compliance with Article 800 of NFPA 70.
4. Community antenna television and radio distribution systems in compliance with Article 820 of NFPA 70.
5. Low-power, network-powered broadband communications in compliance with Article 830 of NFPA 70.

**E4304.5 Installation of conductors and cables.** Cables and conductors installed exposed on the surface of ceilings and sidewalls shall be supported by the building structure in such a manner that they will not be damaged by normal building use. Such cables shall be supported by straps, staples, hangers, cable ties or similar fittings designed so as to not damage the cable. The installation shall comply with Table E3802.1 regarding cables run parallel with framing members and furring strips. The installation of wires and cables shall not prevent access to equipment nor prevent removal of panels, including suspended ceiling panels. Raceways shall not be used as a means of support for Class 2 circuit conductors, except where the supporting raceway contains conductors supplying power to the functionally associated equipment controlled by the Class 2 conductors.

# Part IX—Referenced Standards

## CHAPTER 44

# REFERENCED STANDARDS

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section R102.4.

## AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1827 Walden Office Square, Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—08 | North American Fenestration Standards/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights | N1102.4.4, R308.6.9, R613.6 |
| 450—06 | Voluntary Performance Rating Method for Mulled Fenestration Assemblies | R612.11.1 |
| 506—06 | Voluntary Specifications for Hurricane Impact and Cycle Testing of Fenestration Products | R612.9.1 |
| 711—07 | Voluntary Specification for Self Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products | R703.8 |

## ACI

American Concrete Institute
38800 Country Club Drive
Farmington Hills, MI 48331

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 318—08 | Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete | R301.2.2.2.4, R301.2.2.3.4, R402.2, R404.1.2, Table R404.1.2(5), Table R404.1.2(6), Table R404.1.2(7), Table R404.1.2(8), Table R404.1.2(9), R404.1.2.1, R404.1.2.3, R404.1.2.4, R404.1.4.2, R404.5.1, R611.1, R611.1.1, R611.1.2, R611.2, R611.5.1, R611.8.2, R611.9.2, R611.9.3 |
| 332—08 | Code Requirements for Residential Concrete Construction | R402.2, R403.1, R404.1.2, R404.1.2.4, R404.1.4.2 |
| 530—08 | Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures | R404.1.1, R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.12.1, R606.12.2.3.1, R606.12.2.3.2, R606.12.3.1, Table R703.4 |
| 530.1—08 | Specification for Masonry Structures | R404.1.1, R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.12.1, R606.12.2.3.1, R606.12.2.3.2, R606.12.3.1, Table R703.4 |

## ACCA

Air Conditioning Contractors of America
2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300
Arlington, VA 22206

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| Manual D—95 | Residential Duct Systems | M1601.1, M1602.2 |
| Manual J—02 | Residential Load Calculation—Eighth Edition | M1401.3 |
| Manual S—04 | Residential Equipment Selection | M1401.3 |

# AFPA

American Forest and Paper Association
1111 19th Street, NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| NDS—05 | National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction—with 2005 Supplement | R404.2.2, R502.2, Table R503.1, R602.3, Table R602.3.1 R611.9.2, R611.9.3, R802.2, |
| WFCM—01 | Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-family Dwellings | R301.1.1, R301.2.1.1, R602.10.6.2, R611.9.2, R611.9.3, R611.10 |
| AFPA—93 | Span Tables for Joists and Rafters | R502.3, R802.4, R802.5 |
| PWF—07 | Permanent Wood Foundation Design Specification | R317.3.2, R401.1, R404.2.3 |

# AISI

American Iron and Steel Institute
1140 Connecticut Ave, Suite 705
Washington, DC 20036

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| AISI S100—07 | North American Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members | R505.1.3, R603.6, R611.9.2, R611.9.3, R804.3.7 |
| AISI S230—07 | Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing-prescriptive Method for One- and Two-family Dwellings | R301.1.1, R301.2.1.1, R301.2.2.3.1, R301.2.2.3.5, R603.6, R611.9.2, R611.9.3, R611.10 |

# AITC

American Institute of Timber Construction
7012 S. Revere Parkway, Suite 140
Centennial, CO 80112

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| ANSI/AITC A 190.1—07 | Structural Glued Laminated Timber | R502.1.5, R602.1.2, R802.1.4 |

# ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, Fourth Floor
New York, NY 10036

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| A108.1A—99 | Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar | R702.4.1 |
| A108.1B—99 | Installation of Ceramic Tile, Quarry Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-set or Latex-Portland Mortar | R702.4.1 |
| A108.4—99 | Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water Cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive | R702.4.1 |
| A108.5—99 | Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar | R702.4.1 |
| A108.6—99 | Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy | R702.4.1 |
| A108.11—99 | Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units | R702.4.1 |
| A118.1—99 | American National Standard Specifications for Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar | R702.4.1 |
| A118.3—99 | American National Standard Specifications for Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and Grouting Epoxy and Water-cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive | R702.4.1 |
| A118.10—99 | Specification for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation | P2709.2 |
| A136.1—99 | American National Standard Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile | R702.4.1 |
| A137.1—88 | American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile | R702.4.1 |
| A208.1—99 | Particleboard | R503.3.1, R605.1 |
| LC1—97 | Interior Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing —with Addenda LC 1a-1999 and LC 1b-2001 | G2414.5.3 |
| LC4—07 | Press-connect Copper and Copper Alloy Fittings for use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems | G2414.10.2 |
| Z21.1—03 | Household Cooking Gas Appliances—with Addenda Z21.1a-2003 and Z21.1b-2003 | G2447.1 |
| Z21.5.1—02 | Gas Clothes Dryers—Volume I—Type I Clothes Dryers—with Addenda Z21.5.1a-2003 | G2438.1 |
| Z21.8—94 (R2002) | Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners | G2443.1 |

**ANSI—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Z21.10.1—04 | Gas Water Heaters—Volume I—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per hour or Less | G2448.1 |
| Z21.10.3—01 | Gas Water Heaters—Volume III—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings above 75,000 Btu per hour, Circulating and Instantaneous Water Heaters—with Addenda Z21.10.3a-2003 and Z21.10.3b-2004 | G2448.1 |
| Z21.11.2—02 | Gas-fired Room Heaters—Volume II—Unvented Room Heaters—with Addenda Z21.11.2a-2003 | G2445.1 |
| Z21.13—04 | Gas-fired Low-Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers | G2452.1 |
| Z21.15—97 (R2003) | Manually Operated Gas Valves for Appliances, Appliance Connector Valves and Hose End Valves—with Addenda Z21.15a-2001 (R2003) | Table G2420.1.1 |
| Z21.22—99 (R2003) | Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems—with Addenda Z21.22a-2000 (R2003) and 21.22b-2001 (R2003) | P2803.2, P2803.7 |
| Z21.24-97 | Connectors for Gas Appliances | G2422.1 |
| Z21.40.1—96 (R2002) | Gas-fired, Heat-activated Air Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances—with Z21.40.1a-97 (R2002) | G2449.1 |
| Z21.40.2—96 (R2002) | Gas-fired, Work-activated Air Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances (Internal Combustion)—with Z21.40.2a-1997 (R2002) | G2449.1 |
| Z21.42—93 (R2002) | Gas-fired Illuminating Appliances | G2450.1 |
| Z21.47—03 | Gas-fired Central Furnaces | G2442.1 |
| Z21.50—03 | Vented Gas Fireplaces—with Addenda Z21.50a-2003 | G2434.1 |
| Z21.56—01 | Gas-fired Pool Heaters—with Addenda Z21.56a-2004 and Z21.56b—2004 | G2441.1 |
| Z21.58—95 (R2002) | Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliances—with Addenda Z21.58a-1998 (R2002) and Z21.58b-2002 | G2447.1 |
| Z21.60—03 | Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid Fuel Burning Fireplaces—with Addenda Z21.60a-2003 | G2432.1 |
| Z21.75/CSA 6.27—01 | Connectors for Outdoor Gas Appliances | G2422.1 |
| Z21.80—03 | Line Pressure Regulators | G2421.1 |
| Z21.83—98 | Fuel Cell Power Plants | M1903.1 |
| Z21.84—02 | Manually Listed, Natural Gas Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid Fuel-burning Fireplaces—with Addenda Z21.84a -2003 | G2432.1, G2432.2 |
| Z21.86—04 | Gas-fired Vented Space Heating Appliances | G2436.1, G2437.1, G2446.1 |
| Z21.88—02 | Vented Gas Fireplace Heaters—with Addenda A21.88a-2003 and Z21.88b—2004 | G2435.1 |
| Z21.91—01 | Ventless Firebox Enclosures for Gas-fired Unvented Decorative Room Heaters | G2445.7.1 |
| Z83.6—90 (R1998) | Gas-fired Infrared Heaters | G2451.1 |
| Z83.8—02 | Gas-fired Unit Heaters and Gas-fired Duct Furnaces—with Addenda Z83.8a-2003 | G2444.1 |
| Z97.1—04 | Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings—Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test | R308.1.1, R308.3.1 |
| Z124.1—95 | Plastic Bathtub Units | Table P2701.1 |
| Z124.2—95 | Plastic Shower Receptors and Shower Stalls | Table P2701.1 |
| Z124.3—95 | Plastic Lavatories | Table P2701.1, P2711.1, P2711.2 |
| Z124.4—96 | Plastic Water Closet Bowls and Tanks | Table P2701.1, P2712.1 |
| Z124.6—97 | Plastic Sinks | Table P2701.1 |

# APA

APA–The Engineered Wood Association
7011 South 19th
Tacoma, WA 98466

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| APA E30—03 | Engineered Wood Construction Guide | Table R503.2.1.1(1), R503.2.2, R803.2.2, R803.2.3 |

# APSP

The Association of Pool & Spa Professionals
2111 Eisenhower Avenue
Alexandria, VA 22314

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| ANSI/APSP 7—06 | Standard for Suction Entrapment Avoidance in Swimming Pools Wading Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs and Catch Basins | AG106.1 |
| ANSI/NSPI 3—99 | Standard for Permanently Installed Residential Spas | AG104.1 |
| ANSI/NSPI 4—99 | Standard for Above-ground/On-ground Residential Swimming Pools | AG103.2 |

**APSP—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ANSI/NSPI-5—2003 | Standard for Residential In-ground Swimming Pools | AG103.1 |
| ANSI/NSPI 6—99 | Standard for Residential Portable Spas | AG104.2 |

# ASCE/SEI

American Society of Civil Engineers
Structural Engineering Institute
1801 Alexander Bell Drive
Reston, VA 20191

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 5—08 | Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures | R404.1.1, R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.12.1, R606.12.2.3.1, R606.12.2.3.2, R606.12.3.1, Table R703.4 |
| 6—08 | Specification for Masonry Structures | R404.1.1, R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.12.1, R606.12.2.3.1, R606.12.2.3.2, R606.12.3.1, Table R703.4 |
| 7—05 | Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures | R301.2.1.1, R301.2.1.2, R301.2.1.5, R301.2.1.5.1, R301.2.4.1, Table R611.6(1), Table R611.6(2), Table R611.6(3), Table R611.6(4), Table R611.7(1A), R611.9.2, R611.9.3, Table R802.11, AH107.4.3 |
| 24—05 | Flood-resistant Design and Construction | R301.2.4, R301.2.4.1, R322.1, R322.1.1, R322.1.6, R322.1.9, R322.2.2, AG103.3 |
| 32—01 | Design and Construction of Frost-protected Shallow Foundations | R403.1.4.1 |

# ASHRAE

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating
and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.
1791 Tullie Circle, NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 34—2004 | Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants | M1411.1 |
| ASHRAE—2005 | ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook—2005 | N1102.1.3, P3001.2, P3101.4, P3103.2 |

# ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| A17.1/CSA B44—2007 | Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators | R321.1 |
| A18.1—2005 | Safety Standard for Platforms and Stairway Chair Lifts | R321.2 |
| A112.1.2—2004 | Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.1 |
| A112.1.3—2000 (Reaffirmed 2005) | Air Gap Fittings for Use with Plumbing Fixtures, Appliances and Appurtenances | Table P2701.1, P2902.3.1 |
| A112.3.1—2007 | Stainless Steel Drainage Systems for Sanitary, DWV, Storm and Vacuum Applications Above and Below Ground | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, Table P3302.1 |
| A112.3.4—2000 (R2004) | Macerating Toilet Systems and Related Components | Table P2701.1, P3007.5 |
| A112.4.1—1993 (R2002) | Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes | P2803.6.2 |
| A112.4.3—1999 (R2004) | Plastic Fittings for Connecting Water Closets to the Sanitary Drainage System | P3003.19 |
| A112.6.1M—1997 (R2002) | Floor Affixed Supports for Off-the-floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use | Table P2701.1, P2702.4 |
| A112.6.2—2000 (R2004) | Framing-affixed Supports for Off-the-floor Water Closets with Concealed Tanks | Table P2701.1, P2702.4 |
| A112.6.3—2001 (R2007) | Floor and Trench Drains | Table P2701.1 |
| A112.14.1—03 | Backwater Valves | P3008.2 |
| A112.18.1—2005/ CSA B125.1-2005 | Plumbing Supply Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2708.4, P2722.1, P2902.2 |
| A112.18.2—2005/ CSA B125.2-2005 | Plumbing Waste Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2702.2 |

**ASME—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A112.18.3—2002 | Performance Requirements for Backflow Protection Devices and Systems in Plumbing Fixture Fittings | P2708.4, P2722.3 |
| A112.18.6—2003 | Flexible Water Connectors | P2905.7 |
| A112.19.1M—1994 (R2004) | Enameled Cast Iron Plumbing Fixtures—with 1998 and 2000 Supplements | Table P2701.1, P2711.1 |
| A112.19.2—2003 | Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures—and Hydraulic Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals | Table P2701.1, P2705.1, P2711.1, P2712.1, P2712.2 |
| A112.19.3M—2000 (R2007) | Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use)—with 2002 Supplement | Table P2701.1, P2705.1, P2711.1 |
| A112.19.4M—1994 (R2004) | Porcelain Enameled Formed Steel Plumbing Fixtures—with 1998 and 2000 Supplements | Table P2701.1, P2711.1 |
| A112.19.5—2005 | Trim for Water-closet Bowls, Tanks and Urinals | Table P2701.1 |
| A112.19.6—1995 | Hydraulic Performance Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals | P2712.1, P2712.2 |
| A112.19.7M—2006 | Hydromassage Bathtub Appliances | Table P2701.1 |
| A112.19.8M—1987 (R1996) | Suction Fittings for Use in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs and Whirlpool Bathtub Appliances | Table P2701.1 |
| A112.19.9M—1991 (R2002) | Nonvitreous Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures—with 2002 Supplement | Table P2701.1, P27.11.1, P2712.1 |
| A112.19.12—2006 | Wall-mounted and Pedestal-mounted, Adjustable and Pivoting Lavatory and Sink Carrier Systems | Table P2701.1, P2711.4, P2714.2 |
| A112.19.13—2001 (R2007) | Electrohydraulic Water Closets | P2712.9 |
| A112.19.15—2005 | Bathtub/Whirlpool Bathtubs with Pressure Sealed Doors | Table P2701.1, P2713.2 |
| B1.20.1—1983 (R2006) | Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch) | G2414.9, P3003.3.3, P3003.5.3, P3003.10.4, P3003.12.1, P3003.14.3 |
| B16.3—2006 | Malleable-iron-threaded Fittings Classes 150 and 300 | Table P2905.6 |
| B16.4—2006 | Gray-iron-threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250 | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| B16.9—2003 | Factory-made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings | Table P2905.6 |
| B16.11—2005 | Forged Fittings, Socket-welding and Threaded | Table P2905.6 |
| B16.12—1998 | Cast-iron-threaded Drainage Fittings | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 (R2006) |
| B16.15—2006 | Cast-bronze-threaded Fittings | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| B16.18—2001 (R2005) | Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| B16.22—2001(R2005) | Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| B16.23—2002 (R2006) | Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings (DWV) | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| B16.26—2006 | Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| B16.28—1994 | Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns | Table P2905.6 |
| B16.29—2001 | Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings (DWV) | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| B16.33—2002 (R2006) | Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems up to 125 psig (Sizes $^1/_2$ through 2) | Table G2420.1.1 |
| B16.44—02 | Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves For Use in Above-ground Piping Systems up to 5 psi | Table G2420.1.1 |
| B36.10M—2004 | Welded and Seamless Wrought-steel Pipe | G2414.4.2 |
| BPVC—2004 | ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code | G2452.1, M2001.1.1 |
| CSD-1—2004 | Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers | G2452.1, M2001.1.1 |

# ASSE

American Society of Sanitary Engineering
901 Canterbury, Suite A
Westlake, OH 44145

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 1001—02 | Performance Requirements for Atmospheric-type Vacuum Breakers | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2 |
| 1002—99 | Performance Requirements for Antisiphon Fill Valves (Ballcocks) for Gravity Water Closet Flush Tank | Table P2701.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.4.1 |
| 1003—01 | Performance Requirements for Water-pressure-reducing Valves | P2903.3.1 |
| 1006—89 | Performance Requirements for Residential Use Dishwashers | Table P2701.1 |
| 1007—92 | Performance Requirements for Home Laundry Equipment | Table P2701.1 |
| 1008—89 | Performance Requirements for Household Food Waste Disposer Units | Table P2701.1 |
| 1010—04 | Performance Requirements for Water Hammer Arresters | P2903.5 |

**ASSE—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1011—04 | Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2 |
| 1012—02 | Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventers with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.3, P2902.5.1, P2902.5.5 |
| 1013—05 | Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers and Reduced Pressure Fire Protection Principle Backflow Preventers | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5, P2902.5.1, P2902.5.5 |
| 1015—05 | Performance Requirements For Double Check Backflow Prevention Assemblies and Double Check Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6 |
| 1016—96 | Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations | Table P2701.1, P2708.3, P2722.2 |
| 1017—03 | Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Valves for Hot Water Distribution Systems | P2802.2 |
| 1019—04 | Performance Requirements for Wall Hydrants, Freeze Resistant, Automatic Draining Types | Table P2701.1, P2902.3 |
| 1020—04 | Performance Requirements for Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.4 |
| 1023—79 | Performance Requirements for Hot Water Dispensers Household Storage Type-electrical | Table P2701.1 |
| 1024—04 | Performance Requirements for Dual Check Backflow Preventers | Table P2902.3 |
| 1025—78 | Performance Requirements for Diverters for Plumbing Faucets with Hose Spray, Anti-siphon Type, Residential Applications | Table P2701.1 |
| 1035—02 | Performance Requirements for Laboratory Faucet Backflow Preventers | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2 |
| 1037—90 | Performance Requirements for Pressurized Flushing Devices (Flushometer) for Plumbing Fixtures | Table P2701.1 |
| 1047—05 | Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5 |
| 1048—05 | Performance Requirements for Double Check Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6 |
| 1050—02 | Performance Requirements for Stack Air Admittance Valves for Sanitary Drainage Systems | P3114.1 |
| 1051—02 | Performance Requirements for Individual and Branch Type Air Admittance Valves for Plumbing Drainage Systems | P3114.1 |
| 1052—04 | Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Backflow Preventers | Table P2701.1, Table P2902.3, P2902.3.2 |
| 1056—01 | Performance Requirements for Spill Resistant Vacuum Breakers | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.4 |
| 1060—96 | Performance Requirements for Outdoor Enclosures for Fluid Conveying Components | P2902.6.1 |
| 1061—06 | Performance Requirements for Removable and Nonremovable Push Fit Fittings | Table P2905.6 |
| 1062—97 | Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated, Flow Reduction (TAFR) Valves for Individual Supply Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2724.1 |
| 1066—97 | Performance Requirements for Individual Pressure Balancing In-line Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2722.4 |
| 1070—04 | Performance Requirements for Water Temperature Limiting Devices | P2713.3, P2721.2 |

# ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| A 36/A 36M—05 | Specification for Carbon Structural Steel | R606.15, R611.5.2.2 |
| A 53/A 53M—06a | Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless | G2414.4.2, Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P3002.1(1) |
| A 74—06 | Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2 Table P3002.3, P3005.2.9, Table P3302.1 |
| A 82/A 82M—05a | Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement | R606.15 |
| A 106/A 106M—06a | Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High Temperature Service | G2414.4.2, Table M2101.1 |
| A 153/A 153M—05 | Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware | R317.3, Table R606.15.1 |
| A 167—99(2004) | Specification for Stainless and Heat-resisting Chromium-nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip | R606.15, Table R606.15.1 |
| A 240/A 240M—07 | Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications | Table R905.10.3(1) |
| A 254—97(2002) | Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing | G2414.5.1, Table M2101.1 |
| A 307—04e01 | Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 6000 psi Tensile Strength | R611.5.2.2 |
| A 312/A 312M—06 | Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6, P2905.12.2 |

## ASTM—continued

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A 463/A 463M—05 | Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-coated by the Hot-dip Process | Table R905.10.3(2) |
| A 510—06 | Specification for General Requirements for Wire Rods and Coarse Round Wire, Carbon Steel | R606.15 |
| A 539—99 | Specification for Electric-resistance-welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines | M2202.1 |
| A 615/A 615M—04a | Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement | R402.3.1, R404.1.2.3.7.1, R611.5.2.1 |
| A 641/A 641M—03 | Specification for Zinc-coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire | Table R606.15.1 |
| A 653/A 653M—07 | Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-iron Alloy-coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-dip Process | M1601.1.1, R317.3.1, R505.2.1, R505.2.3, R603.2.1, R603.2.3, Table R606.15.1, R611.5.2.3, R804.2.1, R804.2.3, Table R905.10.3(1), Table R905.10.3(2) |
| A 706/A 706/M—05a | Specification for Low-alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement | R402.3.1, R404.1.2.3.7.1, R611.5.2.1 |
| A 755/A 755M—07 | Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products | Table R905.10.3(2) |
| A 778—01 | Specification for Welded Unannealed Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubular Products | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6 |
| A 792/A 792M—06a | Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-zinc Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process | R505.2.1, R505.2.3, R603.2.1, R603.2.3, R611.5.2.3, R804.2.1, R804.2.3, Table 905.10.3 (2) |
| A 875/A 875M—06 | Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-5%, Aluminum Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process | R611.5.3.2, Table R905.10.3 (2) |
| A 888—07a | Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Application | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3005.2.9, Table P3302.1 |
| A 924/A 924M—07 | Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-Dip Process | Table R905.10.3(1) |
| A 951—06 | Specification for Steel Wire Masonry Joint Reinforcement | R606.15 |
| A 996/A 996M—06a | Specifications for Rail-steel and Axel-steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement | R404.1.2.3.7, R404.1.2.3.7.1, R611.5.2.1, Table R611.5.4(2) |
| A 1003/A 1003M—05 | Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic and Nonmetallic-coated for Cold-formed Framing Members | R505.2.1, R505.2.3, R603.2.1, R603.2.3, R804.2.1, R804.2.3 |
| B 32—04 | Specification for Solder Metal | P3003.10.3, P3003.11.3 |
| B 42—02e01 | Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P3002.1(1) |
| B 43—98 (2004) | Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes | G2413.5.2, Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P3002.1(1) |
| B 75—02 | Specification for Seamless Copper Tube | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2 |
| B 88—03 | Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube | G2414.5.2, Table M2101.1, Table, P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2 |
| B 101—02 | Specification for Lead-coated Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction | Table R905.2.8.2, Table R905.10.3(1) |
| B 135—02 | Specification for Seamless Brass Tube | Table M2101.1 |
| B 209—06 | Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Sheet and Plate | Table 905.10.3(1) |
| B 227—04 | Specification for Hard-drawn Copper-clad Steel Wire | R606.15 |
| B 251—02e01 | Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5 Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2 |
| B 302—02 | Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5,Table P3002.1(1) |
| B 306—02 | Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV) | Table M2101.1, Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2 |
| B 370—03 | Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction | Table P2701.1, Table R905.2.8.2, Table R905.10.3(1) |
| B 447—07 | Specification for Welded Copper Tube | Table P2904.4, Table P2905.5 |
| B 695—04 | Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel | R317.3.1, R317.3.3 |
| B 813—00e01 | Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube | Table M2101.1, P2905.14, P3003.10.3, P3003.11.3 |
| B 828—02 | Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings | P2905.14, P3003.10.3, P3003.11.3 |
| C 4—04e01 | Specification for Clay Drain Tile and Perforated Clay Drain Tile | Table P3302.1 |
| C 5—03 | Specification for Quicklime for Structural Purposes | R702.2.1 |
| C 14—07 | Specification for Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain and Culvert Pipe | Table P3002.2 |

**ASTM—continued**

| | |
|---|---|
| C 27—98 (2002) | Specification for Standard Classification of Fireclay and High-alumina Refractory Brick. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R1001.5, R1001.8 |
| C 28/C 28M—00(2005) | Specification for Gypsum Plasters . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.1 |
| C 33—03 | Specification for Concrete Aggregates . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R403.4.1 |
| C 34—03 | Specification for Structural Clay Load-bearing Wall Tile . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R301.2(1) |
| C 35—01(2005) | Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.1 |
| C 36/C 36M—03 | Specification for Gypsum Wallboard . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 37/C 37M—01 | Specification for Gypsum Lath. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.1, R702.2.2 |
| C 55—06e01 | Specification for Concrete Building Brick . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R202, Table R301.2(1) |
| C 59/C 59M—00 (2006) | Specification for Gypsum Casting and Molding Plaster . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2 |
| C 61/C 61M—00 (2006) | Specification for Gypsum Keene's Cement. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.1 |
| C 62—05 | Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R202, Table R301.2(1) |
| C 73—05 | Specification for Calcium Silicate Face Brick (Sand Lime Brick). . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R202, Table R301.2(1) |
| C 76—07 | Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table P3002.2 |
| C 79—04a | Specification for Treated Core and Nontreated Core Gypsum Sheathing Board . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 90—06b | Specification for Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R301.2(1) |
| C 91—05 | Specification for Masonry Cement . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.2 |
| C 94/C 94M—07 | Specification for Ready-mixed Concrete. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R404.1.2.3.2, R611.5.1.1 |
| C 129—06 | Specification for Nonload-bearing Concrete Masonry Units . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R301.2(1) |
| C 143/C 143M—05a | Test Method for Slump or Hydraulic Cement Concrete . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R404.1.2.3.4, R611.5.1.3, R611.6.1 |
| C 145—85 | Specification for Solid Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R202, Table R301.2(1) |
| C 150—07 | Specification for Portland Cement . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.2 |
| C 199—84 (2005) | Test Method for Pier Test for Refractory Mortar . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R1001.5, R1001.8, R1003.12 |
| C 203—05a | Standard Test Methods for Breaking Load and Flexural Properties of Block-type Thermal Insulation. . . . . . . . . Table R613.3.1 |
| C 207—06 | Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R607.1 |
| C 208—95 (2001) | Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R602.3(1) |
| C 216—07 | Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R202, Table R301.2(1) |
| C 270—07 | Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R607.1, AE602 |
| C 272—01 | Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for Structural Sandwich Constructions. . . . . . . . Table R613.3.1 |
| C 273—00e1 | Standard Test Method for Shear Properties of Sandwich Core Materials. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R613.3.1 |
| C 296—(2004)e01 | Specification for Asbestos Cement Pressure Pipe . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table P2905.4 |
| C 315—07 | Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . G2425.12, R1001.8, R1003.11.1, Table R1003.14(1) |
| C 406—06e01 | Specifications for Roofing Slate . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R905.6.4 |
| C 411—05 | Test Method for Hot-surface Performance of High-temperature Thermal Insulation. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . M1601.3 |
| C 425—04 | Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table P3002.2, P3003.15, P3003.18 |
| C 428—97 (2006) | Specification for Asbestos-cement Nonpressure Sewer Pipe . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table P3002.2 |
| C 443—05a | Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . P3003.7, P3003.18 |
| C 475/C 475—05 | Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Wallboard. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 476—02 | Specification for Grout for Masonry . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R609.1.1 |
| C 508—04 | Specification for Asbestos-cement Underdrain Pipe . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table P3302.1 |
| C 514—04 | Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Wallboard. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 552—03 | Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R906.2 |
| C 557—03e01 | Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 564—03a | Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . P3003.6.2, P3003.6.3, P3003.18 |
| C 578—07 | Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R403.3, R613.3.1, R703.11.2.1, Table R906.2 |
| C 587—04 | Specification for Gypsum Veneer Plaster . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.1 |
| C 588/C 588M—01 | Specification for Gypsum Base for Veneer Plasters. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.1, R702.2.2 |
| C 595—07 | Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.2 |
| C 630/C 630M—03 | Specification for Water-resistant Gypsum Backing Board . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 631—95a (2004) | Specification for Bonding Compounds for Interior Gypsum Plastering. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.2.1 |
| C 645—07 | Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R702.3.3 |
| C 652—05a | Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale). . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R202, Table R301.2(1) |
| C 685—01 | Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . R404.1.2.3.2, R611.5.1.1 |
| C 700—07 | Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength and Perforated. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3,Table P3302.1 |
| C 728—05 | Standard Specification for Perlite Thermal Insulation Board . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table R906.2 |

**ASTM—continued**

| | |
|---|---|
| C 836—06 | Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course . . . R905.15.2 |
| C 843—99 (2006) | Specification for Application of Gypsum Veneer Plaster . . . R702.2.1 |
| C 844—04 | Specification for Application of Gypsum Base to Receive Gypsum Veneer Plaster . . . R702.2.1 |
| C 847—06 | Specification for Metal Lath . . . R702.2.1, R702.2.2 |
| C 887—05 | Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Surface Bonding Mortar . . . R406.1 |
| C 897—05 | Specification for Aggregate for Job-mixed Portland Cement-based Plasters . . . R702.2.2 |
| C 920—05 | Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants . . . R406.4.1 |
| C 926—98a (2005) | Specification for Application of Portland Cement-based Plaster. . . . R702.2.2, R703.6, R703.6.2, R703.6.4 |
| C 931/C 931M—04 | Specification for Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 933—05 | Specification for Welded Wire Lath . . . R702.2.1, R702.2.2 |
| C 954—04 | Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness . . . R505.2.4, R603.2.4, R702.3.6, R804.2.4 |
| C 955—06 | Specification for Load-bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners (Tracks), and Bracing or Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases . . . R702.3.3 |
| C 957—06 | Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Integral Wearing Surface . . . R905.15.2 |
| C 960—04 | Specification for Predecorated Gypsum Board . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 1002—04 | Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases . . . R702.3.1, R702.3.6 |
| C 1029—05a | Specification for Spray-applied Rigid Cellular Polyurethane Thermal Insulation . . . R905.14.2 |
| C 1032—06 | Specification for Woven Wire Plaster Base . . . R702.2.1, R702.2.2 |
| C 1047—05 | Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base . . . R702.2.1, R702.2.2, R702.3.1 |
| C 1063—06 | Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-based Plaster . . . R702.2.2, R703.6 |
| C 1107—07 | Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-cement Grout (Nonshrink) . . . R402.3.1 |
| C 1116—06 | Standard Specification for Fiber-reinforced Concrete and Shotcrete . . . R402.3.1 |
| C 1167—03 | Specification for Clay Roof Tiles . . . R905.3.4 |
| C 1173—06 | Specification for Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Piping Systems . . . P3003.3, P3003.7, P3003.8.1, P3003.14.1, P3003.15, P3003.17.2, P3003.18 |
| C 1177/C 1177M—06 | Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 1178/C 1178M—06 | Specification for Glass Mat Water-resistant Gypsum Backing Panel . . . R702.3.1, R702.3.8, R702.4.2 |
| C 1186—07 | Specification for Flat Nonasbestos Fiber Cement Sheets . . . R703.10.1, R703.10.2 |
| C 1261—07 | Specification for Firebox Brick for Residential Fireplaces . . . R1001.5, R1001.8 |
| C 1277—06 | Specification for Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings . . . P3003.6.3 |
| C 1278/C 1278M—06 | Specification for Fiber-reinforced Gypsum Panels . . . R702.3.1, R702.3.8, R702.4.2 |
| C 1283—07 | Practice for Installing Clay Flue Lining . . . R1003.12 |
| C 1288—99(2004) | Standard Specification for Discrete Nonasbestos Fiber-cement Interior Substrate Sheets . . . R702.4.2 |
| C 1289—07 | Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board . . . R703.11.2.1, Table R906.2 |
| C 1325—04 | Standard Specification for Nonasbestos Fiber-mat Reinforced Cement Interior Substrate Sheets . . . R702.4.2 |
| C 1328—05 | Specification for Plastic (Stucco) Cement . . . R702.2.2 |
| C 1395/C 1395M—06a | Specification for Gypsum Ceiling Board . . . R702.3.1 |
| C 1396/C 1396M—06a | Specification for Gypsum Board . . . Table R602.3(1), R702.3.1, R702.3.8 |
| C 1440—03 | Specification for Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gasket Materials for Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV), Sewer, Sanitary and Storm Plumbing Systems . . . P3003.18 |
| C 1460—04 | Specification for Shielded Transition Couplings for Use with Dissimilar DWV Pipe and Fittings Above Ground . . . P3003.18 |
| C 1461—06 | Specification for Mechanical Couplings Using Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gaskets for Joining Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV) Sewer, Sanitary and Storm Plumbing Systems for Above and Below Ground Use . . . P3003.18 |
| C 1492—03 | Specification for Concrete Roof Tile . . . R905.3.5 |
| C 1513—04 | Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-formed Steel Framing Connections . . . R505.2.4, R603.2.4, R702.3.6, R804.2.4 |
| C 1658/C 1658M—06 | Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels . . . R702.3.1 |
| D 41—05 | Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing . . . Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2 |
| D 43—00(2006) | Specification for Coal Tar Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing . . . Table R905.9.2 |

**ASTM—continued**

| | |
|---|---|
| D 225—04 | Specification for Asphalt Shingles (Organic Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules . . . R905.2.4 |
| D 226—06 | Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Used in Roofing and Waterproofing . . . R703.2, R905.2.3, R905.3.3, R905.4.3, R905.5.3, R905.6.3, R905.7.3, R905.8.3, R905.8.4, Table R905.9.2 |
| D 227—03 | Specification for Coal Tar Saturated (Organic Felt) Used in Roofing and Waterproofing . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 312—00(2006) | Specification for Asphalt Used in Roofing . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 422—63(2002)e01 | Test Method for Particle-size Analysis of Soils . . . R403.1.8.1 |
| D 449—03 | Specification for Asphalt Used in Dampproofing and Waterproofing . . . R406.2 |
| D 450—07 | Specification for Coal-tar Pitch Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 1227—95(2007) | Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing . . . Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2, R905.15.2 |
| D 1248—05 | Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable . . . M1601.1.2 |
| D 1527—99(2005) | Specification for Acrylonite-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80 . . . Table P2905.4 |
| D 1621—04a | Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular Plastics . . . Table R613.3.1 |
| D 1622—03 | Standard Test Method for Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics . . . Table R613.3.1 |
| D 1623—78(1995) | Standard Test Method for Tensile and Tensile Adhesion Properties of Rigid Cellular Plastics . . . Table R613.3.1 |
| D 1693—07 | Test Method for Environmental Stress-cracking of Ethylene Plastics . . . Table M2101.1 |
| D 1784—06a | Standard Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds . . . M1601.1.2 |
| D 1785—06 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120 . . . Table P2905.4 |
| D 1863—05 | Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used in Built-up Roofs . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 1869—95(2005) | Specification for Rubber Rings for Asbestos-cement Pipe . . . P2904.17, P3003.4, P3003.18 |
| D 1970—01 | Specification for Self-adhering Polymer Modified Bitumen Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection . . . R905.2.3, R905.2.8, R905.4.3 |
| D 2104—03 | Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Schedule 40 . . . Table P2905.4 |
| D 2126—04 | Standard Test Method for Response of Rigid Cellular Plastics to Thermal and Humid Aging . . . Table R613.3.1 |
| D 2178—04 | Specification for Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 2235—04 | Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings . . . P2905.9.1.1, P3003.3.2, P3003.8.2 |
| D 2239—03 | Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter . . . Table P2905.4 |
| D 2241—05 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-rated Pipe (SDR-Series) . . . Table P2905.4 |
| D 2282—05 | Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) . . . Table P2905.4 |
| D 2412—02 | Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-plate Loading . . . M1601.1.2 |
| D 2447—03 | Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe Schedules 40 and 80, Based on Outside Diameter . . . Table M2101.1 |
| D 2464—06 | Specification for Threaded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80 . . . Table P2905.6 |
| D 2466—06 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40 . . . Table P2905.6 |
| D 2467—06 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80 . . . Table P2905.6 |
| D 2468—96a | Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40 . . . Table P2905.6 |
| D 2513—07a | Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing and Fittings . . . G2414.6, G2414.6.1, G2414.11, G2415.15.2, Table M2101.1, M2104.2.1.3 |
| D 2559—04 | Standard Specification for Adhesives for Structural Laminated Wood Products for Use Under Exterior (West Use) Exposure Conditions . . . R613.3.3 |
| D 2564—04e01 | Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems . . . P2905.9.1.3, Table P3002.2, P3003.9.2, P3003.14.2 |
| D 2609—02 | Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe . . . Table P2905.6 |
| D 2626—04 | Specification for Asphalt-saturated and Coated Organic Felt Base Sheet Used in Roofing . . . R905.3.3, Table R905.9.2 |
| D 2657—07 | Standard Practice for Heat Fusion-joining of Polyolefin Pipe Fittings . . . P2905.3.1, P3003.17.1 |
| D 2661—06 | Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings . . . Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.3.2, P3003.8.2 |
| D 2665—07 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings . . . Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3 |
| D 2672—96a(2003) | Specification for Joints for IPS PVC Pipe Using Solvent Cement . . . Table P2905.4 |
| D 2683—04 | Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing . . . Table M2101.1, M2104.2.1.1 |
| D 2729—04e01 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings . . . P3302.1, Table P3302.1, Table AO103.10 |
| D 2737—03 | Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing . . . Table P2905.4 |

## ASTM—continued

| | |
|---|---|
| D 2751—05 | Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Sewer Pipe and Fittings. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3 |
| D 2822—05 | Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement. . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 2823—05 | Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings. . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 2824—06 | Specification for Aluminum-pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Fibered without Asbestos . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2 |
| D 2837—04e01 | Test Method for Obtaining Hydrostatic Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Materials or Pressure Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Products . . . . . . . . . . Table M2101.1 |
| D 2846/D 2846M—06 | Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems . . . . . . . . . . Table M2101.1, P2904.9.1.2, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6 |
| D 2855-96 (2002) | Standard Practice for Making Solvent-cemented Joints with Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings . . . . . . . . . . P3003.9.2, P3003.14.2 |
| D 2898—04 | Test Methods for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-retardant-treated Wood for Fire Testing . . . . . . . . . . R802.1.3.4, R802.1.3.6 |
| D 2949—01ae01 | Specification for 3.25-in. Outside Diameter Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings . . . . . . . . . . Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3 |
| D 3019—94 (2007) | Specification for Lap Cement Used with Asphalt Roll Roofing, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Nonasbestos Fibered . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2 |
| D 3034—06 | Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings . . . . . . . . . . Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3 |
| D 3035—06 | Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based On Controlled Outside Diameter. . . . . . . . . . Table M2101.1 |
| D 3161—06 | Test Method for Wind Resistance of Asphalt Shingles (Fan Induced Method). . . . . . . . . . R905.2.4.1, Table R905.2.4.1(2) |
| D 3201—07 | Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-retardant Wood and Wood-base Products. . . . . . . . . . R802.1.3.7 |
| D 3212—96a (2003)e01 | Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals . . . . . . . . . . P3003.3.1 P3003.8.1, P3003.9.1, P3003.14.1, P3003.17.2 |
| D 3309—96a (2002) | Specification for Polybutylene (PB) Plastic Hot- and Code-water Distribution System . . . . . . . . . . Table M2101.1 |
| D 3311—06a | Specification for Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patters. . . . . . . . . . P3002.3 |
| D 3350—06 | Specification for Polyethylene Plastic Pipe and Fitting Materials . . . . . . . . . . Table M2101.1 |
| D 3462—07 | Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made From Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules . . . . . . . . . . R905.2.4 |
| D 3468—99 (2006)e01 | Specification for Liquid-applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfanated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing . . . . . . . . . . R905.15.2 |
| D 3679—06a | Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Siding. . . . . . . . . . Table R703.4, R703.11 |
| D 3737—07 | Practice for Establishing Allowable Properties for Structural Glued Laminated Timber (Glulam) . . . . . . . . . . R502.1.5, R602.1.2, R802.1.4 |
| D 3747—79 (2007) | Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Adhesive for Adhering Roof Insulation . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2 |
| D 3909—97b (2004)e01 | Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules. . . . . . . . . . R905.2.8.2, R905.5.4, Table R905.9.2 |
| D 3957—06 | Standard Practices for Establishing Stress Grades for Structural Members Used in Log Buildings. . . . . . . . . . R502.1.6, R602.1.3, R802.1.5 |
| D 4022—07 | Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 4068—01 | Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water Containment Membrane . . . . . . . . . . P2709.2, P2709.2.2 |
| D 4318—05 | Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils . . . . . . . . . . R403.1.8.1 |
| D 4434—06 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing. . . . . . . . . . R905.13.2 |
| D 4479—07 | Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings-asbestos-free. . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 4551—96 (2001) | Specification for Poly (Vinyl) Chloride (PVC) Plastic Flexible Concealed Water-containment Membrane . . . . . . . . . . P2709.2, P2709.2.1 |
| D 4586—00 | Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement-asbestos-free . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 4601—04 | Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 4637—04 | Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-ply Roof Membrane . . . . . . . . . . R905.12.2 |
| D 4829—07 | Test Method for Expansion Index of Soils . . . . . . . . . . R403.1.8.1 |
| D 4869—05e01 | Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Underlayment Used in Steep Slope Roofing . . . . . . . . . . R905.2.3, R905.4.3, R905.5.3, R905.6.3, R905.7.3, R905.8.3 |
| D 4897—01 | Specification for Asphalt Coated Glass-fiber Venting Base Sheet Used in Roofing . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 4990—97a (2005)e01 | Specification for Coal Tar Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |
| D 5019—07 | Specification for Reinforced Nonvulcanized Polymeric Sheet Used in Roofing Membrane . . . . . . . . . . R905.12.2 |
| D 5055—05 | Specification for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-joists . . . . . . . . . . R502.1.4 |
| D 5516—03 | Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to the Elevated Temperatures. . . . . . . . . . R802.1.3.5.1 |
| D 5643—06 | Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement Asbestos-free . . . . . . . . . . Table R905.9.2 |

## ASTM—continued

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| D 5664—02 | Test Methods For Evaluating the Effects of Fire-retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Lumber | R802.1.3.5.2 |
| D 5665—99a(2006) | Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Cold-applied Roofing and Waterproofing | Table R905.9.2 |
| D 5726—98(2005) | Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Hot-applied Roofing and Waterproofing | Table R905.9.2 |
| D 6083—05e01 | Specification for Liquid-applied Acrylic Coating Used in Roofing | Table R905.9.2, Table R905.11.2, R905.15.2 |
| D 6162—00a | Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements | Table R905.11.2 |
| D 6163—00e01 | Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements | Table R905.11.2 |
| D 6164—05 | Specification for Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements | Table R905.11.2 |
| D 6222—02e01 | Specification for Atactic Polypropelene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcement | Table R905.11.2 |
| D 6223—02e01 | Specification for Atactic Polypropelene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcement | Table R905.11.2 |
| D 6298—05 | Specification for Fiberglass-reinforced Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheets with a Factory Applied Metal Surface | Table R905.11.2 |
| D 6305—02e01 | Practice for Calculating Bending Strength Design Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Plywood Roof Sheathing | R802.1.3.5.1 |
| D 6380—03 | Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Organic Felt) | R905.2.8.2, R905.3.3, R905.5.4 |
| D 6694—07 | Standard Specification Liquid-applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polurethane Foam Roofing | R905.15.2 |
| D 6754—02 | Standard Specification for Ketone-ethylene-ester-based Sheet Roofing | R905.13.2 |
| D 6757—07 | Standard Specification for Inorganic Underlayment for Use with Steep Slope Roofing Products | R905.2.3 |
| D 6841—03 | Standard Practice for Calculating Design Value Treatment Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Lumber | R802.1.3.5.2 |
| D 6878—06a | Standard Specification for Thermoplastic-polyolefin-based Sheet Roofing | R905.13.2 |
| D 6947—07 | Standard Specification for Liquid Applied Moisture Cured Polyurethane Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing System | R905.15.2 |
| D 7032—07 | Standard Specification for Establishing Perfomance Ratings for Wood-plastic Composite Deck Boards and Guardrail Systems (Guards or Handrails) | R317.4 |
| D 7158—07 | Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Sealed Asphalt Shingles (Uplift Force/ Uplift Resistance Method) | R905.2.4.1, Table R905.2.4.1(1) |
| E 84—07 | Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials | M1601.3, M1601.5.2, R202, R302.9.3, R302.9.4, R302.10.1, R302.10.2, R316.3, R316.5.9, R316.5.11, R802.1.3 |
| E 90—04 | Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements | AK102, AK102,1.1 |
| E 96/E 96M—05 | Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials | M1411.5, M1601.4.5, R202, Table R613.3.1 |
| E 108—07a | Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings | R902.1 |
| E 119—07 | Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials | Table R302.1, R302.2, R302.3, R302.4.1, R316.4 |
| E 136—04 | Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C | R202, R302.11 |
| E 283—04 | Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen | N1102.4.5 |
| E 330—02 | Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference | R612.7, R612.8, R703.1.2 |
| E 331—00 | Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference | R703.1.1 |
| E 492—04 | Specification for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission through Floor-ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine | AK103 |
| E 814—06 | Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-penetration Firestops | R302.4.1.2 |
| E 970—00 | Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Exposed Attic Floor Insulation Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source | R302.10.5 |
| E 1509—04 | Standard Specification for Room Heaters, Pellet Fuel-burning Type | M1410.1 |
| E 1602—03 | Guide for Construction of Solid Fuel Burning Masonry Heaters | R1002.2 |
| E 1886—06 | Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Storm Shutters Impacted by Missles and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials | R301.2.1.2, R612.9.1 |
| E 1996—06 | Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes | R301.2.1.2, R612.9.1 |
| E 2178—03 | Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials | R202 |
| E 2231—04 | Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics | M1601.3 |
| E 2273—03 | Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies | R703.9.2 |
| E 2568—07 | Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) | R703.9.1, R703.9.2 |

### ASTM—continued

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E 2570—07 | Standard Test Methods for Evaluating Water-resistive Barrier (WRB) Coatings Used Under Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) or EIFS with Drainage | R703.9.2.1 |
| F 405—05 | Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene (PE) Tubing and Fittings | Table P3302.1, Table AO103.10 |
| F 409—02 | Specification for Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2702.2, P2702.3 |
| F 437—06 | Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80 | Table P2905.6 |
| F 438—04 | Specification for Socket-type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40 | Table P2905.6 |
| F 439—06 | Specification for Socket-type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80 | Table P2905.6 |
| F 441/F 441M—02 | Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80 | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5 |
| F 442/F 442M—99(2005) | Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5 |
| F 477—07 | Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe | P2905.17, P3003.18 |
| F 493—04 | Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings | P2905.9.1.2 |
| F 628—06e01 | Specification for Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.3.2, P3003.8.2 |
| F 656—02 | Specification for Primers for Use in Solvent Cement Joints of Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings | P2905.9.1.3, P3003.9.2, P3003.14.2 |
| F 714—06a | Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter | Table P3002.2 |
| F 876—06 | Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5 |
| F 877—07 | Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6 |
| F 891—04 | Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core | P2905.6, Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3302.1 |
| F 1055—98(2006) | Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings | Table M2101.1, M2104.2.1.2 |
| F 1281—07 | Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6, P2905.11.1 |
| F 1282—06 | Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6, P2905.11.1 |
| F 1346—91(2003) | Performance Specification for Safety Covers and Labeling Requirements for All Covers for Swimming Pools, Spas and Hot Tubs | AG105.2, AG105.5 |
| F 1412—01e01 | Specification for Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings for Corrosive Waste Drainage | Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.16.1 |
| F 1488—03 | Specification for Coextruded Composite Pipe | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2) Table P3002.2, Table AO103.10 |
| F 1554—04e1 | Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55 and 105-ksi Yield Strength | R611.5.2.2 |
| F 1667—05 | Specification for Driven Fasteners, Nails, Spikes and Staples | Table R703.4, R905.2.5 |
| F 1807—07 | Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.6 |
| F 1866—07 | Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Schedule 40 Drainage and DWV Fabricated Fittings | Table P3002.3 |
| F 1960—07 | Specification for Cold Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.6 |
| F 1973—05 | Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide 11 (PA 11) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems | G2415.15.2 |
| F 1974—04 | Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe | P2505.11.1, Table P2905.6 |
| F 1986—01(2006) | Multilayer Pipe Type 2, Compression Joints for Hot and Cold Drinking Water Systems | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6 |
| F 2080—05 | Specification for Cold-expansion Fittings with Metal Compression-sleeves for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe | P2905.6 |
| F 2090—01A(2007) | Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices—with Emergency Escape (Egress) Release Mechanisms | R612.2, R612.3 |
| F 2098—04e1 | Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for SDR9 PEX Tubing to Metal Insert Fittings | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.6 |

**ASTM—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| F 2159—05 | Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing | P2905.6 |
| F 2262—05 | Standard Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene /Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Tubing OD Controlled SDR9 | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5 |
| F 2389—06 | Standard for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems | Table M2101.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5,Table P2905.6, P2905.10.1 |
| F 2434—05 | Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Tubing | Table P2905.6 |
| F 2623—07 | Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) SDRG Tubing | Table M2101.1 |

# AWPA

American Wood Protection Association
P.O. Box 361784
Birmingham, AL 35236-1784

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| C1—03 | All Timber Products—Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes | R902.2 |
| M4—06 | Standard for the Care of Preservative-treated Wood Products | R317.1.1, R318.1.2 |
| U1—07 | USE CATEGORY SYSTEM: User Specification for Treated Wood Except Section 6 Commodity Specification H | R317.1, R322.1.8, R402.1.2, R504.3, Table R905.8.5 |

# AWS

American Welding Society
550 N. W. LeJeune Road
Miami, FL 33126

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| A5.8—04 | Specifications for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding | P3003.5.1, P3003.10.1, P3003.11.1 |

# AWWA

American Water Works Association
6666 West Quincy Avenue
Denver, CO 80235

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| C104—98 | Standard for Cement-mortar Lining for Ductile-iron Pipe and Fittings for Water | P2905.4 |
| C110/A21.10—03 | Standard for Ductile-iron and Gray-iron Fittings, 3 Inches through 48 Inches, for Water | Table P2905.6, Table P3002.3 |
| C115/A21.15—99 | Standard for Flanged Ductile-iron Pipe with Ductile-iron or Gray-iron Threaded Flanges | Table P2905.4 |
| C151/A21.51—02 | Standard for Ductile-iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water | Table P2905.4 |
| C153/A21.53—00 | Standard for Ductile-iron Compact Fittings for Water Service | Table P2905.6 |
| C510—00 | Double Check Valve Backflow Prevention Assembly | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.6 |
| C511—00 | Reduced-pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5, P2902.5.1 |

# CGSB

Canadian General Standards Board
Place du Portage 111, 6B1
11 Laurier Street
Gatineau, Quebec, Canada KIA 1G6

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 37-GP—52M—(1984) | Roofing and Waterproofing Membrane, Sheet Applied, Elastomeric | R905.12.2 |
| 37-GP—56M—(1980) | Membrane, Modified Bituminous, Prefabricated and Reinforced for Roofing —with December 1985 Amendment | Table R905.11.2 |
| CAN/CGSB-37.54—95 | Polyvinyl Chloride Roofing and Waterproofing Membrane | R905.13.2 |

# CISPI

Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
5959 Shallowford Road, Suite 419
Chattanooga, TN 37421

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 301—04a | Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3005.2.9, Table P3302.1 |
| 310—04 | Standard Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications | P3003.6.3 |

# CPA

Composite Panel Association
19465 Deerfield Avenue, Suite 306
Leesburg, VA 20176

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| ANSI A135.4—04 | Basic Hardboard | Table R602.3(2) |
| ANSI A135.5—04 | Prefinished Hardboard Paneling | R702.5 |
| ANSI A135.6—98 | Hardboard Siding | Table R703.4 |

# CPSC

Consumer Product Safety Commission
4330 East West Highway
Bethesda, MD 20814-4408

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 16 CFR Part 1201—(1977) | Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing | R308.1.1, R308.3.1 |
| 16 CFR Part 1209—(1979) | Interim Safety Standard for Cellulose Insulation | R302.10.3 |
| 16 CFR Part 1404—(1979) | Cellulose Insulation | R302.10.3 |

# CSA

Canadian Standards Association
5060 Spectrum Way
Mississauga, Ontario, Canada L4N 5N6

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| CSA Requirement 3—88 | Manually Operated Gas Valves for Use in House Piping Systems | Table G2420.1.1 |
| CSA 8-93 | Requirements for Gas Fired Log Lighters for Wood Burning Fireplaces —with Revisions through January 1999 | G2433.1 |
| O325—07 | Construction Sheathing | R503.2.1 |
| O437-Series—93 | Standards on OSB and Waferboard (Reaffirmed 2006) | R503.2.1, R803.2.1 |
| CAN/CSA A 257.1M—92 | Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings | Table P3002.2 |
| CAN/CSA A 257.2M—92 | Reinforced Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings | Table P3002.2 |
| CAN/CSA A 257.3M—92 | Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Manhole Sections and Fittings Using Rubber Gaskets | P3003.7, P3003.18 |
| 101/I.S.2/A440—08 | Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights | N1102.4.4, R308.6.9, R612.6 |
| B45.1—02 | Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures | Table P2701.1, P2711.1, P2712.1 |
| B45.2—02 | Enameled Cast Iron Plumbing Fixtures | Table 2701.1, P2711.1 |
| B45.3—02 | Porcelain Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures | Table P2701.1, P2711.1 |
| B45.4—02 | Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures | Table P2701.1, P2711.1, P2712.1 |
| B45.5—02 | Plastic Plumbing Fixtures | Table P2701.1, P2711.2, P2712.1 |
| B45.9—02 | Macerating Systems and Related Components | P3007.1, P3007.2.1, P3007.5 |
| B64.1.2—01 | Vacuum Breakers, Pressure Type (PVB) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.4 |
| B64.2.1—01 | Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVB) with Manual Draining Feature | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.2 |
| B64.2.1.1—01 | Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Dual Check Type (HCDVB) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.2 |
| B64.3—01 | Backflow Preventers, Dual Check ValDrain, Wasteve Type with Atmospheric Port (DCAP) | Table P2902.2 |

**CSA—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| B64.4.1—01 | Backflow Preventers, Reduced Pressure Principle Type for Fire Systems (RPF) | Table P2902.2 |
| B64.5—01 | Backflow Preventers, Double Check Valve Type (DCVA) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.6 |
| B64.5.1—01 | Backflow Preventers, Double Check Valve Type for Fire Systems (DCVAF) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.6 |
| B64.6—01 | Backflow Preventers, Dual Check Valve Type (DuC) | Table P2902.3 |
| B64.7—94 | Vacuum Breakers, Laboratory Faucet Type (LFVB) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.2 |
| B125.1—2005/ ASME A112.18.1—2005 | Plumbing Supply Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2708.4, P2722.1 |
| B125.1—01 | Plumbing Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2708.3, P2722.2, P2722.3 |
| B125.2—2005 | Plumbing Waste Fittings | Table P2701.1, P2702.2 |
| B125.3—2005 | Plumbing Fittings | Table 2701.1 |
| B137.1—02 | Polyethylene Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Cold Water Pressure Services | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.6 |
| B137.2—02 | PVC Injection-moulded Gasketed Fittings for Pressure Applications | Table P2905.6 |
| B137.3—02 | Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe for Pressure Applications | Table P2905.4, P3003.9.2, P3003.14.2 |
| B137.5—02 | Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table P2905.6 |
| B137.6—02 | CPVC Pipe, Tubing and Fittings For Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems | Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5, Table 2905.6 |
| B137.11—02 | Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications | Table P2905.4.1, Table 2905.4, Table P2905.6 |
| B181.1—02 | ABS Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Pipe Fittings | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.3.2, P3003.8.2 |
| B181.2—02 | PVC Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Pipe Fittings | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.9.2, P3003.14.2, P3008.2, Table P3302.1 |
| B181.3—02 | Polyolefin Laboratory Drainage Systems | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, P3003.16.1 |
| B182.2—02 | PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings (PSM Type) | Table P3002.1(1), Table P3002.1(2), Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, Table P3302.1 |
| B182.4—02 | Profile PVC Sewer Pipe & Fittings | Table P3002.2, Table P3002.3, Table P3302.1 |
| B182.6—02 | Profile Polyethylene Sewer Pipe and Fittings for Leak-proof Sewer Applications | Table P3302.1 |
| B182.8—02 | Profile Polyethylene Storm Sewer and Drainage Pipe and Fittings | Table P3302.1 |
| B602—02 | Mechanical Couplings for Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Sewer Pipe | P3003.3.1, P3003.6.3, P3003.7, P3003.8.1, P3003.14.1, P3003.15, P3003.17.2 |
| LC3—00 | Appliance Stands and Drain Pans | P2801.5 |
| CAN/CSA B64.1.1—01 | Vacuum Breakers, Atmospheric Type (AVB) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.2 |
| CAN/CSA B64.2—01 | Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVP) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.2 |
| CAN/CSA B64.2.2—01 | Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVP) with Automatic Draining Feature | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.2 |
| CAN/CSA B64.3—01 | Backflow Preventers, Dual Check Valve Type with Atmospheric Port (DCAP) | Table P2902.2, P2902.3.3 |
| CAN/CSA B64.4—01 | Backflow Preventers, Reduced Pressure Principle Type (RP) | Table P2902.3, P2902.3.5, P2902.5.1,. |
| CAN/CSA B137.9—02 | Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe Systems | P2505.11.1, Table P2905.4 |
| CAN/CSA B137.10M—02 | Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe Systems | Table M2101.1, P2505.11.1, Table P2905.4, Table P2905.5 |

# CSSB

Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau
P. O. Box 1178
Sumas, WA 98295-1178

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| CSSB—97 | Grading and Packing Rules for Western Red Cedar Shakes and Western Red Shingles of the Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau | R702.6, R703.5, Table R905.7.4, Table R905.8.5 |

# DASMA

Door and Access Systems Manufacturers
Association International
1300 Summer Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 108—05 | Standard Method for Testing Garage Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference | R612.7 |

**DASMA—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 115—05 | Standard Method for Testing Garage Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Missile Impact and Cyclic Wind Pressure | R301.2.1.2 |

# DOC

United States Department of Commerce
1401 Constitution Avenue, NW
Washington, DC 20230

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| PS 1—07 | Structural Plywood | R404.2.1, Table R404.2.3, R503.2.1, R604.1, R613.3.2, R803.2.1 |
| PS 2—04 | Performance Standard for Wood-based Structural-use Panels | R404.2.1, Table R404.2.3, R503.2.1, R604.1, R613.3.2, Table 613.3.2, R803.2.1 |
| PS 20—05 | American Softwood Lumber Standard | R404.2.1, R502.1, R602.1, R802.1 |

# DOTn

Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Avenue SE
East Building, 2nd floor
Washington, DC 20590

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 49 CFR, Parts 192.281(e) & 192.283 (b) | Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards | G2414.6.1 |

# FEMA

Federal Emergency Management Agency
500 C Street, SW
Washington, DC 20472

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| TB-2—93 | Flood-resistant Materials Requirements | R322.1.8 |
| FIA-TB-11—01 | Crawlspace Construction for Buildings Located in Special Flood Hazard Area | R408.7 |

# FM

Factory Mutual Global Research
Standards Laboratories Department
1301 Atwood Avenue, P. O. Box 7500
Johnson, RI 02919

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 4450—(1989) | Approval Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs—with Supplements through July 1992 | R906.1 |
| 4880—(2005) | American National Standard for Evaluating Insulated Wall or Wall and Roof/Ceiling Assemblies, Plastic Interior Finish Materials, Plastic Exterior Building Panels, Wall/Ceiling Coating Systems, Interior or Exterior Finish Systems | R316.4, R316.6 |

# GA

Gypsum Association
810 First Street, Northeast, Suite 510
Washington, DC 20002-4268

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| GA-253—07 | Application of Gypsum Sheathing | Table R602.3(1) |

# HPVA

Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association
1825 Michael Faraday Drive
Reston, Virginia 20190-5350

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| HP-1—2004 | The American National Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood | R702.5 |

# ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Avenue, NW
6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| IBC—09 | International Building Code® | G2402.3, R101.2, R110.2, R301.1, R301.1.3, R301.2.2.1.1, R301.2.2.1.2, R301.2.2.4, R301.3, R308.5, R320.1, R321.3, R322.1, R403.1.8, R802.1.3.4, R905.10.3, Table AH107.4(1), AH107.4.3 |
| ICC/ANSI A117.1—03 | Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities | R321.3 |
| ICC 400—06 | Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures | R301.1.1 |
| ICC 500—08 | ICC/NSSA Standard on the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters | R323.1 |
| ICC 600—08 | Standard for Residential Construction in High Wind Regions | R301.2.1.1 |
| IECC—09 | International Energy Conservation Code® | N1101.2 |
| IFC—09 | International Fire Code® | G2402.3, G2412.2, G2423.1, M2201.7, R102.7 |
| IFGC—09 | International Fuel Gas Code® | G2401.1, G2423.1 |
| IMC—09 | International Mechanical Code® | G2402.3 |
| IPC—09 | International Plumbing Code® | G2402.3, Table R301.2(1), R903.4.1, AO102.6 |
| IPMC—09 | International Property Maintenance Code® | R102.7 |
| IPSDC—09 | International Private Sewage Disposal Code® | R322.1.7, AI101.1 |

# ISO

International Organization for Standardization
1, ch. de la Voie - Creuse
Case postale 56
CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 15874—2002 | Polypropylene Plastic Piping Systems for Hot and Cold Water Installations | Table M2101.1 |

# MSS

Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry
127 Park Street, Northeast
Vienna, VA 22180

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| SP-58—93 | Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials, Design and Manufacture | G2418.2 |

# NAIMA

North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
44 Canal Center Plaza, Suite 310
Alexandria, VA 22314

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| AH 116—02 | Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards, Fifth Edition | M1601.1.1 |

# NCMA

National Concrete Masonry Association
13750 Sunrise Valley Drive
Herndon, VA 20171-4662

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| TR 68-A—75 | Design and Construction of Plain and Reinforced Concrete Masonry and Basement and Foundation Walls | R404.1.1 |

# NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02269

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 13—07 | Installation of Sprinkler Systems | R302.3 |
| 13D—07 | Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes | P2904.1, P2904.2, P2904.6.1, R313.2.1 |
| 31—06 | Installation of Oil-burning Equipment | M1801.3.1, M1805.3 |
| 58—08 | Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code | G2412.2, G2414.6.2 |
| 70—08 | National Electrical Code | E3401.1, E3401.2, E4301.1, Table E4303.2, E4304.3, E4304.4 |
| 72—07 | National Fire Alarm Code | R314.1, R314.2 |
| 85—07 | Boiler and Construction Systems Hazards Code | G2452.1 |
| 211—06 | Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel Burning Appliances | G2427.5.5.1, R1002.5 |
| 259—03 | Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials | R316.5.7, 316.5.8 |
| 286—06 | Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth | R302.9.4, R316.4, R316.5.8, R316.6 |
| 501—05 | Standard on Manufactured Housing | R202, AE201 |
| 853—07 | Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems | M1903.1 |

# NFRC

National Fenestration Rating Council Inc.
8484 Georgia Avenue, Suite 320
Silver Spring, MD 20910

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced section number |
|---|---|---|
| 100—2004 | Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product *U*-factors | N1101.5 |
| 200—2004 | Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence | N1101.5 |
| 400—2004 | Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage | N1102.4.4 |

# NSF

NSF International
789 N. Dixboro
Ann Arbor, MI 48105

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 14—2007 | Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials | P2608.3, P2908.3 |
| 42—2007e | Drinking Water Treatment Units—Anesthetic Effects | P2908.1, P2908.3 |
| 44—2004 | Residential Cation Exchange Water Softeners | P2908.1, P2908.3 |
| 53—2007 | Drinking Water Treatment Units—Health Effects | P2908.1, P2908.3 |
| 58—2006 | Reverse Osmosis Drinking Water Treatment Systems | P2908.2, P2908.3 |
| 61—2007a | Drinking Water System Components—Health Effects | P2608.5, P2722.1, P2903.9.4, P2905.4, P2905.5, P2905.6, P2907.3 |

# PCA

Portland Cement Association
5420 Old Orchard Road
Skokie, IL 60077

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 100—07 | Prescriptive Design of Exterior Concrete Walls for One- and Two-family Dwellings (Pub. No. EB241) | R404.1.2, R404.1.2.2.1, R404.1.2.2.2, R404.1.2.4, R404.1.4.2, R611.1, R611.2, R611.9.2, R611.9.3 |

# SMACNA

Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Assoc. Inc.
4021 Lafayette Center Road
Chantilly, VA 22021

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| SMACNA—03 | Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards (2003) | M1601.1.1 |

# TMS

The Masonry Society
3970 Broadway, Suite 201-D
Boulder, CO 80304

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 302—07 | Standard Method for Determining the Sound Transmission Class Rating for Masonry Walls | AK102.1.1 |
| 402—08 | Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures | R404.1.1, R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.11.2.2.2, R606.12.1, R606.12.2.3.1, R606.12.2.3.2, R606.12.3.1, Table R703.4 |
| 602—08 | Specification for Masonry Structures | R404.1.1, R606.1, R606.1.1, R606.12.1, R606.12.2.3.1, R606.12.2.3.2, R606.12.3.1, Table R703.4 |

# TPI

Truss Plate Institute
583 D'Onofrio Drive, Suite 200
Madison, WI 53719

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| TPI 1—2007 | National Design Standard for Metal-plate-connected Wood Truss Construction | R502.11.1, R802.10.2 |

# UL

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| 17—94 | Vent or Chimney Connector Dampers for Oil-fired Appliances—with Revisions through September 1999 | M1802.2.2 |
| 58—96 | Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—with Revisions through July 1998 | M2201.1 |
| 80—04 | Steel Tanks for Oil-burner Fuel | M2201.1 |
| 103—01 | Factory-built Chimneys for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with Revisions through June 2006 | G2430.1, R202, R1005.3 |
| 127—96 | Factory-built Fireplaces—with Revisions through November 2006 | G2445.7, R1001.11, R1004.1, R1004.4, R1005.4 |
| 174—04 | Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through November 2005 | M2005.1 |
| 181—05 | Factory-made Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through May 2003 | M1601.2, M1601.4.1 |
| 181A—05 | Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through December 1998 | M1601.2, M1601.4.1 |
| 181B—05 | Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through August 2003 | M1601.2, M1601.4.1 |

**UL—continued**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 217—06 | Single- and Multiple-station Smoke Alarms—with Revisions through January 2004 | R313.1 |
| 263—03 | Standards for Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials | R302.2, R302.4.1, R316.4 |
| 325—02 | Standard for Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operations and Systems —with Revisions through February 2006 | R309.4 |
| 343—97 | Pumps for Oil-burning Appliances—with Revisions through May 2002 | M2204.1 |
| 441—96 | Gas Vents—with Revisions through August 2006 | G2426.1 |
| 508—99 | Industrial Control Equipment—with Revisions through July 2005 | M1411.3.1 |
| 536—97 | Flexible Metallic Hose—with Revisions through June 2003 | M2202.3 |
| 641—95 | Type L, Low-temperature Venting Systems—with Revisions through August 2005 | G2426.1, M1804.2.4, R202, R1003.11.5 |
| 651—05 | Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings | G2414.6.3 |
| 723—03 | Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials—with Revisions through May 2005 | M1601.3, R302.9.3, R302.10.1, R302.10.2, R316.3, R316.6 |
| 726—95 | Oil-fired Boiler Assemblies—with Revisions through March 2006 | M2001.1.1, M2006.1 |
| 727—06 | Oil-fired Central Furnaces | M1402.1 |
| 729—03 | Oil-fired Floor Furnaces | M1408.1 |
| 730—03 | Oil-fired Wall Furnaces | M1409.1 |
| 732—95 | Oil-fired Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through February 2005 | M2005.1 |
| 737—96 | Fireplaces Stoves—with Revisions through January 2000 | M1414.1 |
| 790—04 | Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings | R902.1 |
| 795—06 | Commercial-industrial Gas Heating Equipment | G2442.1, G2452.1 |
| 834—04 | Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers-Electric | M2001.1.1 |
| 896—93 | Oil-burning Stoves—with Revisions through May 2004 | M1410.1 |
| 923—02 | Microwave Cooking Appliances—with Revisions through February 2006 | M1504.1 |
| 959—01 | Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built Chimneys—with Revisions through September 2006 | R1005.6 |
| 1040—96 | Fire Test of Insulated Wall Construction—with Revisions through June 2001 | R316.4, R316.6 |
| 1256—02 | Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction | R906.1 |
| 1261—01 | Electric Water Heaters for Pools and Tubs—with Revisions through June 2004 | M2006.1 |
| 1453—04 | Electronic Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters | M2005.1 |
| 1479—03 | Fire Tests of Through-penetration Firestops | R302.4.1.2 |
| 1482—98 | Solid-fuel-type Room Heaters—with Revisions through January 2000 | M1410.1, R1002.2, R1002.5 |
| 1715—97 | Fire Test of Interior Finish Material—with Revisions through March 2004 | R316.4 |
| 1738—06 | Venting Systems for Gas-burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV | G2426.1 |
| 1777—04 | Standard for Chimney Liners | G2425.12, G2425.15.4, M1801.3.4, R1003.11.1, R1003.18 |
| 1995—05 | Heating and Cooling Equipment | M1402.1, M1403.1, M1407.1 |
| 2017—2000 | Standard for General-purpose Signaling Devices and Systems—with Revisions through June 2004 | AG105.2 |
| 2034—2008 | Standard for Single- and Multiple-station Carbon Monoxide Alarms | R315.3 |
| 2158A—2006 | Outline of Investigation for Clothes Dryer Transition Duct | M1502.4.3 |

# ULC

Underwriters' Laboratories of Canada
7 Underwriters Road
Toronto, Ontario, Canada M1R 3B4

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| CAN/ULC S 102—1988 | Standard Methods for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials and Assemblies—with 2000 Revisions | R302.10.2 |

# US-FTC

United States - Federal Trade Commission
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20580

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| CFR Title 16 Part 460 | *R*-value Rule | N1101.6 |

# WDMA

Window & Door Manufacturers Association
1400 East Touhy Avenue, Suite 470
Des Plaines, IL 60018

| Standard reference number | Title | Referenced in code section number |
|---|---|---|
| AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S2/A440—08 | Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights | N1102.4.4, R308.6.9, R613.6 |

# APPENDIX A
# SIZING AND CAPACITIES OF GAS PIPING

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the *code*. This appendix is an excerpt from the 2009 *International Fuel Gas Code,* coordinated with the section numbering of the *International Residential Code*.)

**A.1 General piping considerations.** The first goal of determining the *pipe* sizing for a *fuel gas piping system* is to make sure that there is sufficient gas pressure at the inlet to each *appliance*. The majority of systems are residential and the *appliances* will all have the same, or nearly the same, requirement for minimum gas pressure at the *appliance* inlet. This pressure will be about 5-inch water column (w.c.) (1.25 kPa), which is enough for proper operation of the *appliance regulator* to deliver about 3.5-inches water column (w.c.) (875 kPa) to the *burner* itself. The *pressure drop* in the *piping* is subtracted from the source delivery pressure to verify that the minimum is available at the *appliance*.

There are other systems, however, where the required inlet pressure to the different *appliance*s may be quite varied. In such cases, the greatest inlet pressure required must be satisfied, as well as the farthest *appliance*, which is almost always the critical *appliance* in small systems.

There is an additional requirement to be observed besides the capacity of the system at 100-percent flow. That requirement is that at minimum flow, the pressure at the inlet to any *appliance* does not exceed the pressure rating of the *appliance regulator.* This would seldom be of concern in small systems if the source pressure is $^1/_2$ psi (14-inch w.c.) (3.5 kPa) or less but it should be verified for systems with greater gas pressure at the point of supply.

To determine the size of *piping* used in a *gas piping system*, the following factors must be considered:

(1) Allowable loss in pressure from point of delivery to *equipment*.

(2) Maximum gas *demand*.

(3) Length of *piping* and number of fittings.

(4) *Specific gravity* of the gas.

(5) Diversity factor.

For any *gas piping system*, or special *appliance*, or for conditions other than those covered by the tables provided in this *code*, such as longer runs, greater gas *demands* or greater *pressure drops*, the size of each *gas piping system* should be determined by standard engineering practices acceptable to the *code official*.

**A.2 Description of tables**

**A.2.1 General.** The quantity of gas to be provided at each *outlet* should be determined, whenever possible, directly from the manufacturer's gas input *Btu*/h rating of the *appliance* that will be installed. In case the ratings of the appliances to be installed are not known, Table G2413.2 shows the approximate consumption (in *Btu* per hour) of certain types of typical household *appliances*.

To obtain the cubic feet per hour of gas required, divide the total *Btu*/h input of all *appliances* by the average *Btu* heating value per *cubic foot* of the gas. The average *Btu* per *cubic foot* of the gas in the area of the installation can be obtained from the serving gas supplier.

**A.2.2 Low pressure natural gas tables.** Capacities for gas at low pressure [less than 2.0 psig (13.8 kPa gauge)] in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 *specific gravity* gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Table G2413.4(1) for iron *pipe* or equivalent rigid *pipe*, in Table G2413.4(3) for smooth wall semi-rigid *tubing*, in Table G2413.4(5) for corrugated stainless steel *tubing* and in Table G2413.4(7) for polyethylene plastic *pipe*. Tables G2413.4(1), G2413.4(3), G2413.4(5) and G2413.4(7) are based upon a *pressure drop* of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa). In using these tables, an allowance (in equivalent length of *pipe*) should be considered for any *piping* run with four or more fittings [see Table A.2.2].

**A.2.3 Undiluted liquefied petroleum tables.** Capacities in thousands of *Btu* per hour of undiluted liquefied petroleum gases based on a *pressure drop* of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) for different sizes and lengths are shown in the *International Fuel Gas Code*. See Appendix A of that *code*.

**A.2.4 Natural gas specific gravity.** *Gas piping systems* that are to be supplied with gas of a *specific gravity* of 0.70 or less can be sized directly from the tables provided in this *code*, unless the *code official* specifies that a gravity factor be applied. Where the *specific gravity* of the gas is greater than 0.70, the gravity factor should be applied.

Application of the gravity factor converts the figures given in the tables provided in this *code* to capacities for another gas of different *specific gravity.* Such application is accomplished by multiplying the capacities given in the tables by the multipliers shown in Table A.2.4. In case the exact *specific gravity* does not appear in the table, choose the next higher value *specific gravity* shown.

**TABLE A.2.2**
**EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FITTINGS AND VALVES**

| | | SCREWED FITTINGS[1] | | | | 90° WELDING ELBOWS AND SMOOTH BENDS[2] | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 45°/Ell | 90°/Ell | 180° close return bends | Tee | *R/d* = 1 | *R/d* = $1^1/_3$ | *R/d* = 2 | *R/d* = 4 | *R/d* = 6 | *R/d* = 8 |
| ***k* factor =** | | 0.42 | 0.90 | 2.00 | 1.80 | 0.48 | 0.36 | 0.27 | 0.21 | 0.27 | 0.36 |
| ***L/d′* ratio[4] *n* =** | | 14 | 30 | 67 | 60 | 16 | 12 | 9 | 7 | 9 | 12 |
| **Nominal pipe size, inches** | **Inside diameter *d*, inches, Schedule 40[6]** | ***L* = Equivalent Length In Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard-Weight) Straight Pipe[6]** | | | | | | | | | |
| $^1/_2$ | 0.622 | 0.73 | 1.55 | 3.47 | 3.10 | 0.83 | 0.62 | 0.47 | 0.36 | 0.47 | 0.62 |
| $^3/_4$ | 0.824 | 0.96 | 2.06 | 4.60 | 4.12 | 1.10 | 0.82 | 0.62 | 0.48 | 0.62 | 0.82 |
| 1 | 1.049 | 1.22 | 2.62 | 5.82 | 5.24 | 1.40 | 1.05 | 0.79 | 0.61 | 0.79 | 1.05 |
| $1^1/_4$ | 1.380 | 1.61 | 3.45 | 7.66 | 6.90 | 1.84 | 1.38 | 1.03 | 0.81 | 1.03 | 1.38 |
| $1^1/_2$ | 1.610 | 1.88 | 4.02 | 8.95 | 8.04 | 2.14 | 1.61 | 1.21 | 0.94 | 1.21 | 1.61 |
| 2 | 2.067 | 2.41 | 5.17 | 11.5 | 10.3 | 2.76 | 2.07 | 1.55 | 1.21 | 1.55 | 2.07 |
| $2^1/_2$ | 2.469 | 2.88 | 6.16 | 13.7 | 12.3 | 3.29 | 2.47 | 1.85 | 1.44 | 1.85 | 2.47 |
| 3 | 3.068 | 3.58 | 7.67 | 17.1 | 15.3 | 4.09 | 3.07 | 2.30 | 1.79 | 2.30 | 3.07 |
| 4 | 4.026 | 4.70 | 10.1 | 22.4 | 20.2 | 5.37 | 4.03 | 3.02 | 2.35 | 3.02 | 4.03 |
| 5 | 5.047 | 5.88 | 12.6 | 28.0 | 25.2 | 6.72 | 5.05 | 3.78 | 2.94 | 3.78 | 5.05 |
| 6 | 6.065 | 7.07 | 15.2 | 33.8 | 30.4 | 8.09 | 6.07 | 4.55 | 3.54 | 4.55 | 6.07 |
| 8 | 7.981 | 9.31 | 20.0 | 44.6 | 40.0 | 10.6 | 7.98 | 5.98 | 4.65 | 5.98 | 7.98 |
| 10 | 10.02 | 11.7 | 25.0 | 55.7 | 50.0 | 13.3 | 10.0 | 7.51 | 5.85 | 7.51 | 10.0 |
| 12 | 11.94 | 13.9 | 29.8 | 66.3 | 59.6 | 15.9 | 11.9 | 8.95 | 6.96 | 8.95 | 11.9 |
| 14 | 13.13 | 15.3 | 32.8 | 73.0 | 65.6 | 17.5 | 13.1 | 9.85 | 7.65 | 9.85 | 13.1 |
| 16 | 15.00 | 17.5 | 37.5 | 83.5 | 75.0 | 20.0 | 15.0 | 11.2 | 8.75 | 11.2 | 15.0 |
| 18 | 16.88 | 19.7 | 42.1 | 93.8 | 84.2 | 22.5 | 16.9 | 12.7 | 9.85 | 12.7 | 16.9 |
| 20 | 18.81 | 22.0 | 47.0 | 105.0 | 94.0 | 25.1 | 18.8 | 14.1 | 11.0 | 14.1 | 18.8 |
| 24 | 22.63 | 26.4 | 56.6 | 126.0 | 113.0 | 30.2 | 22.6 | 17.0 | 13.2 | 17.0 | 22.6 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE A.2.2—continued**
**EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FITTINGS AND VALVES**

| | | MITER ELBOWS[3] (No. of miters) | | | | | WELDING TEES | | VALVES (screwed, flanged, or welded) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1-45° | 1-60° | 1-90° | 2-90°[5] | 3-90°[5] | Forged | Miter[3] | Gate | Globe | Angle | Swing Check |
| ***k* factor =** | | 0.45 | 0.90 | 1.80 | 0.60 | 0.45 | 1.35 | 1.80 | 0.21 | 10 | 5.0 | 2.5 |
| ***L/d′* ratio[4] *n* =** | | 15 | 30 | 60 | 20 | 15 | 45 | 60 | 7 | 333 | 167 | 83 |
| **Nominal pipe size, inches** | **Inside diameter *d*, inches, Schedule 40[6]** | ***L* = Equivalent Length In Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard-Weight) Straight Pipe[6]** | | | | | | | | | | |
| $^1/_2$ | 0.622 | 0.78 | 1.55 | 3.10 | 1.04 | 0.78 | 2.33 | 3.10 | 0.36 | 17.3 | 8.65 | 4.32 |
| $^3/_4$ | 0.824 | 1.03 | 2.06 | 4.12 | 1.37 | 1.03 | 3.09 | 4.12 | 0.48 | 22.9 | 11.4 | 5.72 |
| 1 | 1.049 | 1.31 | 2.62 | 5.24 | 1.75 | 1.31 | 3.93 | 5.24 | 0.61 | 29.1 | 14.6 | 7.27 |
| $1^1/_4$ | 1.380 | 1.72 | 3.45 | 6.90 | 2.30 | 1.72 | 5.17 | 6.90 | 0.81 | 38.3 | 19.1 | 9.58 |
| $1^1/_2$ | 1.610 | 2.01 | 4.02 | 8.04 | 2.68 | 2.01 | 6.04 | 8.04 | 0.94 | 44.7 | 22.4 | 11.2 |
| 2 | 2.067 | 2.58 | 5.17 | 10.3 | 3.45 | 2.58 | 7.75 | 10.3 | 1.21 | 57.4 | 28.7 | 14.4 |
| $2^1/_2$ | 2.469 | 3.08 | 6.16 | 12.3 | 4.11 | 3.08 | 9.25 | 12.3 | 1.44 | 68.5 | 34.3 | 17.1 |
| 3 | 3.068 | 3.84 | 7.67 | 15.3 | 5.11 | 3.84 | 11.5 | 15.3 | 1.79 | 85.2 | 42.6 | 21.3 |
| 4 | 4.026 | 5.04 | 10.1 | 20.2 | 6.71 | 5.04 | 15.1 | 20.2 | 2.35 | 112.0 | 56.0 | 28.0 |
| 5 | 5.047 | 6.30 | 12.6 | 25.2 | 8.40 | 6.30 | 18.9 | 25.2 | 2.94 | 140.0 | 70.0 | 35.0 |
| 6 | 6.065 | 7.58 | 15.2 | 30.4 | 10.1 | 7.58 | 22.8 | 30.4 | 3.54 | 168.0 | 84.1 | 42.1 |
| 8 | 7.981 | 9.97 | 20.0 | 40.0 | 13.3 | 9.97 | 29.9 | 40.0 | 4.65 | 222.0 | 111.0 | 55.5 |
| 10 | 10.02 | 12.5 | 25.0 | 50.0 | 16.7 | 12.5 | 37.6 | 50.0 | 5.85 | 278.0 | 139.0 | 69.5 |
| 12 | 11.94 | 14.9 | 29.8 | 59.6 | 19.9 | 14.9 | 44.8 | 59.6 | 6.96 | 332.0 | 166.0 | 83.0 |
| 14 | 13.13 | 16.4 | 32.8 | 65.6 | 21.9 | 16.4 | 49.2 | 65.6 | 7.65 | 364.0 | 182.0 | 91.0 |
| 16 | 15.00 | 18.8 | 37.5 | 75.0 | 25.0 | 18.8 | 56.2 | 75.0 | 8.75 | 417.0 | 208.0 | 104.0 |
| 18 | 16.88 | 21.1 | 42.1 | 84.2 | 28.1 | 21.1 | 63.2 | 84.2 | 9.85 | 469.0 | 234.0 | 117.0 |
| 20 | 18.81 | 23.5 | 47.0 | 94.0 | 31.4 | 23.5 | 70.6 | 94.0 | 11.0 | 522.0 | 261.0 | 131.0 |
| 24 | 22.63 | 28.3 | 56.6 | 113.0 | 37.8 | 28.3 | 85.0 | 113.0 | 13.2 | 629.0 | 314.0 | 157.0 |

For SI: 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

Note: Values for welded fittings are for conditions where bore is not obstructed by weld spatter or backing rings. If appreciably obstructed, use values for "Screwed Fittings."

1. Flanged fittings have three-fourths the resistance of screwed elbows and tees.
2. Tabular figures give the extra resistance due to curvature alone to which should be added the full length of travel.
3. Small size socket-welding fittings are equivalent to miter elbows and miter tees.
4. Equivalent resistance in number of diameters of straight *pipe* computed for a value of ($f$ - 0.0075) from the relation ($n$ - $k/4f$).
5. For condition of minimum resistance where the centerline length of each miter is between d and $2^1/_2d$.
6. For *pipe* having other inside diameters, the equivalent resistance may be computed from the above $n$ values.

Source: Crocker, S. *Piping Handbook*, 4th ed., Table XIV, pp. 100-101. Copyright 1945 by McGraw-Hill, Inc. Used by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company.

**TABLE A.2.4**
**MULTIPLIERS TO BE USED WITH TABLES G2413.4(1) THROUGH G2413.4(8) WHERE THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF THE GAS IS OTHER THAN 0.60**

| SPECIFIC GRAVITY | MULTIPLIER | SPECIFIC GRAVITY | MULTIPLIER |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.35 | 1.31 | 1.00 | 0.78 |
| 0.40 | 1.23 | 1.10 | 0.74 |
| 0.45 | 1.16 | 1.20 | 0.71 |
| 0.50 | 1.10 | 1.30 | 0.68 |
| 0.55 | 1.04 | 1.40 | 0.66 |
| 0.60 | 1.00 | 1.50 | 0.63 |
| 0.65 | 0.96 | 1.60 | 0.61 |
| 0.70 | 0.93 | 1.70 | 0.59 |
| 0.75 | 0.90 | 1.80 | 0.58 |
| 0.80 | 0.87 | 1.90 | 0.56 |
| 0.85 | 0.84 | 2.00 | 0.55 |
| 0.90 | 0.82 | 2.10 | 0.54 |

**A.2.5 Higher pressure natural gas tables.** Capacities for gas at pressures of 2.0 psig (13.8 kPa) or greater in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 *specific gravity* gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Table G2413.4(2) for iron *pipe* or equivalent rigid *pipe*, Table G2413.4(4) for semi-rigid *tubing*, Table G2413.4(6) for corrugated stainless steel *tubing* and Table G2413.4(8) for polyethylene plastic *pipe*.

**A.3 Use of capacity tables**

**A.3.1 Longest length method.** This sizing method is conservative in its approach by applying the maximum operating conditions in the system as the norm for the system and by setting the length of *pipe* used to size any given part of the *piping* system to the maximum value.

To determine the size of each section of *gas piping* in a system within the range of the capacity tables, proceed as follows. (also see sample calculations included in this Appendix).

(1) Divide the *piping system* into appropriate segments consistent with the presence of tees, branch lines and main runs. For each segment, determine the gas load (assuming all *appliances* operate simultaneously) and its overall length. An allowance (in equivalent length of *pipe*) as determined from Table A.2.2 shall be considered for *piping* segments that include four or more fittings.

(2) Determine the gas *demand* of each *appliance* to be attached to the *piping system*. Where Tables G2413.4(1) through G2413.4(8) are to be used to select the *piping* size, calculate the gas *demand* in terms of cubic feet per hour for each *piping system outlet*.

(3) Where the *piping system* is for use with other than undiluted liquefied petroleum gases, determine the design system pressure, the allowable loss in pressure (*pressure drop*), and *specific gravity* of the gas to be used in the *piping system*.

(4) Determine the length of *piping* from the point of delivery to the most remote *outlet* in the building/*piping system*.

(5) In the appropriate capacity table, select the row showing the measured length or the next longer length if the table does not give the exact length. This is the only length used in determining the size of any section of *gas piping*. If the gravity factor is to be applied, the values in the selected row of the table are multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table A.2.4.

(6) Use this horizontal row to locate ALL gas *demand* figures for this particular system of *piping*.

(7) Starting at the most remote *outlet*, find the gas *demand* for that *outlet* in the horizontal row just selected. If the exact figure of *demand* is not shown, choose the next larger figure left in the row.

(8) Opposite this *demand* figure, in the first row at the top, the correct size of *gas piping* will be found.

(9) Proceed in a similar manner for each *outlet* and each section of *gas piping*. For each section of *piping*, determine the total gas *demand* supplied by that section.

When a large number of *piping* components (such as elbows, tees and *valves*) are installed in a *pipe* run, additional pressure loss can be accounted for by the use of equivalent lengths. Pressure loss across any *piping* component can be equated to the *pressure drop* through a length of *pipe*. The equivalent length of a combination of only four elbows/tees can result in a jump to the next larger length row, resulting in a significant reduction in capacity. The equivalent lengths in feet shown in Table A.2.2 have been computed on a basis that the inside diameter corresponds to that of Schedule 40 (standard-weight) steel *pipe*, which is close enough for most purposes involving other schedules of *pipe*. Where a more specific solution for equivalent length is desired, this may be made by multiplying the actual inside diameter of the *pipe* in inches by $n/12$, or the actual inside diameter in feet by $n$ ($n$ can be read from the table heading). The equivalent length values can be used with reasonable accuracy for copper or brass fittings and bends although the resistance per foot of copper or brass *pipe* is less than that of steel. For copper or brass *valves*, however, the equivalent length of *pipe* should be taken as 45 percent longer than the values in the table, which are for steel *pipe*.

**A.3.2 Branch length method.** This sizing method reduces the amount of conservatism built into the traditional Longest Length Method. The longest length as measured from the *meter* to the furthest remote *appliance* is only used to size the initial parts of the overall *piping system*. The Branch Length Method is applied in the following manner:

(1) Determine the gas load for each of the connected *appliances*.

(2) Starting from the *meter*, divide the *piping system* into a number of connected segments, and determine the length and amount of gas that each segment would carry assuming that all *appliances* were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of *pipe*) as determined from Table A.2.2

should be considered for *piping* segments that include four or more fittings.

(3) Determine the distance from the outlet of the gas *meter* to the *appliance* furthest removed from the *meter*.

(4) Using the longest distance (found in Step 3), size each *piping* segment from the *meter* to the most remote *appliance outlet*.

(5) For each of these *piping* segments, use the longest length and the calculated gas load for all of the connected *appliances* for the segment and begin the sizing process in Steps 6 through 8.

(6) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating conditions and *piping* material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the next larger distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures and/or *pressure drops* will require the use of a different sizing table, but will not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures and/or *pressure drops* will require the approval of both the *code official* and the local gas serving utility.

(7) Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.

(8) Read up the table column and select the appropriate *pipe* size in the top row. Repeat Steps 6, 7 and 8 for each *pipe* segment in the longest run.

(9) Size each remaining section of branch *piping* not previously sized by measuring the distance from the gas *meter* location to the most remote *outlet* in that branch, using the gas load of attached *appliances* and following the procedures of Steps 2 through 8.

**A.3.3 Hybrid pressure method.** The sizing of a 2 psi (13.8 kPa) *gas piping system* is performed using the traditional Longest Length Method but with modifications. The 2 psi (13.8 kPa) system consists of two independent pressure zones, and each zone is sized separately. The Hybrid Pressure Method is applied as follows.

The sizing of the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section (from the *meter* to the line *regulator*) is as follows:

(1) Calculate the gas load (by adding up the name plate ratings) from all connected *appliances*. (In certain circumstances the installed gas load may be increased up to 50 percent to accommodate future addition of *appliances*.) Ensure that the line *regulator* capacity is adequate for the calculated gas load and that the required *pressure drop* (across the *regulator*) for that capacity does not exceed $^3/_4$ psi (5.2 kPa) for a 2 psi (13.8 kPa) system. If the *pressure drop* across the *regulator* is too high (for the connected gas load), select a larger *regulator*.

(2) Measure the distance from the *meter* to the line *regulator* located inside the building.

(3) If there are multiple line *regulators*, measure the distance from the *meter* to the *regulator* furthest removed from the *meter*.

(4) The maximum allowable *pressure drop* for the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section is 1 psi (6.9 kPa).

(5) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on *piping* material) for 2 psi (13.8 kPa) systems with a 1 psi (6.9 kPa) *pressure drop*, find this distance in the first column, or the closest larger distance if the exact distance is not listed.

(6) Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.

(7) Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate *pipe* size.

(8) If there are multiple *regulators* in this portion of the *piping system*, each line segment must be sized for its actual gas load, but using the longest length previously determined above.

The low pressure section (all *piping* downstream of the line *regulator*) is sized as follows:

(1) Determine the gas load for each of the connected *appliances*.

(2) Starting from the line *regulator*, divide the *piping system* into a number of connected segments and/or independent parallel *piping* segments, and determine the amount of gas that each segment would carry assuming that all *appliances* were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of *pipe*) as determined from Table A.2.2 should be considered for *piping* segments that include four or more fittings.

(3) For each *piping* segment, use the actual length or longest length (if there are sub-branchlines) and the calculated gas load for that segment and begin the sizing process as follows:

  (a) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating pressure and *piping* material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the closest larger distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures and/or *pressure drops* will require the use of a different sizing table, but will not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures and/or *pressure drops* may require the approval of the *code official*.

  (b) Trace across this row until the *appliance* gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.

  (c) Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate *pipe* size.

  (d) Repeat this process for each segment of the *piping system*.

**A.3.4 Pressure drop per 100 feet method.** This sizing method is less conservative than the others, but it allows the designer to immediately see where the largest *pressure drop* occurs in the system. With this information, modifications can be made to bring the total drop to the critical *appliance* within the limitations that are presented to the designer.

Follow the procedures described in the Longest Length Method for Steps (1) through (4) and (9).

For each *piping* segment, calculate the *pressure drop* based on *pipe* size, length as a percentage of 100 feet (30 480 mm), and gas flow. Table A.3.4 shows *pressure drop* per 100 feet (30 480 mm) for *pipe* sizes from $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) through 2 inch (51 mm). The sum of *pressure drops* to the critical *appliance* is subtracted from the supply pressure to verify that sufficient pressure will be available. If not, the layout can be examined to find the high drop section(s) and sizing selections modified.

**Note:** Other values can be obtained by using the following equation:

$$\text{Desired Value} = MBH \times \sqrt{\frac{\text{Desired Drop}}{\text{Table Drop}}}$$

For example, if it is desired to get flow through $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) *pipe* at 2 inches/100 feet, multiple the capacity of $^3/_4$-inch *pipe* at 1 inch/100 feet by the square root of the pressure ratio:

$$147\,MBH \times \sqrt{\frac{2''w.c.}{1''w.c.}} = 147 \times 1.414 = 208\,MBH$$

($MBH$ = 1000 *Btu*/h)

**A.4 Use of sizing equations.** Capacities of smooth wall *pipe* or *tubing* can also be determined by using the following formulae:

(1) High Pressure [1.5 psi (10.3 kPa) and above]:

$$Q = 181.6\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \cdot \left(P_1^2 - P_2^2\right) \cdot Y}{C_r \cdot fba \cdot L}}$$

$$= 2237\,D^{2.623}\left[\frac{\left(P_1^2 - P_2^2\right) \cdot Y}{C_r \cdot L}\right]^{0.541}$$

(2) Low Pressure [Less than 1.5 psi (10.3 kPa)]:

$$Q = 187.3\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \cdot \Delta H}{C_r \cdot fba \cdot L}}$$

$$= 2313\,D^{2.623}\left(\frac{\Delta H}{C_r \cdot L}\right)^{0.541}$$

where:

$Q$ = Rate, cubic feet per hour at 60°F and 30-inch mercury column

$D$ = Inside diameter of *pipe*, in.

$P_1$ = Upstream pressure, psia

$P_2$ = Downstream pressure, psia

$Y$ = Superexpansibility factor = 1/supercompressibility factor

$C_r$ = Factor for viscosity, density and temperature*

$$= 0.00354\,ST\left(\frac{Z}{S}\right)^{0.152}$$

Note: See Table 402.4 for $Y$ and $C_r$ for natural gas and propane.

$S$ = *Specific gravity* of gas at 60°F and 30-inch mercury column (0.60 for natural gas, 1.50 for propane), or = 1488μ

$T$ = Absolute temperature, °F or = $t$ + 460

$t$ = Temperature, °F

$Z$ = Viscosity of gas, centipoise (0.012 for natural gas, 0.008 for propane), or = 1488μ

$fba$ = Base friction factor for air at 60°F (CF=1)

$L$ = Length of *pipe*, ft

$\Delta H$ = *Pressure drop*, in. w.c. (27.7 in. $H_2O$ = 1 psi)

(For SI, see Section G2413.4)

**A.5 Pipe and tube diameters.** Where the internal diameter is determined by the formulas in Section G2413.4, Tables A.5.1 and A.5.2 can be used to select the nominal or standard *pipe* size based on the calculated internal diameter.

**TABLE A.3.4**
**THOUSANDS OF Btu/h (MBH) OF NATURAL GAS PER 100 FEET OF PIPE AT VARIOUS PRESSURE DROPS AND PIPE DIAMETERS**

| PRESSURE DROP PER 100 FEET IN INCHES W.C. | PIPE SIZES (inch) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | $^1/_2$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 |
| 0.2 | 31 | 64 | 121 | 248 | 372 | 716 |
| 0.3 | 38 | 79 | 148 | 304 | 455 | 877 |
| 0.5 | 50 | 104 | 195 | 400 | 600 | 1160 |
| 1.0 | 71 | 147 | 276 | 566 | 848 | 1640 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**TABLE A.5.1**
**SCHEDULE 40 STEEL PIPE STANDARD SIZES**

| NOMINAL SIZE (in.) | INTERNAL DIAMETER (in.) | NOMINAL SIZE (in.) | INTERNAL DIAMETER (in.) |
|---|---|---|---|
| $^1/_4$ | 0.364 | $1^1/_2$ | 1.610 |
| $^3/_8$ | 0.493 | 2 | 2.067 |
| $^1/_2$ | 0.622 | $2^1/_2$ | 2.469 |
| $^3/_4$ | 0.824 | 3 | 3.068 |
| 1 | 1.049 | $3^1/_2$ | 3.548 |
| $1^1/_4$ | 1.380 | 4 | 4.026 |

**A.6 Use of sizing charts.** A third method of sizing *gas piping* is detailed below as an option that is useful when large quantities of *piping* are involved in a job (e.g., an apartment house) and material costs are of concern. If the user is not completely familiar with this method, the resulting *pipe* sizing should be checked by a knowledgeable gas engineer. The sizing charts are applied as follows.

(1) With the layout developed according to Section R106.1.1 of the *code*, indicate in each section the design gas flow under maximum operation conditions. For many layouts, the maximum design flow will be the sum of all connected loads. However, in some cases, certain combinations of *appliances* will not occur simultaneously (e.g., gas heating and air conditioning). For these cases, the design flow is the greatest gas flow that can occur at any one time.

(2) Determine the inlet gas pressure for the system being designed. In most cases, the point of inlet will be the gas *meter* or service *regulator*, but in the case of a system addition, it could be the point of connection to the existing system.

(3) Determine the minimum pressure required at the inlet to the critical *appliance*. Usually, the critical item will be the *appliance* with the highest required pressure for satisfactory operation. If several items have the same required pressure, it will be the one with the greatest length of *piping* from the system inlet.

(4) The difference between the inlet pressure and critical item pressure is the allowable system *pressure drop*. Figures A.6(a) and A.6(b) show the relationship between gas flow, *pipe* size and *pipe* length for natural gas with 0.60 *specific gravity*.

(5) To use Figure A.6(a) (low pressure applications), calculate the *piping* length from the inlet to the critical utilization *equipment*. Increase this length by 50 percent to allow for fittings. Divide the allowable *pressure drop* by the equivalent length (in hundreds of feet) to determine the allowable *pressure drop* per hundred feet. Select the *pipe* size from Figure A.6(a) for the required volume of flow.

(6) To use Figure A.6(b) (high pressure applications), calculate the equivalent length as above. Calculate the index number for Figure A.6(b) by dividing the difference between the squares of the absolute values of inlet and outlet pressures by the equivalent length (in hundreds of feet). Select the *pipe* size from Figure A.6(b) for the gas volume required.

**TABLE A.5.2**
**COPPER TUBE STANDARD SIZES**

| TUBE TYPE | NOMINAL OR STANDARD SIZE (inches) | INTERNAL DIAMETER (inches) |
|---|---|---|
| K | $^1/_4$ | 0.305 |
| L | $^1/_4$ | 0.315 |
| ACR (D) | $^3/_8$ | 0.315 |
| ACR (A) | $^3/_8$ | 0.311 |
| K | $^3/_8$ | 0.402 |
| L | $^3/_8$ | 0.430 |
| ACR (D) | $^1/_2$ | 0.430 |
| ACR (A) | $^1/_2$ | 0.436 |
| K | $^1/_2$ | 0.527 |
| L | $^1/_2$ | 0.545 |
| ACR (D) | $^5/_8$ | 0.545 |
| ACR (A) | $^5/_8$ | 0.555 |
| K | $^5/_8$ | 0.652 |
| L | $^5/_8$ | 0.666 |
| ACR (D) | $^3/_4$ | 0.666 |
| ACR (A) | $^3/_4$ | 0.680 |
| K | $^3/_4$ | 0.745 |
| L | $^3/_4$ | 0.785 |
| ACR | $^7/_8$ | 0.785 |
| K | 1 | 0.995 |
| L | 1 | 1.025 |
| ACR | $1^1/_8$ | 1.025 |
| K | $1^1/_4$ | 1.245 |
| L | $1^1/_4$ | 1.265 |
| ACR | $1^3/_8$ | 1.265 |
| K | $1^1/_2$ | 1.481 |
| L | $1^1/_2$ | 1.505 |
| ACR | $1^5/_8$ | 1.505 |
| K | 2 | 1.959 |
| L | 2 | 1.985 |
| ACR | $2^1/_8$ | 1.985 |
| K | $2^1/_2$ | 2.435 |
| L | $2^1/_2$ | 2.465 |
| ACR | $2^5/_8$ | 2.465 |
| K | 3 | 2.907 |
| L | 3 | 2.945 |
| ACR | $3^1/_8$ | 2.945 |

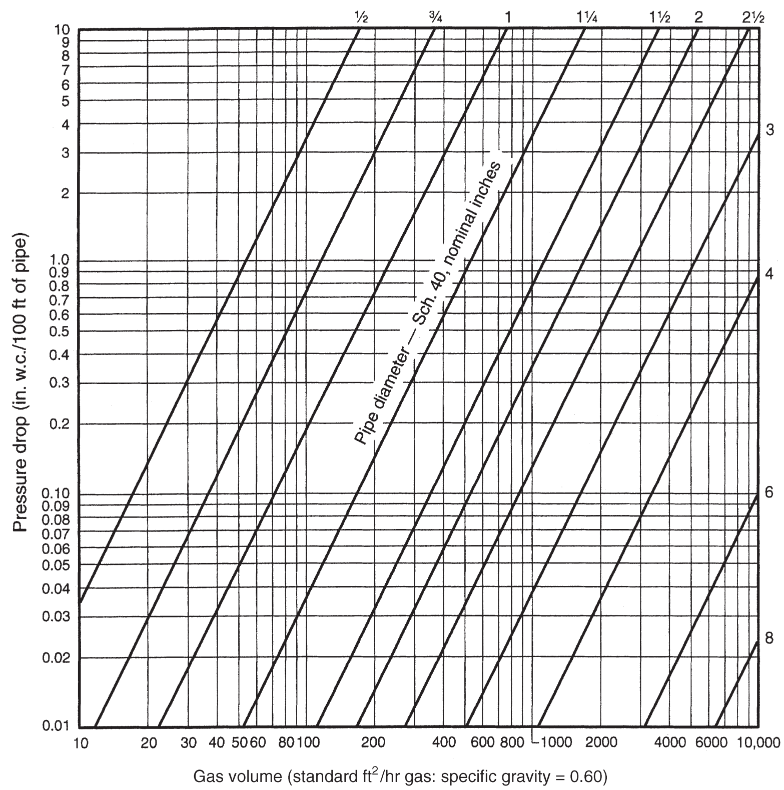



**FIGURE A.6(a)**
**CAPACITY OF NATURAL GAS PIPING, LOW PRESSURE (0.60 WC)**

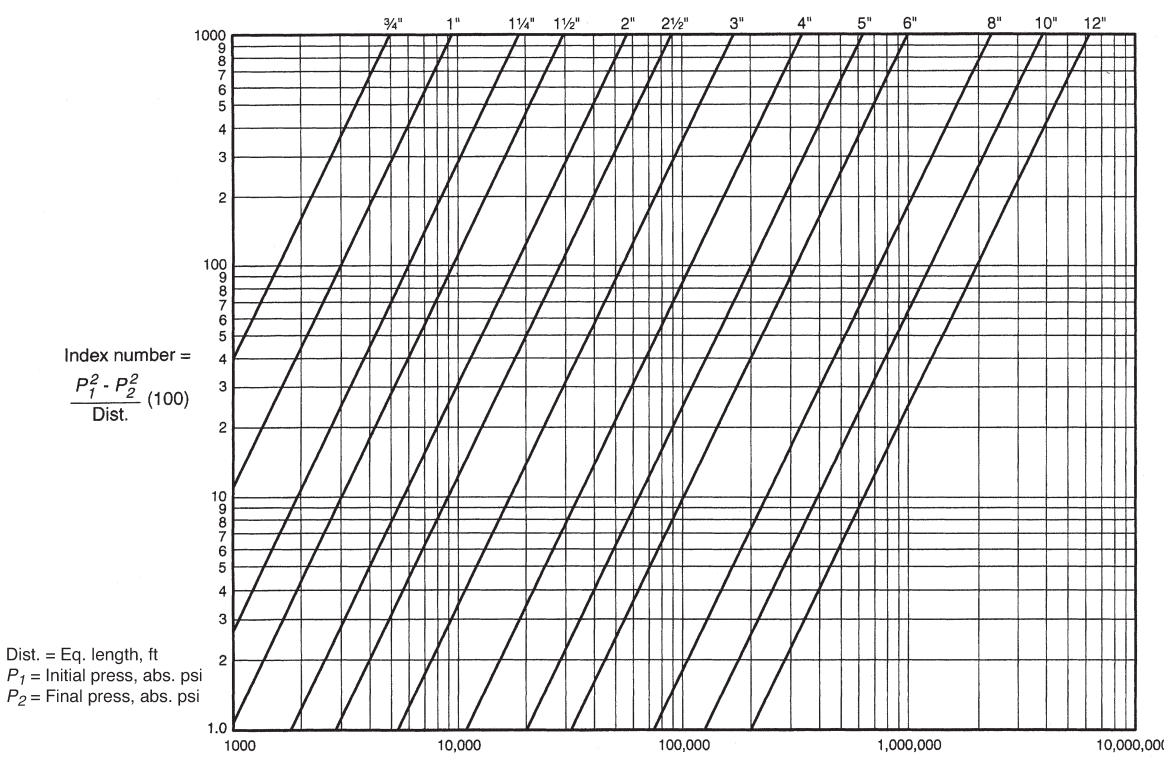



**FIGURE A.6 (b)**
**CAPACITY OF NATURAL GAS PIPING, HIGH PRESSURE (1.5 psi and above)**

## A.7 Examples of piping system design and sizing

**A.7.1 Example 1: Longest length method.** Determine the required *pipe* size of each section and *outlet* of the *piping system* shown in Figure A.7.1, with a designated *pressure drop* of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) using the Longest Length Method. The gas to be used has 0.60 *specific gravity* and a heating value of 1,000 *Btu*/ft$^3$ (37.5 MJ/m$^3$).

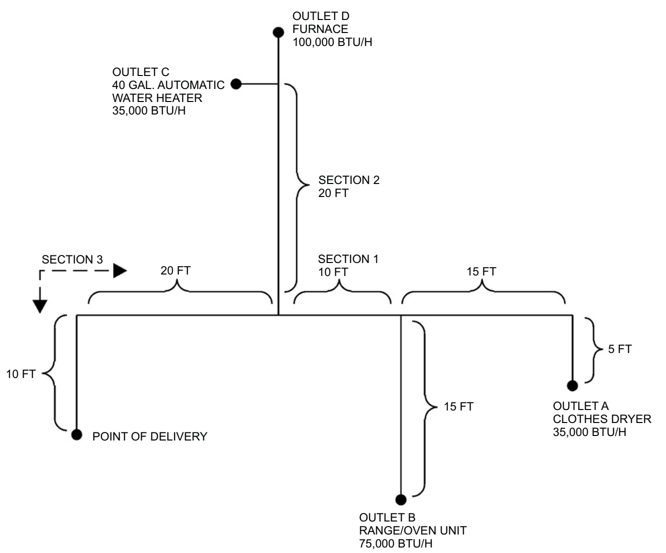



**FIGURE A.7.1**
**PIPING PLAN SHOWING A STEEL PIPING SYSTEM**

**Solution:**

(1) Maximum gas *demand* for *Outlet* A:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption (rating plate input, or Table G2413.2 if necessary)}}{\text{Btu of gas}} =$$

$$\frac{\text{35,000 Btu per hour rating}}{\text{1,000 Btu per cubic foot}} = \text{35 cubic feet per hour} = \text{35 cfh}$$

Maximum gas *demand* for *Outlet* B:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{75{,}000}{1{,}000} = 75 \text{ cfh}$$

Maximum gas *demand* for *Outlet* C:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{35{,}000}{1{,}000} = 35 \text{ cfh}$$

Maximum gas *demand* for *Outlet* D:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{100{,}000}{1{,}000} = 100 \text{ cfh}$$

(2) The length of *pipe* from the point of delivery to the most remote *outlet* (A) is 60 feet (18 288 mm). This is the only distance used.

(3) Using the row marked 60 feet (18 288 mm) in Table G2413.4(1):

(a) *Outlet* A, supplying 35 cfh (0.99 m$^3$/hr), requires $^3/_8$-inch *pipe*.

(b) *Outlet* B, supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m$^3$/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch *pipe*.

(c) Section 1, supplying *Outlets* A and B, or 110 cfh (3.11 m$^3$/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch *pipe*.

(d) Section 2, supplying *Outlets* C and D, or 135 cfh (3.82 m$^3$/hr), requires $^3/_4$-inch *pipe*.

(e) Section 3, supplying *Outlets* A, B, C and D, or 245 cfh (6.94 m$^3$/hr), requires 1-inch *pipe*.

(4) If a different gravity factor is applied to this example, the values in the row marked 60 feet (18 288 mm) of Table G2413.4(1) would be multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table A.2.4 and the resulting cubic feet per hour values would be used to size the *piping*.

*Section A.7.2 through A7.4 note: These examples are based on tables found in the International Fuel Gas Code.*

**A.7.2 Example 2: Hybrid or dual pressure systems.** Determine the required CSST size of each section of the *piping system* shown in Figure A.7.2, with a designated *pressure drop* of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) for the 2 psi (13.8 kPa) section and 3-inch w.c. (0.75 kPa) *pressure drop* for the 13-inch w.c. (2.49 kPa) section. The gas to be used has 0.60 *specific gravity* and a heating value of 1,000 *Btu*/ft$^3$ (37.5 MJ/ m$^3$).

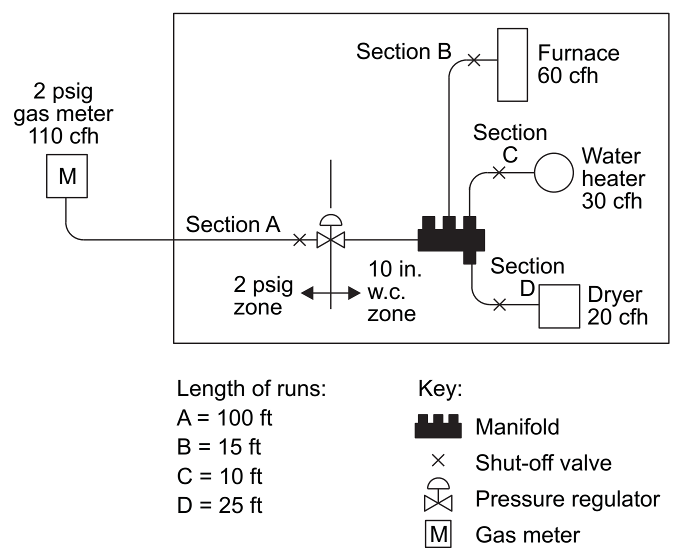



**FIGURE A.7.2**
**PIPING PLAN SHOWING A CSST SYSTEM**

**Solution**

(1) Size 2 psi (13.8 kPa) line using Table 402.4(16).

(2) Size 10-inch w.c. (2.5 kPa) lines using Table 402.4(14).

(3) Using the following, determine if sizing tables can be used.

(a) Total gas load shown in Figure A.7.2 equals 110 cfh (3.11 m$^3$/hr).

(b) Determine *pressure drop* across *regulator* [see notes in Table 402.4 (16)].

(c) If *pressure drop* across *regulator* exceeds $^3/_4$ psig (5.2 kPa), Table 402.4 (16) cannot be used. Note: If *pressure drop* exceeds $^3/_4$ psi (5.2 kPa), then a larger *regulator* must be selected or an alternative sizing method must be used.

(d) *Pressure drop* across the line *regulator* [for 110 cfh (3.11 m$^3$/hr)] is 4-inch w.c. (0.99 kPa) based on manufacturer's performance data.

(e) Assume the CSST manufacturer has *tubing* sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23 and 30.

(4) Section A [2 psi (13.8 kPa) zone]

(a) Distance from *meter* to *regulator* = 100 feet (30 480 mm).

(b) Total load supplied by A = 110 cfh (3.11 m$^3$/hr) (*furnace* + *water heater* + dryer).

(c) Table 402.4 (16) shows that EHD size 18 should be used.

Note: It is not unusual to oversize the supply line by 25 to 50 percent of the as-installed load. EHD size 18 has a capacity of 189 cfh (5.35 m$^3$/hr).

(5) Section B (low pressure zone)

(a) Distance from *regulator* to *furnace* is 15 feet (4572 mm).

(b) Load is 60 cfh (1.70 m$^3$/hr).

(c) Table 402.4 (14) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

(6) Section C (low pressure zone)

(a) Distance from *regulator* to *water heater* is 10 feet (3048 mm).

(b) Load is 30 cfh (0.85 m$^3$/hr).

(c) Table 402.4 (14) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

(7) Section D (low pressure zone)

(a) Distance from *regulator* to dryer is 25 feet (7620 mm).

(b) Load is 20 cfh (0.57 m$^3$/hr).

(c) Table 402.4(14) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

**A.7.3 Example 3: Branch length method.** Determine the required semi-rigid copper *tubing* size of each section of the *piping system* shown in Figure A.7.3, with a designated *pressure drop* of 1-inch w.c. (250 Pa) (using the Branch Length Method). The gas to be used has 0.60 *specific gravity* and a heating value of 1,000 *Btu*/ft$^3$ (37.5 MJ/m$^3$).

**Solution**

(1) Section A

(a) The length of *tubing* from the point of delivery to the most remote *appliance* is 50 feet (15 240 mm), A + C.

(b) Use this longest length to size Sections A and C.

(c) Using the row marked 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Table 402.4(8), Section A, supplying 220 cfh (6.2 m$^3$/hr) for four *appliances* requires 1-inch *tubing*.

(2) Section B

(a) The length of *tubing* from the point of delivery to the range/oven at the end of Section B is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + B.

(b) Use this branch length to size Section B only.

(c) Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(8), Section B, supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m$^3$/hr) for the range/oven requires $^1/_2$-inch *tubing*.

(3) Section C

(a) The length of *tubing* from the point of delivery to the dryer at the end of Section C is 50 feet (15 240 mm), A + C.

(b) Use this branch length (which is also the longest length) to size Section C.

(c) Using the row marked 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Table 402.4(8), Section C, supplying 30 cfh (0.85 m$^3$/hr) for the dryer requires $^3/_8$-inch *tubing*.

(4) Section D

(a) The length of *tubing* from the point of delivery to the *water heater* at the end of Section D is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + D.

(b) Use this branch length to size Section D only.

(c) Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(8), Section D, supplying 35 cfh (0.99 m$^3$/hr) for the *water heater* requires $^3/_8$-inch *tubing*.

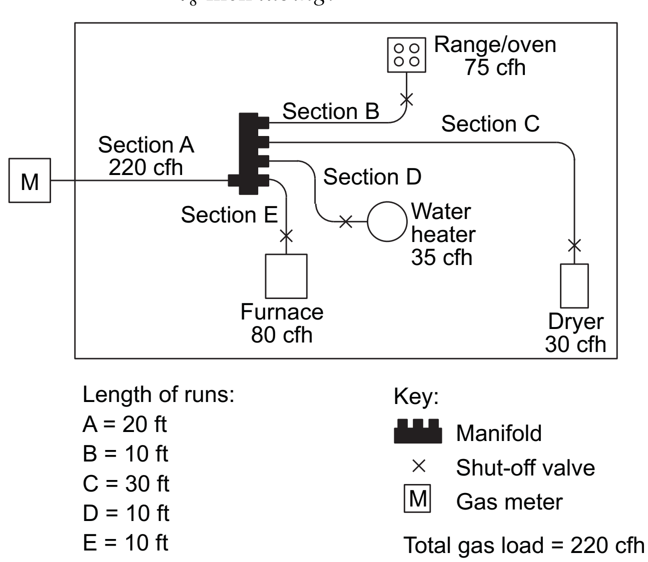



**FIGURE A.7.3**
**PIPING PLAN SHOWING A COPPER TUBING SYSTEM**

(5) Section E

(a) The length of *tubing* from the point of delivery to the *furnace* at the end of Section E is 30 feet (9144 mm), A + E.

(b) Use this branch length to size Section E only.

(c) Using the row marked 30 feet (9144 mm) in Table 402.4(8), Section E, supplying 80 cfh (2.26 $m^3$/hr) for the *furnace* requires $^1/_2$-inch *tubing*.

**A.7.4 Example 4: Modification to existing piping system.** Determine the required CSST size for Section G (retrofit application) of the *piping system* shown in Figure A.7.4, with a designated *pressure drop* of 0.5-inch w.c. (125 Pa) using the branch length method. The gas to be used has 0.60 *specific gravity* and a heating value of 1,000 *Btu*/$ft^3$ (37.5 MJ/$m^3$).

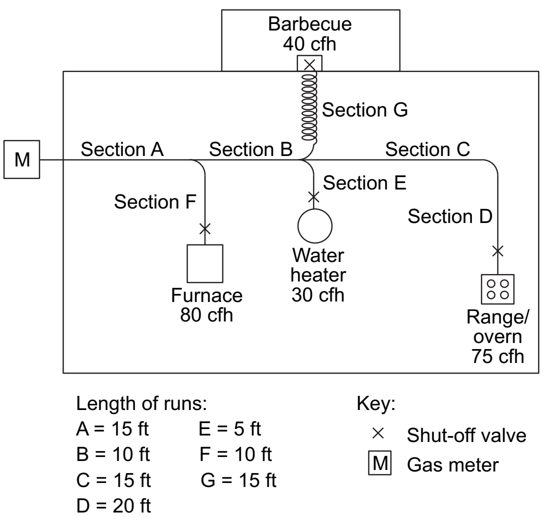



**FIGURE A.7.4**
**PIPING PLAN SHOWING A MODIFICATION TO EXISTING PIPING SYSTEM**

Solution

(1) The length of *pipe* and CSST from the point of delivery to the retrofit *appliance* (barbecue) at the end of Section G is 40 feet (12 192 mm), A + B + G.

(2) Use this branch length to size Section G.

(3) Assume the CSST manufacturer has *tubing* sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23 and 30.

(4) Using the row marked 40 feet (12 192 mm) in Table 402.4(13), Section G, supplying 40 cfh (1.13 $m^3$/hr) for the barbecue requires EHD 18 CSST.

(5) The sizing of Sections A, B, F and E must be checked to ensure adequate gas carrying capacity since an *appliance* has been added to the *piping system* (see A.7.1 for details).

**A.7.5 Example 5: Calculating pressure drops due to temperature changes.** A test *piping system* is installed on a warm autumn afternoon when the temperature is 70°F (21°C). In accordance with local custom, the new *piping system* is subjected to an air *pressure test* at 20 psig (138 kPa). Overnight, the temperature drops and when the inspector shows up first thing in the morning the temperature is 40°F (4°C).

If the volume of the *piping system* is unchanged, then the formula based on Boyle's and Charles' law for determining the new pressure at a reduced temperature is as follows:

$$\frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{P_1}{P_2}$$

where:

$T_1$ = Initial temperature, absolute ($T_1$ + 459)

$T_2$ = Final temperature, absolute ($T_2$ + 459)

$P_1$ = Initial pressure, psia ($P_1$ + 14.7)

$P_2$ = Final pressure, psia ($P_2$ + 14.7)

$$\frac{(70+459)}{(40+459)} = \frac{(20+14.7)}{(P_2+14.7)}$$

$$\frac{529}{499} = \frac{34.7}{(P_2+14.7)}$$

$$(P_2+14.7) \times \frac{529}{499} = 34.7$$

$$(P_2+14.7) = \frac{34.7}{1.060}$$

$$P_2 = 32.7 - 14.7$$

$$P_2 = 18\ psig$$

Therefore, the gauge could be expected to register 18 psig (124 kPa) when the ambient temperature is 40EF (4EC).

**A7.6 Example 6: Pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe method.** Using the layout shown in Figure A.7.1 and $\Delta H$ = *pressure drop*, in w.c. (27.7 in. $H_2O$ = 1 psi), proceed as follows:

(1) Length to A = 20 feet, with 35,000 *Btu*/hr.

For $^1/_2$-inch *pipe*, $\Delta H = {}^{20\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times 0.3$ inch w.c. = 0.06 in. w.c.

(2) Length to B = 15 feet, with 75,000 *Btu*/hr.

For $^3/_4$-inch *pipe*, $\Delta H = {}^{15\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times 0.3$ inch w.c. = 0.045 in. w.c.

(3) Section 1 = 10 feet, with 110,000 *Btu*/hr. Here there is a choice:

For 1 inch *pipe*: $\Delta H = {}^{10\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times 0.2$ inch w.c. = 0.02 in w.c.

For $^3/_4$-inch *pipe*: $\Delta H = {}^{10\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times$ [0.5 inch w.c. + $^{(110{,}000\ Btu/\text{hr}-104{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr})}/_{(147{,}000\ Btu/\text{hr}-104{,}000\ Btu/\text{hr})} \times$ (1.0 inches w.c. - 0.5 inch w.c.)] = 0.1 × 0.57 inch w.c. = 0.06 inch w.c.

*Note that the pressure drop between 104,000 Btu/hr and 147,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated as 110,000 Btu/hr.*

(4) Section 2 = 20 feet, with 135,000 *Btu*/hr. Here there is a choice:

For 1-inch *pipe*: $\Delta H = {}^{20\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times$ [0.2 inch w.c. + $^{(14{,}000\ Btu/\text{hr})}/_{(27{,}000\ Btu/\text{hr})} \times 0.1$ inch w.c.)] = 0.05 inch w.c.)]

For $^3/_4$-inch *pipe*: $\Delta H = {}^{20\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times 1.0$ inch w.c. = 0.2 inch w.c.)

*Note that the pressure drop between 121,000 Btu/hr and 148,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated as 135,000 Btu/hr, but interpolation for the ¾-inch pipe (trivial for 104,000 Btu/hr to 147,000 Btu/hr) was not used.*

(5) Section 3 = 30 feet, with 245,000 *Btu*/hr. Here there is a choice:

For 1-inch *pipe*: $\Delta H = {}^{30\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times 1.0$ inches w.c. = 0.3 inch w.c.

For $1^1/_4$-inch *pipe*: $\Delta H = {}^{30\text{ feet}}/_{100\text{ feet}} \times 0.2$ inch w.c. = 0.06 inch w.c.

*Note that interpolation for these options is ignored since the table values are close to the 245,000 Btu/hr carried by that section.*

(6) The total *pressure drop* is the sum of the section approaching A, Sections 1 and 3, or either of the following, depending on whether an absolute minimum is needed or the larger drop can be accommodated.

Minimum *pressure drop* to farthest *appliance*:

$\Delta H$ = 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.02 inch w.c. + 0.06 inch w.c. = 0.14 inch w.c.

Larger *pressure drop* to the farthest *appliance*:

$\Delta H$ = 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.06 inch w.c. + 0.3 inch w.c. = 0.42 inch w.c.

*Notice that Section 2 and the run to B do not enter into this calculation, provided that the appliances have similar input pressure requirements.*

For SI units: 1 *Btu*/hr = 0.293 W, 1 *cubic foot* = 0.028 $m^3$, 1 foot = 0.305 m, 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa.

# APPENDIX B

# SIZING OF VENTING SYSTEMS SERVING APPLIANCES EQUIPPED WITH DRAFT HOODS, CATEGORY I APPLIANCES, AND APPLIANCES LISTED FOR USE WITH TYPE B VENTS

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the *code*. This appendix is an excerpt from the 2009 *International Fuel Gas Code,* coordinated with the section numbering of the *International Residential Code.*)

## EXAMPLES USING SINGLE APPLIANCE VENTING TABLES

**Example 1: Single draft-hood-equipped appliance.**

An installer has a 120,000 British thermal unit (*Btu*) per hour input appliance with a 5-inch-diameter *draft hood* outlet that needs to be vented into a 10-foot-high Type B *vent* system. What size vent should be used assuming (a) a 5-foot lateral single-wall metal *vent connector* is used with two 90-degree elbows, or (b) a 5-foot lateral single-wall metal *vent connector* is used with three 90-degree elbows in the vent system?

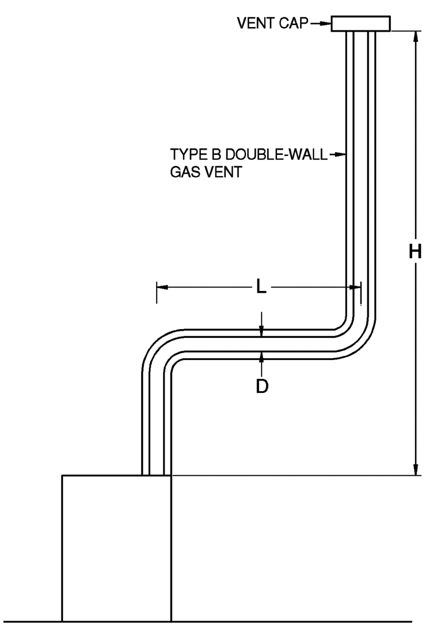
**Solution:**

Table G2428.2(2) should be used to solve this problem, because single-wall metal *vent connectors* are being used with a Type B *vent*.

(a) Read down the first column in Table G2428.2(2) until the row associated with a 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral is found. Read across this row until a *vent* capacity greater than 120,000 *Btu* per hour is located in the shaded columns labeled "NAT Max" for *draft*-hood-equipped appliances. In this case, a 5-inch-diameter *vent* has a capacity of 122,000 *Btu* per hour and may be used for this application.

(b) If three 90-degree elbows are used in the vent system, then the maximum vent capacity listed in the tables must be reduced by 10 percent (see Section G2428.2.3 for single appliance vents). This implies that the 5-inch-diameter vent has an adjusted capacity of only 110,000 *Btu* per hour. In this case, the vent system must be increased to 6 inches in diameter (see calculations below).

122,000 (0.90) = 110,000 for 5-inch vent
From Table G2428.2(2), Select 6-inch vent
186,000 (0.90) = 167,000; This is greater than the required 120,000. Therefore, use a 6-inch vent and connector where three elbows are used.

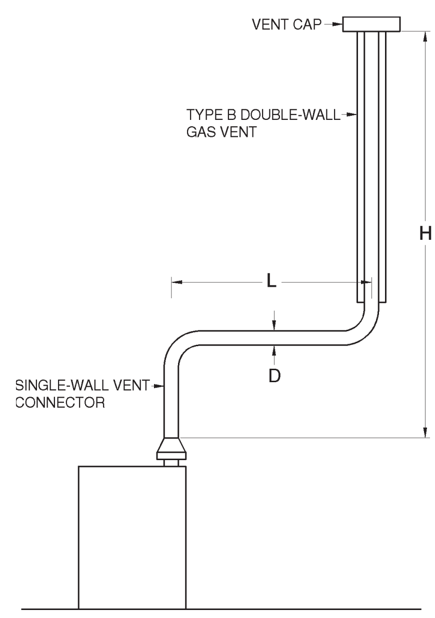



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Table G2428.2(1) is used when sizing Type B double-wall gas vent connected directly to the appliance.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-1**
**TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH A TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931W.

Table G2428.2(2) is used when sizing a single-wall metal vent connector attached to a Type B double-wall gas vent.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-2**
**TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH A SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR**

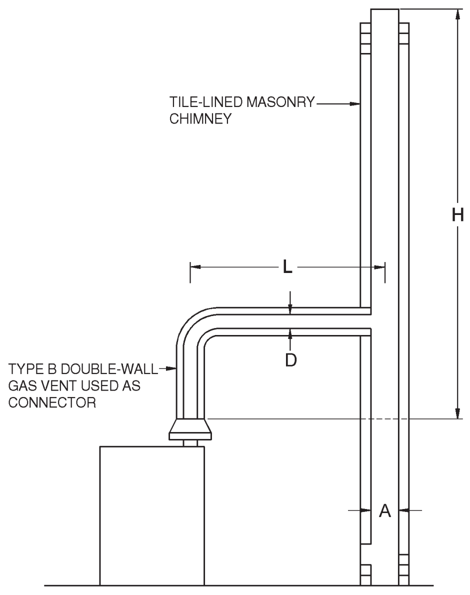
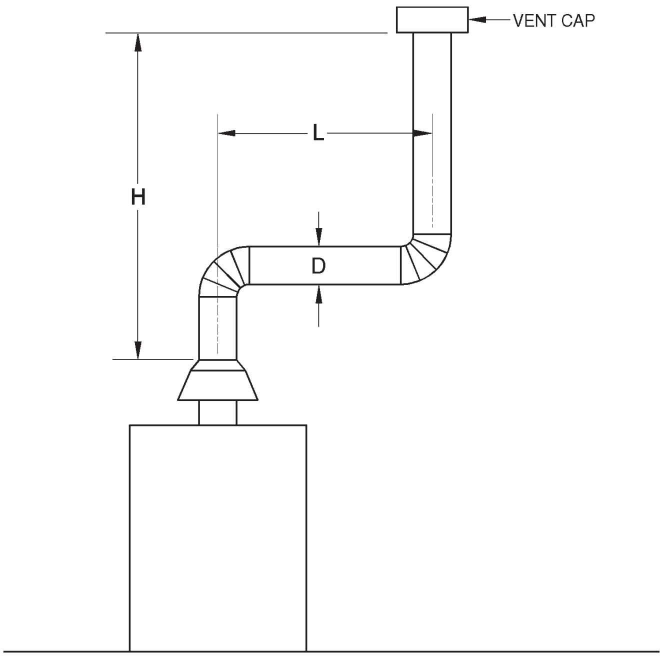



Table 504.2(3) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used when sizing a Type B double-wall gas vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-3**
**VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE WITH A MASONRY CHIMNEY OF TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR**




Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal vent serving a single draft-hood-equipped appliance [see Table 504.2(5) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*].

**FIGURE B-5**
**ASBESTOS CEMENT TYPE B OR SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCE**

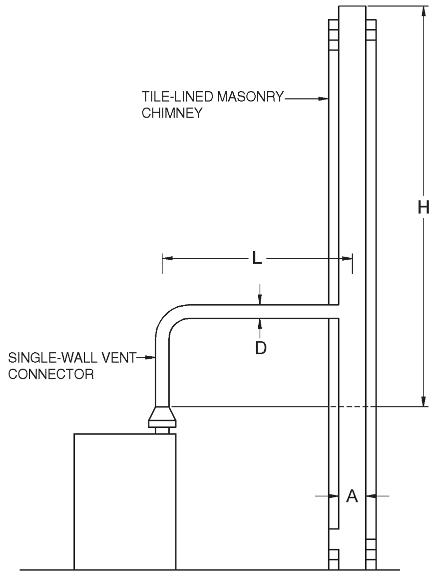



Table 504.2(4) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* is used when sizing a single-wall vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: The appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-4**
**VENT SYSTEM SERVING A SINGLE APPLIANCE USING A MASONRY CHIMNEY AND A SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTOR**

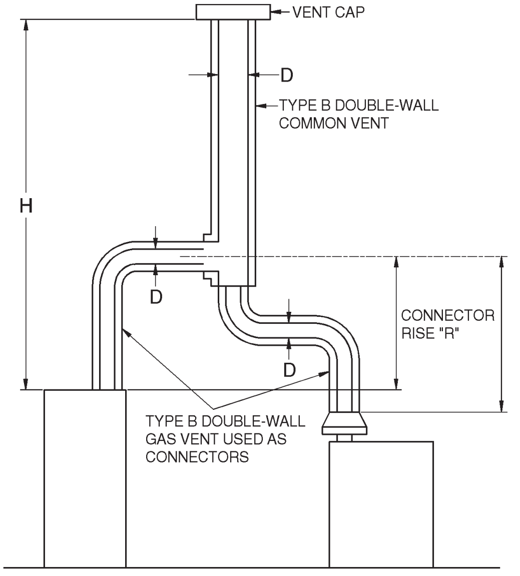



Table G2428.3(1) is used when sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-6**
**VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR**

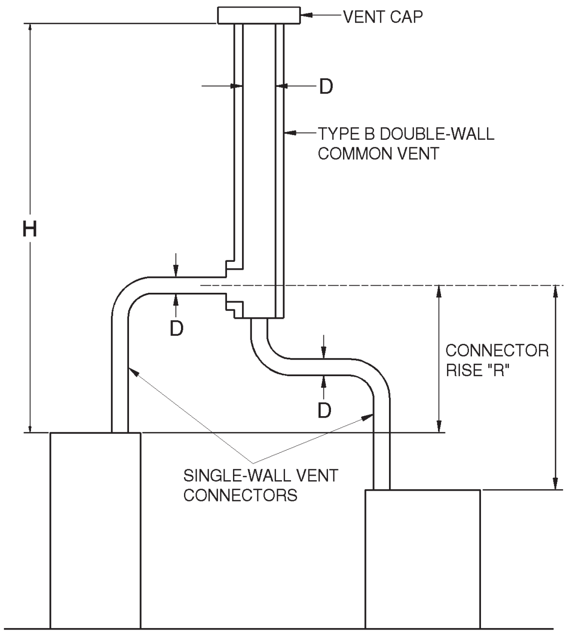



Table G2428.3(2) is used when sizing single-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-7**
**VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT AND SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTORS**

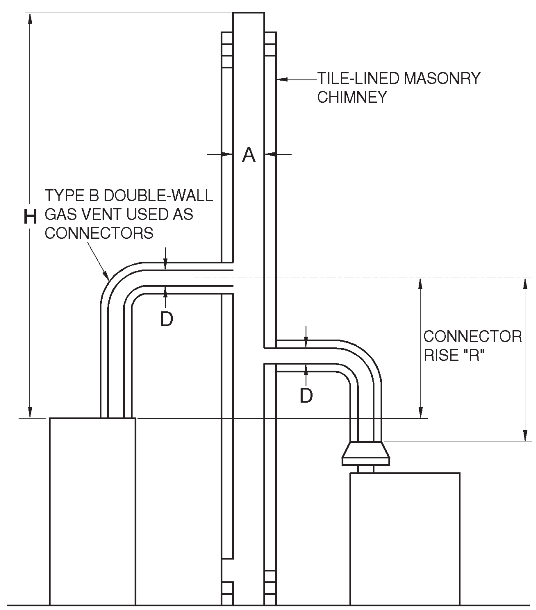



Table G2428.3(3) is used when sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-8**
**MASONRY CHIMNEY SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL VENT CONNECTOR**

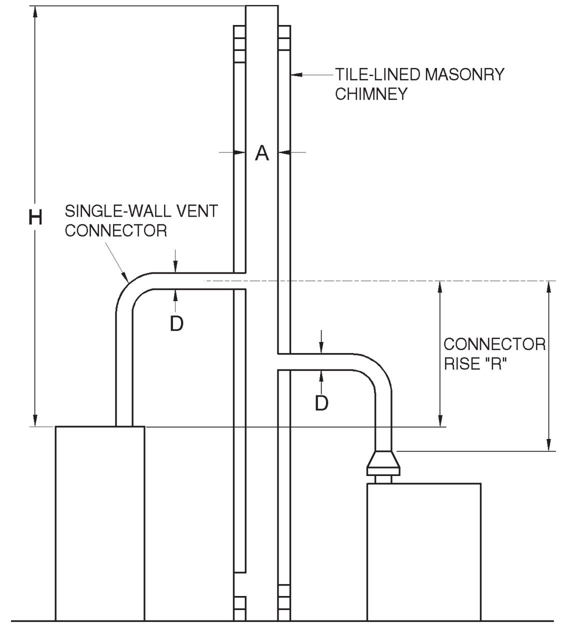
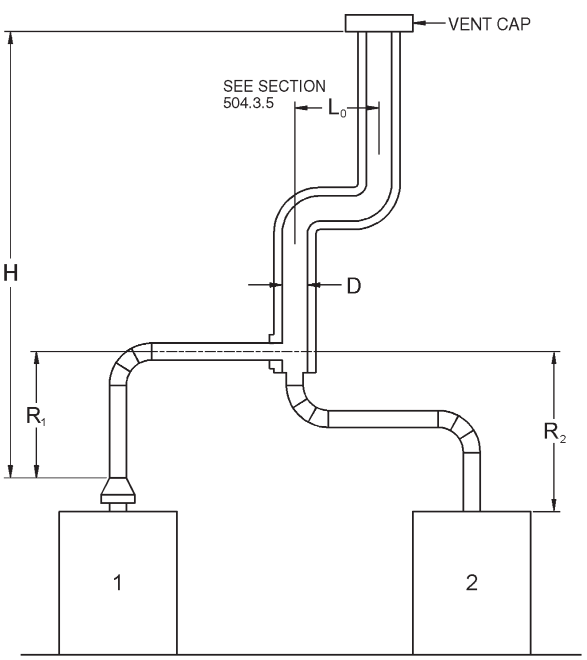



Table G2428.3(4) is used when sizing single-wall metal vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Note: "A" is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.

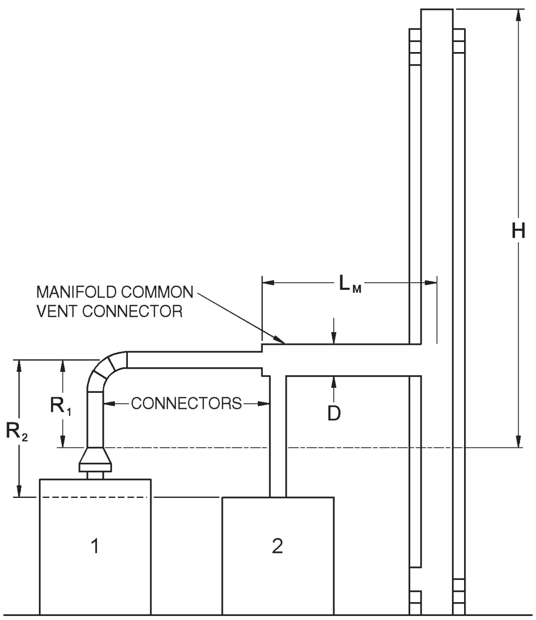
Note: Each appliance may be either Category I draft hood equipped or fan-assisted type.

**FIGURE B-9**
**MASONRY CHIMNEY SERVING TWO OR MORE APPLIANCES WITH SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT CONNECTORS**




Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal pipe vent serving two or more draft-hood-equipped appliances [see Table 504.3(5) of the *International Fuel Gas Code*].

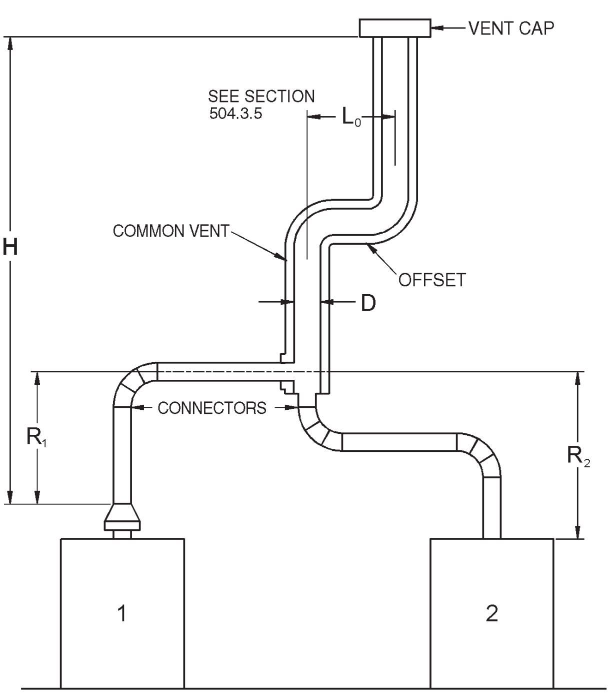
**FIGURE B-10**
**ASBESTOS CEMENT TYPE B OR SINGLE-WALL METAL VENT SYSTEM SERVING TWO OR MORE DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCES**




Example: Manifolded Common Vent Connector $L_M$ shall be no greater than 18 times the common vent connector manifold inside diameter; i.e., a 4-inch (102 mm) inside diameter common vent connector manifold shall not exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) in length (see Section G2428.3.4).

Note: This is an illustration of a typical manifolded vent connector. Different appliance, vent connector, or common vent types are possible. Consult Section G2426.3.

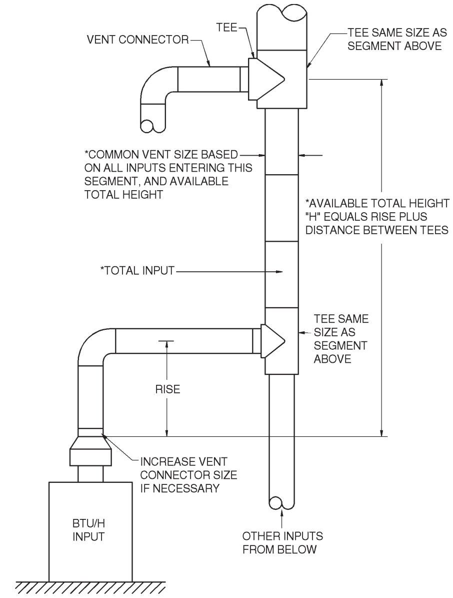
**FIGURE B-11**
**USE OF MANIFOLD COMMON VENT CONNECTOR**




Example: Offset Common Vent

Note: This is an illustration of a typical offset vent. Different appliance, vent connector, or vent types are possible. Consult Sections G2428.2 and G2428.3.

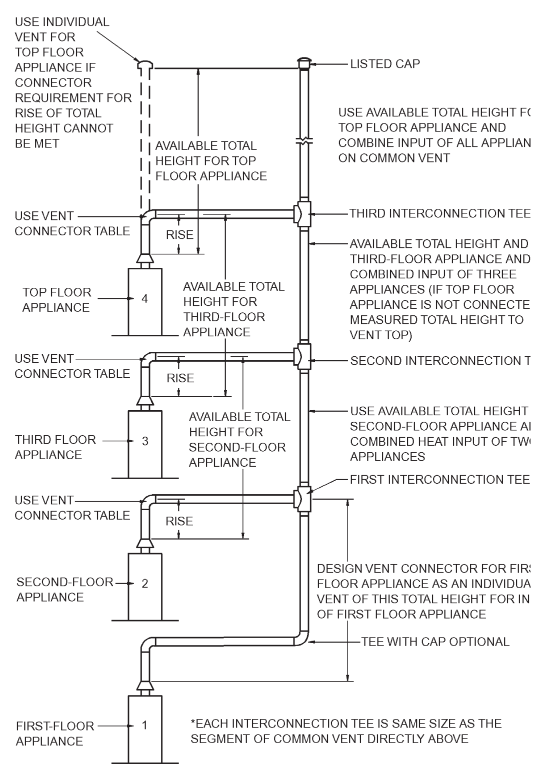
**FIGURE B-12**
**USE OF OFFSET COMMON VENT**




Vent connector size depends on:
- Combined inputs
- Rise
- Available total height "*H*"
- Table G2428.3(1) connectors

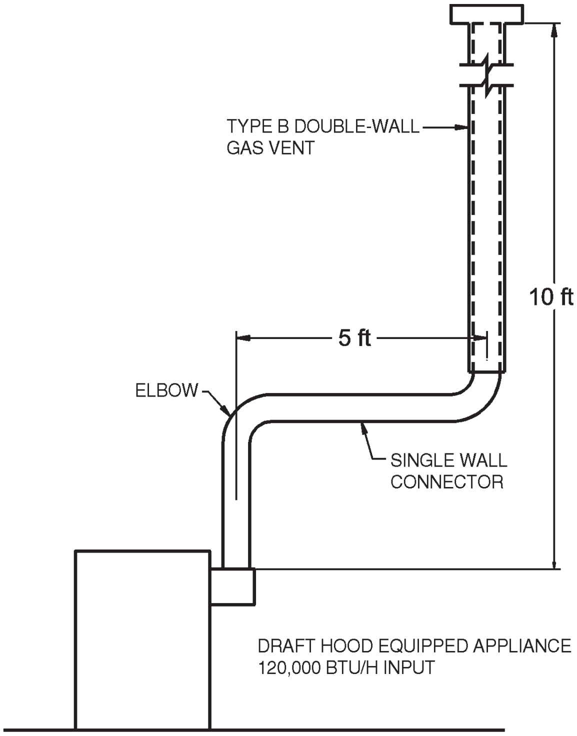
Common vent size depends on:
- Input
- Available total height "*H*"
- Table G2428.3(1) common vent

**FIGURE B-13**
**MULTISTORY GAS VENT DESIGN PROCEDURE FOR EACH SEGMENT OF SYSTEM**



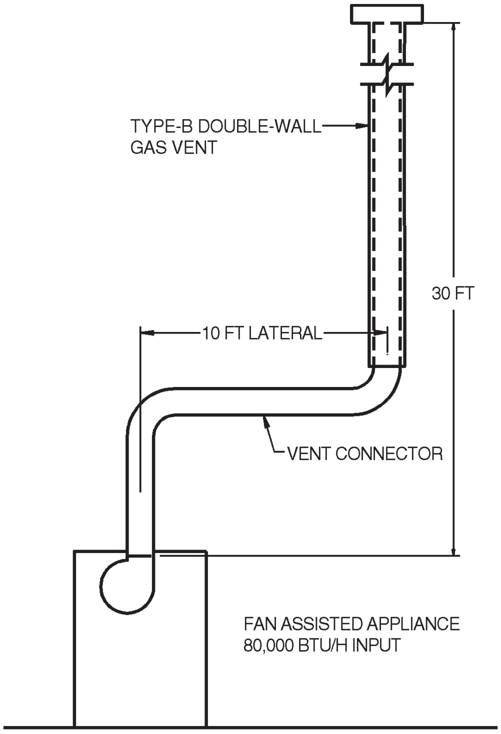

Principles of design of multistory vents using vent connector and common vent design tables (see Sections G2428.3.11 through G2428.3.13).

**FIGURE B-14**
**MULTISTORY VENT SYSTEMS**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**FIGURE B-15 (EXAMPLE 1)**
**SINGLE DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCE**




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**FIGURE B-16 (EXAMPLE 2)**
**SINGLE FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCE**

**Example 2: Single fan-assisted appliance.**

An installer has an 80,000 *Btu* per hour input fan-assisted appliance that must be installed using 10 feet of lateral connector attached to a 30-foot-high Type B *vent*. Two 90-degree elbows are needed for the installation. Can a single-wall metal *vent connector* be used for this application?

**Solution:**

Table G2428.2(2) refers to the use of single-wall metal *vent connectors* with Type B vent. In the first column find the row associated with a 30-foot height and a 10-foot lateral. Read across this row, looking at the FAN Min and FAN Max columns, to find that a 3-inch-diameter single-wall metal *vent connector* is not recommended. Moving to the next larger size single wall connector (4 inches), note that a 4-inch-diameter single-wall metal connector has a recommended minimum *vent* capacity of 91,000 *Btu* per hour and a recommended maximum *vent* capacity of 144,000 *Btu* per hour. The 80,000 *Btu* per hour fan-assisted appliance is outside this range, so the conclusion is that a single-wall metal *vent connector* cannot be used to *vent* this appliance using 10 feet of lateral for the connector.

However, if the 80,000 *Btu* per hour input appliance could be moved to within 5 feet of the vertical vent, then a 4-inch single-wall metal connector could be used to vent the appliance. Table G2428.2(2) shows the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4-inch vent with 5 feet of lateral to be between 72,000 *Btu* per hour and 157,000 *Btu* per hour.

If the appliance cannot be moved closer to the vertical vent, then Type B vent could be used as the connector material. In this case, Table G2428.2(1) shows that for a 30-foot-high vent with 10 feet of lateral, the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4-inch-diameter vent attached to a fan-assisted appliance is between 37,000 *Btu* per hour and 150,000 *Btu* per hour.

**Example 3: Interpolating between table values.**

An installer has an 80,000 *Btu* per hour input appliance with a 4-inch-diameter *draft hood* outlet that needs to be vented into a 12-foot-high Type B vent. The *vent connector* has a 5-foot lateral length and is also Type B. Can this appliance be vented using a 4-inch-diameter vent?

**Solution:**

Table G2428.2(1) is used in the case of an all Type B *vent* system. However, since there is no entry in Table G2428.2(1) for a height of 12 feet, interpolation must be used. Read down the 4-inch diameter NAT Max column to the row associated with 10-foot height and 5-foot lateral to find the capacity value of 77,000 *Btu* per hour. Read further down to the 15-foot height, 5-foot lateral row to find the capacity value of 87,000 *Btu* per hour. The difference between the 15-foot height capacity value and the 10-foot height capacity value is 10,000 *Btu* per hour. The capacity for a vent system with a 12-foot height is equal to the capacity for a 10-foot height plus $^2/_5$ of the difference between the 10-foot and 15-foot height values, or 77,000 + $^2/_5$ (10,000) = 81,000 *Btu* per hour. Therefore, a 4-inch-diameter *vent* may be used in the installation.

## EXAMPLES USING COMMON VENTING TABLES

**Example 4: Common venting two draft-hood-equipped appliances.**

A 35,000 *Btu* per hour *water heater* is to be common vented with a 150,000 *Btu* per hour *furnace* using a common *vent* with a total height of 30 feet. The connector rise is 2 feet for the *water heater* with a horizontal length of 4 feet. The connector rise for the *furnace* is 3 feet with a horizontal length of 8 feet. Assume single-wall metal connectors will be used with Type B *vent*. What size connectors and combined vent should be used in this installation?

**Solution:**

Table G2428.3(2) should be used to size single-wall metal *vent connectors* attached to Type B vertical vents. In the *vent connector* capacity portion of Table G2428.3(2), find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height. For a 2-foot rise on the *vent connector* for the *water heater*, read the shaded columns for *draft*-hood-equipped appliances to find that a 3-inch-diameter *vent connector* has a capacity of 37,000 *Btu* per hour. Therefore, a 3-inch single-wall metal *vent connector* may be used with the *water heater*. For a *draft*-hood-equipped *furnace* with a 3-foot rise, read across the appropriate row to find that a 5-inch-diameter *vent connector* has a maximum capacity of 120,000 *Btu* per hour (which is too small for the *furnace*) and a 6-inch-diameter *vent connector* has a maximum vent capacity of 172,000 *Btu* per hour. Therefore, a 6-inch-diameter *vent connector* should be used with the 150,000 *Btu* per hour *furnace*. Since both *vent connector* horizontal lengths are less than the maximum lengths listed in Section G2428.3.2, the table values may be used without adjustments.

In the common vent capacity portion of Table G2428.3(2), find the row associated with a 30-foot vent height and read over to the NAT + NAT portion of the 6-inch-diameter column to find a maximum combined capacity of 257,000 *Btu* per hour. Since the two appliances total only 185,000 *Btu* per hour, a 6-inch common vent may be used.

**Example 5a: Common venting a draft-hood-equipped water heater with a fan-assisted furnace into a Type B vent.**

In this case, a 35,000 *Btu* per hour input *draft*-hood-equipped *water heater* with a 4-inch-diameter *draft hood* outlet, 2 feet of connector rise, and 4 feet of horizontal length is to be common vented with a 100,000 *Btu* per hour fan-assisted *furnace* with a 4-inch-diameter *flue collar*, 3 feet of connector rise, and 6 feet of horizontal length. The common vent consists of a 30-foot height of Type B vent. What are the recommended vent diameters for each connector and the common vent? The installer would like to use a single-wall metal *vent connector.*

**Solution:**

*Water Heater Vent Connector* Diameter. Since the *water heater vent connector* horizontal length of 4 feet is less than the maximum value listed in Section G2428.3.2, the venting table values may be used without adjustments. Using the *Vent Connector* Capacity portion of Table G2428.3(2), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (R) row to the first *Btu* per hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the *water heater* input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch *vent connector* has a maximum input rating of 37,000 *Btu* per hour. Although this is greater than the *water heater* input rating, a 3-inch *vent connector* is prohibited by Section G2428.3.17. A 4-

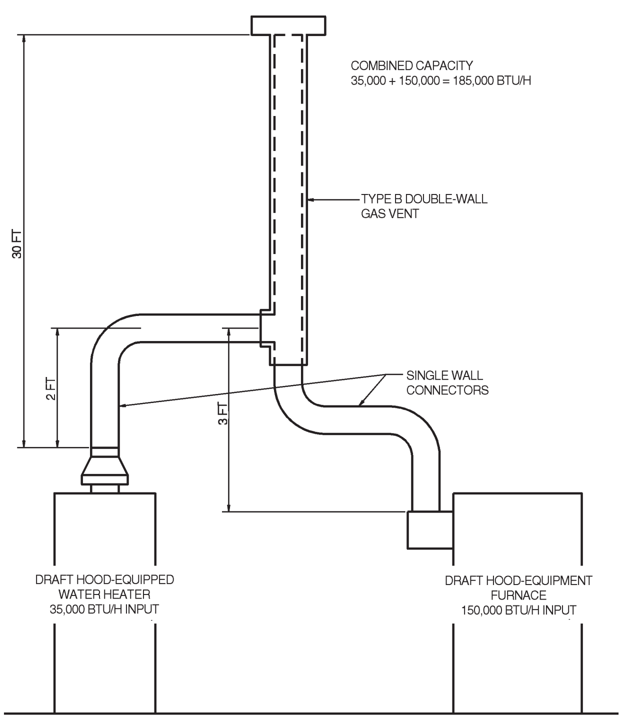



**FIGURE B-17 (EXAMPLE 4)
COMMON VENTING TWO DRAFT-HOOD-EQUIPPED APPLIANCES**

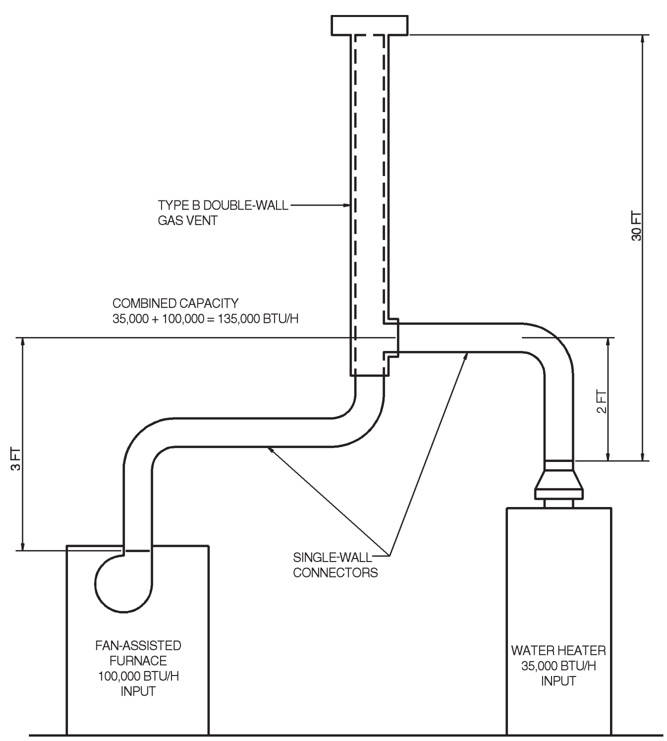



**FIGURE B-18 (EXAMPLE 5A)
COMMON VENTING A DRAFT HOOD WITH A FAN-ASSISTED FURNACE INTO A TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT**

inch *vent connector* has a maximum input rating of 67,000 *Btu* per hour and is equal to the *draft hood* outlet diameter. A 4-inch *vent connector* is selected. Since the *water heater* is equipped with a *draft hood*, there are no minimum input rating restrictions.

*Furnace Vent Connector* Diameter. Using the *Vent Connector* Capacity portion of Table G2428.3(2), read down the Total *Vent* Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across the 3-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row. Since the *furnace* has a fan-assisted *combustion* system, find the first FAN Max column with a *Btu* per hour rating greater than the *furnace* input rating. The 4-inch *vent connector* has a maximum input rating of 119,000 *Btu* per hour and a minimum input rating of 85,000 *Btu* per hour. The 100,000 *Btu* per hour *furnace* in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate. Since the *furnace vent connector* horizontal length of 6 feet does not exceed the maximum value listed in Section G2428.3.2, the venting table values may be used without adjustment. If the *furnace* had an input rating of 80,000 *Btu* per hour, then a Type B *vent connector* [see Table G2428.3(1)] would be needed in order to meet the minimum capacity limit.

Common Vent Diameter. The total input to the common *vent* is 135,000 *Btu* per hour. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table G2428.3(2), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN + NAT column that has a *Btu* per hour rating equal to or greater than 135,000 *Btu* per hour. The 4-inch common vent has a capacity of 132,000 *Btu* per hour and the 5-inch common vent has a capacity of 202,000 *Btu* per hour. Therefore, the 5-inch common vent should be used in this example.

Summary. In this example, the installer may use a 4-inch-diameter, single-wall metal *vent connector* for the *water heater* and a 4-inch-diameter, single-wall metal *vent connector* for the *furnace*. The common vent should be a 5-inch-diameter Type B vent.

**Example 5b: Common venting into a masonry chimney.**

In this case, the *water heater* and fan-assisted *furnace* of Example 5a are to be common vented into a clay tile-lined *masonry chimney* with a 30-foot height. The *chimney* is not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. The internal dimensions of the clay tile liner are nominally 8 inches by 12 inches. Assuming the same *vent connector* heights, laterals, and materials found in Example 5a, what are the recommended *vent connector* diameters, and is this an acceptable installation?

**Solution:**

Table G2428.3(4) is used to size common venting installations involving single-wall connectors into *masonry chimneys*.

*Water Heater Vent Connector* Diameter. Using Table G2428.3(4), *Vent Connector* Capacity, read down the Total *Vent* Height (*H*) column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row to the first *Btu* per hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the *water heater* input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch *vent connector* has a maximum input of only 31,000 *Btu* per hour while a 4-inch *vent connector* has a maximum input of 57,000 *Btu* per hour. A 4-inch *vent connector* must therefore be used.

*Furnace Vent Connector* Diameter. Using the *Vent Connector* Capacity portion of Table G2428.3(4), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 feet and across the 3-foot Connector Rise (*R*) row. Since the *furnace* has a fan-assisted *combustion* system, find the first FAN Max column with a *Btu* per hour rating greater than the *furnace* input rating. The 4-inch *vent connector* has a maximum input rating of 127,000 *Btu* per hour and a minimum input rating of 95,000 *Btu* per hour. The 100,000 *Btu* per hour *furnace* in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

*Masonry Chimney*. From Table B-1, the equivalent area for a nominal liner size of 8 inches by 12 inches is 63.6 square inches. Using Table G2428.3(4), Common Vent Capacity, read down the FAN + NAT column under the Minimum Internal Area of *Chimney* value of 63 to the row for 30-foot height to find a capacity value of 739,000 *Btu* per hour. The combined input rating of the *furnace* and *water heater*, 135,000 *Btu* per hour, is less than the table value, so this is an acceptable installation.

Section G2428.3.13 requires the common vent area to be no greater than seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized *vent* area, *flue collar* area, or *draft hood* outlet area. Both appliances in this installation have 4-inch-diameter outlets. From Table B-1, the equivalent area for an inside diameter of 4 inches is 12.2 square inches. Seven times 12.2 equals 85.4, which is greater than 63.6, so this configuration is acceptable.

**Example 5c: Common venting into an exterior masonry chimney.**

In this case, the *water heater* and fan-assisted *furnace* of Examples 5a and 5b are to be common vented into an exterior *masonry chimney*. The *chimney* height, clay tile liner dimensions, and *vent connector* heights and laterals are the same as in Example 5b. This system is being installed in Charlotte, North Carolina. Does this exterior *masonry chimney* need to be relined? If so, what corrugated metallic liner size is recommended? What *vent connector* diameters are recommended?

**Solution:**

According to Section 504.3.20 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*, Type B *vent connectors* are required to be used with *exterior masonry chimneys*. Use Table 504.3(7) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* to size FAN+NAT common venting installations involving Type-B double wall connectors into *exterior masonry chimneys*.

The local 99-percent winter design temperature needed to use Table 504.3(7) can be found in the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals.* For Charlotte, North Carolina, this design temperature is 19°F.

*Chimney* Liner Requirement. As in Example 5b, use the 63 square inch Internal Area columns for this size clay tile liner. Read down the 63 square inch column of Table 504.3(7a) of the *International Fuel Gas Code* to the 30-foot height row to find that the combined appliance maximum input is 747,000 *Btu* per hour. The combined input rating of the appliances in this installation, 135,000 *Btu* per hour, is less than the maximum value, so this criterion is satisfied. Table 504.3(7b), at a 19°F design temperature, and at the same vent height and internal area used above, shows that the minimum allowable input rating of a space-heating appliance is 470,000 *Btu* per hour. The *furnace* input rating of 100,000 *Btu* per hour is less than this minimum value. So this criterion is not satisfied, and an alternative venting design needs to be used, such as a Type B vent shown in Example 5a or a listed *chimney* liner system shown in the remainder of the example.

According to Section G2428.3.15, Table G2428.3(1) or G2428.3(2) is used for sizing corrugated metallic liners in *masonry chimneys*, with the maximum common vent capacities reduced by 20 percent. This example will be continued assuming Type B *vent connectors*.

*Water Heater Vent Connector* Diameter. Using Table G2428.3(1), *Vent Connector* Capacity, read down the Total *Vent* Height ($H$) column to 30 feet, and read across the 2-foot Connector Rise ($R$) row to the first *Btu*/h rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the *water heater* input rating. The table shows that a 3-inch *vent connector* has a maximum capacity of 39,000 *Btu*/h. Although this rating is greater than the *water heater* input rating, a 3-inch *vent connector* is prohibited by Section G2428.3.17. A 4-inch *vent connector* has a maximum input rating of 70,000 *Btu*/h and is equal to the *draft hood* outlet diameter. A 4-inch *vent connector* is selected.

*Furnace Vent Connector* Diameter. Using Table G2428.3(1), *Vent Connector* Capacity, read down the *Vent* Height ($H$) column to 30 feet, and read across the 3-foot Connector Rise ($R$) row to the first *Btu* per hour rating in the FAN Max column that is equal to or greater than the *furnace* input rating. The 100,000 *Btu* per hour *furnace* in this example falls within this range, so a 4-inch connector is adequate.

*Chimney* Liner Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 *Btu* per hour. Using the Common Vent Capacity Portion of Table G2428.3(1), read down the Vent Height ($H$) column to 30 feet and across this row to find the smallest *vent* diameter in the FAN+NAT column that has a *Btu* per hour rating greater than 135,000 *Btu* per hour. The 4-inch common *vent* has a capacity of 138,000 *Btu* per hour. Reducing the maximum capacity by 20 percent (Section G2428.3.15) results in a maximum capacity for a 4-inch corrugated liner of 110,000 *Btu* per hour, less than the total input of 135,000 *Btu* per hour. So a larger liner is needed. The 5-inch common vent capacity listed in Table G2428.3(1) is 210,000 *Btu* per hour, and after reducing by 20 percent is 168,000 *Btu* per hour. Therefore, a 5-inch corrugated metal liner should be used in this example.

Single-Wall Connectors. Once it has been established that relining the *chimney* is necessary, Type B double-wall *vent connectors* are not specifically required. This example could be redone using Table G2428.3(2) for single-wall *vent connectors*. For this case, the *vent connector* and liner diameters would be the same as found above with Type B double-wall connectors.

**TABLE B-1**
**MASONRY CHIMNEY LINER DIMENSIONS WITH CIRCULAR EQUIVALENTS[a]**

| NOMINAL LINER SIZE (inches) | INSIDE DIMENSIONS OF LINER (inches) | INSIDE DIAMETER OR EQUIVALENT DIAMETER (inches) | EQUIVALENT AREA (square inches) |
|---|---|---|---|
| $4 \times 8$ | $2^{1}/_{2} \times 6^{1}/_{2}$ | 4 | 12.2 |
| | | 5 | 19.6 |
| | | 6 | 28.3 |
| | | 7 | 38.3 |
| $8 \times 8$ | $6^{3}/_{4} \times 6^{3}/_{4}$ | 7.4 | 42.7 |
| | | 8 | 50.3 |
| $8 \times 12$ | $6^{1}/_{2} \times 10^{1}/_{2}$ | 9 | 63.6 |
| | | 10 | 78.5 |
| $12 \times 12$ | $9^{3}/_{4} \times 9^{3}/_{4}$ | 10.4 | 83.3 |
| | | 11 | 95 |
| $12 \times 16$ | $9^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{1}/_{2}$ | 11.8 | 107.5 |
| | | 12 | 113.0 |
| | | 14 | 153.9 |
| $16 \times 16$ | $13^{1}/_{4} \times 13^{1}/_{4}$ | 14.5 | 162.9 |
| | | 15 | 176.7 |
| $16 \times 20$ | $13 \times 17$ | 16.2 | 206.1 |
| | | 18 | 254.4 |
| $20 \times 20$ | $16^{3}/_{4} \times 16^{3}/_{4}$ | 18.2 | 260.2 |
| | | 20 | 314.1 |
| $20 \times 24$ | $16^{1}/_{2} \times 20^{1}/_{2}$ | 20.1 | 314.2 |
| | | 22 | 380.1 |
| $24 \times 24$ | $20^{1}/_{4} \times 20^{1}/_{4}$ | 22.1 | 380.1 |
| | | 24 | 452.3 |
| $24 \times 28$ | $20^{1}/_{4} \times 20^{1}/_{4}$ | 24.1 | 456.2 |
| $28 \times 28$ | $24^{1}/_{4} \times 24^{1}/_{4}$ | 26.4 | 543.3 |
| | | 27 | 572.5 |
| $30 \times 30$ | $25^{1}/_{2} \times 25^{1}/_{2}$ | 27.9 | 607 |
| | | 30 | 706.8 |
| $30 \times 36$ | $25^{1}/_{2} \times 31^{1}/_{2}$ | 30.9 | 749.9 |
| | | 33 | 855.3 |
| $36 \times 36$ | $31^{1}/_{2} \times 31^{1}/_{2}$ | 34.4 | 929.4 |
| | | 36 | 1017.9 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$.

a. Where liner sizes differ dimensionally from those shown in Table B-1, equivalent diameters may be determined from published tables for square and rectangular ducts of equivalent carrying capacity or by other engineering methods.

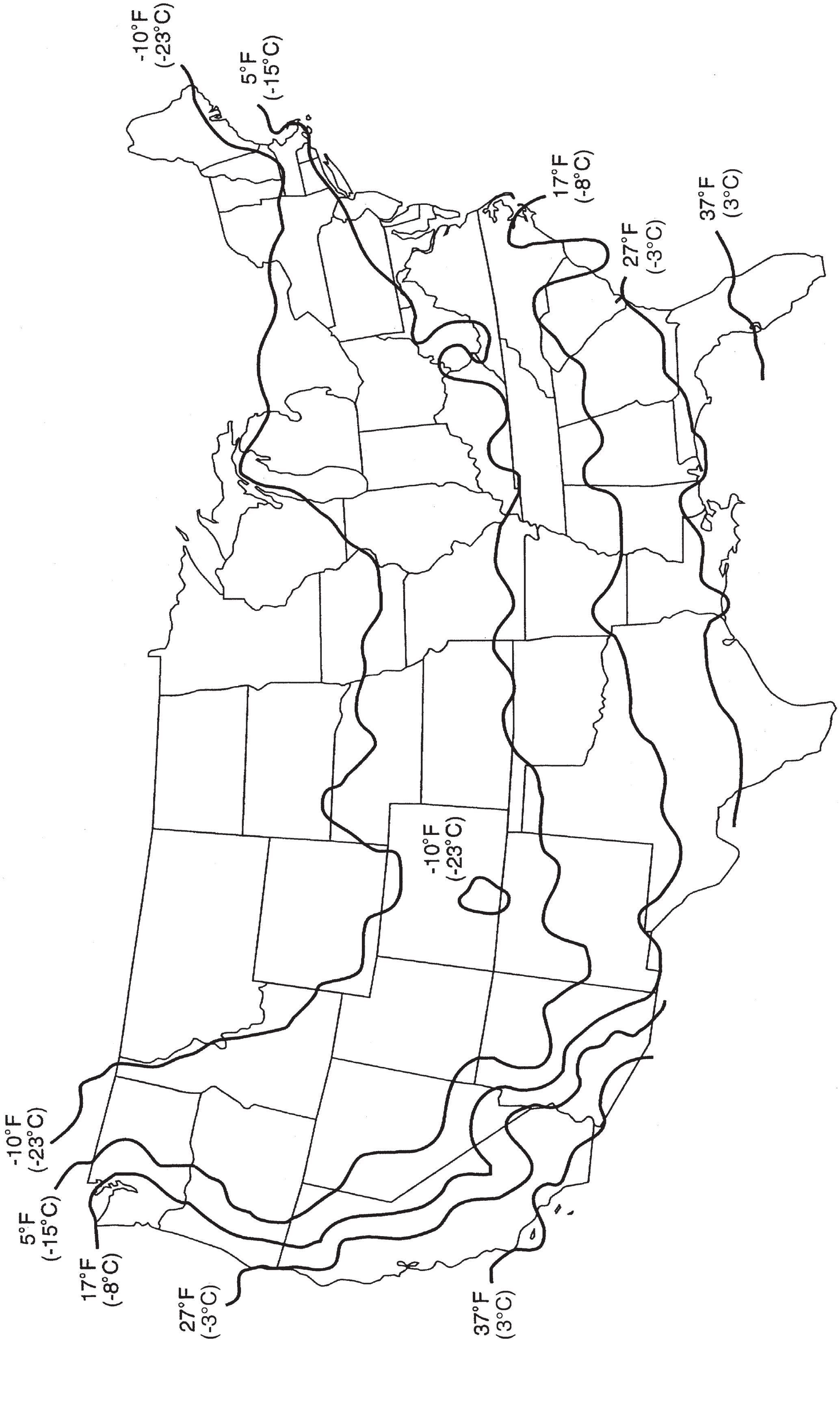
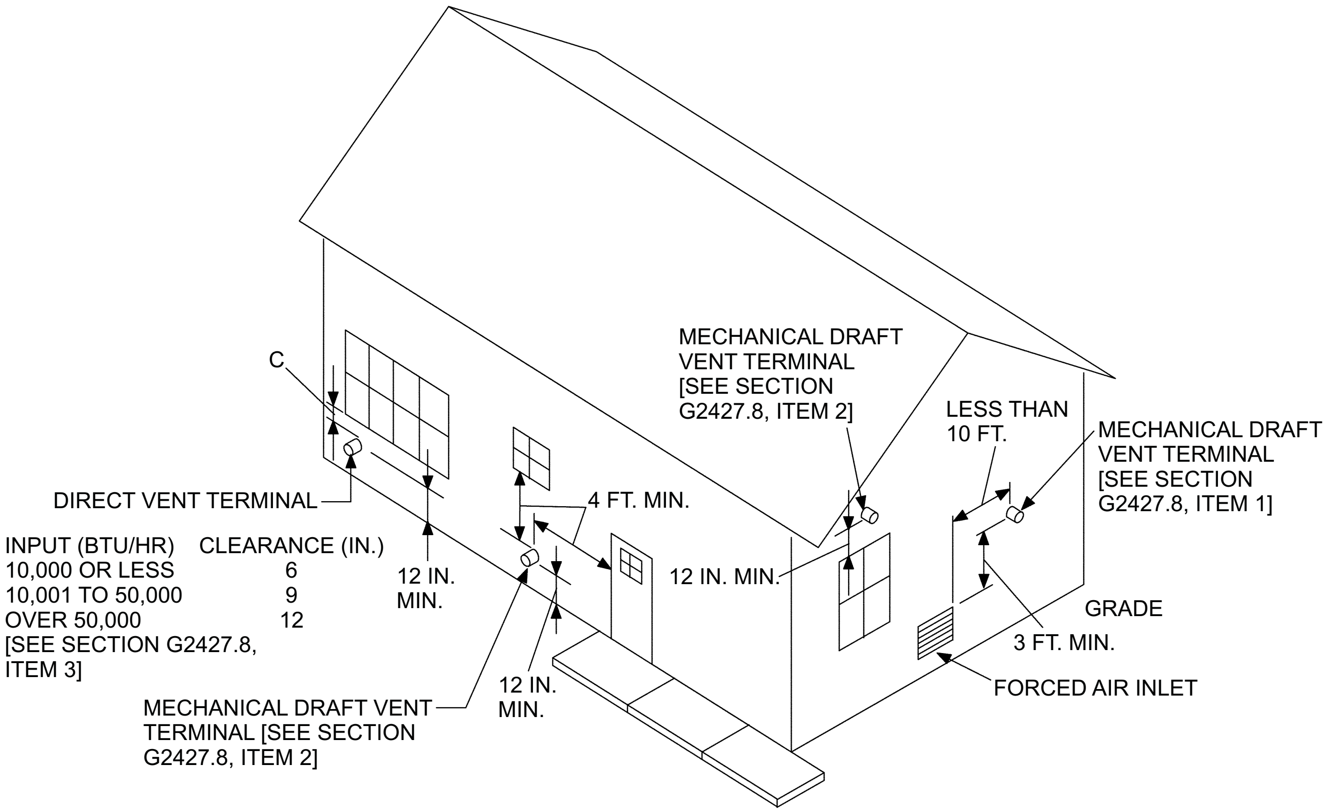

-10°F
(-23°C)
5°F
(-15°C)
17°F
(-8°C)
27°F
(-3°C)
37°F
(3°C)
-10°F
(-23°C)
-10°F
(-23°C)
5°F
(-15°C)
17°F
(-8°C)
27°F
(-3°C)
37°F
(3°C)

**FIGURE B-19**

## APPENDIX C

# EXIT TERMINALS OF MECHANICAL DRAFT AND DIRECT-VENT VENTING SYSTEMS

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code. This appendix is an excerpt from the 2009 *International Fuel Gas Code,* coordinated with the section numbering of the *International Residential Code.*)




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

**FIGURE C-1**
**EXIT TERMINALS OF MECHANICAL DRAFT AND DIRECT-VENT VENTING SYSTEMS**

## APPENDIX D

# RECOMMENDED PROCEDURE FOR SAFETY INSPECTION OF AN EXISTING APPLIANCE INSTALLATION

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the *code*. This appendix is an excerpt from the 2009 *International Fuel Gas Code,* coordinated with the section numbering of the *International Residential Code.*)

The following procedure is intended as a guide to aid in determining that an *appliance* is properly installed and is in a safe condition for continuing use.

This procedure is intended for *central furnace* and boiler installations and may not be applicable to all installations.

(a) This procedure should be performed prior to any attempt at modification of the *appliance* or of the installation.

(b) If it is determined that there is a condition that could result in unsafe operation, shut off the *appliance* and advise the owner of the unsafe condition.

The following steps should be followed in making the safety inspection:

1. Conduct a check for gas leakage. (See Section G2417.6.)
2. Visually inspect the *venting system* for proper size and horizontal pitch and determine there is no blockage or restriction, leakage, corrosion and other deficiencies that could cause an unsafe condition.
3. Shut off all gas to the *appliance* and shut off any other fuel-gas-burning *appliance* within the same room. Use the shut-off valve in the supply line to each *appliance*.
4. Inspect *burners* and crossovers for blockage and corrosion.
5. ***Furnace* installations:** Inspect the heat exchanger for cracks, openings or excessive corrosion.
6. **Boiler installations:** Inspect for evidence of water or *combustion product* leaks.
7. Close all building doors and windows and all doors between the space in which the *appliance* is located and other spaces of the building that can be closed. Turn on any *clothes dryers*. Turn on any exhaust fans, such as range hoods and bathroom exhausts, so they will operate at maximum speed. Do not operate a summer exhaust fan. Close *fireplace dampers*. If, after completing Steps 8 through 13, it is believed sufficient *combustion air* is not available, refer to Section G2407 of this *code*.
8. Place the *appliance* being inspected in operation. Follow the lighting instructions. Adjust the *thermostat* so that the *appliance* will operate continuously.
9. Determine that the *pilot*, where provided, is burning properly and that the *main burner* ignition is satisfactory by interrupting and reestablishing the electrical supply to the *appliance* in any convenient manner. If the *appliance* is equipped with a continuous *pilot*, test all *pilot* safety devices to determine if they are operating properly by extinguishing the *pilot* when the *main burner* is off and determining, after 3 minutes, that the *main burner* gas does not flow upon a call for heat. If the *appliance* is not provided with a *pilot*, test for proper operation of the ignition system in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's lighting and operating instructions.
10. Visually determine that the *main burner* gas is burning properly (i.e., no floating, lifting or flashback). Adjust the primary air shutters as required.

    If the *appliance* is equipped with high and low flame controlling or flame modulation, check for proper *main burner* operation at low flame.
11. Test for spillage at the *draft hood relief opening* after 5 minutes of *main burner* operation. Use the flame of a match or candle or smoke.
12. Turn on all other fuel-gas-burning *appliances* within the same room so they will operate at their full inputs. Follow lighting instructions for each *appliance*.
13. Repeat Steps 10 and 11 on the *appliance* being inspected.
14. Return doors, windows, exhaust fans, *fireplace dampers* and any other fuel-gas-burning *appliance* to their previous conditions of use.
15. ***Furnace* installations:** Check both the limit *control* and the fan *control* for proper operation. Limit *control* operation can be checked by blocking the circulating air inlet or temporarily disconnecting the electrical supply to the blower motor and determining that the limit *control* acts to shut off the *main burner* gas.
16. **Boiler installations:** Verify that the water pumps are in operating condition. Test low water cutoffs, automatic feed *controls*, pressure and temperature limit *controls*, and *relief valves* in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to determine that they are in operating condition.

# APPENDIX E

# MANUFACTURED HOUSING USED AS DWELLINGS

*(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)*

## SECTION AE101
## SCOPE

**AE101.1 General.** These provisions shall be applicable only to a *manufactured home* used as a single *dwelling unit* installed on privately owned (nonrental) lots and shall apply to the following:

1. Construction, *alteration* and repair of any foundation system which is necessary to provide for the installation of a *manufactured home* unit.
2. Construction, installation, *addition*, *alteration*, repair or maintenance of the building service *equipment* which is necessary for connecting *manufactured homes* to water, fuel, or power supplies and sewage systems.
3. *Alterations*, *additions* or repairs to existing *manufactured homes*. The construction, *alteration*, moving, demolition, repair and use of accessory buildings and structures and their building service *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of the codes adopted by this *jurisdiction*.

These provisions shall not be applicable to the design and construction of *manufactured home*s and shall not be deemed to authorize either modifications or *additions* to *manufactured homes* where otherwise prohibited.

**Exception:** In addition to these provisions, new and replacement *manufactured home*s to be located in flood hazard areas as established in Table R301.2(1) of the *International Residential Code* shall meet the applicable requirements of Section R322 of the *International Residential Code*.

## SECTION AE102
## APPLICATION TO EXISTING MANUFACTURED HOMES AND BUILDING SERVICE EQUIPMENT

**AE102.1 General.** *Manufactured homes* and their building service *equipment* to which *additions*, *alterations* or repairs are made shall comply with all the requirements of these provisions for new facilities, except as specifically provided in this section.

**AE102.2 Additions, alterations or repairs.** *Addition*s made to a *manufactured home* shall conform to one of the following:

1. Be certified under the National Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Standards Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. Section 5401, et seq.).
2. Be designed and constructed to conform with the applicable provisions of the National Manufactured Housing Construction and Safety Standards Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. Section 5401, et seq.).
3. Be designed and constructed in conformance with the code adopted by this *jurisdiction*.

*Addition*s shall be structurally separated from the *manufactured home*.

**Exception:** A structural separation need not be provided when structural calculations are provided to justify the omission of such separation.

*Alterations* or repairs may be made to any *manufactured home* or to its building service *equipment* without requiring the existing *manufactured home* or its building service *equipment* to comply with all the requirements of these provisions, provided the *alteration* or repair conforms to that required for new construction, and provided further that no hazard to life, health or safety will be created by such *additions*, *alterations* or repairs.

*Alterations* or repairs to an existing *manufactured home* which are nonstructural and do not adversely affect any structural member or any part of the building or structure having required fire protection may be made with materials equivalent to those of which the *manufactured home* structure is constructed, subject to approval by the *building official*.

**Exception:** The installation or replacement of glass shall be required for new installations.

Minor *additions*, *alterations* and repairs to existing building service *equipment* installations may be made in accordance with the codes in effect at the time the original installation was made subject to approval of the *building official*, and provided such *additions*, *alterations* and repairs will not cause the existing building service *equipment* to become unsafe, insanitary or overloaded.

**AE102.3 Existing installations.** Building service *equipment* lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of the applicable codes may have their use, maintenance or repair continued if the use, maintenance or repair is in accordance with the original design and no hazard to life, health or property has been created by such building service *equipment*.

**AE102.4 Existing occupancy.** *Manufactured home*s which are in existence at the time of the adoption of these provisions may have their existing use or occupancy continued if such use or occupancy was legal at the time of the adoption of these provisions, provided such continued use is not dangerous to life, health and safety.

The use or occupancy of any existing *manufactured home* shall not be changed unless evidence satisfactory to the *building official* is provided to show compliance with all applicable provisions of the codes adopted by this *jurisdiction*. Upon any change in use or occupancy, the *manufactured home* shall cease to be classified as such within the intent of these provisions.

**AE102.5 Maintenance.** All *manufactured homes* and their building service *equipment*, existing and new, and all parts thereof shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. All device or safeguards which are required by applicable codes or by the *Manufactured Home* Standards shall be maintained in conformance with the code or standard under which it was installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of *manufactured homes*, accessory buildings, structures and their building service *equipment*. To determine compliance with this subsection, the *building official* may cause any *manufactured home*, accessory building or structure to be reinspected.

**AE102.6 Relocation.** *Manufactured home*s which are to be relocated within this *jurisdiction* shall comply with these provisions.

## SECTION AE201 DEFINITIONS

**AE201.1 General.** For the purpose of these provisions, certain abbreviations, terms, phrases, words and their derivatives shall be construed as defined or specified herein.

**ACCESSORY BUILDING.** Any building or structure, or portion thereto, located on the same property as a *manufactured home* which does not qualify as a *manufactured home* as defined herein.

**BUILDING SERVICE EQUIPMENT.** Refers to the plumbing, mechanical and electrical *equipment* including piping, wiring, fixtures and other accessories which provide sanitation, lighting, heating ventilation, cooling, fire protection and facilities essential for the habitable occupancy of a *manufactured home* or accessory building or structure for its designated use and occupancy.

**MANUFACTURED HOME.** A structure transportable in one or more sections which, in the traveling mode, is 8 body feet (2438 body mm) or more in width or 40 body feet (12 192 body mm) or more in length or, when erected on site, is 320 or more square feet (30 $m^2$), and which is built on a permanent chassis and designed to be used as a *dwelling* with or without a permanent foundation when connected to the required utilities, and includes the plumbing, heating, air-conditioning and electrical systems contained therein; except that such term shall include any structure which meets all the requirements of this paragraph except the size requirements and with respect to which the manufacturer voluntarily files a certification required by the secretary (HUD) and complies with the standards established under this title.

For mobile homes built prior to June 15, 1976, a *label* certifying compliance to the Standard for Mobile Homes, NFPA 501, ANSI 119.1, in effect at the time of manufacture is required. For the purpose of these provisions, a mobile home shall be considered a *manufactured home*.

**MANUFACTURED HOME INSTALLATION.** Construction which is required for the installation of a *manufactured home*, including the construction of the foundation system, required structural connections thereto and the installation of on-site water, gas, electrical and sewer systems and connections thereto which are necessary for the normal operation of the *manufactured home*.

**MANUFACTURED HOME STANDARDS.** The *Manufactured Home* Construction and Safety Standards as promulgated by the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development.

**PRIVATELY OWNED (NONRENTAL) LOT.** A parcel of real estate outside of a *manufactured home* rental community (park) where the land and the *manufactured home* to be installed thereon are held in common ownership.

## SECTION AE301 PERMITS

**AE301.1 Initial installation.** A *manufactured home* shall not be installed on a foundation system, reinstalled or altered without first obtaining a *permit* from the *building official*. A separate *permit* shall be required for each *manufactured home* installation. When *approved* by the *building official*, such *permit* may include accessory buildings and structures and their building service *equipment* when the accessory buildings or structures will be constructed in conjunction with the *manufactured home* installation.

**AE301.2 Additions, alterations and repairs to a manufactured home.** A *permit* shall be obtained to alter, remodel, repair or add accessory buildings or structures to a *manufactured home* subsequent to its initial installation. *Permit* issuance and fees therefor shall be in conformance with the codes applicable to the type of work involved.

An *addition* made to a *manufactured home* as defined in these provisions shall comply with these provisions.

**AE301.3 Accessory buildings.** Except as provided in Section AE301.1, *permits* shall be required for all accessory buildings and structures and their building service *equipment*. *Permit* issuance and fees therefor shall be in conformance with the codes applicable to the types of work involved.

**AE301.4 Exempted work.** A *permit* shall not be required for the types of work specifically exempted by the applicable codes. Exemption from the *permit* requirements of any of said codes shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in violation of the provisions of said codes or any other laws or ordinances of this *jurisdiction*.

## SECTION AE302 APPLICATION FOR PERMIT

**AE302.1 Application.** To obtain a *manufactured home* installation *permit*, the applicant shall first file an application in writing on a form furnished by the *building official* for that purpose. At the option of the *building official*, every such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the work to be covered by the *permit* for which application is made.
2. Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, street address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work.

3. Indicate the use or occupancy for which the proposed work is intended.
4. Be accompanied by plans, diagrams, computations and specifications and other data as required in Section AE302.2.
5. Be accompanied by a soil investigation when required by Section AE502.2.
6. State the valuation of any new building or structure or any *addition*, remodeling or *alteration* to an existing building.
7. Be signed by permittee, or permittee's authorized agent, who may be required to submit evidence to indicate such authority.
8. Give such other data and information as may be required by the *building official*.

**AE302.2 Plans and specifications.** Plans, engineering calculations, diagrams and other data as required by the *building official* shall be submitted in not less than two sets with each application for a *permit*. The *building official* may require plans, computations and specifications to be prepared and designed by an engineer or architect licensed by the state to practice as such.

Where no unusual site conditions exist, the *building official* may accept *approved* standard foundation plans and details in conjunction with the manufacturer's *approved* installation instructions without requiring the submittal of engineering calculations.

**AE302.3 Information on plans and specifications.** Plans and specifications shall be drawn to scale on substantial paper or cloth and shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and shown in detail that it will conform to the provisions of these provisions and all relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations. The *building official* shall determine what information is required on plans and specifications to ensure compliance.

## SECTION AE303 PERMITS ISSUANCE

**AE303.1 Issuance.** The application, plans and specifications and other data filed by an applicant for *permit* shall be reviewed by the *building official*. Such plans may be reviewed by other departments of this *jurisdiction* to verify compliance with any applicable laws under their *jurisdiction*. If the *building official* finds that the work described in an application for a *permit* and the plans, specifications and other data filed therewith conform to the requirements of these provisions and other data filed therewith conform to the requirements of these provisions and other pertinent codes, laws and ordinances, and that the fees specified in Section AE304 have been paid, the *building official* shall issue a *permit* therefor to the applicant.

When the *building official* issues the *permit* where plans are required, the *building official* shall endorse in writing or stamp the plans and specifications *APPROVED*. Such *approved* plans and specifications shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *building official*, and all work shall be done in accordance with the *approved* plans.

**AE303.2 Retention of plans.** One set of *approved* plans and specifications shall be returned to the applicant and shall be kept on the site of the building or work at all times during which the work authorized thereby is in progress. One set of *approved* plans, specification and computations shall be retained by the *building official* until final approval of the work.

**AE303.3 Validity of permit.** The issuance of a *permit* or approval of plans and specifications shall not be construed to be a *permit* for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of these provisions or other pertinent codes of any other ordinance of the *jurisdiction*. No *permit* presuming to give authority to violate or cancel these provisions shall be valid.

The issuance of a *permit* based on plans, specifications and other data shall not prevent the *building official* from thereafter requiring the correction of errors in said plans, specifications and other data, or from preventing building operations being carried on thereunder when in violation of these provisions or of any other ordinances of this *jurisdiction*.

**AE303.4 Expiration.** Every *permit* issued by the *building official* under these provisions shall expire by limitation and become null and void if the work authorized by such *permit* is not commenced within 180 days from the date of such *permit*, or if the work authorized by such *permit* is suspended or abandoned at any time after the work is commenced for a period of 180 days. Before such work can be recommenced, a new *permit* shall be first obtained, and the fee therefor shall be one-half the amount required for a new *permit* for such work, provided no changes have been made or will be made in the original plans and specifications for such work, and provided further that such suspension or abandonment has not exceeded one year. In order to renew action on a *permit* after expiration, the permittee shall pay a new full *permit* fee.

Any permittee holding an unexpired *permit* may apply for an extension of the time within which work may commence under that *permit* when the permittee is unable to commence work within the time required by this section for good and satisfactory reasons. The *building official* may extend the time for action by the permittee for a period not exceeding 180 days upon written request by the permittee showing that circumstances beyond the control of the permittee have prevented action from being taken. No *permit* shall be extended more than once.

**AE303.5 Suspension or revocation.** The *building official* may, in writing, suspend or revoke a *permit* issued under these provisions whenever the *permit* is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of these provisions.

## SECTION AE304 FEES

**AE304.1 Permit fees.** The fee for each *manufactured home* installation *permit* shall be established by the *building official*.

When *permit* fees are to be based on the value or valuation of the work to be performed, the determination of value or valuation under these provisions shall be made by the *building official*. The value to be used shall be the total value of all work required for the *manufactured home* installation plus the total value of all work required for the construction of accessory buildings and structures for which the *permit* is issued as well as all finish work, painting, roofing, electrical, plumbing, heating, air conditioning, elevators, fire-extinguishing systems and any other permanent *equipment* which is a part of the accessory building or structure. The value of the *manufactured home* itself shall not be included.

**AE304.2 Plan review fees.** When a plan or other data are required to be submitted by Section AE302.2, a plan review fee shall be paid at the time of submitting plans and specifications for review. Said plan review fee shall be as established by the *building official*. Where plans are incomplete or changed so as to require additional plan review, an additional plan review fee shall be charged at a rate as established by the *building official*.

**AE304.3 Other provisions.**

**AE304.3.1 Expiration of plan review.** Applications for which no *permit* is issued within 180 days following the date of application shall expire by limitation, and plans and other data submitted for review may thereafter be returned to the applicant or destroyed by the *building official*. The *building official* may extend the time for action by the applicant for a period not exceeding 180 days upon request by the applicant showing that circumstances beyond the control of the applicant have prevented action from being taken. No application shall be extended more than once. In order to renew action on an application after expiration, the applicant shall resubmit plans and pay a new plan review fee.

**AE304.3.2 Investigation fees: work without a permit.**

**AE304.3.2.1 Investigation.** Whenever any work for which a *permit* is required by these provisions has been commenced without first obtaining said *permit*, a special investigation shall be made before a *permit* may be issued for such work.

**AE304.3.2.2 Fee.** An investigation fee, in addition to the *permit* fee, shall be collected whether or not a *permit* is then or subsequently issued. The investigation fee shall be equal to the amount of the *permit* fee required. The minimum investigation fee shall be the same as the minimum fee established by the *building official*. The payment of such investigation fee shall not exempt any person from compliance with all other provisions of either these provisions or other pertinent codes or from any penalty prescribed by law.

**E304.3.3 Fee refunds.**

**AE304.3.3.1 Permit fee erroneously paid or collected.** The *building official* may authorize the refunding of any fee paid hereunder which was erroneously paid or collected.

**AE304.3.3.2 Permit fee paid when no work done.** The *building official* may authorize the refunding of not more than 80 percent of the *permit* fee paid when no work has been done under a *permit* issued in accordance with these provisions.

**AE304.3.3.3 Plan review fee.** The *building official* may authorize the refunding of not more than 80 percent of the plan review fee paid when an application for a *permit* for which a plan review fee has been paid is withdrawn or canceled before any plan reviewing is done.

The *building official* shall not authorize the refunding of any fee paid except upon written application by the original permittee not later than 180 days after the date of the fee payment.

## SECTION AE305
## INSPECTIONS

**AE305.1 General.** All construction or work for which a *manufactured home* installation *permit* is required shall be subject to inspection by the *building official*, and certain types of construction shall have continuous inspection by special inspectors as specified in Section AE306. A survey of the *lot* may be required by the *building official* to verify that the structure is located in accordance with the *approved* plans.

It shall be the duty of the *permit* applicant to cause the work to be accessible and exposed for inspection purposes. Neither the *building official* nor this *jurisdiction* shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material required to allow inspection.

**AE305.2 Inspection requests.** It shall be the duty of the person doing the work authorized by a *manufactured home* installation *permit* to notify the *building official* that such work is ready for inspection. The *building official* may require that every request for inspection be filed at least one working day before such inspection is desired. Such request may be in writing or by telephone at the option of the *building official*.

It shall be the duty of the person requesting any inspections required either by these provisions or other applicable codes to provide access to and means for proper inspection of such work.

**AE305.3 Inspection record card.** Work requiring a *manufactured home* installation *permit* shall not be commenced until the *permit* holder or the *permit* holder's agent shall have posted an inspection record card in a conspicuous place on the premises and in such position as to allow the *building official* conveniently to make the required entries thereon regarding inspection of the work. This card shall be maintained in such position by the *permit* holder until final approval has been issued by the *building official*.

**AE305.4 Approval required.** Work shall not be done on any part of the *manufactured home* installation beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the *building official*. Such approval shall be given only after an inspection has been made of each successive step in the construction as indicated by each of the inspections required in Section AE305.5. There shall be a final inspection and approval of the *manufactured home* installation, including connections to its building service *equipment*, when completed and ready for occupancy or use.

**AE305.5 Required inspections.**

**AE305.5.1 Structural inspections for the manufactured home installation.** Reinforcing steel or structural framework of any part of any *manufactured home* foundation system shall not be covered or concealed without first obtaining the approval of the *building official*. The *building official*, upon notification from the *permit* holder or the *permit* holder's agent, shall make the following inspections and shall either approve that portion of the construction as completed or shall notify the *permit* holder or the *permit* holder's agent wherein the same fails to comply with these provisions or other applicable codes:

1. Foundation inspection: To be made after excavations for footings are completed and any required reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. All materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except where concrete from a central mixing plant (commonly termed "transit mixed") is to be used, the concrete materials need not be on the job. Where the foundation is to be constructed of *approved* treated wood, additional framing inspections as required by the building official may be required.
2. Concrete slab or under-floor inspection: To be made after all in-slab or underfloor building service *equipment*, conduit, piping accessories and other ancillary *equipment* items are in place but before any concrete is poured or the *manufactured home* is installed.
3. Anchorage inspection: To be made after the *manufactured home* has been installed and permanently anchored.

**AE305.5.2 Structural inspections for accessory building and structures.** Inspections for accessory buildings and structures shall be made as set forth in this code.

**AE305.5.3 Building service equipment inspections.** All building service *equipment* which is required as a part of a *manufactured home* installation, including accessory buildings and structures authorized by the same *permit*, shall be inspected by the building official. Building service *equipment* shall be inspected and tested as required by the applicable codes. Such inspections and testing shall be limited to site construction and shall not include building service *equipment* which is a part of the *manufactured home* itself. No portion of any building service *equipment* intended to be concealed by any permanent portion of the construction shall be concealed until inspected and *approved*. Building service *equipment* shall not be connected to the water, fuel or power supply or sewer system until authorized by the building official.

**AE305.5.4 Final inspection.** When finish grading and the *manufactured home* installation, including the installation of all required building service *equipment*, is completed and the *manufactured home* is ready for occupancy, a final inspection shall be made.

**AE305.6 Other inspections.** In addition to the called inspections specified above, the building official may make or require other inspections of any construction work to as certain compliance with these provisions or other codes and laws which are enforced by the code enforcement agency.

## SECTION AE306 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

**AE306.1 General.** In addition to the inspections required by Section AE305, the building official may require the owner to employ a special inspector during construction of specific types of work as described in this code.

## SECTION AE307 UTILITY SERVICE

**AE307.1 General.** Utility service shall not be provided to any building service *equipment* which is regulated by these provisions or other applicable codes and for which a *manufactured home* installation *permit* is required by these provisions until *approved* by the building official.

## SECTION AE401 OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

**AE401.1 Manufactured homes.** A *manufactured home* shall be limited in use to use as a single *dwelling unit*.

**AE401.2 Accessory buildings.** Accessory buildings shall be classified as to occupancy by the building official as set forth in this code.

## SECTION AE402 LOCATION ON PROPERTY

**AE402.1 General.** *Manufactured homes* and accessory buildings shall be located on the property in accordance with applicable codes and ordinances of this *jurisdiction*.

## SECTION AE501 DESIGN

**AE501.1 General.** A *manufactured home* shall be installed on a foundation system which is designed and constructed to sustain within the stress limitations specified in this code and all loads specified in this code.

> **Exception:** When specifically authorized by the building official, foundation and anchorage systems which are constructed in accordance with the methods specified in Section AE600 of these provisions, or in the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development Handbook, *Permanent Foundations for Manufactured Housing,* 1984 Edition, Draft, shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this Appendix E.

**AE501.2 Manufacturer's installation instructions.** The installation instructions as provided by the manufacturer of the *manufactured home* shall be used to determine permissible points of support for vertical loads and points of attachment for anchorage systems used to resist horizontal and uplift forces.

**AE501.3 Rationality.** Any system or method of construction to be used shall admit to a rational analysis in accordance with well-established principles of mechanics.

## SECTION AE502 FOUNDATION SYSTEMS

**AE502.1 General.** Foundation systems designed and constructed in accordance with this section may be considered as a permanent installation.

**AE502.2 Soil classification.** The classification of the soil at each *manufactured home* site shall be determined when required by the *building official*. The *building official* may require that the determination be made by an engineer or architect licensed by the state to conduct soil investigations.

The classification shall be based on observation and any necessary tests of the materials disclosed by borings or excavations made in appropriate locations. Additional studies may be necessary to evaluate soil strength, the effect of moisture variation on soil-bearing capacity, compressibility and expansiveness.

When required by the *building official*, the soil classification design bearing capacity and lateral pressure shall be shown on the plans.

**AE502.3 Footings and foundations.** Footings and foundations, unless otherwise specifically provided, shall be constructed of materials specified by this code for the intended use and in all cases shall extend below the frost line. Footings of concrete and masonry shall be of solid material. Foundations supporting untreated wood shall extend at least 8 inches (203 mm) above the adjacent finish *grade*. Footings shall have a minimum depth below finished *grade* of 12 inches (305 mm) unless a greater depth is recommended by a foundation investigation.

Piers and bearing walls shall be supported on masonry or concrete foundations or piles, or other *approved* foundation systems which shall be of sufficient capacity to support all loads.

**AE502.4 Foundation design.** When a design is provided, the foundation system shall be designed in accordance with the applicable structural provisions of this code and shall be designed to minimize differential settlement. Where a design is not provided, the minimum foundation requirements shall be as set forth in this code.

**AE502.5 Drainage.** Provisions shall be made for the control and drainage of surface water away from the *manufactured home*.

**AE502.6 Under-floor clearances—ventilation and access.** A minimum clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) shall be maintained beneath the lowest member of the floor support framing system. Clearances from the bottom of wood floor joists or perimeter joists shall be as specified in this code.

Under-floor spaces shall be ventilated with openings as specified in this code. If combustion air for one or more heat-producing *appliances* is taken from within the under-floor spaces, ventilation shall be adequate for proper *appliance* operation.

Under-floor access openings shall be provided. Such openings shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in any dimension and not less than 3 square feet (0.279 $m^2$) in area and shall be located so that any water supply and sewer drain connections located under the *manufactured home* are accessible.

## SECTION AE503 SKIRTING AND PERIMETER ENCLOSURES

**AE503.1 Skirting and permanent perimeter enclosures.** Skirting and permanent perimeter enclosures shall be installed only where specifically required by other laws or ordinances. Skirting, when installed, shall be of material suitable for exterior exposure and contact with the ground. Permanent perimeter enclosures shall be constructed of materials as required by this code for regular foundation construction.

Skirting shall be installed in accordance with the skirting manufacturer's installation instructions. Skirting shall be adequately secured to assure stability, to minimize vibration and susceptibility to wind damage, and to compensate for possible frost heave.

**AE503.2 Retaining walls.** Where retaining walls are used as a permanent perimeter enclosure, they shall resist the lateral displacements of soil or other materials and shall conform to this code as specified for foundation walls. Retaining walls and foundation walls shall be constructed of *approved* treated wood, concrete, masonry or other *approved* materials or combination of materials as for foundations as specified in this code. Siding materials shall extend below the top of the exterior of the retaining or foundation wall or the joint between siding and enclosure wall shall be flashed in accordance with this code.

## SECTION AE504 STRUCTURAL ADDITIONS

**AE504.1 General.** Accessory buildings shall not be structurally supported by or attached to a *manufactured home* unless engineering calculations are submitted to substantiate any proposed structural connection.

> **Exception:** The *building official* may waive the submission of engineering calculations if it is found that the nature of the work applied for is such that engineering calculations are not necessary to show conformance to these provisions.

## SECTION AE505 BUILDING SERVICE EQUIPMENT

**AE505.1 General.** The installation, *alteration*, repair, replacement, *addition* to or maintenance of the building service *equipment* within the *manufactured home* shall conform to regulations set forth in the *Manufactured Home* Standards. Such work which is located outside the *manufactured home* shall comply with the applicable codes adopted by this *jurisdiction*.

## SECTION AE506
## EXITS

**AE506.1 Site development.** Exterior stairways and ramps which provide egress to the public way shall comply with applicable provisions of this code.

**AE506.2 Accessory buildings.** Every accessory building or portion thereof shall be provided with exits as required by this code.

## SECTION AE507
## OCCUPANCY, FIRE SAFETY AND ENERGY CONSERVATION STANDARDS

**AE507.1 General.** *Alterations* made to a *manufactured home* subsequent to its initial installation shall conform to the occupancy, fire-safety and energy conservation requirements set forth in the *Manufactured Home* Standards.

## SECTION AE600
## SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS FOR FOUNDATION SYSTEMS

**AE600.1 General.** Section AE600 is applicable only when specifically authorized by the *building official*.

## SECTION AE601
## FOOTINGS AND FOUNDATIONS

**AE601.1 General.** The capacity of individual load-bearing piers and their footings shall be sufficient to sustain all loads specified in this code within the stress limitations specified in this code. Footings, unless otherwise *approved* by the *building official*, shall be placed level on firm, undisturbed soil or an engineered fill which is free of organic material, such as weeds and grasses. Where used, an engineered fill shall provide a minimum load-bearing capacity of not less than 1,000 psf (48 kN/m$^2$). Continuous footings shall conform to the requirements of this code. Section AE502 of these provisions shall apply to footings and foundations constructed under the provisions of this section.

## SECTION AE602
## PIER CONSTRUCTION

**AE602.1 General.** Piers shall be designed and constructed to distribute loads evenly. Multiple section homes may have concentrated roof loads which will require special consideration. Load-bearing piers may be constructed utilizing one of the methods listed below. Such piers shall be considered to resist only vertical forces acting in a downward direction. They shall not be considered as providing any resistance to horizontal loads induced by wind or earthquake forces.

1. A prefabricated load-bearing device that is listed and *labeled* for the intended use.
2. Mortar shall comply with ASTM C 270 Type M, S or N; this may consist of one part portland cement, one-half part hydrated lime and four parts sand by volume. Lime shall not be used with plastic or waterproof cement.
3. A cast-in-place concrete pier with concrete having specified compressive strength at 28 days of 2,500 psi (17 225 kPa).

Alternate materials and methods of construction may be used for piers which have been designed by an engineer or architect licensed by the state to practice as such.

Caps and leveling spacers may be used for leveling of the *manufactured home*. Spacing of piers shall be as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions, if available, or by an *approved* designer.

## SECTION AE603
## HEIGHT OF PIERS

**AE603.1 General.** Piers constructed as indicated in Section AE602 may have heights as follows:

1. Except for corner piers, piers 36 inches (914 mm) or less in height may be constructed of masonry units, placed with cores or cells vertically. Piers shall be installed with their long dimension at right angles to the main frame member they support and shall have a minimum cross-sectional area of 128 square inches (82 560 mm$^2$). Piers shall be capped with minimum 4-inch (102 mm) *solid masonry* units or equivalent.
2. Piers between 36 and 80 inches (914 mm and 2032 mm) in height and all corner piers over 24 inches (610 mm) in height shall be at least 16 inches by 16 inches (406 mm by 406 mm) consisting of interlocking masonry units and shall be fully capped with minimum 4-inch (102 mm) *solid masonry* units or equivalent.
3. Piers over 80 inches (2032 mm) in height may be constructed in accordance with the provisions of Item 2 above, provided the piers shall be filled solid with grout and reinforced with four continuous No. 5 bars. One bar shall be placed in each corner cell of hollow masonry unit piers or in each corner of the grouted space of piers constructed of *solid masonry* units.
4. Cast-in-place concrete piers meeting the same size and height limitations of Items 1, 2 and 3 above may be substituted for piers constructed of masonry units.

## SECTION AE604
## ANCHORAGE INSTALLATIONS

**AE604.1 Ground anchors.** Ground anchors shall be designed and installed to transfer the anchoring loads to the ground. The load-carrying portion of the ground anchors shall be installed to the full depth called for by the manufacturer's installation directions and shall extend below the established frost line into undisturbed soil.

Manufactured ground anchors shall be listed and installed in accordance with the terms of their listing and the anchor manufacturer's instructions and shall include means of attachment of ties meeting the requirements of Section AE605. Ground anchor manufacturer's installation instructions shall include the amount of preload required and load capacity in various types of soil. These instructions shall include tensioning adjustments which may be needed to prevent damage to the *manufactured home*, particularly damage that can be caused by frost heave. Each ground anchor shall be marked with the manufacturer's identification and listed model identification number which shall be visible after installation. Instructions shall accompany each listed ground anchor specifying the types of soil for which the anchor is suitable under the requirements of this section.

Each *approved* ground anchor, when installed, shall be capable of resisting an allowable working load at least equal to 3,150 pounds (14 kN) in the direction of the tie plus a 50 percent overload [4,725 pounds (21 kN) total] without failure. Failure shall be considered to have occurred when the anchor moves more than 2 inches (51 mm) at a load of 4,725 pounds (21 kN) in the direction of the tie installation. Those ground anchors which are designed to be installed so that loads on the anchor are other than direct withdrawal shall be designed and installed to resist an applied design load of 3,150 pounds (14 kN) at 40 to 50 degrees from vertical or within the angle limitations specified by the home manufacturer without displacing the tie end of the anchor more than 4 inches (102 mm) horizontally. Anchors designed for connection of multiple ties shall be capable of resisting the combined working load and overload consistent with the intent expressed herein.

When it is proposed to use ground anchors and the *building official* has reason to believe that the soil characteristics at a given site are such as to render the use of ground anchors advisable, or when there is doubt regarding the ability of the ground anchors to obtain their listed capacity, the *building official* may require that a representative field installation be made at the site in question and tested to demonstrate ground anchor capacity. The *building official* shall approve the test procedures.

**AE604.2 Anchoring equipment.** Anchoring *equipment*, when installed as a permanent installation, shall be capable of resisting all loads as specified within these provisions. When the stabilizing system is designed by an engineer or architect licensed by the state to practice as such, alternative designs may be used, providing the anchoring *equipment* to be used is capable of withstanding a load equal to 1.5 times the calculated load. All anchoring *equipment* shall be listed and *labeled* as being capable of meeting the requirements of these provisions. Anchors as specified in this code may be attached to the main frame of the *manufactured home* by an *approved* $^{3}/_{16}$-inch-thick (4.76 mm) slotted steel plate anchoring device. Other anchoring devices or methods meeting the requirements of these provisions may be permitted when *approved* by the *building official*.

Anchoring systems shall be so installed as to be permanent. Anchoring *equipment* shall be so designed to prevent self-disconnection with no hook ends used.

**AE604.3 Resistance to weather deterioration.** All anchoring *equipment*, tension devices and ties shall have a resistance to deterioration as required by this code.

**AE604.4 Tensioning devices.** Tensioning devices, such as turnbuckles or yoke-type fasteners, shall be ended with clevis or welded eyes.

## SECTION AE605
## TIES, MATERIALS AND INSTALLATION

**AE605.1 General.** Steel strapping, cable, chain or other *approved* materials shall be used for ties. All ties shall be fastened to ground anchors and drawn tight with turnbuckles or other adjustable tensioning devices or devices supplied with the ground anchor. Tie materials shall be capable of resisting an allowable working load of 3,150 pounds (14 kN) with no more than 2 percent elongation and shall withstand a 50 percent overload [4,750 pounds (21 kN)]. Ties shall comply with the weathering requirements of Section AE604.3. Ties shall connect the ground anchor and the main structural frame. Ties shall not connect to steel outrigger beams which fasten to and intersect the main structural frame unless specifically stated in the manufacturer's installation instructions. Connection of cable ties to main frame members shall be $^{5}/_{8}$-inch (15.9 mm) closed-eye bolts affixed to the frame member in an *approved* manner. Cable ends shall be secured with at least two U-bolt cable clamps with the "U" portion of the clamp installed on the short (dead) end of the cable to assure strength equal to that required by this section.

Wood floor support systems shall be fixed to perimeter foundation walls in accordance with provisions of this code. The minimum number of ties required per side shall be sufficient to resist the wind load stated in this code. Ties shall be evenly spaced as practicable along the length of the *manufactured home* with the distance from each end of the home and the tie nearest that end not exceeding 8 feet (2438 mm). When continuous straps are provided as vertical ties, such ties shall be positioned at rafters and studs. Where a vertical tie and diagonal tie are located at the same place, both ties may be connected to a single anchor, provided the anchor used is capable of carrying both loadings. Multisection *manufactured homes* require diagonal ties only. Diagonal ties shall be installed on the exterior main frame and slope to the exterior at an angle of 40 to 50 degrees from the vertical or within the angle limitations specified by the home manufacturer. Vertical ties which are not continuous over the top of the *manufactured home* shall be attached to the main frame.

## SECTION AE606
## REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASTMC 270-04 Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AE602

NFPA 501-03 Standard on Manufactured Housing . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AE201

# APPENDIX F
# RADON CONTROL METHODS

*(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)*

## SECTION AF101
## SCOPE

**AF101.1 General.** This appendix contains requirements for new construction in *jurisdictions* where radon-resistant construction is required.

Inclusion of this appendix by *jurisdictions* shall be determined through the use of locally available data or determination of Zone 1 designation in Figure AF101.

## SECTION AF102
## DEFINITIONS

**AF102.1 General.** For the purpose of these requirements, the terms used shall be defined as follows:

**SUBSLAB DEPRESSURIZATION SYSTEM (Passive).** A system designed to achieve lower sub-slab air pressure relative to indoor air pressure by use of a vent pipe routed through the *conditioned space* of a building and connecting the sub-slab area with outdoor air, thereby relying on the convective flow of air upward in the vent to draw air from beneath the slab.

**SUBSLAB DEPRESSURIZATION SYSTEM (Active).** A system designed to achieve lower sub-slab air pressure relative to indoor air pressure by use of a fan-powered vent drawing air from beneath the slab.

**DRAIN TILE LOOP.** A continuous length of drain tile or perforated pipe extending around all or part of the internal or external perimeter of a *basement* or crawl space footing.

**RADON GAS.** A naturally-occurring, chemically inert, radioactive gas that is not detectable by human senses. As a gas, it can move readily through particles of soil and rock and can accumulate under the slabs and foundations of homes where it can easily enter into the living space through construction cracks and openings.

**SOIL-GAS-RETARDER.** A continuous membrane of 6-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene or other equivalent material used to retard the flow of soil gases into a building.

**SUBMEMBRANE DEPRESSURIZATION SYSTEM.** A system designed to achieve lower-sub-membrane air pressure relative to crawl space air pressure by use of a vent drawing air from beneath the soil-gas-retarder membrane.

## SECTION AF103
## REQUIREMENTS

**AF103.1 General.** The following construction techniques are intended to resist radon entry and prepare the building for post-construction radon mitigation, if necessary (see Figure AF102). These techniques are required in areas where designated by the *jurisdiction*.

**AF103.2 Subfloor preparation.** A layer of gas-permeable material shall be placed under all concrete slabs and other floor systems that directly contact the ground and are within the walls of the living spaces of the building, to facilitate future installation of a sub-slab depressurization system, if needed. The gas-permeable layer shall consist of one of the following:

1. A uniform layer of clean aggregate, a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) thick. The aggregate shall consist of material that will pass through a 2-inch (51 mm) sieve and be retained by a $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) sieve.
2. A uniform layer of sand (native or fill), a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) thick, overlain by a layer or strips of geotextile drainage matting designed to allow the lateral flow of soil gases.
3. Other materials, systems or floor designs with demonstrated capability to permit depressurization across the entire sub-floor area.

**AF103.3 Soil-gas-retarder.** A minimum 6-mil (0.15 mm) [or 3-mil (0.075 mm) cross-laminated] polyethylene or equivalent flexible sheeting material shall be placed on top of the gas-permeable layer prior to casting the slab or placing the floor assembly to serve as a soil-gas-retarder by bridging any cracks that develop in the slab or floor assembly and to prevent concrete from entering the void spaces in the aggregate base material. The sheeting shall cover the entire floor area with separate sections of sheeting lapped at least 12 inches (305 mm). The sheeting shall fit closely around any pipe, wire or other penetrations of the material. All punctures or tears in the material shall be sealed or covered with additional sheeting.

**AF103.4 Entry routes.** Potential radon entry routes shall be closed in accordance with Sections AF103.4.1 through AF103.4.10.

**AF103.4.1 Floor openings.** Openings around bathtubs, showers, water closets, pipes, wires or other objects that penetrate concrete slabs or other floor assemblies shall be filled with a polyurethane caulk or equivalent sealant applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**AF103.4.2 Concrete joints.** All control joints, isolation joints, construction joints and any other joints in concrete slabs or between slabs and foundation walls shall be sealed with a caulk or sealant. Gaps and joints shall be cleared of loose material and filled with polyurethane caulk or other elastomeric sealant applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**AF103.4.3 Condensate drains.** Condensate drains shall be trapped or routed through nonperforated pipe to daylight.

**AF103.4.4 Sumps.** Sump pits open to soil or serving as the termination point for sub-slab or exterior drain tile loops shall be covered with a gasketed or otherwise sealed lid. Sumps used as the suction point in a sub-slab depressurization system shall have a lid designed to accommodate the vent pipe. Sumps used as a floor drain shall have a lid equipped with a trapped inlet.

**AF103.4.5 Foundation walls.** Hollow block masonry foundation walls shall be constructed with either a continuous course of *solid masonry*, one course of masonry grouted solid, or a solid concrete beam at or above finished ground surface to prevent passage of air from the interior of the wall into the living space. Where a brick veneer or other masonry ledge is installed, the course immediately below that ledge shall be sealed. Joints, cracks or other openings around all penetrations of both exterior and interior surfaces of masonry block or wood foundation walls below the ground surface shall be filled with polyurethane caulk or equivalent sealant. Penetrations of concrete walls shall be filled.

**AF103.4.6 Dampproofing.** The exterior surfaces of portions of concrete and masonry block walls below the ground surface shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section R406 of this code.

**AF103.4.7 Air-handling units.** Air-handling units in crawl spaces shall be sealed to prevent air from being drawn into the unit.

**Exception:** Units with gasketed seams or units that are otherwise sealed by the manufacturer to prevent leakage.

**AF103.4.8 Ducts.** Ductwork passing through or beneath a slab shall be of seamless material unless the air-handling system is designed to maintain continuous positive pressure within such ducting. Joints in such ductwork shall be sealed to prevent air leakage.

Ductwork located in crawl spaces shall have all seams and joints sealed by closure systems in accordance with Section M1601.4.1.

**AF103.4.9 Crawl space floors.** Openings around all penetrations through floors above crawl spaces shall be caulked or otherwise filled to prevent air leakage.

**AF103.4.10 Crawl space access.** Access doors and other openings or penetrations between *basements* and adjoining crawl spaces shall be closed, gasketed or otherwise filled to prevent air leakage.

**AF103.5 Passive submembrane depressurization system.** In buildings with crawl space foundations, the following components of a passive sub-membrane depressurization system shall be installed during construction.

**Exception:** Buildings in which an *approved* mechanical crawl space ventilation system or other equivalent system is installed.

**AF103.5.1 Ventilation.** Crawl spaces shall be provided with vents to the exterior of the building. The minimum net area of ventilation openings shall comply with Section R408.1 of this code.

**AF103.5.2 Soil-gas-retarder.** The soil in crawl spaces shall be covered with a continuous layer of minimum 6-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene soil-gas-retarder. The ground cover shall be lapped a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) at joints and shall extend to all foundation walls enclosing the crawl space area.

**AF103.5.3 Vent pipe.** A plumbing tee or other *approved* connection shall be inserted horizontally beneath the sheeting and connected to a 3- or 4-inch-diameter (76 mm or 102 mm) fitting with a vertical vent pipe installed through the sheeting. The vent pipe shall be extended up through the building floors, terminate at least 12 inches (305 mm) above the roof in a location at least 10 feet (3048 mm) away from any window or other opening into the *conditioned spaces* of the building that is less than 2 feet (610 mm) below the exhaust point, and 10 feet (3048 mm) from any window or other opening in adjoining or adjacent buildings.

**AF103.6 Passive subslab depressurization system.** In *basement* or slab-on-grade buildings, the following components of a passive sub-slab depressurization system shall be installed during construction.

**AF103.6.1 Vent pipe.** A minimum 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) ABS, PVC or equivalent gas-tight pipe shall be embedded vertically into the sub-slab aggregate or other permeable material before the slab is cast. A “T” fitting or equivalent method shall be used to ensure that the pipe opening remains within the sub-slab permeable material. Alternatively, the 3-inch (76 mm) pipe shall be inserted directly into an interior perimeter drain tile loop or through a sealed sump cover where the sump is exposed to the sub-slab aggregate or connected to it through a drainage system.

The pipe shall be extended up through the building floors, terminate at least 12 inches (305 mm) above the surface of the roof in a location at least 10 feet (3048 mm) away from any window or other opening into the *conditioned spaces* of the building that is less than 2 feet (610 mm) below the exhaust point, and 10 feet (3048 mm) from any window or other opening in adjoining or adjacent buildings.

**AF103.6.2 Multiple vent pipes.** In buildings where interior footings or other barriers separate the sub-slab aggregate or other gas-permeable material, each area shall be fitted with an individual vent pipe. Vent pipes shall connect to a single vent that terminates above the roof or each individual vent pipe shall terminate separately above the roof.

**AF103.7 Vent pipe drainage.** All components of the radon vent pipe system shall be installed to provide positive drainage to the ground beneath the slab or soil-gas-retarder.

**AF103.8 Vent pipe accessibility.** Radon vent pipes shall be accessible for future fan installation through an *attic* or other area outside the *habitable space*.

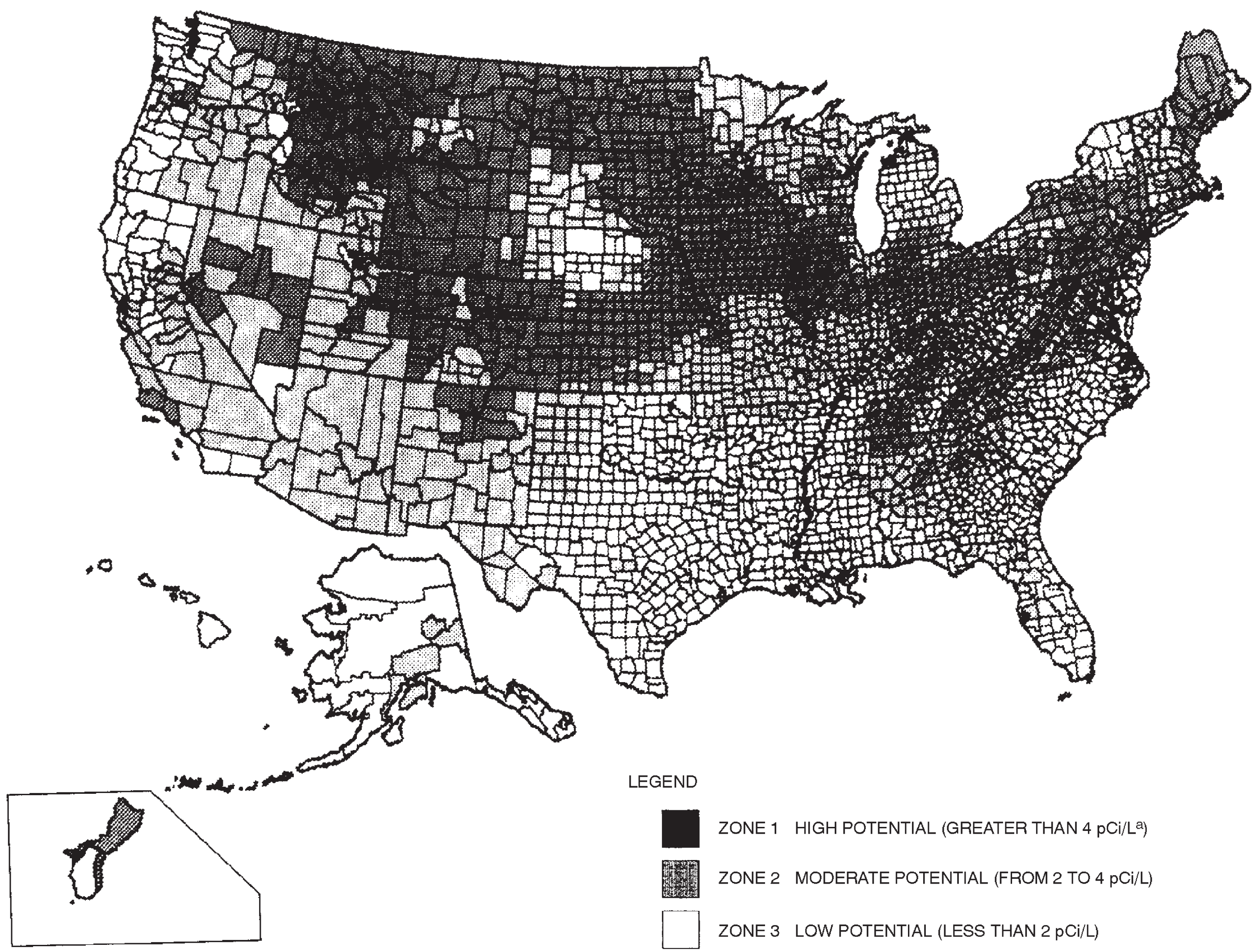
**Exception:** The radon vent pipe need not be accessible in an *attic* space where an *approved* roof-top electrical supply is provided for future use.

**AF103.9 Vent pipe identification.** All exposed and visible interior radon vent pipes shall be identified with at least one *label* on each floor and in accessible *attics*. The *label* shall read:“Radon Reduction System.”

**AF103.10 Combination foundations.** Combination *basement*/crawl space or slab-on-grade/crawl space foundations shall have separate radon vent pipes installed in each type of foundation area. Each radon vent pipe shall terminate above the roof or shall be connected to a single vent that terminates above the roof.

**AF103.11 Building depressurization.** Joints in air ducts and plenums in un*conditioned spaces* shall meet the requirements of Section M1601. Thermal envelope air infiltration requirements shall comply with the energy conservation provisions in Chapter 11. Fireblocking shall meet the requirements contained in Section R302.11.

**AF103.12 Power source.** To provide for future installation of an active sub-membrane or sub-slab depressurization system, an electrical circuit terminated in an *approved* box shall be installed during construction in the *attic* or other anticipated location of vent pipe fans. An electrical supply shall also be accessible in anticipated locations of system failure alarms.




a. pCi/L standard for picocuries per liter of radon gas. EPA recommends that all homes that measure 4 pCi/L and greater be mitigated.

The United States Environmental Protection Agency and the United States Geological Survey have evaluated the radon potential in the United States and have developed a map of radon zones designed to assist building officials in deciding whether radon-resistant features are applicable in new construction.

The map assigns each of the 3,141 counties in the United States to one of three zones based on radon potential. Each zone designation reflects the average short-term radon measurement that can be expected to be measured in a building without the implementation of radon control methods. The radon zone designation of highest priority is Zone 1. Table AF101 of this appendix lists the Zone 1 counties illustrated on the map. More detailed information can be obtained from state-specific booklets (EPA-402-R-93-021 through 070) available through State Radon Offices or from U.S. EPA Regional Offices.

**FIGURE AF101**
**EPA MAP OF RADON ZONES**

**TABLE AF101(1)**
**HIGH RADON POTENTIAL (ZONE 1) COUNTIES[a]**

**ALABAMA**
Calhoun
Clay
Cleburne
Colbert
Coosa
Franklin
Jackson
Lauderdale
Lawrence
Limestone
Madison
Morgan
Talladega

**CALIFORNIA**
Santa Barbara
Ventura

**COLORADO**
Adams
Arapahoe
Baca
Bent
Boulder
Chaffee
Cheyenne
Clear Creek
Crowley
Custer
Delta
Denver
Dolores
Douglas
El Paso
Elbert
Fremont
Garfield
Gilpin
Grand
Gunnison
Huerfano
Jackson
Jefferson
Kiowa
Kit Carson
Lake
Larimer
Las Animas
Lincoln
Logan
Mesa
Moffat
Montezuma
Montrose
Morgan
Otero
Ouray
Park
Phillips
Pitkin
Prowers
Pueblo
Rio Blanco
San Miguel
Summit
Teller
Washington
Weld
Yuma

**CONNECTICUT**
Fairfield
Middlesex
New Haven
New London

**GEORGIA**
Cobb
De Kalb
Fulton
Gwinnett

**IDAHO**
Benewah
Blaine
Boise
Bonner
Boundary
Butte
Camas
Clark
Clearwater
Custer
Elmore
Fremont
Gooding
Idaho
Kootenai
Latah
Lemhi
Shoshone
Valley

**ILLINOIS**
Adams
Boone
Brown
Bureau
Calhoun
Carroll
Cass
Champaign
Coles
De Kalb
De Witt
Douglas
Edgar
Ford
Fulton
Greene
Grundy
Hancock
Henderson
Henry
Iroquois
Jersey
Jo Daviess
Kane
Kendall
Knox
La Salle
Lee
Livingston
Logan
Macon
Marshall
Mason
McDonough
McLean
Menard
Mercer
Morgan
Moultrie
Ogle
Peoria
Piatt
Pike
Putnam
Rock Island
Sangamon
Schuyler
Scott
Stark
Stephenson
Tazewell
Vermilion
Warren
Whiteside
Winnebago
Woodford

**INDIANA**
Adams
Allen
Bartholomew
Benton
Blackford
Boone
Carroll
Cass
Clark
Clinton
De Kalb
Decatur
Delaware
Elkhart
Fayette
Fountain
Fulton
Grant
Hamilton
Hancock
Harrison
Hendricks
Henry
Howard
Huntington
Jay
Jennings
Johnson
Kosciusko
Lagrange
Lawrence
Madison
Marion
Marshall
Miami
Monroe
Montgomery
Noble
Orange
Putnam
Randolph
Rush
Scott
Shelby
Steuben
St. Joseph
Tippecanoe
Tipton
Union
Vermillion
Wabash
Warren
Washington
Wayne
Wells
White
Whitley

**IOWA**
All Counties

**KANSAS**
Atchison
Barton
Brown
Cheyenne
Clay
Cloud
Decatur
Dickinson
Douglas
Ellis
Ellsworth
Finney
Ford
Geary
Gove
Graham
Grant
Gray
Greeley
Hamilton
Haskell
Hodgeman
Jackson
Jewell
Johnson
Kearny
Kingman
Kiowa
Lane
Leavenworth
Lincoln
Logan
Marion
Marshall
McPherson
Meade
Mitchell
Nemaha
Ness
Norton
Osborne
Ottawa
Pawnee
Phillips
Pottawatomie
Pratt
Rawlins
Republic
Rice
Riley
Rooks
Rush
Russell
Saline
Scott
Sheridan
Sherman
Smith
Stanton
Thomas
Trego
Wallace
Washington
Wichita
Wyandotte

**KENTUCKY**
Adair
Allen
Barren
Bourbon
Boyle
Bullitt
Casey
Clark
Cumberland
Fayette
Franklin
Green
Harrison
Hart
Jefferson
Jessamine
Lincoln
Marion
Mercer
Metcalfe
Monroe
Nelson
Pendleton
Pulaski
Robertson
Russell
Scott
Taylor
Warren
Woodford

**MAINE**
Androscoggin
Aroostook
Cumberland
Franklin
Hancock
Kennebec
Lincoln
Oxford
Penobscot
Piscataquis
Somerset
York

**MARYLAND**
Baltimore
Calvert
Carroll
Frederick
Harford
Howard
Montgomery
Washington

**MASS.**
Essex
Middlesex
Worcester

**MICHIGAN**
Branch
Calhoun
Cass
Hillsdale
Jackson
Kalamazoo
Lenawee
St. Joseph
Washtenaw

**MINNESOTA**
Becker
Big Stone
Blue Earth
Brown
Carver
Chippewa
Clay
Cottonwood
Dakota
Dodge
Douglas
Faribault
Fillmore
Freeborn
Goodhue
Grant
Hennepin
Houston
Hubbard
Jackson
Kanabec
Kandiyohi
Kittson
Lac Qui Parle
Le Sueur
Lincoln
Lyon
Mahnomen
Marshall
Martin
McLeod
Meeker
Mower
Murray
Nicollet
Nobles
Norman
Olmsted
Otter Tail
Pennington
Pipestone
Polk
Pope
Ramsey
Red Lake
Redwood
Renville
Rice
Rock
Roseau
Scott
Sherburne
Sibley
Stearns
Steele
Stevens
Swift
Todd
Traverse
Wabasha
Wadena
Waseca
Washington
Watonwan
Wilkin
Winona
Wright
Yellow Medicine

**MISSOURI**
Andrew
Atchison
Buchanan
Cass
Clay
Clinton
Holt
Iron
Jackson
Nodaway
Platte

**MONTANA**
Beaverhead
Big Horn
Blaine
Broadwater
Carbon
Carter
Cascade
Chouteau
Custer
Daniels
Dawson
Deer Lodge
Fallon
Fergus
Flathead
Gallatin
Garfield
Glacier
Granite
Hill
Jefferson
Judith Basin
Lake
Lewis and Clark
Liberty
Lincoln
Madison
McCone
Meagher
Mineral
Missoula
Park
Phillips
Pondera
Powder River
Powell
Prairie
Ravalli
Richland
Roosevelt
Rosebud
Sanders
Sheridan
Silver Bow
Stillwater
Teton
Toole
Valley
Wibaux

a. EPA recommends that this county listing be supplemented with other available State and local data to further understand the radon potential of Zone 1 area.

*(continued)*

**TABLE AF101(1)—continued**
**HIGH RADON POTENTIAL (ZONE 1) COUNTIES[a]**

Yellowstone National Park

**NEBRASKA**
Adams
Boone
Boyd
Burt
Butler
Cass
Cedar
Clay
Colfax
Cuming
Dakota
Dixon
Dodge
Douglas
Fillmore
Franklin
Frontier
Furnas
Gage
Gosper
Greeley
Hamilton
Harlan
Hayes
Hitchcock
Hurston
Jefferson
Johnson
Kearney
Knox
Lancaster
Madison
Nance
Nemaha
Nuckolls
Otoe
Pawnee
Phelps
Pierce
Platte
Polk
Red Willow
Richardson
Saline
Sarpy
Saunders
Seward
Stanton
Thayer
Washington
Wayne
Webster
York

**NEVADA**
Carson City
Douglas
Eureka
Lander
Lincoln
Lyon
Mineral
Pershing
White Pine

**NEW HAMPSHIRE**
Carroll

**NEW JERSEY**
Hunterdon
Mercer
Monmouth
Morris
Somerset
Sussex
Warren

**NEW MEXICO**
Bernalillo
Colfax
Mora
Rio Arriba
San Miguel
Santa Fe
Taos

**NEW YORK**
Albany
Allegany
Broome
Cattaraugus
Cayuga
Chautauqua
Chemung
Chenango
Columbia
Cortland
Delaware
Dutchess
Erie
Genesee
Greene
Livingston
Madison
Onondaga
Ontario
Orange
Otsego
Putnam
Rensselaer
Schoharie
Schuyler
Seneca
Steuben
Sullivan
Tioga
Tompkins
Ulster
Washington
Wyoming
Yates

**N. CAROLINA**
Alleghany
Buncombe
Cherokee
Henderson
Mitchell
Rockingham
Transylvania
Watauga

**N. DAKOTA**
All Counties

**OHIO**
Adams
Allen
Ashland
Auglaize
Belmont
Butler
Carroll
Champaign
Clark
Clinton
Columbiana
Coshocton
Crawford
Darke
Delaware
Fairfield
Fayette
Franklin
Greene
Guernsey
Hamilton
Hancock
Hardin
Harrison
Holmes
Huron
Jefferson
Knox
Licking
Logan
Madison
Marion
Mercer
Miami
Montgomery
Morrow
Muskingum
Perry
Pickaway
Pike
Preble
Richland
Ross
Seneca
Shelby
Stark
Summit
Tuscarawas
Union
Van Wert
Warren
Wayne
Wyandot

**PENNSYLVANIA**
Adams
Allegheny
Armstrong
Beaver
Bedford
Berks
Blair
Bradford
Bucks
Butler
Cameron
Carbon
Centre
Chester
Clarion
Clearfield
Clinton
Columbia
Cumberland
Dauphin
Delaware
Franklin
Fulton
Huntingdon
Indiana
Juniata
Lackawanna
Lancaster
Lebanon
Lehigh
Luzerne
Lycoming
Mifflin
Monroe
Montgomery
Montour
Northampton
Northumberland
Perry
Schuylkill
Snyder
Sullivan
Susquehanna
Tioga
Union
Venango
Westmoreland
Wyoming
York

**RHODE ISLAND**
Kent
Washington

**S. CAROLINA**
Greenville

**S. DAKOTA**
Aurora
Beadle
Bon Homme
Brookings
Brown
Brule
Buffalo
Campbell
Charles Mix
Clark
Clay
Codington
Corson
Davison
Day
Deuel
Douglas
Edmunds
Faulk
Grant
Hamlin
Hand
Hanson
Hughes
Hutchinson
Hyde
Jerauld
Kingsbury
Lake
Lincoln
Lyman
Marshall
McCook
McPherson
Miner
Minnehaha
Moody
Perkins
Potter
Roberts
Sanborn
Spink
Stanley
Sully
Turner
Union
Walworth
Yankton

**TENNESEE**
Anderson
Bedford
Blount
Bradley
Claiborne
Davidson
Giles
Grainger
Greene
Hamblen
Hancock
Hawkins
Hickman
Humphreys
Jackson
Jefferson
Knox
Lawrence
Lewis
Lincoln
Loudon
Marshall
Maury
McMinn
Meigs
Monroe
Moore
Perry
Roane
Rutherford
Smith
Sullivan
Trousdale
Union
Washington
Wayne
Williamson
Wilson

**UTAH**
Carbon
Duchesne
Grand
Piute
Sanpete
Sevier
Uintah

**VIRGINIA**
Alleghany
Amelia
Appomattox
Augusta
Bath
Bland
Botetourt
Bristol
Brunswick
Buckingham
Buena Vista
Campbell
Chesterfield
Clarke
Clifton Forge
Covington
Craig
Cumberland
Danville
Dinwiddie
Fairfax
Falls Church
Fluvanna
Frederick
Fredericksburg
Giles
Goochland
Harrisonburg
Henry
Highland
Lee
Lexington
Louisa
Martinsville
Montgomery
Nottoway
Orange
Page
Patrick
Pittsylvania
Powhatan
Pulaski
Radford
Roanoke
Rockbridge
Rockingham
Russell
Salem
Scott
Shenandoah
Smyth
Spotsylvania
Stafford
Staunton
Tazewell
Warren
Washington
Waynesboro
Winchester
Wythe

**WASHINGTON**
Clark
Ferry
Okanogan
Pend Oreille
Skamania
Spokane
Stevens

**W. VIRGINIA**
Berkeley
Brooke
Grant
Greenbrier
Hampshire
Hancock
Hardy
Jefferson
Marshall
Mercer
Mineral
Monongalia
Monroe
Morgan
Ohio
Pendleton
Pocahontas
Preston
Summers
Wetzel

**WISCONSIN**
Buffalo
Crawford
Dane
Dodge
Door
Fond du Lac
Grant
Green
Green Lake
Iowa
Jefferson
Lafayette
Langlade
Marathon
Menominee
Pepin
Pierce
Portage
Richland
Rock
Shawano
St. Croix
Vernon
Walworth
Washington
Waukesha
Waupaca
Wood

**WYOMING**
Albany
Big Horn
Campbell
Carbon
Converse
Crook
Fremont
Goshen
Hot Springs
Johnson
Laramie
Lincoln
Natrona
Niobrara
Park
Sheridan
Sublette
Sweetwater
Teton
Uinta
Washakie

a. EPA recommends that this county listing be supplemented with other available State and local data to further understand the radon potential of Zone 1 area.

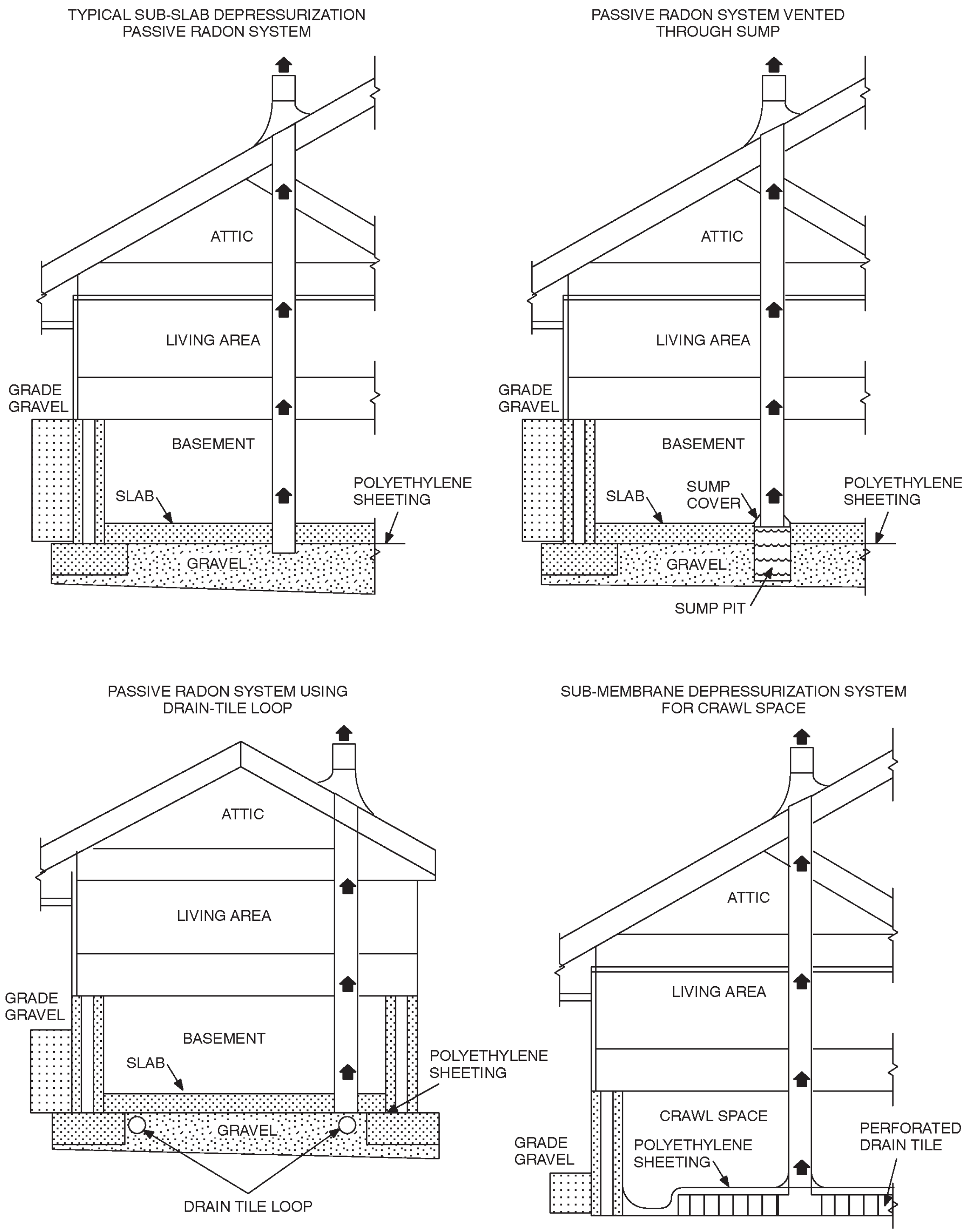



**FIGURE AF102**
**RADON-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION DETAILS FOR FOUR FOUNDATION TYPES**

# APPENDIX G

# SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND HOT TUBS

*(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)*

## SECTION AG101 GENERAL

**AG101.1 General.** The provisions of this appendix shall control the design and construction of swimming pools, spas and hot tubs installed in or on the *lot* of a one- or two-family dwelling.

**AG101.2 Pools in flood hazard areas.** Pools that are located in flood hazard areas established by Table R301.2(1), including above-ground pools, on-ground pools and in-ground pools that involve placement of fill, shall comply with Sections AG101.2.1 or AG101.2.2.

**Exception:** Pools located in riverine flood hazard areas which are outside of designated floodways.

**AG101.2.1 Pools located in designated floodways.** Where pools are located in designated floodways, documentation shall be submitted to the *building official*, which demonstrates that the construction of the pool will not increase the design flood elevation at any point within the *jurisdiction*.

**AG101.2.2 Pools located where floodways have not been designated.** Where pools are located where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the applicant shall provide a floodway analysis that demonstrates that the proposed pool will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the *jurisdiction*.

## SECTION AG102 DEFINITIONS

**AG102.1 General.** For the purposes of these requirements, the terms used shall be defined as follows and as set forth in Chapter 2.

**ABOVE-GROUND/ON-GROUND POOL.** See "Swimming pool."

**BARRIER.** A fence, wall, building wall or combination thereof which completely surrounds the swimming pool and obstructs access to the swimming pool.

**HOT TUB.** See "Swimming pool."

**IN-GROUND POOL.** See "Swimming pool."

**RESIDENTIAL.** That which is situated on the premises of a detached one- or two-family dwelling or a one-family *townhouse* not more than three stories in height.

**SPA, NONPORTABLE.** See "Swimming pool."

**SPA, PORTABLE.** A nonpermanent structure intended for recreational bathing, in which all controls, water-heating and water-circulating *equipment* are an integral part of the product.

**SWIMMING POOL.** Any structure intended for swimming or recreational bathing that contains water over 24 inches (610 mm) deep. This includes in-ground, above-ground and on-ground swimming pools, hot tubs and spas.

**SWIMMING POOL, INDOOR.** A swimming pool which is totally contained within a structure and surrounded on all four sides by the walls of the enclosing structure.

**SWIMMING POOL, OUTDOOR.** Any swimming pool which is not an indoor pool.

## SECTION AG103 SWIMMING POOLS

**AG103.1 In-ground pools.** In-ground pools shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/NSPI-5 as listed in Section AG108.

**AG103.2 Above-ground and on-ground pools.** Above-ground and on-ground pools shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/NSPI-4 as listed in Section AG108.

**AG103.3 Pools in flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas established by Table R301.2(1), pools in coastal high hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ASCE 24.

## SECTION AG104 SPAS AND HOT TUBS

**AG104.1 Permanently installed spas and hot tubs.** Permanently installed spas and hot tubs shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/NSPI-3 as listed in Section AG108.

**AG104.2 Portable spas and hot tubs.** Portable spas and hot tubs shall be designed and constructed in conformance with ANSI/NSPI-6 as listed in Section AG108.

## SECTION AG105 BARRIER REQUIREMENTS

**AG105.1 Application.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the design of barriers for residential swimming pools, spas and hot tubs. These design controls are intended to provide protection against potential drownings and near-drownings by restricting access to swimming pools, spas and hot tubs.

**AG105.2 Outdoor swimming pool.** An outdoor swimming pool, including an in-ground, above-ground or on-ground pool, hot tub or spa shall be surrounded by a barrier which shall comply with the following:

1. The top of the barrier shall be at least 48 inches (1219 mm) above *grade* measured on the side of the barrier which faces away from the swimming pool. The maximum vertical clearance between grade and the bottom of

the barrier shall be 2 inches (51 mm) measured on the side of the barrier which faces away from the swimming pool. Where the top of the pool structure is above grade, such as an above-ground pool, the barrier may be at ground level, such as the pool structure, or mounted on top of the pool structure. Where the barrier is mounted on top of the pool structure, the maximum vertical clearance between the top of the pool structure and the bottom of the barrier shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

2. Openings in the barrier shall not allow passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere.
3. Solid barriers which do not have openings, such as a masonry or stone wall, shall not contain indentations or protrusions except for normal construction tolerances and tooled masonry joints.
4. Where the barrier is composed of horizontal and vertical members and the distance between the tops of the horizontal members is less than 45 inches (1143 mm), the horizontal members shall be located on the swimming pool side of the fence. Spacing between vertical members shall not exceed $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm) in width. Where there are decorative cutouts within vertical members, spacing within the cutouts shall not exceed $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm) in width.
5. Where the barrier is composed of horizontal and vertical members and the distance between the tops of the horizontal members is 45 inches (1143 mm) or more, spacing between vertical members shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm). Where there are decorative cutouts within vertical members, spacing within the cutouts shall not exceed $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm) in width.
6. Maximum mesh size for chain link fences shall be a $2^1/_4$-inch (57 mm) square unless the fence has slats fastened at the top or the bottom which reduce the openings to not more than $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm).
7. Where the barrier is composed of diagonal members, such as a lattice fence, the maximum opening formed by the diagonal members shall not be more than $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm).
8. Access gates shall comply with the requirements of Section AG105.2, Items 1 through 7, and shall be equipped to accommodate a locking device. Pedestrian access gates shall open outward away from the pool and shall be self-closing and have a self-latching device. Gates other than pedestrian access gates shall have a self-latching device. Where the release mechanism of the self-latching device is located less than 54 inches (1372 mm) from the bottom of the gate, the release mechanism and openings shall comply with the following:
    - 8.1. The release mechanism shall be located on the pool side of the gate at least 3 inches (76 mm) below the top of the gate; and
    - 8.2. The gate and barrier shall have no opening larger than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) within 18 inches (457 mm) of the release mechanism.
9. Where a wall of a *dwelling* serves as part of the barrier, one of the following conditions shall be met:
    - 9.1. The pool shall be equipped with a powered safety cover in compliance with ASTM F 1346; or
    - 9.2. Doors with direct access to the pool through that wall shall be equipped with an alarm which produces an audible warning when the door and/or its screen, if present, are opened. The alarm shall be listed and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2017. The deactivation switch(es) shall be located at least 54 inches (1372 mm) above the threshold of the door; or
    - 9.3. Other means of protection, such as self-closing doors with self-latching devices, which are *approved* by the governing body, shall be acceptable as long as the degree of protection afforded is not less than the protection afforded by Item 9.1 or 9.2 described above.
10. Where an above-ground pool structure is used as a barrier or where the barrier is mounted on top of the pool structure, and the means of access is a ladder or steps:
    - 10.1. The ladder or steps shall be capable of being secured, locked or removed to prevent access; or
    - 10.2. The ladder or steps shall be surrounded by a barrier which meets the requirements of Section AG105.2, Items 1 through 9. When the ladder or steps are secured, locked or removed, any opening created shall not allow the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere.

**AG105.3 Indoor swimming pool.** Walls surrounding an indoor swimming pool shall comply with Section AG105.2, Item 9.

**AG105.4 Prohibited locations.** Barriers shall be located to prohibit permanent structures, *equipment* or similar objects from being used to climb them.

**AG105.5 Barrier exceptions.** Spas or hot tubs with a safety cover which complies with ASTM F 1346, as listed in Section AG107, shall be exempt from the provisions of this appendix.

## SECTION AG106 ENTRAPMENT PROTECTION FOR SWIMMING POOL AND SPA SUCTION OUTLETS

**AG106.1 General.** Suction outlets shall be designed and installed in accordance with ANSI/APSP-7.

## SECTION AG107
## ABBREVIATIONS

**AG107.1 General.**

ANSI—American National Standards Institute
11 West 42nd Street
New York, NY 10036

APSP—Association of Pool and Spa Professionals
NSPI—National Spa and Pool Institute
2111 Eisenhower Avenue
Alexandria, VA 22314

ASCE—American Society of Civil Engineers
1801 Alexander Bell Drive
Reston, VA 98411-0700

ASTM—ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive,
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

UL—Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

## SECTION AG108
## STANDARDS

**AG108.1 General.**

**ANSI/NSPI**

ANSI/NSPI-3-99 Standard for
Permanently Installed Residential Spas . . . . . . . . . . AG104.1

ANSI/NSPI-4-99 Standard for Above-ground/
On-ground Residential Swimming Pools . . . . . . . . . AG103.2

ANSI/NSPI-5-2003 Standard for
Residential In-ground Swimming Pools. . . . . . . . . . AG103.1

ANSI/NSPI-6-99 Standard for
Residential Portable Spas . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AG104.2

**ANSI/APSP**

ANSI/APSP-7-06 Standard for Suction Entrapment
avoidance in Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, Spas,
Hot Tubs and Catch Basins. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AG106.1

**ASCE**

ASCE/SEI-24-05 Flood Resistant
Design and Construction. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AG103.3

**ASTM**

ASTM F 1346-91 (2003) Performance
Specification for Safety Covers and Labeling
Requirements for All Covers for Swimming Pools,
Spas and Hot Tubs . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AG105.2, AG105.5

**UL**

UL 2017-2000 Standard for General-purpose
Signaling Devices and Systems—with Revisions
through June 2004. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AG105.2

# APPENDIX H

# PATIO COVERS

***(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)***

## SECTION AH101
## GENERAL

**AH101.1 Scope.** Patio covers shall conform to the requirements of this appendix chapter.

## SECTION AH102
## DEFINITION

**Patio covers.** One-story structures not exceeding 12 feet (3657 mm) in height. Enclosure walls shall be permitted to be of any configuration, provided the open or glazed area of the longer wall and one additional wall is equal to at least 65 percent of the area below a minimum of 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) of each wall, measured from the floor. Openings shall be permitted to be enclosed with (1) insect screening, (2) *approved* translucent or transparent plastic not more than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) in thickness, (3) glass conforming to the provisions of Section R308, or (4) any combination of the foregoing.

## SECTION AH103
## PERMITTED USES

**AH103.1 General.** Patio covers shall be permitted to be detached from or attached to *dwelling units*. Patio covers shall be used only for recreational, outdoor living purposes and not as carports, garages, storage rooms or habitable rooms.

## SECTION AH104
## DESIGN LOADS

**AH104.1 General.** Patio covers shall be designed and constructed to sustain, within the stress limits of this code, all dead loads plus a minimum vertical live load of 10 pounds per square foot (0.48 kN/m$^2$) except that snow loads shall be used where such snow loads exceed this minimum. Such covers shall be designed to resist the minimum wind loads set forth in Section R301.2.1.

## SECTION AH105
## LIGHT AND VENTILATION/EMERGENCY EGRESS

**AH105.1 General.** Exterior openings required for light and ventilation shall be permitted to open into a patio structure con-forming to Section AH101, provided that the patio structure shall be unenclosed if such openings are serving as emergency egress or rescue openings from sleeping rooms. Where such exterior openings serve as an exit from the *dwelling unit*, the patio structure, unless unenclosed, shall be provided with exits conforming to the provisions of Section R310 of this code.

## SECTION AH106
## FOOTINGS

**AH106.1 General.** In areas with a frostline depth of zero as specified in Table R301.2(1), a patio cover shall be permitted to be supported on a slab on *grade* without footings, provided the slab conforms to the provisions of Section R506 of this code, is not less than 3.5 inches (89 mm) thick and the columns do not support live and dead loads in excess of 750 pounds (3.34 kN) per column.

## SECTION AH107
## SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR ALUMINUM SCREEN ENCLOSURES IN HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS

**AH107.1 General.** Screen enclosures in *hurricane-prone regions* shall be in accordance with the provisions of this Section.

**AH107.1.1 Habitable spaces.** Screen enclosures shall not be considered *habitable spaces*.

**AH107.1.2 Minimum ceiling height.** Screen enclosures shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**AH107.2 Definitions.**

**SCREEN ENCLOSURE.** A building or part thereof, in whole or in part self-supporting, and having walls of insect screening and a roof of insect screening, plastic, aluminum, or similar lightweight material.

**AH107.3 Screen enclosures.**

**AH107.3.1 Thickness.** Actual wall thickness of extruded aluminum members shall be not less than 0.040 inches (1.02 mm).

**AH107.3.2 Density.** Screen density shall be a maximum of 20 threads per inch by 20 threads per inch mesh.

**AH107.4 Design.**

**AH107.4.1 Wind load.** Structural members supporting screen enclosures shall be designed to support minimum wind loads given in Table AH107.4(1) and AH107.4(2). Where any value is less than 10 psf (0.479 kN/m$^2$) use 10 psf (0.479 kN/m$^2$).

**AH107.4.2 Deflection limit.** For members supporting screen surfaces only, the total load deflection shall not exceed *l/60*. Screen surfaces shall be permitted to include a maximum of 25 percent solid flexible finishes.

**AH107.4.3 Importance factor.** The wind factor for screen enclosures shall be 0.77 in accordance with Section 6.5.5 of ASCE 7.

**AH107.4.4 Roof live load.** The minimum roof live load shall be 10 psf (0.479 kN/m$^2$).

**AH107.5 Footings.** In areas with a frost line is zero, a screen enclosure shall be permitted to be supported on a concrete slab on *grade* without footings, provided the slab conforms to the provisions of Section R506, is not less than 3$^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) thick, and the columns do not support loads in excess of 750 pounds (3.36 kN) per column.

**TABLE AH107.4(1)**
**DESIGN WIND PRESSURES FOR ALUMINUM SCREEN ENCLOSURE FRAMING WITH AN IMPORTANCE FACTOR OF 0.77[a, b, c]**

| LOAD CASE | WALL | Basic Wind Speed (mph) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 100 | | 110 | | 120 | | 130 | | 140 | | 150 | |
| | | Exposure Category Design Pressure (psf) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | C | B | C | B | C | B | C | B | C | B | C | B |
| A[d] | Windward and leeward walls (flow thru) and windward wall (non-flow thru) L/W = 0-1 | 12 | 8 | 14 | 10 | 17 | 12 | 19 | 14 | 23 | 16 | 26 | 18 |
| A[d] | Windward and leeward walls (flow thru) and windward wall (non-flow thru) L/W = 2 | 13 | 9 | 16 | 11 | 19 | 14 | 22 | 16 | 26 | 18 | 30 | 21 |
| B[e] | Windward: Non-gable roof | 16 | 12 | 20 | 14 | 24 | 17 | 28 | 20 | 32 | 23 | 37 | 26 |
| B[e] | Windward: Gable roof | 22 | 16 | 27 | 19 | 32 | 23 | 38 | 27 | 44 | 31 | 50 | 36 |
| | ROOF | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| All[f] | Roof-screen | 4 | 3 | 5 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 7 | 5 | 8 | 6 | 9 | 7 |
| All[f] | Roof-solid | 12 | 9 | 15 | 11 | 18 | 13 | 21 | 15 | 24 | 17 | 28 | 20 |

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.44 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Values have been reduced for 0.77 Importance Factor in accordance with Section AH107.4.3.
b. Minimum design pressure shall be 10 psf in accordance with Section AH107.4.1.
c. Loads are applicable to screen enclosures with a mean roof height of 30 feet or less. For screen enclosures of different heights the pressures given shall be adjusted by multiplying the table pressure by the adjustment factor given in Table AH107.4(2).
d. For Load Case A flow thru condition the pressure given shall be applied simultaneously to both the upwind and downwind screen walls acting in the same direction as the wind. The structure shall also be analyzed for wind coming from the opposite direction. For the non-flow thru condition the screen enclosure wall shall be analyzed for the load applied acting toward the interior of the enclosure.
e. For Load Case B the table pressure multiplied by the projected frontal area of the screen enclosure is the total drag force, including drag on screen surfaces parallel to the wind, which must be transmitted to the ground. Use Load Case A for members directly supporting the screen surface perpendicular to the wind. Load Case B loads shall be applied only to structural members which carry wind loads from more than one surface.
f. The roof structure shall be analyzed for the pressure given occurring both upward and downward.

**TABLE AH107.4(2)**
**HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT FACTORS**

| MEAN | EXPOSURE | |
|---|---|---|
| Roof Height (ft) | B | C |
| 15 | 1 | 0.86 |
| 20 | 1 | 0.92 |
| 25 | 1 | 0.96 |
| 30 | 1 | 1.00 |
| 35 | 1.05 | 1.03 |
| 40 | 1.09 | 1.06 |
| 45 | 1.12 | 1.09 |
| 50 | 1.16 | 1.11 |
| 55 | 1.19 | 1.14 |
| 60 | 1.22 | 1.16 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

# APPENDIX I
# PRIVATE SEWAGE DISPOSAL

***(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)***

## SECTION AI101
## GENERAL

**AI101.1 Scope.** Private sewage disposal systems shall conform to the *International Private Sewage Disposal Code.*

# APPENDIX J

# EXISTING BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES

***(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)***

## SECTION AJ101
## PURPOSE AND INTENT

**AJ101.1 General.** The purpose of these provisions is to encourage the continued use or reuse of legally existing buildings and structures. These provisions are intended to permit work in existing buildings that is consistent with the purpose of the *International Residential Code*. Compliance with these provisions shall be deemed to meet the requirements of the *International Residential Code*.

**AJ101.2 Classification of work.** For purposes of this appendix, all work in existing buildings shall be classified into the categories of repair, renovation, *alteration* and reconstruction. Specific requirements are established for each category of work in these provisions.

**AJ101.3 Multiple categories of work.** Work of more than one category may be part of a single work project. All related work permitted within a 12-month period shall be considered a single work project. Where a project includes one category of work in one building area and another category of work in a separate and unrelated area of the building, each project area shall comply with the requirements of the respective category of work. Where a project with more than one category of work is performed in the same area or in related areas of the building, the project shall comply with the requirements of the more stringent category of work.

## SECTION AJ102
## COMPLIANCE

**AJ102.1 General.** Regardless of the category of work being performed, the work shall not cause the structure to become unsafe or adversely affect the performance of the building; shall not cause an existing mechanical or plumbing system to become unsafe, hazardous, insanitary or overloaded; and unless expressly permitted by these provisions, shall not make the building any less conforming to this code or to any previously *approved* alternative arrangements than it was before the work was undertaken.

**AJ102.2 Requirements by category of work.** Repairs shall conform to the requirements of Section AJ301. Renovations shall conform to the requirements of Section AJ401. *Alterations* shall conform to the requirements of Section AJ501 and the requirements for renovations. Reconstructions shall conform to the requirements of Section AJ601 and the requirements for *alterations* and renovations.

**AJ102.3 Smoke detectors.** Regardless of the category of work, smoke detectors shall be provided where required by Section R314.3.1.

**AJ102.4 Replacement windows.** Regardless of the category of work, when an existing window, including sash and glazed portion is replaced, the replacement window shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 11.

**AJ102.5 Flood hazard areas.** Work performed in existing buildings located in a flood hazard area as established by Table R301.2(1) shall be subject to the provisions of Section R105.3.1.1.

**AJ102.6 Equivalent alternatives.** These provisions are not intended to prevent the use of any alternate material, alternate design or alternate method of construction not specifically prescribed herein, provided any alternate has been deemed to be equivalent and its use authorized by the *building official*.

**AJ102.7 Other alternatives.** Where compliance with these provisions or with this code as required by these provisions is technically infeasible or would impose disproportionate costs because of structural, construction or dimensional difficulties, other alternatives may be accepted by the *building official*. These alternatives may include materials, design features and/or operational features.

**AJ102.8 More restrictive requirements.** Buildings or systems in compliance with the requirements of this code for new construction shall not be required to comply with any more restrictive requirement of these provisions.

**AJ102.9 Features exceeding *International Residential Code* requirements.** Elements, components and systems of existing buildings with features that exceed the requirements of this code for new construction, and are not otherwise required as part of *approved* alternative arrangements or deemed by the *building official* to be required to balance other building elements not complying with this code for new construction, shall not be prevented by these provisions from being modified as long as they remain in compliance with the applicable requirements for new construction.

## SECTION AJ103
## PRELIMINARY MEETING

**AJ103.1 General.** If a building *permit* is required at the request of the prospective *permit* applicant, the *building official* or his designee shall meet with the prospective applicant to discuss plans for any proposed work under these provisions prior to the application for the *permit*. The purpose of this preliminary meeting is for the *building official* to gain an understanding of the prospective applicant's intentions for the proposed work, and to determine, together with the prospective applicant, the specific applicability of these provisions.

## SECTION AJ104
## EVALUATION OF AN EXISTING BUILDING

**AJ104.1 General.** The *building official* may require an existing building to be investigated and evaluated by a registered design professional in the case of proposed reconstruction of any portion of a building. The evaluation shall determine the existence of any potential nonconformities with these provisions, and shall provide a basis for determining the impact of the proposed changes on the performance of the building. The evaluation shall use the following sources of information, as applicable:

1. Available documentation of the existing building.
   1.1. Field surveys.
   1.2. Tests (nondestructive and destructive).
   1.3. Laboratory analysis.

**Exception:** Detached one- or two-family dwellings that are not irregular buildings under Section R301.2.2.2.5 and are not undergoing an extensive reconstruction shall not be required to be evaluated.

## SECTION AJ105 PERMIT

**AJ105.1 Identification of work area.** The work area shall be clearly identified on all *permits* issued under these provisions.

## SECTION AJ201 DEFINITIONS

**AJ201.1 General.** For purposes of this appendix, the terms used are defined as follows.

**ALTERATION.** The reconfiguration of any space, the *addition* or elimination of any door or window, the reconfiguration or extension of any system, or the installation of any additional *equipment*.

**CATEGORIES OF WORK.** The nature and extent of construction work undertaken in an existing building. The categories of work covered in this Appendix, listed in increasing order of stringency of requirements, are repair, renovation, *alteration* and reconstruction.

**DANGEROUS.** Where the stresses in any member; the condition of the building, or any of its components or elements or attachments; or other condition that results in an overload exceeding 150 percent of the stress allowed for the member or material in this code.

**EQUIPMENT OR FIXTURE.** Any plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, air conditioning, refrigerating and fire protection *equipment*, and elevators, dumb waiters, boilers, pressure vessels, and other mechanical facilities or installations that are related to building services.

**LOAD-BEARING ELEMENT.** Any column, girder, beam, joist, truss, rafter, wall, floor or roof sheathing that supports any vertical load in addition to its own weight, and/or any lateral load.

**MATERIALS AND METHODS REQUIREMENTS.** Those requirements in this code that specify material standards; details of installation and connection; joints; penetrations; and continuity of any element, component or system in the building. The required quantity, fire resistance, flame spread, acoustic or thermal performance, or other performance attribute is specifically excluded from materials and methods requirements.

**RECONSTRUCTION.** The reconfiguration of a space that affects an exit, a renovation and/or *alteration* when the work area is not permitted to be occupied because existing means of egress and fire protection systems, or their equivalent, are not in place or continuously maintained; and/or there are extensive *alterations* as defined in Section AJ501.3.

**REHABILITATION.** Any repair, renovation, *alteration* or reconstruction work undertaken in an existing building.

**RENOVATION.** The change, strengthening or *addition* of load-bearing elements; and/or the refinishing, replacement, bracing, strengthening, upgrading or extensive repair of existing materials, elements, components, *equipment* and/or fixtures. Renovation involves no reconfiguration of spaces. Interior and exterior painting are not considered refinishing for purposes of this definition, and are not renovation.

**REPAIR.** The patching, restoration and/or minor replacement of materials, elements, components, *equipment* and/or fixtures for the purposes of maintaining those materials, elements, components, *equipment* and/or fixtures in good or sound condition.

**WORK AREA.** That portion of a building affected by any renovation, *alteration* or reconstruction work as initially intended by the owner and indicated as such in the *permit*. Work area excludes other portions of the building where incidental work entailed by the intended work must be performed, and portions of the building where work not initially intended by the owner is specifically required by these provisions for a renovation, *alteration* or reconstruction.

## SECTION AJ301 REPAIRS

**AJ301.1 Materials.** Except as otherwise required herein, work shall be done using like materials or materials permitted by this code for new construction.

**AJ301.1.1 Hazardous materials.** Hazardous materials no longer permitted, such as asbestos and lead-based paint, shall not be used.

**AJ301.1.2 Plumbing materials and supplies.** The following plumbing materials and supplies shall not be used:

1. All-purpose solvent cement, unless listed for the specific application;
2. Flexible traps and tailpieces, unless listed for the specific application; and
3. Solder having more than 0.2 percent lead in the repair of potable water systems.

**AJ301.2 Water closets.** When any water closet is replaced with a newly manufactured water closet, the replacement water closet shall comply with the requirements of Section P2903.2.

**AJ301.3 Safety glazing.** Replacement glazing in hazardous locations shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of Section R308.1.

**AJ301.4 Electrical.** Repair or replacement of existing electrical wiring and *equipment* undergoing repair with like material shall be permitted.

**Exceptions:**

1. Replacement of electrical receptacles shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 34 through 43.
2. Plug fuses of the Edison-base type shall be used for replacements only where there is no evidence of overfusing or tampering per the applicable requirements of Chapters 34 through 43.
3. For replacement of nongrounding-type receptacles with grounding-type receptacles and for branch circuits that do not have an *equipment* grounding conductor in the branch circuitry, the grounding conductor of a grounding type receptacle outlet shall be permitted to be grounded to any accessible point on the grounding electrode system, or to any accessible point on the grounding electrode conductor, as allowed and described in Chapters 34 through 43.

## SECTION AJ401 RENOVATIONS

**AJ401.1 Materials and methods.** The work shall comply with the materials and methods requirements of this code.

**AJ401.2 Door and window dimensions.** Minor reductions in the clear opening dimensions of replacement doors and windows that result from the use of different materials shall be allowed, whether or not they are permitted by this code.

**AJ401.3 Interior finish.** Wood paneling and textile wall coverings used as an interior finish shall comply with the flame spread requirements of Section R302.9.

**AJ401.4 Structural.** Unreinforced masonry buildings located in Seismic Design Category $D_2$ or E shall have parapet bracing and wall anchors installed at the roofline whenever a reroofing *permit* is issued. Such parapet bracing and wall anchors shall be of an *approved* design.

## SECTION AJ501 ALTERATIONS

**AJ501.1 Newly constructed elements.** Newly constructed elements, components and systems shall comply with the requirements of this code.

**Exceptions:**

1. Openable windows may be added without requiring compliance with the light and ventilation requirements of Section R303.
2. Newly installed electrical *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of Section AJ501.5.

**AJ501.2 Nonconformities.** The work shall not increase the extent of noncompliance with the requirements of Section AJ601, or create nonconformity with those requirements which did not previously exist.

**AJ501.3 Extensive alterations.** When the total area of all the work areas included in an *alteration* exceeds 50 percent of the area of the *dwelling unit*, the work shall be considered as a reconstruction and shall comply with the requirements of these provisions for reconstruction work.

**Exception:** Work areas in which the *alteration* work is exclusively plumbing, mechanical or electrical shall not be included in the computation of total area of all work areas.

**AJ501.4 Structural.** The minimum design loads for the structure shall be the loads applicable at the time the building was constructed, provided that no dangerous condition is created. Structural elements that are uncovered during the course of the *alteration* and that are found to be unsound or dangerous shall be made to comply with the applicable requirements of this code.

**AJ501.5 Electrical equipment and wiring.**

**AJ501.5.1 Materials and methods.** Newly installed electrical *equipment* and wiring relating to work done in any work area shall comply with the materials and methods requirements of Chapters 34 through 43.

**Exception:** Electrical *equipment* and wiring in newly installed partitions and ceilings shall comply with all applicable requirements of Chapters 34 through 43.

**AJ501.5.2 Electrical service.** Service to the *dwelling unit* shall be a minimum of 100 ampere, three-wire capacity and service *equipment* shall be dead front having no live parts exposed that could allow accidental contact. Type “S” fuses shall be installed when fused *equipment* is used.

**Exception:** Existing service of 60 ampere, three-wire capacity, and feeders of 30 ampere or larger two- or three-wire capacity shall be accepted if adequate for the electrical load being served.

**AJ501.5.3 Additional electrical requirements.** When the work area includes any of the following areas within a *dwelling unit*, the requirements of Sections AJ501.5.3.1 through AJ501.5.3.5 shall apply.

**AJ501.5.3.1 Enclosed areas.** Enclosed areas other than closets, kitchens, *basements*, garages, hallways, laundry areas and bathrooms shall have a minimum of two duplex receptacle outlets, or one duplex receptacle outlet and one ceiling or wall type lighting outlet.

**AJ501.5.3.2 Kitchen and laundry areas.** Kitchen areas shall have a minimum of two duplex receptacle outlets. Laundry areas shall have a minimum of one duplex receptacle outlet located near the laundry *equipment* and installed on an independent circuit.

**AJ501.5.3.3 Ground-fault circuit-interruption.** Ground fault circuit interruption shall be provided on newly installed receptacle outlets if required by Chapters 34 through 43.

**AJ501.5.3.4 Lighting outlets.** At least one lighting outlet shall be provided in every bathroom, hallway, stairway, attached garage and detached garage with electric power to illuminate outdoor entrances and exits, and in utility rooms and *basements* where these spaces are used for storage or contain *equipment* requiring service.

**AJ501.5.3.5 Clearance.** Clearance for electrical service *equipment* shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 34 through 43.

**AJ501.6 Ventilation.** All reconfigured spaces intended for occupancy and all spaces converted to habitable or occupiable space in any work area shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section R303.

**AJ501.7 Ceiling height.** *Habitable spaces* created in existing *basements* shall have ceiling heights of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm). Obstructions may project to within 6 feet 4 inches (1930 mm) of the *basement* floor. Existing finished ceiling heights in nonhabitable spaces in *basements* shall not be reduced.

**AJ501.8 Stairs.**

**AJ501.8.1 Stair width.** Existing *basement* stairs and handrails not otherwise being altered or modified shall be permitted to maintain their current clear width at, above, and below existing handrails.

**AJ501.8.2 Stair headroom.** Headroom height on existing *basement* stairs being altered or modified shall not be reduced below the existing stairway finished headroom. Existing *basement* stairs not otherwise being altered shall be permitted to maintain the current finished headroom.

**AJ501.8.3 Stair landing.** Landings serving existing *basement* stairs being altered or modified shall not be reduced below the existing stairway landing depth and width. Existing *basement* stairs not otherwise being altered shall be permitted to maintain the current landing depth and width.

## SECTION AJ601
## RECONSTRUCTION

**AJ601.1 Stairways, handrails and guards.**

**AJ601.1.1 Stairways.** Stairways within the work area shall be provided with illumination in accordance with Section R303.6.

**AJ601.1.2 Handrails.** Every required exit stairway that has four or more risers, is part of the means of egress for any work area, and is not provided with at least one handrail, or in which the existing handrails are judged to be in danger of collapsing, shall be provided with handrails designed and installed in accordance with Section R311 for the full length of the run of steps on at least one side.

**AJ601.1.3 Guards.** Every open portion of a stair, landing or balcony that is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or *grade* below, is part of the egress path for any work area, and does not have guards or in which the existing guards are judged to be in danger of collapsing, shall be provided with guards designed and installed in accordance with Section R312.

**AJ601.2 Wall and ceiling finish.** The interior finish of walls and ceilings in any work area shall comply with the requirements of Section R302.9. Existing interior finish materials that do not comply with those requirements shall be removed or shall be treated with an *approved* fire-retardant coating in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to secure compliance with the requirements of this section.

**AJ601.3 Separation walls.** Where the work area is in an attached *dwelling unit*, walls separating *dwelling units* that are not continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof sheathing shall be constructed to provide a continuous fire separation using construction materials consistent with the existing wall or complying with the requirements for new structures. Performance of work shall be required only on the side of the wall of the *dwelling unit* that is part of the work area.

**AJ601.4 Ceiling height.** *Habitable spaces* created in existing *basements* shall be permitted to have ceiling heights of not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm). Obstructions may project to within 6 feet 4 inches (1930 mm) of the *basement* floor. Existing finished ceiling heights in nonhabitable spaces in *basements* shall not be reduced.

# APPENDIX K

# SOUND TRANSMISSION

***(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)***

## SECTION AK101
## GENERAL

**AK101.1 General.** Wall and floor-ceiling assemblies separating *dwelling units* including those separating adjacent *townhouse* units shall provide air-borne sound insulation for walls, and both air-borne and impact sound insulation for floor-ceiling assemblies.

## SECTION AK102
## AIR-BORNE SOUND

**AK102.1 General.** Air-borne sound insulation for wall and floor-ceiling assemblies shall meet a Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating of 45 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 90. Penetrations or openings in construction assemblies for piping; electrical devices; recessed cabinets; bathtubs; soffits; or heating, ventilating or exhaust ducts shall be sealed, lined, insulated or otherwise treated to maintain the required ratings. *Dwelling unit* entrance doors, which share a common space, shall be tight fitting to the frame and sill.

**AK102.1.1 Masonry.** The sound transmission class of concrete masonry and clay masonry assemblies shall be calculated in accordance with TMS 0302 or determined through testing in accordance with ASTM E 90.

## SECTION AK103
## STRUCTURAL-BORNE SOUND

**AK103.1 General.** Floor/ceiling assemblies between *dwelling units* or between a *dwelling unit* and a public or service area within a structure shall have an Impact Insulation Class (IIC) rating of not less than 45 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 492.

## SECTION AK104
## REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASTM E 90-04 Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements . . . . . . . AK102

ASTM E 492-04 Specification for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission through Floor-ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AK103

**The Masonry Society**

TMS 0302-07 Standard for Determining the Sound Transmission Class Rating for Masonry Walls. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AK102.1.1

# APPENDIX L

# PERMIT FEES

*(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)*

| TOTAL VALUATION | FEE |
|---|---|
| \$1 to \$ 500 | \$24 |
| \$501 to \$2,000 | \$24 for the first \$500; plus \$3 for each additional \$ 100 or fraction thereof, to and including \$2,000 |
| \$2,001 to \$40,000 | \$69 for the first \$2,000; plus \$11 for each additional \$1,000 or fraction thereof, to and including \$40,000 |
| \$40,001 to \$100,000 | \$487 for the first \$40,000; plus \$9 for each additional \$1,000 or fraction thereof, to and including \$100,000 |
| \$100,001 to \$500,000 | \$1,027 for the first \$100,000; plus \$7 for each additional \$1,000 or fraction thereof, to and including \$500,000 |
| \$500,001 to \$1,000,000 | \$3,827 for the first \$500,000; plus \$5 for each additional \$1,000 or fraction thereof, to and including \$1,000,000 |
| \$1,000,001 to \$5,000,000 | \$6,327 for the first \$1,000,000; plus \$3 for each additional \$1,000 or fraction thereof, to and including \$5,000,000 |
| \$5,000,001 and over | \$18,327 for the first \$ 5,000,000; plus \$1 for each additional \$1,000 or fraction thereof |

# APPENDIX M
# HOME DAY CARE—R-3 OCCUPANCY

*(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)*

## SECTION AM101 GENERAL

**AM101.1 General.** This appendix shall apply to a home day care operated within a *dwelling*. It is to include buildings and structures occupied by persons of any age who receive custodial care for less than 24 hours by individuals other than parents or guardians or relatives by blood, marriage, or adoption, and in a place other than the home of the person cared for.

## SECTION AM102 DEFINITIONS

**EXIT ACCESS.** That portion of a means of egress system that leads from any occupied point in a building or structure to an exit.

## SECTION AM103 MEANS OF EGRESS

**AM103.1 Exits required.** If the occupant load of the residence is more than nine, including those who are residents, during the time of operation of the day care, two exits are required from the ground-level *story*. Two exits are required from a home day care operated in a *manufactured home* regardless of the occupant load. Exits shall comply with Section R311.

**AM103.1.1 Exit access prohibited.** An exit access from the area of day-care operation shall not pass through bathrooms, bedrooms, closets, garages, fenced rear *yards* or similar areas.

**Exception:** An exit may discharge into a fenced *yard* if the gate or gates remain unlocked during day-care hours. The gates may be locked if there is an area of refuge located within the fenced *yard* and more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the *dwelling*. The area of refuge shall be large enough to allow 5 square feet (0.5 $m^2$) per occupant.

**AM103.1.2 Basements.** If the *basement* of a *dwelling* is to be used in the day-care operation, two exits are required from the *basement* regardless of the occupant load. One of the exits may pass through the *dwelling* and the other must lead directly to the exterior of the *dwelling*.

**Exception:** An emergency and escape window complying with Section R310 and which does not conflict with Section AM103.1.1 may be used as the second means of egress from a *basement*.

**AM103.1.3 Yards.** If the *yard* is to be used as part of the day-care operation it shall be fenced.

**AM103.1.3.1 Type of fence and hardware.** The fence shall be of durable materials and be at least 6 feet (1529 mm) tall completely enclosing the area used for the day-care operations. Each opening shall be a gate or door equipped with a self-closing and self-latching device to be installed at a minimum of 5 feet (1528 mm) above the ground.

**Exception:** The door of any *dwelling* which forms part of the enclosure need not be equipped with self-closing and self-latching devices.

**AM103.1.3.2 Construction of fence.** Openings in the fence, wall or enclosure required by this section shall have intermediate rails or an ornamental pattern that do not allow a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter to pass through. In addition, the following criteria must be met:

1. The maximum vertical clearance between *grade* and the bottom of the fence, wall or enclosure shall be 2 inches (51 mm).
2. Solid walls or enclosures that do not have openings, such as masonry or stone walls, shall not contain indentations or protrusions except for tooled masonry joints.
3. Maximum mesh size for chain link fences shall be $1^1/_4$-inches (32 mm) square unless the fence has slats at the top or bottom which reduce the opening to no more than $1^3/_4$ inches (44 mm). The wire shall not be less than 9 gage [(0.148 in.) (3.8 mm)].

**AM103.1.3.3 Decks.** Decks that are more than 12 inches (305 mm) above *grade* shall have a guard in compliance with Section R312.

**AM103.2 Width and height of an exit.** The minimum width of a required exit is 36 inches (914 mm) with a net clear width of 32 inches (813 mm). The minimum height of a required exit is 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm).

**AM103.3 Type of lock and latches for exits.** Regardless of the occupant load served, exit doors shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or any special knowledge or effort. When the occupant load is 10 or less, a night latch, dead bolt or security chain may be used, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool and mounted at a height not to exceed 48 inches (1219 mm) above the finished floor.

**AM103.4 Landings.** Landings for stairways and doors shall comply with Section R311 except that landings shall be required for the exterior side of a sliding door when a home day-care is being operated in a Group R-3 Occupancy.

## SECTION AM104
## SMOKE DETECTION

**AM104.1 General.** Smoke detectors shall be installed in *dwelling* units used for home day-care operations. Detectors shall be installed in accordance with the approved manufacturer's instructions. If the current smoke detection system in the *dwelling* is not in compliance with the currently adopted code for smoke detection, it shall be upgraded to meet the currently adopted code requirements and Section AM103 before daycare operations commence.

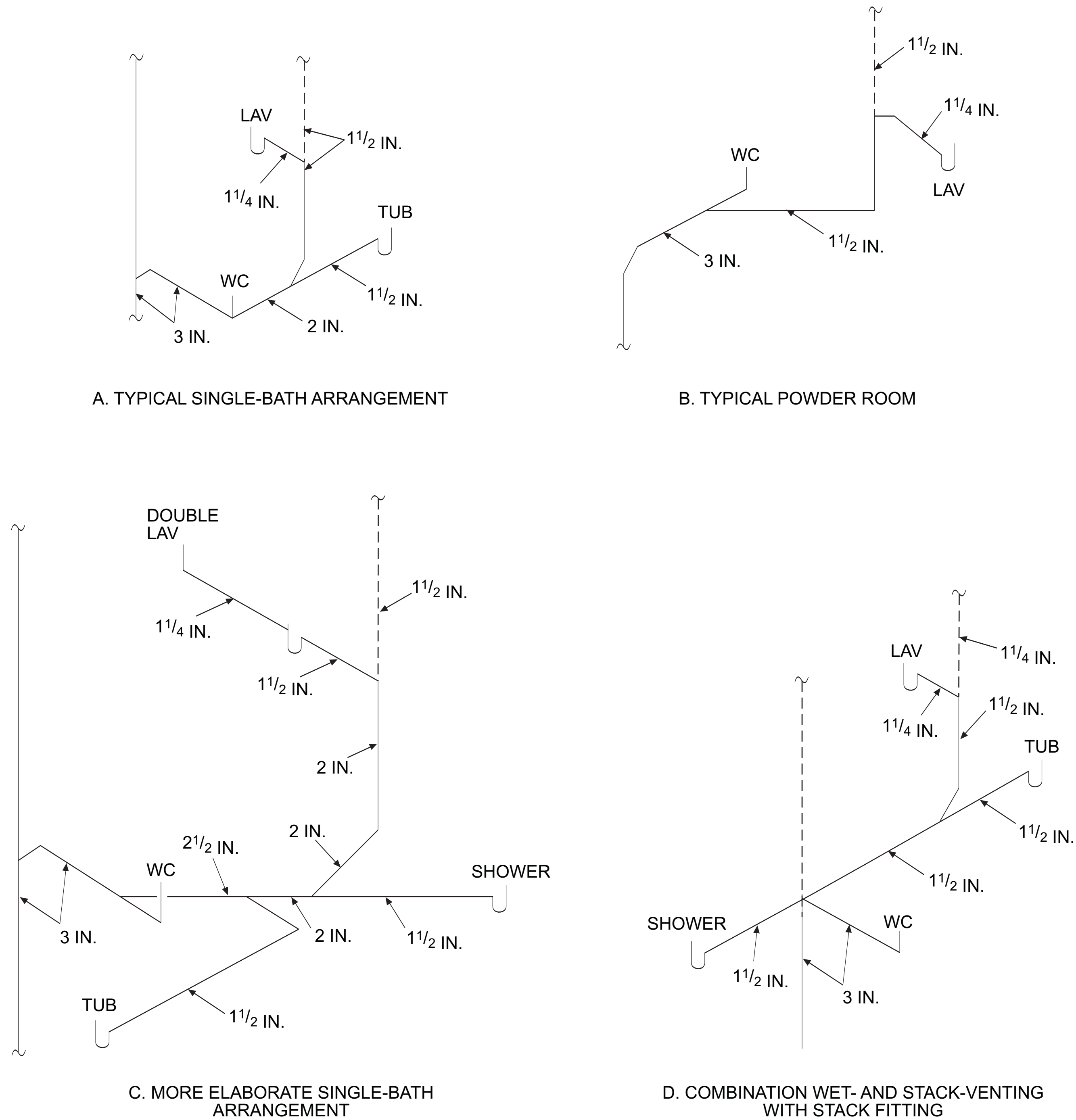
**AM104.2 Power source.** Required smoke detectors shall receive their primary power from the building wiring when that wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. The detector shall emit a signal when the batteries are low. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than those required for over-current protection. Required smoke detectors shall be interconnected so if one detector is activated, all detectors are activated.

**AM104.3 Location.** A detector shall be located in each bedroom and any room that is to be used as a sleeping room and centrally located in the corridor, hallway or area giving access to each separate sleeping area. When the *dwelling* unit has more than one *story*, and in *dwellings* with *basements*, a detector shall be installed on each *story* and in the *basement*. In *dwelling* units where a *story* or *basement* is split into two or more levels, the smoke detector shall be installed on the upper level, except that when the lower level contains a sleeping area, a detector shall be installed on each level. When sleeping rooms are on the upper level, the detector shall be placed at the ceiling of the upper level in close proximity to the stairway. In *dwelling* units where the ceiling height of a room open to the hallway serving the bedrooms or sleeping areas exceeds that of the hallway by 24 inches (610 mm) or more, smoke detectors shall be installed in the hallway and in the adjacent room. Detectors shall sound an alarm audible in all sleeping areas of the *dwelling* unit in which they are located.

## APPENDIX N

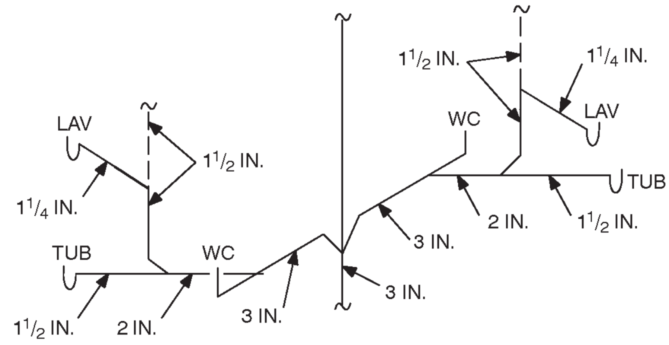
# VENTING METHODS

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.
This appendix provides examples of various of venting methods.)

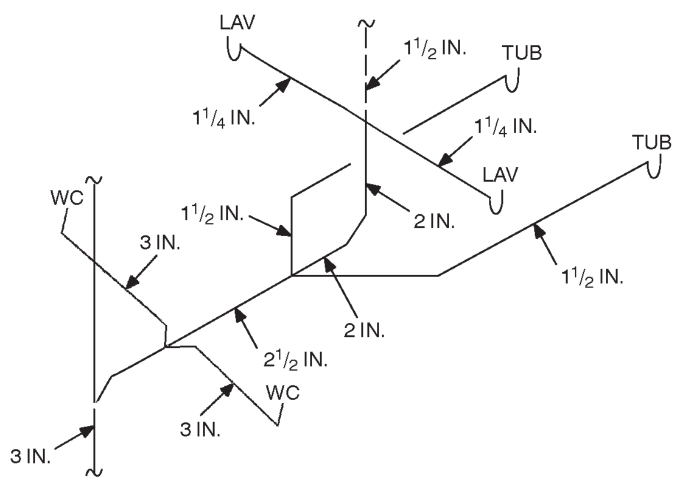



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

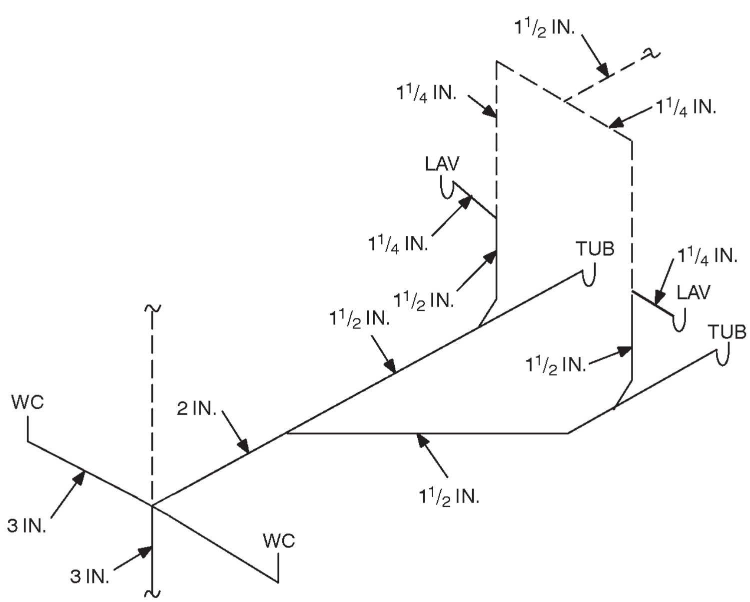
**FIGURE N1**
**TYPICAL SINGLE-BATH WET-VENT ARRANGEMENTS**




A. TYPICAL BACK-TO-BACK BATHS



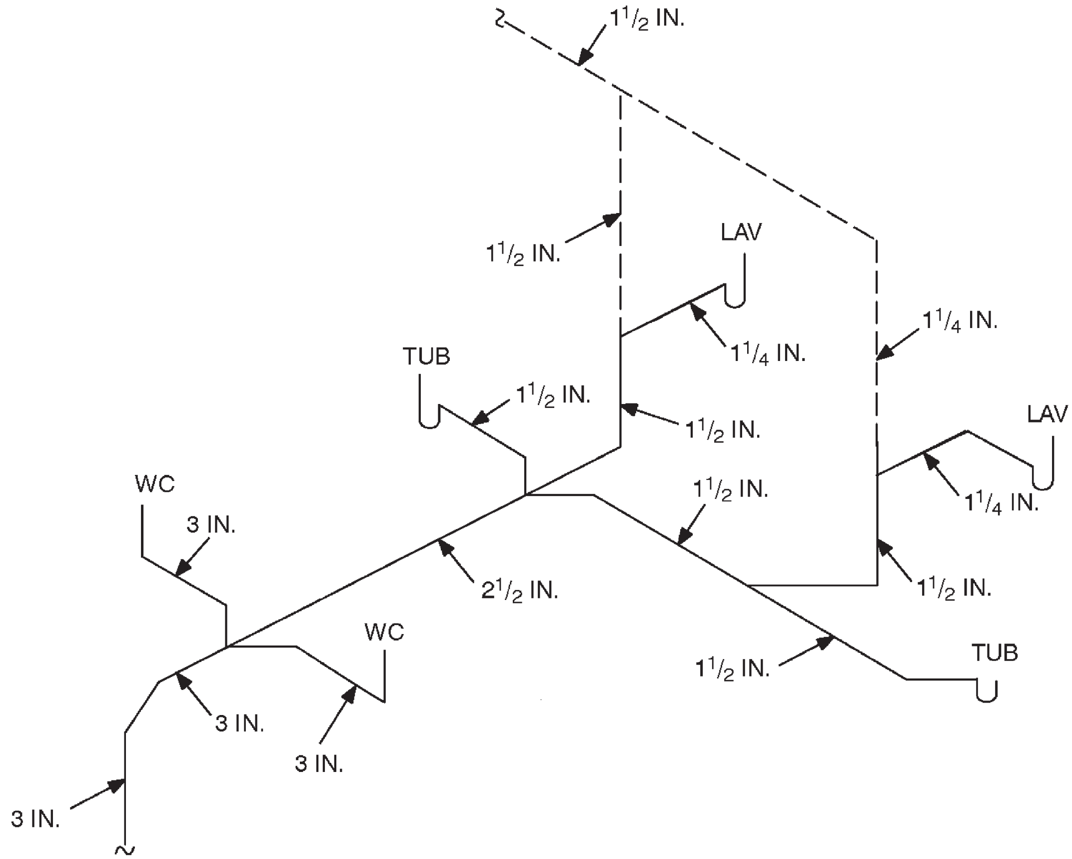

B. DOUBLE BATHS WITH FIXTURES ON COMMON HORIZONTAL BRANCH, COMMON WET VENT




C. DOUBLE BATHS WITH WASTE FIXTURES ON COMMON HORIZONTAL BRANCH, INDIVIDUAL WET VENTS

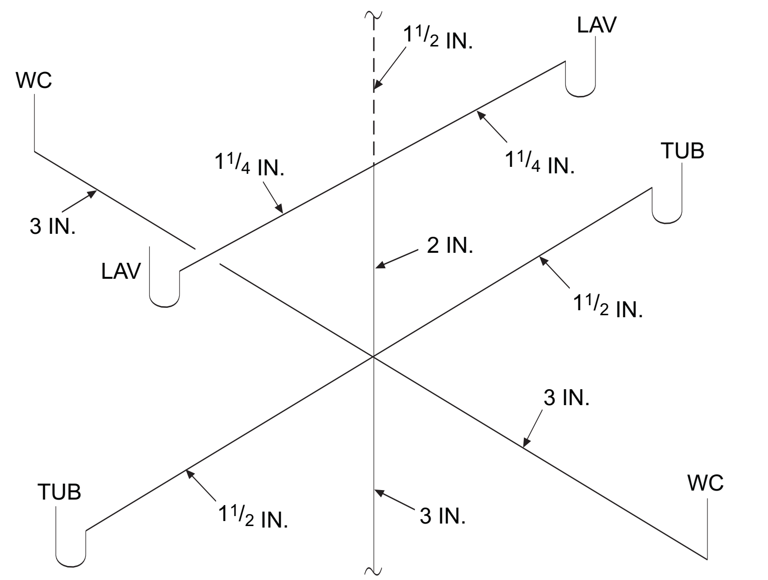
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE N2**
**TYPICAL DOUBLE-BATH WET-VENT ARRANGEMENTS**

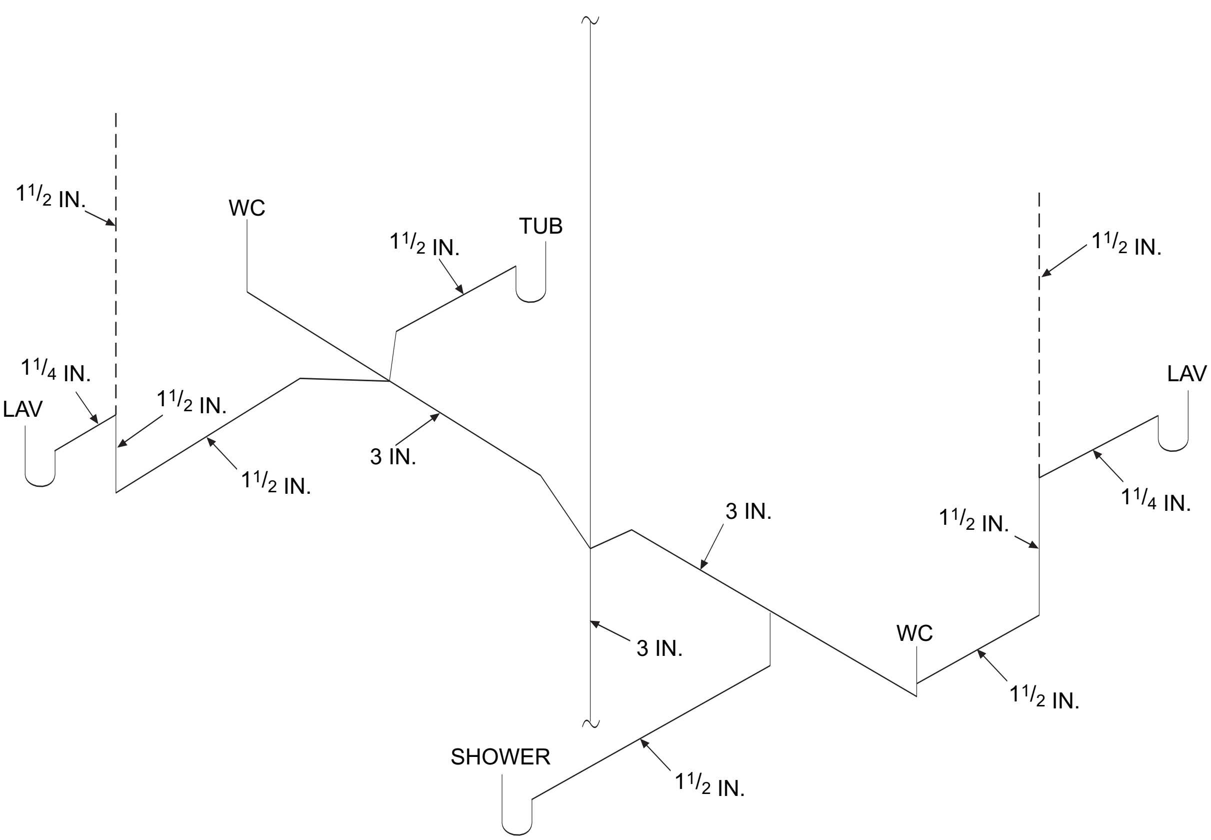



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE N3**
**TYPICAL HORIZONTAL WET VENTING**



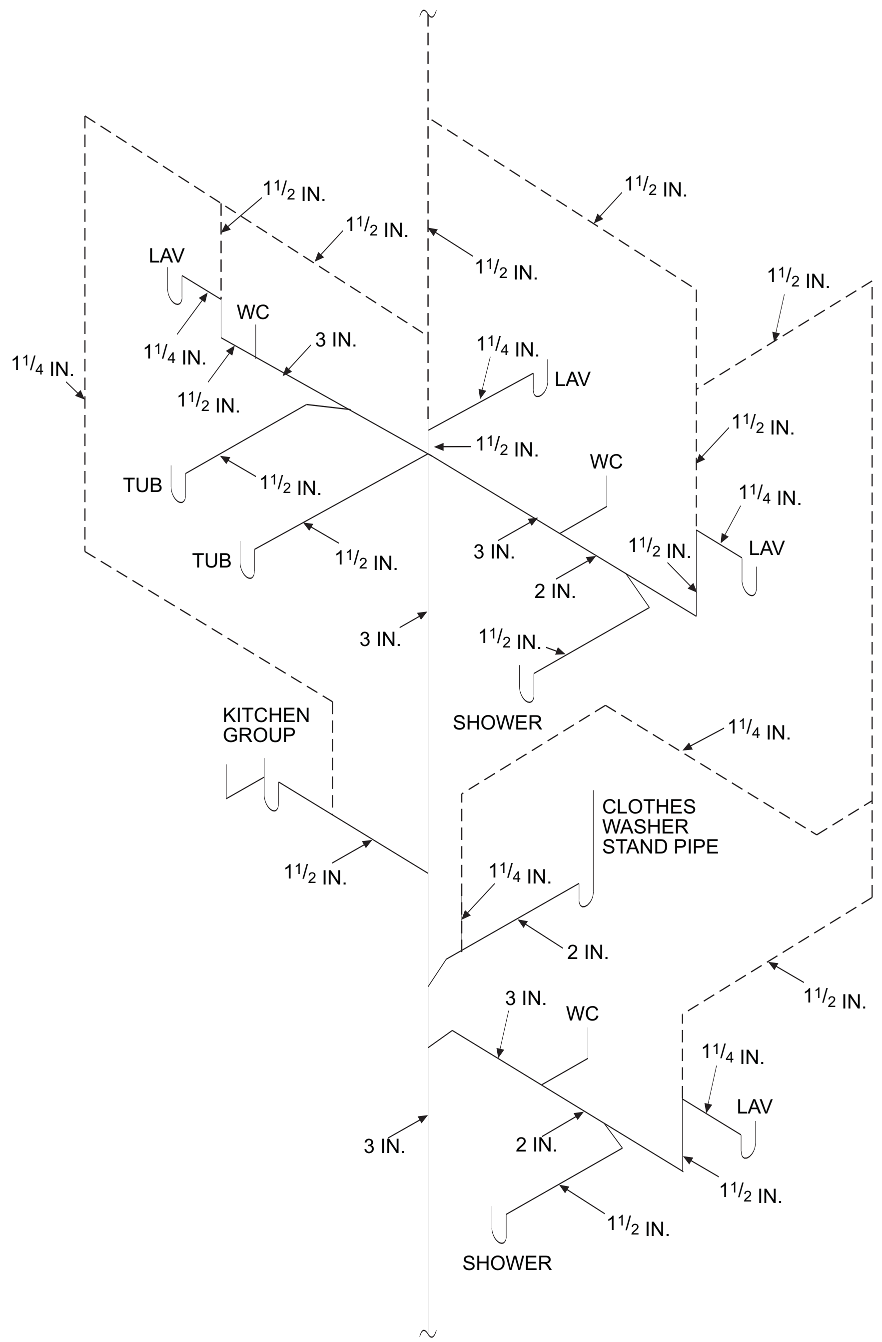

A. VERTICAL WET VENTING




B. HORIZONTAL WET VENTING

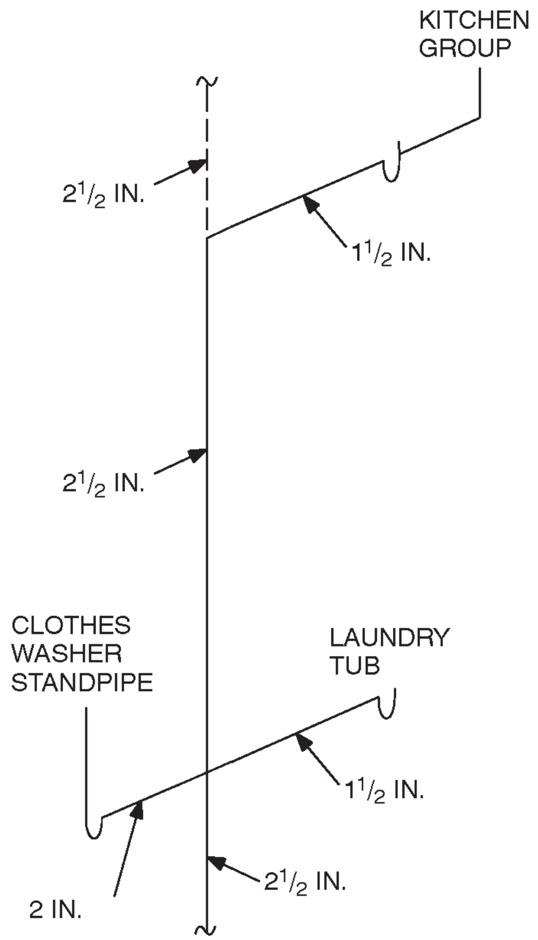
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE N4**
**TYPICAL METHODS OF WET VENTING**



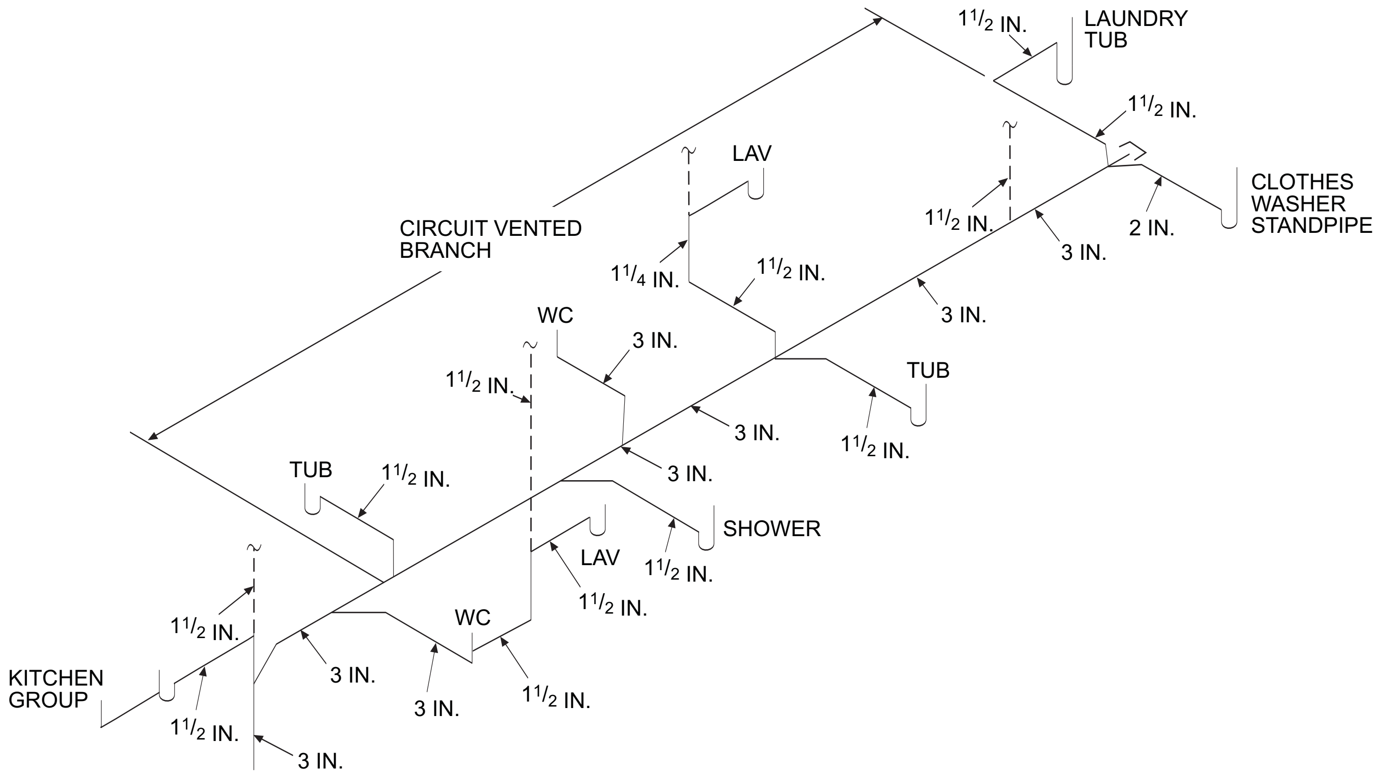

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE N5**
**SINGLE STACK SYSTEM FOR A TWO-STORY DWELLING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE N6**
**WASTE STACK VENTING**




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE N7**
**CIRCUIT VENT WITH ADDITIONAL NONCIRCUIT VENTED BRANCH**

# APPENDIX O

# GRAY WATER RECYCLING SYSTEMS

***(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)***

**Note:** *Section P2601.2 of the* International Residential Code *requires all plumbing fixtures that receive water or waste to discharge to the sanitary drainage system of the structure. To allow for the use of a gray water recycling system, Section P2601.2 of the* International Residential Code *should be revised to read as follows:*

**P2601.2 Connections.** Plumbing fixtures, drains and appliances used to receive or discharge liquid wastes or sewage shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system of the building or premises, in accordance with the requirements of this code. This section shall not be construed to prevent indirect waste systems.

> **Exception:** Bathtubs, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays are not required to discharge to the sanitary drainage system where those fixtures discharge to an *approved* gray water recycling system.

## SECTION AO101 GENERAL

**AO101.1 Scope.** The provisions of this appendix shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of gray water systems for flushing of water closets and urinals and for subsurface landscape irrigation [see Figures AO101.1(1) and AO101.1(2)].

**AO101.2 Definition.** The following term shall have the meaning shown herein.

**GRAY WATER.** Waste discharged from lavatories, bathtubs, showers, clothes washers and laundry trays.

**AO101.3 Permits.** Permits shall be required in accordance with Section R105 of the *International Residential Code*.

**AO101.4 Installation.** In addition to the provisions of Section AO101, systems for flushing of water closets and urinals shall comply with Section AO102 and systems for subsurface landscape irrigation shall comply with Section AO103. Except as provided for in Appendix O, all systems shall comply with the provisions of the *International Residential Code*.

**AO101.5 Materials.** Above-ground drain, waste and vent piping for gray water systems shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table P3002.1(1) of the *International Residential Code*. Gray water underground *building drainage* and vent pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table P3002.1(2) of the *International Residential Code*.

**AO101.6 Tests.** Drain, waste and vent piping for gray water systems shall be tested in accordance with Section P2503 of the *International Residential Code*.

**AO101.7 Inspections.** Gray water systems shall be inspected in accordance with Section P2503 of the *International Residential Code*.

**AO101.8 Potable water connections.** Only connections in accordance with Section AO102.3 shall be made between a gray water recycling system and a potable water system.

**AO101.9 Waste water connections.** Gray water recycling systems shall receive the waste discharge only of bathtubs, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays.

**AO101.10 Filtration.** Gray water entering the reservoir shall pass through an *approved* filter such as a media, sand or diatomaceous earth filter.

> **AO101.10.1 Required valve.** A full-open valve shall be installed downstream of the last fixture connection to the gray water discharge pipe before entering the required filter.

**AO101.11 Collection reservoir.** Gray water shall be collected in an *approved* reservoir constructed of durable, nonabsorbent and corrosion-resistant materials. The reservoir shall be a closed and gas-tight vessel. Access openings shall be provided to allow inspection and cleaning of the reservoir interior.

**AO101.12 Overflow.** The collection reservoir shall be equipped with an overflow pipe of the same diameter as, or larger than, the influent pipe for the gray water. The overflow pipe shall be trapped and shall be indirectly connected to the sanitary drainage system.

**AO101.13 Drain.** A drain shall be located at the lowest point of the collection reservoir and shall be indirectly connected to the sanitary drainage system. The drain shall be the same diameter as the overflow pipe required in Section AO101.12.

**AO101.14 Vent required.** The reservoir shall be provided with a vent sized in accordance with Chapter 31 of the *International Residential Code* and based on the diameter of the reservoir influent pipe.

## SECTION AO102 SYSTEMS FOR FLUSHING WATER CLOSETS AND URINALS

**AO102.1 Collection reservoir.** The holding capacity of the reservoir shall be a minimum of twice the volume of water required to meet the daily flushing requirements of the fixtures supplied with gray water, but not less than 50 gallons (189 L). The reservoir shall be sized to limit the retention time of gray water to a maximum of 72 hours.

**AO102.2 Disinfection.** Gray water shall be disinfected by an *approved* method that uses one or more disinfectants such as chlorine, iodine or ozone that are recommended for use with the pipes, fittings and equipment by the manufacturer of the pipes, fittings and equipment.

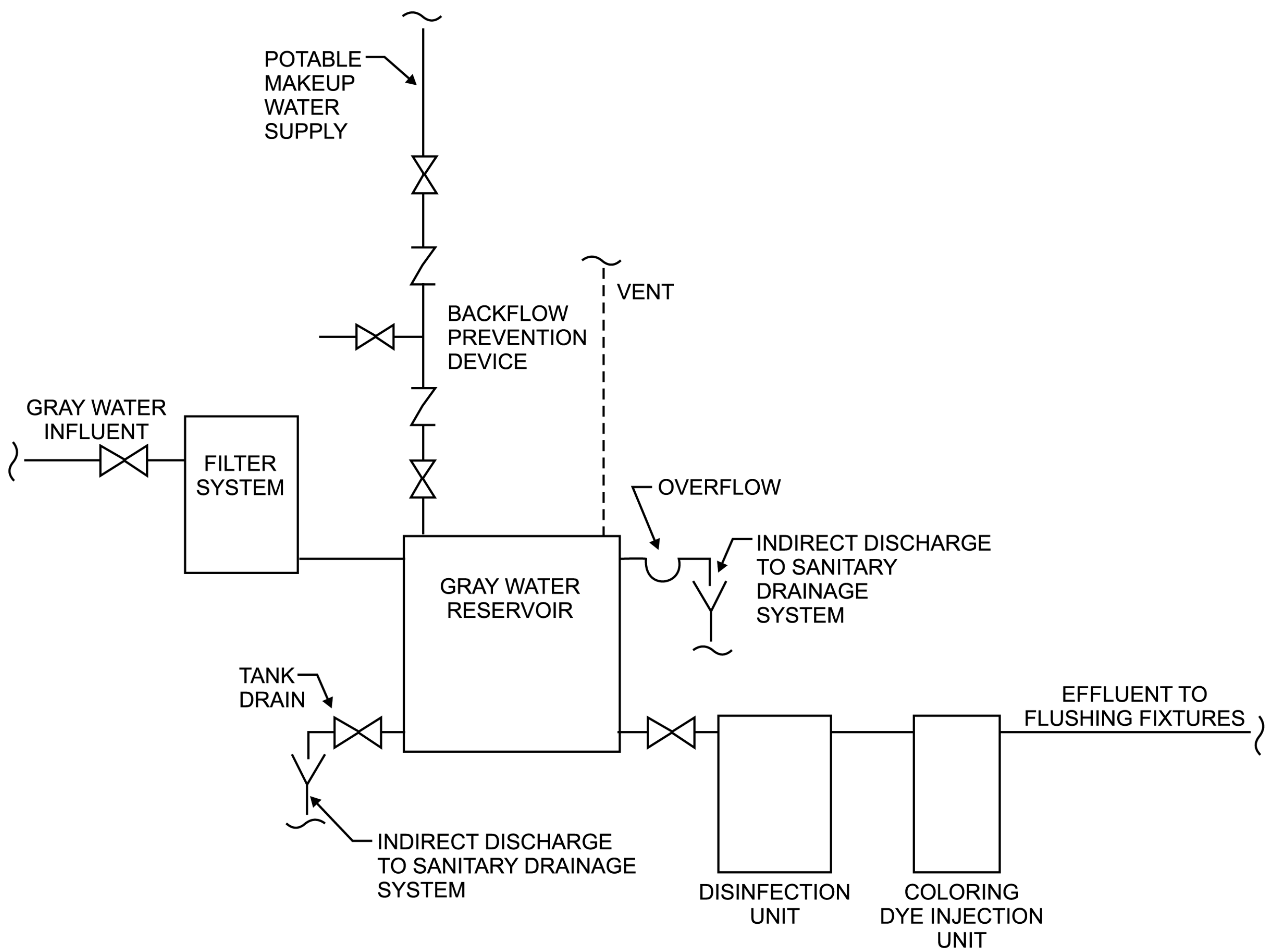



**FIGURE AO101.1(1)**
**GRAY WATER RECYCLING SYSTEM FOR FLUSHING WATER CLOSETS AND URINALS**

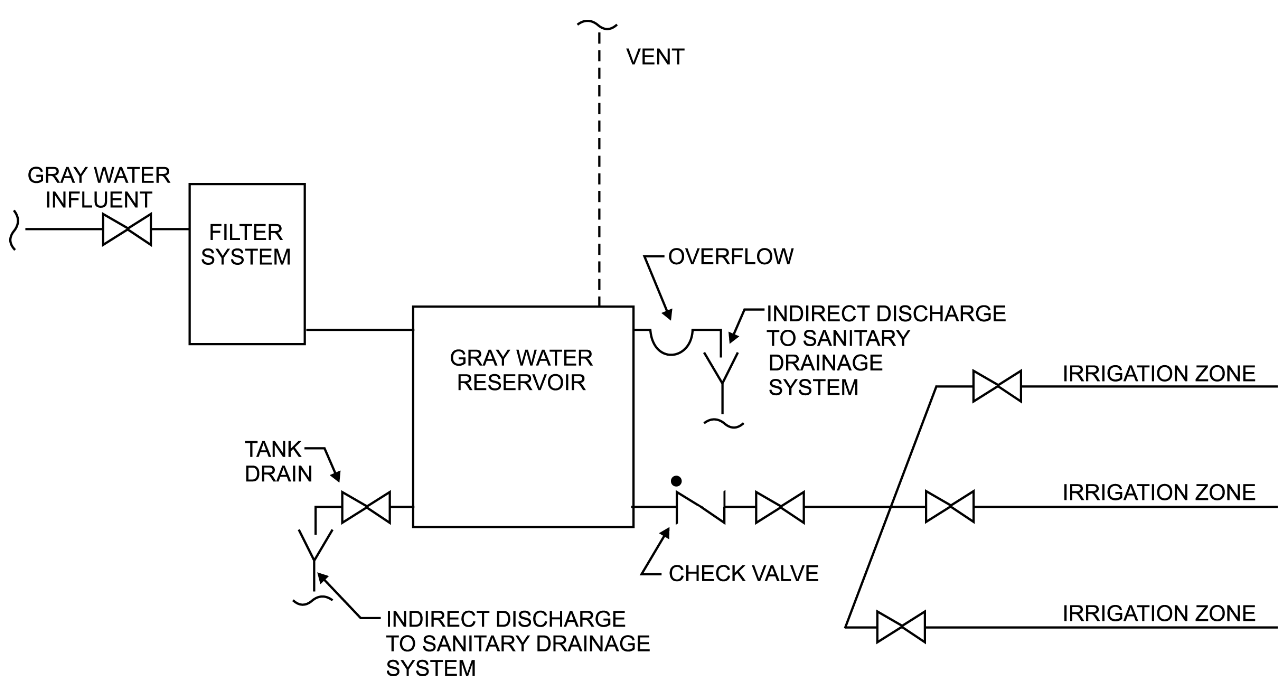



**FIGURE AO101.1(2)**
**GRAY WATER RECYCLING SYSTEM FOR SUBSURFACE LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION**

**AO102.3 Makeup water.** Potable water shall be supplied as a source of makeup water for the gray water system. The potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section P2902 of the *International Residential Code*. A full-open valve shall be located on the makeup water supply line to the collection reservoir.

**AO102.4 Coloring.** The gray water shall be dyed blue or green with a food grade vegetable dye before such water is supplied to the fixtures.

**AO102.5 Materials.** Distribution piping shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table P2905.4 of the *International Residential Code*.

**AO102.6 Identification.** Distribution piping and reservoirs shall be identified as containing nonpotable water. Piping identification shall be in accordance with Section 608.8 of the *International Plumbing Code®*.

## SECTION AO103 SUBSURFACE LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

**AO103.1 Collection reservoir.** Reservoirs shall be sized to limit the retention time of gray water to a maximum of 24 hours.

**AO103.1.1 Identification.** The reservoir shall be identified as containing nonpotable water.

**AO103.2 Valves required.** A check valve, and a full-open valve located on the discharge side of the check valve, shall be installed on the effluent pipe of the collection reservoir.

**AO103.3 Makeup water.** Makeup water shall not be required for subsurface landscape irrigation systems. Where makeup water is supplied, the installation shall be in accordance with Section AO102.3.

**AO103.4 Disinfection.** Disinfection shall not be required for gray water used for subsurface landscape irrigation systems.

**AO103.5 Coloring.** Gray water used for subsurface landscape irrigation systems shall not be required to be dyed.

**AO103.6 Estimating gray water discharge.** The system shall be sized in accordance with the demands per day per occupant based on the type of fixtures connected to the gray water system. The discharge shall be calculated by the following equation:

$$C = A \times B \qquad \textbf{(Equation AO-1)}$$

A = Number of occupants:

Number of occupants shall be determined by the actual number of occupants but not less than two occupants for 1 bedroom and one occupant for each additional bedroom.

B = Estimated flow demands for each occupant:

25 gallons per day (95 Lpd) per occupant for showers, bathtubs and lavatories and 15 gallons per day (57 Lpd) per occupant for clothes washers or laundry trays.

C = Estimated gray water discharge based on the total number of occupants.

**AO103.7 Percolation tests.** The permeability of the soil in the proposed absorption system shall be determined by percolation tests or permeability evaluation.

**AO103.7.1 Percolation tests and procedures.** At least three percolation tests shall be conducted in each system area. The holes shall be spaced uniformly in relation to the bottom depth of the proposed absorption system. More percolation tests shall be made where necessary, depending on system design.

**AO103.7.1.1 Percolation test hole.** The test hole shall be dug or bored. The test hole shall have vertical sides and a horizontal dimension of 4 inches to 8 inches (102 mm to 203 mm). The bottom and sides of the hole shall be scratched with a sharp-pointed instrument to expose the natural soil. All loose material shall be removed from the hole and the bottom shall be covered with 2 inches (51 mm) of gravel or coarse sand.

**AO103.7.1.2 Test procedure, sandy soils.** The hole shall be filled with clear water to a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) above the bottom of the hole for tests in sandy soils. The time for this amount of water to seep away shall be determined and this procedure shall be repeated if the water from the second filling of the hole seeps away in 10 minutes or less. The test shall proceed as follows: Water shall be added to a point not more than 6 inches (152 mm) above the gravel or coarse sand. Thereupon, from a fixed reference point, water levels shall be measured at 10-minute intervals for a period of 1 hour. Where 6 inches (152 mm) of water seeps away in less than 10 minutes, a shorter interval between measurements shall be used, but in no case shall the water depth exceed 6 inches (152 mm). Where 6 inches (152 mm) of water seeps away in less than 2 minutes, the test shall be stopped and a rate of less than 3 minutes per inch (7 s/mm) shall be reported. The final water level drop shall be used to calculate the percolation rate. Soils not meeting the requirements of this section shall be tested in accordance with Section AO103.7.1.3.

**AO103.7.1.3 Test procedure, other soils.** The hole shall be filled with clear water, and a minimum water depth of 12 inches (305 mm) shall be maintained above the bottom of the hole for a 4-hour period by refilling whenever necessary or by use of an automatic siphon. Water remaining in the hole after 4 hours shall not be removed. Thereafter, the soil shall be allowed to swell not less than 16 hours or more than 30 hours. Immediately after the soil swelling period, the measurements for determining the percolation rate shall be made as follows: Any soil sloughed into the hole shall be removed, and the water level shall be adjusted to 6 inches (152 mm) above the gravel or coarse sand. Thereupon, from a fixed reference point, the water level shall be measured at 30-minute intervals for a period of 4 hours, unless two successive water level drops do not vary by more than 0.62 inch (16 mm). At least three water level drops shall be observed and recorded. The hole shall be filled with clear water to a point not more than 6 inches (152 mm) above the gravel or coarse sand whenever it becomes nearly empty. The water level shall not be adjusted during the three measurement periods except to the limits of the last measured water level drop. When the first 6 inches (152 mm) of water seeps away in less than 30 minutes, the time interval between measurements shall be 10 minutes and the test run for 1 hour. The water depth shall not exceed 5 inches (127 mm) at any time during the measurement period. The drop that occurs during the final measurement period shall be used in calculating the percolation rate.

**AO103.7.1.4 Mechanical test equipment.** Mechanical percolation test equipment shall be of an *approved* type.

**AO103.7.2 Permeability evaluation.** Soil shall be evaluated for estimated percolation based on structure and texture in accordance with accepted soil evaluation practices. Borings shall be made in accordance with Section AO103.7.1 for evaluating the soil.

**AO103.8 Subsurface landscape irrigation site location.** The surface grade of all soil absorption systems shall be located at a point lower than the surface grade of any water well or reservoir on the same or adjoining property. Where this is not possible, the site shall be located so surface water drainage from the site is not directed toward a well or reservoir. The soil absorption system shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table AO103.8. Private sewage disposal systems in compacted areas, such as parking lots and driveways, are prohibited. Surface water shall be diverted away from any soil absorption site on the same or neighboring lots.

**TABLE AO103.8**
**LOCATION OF GRAY WATER SYSTEM**

| ELEMENT | MINIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE | |
|---|---|---|
| | HOLDING TANK (feet) | IRRIGATION DISPOSAL FIELD (feet) |
| Buildings | 5 | 2 |
| Property line adjoining private property | 5 | 5 |
| Public water main | 10 | 10 |
| Seepage pits | 5 | 5 |
| Septic tanks | 0 | 5 |
| Streams and lakes | 50 | 50 |
| Water service | 5 | 5 |
| Water wells | 50 | 100 |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**AO103.9 Installation.** Absorption systems shall be installed in accordance with Sections AO103.9.1 through AO103.9.5 to provide landscape irrigation without surfacing of gray water.

**AO103.9.1 Absorption area.** The total absorption area required shall be computed from the estimated daily gray water discharge and the design-loading rate based on the percolation rate for the site. The required absorption area equals the estimated gray water discharge divided by the design-loading rate from Table AO103.9.1.

**TABLE AO103.9.1**
**DESIGN LOADING RATE**

| PERCOLATION RATE (minutes per inch) | DESIGN LOAD FACTOR (gallons per square foot per day) |
|---|---|
| 0 to less than 10 | 1.2 |
| 10 to less than 30 | 0.8 |
| 30 to less than 45 | 0.72 |
| 45 to 60 | 0.4 |

For SI: 1 minute per inch = 2.362 s/mm;
1 gallon per square foot = 40.743 L/m$^2$.

**AO103.9.2 Seepage trench excavations.** Seepage trench excavations shall be a minimum of 1 foot (305 mm) to a maximum of 5 feet (1524 mm) wide. Trench excavations shall be spaced a minimum of 2 feet (610 mm) apart. The soil absorption area of a seepage trench shall be computed by using the bottom of the trench area (width) multiplied by the length of pipe. Individual seepage trenches shall be a maximum of 100 feet (30 480 mm) in *developed length*.

**AO103.9.3 Seepage bed excavations.** Seepage bed excavations shall be a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) wide and have more than one distribution pipe. The absorption area of a seepage bed shall be computed by using the bottom of the trench area. Distribution piping in a seepage bed shall be uniformly spaced a maximum of 5 feet (1524 mm) and a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) apart, and a maximum of 3 feet (914 mm) and a minimum of 1 foot (305 mm) from the sidewall or headwall.

**AO103.9.4 Excavation and construction.** The bottom of a trench or bed excavation shall be level. Seepage trenches or beds shall not be excavated where the soil is so wet that such material rolled between the hands forms a soil wire. All smeared or compacted soil surfaces in the sidewalls or bottom of seepage trench or bed excavations shall be scarified to the depth of smearing or compaction and the loose material removed. Where rain falls on an open excavation, the soil shall be left until sufficiently dry so a soil wire will not form when soil from the excavation bottom is rolled between the hands. The bottom area shall then be scarified and loose material removed.

**AO103.9.5 Aggregate and backfill.** A minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) of aggregate ranging in size from $^1/_2$ to $2^1/_2$ inches (13 mm to 64 mm) shall be laid into the trench below the distribution piping elevation. The aggregate shall be evenly distributed a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) over the top of the distribution pipe. The aggregate shall be covered with *approved* synthetic materials or 9 inches (229 mm) of uncompacted marsh hay or straw. Building paper shall not be used to cover the aggregate. A minimum of 9 inches (229 mm) of soil backfill shall be laid above the covering.

**AO103.10 Distribution piping.** Distribution piping shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. Materials shall comply with Table AO103.10. The top of the distribution pipe shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the original surface. The slope of the distribution pipes shall be a minimum of

2 inches (51 mm) and a maximum of 4 inches (102 mm) per 100 feet (30 480 mm).

**AO103.11 Joints.** Distribution pipe shall be joined in accordance with Section P3003 of the *International Residential Code*.

**TABLE AO103.10**
**DISTRIBUTION PIPE**

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|---|---|
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe | ASTM F 405 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe | ASTM D 2729 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with pipe stiffness of PS 35 and PS 50 | ASTM F 1488 |

# APPENDIX P

# SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

***(The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.)***

## SECTION AP101 GENERAL

**AP101.1 Scope.**

**AP101.1.1** This appendix outlines two procedures for sizing a water piping system (see Sections AP103.3 and AP201.1). The design procedures are based on the minimum static pressure available from the supply source, the head charges in the system caused by friction and elevation, and the rates of flow necessary for operation of various fixtures.

**AP101.1.2** Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for sizing of the water piping system. Accordingly, other sizing or design methods conforming to good engineering practice standards are acceptable alternatives to those presented herein.

## SECTION AP102 INFORMATION REQUIRED

**AP102.1 Preliminary.** Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes likely to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from most manufacturers of water meters.

**AP102.2 Demand load.**

**AP102.2.1** Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table AP103.3(3).

**AP102.2.2** Estimate continuous supply demands in gallons per minute (L/m) for lawn sprinklers, air conditioners, etc., and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand for the building supply.

## SECTION AP103 SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

**AP103.1 General.** Decide from Table P2903.1 what is the desirable minimum residual pressure that should be maintained at the highest fixture in the supply system. If the highest group of fixtures contains flush valves, the pressure for the group should not be less than 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103.4 kPa) flowing. For flush tank supplies, the available pressure should not be less than 8 psi (55.2 kPa) flowing, except blowout action fixtures must not be less than 25 psi (172.4 kPa) flowing.

**AP103.2 Pipe sizing.**

**AP103.2.1** Pipe sizes can be selected according to the following procedure or by other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice and *approved* by the administrative authority. The sizes selected must not be less than the minimum required by this code.

**AP103.2.2** Water pipe sizing procedures are based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:

1. Pressure required at fixture to produce required flow. See Sections P2903.1 of this code and Section 604.5 of the *International Plumbing Code*.
2. Static pressure loss or gain (due to head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.

   **Example:** Assume that the highest fixture supply outlet is 20 feet (6096 mm) above or below the supply source. This produces a static pressure differential of 8.66 psi (59.8 kPa) loss [20 feet by 0.433 psi/foot (2096 mm by 9.8 kPa/m)].
3. Loss through water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from meter manufacturers.
4. Loss through taps in water main.
5. Losses through special devices such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturers.
6. Loss through valves and fittings. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to *equivalent length* of piping and adding to the total pipe length.
7. Loss caused by pipe friction can be calculated when the pipe size, the pipe length and the flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers' tables and velocity recommendations.

**Note:** For all examples, the following metric conversions are applicable:

1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s

1 square foot = 0.0929 $m^2$

1 degree = 0.0175 rad

1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa

1 inch = 25.4 mm

1 foot = 304.8 mm

1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m

**AP103.3 Segmented loss method.** The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers by the segmented loss method, must be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including *equivalent length* of fittings. This design procedure is based on the following parameters:

- The calculated friction loss through each length of the pipe.
- A system of pressure losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the street main or other source of supply.
- Pipe sizing based on estimated peak demand, total pressure losses caused by difference in elevation, equipment, *developed length* and pressure required at the most remote fixture, loss through taps in water main, losses through fittings, filters, backflow prevention devices, valves and pipe friction.

Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for sizing of the water piping system. Current sizing methods do not address the differences in the probability of use and flow characteristics of fixtures between types of occupancies. Creating an exact model of predicting the demand for a building is impossible and final studies assessing the impact of water conservation on demand are not yet complete. The following steps are necessary for the segmented loss method.

1. **Preliminary.** Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from manufacturers of water meters. Enough pressure must be available to overcome all system losses caused by friction and elevation so that plumbing fixtures operate properly. Section 604.6 of the *International Plumbing Code* requires that the water distribution system be designed for the minimum pressure available taking into consideration pressure fluctuations. The lowest pressure must be selected to guarantee a continuous, adequate supply of water. The lowest pressure in the public main usually occurs in the summer because of lawn sprinkling and supplying water for air-conditioning cooling towers. Future demands placed on the public main as a result of large growth or expansion should also be considered. The available pressure will decrease as additional loads are placed on the public system.

2. **Demand load.** Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table AP103.3(3). When estimating peak demand, sizing methods typically use water supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.) [see Table AP103.3(2)]. This numerical factor measures the load-producing effect of a single plumbing fixture of a given kind. The use of fixture units can be applied to a single basic probability curve (or table), found in the various sizing methods [Table AP103.3(3)]. The fixture units are then converted into gallons per minute (L/m) flow rate for estimating demand.

   2.1. Estimate continuous supply demand in gallons per minute (L/m) for lawn sprinklers, air conditioners, etc., and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand for the building supply. Fixture units cannot be applied to constant-use fixtures such as hose bibbs, lawn sprinklers and air conditioners. These types of fixtures must be assigned the gallon per minute (L/m) value.

3. **Selection of pipe size.** This water pipe sizing procedure is based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:

   3.1. Pressure required at the fixture to produce required flow. See Section P2903.1 of this code and Section 604.5 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

   3.2. Static pressure loss or gain (because of head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.

   3.3. Loss through a water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from the manufacturer.

   3.4. Loss through taps in water main [see Table AP103.3(4)].

   3.5. Losses through special devices such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturers.

   3.6. Loss through valves and fittings [see Tables AP103.3(5) and AP103.3(6)]. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to *equivalent length* of piping and adding to the total pipe length.

   3.7. Loss caused by pipe friction can be calculated when the pipe size, the pipe length and the flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined using Figures AP103.3(2) through AP103.3(7). When using charts, use pipe inside diameters. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers' tables and velocity recommendations. Before attempting to size any water supply system, it is necessary to gather preliminary information which includes available pressure, piping material, select design velocity, elevation differences and *developed length* to most remote fixture. The water supply system is divided into sections at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups. The peak demand must be determined in each part of the hot and cold water supply system which includes the corresponding water supply fixture unit and conversion to gallons per minute (L/m) flow rate to be expected through each section. Sizing methods require determination of the "most hydraulically remote" fixture to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings. The hydraulically remote fixture represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the most available pressure to operate properly. Consideration must be given to all pressure demands and losses, such as friction caused by pipe, fittings and equipment; elevation; and the residual pressure required by Table P2903.1. The two most common and frequent complaints about water supply system operation are lack of adequate pressure and noise.

**Problem:** What size Type L copper water pipe, service and distribution will be required to serve a two-story factory building having on each floor, back-to-back, two toilet rooms each equipped with hot and cold water? The highest fixture is 21 feet (6401 mm) above the street main, which is tapped with a 2-inch (51 mm) corporation cock at which point the minimum pressure is 55 psi (379.2 kPa). In the building basement, a 2-inch (51 mm) meter with a maximum pressure drop of 11 psi (75.8 kPa) and 3-inch (76 mm) reduced pressure principle backflow preventer with a maximum pressure drop of 9 psi (62.1 kPa) are to be installed. The system is shown by Figure AP103.3(1). To be determined are the pipe sizes for the service main and the cold and hot water distribution pipes.

**Solution:** A tabular arrangement such as shown in Table AP103.3(1) should first be constructed. The steps to be followed are indicated by the tabular arrangement itself as they are in sequence, columns 1 through 10 and lines A through L.

### Step 1

**Columns 1 and 2:** Divide the system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups. After point B [see Figure AP103.3(1)], separate consideration will be given to the hot and cold water piping. Enter the sections to be considered in the service and cold water piping in Column 1 of the tabular arrangement. Column 1 of Table AP103.3(1) provides a line-by-line recommended tabular arrangement for use in solving pipe sizing.

The objective in designing the water supply system is to ensure an adequate water supply and pressure to all fixtures and equipment. Column 2 provides the pounds per square inch (psi) to be considered separately from the minimum pressure available at the main. Losses to take into consideration are the following: the differences in elevations between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet, meter pressure losses, the tap in main loss, special fixture devices such as water softeners and backflow prevention devices and the pressure required at the most remote fixture outlet.

The difference in elevation can result in an increase or decrease in available pressure at the main. Where the water supply outlet is located above the source, this results in a loss in the available pressure and is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water supply source, there will be an increase in pressure that is added to the available pressure of the water source.

**Column 3:** According to Table AP103.3(3), determine the gpm (L/m) of flow to be expected in each section of the system. These flows range from 28.6 to 108 gpm. Load values for fixtures must be determined as water supply fixture units and then converted to a gallon-per-minute (gpm) rating to determine peak demand. When calculating peak demands, the water supply fixture units are added and then converted to the gallon-per-minute rating. For continuous flow fixtures such as hose bibbs and lawn sprinkler systems, add the gallon-per-minute demand to the intermittent demand of fixtures. For example, a total of 120 water supply fixture units is converted to a demand of 48 gallons per minute. Two hose bibbs × 5 gpm demand = 10 gpm. Total gpm rating = 48.0 gpm + 10 gpm = 58.0 gpm demand.

### Step 2

**Line A:** Enter the minimum pressure available at the main source of supply in Column 2. This is 55 psi (379.2 kPa). The local water authorities generally keep records of pressures at different times of day and year. The available pressure can also be checked from nearby buildings or from fire department hydrant checks.

**Line B:** Determine from Table P2903.1 the highest pressure required for the fixtures on the system, which is 15 psi (103.4 kPa), to operate a flushometer valve. The most remote fixture outlet is necessary to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings, and represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the available pressure to operate properly as indicated by Table P2903.1.

**Line C:** Determine the pressure loss for the meter size given or assumed. The total water flow from the main through the service as determined in Step 1 will serve to aid in the meter selected. There are three common types of water meters; the pressure losses are determined by the American Water Works Association Standards for displacement type, compound type and turbine type. The maximum pressure loss of such devices takes into consideration the meter size, safe operating capacity (gpm) and maximum rates for continuous operations (gpm). Typically, equipment imparts greater pressure losses than piping.

**Line D:** Select from Table AP103.3(4) and enter the pressure loss for the tap size given or assumed. The loss of pressure through taps and tees in pounds per square inch (psi) is based on the total gallon-per-minute flow rate and size of the tap.

**Line E:** Determine the difference in elevation between the main and source of supply and the highest fixture on the system. Multiply this figure, expressed in feet, by 0.43 psi (2.9 kPa). Enter the resulting psi loss on Line E. The difference in elevation between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet has a significant impact on the sizing of the water supply system. The difference in elevation usually results in a loss in the available pressure because the water supply outlet is generally located above the water supply source. The loss is caused by the pressure required to lift the water to the outlet. The pressure loss is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water source, there will be an increase in pressure which is added to the available pressure of the water source.

**Lines F, G and H:** The pressure losses through filters, backflow prevention devices or other special fixtures must be obtained from the manufacturer or estimated and entered on these lines. Equipment such as backflow prevention devices, check valves, water softeners, instantaneous or tankless water heaters, filters and strainers can impart a much greater pressure loss than the piping. The pressure losses can range from 8 psi to 30 psi.

**Step 3**

**Line I:** The sum of the pressure requirements and losses that affect the overall system (Lines B through H) is entered on this line. Summarizing the steps, all of the system losses are subtracted from the minimum water pressure. The remainder is the pressure available for friction, defined as the energy available to push the water through the pipes to each fixture. This force can be used as an average pressure loss, as long as the pressure available for friction is not exceeded. Saving a certain amount for available water supply pressures as an area incurs growth, or because of aging of the pipe or equipment added to the system is recommended.

**Step 4**

**Line J:** Subtract Line I from Line A. This gives the pressure that remains available from overcoming friction losses in the system. This figure is a guide to the pipe size that is chosen for each section, incorporating the total friction losses to the most remote outlet (measured length is called *developed length*).

> **Exception:** When the main is above the highest fixture, the resulting psi must be considered a pressure gain (static head gain) and omitted from the sums of Lines B through H and added to Line J.

The maximum friction head loss that can be tolerated in the system during peak demand is the difference between the static pressure at the highest and most remote outlet at no-flow conditions and the minimum flow pressure required at that outlet. If the losses are within the required limits, every run of pipe will also be within the required friction head loss. Static pressure loss is at the most remote outlet in feet × 0.433 = loss in psi caused by elevation differences.

**Step 5**

**Column 4:** Enter the length of each section from the main to the most remote outlet (at Point E). Divide the water supply system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups.

**Step 6**

**Column 5:** When selecting a trial pipe size, the length from the water service or meter to the most remote fixture outlet must be measured to determine the *developed length*. However, in systems having a flush valve or temperature controlled shower at the topmost floors the *developed length* would be from the water meter to the most remote flush valve on the system. A rule of thumb is that size will become progressively smaller as the system extends farther from the main source of supply. Trial pipe size may be arrived at by the following formula:

**Line J:** (Pressure available to overcome pipe friction) × 100/*equivalent length* of run total *developed length* to most remote fixture × percentage factor of 1.5 (note: a percentage factor is used only as an estimate for friction losses imposed for fittings for initial trial pipe size) = psi (average pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe).

For trial pipe size see Figure AP103.3(3) (Type L copper) based on 2.77 psi and 108 gpm = $2^1/_2$ inches. To determine the *equivalent length* of run to the most remote outlet, the *developed length* is determined and added to the friction losses for fittings and valves. The *developed lengths* of the designated pipe sections are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| A - B | 54 ft |
| B - C | 8 ft |
| C - D | 13 ft |
| D - E | 150 ft |

Total *developed length* = 225 ft

The *equivalent length* of the friction loss in fittings and valves must be added to the *developed length* (most remote outlet). Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction loss should be approximated. A general rule that has been used is to add 50 percent of the *developed length* to allow for fittings and valves. For example, the *equivalent length* of run equals the *developed length* of run (225 ft × 1.5 = 338 ft). The total *equivalent length* of run for determining a trial pipe size is 338 feet.

> **Example:** 9.36 (pressure available to overcome pipe friction) ×100/ 338 (*equivalent length* of run = 225 × 1.5) = 2.77 psi (average pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe).

**Step 7**

**Column 6:** Select from Table AP103.3(6) the *equivalent lengths* for the trial pipe size of fittings and valves on each pipe section. Enter the sum for each section in Column 6. (The number of fittings to be used in this example must be an estimate.) The *equivalent length* of piping is the *developed length* plus the *equivalent lengths* of pipe corresponding to friction head losses for fittings and valves. Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction head losses must be approximated. An estimate for this example is found in Table AP.1.

**Step 8**

**Column 7:** Add the figures from Column 4 and Column 6, and enter in Column 7. Express the sum in hundreds of feet.

**Step 9**

**Column 8:** Select from Figure AP103.3(3) the friction loss per 100 feet (30 480 mm) of pipe for the gallon-per-minute flow in a section (Column 3) and trial pipe size (Column 5). Maximum friction head loss per 100 feet is determined on the basis of total pressure available for friction head loss and the longest *equivalent length* of run. The selection is based on the gallon-per-minute demand, the uniform friction head loss, and the maximum design velocity. Where the size indicated by the hydraulic table indicates a velocity in excess of the selected velocity, a size must be selected which produces the required velocity.

**Step 10**

**Column 9:** Multiply the figures in Columns 7 and 8 for each section and enter in Column 9.

Total friction loss is determined by multiplying the friction loss per 100 feet (30 480 mm) for each pipe section in the total *developed length* by the pressure loss in fittings expressed as *equivalent length* in feet. Note: Section C-F should be considered in the total pipe friction losses only if greater loss occurs in Section C-F than in pipe Section D-E. Section C-F is not considered in the total *developed length*. Total friction loss in *equivalent length* is determined in Table AP.2.

**Step 11**

**Line K:** Enter the sum of the values in Column 9. The value is the total friction loss in *equivalent length* for each designated pipe section.

**Step 12**

**Line L:** Subtract Line J from Line K and enter in Column 10.

The result should always be a positive or plus figure. If it is not, repeat the operation using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 until a balance or near balance is obtained. If the difference between Lines J and K is a high positive number, it is an indication that the pipe sizes are too large and should be reduced, thus saving materials. In such a case, the operations using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 should be repeated.

The total friction losses are determined and subtracted from the pressure available to overcome pipe friction for trial pipe size. This number is critical because it provides a guide to whether the pipe size selected is too large and the process should be repeated to obtain an economically designed system.

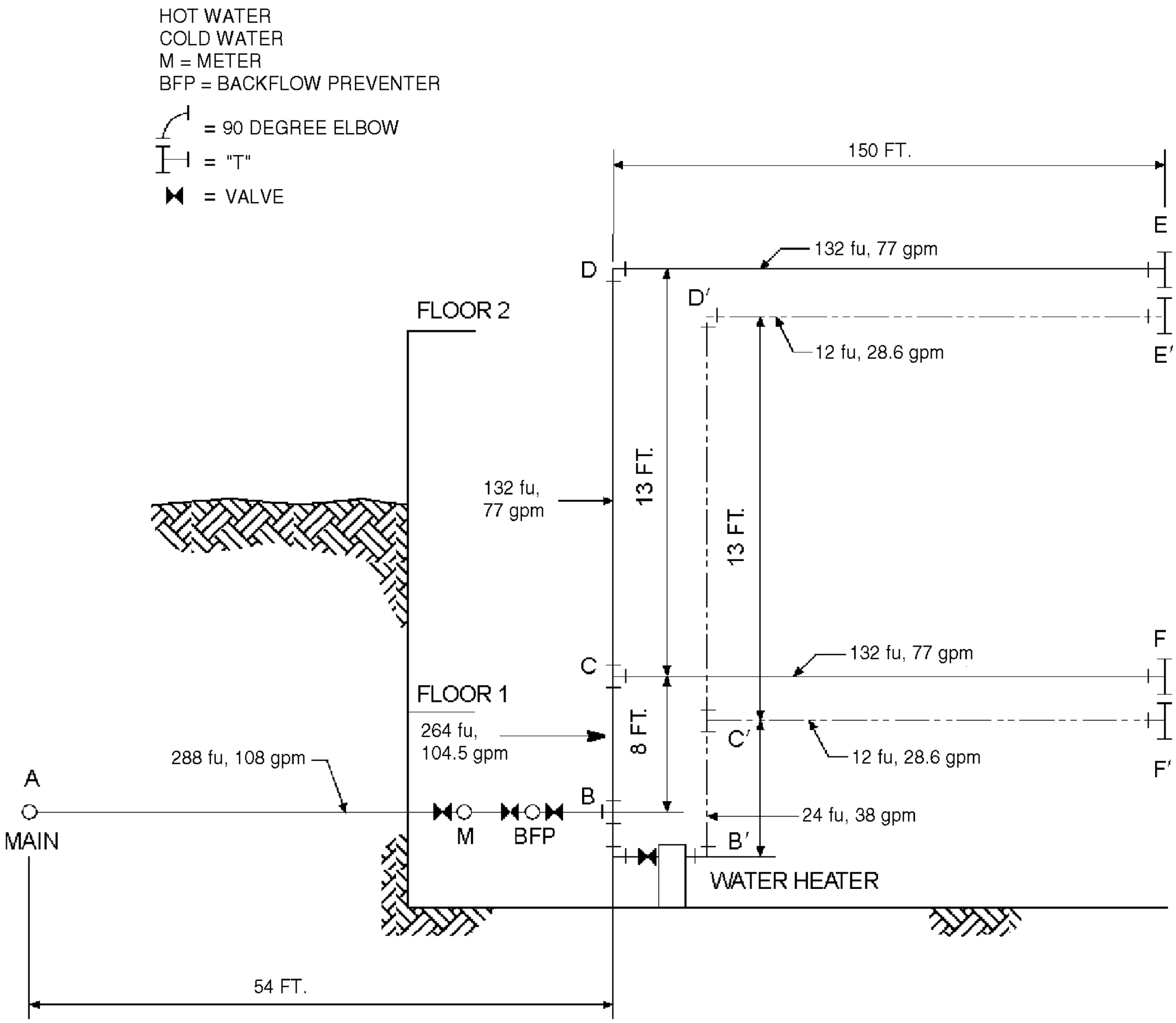
**Answer:** The final figures entered in Column 5 become the design pipe size for the respective sections. Repeating this operation a second time using the same sketch but considering the demand for hot water, it is possible to size the hot water distribution piping. This has been worked up as a part of the overall problem in the tabular arrangement used for sizing the service and water distribution piping. Note that consideration must be given to the pressure losses from the street main to the water heater (Section A-B) in determining the hot water pipe sizes.

**TABLE AP.1**

| COLD WATER PIPE SECTION | FITTINGS/VALVES | PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE (feet) | HOT WATER PIPE SECTION | FITTINGS/VALVES | PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT OF TUBE (feet) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A-B | 3-$2^1/_2$″ Gate valves | 3 | A-B | 3-$2^1/_2$″ Gate valves | 3 |
| | 1-$2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee | 12 | — | 1-$2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee | 12 |
| B-C | 1-$2^1/_2$″ Straight run tee | 0.5 | B-C | 1-2″ Straight run tee | 7 |
| | — | — | — | 1-2″ 90-degree ell | 0.5 |
| C-F | 1-$2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee | 12 | C-F | 1-$1^1/_2$″ Side branch tee | 7 |
| C-D | 1-$2^1/_2$″ 90-degree ell | 7 | C-D | 1-$^1/_2$″ 90-degree ell | 4 |
| D-E | 1-$2^1/_2$″ Side branch tee | 12 | D-E | 1-$1^1/_2$″ Side branch tee | 7 |

**TABLE AP.2**

| PIPE SECTIONS | FRICTION LOSS EQUIVALENT LENGTH (feet) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Cold Water | Hot Water |
| A-B | $0.69 \times 3.2 = 2.21$ | $0.69 \times 3.2 = 2.21$ |
| B-C | $0.085 \times 3.1 = 0.26$ | $0.16 \times 1.4 = 0.22$ |
| C-D | $0.20 \times 1.9 = 0.38$ | $0.17 \times 3.2 = 0.54$ |
| D-E | $1.62 \times 1.9 = 3.08$ | $1.57 \times 3.2 = 5.02$ |
| Total pipe friction losses (Line K) | 5.93 | 7.99 |




For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m.

**FIGURE AP103.3(1)**
**EXAMPLE-SIZING**

**TABLE AP103.3(1)**
**RECOMMENDED TABULAR ARRANGEMENT FOR USE IN SOLVING PIPE SIZING PROBLEMS**

| COLUMN | 1 | | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Line | Description | | Lb per square inch (psi) | Gal. per min through section | Length of section (feet) | Trial pipe size (inches) | Equivalent length of fittings and valves (feet) | Total equivalent length col. 4 and col. 6 (100 feet) | Friction loss per 100 feet of trial size pipe (psi) | Friction loss in equivalent length col. 8 x col. 7 (psi) | Excess pressure over friction losses (psi) |
| A | Service and cold water distribution piping[a] | Minimum pressure available at main . . | 55.00 | | | | | | | | |
| B | | Highest pressure required at a fixture (Table P2903.1) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 15.00 | | | | | | | | |
| C | | Meter loss 2″ meter . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 11.00 | | | | | | | | |
| D | | Tap in main loss 2″ tap [Table AP103.3(4)] . | 1.61 | | | | | | | | |
| E | | Static head loss 21 ft × 0.43 psi/ft. . . . . . | 9.03 | | | | | | | | |
| F | | Special fixture loss backflow preventer . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 9.00 | | | | | | | | |
| G | | Special fixture loss—Filter . . . . . . . . . . . | 0.00 | | | | | | | | |
| H | | Special fixture loss—Other. . . . . . . . . . . | 0.00 | | | | | | | | |
| I | | Total overall losses and requirements (Sum of Lines B through H) . . . . . . . | 45.64 | | | | | | | | |
| J | | Pressure available to overcome pipe friction (Line A minus Line I) . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 9.36 | | | | | | | | |
| | DESIGNATION Pipe section (from diagram) Cold water Distribution piping | | FU | | | | | | | | |
| | | AB . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 288 | 108.0 | 54 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 15.00 | 0.69 | 3.2 | 2.21 | — |
| | | BC . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 264 | 104.5 | 8 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 0.5 | 0.85 | 3.1 | 0.26 | — |
| | | CD . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 132 | 77.0 | 13 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 7.00 | 0.20 | 1.9 | 0.38 | — |
| | | CF[b] . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 132 | 77.0 | 150 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 12.00 | 1.62 | 1.9 | 3.08 | — |
| | | DE[b] . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 132 | 77.0 | 150 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 12.00 | 1.62 | 1.9 | 3.08 | — |
| K | Total pipe friction losses (cold) | | | — | — | — | — | — | — | 5.93 | — |
| L | Difference (Line J minus Line K) | | | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | 3.43 |
| | Pipe section (from diagram) Diagram Hot water Distribution Piping | A′B′ . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 288 | 108.0 | 54 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 12.00 | 0.69 | 3.3 | 2.21 | — |
| | | B′C′ . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 24 | 38.0 | 8 | 2 | 7.5 | 0.16 | 1.4 | 0.22 | — |
| | | C′D′ . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 12 | 28.6 | 13 | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 4.0 | 0.17 | 3.2 | 0.54 | — |
| | | C′F′[b] . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 12 | 28.6 | 150 | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 7.00 | 1.57 | 3.2 | 5.02 | — |
| | | D′E′[b] . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . | 12 | 28.6 | 150 | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 7.00 | 1.57 | 3.2 | 5.02 | — |
| K | Total pipe friction losses (hot) | | | — | — | — | — | — | — | 7.99 | — |
| L | Difference (Line J minus Line K) | | | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | 1.37 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m.

a. To be considered as pressure gain for fixtures below main (to consider separately, omit from “I” and add to “J”).

b. To consider separately, in K use C-F only if greater loss than above.

**TABLE AP103.3(2)**
**LOAD VALUES ASSIGNED TO FIXTURES[a]**

| FIXTURE | OCCUPANCY | TYPE OF SUPPLY CONTROL | LOAD VALUES, IN WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNITS (wsfu) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Cold | Hot | Total |
| Bathroom group | Private | Flush tank | 2.7 | 1.5 | 3.6 |
| Bathroom group | Private | Flush valve | 6.0 | 3.0 | 8.0 |
| Bathtub | Private | Faucet | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Bathtub | Public | Faucet | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.0 |
| Bidet | Private | Faucet | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 |
| Combination fixture | Private | Faucet | 2.25 | 2.25 | 3.0 |
| Dishwashing machine | Private | Automatic | — | 1.4 | 1.4 |
| Drinking fountain | Offices, etc. | $^3/_8$″ valve | 0.25 | — | 0.25 |
| Kitchen sink | Private | Faucet | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Kitchen sink | Hotel, restaurant | Faucet | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.0 |
| Laundry trays (1 to 3) | Private | Faucet | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Lavatory | Private | Faucet | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.7 |
| Lavatory | Public | Faucet | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 |
| Service sink | Offices, etc. | Faucet | 2.25 | 2.25 | 3.0 |
| Shower head | Public | Mixing valve | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.0 |
| Shower head | Private | Mixing valve | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Urinal | Public | 1″ flush valve | 10.0 | — | 10.0 |
| Urinal | Public | $^3/_4$″ flush valve | 5.0 | — | 5.0 |
| Urinal | Public | Flush tank | 3.0 | — | 3.0 |
| Washing machine (8 lb) | Private | Automatic | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.4 |
| Washing machine (8 lb) | Public | Automatic | 2.25 | 2.25 | 3.0 |
| Washing machine (15 lb) | Public | Automatic | 3.0 | 3.0 | 4.0 |
| Water closet | Private | Flush valve | 6.0 | — | 6.0 |
| Water closet | Private | Flush tank | 2.2 | — | 2.2 |
| Water closet | Public | Flush valve | 10.0 | — | 10.0 |
| Water closet | Public | Flush tank | 5.0 | — | 5.0 |
| Water closet | Public or private | Flushometer tank | 2.0 | — | 2.0 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For fixtures not listed , loads should be assumed by comparing the fixture to one listed using water in similar quantities and at similar rates. The assigned loads for fixtures with both hot and cold water supplies are given for separate hot and cold water loads and for total load. The separate hot and cold water loads being three-fourths of the total load for the fixture in each case.

**TABLE AP103.3(3)**
**TABLE FOR ESTIMATING DEMAND**

| SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS | | | SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH VALVES | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Load | Demand | | Load | Demand | |
| (Water supply fixture units) | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) | (Water supply fixture units) | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) |
| 1 | 3.0 | 0.04104 | — | — | — |
| 2 | 5.0 | 0.0684 | — | — | — |
| 3 | 6.5 | 0.86892 | — | — | — |
| 4 | 8.0 | 1.06944 | — | — | — |
| 5 | 9.4 | 1.256592 | 5 | 15.0 | 2.0052 |
| 6 | 10.7 | 1.430376 | 6 | 17.4 | 2.326032 |
| 7 | 11.8 | 1.577424 | 7 | 19.8 | 2.646364 |
| 8 | 12.8 | 1.711104 | 8 | 22.2 | 2.967696 |
| 9 | 13.7 | 1.831416 | 9 | 24.6 | 3.288528 |
| 10 | 14.6 | 1.951728 | 10 | 27.0 | 3.60936 |
| 11 | 15.4 | 2.058672 | 11 | 27.8 | 3.716304 |
| 12 | 16.0 | 2.13888 | 12 | 28.6 | 3.823248 |
| 13 | 16.5 | 2.20572 | 13 | 29.4 | 3.930192 |
| 14 | 17.0 | 2.27256 | 14 | 30.2 | 4.037136 |
| 15 | 17.5 | 2.3394 | 15 | 31.0 | 4.14408 |
| 16 | 18.0 | 2.90624 | 16 | 31.8 | 4.241024 |
| 17 | 18.4 | 2.459712 | 17 | 32.6 | 4.357968 |
| 18 | 18.8 | 2.513184 | 18 | 33.4 | 4.464912 |
| 19 | 19.2 | 2.566656 | 19 | 34.2 | 4.571856 |
| 20 | 19.6 | 2.620128 | 20 | 35.0 | 4.6788 |
| 25 | 21.5 | 2.87412 | 25 | 38.0 | 5.07984 |
| 30 | 23.3 | 3.114744 | 30 | 42.0 | 5.61356 |
| 35 | 24.9 | 3.328632 | 35 | 44.0 | 5.88192 |
| 40 | 26.3 | 3.515784 | 40 | 46.0 | 6.14928 |
| 45 | 27.7 | 3.702936 | 45 | 48.0 | 6.41664 |
| 50 | 29.1 | 3.890088 | 50 | 50.0 | 6.684 |
| 60 | 32.0 | 4.27776 | 60 | 54.0 | 7.21872 |
| 70 | 35.0 | 4.6788 | 70 | 58.0 | 7.75344 |
| 80 | 38.0 | 5.07984 | 80 | 61.2 | 8.181216 |
| 90 | 41.0 | 5.48088 | 90 | 64.3 | 8.595624 |
| 100 | 43.5 | 5.81508 | 100 | 67.5 | 9.0234 |
| 120 | 48.0 | 6.41664 | 120 | 73.0 | 9.75864 |
| 140 | 52.5 | 7.0182 | 140 | 77.0 | 10.29336 |
| 160 | 57.0 | 7.61976 | 160 | 81.0 | 10.82808 |
| 180 | 61.0 | 8.15448 | 180 | 85.5 | 11.42964 |
| 200 | 65.0 | 8.6892 | 200 | 90.0 | 12.0312 |
| 225 | 70.0 | 9.3576 | 225 | 95.5 | 12.76644 |
| 250 | 75.0 | 10.026 | 250 | 101.0 | 13.50168 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE AP103.3(3)—continued**
**TABLE FOR ESTIMATING DEMAND**

| SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS | | | SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH VALVES | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Load | Demand | | Load | Demand | |
| (Water supply fixture units) | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) | (Water supply fixture units) | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) |
| 275 | 80.0 | 10.6944 | 275 | 104.5 | 13.96956 |
| 300 | 85.0 | 11.3628 | 300 | 108.0 | 14.43744 |
| 400 | 105.0 | 14.0364 | 400 | 127.0 | 16.97736 |
| 500 | 124.0 | 16.57632 | 500 | 143.0 | 19.11624 |
| 750 | 170.0 | 22.7256 | 750 | 177.0 | 23.66136 |
| 1,000 | 208.0 | 27.80544 | 1,000 | 208.0 | 27.80544 |
| 1,250 | 239.0 | 31.94952 | 1,250 | 239.0 | 31.94952 |
| 1,500 | 269.0 | 35.95992 | 1,500 | 269.0 | 35.95992 |
| 1,750 | 297.0 | 39.70296 | 1,750 | 297.0 | 39.70296 |
| 2,000 | 325.0 | 43.446 | 2,000 | 325.0 | 43.446 |
| 2,500 | 380.0 | 50.7984 | 2,500 | 380.0 | 50.7984 |
| 3,000 | 433.0 | 57.88344 | 3,000 | 433.0 | 57.88344 |
| 4,000 | 535.0 | 70.182 | 4,000 | 525.0 | 70.182 |
| 5,000 | 593.0 | 79.27224 | 5,000 | 593.0 | 79.27224 |

**TABLE AP103.3(4)**
**LOSS OF PRESSURE THROUGH TAPS AND TEES IN POUNDS PER SQUARE INCH (psi)**

| GALLONS PER MINUTE | SIZE OF TAP OR TEE (inches) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | $^5/_8$ | $^3/_4$ | 1 | $1^1/_4$ | $1^1/_2$ | 2 | 3 |
| 10 | 1.35 | 0.64 | 0.18 | 0.08 | — | — | — |
| 20 | 5.38 | 2.54 | 0.77 | 0.31 | 0.14 | — | — |
| 30 | 12.10 | 5.72 | 1.62 | 0.69 | 0.33 | 0.10 | — |
| 40 | — | 10.20 | 3.07 | 1.23 | 0.58 | 0.18 | — |
| 50 | — | 15.90 | 4.49 | 1.92 | 0.91 | 0.28 | — |
| 60 | — | — | 6.46 | 2.76 | 1.31 | 0.40 | — |
| 70 | — | — | 8.79 | 3.76 | 1.78 | 0.55 | 0.10 |
| 80 | — | — | 11.50 | 4.90 | 2.32 | 0.72 | 0.13 |
| 90 | — | — | 14.50 | 6.21 | 2.94 | 0.91 | 0.16 |
| 100 | — | — | 17.94 | 7.67 | 3.63 | 1.12 | 0.21 |
| 120 | — | — | 25.80 | 11.00 | 5.23 | 1.61 | 0.30 |
| 140 | — | — | 35.20 | 15.00 | 7.12 | 2.20 | 0.41 |
| 150 | — | — | — | 17.20 | 8.16 | 2.52 | 0.47 |
| 160 | — | — | — | 19.60 | 9.30 | 2.92 | 0.54 |
| 180 | — | — | — | 24.80 | 11.80 | 3.62 | 0.68 |
| 200 | — | — | — | 30.70 | 14.50 | 4.48 | 0.84 |
| 225 | — | — | — | 38.80 | 18.40 | 5.60 | 1.06 |
| 250 | — | — | — | 47.90 | 22.70 | 7.00 | 1.31 |
| 275 | — | — | — | — | 27.40 | 7.70 | 1.59 |
| 300 | — | — | — | — | 32.60 | 10.10 | 1.88 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

**TABLE AP103.3(5)**
**ALLOWANCE IN EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FOR FRICTION LOSS IN VALVES AND THREADED FITTINGS (feet)**

| FITTING OR VALVE | PIPE SIZE (inches) | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 | 2 1/2 | 3 |
| 45-degree elbow | 1.2 | 1.5 | 1.8 | 2.4 | 3.0 | 4.0 | 5.0 | 6.0 |
| 90-degree elbow | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 4.0 | 5.0 | 7.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 |
| Tee, run | 0.6 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 1.2 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.0 |
| Tee, branch | 3.0 | 4.0 | 5.0 | 6.0 | 7.0 | 10.0 | 12.0 | 15.0 |
| Gate valve | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 1.6 | 2.0 |
| Balancing valve | 0.8 | 1.1 | 1.5 | 1.9 | 2.2 | 3.0 | 3.7 | 4.5 |
| Plug-type cock | 0.8 | 1.1 | 1.5 | 1.9 | 2.2 | 3.0 | 3.7 | 4.5 |
| Check valve, swing | 5.6 | 8.4 | 11.2 | 14.0 | 16.8 | 22.4 | 28.0 | 33.6 |
| Globe valve | 15.0 | 20.0 | 25.0 | 35.0 | 45.0 | 55.0 | 65.0 | 80.0 |
| Angle valve | 8.0 | 12.0 | 15.0 | 18.0 | 22.0 | 28.0 | 34.0 | 40.0 |

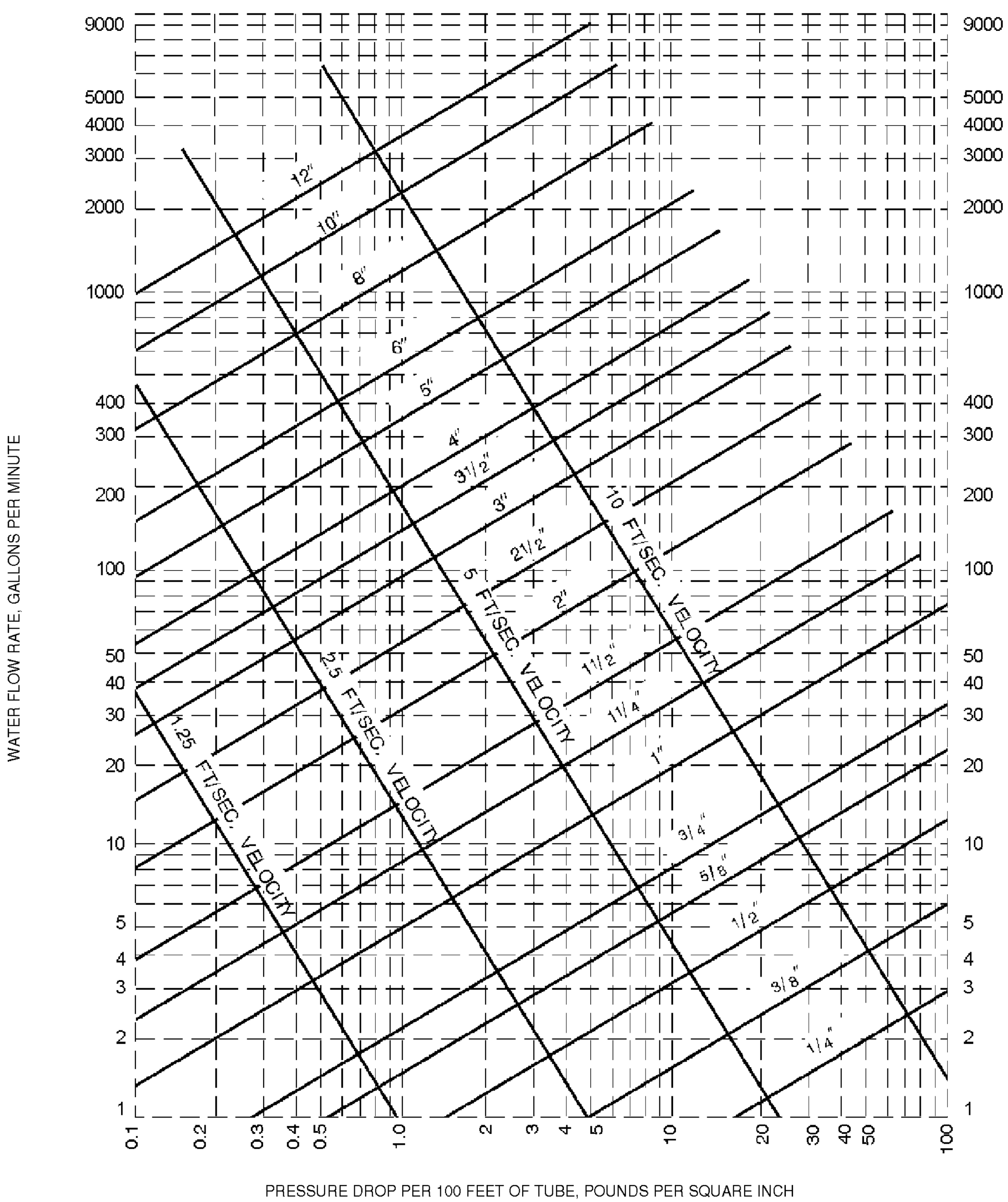
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**TABLE AP103.3(6)**
**PRESSURE LOSS IN FITTINGS AND VALVES EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE[a] (feet)**

| NOMINAL OR STANDARD SIZE (inches) | FITTINGS | | | | | VALVES | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Standard Ell | | 90-Degree Tee | | | | | | |
| | 90 Degree | 45 Degree | Side Branch | Straight Run | Coupling | Ball | Gate | Butterfly | Check |
| 3/8 | 0.5 | — | 1.5 | — | — | — | — | — | 1.5 |
| 1/2 | 1 | 0.5 | 2 | — | — | — | — | — | 2 |
| 5/8 | 1.5 | 0.5 | 2 | — | — | — | — | — | 2.5 |
| 3/4 | 2 | 0.5 | 3 | — | — | — | — | — | 3 |
| 1 | 2.5 | 1 | 4.5 | — | — | 0.5 | — | — | 4.5 |
| 1 1/4 | 3 | 1 | 5.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 | — | — | 5.5 |
| 1 1/2 | 4 | 1.5 | 7 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 | — | — | 6.5 |
| 2 | 5.5 | 2 | 9 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 7.5 | 9 |
| 2 1/2 | 7 | 2.5 | 12 | 0.5 | 0.5 | — | 1 | 10 | 11.5 |
| 3 | 9 | 3.5 | 15 | 1 | 1 | — | 1.5 | 15.5 | 14.5 |
| 3 1/2 | 9 | 3.5 | 14 | 1 | 1 | — | 2 | — | 12.5 |
| 4 | 12.5 | 5 | 21 | 1 | 1 | — | 2 | 16 | 18.5 |
| 5 | 16 | 6 | 27 | 1.5 | 1.5 | — | 3 | 11.5 | 23.5 |
| 6 | 19 | 7 | 34 | 2 | 2 | — | 3.5 | 13.5 | 26.5 |
| 8 | 29 | 11 | 50 | 3 | 3 | — | 5 | 12.5 | 39 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Allowances are for streamlined soldered fittings and recessed threaded fittings. For threaded fittings, double the allowances shown in the table. The equivalent lengths presented above are based on a C factor of 150 in the Hazen-Williams friction loss formula. The lengths shown are rounded to the nearest half-foot.

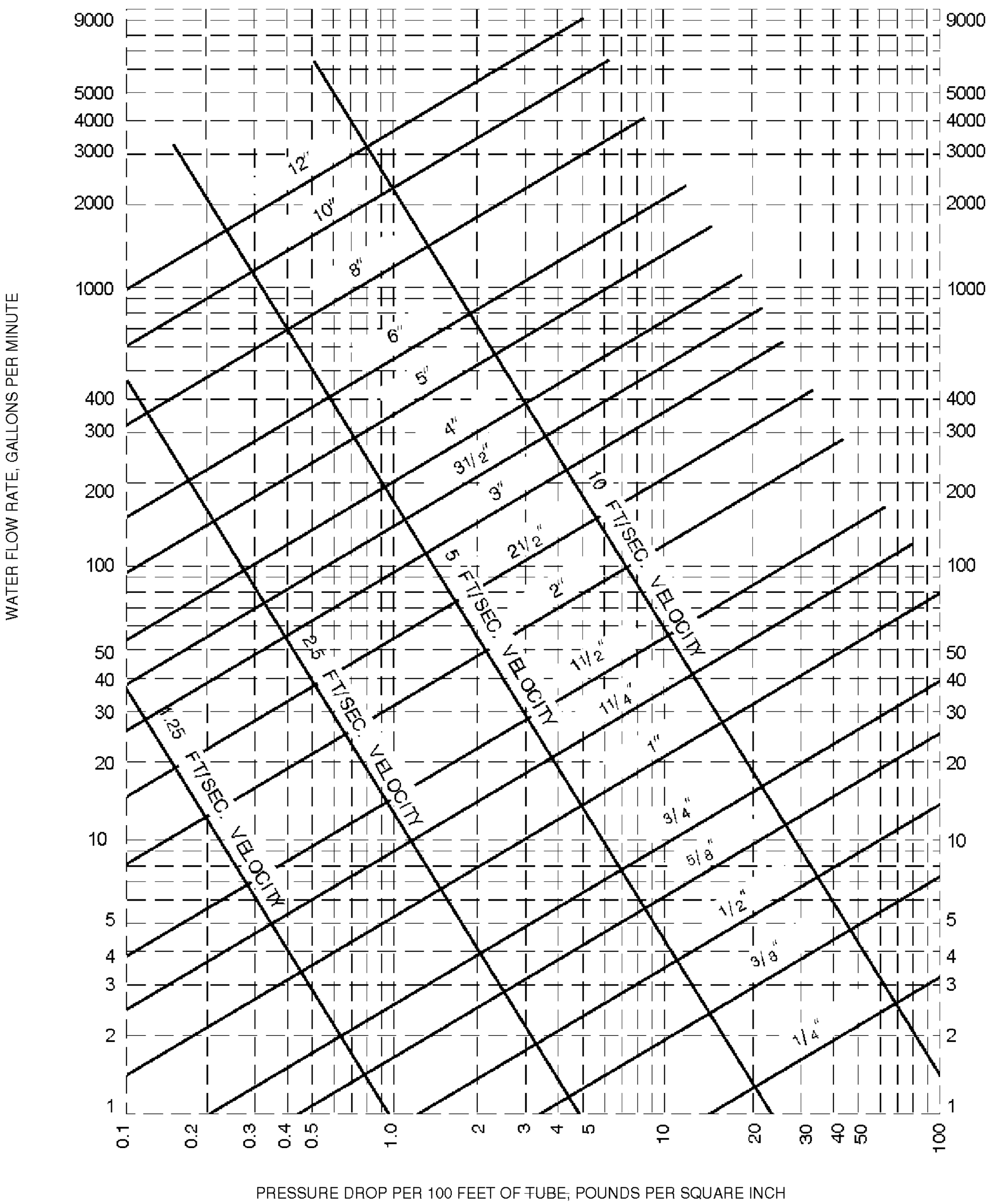



**Note:** Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet/second are not usually recommended.

**FIGURE AP103.3(2)**
**FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE[a] (TYPE K, ASTM B 88 COPPER TUBING)**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

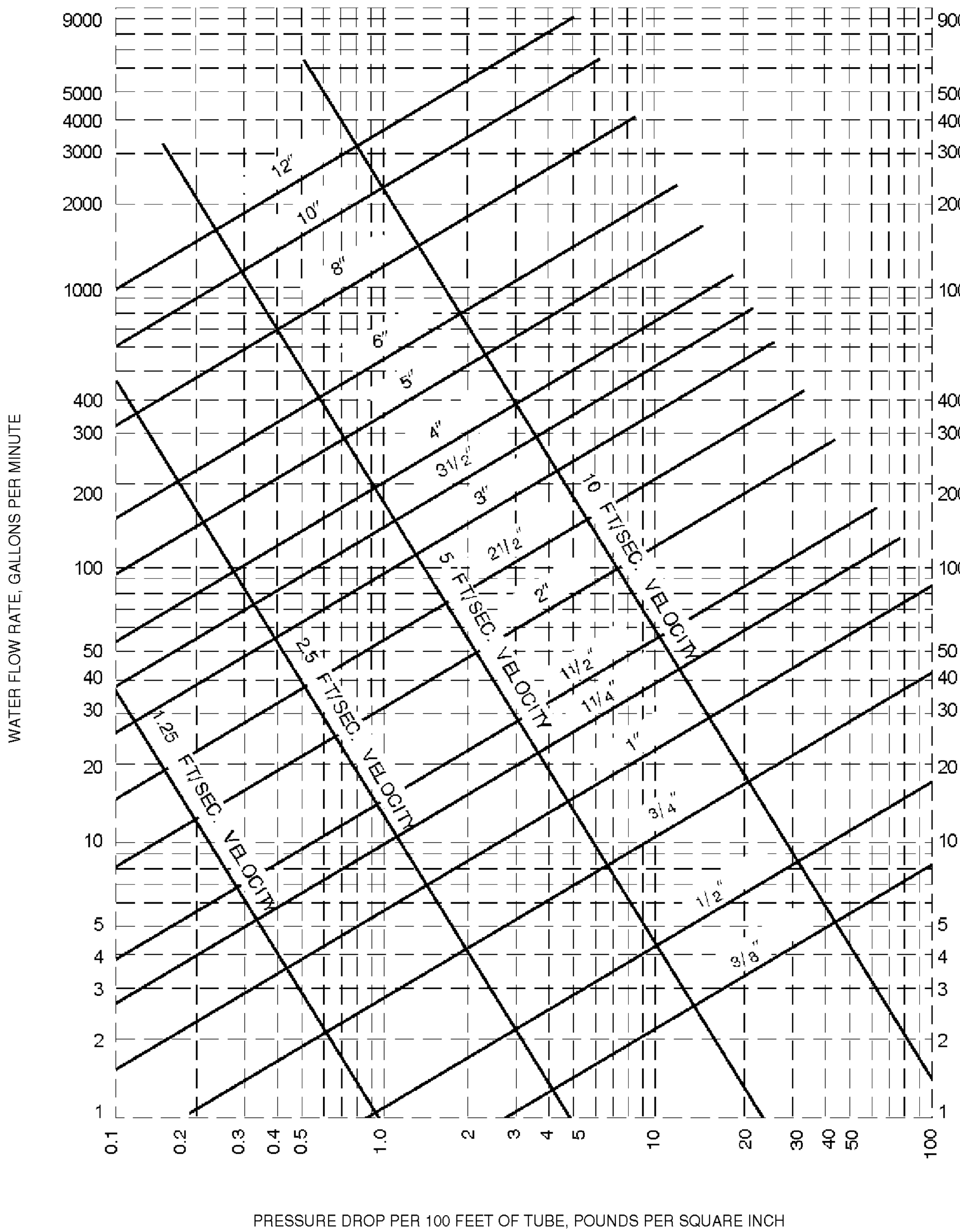



**Note:** Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet/second are not usually recommended.

**FIGURE AP103.3(3)**
**FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE[a] (TYPE L, ASTM B 88 COPPER TUBING)**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.




**Note:** Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet/second are not usually recommended.

**FIGURE AP103.3(4)**
**FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE[a] (TYPE M, ASTM B 88 COPPER TUBING)**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

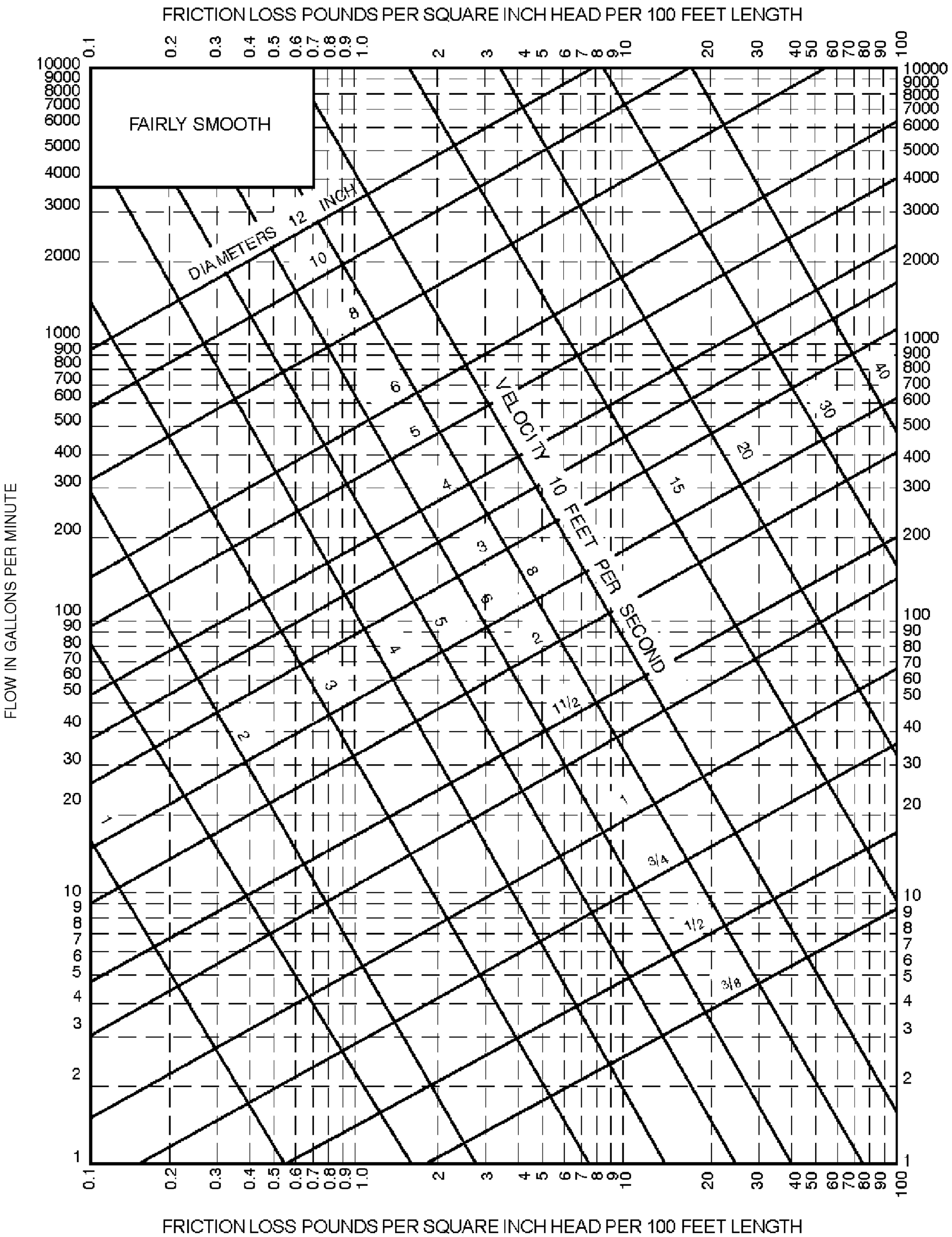



**FIGURE AP103.3(5)**
**FRICTION LOSS IN FAIRLY SMOOTH PIPE[a]**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new steel (fairly smooth) pipe and to actual diameters of standard-weight pipe.

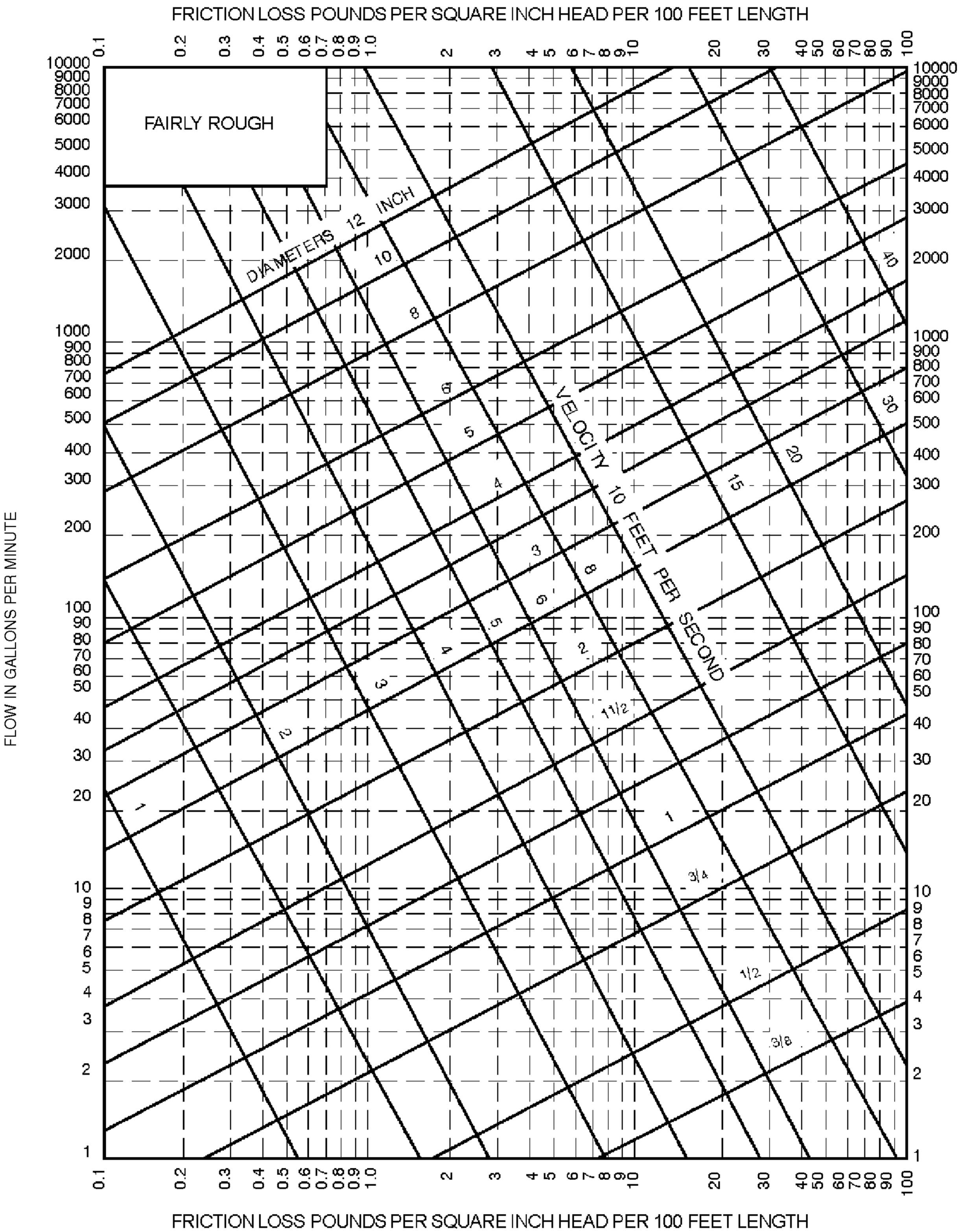



**FIGURE AP103.3(6)**
**FRICTION LOSS IN FAIRLY ROUGH PIPE[a]**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to fairly rough pipe and to actual diameters which in general will be less than the actual diameters of the new pipe of the same kind.

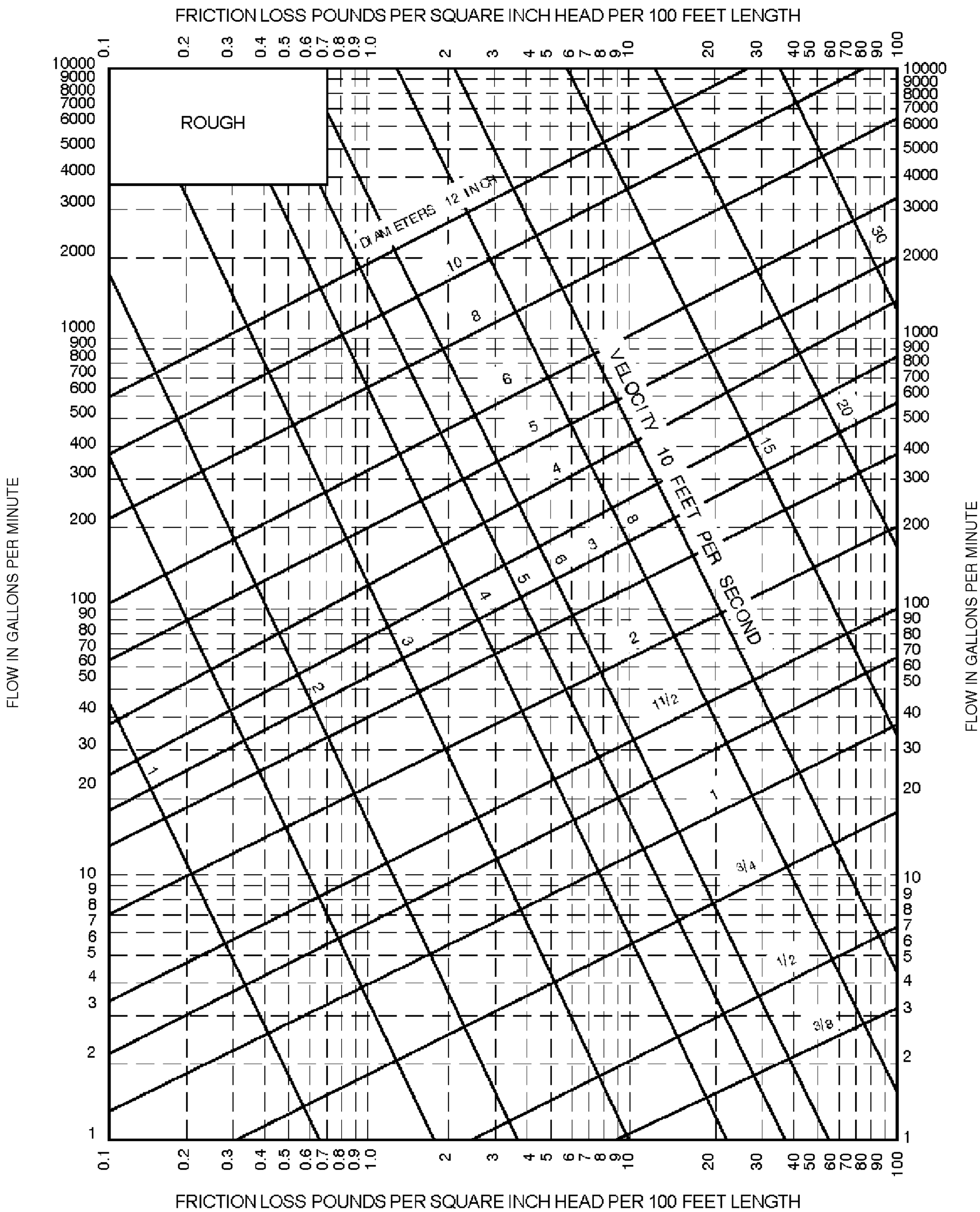



**FIGURE AP103.3(7)**
**FRICTION LOSS IN FAIRLY ROUGH PIPE[a]**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to very rough pipe and existing pipe and to their actual diameters.

## SECTION AP201
## SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

**AP201.1 Size of water-service mains, branch mains and risers.** The minimum size water service pipe shall be $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers shall be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including *equivalent length* of fittings. The size of each water distribution system shall be determined according to the procedure outlined in this section or by other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice and *approved* by the code official:

1. Supply load in the building water-distribution system shall be determined by total load on the pipe being sized, in terms of water-supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.), as shown in Table AP103.3(2). For fixtures not listed, choose a w.s.f.u. value of a fixture with similar flow characteristics.
2. Obtain the minimum daily static service pressure [psi (kPa)] available (as determined by the local water authority) at the water meter or other source of supply at the installation location. Adjust this minimum daily static pressure [psi (kPa)] for the following conditions:
   - 2.1. Determine the difference in elevation between the source of supply and the highest water supply outlet. Where the highest water supply outlet is located above the source of supply, deduct 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the source of supply, add 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation.
   - 2.2. Where a water pressure reducing valve is installed in the water distribution system, the minimum daily static water pressure available is 80 percent of the minimum daily static water pressure at the source of supply or the set pressure downstream of the pressure reducing valve, whichever is smaller.
   - 2.3. Deduct all pressure losses caused by special equipment such as a backflow preventer, water filter and water softener. Pressure loss data for each piece of equipment shall be obtained through the manufacturer of the device.
   - 2.4. Deduct the pressure in excess of 8 psi (55 kPa) resulting from installation of the special plumbing fixture, such as temperature-controlled shower and flushometer tank water closet. Using the resulting minimum available pressure, find the corresponding pressure range in Table AP201.1.
3. The maximum *developed length* for water piping is the actual length of pipe between the source of supply and the most remote fixture, including either hot (through the water heater) or cold water branches multiplied by a factor of 1.2 to compensate for pressure loss through fittings. Select the appropriate column in Table AP201.1 equal to or greater than the calculated maximum *developed length*.
4. To determine the size of water service pipe, meter and main distribution pipe to the building using the appropriate table, follow down the selected "maximum *developed length*" column to a fixture unit equal to or greater than the total installation demand calculated by using the "combined" water supply fixture unit column of Table AP201.1. Read the water service pipe and meter sizes in the first left-hand column and the main distribution pipe to the building in the second left-hand column on the same row.
5. To determine the size of each water distribution pipe, start at the most remote outlet on each branch (either hot or cold branch) and, working back toward the main distribution pipe to the building, add up the water supply fixture unit demand passing through each segment of the distribution system using the related hot or cold column of Table AP201.1. Knowing demand, the size of each segment shall be read from the second left-hand column of the same table and maximum *developed length* column selected in Steps 1 and 2, under the same or next smaller size meter row. In no case does the size of any branch or main need to be larger that the size of the main distribution pipe to the building established in Step 4.

**TABLE AP201.1**
**MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION PIPING**
**BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)**

| METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pressure Range 30 to 39 psi | | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 400 | 500 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | $^{1}/_{2}$[a] | 2.5 | 2 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1 | 1 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0 | 0 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ | 9.5 | 7.5 | 6 | 5.5 | 4 | 3.5 | 3 | 2.5 | 2 | 1.5 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | 1 | 32 | 25 | 20 | 16.5 | 11 | 9 | 7.8 | 6.5 | 5.5 | 4.5 |
| 1 | 1 | 32 | 32 | 27 | 21 | 13.5 | 10 | 8 | 7 | 5.5 | 5 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 30 | 24 | 20 | 17 | 13 | 10.5 |
| 1 | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | 80 | 80 | 70 | 61 | 45 | 34 | 27 | 22 | 16 | 12 |
| $1^{1}/_{2}$ | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | 80 | 80 | 80 | 75 | 54 | 40 | 31 | 25 | 17.5 | 13 |
| 1 | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 84 | 73 | 64 | 56 | 45 | 36 |
| $1^{1}/_{2}$ | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 117 | 92 | 79 | 69 | 54 | 43 |
| 2 | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 128 | 99 | 83 | 72 | 56 | 45 |
| 1 | 2 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 86 |
| $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 2 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 258 | 223 | 196 | 174 | 144 | 122 |
| 2 | 2 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 318 | 266 | 229 | 201 | 160 | 134 |
| 2 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 495 | 448 | 409 | 353 | 311 |

| METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pressure Range 40 to 49 psi | | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 400 | 500 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | $^{1}/_{2}$[a] | 3 | 2.5 | 2 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1 | 1 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | $^{3}/_{4}$ | 9.5 | 9.5 | 8.5 | 7 | 5.5 | 4.5 | 3.5 | 3 | 2.5 | 2 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | 1 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 26 | 18 | 13.5 | 10.5 | 9 | 7.5 | 6 |
| 1 | 1 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 21 | 15 | 11.5 | 9.5 | 7.5 | 6.5 |
| $^{3}/_{4}$ | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 27 | 21 | 16.5 |
| 1 | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 65 | 52 | 42 | 35 | 26 | 20 |
| $1^{1}/_{2}$ | $1^{1}/_{4}$ | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 75 | 59 | 48 | 39 | 28 | 21 |
| 1 | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 78 | 65 | 55 |
| $1^{1}/_{2}$ | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 130 | 109 | 93 | 75 | 63 |
| 2 | $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 139 | 115 | 98 | 77 | 64 |
| 1 | 2 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 |
| $1^{1}/_{2}$ | 2 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 264 | 238 | 198 | 169 |
| 2 | 2 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 349 | 304 | 270 | 220 | 185 |
| 2 | $2^{1}/_{2}$ | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 528 | 456 | 403 |

*(continued)*

**TABLE AP201.1—continued**
**MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION PIPING**
**BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)**

| METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pressure Range 50 to 60 psi | | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 400 | 500 |
| 3/4 | 1/2[a] | 3 | 3 | 2.5 | 2 | 1.5 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0.5 | 0.5 |
| 3/4 | 3/4 | 9.5 | 9.5 | 9.5 | 8.5 | 6.5 | 5 | 4.5 | 4 | 3 | 2.5 |
| 3/4 | 1 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 25 | 18.5 | 14.5 | 12 | 9.5 | 8 |
| 1 | 1 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 30 | 22 | 16.5 | 13 | 10 | 8 |
| 3/4 | 1 1/4 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 29 | 24 |
| 1 | 1 1/4 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 68 | 57 | 48 | 35 | 28 |
| 1 1/2 | 1 1/4 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 75 | 63 | 53 | 39 | 29 |
| 1 | 1 1/2 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 82 | 70 |
| 1 1/2 | 1 1/2 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 139 | 120 | 94 | 79 |
| 2 | 1 1/2 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 146 | 126 | 97 | 81 |
| 1 | 2 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 |
| 1 1/2 | 2 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 247 | 213 |
| 2 | 2 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 329 | 272 | 232 |
| 2 | 2 1/2 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 486 |

| METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pressure Range Over 60 | | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 400 | 500 |
| 3/4 | 1/2[a] | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2.5 | 2 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1 | 1 | 0.5 |
| 3/4 | 3/4 | 9.5 | 9.5 | 9.5 | 9.5 | 7.5 | 6 | 5 | 4.5 | 3.5 | 3 |
| 3/4 | 1 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 24 | 19.5 | 15.5 | 11.5 | 9.5 |
| 1 | 1 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 28 | 28 | 17 | 12 | 9.5 |
| 3/4 | 1 1/4 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 30 |
| 1 | 1 1/4 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 69 | 60 | 46 | 36 |
| 1 1/2 | 1 1/4 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 80 | 76 | 65 | 50 | 38 |
| 1 | 1 1/2 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 84 |
| 1 1/2 | 1 1/2 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 144 | 114 | 94 |
| 2 | 1 1/2 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 118 | 97 |
| 1 | 2 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 | 87 |
| 1 1/2 | 2 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 252 |
| 2 | 2 | 365 | 368 | 368 | 368 | 368 | 368 | 368 | 368 | 318 | 273 |
| 2 | 2 1/2 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Minimum size for building supply is 3/4-inch pipe.

## APPENDIX Q

# ICC INTERNATIONAL RESIDENTIAL CODE ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS/NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE CROSS-REFERENCE

(This appendix is informative and is not part of the code. This table is a cross-reference of the *International Residential Code*, Chapters 34 through 43, and the 2008 *National Electrical Code,* NFPA 70).

| International Residential Code | | National Electrical Code |
|---|---|---|
| **CHAPTER 34** | **GENERAL REQUIREMENTS** | |
| **SECTION E3401** | **GENERAL** | |
| E3401.1 | Applicability | None |
| E3401.2 | Scope | 90.2 |
| E3401.3 | Not covered | 90.2 |
| E3401.4 | Additions and alterations | None |
| **SECTION E3402** | **BUILDING STRUCTURE PROTECTION** | |
| E3402.1 | Drilling and notching | None |
| E3402.2 | Penetrations of fire-resistance-rated assemblies | 300.21 |
| E3402.3 | Penetrations of firestops and draftstops | 300.21 |
| **SECTION E3403** | **INSPECTION AND APPROVAL** | |
| E3403.1 | Approval | 110.2 |
| E3403.2 | Inspection required | None |
| E3403.3 | Listing and labeling | 110.3 |
| **SECTION E3404** | **GENERAL EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS** | |
| E3404.1 | Voltages | 110.4 |
| E3404.2 | Interrupting rating | 110.9 |
| E3404.3 | Circuit characteristics | 110.10 |
| E3404.4 | Protection of equipment | 110.11 |
| E3404.5 | Unused openings | 110.12(A) |
| E3404.6 | Integrity of electrical equipment | 110.12(C) |
| E3404.7 | Mounting | 110.13(A) |
| E3404.8 | Energized parts guarded against accidental contact | 110.27(A) |
| E3404.9 | Prevent physical damage | 110.27(B) |
| E3404.10 | Equipment identification | 110.21 |
| E3404.11 | Identification of disconnecting means | 110.22 |
| **SECTION E3405** | **EQUIPMENT LOCATION AND CLEARANCES** | |
| E3405.1 | Working space and clearances | 110.26 |
| Figure E3405.1 | Working space and clearances | 110.26(A) |
| | Footnote 1 | 110.26(F)(1)(a) |
| | Footnote 2 | 110.26(A)(3) and 110.26(E) |
| | Footnote 3 | 110.26(B) |
| | Footnote 4 | 230.70(A), 240.24(D), (E), & (F), Footnote 5 |
| | Footnote 5 | 110.26(D) |
| E3405.2 | Working clearances for energized equipment and panelboards | 110.26(A)(1), (2), & (3) |
| E3405.3 | Clearances over panelboards | 110.26(F)(1)(a) |
| E3405.4 | Location of clear spaces | 110.26(B), 230.70(A) and 240.24(D), (E) & (F) |
| E3405.5 | Access and entrance to working space | 110.26(C)(1) |
| E3405.6 | Illumination | 110.26(D) |
| E3405.7 | Headroom | 110.26(E) |
| **SECTION E3406** | **ELECTRICAL CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTIONS** | |
| E3406.1 | General | Articles 110, 300 and 310 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E3406.2 | Conductor material | 110.5 |
| E3406.3 | Minimum size of conductors | 310.5 |
| E3406.4 | Stranded conductors | 310.3 |
| E3406.5 | Individual conductor insulation | 310.2(A) and 310.8 |
| E3406.6 | Conductors in parallel | 310.4 |
| E3406.7 | Conductors of the same circuit | 300.3(B) |
| E3406.8 | Aluminum and copper connections | 110.14 |
| E3406.9 | Terminals | 110.14(A) |
| E3406.10 | Splices | 110.14(B) |
| E3406.10.1 | Continuity | 300.13(A) |
| | Exception | 300.13(A) |
| E3406.10.2 | Device connections | 250.148 and 300.13(B) |
| E3406.10.3 | Length of conductor for splice or termination | 300.14 |
| E3406.11 | Grounded conductor continuity | 200.2(B) |
| **SECTION E3407** | **CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION** | |
| E3407.1 | Grounded conductors | 200.6(A), 200.6(B) and 310.12(A) |
| E3407.2 | Equipment grounding conductors | 250.119 and 310.12(B) |
| E3407.3 | Ungrounded conductors | 310.12(C), 310.12(C), Exception and 200.7(C)(1) & (C)(2) |
| E3407.4 | Identification of terminals | 200.10 |
| E3407.4.1 | Device terminals | 200.10(A) |
| E3407.4.2 | Receptacles, plugs, and connectors | 200.10(B) |
| **CHAPTER 35** | **ELECTRICAL DEFINITIONS** | |
| **SECTION 3501** | **GENERAL** | Article 100, Definitions, 210.12(A) |
| **CHAPTER 36** | **SERVICES** | |
| **SECTION E3601** | **GENERAL SERVICES** | |
| E3601.1 | Scope | 230.1 |
| E3601.2 | Number of services | 230.2 |
| E3601.3 | One building or other structure not to be supplied through another | 230.3 |
| E3601.4 | Other conductors in raceway or cable | 230.7 |
| E3601.5 | Raceway seal | 230.8 |
| E3601.6 | Service disconnect required | 230.70 |
| E3601.6.1 | Marking of service equipment and disconnects | 230.66 and 230.70(B) |
| E3601.6.2 | Service disconnect location | 230.70 and 230.72(C) |
| E3601.7 | Maximum number of disconnects | 230.71(A) |
| **SECTION E3602** | **SERVICE SIZE AND RATING** | |
| E3602.1 | Rating of ungrounded conductors | 230.79(C) and (D) |
| E3602.2 | Service load | 220.82(A) |
| E3602.2.1 | Services under 100 amperes | None |
| Table E3602.2 | Minimum service load calculation | 220.82 (B) and (C) |
| E3602.3 | Rating of service disconnect | 230.79 & 230.80 |
| E3602.4 | Voltage rating | 220.82(a) |
| **SECTION E3603** | **SERVICE, FEEDER AND GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR SIZING** | |
| E3603.1 | Grounded and ungrounded service conductor size | 310.15(B)(6) |
| Table E3603.1 | Service conductor and grounding electrode conductor sizing | Table 310.15(B)(6) and Table 250.66 |
| | Footnote 1 | 250.64(E) |
| | Footnote 2 | 250.64(B) |
| | Footnote 3 | 250.64(B) |
| | Footnote 4 | 250.66(A) and (B) |
| E3603.2 | Ungrounded service conductors for accessory buildings and structures | 230.79(D) |
| | Exception 1 | and 230.79(A) |
| | Exception 2 | and 230.79(B) |
| E3603.3 | Overload protection | 230.90 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E3603.3.1 | Ungrounded conductor | 230.90(A) |
| | Exception | 230.90(A), Exception No. 3 |
| E3603.3.2 | Not in grounded conductor | 230.90(B) |
| E3603.3.3 | Location | 230.91 |
| E3603.4 | Grounding electrode conductor size | 250.66 |
| E3603.5 | Temperature limitations | 110.14(C)(1) |
| **SECTION E3604** | **OVERHEAD SERVICE-DROP AND SERVICE CONDUCTOR INSTALLATION** | |
| E3604.1 | Clearances on buildings | 230.9 |
| Figure E3604.1 | Clearances from building openings | 230.9 |
| E3604.2 | Vertical clearances | 230.24 |
| E3604.2.1 | Above roofs | 230.24(A) |
| | Exception 1 | 230.24(A), Exception No. 1 |
| | Exception 2 | 230.24(A), Exception No. 2 |
| | Exception 3 | 230.24(A), Exception No. 3 |
| | Exception 4 | 230.24(A), Exception No. 4 |
| Figure E3604.2.1 | Clearances from roofs | 230.24 |
| E3604.2.2 | Vertical clearance from grade | 230.24(B) |
| | Item 1 | 230.24(B)(1) |
| | Item 2 | 230.24(B)(2) |
| | Item 3 | 230.24(B)(4) |
| E3604.3 | Point of attachment | 230.26 |
| E3604.4 | Means of attachment | 230.27 |
| E3604.5 | Service masts as supports | 230.28 |
| E3604.6 | Supports over buildings | 230.29 |
| **SECTION E3605** | **SERVICE-ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS** | |
| E3605.1 | Insulation of service-entrance conductors | 230.41 |
| | Exception 1 | 230.41, Exception |
| | Exception 2 | 230.41, Exception |
| E3605.2 | Wiring methods for services | 230.43 |
| E3605.3 | Spliced conductors | 230.46 |
| E3605.4 | Protection against physical damage | 230.49 |
| E3605.5 | Protection of service cables against damage | 230.50(A) |
| E3605.6 | Direct sunlight exposure | 310.8(D) |
| E3605.7 | Mounting supports | 230.51 |
| E3605.8 | Raceways to drain | 230.53 |
| E3605.9 | Overhead service locations | 230.54 |
| E3605.9.1 | Rain-tight service head | 230.54(A) |
| E3605.9.2 | Service cable, service head or gooseneck | 230.54(B) |
| E3605.9.3 | Service head location | 230.54(C) |
| | Exception | 230.54(C), Exception |
| E3605.9.4 | Separately bushed openings | 230.54(E) |
| E3605.9.5 | Drip loops | 230.54(F) |
| E3605.9.6 | Conductor arrangement | 230.54(G) |
| E3605.9.7 | Secured | 230.54(D) |
| **SECTION E3606** | **SERVICE EQUIPMENT—GENERAL** | |
| E3606.1 | Service equipment enclosures | 230.62 |
| E3606.2 | Working space | 110.26 |
| E3606.3 | Available short-circuit current | None |
| E3606.4 | Marking | 230.66 |
| **SECTION E3607** | **SYSTEM GROUNDING** | |
| E3607.1 | System service ground | 250.20(B)(1) and 250.24(A) |
| E3607.2 | Location of grounding electrode conductor connection | 250.24(A)(1) and (A)(5) |
| E3607.3 | Buildings or structures supplied by feeder(s) or branch circuit(s) | 250.32(A) |
| | Exception | 250.32(A), Exception |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E3607.3.1 | Equipment grounding conductor | 250.32(B) and Table 250.122 |
| E3607.3.2 | Grounded conductor. | 250.32(B) Exception |
| E3607.4 | Grounding electrode conductor | 250.24(D) |
| E3607.5 | Main bonding jumper | 250.24(B) |
| E3607.6 | Common grounding electrode | 250.58 |
| **SECTION E3608** | **GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM** | |
| E3608.1 | Grounding electrode system. | 250.50 |
| E3608.1 | Exception. | 250.50 Exception |
| E3608.1.1 | Metal underground water pipe | 250.52(A)(1) |
| E3608.1.1.1 | Installation | 250.53(D) and 250.53(E) |
| E3608.1.2 | Concrete-encased electrode | 250.50(A)(3) |
| E3608.1.3 | Ground Rings. | 250.52(A)(4), 250.53(F) |
| E3608.1.4 | Rod and pipe electrodes. | 250.52(A)(5) |
| E3608.1.4.1 | Installation. | 250.53(G) |
| E3608.1.5 | Plate electrodes | 250.52(A)(6) and 250.53(H) |
| E3608.1.6 | Other listed electrodes | 250.52(A)(6) |
| E3608.2 | Bonding Jumper | 250.53(C) |
| E3608.3 | Rod, pipe and plate electrode requirements | 250.53(A) and (G) |
| E3608.4 | Resistance of rod, pipe and plate electrodes. | 250.56 |
| E3608.5 | Aluminum Electrodes | 250.52(B)(2) |
| E3608.6 | Metal underground gas piping system | 250.52(B)(1) |
| **SECTION E3609** | **BONDING** | |
| E3609.1 | General | 250.90 |
| E3609.2 | Bonding of service equipment | 250.92(A) |
| E3609.3 | Bonding to other systems. | 250.94 |
| E3609.4 | Method of bonding at the service. | 250.92(B) |
| E3609.4.1 | Grounded service conductor | 250.92(B)(1) |
| E3609.4.2 | Threaded connections | 250.92(B)(2) |
| E3609.4.3 | Threadless couplings and connectors | 250.92(B)(3) |
| E3609.4.4 | Other devices | 250.92(B)(4) |
| E3609.5 | Sizing bonding jumper on supply side of service and main bonding jumper | 250.102(C) |
| E3609.6 | Metal water piping bonding | 250.104(A) |
| E3609.7 | Bonding other metal piping | 250.104(B) |
| **SECTION E3610** | **GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTORS** | |
| E3610.1 | Continuous | 250.64(C) and (F) |
| E3610.2 | Securing and protection against physical damage. | 250.64(A) and (B) |
| E3610.3 | Enclosures for grounding electrode conductors | 250.64(E) |
| **SECTION E3611** | **GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR CONNECTION TO GROUNDING ELECTRODES** | |
| E3611.1 | Methods of grounding connection to electrodes. | 250.70 |
| E3611.2 | Accessibility | 250.68(A) |
| E3611.3 | Effective grounding path | 250.68(B) |
| E3611.4 | Protection of ground clamps and fittings | 250.10 |
| E3611.5 | Clean surfaces. | 250.12 |
| **CHAPTER 37** | **BRANCH CIRCUIT AND FEEDER REQUIREMENTS** | |
| **SECTION E3701** | **GENERAL** | |
| E3701.1 | Scope | None |
| E3701.2 | Branch-circuit and feeder ampacity. | 210.19(A) and 215.2(A)(1) |
| E3701.3 | Selection of ampacity | 310.15(A)(2) |
| E3701.4 | Multioutlet branch circuits | 210.19(A)(2) |
| E3701.5 | Multiwire branch circuits. | 210.4 |
| E3701.5.1 | Disconnecting means | 210.4(B) |
| E3701.5.2 | Grouping | 210.4(D) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **SECTION E3702** | **BRANCH CIRCUIT RATINGS** | |
| E3702.1 | Branch-circuit voltage limitations | 210.6(A) and (B) |
| E3702.2 | Branch-circuit ampere rating | 210.3 |
| E3702.3 | Fifteen- and 20-ampere branch circuits | 210.23(A) |
| E3702.4 | Thirty-ampere branch circuits | 210.23(B) |
| E3702.5 | Branch circuits serving multiple loads or outlets | 210.23(A) |
| E3702.6 | Branch circuits serving a single motor | 430.22(A) |
| E3702.7 | Branch circuits serving motor-operated and combination loads | 220.18(A) |
| E3702.8 | Branch-circuit inductive lighting loads | 220.18(B) |
| E3702.9 | Branch-circuit load for ranges and cooking appliances | Table 220.55, Note 4 |
| E3702.9.1 | Minimum branch circuit for ranges | 210.19(A)(3) |
| E3702.10 | Branch circuits serving heating loads | 422.13 and 424.3(A) & (B) |
| E3702.11 | Branch circuits for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment | 440.35, 440.4(B) and 440.62(A) |
| E3702.12 | Branch circuits serving room air conditioners | 440.62(A) |
| E3702.12.1 | Where no other loads are supplied | 440.62(B) |
| E3702.12.2 | Where lighting units or other appliances are also supplied | 440.62(C) |
| E3702.13 | Branch-circuit requirement—summary | 210.24 and 210.25 |
| Table E3702.13 | Branch-circuit requirement—summary | Table 210.24 |
| **SECTION E3703** | **REQUIRED BRANCH CIRCUITS** | |
| E3703.1 | Branch circuits for heating | 422.12 and 422.12 Exception |
| E3703.2 | Kitchen and dining area receptacles | 210.52 (B)(1) |
| E3703.3 | Laundry circuit | 210.23(A) Exception and 210.11(C)(2) |
| E3703.4 | Bathroom branch circuits | 210.11(C)(3) |
| E3703.5 | Number of branch circuits | 210.11(A) |
| E3703.6 | Branch-circuit load proportioning | 210.11(B) |
| **SECTION E3704** | **FEEDER REQUIREMENTS** | |
| E3704.1 | Conductor size | Table 310.15(B)(6), Sections 215.2 (A)(3), (A)(4) and 220.10(A) |
| E3704.2 | Feeder loads | 220.12 |
| Table E3704.2(1) | Feeder load calculation | Table 220.12, Table 220.42(C), Sections 220.14, 220.50, 220.51, 220.52, 220.53, 220.54, 220.55 and 220.60 |
| Table E3704.2(2) | Demand loads for electric ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units and other cooking appliances over $1^3/_4$ kVA rating | Table 220.55 |
| E3704.3 | Feeder neutral load | 220.61 |
| E3704.4 | Lighting and general use receptacle load | 220.14(J), Table 220.12 |
| E3704.5 | Ampacity and calculated loads | 220.40 |
| E3704.6 | Equipment grounding conductor | 215.6 |
| **SECTION E3705** | **CONDUCTOR SIZING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTION** | |
| E3705.1 | General | 310.15(A) |
| Table E3705.1 | Allowable ampacities | Table 310.16 |
| E3705.2 | Correction factors for ambient temperatures | Table 310.16 |
| Table E3705.2 | Ambient temperature correction factors | Table 310.16, Correction factors |
| E3705.3 | Adjustment factor for conductor proximity | 310.15(B)(2)(a) |
| Table E3705.3 | Conductor proximity adjustment factors | Table 310.15(B)(2)(a) |
| E3705.4 | Temperature limitations | 110.14(C) |
| E3705.4.1 | Conductors rated 60°C | 110.14(C)(1)(a) |
| E3705.4.2 | Conductors rated 75°C | 110.14(C)(1)(b) |
| E3705.4.3 | Separately installed pressure connectors | 110.14(C)(2) |
| E3705.4.4 | Conductors of type NM cable | 334.80 and 334.112 |
| E3705.5 | Overcurrent protection required | Table 310.15(B)(6), Sections 240.4, 240.21 |
| E3705.5.1 | Cords | 240.5 |
| E3705.5.2 | Overcurrent devices of the next higher size | 240.4(B) |
| E3705.5.3 | Small conductors | 240.4(D) |
| E3705.5.4 | Air conditioning and heat pump equipment | 240.4(G) |
| E3705.6 | Fuses and fixed trip circuit breakers | Section 240.6 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E3705.7 | Location of overcurrent devices in or on premises | 240.24(A),(C),(D),(E),(F) |
| E3705.8 | Ready access for occupants | Section 240.24(B) |
| E3705.9 | Enclosures for overcurrent devices | Section 240.30 (A) and (B) |
| **SECTION E3706** | **PANELBOARDS** | |
| E3706.1 | Panelboard rating | 408.30 |
| E3706.2 | Panelboard circuit identification | 408.4 |
| E3706.3 | Panelboard overcurrent protection | 408.36 |
| E3706.4 | Grounded conductor terminations | 408.41 |
| E3706.5 | Back-fed devices | 408.36(D) |
| **CHAPTER 38** | **WIRING METHODS** | |
| **SECTION E3801** | **GENERAL REQUIREMENTS** | |
| E3801.1 | Scope | Section 300.1 |
| E3801.2 | Allowable wiring methods | Sections 110.8 and 300.3(A) |
| Table E3801.2 | Allowable wiring methods | None |
| E3801.3 | Circuit conductors | 300.3(B) |
| E3801.4 | Wiring method applications | Chapter 3 and Section 300.2 |
| Table E3801.4 | Allowable applications for wiring methods | Chapter 3 and Section 300.2 |
| **SECTION E3802** | **ABOVE-GROUND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS** | |
| E3802.1 | Installation and support requirements | Chapter 3 |
| Table E3802.1 | General installation and support requirements for wiring methods | Chapter 3 |
| E3802.2 | Cables in accessible attics | 320.23 and 334.23 |
| E3802.2.1 | Across structural members | 320.23(A) and 334.23 |
| E3802.2.2 | Cable installed through or parallel to framing members | 320.23(B) |
| E3802.3 | Exposed cable | 320.15 and 334.15 |
| E3802.3.1 | Surface installation | 334.15(A) |
| E3802.3.2 | Protection from physical damage | 334.15(B) |
| E3802.3.3 | Locations exposed to direct sunlight | 310.8(D) |
| E3802.4 | In unfinished basements | 334.15(C) |
| E3802.5 | Bends | 334.24 and 338.24 |
| E3802.6 | Raceways exposed to different temperatures | Section 300.7(A) |
| E3802.7 | Wet locations above grade | 300.9 |
| **SECTION E3803** | **UNDERGROUND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS** | |
| E3803.1 | Minimum cover requirements | 300.5(A) |
| Table E3803.1 | Minimum cover requirements, burial in inches | Table 300.5 |
| E3803.2 | Warning ribbon | 300.5(D)(3) |
| E3803.3 | Protection from damage | 300.5(D) |
| E3803.4 | Splices and taps | 300.5(E) |
| E3803.5 | Backfill | 300.5(F) |
| E3803.6 | Raceway seals | 300.5(G) |
| E3803.7 | Bushing | 300.5(H) |
| E3803.8 | Single conductors | 300.5(I) |
| E3803.9 | Ground movement | Section 300.5(J) |
| E3803.10 | Wet locations | 300.5(B) |
| E3803.11 | Under buildings | 300.5(C) |
| **CHAPTER 39** | **POWER AND LIGHTING DISTRIBUTION** | |
| **SECTION E3901** | **RECEPTACLE OUTLETS** | |
| E3901.1 | General | 210.50 and 210.52 |
| E3901.2 | General-use receptacle distribution | 210.52(A) |
| E3901.2.1 | Spacing | 210.52(A)(2) |
| E3902.2.2 | Wall space | 210.52(A)(2) |
| E3901.2.3 | Floor receptacles | 210.52(3) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E3901.3 | Small appliance receptacles | 210.52(B)(1) |
| E3901.3.1 | Other outlets prohibited | 210.52(B)(2) |
| E3901.3.2 | Limitations | 210.52(B)(3) |
| E3901.4 | Countertop receptacles | 210.52(C) |
| E3901.4.1 | Wall counter space | 210.52(C)(1) |
| E3901.4.2 | Island counter spaces | 210.52(C)(2) |
| E3901.4.3 | Peninsular counter space | 210.52(C)(3) |
| E3901.4.4 | Separate spaces | 210.52(C)(4) |
| E3901.4.5 | Receptacle outlet location | 210.52(C)(5) |
| E3901.5 | Appliance outlets | 210.50(C) |
| E3901.6 | Bathroom | 210.52(D) |
| E3901.7 | Outdoor outlets | 210.52(E) |
| E3901.8 | Laundry areas | 210.52(F) |
| E3901.9 | Basements and garages | 210.52(G) |
| E3901.10 | Hallways | 210.52(H) |
| E3901.11 | HVAC outlet | 210.63 |
| **SECTION E3902** | **GROUND-FAULT AND ARC-FAULT CIRCUIT-INTERRUPTER PROTECTION** | |
| E3902.1 | Bathroom receptacles | 210.8(A)(1) |
| E3902.2 | Garage and accessory building receptacles | 210.8(A)(2) |
| E3902.3 | Outdoor receptacles | 210.8(A)(3) |
| E3902.4 | Crawl space receptacles | 210.8(A)(4) |
| E3902.5 | Unfinished basement receptacles | 210.8(A)(5) |
| E3902.6 | Kitchen receptacles | 210.8(A)(6) |
| E3902.7 | Laundry, utility and wet bar sink receptacles | 210.8(A)(7) |
| E3902.8 | Boathouse receptacles | 210.8(A)(8) |
| E3902.9 | Boat hoists | 210.8(C) |
| E3902.10 | Electrically heated floors | 424.44(G) |
| E3902.11 | Exempt receptacles | 210.8(A)(2) |
| E3902.12 | Bedroom outlets | 210.12 |
| **SECTION E3903** | **LIGHTING OUTLETS** | |
| E3903.1 | General | 210.70(A) |
| E3903.2 | Habitable rooms | 210.70(A)(1) |
| E3903.3 | Additional locations | 210.70(A)(2) |
| E3903.4 | Storage or equipment spaces | 210.70(A)(3) |
| **SECTION E3904** | **GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS** | |
| E3904.1 | Electrical continuity of metal raceways and enclosures | 300.10 |
| E3904.2 | Mechanical continuity—raceways and cables | 300.12 |
| E3904.3 | Securing and supporting | 300.11(A) |
| E3904.3.1 | Prohibited means of support | 300.11(C) |
| E3904.4 | Raceways as means of support | 300.11(B) |
| E3904.5 | Raceway installations | 300.18 |
| E3904.6 | Conduit and tubing fill | 300.17 and Chapter 9, Table 1 and Annex C |
| Tables E3904.6(1)-E3904.6(10) | Maximum number of conductors in conduit or tubing | 300.17 and Chapter 9, Table 1, Note 1 |
| E3904.7 | Air handling—stud cavity and joist spaces | Section 300.22(C), Exception |
| **CHAPTER E3905** | **BOXES, CONDUIT BODIES, AND FITTINGS** | |
| E3905.1 | Box, conduit body or fitting—where required | 300.15 |
| E3905.1.1 | Equipment | 300.15(B) |
| E3905.1.2 | Protection | 300.15(C) |
| E3905.1.3 | Integral enclosure | 300.15(E) |
| E3905.1.4 | Fitting | 300.15(F) |
| E3905.1.5 | Buried conductors | 300.15(G) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4001.12 | Dimmer switches | 404.14(E) |
| E4001.13 | Multipole snap switches | 404.8(C) |
| **SECTION E4002** | **RECEPTACLES** | |
| E4002.1 | Rating and type | 406.2(A)(B) |
| E4002.1.1 | Single receptacle | 210.21(B)(1) |
| E4002.1.2 | Two or more receptacles | 210.21(B)(3) |
| Table E4002.1.2 | Receptacle ratings for various size multioutlet circuits | Table 210.21(B)(3) |
| E4002.2 | Grounding type | 406.3(A) |
| E4002.3 | CO/ALR receptacles | 406.2(C) |
| E4002.4 | Faceplates | 406.5(B) |
| E4002.5 | Position of receptacle faces | 406.4(D), and 406.5 |
| E4002.6 | Receptacles mounted in boxes | 406.4(A), and 406.4(B) |
| E4002.7 | Receptacles mounted on covers | 406.4(C) |
| E4002.8 | Damp locations | 406.8(A) |
| E4002.9 | 15- and 20-ampere receptacles in wet locations | 406.8(B)(1) |
| E4002.10 | Other receptacles in wet locations | 406.8(B)(2) |
| E4002.11 | Bathtub and shower space | 406.8(C) |
| E4002.12 | Flush mounting with faceplate | 406.8(E) |
| E4002.13 | Exposed terminals | 406.4(F) |
| E4002.14 | Tamper-resistant receptacles | 406.11 |
| **SECTION E4003** | **LUMINAIRES** | |
| E4003.1 | Energized parts | 410.5 |
| E4003.2 | Luminaires near combustible material | 410.11 |
| E4003.3 | Exposed conductive parts | 410.42(A) |
| E4003.4 | Screw-shell type | 410.90 |
| E4003.5 | Recessed incandescent luminaires | 410.115(C) |
| E4003.6 | Thermal protection | 410.130(E)(1) |
| E4003.7 | High-intensity discharge luminaires | 410.130(F) |
| E4003.8 | Metal halide lamp containment | 410.130(F)(5) |
| E4003.9 | Wet or damp locations | 410.10(A) |
| E4003.10 | Lampholders in wet or damp locations | 410.96 |
| E4003.11 | Bathtub and shower area | 410.10(D) |
| E4003.12 | Luminaires in clothes closets | 410.2 & 410.16(A), (B), (C), and (D) |
| Figure E4003.12 | Closet storage space | Figure 410.2 |
| E4003.13 | Luminaire wiring—general | 410.48 |
| E4003.13.1 | Polarization of luminaires | 410.50 |
| E4003.13.2 | Luminaires as raceways | 410.64 |
| **SECTION E4004** | **LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION** | |
| E4004.1 | Outlet box covers | 410.22 |
| E4004.2 | Combustible material at outlet boxes | 410.23 |
| E4004.3 | Access | 410.8 |
| E4004.4 | Supports | 410.30(A) |
| E4004.5 | Means of support | 410.36(A) |
| E4004.6 | Exposed ballasts | 410.136(A) |
| E4004.7 | Combustible low-density cellulose fiberboard | 410.136(B) |
| E4004.8 | Recessed fixture clearance | 410.116(A)(1),(A)(2) |
| E4004.9 | Recessed fixture installation | 410.116(B) |
| **SECTION E4005** | **TRACK LIGHTING** | |
| E4005.1 | Installation | 410.151(A) and (B) |
| E4005.2 | Fittings | 410.151(A) and (D) |
| E4005.3 | Connected load | 410.151(B) |
| E4005.4 | Prohibited locations | 410.151(C) |
| E4005.5 | Fastening | 410.154 |
| E4005.6 | Grounding | 410.155(B) |

**CHAPTER 41 APPLIANCE INSTALLATION**

**SECTION E4101 GENERAL**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4101.1 | Scope | 422.1 and 424.1 |
| E4101.2 | Installation | 110.3(B) and 422.17 |
| E4101.3 | Flexible cords | 422.16 |
| Table E4101.3 | Flexible cord length | 422.16(B)(1), (2) and (4) |
| E4101.4 | Overcurrent protection | 422.11 |
| E4101.4.1 | Single nonmotor-operated appliance | 422.11(E) |
| E4101.5 | Disconnecting means | 422.30, 422.35 and 424.19 |
| Table E4101.5 | Disconnecting means | 422.31(A),(B), 422.34, 422.35, 424.19, 424.20 and 440.14 |
| E4101.6 | Support of ceiling-suspended paddle fans | 422.18 |
| E4101.7 | Snow-melting and deicing equipment protection | 210.8(A)(3) Exception and 426.28 |

**CHAPTER 42 SWIMMING POOLS**

**SECTION E4201 GENERAL**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4201.1 | Scope | Section 680.1 |
| E4201.2 | Definitions | 680.2 |

**SECTION E4202 WIRING METHODS FOR POOLS, SPAS, HOT TUBS AND HYDROMASSAGE BATH TUBS**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4202.1 | General | 680.7, 680.23(B), 680.21(A), 680.23(F), 680.25(A), 680.40, 680.42, 680.43 and 680.70 |
| E4202.2 | Flexible cords | 680.7(A), (B), 680.22(B)(5), 680.23(B)(3), 680.42, and 680.43 Exception |
| E4202.3 | Double insulated pool pumps | 680.21(B) |

**SECTION E4203 EQUIPMENT LOCATION AND CLEARANCES**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4203.1 | Receptacle outlets | 680.22(A)(5) |
| E4203.1.1 | Location | 680.22(A)(1) |
| E4203.1.2 | Where required | 680.22.(A)(3) |
| E4203.1.3 | GFCI protection | 680.22(B) |
| E4203.1.4 | Indoor locations | 680.43(A) and (A)(1) |
| E4203.1.5 | Indoor GFCI protection | 680.43(A)(2) |
| E4203.2 | Switching devices | 680.22(D), 680.43(C), 680.72 |
| E4203.3 | Disconnecting means | 680.12 |
| E4203.4 | Luminaires and ceiling fans | 680.22(C) |
| E4203.4.1 | Outdoor location | 680.22(C)(1) |
| E4203.4.2 | Indoor location | 680.22(C)(2) |
| E4203.4.3 | Existing lighting outlets and luminaires | 680.22(C)(3) |
| E4203.4.4 | Indoor spas and hot tubs | 680.43(B) |
| E4203.4.5 | GFCI protection in adjacent areas | 680.22(C)(4) |
| 4203.5 | Other outlets | 680.22(E) |
| E4203.6 | Overhead conductor clearances | 680.8 |
| Table E4203.6 | Overhead conductor clearances | Table 680.8 |
| E4203.7 | Underground wiring | 680.10 |
| Table E4203.7 | Underground wiring | Table 680.10 |

**SECTION E4204 BONDING**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4204.1 | Performance | 680.26(A) |
| E4204.2 | Bonded parts | 680.26(B), 680.26(E), 680.42(B) and 680.43(D)(4) |
| E4204.3 | Pool water | 680.26(C) |
| E4204.4 | Bonding of outdoor hot tubs and spas | 680.42 and 680.42(B) |
| E4204.5 | Bonding of indoor hot tubs and spas | 680.43 (D) |
| E4204.5.1 | Methods | 680.43(E) |
| E4204.5.2 | Connections | 680.26(B) |

**SECTION E4205 GROUNDING**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4205.1 | Equipment to be grounded | 680.6 |
| E4205.2 | Luminaires and related equipment | 680.23(F)(2), 680.24(F) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| E4205.3 | Nonmetallic conduit | 680.23(B)(2)(b) |
| E4205.4 | Flexible cords | 680.23(B)(3) |
| E4205.5 | Motors | 680.21(A)(1) |
| E4205.6 | Feeders | 680.25(B) and (B)(1) |
| E4205.6.1 | Separate Buildings | 680.25(B)(2) |
| E4205.7 | Cord-connected equipment | Section 680.7 |
| E4205.8 | Other equipment | 680.6 and Article 250 Parts V, VI, and VII |
| **SECTION E4206** | **EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION** | |
| E4206.1 | Transformers | 680.23(A)(2) |
| E4206.2 | Ground-fault circuit-interrupters | 680.5 |
| E4206.3 | Wiring on load side of ground-fault circuit-interrupters and transformers | 680.23(F)(3) |
| E4206.4 | Underwater luminaires | 680.23(A)(1),(A)(3) and (A)(7) |
| E4206.4.1 | Maximum voltage | 680.23(A)(4) |
| E4206.4.2 | Luminaire location | 680.23(A)(5) and (A)(6) |
| E4206.5 | Wet-niche luminaires | 680.23(B)(1), (B)(2), (B)(4) and (B)(5) |
| E4206.5.1 | Servicing | 680.23(B)(6) |
| E4206.6 | Dry-niche luminaires | 680.23(C)(1) and (C)(2) |
| E4206.7 | No-niche luminaires | 680.23(D) |
| E4206.8 | Through-wall lighting assembly | 680.23(E) |
| E4206.9 | Junction boxes and enclosures for transformers or ground-fault circuit interrupters | 680.24(A) through (E) |
| E4206.9.1 | Junction boxes | 680.24(A)(1) and (A)(2) |
| E4206.9.2 | Other enclosures | 680.24(B)(1) and (2) |
| E4206.9.3 | Protection of junction boxes and enclosures | 680.24(C) |
| E4206.9.4 | Grounding terminals | 680.24(D) |
| E4206.9.5 | Strain relief | 680.24(E) |
| E4206.10 | Underwater audio equipment | 680.27(A) |
| E4206.10.1 | Speakers | 680.27(A)(1) |
| E4206.10.2 | Wiring methods | 680.27(A)(2) |
| E4206.10.3 | Forming shell and metal screen | 680.27(A)(3) |
| E4206.11 | Electrically operated pool covers | 680.27(B)(1) and (B)(2) |
| E4206.12 | Electric pool water heaters | 680.9 |
| E4206.13 | Pool area heating | 680.27(C) |
| E4206.13.1 | Unit heaters | 680.27(C)(1) |
| E4206.13.2 | Permanently wired radiant heaters | 680.27(C)(2) |
| E4206.13.3 | Radiant heating cables prohibited | 680.27(C)(3) |
| **SECTION E4207** | **STORABLE SWIMMING POOLS** | |
| E4207.1 | Pumps | 680.31 |
| E4207.2 | Ground-fault circuit-interrupters required | 680.32 |
| E4207.3 | Luminaires | 680.33 |
| E4207.3.1 | Fifteen (15) volts or less | 680.33(A) |
| E4207.3.2 | Not over 150 volts | 680.33(B) |
| E4207.4 | Receptacle locations | 680.34 |
| **SECTION E4208** | **SPAS AND HOT TUBS** | |
| E4208.1 | Ground-fault circuit-interrupters | 680.44(A) and (C) |
| E4208.2 | Electric water heaters | 680.9 |
| E4208.3 | Underwater audio equipment | 680.43(G) |
| E4208.4 | Emergency switch for spas and hot tubs | 680.41 |
| **SECTION E4209** | **HYDROMASSAGE BATHTUBS** | |
| E4209.1 | Ground-fault circuit-interrupters | 680.71 |
| E4209.2 | Other electric equipment | 680.72 |
| E4209.3 | Accessibility | 680.73 |
| E4209.4 | Bonding | 680.74 |

# INDEX

## A



## B

## C

## D

## G

## H



## I



## J



## K



## L

## M

## R



## S

## T



## U



## V

## W



## Y

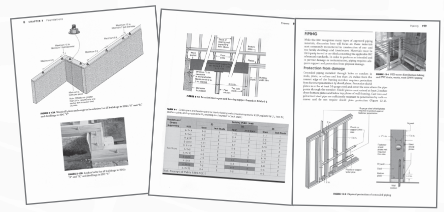
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

People Helping People Build a Safer World™

# Get Back to Basics

## A new series that breaks down the codes in an easy-to-follow format

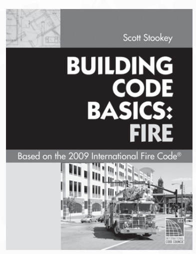
***150+ COLOR ILLUSTRATIONS!***
***REAL-WORLD APPLICATIONS!***



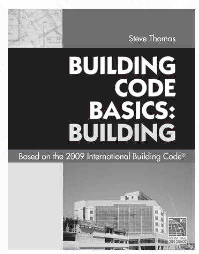
**BUILDING CODE BASICS: 2009 I-CODES®**

From the publishing team behind the popular *Significant Changes* series, *Building Code Basics* uses a straightforward, focused approach to introduce code requirements with non-code language. Technically accurate and easy to understand, this is the perfect resource for builders, architects, plan reviewers, inspectors, permit technicians, contractors, and students. Each book contains:

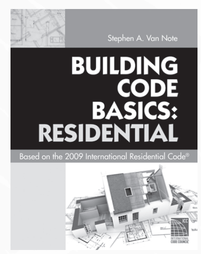
- 150+ full-color illustrations that help readers visualize correct code application.
- content that pulls together related information from various code sections into one convenient location.
- a glossary of code and construction terms to clarify key terminology as it applies to the code.
- numerous real-world applications.



A



B



C

**A: BUILDING CODE BASICS: FIRE, BASED ON THE 2009 IFC®**

**Author and ICC code expert Scott Stookey** discusses requirements for controlling ignition sources and fire hazards, fire department access, building uses and processes, fire protection and life safety systems, special processes and uses, hazardous materials, and much more. (251 pages)

#4481S09

**B: BUILDING CODE BASICS: BUILDING, BASED ON THE 2009 IBC®**

**Author Steve Thomas** focuses on the basics of the IBC requirements for building classification, fire protection features, means of egress systems, accessibility and structural integrity. It also includes a review of legal aspects including permitting, right of entry and inspector liability. (191 pages)

#4081S09

**C: BUILDING CODE BASICS: RESIDENTIAL, BASED ON THE 2009 IRC®**

**Author and ICC code expert Steve Van Note** focuses on IRC basics for structural design, fire and life safety, weather protection, interior environment, energy conservation, and plumbing, mechanical, fuel gas and electrical systems.
(262 pages)

#4181S09

**ORDER YOUR CODE TOOLS TODAY!**
**1-800-786-4452**
**www.iccsafe.org/basics**

10-03597